COMPETITIVE SEALED PROPOSAL
FOR
ONION CREEK FIRE/EMS STATION
1112 Old San Antonio Road, Austin, TX

SOLICITATION NO.: CLMB326

SOLICITATION ISSUED ON: October 3, 2016

VOLUME 1 OF 2

SEALED PROPOSALS DUE: November 2, 2016

PRIOR TO: 3:00 PM

DELIVER TO:
City of Austin
Capital Contracting Office
One Texas Center
505 Barton Springs Road, Suite 1045-C
Austin, Texas 78704

CITY OF AUSTIN PUBLIC WORKS DEPARTMENT

PROJECT MANUAL

Contract Documents and Technical Specifications

VOLUME 1 of 2

Competitive sealed proposal for

Onion Creek Fire/ ems station

Austin, Texas C.I.P. PROJECT NUMBER: 6025.001

Solicitation #: CLMB 326

Solicitation issued on: 10/3/2016

Architects

Brown Reynolds Watford Architects, Inc.
2700 Earl Rudder Freeway South, Suite 4000
College Station, Texas

REGISTERED ARCHITECT
MARK E. WATFORD
9241
STATE OF TEXAS
09/23/16

Landscape architects

Coleman & Associates
9890 Silver Mountain Drive
Austin, Texas 78737

REGISTERED LANDSCAPE ARCHITECT
MICHAEL R. FISHBAUGH
2453
STATE OF TEXAS
9/23/16

Civil engineer

Chan & Partners Engineering, LLC.
Texas Registration No. F-13013
4319 James Casey Street, Suite 300
Austin Texas, 78745

STATE OF TEXAS
JOHN R. KING
58429
LICENSED
PROFESSIONAL ENGINEER
9/22/2016

Structural engineer

JQ + TSEN, LLC.
TBPE Firm F-12778
1608 West 6th Street
Austin, Texas 78703

STATE OF TEXAS
STEPHANIE RAE TSEN
97275
LICENSED
PROFESSIONAL ENGINEER
9.23.16

<u>Mep engineer</u>

Jose I. Guerra, Inc.
TBPE Firm F-3
2401 South IH-35, Suite 210
Austin Texas, 78767

City of Austin Public Works Department ►Project Management Division
505 Barton Springs Road, Suite 900, Austin Texas 78704
Project Manager ►Craig Russell ► 512 974 7157 **c** 512 680 8373

9-23-2016

STATE OF TEXAS
ROBERTO DE LA CRUZ
85431
LICENSED
PROFESSIONAL ENGINEER

STATE OF TEXAS
JORGE A. OLIVARES
95828
LICENSED
PROFESSIONAL ENGINEER

9-23-2016

STATE OF TEXAS
BRANDON N. REYES
106528
LICENSED
PROFESSIONAL ENGINEER

09-23-2016

COMPETITIVE SEALED PROPOSAL
Table of Contents

00020CSP: REQUEST FOR PROPOSALS (09/06/16)

1. Overview
2. Project Information, Budget, and Contract Time
3. Solicitation Documents
4. Submission of Proposal
5. Authorized Contact Persons
6. Anticipated Selection Schedule
7. Mandatory Pre-Proposal Meeting
8. Mandatory Site Visit
9. Vendor Registration
10. MBE/WBE Procurement Program
11. Bid Guaranty
12. Bonds and Insurance
13. Wage Compliance
14. Owner's Rights

00100CSP: INSTRUCTIONS TO OFFERORS (10/03/16)

1. Preparation of Proposals
2. Minimum Wages
3. Estimate of Quantities (Unit Price Contracts)
4. Drawings, Project Manual and Site(s) of Work
5. Bid Guaranty
6. Performance and Payment Bonds
7. Opening of Proposals
8. Withdrawal of Proposals
9. Rejection of Proposals
10. Submission of Post Proposal Information
11. Release of Information
12. Award and Execution of Contract
13. Protest Procedures
14. Signature Requirements
15. Texas Ethics Commission Interested Parties
16. ROCIP Requirements
17. Partnering

00101CSP: EVALUATION CRITERIA – STANDARD (09/22/16)

Information Available to Bidders

00220 05/06/11 Geotechnical Data

PROPOSAL FORM & SUPPLEMENTS TO PROPOSAL

00300L CSP: Proposal Form (10/03/16)
00400CSP: Statement of Experience
Attachment A (05/05/16)
Attachment B (10/07/15)
Attachment C (05/19/16)
Attachment D (05/19/16)
Attachment E (10/07/15)
00405: Certificate of Non-Suspension or Debarment (09/25/05)
00410: Statement of Safety Experience (01/15/16)
00415CSP: Safety Information Form (10/07/15)
00425A: Insurance Cost Form (ROCIP only) (10/19/15)
00425B: Insurance Program Information (ROCIP only) (11/02/15)
00440: Affidavit - Prohibited Activities (10/19/15)
00461CCO: Local Business Presence ID Form (06/03/16)
00475: Nonresident Bidder Provisions (05/11/15)

AGREEMENT

00500: Agreement (01/15/16)

BONDS & CERTIFICATES

00610: Performance Bond (02/23/10)
00620: Payment Bond (02/23/10)
00630: Nondiscrimination Certificate (05/11/15)
00631: Title VI Assurances Appendix A (03/06/14)
00650: Certificate of Insurance (06/01/16)
00670: Sales Tax Exemption (03/20/14)
00680: Non-Use of Asbestos Affidavit (Prior to Constr.) (06/05/06)
00681: Non-Use of Asbestos Affidavit (After Constr.) (06/05/06)

GENERAL CONDITIONS & SUPPLEMENTARY CONDITIONS

00700: General Conditions (10/03/16)
00810: Supplemental General Conditions (09/06/16)
00830: Wage Rates & Payroll Reporting (10/03/16)
00830BC Wage Rates Building Construction (10/03/16)

Addenda
00900 Addendum (01/15/16)

Document Number		Title

SPECIFICATIONS

Division 1 - General Requirements

01010	04/22/13	Summary of Work
01050	10/19/15	Grades Lines & Levels
01095	07/21/03	Reference Standards and Definitions
01096	05/06/11	Stormwater Pollution Prevention Plan (SWPPP)
01200	08/09/12	Project Meetings
01300	04/22/13	Submittals
01352	04/22/13	Sustainable Construction Requirements
01353	08/09/12	Construction Equipment Emissions Reduction Plan
01380	08/09/12	Construction Photography & Videos
01500	08/09/12	Temporary Facilities
01505	04/22/13	Construction and Demolition Waste Management
01510	02/23/10	Construction Indoor Air Quality Management Plan
01550	08/09/12	Public Safety and Convenience
01900	03/12/12	Prohibition of Asbestos Containing Materials
01900a	06/05/06	Statement of Non-Inclusion of Asbestos Containing Material (E/A Prior to Design)
01900b	06/05/06	Statement of Non-Inclusion of Asbestos Containing Material (E/A After Design)

City Standard Technical Specifications

SERIES 100 EARTHWORK

101S	01/04/11	Preparing Right of Way
102S	08/20/07	Clearing and Grubbing
104S	09/26/12	Removing Portland Cement Concrete
110S	11/18/04	Street Excavation
111S	09/26/12	Excavation
130S	09/26/12	Borrow
132S	08/20/07	Embankment

SERIES 200 SUBGRADE AND BASE CONSTRUCTION

201S	08/20/07	Subgrade Preparation
202S	08/18/00	Hydrated Lime and Lime Slurry
203S	09/26/12	Lime Treatment for Materials in Place
210S	02/24/10	Flexible Base
220S	02/24/10	Sprinkling for Dust Control
230S	08/20/07	Rolling (Flat Wheel)
232S	08/20/07	Rolling (Pneumatic Tire)
234S	08/20/07	Rolling (Tamping)
236S	08/20/07	Proof Rolling
281S	02/17/00	Termite Control

SERIES 300 STREET SURFACE COURSES

301S	08/20/07	Asphalts, Oils and Emulsions
306S	02/24/10	Prime Coat
307S	02/24/10	Tack Coat
315S	09/26/12	Milling Asphaltic Concrete Pavement and Non-Portland Cement Concrete Bases
340S	09/26/12	Hot Mix Asphaltic Concrete Pavement
360S	09/26/12	Concrete Pavement

SERIES 400 CONCRETE STRUCTURES AND MISCELLANEOUS CONCRETE

401S	09/26/12	Structural Excavation and Backfill
402S	11/13/07	Controlled Low Strength Material
403S	09/26/12	Concrete for Structures
405S	11/13/07	Concrete Admixtures
406S	09/26/12	Reinforcing Steel
408S	11/13/07	Concrete Joint Material
409S	11/13/07	Membrane Curing
410S	09/26/12	Concrete Structures
411S	11/13/07	Surface Finishes for Concrete
413S	11/13/07	Cleaning and/or Sealing Joints and Cracks (Portland Cement Concrete)
414S	11/13/07	Concrete Retaining Walls
430S	11/15/11	P.C. Concrete Curb and Gutter
432S	01/04/10	P.C. Concrete Sidewalks
433S	12/09/08	P.C. Concrete Driveways
439S	11/13/07	Parking Lot Bumper Curbs
470S	03/26/08	Curb Cuts for Sidewalk Ramps and Driveways
485S	11/13/07	Concrete Paver Units for Sidewalk Ramps

SERIES 500 PIPE AND APPURTENANCES

503S	02/17/00	Frames, Grates, Rings and Covers
504S	02/24/10	Adjusting Structures
505S	02/24/10	Concrete Encasement and Encasement Pipe
506	03/15/11	Manholes
508S	02/24/10	Miscellaneous Structures and Appurtenances
509S	09/26/12	Excavation Safety Systems
510	10/03/13	Pipe
511S	09/26/12	Water Valves

SERIES 600 ENVIRONMENTAL ENHANCEMENT

601S	09/01/11	Salvaging and Placing Topsoil
605S	06/21/07	Soil Retention Blanket
606S	06/21/07	Fertilizer
610S	01/04/11	Preservation of Trees and Other Vegetation
620S	01/04/16	Filter Fabric
623S	02/24/10	Dry Stack Rock Wall
628S	12/31/13	Sediment Containment Dikes
639S	08/18/10	Rock Berm
640S	02/24/10	Mortared Rock Wall
641S	06/21/07	Stabilized Construction Entrance
642S	09/01/11	Silt Fence
648S	08/18/10	Mulch Sock

SERIES 700 INCIDENTIAL CONSTRUCTION

700S	09/26/12	Mobilization
710S	09/26/12	Bicycle Racks

SERIES 800 URBAN TRANSPORTATION

802S	09/26/12	Project Signs
803S	06/21/07	Barricades, Signs and Traffic Handling
824S	02/24/10	Traffic Signs
860S	09/26/12	Pavement Marking Paint
871S	06/21/07	Reflectorized Pavement Markings
875S	11/21/05	Pavement Surface Preparation for Markings

Special Provisions to City Standard Technical Specifications

SP -1	07/26/13	Measurement and Payment
SP101S	09/15/16	Preparing Right of Way
SP102S	09/15/16	Clearing and Grubbing
SP130S	09/15/16	Borrow
SP201S	09/15/16	Subgrade Preparation
SP401S	09/15/16	Structural Excavation and Backfill
SP510	09/15/16	Pipe

Special Specifications

DIVISION 3

031000	09/23/16	Concrete Formwork
032000	09/23/16	Concrete Reinforcements
033000	09/23/16	Cast-In-Place Concrete
035000	09/23/16	Concrete Floor Finishing
033680	09/23/16	Special Concrete Floor Finishes

DIVISION 4

042200	09/23/16	Concrete Unit Masonry
044300	09/23/16	Stone Masonry
047200	09/23/16	Cast Stone Masonry

DIVISION 5

051200	09/23/16	Structural Steel Framing
053100	09/23/16	Steel Deck
055000	09/23/16	Metal Fabrications
055133	09/23/16	Aluminum Access Ladder
055800	09/23/16	Formed Metal Fabrication Finishing

DIVISION 6

061000	09/23/16	Rough Carpentry
061100	09/23/16	Wood Framing
061200	09/23/16	Structural Insulated Panels
061600	09/23/16	Sheathing
061753	09/23/16	Shop Fabricated Wood Trusses
064023	09/23/16	Interior Architectural Woodwork

DIVISION 7

071113	09/23/16	Bituminous Damproofing
072100	09/23/16	Thermal Insulation
072600	09/23/16	Vapor Barrier Membrane
072719	09/23/16	Plastic Film Air Barrier
074113	09/23/16	Metal Roof and Wall Panels
076200	09/23/16	Sheet Metal Flashing and Trim
078413	09/23/16	Penetration Firestopping
079200	09/23/16	Joint Sealants
079500	09/23/16	Expansion Control

DIVISION 8

081113	09/23/16	Hollow Metal Doors and Window Frames
081416	09/23/16	Flush Wood Doors
083113	09/23/16	Access Doors and Frames
083513	09/23/16	Electric Operated Folding Doors
083613	09/23/16	Upward-Acting Sectional Doors

084113	09/23/16	Aluminum-Framed Entrances and Storefronts
087100	09/23/16	Hardware
087200	09/23/16	Weatherstripping and Seals
088000	09/23/16	Glazing
088300	09/23/16	Mirrors
089000	09/23/16	Louvers and Vents

DIVISION 9

092226	09/23/16	Metal Suspension Systems
092900	09/23/16	Gypsum Board
093000	09/23/16	Tiling
095123	09/23/16	Acoustical Tile Ceilings
096513	09/23/16	Resilient Base and Accessories
096566	09/23/16	Resilient Athletic Flooring
098100	09/23/16	Acoustic Insulation
098413	09/23/16	Acoustic Wall Panels
099100	09/23/16	Painting

DIVISION 10

101400	09/23/16	Signage
102600	09/23/16	Wall and Corner Protection
102800	09/23/16	Toilet, Bath and Laundry Accessories
104100	09/23/16	Knox Box
104412	09/23/16	Fire Extinguishers and Fire Extinguisher Cabinets
105143	09/23/16	Turnout Gear Lockers
105613	09/23/16	Metal Storage Shelving
107100	09/23/16	Sun Control Devices
107500	09/23/16	Flagpoles

DIVISION 11

113100	09/23/16	Residential Appliances

DIVISION 12

122400	09/23/16	Manual Roller Shades
123661	09/23/16	Quartz Countertops
129300	09/23/16	Site Furnishings and Equipment

DIVISION 17

	09/22/16	Envelope Compliance Certificate
	09/22/16	Lighting Compliance Certificate
	09/22/16	Mechanical Compliance Certificate

DIVISION 21 & 22

210517	09/23/16	Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for Fire-Suppression Piping
210518	09/23/16	Escutcheons for Fire-Suppression Piping
210553	09/23/16	Identification for Fire-Suppression Piping and Equipment
211313	09/23/16	Wet-Pipe Sprinkler Systems
220513	09/23/16	Common Motor Requirements for Plumbing Equipment
220517	09/23/16	Sleeved and Sleeve Seals for Plumbing Piping
220518	09/23/16	Escutcheons for Plumbing Piping
220519	09/23/16	Meters and Gages for Plumbing Piping
220523	09/23/16	General-Duty Valves for Plumbing Piping
220529	09/23/16	Hangers and Supports for Plumbing Piping and Equipment
220553	09/23/16	Identification for Plumbing Piping and Equipment
220719	09/23/16	Plumbing Piping Insulation
221100	09/23/16	Facility Natural-Gas Piping

221116 09/23/16 Domestic Water Piping
221119 09/23/16 Domestic Water Piping Specialties
221123 09/23/16 Domestic Water Pumps
221316 09/23/16 Sanitary Waste and Vent Piping
221319 09/23/16 Sanitary Waste Piping Specialties
221323 09/23/16 Sanitary Waste Interceptors
223400 09/23/16 Fuel-Fired, Domestic-Water Heaters
224213.13 09/23/16 Commercial Water Closets
224213.16 09/23/16 Commercial Urinals
224216.13 09/23/16 Commercial Lavatories
224216.16 09/23/16 Commercial Sinks
224222309/23/16 Commercial Showers
224716 09/23/16 Pressure Water Coolers

DIVISION 23

230000 09/23/16 Basic Mechanical Requirements
230030 09/23/16 Mechanical Demolition
230529 09/23/16 Sleeves, Flashings, Supports and Anchors
230548 09/23/16 Vibration Isolation
230553 09/23/16 Mechanical Identification
230593 09/23/16 Testing, Adjusting and Balancing for HVAC
230700 09/23/16 HVAC Insulation
230719 09/23/16 Piping Insulation
233100.01 09/23/16 Ductwork
233300.01 09/23/16 Ductwork Accessories
233600.01 09/23/16 Air Terminal Units (VAV)
233700 09/23/16 Air Outlets and Inlets
237313 09/23/16 Variable Refrigerant Flow Equipment

DIVISION 26

260500 09/23/16 Common Work Results for Electrical
260519 09/23/16 Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables
260526 09/23/16 Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems
260529 09/23/16 Hangers and Supports for Electrical Systems
260533 09/23/16 Raceways and Boxes for Electrical Systems
260553 09/23/16 Identification for Electrical Systems
260573 09/23/16 Overcurrent Protective Device Coordination Study
260575 09/23/16 Arc Flash Hazard Analysis Study
260923 09/23/16 Lighting Control Devices
262416 09/23/16 Panelboards
262726 09/23/16 Wire Devices
262813 09/23/16 Fuses
262816 09/23/16 Enclosed Switches and Circuit Breakers
263213 09/23/16 Gaseous Emergency Engine Generators
263600 09/23/16 Transfer Switches
265119 09/23/16 LED Interior Lighting
265600 09/23/16 Exterior Lighting

DIVISION 28

283111 09/23/16 Addressable Fire-Alarm System

DIVISION 31

312000 09/23/16 Earth Moving
312200 09/23/16 Site Grading
315000 09/23/16 Excavation Safety

DIVISION 32

323120	09/23/16	Ornamental Steel Fences and Cantilever Gate
328400	09/23/16	Planting Irrigation
329200	09/23/16	Turf and Grasses
329300	09/23/16	Plants

DIVISION 33

330500	09/23/16	Utility Services
331300	09/23/16	Sterilization of Water Lines
331660	09/23/16	Water Storage Tank
333000	09/23/16	Sanitary Sewerage System
334000	09/23/16	Storm Sewer and Appurtenances
335000	09/23/16	Fuel Storage Dispensing Systems

VOL. 2 10/09/00 **MBE/WBE Procurement Program Package**

END

REQUEST FOR COMPETITIVE SEALED PROPOSALS
Section 00020CSP

1. OVERVIEW

The City of Austin (City), hereafter referred to as Owner, desires to select a General Contractor on the basis of Competitive Sealed Proposals (CSP). This solicitation complies with applicable City Policy and state of Texas law, including Texas Government Code Title 10, Subtitle D, Chapter 2269. Owner will select the successful Offeror that offers the best value to the City based on the published Evaluation Criteria and on its final ranking.

2. PROJECT INFORMATION, BUDGET AND CONTRACT TIME

Below is a summary of information related to this Solicitation. Offerors are cautioned to refer to all other sections of the Project Manual, Drawings, Solicitation Documents, Clarifications and/or Addenda for further details. Evaluation Criteria are specified in Section 00101CSP.

Owner is requesting sealed written Proposals for furnishing all labor, materials, equipment, supervision, incidentals and performing all Work required for the following Project:

Project Name:	**Onion Creek Fire/ EMS Station**
Project Location:	**1112 Old San Antonio Road, Austin, TX**
Solicitation Number:	**CLMB326**
CIP ID #:	**6025.001**

The Work consists of construction of a new City of Austin Onion Creek Fire and EMS Station at the intersection of FM 1626 and Old San Antonio Road. The new Fire and EMS Station will be constructed on 2.508 acres in an area of need in southeast Austin. The three-bay 9,626 square foot station is designed to house sixteen (16) fire and EMS personnel to serve the surrounding community. A fueling station is also part of this facility. The project is designed to achieve LEED silver rating.

The Estimated Budget for the Work is Three Million Seven Hundred Fifty Thousand Dollars ($3,750,000.00).

Contract Time is of the essence and all Work shall be substantially completed within Three Hundred Ten (310) Calendar Days after date specified in the written Notice to Proceed. Final completion shall be achieved within thirty (30) Calendar Days from Substantial Completion date.

Liquidated damages are One Thousand Seven Hundred Seventy Dollars ($1,770.00) per Calendar Day for failure to substantially complete the work and Six Hundred Seventy Dollars ($670.00) per Calendar Day for failure to achieve final completion within the stipulated Calendar Days after substantial completion.

3. SOLICITATION DOCUMENTS

Solicitation Documents are obtained through the City's Vendor Connection website log on: www.austintexas.gov/financeonline/vendor_connection/index.cfm.

A complete set of Solicitation Documents, including all sections of the Project Manual and Drawings, are included in the attachments section of each solicitation.

All addenda and answers to Offeror's questions will also be posted in the attachments section for each solicitation on the City's Vendor Connection Website.

4. SUBMISSION OF PROPOSAL

The Offeror must submit one (1) original signature copy of their submittal, stamped "ORIGINAL", one (1) duplicate copy, stamped "COPY", and one (1) digital/electronic version on CD or Flash Drive in a sealed container. Proposals must be received at the following location prior to the date and time set forth below:

Capital Contracting Office
Contract Procurement Division
ATTN: STEVEN COCKE
One Texas Center, 505 Barton Springs Rd., Suite 1045-C
Austin, Texas 78704

DUE DATE:	**November 2, 2016**
PRIOR TO:	**3:00 PM**

PROPOSALS AND COMPLIANCE PLANS RECEIVED AFTER THE DATE AND TIME STATED ABOVE WILL NOT BE ACCEPTED FOR EVALUATION. The time stamp clock in Suite 1045-C, is the time of record and is verified daily with www.time.gov, the official U.S. time.

The Owner will receive, publicly open, and read aloud the names of the Offerors and their proposed prices in the Congress Conference Room, Suite 1045-C, One Texas Center, 505 Barton Springs Rd, Austin, Texas 78704.

It is the sole responsibility of the Offeror to ensure timely delivery of Proposal. Owner will not be responsible for failure of service on the part of the U.S. Post Office, courier services, or any other form of delivery service chosen by Offeror.

5. AUTHORIZED CONTACT PERSONS

The persons listed below may be contacted for information regarding the Invitation for Proposals. If the Offeror contacts any other City employee, including Council Members and members of Boards and Commissions, the Offeror may be found in violation of Ordinance No. 20111110-052, dated November 10, 2011, regarding Anti-Lobbying and Procurement. The text of that Ordinance may be viewed at

http://www.cityofaustin.org/edims/document.cfm?id=161145.

PROJECT MANAGER:	**Craig Russell**	**512-974 7157**
CONTRACT PROCUREMENT REP.:	**Steven Cocke**	**512-974 7998**

6. ANTICIPATED SELECTION SCHEDULE

The selection of the general contractor for this project is anticipated to be completed and submitted to the Austin City Council for action by December 15, 2016.

Owner will submit a recommendation for Austin City Council authorization to negotiate and execute a contract with the top-ranked firm. If Owner is unable to negotiate a satisfactory contract with the top-ranked firm within 30 calendar days, Owner will formally end negotiations with that firm. The Owner will then proceed to negotiate a satisfactory contract with the next ranked firm in the order of the selection ranking, until a contract is reached or all negotiations end, provided that Owner, in its complete discretion, may elect to extend the time for negotiations with any firm for an additional period of time.

7. MANDATORY PRE-PROPOSAL MEETING

A mandatory Pre-Proposal Meeting will be held on **October 12, 2016, at 10:00 AM at 505 Barton Springs, Austin, Texas 78704, Suite 1070 Conference Room West.**

Offerors must attend the mandatory Pre-Proposal Meeting to ensure their understanding of Owner's Solicitation request, contracting requirements, and MBE/WBE/DBE Procurement Program requirements. To be qualified to submit a Proposal, an authorized agent of the Offeror must attend the Pre-Proposal Meeting. An authorized agent is defined as a knowledgeable person who is on the Offeror's payroll at the time of submission. Offerors must arrive and sign-in within fifteen (15) minutes of the scheduled start time of the meeting; otherwise, the Offeror will not be allowed to submit a Proposal for the project.

8. MANDATORY SITE VISIT

A Mandatory tour of the Site will be conducted immediately following the Pre-Proposal Meeting. Depending on the number of people interested in attending the tour, space may be limited to three (3) representatives from each firm. The tour should take no more than 1-1/2 hours.

9. VENDOR REGISTRATION

All Offerors and Subcontractors must be registered with the Owner prior to execution of a contract. Prime Contractors are responsible for ensuring that their Subcontractors are registered as a vendor with the City. Registration can be done through the Owner's on-line Vendor Registration system.

Registration can be done through the Owner's on-line Vendor Registration system. Log onto https://www.ci.austin.tx.us/vss/Advantage and follow the directions.

10. MBE/WBE PROCUREMENT PROGRAM

All City procurements are subject to the City's Minority-Owned and Women-Owned Business Enterprise Procurement Program found at Chapter 2-9-A of the City Code, as amended. The Program provides Minority-Owned and Women-Owned Business Enterprises (MBEs/WBEs) or Disadvantaged Business Enterprises (DBEs) full opportunity to participate in all City contracts. Goals for MBE/WBE or DBE participation are stated for each solicitation. Information on achieving the goals or documenting good faith efforts to achieve the goals are contained in the MBE/WBE Procurement Program Package or DBE Procurement Program Package attached to the solicitation. When goals are established, Offerors are required to complete and return the MBE/WBE or DBE Compliance Plan with their Proposal. If a Compliance Plan is not submitted prior to the date and time set forth in the solicitation, the Proposal will not be accepted for consideration.

11. BID GUARANTY

All Proposals shall be accompanied by an acceptable Proposal guaranty in an amount of not less than five percent (5%) of the total Proposal amount, as specified in Section 00100CSP, Instructions to Offerors.

12. BONDS AND INSURANCE

Performance and payment bonds, when required, shall be executed on forms furnished by Owner. Each bond shall be issued in an amount of one hundred percent (100%) of the Contract Amount by a solvent corporate surety company authorized to do business in the State of Texas, and shall meet any other requirements established by law or by Owner pursuant to applicable law.

Minimum insurance requirements are specified in Section 00810, Supplemental General Conditions.

13. WAGE COMPLIANCE

Minimum wage rates have been established and are specified in Section 00830, Wage Rates and Payroll Reporting.

14. OWNER'S RIGHTS

Owner reserves the right to reject any or all Proposals and to waive any minor informality in any Proposal or solicitation procedure (a minor informality is one that does not affect the competitiveness of the Proposal).

END

INSTRUCTIONS TO OFFERORS
Section 00100CSP

1. PREPARATION OF PROPOSALS

1.1 Proposal Documents. Each Proposal should be prepared simply and economically, providing a straightforward, concise description of the Offeror's ability to meet the requirements of this solicitation. Elaborate bindings, colored displays, promotional materials and so forth are not desired. Emphasis should be on completeness, clarity of content, responsiveness to the requirements, and an understanding of the City's (Owner's) needs. Vague and equivocal statements will be viewed unfavorably. Offeror shall also comply with proposal requirements of Section 00101CSP including page number limitations.

1.2 Modifications to Proposal. Proposals may be modified in writing at any time prior to the due date and time. The person signing the Proposal shall initial any modifications to the Proposal.

1.3 Professional Services. Offeror shall secure any required services that are defined as professional services under the Professional Services Procurement Act, Chapter 2254 of the Texas Government Code (for example: registered professional land surveyors, professional architects and professional engineers) using the qualifications based selection process prescribed by that Chapter. (Note: It is a violation of State Law to solicit Bids for professional services.)

1.4 Sales Tax Exemption. The Owner is a tax-exempt organization as defined by Chapter 11 of the Property Tax Code of Texas. Proposed prices shall not include sales tax on materials, supplies, or equipment that are incorporated into the real property interest of the Owner or are otherwise completely used and consumed in the performance of the Contract. Owner will furnish Contractor with a Sales Tax Exemption Certificate to be issued to Suppliers in lieu of the tax.

1.5 Addenda. Offeror shall be knowledgeable of all Addenda issued and shall acknowledge all Addenda in spaces provided on proposal form. Further information regarding the Solicitation Documents and the Project may be obtained from the City's Project Manager or Contract Procurement Representative listed in Section 00020CSP, Request for Competitive Sealed Proposals.

1.6 Required Items. Offers must include all specified items in this section and be submitted in accordance with Evaluation Criteria.

1.7 Disclosure of Proprietary Information. All materials submitted to Owner become public property and are subject to the Texas Public Information Act, Government Code Chapter 552, upon receipt. If Offeror does not desire proprietary information in the Proposal to be disclosed, each page must be identified and marked "proprietary" at time of submittal. Owner will, to the extent allowed by law, endeavor to protect such information from disclosure. The final decision as to what information must be disclosed, however, lies with the Texas Attorney General. Failure to identify proprietary information will result in all unmarked sections being deemed non-proprietary and available upon public request.

1.8 Costs of Preparing Proposal. All cost directly or indirectly related to preparation of a Proposal to this Solicitation or any oral presentation required to supplement and/or clarify a Proposal, which may be required by Owner, shall be the sole responsibility of the Offeror.

1.9 Further Information. Information may be obtained by calling the City's Project Manager listed in Section 00020CSP, Request for Competitive Sealed Proposals. Persons desiring further information or interpretation of the solicitation requirements shall make a written request for such information to Owner no later than seven (7) working days before Proposal submittal due date and time. Interpretation of Solicitation Documents will be made by Addendum **only** and a copy of each Addendum is available through the City's Vendor Connection website. Log on to the site below and follow directions as required: https://www.austintexas.gov/financeonline/vendor_connection/index.cfm.

1.10 Legal Status of Offeror. Only individual firms or lawfully formed formal business organizations may apply, unless, if Offeror does not meet the foregoing criteria, Offeror states in writing to Owner that, if awarded the contract, it will form a formal business organization in a timely manner so as not to delay the Project. Any associations will be disqualified (this does not preclude Offeror from having subcontractors/subconsultants). Owner will contract only with individual firms or formal organizations such as a) joint ventures, b) limited liability corporations, c) partnerships, or d) corporations authorized to do business in the state of Texas.

1.11 Anti-Lobbying and Procurement. Article 6, Chapter 2-7, Austin City Code, prohibits lobbying activities or representations by the Offeror between the date that the request for CSP is issued and the date of contract execution. The text of the pertinent City Ordinance may be viewed at: http://www.cityofaustin.org/edims/document.cfm?id=111624.

1.12 City's Minority-Owned and Women-Owned Business Enterprise (MBE/WBE) Program Requirements.

Good Faith Efforts. When an Offeror cannot achieve the MBE/WBE goals or subgoals established for the project, the bidder must document its Good Faith Efforts to meet the goals or subgoals. Good Faith Effort evaluations will consider, at a minimum, the offeror's efforts to do the following:

.1 Soliciting through at least two reasonable, available and verifiable means MBEs/WBEs within the Significant Local Business Presence boundaries at least seven (7) business days prior to the bid opening date to allow the MBEs/WBEs to respond to the bid.

.2 Providing interested MBEs/WBEs adequate information about the bid documents and requirements, including addenda, in a timely manner to assist them in responding to the bid.

.3 Negotiating in good faith with interested MBEs/WBEs that have submitted bids to the bidder.

.4 Publishing notice in a local publication such as a newspaper, trade association publication or via electronic/social media.

.5 Not rejecting MBEs/WBEs as being unqualified without sound reasons based on a thorough investigation of their capabilities.

.6 Making economically feasible portions of the work available to MBE/WBE subcontractors and suppliers and to select those portions of the work or material needs consistent with the available MBE/WBE subcontractors and suppliers, so as to facilitate meeting the goals or subgoals.

.7 The ability or desire of the bidder to perform the project work with its own organization does not relieve the bidder of the responsibility to make Good Faith Efforts.

.8 Offerors are not required to accept higher quotes in order to meet the goals or subgoals.

.9 Effectively using the services of Minority Person/Women community organizations; Minority Person/Women Contractors groups; local, state and federal Minority Person/Women business assistance offices; and other organizations to provide assistance in solicitation and utilization of MBEs, WBEs and/or DBEs.

.10 In assessing minimum Good Faith Efforts, the OWNER may consider (1) whether the bidder sought guidance from the City of Austin Small and Minority Business Resources Department (SMBR) on any question regarding compliance with these requirements; and (2) the performance of other offerors in meeting the goals.

For additional information, refer to the MBE/WBE Compliance Program Requirements Volume of the Project Manual.

Bid shopping is not allowed in conjunction with this solicitation and may result in the disqualification of prospective Offerors and subcontractors.

2. MINIMUM WAGES

Workers on the Project shall be paid not less than wage rates, including fringe benefits, as published by the Department of Labor (DOL) for Building Construction and Heavy and Highway Trades "AS APPLICABLE" and/or the $13.50 minimum wage required by City of Austin Ordinance No. 20160324-015, whichever is higher. The Total Minimum Wage required can be met using any combination of cash and non-cash qualified fringe benefits provided the cash component meets or exceeds the $13.50 minimum wage required.

3. ESTIMATE OF QUANTITIES (UNIT PRICE CONTRACTS ONLY)

Quantities, if any, listed in Proposal Form are to be considered as approximate and will be used only for comparison of Proposals. Payment to Contractor will be made only for actual quantities of Work performed or materials furnished in accordance with Contract and it is understood that quantities may be increased or decreased as provided in Section 00700, General Conditions, and as may be modified by Section 00810, Supplemental General Conditions.

4. DRAWINGS, PROJECT MANUAL AND SITE(S) OF WORK

Before submitting a Proposal, Offeror shall carefully examine the Proposal Documents, site(s) of the proposed Work, soils, and other conditions that may affect the performance of the Work to satisfy the Offeror as to character, quality and quantities of the Work to be performed and materials to be furnished. Submission of a Proposal shall indicate that Offeror has complied with these requirements. If during preparation of the Proposal, the Offeror discovers any suspected discrepancies or errors, the Offeror must immediately notify the Authorized Contact Person in writing of the suspected discrepancy or error. Failure to provide written notice of any suspected discrepancies or errors may be cause for rejection of Proposal.

5. BID GUARANTY

All Proposals shall be accompanied by a bid guaranty in an amount of not less than five percent (5%) of the total Proposal amount. If the total Proposal amount is $100,000 or less, Offeror has the option of providing a cashier's check, made payable to City of Austin accompanied by a letter from a surety company indicating that Offeror can be bonded for the amount of the Project, or a bid bond with Power of Attorney attached, issued by a solvent surety authorized under laws of the State of Texas and acceptable to Owner. If the total Proposal amount exceed $100,000, the only acceptable bid guaranty will be bid bond with Power of Attorney attached, issued by a solvent surety authorized under laws of the State of Texas and acceptable to Owner.

The bid guaranty accompanying the Proposal of the three (3) apparent low Offerors will be retained until Contract is awarded and successful Offeror executes Contract and furnishes required bonds and insurance, after which bid guaranty will be returned to the Offerors. All other bid guaranties will be returned.

6. PERFORMANCE AND PAYMENT BONDS

When performance and/or payment bonds are required, each shall be issued in an amount equal to the Contract Amount as security for the faithful performance and/or payment of all Contactor's obligations under the Contract Documents. Performance and payment bonds shall be issued by a solvent corporate surety authorized to do business in the State of Texas, and shall meet any other requirements established by law or by Owner pursuant to applicable law.

7. OPENING OF PROPOSALS

Proposals will be opened in a manner that avoids disclosure of the contents to competing Offerors and keeps the contents confidential during negotiations. Until the negotiations are completed, only the number, identity and proposed price of the Offerors submitting Proposals will be made available to the public.

8. WITHDRAWAL OF PROPOSAL

Proposal may be withdrawn by Offeror, provided an authorized individual of the Offeror submits a written request to withdraw the Proposal prior to the time set for receipt of Proposals. Withdrawn Proposals may be resubmitted, with or without modifications, up to the due date and time.

9. REJECTION OF PROPOSAL

Owner reserves the right to reject any or all Proposals and to waive any minor informality in any Proposal or solicitation procedure (a minor informality is one that does not affect the competitiveness of the Offerors).

9.1 The following **<u>will</u>** be cause to reject a Proposal:

.1 Submission of Price Proposal, Section 00300L CSP or 00300U CSP, which are not signed by an individual empowered to bind the Offeror.

.2 Proposals which are not accompanied by acceptable Bid Guaranty, with Power of Attorney attached, or a letter certifying the Offeror's ability to be bonded, from a surety company, if required.

.3 More than one Proposal for same Work from an individual, firm, partnership or corporation.

.4 Evidence of collusion among Offerors.
.5 Sworn testimony or discovery in pending litigation with Owner which discloses misconduct or willful refusal by Contractor to comply with subject contract or instructions of Owner.
.6 Failure to submit MBE/WBE or DBE Compliance Plan in accordance with the separately bound volume titled MBE/WBE Procurement Program Package or DBE Procurement Program Package.
.7 Failure to have an authorized agent of the Offeror to attend the mandatory Pre-Proposal Meeting, if applicable.
.8 Proposals received from an Offeror who has been debarred or suspended by Owner's Purchasing Officer.
.9 Proposals received from an Offeror when its principals are currently debarred or suspended by Federal, State or City governmental agencies. (Applicable for Proposal amounts equal to or in excess of $25,000.00).
.10 Failure to submit Insurance Cost Form, Section 00425A, with Proposal, if applicable.
.11 Failure to submit Nonresident Bidder Provisions, Section 00475, with Proposal.
.12 Failure to submit Nondiscrimination Certificate, Section 00630, with Proposal.

9.2 The following **may** be cause to reject a Proposal or influence evaluations and ranking of Proposal:

.1 Poor performance in execution of work under a previous City of Austin contract.
.2 Evidence of poor performance on previous Projects as documented in Owner's project performance evaluations.
.3 Failure to achieve reasonable progress on an existing City of Austin contract.
.4 Default on previous contracts or failure to execute Contract after award.
.5 Evidence of failure to pay Subcontractors, Suppliers or employees in accordance with Contract requirements.
.6 Proposals containing omissions, alterations of form, additions, qualifications or conditions not called for by Owner, or incomplete Proposals may be rejected. In any case of ambiguity or lack of clarity in the Proposal, Owner reserves right to determine most advantageous Proposal or to reject the Proposal.
.7 Failure to acknowledge receipt of Addenda.
.8 Failure to submit any of the items specified in the Evaluation Criteria or within this Request for Proposal.
.9 Failure to identify a dollar amount (price) of a unit price(s) in the 00300U CSP.
.10 Failure to submit post-proposal information within the allotted time(s), if applicable.
.11 Failure to timely execute this Contract after award.
.12 Previous environmental violations resulting in fines or citations by a governmental entity (i.e. U.S. Environmental Protection Agency, Texas Commission on Environmental Quality, etc.).
.13 Unacceptable safety record and/or safety program as set forth in Evaluation Criteria.
.14 Failure of Offeror to demonstrate its experience with projects of similar size, scope, and complexity.
.15 Evidence of Offeror's lack of sufficient resources, workforce, equipment or supervision.
.16 Unbalanced Unit Price Bid: "Unbalanced Bid" means a Bid, which includes a Bid that is based on unit prices which are significantly less than cost for some Bid items and significantly more than cost for others. This may be evidenced by submission of unit price Bid items where the cost are significantly higher/lower than the cost of the same Bid items submitted by other Bidders on the project.

.17 Failure to submit with Proposal all requested documentation as identified in Section 00101CSP.
.18 Failure to submit Section 00810A Exhibit A Federal Provisions pages 1-9 with Proposal, if applicable.

10. SUBMISSION OF POST PROPOSAL INFORMATION

Offeror shall submit information as requested by Owner prior to or during contract negotiations.

11. RELEASE OF INFORMATION

Under Texas law, information relating to this Solicitation may be kept confidential until a contract has been awarded. Owner shall not release information relative to this Solicitation during the proposal evaluation process or prior to contract award, except as otherwise required by law.

12. AWARD AND EXECUTION OF CONTRACT

Owner will process Proposals expeditiously. Owner will evaluate and rank each proposal with respect to the evaluation factors contained in this Solicitation. Award of Contract will be to the Offeror providing the best value to Owner. Owner reserves the right to negotiate all elements which comprise the Proposal to ensure that the best possible consideration is afforded to all concerned. The Owner and/or its Engineer or Architect may discuss with the selected Offeror options for a scope or time modification and any price change associated with the modifications.

Owner may not award a contract to a nonresident Offeror unless the nonresident underbids the lowest Proposal submitted by a responsible resident Offeror by an amount that is not less than the amount by which a resident Offeror would be required to underbid the nonresident Offeror to obtain a comparable contract in the state in which the nonresident's principal place of business is located.

Proposals are to be valid for Owner's acceptance for a minimum of **120 calendar days** from the Proposal due date to allow time for evaluation, selection, and any unforeseen delays. Any damages accruing to Owner as a result of the successful Offeror's failure to contract may be recovered from the successful Offeror.

Upon contract award, the selected Offeror must submit either their existing or an updated personnel policy (on letterhead) documenting conformity with City Code, Chapter 5-4, § 5-4-2. If the company does not submit a copy of their personnel policy incorporating the non-discrimination policy, the company will not be in compliance and will not receive a contract award.

The Owner's Capital Contracting Office (CCO) Officer, on behalf of the Managing Department Officer, shall submit a recommendation for award to the City Council for those project awards requiring City Council action. City Manager or his/her designee will sign contract after award and submission of required documentation by Offeror. Contract will not be binding upon Owner until it has been executed by both parties. Owner will process the Contract expeditiously. However, Owner will not be liable for any delays prior to the award or execution of Contract.

13. PROTEST PROCEDURES

The Owner's Capital Contracting Office (CCO) Officer has the authority to settle or resolve any claim of an alleged deficiency or protest. The procedures for notifying Owner of an alleged deficiency or filing a protest are listed below. If you fail to comply with any of these requirements, the CCO Officer may dismiss your complaint or protest.

Prior to Solicitation opening: If you are a prospective Offeror and you become aware of the facts regarding what you believe is a deficiency in the solicitation process before the Response is opened, you must notify Owner in writing of the alleged deficiency before that date, giving Owner an opportunity to resolve the situation prior to the Solicitation Proposal opening.

After Solicitation opening: If you submit a Response to Owner and (1) you have been found non-responsive, or (2) you believe that there has been a deficiency in the solicitation process or the award, you have the opportunity to protest the solicitation process or the recommended award as follows:

13.1 You must file written notice of your intent to protest within four (4) calendar days of the date that you know or should have known of the facts relating to the protest. If you do not file a written notice of intent within this time, you have waived all rights to protest the solicitation process or the award.

13.2 You must file your written protest within fourteen (14) calendar days of the date that you know or should have known of the facts relating to the protest unless you know of the facts before the Proposal has been opened. If you know of the facts before that date, you must notify Owner as stated above.

13.3 You must submit your protest in writing and must include the following information:

- your name, address, telephone, and email address;
- the solicitation number and the CIP number, if applicable;
- a detailed statement of the factual grounds for the protest, including copies of any relevant documents.

13.4 Your protest must be concise and presented logically and factually to help with Owner's review.

13.5 When Owner receives a timely written protest, the CCO Officer will determine whether the grounds for your protest are sufficient. If the CCO Officer decides that the grounds are sufficient, CCO will schedule a protest hearing, usually within five (5) working days. If the CCO Officer determines that your grounds are insufficient, you will be notified of that decision in writing.

13.6 The protest hearing is informal and is not subject to the Open Meetings Act. The purpose of the hearing is to give you a chance to present your case, it is not an adversarial proceeding. Those who may attend from Owner are: representatives from the department that requested the purchase, the Law Department, CCO, and other appropriate City staff. You may bring a representative or anyone else that will present information to support the factual grounds for your protest with you to the hearing.

13.7 A decision will usually be made within fifteen (15) calendar days after the hearing.

13.8 The CCO Officer will send you a copy of the hearing decision after the appropriate City staff has reviewed the decision.

13.9 When a protest is filed, Owner usually will not make an award until a decision on the protest is made. However, Owner will not delay an award if the City Manager or the CCO Officer determines that:

- Owner urgently requires the supplies or services to be purchased, or

- failure to make an award promptly will unduly delay delivery or performance.
- In those instances, CCO will notify you and make every effort to resolve your protest before the award.

The protest or notice of intent and the protest shall be submitted in writing to the following address:

City of Austin
Capital Contracting Office
ATTN: CCO Officer
One Texas Center
505 Barton Springs Rd.
Suite 1045-A
Austin, Texas 78704
PHONE: 512/974-7141

14. SIGNATURE REQUIREMENTS

The Proposal, any subsequent supporting documents and Contract must be executed in the Offeror's full name and legal entity status by an authorized representative of the Offeror and accompanied by sufficient documentation, which clearly indicates not only the legal name and entity status, but also the capacity and authority of the person signing on behalf of Offeror. Accordingly, a partnership/joint venture must file its partnership/joint venture agreement, a corporation must file its articles and bylaws, a limited liability company must file its certificate of organization and article of organization and regulations, and a limited partnership must file not only limited partnership agreement and the certificate of limited partnership, but also the documentation for its general partner, and any Offeror must file a copy of any assumed name certificate, or such limited portion of such documents reasonably establishing signature authority.

15. TEXAS ETHICS COMMISSION INTERESTED PARTIES DISCLOSURE FORM

15.1 Definitions:

"Interested Party" – means a person who has a controlling interest in a Business Entity with whom the Owner contacts or who actively participates in facilitating the Contract or negotiating the terms of the Contract, including a broker, intermediary, adviser, or attorney for the Business Entity.

"Business Entity" – means any entity recognized by law through which business is conducted, including a sole proprietorship, partnership, or corporation.

15.2 As a condition to entering the Contract, the Business Entity constituting the successful Bidder must provide a Texas Ethics Commission Certificate of Interested Parties Form to the Owner at the time the Business Entity/Bidder submits the signed Contract to the Owner in full compliance with the following requirements under which the successful Bidder shall:

(i) go to the Ethics Commission's website (www.ethics.state.tx.us) and

(ii) complete the "Interested Parties" information, in accordance with the requirements of the Texas Ethics Commission Rules published at Title 1, Part 2, Chapter 46, of the Texas Administrative Code and available on the referenced website;

(iii) include the City's contract identification number;

(iv) include a short description of the goods or services to be used by the City; and

(v) indicate whether each interested party has a controlling interest in the business entity, is an intermediary in the contract for which the disclosure is being filed, or both.

15.3 In accordance with the Commission Rules, the Certificate of Filing and completed Certificate of Interested Parties must be: 1) printed, 2) signed by an authorized agent of the business entity, and 3) submitted to the City at the time of the submission of the signed contract to the City. The City then must notify the Ethics Commission in electronic format of receipt of the document within 30 days of contracting and the Commission will make the disclosure of interested parties available to the public on its website.

16. ROCIP REQUIREMENTS

If the insurance on this Project will be under the Rolling Owner Controlled Insurance Program (ROCIP), the Offeror is directed to Section 00810, Supplemental General Conditions and Contract Forms, and the Project Safety Manual included with these contract documents for information and bidding requirements. The Insurance Cost Form, Section 00425A, must be accurately completed and submitted with the Proposal to indicate insurance removed from Base Proposal and Alternates. Contractor shall remove from the Proposal the cost of insurance for the Contractor and Subcontractors of all tiers working on site.

With Proposal: The **Offeror/Contractor** must accurately complete and submit with the Proposal the Contractor Affidavit of Receipt and Provision of ROCIP Information form, Section 00425B.

Prior to Contract Execution: Additionally, Section 00425B, **Subcontractor** Affidavit of Receipt and Provision of ROCIP Information form for subcontractor(s) of all tiers identified in the MBE/WBE Compliance Plan must be accurately completed and submitted as **a post bid submittal** and further Subcontractor Affidavits must be submitted throughout the duration of the Contract as Subcontractor(s) are added.

17. PARTNERING

In order to complete the Work in a manner that is most beneficial to the Owner and Contractor, Owner and Contractor may form a "Partnering Team", which will include the E/A, and any major Subcontractors. This partnering relationship will draw on the strength of all parties to identify and achieve mutual goals. The objectives of this partnering relationship are effective and efficient communication and Contract performance, which is intended to ensure that the Project is completed within budget, on schedule, and in accordance with the Drawings and Specifications and other Contract requirements. While the partnering relationship will be multilateral in makeup and participation will be totally voluntary, the Owner and Contractor agree to cooperate and use reasonable good faith efforts to discuss and resolve any and all Project issues and disputes. Section 01100, Special Project Procedures and/or Section 01200, Project Meetings contain additional information regarding the intent of the partnering relationship and responsibilities of the entities entering into the partnering charter.

END

EVALUATION CRITERIA
Section 00101CSP

Overview: This procurement is being issued in compliance with applicable City of Austin Policy for selecting and awarding facility (building) projects by a Request for Competitive Sealed Proposal method set forth in Texas Government Code 2269. The City will select the Offeror that offers the "best value" to the City based on the following evaluation criteria. **Total possible points are 100, including optional interviews**.

Item 1: **MBE/WBE Goals Procurement Program** **Yes**

Submit one (1) original, stamped "ORIGINAL" and one (1) copy, stamped "COPY" in a separately sealed envelope labeled "Compliance Plan and/or GFE Documentation", and one (1) digital/electronic version on CD or Flash Drive in a sealed container.

Offeror must comply with City's MBE/WBE participation requirements. If the Offeror has neither met the goals nor made GFE to meet the goals, it will be found to be nonresponsive and will not be considered for award of the contract.

For complete program guidelines, refer to the MBE/WBE Procurement Program manual included with this Solicitation.

Offeror must submit:

☐ MBE/WBE Compliance Plan
☐ GFE Documentation (if goals are not achieved)

Item 2: **Safety Record** **Yes**

Submit one (1) original, stamped "ORIGINAL" and one (1) copy, stamped "COPY" in a separately sealed envelope labeled "Safety Documentation", and one (1) digital/electronic version on CD or Flash Drive in a sealed container.

The following factors may be considered, but are not limited to: Experience Modifier Rate, Lost Time Incident Rate, Total Recordable Case Rate, and OSHA Citations.

If, based on the entirety of the Offeror and/or Major Subcontractor's safety record, industry standards, and the risks associated with the current Project, the Offeror is found to have an unacceptable safety record and/or safety program the Offeror's response may be considered non-responsive and may not be considered for award.

Offeror must submit:

☐ Section 00410 – Statement of Offeror's Safety Experience
☐ Section 00415CSP – Safety Information Form
☐ Written Safety Program

Item 3: **Offeror's Financial Capability** **Yes or No**

Submit one (1) original, stamped "ORIGINAL" and one (1) copy, stamped "COPY" in a separately sealed envelope labeled "Financial Capability Documentation", and one (1) digital/electronic version on CD or Flash Drive in a sealed container.

Provide evidence of financial capability and stability which must be appropriate to the size and scope of this Project.

Offeror must submit:

- ☐ Letter from Offeror's Surety stating Offeror's ability to acquire bonding in the full amount of the contract, and
- ☐ Audited financial statements for the most recent three (3) years. Audited financial statements must include complete audited reports with balance sheets, income statements, cash flow, notes to the financial statements, and all other reports associated with the auditor's report;
  OR
- ☐ Business entity federal tax filings for the most recent three (3) years, if audited financial statements are unavailable.

Responses to Items 4 through 9 must be submitted in a binder and divided by tabs for ease of reference. The Offeror must submit one (1) original signature copy of response, stamped "ORIGINAL", one (1) duplicate copy, stamped "COPY", and one (1) digital/electronic version on CD or Flash Drive in a sealed container. The Offeror is cautioned to refer to all other sections of the Solicitation Documents, Clarifications and/or Addenda for further details.

Item 4: **Acceptable Documentation** **Yes or No**

Submit the following documents, which are in addition to documents required in the other Evaluation Items. Failure to submit all required documents may cause Offeror to be deemed "non-responsive" and disqualified.

- ☐ Bid Bond in an amount no less than five percent (5%) of price proposal
- ☐ Section 00400CSP, Attachment A, Offeror's Information
- ☐ Section 00400CSP, Attachment B, Authentication of Submittal
- ☐ Section 00405, Certificate of Non-Suspension or Debarment
- ☐ Section 00425A, Insurance Cost Form (ROCIP Only)
- ☐ Section 00425B, VI, **Offeror/Contractor** Affidavit of Receipt and Provision of ROCIP Information (ROCIP Only)
- ☐ Section 00440, Affidavit - Prohibited Activities
- ☐ Section 00475, Nonresident Bidder Provisions
- ☐ Section 00630, Nondiscrimination Certificate
- ☐ Section 00631, Title VI Assurances Appendix A
- ☐ Sufficient documentation of Offeror's legal name and entity status signed by an authorized representative of the Offeror which clearly indicates not only the legal name and entity status, but also the capacity and authority of the person signing on behalf of Offeror. Accordingly, a partnership/joint venture must file its partnership/joint venture agreement, a corporation must file its articles and bylaws, a limited liability company must file its certificate of organization and

article of organization and regulations, and a limited partnership must file not only limited partnership agreement and the certificate of limited partnership, but also the documentation for its general partner, and, as applicable, any Offeror must file a copy of any assumed name certificate, or such limited portion of such documents reasonably establishing signature authority.

Item 5: **Price** **30 points max**

Offeror must submit:

☐ Section 00300L CSP, Proposal form

The lowest price receives thirty (30) points, with others receiving a percentage of points based on a percentage comparison with the lowest Base Proposal Price.

For illustrative purposes, if the lowest price is $200,000, that price is weighted "1" ($200,000/$200,000 = 1) and receives 30 points (1 X 30 = 30).

A price of $300,000 for the same proposal would be weighted ".67" ($200,000/$300,000 = 0.67) and receive 20.10 points (0.67 X 30 = 20.10).

Likewise, a price of $400,000 would be weighted at ".50" ($200,000/$400,000 = 0.50) and receive 15.0 points (0.50 X 30 = 15.0).

Item 6: **General Contractor Comparable Experience** **35 points max**

List and describe Offeror's (not proposed subcontractors') construction experience as a general contractor for three (3) successfully completed projects within the past seven (7) years of comparable size, scope and complexity to the Work described in the Contract Documents.

The Offeror's reputation and performance on the projects identified will also be evaluated and **reference checks** will be conducted with regard to timely completion of projects, working relationship with the entity, prompt payment of subcontractors and suppliers at all levels, compliance with prevailing wage provisions and history of violations, and compliance with other contract terms. (7 points maximum)

Offeror must submit:

☐ Section 00400CSP, Attachment C - One (1) page per project

Item 7: **Key Personnel Comparable Experience** **15 points max**

Project Manager, Project Superintendent, Safety Manager

List and describe a minimum of three (3) successfully completed projects within the past seven (7) years of comparable size, scope and complexity to the Work described for this project for each of the Key

Personnel (Project Manager, Project Superintendent, and Safety Manager).

Projects on which the proposed team or key personnel actively participated are preferred.

Offeror must submit:

☐ Section 00400CSP, Attachment D – One (1) page per project

Item 8: **Organizational Structure and Business Practices** **10 points max**

Offeror must submit:

☐ Section 00400CSP, Attachment E, Available Workforce
☐ **Organizational Chart** - Provide a detailed explanation and organizational chart which specifies project leadership and reporting responsibilities. (Organizational Chart may be provided on legal or ledger-size paper.) One (1) page limit.
☐ **Communications** - Describe interface with Consultant and Owner's personnel. One (1) page limit.
☐ **Baseline Schedule** - Provide a proposed baseline schedule in Microsoft Projects for this Work defining critical path. Two (2) page limit.
☐ **Schedule Strategies** - Provide strategies which are included in the proposal to minimize delays and areas for possible time savings. One (1) page limit.
☐ **Work Experience with Austin-Area Issues -** Describe your team's experience with requirements of the City of Austin site development, LEED initiatives, building permit process, public awareness, and community involvement. One (1) page limit.
☐ **Outreach Practices** – Describe your business practices to provide hiring opportunities for MBE/WBEs, DBEs, HUBs, and other historically underutilized business on a race and gender neutral basis. One (1) page limit.

Item 9: **Quality of Goods and Services by Sustainability** **10 points max**

☐ **Sustainable Practices** – Describe your business practices and internal policies on use of recycled, reclaimed, or refurbished construction materials, and for water and energy conservation, reducing greenhouse gas emissions, and purchasing environmentally preferable products. Two (2) page limit. (5 points maximum)

☐ **Local Business Presence -** The City seeks opportunities for businesses with a Local Business Presence in the Austin Corporate City Limits to participate on City contracts thereby providing a minimal environmental footprint through reduced transportation time and costs associated with Project delivery. A firm (Offeror or Subcontractor) is considered to have a Local Business Presence if the firm is headquartered in the Austin Corporate City Limits, or has a branch office located in the Austin Corporate City Limits in operation for the last five (5) years. The City defines headquarters as the administrative center where most of the important functions and full

responsibility for managing and coordinating the business activities of the firm are located. The City defines branch office as a smaller, remotely located office that is separate from a firm's headquarters that offers the services requested and required under this solicitation. Points will be awarded through a combination of the Offeror's Local Business Presence and/or the Local Business Presence of their subcontractors. **Evaluation of the Team's Percentage of Local Business Presence will be based on the allocation of work as reflected in the Offeror's MBE/WBE Compliance Plan.** (5 points maximum)

Team's Local Business Presence	Points Awarded
Local business presence of 90% to 100%	5
Local business presence of 75% to 89%	4
Local business presence of 50% to 74%	3
Local business presence of 25% to 49%	2
Local presence of between 1 and 24%	1
No local presence	0

Offeror must submit:

☐ Section 00461CCO, Local Business Presence ID Form

END

Geotechnical Data

Section 00220

Depending on Project requirements, OWNER may have obtained geotechnical information, which may include laboratory test results and logs of borings from geotechnical consultants. That information will be included in this section and/or on the Drawings. The CONTRACTOR shall be familiar with the subsurface materials and conditions on the Project and shall be knowledgeable of how they will affect the Work. The following is a partial listing of sources of information available to the CONTRACTOR about subsurface materials and conditions: the geotechnical information provided by the OWNER; geologic maps, publications and reports available from the University of Texas Bureau of Economic Geology at the J.J. Pickle Research Center in Austin, Texas; subcontractors familiar with local ground conditions; and, local consulting geologists and geotechnical engineers. The CONTRACTOR may make their own subsurface investigations.

Geotechnical Investigation Report Onion Creek Fire and EMS Station Austin Texas, dated March 15, 2016, prepared by HVJ Associates, Inc. is attached. The requirements in the Drawings and Specifications shall be used in the event of a conflict between this report and the Drawings and Specifications.

End

GEOTECHNICAL INVESTIGATION REPORT
ONION CREEK FIRE AND EMS STATION
AUSTIN, TEXAS

SUBMITTED TO:
BROWN REYNOLDS WATFORD ARCHITECTS, INC.
2700 EARL RUDDER FREEWAY SOUTH, SUITE 4000
COLLEGE STATION, TEXAS 77845

BY
HVJ ASSOCIATES, INC.
MARCH 15, 2016

REPORT NO. AG 14 12680

HVJ ASSOCIATES

Houston
Austin
Dallas
San Antonio

4201 Freidrich Lane, Ste. 110
Austin, TX 78744-1045
512.447.9081 Ph
512.443.3442 Fax
www.hvj.com

March 15, 2016

Ms. Rechelle Parker
Brown Reynolds Watford Architects, Inc.
2700 Earl Rudder Freeway South, Suite 4000
College Station, Texas 77845

Re: Geotechnical Investigation
Onion Creek Fire and EMS Station
Austin, Texas
Owner: City of Austin
HVJ Report No. AG 14 12680

Dear Ms. Parker:

Submitted herein is the draft report of our geotechnical investigation for the above referenced project. This study was performed in accordance with our proposal number AG14 12680 dated September 13, 2010.

It has been a pleasure to work for you on this project and we appreciate the opportunity to be of service. Please notify us if there are questions or if we may be of further assistance.

Sincerely,

HVJ ASSOCIATES, INC.
Texas Firm Registration No

STATE OF TEXAS
LEONEL RUIZ
97291
LICENSED
PROFESSIONAL ENGINEER

STATE OF TEXAS
GINA M. ELLISON
109846
LICENSED
PROFESSIONAL ENGINEER

Leo Ruiz, PE
Project Engineer - Geotechnical 03/15/2016

Gina Ellison, PE
Project Manager – Pavement 03/15/2016

Copies submitted: (1) electronic

The seals appearing on this document were authorized by Leo Ruiz, PE 97291 and Gina M. Ellison, PE 109846 on March 15, 2016. The geotechnical investigations presented in Sections 2 thru 8 were complete under the direction of Mr. Ruiz; the pavement recommendations presented in Section 9 were developed by Ms. Ellison. Alteration of a sealed document without proper notification to the responsible engineer is an offense under the Texas Engineering Practice Act.

TABLE OF CONTENTS

Page

1. EXECUTIVE SUMMARY 1

2. INTRODUCTION 2
   2.1 General 2
   2.2 Scope of Work 2

3. SUBSURFACE EXPLORATION 2
   3.1 General 2
   3.2 Sampling Methods 3
   3.3 Groundwater Measurements 3
   3.4 Borehole Completion 3

4. LABORATORY EXAMINATION AND TESTING 4
   4.1 General 4
   4.2 Moisture Content 4
   4.3 Atterberg Limits 4
   4.4 Percent Passing the No. 200 Sieve 4
   4.5 Sieve Analysis 5
   4.6 Pocket Penetrometer Testing 5

5. SITE CHARACTERIZATION 5
   5.1 General Geology 5
   5.2 Soil Stratigraphy 6
   5.3 Groundwater Observation 6

6. FOUNDATION RECOMMENDATIONS 6
   6.1 General 6
   6.2 Potential Vertical Rise (PVR) 6
   6.3 Foundation Selection 7
   6.4 Shallow Foundation Recommendations 7
   6.4.1 Allowable Bearing Capacity 7
   6.4.2 Modulus of Subgrade Reaction 7
   6.4.3 Seismic Site Class 8
   6.4.4 Building Pad and Subgrade Preparation 8
   6.4.5 Foundation Movement 8
   6.4.6 Vapor Retarder 9
   6.4.7 Select Fill 9
   6.5 Drilled Shaft Foundation Recommendations 9
   6.5.1 General 9

7. FOUNDATION CONSTRUCTION CONSIDERATIONS 9
   7.1 Base Slabs 9
   7.2 Earthwork 9
   7.3 Groundwater and Runoff Control 10

8. FIELD OBSERVATION AND TESTING 10
   8.1 General 10
   8.2 Earthwork 10

8.3 Foundation Installation 11

9. FIRE STATION PARKING/DRIVEWAY RIGID PAVEMENT DESIGN 11

10. DESIGN REVIEW AND LIMITATIONS 13

ILLUSTRATIONS

PLATE

VICINITY MAP 1
GEOLOGY MAP 2
PLAN OF BORINGS 3
BORING LOGS 4-7
KEY TO SYMBOLS 8

APPENDICES

LABORATORY TESTING RESULTS SUMMARY ..... A
SIEVE ANALYSIS TEST RESULTS ..... B

1. EXECUTIVE SUMMARY

The project involves recommendations for the proposed Fire and EMS station building and parking and driveway pavement located at 11112 Old San Antonio Road in Austin, TX. A brief summary of the investigational findings and pertinent recommendations are as follows:

1. Four borings were drilled at this site to a termination depth of 20 feet below existing grade to characterize the subsurface conditions and to estimate engineering properties of the soils to aid in the foundation and pavement recommendations.

2. High plasticity cohesive soils were encountered at the surface to a depth of 4 feet underlain by sandy soils with varying amounts of clay and gravel to the termination depth of borings.

3. Groundwater was not encountered in any of the borings during drilling activities. It should be noted that groundwater levels may fluctuate seasonally in response to rainfall and climatic conditions.

4. The project site demonstrates a PVR of less than 1" with the removal and replacement of upper 3 feet of the highly expansive soils encountered at this site. Hence, soil conditions would permit the construction of structure founded on shallow foundations with 3 feet of soil replacement. We recommend an allowable bearing capacity of 3,000 psf for the shallow foundation system.

5. HVJ recommends 10" of concrete pavement over 6" of flexible crushed stone base over 8" of lime stabilized subgrade for areas anticipated to receive fire trucks. Passenger vehicle parking areas are recommended to be constructed of 6" concrete pavement over 8" lime stabilized subgrade, and driveways per COA Standard Detail 433S-2. If lime stabilization is not desired, the swelling soils may be blended with lower PI soil to achieve a PI less than 25.

Please note that this executive summary does not fully relate our findings and opinions. Those findings and opinions are only presented though our full report.

2. INTRODUCTION

2.1 General

HVJ Associates, Inc. was retained by Brown Reynolds Watford Architects, Inc. (BRW) to perform a geotechnical investigation for the design and construction of a proposed Fire and EMS station located at 11112 Old San Antonio Road in Austin, TX, as shown on the Plate 1 – *Site Vicinity Map* .

The purpose of this investigation is to provide foundation recommendations for the proposed Fire and EMS station building. In addition, driveway and parking pavement recommendations are also provided. We understand that the proposed building will be a one-story structure that will house four vehicle bays and will have an approximate footprint of 9,125 square feet.

2.2 Scope of Work

The primary objectives of this study were to gather information about subsurface conditions, as well as to develop design recommendations for the proposed building and pavement. The objectives were accomplished by:

1. Drilling and sampling 4 borings to a depth of 20 feet to determine the subsurface stratigraphy and to obtain samples for laboratory testing.

2. Performing laboratory tests to determine physical and engineering characteristics of the soils.

3. Performing engineering analyses to develop recommendations for the proposed Fire and EMS station building and driveway and parking pavement.

Subsequent sections of this report contain descriptions of the subsurface exploration, laboratory-testing program, general site and subsurface conditions, recommendations for the proposed building and pavement, and limitations.

3. SUBSURFACE EXPLORATION

3.1 General

The field exploration program undertaken for the project was conducted on October 20, 2015. A total of 4 soil borings were drilled to a depth of 20 feet below the existing grade. The borings were performed with truck-mounted equipment using dry auger techniques. The approximate boring locations are provided in the Plan of Borings, Plate 3.

Table 3-1 below depicts the northing, easting, elevation and depth the borings. The boring logs are presented in Plates 4-7, along with keys to terms and symbols used provided on Plate 8.

Table 3-1 – Boring Details

Boring No.	Northing (feet)	Easting (feet)	Elevation (feet)	Depth (feet)
B-1	10,025,109.9	3,096,735.0	640	20
B-2	10,025,091.9	3,096,793.3	640	20
B-3	10,025,006.3	3,096,679.9	639	20
B-4	10,024,988.9	3,096,735.7	640	20

Note: Borings were not professionally surveyed and were taken from handheld GPS device. Coordinates shown in Table 3-1 are based on the Texas State Plane Coordinate System, South Central Zone, NAD 83(93). Elevations were estimated from the Google Earth. Elevations are referenced to the World Geodetic System (WGS) 1984 Datum.

3.2 Sampling Methods

Standard Penetration Tests (SPTs) were conducted within the soil strata. The SPTs were performed in accordance with ASTM D 1586 – *Penetration Test and Split-Barrel Sampling of Soils*. This test consisted of driving a standardized 1-5/8 inch diameter split-spoon sampler into undisturbed soil with a 140-pound auto-hammer falling 30 inches. The split-spoon sampler was first seated 6 inches to penetrate any loose cuttings, and then driven an additional 12 inches with blows from the hammer. The number of hammer blows required to drive the sampler each 6-inch increment was recorded. The penetration resistance "N-value" is defined as the number of hammer blows required to drive the sampler the final 12 inches and was used in the field to estimate the density of granular soils or consistency of cohesive soils. In very dense or very hard material the SPT test was typically stopped after 50 blows from the hammer and the measurement was recorded as 50 blows per distance penetrated (e.g. 50 over 3 inches).

In addition to the SPT's, thin-walled tube samples were generally collected within cohesive soils. The 3-inch diameter tubes were pushed into the soil in general accordance with ASTM standard D 1587- *Thin Walled Tube Sampling of Soils*. The samples were extruded in the field and a calibrated pocket penetrometer was used to obtain an estimate of the unconfined compressive strength of the samples.

After extrusion, both the split-spoon and tube samples were visually described and documented on field boring logs, including the SPT and pocket penetrometer test values. The samples were then wrapped in plastic or sealed in containers for transport to our laboratory for further examination and possible laboratory testing.

3.3 Groundwater Measurements

Groundwater was measured at all boring locations during drilling operations. Groundwater readings are presented in Section 5.3.

3.4 Borehole Completion

All project borings were backfilled with soil cuttings and bentonite chips upon completion of drilling to match the existing ground conditions.

4. LABORATORY EXAMINATION AND TESTING

4.1 General

Soil samples transported to our laboratory were further examined and described, and a preliminary soil classification was assigned to each soil sample based on ASTM D 2487 – *Classification of Soil for Engineering Purposes.*

Classification testing was subsequently conducted on select samples, which included moisture contents, Atterberg limits, sieve analysis and percent passing the No. 200 sieve. All testing was performed in accordance with the relevant ASTM Standard.

The results of these tests were used to confirm and/or modify the preliminary soil classification. The sampling information obtained in the field was used in conjunction with the laboratory examination and testing to generate boring logs, provided in Plates 4-7. A Key of Terms and Symbols for the boring logs is provided on Plate 8. The laboratory test results are provided on the borings logs, as well as tabulated in Appendix A. The sieve analysis test results are presented in Appendix B.

4.2 Moisture Content

Moisture content testing was performed on select soil samples to determine the in situ state of moisture of the soil. A fresh sample was weighed before being placed in an oven with a controlled temperature of 230°F and dried back to a constant mass. Upon the drying and reweighing of the sample, the total mass of water lost was recorded. The ratio of the water loss to the dried mass is recorded as the moisture content. This test was performed in accordance with ASTM D2216-10 (Tex 103E).

4.3 Atterberg Limits

Select samples were tested to determine the Atterberg Limits in accordance with ASTM D4318-10. The Atterberg Limit test is used to classify the soil using the Unified Soil Classification System (USCS). The Atterberg Limit test consists of two parts: a liquid limit test and a plastic limit test. The liquid limit equipment setup consists of a brass cup partially filled with soil which is grooved with a specialized grooving tool, and then dropped freely from a specified height to the rubber base below at a constant rate of 2 drops per second. The liquid limit test is performed on soil that has been sieved through the No. 40 sieve and brought to a moisture content that would close the ½-inch groove within 20 to 30 blows for two consecutive tests. The moisture content of the soil is then measured and recorded as the liquid limit. The second part of the test consists of a rolling a remolded sample between the tips of the fingers and a glass plate until transverse cracks appear at a rolled diameter of 1/8-inch. The moisture content of the rolled sample is taken and recorded as the plastic limit.

4.4 Percent Passing the No. 200 Sieve

Select soil samples were tested in accordance with ASTM D1140-00 to determine the amount of material finer than the No. 200 sieve for use in classification. An oven dried sample of material is weighed then washed over a 75-µm (No. 200) sieve, allowing clay and other particles to be dispersed and removed from the soil. The retained material is oven dried then reweighed. The loss in mass

resulting from the washing is calculated as mass percent of the original sample and is reported as the percentage of material finer than a No. 200 sieve.

4.5 Sieve Analysis

Sieve analysis tests are generally conducted to determine the coefficient of uniformity (C_u), coefficient of curvature (C_c), percentage of material finer than the No. 200 sieve (-200), percentage of material coarser than the No. 4 sieve (+4), and diameter of 50 percent (D_{50}) passing. These tests were performed in accordance with ASTM D422-07. The C_u, C_c, -200, and +4 values are used to classify soils per USCS. Eight sieve analyses were performed on select soil samples had considerable amount of gravel to primarily determine the +4 value. Soils with the +4 value between 30 and 50 classify as gravelly. The test results showed that the soils at the site are not gravelly. The C_u, C_c, and D_{50} values were not able to be obtained from these test results due to the high fine grain fraction of the soil. The sieve analysis test results are presented in Appendix B.

4.6 Pocket Penetrometer Testing

A calibrated spring-loaded rod (1/4-inch diameter) is pushed into soil to a penetration of 6 mm and the gauge read for unconfined compressive strength (= twice the undrained shear strength) in tons per square foot (tsf). Penetration is limited to soils with unconfined compressive strength less than and equal to 4.5 tsf. Data are representative for soils with Plasticity Index (PI) greater than 12. Below this value, the angle of internal friction of granular particles increases strength to more than the measured value of the undrained shear strength.

5. SITE CHARACTERIZATION

5.1 General Geology

Austin, Texas is bounded by the Edwards Plateau to the west and the Gulf Coastal Plains to the east and southeast. These physiographic provinces are separated by the Balcones Fault Zone (BFZ), a belt of inactive faults, which trends generally southwest to northeast through central Austin. The project site is located about 1.6 miles south east of the BFZ. Based on review of available geological information[1] and the field exploration program, the project site is located in an area where Tributary Terrace Deposits (Q_{tt}) formations are typically encountered as shown on the Geology Map, Plate 2.

The Tributary terrace deposits (Qtt) have an average thickness of 20 feet, and generally consist of unconsolidated limestone gravel, sand, and mud. The Tributary terrace deposits are derived from Cretaceous deposits in their drainage area, which for this project is the Onion Creek drainage area.

According to available geologic data and as previously mentioned above, the project site is located about 1.6 miles south east of the BFZ and about 1-2 miles north west of a couple of unnamed faults. Faulting was not encountered within the construction limits of this site. A detailed fault study is beyond the scope of this study.

[1] Geologic Atlas of Texas, Austin Sheet (University of Texas Bureau of Economic Geology, 1974).

5.2 Soil Stratigraphy

High plasticity cohesive soils were encountered at the surface to a depth of 4 feet underlain by sandy soils with varying amounts of clay and gravel to the termination depth of borings. The generalized profile of the subsurface conditions encountered in our borings is shown below in Table 5-2. Details of the subsurface stratigraphy encountered in the borings are shown on the boring logs presented in Plates 4-7.

Table 5-1: Generalized Soil Profile (Borings: B-1 to B-4)

Stratum	Depth (below grade), Feet		Material
	From	To	
I	Surface	4	Fat Clay (CH)
II	4	20	Clayey Sand (SC)/ Sandy Lean Clay (CL)

By the USCS soils with percent passing the No. 200 sieve (-200) less than 50% classify as cohesionless while these values above 50% classify as cohesive. At this site, the -200 values range from 22% to 66% below 4 feet. Even though the USCS classifications vary from boring to boring, we believe the soils encountered below 4 feet will behave generally as a clayey sand.

5.3 Groundwater Observation

Groundwater was not encountered in any of the borings. It should be noted that groundwater levels may fluctuate seasonally in response to rainfall and climatic conditions.

6. FOUNDATION RECOMMENDATIONS

6.1 General

We understand that the proposed Fire and EMS station building will be one-story structure with four bays and have an approximate footprint of 9,125 square feet.

At this time no information has been provide to HVJ regarding planned finished floor elevation. However based on site grades (i.e. relatively flat) it is anticipated that the finished floor elevation for the proposed building will be within 2 feet of existing grade. If significant cuts and/or fills are planned, HVJ should be notified to adjust our recommendations.

At the time of our field activities, remnants of a small rectangular concrete slab was observed within the proposed building limits. Other concrete slabs of various sizes that appeared to be scattered throughout the vicinity of this open block were also observed. These slabs could be the remains of previous structures that were present in this area in the past. It is recommended to remove all debris and remnants of any previous foundations within the construction limits of this project.

6.2 Potential Vertical Rise (PVR)

Locally, Fat Clay (CH) is considered to have a moderate to high tendency to swell or expand when the moisture content increases. Similarly, when the moisture content decreases, there is an overall shrinkage of the soil mass. The shrink-swell movement may be assessed by estimating Potential Vertical Rise (PVR). The PVR represents the potential ability of a soil material at a specific density,

moisture and loading condition to swell. PVR values were calculated by the TEX 124-E method for the upper 15 feet of soils at the site. The PVR value is provided to demonstrate the relative severity of the swell potential of the clays at the sites. Typically, economical slab on grade foundations are appropriate when PVR is less than 1". A PVR greater than 1" can lead to movements that are typically unacceptable, and in this case would likely cause cracks in the floor or uneven floor areas, distortion of windows and door frames, or shearing of rigidly attached utilities. Therefore the foundation type and associated earthwork for the building must properly address this potential, such that movement of load supporting elements and general slab areas are reduced to tolerable levels. It should be noted fat clay was encountered in borings from the surface to a depth of 4 feet below the existing grade.

The estimated PVR values of the site are provided below in Table 6.1, along with the amount of soil that would need to be removed and replaced with non-swelling material to achieve a PVR of ~1".

Table 6-1: PVR at Site Location

Structure	Remove and Replace for PVR<1"	PVR (in.)
Fire and EMS Station	NA	1.39
Fire and EMS Station	3'	0.97

6.3 Foundation Selection

The project site demonstrates a PVR of less than 1" with the removal and replacement of upper 3 feet of soils. Hence, soil conditions would permit the construction of structure founded on shallow foundations with 3 feet of soil replacement.

6.4 Shallow Foundation Recommendations

HVJ recommends that either a conventionally reinforced slab on grade, spread footings, or a combination of the two can be used as the foundation system for the proposed building. Spread footings should be founded at a depth of 2 feet below the proposed grade. The upper 3 feet of soils at the project site should be removed and replaced with select fill. Select fill criteria are presented in Section 6.4.7.

6.4.1 Allowable Bearing Capacity

We recommend an allowable bearing capacity of 3,000 psf for the shallow foundation systems. This includes a factor of safety of three.

6.4.2 Modulus of Subgrade Reaction

Often a modulus of subgrade reaction (k) value is needed during design of slab on grade. If required, we recommend using a modulus of subgrade reaction (k) value of 100 pounds per cubic inch.

6.4.3 Seismic Site Class

The greater Austin area is generally considered to be an inactive seismic zone. Based on the review of soil properties and 2015 International Building Code, this project site can be classified as located in Site Class D.

6.4.4 Building Pad and Subgrade Preparation

- As previously mentioned, all of the existing concrete slabs that are present within the limits of this project site should be removed.
- High plasticity clays were encountered in the project area to a depth of 4 feet. We recommend that at least 3 feet of the high plasticity clay layer should be removed and be replaced with non-expansive select fill. The existing material should be stripped and removed from the building area, including at least 5 feet beyond the building perimeter. This is a minimum recommendation and independent of finished floor elevations. However, in all cases, at least 12 inches of well compacted non-expansive select fill should be maintained below the new floor slab.
- After stripping and removal have been completed, the exposed subgrade soils in the building areas should be carefully evaluated. Proof-rolling should be performed where possible with a heavy (minimum 20 ton) rubber-tired vehicle such as a loaded dump truck. Soils that are observed to rut or deflect excessively under the moving load should be under-cut and replaced with compacted select fill that meets the requirements indicated below. All proof-rolling and under-cutting activities should be performed during a period of dry weather.
- Just prior to placement of select fill, the proof-rolled subgrade should be scarified to a depth of six inches. The moisture should be adjusted to above the optimum moisture content before it is re-compacted to at least 95 percent of the Tex-114-E maximum dry density. The soil subgrade should not be allowed to dry out or become saturated prior to placement of select fill.
- For any flatwork outside the structure which will be sensitive to movement, subgrade preparation as discussed previously should be considered. This consideration will be particularly important on surrounding sidewalk and paving immediately adjacent to the structure. If these adjacent flatwork areas are not prepared as stated above for the building areas, the estimated PVR for these areas could approach those indicated previously for in-situ conditions. If the soils swell in these areas, this could result in significant distress to the adjacent sidewalks and paving and possibly result in reversed drainage (flow toward the building) around the perimeter of the building.
- Post construction settlement for the shallow foundations described in this subsection should be approximately 1 inch or less, provided the site is prepared in accordance with the recommendations contained in this report. Settlement response of the foundation system will be influenced more by the quality of construction and fill placement than soil-structure interaction.

6.4.5 Foundation Movement

We highly recommend that measures be taken whenever practical to increase the tolerance of the building to post-construction foundation movement. An example of such measures would be to

provide frequent control joints for rock/masonry/brick veneer exteriors to control cracking across such walls and concentrate movement along the joints.

6.4.6 Vapor Retarder

The use of a vapor retarder should be considered beneath the concrete slab-on-grade foundation in floor areas that will be covered with wood, tile, or other moisture sensitive or impervious coverings, or when the slab will support equipment sensitive to moisture. When conditions warrant the use of a vapor retarder, the designer and contractor should refer to ACI 302 for procedures and cautions regarding the use and placement of a vapor retarder.

6.4.7 Select Fill

Non-expansive select fill should be utilized for all fill applications within the building limits. The select fill should consist of crushed limestone base material meeting the requirements of the Texas Department of Transportation (TxDOT) 2014 Standard Specification Item 247, Type A, Grade 3 or 'Flex Base' as specified in City of Austin Standard Specification Item 210s.

The select fill should be placed in horizontal loose lifts of not more than 8 inches in thickness. Each lift should be compacted to a minimum of 95 percent of the maximum dry density as determined by TxDOT Method Tex-113-E for coarse-grained soils or TxDOT Method Tex-114-E for fine grained soils. The moisture content of the select fill should be above the optimum moisture content at the time of compaction.

6.5 Drilled Shaft Foundation Recommendations

6.5.1 General

As an alternate to a shallow foundation system, drilled shaft foundations may be an option at this site. However, the construction costs associated with drilled deep foundation system at this site would not be economical as compared to the shallow foundations systems as recommended in this report. If a deep foundation system is desired, HVJ can be contacted and we can provide such recommendations.

7. FOUNDATION CONSTRUCTION CONSIDERATIONS

7.1 Base Slabs

Exposure to the environment may weaken the soils at the footing or slab level if the foundation excavations remain open for too long a time. Foundation concrete should be placed on the same day that excavations are completed. If the bearing soils are softened by surface water intrusion or exposure, the softened soils must be removed from the foundation excavation bottom prior to concrete placement.

7.2 Earthwork

Clay soil is very sensitive to changes in moisture content and thus the subgrade support capacity will reduce when the moisture content increases. Effort should be made to keep foundation subgrade areas properly drained and free of ponding water.

Fill materials should not be placed upon soils that have been recently subjected to precipitation or saturation. All wet soils should be removed or allowed to dry prior to continuation of fill placement operations.

If construction is performed during seasons that experience frequent rainfall, the building pad area can be initially graded high or "crowned" to protect the subgrade from the excess rainfall. The additional fill can be removed when slab construction can begin.

Certain construction practices can reduce the magnitude of problems associated with moisture content increases in subgrade soils. For instance, the contractor can seal exposed subgrade areas at the end of the work day with a smooth drum roller to reduce the potential for infiltration of water into the subgrade.

7.3 Groundwater and Runoff Control

The surface of the site should be kept properly graded to enhance drainage of precipitation away from the excavation(s). HVJ recommends that an attempt be made to enhance the natural drainage without interrupting its pattern. Site grades should be continuously evaluated to assure that surface runoff will drain away from the foundation/slab construction area. Surface water/precipitation that enters and ponds in the excavation(s) will need to be removed using a pump and sump method or equivalent.

Control of surface water or groundwater should be accomplished in a manner that will preserve the strength of the foundation soils, will not cause instability of the excavation; and will not result in damage to existing structures.

8. FIELD OBSERVATION AND TESTING

8.1 General

The performance of foundations and floor slabs is primarily controlled by the quality of the construction. To prevent misinterpretation of our recommendations, it is recommended that either HVJ or another accredited construction materials testing firm be retained to provide on-site observation and testing. Specific recommendations for field observation and testing are indicated in the following subsections.

8.2 Earthwork

Field observations and testing should be performed during earthwork operations to verify and document proper construction. Stripping should be observed by a Geotechnical Engineer (or qualified Engineering Technician) to help locate unsuitable materials that should be removed prior to placement of fill, footings and slabs. Field observation should include final approval of subgrade prior to placement of compacted select fill, footings, and slabs. Proof-rolling should be performed by a heavy rubber-tired vehicle such as a loaded dump truck within the building area. Appropriate laboratory tests such as Proctor moisture-density tests should be performed on samples of the subgrade and select fill material. Field moisture-density testing should be conducted on the re-compacted subgrade, as well as during placement of the select fill. The frequency of field density testing should be in accordance with local municipal agency guidelines or standard of practice. We

further recommend the lift thicknesses and any variations is material type be observed during placement of the select fill.

8.3 Foundation Installation

Prior to concrete placement, a Geotechnical Engineer (or qualified Engineering Technician) should observe and test the foundation subgrade to determine if the foundations are being placed on suitable material and to determine if all loose or soft material has been removed. In areas where the subgrade is soft or loose, the soil should be removed and foundations lowered to bear on firm natural soils or foundation subgrade elevations can be restored using lean (lightweight) concrete (e.g. 2,000 psi).

If project plans indicate that some footings are designed with one bearing pressure and others are designed with a different bearing pressure, evaluation of the subgrade is extremely important. The General Contractor and the third party testing firm must be diligent in performing this evaluation. However, we recommended same bearing capacity for all the footings.

Footing dimensions and reinforcing steel should also be observed. Concrete material should be sampled and tested for compressive strength, and placement operations should be monitored to record concrete slump, temperature, and age at time of placement. Concrete batch tickets should be provided by the supplier so that water-cement ratios and cement content can be checked and documented.

The construction of slab-on-grade (i.e. concrete floor slabs) should be observed by a Geotechnical Engineer (or qualified Engineering Technician) to document proper construction. Proof-rolling and compaction of the slab subgrade should also be observed. Proper placement of select fill, plastic vapor and moisture barriers, and steel mesh or steel reinforcement should be observed and documented. Concrete should be sampled and tested for compressive strength, and the concrete placement operation should be observed to sample and test concrete for slump, temperature, and batch-to-placement time.

9. FIRE STATION PARKING/DRIVEWAY RIGID PAVEMENT DESIGN

9.1 Passenger Vehicle Parking Area Rigid Pavement Sections

Based on results of the field and laboratory investigation program and ACI 330R-01- Guide for Design and Construction of Concrete Parking Lots, the following rigid pavement section for the anticipated traffic category and average daily truck traffic (ADTT) may be used for this project.

Table 9-1: Rigid Pavement Cross Sections for Parking Area

Types of loads	Location	Rigid Pavement Section on Clay Subgrade (k=50)
Traffic Category B (ADTT = 25)	Parking Lots	6" Reinforced Concrete 8" Lime Stabilized Subgrade *

*If lime stabilization is not desired, the swelling soils may be blended with lower PI soil to achieve a PI less than 25.

Per ACI 330R-08, for Traffic Category 3. Bus, parking areas, city and school buses, the following categories should be used for the respective areas:

Parking area and interior lanes – Category B

Additionally, HVJ recommends using City of Austin Standard Detail 433S-2 of 7" reinforced concrete over 2" sand bedding for construction of the driveways.

It is recommended to include asphalt seal coat on the top of the subgrade or sand bedding to seal the subgrade and reduce the potential for pumping of fines through the concrete joints, initiating loss of support and resulting in cracking in the concrete.

9.2 Fire Lane Rigid Pavement Design

Based on results of the field and laboratory investigation program and FPS21 stress analysis, the following rigid pavement section for the fire lane for the new Fire and EMS station located at 11112 Old San Antonio Road in Austin, TX may be used.

Table 9-2 – Rigid Pavement Cross Sections

Classification	Modulus of Rupture (Flexural Strength)	Rigid Pavement Section on Subgrade (k=229)
Industrial	620 psi	10" Reinforced Concrete 6" Flexible Crushed Stone Base 8" Lime Stabilized Subgrade *

*If lime stabilization is not desired, the swelling soils may be blended with lower PI soil to achieve a PI less than 25.

The above section can carry an estimated 2.1 million ESALs to a terminal serviceability value of 2.5. Based on typical truck factors for a ladder fire truck, this equates to approximately 22 trucks per day over a 20 year design life. Concrete fatigue analysis indicates that this cross section can carry approximately 18 repetition per day of the anticipated fire truck loading.

The design section above should be reviewed if specific traffic loading information is available or if the anticipated number of fire trucks daily is greater than the estimates above. HVJ further recommends that an appropriate drainage system should be provided for new pavement area to drain the surface water as quickly as possible. Providing appropriate drainage system will prevent development of future pavement distress due to softened subgrade.

Concrete Properties. Based on City of Austin Standard Specification Item 360S, a mean value of 4,000 psi for the 7-day compressive strength and 28-day compressive strength of 4,500 psi of concrete is considered appropriate for design.

Reinforcing Steel Requirements. Longitudinal and transverse reinforcement steel is used to resist warping stresses in the rigid pavement section and to hold pavement cracks that develop tightly closed. In addition, dowels are recommended at transverse pavement joints in order to prevent deflections across the joint.

Recommendations for pavement and joint reinforcement are as follows. It is recommended that for the 10" fire lane pavement, number three (#3) rebar spaced at 18" on center both ways. It is recommended that for the 6" vehicular parking pavement, number three (#3) rebar spaced at 36" on center both ways, and for 7" vehicular driveway pavement, per COA 433S-2, number four (#4) rebar spaced at 18" on center both ways is recommended. Joint spacing is recommended to be not more than 25 feet. The amount of longitudinal and transverse reinforcement required depends on the distance between pavement joints. Notify HVJ if any information above is different from the proposed construction. Reinforcing steel is recommended to be in accordance with COA Item No. 406S. Dowels are recommended to be placed at all transverse joints and be 1¼" diameter for the 10" fire lane pavement and ¾" diameter for the 6" vehicular pavement, 18" long, and spaced at 12" CTC.

Joint Seals. Sealing of joints is critical to avoid water entering the joints and into the flexible base or subgrade layer. Joint seals should be maintained, as well, for the best pavement performance.

10. DESIGN REVIEW AND LIMITATIONS

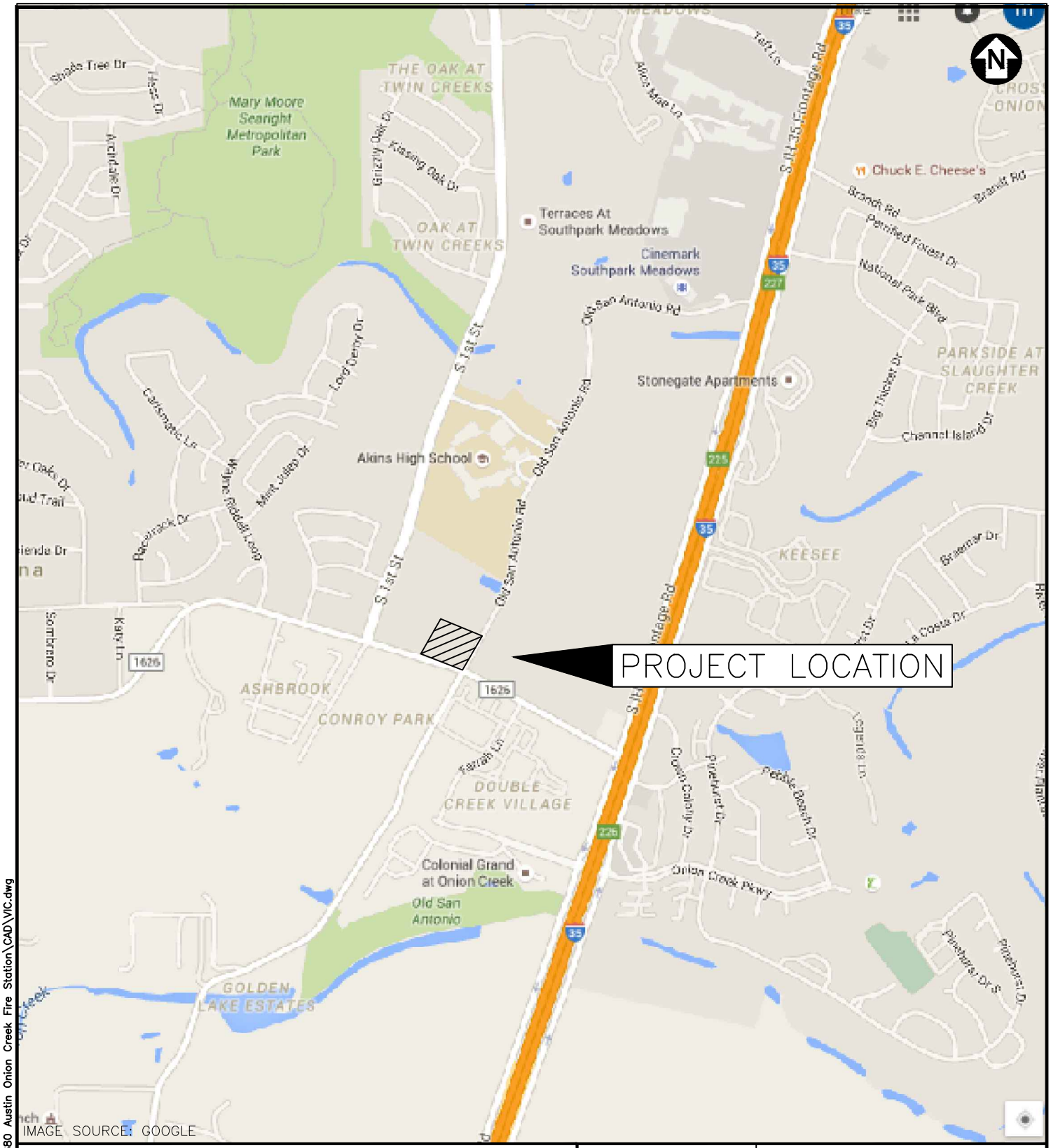
HVJ Associates, Inc. should review the design and construction plans and specifications prior to release to make certain that the design criteria presented herein have been properly interpreted.

This study was performed for the exclusive use of BRW Architects and the City of Austin for specific applications to the proposed Fire and EMS Station building and pavement referenced in this report. HVJ Associates, Inc. has endeavored to comply with generally accepted geotechnical engineering practice common in the local area. HVJ Associates, Inc. makes no warranty, express or implied. The analyses and recommendations contained in this report are based on data obtained from subsurface exploration, laboratory testing, project information provided to us and our experience with similar soils and site conditions.

The methods used indicate subsurface conditions only at the specific locations where samples obtained, only at the time they were obtained, and only to the depth penetrated. The samples cannot be relied on to accurately reflect the strata variations that usually exist between sampling locations. Should any subsurface conditions other than those described in the boring logs be encountered, HVJ Associates, Inc. should be immediately notified so that further investigation and supplemental recommendations can be provided.

Subsurface conditions at the site can differ significantly from those encountered in the borings due to the natural variation of geologic conditions, which may not have been detected by the field boring program. In the event that any changes in the nature, design or location of the improvements are made, the conclusions and recommendations in this report should not be considered valid until the changes are reviewed and the conclusions and recommendations modified or verified in writing by HVJ Associates, Inc.

ILLUSTRATIONS



MAP LOCATION

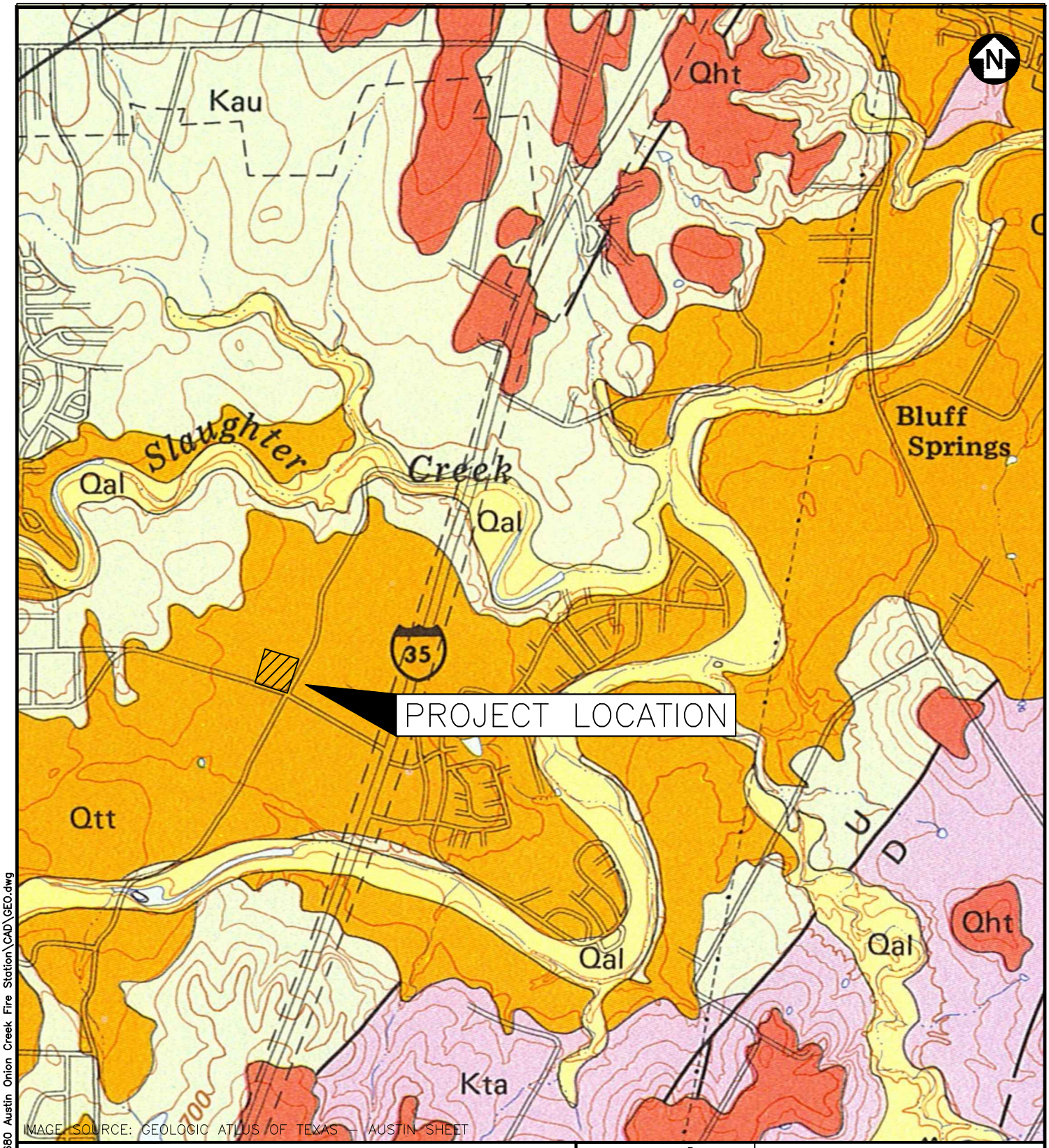
HVJ ASSOCIATES

SCALE: NTS		
DATE: 11/17/2015		
DRAWN BY: MM	PROJ. CHK: LR	APPRV. BY: LR

SITE VICINITY MAP
ONION CREEK FIRE STATION
AUSTIN, TEXAS

PROJECT NO.: AG 14 12680	FILENAME: VIC	PLATE 1

DATE: 11/17/2015 1:02:55 PM
FILE: P:\geo\Projects\2014\AG 14 12680 Austin Onion Creek Fire Station\CAD\VIC.dwg



LEGEND

Qtt	Tributary Terrace Deposits
Qal	Alluvium
Qht	High Terrace Deposits
Kta	Taylor Group
Kau	Austin Group

MAP LOCATION

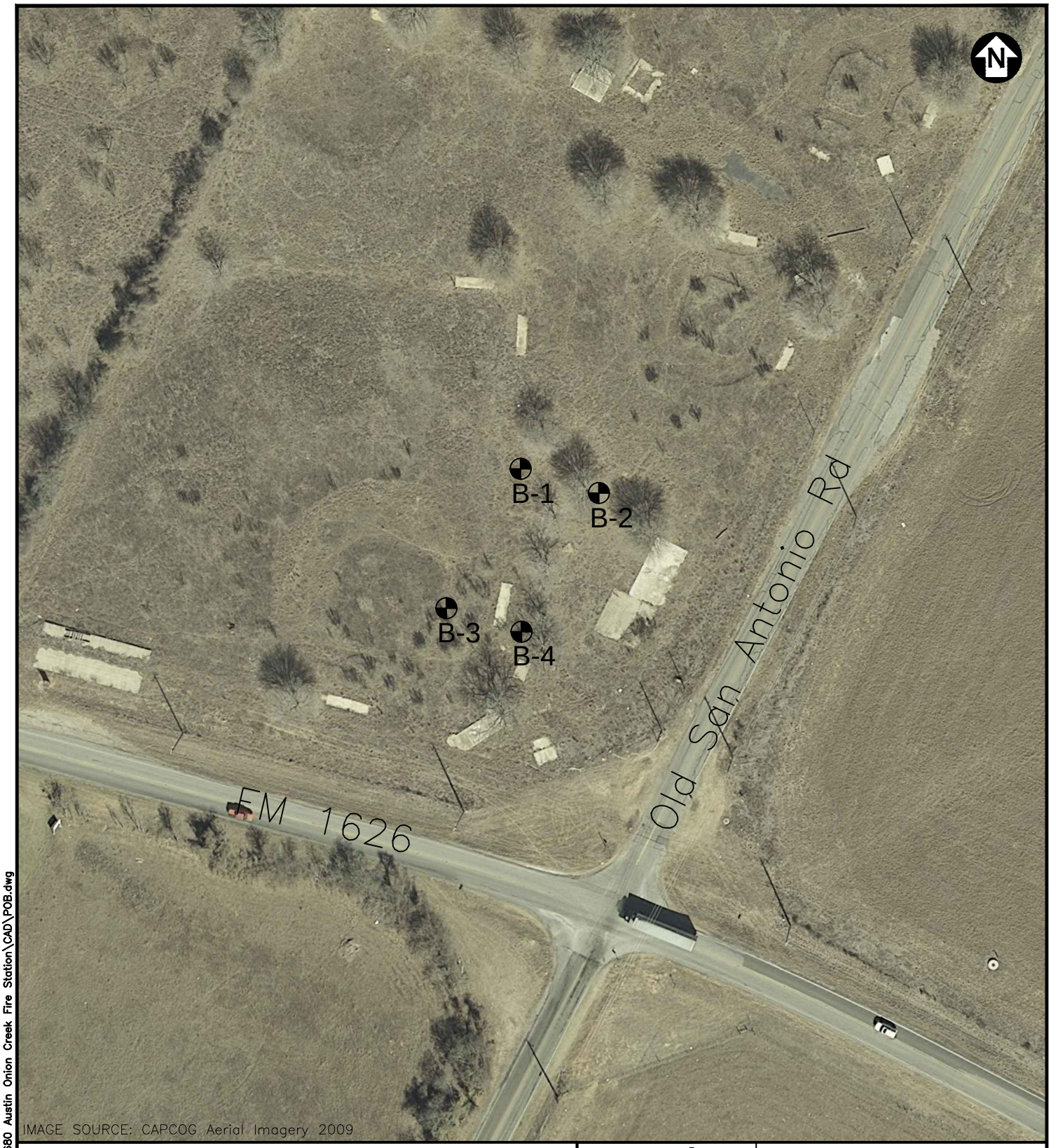
HVJ ASSOCIATES

SCALE: NTS		
DATE: 11/17/2015		
DRAWN BY: MM	PROJ. CHK: LR	APPRV. BY: LR

GEOLOGY MAP
ONION CREEK FIRE STATION
AUSTIN, TEXAS

PROJECT NO.: AG 14 12680	FILENAME: GEO	PLATE 2

DATE: 11/24/2015 8:41:25 AM
FILE: P:\geo\Projects\2014\AG 14 12680 Austin Onion Creek Fire Station\CAD\GEO.dwg



BORING LOCATION

MAP LOCATION

HVJ ASSOCIATES

SCALE: 1" = 100'		
DATE: 11/17/2015		
DRAWN BY: MM	PROJ. CHK: LR	APPRV. BY: LR

PLAN OF BORINGS
ONION CREEK FIRE STATION
AUSTIN, TEXAS

PROJECT NO.: AG 14 12680	FILENAME: POB	PLATE 3

DATE: 10/16/2015 2:00 PM
FILE: P:\geo\Projects\2014\AG 14 12680 Austin Onion Creek Fire Station\CAD\POB.dwg

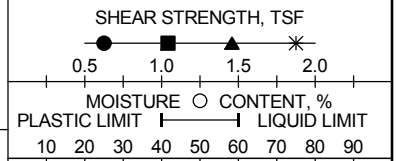
LOG OF BORING

Project: Onion Creek Fire and EMS Station
Boring No.: B-1
Groundwater during drilling: NE
Groundwater after drilling: NE

Date: 10/20/2015
Northing: 10,025,109.9
Easting: 3,096,735.0

Project No.: AG 1412680
Elevation: 640 feet
Station: NA
Offset: NA

ELEV. DEPTH, FEET	SOIL SYMBOLS SAMPLER SYMBOLS AND FIELD TEST DATA	SOIL/ROCK CLASSIFICATION	% PASSING NO. 200 SIEVE	DRY DENSITY PCF
640 — 0	PP=4.50 tsf PP=4.50 tsf	Dark brown, hard, moist, **FAT CLAY (CH)**. (Tributary terrace deposits)	92	
635 — 5	32-30-31 28-50/6" 50/6"	Pale brown, very dense, dry, **CLAYEY SAND (SC)**, with gravel and calcareous deposits. (Tributary terrace deposits) -brown and dry below 9'	43	
630 — 10				
625 — 15	28-29-28	-semi moist below 13.5'	41	
620 — 20	21-50/6"			



Shear Types: ● = Hand Penet. ■ = Torvane ▲ = Unconf. Comp. ✳ = UU Triaxial

See Plate 3 for boring location.

HVJ ASSOCIATES

LOG OF SOIL BORING AG 14 12680.GPJ HVJ.GDT 11/25/15

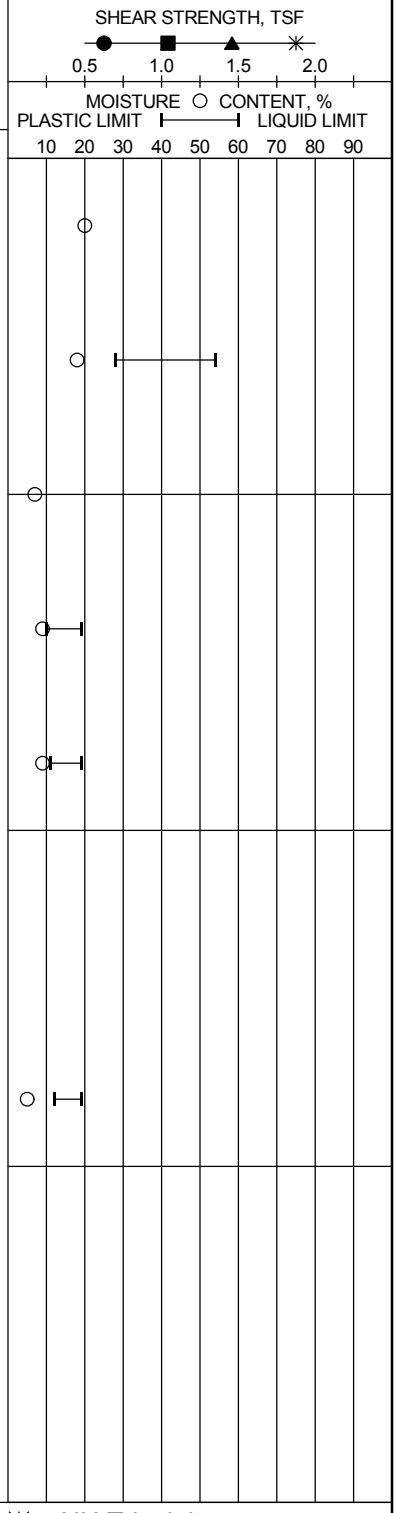
LOG OF BORING

Project: Onion Creek Fire and EMS Station
Boring No.: B-2
Groundwater during drilling: NE
Groundwater after drilling: NE

Date: 10/20/2015
Northing: 10,025,091.9
Easting: 3,096,793.3

Project No.: AG 1412680
Elevation: 640 feet
Station: NA
Offset: NA

ELEV. DEPTH, FEET	SOIL SYMBOLS SAMPLER SYMBOLS AND FIELD TEST DATA	SOIL/ROCK CLASSIFICATION	% PASSING NO. 200 SIEVE	DRY DENSITY PCF
640 — 0	PP=4.5 tsf PP=4.5 tsf	Dark brown, hard, moist, **FAT CLAY (CH)**. (Tributary terrace deposits)	93	
635 — 5	50/6"	Brown to gray, dense to very dense, dry **CLAYEY SAND (SC)**, with gravel and weathered limestone fragments. (Tributary terrace deposits)		
	50/6"	-brown and semi moist at 6.5'-13.5'		
630 — 10	24-34-29	-with gravel below 8.5'		
625 — 15	42-40-48	-dry below 13.5'	22	
620 — 20	22-24-25			



Shear Types: ● = Hand Penet. ■ = Torvane ▲ = Unconf. Comp. ✳ = UU Triaxial

See Plate 3 for boring location.

HVJ ASSOCIATES

LOG OF SOIL BORING AG 14 12680.GPJ HVJ.GDT 11/25/15

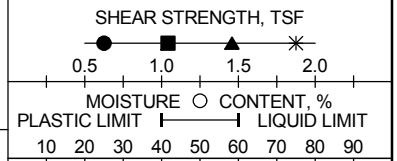
LOG OF BORING

Project: Onion Creek Fire and EMS Station
Boring No.: B-3
Groundwater during drilling: NE
Groundwater after drilling: NE

Date: 10/20/2015
Northing: 10,025,006.3
Easting: 3,096,679.9

Project No.: AG 1412680
Elevation: 639 feet
Station: NA
Offset: NA

ELEV. DEPTH, FEET	SOIL SYMBOLS SAMPLER SYMBOLS AND FIELD TEST DATA	SOIL/ROCK CLASSIFICATION	% PASSING NO. 200 SIEVE	DRY DENSITY PCF
0	PP=4.5 tsf	Dark brown, hard, moist, **FAT CLAY (CH)**. (Tributary terrace deposits)	87	
	PP=4.5 tsf	-with calcareous nodules at 2'-4'	88	
635 / 5	PP=4.5 tsf	Brown to dark brown, dense, semi moist, **CLAYEY SAND (SC)**, with gravel and calcareous deposits. (Tributary terrace deposits)	48	
	22-24-22	Gray to brown, stiff to hard, semi moist, **SANDY LEAN CLAY (CL)**, with gravel and calcareous deposits. (Tributary terrace deposits)	54	
630 / 10	22-24-28	-with calcareous deposits at 8.5'-10'	58	
625 / 15	22-27-36		53	
		Brown to yellowish brown, stiff, wet, **SANDY LEAN CLAY WITH GRAVEL (CL)**, with calcareous deposits		
620 / 20	6-6-6		52	



Shear Types: ● = Hand Penet. ■ = Torvane ▲ = Unconf. Comp. ✳ = UU Triaxial

See Plate 3 for boring location.

HVJ ASSOCIATES

LOG OF SOIL BORING AG 14 12680.GPJ HVJ.GDT 11/25/15

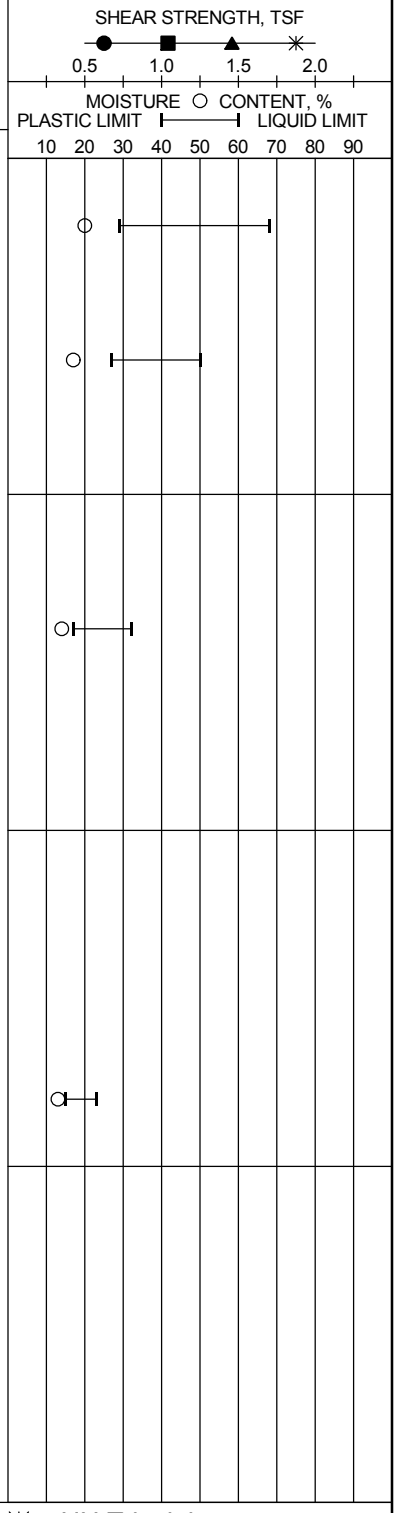
LOG OF BORING

Project: Onion Creek Fire and EMS Station
Boring No.: B-4
Groundwater during drilling: NE
Groundwater after drilling: NE

Date: 10/20/2015
Northing: 10,024,988.9
Easting: 3,096,735.7

Project No.: AG 1412680
Elevation: 640 feet
Station: NA
Offset: NA

ELEV. DEPTH, FEET	SOIL SYMBOLS SAMPLER SYMBOLS AND FIELD TEST DATA	SOIL/ROCK CLASSIFICATION	% PASSING NO. 200 SIEVE	DRY DENSITY PCF
640 — 0	PP=4.5 tsf	Dark brown, hard, moist, **FAT CLAY (CH)**. (Tributary terrace deposits)		
			90	
	PP=4.5 tsf	-with calcareous deposits and gravel 2'-4'		
			85	
	PP=4.5 tsf	Brown to gray, hard, semi moist, **SANDY LEAN CLAY (CL)**, with gravel, calcareous deposits and limestone fragments. (Tributary terrace deposits)		
635 — 5			56	
	33-32-17	-brown, semi moist below 6.5'		
			54	
	25-35-34			
630 — 10				
	32-33-34			
			66	
625 — 15				
	22-27-22			
			52	
620 — 20				



Shear Types: ● = Hand Penet. ■ = Torvane ▲ = Unconf. Comp. ✳ = UU Triaxial

See Plate 3 for boring location.

HVJ ASSOCIATES

LOG OF SOIL BORING AG 14 12680.GPJ HVJ.GDT 11/25/15

SOIL SYMBOLS

Soil Types

Clay | Silt | Sand | Fill

Modifiers

Clayey | Silty | Sandy Clay | Cemented

Construction Materials

Asphaltic Concrete | Stabilized Base | Fill or Debris | Base

SAMPLER TYPES

- Thin Walled Shelby Tube
- No Recovery
- Split Barrel
- Auger
- THD Cone Penetration Test
- Jar Sample

WATER LEVEL SYMBOLS

- Groundwater level determined during drilling operations
- Groundwater level after drilling in open borehole or piezometer

SOIL GRAIN SIZE

Classification	Particle Size	Particle Size or Sieve No. (U.S. Standard)
Clay	< 0.002 mm	< 0.002 mm
Silt	0.002 - 0.075 mm	0.002 mm - #200 sieve
Sand	0.075 - 4.75 mm	#200 sieve - #4 sieve
Gravel	4.75 - 75 mm	#4 sieve - 3 in.
Cobble	75 - 200 mm	3 in. - 8 in.
Boulder	> 200 mm	> 8 in.

DENSITY OF COHESIONLESS SOILS

Descriptive Term	Penetration Resistance "N" * Blows/Foot
Very Loose	0 - 4
Loose	4 - 10
Medium Dense	10 - 30
Dense	30 - 50
Very Dense	> 50

CONSISTENCY OF COHESIVE SOILS

Consistency	Undrained Shear Strength (tsf)
Very Soft	0 - 0.125
Soft	0.125 - 0.25
Firm	0.25 - 0.5
Stiff	0.5 - 1.0
Very Stiff	1.0 - 2.0
Hard	> 2.0

PENETRATION RESISTANCE

3/6	Blows required to penetrate each of three consecutive 6-inch increments per ASTM D-1586 *
50/4"	If more than 50 blows are required, driving is discontinued and penetration at 50 blows is noted
0/18"	Sampler penetrated full depth under weight of drill rods and hammer

* The N value is taken as the blows required to penetrate the final 12 inches

TERMS DESCRIBING SOIL STRUCTURE

Slickensided	Fracture planes appear polished or glossy, sometimes striated
Fissured	Breaks along definite planes of fracture with little resistance to fracturing
Inclusion	Small pockets of different soils, such as small lenses of sand scattered through a mass of clay
Parting	Inclusion less than 1/4 inch thick extending through the sample
Seam	Inclusion 1/4 inch to 3 inches thick extending through the sample
Layer	Inclusion greater than 3 inches thick extending through the sample
Laminated	Soil sample composed of alternating partings of different soil type
Stratified	Soil sample composed of alternating seams or layers of different soil type
Intermixed	Soil sample composed of pockets of different soil type and laminated or stratified structure is not evident
Calcareous	Having appreciable quantities of calcium carbonate
Ferrous	Having appreciable quantities of iron
Nodule	A small mass of irregular shape

HVJ ASSOCIATES

PROJECT NO.: AG 14 12680

DRAWING NO.: PLATE 8

KEY TO TERMS AND SYMBOLS USED ON BORING LOGS FOR SOIL

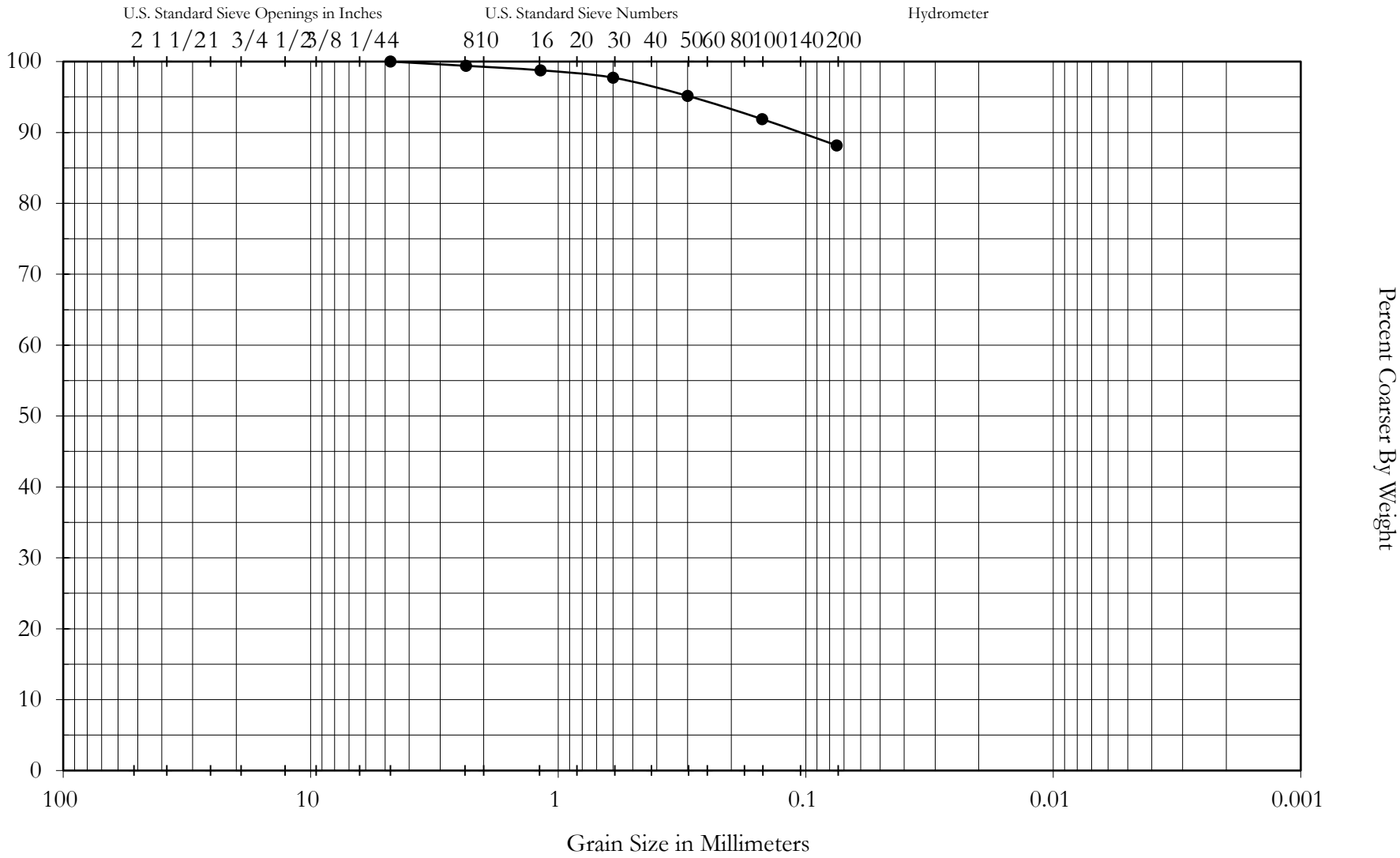
DATE: 11/24/2015 8:45:23 AM
FILE: P:\geo\Projects\2014\AG 14 12680 Austin Onion Creek Fire Station\CAD\SOIL.dwg

APPENDIX A: LABORATORY TESTING RESULTS SUMMARY

LABORATORY TEST RESULTS SUMMARY
Project Name: Austin Onion Creek Fire Station
Project Number: AG 14 12680

Boring Number	Depth (ft)	% Passing No. 200 Sieve	Liquid Limit (%)	Plasticity Index (%)	Moisture Content (%)
B-1	0-2	92	55	27	18.0
	4.5-6	43	30	14	5.0
	8.5-9				5.0
	13.5-15	41	20	6	13.0
B-2	0-2	93			20.0
	2-4		54	26	18.0
	4.5-5				7.0
	6.5-7		19	9	9.0
	8-10		19	8	9.0
	13.5-15	22	19	8	5.0
B-3	0-2	86	56	29	19.0
	2-4	88			
	4-6	48	46	23	10.0
	6.5-8	54			
	8.5-10	58	24	10	10.0
	13.5-15	53	24	10	12.0
	18.5-20	52			
B-4	0-2	90	68	39	20.0
	2-4	85	50	23	17.0
	4-6	56			
	6.5-8	54	32	15	14.0
	13.5-15	66	23	8	13.0
	18.5-20	52			

APPENDIX A: SIEVE ANALYSIS TEST RESULTS



Sample Location

B-3, 2-4 feet

Classification

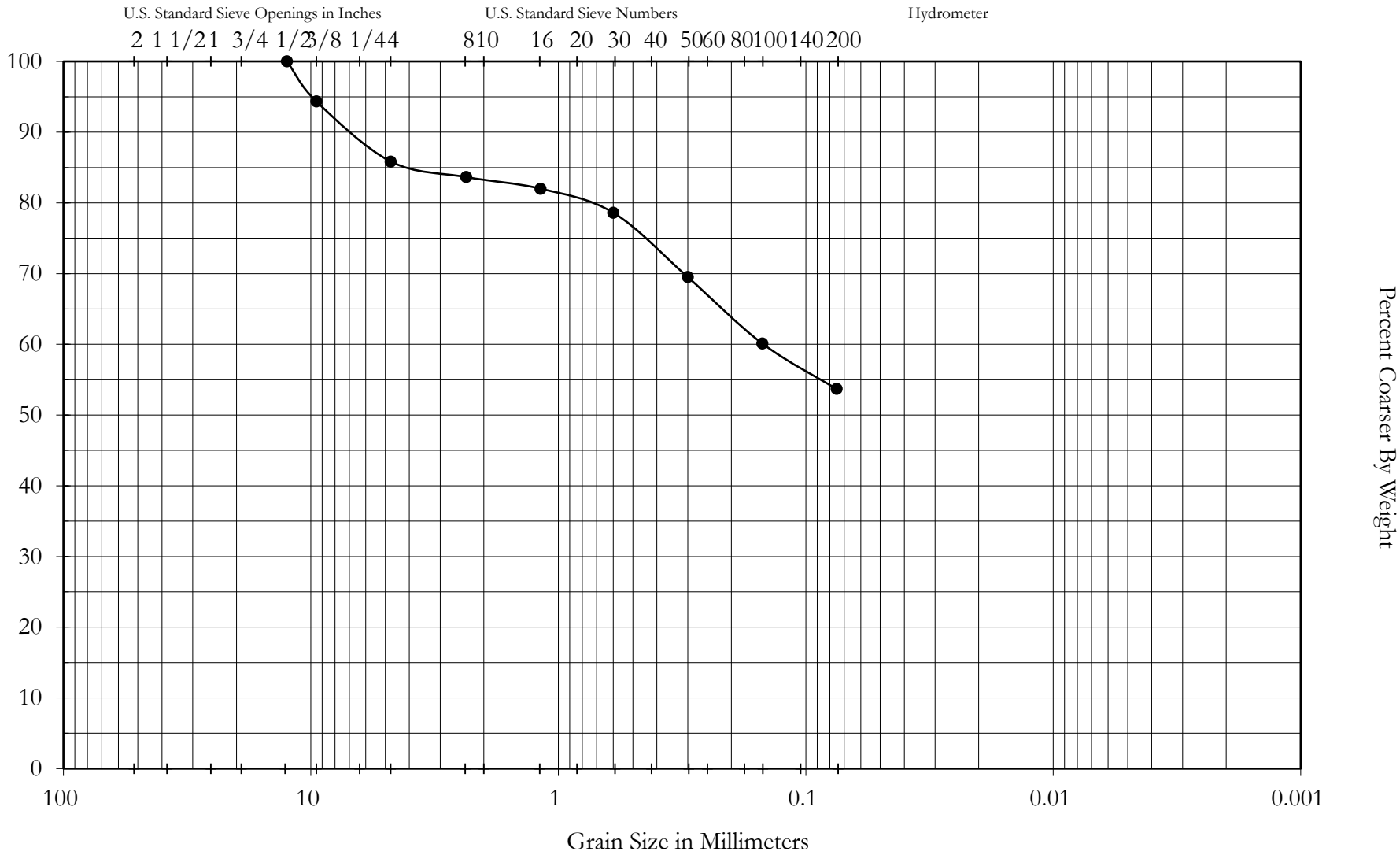
Fat Clay (CH)

HVJ ASSOCIATES, INC.

GRAIN SIZE ANALYSIS CURVE
ASTM D6913

PROJECT NO:
AG 14 12680

PLATE B-1



Sample Location

B-3, 6.5-8 feet

Classification

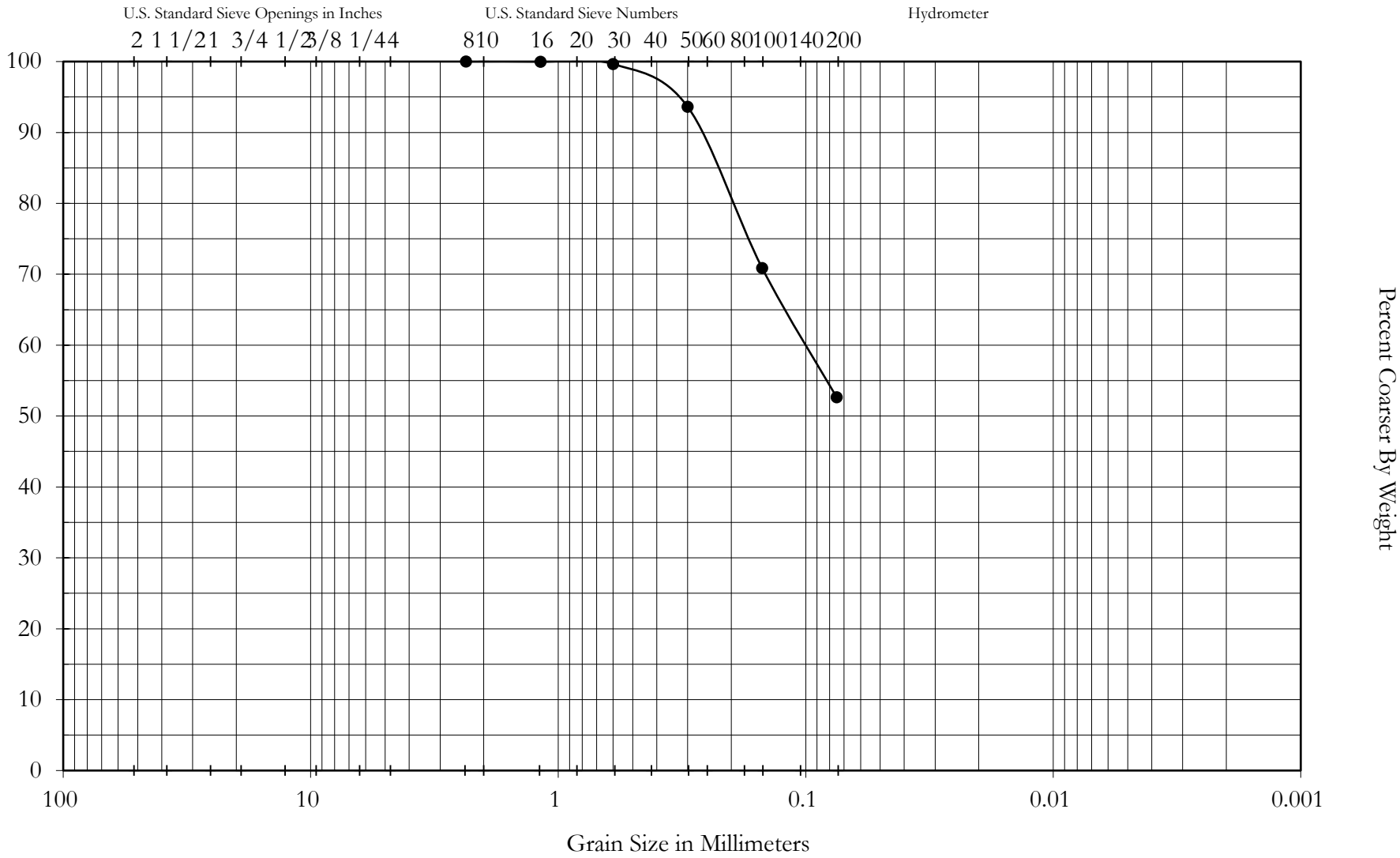
Sandy Lean Clay (CL)

HVJ ASSOCIATES, INC.

GRAIN SIZE ANALYSIS CURVE
ASTM D6913

PROJECT NO:
AG 14 12680

PLATE B-2



Sample Location

B-3, 13.5-15 feet

Classification

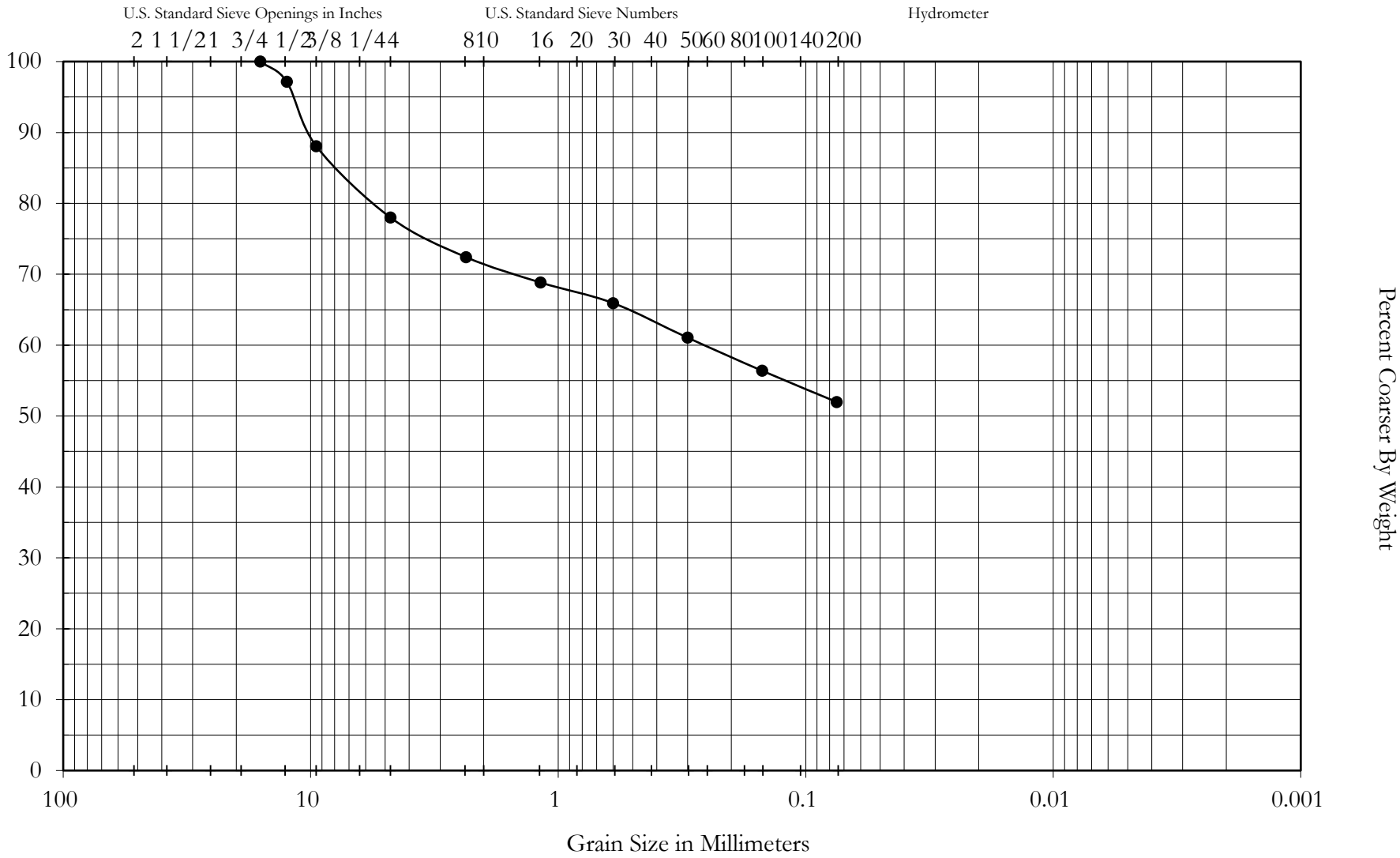
Sandy Lean Clay (CL)

HVJ ASSOCIATES, INC.

GRAIN SIZE ANALYSIS CURVE
ASTM D6913

PROJECT NO:
AG 14 12680

PLATE B-3



Sample Location

B-3, 18.5-20 feet

Classification

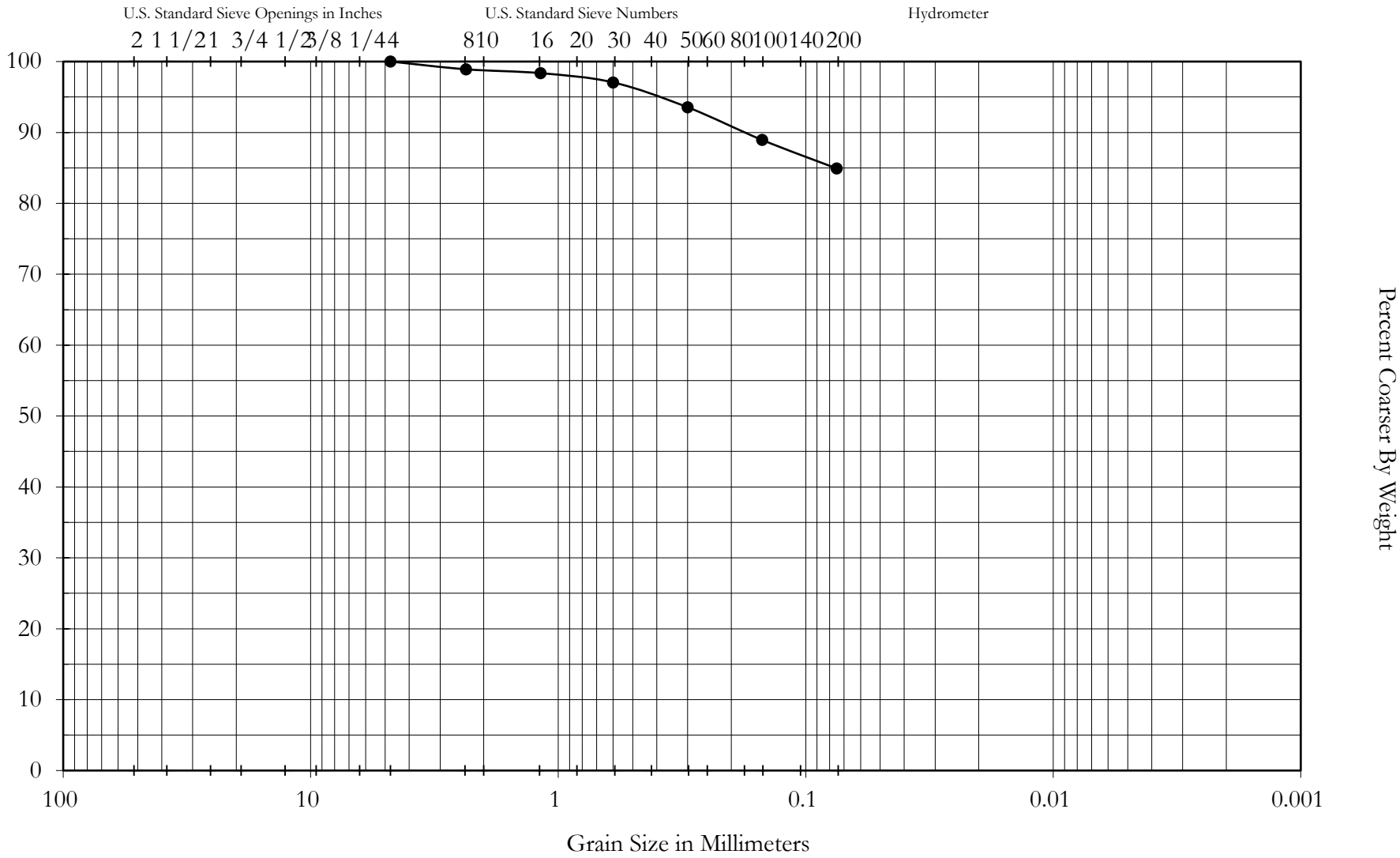
Sandy Lean Clay with Gravel (CL)

HVJ ASSOCIATES, INC.

GRAIN SIZE ANALYSIS CURVE
ASTM D6913

PROJECT NO:
AG 14 12680

PLATE B-4



Sample Location

B-4, 2-4 feet

Classification

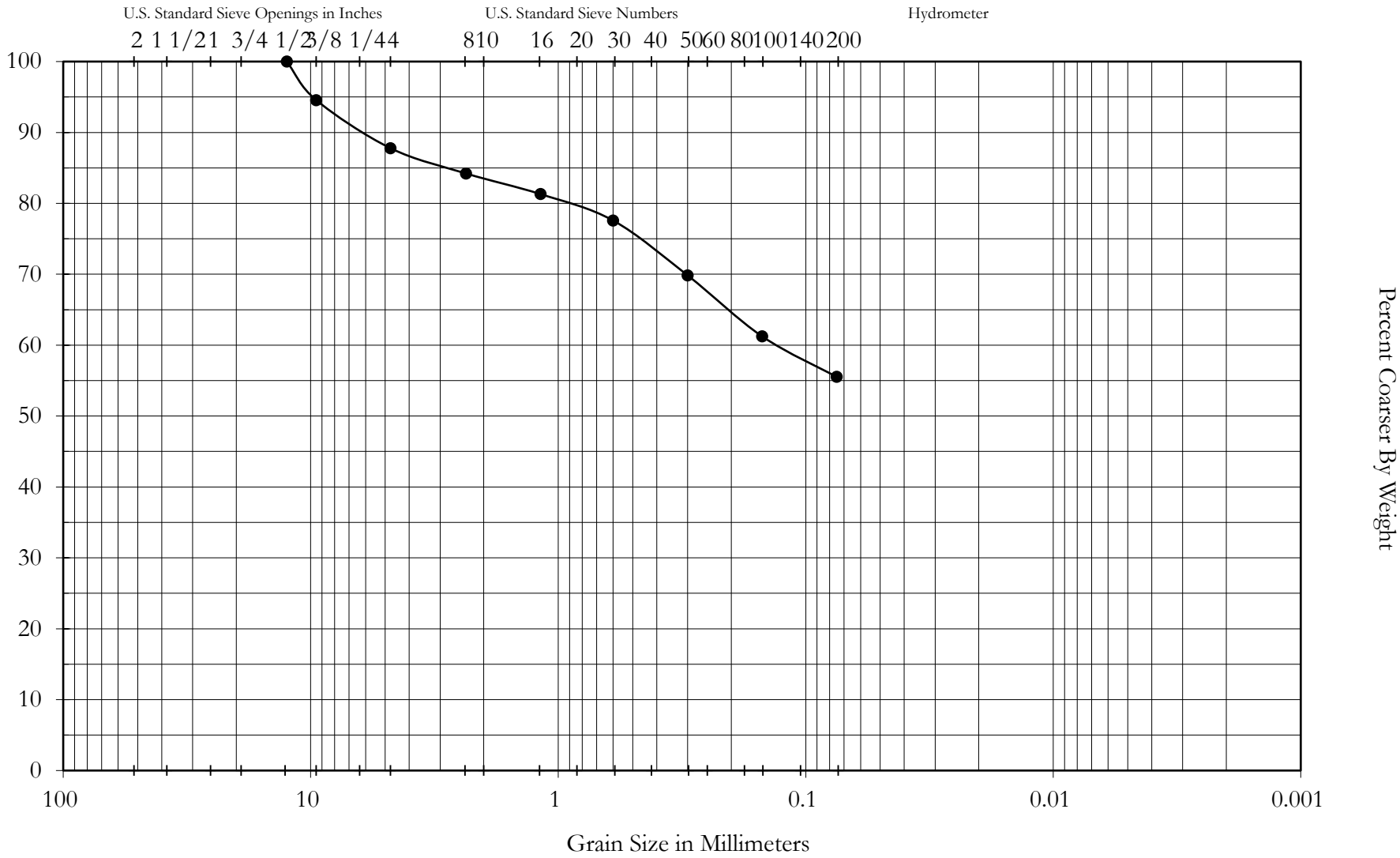
Fat Clay (CH)

HVJ ASSOCIATES, INC.

GRAIN SIZE ANALYSIS CURVE
ASTM D6913

PROJECT NO:
AG 14 12680

PLATE B-5



Sample Location

B-4, 4-6 feet

Classification

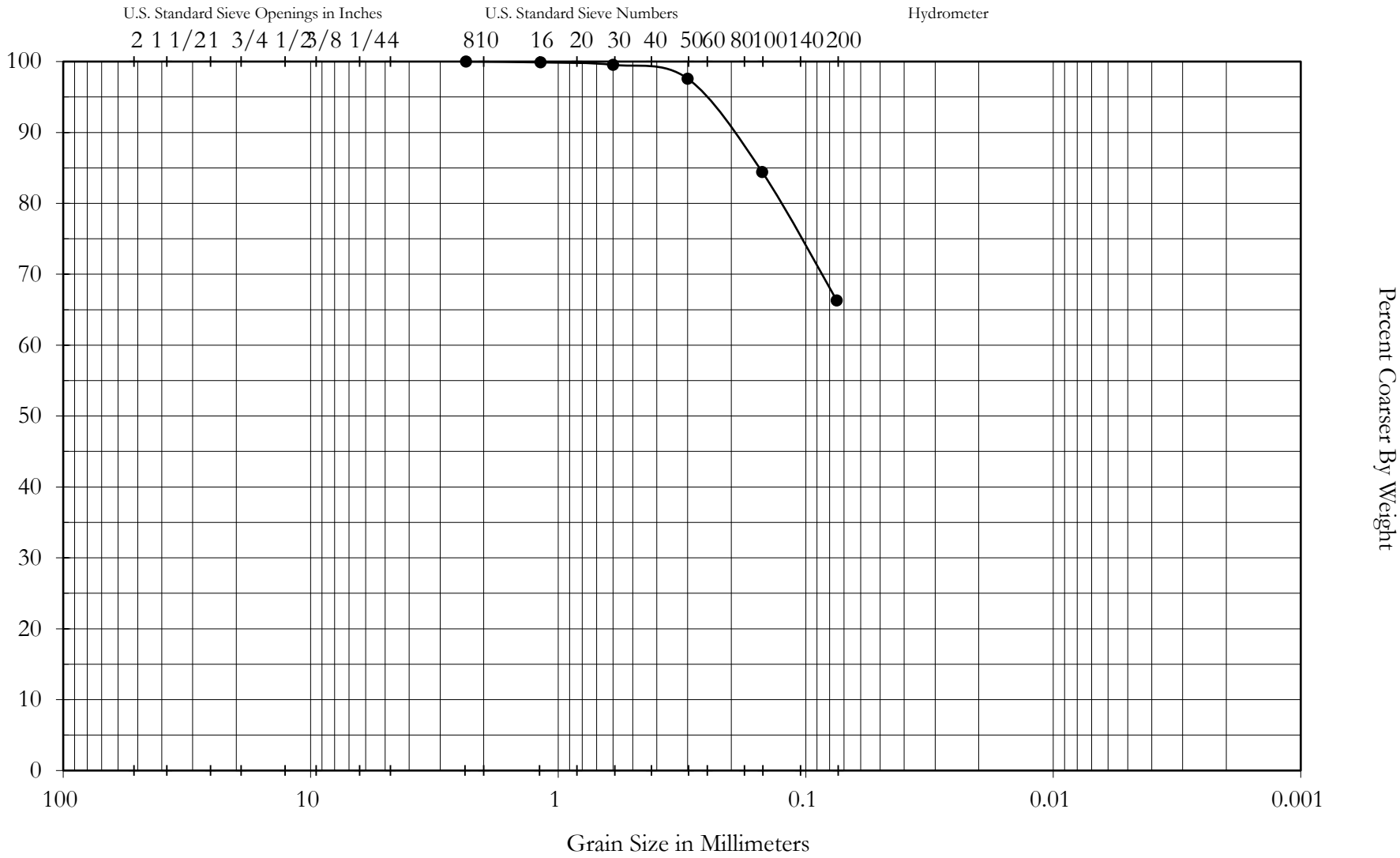
Sandy Lean Clay (CL)

HVJ ASSOCIATES, INC.

GRAIN SIZE ANALYSIS CURVE
ASTM D6913

PROJECT NO:
AG 14 12680

PLATE B-6



Sample Location

B-4, 13.5-15 feet

Classification

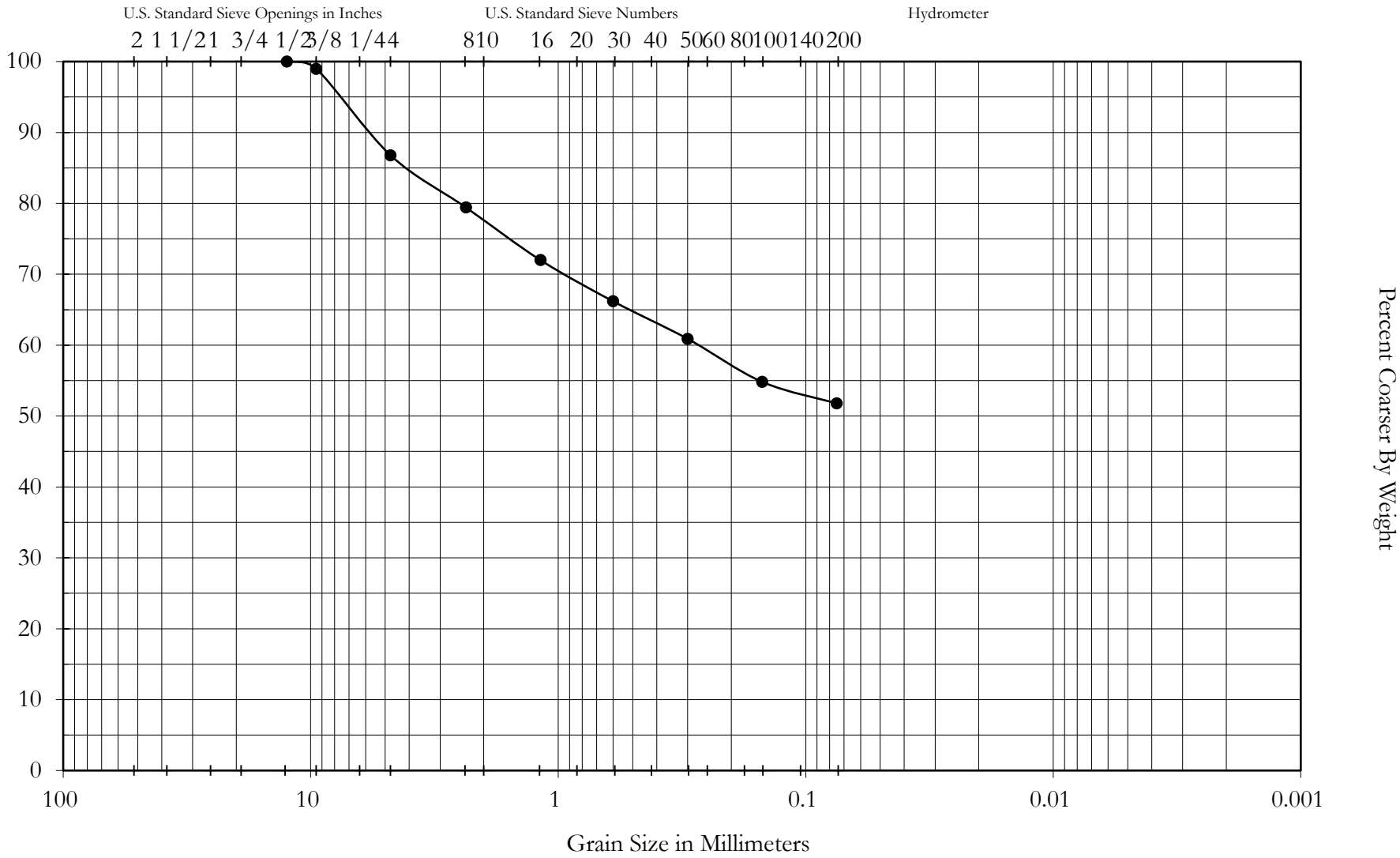
Sandy Lean Clay (CL)

HVJ ASSOCIATES, INC.

GRAIN SIZE ANALYSIS CURVE
ASTM D6913

PROJECT NO:
AG 14 12680

PLATE B-7



Sample Location

B-4, 18.5-20 feet

Classification

Sandy Lean Clay (CL)

HVJ ASSOCIATES, INC.

GRAIN SIZE ANALYSIS CURVE
ASTM D6913

PROJECT NO:
AG 14 12680

PLATE B-8

LUMP SUM PROPOSAL
Section 00300L CSP

In compliance with applicable City Policy and state of Texas law, including Texas Government Code Title 10, Subtitle D, Chapter 2269 and in response to Request for Proposal No. **CLMB326**, the undersigned offers the proposal for the following Project for the City of Austin, Texas:

Project:	**Onion Creek Fire/ EMS Station**
CIP ID#:	**6025.001**

Having examined the Project Manual, Drawings and Addenda, the site of the proposed Work and being familiar with all of the conditions surrounding construction of the proposed Project, having conducted all inquiries, tests and investigations deemed necessary and proper; hereby proposes to furnish all labor, permits, material, machinery, tools, supplies and equipment, and incidentals, and to perform all Work required for construction of the Project in accordance with the Project Manual, Drawings and Addenda within the time indicated for the lump sum price of:

BASE PROPOSAL	.....	**$**
(Base Proposal includes Allowances and Excavation Safety Systems Unit Prices, if applicable.)		

Notes:
1. For information pertaining to Rolling Owner Controlled Insurance Program (ROCIP), see Sections 00810.

BID GUARANTY: A Bid guaranty must be enclosed with this Proposal in the amount of not less than five percent (5%) of the total proposed amount. Following the opening of Proposals, Proposals may not be withdrawn for a period of **120 Calendar Days**. Recommendation of award will occur within this period, unless mutually agreed between the parties. The bid guaranty may become the property of the Owner, or the Owner may pursue any other action allowed by law, if:

- Offeror withdraws its Proposal within the period stated above;
- Offeror fails to submit any required post proposal information within the period specified in Section 00020CSP or 00100CSP, or any mutually agreed extension of that period; or
- Offeror fails to execute the Contract and furnish the prescribed documentation (bonds, insurance, etc.) needed to complete execution of the Contract within any mutually agreed extension period.

ROCIP INSURANCE: The Proposal includes all Automobile Liability and Builder's Risk Insurance premiums required to meet the insurance limits in the Supplemental General Conditions and includes all premiums for a Performance Bond and a Payment Bond in the sum of one hundred percent of the Contract Amount. The proposed amount excludes all costs for the insurance coverages and limits, up to the limits set forth in the Supplemental General Conditions, duplicated by those in the ROCIP, including the costs for all proposed Subcontractors for such coverages and limits as described in the Supplemental General Conditions, and as calculated in accordance with the Insurance Cost Form, Section 00425A.

The proposed amount also includes the cost to provide and maintain through completion of Work all necessary safety rails, barricades, platforms, fences, covers, and signs necessary to adequately protect and safeguard all vehicular and pedestrian traffic within proximity of the Work. The safety information identified in the Project Safely Manual, and in the Supplemental General Conditions, outlines the minimum safety requirements for the Project. Contractor shall not limit the amount of effort directed toward its safety program based on the requirements identified in the Project Safety Manual. This program is in addition to Contractor's existing safety program, not in lieu of that program.

MINIMUM WAGES: Workers on the Project shall be paid not less than wage rates, including fringe benefits, as published by the Department of Labor (DOL) for Building Construction and Heavy and Highway Trades "AS APPLICABLE" and/or the $13.50 minimum Wage required by City of Austin Ordinance No. 20160324-015, whichever is higher. The Total Minimum Wage required can be met using any combination of cash and non-cash qualified fringe benefits provided the cash component meets or exceeds the $13.50 minimum wage required.

GEOTECHNICAL BASELINE ACKNOWLEDGEMENT: The undersigned Offeror certifies that he/she has read and understands the Geotechnical Baseline Report (GBR), the Geotechnical Data Report, the Reflection Survey Report, and all other geological and geotechnical information and data as provided in the Contract Documents, including all Addenda. ***The Offeror acknowledges and agrees that the GBR represents the contractual statement of the subsurface conditions reasonably anticipated to be encountered during construction. The GBR will be used to evaluate whether subsurface conditions differ materially from those indicated in the GBR.***

TIME OF COMPLETION: The undersigned Offeror agrees to commence work on the date specified in the written "Notice to Proceed" to be issued by the Owner and to substantially complete construction of the improvements, as required by the Project Manual, Drawings and Addenda for the Work within three hundred ten (310) Calendar Days. If a Substantial Completion date has been specified, the Offeror further agrees to reach Final Completion within 30 Calendar Days after Substantial Completion as required by the Project Manual, Drawings and Addenda for the work. The Offeror further agrees that should the Offeror fail to finally complete the Work within the number of days indicated in the Proposal or as subsequently adjusted, Offeror shall pay the liquidated damages for each consecutive day thereafter as provided below; unless the Owner elects to pursue any other action allowed by law.

LIQUIDATED DAMAGES: The Offeror understands and agrees that the timely completion of the described Work is of the essence. The Offeror and Owner further agree that the Owner's actual damages for delay caused by failure to timely complete the Project are difficult, if not impossible to measure. However, with respect to the additional administrative and consultant costs to be incurred by Owner, the reasonable estimate of such damages has been calculated and agreed to by Owner and Offeror. Therefore, the Offeror and the Owner agree that for each and every Calendar Day the Work or any portion thereof, remains incomplete after the Substantial Completion date as established by the above paragraph, Time of Completion, payment will be due to the Owner in the amount of One Thousand Seven Hundred Seventy Dollars ($1,170.00) per Calendar Day as liquidated damages, not as a penalty, but for delay damages to the Owner. If both Substantial and Final Completion dates have been specified, the Offeror and the Owner further agree that for each and every Calendar Day the Work or any portion thereof, remains incomplete after the Final Completion date as established by the above paragraph, Time of Completion, payment will be due to the Owner in the amount of Six Hundred Seventy Dollars ($670.00) per Calendar Day as liquidated damages, not as a penalty, but for delay damages to the Owner. Such amount shall be deducted by the Owner from any Contract payment due. In the event of a default or breach by the Contractor and demand is made upon the surety to complete the project, in accordance with the Contract Documents, the surety shall be liable for liquidated damages pursuant to the Contract Documents in the same manner as the Contractor would have been.

WAIVER OF ATTORNEY FEES: In submitting its proposal, in consideration for the waiver of its right to attorney's fees by the Owner, the Offeror knowingly and intentionally agrees to and shall waive the right to attorney's fees under Section 271.153 of the Texas Local Government Code in any administrative proceeding, alternative dispute resolution proceeding, or litigation arising out of or connected to any Contract awarded pursuant to this solicitation process.

Owner reserves the right to reject any or all Proposals and to waive any minor informality in any Proposal or solicitation procedure (a minor informality is one that does not affect the competitiveness of the Offerors).

The undersigned acknowledges receipt of the following addenda:

Addendum No. 1 dated _____ Received _____
Addendum No. 2 dated _____ Received _____
Addendum No. 3 dated _____ Received _____
Addendum No. 4 dated _____ Received _____

_____
Secretary, *if Offeror is a Corporation

_____
Offeror

(Seal)

_____
Authorized Signature

_____
Title

_____
Date

_____
Address

_____

_____
Telephone Number / FAX Number

_____
Email Address for Person Signing Proposal

_____
Email Address for Offeror's Primary Contact Person

* Copy of Corporate Resolution and minutes with certificate of officer of Offeror as to authority of signatory to bind Offeror is to be signed and dated no earlier than one week before Proposal due date, and attached to this document.

End

Attachment A

(Criteria Item 4)

OFFEROR'S INFORMATION

Offeror must answer all questions completely and all information must be clear, accurate and comprehensive. If necessary, questions may be answered on separate attached sheets.

If Offeror is a Joint Venture, complete Attachment A for **each** joint venture firm(s).

A.	Name of Offeror:	
	Parent company if subsidiary:	
	Offeror's Permanent Address:	
	Branch office, if applicable:	
	Offeror's Phone No.:	

B.	Number of Years in Business:			
C.	Indicate whether Offeror is a partnership, corporation, joint venture, or individual:			
	State in which incorporation or license to operate:			
	If a Joint Venture, Percentage Control:			
D.	Federal Tax ID:		Vendor Code:	

E.	Name of Contact Person:			
	Address:			
	Phone:		Email:	

F.	If different from "Contact Person", **provide name of individual in your organization authorized to negotiate contract terms and render binding decisions on contract matters:**			
	Address:			
	Phone:		Email:	

G.	Has the Offeror defaulted on a contract? YES (____) NO (____)
	If yes, please explain. Add additional sheets if necessary.

H.	Currently or in the last five (5) years has Offeror been a party to any claims, judgments or lawsuits as a part of any project to which it was involved? YES (___) NO (____)
	If yes, please explain. Add additional sheets if necessary.

I.	Is the Offeror or principals of Offeror now, or has the Offeror or principals of Offeror, ever been involved in any bankruptcy or reorganization proceedings? YES (___) NO (____)
	If yes, please explain. Add additional sheets if necessary.

J.	Describe the quantity and nature of any work, interest in work, partnership interest, land ownership or other interest in any project, property or business dealing within the proposed project area or part or current business relationship which may give rise to a potential conflict of interest for your firm or associated firms in the execution of this project:

K.	Texas Board of Professional Engineers (TBPE) Registration No.: (IF APPLICABLE)	

L.	Registered Architect (TBAE) Registration No.: (IF APPLICABLE)	

END

Attachment B

(Criteria Item 4)

AUTHENTICATION OF SUBMITTAL

ACKNOWLEDGEMENT

THE STATE OF TEXAS

COUNTY OF TRAVIS

I certify that my responses and the information provided are true and correct to the best of my personal knowledge and belief and that I have made no willful misrepresentations in this Section, nor have I withheld any relevant information in my statements and answers to questions. I am aware that any information given by me in this Section may be investigated and I hereby give my full permission for any such investigation and I fully acknowledge that any misrepresentations or omissions in my responses and information may cause my offer to be rejected.

OFFEROR'S FULL NAME AND ENTITY STATUS:

_____

_____
Signature, Authorized Representative of Offeror

_____
Title

_____
Date

END

STATEMENT OF EXPERIENCE
Section 00400CSP

Attachment C

(Criteria Item 6)

EXPERIENCE OF OFFEROR

DUPLICATE FORM AS NECESSARY - ONE PAGE PER PROJECT

PROJECT OWNER/CLIENT		**POC**	
PHONE		**EMAIL**	
ADDRESS			

PROJECT NAME/LOCATION:	
FIXED PROJECT BUDGET:	$
FINAL CONTRACT AMOUNT:	$
CONTRACT START DATE:	
SUBSTANTIAL COMPLETION DATE:	
ACTUAL COMPLETION DATE:	
DESCRIBE SCOPE OF WORK:	
EXPLAIN COMPARABLE SIZE, SCOPE AND COMPLEXITY TO THE WORK DESCRIBED IN SECTION 01010, SUMMARY OF WORK:	
DESCRIBE MBE/WBE, HUB, AND SMALL BUSINESS REQUIREMENTS AND YOUR PARTICIPATION:	

STATEMENT OF EXPERIENCE
Section 00400CSP

Attachment D

(Criteria Item 7)

EXPERIENCE OF KEY PERSONNEL

Project Manager, Project Superintendent, Safety Manager

DUPLICATE FORM AS NECESSARY - ONE PAGE PER PROJECT, PER INDIVIDUAL

NAME OF KEY PERSONNEL		**TITLE**	
COMPANY /EMPLOYER		**PHONE**	

PROJECT OWNER/CLIENT		**POC**	
PHONE		**EMAIL**	
ADDRESS			

PROJECT NAME/LOCATION:	
FIXED PROJECT BUDGET:	$
FINAL CONTRACT AMOUNT:	$
CONTRACT START DATE:	
SUBSTANTIAL COMPLETION DATE:	
ACTUAL COMPLETION DATE:	
DESCRIBE SCOPE OF WORK:	
EXPLAIN COMPARABLE SIZE, SCOPE AND COMPLEXITY TO THE WORK DESCRIBED IN SECTION 01010, SUMMARY OF WORK:	

Attachment E

(Criteria Item 8, Organizational Structure and Business Practices)

AVAILABLE WORKFORCE

Note: Provide a list of the available workforce for the various disciplines and crafts required for the Work on this Project, including the number of work crews, and number and worker classification for each equipment operator, mechanic, and laborer for that portion of the Work that Offeror will actually perform.

Number of Anticipated Work Crews: _____

USE ADDITIONAL PAGES AS NECESSARY

DISCIPLINE OR CRAFT	**NO. OF EMPLOYEES**	**COMMITTED TO ANOTHER PROJECT?** (Yes / No)	**AVAILABLE / RELEASE DATE**
Professional (specify)			
Superintendent			
Technical (specify)			
Skilled Workers (specify)			
Semiskilled Workers (specify)			
Equipment Operators (list)			
Other			
Other			
Other			

CERTIFICATE OF NON-SUSPENSION OR DEBARMENT

Section 00405

The City of Austin is prohibited from contracting with or making prime or sub-awards to parties that are suspended or debarred or whose principals are suspended or debarred from Federal, State, or City of Austin Contracts. Covered transactions include procurement contracts for goods or services equal to or in excess of $25,000.00 and all non-procurement transactions. This certification is required for all bidders on all City of Austin Contracts to be awarded with values equal to or in excess of $25,000.00 and all non-procurement transactions.

The CONTRACTOR hereby certifies that its firm and its principals are not currently suspended or debarred from bidding on any Federal, State, or City of Austin Contracts.

PROJECT Name _____

PROJECT Address _____

CONTRACTOR'S Name _____

Signed by (Authorized Representative) _____

Printed Name: _____

Title _____

Date _____

END

SAFETY RECORD QUESTIONNAIRE & STATEMENT OF BIDDER'S SAFETY EXPERIENCE

~~**(To Be Submitted Post-Bid)**~~

Project Name:	**Onion Creek Fire/ EMS Station**
Project Location:	**11112 Old San Antonio Road, Austin, TX**
Solicitation Number:	**CLMB326**
CIP ID #:	**6025.001**

Pursuant to Section 252.0435 of the Local Government Code, the Austin City Council will consider the safety records of potential contractors prior to awarding bids on City contracts. The City of Austin has adopted the following written definitions and criteria for accurately determining the safety record of a Bidder prior to awarding bids on City contracts. The term "Bidder" includes the firm, corporation, partnership, or other legal entity represented by the Bidder or anyone acting for such firm, corporation, partnership or other entity submitting the bid. The definitions and criteria for determining the safety record of a Bidder are:

> "Citations" include notices of violation, notices of enforcement, suspension/revocations of state or federal licenses or registrations, fines assessed pending criminal complaints, indictments, or convictions, administrative orders, draft orders, final orders, and judicial final judgments. Notice of Violations and Notice of Enforcement received from the TCEQ shall include those classified as major violations and moderate violations under the TCEQ'S regulations for documentation of Compliance History, 30 Texas Administrative Code, Chapter 60.2 (c) (1) and (2).
>
> "Environmental Protection Agency" includes, but is not limited to the Texas Commission on Environmental Quality (TCEQ), the U.S. Environmental Protection Agency, the U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service, the U.S. Army Corps of Engineers, the Texas Department of Health, the Texas Parks and Wildlife Department, the Structural Pest Control Service, agencies of local governments responsible for enforcing environmental protection laws or regulations, and similar regulatory agencies of other states of the United States.

1. If the Bidder's response to the following questions reveals more than two (2) cases in which final orders have been entered by the Occupational Safety and Health Review Commission (OSHRC) against the Bidder for serious violations of Occupational Safety & Health Administration (OSHA) regulations within the past five (5) years, the City will, at its discretion, determine whether to disqualify the Bidder.
2. If the Bidder's response to the following questions reveals more than one (1) case in which Bidder has received a citation or for which final orders have been entered from an environmental protection agency for violations within the past five (5) years, the City will, at its discretion, determine whether to disqualify the Bidder.
3. If the Bidder's response to the following questions reveals that the Bidder has been convicted of a criminal offense within the past ten (10) years or has been subject to a judgment for a negligent act or omission, which resulted in serious bodily harm or death, at its discretion, the City will determine whether to disqualify the Bidder.
4. The City may consider the responses to each question listed below separately when making a discretionary determination of whether to disqualify a Bidder and it may consider the cumulative impact of the information generated by the Bidder's responses in making the determination.

5. The Bidder acknowledges the requirements for Safety Training (listed in Section 00700) must be met before any work commences on the project.
6. In order to consider the safety records of potential contractors prior to awarding bids on City contracts, the City requires that Bidders answer the following questions and submit them upon request:

QUESTION ONE

Has the Bidder received any Citations for violations of OSHA within the past five (5) years? ❒ Yes ❒ No

QUESTION TWO

Has the Bidder received any Citations for violations of environmental protection laws or regulations within the past five (5) years? ❒ Yes ❒ No

QUESTION THREE

Has the Bidder ever been convicted, within the past ten (10) years, of a criminal offense or has been subject to a judgment for a negligent act or omission, which resulted in serious bodily injury or death? ❒ Yes ❒ No

---

If the Bidder has indicated "Yes" to any question above, the Bidder must provide to the City, with its bid submission, the following information:

Date of Citation or offense and location where violation or offense occurred, type of violation or offense, final disposition of violation or offense, if any, and penalty assessed.

In addition, the City will utilize the following information and in its discretion, as additional support to make any discretionary determination of whether to disqualify a Bidder. Accordingly, Bidder must answer the following questions and provide evidence that it meets minimum OSHA construction safety standards and has a lost time injury rate that does not exceed the limits established below:

1. Does the Bidder have a written construction safety program? ❒ Yes ❒ No
2. Does the Bidder conduct regular construction site safety inspections? ❒ Yes ❒ No
3. Does the Bidder have an active construction safety training program? ❒ Yes ❒ No
4. Does the Bidder or affected subcontractors have competent persons in the following areas (as applicable to the scope of the current Project):

A. Scaffolding	❒ Yes	❒ No	❒ N/A
B. Excavation	❒ Yes	❒ No	❒ N/A
C. Cranes & Hoists	❒ Yes	❒ No	❒ N/A
D. Electrical	❒ Yes	❒ No	❒ N/A
E. Fall Protection	❒ Yes	❒ No	❒ N/A
F. Confined Spaces	❒ Yes	❒ No	❒ N/A
G. Material Handling	❒ Yes	❒ No	❒ N/A
H. Demolition	❒ Yes	❒ No	❒ N/A
I. Steel Erection	❒ Yes	❒ No	❒ N/A

J. Underground Construction ❒ Yes ❒ No ❒ N/A

5. Does the company have a lost time injury rate and a total recordable injury rate of less than or equal to the national average for North American Industrial Classification System (NAICS) Category 23 for each of the past five (5) years? (Attach the Bidder's OSHA 300 and 300A logs for the past five (5) years) ❒ Yes ❒ No

6. Does the Bidder have an experience modifier rate of 1.0 or less? (Attach the Bidder's NCCI workers compensation experience rating sheets for the past five (5) years) ❒ Yes ❒ No

7. Has the Bidder had any OSHA inspections within the past six (6) months? ❒ Yes ❒ No
(If "YES", provide sufficient documentation to indicate the nature of the inspection, the findings, and magnitude of the issues.)

ACKNOWLEDGEMENT

THE STATE OF TEXAS

COUNTY OF TRAVIS

I certify that my responses and the information provided are true and correct to the best of my personal knowledge and belief and t

hat I have made no willful misrepresentations in this Questionnaire, nor have I withheld any relevant information in my statements and answers to questions. I am aware that any information given by me in this questionnaire may be investigated and I hereby give my full permission for any such investigation and I fully acknowledge that any misrepresentations or omissions in my responses and information may cause my bid to be rejected.

Bidder's full name and entity status:

_____

Company's Name

_____

Signature, Authorized Representative of Bidder

_____

Title

_____

Date

END

SAFETY INFORMATION FORM
Section 00415CSP

OFFEROR MUST PROVIDE THIS FORM AND REQUIRED SUBMITTALS WITH THE RESPONSE TO THIS SOLICITATION.

Offeror Name: _____Date: _____

Address: _____

Phone Number: _____

1. List your company's Experience Modification Rate for the last three years:

   Year 1_____ Year 2_____ Year 3_____

2. List the following OSHA Log Information for the past three years:

	Year 1	Year 2	Year 3
A. Total Recordable Cases	_____	_____	_____
B. Lost Workday Cases	_____	_____	_____
C. Lost Workdays	_____	_____	_____
D. Total Employee Hours Worked	_____	_____	_____
E. Number of Fatalities	_____	_____	_____

3. Do you have a designated Safety Representative? ❒ Yes, denote below

   Safety Representative Name: _____

   Phone Number: _____

   ❒ If No, advise who is in charge of safety and to what extent:

   _____

4. Do you hold "Tool Box Talks" for employees? ❒ Yes ❒ No

   How often?_____

   Provide documentation of Tool Box meetings - ex: sign-in sheets, etc.

5. Do you have a training program for newly hired or promoted foremen?

   ❒ No ❒ Yes, what does this include?

   _____

Safety Submittals:

- ❑ Copy of your Written Safety Program
- ❑ Provide evidence of all employee training for the past 12 months. Examples, certificates or sign in sheets. If an outside firm is used for training provide the contact name and phone number.
- ❑ Qualifications of your designated Jobsite Safety Representative (Resume, Certifications, etc.)

I hereby certify that the above information is true and correct to the best of my knowledge.

OFFEROR'S FULL NAME AND ENTITY STATUS:

_____

_____
Signature, Authorized Representative of Offeror

_____
Title

_____
Date

END

INSURANCE COST FORM

Section 00425A

Project Name: Onion Creek Fire/ EMS Station

CIP ID Number: 6025.001

In the event the bidder is awarded the Contract, it is agreed that the bidder will permit the OWNER or its ROCIP Administrator to inspect the insurance policies and audit the methods and rates used in determining the premium cost stated below. Requests for inspection of any policies or payroll records will be made in writing ten (10) days in advance of any review which will be conducted at the project site or an OWNER or ROCIP Administrator office near the site.

The "**Total Insurance Cost Excluded from Base Proposal**" (and the "Total **Insurance Cost Excluded from Alternate No.(s)**", as appropriate for this project) amount(s) as stated within this form represents the amount of cost the bidder has excluded from the Bid for insurance coverages for the prospective CONTRACTOR and all Subcontractor(s) and Sub-Subcontractor(s) which the OWNER anticipates furnishing through ROCIP. This cost includes but is not limited to insurance premiums, expected losses within any retention or deductible program, overhead and profit. Instructions to assist with calculation of these costs are included on the following page.

The bidder as insured hereby assigns and transfers to the OWNER, its rights, title and interest in any and all returns of premium, dividends, discounts, merit bonus or other adjustments applicable to the OWNER's Rolling Owner Controlled Insurance Program. This assignment shall pertain to the policies as now written and as subsequently modified, rewritten, or replaced in the policies of the OWNER's, including any additional amounts of coverage as a result thereof. This assignment is valid only for insurance policies whose premiums have been paid by the OWNER on behalf of the prospective CONTRACTOR/Subcontractor(s)/Sub-Subcontractor(s).

Total Insurance Cost Excluded from Base Proposal…….…….…… = $ _____

Bidder's Name: _____

Signed by: _____ Date: _____

Title: _____

CITY OF AUSTIN INSTRUCTIONS FOR IDENTIFYING INSURANCE COSTS

The ROCIP contract documents require that the Bidding Contractor exclude from the bid the cost of insurance provided by ROCIP. This includes the cost of said insurance for all contractors/ subcontractors of any tier who are performing work on site. These instructions are intended to be a tool to assist you in calculating your insurance costs.

Workers' Compensation Premium Calculation:
(A) Payroll/$100 X (B) Rate X (C) Experience Mod Factor X (D) Other factors as included on the policy = (E) Workers' Compensation Premium

(A) Payroll (remuneration) is the estimated amount of labor dollars including benefit costs that you anticipate for the project term. Payrolls should be broken down by Workers' Compensation Class Code. The calculation is payroll divided by $100 and then multiplied by the rate for each Class Code.

(B) Rates are based on Workers' Compensation Class Codes which identify the kind(s) of work the employees in that trade are performing. They are set by the Insurance Carrier and can be found in your "regular" Workers' Compensation Policy.

(C) Experience Modification Factors are based upon your past claim and premium experience that is filed by your previous Insurance Carriers. If you do not have an Experience Modifier Factor, use a 1.00 factor in the calculation.

(D) Other factors include Increased Limits, Scheduled Credits, Premium Discounts, etc.

(E) Workers' Compensation Premium is the insurance cost for Workers' Compensation that must be excluded in your bid price and recorded for the Contractor and all Subcontractors at every tier on the bidder's Insurance Cost Identification Worksheet.

General Liability Premium Calculation:
(A) Rate Base (Payroll/Sales) X (B) Rate X (C) Other factors as included on the policy = (D) General Liability Premium

(A) Rating base for General Liability may be Payroll (remuneration) or Sales/Receipts. Please refer to your "regular" General Liability Policy for rate base and rates used to calculate your current premium.

(B) Rates – again, refer to your regular policy and keep in mind that Payroll is per $1,000 and Sales/Receipts usually per $1,000

(C) Other factors include experience modifier, premium discounts, debits, credits, etc.

(D) The General Liability Premium is the insurance cost for General Liability that must be excluded in your bid price and recorded for the prime/general and all subcontractors at every tier on the bidder's Insurance Cost Identification Worksheet.

Expected Losses or Allocated Self-Insured Retention (if applicable):

In the event the Contractor or any Subcontractor retains a coverage or portion of coverage by a self-insured retention, deductible or other means, the contractor should estimate the portion of losses or retention which is estimated for or allocated to this project.

END

I. In compliance with Sections 151.003 – 153.009 of the Texas Insurance Code, the Owner hereby provides the following information to the Bidder/Contractor (the "ROCIP Information") in electronic format on the following website addresses:

A. City of Austin Rolling Owner Controlled Insurance Program VI – ROCIP VI Insurance Manual, August 26, 2013 ("ROCIP VI Insurance Manual") http://www.austintexas.gov/page/bid-docs

B. City of Austin Rolling Owner Controlled Insurance Program VI- ROCIP VI Claims Kit. ("ROCIP VI Claims Kit.") http://www.austintexas.gov/page/bid-docs

C. City of Austin Capital Improvement Program ROCIP –Safety Manual – ROCIP Safety Policy and Procedures April 14, 2014 ("ROCIP Safety Manual") http://www.austintexas.gov/page/bid-docs

D. ROCIP VI Program Master Insurance Policies & Endorsements ("ROCIP VI Master Policies") http://www.austintexas.gov/page/bid-docs

E. ROCIP VI Excess Coverage Policies & Endorsements (ROCIP VI Excess Coverage Policies) http://www.austintexas.gov/page/bid-docs

F. City of Austin Project Manual Contract Documents ("Contract Documents") http://www.austintexas.gov/page/bid-docs

1. Section 00410 Statement of Bidder's Safety Experience
2. Section 00425A Insurance Cost Form
3. Section 00700 General Conditions
4. Section 00810 Supplemental General Conditions

II. ROCIP Program Compliance Information

A. Contact information, including phone number and email address, for:

1. the Program Administrator -

Marsh USA, Inc.
Attention: Cindy Gibbens, Program Manager
1717 Main Street, Suite 4400
Dallas, Texas 75201
303-308-4519

austinwrapup.faxes@marsh.com

2. the Owner's Risk Manager -

Leslie Milvo, City of Austin Risk Manager
City of Austin, One Texas Center
505 Barton Springs Road, 10th Floor
Austin, Texas 78704
512-972-3245
leslie.milvo@austintexas.gov

3. insurer's contact person for filing a claim for each type of insurance coverage provided in the program;

Liberty Mutual
1-800-362-0000
Account Number for ROCIP VI: 42404

ROCIP VI Claims Advocate
Melodie Langford
Marsh USA, Inc.
9830 Colonade Blvd., Suite 400
San Antonio, TX 78230
Phone: 214-989-2305
Fax: 212-948-5020
Phone: 248-701-4168
melodie.s.langford@marsh.com

See ROCIP VI Claims Kit

B. the criteria for eligibility of enrollment into the Program:

See Section 00410 Statement of Bidder's Safety Experience
See Section 00425A Insurance Cost Form
See Section 00810 Supplemental General Conditions
See ROCIP VI Insurance Manual
See ROCIP VI Master Policies

C. a description of the Project site covered by the program coverages:

See ROCIP VI Insurance Manual Definitions Section – the Project site includes the (referenced Project Name) and adjacent or nearby areas where incidental operations are performed excluding permanent locations of any insured party, except the Owner.

See "Contract Documents" - The Project site is more particularly described in the Contract Documents, specifically including but not limited to the Project's Site Plan,

which is available along with the Bid Documents in the City's Plan Room and on its Website.

D. a summary of insurance coverages to be provided to the contractor under the program, including:

1. the policy form number and issuing organization, if the policy is a standardized insurance policy or, if the policy is not standardized, a sample policy form;

2. per occurrence and aggregate limits of insurance coverages and any sub-limits that may apply;

3. term of coverages for each limit and sublimit, if any; and

4. any material endorsements to the insurance policy described above;

See Section 00810 Supplemental General Conditions
See ROCIP VI Insurance Manual
See ROCIP VI Master Policies
See ROCIP VI Excess Coverage Policies

E. a summary of insurance coverages to be provided by the contractor;

See ROCIP VI Insurance Manual
See Section 00810 Supplemental General Conditions

F. instructions on how to include or exclude costs of insurance provided by the program in the person's proposal for work on the construction project;

See Section 00425A Insurance Cost Form
See Section 00810 Supplemental General Conditions

G. a description of the audit or claims procedures related to the program that may result in additional cost to a contractor, including the method of calculation for any assessment charged to a contractor related to the Owner's payment of a policy deductible and any other specific cost amounts; and

See Section 00425A Insurance Cost Form
See ROCIP VI Claims Kit
See ROCIP Safety Manual
See ROCIP VI Insurance Manual
See ROCIP VI Master Policies
See Section 00810 Supplemental General Conditions

H. a description of a contractor's duties related to reporting:

1. payroll and retention of documentation; and

2. claims and participation in safety inspections and incident reporting.

   See ROCIP VI Claims Kit
   See ROCIP Safety Manual
   See ROCIP VI Insurance Manual
   See Section 00700 General Conditions
   See Section 00810 Supplemental General Conditions

III CONTRACTOR MAY REQUEST COPY OF ROCIP INSURANCE POLICIES

A complete copy of the insurance policies that provides coverage for the contractor under the consolidated insurance program is posted online at the web address set forth above.

IV. The information required from the Owner may be requested in hard written copies or the Bidder/Contractor may use the Owner's internet website.

V. This Section 00425B will apply to an original construction contract with the Owner that is entered into on or after January 1, 2016. If a construction contract is entered into on or after January 1, 2016, the requirements in this Section 00425B apply to a related subcontract, purchase order contract, personal property lease agreement, consolidated insurance program, and insurance policy.

(Contractor and Subcontractor Affidavit, Signature Page, and Acknowledgment forms follow)

VI. CONTRACTOR ROCIP INFORMATION TO BE PROVIDED BEFORE ENTERING CONSTRUCTION CONTRACT

Prior to the Bidder/Contractor entering into a contract with the Owner, the Bidder/Contractor must acknowledge that it received the ROCIP Information. If the ROCIP Information is not provided, the Bidder/Contractor may elect not to enroll in ROCIP. If the Bidder/Contractor does not enroll in ROCIP, the Bidder/Contractor must provide the "Contractor Provided Insurance" required under Article 5 of the 00700 General Conditions and Paragraph 5.3.1 of the Section 00810 Supplemental General Conditions as a condition to continuing service under the Contract. If for any reason a Bidder/Contractor is not provided the ROCIP Information on a timely basis and the Owner subsequently provides the ROCIP Information to the Contractor, the Contractor may acknowledge its receipt and provide the Affidavit included in Section 00425B to the Owner prior to commencing Work on the Project. In submitting its bid, the Bidder/Contractor acknowledges receipt of the required ROCIP Information and represents that it has read and understands the ROCIP Information. In addition, the Bidder/Contractor is making its acknowledgment and representation specifically to comply with the requirements of Section 151.004 of the Texas Insurance Code.

Note: The Bidder must submit this Affidavit with its Bid.

CONTRACTOR AFFIDAVIT OF RECEIPT AND PROVISION OF ROCIP INFORMATION

As an authorized representative of the Bidder/Contractor, I acknowledge and agree that the Bidder/Contractor has received the required ROCIP Information referenced in Section 00425B of the Contract Documents for the referenced Project and has provided the ROCIP Information to the Owner. I certify that the representations and information in this Affidavit are true and correct to the best of my personal knowledge and belief and that I have made no willful misrepresentations in this Affidavit, nor have I withheld any relevant information. I am aware that the information given will be relied upon in entering into a subsequent Contract.

Bidder/Contractor:

_____
(business entity name)

Name: _____

Printed Name: _____
(Authorized Representative)

Date: _____, 20__

VII. ROCIP INFORMATION TO BE PROVIDED BY CONTRACTOR TO SUBCONTRACTORS AND SUB-SUBCONTRACTORS BEFORE ENTERING CONSTRUCTION SUBCONTRACT

At least 10 days prior to the Subcontractor or Sub-subcontractor (being collectively and respectively referred to as the "Subcontractor") entering into a contract with the Contractor or Subcontractor (being collectively and respectively referred to as the "Principal") for the referenced Project, the Principal must provide the ROCIP Information to the Subcontractor and the Subcontractor must acknowledge that it received the ROCIP Information. If the ROCIP Information is not provided, the Subcontractor may elect not to enroll in ROCIP.

If the Principal does not provide the ROCIP Information to its Subcontractor and obtain the Affidavit of Receipt and Provision of the ROCIP Information from its Subcontractor prior to entering into the applicable subcontract or sub-subcontract, the Principal is responsible to the Subcontractor under Section 151.006 of the Texas Insurance Code for the actual cost of providing the insurance required under Article 5 of the 00700 General Conditions and Paragraph 5.3.1 of the Section 00810 Supplemental General Conditions.

If for any reason a Subcontractor is not provided the ROCIP Information on a timely basis and the Principal subsequently provides the ROCIP Information to the Subcontractor, the Subcontractor may acknowledge its receipt and provide the Affidavit included in Section 00425B to the Principal prior to commencing Work on the Project.

In submitting its bid for its subcontract or sub-subcontract, the Subcontractor acknowledges receipt of the required ROCIP Information and represents that it has read and understands the ROCIP Information. In addition, the Subcontractor is making its acknowledgment and representation specifically to comply with the requirements of Section 151.004 of the Texas Insurance Code.

(Affidavit Signature Page and Acknowledgment follows)

Note: The following affidavit is a post-bid submittal and contract compliance requirement for each subcontract and sub-subcontracts of any tier entered into on this Project. A copy of each subcontractor affidavit must be provided to the Owner in accordance with the Owner's instructions.

SUBCONTRACTOR AFFIDAVIT OF RECEIPT
AND PROVISION OF ROCIP INFORMATION

As an authorized representative of the Subcontractor, I acknowledge and agree that the Subcontractor has received the required ROCIP Information referenced in Section 00425B of the Contract Documents and has provided the ROCIP Information to the Principal. I certify that the representations and information in this Affidavit are true and correct to the best of my personal knowledge and belief and that I have made no willful misrepresentations in this Affidavit, nor have I withheld any relevant information. I am aware that the information given will be relied upon in entering into any subsequent subcontract.

Subcontractor:

_____
(business entity name)

Name: _____

Printed Name: _____
(Authorized Representative)

Date: _____, 20__

Note: This affidavit is a post-bid submittal and contract compliance requirement for each subcontract and sub-subcontracts of any tier entered into on this Project. A copy of each subcontractor affidavit must be provided to the Owner in accordance with the Owner's instructions.

CITY OF AUSTIN

BIDDER'S AFFIDAVIT OF NON-COLLUSION,

NON-CONFLICT OF INTEREST, AND ANTI-LOBBYING FOR

Project Name:	**Onion Creek Fire/ EMS Station**
Project Location:	**1112 Old San Antonio Road, Austin, TX**
Solicitation #:	**CLMB326**
CIP ID #:	**6025.001**

State of Texas

County of Travis

The undersigned "Affiant" is a duly authorized representative of the bidder for the purpose of making this Affidavit, and, after being first duly sworn, has deposed and stated and hereby deposes and states, to the best of his or her personal knowledge and belief as follows:

The term **"Bidder"**, as used herein, includes the individual or business entity submitting the bid and for the purpose of this Affidavit includes the directors, officers, partners, managers, members, principals, owners, agents, representatives, employees, other parties in interest of the Bidder, and anyone or any entity acting for or on behalf of the Bidder, including a subcontractor in connection with this bid.

The terms **"City"** and **"Owner"** are synonymous.

1. **Anti-Collusion Statement.** The Bidder has not and will not in any way directly or indirectly:

   a. colluded, conspired, or agreed with any other person, firm, corporation, bidder or potential bidder to the amount of this bid or the terms or conditions of this bid.

   b. paid or agreed to pay any other person, firm, corporation bidder or potential bidder any money or anything of value in return for assistance in procuring or attempting to procure a contract or in return for establishing the prices in the attached bid or the bid of any other bidder.

2. **Preparation of Invitation for Bid and Contract Documents**. The Bidder has not received any compensation or a promise of compensation for participating in the preparation or development of the underlying bid or contract documents., In addition, the Bidder has not otherwise participated in the preparation or development of the underlying bid or contract documents, except to the extent of any comments or questions and responses in the bidding process, which are available to all bidders, so as to have an unfair advantage over other bidders, provided that the Bidder may have provided relevant product or process information to a consultant in the normal course of its business.

3. **Participation in Decision Making Process.** The Bidder has not participated in the evaluation of bids or proposals or other decision making process for this solicitation, and, if Bidder is awarded a contract hereunder, no individual, agent, representative, consultant or sub contractor or consultant associated with Bidder, who may have been involved in the evaluation or other decision making process for this solicitation, will have any direct or indirect financial interest in the Contract, provided that the Bidder may have provided relevant product or process information to a consultant in the normal course of its business.

4. **Present Knowledge.** Bidder is not presently aware of any potential or actual conflicts of interest regarding this solicitation, which either enabled Bidder to obtain an advantage over other bidders or would prevent Bidder from advancing the best interests of OWNER in the course of the performance of the Contract.

5. **City Code.** As provided in Sections 2-7-61 through 2-7-65 of the City Code, no individual with a substantial interest in Bidder is a City official or employee or is related to any City official or employee within the first or second degree of consanguinity or affinity.

6. **Chapter 176 Conflict of Interest Disclosure.** In accordance with Chapter 176 of the Texas Local Government Code, the Bidder:

   a. does not have an employment or other business relationship with any local government officer of OWNER or a family member of that officer that results in the officer of family member receiving taxable income;

   b. has not given a local government officer of OWNER one or more gifts, other than gifts of food lodging transportation or entertainment accepted as a guest, that have an aggregate value of more than $100 in the twelve month period preceding the date the officer becomes aware of the execution of the Contract or that OWNER is considering doing business with the Bidder; and

   c. does not have a family relationship with a local government officer of OWNER in the third degree of consanguinity or the second degree of affinity.

   As required by Chapter 176, Bidder must file the Conflicts of Interest Questionnaire with the Purchasing Department no later than the seventh business day after the commencement of contract discussions or negotiations with the City or the submission of a Bid, response to a request for proposals, or other writing related to a potential contract with OWNER. The questionnaire must be updated not later than the seventh day after the date of an event that would make a statement in the questionnaire inaccurate or incomplete. There are statutory penalties for failure to comply with Chapter 176.

7. **Anti-Lobbying Ordinance.** As set forth in paragraph 1.i. of the Instructions to Bidders Section 00100, between the date that the Invitation for Bid was issued and the date of full execution of the Contract, Bidder has not made and will not make a representation to a member of the City Council, a member of a City Board, or any other official, employee or agent of the City, other than the authorized contact person for the solicitation, except as permitted by the Ordinance.

If the Bidder cannot affirmatively swear and subscribe to the forgoing statements, the Bidder shall provide a detailed written explanation in the space provided below or, as necessary, on separate pages to be annexed hereto.

Signature: _____ Date: _____

Printed Name: _____

Title: _____

Firm/Entity: _____

Subscribed and sworn to before me this ____ day of _____, 20__.

_____ My Commission Expires _____
Notary Public

BIDDER'S EXPLANATION:

_____

END

LOCAL BUSINESS PRESENCE IDENTIFICATION FORM

Section 00461

(Criteria Item 9)

OFFEROR MUST SUBMIT THE FOLLOWING INFORMATION FOR EACH SUBCONTRACTOR (INCLUDING THE OFFEROR).

NOTE: ALL CONTRACTOR'S IDENTIFIED BELOW MUST BE USED ON THIS PROJECT AND MUST BE IDENTIFIED ON THE MBE/WBE COMPLIANCE PLAN.

OFFEROR:

COMPANY NAME:					
Street Address, Zip:					
Is your Company in the Austin Corporate City Limits (ACCL)?		Which applies to your ACCL office?		Has your business been at this location for the past 5 years?	
Yes	No	Headquarters	Branch Office	Yes	No

USE ADDITIONAL PAGES AS NECESSARY

SUBCONTRACTOR(S):

COMPANY NAME:					
Street Address, Zip:					
Is your Company in the Austin Corporate City Limits (ACCL)?		Which applies to your ACCL office?		Has your business been at this location for the past 5 years?	
Yes	No	Headquarters	Branch Office	Yes	No

COMPANY NAME:					
Street Address, Zip:					
Is your Company in the Austin Corporate City Limits (ACCL)?		Which applies to your ACCL office?		Has your business been at this location for the past 5 years?	
Yes	No	Headquarters	Branch Office	Yes	No

COMPANY NAME:					
Street Address, Zip:					
Is your Company in the Austin Corporate City Limits (ACCL)?		Which applies to your ACCL office?		Has your business been at this location for the past 5 years?	
Yes	No	Headquarters	Branch Office	Yes	No

Rev 06/03/16	**Local Business Presence / 00461CC0**	**Page 1 of 2**

ACKNOWLEDGEMENT

THE STATE OF TEXAS

COUNTY OF TRAVIS

I certify that my responses and the information provided on **Form 00461** are true and correct to the best of my personal knowledge and belief and that I have made no willful misrepresentations in this Section, nor have I withheld any relevant information in my statements and answers to questions. I am aware that any information given by me in this Section may be investigated and I hereby give my full permission for any such investigation and I fully acknowledge that any misrepresentations or omissions in my responses and information may cause my offer to be rejected.

OFFEROR'S FULL NAME AND ENTITY STATUS:

_____

_____
Signature, Authorized Representative of Offeror

_____
Title

_____
Date

Subscribed and sworn to before me this _____ day of _____, 20_____.

_____ My Commission Expires _____
Notary Public

END

NONRESIDENT BIDDER PROVISIONS

Section 00475

Project Name: **Onion Creek Fire/ EMS Station**
Project Location: **11112 Old San Antonio Road, Austin, TX**
Solicitation Number: **CLMB326**
CIP ID #: **6025.001**

Bidder must answer the following questions in accordance with Vernon's Texas Statutes and Codes Annotated Government Code § 2252.002, as amended:

A. Is the bidder that is making and submitting this bid a "resident bidder" or a "non-resident bidder"?

Answer: _____

(1) Texas Resident Bidder - A bidder whose principal place of business is in Texas and includes a Contractor whose ultimate parent company or majority owner has its principal place of business in Texas.

(2) Nonresident Bidder - A bidder who is not a Texas Resident Bidder.

B. If the Bidder is a "Nonresident Bidder", does the state, in which the Nonresident Bidder's principal place of business is located, have a law requiring a Nonresident Bidder of that state to bid a certain amount or percentage under the bid of a Resident Bidder of that state in order for the nonresident bidder of that state to be awarded a contract on his bid in such state?

Answer: Yes or No Which state? _____

If the answer to Question B is "yes", then what amount or percentage must a Texas Resident Bidder bid under the bid price of a Resident Bidder of that state in order to be awarded a contract on such bid in said state?

Answer: _____

_____
Signature

END

STATE OF TEXAS
COUNTY OF TRAVIS

THIS AGREEMENT is made and entered into this _____ day of _____, 20____, by and between the City of Austin, Texas, a municipal corporation, organized and existing under laws of State of Texas, acting through its City Manager or other duly authorized designee, hereinafter referred to as the "OWNER," and _____, of the City of _____, County of _____, and State of _____, hereinafter referred to as the "CONTRACTOR."

In consideration of the promises, performances, payments and agreements set forth herein CONTRACTOR hereby agrees to commence and complete the following Project:
_____
_____
_____
and all Work in accordance with the Project Manual, Drawings and Addenda, which are incorporated herein by reference and made a part hereof and which have been prepared by _____ and approved by OWNER, and OWNER agrees to pay the CONTRACTOR the total amount of:

$_____ _____
(Figures) **(Words)**

The CONTRACTOR hereby agrees to commence work on the date specified in the written "Notice to Proceed" to be issued by the OWNER and to **(substantially) (finally)** complete construction of the improvements, as required by the Project Manual, Drawings and Addenda for the Work within _____ (___) (**Working**) (**Calendar**) Days. **<If a Substantial Completion date has been specified, the CONTRACTOR further agrees to reach Final Completion within _____ ( ) (Working) (Calendar) Days after Substantial Completion as required by the Project Manual, Drawings and Addenda for the work.>** Waiver of any breach of this Contract shall not constitute waiver of any subsequent breach.

In consideration of the award and execution of this Contract, and in consideration of the waiver of its right to attorney's fees by the OWNER, the CONTRACTOR knowingly and intentionally waives its right to attorney's fees under Section 271.153 of the Texas Local Government Code in any administrative proceeding, alternative dispute resolution proceeding, or litigation arising out of or connected to this Contract.

OWNER agrees to pay CONTRACTOR from available funds for performance of the Contract in accordance with the Bid and the provisions of the Contract Documents, subject to additions and deductions, as provided therein.

The OWNER's payment obligations are payable only and solely from funds available for the purposes of this Agreement.

Although drafted by OWNER, this Agreement, in event of any disputes over its meaning or application, shall be interpreted fairly and reasonably, and neither more strongly for nor against either party.

SAMPLE

OWNER

By:_____
City of Austin (Signature)

_____
Date

_____
Title of Signatory

APPROVED AS TO FORM:

By:_____
Law Department

_____
Date

§ CONTRACTOR
§
§ By:_____
§ (Signature)
§
§ _____
§ Date
§ _____
§ Printed Name of Signatory
§
§ _____
§ Title of Signatory, Authorized Representative
§
§ ATTEST (as applicable)
§
§_____
§ Secretary of Corporate Bidder or Corporate General Partner *

*Copy of Corporate Resolution and minutes with certificate of officer of CONTRACTOR as to authority of signatory to bind CONTRACTOR is to be signed, dated no earlier than one week before the date of award of Contract, and attached to this document.

END

SAMPLE

PERFORMANCE BOND

Section 00610

STATE OF TEXAS Bond No. _____

COUNTY OF _____ C.I.P. ID No. 6025.001

Project Name Onion Creek Fire/ EMS Station

Know All Men By These Presents: That _____ of the City of _____, County of _____, and State of _____, as Principal, and _____, a solvent company authorized under laws of the State of Texas to act as surety on bonds for principals, are held and firmly bound unto _____ (OWNER), in the penal sum of_____ U.S. Dollars ($ _____U.S.) for payment whereof, well and truly to be made, said Principal and Surety bind themselves and their heirs, administrators, executors, successors and assigns, jointly and severally, by these presents:

Conditions of this Bond are such that, whereas, Principal has entered into a certain written contract with OWNER, dated the _____ day of _____, _____, which Agreement is hereby referred to and made a part hereof as fully and to the same extent as if copied at length herein.

Now, therefore, the condition of this obligation is such, that if said Principal shall faithfully perform said Agreement and shall in all respects duly and faithfully observe and perform all and singular covenants, conditions and agreements in and by said contract agreed and covenanted by Principal to be observed and performed, and according to true intent and meaning of said Agreement hereto annexed, then this obligation shall be void; otherwise to remain in full force and effect. If OWNER notifies Principal and Surety the OWNER is considering declaring Principal in default, Surety agrees to meet with OWNER and Principal no later than fifteen days after receipt of such notice to discuss methods of performing the Work of the Contract.

Provided, however, that this bond is executed pursuant to provisions of Chapter 2253, Texas Government Code as amended and all liabilities on this bond shall be determined in accordance with provisions of said Article to same extent as if it were copied at length herein.

Surety, for value received, stipulates and agrees that no change in Contract Time or Contract Amount shall in anywise affect its obligation on this bond, and it does hereby waive notice of any such change in Contract Time or Contract Amount.

In witness whereof, said Principal and Surety have signed and sealed this instrument this _____day of _____, _____.

_____	_____
Principal	Surety
By_____	By_____
(Signature)	(Signature)
Title_____	Title_____
Address_____	Address_____
_____	_____
_____	_____

Telephone_____Fax_____

E-Mail Address _____

Name and address of Resident Agent of Surety:

_____

_____

Note: Bond shall be issued by a solvent Surety company authorized to do business in Texas, and shall meet any other requirements established by law or by OWNER pursuant to applicable law. A copy of surety agent's "Power of Attorney" must be attached hereto.

END

PAYMENT BOND

Section 00620

STATE OF TEXAS Bond No. _____

COUNTY OF _____ C.I.P. ID No. 6025.001

Project Name Onion Creek Fire/ EMS Station

Know All Men By These Presents: That _____ of the City of _____, County of _____, and State of _____, as Principal, and _____, a solvent company authorized under laws of the State of Texas to act as surety on bonds for principals, are held and firmly bound unto _____ (OWNER), and all Subcontractors, workers, laborers, mechanics and suppliers as their interests may appear, all of whom shall have right to sue upon this bond in the penal sum of _____ U.S. Dollars ($ _____U.S.) for payment whereof, well and truly to be made, said Principal and Surety bind themselves and their heirs, administrators, executors, successors and assigns, jointly and severally, by these presents:

Conditions of this Bond are such that, whereas, Principal has entered into a certain written contract with OWNER, dated the _____ day of _____, _____, which Agreement is hereby referred to and made a part hereof as fully and to the same extent as if copied at length herein.

Now, therefore, condition of this obligation is such, that if the said Principal shall well and truly pay all Subcontractors, workers, laborers, mechanics, and suppliers, all monies to them owing by said Principals for subcontracts, work, labor, equipment, supplies and materials done and furnished for the construction of improvement of said Agreement, then this obligation shall be and become null and void; otherwise to remain in full force and effect.

Provided, however, that this bond is executed pursuant to provisions of Chapter 2253, Texas Government Code as amended and all liabilities on this bond shall be determined in accordance with provisions of said Article to same extent as if it were copied at length herein.

Surety, for value received, stipulates and agrees that no change in Contract Time or Contract Amount shall in anywise affect its obligation on this bond, and it does hereby waive notice of any such change in Contract Time or Contract Amount.

In witness whereof, said Principal and Surety have signed and sealed this instrument this _____day of _____, _____.

_____	_____
Principal	Surety
By_____	By_____
(Signature)	(Signature)
Title_____	Title_____
Address_____	Address_____
_____	_____
_____	_____
	Telephone_____Fax_____
	E-Mail Address _____

Name and address of Resident Agent of Surety:

_____

_____

Note: Bond shall be issued by a solvent Surety company authorized to do business in Texas, and shall meet any other requirements established by law or by OWNER pursuant to applicable law. A copy of surety agent's "Power of Attorney" must be attached hereto.

END

CIP ID Number:

City of Austin, Texas
Equal Employment/Fair Housing Office

To: City of Austin, Texas, ("OWNER")

I hereby certify that our firm conforms to the Code of the City of Austin Section 5-4-2 as reiterated below:

Chapter 5-4. Discrimination in Employment by City Contractors.

Sec. 4-2 Discriminatory Employment Practices Prohibited. (B) As an Equal Employment Opportunity (EEO) employer, the Contractor will conduct its personnel activities in accordance with established federal, state and local EEO laws and regulations and agrees:

(1) Not to engage in any discriminatory employment practice defined in this chapter.

(2) To take affirmative action to ensure that applicants are employed, and that employees are treated during employment, without discrimination being practiced against them as defined in this chapter. Such affirmative action shall include, but not be limited to: all aspects of employment, including hiring, placement, upgrading, transfer, demotion, recruitment, recruitment advertising; selection for training and apprenticeship, rates of pay or other forms of compensation, and layoff or termination.

(3) To post in conspicuous places, available to employees and applicants for employment, notices to be provided by OWNER setting forth the provisions of this chapter.

(4) To state in all solicitations or advertisements for employees placed by or on behalf of Contractor, that all qualified applicants will receive consideration for employment without regard to race, creed, color, religion, national origin, sexual orientation, gender identity, disability, veteran status, sex or age.

(5) To obtain a written statement from any labor union or labor organization furnishing labor or service to Contractors in which said union or organization has agreed not to engage in any discriminatory employment practices as defined in this chapter and to take affirmative action to implement policies and provisions of this chapter.

(6) To cooperate fully with OWNER's Equal Employment/Fair Housing Office in connection with any investigation or conciliation effort of said Equal Employment/Fair Housing Office to ensure that the purpose of the provisions against discriminatory employment practices are being carried out.

(7) To require compliance with provisions of this chapter by all subcontractors having fifteen or more employees who hold any subcontract providing for expenditure of $2,000.00 or more in connection with any contract with OWNER subject to the terms of this chapter. .

For the purposes of this Bid and any resulting Contract, Contractor adopts the provisions of the City's Minimum Standard Nondiscrimination and Non-Retaliation Policy as set forth below.

City of Austin

Minimum Standard Non-Discrimination and Non-Retaliation in Employment Policy

As an Equal Employment Opportunity (EEO) employer, the Contractor will conduct its personnel activities in accordance with established federal, state and local EEO laws and regulations.

The Contractor will not discriminate against any applicant or employee based on race, creed, color, national origin, sex, age, religion, veteran status, gender identity, disability, or sexual orientation. This policy covers all aspects of employment, including hiring, placement, upgrading, transfer, demotion, recruitment, recruitment advertising, selection for training and apprenticeship, rates of pay or other forms of compensation, and layoff or termination.

The Contractor agrees to prohibit retaliation, discharge or otherwise discrimination against any employee or applicant for employment who has inquired about, discussed or disclosed their compensation.

Further, employees who experience discrimination, sexual harassment, or another form of harassment should immediately report it to their supervisor. If this is not a suitable avenue for addressing their complaint, employees are advised to contact another member of management or their human resources representative. No employee shall be discriminated against, harassed, intimidated, nor suffer any reprisal as a result of reporting a violation of this policy. Furthermore, any employee, supervisor, or manager who becomes aware of any such discrimination or harassment should immediately report it to executive management or the human resources office to ensure that such conduct does not continue.

Contractor agrees that to the extent of any inconsistency, omission, or conflict with its current non-discrimination and non- retaliation employment policy, the Contractor has expressly adopted the provisions of the City's Minimum Non-Discrimination Policy contained in Section 5-4-2 of the City Code as set forth above and the City's Non-Retaliation Policy, as the Contractor's Non-Discrimination and Non-Retaliation Policy or as an amendment to such Policy and such provisions are intended to not only supplement the Contractor's policy, but will also supersede the Contractor's policy to the extent of any conflict.

UPON CONTRACT AWARD, THE CONTRACTOR SHALL PROVIDE A COPY TO THE CITY OF THE CONTRACTOR'S NON-DISCRIMINATION AND NON-RETALIAITON POLICY ON COMPANY LETTERHEAD, WHICH CONFORMS IN FORM, SCOPE, AND CONTENT TO THE CITY'S MINIMUM NON-DISCRIMINATION AND NON-RETALIATION POLICY, AS SET FORTH HEREIN, ***OR*** *THIS NON-DISCRIMINATION AND NON-RETALIATION POLICY, WHICH HAS BEEN ADOPTED BY THE CONTRACTOR FOR ALL PURPOSES (THE FORM OF WHICH HAS BEEN APPROVED BY THE CITY'S EQUAL EMPLOYMENT/FAIR HOUSING OFFICE), WILL BE CONSIDERED THE CONTRACTOR'S NON-DISCRIMINATION AND NON-RETALIATION POLICY WITHOUT THE REQUIREMENT OF A SEPARATE SUBMITTAL. (http://austintexas.gov/page/bid-docs).*

Sanctions:

Our firm understands that non-compliance with Chapter 5-4 may result in sanctions, including termination of the contract and suspension or debarment from participation in future City contracts until deemed compliant with the requirements of Chapter 5-4.

Term:

The Contractor agrees that this Section 00630 Non-Discrimination and Non-Retaliation Certificate or the Contractor's separate conforming policy, which the Contractor has executed and filed with the Owner, will remain in force and effect for one year from the date of filing. The Contractor further agrees that, in consideration of the receipt of continued Contract payments, the Contractor's Non-Discrimination Policy will automatically renew from year-to-year for the term of the underlying Contract.

Dated this _____ day of _____, _____.

CONTRACTOR _____

Authorized Signature _____

Title _____

END

During the performance of this contract, the contractor, for itself, its assignees and successors in interest (hereinafter referred to as the "contractor") agrees as follows:

1. Compliance with Regulations: The contractor shall comply with the Regulations relative to nondiscrimination in Federally-assisted programs of the Department of Transportation (hereinafter, "DOT") Title 49, Code of Federal Regulations, Part 21, as they may be amended from time to time, (hereinafter referred to as the Regulations), which are herein incorporated by reference and made a part of this contract.

2. Nondiscrimination: The contractor, with regard to the work performed by it during the contract, shall not discriminate on the grounds of race, color, or national origin in the selection and retention of subcontractors, including procurements of materials and leases of equipment. The contractor shall not participate either directly or indirectly in the discrimination prohibited by section 21.5 of the Regulations, including employment practices when the contract covers a program set forth in Appendix B of the Regulations.

3. Solicitations for Subcontracts, Including Procurements of Materials and Equipment: In all solicitations either by competitive bidding or negotiation made by the contract for work to be performed under a subcontract, including procurements of materials or leases of equipment, each potential subcontractor or supplier shall be notified by the contractor of the contractor's obligations under this contract and the Regulations relative to nondiscrimination on the grounds of race, color, or national origin.

4. Information and Reports: The contractor shall provide all information and reports required by the Regulations or directives issued pursuant thereto, and shall permit access to its book, records, accounts, other sources of information, and its facilities as may be determined by the Recipient or the Texas Department of Transportation to be pertinent to ascertain compliance with such Regulations, orders and instructions. Where any information required of a contractor is in the exclusive possession of another who fails or refuses to furnish this information the contractor shall so certify to the Recipient, or the Texas Department of Transportation as appropriate, and shall set forth what efforts it has made to obtain the information.

5. Sanctions for Noncompliance: In the event of the contractor's noncompliance with the nondiscrimination provisions of this contract, the Recipient shall impose such contract sanctions as it or the Texas Department of Transportation may determine to be appropriate, including, but not limited to:

   (a) withholding of payments to the contractor under the contract until the contractor complies, and or (b) cancellation, termination or suspension of the contract, in whole or in part.

6. Incorporation of Provisions: The contractor shall include the provisions of paragraphs (1) through (6) in every subcontract, including procurements of materials and leases of equipment, unless exempt by the Regulations, or directives issued pursuant thereto. The contractor shall take such action with respect to any subcontract or procurement as the Recipient or the Texas Department of Transportation may direct as a means of enforcing such provisions including sanctions for non-compliance: Provided, however, that, in the event a contractor becomes involved in, or is threatened with, litigation with a subcontractor or supplier as a result of such direction, the contractor may request the Recipient to enter into such litigation to protect the

interests of the Recipient, and, in addition, the contractor may request the United States to enter into such litigation to protect the interests of the United States.

(DOT 1050.2, 08/24/71)

Contractor's full name and entity status:

_____

Signature, Authorized Representative of Contractor

_____

Title

_____

Date

END

CERTIFICATE OF INSURANCE

Section 00650

This Certificate shall be completed by a licensed insurance agent:

Name and Address of Agency:

_____

_____

_____

Phone: _____ / _____

Name and Address of Insured:

_____

_____

_____

Phone: _____ / _____

Prime or Sub-Contractor?: _____

Name of Prime Contractor, if different from Insured: _____

City of Austin Reference:
Project Name: Onion Creek Fire/ EMS Station
C.I.P. No.: 6025.001
Project Location: 11112 Old San Antonio Rd

_____

Managing Dept.: Public Works
Contract No.: _____
Project Mgr.: Craig Russell

Insurers Affording Coverages:

Insurer A:

_____

Insurer B:

_____

Insurer C:

_____

Insurer D:

_____

INSR LTR	TYPE OF INSURANCE	POLICY NUMBER	POLICY EFFE-CTIVE DATE (MM/DD/YYYY)	POLICY EXPIR-ATION DATE (MM/DD/YYYY)	LIMITS OF LIABILITY	
	Commercial General Liability Policy As defined in the Policy, does the Policy provide:				Each Occurrence	$
					General Aggregate	$
	☐ Yes ☐ No -- Completed Operations/Products				Completed Operations /Products Aggregate	$
	☐ Yes ☐ No -- Contractual Liability				Personal & Advertising Injury	$
	☐ Yes ☐ No -- Explosion				Deductible or Self Insured Retention	$
	☐ Yes ☐ No -- Collapse					
	☐ Yes ☐ No -- Underground					
	☐ Yes ☐ No -- Contractors/ Subcontractors Work					
	☐ Yes ☐ No -- Aggregate Limits per Project Form CG 2503					
	☐ Yes ☐ No -- Additional Insured Form – CG 2010					
	☐ Yes ☐ No -- 30 Day Notice of Cancellation Form – CG 0205					
	☐ Yes ☐ No -- Waiver of Subrogation Form – CG 2404					
	Pollution/ Environmental Impairment Policy				Occurrence	$
					Aggregate	$

INSR LTR	TYPE OF INSURANCE	POLICY NUMBER	POLICY EFFE-CTIVE DATE (MM/DD/YYYY)	POLICY EXPIR-ATION DATE (MM/DD/YYYY)	LIMITS OF LIABILITY	
	Auto Liability Policy As defined in the Policy, does the Policy provide:				CSL	$
					Bodily Injury (Per Accident)	$
	☐ Yes ☐ No -- Any Auto				Bodily Injury (Per Person)	$
	☐ Yes ☐ No -- All Owned Autos				Property Damage (Per Accident)	$
	☐ Yes ☐ No -- Non-Owned Autos					
	☐ Yes ☐ No -- Hired Autos					
	☐ Yes ☐ No -- Waiver of Subrogation – CA0444					
	☐ Yes ☐ No -- 30 Day Notice of Cancellation – CA0244					
	☐ Yes ☐ No -- Additional Insured – CA2048					
	☐ Yes ☐ No -- MCS 90					
	Excess Liability ☐ Umbrella Form ☐ Excess Liability Follow Form				Occurrence	$
					Aggregate	$
	Workers Compensation and Employers Liability As defined in the Policy, does the Policy provide:				☐ Statutory	
					Each Accident	$
	☐ Yes ☐ No -- Waiver of Subrogation – WC420304				Disease – Policy Limit	$
	☐ Yes ☐ No -- 30 Day Notice of Cancellation – WC420601				Disease – Each Employee	$
	Is a Builders Risk or Installation Insurance Policy provided? ☐ Yes ☐ No					$
	☐ Yes ☐ No -- Is the City shown as loss payee/mortgagee?					
	Professional Liability As defined in the Policy, does the Policy provide:				Each Claim	$
	☐ Yes ☐ No -- 30 Day Notice of Cancellation Retroactive Date: _____				Deductible or Self Insured Retention	$

This form is for informational purposes only and certifies that policies of insurance listed above have been issued to insured named above and are in force at this time. Not withstanding any requirements, term or condition of any contract or other document with respect to which this certificate may be issued or may pertain, insurance afforded by policies described herein is subject to all terms, exclusions and conditions of such policies.

CERTIFICATE HOLDER:

City of Austin
Capital Contracting Office
P.O. Box 1088
Austin, Texas 78767

DATE ISSUED: _____

_____
AUTHORIZED REPRESENTATIVE SIGNATURE
Licensed Insurance Agent

END

TEXAS SALES AND USE TAX EXEMPTION CERTIFICATE

Section 00670

City of Austin, Texas
P.O. Box 1088
Austin, Texas 78767

CONTRACTOR/PURCHASER: _____

Street Address: _____

City, State, ZIP Code: _____

PROJECT: Onion Creek Fire/ EMS Station

Project Manager: Craig Russell

FDU No.: 8116 8307 A003

CIP ID No.6025.001

Description of items to be purchased or as described on the attached order or invoice:

_____

_____

The Contractor may purchase all labor, materials, supplies, and equipment to be incorporated in the City of Austin realty, including easements, or completely consumed at the Project jobsite and services required by or integral to the performance of the contract for the Project without paying sales or use tax in accordance with State Comptroller Rule 3.291.

Contractor/Purchaser claims this exemption for the following reason: This contract is to be performed for the City of Austin, a tax exempt entity under the Texas Tax Code.

I understand that I will be liable for payment of sales and use taxes which may become due for failure to comply with the provisions of the Tax Code. I also understand that it is a criminal offense to give an exemption certificate to the contractor for taxable items that I know, at the time of purchase, will be used in a manner other than that expressed in this certificate and depending on the amount of tax evaded, the offense may range from a Class B misdemeanor to a felony of the second degree.

City of Austin, Texas	Title	Date
Elaine Hart		
ELAINE HART	CHIEF FINANCIAL OFFICER	March 20, 2014

CONTRACTOR/PURCHASER: _____

By: _____

Title: _____

Date: _____

NOTE: This certificate cannot be issued for the purchase, lease, or rental of a motor vehicle. THIS CERTIFICATE DOES NOT REQUIRE A NUMBER TO BE VALID. Sales and Use Tax "Exemption Numbers" or "Tax Exempt" Numbers do not exist. This certificate should be furnished to the supplier. Do not send the completed certificate to the Comptroller of Public Accounts.

End

NON-USE OF ASBESTOS AFFIDAVIT (CONTRACTOR PRIOR TO CONSTRUCTION)

Section 00680

STATE OF TEXAS
COUNTY OF TRAVIS

BEFORE ME, the undersigned authority, personally appeared the Affiant who, being by me first duly sworn, upon oath deposed and stated:

"My name is _____, hereinafter known as Affiant.

"I am over the age of 18 years and I have never been convicted of a crime. I am the _____ of _____ hereinafter known as CONTRACTOR.

"I am fully competent to make this affidavit. I have personal knowledge of the facts set forth below and they are all true and correct.

"WHEREAS CONTRACTOR has submitted a bid to the City of Austin as the Prime CONTRACTOR and anticipates being awarded a contract for the construction of _____ _____, located at _____, Austin, Texas, hereinafter known as Project, for the City of Austin, Texas, hereinafter known as OWNER, and

"WHEREAS asbestos in a dust form is a recognized health hazard, and

"WHEREAS the OWNER desires not to have any asbestos containing materials used or incorporated into the construction of the Project;

"THEREFORE the CONTRACTOR affirms and understands the following:

1. The CONTRACTOR, any person, firm or organization representing or represented by the CONTRACTOR, or employed by the CONTRACTOR shall not cause or allow any material to be incorporated into the construction of the project, or allow any building material on the project site that is an asbestos containing material or any other material defined as containing asbestos by any laws, rules or regulations promulgated by the United States Government, the State of Texas or any governmental organization or agency operating under the authority of either of those entities.
2. Realizing that there might be some materials in which a satisfactory non-asbestos containing material could not be obtained, the Consultant has received prior approval from the OWNER before specifying any such asbestos containing material. Those approved materials are the only asbestos containing materials that are exempt from the above prohibition.
3. The CONTRACTOR certifies and affirms their understanding that if any asbestos containing materials not approved by the City of Austin for inclusion into the Project, are determined, as a result of any inspection and sample analysis performed by an individual(s) and/or firm(s) certified and/or licensed to perform such inspection by the United States Government and/or the State of Texas, to have been incorporated into the construction of the Project, or brought onto the site of the Project, the OWNER shall look to the CONTRACTOR for reimbursement of any and all costs incurred in the removal and/or other abatement of said asbestos containing materials.

4. CONTRACTOR further understands that OWNER shall also look to the CONTRACTOR for any and all damages to OWNER which result from the inability of the OWNER to use any portion or all of the Project due to the incorporation of asbestos containing materials that have not been approved by OWNER.
5. CONTRACTOR further understands that OWNER will pursue reimbursement of any said cost and compensation for any said damages from the CONTRACTOR by any and every means within OWNER's right and power.

Signature of Affiant:_____

STATE OF TEXAS
COUNTY OF TRAVIS

ON _____, 20_____, personally appeared _____ _____ and been duly sworn by me, subscribed to the foregoing affidavit and has stated that the facts stated therein are true and correct.

_____
Notary Public, State of Texas

_____
Printed Name of Notary

My Commission Expires: _____

End

NON-USE OF ASBESTOS AFFIDAVIT (CONTRACTOR AFTER CONSTRUCTION)

Section 00681

STATE OF TEXAS
COUNTY OF TRAVIS

BEFORE ME, the undersigned authority, personally appeared the Affiant who, being by me first duly sworn, upon oath deposed and stated:

"My name is _____, hereinafter known as Affiant.

"I am over the age of 18 years and I have never been convicted of a crime. I am the _____ of _____ hereinafter known as CONTRACTOR.

"I am fully competent to make this affidavit. I have personal knowledge of the facts set forth below and they are all true and correct.

"WHEREAS CONTRACTOR was awarded a Contract for, and was the Prime CONTRACTOR for the construction of _____ _____, located at _____, Austin, Texas, hereinafter known as Project, for the City of Austin, Texas, hereinafter known as OWNER, and

"WHEREAS asbestos in a dust form is a recognized health hazard, and

"WHEREAS the OWNER desires not to have any asbestos containing materials used or incorporated into the construction of the Project;

"THEREFORE the CONTRACTOR affirms and understands the following:

1. The CONTRACTOR, any person, firm or organization representing or represented by the CONTRACTOR, or employed by the CONTRACTOR has not caused or allowed any material to be incorporated into the construction of the project, or allowed any building material on the project site that is an asbestos containing material or any other material defined as containing asbestos by any laws, rules or regulation promulgated by the United States Government, the State of Texas or any governmental organization or agency operating under the authority of either of those entities.

2. Realizing that there were some materials in which a satisfactory non-asbestos containing material could not be obtained, the Consultant received prior approval from the OWNER before specifying any such asbestos containing material. Those approved materials were the only asbestos containing materials incorporated into the construction of the Project and are listed below, with their locations:

   _____

   _____

   _____

3. The CONTRACTOR certifies and affirms their understanding that if any asbestos containing materials not approved by the City of Austin for inclusion into the Project, are determined, as a result of any inspection and sample analysis performed by an individual(s) and/or firm(s) certified and/or licensed to perform such inspection by the United States Government and/or the State of Texas, to have been incorporated into the

construction of the Project, or brought onto the site of the Project, the OWNER shall look to the CONTRACTOR for reimbursement of any and all costs incurred in the removal and/or other abatement of said asbestos containing materials.

4. CONTRACTOR further understands that OWNER shall also look to the CONTRACTOR for any and all damages to OWNER which result from the inability of the OWNER to use any portion or all of the Project due to the incorporation of asbestos containing materials that have not been approved by OWNER.

5. CONTRACTOR further understands that OWNER will pursue reimbursement of any said cost and compensation for any said damages from the CONTRACTOR by any and every means within OWNER's right and power.

Signature of Affiant:_____

STATE OF TEXAS
COUNTY OF TRAVIS

ON _____, 20_____, personally appeared _____ _____ and been duly sworn by me, subscribed to the foregoing affidavit and has stated that the facts stated therein are true and correct.

_____
Notary Public, State of Texas

_____
Printed Name of Notary

My Commission Expires: _____

End

General Conditions Table of Contents

ARTICLE 1 - DEFINITIONS 3
ARTICLE 2 - PRELIMINARY MATTERS 6
ARTICLE 3 - CONTRACT DOCUMENTS: INTENT, AMENDING, REUSE 9
ARTICLE 4 - AVAILABILITY OF LANDS; SUBSURFACE AND PHYSICAL CONDITIONS; REFERENCE POINTS 10
ARTICLE 5 - BONDS AND INSURANCE 13
ARTICLE 6 - CONTRACTOR'S RESPONSIBILITIES 15
ARTICLE 7 - OTHER WORK 27
ARTICLE 8 - OWNER'S RESPONSIBILITIES 27
ARTICLE 9 - ENGINEER/ARCHITECT'S STATUS DURING CONSTRUCTION 28
ARTICLE 10 - CHANGES IN THE WORK 30
ARTICLE 11 - CHANGE OF CONTRACT AMOUNT 32
ARTICLE 12 - CHANGE OF CONTRACT TIMES 34
ARTICLE 13 - TESTS AND INSPECTIONS; CORRECTION, REMOVAL OR ACCEPTANCE OF DEFECTIVE WORK 37
ARTICLE 14 - PAYMENTS TO CONTRACTOR AND COMPLETION 40
ARTICLE 15 - SUSPENSION OF WORK AND TERMINATION 45
ARTICLE 16 - DISPUTE RESOLUTION 48
ARTICLE 17 - MISCELLANEOUS 50

ARTICLE 1 – DEFINITIONS

Whenever used in these General Conditions or in the other Contract Documents the following terms have the meanings indicated which are applicable to both the singular and plural thereof:

1.1 **Addendum -** Written instruments issued by the Contract Awarding Authority which clarify, correct or change the bidding requirements or the Contract Documents prior to the Due Date. "Addenda" is the plural form of Addendum.

1.2 **Agreement -** Prescribed form, Section 00500.

1.3 **Alternative Dispute Resolution -** The process by which a disputed Claim may be settled if the OWNER and the CONTRACTOR cannot reach an agreement between themselves, as an alternative to litigation.

1.4 **Bid -** A complete, properly signed response to an Invitation for Bid that, if accepted, would bind the Bidder to perform the resultant Contract.

1.5 **Bidder -** A person, firm, or entity that submits a Bid in response to a Solicitation. Any Bidder may be represented by an agent after submitting evidence demonstrating the agent's authority. The agent cannot certify as to his own agency status.

1.6 **Bid Documents -** The advertisement or Invitation for Bids, instructions to Bidders, the Bid form, the Contract Documents and Addenda.

1.7 **Calendar Day -** Any day of the week; no days being excepted. Work on Saturdays, Sundays, and/or Legal Holidays shall be coordinated with OWNER.

1.8 **Change Directive -** A written directive to CONTRACTOR, signed by OWNER, ordering a change in the Work and stating a proposed basis for adjustment, if any, in the Contract Amount or Contract Time, or both. A Change Directive may be used in the absence of total agreement on the terms of a Change Order. A Change Directive does not change the Contract Amount or Contract Time, but is evidence that the parties expect that the change directed or documented by a Change Directive will be incorporated in a subsequently issued Change Order.

1.9 **Change Orders -** Written agreements entered into between CONTRACTOR and OWNER authorizing an addition, deletion, or revision to the Contract, issued on or after the Execution Date of the Agreement.

1.10 **Claim -** A written demand seeking, as a matter of right, adjustment or interpretation of Contract terms, payment of money, extension of time or other relief with respect to the terms of the Contract.

1.11 **Contract -** The binding legal agreement between the OWNER and the CONTRACTOR. The Contract represents the entire and integrated agreement between OWNER and CONTRACTOR for performance of the Work, as evidenced by the Contract Documents.

1.12 **Contract Amount -** The moneys payable by OWNER to CONTRACTOR for completion of the Work in accordance with the Contract Documents.

1.13 **Contract Awarding Authority -** A City department authorized to enter into Contracts on behalf of the City.

1.14 **Contract Documents -** Project Manual, Drawings, Addenda and Change Orders.

1.15 **Contract Time -** The number of days allowed for completion of the Work as defined by the Contract. When any period is referred to in days, it will be computed to exclude the first and include the last day of such period. A day of twenty-four hours measured from midnight to the next midnight will constitute a day.

1.16 **CONTRACTOR -** The individual, firm, corporation, or other business entity with whom OWNER has entered into the Contract for performance of the Work.

1.17 Critical Path - The longest series of tasks that runs consecutively from the beginning to the end of the project, as determined by duration and workflow sequence. This longest path sets the managerial standard for how quickly a project can be completed, given appropriate resources.

1.18 Drawings - Those portions of the Contract Documents which are graphic representations of the scope, extent and character of the Work to be furnished and performed by CONTRACTOR and which have been approved by OWNER. Drawings may include plans, elevations, sections, details, schedules and diagrams. Shop Drawings are not Drawings as so defined.

1.19 Due Date - The date and time specified for receipt of Bids.

1.20 Engineer/Architect (E/A) - The OWNER's design professional identified as such in the Contract. The titles of "Architect/Engineer," "Architect" and "Engineer" used in the Contract Documents shall read the same as Engineer/Architect (E/A). Nothing contained in the Contract Documents shall create any contractual or agency relationship between E/A and CONTRACTOR.

1.21 Equal - The terms "equal" or "approved equal" shall have the same meaning.

1.22 Execution Date - Date of last signature of the parties to the Agreement.

1.23 Field Order - A written order issued by Owner's Representative which orders minor changes in the Work and which does not involve a change in the Contract Amount or the Contract Time.

1.24 Final Completion - The point in time when OWNER determines that all Work has been completed and final payment to CONTRACTOR will be made in accordance with the Contract Documents.

1.25 Force Account - a basis of payment for the direct performance of Work with payment based on the actual cost of the labor, equipment and materials furnished and consideration for overhead and profit as set forth in Section 11.5.

1.26 Inspector - The authorized representative of any regulatory agency that has jurisdiction over any portion of the Work.

1.27 Invitation for Bid (IFB) - a Solicitation requesting pricing for a specified Good or Service which has been advertised for Bid in a newspaper and/or the Internet.

1.28 Legal Holidays

1.28.1 The following are recognized by the OWNER:

Holiday	Date Observed
New Year's Day	January 1
Martin Luther King, Jr.'s Birthday	Third Monday in January
President's Day	Third Monday in February
Memorial Day	Last Monday in May
Independence Day	July 4
Labor Day	First Monday in September
Veteran's Day	November 11
Thanksgiving Day	Fourth Thursday in November
Friday after Thanksgiving	Friday after Thanksgiving
Christmas Eve	December 24
Christmas Day	December 25

1.28.2 If a Legal Holiday falls on Saturday, it will be observed on the preceding Friday. If a Legal Holiday falls on Sunday, it will be observed on the following Monday.

1.28.3 Christmas Eve is observed only if it falls on a Monday through Thursday. If Christmas Eve falls on a Friday, that day is observed as the Christmas Day holiday.

1.29 Milestones - A significant event specified in the Contract Documents relating to an intermediate completion date or time prior to Substantial Completion of all the Work.

1.30 Notice to Proceed - A Written Notice given by OWNER to CONTRACTOR fixing the date on which the Contract Times will commence to run and on which CONTRACTOR shall start to perform CONTRACTOR's obligations under the Contract Documents.

1.31 OWNER - City of Austin, Texas, a municipal corporation, home rule city and political subdivision organized and existing under the laws of the State of Texas, acting through the City Manager or his/her designee, officers, agents or employees to administer design and construction of the Project.

1.32 Owner's Representative - The designated representative of the OWNER. The Owner's Representative will be identified at the pre-construction conference.

1.33 Partial Occupancy or Use - Use by OWNER of a substantially completed part of the Work for the purpose for which it is intended (or a related purpose) prior to Substantial Completion of all the Work, provided OWNER and CONTRACTOR have accepted in writing the responsibilities assigned to each of them for payments, retainage if any, security, maintenance, utilities, corrective work, insurance and warranties.

1.34 Project - The subject of the Work and its intended result.

1.35 Project Manual - That portion of the Contract Documents which may include the following: introductory information; bidding requirements, Contract forms and General and Supplemental General Conditions; General Requirements; Specifications; Drawings; MBE/WBE or DBE Procurement Program Package; Project Safety Manual; and Addenda.

1.36 Resident Project Representative - The authorized representative of E/A who may be assigned to the site or any part thereof.

1.37 Shop Drawings - All drawings, diagrams, illustrations, schedules and other data or information which are specifically prepared or assembled by or for CONTRACTOR and submitted by CONTRACTOR as required by the Contract Documents.

1.38 Specifications - Those portions of the Contract Documents consisting of written technical descriptions as applied to the Work, which set forth to CONTRACTOR, in detail, the requirements which must be met by all materials, equipment, construction systems, standards, workmanship, equipment and services in order to render a completed and useful project.

1.39 Solicitation - Solicitation means, as applicable, an Invitation for Bid or a Request for Proposal.

1.40 Substantial Completion - The stage in the progress of the Work when the Work, or designated portion thereof, is sufficiently complete in accordance with the Contract Documents so OWNER can occupy or utilize the Work for its intended use, as evidenced by a Certificate of Substantial Completion approved by OWNER.

1.41 Subcontractor - An individual, firm, corporation, or other business entity having a direct contract with CONTRACTOR for the performance of a portion of the Work under the Contract.

1.42 Sub-Subcontractor - A person or entity who has a direct or indirect contract with a Subcontractor to perform a portion of the work.

1.43 Superintendent - The representative of CONTRACTOR authorized in writing to receive and fulfill instructions from the Owner's Representative, and who shall supervise and direct construction of the Work.

1.44 Supplemental General Conditions - The part of the Contract Documents which amends or supplements the General Conditions. All General Conditions which are not so amended or supplemented remain in full force and effect.

1.45 Supplier - An individual or entity having a direct contract with CONTRACTOR or with any Subcontractor to furnish materials or equipment to be incorporated in the Work by CONTRACTOR or any Subcontractor.

1.46 Time Extension Request - An approved request for time extension on a form acceptable to OWNER.

1.47 Work - The entire completed construction, or the various separately identifiable parts thereof, required to be furnished under the Contract Documents.

1.48 Working Day - Any day of the week, not including Saturdays, Sundays, or Legal Holidays in which conditions under the CONTRACTOR's control will permit work for a continuous period of not less than seven (7) hours between 7:00 a.m. and 6:00 p.m. Upon agreement with Owner's Representative, work on Saturdays, Sundays and/or Legal Holidays may be allowed and will be considered a Working Day.

1.49 Working Hours

1.49.1 Working Day Contract: All Work shall be done between 7:00 a.m. and 6:00 p.m. unless authorized by Owner's Representative. However, emergency work may be done without prior permission as indicated in paragraph 6.11.5. If night Work is authorized and conditions under CONTRACTOR's control will permit Work for a continuous period of not less than seven (7) hours between 12:00 a.m. and 11:59 p.m. it will be considered a Working Day. Night Work may be revoked at any time by OWNER if CONTRACTOR fails to maintain adequate equipment and supervision for the prosecution and control of the night Work.

1.49.2 Calendar Day Contract: All Work shall be done between 7:00 a.m. and 6:00 p.m. unless authorized by Owner’s Representative. However, emergency work may be done without prior permission as indicated in paragraph 6.11.5. Night Work may be revoked at any time by OWNER if CONTRACTOR fails to maintain adequate equipment and supervision for the prosecution and control of the night Work.

1.50 Written Notice - Written communication between OWNER and CONTRACTOR. Written Notice shall be deemed to have been duly served if delivered in person to Owner's Representative or CONTRACTOR's duly authorized representative, or if delivered at or sent by registered or certified mail to the attention of Owner's Representative or CONTRACTOR's duly authorized representative at the last business address known to the party giving notice.

ARTICLE 2 - PRELIMINARY MATTERS

2.1 Delivery of Agreement, Bonds, Insurance, etc.: Within five (5) Working Days after written notification of award of Contract, CONTRACTOR shall deliver to OWNER signed Agreement, Bond(s), Insurance Certificate(s) and other documentation required for execution of Contract.

2.2 Copies of Documents: OWNER shall furnish to CONTRACTOR one (1) Project Manual with original signatures, one (1) copy of the executed Project Manual, one (1) set of Drawings

and one (1) copy of the Contract Documents in .pdf format. Additional copies will be furnished, upon request, at the cost specified in the Supplemental General Conditions."

2.3 Commencement of Contract Times; Notice to Proceed: The Contract Time(s) will begin to run on the day indicated in the Notice to Proceed. Notice to Proceed will be given at any time within sixty (60) calendar days after the Execution Date of the Agreement, unless extended by written agreement of the parties.

2.4 Before Starting Construction:

2.4.1 No Work shall be done at the site prior to the preconstruction conference without OWNER's approval. Before undertaking each part of the Work, CONTRACTOR shall carefully study the Contract Documents to check and verify pertinent figures shown thereon compare accurately to all applicable field measurements. CONTRACTOR shall promptly report in writing to Owner's Representative any conflict, error, ambiguity or discrepancy which CONTRACTOR may discover and shall obtain a written interpretation or clarification from Owner's Representative before proceeding with any Work affected thereby. CONTRACTOR shall be liable to OWNER for failure to report any conflict, error, ambiguity or discrepancy in the Contract Documents of which CONTRACTOR knew or reasonably should have known.

2.4.2 It is mutually agreed between CONTRACTOR and OWNER that successful completion of the Work within the Contract completion date is of primary importance. Therefore, the CONTRACTOR hereby agrees to submit to the Owner's Representative for review and approval, or acceptance, as appropriate, all information requested within this section, including a Baseline Schedule, no later than five working days prior to the preconstruction conference. The Owner's Representative will schedule the preconstruction conference upon the timely submittal of the required documents, unless time is extended by written mutual agreement. CONTRACTOR will submit the following:

.1 A proposed Baseline Schedule developed using Microsoft Project software, unless otherwise approved by Owner's Representative ("Baseline Schedule") to confirm that all Work will be completed within the Contract time. The Baseline Schedule must (i) indicate the times (number of days or dates) for starting and completing the various stages of the Work, including any Milestones specified in the Contract Documents, (ii) identify the Critical Path for completing the Work, (iii) identify when all Subcontractors will be utilized, and (iv) take into consideration any limitations on Working Hours, including baseline Rain Days on Calendar Day Contracts, and (v) be prepared accordance with Section 01310, Schedules and Reports, if applicable; otherwise in accordance with Section 01300, Submittals. This Baseline Schedule, a copy of which shall be made available at the job site(s), must contain sufficient detail to indicate that the CONTRACTOR has properly identified required Work elements and tasks, has provided for a sufficient and proper workforce and integration of Subcontractors, has provided sufficient resources and has considered the proper sequencing of the Work required to result in a successful Project that can be completed within the Contract time;

.2 An organizational chart showing the principals and management personnel who will be involved with the Work, including each one's responsibilities for the Work;

.3 To the extent not set forth in the Section 00400 Statement of Contractor's Experience, a complete listing of the CONTRACTOR's employees proposed for the Work. List each one by name and job title, and show length of employment with CONTRACTOR;

.4 To the extent not set forth in the Section 00410 Statement of Bidder's Safety Experience, a discussion and confirmation of the CONTRACTOR's commitment to safety by providing a copy of its employee's safety handbook and the safety records for the past three years of CONTRACTOR's proposed project manager and Superintendent;

.5 A preliminary schedule of Shop Drawing and sample submittals;

.6 A preliminary schedule of values for all of the Work, subdivided into component parts in sufficient detail to serve as the basis for progress payments during construction. Such prices will be deemed to include an appropriate amount of overhead and profit applicable to each item of Work;

.7 To the extent not set forth in the Section 00400 Statement of Contractor's Experience, a letter designating CONTRACTOR's Superintendent and project manager, and a confirmation of past project experience for the CONTRACTOR's Superintendent and project manager specifically intended for the Work;

.8 A letter from CONTRACTOR and Subcontractor(s) listing salaried specialists. A salaried specialist is anyone except an hourly worker whose wage rate is governed by Section 00830 of this agreement;

.9 A letter designating the "Competent Person(s)" on general safety and excavation safety measures along with certifications or other documentation of the safety representative's qualifications;

.10 If applicable, an excavation safety system plan;

.11 If applicable, a plan illustrating proposed locations of temporary facilities;

.12 A completed Non-Use of Asbestos Affidavit (Prior to Construction);

.13 A letter designating the Texas Registered Professional Land Surveyor for layout of the Work, if the Work requires the services of a surveyor; and

.14 Appropriate safety training certificates for workers that will initially be on site;

.15 A certificate of worker's compensation insurance coverage for all persons providing services on the Project (refer to 5.2.1.3 in Section 00700 for definition of persons providing services on the Project);

.16 A Construction Equipment Emissions Reduction Plan.

2.4.3 Neither the acceptance nor the approval of any of the submittals required in paragraph 2.4.2, above, will constitute the adoption, affirmation, or direction of the CONTRACTOR'S means and methods.

2.5 **Preconstruction Conference:** Prior to commencement of Work at the site, CONTRACTOR must attend a preconstruction conference with Owner's Representative and others, as set forth in Division 1. Additionally, prior to commencement of work, the CONTRACTOR shall host a preconstruction conference for the Subcontractors identified on the originally approved compliance plan, Owner's Representative and others, as set forth in Division 1. The CONTRACTOR shall notify all Subcontractors five (5) working days prior to the preconstruction conference. If the CONTRACTOR has included Subcontractors in the initial preconstruction conference, the additional Subcontractor preconstruction conference will not be required.

2.6 **Initially Acceptable Schedules:** Unless otherwise provided in the Contract Documents, CONTRACTOR shall obtain approval of Owner's Representative on the Baseline Schedule submitted in accordance with paragraph 2.4.2.1 and Division 1 before the first progress payment will be made to CONTRACTOR. The Baseline Schedule must provide for an orderly

progression of the designated portion of the Work to completion within any specified Milestones and Contract Times. Acceptance of the schedule by Owner's Representative will neither impose on Owner's Representative responsibility or liability for the sequencing, scheduling or progress of the Work nor interfere with or relieve CONTRACTOR from CONTRACTOR's full responsibility for such Work. CONTRACTOR's schedule of Shop Drawings and sample submissions must provide an acceptable basis for reviewing and processing the required submittals. CONTRACTOR's schedule of values must conform to the requirements set forth in Division 1.

ARTICLE 3 - CONTRACT DOCUMENTS: INTENT, AMENDING, REUSE

3.1 Intent:

3.1.1 The intent of the Contract Documents is to include all information necessary for the proper execution and timely completion of the Work by CONTRACTOR. The CONTRACTOR will execute the Work described in and reasonably inferable from the Contract Documents as necessary to produce the results indicated by the Contract Documents. The Contract Documents are complementary, and what is required by one shall be as binding as if required by all. In cases of disagreement, the following order of precedence shall generally govern (top item receiving priority of interpretation):

Signed Agreement
Addendum to the Contract Documents, including approved changes
Supplemental General Conditions
General Conditions
Other Bidding Requirements and Contract Forms
Special Provisions to the Standard Technical Specifications
Special Specifications
Standard Technical Specifications
Drawings (figured dimensions shall govern over scaled dimensions)
Project Safety Manual (if applicable),

with the understanding that a common sense approach will be utilized as necessary so that the Contract Documents produce the intended response.

3.1.2 Unless otherwise stated in the Contract Documents, words that have well-known technical or construction industry meanings are used in the Contract Documents in accordance with such recognized meanings.

3.2 Reporting and Resolving Discrepancies: If, during the performance of the Work, CONTRACTOR discovers any conflict, error, ambiguity or discrepancy within the Contract Documents or between the Contract Documents and any provisions of any such law or regulation applicable to the performance of the Work or of any such standard, specification, manual or code or instructions of any Supplier, CONTRACTOR shall report it to Owner's Representative in writing at once, and CONTRACTOR shall not proceed with the Work affected thereby until an amendment or supplement to the Contract Documents has been issued by one of the methods indicated in paragraph 3.3.1 or 3.3.2. CONTRACTOR shall be liable to OWNER for failure to report any such conflict, error, ambiguity or discrepancy of which CONTRACTOR knew or reasonably should have known.

3.3 Amending and Supplementing Contract Documents:

3.3.1 The Contract Documents may be amended to provide for additions, deletions and revisions in the Work or to modify the terms and conditions thereof in one or more of the following ways:

.1 Change Order.

.2 Change Directive.

.3 Time Extension Request.

3.3.2 In addition, the requirements of the Contract Documents may be supplemented, and minor variations and deviations in the Work may be authorized, in one or more of the following ways:

.1 Field Order.

.2 Review of a Shop Drawing or sample.

.3 Written interpretation or clarification.

3.4 Reuse of Documents Prohibited: CONTRACTOR and any Subcontractor or Supplier or other person or organization performing or furnishing any of the Work under a direct or indirect contract with OWNER: (i) shall not have or acquire any title to or ownership rights in any of the Drawings, Specifications or other documents (or copies of any thereof) prepared by or bearing the seal of E/A or E/A's consultant, and (ii) shall not reuse any of such Drawings, Specifications, other documents or copies on extensions of the Project or any other project without written consent of OWNER and E/A.

3.5 In the event of the breach by the OWNER or CONTRACTOR of any of its obligations under the Contract, so as to support a claim by the other party, the provisions of this Contract will be equitably construed to allow the resolution of such a claim and all of the other provisions of this Contract shall continue in full force and effect as to the rights, responsibilities, and remedies of the OWNER and CONTRACTOR.

ARTICLE 4 - AVAILABILITY OF LANDS; SUBSURFACE AND PHYSICAL CONDITIONS; REFERENCE POINTS

4.1 **Availability of Lands:** The OWNER will provide access to all land and interests in land required for the Work and will notify CONTRACTOR of any restrictions in such access. CONTRACTOR may make a claim if OWNER fails to provide timely access to the Work. CONTRACTOR must obtain any additional temporary construction facilities, stockpiling or storage sites not otherwise provided.

4.2 **Subsurface and Physical Conditions:**

4.2.1 CONTRACTOR specifically represents that it has carefully examined the plans, the geotechnical report, if any, and the site of the proposed Work and is thoroughly familiar with all of the conditions surrounding construction of the Project, having had the opportunity to conduct any and all additional inquiry, tests and investigation that he/she deems necessary and proper. CONTRACTOR acknowledges the receipt of the geotechnical report, if any, and agrees that the report, while it is an accurate record of the geotechnical conditions at the boring locations, is not a guarantee of specific site conditions which may vary between boring locations.

4.2.2 CONTRACTOR must notify OWNER in writing as soon as reasonably possible, but no later than three (3) calendar days, if unforeseen conditions are encountered at the site which are (i) subsurface or otherwise concealed physical conditions that differ materially from those indicated in the Contract Documents or (ii) unknown physical conditions of an unusual nature, that differ materially from those normally encountered in the type of work being performed under this Contract. CONTRACTOR may not disturb the conditions until OWNER conducts an investigation. Owner's Representative and E/A will promptly investigate such

conditions with E/A. If it is determined that such conditions differ materially and cause an increase or decrease in the CONTRACTOR's cost of or time required for performance of any part of the Work, Owner's Representative will recommend an equitable adjustment in the Contract Amount or Contract Time, or both. If it is determined that such conditions are not materially different from those indicated in the Contract Documents, Owner's Representative will notify CONTRACTOR in writing of such findings and the Contract will not be adjusted. CONTRACTOR may dispute such a determination in accordance with Article 16.

4.2.3 Notwithstanding any other provision of this Contract, CONTRACTOR is solely responsible for the location and protection of any and all public utility lines and utility customer service lines in the Work area. "Public utility lines" means the utility distribution and supply system, and "utility customer service lines" means the utility lines connecting customers to the utility distribution and collection system. Generally, existing utility customer service line connections are not shown on the Drawings. CONTRACTOR shall notify "One Call" and exercise due care to locate, mark, uncover and otherwise protect all such lines in the construction zone and any of CONTRACTOR's work or storage areas. CONTRACTOR's responsibility for the location and protection of utilities is primary and nondelegable. CONTRACTOR shall indemnify or reimburse such expenses or costs (including fines that may be levied against OWNER) that may result from unauthorized or accidental damage to all public lines and utility customer service lines in the work area. OWNER reserves the right to repair any damage CONTRACTOR causes to such utilities at CONTRACTOR's expense. If a public line and/or customer service line is damaged by CONTRACTOR, CONTRACTOR shall give verbal notice within one (1) hour and written notice within twenty-four (24) hours to the Owner's Representative.

4.2.4 CONTRACTOR shall take reasonable precaution to avoid disturbing primitive records and antiquities of archaeological, paleontological or historical significance. No objects of this nature shall be disturbed without written permission of OWNER and Texas Historical Commission. When such objects are uncovered unexpectedly, CONTRACTOR shall stop all Work in close proximity and notify Owner's Representative and Texas Historical Commission of their presence and shall not disturb them until written permission and permit to do so is granted. All primitive rights and antiquities uncovered on OWNER's property shall remain property of State of Texas, Texas Historical Commission conforming to Texas Natural Resources Code. If it is determined by OWNER, in consultation with Texas Historical Commission, that exploration or excavation of primitive records or antiquities on Project site is necessary to avoid loss, CONTRACTOR shall cooperate in salvage work attendant to preservation. If the Work stoppage or salvage work causes an increase in CONTRACTOR's cost of, or time required for, performance of the Work, the Contract Amount and/or Contract Time will be equitably adjusted.

4.3 Reference Points: Unless otherwise specified, all control lines and bench marks suitable for use in layout will be furnished by OWNER. Lay out of the Work shall be performed in accordance with Division 1. Controls, bench marks and property boundary markers shall be carefully preserved by CONTRACTOR by use of flags, staffs or other visible devices and in case of destruction or removal by CONTRACTOR or its employees, such controls and bench marks shall be replaced by a Registered Professional Land Surveyor at CONTRACTOR's expense. City of Austin survey monuments damaged by CONTRACTOR will be reestablished by OWNER at CONTRACTOR's expense.

4.4 Hazardous Materials:

4.4.1 To the extent provided by applicable law, OWNER shall be responsible for any hazardous material uncovered or revealed at the site which was not shown,

indicated or identified in the Contract Documents to be within the scope of the Work and which may present a substantial danger to persons or property exposed thereto in connection with the Work at the site. CONTRACTOR shall immediately notify Owner's Representative of any suspected hazardous materials encountered before or during performance of the Work and shall take all necessary precautions to avoid further disturbance of the materials.

4.4.2 CONTRACTOR shall be responsible for any hazardous materials brought to the site by CONTRACTOR, Subcontractor, Suppliers or anyone else for whom CONTRACTOR is responsible.

4.4.3 No asbestos-containing materials shall be incorporated into the Work or brought on Project site without prior approval of OWNER. The CONTRACTOR shall not knowingly use, specify, request or approve for use any asbestos containing materials or lead-based paint without the OWNER'S written approval. When a specific product is specified, the CONTRACTOR shall endeavor to verify that the product does not include asbestos containing material.

4.4.4 Refer to Division 1 for hazardous material definitions and procedures.

.1 Unless otherwise expressly provided in the Contract Documents to be part of the Work, CONTRACTOR is not responsible for any unexpected Hazardous Materials encountered at the site. Upon encountering any Hazardous Conditions, CONTRACTOR must stop Work immediately in the affected area and duly notify OWNER and, if required by applicable law or regulations, all government or quasi-government entities with jurisdiction over the Project or site.

.2 Upon receiving notice of the presence of suspected Hazardous Materials, OWNER shall take the necessary measures required to ensure that the Hazardous Materials are remediated or rendered harmless. Such necessary measures shall include OWNER retaining qualified independent experts to (i) ascertain whether Hazardous Materials have actually been encountered, and, if they have been encountered, (ii) prescribe the remedial measures that OWNER must take either to remove the Hazardous Materials or render the Hazardous Materials harmless.

.3 CONTRACTOR shall be obligated to resume Work at the affected area of the Project only after OWNER's Representative provides written certification that (i) the Hazardous Materials have been removed or rendered harmless and (ii) all necessary approvals have been obtained from all government and quasi-government entities having jurisdiction over the Project or site. The CONTRACTOR shall be responsible for continuing the Work in the unaffected portion of the Project and site.

.4 CONTRACTOR will be entitled, in accordance with these General Conditions, to an adjustment in its Contract Amount and/or Contract Time(s) to the extent CONTRACTOR's cost and/or time of performance have been adversely impacted by the presence of Hazardous Materials.

.5 Notwithstanding the preceding provisions of this Section 4.1, OWNER is not responsible for Hazardous Materials introduced to the Site by CONTRACTOR, Subcontractors or anyone for whose acts they may be liable. CONTRACTOR shall indemnify, defend and hold harmless OWNER and OWNER's officers, directors, employees and agents from and against all claims, losses, damages, liabilities and expenses, including attorneys' fees and expenses, arising out of or resulting from those hazardous materials introduced to the site by CONTRACTOR, Subcontractors or anyone for whose acts they may be liable.

4.4.5 CONTRACTOR shall be responsible for use, storage and remediation of any hazardous materials brought to the Site by CONTRACTOR, Subcontractors, Suppliers or anyone else for whom CONTRACTOR is responsible.

ARTICLE 5 - BONDS AND INSURANCE

5.1 Surety and Insurance Companies: All bonds and insurance required by the Contract Documents shall be obtained from solvent surety or insurance companies that are duly licensed by the State of Texas and authorized to issue bonds or insurance policies for the limits and coverages required by the Contract Documents. The bonds shall be in a form acceptable to OWNER and shall be issued by a surety which complies with the requirements of Texas Insurance Code, Title 12, Chapter 3503. The surety must obtain reinsurance for any portion of the risk that exceeds 10% of the surety's capital and surplus. For bonds exceeding $100,000, the surety must also hold a certificate of authority from the U.S. Secretary of the Treasury or have obtained reinsurance for any liability in excess of $1,000,000 from a reinsurer that is authorized as a reinsurer in Texas or holds a certificate of authority from the U.S. Secretary of the Treasury. In the event that the proposed surety for a contract award in excess of $100,000 does not hold a certificate of authority from the U.S. Secretary of the Treasury and/or its proposed reinsurer does not hold a certificate of authority from the U.S. Secretary of the Treasury, the OWNER may require additional financial solvency information from the Bidder/Contractor and the proposed surety company and/or reinsurer as part of the 00400 Statement of Bidders Experience and determination of bidder responsibility in the award of the Contract.

5.2 Workers' Compensation Insurance Coverage:

5.2.1 Definitions:

.1 Certificate of coverage ("certificate") - A copy of a certificate of insurance, a certificate of authority to self-insure issued by the commission, or a coverage agreement (DWC-81, DCW-82, DCW-83, or DCW84), showing statutory workers' compensation insurance coverage for the person's or entity's employees providing services on the Project, for the duration of the Project.

.2 Duration of the Project - includes the time from the beginning of the Work on the Project until the CONTRACTOR's/ person's Work on the Project has been completed and accepted by OWNER.

.3 Persons providing services on the Project ("subcontractor" in Texas Labor Code, Section 406.096) - includes all persons or entities performing all or part of the services the CONTRACTOR has undertaken to perform on the Project, regardless of whether that person contracted directly with the CONTRACTOR and regardless of whether that person has employees. This includes, without limitation, independent contractors, Subcontractors, leasing companies, motor carriers, owner-operators, employees of any such entity, or employees of any entity which furnishes persons to provide services on the Project. "Services" include, without limitation, providing, hauling, or delivering equipment or materials, or providing labor, transportation, or other service related to a project. "Services" does not include activities unrelated to the Project, such as food/beverage vendors, office supply deliveries, and delivery of portable toilets.

5.2.2 CONTRACTOR shall provide coverage, based on proper reporting of classification codes and payroll amounts and filing of any coverage agreements, which meets the statutory requirements of Texas Labor Code, Section 401.011(44) for all

employees of the CONTRACTOR providing services on the Project, for the duration of the Project.

5.2.3 CONTRACTOR must provide a certificate of coverage to OWNER prior to being awarded the Contract.

5.2.4 If the coverage period shown on the CONTRACTOR's current certificate of coverage ends during the duration of the Project, the CONTRACTOR must, prior to the end of the coverage period, file a new certificate of coverage with OWNER showing that coverage has been extended.

5.2.5 CONTRACTOR shall obtain from each person providing services on the Project, and provide to OWNER:

.1 A certificate of coverage, prior to that person beginning Work on the Project, so OWNER will have on file certificates of coverage showing coverage for all persons providing services on the Project; and

.2 No later than seven (7) days after receipt by CONTRACTOR, a new certificate of coverage showing extension of coverage, if the coverage period shown on the current certificate of coverage ends during the duration of the Project.

5.2.6 CONTRACTOR shall retain all required certificates of coverage for the duration of the Project and for one (1) year thereafter.

5.2.7 CONTRACTOR shall notify OWNER in writing by certified mail or personal delivery, within ten (10) days after CONTRACTOR knew or should have known, of any change that materially affects the provision of coverage of any person providing services on the Project.

5.2.8 CONTRACTOR shall post on each Project site a notice, in the text, form and manner prescribed by the Texas Workers' Compensation Commission, informing all persons providing services on the Project that they are required to be covered, and stating how a person may verify coverage and report lack of coverage.

5.2.9 CONTRACTOR shall contractually require each person with whom it contracts to provide services on a Project, to:

.1 Provide coverage, based on proper reporting of classification codes and payroll amounts and filing of any coverage agreements, which meets the statutory requirements of Texas Labor Code, Section 401.011(44) for all of its employees providing services on the Project, for the duration of the Project;

.2 Provide to CONTRACTOR, prior to that person beginning Work on the Project, a certificate of coverage showing that coverage is being provided for all employees of the person providing services on the Project, for the duration of the Project;

.3 Provide CONTRACTOR, prior to the end of the coverage period, a new certificate of coverage showing extension of coverage, if the coverage period shown on the current certificate of coverage ends during the duration of the Project;

.4 Obtain from each other person with whom it contracts, and provide to CONTRACTOR: a) a certificate of coverage, prior to the other person beginning Work on the Project; and b) a new certificate of coverage showing extension of coverage, prior to the end of the coverage period, if the coverage period shown on the current certificate of coverage ends during the duration of the Project;

.5 Retain all required certificates of coverage on file for the duration of the Project and for one (1) year thereafter;

.6 Notify OWNER in writing by certified mail or personal delivery, within ten (10) days after the person knew or should have known, of any change that materially affects the provision of coverage of any person providing services on the Project; and

.7 Contractually require each person with whom it contracts, to perform as required by paragraphs 5.2.9.1 - 5.2.9.7, with the certificates of coverage to be provided to the person for whom they are providing services.

5.2.10 By signing this Contract or providing or causing to be provided a certificate of coverage, CONTRACTOR is representing to OWNER that all employees of the CONTRACTOR who will provide services on the Project will be covered by workers' compensation coverage for the duration of the Project, that the coverage will be based on proper reporting of classification codes and payroll amounts, and that all coverage agreements will be filed with the appropriate insurance carrier or, in the case of a self-insured, with the Texas Worker's Compensation Commission's Division of Self- Insurance Regulation. Providing false or misleading information may subject CONTRACTOR to administrative penalties, criminal penalties, civil penalties, or other civil actions.

5.2.11 CONTRACTOR's failure to comply with any of these provisions is a breach of Contract by CONTRACTOR which entitles OWNER to declare the Contract void if CONTRACTOR does not remedy the breach within ten (10) days after receipt of notice of breach from OWNER.

5.3 Other Bond and Insurance Requirements: For additional insurance requirements, refer to the Supplemental General Conditions.

5.4 Bonds:

5.4.1 General.

.1 Bonds, when required, shall be executed on forms furnished by or acceptable to OWNER. All bonds signed by an agent must be accompanied by a certified copy of such agent's authority to act.

.2 If the surety on any bond furnished by CONTRACTOR is declared bankrupt or becomes insolvent or its right to do business is terminated in the State of Texas or it ceases to meet the requirements of the preceding paragraph, CONTRACTOR shall within ten (10) days thereafter substitute another bond and surety, both of which must be acceptable to OWNER.

.3 When Performance Bonds and/or Payment Bonds are required, each shall be issued in an amount of one hundred percent (100%) of the Contract Amount as security for the faithful performance and/or payment of all CONTRACTOR's obligations under the Contract Documents. Performance Bonds and Payment Bonds shall be issued by a solvent surety company authorized to do business in the State of Texas, and shall meet any other requirements established by law or by OWNER pursuant to applicable law. Any surety duly authorized to do business in Texas may write Performance and Payment Bonds on a project without reinsurance to the limit of ten percent (10%) of its capital and surplus. Such a surety must reinsure any obligations over ten percent (10%).

5.4.2 Performance Bond.

.1 If the Contract Amount exceeds $100,000, CONTRACTOR shall furnish OWNER with a Performance Bond in the form set out in Section 00610.

.2 If the Contract Amount exceeds $25,000 but is less than or equal to $100,000, CONTRACTOR shall furnish OWNER with a Performance Bond in the form set out in Section 00610, unless the original Contract Time is 60 Calendar

Days/40 Working Days or less, in which case CONTRACTOR can agree to the following terms and conditions for payment in lieu of providing a Performance Bond: no moneys will be paid to CONTRACTOR until completion and acceptance of the Work by OWNER; CONTRACTOR shall be entitled to receive 95% of the Contract Amount following Final Completion, and the remaining 5% of the Contract Amount following the one (1) year warranty period.

.3 If the Contract Amount is less than or equal to $25,000, CONTRACTOR will not be required to furnish a Performance Bond; provided that no moneys will be paid to CONTRACTOR until completion and acceptance of the Work by OWNER under the following terms and conditions: CONTRACTOR shall be entitled to receive 95% of the Contract Amount following Final Completion, and the remaining 5% of the Contract Amount following the one (1) year warranty period.

.4 If a Performance Bond is required to be furnished, it shall extend for the one (1) year warranty period.

5.4.3 Payment Bond.

.1 If the Contract Amount exceeds $50,000, CONTRACTOR shall furnish OWNER with a Payment Bond in the form set out in Section 00620.

.2 If the Contract Amount is less than or equal to $50,000, CONTRACTOR will not be required to furnish a Payment Bond; provided that no moneys will be paid to CONTRACTOR until completion and acceptance of the Work by OWNER under the terms and conditions specified in paragraph 5.4.2.3.

5.4.4 **Maintenance Bond:** If the Contract Documents contemplate a period of maintenance beyond the one (1) year contractual warranty period, OWNER agrees that any bond to be required for such maintenance work will be in the amount of the maintenance work during any extended maintenance period.

ARTICLE 6 - CONTRACTOR'S RESPONSIBILITIES

6.1 Supervision and Superintendence:

6.1.1 CONTRACTOR shall supervise, inspect and direct the Work competently and efficiently, devoting such attention thereto and applying such skills and expertise as may be necessary to perform the Work in accordance with the Contract Documents. CONTRACTOR shall be solely responsible for the means, methods, techniques, sequences and procedures of construction. CONTRACTOR shall be responsible to see that the completed Work complies accurately with the Contract Documents.

6.1.2 CONTRACTOR shall have an English-speaking, competent Superintendent on the Work at all times that work is in progress. The Superintendent will be CONTRACTOR's representative on the Work and shall have the authority to act on the behalf of CONTRACTOR. All communications given to the Superintendent shall be as binding as if given to CONTRACTOR. Either CONTRACTOR or the Superintendent shall provide a cellular telephone number and an emergency and home telephone number at which one or the other may be reached if necessary when work is not in progress. The Superintendent must be an employee of the CONTRACTOR, unless such requirement is waived in writing by the Owner's Representative. If the CONTRACTOR proposes a management structure with a Project Manager supervising, directing, and managing construction of the work in addition to or in substitution of a Superintendent, the requirements of these Construction Documents with respect to the Superintendent shall likewise apply to any such Project Manager.

.1 CONTRACTOR shall present the resume of the proposed Superintendent to the Owner's Representative showing evidence of experience and successful superintendence and direction of work of a similar scale and complexity. If, in the opinion of the Owner's Representative, the proposed Superintendent does not indicate sufficient experience in line with the Work, he/she will not be allowed to be the designated Superintendent for the Work.

.2 The Superintendent shall not be replaced without Written Notice to Owner's Representative. If CONTRACTOR deems it necessary to replace the Superintendent, CONTRACTOR shall provide the necessary information for approval, as stated above, on the proposed new Superintendent.

.3 A qualified substitute Superintendent may be designated in the event that the designated Superintendent is temporarily away from the Work, but not to exceed a time limit acceptable to the Owner's Representative. CONTRACTOR shall replace the Superintendent upon OWNER's request in the event the Superintendent is unable to perform to OWNER's satisfaction.

6.2 Labor, Materials and Equipment:

6.2.1 CONTRACTOR shall maintain a work force adequate to accomplish the Work within the Contract Time. CONTRACTOR agrees to employ only orderly and competent workers, skillful in performance of the type of Work required under this Contract. CONTRACTOR, Subcontractors, Sub-subcontractors, and their employees may not use or possess any alcoholic or other intoxicating beverages, illegal drugs or controlled substances while on the job or on OWNER's property, nor may such workers be intoxicated, or under the influence of alcohol or drugs, on the job. Subject to the applicable provisions of Texas law, CONTRACTOR, Subcontractors, Sub-subcontractors, and their employees may not use or possess any firearms or other weapons while on the job or on OWNER'S property. If OWNER or Owner's Representative notifies CONTRACTOR that any worker or representative of Contractor is incompetent, disorderly, abusive, or disobedient, has knowingly or repeatedly violated safety regulations, has possessed any firearms in contravention of the applicable provisions of Texas law, or has possessed or was under the influence of alcohol or drugs on the job, CONTRACTOR shall immediately remove such worker or representative, including an officer or owner of CONTRACTOR, from performing Contract Work, and may not employ such worker or representative again on Contract Work without OWNER's prior written consent. CONTRACTOR shall at all times maintain good discipline and order on or off the site in all matters pertaining to the Project. Workers on Project shall be paid not less than wage rates, including fringe benefits, as published by the Department of Labor (DOL) for Building Construction and Heavy and Highway Trades "AS APPLICABLE" and/or the $13.50 minimum wage required by City of Austin Ordinance No. 20160324-015, whichever is higher. The Total Minimum Wage required can be met using any combination of cash and non-cash qualified fringe benefits provided the cash component meets or exceeds the $13.50 minimum wage required.

6.2.2 Unless otherwise specified in Division 1, CONTRACTOR shall provide and pay for all materials, equipment, labor, transportation, construction equipment and machinery, tools, appliances, fuel, power, light, heat, telephone, water, sanitary facilities, temporary facilities and all other facilities and incidentals necessary for the furnishing, performance, testing, start-up and completion of the Work.

6.2.3 All materials and equipment shall be of good quality and new (including new products made of recycled materials, pursuant to Section 361.426 of the Texas Health & Safety Code), except as otherwise provided in the Contract Documents. If required by Owner's Representative, CONTRACTOR shall furnish satisfactory evidence (reports of required tests, manufacturer's certificates of compliance with

material requirements, mill reports, etc.) as to the kind and quality of materials and equipment. All materials and equipment shall be applied, installed, connected, erected, used, cleaned and conditioned in accordance with instructions of the applicable Supplier, except as otherwise provided in the Contract Documents.

6.2.4 Substitutes and "Approved Equal" Items:

.1 Whenever an item of material or equipment is specified or described in the Contract Documents by using the name of a proprietary item or the name of a particular Supplier, the specification or description is intended to establish the type, function and quality required. Unless the specification or description contains words reading that no like, equivalent or "approved equal" item or no substitution is permitted, other items of material or equipment of other Suppliers may be submitted by CONTRACTOR, at CONTRACTOR'S sole risk, including disruptions to the Critical Path of the Progress Schedule, to E/A through Owner's Representative under the following circumstances:

.1.1 "Approved Equal": If in E/A's sole discretion an item of material or equipment proposed by CONTRACTOR is functionally equal to that named and sufficiently similar so that no change in related Work will be required, it may be considered by E/A as an "approved equal" item, in which case review of the proposed item may, in E/A's sole discretion, be accomplished without compliance with some or all of the requirements for evaluation of proposed substitute items. CONTRACTOR shall provide E/A with the documentation required for E/A to make its determination.

.1.2 Substitute Items: If in E/A's sole discretion an item of material or equipment proposed by CONTRACTOR does not qualify as an "approved equal" item under subparagraph 6.2.4.1.1, it will be considered a proposed substitute item. CONTRACTOR shall submit sufficient information as provided in Division 1 to allow E/A to determine that the item of material or equipment proposed is essentially equivalent to that named and a substitute therefor.

.2 Substitute Construction Methods and Procedures: If a specific means, method, technique, sequence or procedure of construction is shown or indicated in and expressly required by the Contract Documents, CONTRACTOR may, at CONTRACTOR'S sole risk, including disruptions to the Critical Path of the Progress Schedule, with prior approval of E/A furnish or utilize a substitute means, method, technique, sequence, or procedure of construction. CONTRACTOR shall submit sufficient information to Owner's Representative to allow E/A, in E/A's sole discretion, to determine that the substitute proposed is equivalent to that expressly called for by the Contract Documents. The procedure for review by E/A will be same as that provided for substitute items in Division 1.

.3 E/A's Evaluation: E/A will be allowed a reasonable time within which to evaluate each proposal or submittal made pursuant to subparagraphs 6.2.4.1.1 and 6.2.4.1.2. E/A will be the sole judge of acceptability. No "approved equal" or substitute shall be ordered, installed, or utilized until E/A's review is complete, which will be evidenced by either a Change Order or completion of the Shop Drawing review procedure. OWNER may require CONTRACTOR to furnish at CONTRACTOR's expense a special performance guarantee or other surety bond with respect to any "approved equal" or substitute or for any other delay or disruption to the Critical Path of the Project Schedule attributable to any such substitution. OWNER shall not be responsible for any delay due to review time for any "approved equal" or substitute.

.4 CONTRACTOR's Expense: All data and documentation to be provided by CONTRACTOR in support of any proposed "approved equal" or substitute item will be at CONTRACTOR's expense.

.5 The approval of the E/A will not relieve the CONTRACTOR from primary responsibility and liability for the suitability and performance of any proposed substitute item, method or procedure and will not relieve CONTRACTOR from its primary responsibility and liability for curing defective Work and performing warranty work, which the CONTRACTOR shall cure and perform, regardless of any claim the CONTRACTOR may choose to advance against the E/A or manufacturer.

6.2.5 CONTRACTOR agrees to assign to OWNER any rights it may have to bring antitrust suits against its Suppliers for overcharges on materials incorporated in the Project growing out of illegal price fixing agreements. CONTRACTOR further agrees to cooperate with OWNER should OWNER wish to prosecute suits against Suppliers for illegal price fixing.

6.3 Progress Schedule: Unless otherwise provided in Division 1, CONTRACTOR shall adhere to the Baseline Schedule established in accordance with paragraph 2.6 as it may be adjusted from time to time as provided below:

6.3.1 CONTRACTOR shall submit to Owner's Representative for review and approval any proposed adjustments in the Progress Schedule that will not change the Contract Times or Milestones on a monthly basis. Any such proposed adjustments must be substantiated with documentation of any changes to the underlying logic of the Progress Schedule. CONTRACTOR's Progress Schedule must show how the CONTRACTOR will consistently advance the progress of the Work in accordance with the Critical Path of the Work and the Contract Time or Milestones. Such adjustments will conform generally to the Progress Schedule then in effect and additionally will comply with any provisions of Division 1 applicable thereto.

6.3.2 Proposed adjustments in the Progress Schedule that will change the Contract Times or Milestones shall be submitted in accordance with the requirements of Article 12. Any such proposed adjustments must be substantiated with documentation of any changes to the underlying logic of the Progress Schedule. Such adjustments may only be made by a Change Order or Time Extension Request in accordance with Article 12.

6.4 Concerning Subcontractors, Suppliers and Others:

6.4.1 Assignment: CONTRACTOR agrees to retain direct control of and give direct attention to the fulfillment of this Contract. CONTRACTOR agrees not to, by Power of Attorney, or otherwise, assign said Contract without the prior written consent of OWNER. In addition, without OWNER'S written consent, the CONTRACTOR will not subcontract the performance of the entire Work or the supervision and direction of the Work.

6.4.2 Award of Subcontracts for Portions of the Work: CONTRACTOR shall not employ any Subcontractor, Supplier or other person or organization, whether initially or as a substitute, against whom OWNER may have reasonable objection. OWNER will communicate such objections by Written Notice. If OWNER requires a change without good cause of any Subcontractor, person or organization previously accepted by OWNER, the Contract Amount shall be increased or decreased by the difference in the cost occasioned by any such change, and appropriate Change Order shall be issued. CONTRACTOR shall not substitute any Subcontractor, person or organization that has been accepted by OWNER, unless the substitute has been accepted in writing by OWNER. No acceptance by OWNER of any Subcontractor,

Supplier or other person or organization shall constitute a waiver of any right of OWNER to reject defective Work.

6.4.3 CONTRACTOR shall enter into written agreements with all Subcontractors and Suppliers which specifically binds the Subcontractors or Suppliers to the applicable terms and conditions of the Contract Documents for the benefit of OWNER and E/A. The OWNER reserves the right to specify that certain requirements shall be adhered to by all Subcontractors and Sub-subcontractors as indicated in other portions of the Contract Documents and these requirements shall be made a part of the agreement between CONTRACTOR and Subcontractor or Supplier. Subject to and in accordance with the above requirements, the CONTRACTOR must provide and will be deemed for all purposes to have provided in its contracts with major Subcontractors or Suppliers on the Project (those contracts of more than $10,000) the following specific provision: alternative dispute resolution (paragraphs 16.2 and 16.3), which shall be mandatory in the event of a subcontractor or supplier claim and a prerequisite for the submission of any derivative claim. The CONTRACTOR's standard subcontract form is subject to the OWNER's review and approval. The OWNER may request and the CONTRACTOR will provide within five (5) working days a copy of any subcontract requested by the OWNER.

6.4.4 CONTRACTOR shall be fully responsible to OWNER for all acts and omissions of the Subcontractors, Suppliers and other persons and organizations performing or furnishing any of the Work under a direct or indirect contract with CONTRACTOR just as CONTRACTOR is responsible for CONTRACTOR's own acts and omissions. Nothing in the Contract Documents shall create for the benefit of any such Subcontractor, Supplier or other person or organization any contractual relationship between OWNER and any such Subcontractor, Supplier or other person or organization, nor shall it create any obligation on the part of OWNER or E/A to pay or to see to the payment of any moneys due any such Subcontractor, Supplier or other person or organization except as may otherwise be required by laws and regulations.

6.4.5 CONTRACTOR shall be solely responsible for efficiently scheduling and coordinating the Work of Subcontractors, Suppliers and other persons and organizations performing or furnishing any of the Work under a direct or indirect contract with CONTRACTOR in order to avoid any delays or inefficiencies in the prosecution of the Work. CONTRACTOR shall require all Subcontractors, Suppliers and such other persons and organizations performing or furnishing any of the Work to communicate with Owner's Representative through CONTRACTOR.

6.4.6 The divisions and sections of the Specifications and the identifications of any Drawings shall not control CONTRACTOR in dividing or delineating the Work to be performed by any specific trade.

6.4.7 CONTRACTOR shall pay each Subcontractor and Supplier their appropriate share of payments made to CONTRACTOR not later than ten (10) Calendar Days of CONTRACTOR's receipt of payment from OWNER. Upon request from Owner, the CONTRACTOR has two (2) Working Days to provide documentation verifying Payment to Subcontractor(s). The CONTRACTOR is required to notify the Subcontractor(s) in writing of rejection of Application for Payment within two (2) Working Days following notification by Owner. Failure of CONTRACTOR to make payments to Subcontractors or for labor, materials or equipment in accordance to this contract, may be cause to reject future Bids by the CONTRACTOR in accordance with Section 00100 9.B.4 and may be cause to reject payment in accordance with 00700 14.4.1.3.

6.4.8 To the extent allowed by Texas law, the OWNER shall be deemed to be a third party beneficiary to each subcontract and may, if OWNER elects, following a termination of the CONTRACTOR, require that the Subcontractor(s) perform all or a portion of

unperformed duties and obligations under its subcontract(s) for the benefit of the OWNER, rather than the CONTRACTOR; however, if the OWNER requires any such performance by a Subcontractor for the OWNER's direct benefit, then the OWNER shall be bound and obligated to pay such Subcontractor the reasonable value for all Work performed by such Subcontractor to the date of the termination of the CONTRACTOR, less previous payments, and for all Work performed thereafter. In the event that the OWNER elects to invoke its right under this section, OWNER will provide notice of such election to the CONTRACTOR and the affected Subcontractor(s).

6.5 Patent Fees and Royalties:

6.5.1 CONTRACTOR shall be responsible at all times for compliance with applicable patents or copyrights encompassing, in whole or in part, any design, device, material, or process utilized, directly or indirectly, in the performance of the Work or the formulation or presentation of its Bid.

6.5.2 CONTRACTOR shall pay all royalties and license fees and shall provide, prior to commencement of Work hereunder and at all times during the performance of same, for lawful use of any design, device, material or process covered by letters, patent or copyright by suitable legal agreement with the patentee, copyright holder, or their duly authorized representative whether or not a particular design, device, material, or process is specified by OWNER.

6.5.3 CONTRACTOR shall defend all suits or claims for infringement of any patent or copyright and shall save OWNER harmless from any loss or liability, direct or indirect, arising with respect to CONTRACTOR's process in the formulation of its Bid or the performance of the Work or otherwise arising in connection therewith. OWNER reserves the right to provide its own defense to any suit or claim of infringement of any patent or copyright in which event CONTRACTOR shall indemnify and save harmless OWNER from all costs and expenses of such defense as well as satisfaction of all judgments entered against OWNER.

6.5.4 OWNER shall have the right to stop the Work and/or terminate this Agreement at any time in the event CONTRACTOR fails to disclose to OWNER that CONTRACTOR's work methodology includes the use of any infringing design, device, material or process.

6.6 Permits, Fees: Unless otherwise provided in the Supplemental General Conditions, CONTRACTOR shall obtain and pay for all construction permits, licenses and fees required for prosecution of the Work.

6.7 Laws and Regulations:

6.7.1 CONTRACTOR shall give all notices and comply with all laws and regulations applicable to furnishing and performing the Work, including arranging for and obtaining any required inspections, tests, approvals or certifications from any public body having jurisdiction over the Work or any part thereof. Except where otherwise expressly required by applicable laws and regulations, neither OWNER nor E/A shall be responsible for monitoring CONTRACTOR's compliance with any laws and regulations.

6.7.2 Maintaining clean water, air and earth or improving thereon shall be regarded as of prime importance. CONTRACTOR shall plan and execute its operations in compliance with all applicable Federal, State and local laws and regulations concerning control and abatement of water pollution and prevention and control of air pollution.

6.7.3 If CONTRACTOR performs any Work knowing or having reason to know that it is contrary to laws or regulations, CONTRACTOR shall bear all claims, costs, losses and damages arising therefrom; however, it shall not be CONTRACTOR's primary

responsibility to make certain that the Specifications and Drawings are in accordance with laws and regulations, but this does not relieve CONTRACTOR of CONTRACTOR's obligations under Article 3.

6.8 Taxes:

6.8.1 CONTRACTOR shall pay only those sales, consumer, use and other similar taxes required to be paid by CONTRACTOR in accordance with the laws and regulations of the State of Texas in the performance of this public works contract.

6.8.2 OWNER is an exempt organization as defined by Chapter 11 of the Property Tax Code of Texas and is thereby exempt from payment of Sales Tax under Chapter 151, Limited Use Sales, Excise and Use Tax, Texas Tax Code, and Article 1066 (C), Local Sales and Use Tax Act, Revised Civil Statutes of Texas.

6.9 Use of Premises:

6.9.1 CONTRACTOR shall confine construction equipment, the storage of materials and equipment and the operations of workers to the site and land and areas identified in and permitted by the Contract Documents and other land and areas permitted by laws and regulations, right-of-way, permits and easements, and shall not unreasonably encumber the premises with construction equipment or other materials or equipment. CONTRACTOR shall assume full responsibility for any damage to any such land or area, or to the owner or occupant thereof or of any adjacent land or areas, resulting from the performance of the Work. Should any claim be made by any such owner or occupant because of or in connection with the performance of the Work, CONTRACTOR shall promptly settle with such other party by negotiation or otherwise resolve the claim by arbitration or other dispute resolution proceeding or at law. CONTRACTOR shall indemnify, defend and hold harmless OWNER, E/A, E/A'S Consultants and anyone directly or indirectly employed by any of them from and against all claims, costs, losses and damages (including court costs and reasonable attorney's fees) arising out of or resulting from any claim or action, legal or equitable, brought by any such owner or occupant against OWNER, E/A or any other party indemnified hereunder to the extent caused by or based upon performance of the work or failure to perform the Work.

6.9.2 During the progress of the Work and on a daily basis, CONTRACTOR shall keep the premises free from accumulations of waste materials, rubbish and other debris resulting from the Work. At the completion of the Work, CONTRACTOR shall remove all waste materials, rubbish and debris from and about the premises as well as all tools, appliances, construction equipment and machinery and surplus materials. CONTRACTOR shall leave the site clean and ready for occupancy by OWNER at Substantial Completion of the Work. CONTRACTOR shall, at a minimum, restore to original condition all property not designated for alteration by the Contact Documents. If the CONTRACTOR fails to clean up at the completion of the Work, OWNER may do so and the cost thereof will be charged against the CONTRACTOR.

6.9.3 CONTRACTOR shall not load nor permit any part of any structure to be loaded in any manner that will endanger the structure, nor shall CONTRACTOR subject any part of the Work or adjacent property to stresses or pressures that will endanger it.

6.10 Record Documents: CONTRACTOR shall maintain in a safe place at the site, or other location acceptable to OWNER, one (1) record copy of all Drawings, Specifications, Addenda, Change Orders, Change Directives, Field Orders and written interpretations and clarifications (issued pursuant to paragraph 9.5) in good order and annotated to show all changes made during construction. These record documents together with all final samples and all final Shop Drawings will be available to OWNER and E/A for reference during performance of the Work. Upon Substantial Completion of the Work, these record documents, samples and Shop Drawings shall be promptly delivered to Owner's Representative.

6.11 Safety and Protection:

6.11.1 CONTRACTOR shall be responsible for initiating, maintaining and supervising all safety precautions and programs in connection with the Work. Upon request, and prior to installation of measures, CONTRACTOR shall submit a site security plan for approval by OWNER. By reviewing the plan or making recommendations or comments, OWNER will not assume liability nor will CONTRACTOR be relieved of liability for damage, injury or loss. CONTRACTOR shall take all necessary precautions for the safety of and shall provide the necessary protection to prevent damage, injury or loss to:

.1 all persons on the Work site or who may be affected by the Work;

.2 all the Work and materials and equipment to be incorporated therein, whether in storage on or off the site; and

.3 other property at the site or adjacent thereto, including, but not limited to, trees, shrubs, lawns, walks, pavements, roadways, structures, utilities and underground facilities not designated for removal, relocation or replacement in the course of construction.

6.11.2 CONTRACTOR shall comply with all applicable laws and regulations of any public body having jurisdiction for safety of persons or property or to protect them from damage, injury or loss; and shall erect and maintain all necessary safeguards for such safety and protection. CONTRACTOR shall notify owners of adjacent property and of underground facilities, and utility owners when prosecution of the Work may affect them, and shall cooperate with them in the protection, removal, relocation and replacement of their property. All damage, injury or loss to any property referred to in paragraph 6.11.1.2 and 6.11.1.3 caused, directly or indirectly, in whole or in part, by CONTRACTOR, Subcontractor, Supplier or any person or organization directly or indirectly employed by any of them to perform or furnish any of the Work or anyone for whose acts any of them may be liable, shall be remedied by CONTRACTOR (except damage or loss attributable to the fault of Drawings or Specifications or to the acts or omissions of OWNER, or E/A, or E/A's consultant or anyone employed by any of them or anyone for whose acts any of them may be liable, and not attributable, directly or indirectly, in whole or in part, to the faults or negligence of CONTRACTOR or any Subcontractor, Supplier or other person or organization directly or indirectly employed by any of them). CONTRACTOR's duties and responsibilities for safety and protection of the Work shall continue until such time as all the Work is completed and Owner's Representative has issued a notice to OWNER and CONTRACTOR in accordance with Article 14 that the Work is acceptable (except as otherwise expressly provided in connection with Substantial Completion). Without limitation, CONTRACTOR shall comply with the following specific provisions:

It shall be the duty and responsibility of CONTRACTOR and all of its subcontractors to be familiar with and comply with 29 USC Section 651, et seq., the Occupational Safety and Health Act of 1970, as amended (“OSHA”) and to enforce and comply with all provisions of this Act.

The CONTRACTOR and all of its subcontractors shall comply with all applicable requirements of Subpart P of Part 1926 of 29 C.F.R, OSHA Safety and Health Standards, Texas Health and Safety Code Section 756.023, as amended, and shall submit a unit price for the particular excavation safety systems to be utilized by the Contractor for all excavations which exceed a depth of five feet (5’).

Before commencing any excavation which will exceed a depth of five feet (5’), the CONTRACTOR shall provide the Owner with detailed plans and specifications regarding the safety systems to be utilized. Said plans and specifications shall

include a certification from a Texas licensed professional engineer indicating full compliance with the OSHA provisions cited above.

6.11.3 Safety Representative: CONTRACTOR shall designate in writing a qualified and experienced safety representative (the "Safety Representative") at the site whose duties and responsibilities shall include safety training; identifying and mitigating hazardous conditions and unsafe work practices; and developing, maintaining and supervising the implementation of safe work practices and safety programs as deemed necessary and appropriate for the Project. The term "Safety Representative" includes any designated Safety Supervisor, Superintendent or Safety Manager. The Safety Representative shall exercise due diligence in the execution of all Project related safety duties. The Safety Representative shall report directly to a company executive, not an on site project manager. Upon request of OWNER, CONTRACTOR shall provide certifications or other acceptable documentation of the Safety Representative's qualifications. The following requirements will be effective as of September 1, 2010:

.1 The Safety Representative shall present certification of completion of the OSHA 30-hour Construction Industry Training Outreach Program described at: http://www.osha.gov/dte/outreach/construction_generalindustry/construction.html

.2 The Safety Representative shall verify that all construction workers (defined as persons covered by a prevailing wage determination) on the job site, whether employed by the CONTRACTOR or subcontractors, have completed the OSHA 10-hour Construction Industry Training Outreach Program described at: http://www.osha.gov/dte/outreach/construction_generalindustry/construction.html. The Safety Representative must receive a certificate of training completion before allowing a worker on site and shall have all such certificates available for inspection by the OWNER.

.3 The Safety Representative shall ensure that workers, including designated competent persons, have completed all applicable OSHA specific or other training needed to perform their job assignments. Training topics applicable to the scope of the current Project may include, but are not limited to, scaffolds, fall protection, cranes, excavations, electrical safety, tools, concrete and masonry construction, steel erection, operation of motor vehicles and mechanized equipment.

.4 The Safety Representative shall post notice on the site of the Work stating that all workers shall have completed OSHA Construction Industry Training. The Owner may require, and the Safety Representative should consider providing a means of readily identifying workers who have completed the required training to monitor compliance with these requirements.

.5 The Safety Representative shall ensure that all required OSHA and Workers Compensation notices to workers are posted in English and Spanish at one or more conspicuous locations on the work site.

6.11.4 Hazard Communication Programs: CONTRACTOR shall be responsible for coordinating any exchange of material safety data sheets or other hazard communication information required to be made available to or exchanged between or among employers at the site in accordance with laws and regulations.

6.11.5 Emergencies:

.1 In emergencies affecting the safety or protection of persons or the Work at the site or adjacent thereto, CONTRACTOR, without special instruction or authorization from OWNER or E/A, is obligated to act reasonably to prevent threatened damage, injury or loss and to mitigate damage or loss to the Work.

CONTRACTOR shall give Owner's Representative telephone notification as soon as reasonably practical and a prompt written notice if CONTRACTOR believes that any significant changes in the Work or variations from the Contract Documents have been caused thereby. If Owner's Representative determines that a change in the Contract Documents is required because of the action taken by CONTRACTOR in response to such an emergency, a Change Directive or Change Order will be issued to document the consequences of such action; otherwise OWNER will not be responsible for CONTRACTOR's emergency action.

.2 Authorized agents of CONTRACTOR shall respond immediately to call-out at any time of any day or night when circumstances warrant the presence on Project site of CONTRACTOR or his agent to protect the Work or adjacent property from damage, restriction or limitation or to take such action or measures pertaining to the Work as may be necessary to provide for the safety of the public. Should CONTRACTOR and/or their agent fail to respond and take action to alleviate such an emergency situation, OWNER may direct other forces to take action as necessary to remedy the emergency condition, and OWNER will deduct any cost of such remedial action from the funds due CONTRACTOR under this Contract.

.3 In the event there is an accident involving injury to any individual or damage to any property on or near the Work, CONTRACTOR shall provide to Owner's Representative verbal notification within one (1) hour and written notification within twenty-four (24) hours of the event and shall be responsible for recording the location of the event and the circumstances surrounding the event through photographs, interviewing witnesses, obtaining medical reports, police accident reports and other documentation that describes the event. Copies of such documentation shall be provided to Owner's Representative, for OWNER's and E/A's records, within forty-eight (48) hours of the event. Contractor shall cooperate with OWNER on any OWNER investigation of any such incident.

6.11.6 Rest Breaks:

.1 Except as provided in subsection 6.11.6.2 below, an employee performing construction activity at a construction site is entitled to a rest break of not less than ten (10) minutes for every four (4) hours worked. No employee may be required to work more than 3.5 hours without a rest break. A rest break means a break from work within working hours, excluding meal breaks, during which an employee may not work. A rest break shall be scheduled as near as possible to the midpoint of the work period.

.2 An employee is not entitled to a rest break under subsection 6.11.6.1 on any day the employee works less than 3.5 hours or spends more than half of his or her work time engaged in non-strenuous labor in a climate controlled environment.

.3 A sign describing the requirements of this Section 6.11.6 in English and Spanish shall be posted by the employer in each establishment subject to the requirement of a rest break in a conspicuous place or places where notices to employees are customarily posted, in accordance with the OWNER's then current rules for size, content, and location of such signage.

.4 The violation of Ordinance No. 20100729-047, enacted July 29, 2010, which establishes the rest break requirements set forth above, may be enforced with criminal penalties and civil remedies, as set forth in the Ordinance.

6.11.7 If the Contractor fails to carry out the Work in accordance with the Contract Documents so that a safety violation has occurred, the Owner may order the Contractor to stop the Work or any portion thereof, until the cause for such order has been eliminated. However, the right of the Owner to stop the Work under this paragraph shall not give rise to a duty on the part of the Owner to supervise the Contractor's Work or to control the Contractor's means and methods or to exercise this right for the benefit of the Contractor or any other person or entity. All time lost due to Project shut down will be the Contractor's sole responsibility, will be charged against the Contract Time, and the Contractor will be responsible for any and all expenses incurred. This provision is in addition to and supplemental to the applicable provisions of the Project's ROCIP Safety Manual.

6.11.8 Confined Space Program

.1 Contractor acknowledges and agrees that the Owner is temporarily transferring management and control of the site of the Work to the Contractor for the purpose of constructing the Project. The Contractor's responsibilities to manage the Work includes the responsibility to manage the property for purposes of compliance with 29 CFR 1926 subpart AA. To the best of Owner's knowledge and belief, Owner has provided the following information in the plans and specifications and other Contract Documents: (i) the location of each known permit space, (ii) the hazards or potential hazards in each space or the reason it is a permit space; and (iii) any precautions that the Owner or any previous contractor has implemented for the protection of employees in the permit space. This transfer will result in the Contractor being both the host employer and the controlling contractor for this portion of the Work.

6.12 Continuing the Work: CONTRACTOR shall carry on the Work and adhere to the Progress Schedule during all disputes or disagreements with OWNER. No Work shall be delayed or postponed pending resolution of any disputes or disagreements, except as OWNER and CONTRACTOR may otherwise agree in writing.

6.13 CONTRACTOR's General Warranty and Guarantee:

6.13.1 CONTRACTOR warrants and guarantees to OWNER that all Work will conform to the plans and specifications, be performed in a good and workmanlike manner in accordance with the Contract Documents and will not be defective. This warranty will survive the termination or expiration of the Contract. CONTRACTOR's warranty and guarantee hereunder excludes defects or damage caused by:

.1 abuse, modification or improper maintenance or operation by persons other than CONTRACTOR, Subcontractors or Suppliers; or

.2 normal wear and tear under normal usage.

6.13.2 CONTRACTOR's obligation to perform and complete the Work in a good and workmanlike manner in accordance with the Contract Documents shall be absolute. None of the following will constitute an acceptance of Work that is not in accordance with the Contract Documents or a release of CONTRACTOR's obligation to perform the Work in accordance with the Contract Documents:

.1 observations by Owner's Representative and/or E/A;

.2 recommendation of any progress or final payment by Owner's Representative;

.3 the issuance of a certificate of Substantial Completion or any payment by OWNER to CONTRACTOR under the Contract Documents;

.4 use or occupancy of the Work or any part thereof by OWNER;

.5 any acceptance by OWNER or any failure to do so;

.6 any review of a Shop Drawing or sample submittal;

.7 any inspection, test or approval by others; or

.8 any correction of defective Work by OWNER.

6.14 INDEMNIFICATION:

6.14.1 CONTRACTOR shall defend, indemnify and hold harmless OWNER, E/A, E/A'S Consultants and Sub consultants and their respective officers, directors, partners, employees, agents and other Consultants and any of them (the "INDEMNIFIED PARTIES") from and against all claims, costs, losses and damages (including but not limited to all fees and charges of engineers, architects, attorneys and other professionals and all court or arbitration or other dispute resolution costs) arising out of or resulting from the performance of the Work, provided that any such claim, cost, loss or damage:

.1 Is attributable to bodily injury, sickness, disease or death, or to injury to or destruction of tangible property (other than the work itself), including the loss of use resulting therefrom, and

.2 Is caused in whole or in part by any negligent act or omission of CONTRACTOR, any Subcontractor, any Supplier, any person or organization directly or indirectly employed by any of them to perform or furnish any of the work or anyone for whose acts any of them may be liable, regardless of whether or not caused in part by any negligence or omission of the INDEMNIFIED PARTIES hereunder or whether liability is imposed upon such INDEMNIFIED PARTY by laws and regulations regardless of the negligence of any such person or entity.

In the event that indemnification of the INDEMNIFIED PARTIES is prohibited by law, CONTRACTOR shall nonetheless be solely responsible for any liability arising out of or resulting from the performance of the Work, subject to the limitations set forth above, and shall indemnify and hold harmless the remaining INDEMNIFIED PARTIES, who may be legally indemnified, from such liability of the CONTRACTOR and the associated costs described above.

6.14.2 The indemnification obligation under paragraph 6.14.1 shall not be limited in any way by any limitation on the amount or type of damages, or compensation or benefits payable by or for CONTRACTOR or any such Subcontractor, Supplier or other person or organization under workers' compensation acts, disability benefit acts or other employee benefit acts.

6.14.3 The obligations of CONTRACTOR under paragraph 6.14.1 shall not extend to the liability of OWNER, E/A, E/A's consultants, and their officers, directors, partners, employees or agents caused primarily by negligent preparation of maps, drawings, surveys, designs or specifications upon which is placed the applicable state-authorized design professional seal of OWNER's, E/A's or E/A's consultant's officers, directors, partners, employees or agents.

6.14.4 In the event CONTRACTOR fails to follow OWNER's directives concerning use of the site, scheduling or course of construction, or engages in other conduct which proximately causes damage to property based on inverse condemnation or otherwise, then and in that event, CONTRACTOR shall indemnify OWNER against all costs resulting from such claims.

6.14.5 In the event CONTRACTOR unreasonably delays progress of the work being done by others on the site so as to cause loss for

which OWNER becomes liable, then CONTRACTOR shall indemnify OWNER from and reimburse OWNER for such loss.

6.15 Survival of Obligations: All representations, indemnifications, warranties and guarantees made in, required by or given in accordance with the Contract Documents, as well as all continuing obligations indicated in the Contract Documents, will survive final payment, completion and acceptance of the Work and termination or completion of the Agreement.

6.16 Losses from Natural Causes: Unless otherwise specified, all loss or damage to CONTRACTOR arising out of the nature of the Work to be done or from action of the elements, floods or from unforeseeable circumstances in prosecution of the Work or from unusual obstructions or difficulties which may be encountered in prosecution of the Work, shall be sustained and borne by CONTRACTOR at its own cost and expense.

6.17 Notice of Claim: Should CONTRACTOR suffer injury or damage to person or property because of any error, omission or act of OWNER or of any of OWNER's employees or agents or others for whose acts OWNER is liable, a Claim must be made to the other party within thirty (30) calendar days of the event giving rise to such injury or damage. The provisions of this paragraph 6.17 shall not be construed as a substitute for or a waiver of the provisions of any applicable statute of limitations or statute of repose.

6.18 Liquidated Damages: CONTRACTOR or its Surety shall be liable for liquidated damages for the failure of the CONTRACTOR to timely complete the Work or any portion thereof within the Contract Time.

ARTICLE 7 - OTHER WORK

7.1 OWNER may perform other work related to the Project at the site by OWNER's own forces, or let other contracts therefor, or have other work performed by utility owners. CONTRACTOR and OWNER agree to and shall use best efforts to cooperate and coordinate the Work with others performing work and other work related to the Project in order to avoid conflicts and delays in the Work. If CONTRACTOR believes that delay or additional cost is involved because of such action by OWNER, CONTRACTOR may make a Claim as provided in Article 11 or 12.

7.2 CONTRACTOR shall afford other contractors who are in a contract with OWNER and each utility owner (and OWNER, if OWNER is performing the additional work with OWNER's employees) proper and safe access to the site and a reasonable opportunity for the introduction and storage of materials and equipment and the execution of such other work and shall properly connect and coordinate the Work with theirs. Unless otherwise provided in the Contract Documents, CONTRACTOR shall do all cutting, fitting and patching of the Work that may be required to make its several parts come together properly and integrate with such other work. CONTRACTOR shall not endanger any work of others by cutting, excavating or otherwise altering their work and will only cut or alter their work with the written consent of Owner's Representative and the other contractors whose work will be affected. CONTRACTOR shall promptly remedy damage wrongfully caused by CONTRACTOR to completed or partially completed construction or to property of the OWNER or separate contractors.

7.3 If the proper execution or results of any part of CONTRACTOR's Work depends upon work performed by others under this Article 7, CONTRACTOR shall inspect such other work and promptly report to Owner's Representative in writing any delays, defects or deficiencies in such other work that render it unavailable or unsuitable for the proper execution and results of CONTRACTOR's Work. CONTRACTOR's failure to report will constitute an acceptance of such other work as fit and proper for integration with CONTRACTOR's Work except for latent or non-apparent defects and deficiencies in such other work.

7.4 OWNER shall provide for coordination of the activities of the OWNER's own forces and of each separate contractor with the Work of CONTRACTOR, who shall cooperate with them. CONTRACTOR shall participate with other separate contractors and Owner's Representative in reviewing their construction Progress Schedules when directed to do so. On the basis of such review, CONTRACTOR shall make any revisions to the construction Progress Schedule deemed necessary after a joint review and mutual agreement. The agreed upon construction Progress Schedules shall then constitute the Progress Schedules to be used by CONTRACTOR, separate contractors and OWNER until subsequently revised.

7.5 Costs caused by delays or by improperly timed activities or defective construction shall be borne by the party responsible therefor.

ARTICLE 8 - OWNER'S RESPONSIBILITIES

8.1 Prior to the start of construction, OWNER will designate in writing a person or entity to act as Owner's Representative during construction. Except as otherwise provided in these General Conditions, OWNER shall issue all communications to CONTRACTOR through Owner's Representative.

8.2 OWNER will not supervise, direct, control or have authority over or be responsible for CONTRACTOR's means, methods, techniques, sequences or procedures of construction or the safety precautions and programs incident thereto. OWNER is not responsible for any failure of CONTRACTOR to comply with laws and regulations applicable to furnishing or performing the Work. OWNER is not responsible for CONTRACTOR's failure to perform or furnish the Work in accordance with the Contract Documents. Failure or omission of OWNER to discover, or object to or condemn any defective Work or material shall not release CONTRACTOR from the obligation to properly and fully perform the Contract.

8.3 OWNER is not responsible for the acts or omissions of CONTRACTOR, or of any Subcontractor, any Supplier, or of any other person or organization performing or furnishing any of the Work. CONTRACTOR acknowledges and agrees that OWNER'S direction to perform Work in accordance with the approved Progress Schedule is not a demand for acceleration or a dictation of CONTRACTOR'S means or methods.

8.4 Information or services under the OWNER's control shall be furnished by the OWNER with reasonable promptness to avoid delay in orderly progress of the Work. The OWNER shall have a reasonable amount of time to investigate site conditions, review submittals, analyze requests for changes, and to make other decisions in the orderly administration of the Contract. CONTRACTOR must notify the OWNER in writing, if the time for the investigation, review, analysis of any submittals, required for changes or otherwise required for OWNER'S decision, impacts in any way the Critical Path of the approved Progress Schedule.

8.5 The foregoing are in addition to other duties and responsibilities of the OWNER enumerated herein and especially those in respect to Article 4 (Availability of Lands; Subsurface and Physical Conditions; Reference Points), Article 7 (Other Work) and Article 14 (Payments to CONTRACTOR and Completion).

8.6 **Notice of Claim:** Should OWNER suffer injury or damage to person or property because of any error, omission or act of CONTRACTOR or of any of CONTRACTOR's employees or agents or others for whose acts CONTRACTOR is liable, a Claim will be made to the other party within thirty (30) calendar days of receipt of actual or constructive notice of the event giving rise to such injury or damage. The provisions of this paragraph 8.6 shall not be construed as a substitute for or a waiver of the provisions of any applicable statute of limitations or statute of repose.

ARTICLE 9 - ENGINEER/ARCHITECT'S STATUS DURING CONSTRUCTION

9.1 E/A's Authority and Responsibilities:

9.1.1 The duties and responsibilities and the limitations of authority of E/A during construction, as set forth in the Contract Documents, may be assigned or assumed by the OWNER, but shall not be extended without written consent of OWNER and/or E/A. The assignment of any authority, duties or responsibilities to E/A under the Contract Documents, or under any agreement between OWNER and E/A, or any undertaking, exercise or performance thereof by E/A, is intended to be for the sole and exclusive benefit of OWNER and not for the benefit of CONTRACTOR, Subcontractor, Supplier, or any other person or organization, or for any surety or employee or agent of any of them.

9.1.2 E/A will not supervise, direct, control or have authority over or be responsible for CONTRACTOR's means, methods, techniques, sequences or procedures of construction, or the safety precautions and programs incident thereto. E/A is not responsible for any failure of CONTRACTOR to comply with laws and regulations applicable to the furnishing or performing the Work. E/A is not responsible for CONTRACTOR's failure to perform or furnish the Work in accordance with the Contract Documents. Failure or omission of E/A to discover, or object to or condemn any defective Work or material shall not release CONTRACTOR from the obligation to properly and fully perform the Contract.

9.1.3 E/A is not responsible for the acts or omissions of CONTRACTOR, or of any Subcontractor, any Supplier, or of any other person or organization performing or furnishing any of the Work.

9.1.4 If OWNER and E/A agree, E/A will review the final Application for Payment and accompanying documentation and all maintenance and operating instructions, schedules, guarantees, bonds and certificates of inspection, tests and approvals and other documentation required to be delivered by Article 14, but only to determine generally that their content complies with the requirements of, and in the case of certificates of inspections, tests and approvals that the results certified indicate compliance with, the Contract Documents.

9.1.5 The limitations upon authority and responsibility set forth in this paragraph 9.1 shall also apply to E/A's Consultants, Resident Project Representative and assistants.

9.2 E/A as Owner's Representative: E/A may be designated as the Owner's Representative under paragraph 8.1.

9.3 Visits to Site: If OWNER and E/A agree, E/A will make visits to the site at intervals appropriate to the various stages of construction as E/A deems necessary in order to observe as an experienced and qualified design professional the progress that has been made and the quality of the various aspects of CONTRACTOR's executed Work. Based on information obtained during such visits and observations, E/A will endeavor for the benefit of OWNER to determine, in general, if the Work is proceeding in accordance with the Contract Documents. E/A will not be required to make exhaustive or continuous on-site inspections to check the quality or quantity of the Work. E/A's efforts will be directed toward providing for OWNER a greater degree of confidence that the completed Work will conform generally to the Contract Documents. On the basis of such visits and on-site observations, E/A will keep OWNER informed of the progress of the Work and will endeavor to guard OWNER against defective Work. E/A's visits and on-site observations are subject to all the limitations on E/A's authority and responsibility set forth in paragraph 9.1.

9.4 Resident Project Representative: If OWNER and E/A agree, E/A will furnish a Resident Project Representative to assist E/A in providing more continuous observation of the Work. The responsibilities and authority and limitations of any such Resident Project Representative and assistants will be as provided in paragraph 9.1 and in the Supplemental General Conditions. OWNER may designate another representative or agent to represent OWNER at the site who is not E/A, E/A's consultant, agent or employee.

9.5 Clarifications and Interpretations: E/A may determine that written clarifications or interpretations of the requirements of the Contract Documents (in the form of drawings or otherwise) are necessary. Such written clarifications or interpretations will be consistent with the intent of and reasonably inferable from the Contract Documents, will be issued with reasonable promptness by Owner's Representative and will be binding on OWNER and CONTRACTOR. If OWNER or CONTRACTOR believes that a written clarification or interpretation justifies an adjustment in the Contract Amount or the Contract Times, OWNER or CONTRACTOR may make a Claim therefor as provided in Article 11 or 12.

9.6 Rejecting Defective Work: E/A will recommend that OWNER disapprove or reject Work which E/A believes to be defective, or believes will not produce a completed Project that conforms to the Contract Documents or will prejudice the integrity of the design concept of the completed Project as a functioning whole as indicated by the Contract Documents.

9.7 Shop Drawings: Refer to Division 1 for E/A's authority concerning Shop Drawings.

ARTICLE 10 - CHANGES IN THE WORK

10.1 Changes:

10.1.1 Without invalidating the Contract and without notice to any surety, OWNER may, at any time or from time to time, order additions, deletions or revisions in the Work. Such changes in the Work will be authorized by Change Order, Change Directive or Field Order. In the event that the OWNER and the CONRACTOR are unable to negotiate the terms of a Change Order for the performance of additional Work, the OWNER may, at its election, perform such additional Work with its own forces or with another contractor and such work will be considered "Other Work" in accordance with Article 7.

10.1.2 Changes in the Work shall be performed under applicable provisions of the Contract Documents, and CONTRACTOR shall proceed promptly, unless otherwise provided in the Change Order, Change Directive or Field Order. CONTRACTOR's proposals for changes in the Contract Amount and/or Contract Time shall be submitted within ten (10) Calendar Days of request by Owner's Representative, including impacts to the approved Progress Schedule, unless Owner's Representative grants an extension. OWNER will review each proposal and respond to CONTRACTOR within ten (10) Calendar Days. After review by OWNER, CONTRACTOR shall provide any supporting data requested by Owner's Representative within seven (7) Calendar Days, unless Owner's Representative grants an extension. OWNER will determine within seven (7) Calendar Days whether to pursue the change in Work.

10.1.3 CONTRACTOR shall not be entitled to an increase in the Contract Amount or an extension of the Contract Times with respect to any Work performed that is not required by the Contract Documents as amended, modified and supplemented as provided in paragraphs 3.3.1 and 3.3.2, except in the case of an emergency as provided in paragraph 6.11.5 or in the case of uncovering Work as provided in paragraph 13.4.

10.1.4 Except in the case of an emergency as provided in paragraph 6.11.5, a Change Order or Change Directive is required before CONTRACTOR commences any activities associated with a change in the Work which, in CONTRACTOR 's opinion, will result in a change in the Contract Amount and/or Contract Times.

10.1.5 If notice of any change affecting the general scope of the Work or the provisions of the Contract Documents (including, but not limited to, Contract Amount or Contract Times) is required by the provisions of any Bond to be given to a surety, the giving of any such notice will be CONTRACTOR's responsibility, and the amount of each applicable Bond will be adjusted accordingly.

10.2 Change Orders:

10.2.1 OWNER and CONTRACTOR shall execute appropriate written Change Orders covering:

.1 a change in the Work;

.2 the amount of the adjustment in the Contract Amount, if any; and

.3 the extent of the adjustment in the Contract Time, if any.

10.2.2 An executed Change Order shall represent the complete, equitable, and final amount of adjustment in the Contract Amount and/or Contract Time owed to CONTRACTOR or OWNER as a result of the occurrence or event causing the change in the Work encompassed by the Change Order.

10.3 Change Directives:

10.3.1 Without invalidating the Contract, OWNER may, by written Change Directive, using the Force Account method, order changes in the Work within the general scope of the Contract consisting of additions, deletions or other revisions, the Contract Amount and Contract Time being adjusted as necessary. “Force Account” means a basis of payment for the direct performance of Work with payment based on the actual cost of the labor, equipment and materials furnished and consideration for overhead and profit as set forth in Section 11.5, below. A Change Directive shall be used in the absence of complete and prompt agreement on the terms of a Change Order. Where practicable, any items of Work that may be agreed upon, prior to the performance of Work under this Section, will be included in a separate Change Order. For example, the cost of the installation of additional asphalt may be agreed upon based on the unit prices in the Bid.

10.3.2 If the Change Directive provides for an adjustment to the Contract Amount, the adjustment shall be based on the method provided in paragraph 11.5.

10.3.3 A Change Directive shall be effective immediately and shall be recorded later by preparation and execution of an appropriate Change Order.

10.3.4 Upon receipt of a Change Directive, CONTRACTOR shall promptly proceed with the change in the Work involved, provided, prior to the commencement of any Work under this section, the CONTRACTOR must submit its proposed Work plan, anticipated schedule, and a list of its work force and equipment proposed to be used in the Work for OWNER’S approval. Upon such approval, CONTRACTOR must promptly commence and make continuous progress in the Work. The OWNER reserves the right to withhold payment for low production or lack of progress.

10.4 Field Order:

10.4.1 Owner's Representative may authorize minor variations in the Work from the requirements of the Contract Documents which do not involve an adjustment in the Contract Amount or the Contract Times and are compatible with the design concept of the completed Project as a functioning whole as indicated by the

Contract Documents. These shall be accomplished by written Field Order and shall be binding on OWNER and on CONTRACTOR who shall perform the Work involved promptly.

10.4.2 If CONTRACTOR believes that a Field Order would require an adjustment in the Contract Amount and/or Contract Times, CONTRACTOR shall make a prompt written request to Owner's Representative for a Change Order. Any request by CONTRACTOR for an adjustment in Contract Amount and/or Contract Times must be made in writing prior to beginning the work covered by the Field Order.

10.5 **No Damages for Delay:** CONTRACTOR shall receive no compensation for delays or hindrances to the Work, except when direct and unavoidable extra cost to CONTRACTOR is caused by failure of OWNER to provide information or material, if any, which is to be furnished by OWNER or access to the Work and only to the extent that such acts continue after the CONTRACTOR furnishes OWNER with written notice of such failure. When such extra compensation is claimed a written statement thereof shall be presented by CONTRACTOR to OWNER and if by OWNER found correct shall be approved. If delay is caused by specific orders given by OWNER to stop work or by performance of extra Work or by failure of OWNER to provide material or necessary instructions for carrying on the Work, then such delay will entitle CONTRACTOR to an equivalent extension of time, CONTRACTOR's application for which shall, however, be subject to approval of OWNER. No such extension of time shall release CONTRACTOR or surety on its performance bond from all CONTRACTOR's obligations hereunder which shall remain in full force until discharge of the Contract. In no event shall the CONTRACTOR be entitled to any compensation or recovery of any special damages in connection with any delays, including without limitation: consequential damages, lost opportunity costs, impact damages, or other similar damages. The OWNER'S exercise of any of its rights or remedies under the Contract Documents (including without limitation ordering changes in the Work, or directing suspension, rescheduling, or correction of the Work), regardless of the extent or frequency of the OWNER'S exercise of such rights or remedies, shall not be construed as active interference in the CONTRACTOR'S performance of the Work. Except as otherwise provided herein, an extension of Contract Time, to the extent permitted under Article 12, shall be the sole remedy of the CONTRACTOR for any acknowledged delays.

ARTICLE 11 - CHANGE OF CONTRACT AMOUNT

11.1 The Contract Amount is stated in the Agreement and, including authorized adjustments, is the total amount payable by OWNER to CONTRACTOR for performance of the Work under the Contract Documents.

11.2 The original Contract Amount may not be increased by more than twenty-five percent (25%) and it may not be decreased more than twenty-five percent (25%) without the consent of the CONTRACTOR to such decrease, except in the event of a termination for convenience under paragraph 15.2 or the failure of the City Council to appropriate sufficient funding for the Project, in which events it is agreed that the consent of the CONTRACTOR will not be required.

11.3 The Contract Amount shall only be changed by a Change Order. Any claim for an adjustment in the Contract Amount shall be made by Written Notice delivered by the party making the Claim to the other party promptly (but in no event later than thirty (30) calendar days) after the start of the occurrence or event giving rise to the Claim and stating the general nature of the Claim. Notice of the amount of the Claim with supporting data shall be delivered within thirty (30) calendar days after Written Notice of Claim is delivered by claimant, and shall represent that the adjustment claimed covers all known amounts to which claimant is entitled as a result of said occurrence or event. If OWNER and

CONTRACTOR cannot otherwise agree, all Claims for adjustment in the Contract Amount shall be determined as set out in Article 16.

11.4 Determination of Value of Work:

11.4.1 The value of any Work covered by a Change Order for an adjustment in the Contract Amount will be determined by one or more of the following methods:

.1 by application of unit prices contained in the Contract Documents to the quantities of the items involved.

.2 by a mutually agreed lump sum properly itemized and supported by sufficient substantiating data, including documentation by subcontractors performing the work, to permit evaluation.

.3 by cost of Work plus CONTRACTOR's fee for all overhead costs and profit (determined as provided in paragraph 11.5).

.4 No cost will be included in the change order for time spent preparing the change order, nor will costs be included for an estimate of time to negotiate the change order costs for machinery, tools, or equipment as described in subparagraph 11.5.3

11.4.2 Before using the method described in paragraph 11.4.1.3, OWNER and CONTRACTOR agree to negotiate a Change Order using the methods identified in paragraphs 11.4.1.1 and 11.4.1.2, as appropriate, to determine the adjustment in the Contract Amount.

11.5 Cost of Work: If neither of the methods defined in paragraphs 11.4.1.1 nor 11.4.1.2 can be agreed upon before a change in the Work is commenced which will result in an adjustment in the Contract Amount, then the change in the Work will be performed by Change Directive, using the Force Account method, and payment will be made as follows:

11.5.1 For all personnel, CONTRACTOR will receive actual field cost wage rates for each hour that said personnel are actually engaged in such Work, as substantiated by its certified payroll, to which will be added an amount equal to twenty-five percent (25%) of the sum thereof as compensation for CONTRACTOR's and any effected Subcontractor's total overhead and profit. No separate charge will be made by CONTRACTOR or its Subcontractor(s) for organization or overhead expenses. In no case will the rate of wage be less than the minimum shown in the Contract for a particular category. CONTRACTOR will also receive an amount equal to 55% of the wages paid personnel, excluding the 25% compensation provided above, for CONTRACTOR's and any effected Subcontractor's cost of premiums on public liability insurance, workers' compensation insurance, social security and unemployment insurance. The actual cost of CONTRACTOR's bond(s) on the extra Work will be paid based on invoices from surety. No charge for superintendence will be made unless considered necessary and ordered by OWNER.

11.5.2 CONTRACTOR will receive the actual cost, including freight charges, of the materials used and installed on such Work, to which costs will be added a sum equal to twenty-five percent (25%) thereof as compensation for CONTRACTOR's and any effected Subcontractor's total overhead and profit. In case material invoices indicate a discount may be taken, the actual cost will be the invoice price minus the discount.

11.5.3 For machinery, trucks, power tools, or other similar equipment (the “equipment”) agreed to be necessary by OWNER and CONTRACTOR, OWNER will allow CONTRACTOR the Regional and Model Year adjusted Monthly Ownership Cost divided by 176 plus the Hourly Estimated Operating Costs as given in the latest edition of the "Rental Rate Blue Book" as published by EquipmentWatch (1-800-

669-3282) for each hour that said equipment is in use on such work. The established equipment rates will be paid for each hour that the equipment is utilized in the Work. In the event that the equipment is used intermittently during the Work, full payment for an eight-hour day will be made if the equipment is not idle more than four (4) hours of the day. If the equipment is idle more than four (4) hours in a day, then payment will be made only for the actual hours worked. No additional compensation will be allowed on the equipment for CONTRACTOR's or any affected Subcontractor's overhead and profit. OWNER may accept an actual rental invoice in lieu of the method of calculation set forth in paragraph 11.5.3 for equipment rented exclusively for Force Account Work or for equipment not included in the Rental Rate Blue Book.

11.5.4 The compensation, as herein provided for, shall be received by CONTRACTOR and any affected Subcontractor as payment in full for work done by Change Directive and will include use of small tools, and total overhead expense and profit. CONTRACTOR and Owner's Representative shall compare records of work done by Change Directive at the end of each day. Copies of these records will be made upon forms provided for this purpose by OWNER and signed by both Owner's Representative and CONTRACTOR, with one copy being retained by OWNER and one by CONTRACTOR. Refusal by CONTRACTOR to sign these records within two (2) working days of presentation does not invalidate the accuracy of the record.

11.6 Unit Price Work:

11.6.1 Where the Contract Documents provide that all or part of the Work is to be unit price Work, initially the Contract Amount will be deemed to include for all unit price work an amount equal to the sum of the established unit price for each separately identified item of unit price work times the estimated quantity of each item as indicated in the Bid. The estimated quantities of items of unit price work are not guaranteed and are solely for the purpose of comparison of Bids and determining an initial Contract Amount. Determinations of the actual quantities and classifications of unit price work performed by CONTRACTOR will be made by Owner's Representative. Owner's Representative will review with CONTRACTOR the preliminary determinations on such matters before rendering a written decision thereon (by recommendation of an Application for Payment or otherwise).

11.6.2 When "plan quantity" is indicated for a Bid item, CONTRACTOR shall be paid amount specified in the Contract Documents without any measurements.

11.6.3 Each unit price will be deemed to include an amount considered by CONTRACTOR to be adequate to cover CONTRACTOR's overhead and profit for each separately identified item.

11.6.4 A Major Item is any individual Bid item in the Bid that has a total cost equal to or greater than five percent (5%) of the original Contract Amount or $50,000, whichever is greater, computed on the basis of Bid quantities and Contract unit prices.

11.6.5 OWNER or CONTRACTOR may make a Claim for an adjustment in the Contract Amount in accordance with Article 11 if:

.1 the actual quantity of any Major Item should become as much as twenty percent (20%) more than or twenty percent (20%) less than that in the Bid; or

.2 CONTRACTOR presents documentation contesting accuracy of "plan quantity" and Owner's Representative verifies quantity and determines original value is in error by five percent (5%) or more;

Provided, however, in the event a Major Item is reduced by twenty percent (20%) or more of the amount in the Bid, no additional Article 11 profit or overhead will be added, if, due to other additions in the Work, the net value of the Contract Amount is not reduced.

ARTICLE 12 - CHANGE OF CONTRACT TIMES

12.1 Working Day and Calendar Day Contracts:

12.1.1 The Contract Times (or Milestones) may only be changed by Change Order or Time Extension Request duly executed by both CONTRACTOR and Owner's Representative. Any claim for an adjustment of the Contract Times (or Milestones) shall be made by Written Notice delivered by the party making the Claim to the other party promptly (but in no event later than thirty (30) calendar days after the start of the occurrence or event giving rise to the delay) and stating the general nature of the delay. Notice of the extent of the delay with supporting data shall be delivered within thirty (30) calendar days after Written Notice of Claim is delivered by claimant, and shall represent that the adjustment claimed is the entire adjustment to which claimant is entitled as a result of said occurrence or event. If OWNER and CONTRACTOR cannot otherwise agree, all Claims for adjustment in the Contract Times (or Milestones) shall be determined as set out in Article 16. No Claim for an adjustment in the Contract Times (or Milestones) will be valid if not submitted in accordance with the requirements of this paragraph.

12.1.2 When CONTRACTOR is at fault and OWNER stops the Work, so that corrections in the Work can be made by CONTRACTOR, no extension in time will be allowed.

12.1.3 When CONTRACTOR is prevented from completing any part of the Work within the Contract Times (or Milestones) due to delay beyond the control of both OWNER and CONTRACTOR, an extension of the Contract Times (or Milestones) in an amount equal to the time lost due to such delay shall be CONTRACTOR's sole and exclusive remedy for such delay. If performance by the CONTRACTOR or OWNER is interrupted by any occurrence not occasioned by its own conduct, whether such occurrence be an act of god or the result of war, riot, civil commotion, sovereign conduct, or the conduct of a third party, then such performance will be excused for a period of time necessary to remedy its effects, provided, however, in such an event, a conference will be held within three (3) business days to establish a proposed new Progress Schedule for the Project.

12.1.4 OWNER will consider time extension requests and may grant CONTRACTOR an extension of time because of:

.1 Changes ordered in the work which justify additional time.

.2 Failure of materials or products being at the Project site due to delays in transportation or failures of Suppliers, which are not the result of CONTRACTOR's, Subcontractor's or Supplier's negligence. The request for an extension of time shall be supported by a citation of acts demonstrating that the delays are beyond CONTRACTOR's control, including, but not limited to, CONTRACTOR's efforts to overcome such delays documented as follows:

a) Copy of purchase order for delayed item(s) indicating date ordered by CONTRACTOR/ Subcontractor and date purchase order received by Supplier.

b) If item(s) require Shop Drawings or other submittal information in accordance with the Contract Documents, provide record of date

submittal(s) forwarded to Owner's Representative, date submittal(s) returned to CONTRACTOR, and date submittal(s) forwarded to Supplier.

c) Copy of document(s) from Supplier, on Supplier's letterhead, indicating date(s) item(s) would be ready for shipment and/or actual shipment date(s).

d) Copies of all correspondence between CONTRACTOR / Subcontractor and Supplier indicating CONTRACTOR / Subcontractor's efforts to expedite item(s).

e) If item(s) are being purchased by a Subcontractor, provide correspondence, meeting notes, etc., that reflect CONTRACTOR's efforts with the Subcontractor to expedite delivery of the item(s).

.3 When acts of OWNER, E/A, utility owners or other contractors employed by OWNER delay progress of work through no fault of CONTRACTOR. The CONTRACTOR will only be entitled to an extension of time for delays that affect the Critical Path of the Work and that are not caused by the CONTRACTOR.

.4 When CONTRACTOR is delayed by strikes, lockouts, fires, losses from natural causes, or other unavoidable cause or causes beyond CONTRACTOR's control.

12.2 Calendar Day Contracts:

12.2.1 Under a Calendar Day Contract, CONTRACTOR may be granted an extension of time because of unusual inclement weather, including but not limited to unusual rainfall events, which are beyond the normal rainfall recorded and expected for Austin, Texas. However, the CONTRACTOR will not be granted an extension of time for “normal rainfall”, as described below.

12.2.2 "Unusual Inclement Weather" is defined as a rain event or other weather related event which occurs at the site and is of sufficient magnitude to prevent CONTRACTOR from performing units of Work critical to maintaining the Progress Schedule.

12.2.3 Baseline Rain Day Determination. “Normal rainfall” compiled by the State climatologist, based on U.S. Weather Bureau Records for Austin, Texas, is considered a part of the Calendar Day Contract, and is not a justification for an extension of time. Listed below are the number of days in each month for which no compensatory days for rainfall events (“Rain Days”) in such months may be claimed:

January..... 8 days

February..... 8 days

March..... 7 days

April..... 7 days

May..... 9 days

June..... 6 days

July..... 5 days

August..... 5 days

September..... 7 days

October..... 7 days

November..... 7 days

December..... 7 days

Rain Days in addition to the baseline Rain Day determination described above will be measured with the Owner's Representative's approval at the nearest operational public weather data collection facility to the site, including but not limited to the OWNER's early warning flood gauge system.

12.2.4 CONTRACTOR may receive credit in any month for Unusual Inclement Weather, and specifically for any Rain Days in that month which exceed the number of Rain Days allocated to that month, if a Claim is made in accordance with paragraph 12.1.1 and the weather event meets the definition for "Unusual Inclement Weather", and as applicable, "Rain Day" and such claimed day is a day on which Work critical to maintaining the Progress Schedule is scheduled to be performed and is otherwise capable of being performed.

ARTICLE 13 - TESTS AND INSPECTIONS; CORRECTION, REMOVAL OR ACCEPTANCE OF DEFECTIVE WORK

13.1 Notice of Defects: Prompt notice of all defective Work of which OWNER or E/A has actual knowledge will be given to CONTRACTOR. All defective Work may be rejected, corrected or accepted as provided in Article 13. CONTRACTOR must give OWNER and E/A prompt notice of any defective Work of which CONTRACTOR has actual knowledge.

13.2 Access to Work: OWNER, E/A, E/A's Consultants, other representatives and personnel of OWNER, independent testing laboratories and governmental agencies having jurisdiction will have access to the Work at reasonable times for observing, inspecting and testing. CONTRACTOR shall provide them proper and safe conditions for such access, and advise them of CONTRACTOR's site safety procedures and programs so that they may comply therewith as applicable.

13.3 Tests and Inspections:

13.3.1 CONTRACTOR shall give timely notice of readiness of the Work for all required inspections, tests or approvals, and shall cooperate with inspection and testing personnel to facilitate required inspections or tests.

13.3.2 OWNER shall employ and pay for services of an independent testing laboratory to perform all inspections, tests or approvals required by the Contract Documents except:

.1 for inspections, tests or approvals covered by paragraphs 13.3.3 and 13.3.4 below;

.2 that costs incurred for tests or inspections conducted pursuant to paragraph 13.4.3 shall be paid as provided in paragraph 13.4.3;

.3 for reinspecting or retesting defective Work, including any associated costs incurred by the testing laboratory for cancelled tests or standby time; and

.4 as otherwise specifically provided in the Contract Documents.

13.3.3 If laws or regulations of any public body having jurisdiction require any Work (or part thereof) specifically to be inspected, tested or approved by an employee or other representative of such public body, CONTRACTOR shall assume full responsibility for arranging and obtaining such inspections, tests or approvals, pay

all costs in connection therewith and furnish Owner's Representative the required certificates of inspection or approval.

13.3.4 CONTRACTOR shall also be responsible for arranging and obtaining and shall pay all costs in connection with any inspections, tests or approvals required for OWNER's and E/A's review of submittals covering materials, equipment, and mix designs to be incorporated in the Work.

13.3.5 All testing laboratories shall meet the requirements of ASTM E-329.

13.4 Uncovering Work:

13.4.1 If any Work (or the work of others) that is to be inspected, tested or approved is covered by CONTRACTOR without written concurrence of Owner's Representative, or if any Work is covered contrary to the written request of Owner's Representative, it must, if requested by Owner's Representative, be uncovered and recovered at CONTRACTOR's expense.

13.4.2 Uncovering Work as provided in paragraph 13.4.1 shall be at CONTRACTOR's expense unless CONTRACTOR has given Owner's Representative timely notice of CONTRACTOR's intention to cover the same and Owner's Representative has not acted within five (5) working days to such notice.

13.4.3 If Owner's Representative considers it necessary or advisable that covered Work be observed, inspected or tested, CONTRACTOR shall uncover, expose or otherwise make available for observation, inspection or testing that portion of the Work in question, furnishing all necessary labor, material and equipment. If it is found that such Work is defective, CONTRACTOR shall pay all claims, costs, losses and damages caused by, arising out of or resulting from such uncovering, exposure, observation, inspection and testing and of satisfactory replacement or reconstruction (including but not limited to all costs of repair or replacement of work of others); and OWNER shall be entitled to an appropriate decrease in the Contract Amount, and may make a Claim therefor as provided in Article 11. If, however, such Work is not found to be defective, CONTRACTOR shall be allowed an increase in the Contract Amount or an extension of the Contract Times (or Milestones), or both, directly attributable to such uncovering, exposure, observation, inspection, testing, replacement and reconstruction; and CONTRACTOR may make a Claim therefor as provided in Articles 11 and 12.

13.5 OWNER May Stop the Work:

13.5.1 If the Work is defective, or CONTRACTOR fails to supply sufficient skilled workers, suitable materials, and/or equipment; or fails to furnish or perform the Work in such a way that the Work in progress or the completed Work will conform to the Contract Documents, OWNER may order CONTRACTOR to stop the Work, or any portion thereof, until the cause for such order has been eliminated; however, this right of OWNER to stop the Work shall not give rise to any duty on the part of OWNER to exercise this right for the benefit of CONTRACTOR or any surety or other party.

13.5.2 If CONTRACTOR fails to correct defective Work or submit a satisfactory plan to take corrective action, with procedure and time schedule, OWNER may order CONTRACTOR to stop the Work, or any portion thereof, until cause for such order has been eliminated, or take any other action permitted by this Contract. A notice to stop the Work, based on defects, shall not stop calendar or working days charged to the Project.

13.6 Correction or Removal of Defective Work: If required by OWNER, CONTRACTOR shall promptly, as directed, either correct all defective Work, whether or not fabricated, installed or completed, or, if the Work has been rejected by Owner's Representative, remove it from the site and replace it with Work that is not defective. CONTRACTOR shall correct or remove and replace defective Work, or submit a plan of action detailing how the deficiency will be corrected, within the time frame identified in the notice of defective Work. CONTRACTOR shall pay all claims, costs, losses and damages caused by or resulting from such correction or removal (including but not limited to all costs of repair or replacement of work of others).

13.7 Warranty period:

13.7.1 If within one year after the date of Substantial Completion or such longer period of time as may be prescribed by laws or regulations or by the terms of any applicable special guarantee required by the Contract Documents or by any specific provision of the Contract Documents (e.g. paragraph 14.11.2), any Work, including work performed after the Substantial Completion date, is found to be defective, CONTRACTOR shall promptly, without cost to OWNER and in accordance with OWNER's written instructions:

(i) correct such defective Work, or, if it has been rejected by OWNER, remove it from the site and replace it with Work that is not defective, and

(ii) satisfactorily correct or remove and replace any damage to other Work or the work of others resulting therefrom.

If CONTRACTOR does not promptly comply with the terms of such instructions, or in an emergency where delay would cause serious risk of loss or damage, OWNER may have the defective Work corrected or the rejected Work removed and replaced, and all claims, costs, losses and damages caused by or resulting from such removal and replacement (including but not limited to all costs of repair or replacement of work of others) will be paid by CONTRACTOR. The warranty period will be deemed to be renewed and recommenced in connection with the completed items of Work requiring correction.

13.7.2 In special circumstances where a particular item of equipment is placed in continuous service before Substantial Completion of all the Work, the warranty period for that item may start to run from an earlier date if so provided in the Contract Documents.

13.7.3 If correction of defective Work will affect the function or use of the facility CONTRACTOR shall not proceed with correction of defective Work without prior coordination and approval of OWNER.

13.7.4 The obligations of the CONTRACTOR to perform warranty work will survive the acceptance of the Work and any termination of the Contract.

13.8 Acceptance of Defective Work: If, instead of requiring correction or removal and replacement of defective Work, OWNER decides to accept it, OWNER may do so. CONTRACTOR shall pay all claims, costs, losses and damages attributable to OWNER's evaluation of and determination to accept such defective Work. If any such acceptance occurs prior to recommendation of final payment, a Change Order will be issued incorporating the necessary revisions in the Contract Documents and compensating OWNER for the diminished value of the defective Work. If the acceptance occurs after such recommendation, an appropriate amount will be paid by CONTRACTOR to OWNER after a calculation by OWNER of the diminution in value of the defective Work.

13.9 OWNER May Correct Defective Work: If CONTRACTOR fails within a reasonable time after Written Notice of OWNER to correct defective Work, or to remove and replace rejected Work, or if CONTRACTOR fails to perform the Work in accordance with the Contract Documents, or if CONTRACTOR fails to comply with any other provision of the Contract

Documents, OWNER may, after seven (7) calendar days' Written Notice to CONTRACTOR, correct and remedy any such deficiency. If, in the opinion of the Owner's Representative, significant progress has not been made during this seven (7) calendar day period to correct the deficiency, the OWNER may exercise any actions necessary to remedy the deficiency. In exercising the rights and remedies under this paragraph, OWNER shall proceed expeditiously. In connection with such corrective and remedial action, OWNER may exclude CONTRACTOR from all or part of the site, take possession of all or part of the Work, and suspend CONTRACTOR's services related thereto, and incorporate in the Work all materials and equipment stored at the site or for which OWNER has paid CONTRACTOR but which are stored elsewhere. CONTRACTOR shall allow OWNER, its agents and employees, OWNER's other contractors, E/A and E/A's consultants access to the site to enable OWNER to exercise the rights and remedies under this paragraph. All claims, costs, losses and damages incurred or sustained by OWNER in exercising such rights and remedies will be charged against CONTRACTOR and a Change Order will be issued incorporating the necessary revisions in the Contract Documents with respect to the Work. Such claims, costs, losses and damages will include but not be limited to all costs of repair or replacement of work of others destroyed or damaged by correction, removal or replacement of CONTRACTOR's defective Work. CONTRACTOR shall not be allowed an extension of the Contract Times (or Milestones), or claims of damage because of any delay in the performance of the Work attributable to the exercise by OWNER of OWNER's rights and remedies hereunder.

ARTICLE 14 - PAYMENTS TO CONTRACTOR AND COMPLETION

14.1 Application for Progress Payment:

14.1.1 Within 45 days from when the work was performed by the Contractor and Subcontractors, but not more often than once a month, CONTRACTOR shall submit to Owner's Representative for review an Application for Payment, in a form acceptable to OWNER, filled out and signed by CONTRACTOR covering the Work completed as of the date of the Application and accompanied by such supporting documentation as is required by the Contract Documents.

14.1.2 Such applications shall not include requests for payment on account of changes in the Work which have been properly authorized by Change Directives but not yet included in Change Orders.

14.1.3 Such applications shall not include requests for payment of amounts the CONTRACTOR does not intend to pay to a Subcontractor or Supplier because of a dispute or other reason.

14.1.4 If payment is requested on the basis of materials or equipment not incorporated in the Work but delivered and suitably stored at the site or at another location agreed to in writing, the Application for Payment shall be accompanied by such bills of sale, data and other procedures satisfactory to OWNER substantiating OWNER's title to such materials or equipment or otherwise protecting OWNER's interest. Payment on account of such materials or equipment will not include any amount for CONTRACTOR's overhead or profit or relieve CONTRACTOR of its obligation to protect and install such materials or equipment in accordance with the requirements of the Contract and to restore damaged or defective Work. If materials or equipment are stored at another location, at the direction of the OWNER they shall be stored in a bonded and insured facility, accessible to E/A and OWNER, and shall be clearly marked as property of OWNER. Title to materials delivered to the site of the Work or a staging area will pass to OWNER upon payment by OWNER without the necessity for further documentation. Risk of loss will not pass to OWNER until acceptance.

14.1.5 Where the original Contract Amount is less than $400,000, OWNER will pay CONTRACTOR total amount of approved Application for Payment, less ten percent (10%) of amount thereof, which ten percent (10%) will be retained until final payment, less all previous payments and less all other sums that may be retained by OWNER under the terms of this Agreement. Where the original Contract Amount is $400,000 or more, OWNER will pay CONTRACTOR total amount of approved Application for Payment, less five percent (5%) of amount thereof, which five percent (5%) will be retained until final payment, less all previous payments and less all other sums that may be retained by OWNER under the terms of this Agreement. In either case, if the Work is near completion and delay occurs due to no fault or neglect of CONTRACTOR, OWNER may pay a portion of the retained amount to CONTRACTOR. CONTRACTOR, at OWNER's option, may be relieved of the obligation to complete the Work and, thereupon, CONTRACTOR shall receive payment of the balance due under the Contract subject to the conditions stated under paragraph 15.2. A Subcontractor may submit a written request to the CONTRACTOR and Project Manager requesting release of retainage for work by the Subcontractor that has been completed and approved. The Project Manager will evaluate the request and if it is approved, the Project Manager will request the CONTRACTOR to include the request for release of an appropriate amount of retainage in the next Pay Application.

14.1.6 Applications for Payment shall include the following documentation:

.1 updated Progress Schedule;

.2 monthly subcontractor report;

.3 any other documentation required under the Supplemental General Conditions.

14.2 CONTRACTOR's Warranty of Title: CONTRACTOR warrants and guarantees that title to all Work, materials and equipment covered by any Application for Payment, whether incorporated in the Project or not, will pass to OWNER free and clear of all Liens no later than the time of payment to CONTRACTOR.

14.3 Review of Applications for Progress Payment:

14.3.1 Owner's Representative will, within seven (7) calendar days after receipt of each Application for Payment, either indicate a recommendation for payment and forward the Application for processing by OWNER, or return the Application to CONTRACTOR indicating Owner's Representative's reasons for refusing to recommend payment. In the latter case, CONTRACTOR shall make the necessary corrections and resubmit the Application.

14.3.2 Owner's Representative's recommendation of any payment requested in an Application for Payment will constitute a representation by Owner's Representative, based upon Owner's Representative's on-site observations of the executed Work and on Owner's Representative's review of the Application for Payment and the accompanying data and schedules, that to the best of Owner's Representative's knowledge, information and belief:

.1 the Work has progressed to the point indicated; and

.2 the quality of the Work is generally in accordance with the Contract Documents (subject to an evaluation of the Work as a functioning whole prior to or upon Substantial Completion, to the results of any subsequent tests called for in the Contract Documents, to a final determination of quantities and classifications for unit price Work, and to any other qualifications stated in the recommendation).

14.3.3 By recommending any such payment, Owner's Representative will not thereby be deemed to have represented that:

.1 exhaustive or continuous on-site inspections have been made to check the quality or the quantity of the Work;

.2 examination has been made to ascertain how or for what purpose CONTRACTOR has used money previously paid on account of the Contract Amount;

.3 CONTRACTOR's construction means, methods, techniques, sequences or procedures have been reviewed; or

.4 that there may not be other matters or issues between the parties that might entitle CONTRACTOR to be paid additionally by OWNER or entitle OWNER to withhold payment to CONTRACTOR.

14.4 Decisions to Withhold Payment:

14.4.1 OWNER may withhold or nullify the whole or part of any payment to such extent as may be necessary on account of:

.1 defective Work not remedied;

.2 third party Claims filed or reasonable evidence indicating probable filing of such Claims;

.3 failure of CONTRACTOR to make payments properly to Subcontractors for labor, materials or equipment;

.4 reasonable evidence that the Work cannot be completed for the unpaid balance of the Contract Amount;

.5 damage to OWNER or another contractor;

.6 reasonable evidence that the Work will not be completed within the Contract Time, and that the unpaid balance would not be adequate to cover actual or liquidated damages for the anticipated delay;

.7 failure of CONTRACTOR to submit a schedule of values in accordance with the Contract Documents;

.8 failure of CONTRACTOR to submit a submittal schedule in accordance with the Contract Documents;

.9 failure of CONTRACTOR to submit and update a construction Progress Schedule in accordance with the Contract Documents;

.10 failure of CONTRACTOR to maintain a record of changes on drawings and documents;

.11 failure of CONTRACTOR to maintain weekly payroll reports and, as applicable, provide copies of reports in a timely manner upon request of OWNER;

.12 failure of CONTRACTOR to submit monthly subcontractor reports;

.13 CONTRACTOR's neglect or unsatisfactory prosecution of the Work, including failure to clean up;

.14 failure of CONTRACTOR to comply with the Austin City Code, Chapter 2-9-A, as amended, “Minority-Owned and Women-Owned Business Enterprise Procurement Program;” or

.15 failure of CONTRACTOR to comply with any provision of the Contract Documents.

14.4.2 When the above reasons for withholding payment are removed, CONTRACTOR shall resubmit a statement for the value of Work performed. Payment will be made within thirty (30) calendar days of receipt of approved Application for Payment.

14.4.3 Subcontractors may request Partial Payment when the OWNER withholds payment of an invoice to the CONTRACTOR for any reason listed in Section 14.4.1. If payment is withheld by the OWNER, the CONTRACTOR shall notify all affected Subcontractors within two (2) working days of notice that payment is being withheld. Upon notification, Subcontractors may submit a formal written request for Partial Payment to the CONTRACTOR and OWNER. If directed by the OWNER, the CONTRACTOR shall within three (3) working days resubmit to the OWNER an invoice for the same period that includes only the work performed by the requesting Subcontractors during this period. The OWNER will review this resubmitted invoice in accordance with Section 14.3.1. Upon receipt of payment for the resubmitted invoice, CONTRACTOR shall pay the subcontractor within ten (10) Calendar Days in accordance with Section 6.4.7.

14.5 Delayed Payments: Should OWNER fail to make payment to CONTRACTOR of sum named in any Application for Payment within thirty (30) calendar days after the day on which OWNER received the mutually acceptable Application for Payment, then OWNER will pay to CONTRACTOR, in addition to sum shown as due by such Application for Payment, interest thereon at the rate specified in Government Code, Section 2251.025(b) from date due until fully paid, which shall fully liquidate any injury to CONTRACTOR growing out of such delay in payment.

14.6 Arrears: No money shall be paid by OWNER upon any claim, debt, demand or account whatsoever, to any person, firm or corporation who is in arrears to City for taxes; and City shall be entitled to counterclaim and automatically offset against any such debt, claim, demand or account in the amount of taxes so in arrears and no assignment or transfer of such debt, claim, demand or account after said taxes are due, shall affect the right of OWNER to so offset said taxes, and associated penalties and interest if applicable, against the same.

14.7 Substantial Completion:

14.7.1 When the CONTRACTOR considers that the Work, or a portion thereof which the OWNER agrees to accept separately, is substantially complete, the CONTRACTOR shall notify Owner's Representative and request a determination as to whether the Work or designated portion thereof is substantially complete. If Owner's Representative does not consider the Work substantially complete, Owner's Representative will notify CONTRACTOR giving reasons therefor. After performing any required Work, CONTRACTOR shall then submit another request for Owner's Representative to determine Substantial Completion. If Owner's Representative considers the Work substantially complete, Owner's Representative will prepare and deliver a certificate of Substantial Completion which shall establish the date of Substantial Completion, shall include a punch list of items to be completed or corrected before final payment, shall establish the time within which CONTRACTOR shall finish the punch list, and shall establish responsibilities of the OWNER and CONTRACTOR for security, maintenance, heat, utilities, damage to the Work, warranty and insurance. Failure to include an item on the punch list does not alter the responsibility of CONTRACTOR to complete all Work in accordance with the Contract Documents. If a Certificate of Occupancy is required by public authorities having jurisdiction over the Work, said certificate shall be issued before the Work or any portion thereof is considered substantially complete. The certificate of Substantial Completion shall be signed by OWNER and CONTRACTOR to evidence acceptance of the responsibilities assigned to them in such certificate.

14.7.2 OWNER shall have the right to exclude CONTRACTOR from the Work after the date of Substantial Completion, but OWNER will allow CONTRACTOR reasonable access to complete or correct items on the punch list and complete warranty work.

14.8 Partial Utilization: Use by OWNER, at OWNER's option, of any substantially completed part of the Work which: (i) has specifically been identified in the Contract Documents, or (ii) OWNER and CONTRACTOR agree constitutes a separately functioning and usable part of the Work that can be used by OWNER for its intended purpose without significant interference with CONTRACTOR's performance of the remainder of the Work, may be accomplished prior to Substantial Completion of all the Work in accordance with the following:

14.8.1 OWNER at any time may request CONTRACTOR to permit OWNER to use any such part of the Work which OWNER believes to be ready for its intended use and substantially complete. If CONTRACTOR agrees that such part of the Work is substantially complete, CONTRACTOR shall certify to Owner's Representative that such part of the Work is substantially complete and request Owner's Representative to issue a certificate of substantial Completion for that part of the Work. CONTRACTOR at any time may notify Owner's Representative that CONTRACTOR considers any such part of the Work ready for its intended use and substantially complete and request Owner's Representative to issue a certificate of Substantial Completion for that part of the Work. The provisions of paragraphs 14.7.1 and 14.7.2 will apply with respect to certification of Substantial Completion of that part of the Work and the division of responsibility in respect thereof and access thereto.

14.8.2 Such partial utilization is authorized by public authorities having jurisdiction over the Work.

14.9 Final Inspection: Upon Written Notice from CONTRACTOR that the entire Work or an agreed portion thereof is complete, Owner's Representative will make a final inspection with CONTRACTOR and provide Written Notice of all particulars in which this inspection reveals that the Work is incomplete or defective. CONTRACTOR shall immediately take such measures as are necessary to complete such Work or remedy such deficiencies.

14.10 Final Application for Payment: CONTRACTOR may make application for final payment following the procedure for progress payments after CONTRACTOR has completed all such corrections to the satisfaction of Owner's Representative and delivered the following documents:

14.10.1 Affidavit by CONTRACTOR certifying the payment of all debts and claims;

14.10.2 Three (3) complete operating and maintenance manuals, each containing maintenance and operating instructions, schedules, guarantees, and other documentation required by the Contract Documents;

14.10.3 Record documents (as provided in paragraph 6.10);

14.10.4 Consent of surety, if any, to final payment. If surety is not provided, complete and legally effective releases or waivers (satisfactory to OWNER) of all claims arising out of or filed in connection with the Work;

14.10.5 Certificate evidencing that insurance required by the Supplemental General Conditions will remain in force after final payment and through the warranty period;

14.10.6 Non-Use of Asbestos Affidavit (After Construction);

14.10.7 Subcontractor report and all other documentation necessary for evaluation of CONTRACTOR's fulfillment of the Contract MBE/WBE or DBE goals;

14.10.8 Documentation of notice to claimants, to the extent applicable and subject to subparagraph 14.11.4; and

14.10.9 Any other documentation called for in the Contract Documents.

14.11 Final Payment and Acceptance:

14.11.1 If, on the basis of observation of the Work during construction, final inspection, and review of the final Application for Payment and accompanying documentation as required by the Contract Documents, Owner's Representative is satisfied that the Work has been completed and CONTRACTOR's other obligations under the Contract Documents have been fulfilled and there are no outstanding claims, Owner's Representative will recommend the final Application for Payment and thereby notify the OWNER, who will pay to CONTRACTOR the balance due CONTRACTOR under the terms of the Contract. If the sole remaining unfinished item to complete the Work is the reestablishment of vegetation, CONTRACTOR may execute a revegetation letter with fiscal posted (letter of credit) to ensure completion of this item. This Work must be accomplished within one hundred twenty (120) Calendar Days of the date of Final Completion of the Work. When the permanent erosion control has been established, OWNER will initiate an inspection for final acceptance of the erosion controls. If the revegetation is not completed within the one hundred twenty (120) Calendar Days, OWNER, at its option, may complete the Work using the posted fiscal.

14.11.2 If the Contract measures Contract Time to Final Completion, rather than Substantial Completion, Owner's Representative will issue a letter of final acceptance to CONTRACTOR which establishes the Final Completion date and initiates the one-year warranty period. If the sole remaining unfinished item to complete the Work is the reestablishment of vegetation and CONTRACTOR has executed a revegetation letter with fiscal posted (letter of credit) to ensure completion of this item, the Owner’s Representative will issue a letter of conditional acceptance to CONTRACTOR which established the Final Completion date and initiates the one-year warranty period.

14.11.3 Final payment is considered to have taken place when CONTRACTOR or any of its representatives negotiates OWNER's final payment check, whether labeled final or not, for cash or deposits check in any financial institution for its monetary return.

14.11.4 The OWNER will withhold funds sufficient to cover the amount of any unresolved contract claims from final payment for six months under the following limited conditions:

.1 CONTRACTOR must provide written notice to the claimant (via certified mail or hand delivery) that (i) OWNER will hold funds in the amount of the disputed claim for six (6) months from the date of the receipt of the notice and (ii) CONTRACTOR and the claimant have certain alternative dispute resolution rights; and

.2 CONTRACTOR must provide OWNER with a copy of the receipted notice.

Provided the claimant has received notice under this section, OWNER will release the withheld funds, if the CONTRACTOR provides a bond in substantial compliance with the provisions of Section 52.231 of the Texas Property Code; when the OWNER receives a settlement or release of the claim with accompanying instructions regarding payment; upon resolution of the claim in litigation, if suit is filed within such six (6) month period and the OWNER receives written notice of such filing; or when such six (6) month period has passed, if no such bond, settlement, release, or notice of filing of suit have been received. The above provisions notwithstanding, if efforts to timely resolve a disputed claim are not

being made to OWNER'S reasonable satisfaction, OWNER may, in its complete discretion, file an interpleader action and deposit the withheld funds in the registry of a court of competent jurisdiction. In addition, CONTRACTOR must include a provision in each of its subcontracts that the prevailing party in any litigation arising thereunder will be entitled to recover its costs of court and reasonable attorney's fees.

14.12 Waiver of Claims: The making and acceptance of final payment will constitute:

14.12.1 a waiver of claims by OWNER against CONTRACTOR, except claims arising from unsettled claims, from defective Work appearing after final inspection, from failure to comply with the Contract Documents or the terms of any warranty specified therein, or from CONTRACTOR's continuing obligations under the Contract Documents; and

14.12.2 a waiver of all claims by CONTRACTOR against OWNER other than those previously made in writing and still unsettled.

ARTICLE 15 - SUSPENSION OF WORK AND TERMINATION

15.1 OWNER May Suspend Work Without Cause: At any time and without cause, OWNER may suspend the Work or any portion thereof for a period of not more than ninety (90) calendar days by Written Notice to CONTRACTOR which will fix the date on which the Work will be resumed. CONTRACTOR shall resume the Work on the date so fixed. CONTRACTOR shall be allowed an adjustment in the Contract Amount or an extension of the Contract Times, or both, directly attributable to any such suspension if CONTRACTOR makes an approved Claim therefor as provided in Articles 11 and 12.

15.2 OWNER May Terminate Without Cause: Upon seven (7) calendar days' Written Notice to CONTRACTOR, OWNER may, without cause and without prejudice to any right or remedy of OWNER, elect to terminate the Agreement. In such case, CONTRACTOR shall be paid (without duplication of any items):

15.2.1 for completed and acceptable Work executed in accordance with the Contract Documents prior to the effective date of termination;

15.2.2 for reasonable demobilization costs;

15.2.3 for anticipated profits on completed and accepted Work not previously paid and not included in separate pay items calculated to date of termination but not for anticipated profit on the entire Contract not previously paid, unabsorbed overhead, or lost opportunity; and

15.2.4 for all claims incurred in settlement of terminated contracts with Subcontractors, Suppliers and others, including for anticipated profits on completed and accepted Work not previously paid and not included in separate pay items calculated to date of termination but not for anticipated profit on the entire Contract not previously paid, unabsorbed overhead, or lost opportunity. CONTRACTOR agrees to negotiate in good faith with Subcontractors, Suppliers and others to mitigate OWNER's cost.

15.3 OWNER May Terminate With Cause:

15.3.1 Upon the occurrence of any one or more of the following events:

.1 if CONTRACTOR persistently fails to perform the Work in accordance with the Contract Documents;

.2 if CONTRACTOR disregards laws or regulations of any public body having jurisdiction;

.3 if CONTRACTOR disregards the authority of Owner's Representative;

.4 if CONTRACTOR makes fraudulent statements;

.5 if CONTRACTOR fails to maintain a work force adequate to accomplish the Work within the Contract Time;

.6 if CONTRACTOR fails to make adequate progress and endangers successful completion of the Contract; or

.7 if CONTRACTOR otherwise violates in any substantial way any provisions of the Contract Documents;

OWNER may, after giving CONTRACTOR (and the surety, if any) seven (7) calendar days Written Notice terminate the services of CONTRACTOR. OWNER, at its option, may proceed with negotiation with surety for completion of the Work. Alternatively, OWNER may under these circumstances exclude CONTRACTOR from the site and take possession of the Work (without liability to CONTRACTOR for trespass or conversion), incorporate in the Work all materials and equipment stored at the site or for which OWNER has paid CONTRACTOR but which are stored elsewhere, and finish the Work as OWNER may deem expedient. In such case CONTRACTOR shall not be entitled to receive any further payment until the Work is finished. If the unpaid balance of the Contract Amount exceeds all claims, costs, losses and damages sustained by OWNER arising out of or resulting from completing the Work, such excess will be paid to CONTRACTOR. If such claims, costs, losses and damage exceed such unpaid balance, CONTRACTOR or surety shall pay the difference to OWNER. In the event that a termination for cause is found to be wrongful, the termination shall be converted to a termination without cause as set forth in Section 15.2 and CONTRACTOR'S remedy for wrongful termination is limited to the recovery of the payments permitted for termination without cause as set forth in Section 15.2.

15.3.2 Where CONTRACTOR's services have been so terminated by OWNER, the termination will not affect any rights or remedies of OWNER against CONTRACTOR and surety then existing or which may thereafter accrue. Any retention or payment of moneys due CONTRACTOR by OWNER will not release CONTRACTOR from liability. In the event OWNER terminates Contract with cause, OWNER may reject any and all Bids submitted by CONTRACTOR for up to three (3) years after the date of such termination. These Progressive Sanctions will be administered in accordance with the City of Austin Purchasing Office Probation, Suspension, and Debarment Procedures for Vendors, which include notice and an opportunity for a hearing.

15.4 CONTRACTOR May Stop Work or Terminate: If through no act or fault of CONTRACTOR, the Work is suspended for a period of more than ninety (90) calendar days by OWNER or under an order of court or other public authority, or (except during disputes) Owner's Representative fails to forward for processing any mutually acceptable Application for Payment within thirty (30) calendar days after it is submitted, or (except during disputes) OWNER fails for sixty (60) calendar days after it is submitted to pay CONTRACTOR any sum finally determined by OWNER to be due, then CONTRACTOR may, upon seven (7) calendar days' Written Notice to OWNER, and provided OWNER does not remedy such suspension or failure within that time, terminate the Agreement and recover from OWNER payment on the same terms as provided in paragraph 15.2. In lieu of terminating the Agreement and without prejudice to any other right or remedy, if (except during disputes) Owner's Representative has failed to forward for processing any mutually acceptable Application for Payment within thirty (30) calendar days after it is submitted, or (except during disputes)

OWNER has failed for sixty (60) calendar days after it is submitted to pay CONTRACTOR any sum finally determined by OWNER to be due, CONTRACTOR may upon seven (7) calendar days' Written Notice to OWNER stop the Work until payment of all such amounts due CONTRACTOR, including interest thereon. The provisions of this paragraph 15.4 are not intended to preclude CONTRACTOR from making a Claim under Articles 11 and 12 for an increase in Contract Amount or Contract Times or otherwise for expenses or damage directly attributable to CONTRACTOR's stopping Work as permitted by this paragraph.

15.5 Discretionary Notice to Cure: In its complete discretion, OWNER may, but is not required to, provide a Notice to Cure to CONTRACTOR and its surety to cure an event of default described above and/or an anticipatory breach of contract and, if required by OWNER, to attend a meeting with OWNER, regarding the Notice to Cure, the event of default, and/or the anticipatory breach of contract. The Notice to Cure will set forth the time limit in which the cure is to be completed or commenced and diligently prosecuted. Upon receipt of any Notice to Cure, CONTRACTOR shall prepare a report describing its program and measures to affect the cure of the event of default and/or anticipatory breach of contract within the time required by the Notice to Cure. The CONTRACTOR'S report must be delivered to OWNER at least three (3) days prior to any requested meeting with the OWNER and surety.

15.6 Bankruptcy: If CONTRACTOR declares bankruptcy or is adjudged bankrupt or makes an assignment for the benefit of creditors or if a receiver is appointed for the benefit of creditors or if a receiver is appointed by reason of CONTRACTOR'S insolvency, CONTRACTOR may be unable to perform this Contract in accordance with the Contract requirements. In such an event, OWNER may demand CONTRACTOR or its successor in interest provide OWNER with adequate assurance of CONTRACTOR'S future performance in accordance with the terms and conditions of the Contract. If CONTRACTOR fails to provide adequate assurance of future performance to OWNER'S reasonable satisfaction within ten (10) days of such a request, OWNER may terminate the CONTRACTOR'S services for cause or without cause, as set forth above. If CONTRACTOR fails to provide timely adequate assurance of its performance and actual performance, OWNER may prosecute the Work with its own forces or with other contractors on a time and material or other appropriate basis and the cost of which will be charged against the Contract balance.

15.7 Duty to Mitigate: In the event of any termination or suspension under this Contract, the CONTRACTOR agrees to and shall take all reasonable actions to mitigate its damages and any and all claims which may be asserted against the OWNER.

15.8 Responsibility during Demobilization: While demobilizing, the CONTRACTOR will take all necessary and reasonable actions to preserve and protect the Work, the site and other property of the OWNER or others at the site.

ARTICLE 16 - DISPUTE RESOLUTION

16.1 Filing of Claims:

16.1.1 Claims arising from the circumstances identified in paragraphs 3.2, 4.1, 4.2.2, 4.2.4, 6.4.2, 6.11.5.2, 6.17, 7.5, 8.6, 9.5, 10.4.2, 13.4.3, 13.8, 13.9, 15.1, 15.2, 15.3, or 15.4, or other occurrences or events, shall be made by Written Notice delivered by the party making the Claim to the other party within thirty (30) calendar days after the start of the occurrence or event giving rise to the Claim and stating the general nature of the Claim. Notice of the amount of the Claim with supporting data shall be delivered in writing within thirty (30) calendar days after Written Notice of Claim is delivered by claimant and shall represent that the adjustment claimed covers all known amounts and/or extensions of time to which claimant is entitled.

16.1.2 Within thirty (30) calendar days of receipt of notice of the amount of the Claim with supporting data, Owner's Representative and CONTRACTOR shall meet to discuss the Claim, after which an offer of settlement or notification of no settlement offer will be made to claimant. If claimant is not satisfied with the proposal presented, claimant shall have thirty (30) calendar days in which to: (i) submit additional supporting data requested by the other party; (ii) modify the initial Claim; or (iii) request Alternative Dispute Resolution.

16.2 Alternative Dispute Resolution:

16.2.1 If a dispute exists concerning a Claim, the parties agree to use the following procedure prior to pursuing any other available remedies. OWNER reserves the right to include the E/A as a party.

16.2.2 Negotiating with Previously Uninvolved Personnel: Either party may make a written request for a meeting to be held between representatives of each party within fourteen (14) Calendar Days of the request or such later period that the parties may agree to. Each party shall endeavor to include, at a minimum, one (1) previously uninvolved senior level decision maker (an owner, officer, or employee of each organization) empowered to negotiate on behalf of their organization. If a previously uninvolved senior level decision maker is unavailable due to the size of the CONTRACTOR'S organization or any other reason, the CONTRACTOR shall nonetheless provide an appropriate senior level decision maker for the meeting. The purpose of this and any subsequent meetings will be good faith negotiations of the matters constituting the dispute. Negotiations shall be concluded within thirty (30) Calendar Days of the first meeting, unless mutually agreed otherwise. This step may be waived by a written agreement signed by both parties, in which event the parties may proceed directly to mediation as described below.

16.2.3 Mediation:

.1 If the procedure described in 16.2.2 proves unsuccessful or is waived pursuant to its terms, the parties shall initiate the mediation process. OWNER and CONTRACTOR agree to select within thirty (30) calendar days a mediator trained in mediation skills, to assist with resolution of the dispute. OWNER and CONTRACTOR agree to act in good faith in the selection of the mediator and to give consideration to qualified individuals nominated to act as mediator. Nothing in this agreement prevents the parties from relying on the skills of a person who also is trained in the subject matter of the dispute and/or a contract interpretation expert. Should the parties fail to agree on a mediator within thirty (30) calendar days of initiation of the mediation process, the parties agree to ask the Travis County Dispute Resolution Center to select a qualified individual, which selection shall be binding on the parties.

.2 Mediation is a forum in which an impartial person, the mediator, facilitates communication between parties to promote reconciliation, settlement, or understanding among them. The parties hereby agree that mediation, at a minimum, shall provide for (i) conducting an on-site investigation, if appropriate, by the mediator for fact gathering purposes, (ii) a meeting of all parties for the exchange of points of view and (iii) separate meetings between the mediator and each party to the dispute for the formulation of resolution alternatives. The parties agree to participate in mediation in good faith for up to thirty (30) calendar days from the date of the first mediation session, unless mutually agreed otherwise. Should the parties fail to reach a resolution of the dispute through mediation, then each party is released to pursue other remedies available to them.

16.3 Resolution of Disputes between Contractor and Subcontractor or Supplier: If a dispute exists concerning a claim between a CONTRACTOR and a Subcontractor or Supplier, the CONTRACTOR agrees to participate with such Subcontractor and/or Supplier in a process substantially paralleling the steps set out in paragraphs 16.1 and 16.2 above, including the delivery of written notices, submission of supporting data, negotiation with previously uninvolved personnel, and, if such alternative dispute resolution process is unsuccessful, mediation between the parties to the claim. If the CONTRACTOR and Subcontractor or Supplier agreement provides an alternative dispute resolution process, which provides substantially equivalent rights to those set forth herein, it may be followed, unless the CONTRACTOR and affected Subcontractor or Supplier agree to follow the process outlined above. The OWNER is not a party to the alternative dispute resolution process between the CONTRACTOR and Subcontractor or Supplier and will not pay any costs incurred in the process. Each party will be responsible for its own expenses incurred in the process, which will include an equal share of the mediation expenses, unless otherwise determined by the mediator. NOTICE: THE PROCESS SET FORTH HEREIN IS NOT A SUBSTITUTE FOR THE STATUTORY PAYMENT BOND CLAIM PROCESS.

16.4 Claim Calculation:

16.4.1 Delay Claims: The intent of paying for delay damages is to reimburse the CONTRACTOR for actual expense arising out of a compensable delay. No profit or force account markups, other than labor burden, will be allowed for delay claims by the CONTRACTOR seeking reimbursement for expenses arising out of an alleged event of delay. No consequential damages will be allowed to the CONTRACTOR in connection with any claimed delays. If the CONTRACTOR requests compensation for delay damages and the delay is determined to be compensable, then standby equipment costs and project overhead compensation will be based on the duration of the compensable delay and the following:

.1 Standby equipment costs will not be allowed during periods when the equipment would have otherwise been idle. Standby equipment time will not exceed more than eight (8) hours per twenty-four (24) hour day, forty (40) hours per week, and one hundred seventy-six (176) hours per month. Standby equipment costs will be paid at 50 percent (50%) of the applicable Rental Rate Blue Book rates and calculated by dividing the monthly rate by one hundred seventy-six (176), multiplying the result by the number of standby hours and multiplying that number by the regional adjustment factor and the rate adjustment factor contained in the Blue Book. Operating costs will not be allowed.

.2 Project overhead will be determined from actual costs that the CONTRACTOR will be required to document. Project overhead is defined as the administrative and supervisory expenses incurred at the work site and will not include home office overhead.

16.4.2 General: Except as limited with respect to delay claims, as set forth above, the criteria set forth in Section 11.4.1 may be used as a basis to calculate an adjustment in the Contract Amount in the resolution of a claim, provided that there will be no compensation for home office overhead.

16.5 MBE/WBE Program Progressive Sanctions: CONTRACTOR is subject to progressive sanctions for failure of CONTRACTOR to comply with Austin City Code, Chapter 2-9A, as amended: “Minority-owned and Women-owned Business Enterprise Procurement Program.” Available sanctions for Program violations are set forth in Program rules adopted by the Small and Minority Business Resources Department (SMBR), as amended, and may include the following progressive sanctions for Program violations within a rolling 24-month period: (i) a period of probation for up to six (6) months for the first violation (ii) a period of suspension from bidding for up to 24 months for the second violation, and (iii) a period of

debarment for up to five (5) years for the third violation. If the CONTRACTOR engages in more than one of the violations listed below at any given time, OWNER has the discretion to determine whether such actions should be counted as multiple violations of the MBE/WBE Ordinance. Program violations include:

.1 providing false or misleading information to the OWNER in connection with the submission of a Bid, responses to request for qualifications or Proposals, Good Faith Efforts documentation, post award compliance or other Program operations;

.2 substituting M/WBE Subcontractors without first receiving approval for such substitutions;

.3 failure to comply with the approved Compliance Plan without an approved request for a change, an approved Change Order or other approved change to the Contract;

.4 violation of any other provision of the "Minority-owned and Women-owned Business Enterprise Procurement Program";

.5 providing false or misleading information to the OWNER in connection with an application for or challenge to certification, recertification or decertification as a MBE/WBE; and

.6 bid shopping.

The Progressive Sanctions will be administered in accordance with the City of Austin Purchasing Office Probation, Suspension, and Debarment Procedures for Vendors, which includes notice and an opportunity for a hearing.

ARTICLE 17 – MISCELLANEOUS

17.1 Venue: In the event of any suit at law or in equity involving the Contract, venue shall be exclusively in Travis County, Texas and the laws of the State of Texas shall apply to the interpretation and enforcement of the Contract.

17.2 Extent of Agreement: This Contract represents the entire and integrated agreement between the OWNER and CONTRACTOR with respect to the subject matter hereof and supersedes all prior negotiations, representations or agreements, either written or oral.

17.3 Cumulative Remedies: The rights and remedies available to the parties are not to be construed in any way as a limitation of any rights and remedies available to any or all of them which are otherwise imposed or available by laws or regulations, by special warranty or guarantees or by other provisions of the Contract Documents, and the provisions of this paragraph will be as effective as if repeated specifically in the Contract Documents in connection with each particular duty, obligation, right and remedy to which they apply. Specifically, the OWNER is not required to only assess liquidated damages, and OWNER may elect to pursue its actual damages resulting from the failure of the CONTRACTOR to complete the Work in accordance with the requirements of the Contract Documents.

17.4 Severability: If any word, phrase, clause, sentence or provision of the Contract, or the application of same to any person or set of circumstances is for any reason held to be unconstitutional, invalid or unenforceable, that finding shall only effect such word, phrase, clause, sentence or provision, and such finding shall not affect the remaining portions of this Contract; this being the intent of the parties in entering into the Contract; and all provisions of the Contract are declared to be severable for this purpose.

17.5 Independent Contractor: The Contract shall not be construed as creating an employer/employee relationship, a partnership, or a joint venture. CONTRACTOR is an independent contractor and CONTRACTOR's services shall be those of an independent contractor. CONTRACTOR agrees and understands that the Contract does not grant any rights or privileges established for employees of OWNER.

17.6 Prohibition of Gratuities: OWNER may, by Written Notice to CONTRACTOR, terminate the Contract without liability if is determined by OWNER that gratuities were offered or given by CONTRACTOR or any agent or representative of CONTRACTOR to any officer or employee of OWNER with a view toward securing the Contract or securing favorable treatment with respect to the awarding or amending or the making of any determinations with respect to the performing of such Contract. In the event the Contract is terminated by OWNER pursuant to this provision, OWNER shall be entitled, in addition to any other rights and remedies, to recover or withhold the amount of the cost incurred by CONTRACTOR in providing such gratuities.

17.7 Prohibition Against Personal Interest in Contracts: No officer, employee, independent consultant, or elected official of OWNER who is involved in the development, evaluation, or decision-making process of the performance of any solicitation shall have a financial interest, direct or indirect, in the Contract resulting from that solicitation. Any violation of this provision, with the knowledge, expressed or implied, of CONTRACTOR shall render the Contract voidable by OWNER.

17.8 OWNER'S Right to Audit:

17.8.1 Records means all records generated by or on behalf of CONTRACTOR and each Subcontractor and Supplier of CONTRACTOR, whether paper, electronic, or other media, which are in any way related to performance of or compliance with this Contract, including, without limitation:

.1 accounting records;

.2 written policies and procedures;

.3 subcontract files (including proposals of successful and unsuccessful Bidders, Bid recaps, etc.);

.4 original estimates and estimating work sheets;

.5 correspondence;

.6 Change Order files (including documentation covering negotiated settlements);

.7 back charge logs and supporting documentation;

.8 general ledger entries detailing cash and trade discounts earned, insurance rebates and dividends;

.9 lump sum agreements between CONTRACTOR and any Subcontractor or Supplier;

.10 records necessary to evaluate: Contract compliance, Change Order pricing, and any Claim submitted by CONTRACTOR or any of its payees; and

.11 any other CONTRACTOR record that may substantiate any charge related to this Contract.

17.8.2 CONTRACTOR shall allow OWNER'S agent or its authorized representative to inspect, audit, and/or reproduce, or all three, all Records generated by or on behalf of CONTRACTOR and each Subcontractor and Supplier, upon OWNER'S written request. Further, CONTRACTOR shall allow OWNER'S agent or authorized

representative to interview any of CONTRACTOR'S employees, all Subcontractors and all Suppliers, and all their respective employees.

17.8.3 CONTRACTOR shall retain all its Records, and require all its Subcontractors and Suppliers to retain their respective Records, during this Contract and for three (3) years after final payment, until all audit and litigation matters that OWNER has brought to the attention of CONTRACTOR are resolved, or as otherwise required by law, whichever is longer. OWNER'S right to inspect, audit, or reproduce Records, or interview employees of CONTRACTOR or its respective Subcontractors or Suppliers exists during this Contract, and for three (3) years after final payment, until all audit and litigation matters that OWNER has brought to CONTRACTOR'S attention are resolved, or as otherwise required by law, whichever is longer, and at no cost to OWNER, either from CONTRACTOR or any of its Subcontractors or Suppliers that may furnish Records or make employees available for interviewing.

17.8.4 CONTRACTOR must provide sufficient and accessible facilities during its normal business hours for OWNER to inspect, audit, or reproduce Records, or all three, and to interview any person about the Records.

17.8.5 CONTRACTOR shall insert these requirements in each written contract between CONTRACTOR and any Subcontractor or Supplier and require each Subcontractor and Supplier to comply with these provisions.

17.9 Survival: The terms and conditions of this Contract, which contemplate a period of time beyond completion or termination will survive such completion or termination and not be merged therein or otherwise terminated.

17.10 No Waiver: The waiver of any provision of this Contract will not be deemed to be a waiver of any other provision of this Contract. No waiver of any provision of this Contract will be deemed to constitute a continuing waiver unless expressly provided in writing, nor will a waiver of any default be deemed a waiver of any subsequent defaults of the same type. The failure at any time to enforce this Contract, whether the default is known or not, shall not constitute a waiver or estoppel of the right to do so.

17.11 Conditions Precedent to Right to Sue: Notwithstanding anything herein to the contrary, the CONTRACTOR will have at least 90 days to give notice of a claim for damages as a condition precedent to the right to sue on the Contract, subject to the contractual claim and alternative dispute resolution processes set forth herein.

17.12 Waiver of Trial by Jury: OWNER and CONTRACTOR agree that they have knowingly waived the right to trial by jury and have instead agreed that, in the event of any litigation arising out of or connected to this Contract, to proceed with a trial before the court, unless both parties subsequently agree otherwise in writing.

17.13 Contractor Evaluation: The Owner will review and evaluate the Contractor's Work and performance on the Project and provide the Contractor with a written Contractor Evaluation Report in accordance with City of Austin Administrative Rule R161-13.37. Rule R161-13.37 provides an appeal process.

http://www.austintexas.gov/department/contract-management

End

The Supplemental General Conditions contained herein amend or supplement the General Conditions, Section 00700.

ARTICLE 1 - DEFINITIONS

Add the following definition:

"1.20 Architect: Add the following:

Name: ***Mark E. Watford***
Brown Reynolds Watford Architects
Address: ***2700 Earl Rudder Freeway South, Suite 4000***
College Station, Texas 77845 "

Add the following definitions:

"1.51 Insurance Cost Form - Section 00425A of the Contract, submitted by CONTRACTOR with its Bid, used to notify OWNER of insurance costs not included in CONTRACTOR's Bid as a result of the OWNER providing insurance through ROCIP.

1.52 Payment Form - A form used by the ROCIP Administrator to notify the OWNER's Project Manager that all required insurance information and documentation has been received from CONTRACTOR.

1.53 OWNER's ROCIP Administrator - The insurance broker responsible for administering the OWNER's Rolling Owner Controlled Insurance Program (ROCIP).

1.54 Rolling Owner Controlled Insurance Program (ROCIP) - A specialized insurance program provided by OWNER for specifically identified Capital Improvements Program (CIP) projects."

Add the following definition:

"1.55 Commissioning Authority or Agent - A consultant retained by the OWNER charged with supporting E/A in monitoring the Work for conformance with the Contract Documents, and with assisting in the facility's start-up and testing as a member of the commissioning team."

Add the following definition:

"**1.57** "Mobilization Prompt Payment Program - The Owner's Mobilization Prompt Payment Program, will allow bimonthly payments during "critical mobilization stages" as specified in the Contract Documents by the Prime Contractor. The Mobilization Prompt Payment Program will only apply to projects with a construction cost of greater than $2,000,000."

ARTICLE 2 - PRELIMINARY MATTERS

2.1 Delivery of Agreement, Bonds, Insurance, etc.: Add the following:

"2.1.1 CONTRACTOR shall complete enrollment in the Rolling Owner Controlled Insurance Program (ROCIP) within five (5) Working Days after written notification of award of Contract."

2.4 Before Starting Construction:

Delete 2.4.2.6 and replace with the following (changes to the original text are identified by underlining):

"**.6** a preliminary schedule of values for all of the Work, subdivided into component parts in sufficient detail to serve as the basis for progress payments during construction. At a minimum, the schedule of values shall be broken out by trade and split between materials and labor. Prices will include an appropriate amount of overhead and profit applicable to each item of Work;"

.1 The Baseline Schedule and schedule submittals for Projects in the Mobilization Prompt Payment Program, must identify periods of "critical mobilization." The periods of critical mobilization will include the first two months of the Contract Time and additional periods identified by the Contractor and approved by Owner when peak Subcontractor mobilization will occur.

ARTICLE 4 - AVAILABILITY OF LANDS; SUBSURFACE AND PHYSICAL CONDITIONS; REFERENCE POINTS

4.1 Availability of Lands: Add the following:

"CONTRACTOR shall contact OWNER's Transportation Department to obtain a Temporary Use of Right-of-Way Permit prior to beginning construction on any sidewalk/driveway or occupying any parking area/meters within the public right-of-ways."

4.1 Availability of Lands: Add the following:

"Field Notes and Special Provisions to Easements, where applicable, are attached to Section 00810. All Work associated with Special Provisions to Easements shall be subsidiary to the entire Bid, unless otherwise specified.

Should the actions of the CONTRACTOR, or its Subcontractors, Vendors, or Suppliers, cause the Work to be delayed to the point that the ending date of an easement has been exceeded, the CONTRACTOR shall be responsible to reimburse the OWNER for any additional costs required to extend the period of rights to the easement in order to complete the Work. This delay shall be considered to be any period of time required by the CONTRACTOR to fully and satisfactorily execute the Work that is in addition to the original Contract duration, as modified by any executed Contract change orders."

ARTICLE 5 - BONDS AND INSURANCE

"5.3 Insurance:

5.3.1 CONTRACTOR Provided Insurance

CONTRACTOR shall provide insurance coverages described in paragraph(s) 5.3.1.1 and 5.3.1.2 (and 5.3.1.5 and 5.3.1.6, as required) for all Work required by the Contract through the end of the warranty period (with the exception of Builders' Risk, which is required only until the Work is accepted by OWNER). In addition, CONTRACTOR shall provide insurance coverages described in

Paragraph(s) 5.3.1.3 and 5.3.1.4 from Substantial Completion of the Work (in accordance with Section 00700 General Conditions Paragraph 14.11) to the end of the warranty period.

Subcontractors performing Work which involves asbestos, hazardous material or pollution defined as asbestos or any other excluded contractor as described in 5.3.2.1 will not be enrolled in the Rolling Owner Controlled Insurance Program (ROCIP) and must provide insurance as specified in paragraphs 5.3.1.1 through 5.3.1.6.

In the event that the Rolling Owner Controlled Insurance Program (ROCIP) or the coverage it provides to the Project is terminated for any reason, whether prior to the start of Work or any time during the Work, upon thirty (30) days Written Notice from OWNER, CONTRACTOR shall purchase and maintain as minimum the insurance coverages described in Paragraphs 5.3.1.3 and 5.3.1.4, for all Work remaining under the Contract through the end of the warranty period. All insurance secured by CONTRACTOR, Subcontractors and Sub-subcontractors pursuant to OWNER's requirements under this provision shall be in accordance with Article 5 of the General Conditions and paragraph 5.3.1.1 of this section. If CONTRACTOR is required to provide insurance as described in paragraphs 5.3.1.3 and 5.3.1.4, OWNER shall reimburse CONTRACTOR for the reasonable cost of providing the insurance described therein based upon the "Total Cost of Insurance for Base Bid" (plus total of all "Total Cost of Insurance for Alternates" selected by OWNER) as stated by CONTRACTOR in Contract Section 00425A (Insurance Cost Form) pro rated to take into account the Contract Time and Work remaining for performance of CONTRACTOR's obligations under the Contract.

5.3.1.1 General Requirements.

.1 CONTRACTOR shall carry insurance in the types and amounts indicated below for the duration of the Contract, which shall include items owned by OWNER in the care, custody and control of CONTRACTOR prior to and during construction and warranty period.

.2 CONTRACTOR must complete and forward the Certificate of Insurance, Section 00650, to OWNER before the Contract is executed as verification of coverage required below. CONTRACTOR shall not commence Work until the required insurance is obtained and until such insurance has been reviewed by OWNER. Approval of insurance by OWNER shall not relieve or decrease the liability of CONTRACTOR hereunder and shall not be construed to be a limitation of liability on the part of CONTRACTOR. CONTRACTOR must also complete and forward the Certificate of Insurance, Section 00650, to OWNER whenever a previously identified policy period has expired as verification of continuing coverage.

.3 CONTRACTOR's insurance coverage is to be written by companies licensed to do business in the State of Texas at the time the policies are issued and shall be written by companies with A.M. Best ratings of B+VII or better, except for hazardous material insurance which shall be written by companies with A.M. Best ratings of A- or better.

.4 All endorsements naming the OWNER as additional insured, waivers, and notices of cancellation endorsements as well as the Certificate of Insurance shall indicate: City of Austin, Capital Contracting Office, P.O. Box 1088, Austin, Texas 78767.

.5 The "other" insurance clause shall not apply to the OWNER where the OWNER is an additional insured shown on any policy. It is intended that policies required in the Contract, covering both OWNER and CONTRACTOR, shall be considered primary coverage as applicable.

.6 If insurance policies are not written for amounts specified below, CONTRACTOR shall carry Umbrella or Excess Liability Insurance for any differences in amounts specified. If Excess Liability Insurance is provided, it shall follow the form of the primary coverage.

.7 OWNER shall be entitled, upon request and without expense, to receive certified copies of policies and endorsements thereto and may make any reasonable requests for deletion or revision or modification of particular policy terms, conditions, limitations, or exclusions except where policy provisions are established by law or regulations binding upon either of the parties hereto or the underwriter on any such policies.

.8 OWNER reserves the right to review the insurance requirements set forth during the effective period of this Contract and to make reasonable adjustments to insurance coverage, limits, and exclusions when deemed necessary and prudent by OWNER based upon changes in statutory law, court decisions, the claims history of the industry or financial condition of the insurance company as well as CONTRACTOR.

.9 CONTRACTOR shall not cause any insurance to be canceled nor permit any insurance to lapse during the term of the Contract or as required in the Contract.

.10 CONTRACTOR shall be responsible for premiums, deductibles and self-insured retentions, if any, stated in policies. All deductibles or self-insured retentions shall be disclosed on the Certificate of Insurance.

.11 CONTRACTOR shall provide OWNER thirty (30) days written notice of erosion of the aggregate limits below occurrence limits for all applicable coverages indicated within the Contract.

.12 If OWNER owned property is being transported or stored off-site by CONTRACTOR, then the appropriate property policy will be endorsed for transit and storage in an amount sufficient to protect OWNER's property.

.13 The insurance coverages required under this contract are required minimums and are not intended to limit the responsibility or liability of CONTRACTOR.

5.3.1.2 Business Automobile Liability Insurance. Provide coverage for all owned, non-owned and hired vehicles. The policy shall contain the following endorsements in favor of OWNER:

a) Waiver of Subrogation endorsement CA 0444;

b) 30 day Notice of Cancellation endorsement CA 0244; and

c) Additional Insured endorsement CA 2048.

Provide coverage in the following types and amounts:

.1 A minimum combined single limit of $500,000 per occurrence for bodily injury and property damage. Alternate acceptable limits are $250,000 bodily injury per person, $500,000 bodily injury per occurrence and at least $100,000 property damage liability each accident.

5.3.1.3 Workers' Compensation And Employers' Liability Insurance. Coverage shall be consistent with statutory benefits outlined in the Texas Workers' Compensation Act (Section 401). CONTRACTOR shall assure compliance with this Statute by submitting two (2) copies of a standard certificate of coverage (e.g. ACCORD form) to Owner's Representative for every person providing services on the Project as acceptable proof of coverage. The Certificate of Insurance, Section 00650, must be presented as

evidence of coverage for CONTRACTOR. CONTRACTOR's policy shall apply to the State of Texas and include these endorsements in favor of OWNER:

a) Waiver of Subrogation, form WC 420304; and

b) 30 day Notice of Cancellation, form WC 420601.

The minimum policy limits for Employers' Liability Insurance coverage shall be as follows:

.1 $100,000 bodily injury per accident, $500,000 bodily injury by disease policy limit and $100,000 bodily injury by disease each employee.

5.3.1.4 Commercial General Liability Insurance. The Policy shall contain the following provisions:

a) Contractual liability coverage for liability assumed under the Contract and all contracts relative to this Project.

b) Completed Operations/Products Liability for the duration of the warranty period.

c) Explosion, Collapse and Underground (X, C & U) coverage.

d) Independent Contractors coverage (Contractors/ Subcontractors work).

e) Aggregate limits of insurance per project, endorsement CG 2503.

f) OWNER listed as an additional insured, endorsements CG 2010 and CG 2037 or equivalent.

g) 30 day notice of cancellation in favor of OWNER, endorsement CG 0205.

h) Waiver of Transfer of Recovery Against Others in favor of OWNER, endorsement CG 2404.

Provide coverages A&B with minimum limits as follows:

.1 A combined bodily injury and property damage limit of $500,000 per occurrence.

5.3.1.4 Commercial General Liability Insurance. The Policy shall contain the following provisions:

a) Blanket contractual liability coverage for liability assumed under the Contract and all contracts relative to this Project.

b) Broad form property damage

c) Completed Operations/Products Liability for the duration of the warranty period.

d) Explosion, Collapse and Underground (X, C & U) coverage.

e) Independent Contractors coverage.

f) Aggregate limits of insurance per project, endorsement CG 2503.

g) OWNER listed as an additional insured, endorsements CG2037 or equivalent.

h) 30 day notice of cancellation in favor of OWNER, endorsement CG 0205.

i) Waiver of Transfer of Recovery Against Others in favor of OWNER, endorsement CG 2404.

Provide coverages A&B with minimum limits as follows:

.1 A combined bodily injury and property damage limit of $2,000,000 minimum per occurrence and $4,000,000 minimum aggregate.

5.3.1.5 Builders' Risk Insurance. CONTRACTOR shall maintain Builders' Risk Insurance or Installation Insurance on an all risk physical loss form in the Contract Amount. Coverage shall continue until the Work is accepted by OWNER. OWNER shall be a loss payee on the policy. If off-site storage is permitted, coverage shall include transit and storage in an amount sufficient to protect property being transported or stored.

5.3.1.7 Professional Liability Insurance. For Work which requires professional engineering or professional survey services to meet the requirements of the Contract, including but not limited to excavation safety systems, traffic control plans, and construction surveying, the CONTRACTOR or Subcontractors, responsible for performing the professional services shall provide Professional Liability Insurance with a minimum limit of $500,000 per claim and in the aggregate to pay on behalf of the assured all sums which the assured shall become legally obligated to pay as damages by reason of any negligent act, error, or omission committed with respect to all professional services provided in due course of the Work of this Contract.

5.3.2 <u>OWNER Controlled Insurance.</u>

5.3.2.1 OWNER has procured, and will maintain at its own expense a Rolling Owner Controlled Insurance Program (ROCIP) with the following coverage for OWNER, CONTRACTOR, each Subcontractor and their respective Sub-subcontractors while engaged in Work under the Contract. It is not the intent of this ROCIP to cover architects, engineers (not including design/build subcontractors), consultants, vendors, suppliers (who do not perform or subcontract installation), material dealers, guard services, janitorial services, truckers. Moreover, this ROCIP will not provide coverage for:

.1 Contractors and subcontractors whose main function is abating asbestos or removing hazardous materials and/or waste from the project site;

.2 Others whose sole function is to transport, pickup, deliver or carry materials, supplies, tools, equipment, parts or other items to or from the project site;

.3 Any employee(s) of the Contractor or an enrolled subcontractor of any tier that does not work and/or generate payroll at the Project Site

5.3.2.2 Workers' Compensation and Employers' Liability Insurance. All states including monopolistic.

.1 Workers’ Compensation - Statutory Benefits for Texas or state of hire as required by statute.

.2 Employers' Liability. Limits of $1,000,000 bodily injury each accident. $1,000,000 bodily injury by disease, each employee. $1,000,000 bodily injury by disease, policy limit.

.3 Endorsements:

a) Employers' Liability Coverage Endorsement

b) Designated Workplaces Exclusion Endorsement

c) Voluntary Compensation and Employers Liability Coverage Endorsement

d) Policy Period Endorsement

e) Texas Waiver of Our Right to Recover From Others Endorsement

f) Federal Employers' Liability Act Coverage Endorsement

g) Longshoremen's and Harbor Workers' Compensation Act

h) Maritime Coverage Endorsement

i) Sole Proprietors, Partners, Officers and Others Coverage Endorsement

j) Sole Agent Consolidated Insurance Programs

k) Unintentional Error And Omissions Endorsement

l) Knowledge and Notice of Occurrence Endorsement

m) Texas Health Care Network Endorsement

n) Terrorism Risk Insurance Program Reauthorization Act Disclosure Endorsement

o) Notice of Cancellation

p) Texas Amendatory Endorsement - Notice of Cancellation

q) Alternate Employer Endorsement

r) Texas Deductible Endorsement

s) Texas Amendatory Endorsement – Who Is An Insured

t) State Specific Endorsements

5.3.2.3 Commercial General Liability Insurance.

.1 Limits of Liability:

a) $4,000,000 General Aggregate Limit

b) $4,000,000 Products-Completed Operations Aggregate Limit

c) $2,000,000 Personal and Advertising Injury

d) $2,000,000 Each Occurrence

e) $1,000,000 Damages to Premises Rented to You Limit (Any one premises. Subject to occurrence limit.)

f) $10,000 Medical Expense Limit (Any one person. Subject to occurrence limit.)

g) Aggregate limits reinstate annually during the 5-year project period. For 10 Year Completed Operations Extension, the Products Completed Operations Aggregate will be shared with the latest annual policy period during which a policy issued by us was in effect.

.2 Policy Form. Commercial General Liability Coverage Form CG 00 01 (12/07 Edition).

.3 Forms:

a) Wrap-up Insurance Program – Amendment of Coverage

b) Products and Completed Operations Extension – Ten (10) Years – This is part of the Wrap-Up Insurance Program Amendment of Coverage Endorsement

c) Sole Agent / First Named Insured is the Sole Agent – This is part of the Wrap-Up Insurance Program Amendment of Coverage Endorsement

d) Designated Projects - This is part of the Wrap-Up Insurance Program Amendment of Coverage Endorsement

e) Common Policy Conditions

f) Texas Disclosure Form

g) Early Notice of Cancellation Provided By Us

h) Texas Changes - Cancellation And Nonrenewal Provisions For Casualty Lines And Commercial Package Policies

i) Combined Limits of Insurance – Multiple Policies

j) Blanket Additional Insured

k) Notice of Occurrence, Offense or Injury

l) Knowledge of Occurrence or Offense

m) Nonowned Watercraft Amended

n) Contractual Liability - Railroads

o) Texas Changes – Employment Related Practices Exclusion

p) Per Project and Per Location combined Aggregate Limits – With Optional Capped Limits Endorsement

q) Unintentional Failure to Disclose

r) Reasonable Force

s) Bodily Injury Redefined

t) Waiver of Transfer Rights of Recovery Against Others to Us

u) Bodily Injury to Co-Employees Coverage – Supervisors, Managers and Good Samaritans

v) Exclusion – Contractors – Professional Liability

w) Professional Health Care Services by Employees or Volunteer Workers Coverage

x) Texas - Total Pollution Exclusion

y) Silica Exclusion Endorsement

z) Recording and Distribution of Material or Information in Violation of Law Exclusion

aa) Lead Exclusion

bb) Mold And Mold Related Construction Defect Exclusion

cc) Asbestos Exclusion Endorsement

dd) Advertisement Redefined

ee) Joint Defense Endorsement

ff) Joint and Several Amendment

gg) Nuclear Energy Liability Exclusion Endorsement (Broad Form)

hh) Non-Cumulation of Liability (Same Occurrence)

ii) Discrimination Exclusion

jj) Composite Rate Endorsement

kk) Deductible – Damages and Supplementary Payments (Damages Within The Deductible Erode The Policy Limit)

ll) Personal and Advertising Injury – Occurrence Redefined

mm) Personal and Advertising Injury – Definition of Publication

nn) Cap On Losses From Certified Acts of Terrorism

oo) Exclusion of Punitive Damages From Certified Acts of Terrorism

pp) Other Terrorism Endorsements

qq) All State Mandatory Endorsements

5.3.2.4 Umbrella/Excess Liability Insurance.

.1 $50,000,000 Each Occurrence

.2 $50,000,000 Products-Completed Operations Aggregate

.3 $50,000,000 Other Aggregate (Where Applicable)

.4 Umbrella/Excess includes a Completed Operations Extension period of Ten (10) years.

5.3.2.5 General Provisions.

.1 Coverage Availability. All insurance specified herein shall be maintained continuously until Substantial Completion of the Project except as provided in Section 5.3.1. All insurance shall provide for OWNER to take occupancy of the Work or any part thereof during the term of said insurance.

.2 Insurance Policies and Certificates. The Broker and/or Insurers will issue Policies for Worker's Compensation and Binders for General Liability to CONTRACTOR, each Subcontractor and each Sub-subcontractor participating in the ROCIP.

.3 CONTRACTOR, Subcontractor and Sub-subcontractors agree to comply with the requirements of the ROCIP including enrollment, record keeping, reporting, auditing, and claim requirements.

.4 The first five thousand dollars ($5,000) of any insurable general liability property damage loss will be the responsibility of and paid by the CONTRACTOR and deducted from the contract amount.

.5 Contract Insurance Cost.

a) CONTRACTOR agrees not to duplicate or include any portion of their normal insurance cost, including Subcontractor insurance costs, in their Bid or in Change Orders (if any) for the coverages provided by OWNER under paragraphs 5.3.2.2 through 5.3.2.4.

b) CONTRACTOR stipulates that the insurance costs as defined in the Insurance Cost Form (Section 00425A), submitted with the Bid and part of the Contract, is the amount that would have been included in the Bid if OWNER elected not to provide such coverage.

c) CONTRACTOR agrees to the audit conditions specified in the Insurance Cost Form (Section 00425A).

d) In the event OWNER elects not to include CONTRACTOR's Work under the ROCIP coverages, the insurance amounts reported in the Insurance Cost Form (Section 00425A will be added to the Contract Amount on a pro rated basis.

e) CONTRACTOR shall agree to cooperate fully with OWNER's ROCIP Administrator and Project Manager in providing the necessary insurance data and information as required in the Bid Documents and associated documents and submittals furnished and required by OWNER during the duration of the Project or until OWNER furnished coverages are terminated. Failure to provide insurance information or documents/submittals to the OWNER's ROCIP Administrator and OWNER's Representative within specified time periods, by CONTRACTOR, any Subcontractor or Sub-subcontractor will result in withholding of progress payments to CONTRACTOR by OWNER. The Green Form can be withheld due to failure to provide insurance information or documents within specified time periods.

.6 Governing Conditions. In the event of conflict between Insurance Policy Terms and Conditions and the coverage conditions specified herein, the insurance policies will govern.

.7 CONTRACTOR Furnished Insurance.

a) Automobile Liability Insurance. CONTRACTOR and all Subcontractors, Sub-subcontractors and vendors shall maintain Automobile Liability Insurance as specified in paragraphs 5.3.1.1 and 5.3.1.2, at their own expense. CONTRACTOR must submit Certificates of Insurance for all Subcontractors to OWNER prior to their commencing Work on the Project.

b) Vendors, Suppliers and Haulers Required Insurance

a. Workers' Compensation and Employers' Liability Insurance. Vendors, suppliers, haulers, and other non-ROCIP participants as outlined in 5.3.2.1 shall provide workers' compensation insurance as specified in paragraphs 5.3.1.1 and 5.3.1.3.

This coverage requirement does not apply to motor carriers who are required pursuant to Texas Civil Statutes, Article 6675c to register with the Texas Department of Transportation and to provide accidental insurance coverage pursuant to Texas Civil Statutes, Article 6675c.

This coverage requirement does not apply to sole proprietors, partners, and corporate officers who meet the requirements of the Texas Workers' Compensation Act (Act), Article 406.09(c) and who are explicitly excluded from coverage in accordance with the Act.

b. Automobile Liability Insurance. Vendors, suppliers, haulers and other non-ROCIP participants as outlined in 5.3.2.1 shall provide workers' compensation insurance as specified in paragraphs 5.3.1.1 and 5.3.1.2.

c. Commercial General Liability Insurance. Vendors, suppliers, haulers, and other non-ROCIP participants as outlined in 5.3.2.1 shall provide Commercial General Liability Insurance as specified in paragraphs 5.3.1.1 and 5.3.1.4.

.8 Other Insurance.

a) The ROCIP as outlined herein is intended to afford broad coverage and relatively high limits of liability, but it may not provide all the insurance needed or desired by CONTRACTOR, Subcontractors or Sub-subcontractors. Any insurance or limits of liability greater than those provided by the ROCIP or other coverages which CONTRACTOR, Subcontractors or Sub-subcontractors may be required by Law to carry or may need for its own protection, shall be at their own expense and the cost therefore may not be included in the Bid.

b) If CONTRACTOR chooses to have such policies endorsed to recognize the Project site during the construction period, coverage should be excess and/or Difference In Conditions (DIC) of the OWNER's ROCIP as determined by CONTRACTOR or Subcontractor. OWNER shall be endorsed as additional insured.

c) Any policy of insurance covering CONTRACTOR, any Subcontractor or any Sub-subcontractor for its owned and leased machinery, water craft, vehicles, tools, or equipment (used in connection with the Project) for physical loss or damage shall provide a Waiver of Subrogation Rights against OWNER, Project Manager, if applicable, CONTRACTOR, Subcontractor, or Sub-subcontractor that is insured under the ROCIP, including the employees, agents or assigns of any one of them.

.9 Mutual Waiver of Property Damage and Right of Recovery. To the extent of coverage provided by the Builder's Risk Insurance, OWNER has waived its rights to recover physical damage or loss to its property against CONTRACTOR, Subcontractors and Sub-subcontractors. CONTRACTOR, Subcontractors and Sub-subcontractors shall also waive any and all rights each may have to recover physical damage or loss to the property of each against OWNER, its designees, E/A, and other contractors engaged in the Project. This waiver of the right of recovery for property damage shall be binding upon any property, automobile or equipment insured in respect to any subrogation rights which such insurer may possess by virtue of any payments of damage or loss. CONTRACTOR, Subcontractors and Sub-subcontractors agree as a condition of performing Work on the Project to execute such documents and coverage described herein and the waiver(s) of subrogation as described herein.

.10 Certificates of Insurance. CONTRACTOR shall submit three (3) copies of the required Certificates of Insurance (Section 00650) for CONTRACTOR and all Subcontractors and Sub-subcontractors to OWNER prior to their commencing Work on the job site. CONTRACTOR and all Subcontractors and Sub-subcontractors shall provide the following information on the Certificate of Insurance:

Workers' Compensation (off-site)
General Liability (off-site)
Umbrella/Excess Liability (off-site)
Automobile Liability - Primary (CONTRACTOR must provide hired/non-owned)

5.3.2.6 ROCIP Subcontractor Process Information. During the subcontracting of the Work, the Contractor will comply with the applicable Contractor – Subcontractor notice and documentation requirements of the Section 00425-B. This provision applies to any subcontract entered into on or after January 1, 2016:

"Owner will provide the ROCIP Information outlined in Section 00425-B to the Contractor and, at least 10 days prior to entering into a subcontract, the Contractor must provide the ROCIP Information to its Subcontractors. The Contractor and Subcontractors must acknowledge receipt of the ROCIP Information and provide the Affidavit and Acknowledgment indicating receipt of the ROCIP Information included in Section 00425-B. If the Contractor does not provide the ROCIP Information to its Subcontractors and obtain the Affidavit of Receipt and Provision of the ROCIP Information from its Subcontractors prior to entering into a subcontract, the Contractor is responsible to the Subcontractors under Section 151.004 of the Texas Insurance Code for the actual cost of providing the insurance required under Article 5 of the 00700 General Conditions and Paragraph 5.3.1 of the Section 00810 Supplemental General Conditions. If for any reason a Subcontractor is not provided the ROCIP Information on a timely basis and the Contractor subsequently provides the ROCIP Information to the Subcontractor, the Subcontractor may acknowledge its receipt and provide the Affidavit included in Section 00425-B to the Contractor prior to commencing Work on the Project."

ARTICLE 6 - CONTRACTOR'S RESPONSIBILITIES

6.5 Patent Fees and Royalties: Add the following:

6.6 Permits, Fees: Add the following:

"OWNER will obtain and pay for the following permits, licenses and/or fees:

.1 Site Development Permit.

.2 Building Permit(s). OWNER's responsibility for obtaining and paying for the Building Permit(s) shall be limited to the following where applicable: the required Electrical Service (Aid of Construction) Fee, Water and Wastewater Tap Fees, Water and Wastewater Capital Recovery Fees, and Septic Permit Fee. The OWNER's responsibility for obtaining and paying for the Building Permit(s) excludes securing and paying for the following where applicable: Driveway Permit (Concrete) Fee, Electrical Permit, Mechanical Permit, Plumbing Permit, Water Engineering Inspection Fee, Temporary Use of Right-of Way Permit, the gas company's Gas Yard Line Contribution Fee, and any other permits/fees not listed above.

.3 Texas Department of Transportation permit for Work in State rights-of-way.

6.7 Laws and Regulations: Add the following:

"**6.7.4** This Work is subject to the Texas Pollution Discharge Elimination System (TPDES) permitting requirements for the installation and maintenance of temporary and permanent erosion and sediment controls and storm water pollution prevention measures throughout the construction period.

OWNER has prepared a Storm Water Pollution Prevention Plan (SWPPP). Reference Section 01096 for this SWPPP.

OWNER shall file the Owner's Notice of Intent to the Texas Commission on Environmental Quality (TCEQ). OWNER shall pay the TPDES storm water application fee.

CONTRACTOR's responsibilities are as follows:

.1 Obtain a signed certification statement from all Subcontractors responsible for implementing the erosion / sedimentation controls and other best management practices that are part of the SWPPP. This

statement shall indicate that the Subcontractor understands the permit requirements. The certified statement forms shall be attached to and become part of the SWPPP.

.2 Fill out the TCEQ's "Construction Site Notice" form, which is Attachment 2 to the TPDES General Permit TXR150000 (form available from OWNER or on the Internet at http://www.tceq.state.tx.us/assets/public/permitting/waterquality/attachments/stormwater/txr152d2.pdf and post it near the main entrance of the Work, or at multiple postings if the Work is linear. Mail a copy of the completed Construction Site Notice form to the local Municipal Separate Storm Sewer Systems (MS4) representative:

TPDES Program Coordinator
City of Austin – WPD – ERM
P.O. Box 1088
Austin, TX 78767

.3 Maintain all erosion/sedimentation controls and other protective measures identified in the SWPPP in effective operating condition.

.4 Perform inspections every five (5) working days and after every ½ inch rainfall event, noting the following observations on an inspection form provided by OWNER:

- Locations of discharges of sediment or other pollutants from the site.
- Locations of storm water / erosion / sedimentation controls that are in need of maintenance.
- Locations of storm water / erosion / sedimentation controls that are not performing, failing to operate, or are inadequate.
- Locations where additional storm water / erosion / sedimentation controls are needed.

.5 Maintain at Work site at all times a copy of the SWPPP (with all updates, as described below) and inspection reports.

.6 Update the SWPPP as necessary to comply with TPDES permitting requirements, which includes noting changes in erosion / sedimentation controls and other best management practices that are part of the SWPPP and which may be necessary due to the results of inspection reports. Any SWPPP revisions or updates must be signed and certified by a Certified Professional in Erosion and Sedimentation Control (CPESC) or a Registered Professional Engineer. If the SWPPP includes engineering calculations, then SWPPP must be sealed and signed by a Registered Professional Engineer.

.7 Upon completion of the Work, provide TPDES records to OWNER."

6.7 Laws and Regulations: Add the following:

.9 Upon completion of the Work, provide TPDES records to OWNER."

6.11 Safety and Protection: Add the following to paragraph 6.11.2:

"6.11.2 CONTRACTOR shall comply with all provisions of the "Project Safety Manual" provided by OWNER as part of its insurance coverage program under the Rolling Owner Controlled Insurance Program (ROCIP). This program is in

addition to CONTRACTOR's existing safety program, not in lieu of that program."

6.11 Safety and Protection: Add the following to paragraph 6.11.3:

"6.11.3 At the minimum, the safety representative will be certified in personal protective equipment, hazard communication, demolition and blasting, trench/excavation, hand and power tools, welding/cutting, cranes/derricks/hoists/conveyors/, scaffolding, confined space, CPR and first aid."

ARTICLE 11 - CHANGE OF CONTRACT AMOUNT

11.4 Determination of Value of Work: Add the following to paragraph 11.4.1.2:

"11.4.1.2 In the case of a Change Order determined by a mutually agreed lump sum or unit price properly itemized and supported by sufficient substantiating data, including documentation by subcontractors performing the work, to permit evaluation, the following method may be used:

COMPONENT ONE - The R.S. Means Co., Inc. 'Building Construction Cost Data' - latest edition - will be used as a basis for evaluating:

1a - the cost of labor (base rate, including fringe benefits),

1b - the cost of material and equipment to be incorporated in the Work, and

1c - the cost of tools, equipment and facilities necessary to accomplish the Work described in the change.

COMPONENT TWO - The costs of payroll taxes and insurance, Liability and Builder's Risk Insurance, shall be calculated as follows:

2a - Payroll taxes and Workers' Compensation Insurance <25% of payroll (Item 1a) (14.65% of 1a for ROCIP Projects)>

2b - Liability and Builder's Risk Insurance <2% of "total costs" (Items 1a, 1b, 1c, and 2a) (.034% of "total costs" for ROCIP Projects)>

COMPONENT THREE - Overhead and profit shall be calculated as follows:

3a - For Subcontractors and for those portions of the Work performed by CONTRACTOR'S own forces:

15% of the first $10,000.00 of costs and 10% of the balance over $10,000.00.

("costs" = Items 1a, 1b, and 1c, above, broken down into Contractor and Subcontractor costs).

3b - For the CONTRACTOR for that portion of the Work performed by Subcontractors:

10% of the first $10,000.00 of the Subcontractor costs and 7.5% of the balance over $10,000.00.

("costs" = Items 1a, 1b, and 1c, above, broken down into Subcontractor costs)

COMPONENT FOUR - Bonds

Performance and Payment Bond according to the following table ("TOTAL COST" = Items 1a, 1b, 1c, 2a, 2b, 3a and 3b,):

DOLLAR VALUE OF CONTRACT			% OF TOTAL COST OF CHANGE ORDER ADDED FOR BOND EXPENSE
100,000	or	less	2.5
100,001	thru	500,000	1.5
500,001	thru	2,500,000	1.0
2,500,001	thru	5,000,000	0.75
5,000,001	thru	7,500,000	0.70
OVER 7,500,000			0.65

- The total costs for the change, whether additive or deductive, shall be the sum total of COMPONENTS ONE - FOUR.

ARTICLE 13 - TESTS AND INSPECTIONS; CORRECTION, REMOVAL OR ACCEPTANCE OF DEFECTIVE WORK

13.7 Warranty Period: Add the following:

"**13.7.5** OWNER will utilize a "Warranty Item Form" (attached at the end of this Section) for the purpose of providing Written Notice of warranty defects to CONTRACTOR. CONTRACTOR shall date, sign, complete and return the form to OWNER when the defect is corrected, including such information on or attached to the form to describe the nature of the repairs or corrections that were made. If the defect cannot be corrected in seven (7) Calendar Days, CONTRACTOR shall provide a written explanation to the Owner's Representative describing the repairs needed and the time required to complete the repairs."

ARTICLE 14 - PAYMENTS TO CONTRACTOR AND COMPLETION

Add the following .1:

.1 - Mobilization Prompt Payment Program. During critical mobilization periods, as identified by the CONTRACTOR and as approved by OWNER in accordance with 00700 2.4.2.1 of this Contract, CONTRACTOR shall submit bi-monthly Applications for Payment. The additional Pay Applications will include any costs accrued during the periods of critical mobilization. The Program will allow the CONTRACTOR and Subcontractors to invoice for costs as they are accrued during periods of critical mobilization. The CONTRACTOR shall submit bimonthly invoices to the OWNER for such costs. The CONTRACTOR shall pay Subcontractors for costs within 10 days of receipt of payment from OWNER.

14.1 Application for Progress Payment: Delete 14.1.6.3 and replace with the following:

".3 Contract time statement form signed by CONTRACTOR and Owner's Representative. If CONTRACTOR does not agree with the number of accumulated days charged, CONTRACTOR shall file a Claim in accordance with Article 16.1, Filing of Claims."

".4 Payroll Authorization and Certificates of Insurance. CONTRACTOR shall provide monthly payroll reports (including CONTRACTOR and all Subcontractors and Sub-subcontractors) to the ROCIP Insurance Administrator on forms provided by the

ROCIP Administrator or on other mutually agreed upon forms. In addition, Contractor shall assure that current certificates of insurance are provided as necessary for CONTRACTOR and all Subcontractors and Sub-subcontractors. A Payment Form signed by the ROCIP Administrator shall be submitted with each Application for Payment. Failure to submit this form will result in withholding of payment. The ROCIP Insurance Administrator will generate the Payment Form upon receipt of the monthly payroll report and required certificates of insurance."

14.4 Decisions to Withhold Payment:

Reference 14.4.1; add the following:

".16 failure of CONTRACTOR to meet the ROCIP and/or Safety Program requirements.

.17 property damage losses that are the responsibility of the CONTRACTOR (reference section 00810, 5.3.2.5.4)"

14.10 Final Application for Payment: Add the following paragraph(s) to 14.10:

".10 Documentation required by the ROCIP."

".11 TPDES records in accordance with 6.7.4."

14.11 Final Payment and Acceptance:

Add the following to paragraph 14.11.1:

"If the Contract Documents require the maintenance of any trees and tree support infrastructure for two (2) years following Final Completion, the CONTRACTOR may execute a zero-cost "Tree Maintenance Change Order" for such Work and post fiscal security acceptable to OWNER to ensure completion of the tree maintenance. The fiscal security will be a bond, letter of credit, or cash escrow in a form promulgated by OWNER and posted with OWNER's Parks and Recreation Department. If the CONTRACTOR does not complete the tree maintenance work as required, the OWNER, at its option, may complete the Work using the posted fiscal security."

Add the following to paragraph 14.11.1:

"If the sole remaining, unfinished item of the Work is revegetation or other permanent erosion control, including, if applicable, tree mitigation, (collectively, the "revegetation"), the CONTRACTOR may execute a zero-cost "Revegetation Change Order" for such Work and post fiscal security acceptable to Owner to ensure completion of the revegetation.

The fiscal security will be a bond, letter of credit, or cash escrow in a form promulgated by OWNER and posted with OWNER's Watershed Protection Department.

Upon receipt of the executed Revegetation Change Order and fiscal security, the Owner's Representative will issue a conditional letter of final acceptance to the CONTRACTOR for the Work, excluding the revegetation, which establishes the Final Completion Date for that Work and initiates the one year warranty period.

This revegetation must be accomplished within 120 Calendar Days of the date of Final Completion of the balance of the Work or such other stipulated time for completion directed in the Change Order. When the revegetation has been

established, OWNER will inspect for final acceptance of that portion of the Work and, as applicable, initiate the one year warranty period for that Work.

If the revegetation is not completed within the 120 Calendar Days or such other time set forth in the Change Order, the OWNER, at its option, may complete the Work using the posted fiscal security."

ARTICLE 15 – SUSPENSION OF WORK AND TERMINATION

15.3 Owner May Terminate with Cause: Add the following paragraph to 15.3.1:

".8 if CONTRACTOR fails to meet the ROCIP and/or Safety Program requirements;"

WARRANTY ITEM NO. _____ (PROJECT NAME)

The General Conditions of the Contract require that Warranty Defects be corrected within 7 days after written notice is received.

TO: _____
contractor name address / telephone / fax / email

ATTENTION OF: _____

FROM: _____
project manager name / address / telephone / fax / email

PROJECT: _____
name / location / CIP ID number

END OF ONE YEAR WARRANTY:_____

SUBJECT:_____

[ ] If checked, the damage requires immediate attention. The Contractor has been called.
[ ] If checked, the Consultant has been asked to consult with the Contractor on the problem.

PLEASE CORRECT OR REPAIR THE FOLLOWING ITEM(S):

DATE OF REQUEST_____ **SIGNATURE** _____
Project Manager

xc:
[ ] _____Phone No._____
[ ] _____Phone No._____
[ ] _____Phone No._____
[ ] _____Phone No._____

RESPONSE FROM CONTRACTOR: DATE CORRECTION WAS MADE:_____

The Contractor must endeavor to correct the defect within 7 calendar days after written notice is given. If the defect cannot be corrected in that time, Contractor shall provide a written explanation to the Owner's Representative describing the repairs needed and the time required to complete the repairs.

Description of corrections made:

DATE OF REPLY_____SIGNATURE_____

When the repair is complete, the contractor should return a copy to each of the following:

[ ] _____Phone No._____
[ ] _____Phone No._____
[ ] _____Phone No._____
[ ] _____Phone No._____

END

I. Payment

A. Classification Definitions, Building and Heavy and Highway

Definitions for Building Construction and Heavy and Highway classifications shall conform to the current "Dictionary of Occupational Titles" as published by the U.S. Department of Labor.

B. Minimum Wages

Workers on Project shall be paid not less than wage rates, including fringe benefits, as published by the Department of Labor (DOL) or the $13.50 minimum wage required by City of Austin Ordinance No. 20160324-015, whichever is higher. The Total Minimum Wage required can be met using any combination of cash and non-cash qualified fringe benefits provided the cash component meets or exceeds the $13.50 minimum wage required.

Such wage rates shall be used throughout the Contract. If a classification is to be used, which is not listed in the attached wage rates, CONTRACTOR shall submit to OWNER rates and classification proposed for use, for approval, **prior** to performance of the Work.

All laborers and mechanics working upon the Work for this Project shall be paid unconditionally and without subsequent deduction or rebate on any account (except such payroll deductions as are permitted by regulations issued by Secretary of Labor under the Copeland Act, Title 29 CFR, Part 3) full wages accrued and when due, computed at rates not less than wage rates bound herein pertaining to type of Work being performed. When Work is of such a nature that both Building and Heavy and Highway wage scales are incorporated into contract, CONTRACTOR shall pay wage rates to mechanics or laborers performing Work in more than one classification at the rate indicated for each classification for time actually worked as determined by area practice applicable to type (Site Construction Crafts or Building Construction Crafts) of Work being performed without regards to skill. Salaried specialists (project superintendent and administrative personnel only) in the permanent employment of CONTRACTOR do not fall under any Wage Classification. A supervisor/foreman who is not exempt under 29CFR Part 541 and who spends more than a substantial amount of time (20 percent) in a given workweek as a laborer or mechanic must be paid the applicable Wage Rate for the classification of work performed for all hours engaged in such work as a laborer or mechanic.

Wage rates shall be posted by CONTRACTOR at site(s) of Work in prominent, easily accessible places where they can be seen by all workers. The following shall also be posted by the CONTRACTOR: City of Austin wage contact posters (English and Spanish), City of Austin Equal Employment Opportunity posters (English and Spanish), Workers' Compensation Notice (English and Spanish), Texas Payday Law (English and Spanish), City Rest Break Ordinance (English

and Spanish), City of Austin Non-Discrimination Statement (related to Title VI of the Civil Rights Act), and Federal Notices, as appropriate.

C. Overtime Requirements

No CONTRACTOR, Subcontractor, or Sub-subcontractor contracting for any part of contract Work which may require or involve the employment of laborers or mechanics shall require or permit any laborer or mechanic in any workweek in which he is employed on such Work, to work in excess of forty hours in such workweek unless such laborer or mechanic receives compensation at a rate not less than one and one-half times their basic rate of pay for all hours in excess of forty hours in such workweek.

Overtime wages must be calculated using the Adjusted Wage Rate specified in the Wage Rate Determination or the actual basic rate of pay, whichever is higher.

II. Apprentices

Locally & Federally Funded Projects

The terms journeyman and apprentice apply to both union and independent workers, and are not intended to imply that these positions are union workers only.

Apprentices and Trainees will be permitted to work as such only when they are registered, individually, under a bonafide Apprenticeship or Trainee program registered with the Bureau of Apprenticeship and Training, United States Department of Labor. The allowable ratio of Apprentices or Trainees to journeymen in any craft classification shall not be greater than the ratio permitted to CONTRACTOR as stated in the registered apprenticeship program standards. Any employee listed on a payroll at an Apprentice or Trainee wage rate, who is not registered as above, shall be paid the wage rate provided in Contract for Work employee actually performed. CONTRACTOR, Subcontractor, or Sub-subcontractor shall furnish to OWNER written evidence of registration of his program for Apprentices and Trainees as well as of the appropriate ratios and wage rates, for the area of construction **prior** to using any Apprentices or Trainees on this Contract.

III. Withholding of Payments

OWNER may withhold or cause to be withheld from CONTRACTOR as much of the accrued payments as necessary to pay laborers and mechanics employed by CONTRACTOR, Subcontractors, or Sub-subcontractors the amount of wages required to comply with the Contract. In the event of nonpayment of wages to laborers or mechanics working on the site of the Work of this Contract, OWNER may, after Written Notice to CONTRACTOR, take such action as may be necessary to cause suspension of any further payments or advance of funds to CONTRACTOR until such violations have ceased and until restitution has been made. Payments may also be withheld if CONTRACTOR fails to maintain weekly payroll reports or fails to provide copies in a timely manner upon request of Owner.

IV. Payrolls

A. CONTRACTOR shall keep records showing:

1. the name, address and occupation of each worker employed by the CONTRACTOR or subcontractor(s) in the construction of the public work.

2. the actual per diem wages paid to each worker.

3. Employee Certification. CONTRACTOR, all levels of Subcontractors shall identify in writing, the classification agreed to by all laborers and mechanics employed by them in the execution of the Contract, and pay not less than rates specified in the attached Wage Rate Determination(s). Contractor shall prepare a completed form for the signature of Employee and a witness shall sign the form in the presence of Employee. If work performed by worker is different than the trade classification agreed upon, the worker shall be paid for that work no less than the minimum prevailing wage for that specified trade.

4. Payroll Deduction Authorization Form. CONTRACTOR, Subcontractor, and Subsubcontractor shall prepare for employee signature a payroll deduction authorization form to identify all payroll deductions excluding those required by statute, such as federal income taxes, medicare and social security.

B. The record shall be open at all reasonable hours to inspection by the officers and agents of the Owner as requested. CONTRACTOR will be responsible to provide copies of records as requested by the Owner within two (2) working days. Payrolls relating to this Work shall be maintained during term of Contract and preserved for a period of three (3) years thereafter by CONTRACTOR for all laborers and mechanics working on the Work.

C. A Statement of Compliance, a letter signed and dated by party responsible for supervising the payment of persons employed by CONTRACTOR or subcontractor shall accompany payrolls required by Owner. The Statement of Compliance letter shall identify but is not limited to:

1. name of signatory party and title,
2. name of project, payroll period and
3. name of CONTRACTOR or Subcontractor.

The signed letter attests that the payroll complies with 29CFR issued by the Secretary of Labor.

D. Federal Funding

In the event that federal funding is used:

1. Contractor and all levels of Subcontractors shall submit weekly certified payroll reports and signed wage compliance statements to the Owner's designated office no later than seven (7) calendar days after the scheduled payday.

2. Contractors and all levels of Subcontractors shall pay all "mechanics and laborers" not less often than once per week, for work performed the previous week.

3. Submit to the Owner's designated office Standard Form 1413, Statement and Acknowledgement, from each subcontractor prior to the subcontractor performing work on the project.

V. Noncompliance

According to Chapter 2258 Texas Government Code Title 10A, a CONTRACTOR or subcontractor(s) who violates this section shall pay to the political subdivision on whose behalf the contract is made, $60 for each worker employed for each calendar day or part of the day that the worker is paid less than the wage rates stipulated in the contract. A public body shall use any money collected under this section to offset the costs incurred in the administration of this chapter.

Confirmed Disciplinary action taken by CONTRACTOR against employees who provide information during an interview or investigation by the Owner on wages received, may result in suspension or debarment from consideration of award of City contracts.

VI. Area Practice

A. Heavy and Highway Construction Rates shall be used on this Project, unless the Project consists primarily of Building Construction and Building Construction Rates are to be used.

1. Building Construction consists generally of all aspects of construction of buildings, which are sheltered enclosures with walk-in access for the purpose of housing persons, machinery, equipment or supplies, including without limitation the installation of utilities and equipment, both above and below grade level, as well as incidental demolition, grading, utilities, paving and other site work. Buildings need not be "habitable" to be classified as Building Construction and the installation of heavy machinery and/or equipment will not generally change a Building Construction project's classification.

2. The determination of Building Construction Wage Rates includes all construction trades and work necessary to complete a building, regardless of the number of contracts involved, so long as all such contracts are closely related in purpose, time and place.

B. For projects that involve both Building Construction and Heavy and Highway trades, the following classifications shall be used:

1. A multiple classification shall be used if Building Construction items are more than 20% of the Heavy and Highway project cost.

2. A multiple classification shall be used if Heavy and Highway Construction items are more than 20% of the Building Construction Project cost.

C. Split classifications/multiple wage rate schedules: When construction work requires that an employee perform work under multiple classifications or multiple wage scales, the employer must pay that worker (at least) the

highest prevailing wage or the employer payroll records must accurately set forth the times spent performing the work of each classification and under each scale. For those projects that involve both Building Construction and Heavy and Highway trades, the Heavy and Highway wage rates may only be applied to workers when engaged in site work at least five (5) feet beyond the building.

VII. Texas Open Records Act

Unless covered by an exception to mandatory disclosure under the Texas Public Information Act, Chapter 552, Texas Government Code, any and all documents submitted to the City of Austin become Public Records and are, therefore, subject to public disclosure.

Wage Rates For This Project Are Attached

End

WAGE RATE DETERMINATION

BUILDING CONSTRUCTION TYPE

COUNTY NAME : TRAVIS

Wages based on DOL Prevailing Wage Rate General Decision:TX160323 8/26/2016 TX323 and City of Austin Ordinance #20160324-015

DOL Rate column is for information only. The Total Minimum Wage Rate is derived from the Adjusted Wage Rate Required pursuant to City Ordinance plus the DOL Fringes and can be met using any combination of cash and non-cash qualified fringe benefits, provided the cash component is at least $13.50/hour.

CLASSIFICATION	DOL RATE for info only	ADJUSTED WAGE RATE REQUIRED pursuant to City Ordinance	DOL FRINGES	TOTAL MINIMUM WAGE RATE REQUIRED
Asbestos Worker/Heat & Frost Insulator (Duct, Pipe, and Mechanical System Insulation)	$ 21.57	$ 21.57	$ 10.02	$ 31.59
Boilermaker	$ 23.14	$ 23.14	$ 21.55	$ 44.69
Bricklayer	$ 20.07	$ 20.07	$ -	$ 20.07
Carpenter	$ 20.75	$ 20.75	$ 7.30	$ 28.05
Carpenter (Acoustical Ceiling Installation only)	$ 14.00	$ 14.00	$ -	$ 14.00
Carpenter (Form Work Only)	$ 15.62	$ 15.62	$ 0.05	$ 15.67
Cement Mason/Concrete Finisher	$ 15.71	$ 15.71	$ -	$ 15.71
Drywall Finisher/Taper	$ 17.06	$ 17.06	$ 4.43	$ 21.49
Drywall Hanger and Metal Stud Installer	$ 17.47	$ 17.47	$ 3.45	$ 20.92
Electrical Installer (Sound and Communication Systems, Excluding Wiring)	$ 18.00	$ 18.00	$ 2.30	$ 20.30
Electrician (Excludes Installation of Sound and Communication Systems)	$ 27.15	$ 27.15	$ 7.88	$ 35.03
Elevator Mechanic <5 years experience	$ 37.76	$ 37.76	$ 32.25	$ 70.01
Elevator Mechanic >5 years experience	$ 37.76	$ 37.76	$ 33.01	$ 70.77
Floor Layer (Carpet)	$ 21.88	$ 21.88	$ -	$ 21.88
Glazier	$ 12.83	$ 13.50	$ -	$ 13.50
HVAC Mechanic (HVAC Unit Installation Only)	$ 23.78	$ 23.78	$ 6.89	$ 30.67
Ironworker, Ornamental	$ 23.02	$ 23.02	$ 6.35	$ 29.37
Ironworker, Reinforcing	$ 12.27	$ 13.50	$ -	$ 13.50
Ironworker, Structural	$ 20.73	$ 20.73	$ 5.24	$ 25.97
*Lead Paint or Asbestos Abatement Worker	*	$ 13.50	$ -	$ 13.50
Laborer, Common or General	$ 11.44	$ 13.50	$ -	$ 13.50
Laborer, Mason Tender - Brick	$ 12.22	$ 13.50	$ -	$ 13.50
Laborer, Mason Tender - Cement/Concrete	$ 11.85	$ 13.50	$ -	$ 13.50
Laborer, Pipelayer	$ 12.45	$ 13.50	$ -	$ 13.50
Laborer, Roof Tearoff	$ 11.28	$ 13.50	$ -	$ 13.50

Operator, Backhoe/Excavator/Trackhoe	$ 19.43	$ 19.43	$ 3.49	$ 22.92
Operator, Bobcat/Skid Steer/Skid Loader	$ 13.00	$ 13.50	$ -	$ 13.50
Operator, Bulldozer	$ 14.00	$ 14.00	$ -	$ 14.00
Operator, Crane	$ 34.85	$ 34.85	$ 9.85	$ 44.70
Operator, Drill	$ 14.50	$ 14.50	$ -	$ 14.50
Operator, Forklift	$ 16.64	$ 16.64	$ 6.26	$ 22.90
Operator, Grader/Blade	$ 19.30	$ 19.30	$ -	$ 19.30
Operator, Loader	$ 14.00	$ 14.00	$ -	$ 14.00
Operator, Mechanic	$ 18.75	$ 18.75	$ 5.12	$ 23.87
Operator, Paver (Asphalt, Aggregate, and Concrete)	$ 16.03	$ 16.03	$ -	$ 16.03
Operator, Roller	$ 11.25	$ 13.50	$ -	$ 13.50
Painter (Brush, Roller, and Spray, Excludes Drywall Finishing/Taping)	$ 18.76	$ 18.76	$ 6.35	$ 25.11
Pipefitter (Including HVAC Pipe Installation)	$ 28.03	$ 28.03	$ 12.43	$ 40.46
Plumber, Excludes HVAC Pipe Installation	$ 23.57	$ 23.57	$ 6.37	$ 29.94
Roofer	$ 12.00	$ 13.50	$ -	$ 13.50
*Roofer, Metal	$ 14.05	$ 14.05	$ -	$ 14.05
Sheet Metal Worker (Including HVAC Duct Installation)	$ 24.38	$ 24.38	$ 13.74	$ 38.12
Sprinkler Fitter (Fire Sprinklers)	$ 28.18	$ 28.18	$ 17.52	$ 45.70
Tile Finisher	$ 11.32	$ 13.50	$ -	$ 13.50
Tile Setter	$ 16.35	$ 16.35	$ -	$ 16.35
Truck Driver, Dump Truck	$ 12.39	$ 13.50	$ 1.18	$ 14.68
Truck Driver, Flatbed Truck	$ 19.65	$ 19.65	$ 8.57	$ 28.22
Truck Driver, Semi-Trailer Truck	$ 12.50	$ 13.50	$ -	$ 13.50
Truck Driver, Water Truck	$ 12.00	$ 13.50	$ 4.11	$ 17.61
Waterproofer	$ 16.30	$ 16.30	$ 0.06	$ 16.36

http://www.wdol.gov/wdol/scafiles/davisbacon/tx.html

See below for Additional Wage Information.

Note: *Lead Paint & Asbestos Abatement and Roofer, Metal Classifications have been added to this Prevailing Wage Rate Determination pursuant to a City of Austin Prevailing Wage Survey (trades absent from DOL).

The Wage Compliance information detailed below was excerpted from DOL General Decision TX160323 or other sources.

1. Additional Trade information:

Electricians** - Including low voltage wiring for computers, fire/smoke alarms.
Elevator Mechanics*** - also must be paid for 7 holidays - New Years Day, Memorial Day, Independence Day, Labor Day, Thanksgiving Day, the Friday after Thanksgiving Day, Christmas Day, and Veterans Day.
Welders - Receive rate prescribed for craft performing operation to which welding is incidental.

Unlisted classifications needed for work not included within the scope of the classifications listed may be added upon the advance approval of City of Austin Contract Administration. CONTRACTOR shall submit to City of Austin Contract Administration for review the classification, a bona fide definition of work to be performed and a proposed wage with sample payrolls conforming to area practice **prior** to the start of the job for that type of work.

2. Wages

The Total Wage may be met by any combination of cash wages and credible "bona fide" fringe benefits paid for by the employer. Overtime wages must be calculated using the Adjusted Wage Rate specified in the Wage Rate Determination or the actual basic rate of pay, whichever is higher.

City of Austin Ordinance No. 20160324-015 requires that construction workers are paid a Minimum Wage of at least $13.50/hour. The cash portion of their compensation must meet or exceed this amount.

3. Crediting fringe benefit contributions to meet DBA/DBRA and City of Austin requirements:

The Davis-Bacon Act (and 29 CFR 5.23), list fringe benefits to be considered. Examples are:

> Life Insurance
> Health Insurance
> Pension
> Vacation
> Holidays
> Sick Leave

Note: The use of a truck is not a fringe benefit; a Thanksgiving turkey or Christmas bonus is not a fringe benefit. No credit may be taken for any benefit required by federal, state, or local law such as: workers compensation, unemployment compensation; or social security contributions.

Contributions to fringe benefit plans must be made regularly, e.g. daily, weekly, etc. They must be more frequent than quarterly. (see 29 CFR 5.5 (a)(1)(I)) A periodic bonus may not be counted as a fringe benefit.

4. Annualization of Benefit Costs

If a firm provides an electrician with $200 per month medical insurance, to calculate allowable fringe benefit credit contributions per hour, the formula ([$200 x 12 months] divided by 2080 hours = $1.15 per hour) should be used.

5. Proper Designation of Trade

A work classification on the wage decision for each worker must be made based on the actual type of work he/she performed and each worker must be paid no less than the wage rate on the wage decision for that classification **regardless** of his or her level of skill.

6. Split Classification

If a firm has employees that perform work in more than one classification, it can pay the wage rates specified for each classification ONLY if it maintains accurate time records showing the amount of time spent in each classification. If accurate time records are not maintained, these employees must be paid the highest wage rate of all the classifications of work performed by each worker. Accurate time records tracking how many hours a worker performed the work of one trade and then switched to another trade must be accounted for on a daily basis and reflected on Employer Certified Payroll accordingly.

WELDERS - Receive rate prescribed for craft performing operation to which welding is incidental.

==========

Unlisted classifications needed for work not included within the scope of the classifications listed may be added after award only as provided in the labor standards contract clauses (29CFR 5.5 (a) (1) (ii)).

In the listing above, the "SU" designation means that rates listed under the identifier do not reflect collectively bargained wage and fringe benefit rates. Other designations indicate unions whose rates have been determined to be prevailing.

WAGE DETERMINATION APPEALS PROCESS

1.) Has there been an initial decision in the matter? This can be:

* an existing published wage determination
* a survey underlying a wage determination
* a Wage and Hour Division letter setting forth a position on a wage determination matter
* a conformance (additional classification and rate) ruling

On survey related matters, initial contact, including requests for summaries of surveys, should be with the Wage and Hour Regional Office for the area in which the survey was conducted because those Regional Offices have responsibility for the Davis-Bacon survey program. If the response from this initial

contact is not satisfactory, then the process described in 2.) and 3.) should be followed.

With regard to any other matter not yet ripe for the formal process described here, initial contact should be with the Branch of Construction Wage Determinations. Write to:

Branch of Construction Wage Determinations
Wage and Hour Division
U.S. Department of Labor
200 Constitution Avenue, N.W.
Washington, DC 20210

2.) If the answer to the question in 1.) is yes, then an interested party (those affected by the action) can request review and reconsideration from the Wage and Hour Administrator (See 29 CFR Part 1.8 and 29 CFR Part 7). Write to:

Wage and Hour Administrator
U.S. Department of Labor
200 Constitution Avenue, N.W.
Washington, DC 20210

The request should be accompanied by a full statement of the interested party's position and by any information (wage payment data, project description, area practice material, etc.) that the requestor considers relevant to the issue.

3.) If the decision of the Administrator is not favorable, an interested party may appeal directly to the Administrative Review Board (formerly the Wage Appeals Board). Write to:

Administrative Review Board
U.S. Department of Labor
200 Constitution Avenue, N.W.
Washington, DC 20210

4.) All decisions by the Administrative Review Board are final.

==========

Notice to Bidders: This form, Addendum – Section 00900, is included for your information only. If an actual Addendum is issued for this project, the format shown below will be used.

ADDENDUM No. _____

Date _____, _____

City of Austin

Project Name _____

C.I.P. No. _____ IFB No.: _____

This Addendum forms a part of the Contract and corrects or modifies original Bid Documents, dated _(*first advertisement date should go here)*_, _____. Acknowledge receipt of this addendum in space provided on bid form. Failure to do so may subject bidder to disqualification.

A. Project Manual Revisions:

B. Drawing Revisions:

This addendum consists of _____ page(s)/sheet(s).

_____

Approved by OWNER

_____

Approved by ENGINEER/ARCHITECT

END

SAMPLE

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 Related Documents:

Drawings and general provisions of Contract, including General Conditions, Section 00700, and Supplemental General Conditions, Section 00810, and Division 1 requirements.

1.2 DESCRIPTION OF WORK:

The Work consists of construction of a new City of Austin Onion Creek Fire and EMS Station at the intersection of FM 1626 and Old San Antonio Road. The new Fire and EMS Station will be constructed on 2.508 acres in an area of need in southeast Austin. The three-bay 9,626 square foot station is designed to house sixteen (16) fire and EMS personnel to serve the surrounding community. A fueling station is also part of this facility. The project is designed to achieve LEED silver rating.

The Work of this Contract includes requirements to achieve LEED Silver certification as admistered by the U.S. Green Building Council (USGBC) and it is a nationally known Green Building Rating System. These requirements are shown in all applicable specifications including in the Division 1 sections 01352 and 01505. It is the intent of the Owner to work in partnership with the Contractor in implementing sustainable construction practices to the greatest extent possible.

1.3 SUBMITTALS

Provide shop drawings and other information as required by Section 01300 for coordination of the work.

1.4 CONTRACTOR'S USE OF CONSTRUCTION SITE

The construction site will be in use by public throughout the duration of contract. CONTRACTOR shall not unreasonably encumber the construction site with materials or equipment. CONTRACTOR shall assume reasonable responsibility for protection of construction site.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

NOT USED

PART 3 - EXECUTION

NOT USED

End

1. CONTRACTOR shall perform all layout work to transfer all controls for grades, lines, levels and measurements from a minimum of two reference points provided by OWNER. All survey work will be performed under the direct supervision of a Texas Registered Professional Land Surveyor (RPLS).

2. Within 5 work days of the Notice To Proceed date, or within 10 Working Days of initiating work based on the approved Schedule in a new area of the Project, the CONTRACTOR shall survey and stake the locations of all proposed improvements behind the curb and within the ROW (examples: manholes, storm inlets, fire hydrants, etc.), or any other improvements identified by the OWNER'S REPRESENTATIVE, for the purpose of identifying the nature and location of these improvements to the adjacent property owner(s). The OWNER'S REPRESENTATIVE will identify to the CONTRACTOR the improvements to be staked.

3. OWNER will not stake for construction and will not be on site for survey layout activities, except to perform quality control checks.

4. CONTRACTOR shall be required to set elevation hubs (blue tops) for subgrade and base course on centerline, at quarter points and curb lines or edge of pavement at intervals not exceeding 50 feet.

5. The construction plans will include horizontal and vertical control points. References to approved COA benchmarks used in establishing controls on the drawings will be provided by the Owner's E/A. In addition, on building projects and/or projects not built within an existing public ROW, a boundary survey will be supplied together with a legal description of the property and all easements where Work will take place.

6. CONTRACTOR shall submit construction staking layout sheets sealed by a Professional Engineer or Registered Professional Land Surveyor registered in the State of Texas. CONTRACTOR shall use a qualification based selection process consistent with the Professional Services Procurement Act, Chapter 2254.004 of the Texas Government Code, when securing the services of a Professional Engineer or Registered Professional Land Surveyor. It is a violation of State Law to solicit bids for the services of a Professional Engineer of Registered Professional Land Surveyor.

   6.1 Any discrepancies found with the construction documents' dimensional layout will be corrected. CONTRACTOR shall assure that the Owner's Representative and E/A are notified so that the appropriate actions are taken to correct the Contract drawings.

   6.2 All Work shall be done to the lines, grades and elevations indicated on the drawings. Information concerning basic horizontal and vertical control points will be provided by the E/A, Brown Reynolds Watford Architects. These points shall be used as the datum basis under this Contract.

   6.3 All work to transfer all controls for grades, lines, levels, layout and measurements shall be performed under the supervision of a Texas Registered Professional Land Surveyor, provided by the CONTRACTOR. Such work shall conform to the standards for construction staking in the most recent edition of the Texas Society

of Professional Surveyors Manual of Practice for Land Surveying, Category 5, Sections 1-12 inclusive.

6.4 The centerline and offset centerline stakes will be set at no greater than fifty (50) foot intervals on both sides of the right-of-way and at points of alignment or grade changes. References to lines and grades as established by the CONTRACTOR's surveyor shall be in reference to these stake lines. The CONTRACTOR is required to provide a sealed statement from his RPLS that the controls are correct and the site layout has been done by their professional staff.

6.5 The CONTRACTOR shall place grade stakes and submit construction staking layout sheets. The CONTRACTOR shall allow a minimum of ten (10) days after submission to the Owner's Representative for review of construction staking layout sheets. Construction staking layout sheets shall include, at a minimum, the information contained in the form included at the end of this section. No Work shall be performed without Owner's Representative review and return to CONTRACTOR of construction staking layout sheets. The Owner's Representative, E/A and the CONTRACTOR shall review the survey controls on the ground.

6.6 Prior to any excavation, the CONTRACTOR shall establish the elevation to top of ground at centerline of the pipe as well as cuts and offset stakes at the distance deemed appropriate by the CONTRACTOR to preclude disturbance of offset stakes during construction. The CONTRACTOR shall set all blue tops for subgrade and base courses on centerline at quarter points, at curb lines or edge of pavement, and other points that may be indicated on the Drawings, all at intervals not to exceed 50 feet.

6.7 The CONTRACTOR shall furnish, without charge, experienced personnel and such calibrated survey equipment, tools, stakes, and other materials that the Owner's Representative may require in establishing or checking control points, or in checking survey, layout, and measurement work performed by the CONTRACTOR.

6.8 The CONTRACTOR shall keep the Owner's Representative informed in a reasonable time in advance of the times and places at which he wishes to do work, so that any checking deemed necessary by the OWNER may be done with minimum inconvenience to the E/A and minimum delay to the CONTRACTOR. Surveying will be coordinated between the Owner's Representative and CONTRACTOR in a manner convenient to both.

6.9 During layout, CONTRACTOR shall field verify the elevation and alignment of all tie-in points to existing infrastructure. This work shall be performed sufficiently in advance of construction so that any conflicts may be resolved without delay. Any work done without being properly located may be ordered removed and replaced at the CONTRACTOR's expense.

6.10 The CONTRACTOR shall carefully preserve all monuments, benchmarks, reference points, and stakes. In case of the destruction thereof, the CONTRACTOR shall bear the cost of replacement and shall be responsible for any mistake or loss of time that may be caused. Permanent monuments or benchmarks, which must be removed or disturbed, shall be protected until properly referenced for relocation. The CONTRACTOR shall furnish materials and assistance for the proper replacement of such monuments or benchmarks.

6.11 The CONTRACTOR shall satisfy himself before commencing work as to the meaning and correctness of all survey control stakes, marks, etc., and no claim will be entertained by the OWNER for or on account of any alleged inaccuracies,

unless the CONTRACTOR notifies the OWNER in writing before commencing the affected Work.

7. As needed for necessary documentation of the work progress, the CONTRACTOR shall maintain and/or protect offset or survey staking for the duration of the project. Any re-staking required to meet this requirement shall be done at the CONTRACTOR'S expense.

8. This item is subsidiary to the work as a whole.

9. Upon completion of construction, or at intervals specified in the Contract, CONTRACTOR shall provide a record survey of the work in progress or completed. This information will be submitted to the Owner's Representative and shall be supplied electronically and on a separate full size plan sheet to be transmitted to the E/A for evaluation and merging into the Record Drawings.

End See attached "Construction Staking Layout Sheet"

CONSTRUCTION STAKING LAYOUT SHEET

Project Name: _____ **Date:** _____
C.I.P. ID#: _____ **Instrument No.:** _____
Person Recording: _____ **Weather Conditions:** _____
Crew Members: _____
General Purpose & Scope of Survey: _____

STATION	B.S.	H.I.	F.S.	LEVEL LOOP ELEVATION	ROD READING	HUB ELEVATION AT STATION	(TARGET) (eg., pipe invert) ELEVATION	C - CUT OR F - FILL	% GRADE	NOTES: INDICATE WHETHER CENTERLINE HUB OR _____ FT. OFFSET HUB

DEFINITIONS

General: Basic Contract definitions are included in the General Conditions, Section 00700 included herein.

Approved: The term approved, when used in conjunction with the Owner's Representative's action on the CONTRACTOR'S submittals, applications, and requests, is limited to the Owner's Representative's duties and responsibilities as stated in the Conditions of the Contract. A stamp reading "No Exceptions Taken" shall have the same intent as "Approved".

Furnish: The term furnish means supply and deliver to the Project site, ready for unloading, unpacking, assembly, installation, and similar operations.

Indicated: The term indicated refers to graphic representations, notes, or schedules on the Drawings, or other paragraphs or schedules in the Specifications, and similar requirements in the Contract Documents. Terms such as shown, noted, scheduled, and specified are used to help the reader locate the reference. There is no limitation on location.

Install: The term install describes operations at the Project site including the actual unloading, unpacking, assembly, erecting, placing, anchoring, applying, working to dimension, finishing, curing, protecting, cleaning, and similar operations.

Installer: An Installer is the CONTRACTOR or another entity engaged by the CONTRACTOR, either as an employee, subcontractor, or contractor of lower tier, to perform a particular construction activity, including installation, erection, application, and similar operations. Installers are required to be experienced in operations they are engaged to perform.

Project Site: The space available to the CONTRACTOR for performing construction activities either exclusively or in conjunction with others performing other work as part of the Project. The extent of the Project site is shown on the Drawings and may or may not be identical with the description of the land on which the Project is to be built.

Provide: The term provide means to furnish and install, complete and ready for the intended use.

Regulations: The term regulations includes laws, ordinances, statutes, and lawful orders issued by authorities having jurisdiction, as well as rules, conventions, and agreements within the construction industry that control performance of the Work.

Trades: Using terms such as carpentry is not intended to imply that certain construction activities must be performed by accredited or unionized individuals of a corresponding generic name, such as carpenter. It also does not imply that requirements specified apply exclusively to trades persons of the corresponding generic name.

INDUSTRY STANDARDS

Applicability of Standards: Except where the Contract Documents include more stringent requirements, applicable construction industry standards have the same force and effect as if bound or copied directly into the Contract Documents to the extent referenced. Such standards are made a part of the Contract Documents by reference.

Publication Dates: Comply with the standards in effect as of the date of the Contract Documents.

Conflicting Requirements: Where compliance with two or more standards is specified and where the standards may establish different or conflicting requirements for minimum quantities or quality levels, refer to the Owner's Representative for a decision before proceeding.

Copies of Standards: Each entity engaged in construction on the Project is required to be familiar with industry standards applicable to its construction activity. Copies of applicable standards are not bound with the Contract Documents.

Abbreviations and Names: Trade association names, titles of general standards, and names and titles of government agencies are frequently abbreviated. Where such acronyms or abbreviations are used in the

Specifications or other Contract Documents, they mean the recognized name of the trade association, standards-generating organization, authority having jurisdiction, or other entity applicable to the context of the text provision. Refer to the "Encyclopedia of Associations," published by Gale Research Co., available in most libraries.

AA	Aluminum Association
AABC	Associated Air Balance Council
AAMA	American Architectural Manufacturer's Association
AAN	American Association of Nurserymen.
AASHTO	American Association of State Highway and Transportation Officials.
AATCC	American Association of Textile Chemists and Colorists
ACI	American Concrete Institute
ACIL	American Council of Independent Laboratories
ACPA	American Concrete Pipe Association
ADC	Air Diffusion Council
AFBMA	Anti-Friction Bearing Manufacturers Association
AGA	American Gas Association
AGC	Associated General Contractors of America
AGMA	American Gear Manufacturers Association
AHA	American Hardboard Association
AHAM	Association of Home Appliance Manufacturers
AI	Asphalt Institute
AIA	American Institute of Architects
AIHA	American Industrial Hygiene Association
AISC	American Institute of Steel Construction
AISI	American Iron and Steel Institute
AITC	American Institute of Timber Construction.
ALCA	Associated Landscape Contractors of America
ALI	Associated Laboratories, Inc.
ALSC	American Lumber Standards Committee
AMCA	Air Movement and Control Association
ANSI	American National Standards Institute.
AOAC	Association of Official Analytical Chemists

AOSA	Association of Official Seed Analysts
APA	American Plywood Association
API	American Petroleum Institute.
AREA	American Railroad Engineers Association
ARI	Air Conditioning and Refrigeration Institute
ARMA	Asphalt Roofing Manufacturers Association
ASA	Acoustical Society of America
ASA	American Standards Association.
ASC	Adhesive and Sealant Council
ASCE	American Society of Civil Engineers
ASHRAE	American Society of Heating, Refrigerating & Air Conditioning Engineers
ASME	American Society of Mechanical Engineers
ASPE	American Society of Plumbing Engineers
ASSE	American Society of Sanitary Engineering
ASTM	American Society for Testing and Materials.
AWCMA	American Window Covering Manufacturers Association
AWG	American Wire Gage
AWI	Architectural Woodwork Institute
AWPA	American Wood Preservers Association
AWPB	American Wood Preservers Bureau
AWPI	American Wood Preservers Institute
AWS	American Welding Society
AWWA	American Water Works Association
BHMA	Builders Hardware Manufacturers Association
BIA	Brick Institute of America
BIFMA	Business and Institutional Furniture Manufacturers Association
CAGI	Compressed Air and Gas Institute
CAUS	Color Association of the United States
CBM	Certified Ballast Manufacturers
CCC	Carpet Cushion Council

CDA	Copper Development Association
CE	Corps of Engineers
CFR	Code of Federal Regulations
CGA	Compressed Gas Association
CISCA	Ceiling and Interior Systems Construction Association
CISPI	Cast Iron Soil Pipe Institute
CPSC	Consumer Product Safety Commission
CRI	Carpet and Rug Institute
CRSI	Concrete Reinforcing Steel Institute
CS	Commercial Standard of NBS (U.S. Dept. of Commerce)
CTI	Ceramic Tile Institute
DFPA	Douglas Fir Plywood Association
DHI	Door and Hardware Institute
DLPA	Decorative Laminate Products Association
DOC	U.S. Department of Commerce
DOT	Department of Transportation
ECSA	Exchange Carriers Standards Association
EIA	Electronic Industries Association
EIMA	Exterior Insulation Manufacturers Association
EJMA	Expansion Joint Manufacturers Association
EPA	Environmental Protection Agency
FAA	Federal Aviation Administration
FCC	Federal Communications Commission
FGMA	Flat Glass Marketing Association
FHA	Federal Housing Administration
FM	Factory Mutual Research Organization
FS	Federal Specifications
FSC	Forest Stewardship Council
FTI	Facing Tile Institute
GA	Gypsum Association
GSA	General Services Administration

HEI	Heat Exchange Institute
HI	Hydronics Institute
H.I.	Hydraulic Institute
HMA	Hardwood Manufacturers Association
HPMA	Hardwood Plywood Manufacturers Association
IBD	Institute of Business Designers
ICEA	Insulated Cable Engineers Association, Inc.
IEEE	Institute of Electrical and Electronic Engineers, Inc.
IESNA	Illuminating Engineering Society of North American
IGCC	Insulating Glass Certification Council
ILI	Indiana Limestone Institute of America
IMSA	International Municipal Signal Association
IRI	Industrial Risk Insurers
ISA	Instrument Society of America
ITE	Institute of Transportation Engineers
LEED™	Leadership in Energy and Environmental Design
LIA	Lead Industries Association, Inc.
LPI	Lightning Protection Institute
MBMA	Metal Building Manufacturer's Association
MCAA	Mechanical Contractors Association of America
MFMA	Maple Flooring Manufacturers' Association
MIA	Marble Institute of America
ML/SFA	Metal Lath/Steel Framing Association
MSS	Manufacturers Standardization Society of the Valve and Fittings Industry
MUTCD	Texas Department of Transportation Manual on Uniform Traffic Control Devices
NAAMM	National Association of Architectural Metal Manufacturers
NAIMA	North American Insulation Manufacturers Association
NAPA	National Asphalt Pavement Association
NBFU	National Board of Fire Underwriters

NBGQA	National Building Granite Quarries Association
NBS	National Bureau of Standards (U.S. Dept. of Commerce)
NCMA	National Concrete Masonry Association
NCRPM	National Council on Radiation Protection and Measurements
NCSPA	National Corrugated Steel Pipe Association
NEC	National Electrical Code (Published by NFPA)
NECA	National Electrical Contractors Association
NEII	National Elevator Industry, Inc.
NEMA	National Electrical Manufacturers Association
NETA	International Electrical Testing Association
N.F.P.A.	National Forest Products Association
NFPA	National Fire Protection Association
NHLA	National Hardwood Lumber Association
NIST	National Institute of Standards and Technology
NLGA	National Lumber Grades Authority
NOFMA	National Oak Flooring Manufacturers Association
NPA	National Particleboard Association
NPCA	National Paint and Coatings Association
NRCA	National Roofing Contractors Association
NWMA	National Woodwork Manufacturers Association
OSHA	Occupational Safety and Health Administration
PCA	Portland Cement Association
PCI	Precast/Prestressed Concrete Institute
PDI	Plumbing and Drainage Institute
PE	Professional Engineer
REA	Rural Electrification Administration
RFCI	Resilient Floor Covering Institute
RMA	Rubber Manufacturing Association
RPLS	Registered Professional Land Surveyor
SDI	Steel Deck Institute
S.D.I.	Steel Door Institute

SFPA	Southern Forest Products Association
SGCC	Safety Glazing Certification Council
SIGMA	Sealed Insulating Glass Manufacturers Association
SJI	Steel Joist Institute
SMACNA	Sheet Metal and Air Conditioning Contractors National Association
SPIB	Southern Pine Inspection Bureau
SPRI	Single Ply Roofing Institute
SSPC	Steel Structures Painting Council
SSPMA	Sump and Sewage Pump Manufacturers Association
SWI	Steel Window Institute
SWPA	Submersible Wastewater Pump Association
TCA	Tile Council of America
TEX TEST	TxDOT Laboratory Test
TIMA	Thermal Insulation Manufacturers Association
TPI	Truss Plate Institute
TxDOT	Texas Department of Transportation
UL	Underwriters Laboratory, Inc.
USDA	U. S. Department of Agriculture
USGBC	U. S. Green Building Council
USPS	U. S. Postal Service
WCLIB	West Coast Lumber Inspection Bureau
WCMA	Wallcovering Manufacturers Association
WIC	Woodwork Institute of California
WLPDIA	Western Lath, Plaster, Drywall Industries Association
WRI	Wire Reinforcement Institute
WSC	Water Systems Council
WSFI	Wood and Synthetic Flooring Institute
WWPA	Western Wood Products Association
W.W.P.A.	Woven Wire Products Association

END

STORM WATER POLLUTION PREVENTION PLAN (SWPPP)

The Storm Water Pollution Prevention Plan for this project is attached.

DRAFT

STORM WATER POLLUTION PREVENTION PLAN

TEXAS POLLUTANT DISCHARGE ELIMINATION SYSTEM
CONSTRUCTION GENERAL PERMIT TXR150000

Prepared for:

Public Works Department
505 Barton Springs Road, Suite 900
Austin, Texas 78704

Under contract to:

Brown Reynolds Watford Architects, Inc.
2700 Earl Rudder Freeway South
Suite 4000
College Station, Texas 77845

Austin Onion Creek Fire & EMS Station
Project Name

SPC-2016-0287C
City of Austin Permit No.

September 2016
Plan Date

Prepared by:

Baer Engineering
and Environmental Consulting, Inc.

7756 Northcross Drive, Suite 211, Austin, Texas 78757
Phone: (512) 453-3733 Fax: (512) 453-3316 Toll Free: (800) 926-9242
www.baereng.com info@baereng.com

T.B.P.E. Firm Registration Number F-3181

Baer Engineering Document No. 142058-8i.010

This document contains work product proprietary to Baer Engineering and Environmental Consulting, Inc. Its contents are intended for exclusive use by the Contractor, and the City of Austin for compliance with applicable regulations and permitting. Redistribution or subsequent disclosure of the materials contained herein is not authorized for any other use without the express written consent of Baer Engineering. © 2015.

Note to Reviewer:

The format of this plan is based upon:

- *Texas Commission on Environmental Quality, Construction General Permit Storm Water Pollution Prevention Plan Worksheets, December 2013 The project specific information has been inserted onto the worksheets as provided by TCEQ; and*
- *City of Austin, Texas, Environmental Criteria Manual, Appendix P-1, Erosion Control Notes.*

The information from the Contractor to be inserted after contract award is highlighted in yellow in this SWPPP.

Table of Contents

A. Certification Page 1
B. Contact Information/Responsible Parties 2

SITE DESCRIPTION

1. Nature of Construction and List of Pollutants 3
2. Construction Schedule 4
3. Acreage, Material Storage, and Soil Type 5
4. Location Map 7
5. Detailed Site Maps 8
6. Site Description – Support Facilities 9
7. Construction General Permit TXR150000 NOI, Certificate, and/or Site Notice 10
8. BMPs – Erosion and Sedimentation Controls 11
9. BMPs – Off-site Pollutant Transfer Controls 13
10. BMPs – Erosion Control and Stabilization Practices 14
11. BMPs – Major Grading/Schedule of Construction Activities 15
12. BMPs – Sediment Control Practices 16
13. BMPs – Permanent Storm Water Controls 17
14. BMPs – Other Storm Water Controls 18
15. BMPs – Inspection of Controls – Forms / Report / Certification 20
16. BMPs – Eligible Non-Storm Water Discharges 22
17. BMPs – Storm Water Runoff from Concrete Batch Plants 23
18. BMPs – Concrete Truck Wash-Out Requirements 24

Appendices

APPENDIX A – Erosion & Sedimentation Control Plan (City of Austin, Appendix P-1)
APPENDIX B – Location Map & Drainage Map
APPENDIX C – Site Notice
APPENDIX D – TPDES Construction General Permit No. TXR 150000
APPENDIX E – Inspection of Controls and Corrective Action Report/ Certification Form (includes City of Austin, Appendix P-8 form items)
APPENDIX F – SWPPP Amendment and Update Log (City of Austin, Appendix P-9 form)
APPENDIX G – Record of Construction Activity (City of Austin, Appendix P-8 form)
APPENDIX H – Inspector Certifications (as per City of Austin, Appendix P-1)

A. CERTIFICATION PAGE

I certify under penalty of law that this document and all attachments were prepared under my direction or supervision in accordance with a system designed to assure that qualified personnel properly gather and evaluate the information submitted. Based on my inquiry of the person or persons who manage the system, or those persons directly responsible for gathering the information, the information submitted is, to the best of my knowledge and belief, true, accurate, and complete. I am aware there are significant penalties for submitting false information, including the possibility of fine and imprisonment for knowing violations.

Signatories shall be authorized as required by 30 TAC §305.44(b).

Primary Operator:
The primary operator with on-site day-to-day operational control of those activities at the construction site that are necessary to ensure compliance with the Storm Water Pollution Prevention Plan (SWPPP) and the Texas Pollutant Discharge Elimination System (TPDES) Construction General Permit TPDES TXR 150000 for the site or other permit conditions is:

CONTRACTOR – TBD

Signed: _____ Date: _____ TPDES #: _____

Name:

Title:

Secondary Operator:
The Secondary Operator with the ability to approve or disapprove changes to construction plans and specifications, but who does not have day-to-day on-site operational control over construction activities at the site is:

PUBLIC WORKS DEPARTMENT

Signed: _____ Date: _____

Name: Craig Russell

Title: City of Austin Project Manager

Other Primary Operator (if applicable):

Signed: _____ Date: _____ TPDES #: _____

Name: _____

Title: _____

DRAFT

B. CONTACT INFORMATION/RESPONSIBLE PARTIES

Owner(s):
Public Works Department
505 Barton Springs Road
Suite 900
Austin, TX 78704

Contractor:
INSERT NAME OF CONTRACTOR

Project Manager*:*
Craig Russell
Public Works Department
505 Barton Springs Road
Austin, TX 78704
(512) 974-7157

Emergency 24-Hour Contact:
Dispatch
(512) 530-2242

SWPPP Contact(s):

1)

2) CONTRACTOR

Owner's Representative/ Design Engineers:
Brown Reynolds Watford Architects
2700 Earl Rudder Freeway South
Suite 4000
Lisa Andel, Assoc. AIA
(979) 694-1791

This SWPPP was prepared by:
Baer Engineering and Environmental Consulting, Inc.
David Sperry
dsperry@baereng.com
7756 Northcross Drive, Suite 211
Austin, TX 78757
(512) 453-3733

SWPPP Certification by:
Jennifer Lueckemeyer, CPESC
JLueckemeyer@baereng.com

DRAFT

SITE DESCRIPTION

1. Nature of Construction and List of Pollutants

Part III, Sect. F.1.(a)

Description of the general nature of construction activities:

The proposed project will construct the Onion Creek Fire and EMS Station. The Station is a 9,626 square foot structure, located at the intersection of F.M. 1626 Road and Old San Antonio Road. The Station will have three bays and will have the ability of sleeping 16 personnel to serve the surrounding community. In addition to the Station a new 7-foot wide sidewalk will be constructed along the site fronting F.M. 1626 Road and Old San Antonio Road.

Part III, Sect. F.1.(b)

List of ALL potential pollutants and their sources:

Potential Pollutants	**Source**
Sediment in Runoff	Sheet flow over disturbed soil during construction. Loose dirt from fill or spoils.
Sediment Tracking	Construction vehicles entering / exiting.
Dust	Emissions from demolition, spoils, excavation, grading, and wind.
Demolition waste	Demolition of existing concrete building slabs and driveway.
Solid Waste	Trash, debris, material storage.
Concrete	Pouring for foundation slab.
Asphalt	Paving of parking lots and driveways.
Fuel	On-site storage tanks and/or totes (if present), generators, and other equipment.
Hydraulic Fluids	On-site equipment.
Paint	On-site storage in pails and/or totes.

DRAFT

2. Construction Schedule

Part III Sect. F.1.(c)

Project Start Date: January, 2016
Project Completion Date: Date

Construction is estimated to begin in January, 2016 and conclude within ### days. The construction phases are:

Phase 1 – Procurement Period (not in SWPPP)
Phase 2 – Construct Onion Creek Fire/EMS Station

A detailed list of construction activity (see Appendix A) for the Onion Creek Fire/EMS Station is provided on Sheets G-PH-02, respectively.

Sequence of Construction (see Sheet C-GN-03):

1. Temporary erosion and sedimentation controls are to be installed as indicated on the approved site plan or subdivision construction plan and in accordance with the stormwater pollution prevention plan (SWPPP) that is required to be posted on the site. Install tree protection and initiate tree mitigation measures.
2. The environmental project manager or site supervisor must contact the watershed protection department, environmental inspection, at 512-974-2278, 72 hours prior to the scheduled date of the required on-site pre-construction meeting.
3. The environmental project manager, and/or site supervisor, and/or designated responsible party, and the general contractor will follow the SWPPP posted on the site. temporary erosion and sedimentation controls will be revised, if needed, to comply with city inspectors' directives, and revised construction schedule relative to the water quality plan requirements and the erosion plan.
4. Rough grade the pond(s) at 100% proposed capacity. Either the permanent outlet structure or a temporary outlet must be constructed prior to development of embankment or excavation that leads to ponding conditions. The outlet system must consist of a sump pit outlet and an emergency spillway meeting the requirements of the drainage criteria manual and/or the environmental criteria manual, as required. The outlet system shall be protected from erosion and shall be maintained throughout the course of construction until installation of the permanent water quality pond(s).
5. Temporary erosion and sedimentation controls will be inspected and maintained in accordance with the SWPPP posted on site.
6. Begin site clearing/construction (or demolition) activities.
7. Permanent water quality ponds or controls will be cleaned out and filter media will be installed prior to/concurrently with re-vegetation of site.
8. Complete construction and start re-vegtation of the site and installation of landscaping.
9. Upon completion of the site construction and re-vegetation of a project site, the design engineer shall submit an engineer's letter of concurrence to the Watershed Protection Department indicating that construction, including re-vegetation, is complete and in substantial conformity with the approved plans. After receiving this letter, a final inspection will be scheduled by the appropriate city inspector.

DRAFT

10. Upon completion of landscape installation of a project site, the landscape architect shall submit a letter of concurrence to the watershed protection and development review department indicating that the required landscaping is complete and in substantial conformity with the approved plans. After receiving this letter, a final inspection will be scheduled by the appropriate city inspector.
11. After a final inspection has been conducted by the city inspector and with approval from the city inspector, remove the temporary erosion and sedimentation controls and complete any necessary final re-vegetation resulting from removal of the controls. conduct any maintenance and rehabilitation of the water quality ponds or controls.

3. Acreage, Material Storage, and Soil Type

Part III, Sect. F.1.(d), (e)

Material Storage	*Material(s)*	*Acreage*	*Location*
Offsite	N/A	*N/A*	*N/A*
Onsite	*The bulk of materials will be stored at the Staging & Material Storage Area, except for materials needed for immediate use*	*Limits of construction = 2.57 acres*	*Sheets C2.1, Appendix A.*
Other areas used as part of the project	*N/A*	*N/A*	*N/A*
Total acreage of property: 2.57 *ac*		**Total acreage of disturbed soil: *2.57 ac (entire limits of construction)***	

Part III Sect. F.1.(e)

Soils and Slopes
According to the U.S. Department of Agriculture, Soil Conservation Service, Soil Survey for Travis County, the native soil mapped in the project area consists of two different soil types: Lewisville silty clay, 0 to 1 percent slopes (LcA), and Lewisville silty clay, 1 to 2 percent slopes (LcB).

LcA, Lewisville silty clay, 0 to 1 percent slopes: This nearly level soil occupies broad smooth areas ranging from 20 to 100 acres in size. Slope is dominantly 0.5 percent or less. This soil has a surface layer of dark grayish-brown silty clay about 15 inches thick. The next layer is brown silty clay that extends to a depth of about 30 inches. The underlying material is pale-brown silt loam. This soil is well suited to crops. It is also well suited to improved pasture, hay, or range.

LcB, Lewisville silty clay, 1 to 2 percent slopes: This soil occupies complex slopes below LcA. Most areas are broad, but some are long and narrow. They range from 20 to 80 acres in size. The Lewisville series consists of deep, nearly level to gently sloping, well-drained silty clays. Slopes are smooth and up to 2 percent. These soils developed under a cover of mid and tall grasses. In a representative profile the surface layer, about 13 inches thick, is dark grayish-brown silty clay. The next layer, which extends to a depth of about 29 inches, is brown silty clay. The underlying material, to a depth of 72 inches, is very pale brown silt loam. The soil is

calcareous and moderately alkaline throughout. These soils are moderately permeable, and the available water capacity is high. These soils are easily tilled.

Reference:

Soil Conservation Service, 1974, Soil Survey of Travis County, Texas; U.S. Department of Agriculture, Soil Conservation Service, Washington D.C.

DRAFT

4. Location Map

Part III Sect. F.1.f

A project location map is provided in Appendix B.

DRAFT

5. Detailed Site Maps

Part III Sect. F.1.g(i)-(viii)

Detailed site maps are provided in Appendix A.

DRAFT

6. Site Description – Support Facilities

Part III Sect. F.1.(g)-(h)

Facility	Description	Location
Asphalt Plant	*None*	*N/A*
Concrete Batch Plant	*None*	*N/A*

Part III Sect. F.1.(i)

Name of Receiving Water	Will Receiving Water Be Disturbed?	Location
Onion Creek.	*No, see description below.*	*South of the property 0.35 miles*

The drainage pattern trends from southeast to northwest to the existing storm drain area inlet in the northwest corner of the site. A portion of runoff from F.M. 1626 Road is intercepted by the shoulder ditch that drains to the west from the F.M. 1626/Old San Antonio Road intersection; the remainder of the runoff from the road surface drains to the area inlet. The hydraulic control point within the F.M. 1626 Road ditch is the existing joint-use driveway culvert at the southwest corner of the property.

A portion of runoff from Old San Antonio Road is intercepted within that roadway's shoulder ditch that drains to the north from the F.M. 1626/Old San Antonio Road intersection; the remainder of the runoff from the road surface drains to the area inlet. The hydraulic control point within the Old San Antonio Road ditch is the ditch capacity at the northeast property boundary.

This portion of Onion Creek to which this project discharges is not currently listed as an impaired waterway by the Environmental Protection Agency (EPA).

7. Construction General Permit TXR150000 NOI, Certificate, and/or Site Notice

If the total disturbed acreage is five or more acres, the Contractor shall submit a Notice of Intent (NOI) to TCEQ for coverage under the Construction General Permit. Since the disturbed area for this project is greater than five acres, an NOI will be required. The Contractor will be the designated Primary Operator. The Contractor shall post the TCEQ Site Notice at the construction site and also insert copies into Appendix C.

Appendix C is reserved for copies of the site notice.

Refer to Appendix D for a copy of the TXR150000 Construction General Permit.

DRAFT

BEST MANAGEMENT PRACTICES (BMPs)

8. BMPs – Erosion and Sedimentation Controls

Part III Section F.2.a.(i)-(iii)

BMP Activity	Applicable BMP	Spec/ SWPPP Section	Applicable Plan Sheet
3.1 Minimize Disturbed Area, Protect Natural Features, and Protect Soil.	1. Tree fencing will protect existing trees as shown on ESC sheets, Appendix A.	COA spec 610S-1, 610S-2, 610S-4	C2.1 Appendix A
3.2 Control Storm Water Flowing Onto/Through the Site.	1. Use silt fence with j-hooks to control run-on and runoff. 2. Use rock berms to control runoff in areas of concentrated flow.	COA Spec 642S-1	C2.1 and Details Sheets C2.2 and C2.3 Appendix A
3.3 Stabilize Soils.	1. If disturbed area is not worked on for more than 14 days, disturbed area needs to be stabilized by re-vegetation, mulch, tarp, or matting.	ECM 1.4.4	C2.1 Note #5. Appendix A
	2. Disturbed areas will be sodded and hydro-mulched with Bermuda Grass, Sahara Bermuda Grass, and Wildflower Mix per COA Specification 609S.	SWPPP Section 10	L102 Appendix A
3.4 Protect Slopes.	N/A (because site is relatively flat)	N/A	N/A
3.5 Protect Storm Drain Inlets	1. Install rock berms around inlets	COA Spec 369S-1	C2.1 and Details on C2.2 Appendix A
3.6 Establish Perimeter Controls and Sediment Barriers.	1. Use silt fence or triangular filter dike at perimeter of LOC.	COA spec 642S-1, 628S	See ESC Sheet C2.1 and Details Sheet C2.3 Appendix A
3.7 Retain Sediment On Site and Control Dewatering Practices.	1. Use silt fence with j-hooks for sediment control.	COA Spec 642S-1	See ESC Sheet C2.1 and Details Sheet C2.3 Appendix A
	2. Contractor shall sweep and clean tracking on public roadways immediately upon discovery.	SWPPP Section 14	C2.1 Note #6. Appendix A
	3. Contractor shall implement dust control measures.	ECM 1.4.4(B)	C2.1 Note #2 and General Notes C1.1 Appendix A
	4. Use rock berms in grass-lined channels and swales.	COA Spec 639S-1	C2.1 and Details on C2.2 Appendix A
3.8 Establish Stabilized Construction Entrances (SCE).	1. Install stabilized construction entrance for N. Plaza.	COA Spec 641S-1	C2.1 and Details on C2.2 Appendix A

BMP Activity	Applicable BMP	Spec/ SWPPP Section	Applicable Plan Sheet
3.9 Additional BMPs.	1. Establish Staging and Spoils areas.	SWPPP Section 9	See C2.1 for location. Appendix A
	2. Install concrete truck wash out.	SWPPP Section 18 and Spec C2.2	See C2.1 for location and Details on C2.2. Appendix A

BMP Inspection / Maintenance Schedule:
The Contractor is responsible for installing erosion and sedimentation controls and tree protection prior to start of soil disturbance. Contractor is responsible for maintaining the erosion and sedimentation control measures and BMPs identified in this SWPPP in effective operating condition. The controls and BMPs will be inspected and identified for maintenance according to the inspection form in Appendix E.

BMP Modifications / Replacement Activities:
Modifications to BMPs that are not performing satisfactorily will be completed prior to the next anticipated storm event. If impracticable, the necessary modifications will be performed when feasible. Erosion and sedimentation control devices that have been intentionally disabled, run over, removed, or otherwise rendered ineffective must be replaced or repaired immediately. Amendments and updates to the SWPPP will be listed in Appendix F.

- If inspections or other information indicate that a control is performing inadequately, or is damaged, then the Contractor must replace or modify the control as soon as practicable after making the discovery.
- Sediment trapped behind a silt fence will be removed before or upon reaching 50% of the aboveground height of the fence. Sediment from ponds must be removed before the design capacity has been reduced by 50%.
- If sediment escapes the site, accumulations will be removed at a frequency that minimizes off-site impacts. Accumulations will be removed prior to the next storm event (if feasible).

Are there sedimentation basins or traps ?* **Yes** ☐ **No** ☒
If yes, list the measures taken to reduce the pollutants transported offsite by pumping activities.

Prevention Measure	Location Onsite	Implementation Date
N/A	*N/A*	*N/A*

* *Part III Section F.2.a.(iii)*

*If applicable, sediment must be removed from sediment traps and basins no later than the time that the design capacity has been reduced by 50%.

9. BMPs – Off-site Pollutant Transfer Controls

Part III Section F.2.a and b (i)

Litter Controls:	
Good Housekeeping Activity	**Location(s) Onsite**
Collect litter daily to avoid dispersal of trash, construction debris, and construction materials offsite.	*Staging and Material Storage Area*
Provide covered dumpster and recycling bins for waste.	*Staging and Material Storage Area*
Construction Debris Controls:	
Good Housekeeping Activity	**Location(s) Onsite**
Contractor will properly manage demolition waste and spoils stored onsite.	*Staging and Material Storage Area*
Construction Material Controls:	
Good Housekeeping Activity	**Location(s) Onsite**
Stockpiles (road base, fill, spoils, etc.) will be located at designated staging area.	*Staging and Material Storage Area*
The Contractor must use a filter sock over the end of a discharge hose used to dewater after a rain event. Or, the fluid can be pumped into an inlet covered with filtration fabric.	*Staging and Material Storage Area*
No demolition waste, road base, fill, spoils, concrete, debris, wash out water, oil or chemical products shall be allowed to enter into or be placed where it may be washed by rainfall into drainage channels, vegetated ditches, or water quality ponds.	*Staging and Material Storage Area*
Store small quantity containers inside Conex storage units.	*Staging and Material Storage Area*
Fuel storage that meets Fire Dept., City Environmental, and TCEQ requirements may be allowed on site. Contractor will prepare a detail of the secondary containment and location of these facilities for contractor submittal to the City for approval prior to moving any temporary fuel storage on site.	*Staging and Material Storage Area*

DRAFT

10. BMPs – Erosion Control and Stabilization Practices

Part III Section F.2.b.(i) & (iii)

Stabilization Practices	Location On-Site	Implementation Date	Interim or Permanent
1. If disturbed area is not worked on for more than 14 days, then disturbed area needs to be stabilized by revegetation, mulch, or tarp.	*ESC Sheet C2.1 Note #5. Appendix A*	*14 days after no work activity*	*Interim*
2. COA Specification 609S will be used for disturbed areas within the LOC.	*See Landscape Plan Sheet (Appendix A).*	*After end of construction*	*Permanent*

DRAFT

11. BMPs – Major Grading/Schedule of Construction Activities

Part III Section F.2.b.(ii) (A) (C)

If you do not list activities in tables below, either attach documentation or state where records for the activities can be found:

Documentation attached? Yes ☒ No ☐

The Contractor will maintain a current log of the dates and location of major construction activities using the form provided in Appendix G.

Dates when major grading activities will occur and locations onsite:		
Activity	***Location***	***Dates when activity is scheduled***
See Appendix G		

Dates when construction activity will temporarily or permanently cease:			
Location onsite	***Date activity is to be stopped***	***Temporary or permanent?***	***Stabilization initiation date***
See Appendix G			

DRAFT

12. BMPs – Sediment Control Practices

Part III Section F.2. (c)

Will the project disturb 10 acres or more at one time? Yes ☐ No ☒

DRAFT

13. BMPs – Permanent Storm Water Controls

Part III Section F.3.

Re-vegetation of disturbed areas and additional landscaping will be permanent storm water controls and are shown on the Landscape Plan Sheets (L100-L102, Appendix A). No new detention or other permanent storm water structures are required as a result of this project. The runoff from the parking lots and building will be treated in the existing Storm Water Quality and Detention Pond located north of the project site.

DRAFT

14. BMPs – Other Storm Water Controls

Part III Section F.4 (a)

Controls to minimize dust generation and off-site tracking of sediment:

Control Practice used	Location(s) On-Site
Contractor shall use dust control measures during site construction such as irrigation trucks and mulching per City of Austin ECM 1.4.4(B), or as directed by the Environmental Inspector. See ESC Sheet, C2.1 Note #2 and General Notes C1.1 Appendix A	*Throughout construction site*
Sediment spilled, dropped, washed, or tracked onto public roadways must be removed immediately by the Contractor. See ESC Sheet, C2.1 Note #6, Appendix A.	*Stabilized construction entrance*
Vehicle tire washing – Contractor shall install a suitable tire wash area if the stabilized construction entrance and sweeping do not adequately control sediment tracking.	*Stabilized construction exit*

Part III Section F.4.(b)

The following construction and waste materials will be stored onsite:

Materials Stored On-Site	Average Amount Stored	Location On-Site	Controls Used to Prevent Pollutants
Demolition debris, road base, gravel, spoils, etc.	*See Grading Plan, sheet C4.0, Appendix A*	*Staging and Spoils Area*	*Keep in designated storage areas with silt fence.*
Lubricants, non-fuel petroleum products, and chemicals	*Use containers less than 55-gallons.*	*Staging and Spoils Area*	*Store inside Conex unit.*
Fuel	*Use only small 5-gallon cans*	*Staging and Spoils Area*	*Store inside cabinet for flammables*

Part III Section F.4.(c)-(d)

Pollutant Sources:

Type of pollutant source	Pollutant(s)	Control(s) or measure(s) used to minimize pollutants
Incidental leaks and spills	*Fuel, petroleum products, paint, chemicals*	*Contractor shall immediately contain and clean up spills and leaks, and maintain an abundant and accessible supply of sorbent materials.*

DRAFT

15. BMPs – Inspection of Controls – Forms / Report / Certification

Part III Section F.7.(a)-(d)

Inspection of Controls Forms / Report
In accordance with the TCEQ General Permit and COA, inspections will be conducted once every seven (7) days and after rainfall events measuring more than 0.5 inches of precipitation. Inspectors will complete the form in Appendix E. The form identifies the areas of concern, and project-specific erosion and sediment controls and BMPs. Inspection reports will be maintained as part of the SWPPP.

Part III Section F.7.e.

Inspection Narrative Description/Certification
The weekly SWPPP inspections will be carried out every:

_____
Contractor to insert the day of week that inspections will be conducted.

In the event of flooding or other prohibitive circumstances, the inspections will be conducted as soon as access is practicable. Any changes to the inspection schedule will be in accordance with the following provisions:

a) The inspection schedule can be changed a maximum of one time per month;
b) The schedule change must be implemented at the beginning of a calendar month; and
c) The reason for the schedule change must be recorded in the SWPPP.

Per the General Permit, inspections *can only decrease to once per month if one of the following exceptions is met*:

a) The site has been temporarily stabilized; or
b) Runoff is unlikely due to snow or ice cover or frozen ground; or
c) In drought-stricken areas, inspections must be conducted at least once every month **AND** within 24 hours after rainfall events measuring more than 0.5 inches of precipitation. A drought-stricken area is defined as an area in which the National Oceanic Atmospheric Administration's U.S. Seasonal Drought Outlook indicates for the period during which construction will occur that any of the following conditions are likely: (1) "Drought to persist or intensify", (2) "Drought ongoing, some improvement", (3) "Drought likely to improve", or (4) "Drought development likely".
See http://www.cpc.ncep.noaa.gov/products/expert_assessment/sdo_summary.html
d) In arid or semi-arid areas, inspections must be conducted at least once every month **AND** within 24 hours after rainfall events measuring more than 0.5 inches of precipitation. Note: Austin is *not* classified as arid (0-10 inches annual rainfall) or semi-arid (10-20 inches annual rainfall).

Describe the inspector's qualifications to conduct the inspections:
Per the City of Austin, Environmental Criteria Manual Appendix P-1 item 6, the inspector must be a Certified Erosion Sediment Storm Water Inspector (CESSWI), Certified Professional in Erosion and Sedimentation Control (CPESC), or Certified Inspector of Sedimentation and Erosion Controls (CISEC). The names and qualifications of personnel performing the inspections are listed below:

_____

_____

_____

Contractor to insert the names and qualifications of the personnel performing the inspections.

Describe your inspection methods:
The inspector will review the BMPs and controls listed on the inspection form provided in Appendix E. The inspector will identify and describe BMPs and controls that are not operating or require maintenance or modification. The Contractor will maintain, repair or modify the identified BMPs and controls.

Describe all incidents of non-compliance (i.e. major discharges, BMP failures):
The inspection form in Appendix E is used to note incidents of non-compliance.

Corrective Actions
Actions taken to correct deficiencies noted in the weekly inspection reports shall be documented and kept in the SWPPP, Appendix E.

The certification statement is on the inspection form in Appendix E.

DRAFT

16. BMPs – Eligible Non-Storm Water Discharges

Part III, Sect. F.8

Eligible Non-storm Water Discharge	Used? Yes	No	Pollution Prevention Measure(s)	Implementation Date
Fire Fighting Activities	☐	☒		
Fire Hydrant Flushing	☐	☒		
Washing of Vehicles, Buildings, or Pavement without detergents or soap. (See description in Part II.3.[c].)	☐	☒		
Dust Control	☒	☐	Use only potable water.	Start of construction
Potable Water Sources (water line flushing)	☒	☐		
Air Conditioning Condensate	☐	☒		
Uncontaminated Ground/Spring Water	☐	☒		
Other? (List)	☐	☒		

List any other non-storm water discharge permitted by NPDES, TPDES, or TCEQ Permit:

Non-storm Water Discharge	Pollution Prevention Measure	Implementation Date
Irrigation for Vegetation	Use only potable water.	When installing landscape

DRAFT

17. BMPs – Storm Water Runoff from Concrete Batch Plants

N/A, Contractor will not use a concrete batch plant for this project.

DRAFT

18. BMPs – Concrete Truck Wash-Out Requirements

The concrete truck wash-out will be located near the stabilized construction entrance shown on Sheet C2.1. The washout should have a minimum length and width of 10 feet and sized large enough to contain the amount of concrete washing for the project. The concrete wash-out should be constructed, maintained, and operated in accordance with USEPA guidance: http://water.epa.gov/polwaste/npdes/swbmp/upload/concretewashout.pdf

- Direct discharge of concrete truck wash-out to a creek, surface water, or a storm sewer is prohibited.
- If a wash-out area is used, it will be designed with minimal slope in order to contain the wash-out water, allow infiltration and filtering, and prevent overflow and discharge to a creek, surface water, or storm sewer. Refer to the detail below for the concrete wash out.
- Wash-out of concrete trucks during rainfall events shall be minimized. The direct discharge of concrete truck wash-out water is prohibited. The operator shall ensure that its BMPs are sufficient to prevent the discharge of concrete truck wash-out as the result of rainfall.
- The discharge of wash-out water shall not cause or contribute to groundwater contamination.

DRAFT

APPENDIX A
EROSION & SEDIMENTATION CONTROL PLAN

- *100% Plan Set, Onion Creek Fire and EMS Station Facility (dated September 6, 2016)*
    - Layout, General Notes
    - Erosion & Sedimentation Control Plan Sheets
    - Landscape Plans

ONION CREEK FIRE & EMS STATION FACILITY

11112 OLD SAN ANTONIO ROAD
SITE DEVELOPMENT IMPROVEMENTS

PROJECT TITLE: ONION CREEK FIRE & EMS STATION FACILITY

PROJECT LEGAL DESCRIPTION: LOT 3 BLOCK A COLONIAL GRAND AT CITYWAY SUBDIVISION

PROJECT STREET ADDRESS: 11112 OLD SAN ANTONIO ROAD
AUSTIN, TEXAS 78748

PROPERTY OWNER: CITY OF AUSTIN
ADDRESS: P.O. BOX 1088, AUSTIN TX. 78748

PHONE NO.: (512) 974-7157
FAX NO.: (512) 974-7222

CIVIL ENGINEER: CHAN & PARTNERS ENGINEERING, LLC.
ADDRESS: 4319 JAMES CASEY STREET #300 AUSTIN TX. 78745
PHONE NO.: (512) 480-8155
FAX NO.: (512) 480-8811

ARCHITECT: BROWN REYNOLDS WATFORD ARCHITECTS, INC.
ADDRESS: 2700 EARL RUDDER FREEWAY SOUTH, SUITE 4000
COLLEGE STATION, TX. 77845
PHONE NO.: (979) 694-1791
FAX NO.: (979) 694-8293

LANDSCAPE ARCHITECT: COLEMAN & ASSOCIATES LANDSCAPE ARCHITECTURE
ADDRESS: 9890 SILVER MOUNTAIN DR., AUSTIN TX. 78737
PHONE NO.: (512) 476-2090
FAX NO.: (512) 476-2099

MEP ENGINEER: JOSE I GUERRA, INC.
ADDRESS: 2401 SOUTH IH-35, SUITE 210 AUSTIN TX. 78741
PHONE NO.: (512) 445-2090
FAX NO.: (512) 445-2099

STRUCTURAL ENGINEER: STEINMAN LUEVANO STRUCTURES, LLP.
ADDRESS: 5901 OLD FREDERICKSBURG RD., #B101 AUSTIN TX. 78749
PHONE NO.: (512) 891-6766
FAX NO.: (512) 891-6966

CITY GRID NUMBER : L-11

FLOODPLAIN NOTE:

NO PORTION OF THIS PROJECT IS WITHIN THE 100-YEAR FLOOD PLAIN BOUNDARY AS SHOWN ON THE FLOOD INSURANCE RATE MAP COMMUNITY - PANEL NUMBER 48453C0595J, EFFECTIVE DATE SEPTEMBER 26, 2008.

AQUIFER NOTE:

THIS PROJECT IS NOT LOCATED IN THE EDWARD'S AQUIFER RECHARGE ZONE.

WATERSHED NOTE:

THIS SITE IS LOCATED IN THE ONION CREEK WATERSHED, CLASSIFIED AS SUBURBAN WATERSHED. THERE ARE NO KNOWN CRITICAL ENVIRONMENTAL FEATURES EVIDENT ON THE SITE OR WITHIN 150' OF THE SITE. THE SITE PLAN COMPLIES WITH THE CITY OF AUSTIN'S LAND DEVELOPMENT CODE CHAPTER 25-8.

COMMERCIAL DESIGN STANDARDS NOTE:
THIS SITE PLAN IS SUBJECT TO SUBCHAPTER E OF THE LAND DEVELOPMENT CODE. PRINCIPAL ROADWAY IS OLD SAN ANTONIO ROAD, WHICH IS CLASSIFIED AS A SUBURBAN ROADWAY. FOR SUBCHAPTER E PURPOSES, THIS PROJECT INCORPORATES 7-FT WIDE CLEAR ZONE SIDEWALK, 8-FT WIDE PLANTING ZONE AND SHADING ALONG THE SIDEWALK AS ALTERNATIVE COMPLIANCE TO SUBCHAPTER E REQUIREMENTS FOR BUILDING PLACEMENT AND SIDEWALK CONFIGURATION.

ZONING CASE NUMBERS:
C14-2013-0123

LEED NOTE:
ALL BUILDINGS WILL REQUIRE SILVER LEED CERTIFICATION.

CUT / FILL NOTE:
NO ADMINISTRATIVE VARIANCE REQUIRED.

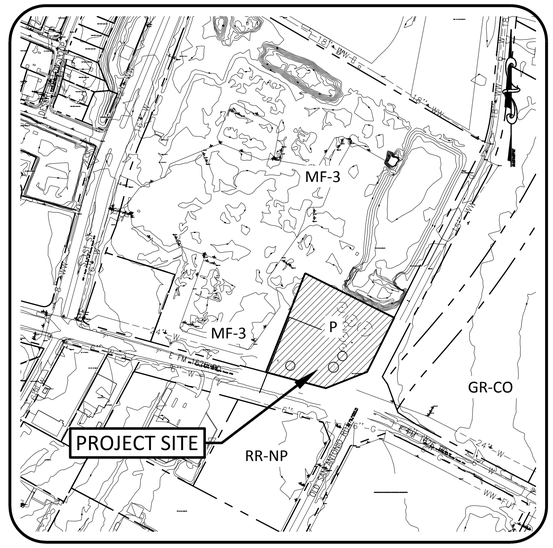
FIRE PROTECTION NOTE:
CONSTRUCTION OF BUILDING WILL BE TYPE V-B. ALL BUILDINGS ARE TO BE SPRINKLERED TO NFPA STANDARDS.

WATER PRESSURE ZONE NOTE:
THIS PROJECT IS LOCATED IN THE SOUTH PRESSURE ZONE AREA.

WATER PRESSURE ZONE: SOUTH
TOTAL FIRE FLOW DEMAND: 1,500 GPM
FIRE SPRINKLER FLOW DEMAND: 600 GPM
MIN. FIRE HYDRANT FLOW DEMAND: 900 GPM
BUILDING SIZE: 9,626 SF
BUILDING TYPE: V-B
STATIC PRESSURE: 90 PSI
PRV REQUIRED ON OWNER SIDE FOR LOTS WITH PRESSURE HIGHER THAN 65 PSI. SET PRV TO 65 PSI.

STORM WATER DETENTION AND TREATMENT:
STORM WATER DETENTION AND WATER QUALITY TREATMENT FOR THIS SITE (LOT 3 OF PLAT) IS PROVIDED BY THE COLONIAL GRAND AT CITY WAY DETENTION AND WATER QUALITY POND (SP-2010-0246C) ASSUMING A MAXIMUM IMPERVIOUS COVER OF 80% FOR THE SITE.

INNOVATION WATER QUALITY MANAGEMENT:
STORM WATER FROM THE ROOF WILL DRAIN VIA GUTTERS TO A RAINWATER COLLECTION TANK. OVERFLOW STORM WATER WILL DRAIN TO THE EXISTING WATER QUALITY TREATMENT POND. RAIN WATER COLLECTION TANK WATER WILL BE USED TO IRRIGATE 6,928 SQ. FT. OF LANDSCAPE.



LOCATION MAP
NOT-TO-SCALE

MAPSCO - PAGE # 703
GRID NUMBER - L11

REVISIONS / CORRECTIONS

NO.	DESCRIPTION	REVISE (R) ADD (A) VOID (V) SHEET NO.'S	TOTAL # SHTS. IN PLAN SET	NET CHANGE IMP. COVER (SQ. FT.)	TOTAL SITE IMP. COVER (SQ./FT.)/ [%]	CITY OF AUSTIN APPROVAL / DATE	DATE IMAGED

COMPLIANCE WITH THE COMMERCIAL AND MULTI-FAMILY RECYCLING ORDINANCE IS MANDATORY FOR MULTI-FAMILY COMPLEXES, BUSINESSES, AND OFFICE BUILDINGS.

APPROVAL OF THESE PLANS BY THE CITY OF AUSTIN INDICATES COMPLIANCE WITH APPLICABLE CITY REGULATIONS ONLY. APPROVAL BY OTHER GOVERNMENTAL ENTITIES MAY BE REQUIRED PRIOR TO THE START OF CONSTRUCTION. THE APPLICANT IS RESPONSIBLE FOR DETERMINING WHAT ADDITIONAL APPROVAL MAY BE NECESSARY.

THE DISTURBED AREAS WITHIN THIS PROJECT SHALL BE REVEGETATED AND ALL PERMANENT EROSION/SEDIMENTATION CONTROLS COMPLETED PRIOR TO THE RELEASE OF FISCAL SECURITY FOR THE PROJECT.

Sheet List Table

SHEET NO.	SHEET DESC.	SHEET TITLE
1	C1.0	COVER SHEET
2	C1.1	GENERAL NOTES
3	C1.2	SUBDIVISION PLAT
4	C1.3	EXISTING CONDITIONS & DEMOLITION PLAN
5	C2.0	SITE PLAN
6	C2.1	ES & TREE PROTECTION PLAN
7	C2.2	ES DETAILS
8	C2.3	ES DETAILS 2
9	C3.0	DRAINAGE PLAN
10	C4.0	GRADING PLAN
11	C5.0	PAVEMENT PLAN
12	C6.0	WATER & WASTEWATER PLAN
13	C6.1	WATER & WASTEWATER PROFILES
14	C6.2	WATER & WASTEWATER DETAILS SHEET 1 OF 2
15	C6.3	WATER & WASTEWATER DETAILS SHEET 2 OF 2
16	C7.0	STANDARD DETAIL SHEET 1 OF 4
17	C7.1	STANDARD DETAIL SHEET 2 OF 4
18	C7.2	STANDARD DETAIL SHEET 3 OF 4
19	C7.3	STANDARD DETAIL SHEET 4 OF 4
20	C8.0	TRAFFIC CONTROL SEGMENT 1
21	C8.1	TRAFFIC CONTROL SEGMENT 2
22	C8.2	TRAFFIC CONTROL DETAILS SHEET 1
23	C8.3	TRAFFIC CONTROL DETAILS SHEET 2
24	C8.4	TRAFFIC CONTROL DETAILS SHEET 3
25	C8.5	TRAFFIC CONTROL DETAILS SHEET 4
26	L100	LANDSCAPE PLAN
27	L101	LANDSCAPE DETAILS
28	L102	PLANTING SCHEDULE & NOTES
29	A1.1	FLOOR PLAN
30	A2.1	EXTERIOR ELEVATIONS SHEET 1
31	A2.2	EXTERIOR ELEVATIONS SHEET 2
32	A2.3	BUILDING SECTIONS SHEET 1
33	A2.4	BUILDING SECTIONS SHEET 2

DATE OF SUBMITTAL: 6-22-2016

SUBMITTED BY:
CHAN & PARTNERS ENGINEERING, LLC. DATE

REVIEWED BY:
PLANNING AND DEVELOPMENT REVIEW DEPARTMENT DATE

SPC-2016-0287C
SITE PLAN / DEVELOPMENT PERMIT NUMBER DATE

APPROVED BY:
INDUSTRIAL WASTE DATE

APPROVED BY:
AUSTIN WATER UTILITY DATE

APPROVED BY:
CITY OF AUSTIN, FIRE DEPT. DATE

RELEASE OF THIS APPLICATION DOES NOT CONSTITUTE A VERIFICATION OF ALL DATA, INFORMATION AND CALCULATIONS SUPPLIED BY THE APPLICANT. THE ENGINEER OF RECORD IS SOLELY RESPONSIBLE FOR THE COMPLETENESS, ACCURACY AND ADEQUACY OF HIS/HER SUBMITTAL, WHETHER OR NOT THE APPLICATION IS REVIEWED FOR CODE COMPLIANCE BY CITY ENGINEERS.

THE PLAN IS COMPLETE, ACCURATE AND IN COMPLIANCE WITH SUBCHAPTER A OF THE LAND DEVELOPMENT CODE.

SITE PLAN RELEASE

SITE PLAN APPROVAL SHEET 1 OF 33
FILE NUMBER: SPC-2016-0287C APPLICATION DATE: 6-22-2016
APPROVED BY COMMISSION ON_____ UNDER SECTION 142 OF
CHAPTER 25-5 OF THE CITY OF AUSTIN CODE.
EXPIRATION DATE (25-5-81, LDC) _____ CASE MANAGER LYNDA COURTNEY
PROJECT EXPIRATION DATE (ORD.#970905) _____ DWPZ _____ DDZ _____

Development Services Department
RELEASED FOR GENERAL COMPLIANCE: _____ ZONING P
Rev. 1 _____ Correction 1 _____
Rev. 2 _____ Correction 2 _____
Rev. 3 _____ Correction 3 _____
Final plat must be recorded by the Project Expiration Date, if applicable. Subsequent Site Plans which do not comply with the Code current at the time of filing, and all required Building Permits and/or a notice of construction (if a building permit is not required), must also be approved prior to the Project Expiration Date.

SPC-2016-0287C

STATE OF TEXAS
JOHN R. KING
59429
LICENSED PROFESSIONAL ENGINEER
9/6/2016

CPE CHAN & PARTNERS CONSULTING CIVIL ENGINEERS
CHAN & PARTNERS ENGINEERING, LLC
4319 JAMES CASEY STREET, #300
AUSTIN, TEXAS 78745
512-480-8155 (PH) ♦ 512-480-8811 (FAX)
E-mail: info@chanpartners.com
WWW.CHANPARTNERS.COM
TEXAS REGISTRATION NO. F-13013

AUSTIN ONION CREEK FIRE & EMS STATION
11112 OLD SAN ANTONIO ROAD
AUSTIN, TEXAS 78748

CITY OF AUSTIN FOUNDED 1839

REVISIONS

DATE 9/6/2016
DRAWN BY CD
CHECKED BY JRK
PROJECT NO. 214106.00

COVER SHEET

C1.0
SHEET 1 OF 33

COPYRIGHT © 2015 BROWN REYNOLDS WATFORD ARCHITECTS, INC.

CITY OF AUSTIN GENERAL CONSTRUCTION NOTES:

1. ALL CONSTRUCTION SHALL BE IN ACCORDANCE WITH THE LATEST REVISIONS TO THE CITY OF AUSTIN STANDARD SPECIFICATIONS.

2. DESIGN PROCEDURES ARE IN GENERAL COMPLIANCE WITH THE CITY OF AUSTIN DRAINAGE CRITERIA MANUAL AND ALL VARIANCES TO THE MANUAL ARE NOTED.

3. PROJECT BENCHMARK: (SEE SHEET C100 FOR LOCATION AND DESCRIPTION)

4. PRIOR TO BEGINNING CONSTRUCTION, THE OWNER OR HIS AUTHORIZED REPRESENTATIVE SHALL CONVENE A PRE-CONSTRUCTION CONFERENCE BETWEEN THE CITY OF AUSTIN, CONSULTING ENGINEER, CONTRACTOR, COUNTY ENGINEER (IF APPROPRIATE), TCEQ (IF APPROPRIATE), TXDOT (IF APPROPRIATE) AND OTHER AFFECTED PARTIES. NOTIFY DPWT, CONSTRUCTION INSPECTION DIVISION, 974-7180, AND AUSTIN WATER UTILITY, 972-0108, AT LEAST 48 HOURS PRIOR TO THE TIME OF THE CONFERENCE AND 48 HOURS PRIOR TO THE BEGINNING OF CONSTRUCTION.

5. THE CONTRACTOR SHALL GIVE THE CITY A MINIMUM OF 48 HOURS NOTICE BEFORE BEGINNING EACH PHASE OF CONSTRUCTION, CALL CONSTRUCTION INSPECTION DIVISION, 974-7180.

6. THE CONTRACTOR SHALL OBTAIN ALL NECESSARY PERMITS THAT ARE REQUIRED TO COMPLY WITH SECTION 14-11-161 THROUGH 14-11-196 OF THE CITY CODE REGARDING EXCAVATION IN PUBLIC RIGHT-OF-WAY.

7. PURSUANT TO 14-11-131 OF THE CITY CODE, THE CONTRACTOR MAY NOT BLOCK, DIRECT, IMPEDE, OR REROUTE PEDESTRIAN AND VEHICULAR TRAFFIC, NOR PLACE A BARRICADE OR OTHER TRAFFIC CONTROL DEVICE IN A RIGHT-OF-WAY, WITHOUT FIRST OBTAINING A TEMPORARY USE OF RIGHT-OF-WAY PERMIT FROM THE DEPARTMENT OF PUBLIC WORKS AND TRANSPORTATION.

8. IF BLASTING IS PLANNED BY THE CONTRACTOR, A BLASTING PERMIT MUST BE SECURED PRIOR TO COMMENCEMENT OF ANY BLASTING.

9. ANY EXISTING PAVEMENT, CURBS, AND/OR SIDEWALKS DAMAGED OR REMOVED WILL BE REPAIRED BY THE CONTRACTOR AT HIS EXPENSE BEFORE ACCEPTANCE OF THE PROJECT.

10. THE LOCATION OF ANY WATER AND/OR WASTEWATER LINES SHOWN ON THE PLANS MUST BE VERIFIED BY THE WATER AND WASTEWATER DEPARTMENT.

11. CONTRACTOR SHALL CALL DIG TESS (1-800-344-8377) FOR UTILITY LOCATIONS PRIOR TO ANY WORK IN CITY EASEMENTS OR STREET R.O.W., 48 HOURS BEFORE YOU DIG.

12. THE CONTRACTOR SHALL MAINTAIN AN AS-BUILT SET OF CONSTRUCTION DRAWINGS AND PROVIDE A COPY TO THE ENGINEER PRIOR TO REQUESTING A FINAL PUNCH LIST OR ENGINEERING CONCURRENCE LETTER.

CONTRACTOR NOTES:

1. THE INFORMATION SHOWN ON THESE DRAWINGS INDICATING TYPE AND LOCATION OF UNDERGROUND, SURFACE, AND AERIAL UTILITIES IS NOT GUARANTEED TO BE EXACT OR COMPLETE. THE CONTRACTOR IS RESPONSIBLE FOR DETERMINING THE EXACT TYPE AND LOCATION OF ALL UTILITIES AFFECTED BY CONSTRUCTION FOR THIS PROJECT IN ORDER TO AVOID DAMAGE TO THOSE UTILITIES. IF DAMAGE OCCURS, THE CONTRACTOR SHALL A) IMMEDIATELY ARRANGE FOR REPAIR AND RESTORATION OF CONTRACTOR-DAMAGED UTILITIES, AND B) PAY FOR SAME.

2. SLOPES OF ROADWAY CUTS AND EMBANKMENTS DAMAGED BY ANY OPERATION OF THE CONTRACTOR DURING THE EXECUTION OF THIS PROJECT SHALL BE REPAIRED AND RESTORED TO THE ORIGINAL PRE-CONSTRUCTION CONDITION IN ACCORDANCE WITH ALL APPLICABLE PROVISIONS OF THE STANDARD SPECIFICATIONS. BACK FILL AND FILL PLACED DURING REMEDIAL GRADING SHALL BE COMPACTED TO A DENSITY EQUAL TO OR GREATER THAN THAT OF THE ORIGINAL CONDITIONS AND TO THE SATISFACTION OF THE ENGINEER AND GOVERNING AUTHORITIES.

3. WHERE REMOVAL OF BASE AND PAVEMENT IS NECESSARY FOR THIS PROJECT ALL BASE AND PAVEMENT SHALL BE REPLACED IN ACCORDANCE WITH THE CONSTRUCTION DOCUMENTS, CITY'S STANDARD SPECIFICATIONS AND STANDARD SPECIFICATIONS FOR CUTS IN PUBLIC RIGHT OF WAY. ALL PAVEMENT CUTS SHALL BE SAWCUT PRIOR TO PLACEMENT OF H.M.A.C.

4. THE CONTRACTOR SHALL IMMEDIATELY NOTIFY THE ENGINEER OF ANY UNREPORTED OBSTACLES THAT MAY IMPEDE OR PREVENT THE PROPER CONSTRUCTION OF THIS PROJECT.

5. BEFORE DISCONNECTING ANY WATER LINE OR GAS LINE, CONTRACTOR MUST PROVIDE TWENTY-FOUR (24) HOUR NOTICE TO THE OWNER EXCEPT IN THE CASE OF A BONA FIDE EMERGENCY.

6. THE CONTRACTOR SHALL NOT DISPOSE OF SURPLUS EXCAVATED MATERIAL FROM THE SITE WITHOUT NOTIFYING THE PLANNING AND DEVELOPMENT REVIEW DEPARTMENT AT 974-2278 AT LEAST 48 HOURS PRIOR WITH THE LOCATION AND A COPY OF THE PERMIT ISSUED TO RECEIVE THE MATERIAL.

EXCAVATION AND BACKFILL:

1. CONTRACTOR/REPAIR CREW MUST NOTIFY CITY INSPECTOR AT LEAST FOUR (4) HOURS PRIOR TO BEGINNING PERMANENT BACK FILL OPERATIONS.

2. ALL EXCAVATION FOR THIS PROJECT SHALL BE UNCLASSIFIED

3. BACK FILL DENSITY SHALL BE AS SPECIFIED IN ITEM 510 OF THE STANDARD SPECIFICATIONS. TEST METHODS SHALL BE AS SPECIFIED IN THE STANDARD SPECIFICATIONS UNLESS INDICATED OTHERWISE IN WRITING BY THE ENGINEER.

4. THE CONTRACTOR SHALL OBTAIN ALL NECESSARY PERMITS THAT ARE REQUIRED TO COMPLY WITH SECTIONS 15-12-161 AND 15-12-181 OF THE CITY CODE REGARDING EXCAVATION IN PUBLIC RIGHT OF WAY.

ELECTRIC NOTES:

1. AUSTIN ENERGY HAS THE RIGHT TO PRUNE AND/OR REMOVE TREES, SHRUBBERY AND OTHER OBSTRUCTIONS TO THE EXTENT NECESSARY TO KEEP THE EASEMENTS CLEAR. AUSTIN ENERGY WILL PERFORM ALL TREE WORK IN COMPLIANCE WITH CHAPTER 25-8, SUBCHAPTER B OF THE CITY OF AUSTIN LAND DEVELOPMENT CODE.

2. THE OWNER/DEVELOPER OF THIS SUBDIVISION/LOT SHALL PROVIDE AUSTIN ENERGY WITH ANY EASEMENT AND/OR ACCESS REQUIRED, IN ADDITION TO THOSE INDICATED, FOR THE INSTALLATION AND ONGOING MAINTENANCE OF OVERHEAD AND UNDERGROUND ELECTRIC FACILITIES. THESE EASEMENT AND/OR ACCESS ARE REQUIRED TO PROVIDE ELECTRIC SERVICE TO THE BUILDING AND WILL NOT BE LOCATED SO AS TO CAUSE THE SITE TO BE OUT OF COMPLIANCE WITH CHAPTER 25-8 OF THE CITY OF AUSTIN LAND DEVELOPMENT CODE.

3. THE OWNER SHALL BE RESPONSIBLE FOR INSTALLATION OF TEMPORARY EROSION CONTROL, REVEGETATION AND TREE PROTECTION. IN ADDITION, THE OWNER SHALL BE RESPONSIBLE FOR ANY INITIAL TREE PRUNING AND TREE REMOVAL THAT IS WITHIN TEN FEET OF THE CENTER LINE OF THE PROPOSED OVERHEAD ELECTRICAL FACILITIES DESIGNED TO PROVIDE ELECTRIC SERVICE TO THIS PROJECT. THE OWNER SHALL INCLUDE AUSTIN ENERGY'S WORK WITHIN THE LIMITS OF CONSTRUCTION FOR THIS PROJECT.

4. THE OWNER OF THE PROPERTY IS RESPONSIBLE FOR MAINTAINING CLEARANCES REQUIRED BY THE NATIONAL ELECTRIC SAFETY CODE, OCCUPATIONAL SAFETY AND HEALTH ADMINISTRATION (OSHA) REGULATIONS, CITY OF AUSTIN RULES AND REGULATIONS AND TEXAS STATE LAWS PERTAINING TO CLEARANCES WHEN WORKING IN CLOSE PROXIMITY TO OVERHEAD POWER LINES AND EQUIPMENT. AUSTIN ENERGY WILL NOT RENDER ELECTRIC SERVICE UNLESS REQUIRED CLEARANCES ARE MAINTAINED.

TRENCH SAFETY NOTES:

1. IN ACCORDANCE WITH THE LAWS OF THE STATE OF TEXAS AND THE U.S. OCCUPATIONAL SAFETY AND HEALTH ADMINISTRATION REGULATIONS, ALL TRENCHES OVER 5 FEET IN DEPTH IN EITHER HARD AND COMPACT OR SOFT AND UNSTABLE SOIL SHALL BE SLOPED, SHORED, SHEETED, BRACED OR OTHERWISE SUPPORTED. FURTHERMORE, ALL TRENCHES LESS THAN 5 FEET IN DEPTH SHALL ALSO BE EFFECTIVELY PROTECTED WHEN HAZARDOUS GROUND MOVEMENT MAY BE EXPECTED.

2. IN ACCORDANCE WITH THE U.S. OCCUPATIONAL SAFETY AND HEALTH ADMINISTRATION REGULATIONS, WHEN EMPLOYEES ARE REQUIRED TO BE IN TRENCHES 4 FOOT DEEP OR MORE, ADEQUATE MEANS OF EXIT, SUCH AS A LADDER OR STEPS, MUST BE PROVIDED AND LOCATED SO AS TO REQUIRE NO MORE THAN 25 FEET OF LATERAL TRAVEL.

3. IF FOUND DURING CONSTRUCTION THAT TRENCHES ARE IN FACT GREATER THAN 5 FEET IN DEPTH, THE CONTRACTOR SHALL PROVIDE ACCEPTABLE TRENCH SAFETY PLANS DESIGNED BY A PROFESSIONAL ENGINEER IN ACCORDANCE WITH U.S. OSHA REGULATIONS.

APPENDIX P-4: - STANDARD SEQUENCE OF CONSTRUCTION

1. TEMPORARY EROSION AND SEDIMENTATION CONTROLS ARE TO BE INSTALLED AS INDICATED ON THE APPROVED SITE PLAN OR SUBDIVISION CONSTRUCTION PLAN AND IN ACCORDANCE WITH THE STORMWATER POLLUTION PREVENTION PLAN (SWPPP) THAT IS REQUIRED TO BE POSTED ON THE SITE. INSTALL TREE PROTECTION AND INITIATE TREE MITIGATION MEASURES.
2. THE ENVIRONMENTAL PROJECT MANAGER OR SITE SUPERVISOR MUST CONTACT THE WATERSHED PROTECTION DEPARTMENT, ENVIRONMENTAL INSPECTION, AT 512-974-2278, 72 HOURS PRIOR TO THE SCHEDULED DATE OF THE REQUIRED ON-SITE PRECONSTRUCTION MEETING.
3. THE ENVIRONMENTAL PROJECT MANAGER, AND/OR SITE SUPERVISOR, AND/OR DESIGNATED RESPONSIBLE PARTY AND THE GENERAL CONTRACTOR WILL FOLLOW THE STORM WATER POLLUTION PREVENTION PLAN (SWPPP) POSTED ON THE SITE. TEMPORARY EROSION AND SEDIMENTATION CONTROLS WILL BE REVISED, IF NEEDED, TO COMPLY WITH CITY INSPECTORS' DIRECTIVES, AND REVISED CONSTRUCTION SCHEDULE RELATIVE TO THE WATER QUALITY PLAN REQUIREMENTS AND THE EROSION PLAN.
4. ROUGH GRADE THE POND(S) AT 100% PROPOSED CAPACITY. EITHER THE PERMANENT OUTLET STRUCTURE OR A TEMPORARY OUTLET MUST BE CONSTRUCTED PRIOR TO DEVELOPMENT OF EMBANKMENT OR EXCAVATION THAT LEADS TO PONDING CONDITIONS. THE OUTLET SYSTEM MUST CONSIST OF A SUMP PIT OUTLET AND AN EMERGENCY SPILLWAY MEETING THE REQUIREMENTS OF THE DRAINAGE CRITERIA MANUAL AND/OR THE ENVIRONMENTAL CRITERIA MANUAL, AS REQUIRED. THE OUTLET SYSTEM SHALL BE PROTECTED FROM EROSION AND SHALL BE MAINTAINED THROUGHOUT THE COURSE OF CONSTRUCTION UNTIL INSTALLATION OF THE PERMANENT WATER QUALITY POND(S).
5. TEMPORARY EROSION AND SEDIMENTATION CONTROLS WILL BE INSPECTED AND MAINTAINED IN ACCORDANCE WITH THE STORM WATER POLLUTION PREVENTION PLAN (SWPPP) POSTED ON THE SITE.
6. BEGIN SITE CLEARING/CONSTRUCTION (OR DEMOLITION) ACTIVITIES.
7. IN THE BARTON SPRINGS ZONE, THE ENVIRONMENTAL PROJECT MANAGER OR SITE SUPERVISOR WILL SCHEDULE A MID-CONSTRUCTION CONFERENCE TO COORDINATE CHANGES IN THE CONSTRUCTION SCHEDULE AND EVALUATE EFFECTIVENESS OF THE EROSION CONTROL PLAN AFTER POSSIBLE CONSTRUCTION ALTERATIONS TO THE SITE. PARTICIPANTS SHALL INCLUDE THE CITY INSPECTOR, PROJECT ENGINEER, GENERAL CONTRACTOR AND ENVIRONMENTAL PROJECT MANAGER OR SITE SUPERVISOR. THE ANTICIPATED COMPLETION DATE AND FINAL CONSTRUCTION SEQUENCE AND INSPECTION SCHEDULE WILL BE COORDINATED WITH THE APPROPRIATE CITY INSPECTOR.
8. PERMANENT WATER QUALITY PONDS OR CONTROLS WILL BE CLEANED OUT AND FILTER MEDIA WILL BE INSTALLED PRIOR TO/CONCURRENTLY WITH REVEGETATION OF SITE.
9. COMPLETE CONSTRUCTION AND START REVEGETATION OF THE SITE AND INSTALLATION OF LANDSCAPING.
10. UPON COMPLETION OF THE SITE CONSTRUCTION AND REVEGETATION OF A PROJECT SITE, THE DESIGN ENGINEER SHALL SUBMIT AN ENGINEER'S LETTER OF CONCURRENCE TO THE WATERSHED PROTECTION AND DEVELOPMENT REVIEW DEPARTMENT INDICATING THAT CONSTRUCTION, INCLUDING REVEGETATION, IS COMPLETE AND IN SUBSTANTIAL CONFORMITY WITH THE APPROVED PLANS. AFTER RECEIVING THIS LETTER, A FINAL INSPECTION WILL BE SCHEDULED BY THE APPROPRIATE CITY INSPECTOR.
11. UPON COMPLETION OF LANDSCAPE INSTALLATION OF A PROJECT SITE, THE LANDSCAPE ARCHITECT SHALL SUBMIT A LETTER OF CONCURRENCE TO THE WATERSHED PROTECTION AND DEVELOPMENT REVIEW DEPARTMENT INDICATING THAT THE REQUIRED LANDSCAPING IS COMPLETE AND IN SUBSTANTIAL CONFORMITY WITH THE APPROVED PLANS. AFTER RECEIVING THIS LETTER, A FINAL INSPECTION WILL BE SCHEDULED BY THE APPROPRIATE CITY INSPECTOR.
12. AFTER A FINAL INSPECTION HAS BEEN CONDUCTED BY THE CITY INSPECTOR AND WITH APPROVAL FROM THE CITY INSPECTOR, REMOVE THE TEMPORARY EROSION AND SEDIMENTATION CONTROLS AND COMPLETE ANY NECESSARY FINAL REVEGETATION RESULTING FROM REMOVAL OF THE CONTROLS. CONDUCT ANY MAINTENANCE AND REHABILITATION OF THE WATER QUALITY PONDS OR CONTROLS.

SITE CLEAN UP & SAFETY REQUIREMENTS:

1. REMOVAL OF EXCAVATED MATERIALS AND DAILY CLEANUP OPERATIONS SHALL BE PERFORMED TO THE SPECIFICATIONS AND TO THE SATISFACTION OF THE OWNER AND ENGINEER.

2. CONTRACTOR SHALL MAINTAIN THE JOB SITE IN A SAFE, NEAT AND WORKMANLIKE MANNER AT ALL TIMES. JOB SITE SAFETY SHALL NOT BE COMPROMISED. ANY UNATTRACTIVE NUISANCE SHALL BE REMOVED OR CAMOUFLAGED BY CONTRACTOR WHEN DIRECTED BY THE OWNER OR ENGINEER.

3. UNATTENDED TRENCHES MUST BE COVERED WITH STEEL PLATES CAPABLE OF SUPPORTING VEHICULAR TRAFFIC. THESE STEEL PLATES MUST BE ADEQUATELY ANCHORED TO PREVENT THEM FROM BECOMING DISLODGED.

4. BARRICADES, FENCING, LIGHTS, AND/OR OTHER PROTECTIVE DEVICES SHALL ADEQUATELY PROTECT ALL HOLES, TRENCHES, AND OTHER HAZARDOUS AREAS AT ALL TIMES.

5. ALL CONSTRUCTION AND TRENCHING OPERATIONS SHALL BE ACCOMPLISHED IN ACCORDANCE WITH ALL APPLICABLE REGULATIONS OF THE U.S. OCCUPATIONAL SAFETY AND HEALTH ADMINISTRATION (OSHA). COPIES OF OSHA STANDARDS MAY BE PURCHASED FROM THE U.S. GOVERNMENT PRINTING OFFICE.

6. CONTRACTOR SHALL MAINTAIN A SUPERINTENDENT UPON THE PROJECT AT ALL TIMES WORK IS IN PROGRESS.

NATURAL GAS SERVICE CONNECTION :

1. OWNER IS RESPONSIBLE FOR CONTACTING "TEXAS GAS SERVICE" TO PROVIDE A GAS METER AND GAS SERVICE LINE OR METER / SERVICE UPGRADE TO SITE. CHAN & PARTNERS ENGINEERING LLC CAN PROVIDE THE GAS COMPANY WITH AN ELECTRONIC FILE OF THE SITE UPON REQUEST FROM THE OWNER AT SUCH TIME THE SERVICE APPLICATION IS GENERATED BY OWNER. OWNER SHALL CONTACT (NEW BUSINESS FACILITATOR) AT (512) 465-1134 WITH "TEXAS GAS SERVICE" FOR REQUIREMENTS, FEES, COSTS, SKETCHES AND INSTRUCTIONS ON HOW TO PROVIDE OR UPGRADE GAS SERVICE TO THE PROJECT SITE. AT THE REQUEST OF THE OWNER, CHAN & PARTNERS ENGINEERING LLC CAN SHOW THE PROPOSED GAS SERVICE LINE ON THE SITE UTILITY PLAN TO BE USED FOR INFORMATION PURPOSES ONLY.

PROJECT SPECIFIC NOTES:
(CONTRACTOR MUST READ PRIOR TO BIDDING)

1. THE INFORMATION SHOWN ON THESE DRAWINGS INDICATING TYPE AND LOCATION OF UNDERGROUND, SURFACE AND AERIAL UTILITIES IS NOT GUARANTEED TO BE EXACT OR COMPLETE. THE CONTRACTOR IS RESPONSIBLE FOR DETERMINING THE EXACT TYPE AND LOCATION OF ALL UTILITIES AFFECTED BY CONSTRUCTION FOR THIS PROJECT IN ORDER TO AVOID DAMAGING THOSE UTILITIES. THE CONTRACTOR SHALL IMMEDIATELY ARRANGE FOR REPAIR AND RESTORATION OF CONTRACTOR-DAMAGED UTILITIES AND THE CONTRACTOR SHALL PAY FOR SUCH REPAIRS. CONTRACTOR SHALL POTHOLE UTILITIES IN ADVANCE OF CONSTRUCTION TO VERIFY THAT LOCATIONS AND DEPTHS DO NOT CONFLICT WITH CONSTRUCTION. POTHOLING OPERATION AND POTHOLE PAVEMENT REPAIR SHALL BE SUBSIDIARY TO THE CONTRACT. CONTRACTOR SHALL IMMEDIATELY NOTIFY ENGINEER AND OWNER'S REPRESENTATIVE OF ANY APPARENT CONFLICTS. CONTRACTOR SHALL COORDINATE WITH UTILITY AND OWNER'S REPRESENTATIVE TO ACHIEVE A PROMPT RESOLUTION TO ANY CONFLICTS.
2. FOR CONSTRUCTION WITHIN OR ADJACENT TO FREQUENT FLOODING AREAS, CONTRACTOR SHALL REPAIR AND IS RESPONSIBLE FOR ALL DAMAGES DUE TO THE FLOOD EVENTS.

GENERAL CONSTRUCTION NOTES FOR SITE PLAN

1. ALL RESPONSIBILITY FOR THE ADEQUACY OF THESE PLANS REMAINS WITH THE ENGINEER WHO PREPARED THEM. IN REVIEWING THESE PLANS, THE CITY OF AUSTIN MUST RELY ON THE ADEQUACY OF THE WORK OF THE DESIGN ENGINEER.

2. CONTRACTOR SHALL CALL DIG TESS (1-800-344-8377) FOR UTILITY LOCATIONS PRIOR TO ANY WORK IN CITY EASEMENTS OR STREET R.O.W.

3. CONTRACTOR SHALL NOTIFY THE DEPARTMENT OF PUBLIC WORKS AND TRANSPORTATION (DPWT) AT 974-7161 AT LEAST 24 HOURS PRIOR TO THE INSTALLATION OF ANY DRAINAGE FACILITY WITHIN A DRAINAGE EASEMENT OR STREET R.O.W. THE METHOD OF PLACEMENT AND COMPACTION OF BACKFILL IN THE CITY'S R.O.W. MUST BE APPROVED PRIOR TO THE START OF BACKFILL OPERATIONS.

4. ALL CONSTRUCTION OPERATIONS WITH SLOPES OR TRENCHES GREATER THAN FIVE-FEET IN DEPTH SHALL BE ACCOMPLISHED IN ACCORDANCE WITH APPLICABLE REGULATIONS OF THE U.S. OCCUPATIONAL SAFETY AND HEALTH ADMINISTRATION. (OSHA STANDARDS MAY BE PURCHASED FROM THE GOVERNMENT PRINTING OFFICE; INFORMATION AND RELATED REFERENCE MATERIALS MAY BE PURCHASED.)

5. ALL SITE WORK MUST ALSO COMPLY WITH ENVIRONMENTAL REQUIREMENTS.

6. UPON COMPLETION OF THE PROPOSED SITE IMPROVEMENTS AND PRIOR TO THE RELEASE OF THE CERTIFICATE OF OCCUPANCY OR FINAL INSPECTION RELEASE BY THE CITY, THE DESIGN ENGINEER SHALL CERTIFY IN WRITING THAT THE PROPOSED DRAINAGE AND DETENTION FACILITIES WERE CONSTRUCTED IN CONFORMANCE WITH THE APPROVED PLANS.

- RELEASE OF THE CERTIFICATE OF OCCUPANCY BY THE PLANNING AND DEVELOPMENT REVIEW DEPARTMENT (INSIDE THE CITY LIMITS); OR
- INSTALLATION OF AN ELECTRIC OR WATER METER (IN THE FIVE-MILE ETJ).

AMERICANS WITH DISABILITIES ACT

THE CITY OF AUSTIN HAS REVIEWED THIS PLAN FOR COMPLIANCE WITH CITY DEVELOPMENT REGULATIONS ONLY. THE APPLICANT, PROPERTY OWNER, AND OCCUPANT OF THE PREMISES ARE RESPONSIBLE FOR DETERMINING WHETHER THE PLAN COMPLIES WITH ALL OTHER LAWS, REGULATIONS, AND RESTRICTIONS WHICH MAY BE APPLICABLE TO THE PROPERTY AND ITS USE.

ADA ACCESSIBILITY NOTE:

CONTRACTOR SHALL CONSTRUCT ALL ADA ACCESSIBLE ROUTE SIDEWALK, RAMP AND DRIVEWAY CROSSING GRADES AND DIMENSIONS IN ACCORDANCE WITH THE TEXAS ACCESSIBILITY STANDARDS (TAS), ARCHITECTURAL BARRIERS GOVERNMENT CODE, ARCHITECTURAL BARRIERS ADMINISTRATIVE RULES AND TECHNICAL MEMORANDUM, LATEST EDITION. THE PROPOSED GRADES SHOWN ON THESE DRAWINGS WERE ESTABLISHED USING THE BEST AVAILABLE EXISTING GROUND INFORMATION AND ARE FOR GENERAL CONSTRUCTION AND BIDDING PURPOSES ONLY. CONTRACTOR SHALL ADJUST GRADES AND DIMENSIONS TO FIELD CONDITIONS AND TO COMPLY WITH TEXAS ACCESSIBILITY STANDARDS.

ORDINANCE REQUIREMENTS

1. ALL IMPROVEMENTS SHALL BE MADE IN ACCORDANCE WITH THE RELEASED SITE PLAN. ANY ADDITIONAL IMPROVEMENTS WILL REQUIRE A SITE PLAN AMENDMENT AND APPROVAL FROM THE PLANNING AND DEVELOPMENT REVIEW DEPARTMENT; MINOR CORRECTIONS MAY BE APPROVED BY THE BUILDING PLAN REVIEW SECTION AT THE TIME OF BUILDING PERMIT.

2. APPROVAL OF THIS SITE PLAN DOES NOT INCLUDE BUILDING CODE APPROVAL; FIRE CODE APPROVAL; OR BUILDING, DEMOLITION, OR RELOCATION PERMITS APPROVAL. A CITY DEMOLITION OR RELOCATION PERMIT CAN ONLY BE ISSUED ONCE THE HISTORIC REVIEW PROCESS IS COMPLETED.

3. ALL SIGNS MUST COMPLY WITH THE REQUIREMENTS OF THE LAND DEVELOPMENT CODE.

4. THE CONTRACTOR IS RESPONSIBLE FOR ALL COSTS FOR RELOCATION OF, OR DAMAGE TO, UTILITIES.

5. ADDITIONAL ELECTRIC EASEMENTS MAY BE REQUIRED AT A LATER DATE.

6. A DEVELOPMENT PERMIT MUST BE ISSUED PRIOR TO AN APPLICATION FOR BUILDING PERMIT FOR NON-CONSOLIDATED OR PLANNING COMMISSION APPROVED SITE PLAN.

FIRE DEPARTMENT

1. THE AUSTIN FIRE DEPARTMENT REQUIRES ASPHALT OR CONCRETE PAVEMENT PRIOR TO CONSTRUCTION AS AN "ALL-WEATHER DRIVING SURFACE".

2. HYDRANTS MUST BE INSTALLED WITH THE CENTER OF THE FOUR-INCH OPENING AT LEAST 18 INCHES ABOVE FINISHED GRADE. THE FOUR-INCH OPENING MUST FACE THE DRIVEWAY OR STREET WITH THREE- TO SIX-FOOT SETBACKS FROM THE CURB LINE(S). NO OBSTRUCTION IS ALLOWED WITHIN THREE FEET OF ANY HYDRANT AND THE FOUR-INCH OPENING MUST BE TOTALLY UNOBSTRUCTED FROM THE STREET.

3. TIMING OF INSTALLATION: WHEN FIRE PROTECTION FACILITIES ARE INSTALLED BY THE DEVELOPER, SUCH FACILITIES SHALL INCLUDE ALL SURFACE ACCESS ROADS WHICH SHALL BE INSTALLED AND MADE SERVICEABLE PRIOR TO AND DURING THE TIME OF CONSTRUCTION. WHERE ALTERNATIVE METHODS OF PROTECTION, AS APPROVED BY THE FIRE CHIEF, ARE PROVIDED, THE ABOVE MAY BE MODIFIED OR WAIVED.

4. ALL PERVIOUS/DECORATIVE PAVING SHALL BE ENGINEERED AND INSTALLED FOR 80,000 LB. LIVE-VEHICLE LOADS. ANY PERVIOUS/DECORATIVE PAVING WITHIN 100 FEET OF ANY BUILDING MUST BE APPROVED BY THE FIRE DEPARTMENTS.

5. COMMERCIAL DUMPSTERS AND CONTAINERS WITH AN INDIVIDUAL CAPACITY OF 1.5 CUBIC YARDS OR GREATER SHALL NOT BE STORED OR PLACED WITHIN TEN FEET OF OPENINGS, COMBUSTIBLE WALLS, OR COMBUSTIBLE EAVE LINES.

6. FIRE LANES DESIGNATED ON SITE PLAN SHALL BE REGISTERED WITH CITY OF AUSTIN FIRE MARSHAL'S OFFICE AND INSPECTED FOR FINAL APPROVAL.

7. VERTICAL CLEARANCE REQUIRED FOR FIRE APPARATUS IS 14 FEET FOR FULL WIDTH OF ACCESS DRIVE.

8. TRASH DUMPSTERS MAY NOT BE LOCATED WITHIN 10 FEET OF COMBUSTIBLE WALLS OR EAVES.

9. FIRE ACCESS LANES, AS DELINEATED ON THE SITE PLAN, REQUIRE RED BACK GROUND WITH WHITE LETTERING "FIRE ZONE/TOW AWAY ZONE" IN LETTERS 3-INCHES TALL AT INTERVALS OF 35-FEET MAXIMUM. LEAD FREE PAINT SHALL BE USED.

SPECIAL CONSTRUCTION TECHNIQUES ECM 3.5.4(D)

PRIOR TO EXCAVATION WITHIN TREE DRIPLINES OR THE REMOVAL OF TREES ADJACENT TO OTHER TREES THAT ARE TO REMAIN, MAKE A CLEAN CUT BETWEEN THE DISTURBED AND UNDISTURBED ROOT ZONES WITH A ROCK SAW OR SIMILAR EQUIPMENT TO MINIMIZE ROOT DAMAGE.

IN CRITICAL ROOT ZONE AREAS THAT CANNOT BE PROTECTED DURING CONSTRUCTION WITH FENCING AND WHERE HEAVY VEHICULAR TRAFFIC IS ANTICIPATED, COVER THOSE AREAS WITH A MINIMUM OF 12 INCHES OF ORGANIC MULCH TO MINIMIZE SOIL COMPACTION. IN AREAS WITH HIGH SOIL PLASTICITY GEOTEXTILE FABRIC, PER STANDARD SPECIFICATION 620S, SHOULD BE PLACED UNDER THE MULCH TO PREVENT EXCESSIVE MIXING OF THE SOIL AND MULCH. ADDITIONALLY, MATERIAL SUCH AS PLYWOOD AND METAL SHEETS, COULD BE REQUIRED BY THE CITY ARBORIST TO MINIMIZE ROOT IMPACTS FROM HEAVY EQUIPMENT. ONCE THE PROJECT IS COMPLETED, ALL MATERIALS SHOULD BE REMOVED, AND THE MULCH SHOULD BE REDUCED TO A DEPTH OF 3 INCHES.

PERFORM ALL GRADING WITHIN CRITICAL ROOT ZONE AREAS BY HAND OR WITH SMALL EQUIPMENT TO MINIMIZE ROOT DAMAGE.

WATER ALL TREES MOST HEAVILY IMPACTED BY CONSTRUCTION ACTIVITIES DEEPLY ONCE A WEEK DURING PERIODS OF HOT, DRY WEATHER. SPRAY TREE CROWNS WITH WATER PERIODICALLY TO REDUCE DUST ACCUMULATION ON THE LEAVES.

WHEN INSTALLING CONCRETE ADJACENT TO THE ROOT ZONE OF A TREE, USE A PLASTIC VAPOR BARRIER BEHIND THE CONCRETE TO PROHIBIT LEACHING OF LIME INTO THE SOIL."

APPENDIX P-1:
EROSION CONTROL NOTES

1. THE CONTRACTOR SHALL INSTALL EROSION/SEDIMENTATION CONTROLS AND TREE/NATURAL AREA PROTECTIVE FENCING PRIOR TO ANY SITE PREPARATION WORK (CLEARING, GRUBBING OR EXCAVATION).
2. THE PLACEMENT OF EROSION/SEDIMENTATION CONTROLS SHALL BE IN ACCORDANCE WITH THE ENVIRONMENTAL CRITERIA MANUAL AND THE APPROVED EROSION AND SEDIMENTATION CONTROL PLAN. THE COA ESC PLAN SHALL BE CONSULTED AND USED AS THE BASIS FOR A TPDES REQUIRED SWPPP. IF A SWPPP IS REQUIRED, IT SHALL BE AVAILABLE FOR REVIEW BY THE CITY OF AUSTIN ENVIRONMENTAL INSPECTOR AT ALL TIMES DURING CONSTRUCTION, INCLUDING AT THE PRE-CONSTRUCTION MEETING. THE CHECKLIST BELOW CONTAINS THE BASIC ELEMENTS THAT SHALL BE REVIEWED FOR PERMIT APPROVAL BY COA EV PLAN REVIEWERS AS WELL AS COA EV INSPECTORS.

   PLAN SHEETS SUBMITTED TO THE CITY OF AUSTIN **MUST** SHOW THE FOLLOWING:
   - DIRECTION OF FLOW DURING GRADING OPERATIONS.
   - LOCATION, DESCRIPTION, AND CALCULATIONS FOR OFF-SITE FLOW DIVERSION STRUCTURES.
   - AREAS THAT WILL NOT BE DISTURBED; NATURAL FEATURES TO BE PRESERVED.
   - DELINEATION OF CONTRIBUTING DRAINAGE AREA TO EACH PROPOSED BMP (E.G., SILT FENCE, SEDIMENT BASIN, ETC.)
   - LOCATION AND TYPE OF E&S BMPS FOR EACH PHASE OF DISTURBANCE.
   - CALCULATIONS FOR BMPS AS REQUIRED.
   - LOCATION AND DESCRIPTION OF TEMPORARY STABILIZATION MEASURES.
   - LOCATION OF ON-SITE SPOILS, DESCRIPTION OF HANDLING AND DISPOSAL OF BORROW MATERIALS, AND DESCRIPTION OF ON-SITE PERMANENT SPOILS DISPOSAL AREAS, INCLUDING SIZE, DEPTH OF FILL AND REVEGETATION PROCEDURES.

   DESCRIBE SEQUENCE OF CONSTRUCTION AS IT PERTAINS TO ESC INCLUDING THE FOLLOWING ELEMENTS:
   1. INSTALLATION SEQUENCE OF CONTROLS (E.G. PERIMETER CONTROLS, THEN SEDIMENT BASINS, THEN TEMPORARY STABILIZATION, THEN PERMANENT, ETC)
   2. PROJECT PHASING IF REQUIRED (LOC GREATER THAN 25 ACRES)
   3. SEQUENCE OF GRADING OPERATIONS AND NOTATION OF TEMPORARY STABILIZATION MEASURES TO BE USED
   4. SCHEDULE FOR CONVERTING TEMPORARY BASINS TO PERMANENT WQ CONTROLS
   5. SCHEDULE FOR REMOVAL OF TEMPORARY CONTROLS
   6. ANTICIPATED MAINTENANCE SCHEDULE FOR TEMPORARY CONTROLS

   CATEGORIZE EACH BMP UNDER ONE OF THE FOLLOWING AREAS OF BMP ACTIVITY AS DESCRIBED BELOW:

   3.1 MINIMIZE DISTURBED AREA AND PROTECT NATURAL FEATURES AND SOIL
   3.2 CONTROL STORMWATER FLOWING ONTO AND THROUGH THE PROJECT
   3.3 STABILIZE SOILS
   3.4 PROTECT SLOPES
   3.5 PROTECT STORM DRAIN INLETS
   3.6 ESTABLISH PERIMETER CONTROLS AND SEDIMENT BARRIERS
   3.7 RETAIN SEDIMENT ON-SITE AND CONTROL DEWATERING PRACTICES
   3.8 ESTABLISH STABILIZED CONSTRUCTION EXITS
   3.9 ANY ADDITIONAL BMPS

   NOTE THE LOCATION OF EACH BMP ON YOUR SITE MAP(S).

   FOR ANY STRUCTURAL BMPS, YOU SHOULD PROVIDE DESIGN SPECIFICATIONS AND DETAILS AND REFER TO THEM.

   FOR MORE INFORMATION, SEE CITY OF AUSTIN ENVIRONMENTAL CRITERIA MANUAL 1.4.
3. THE PLACEMENT OF TREE/NATURAL AREA PROTECTIVE FENCING SHALL BE IN ACCORDANCE WITH THE CITY OF AUSTIN STANDARD NOTES FOR TREE AND NATURAL AREA PROTECTION AND THE APPROVED GRADING/TREE AND NATURAL AREA PLAN.
4. A PRE-CONSTRUCTION CONFERENCE SHALL BE HELD ON-SITE WITH THE CONTRACTOR, DESIGN ENGINEER/PERMIT APPLICANT AND ENVIRONMENTAL INSPECTOR AFTER INSTALLATION OF THE EROSION/SEDIMENTATION CONTROLS AND TREE/NATURAL AREA PROTECTION MEASURES AND PRIOR TO BEGINNING ANY SITE PREPARATION WORK. THE OWNER OR OWNER'S REPRESENTATIVE SHALL NOTIFY THE PLANNING AND DEVELOPMENT REVIEW DEPARTMENT, 974-2278, AT LEAST THREE DAYS PRIOR TO THE MEETING DATE. COA APPROVED ESC PLAN AND TPDES SWPPP (IF REQUIRED) SHOULD BE REVIEWED BY COA EV INSPECTOR AT THIS TIME.
5. ANY MAJOR VARIATION IN MATERIALS OR LOCATIONS OF CONTROLS OR FENCES FROM THOSE SHOWN ON THE APPROVED PLANS WILL REQUIRE A REVISION AND MUST BE APPROVED BY THE REVIEWING ENGINEER, ENVIRONMENTAL SPECIALIST OR CITY ABORIST AS APPROPRIATE. MAJOR REVISIONS MUST BE APPROVED BY THE PLANNING AND DEVELOPMENT REVIEW DEPARTMENT. MINOR CHANGES TO BE MADE AS FIELD REVISIONS TO THE EROSION AND SEDIMENTATION CONTROL PLAN MAY BE REQUIRED BY THE ENVIRONMENTAL INSPECTOR DURING THE COURSE OF CONSTRUCTION TO CORRECT CONTROL INADEQUACIES.
6. THE CONTRACTOR IS REQUIRED TO PROVIDE A CERTIFIED INSPECTOR WITH EITHER A CERTIFIED PROFESSIONAL IN EROSION AND SEDIMENT CONTROL (CPESC), CERTIFIED EROSION, SEDIMENT AND STORMWATER-INSPECTOR (CESSWI) OR CERTIFIED INSPECTOR OF SEDIMENTATION AND EROSION CONTROLS (CISEC) CERTIFICATION TO INSPECT THE CONTROLS AND FENCES AT WEEKLY INTERVALS AND AFTER SIGNIFICANT RAINFALL EVENTS TO INSURE THAT THEY ARE FUNCTIONING PROPERLY. THE PERSON(S) RESPONSIBLE FOR MAINTENANCE OF CONTROLS AND FENCES SHALL IMMEDIATELY MAKE ANY NECESSARY REPAIRS TO DAMAGED AREAS. SILT ACCUMULATION AT CONTROLS MUST BE REMOVED WHEN THE DEPTH REACHES SIX (6) INCHES.
7. PRIOR TO FINAL ACCEPTANCE BY THE CITY, HAUL ROADS AND WATERWAY CROSSINGS CONSTRUCTED FOR TEMPORARY CONTRACTOR ACCESS MUST BE REMOVED, ACCUMULATED SEDIMENT REMOVED FROM THE WATERWAY AND THE AREA RESTORED TO THE ORIGINAL GRADE AND REVEGETATED. ALL LAND CLEARING DEBRIS SHALL BE DISPOSED OF IN APPROVED SPOIL DISPOSAL SITES.
8. ALL WORK MUST STOP IF A VOID IN THE ROCK SUBSTRATE IS DISCOVERED WHICH IS; ONE SQUARE FOOT IN TOTAL AREA; BLOWS AIR FROM WITHIN THE SUBSTRATE AND/OR CONSISTENTLY RECEIVES WATER DURING ANY RAIN EVENT. AT THIS TIME IT IS THE RESPONSIBILITY OF THE PROJECT MANAGER TO IMMEDIATELY CONTACT A CITY OF AUSTIN ENVIRONMENTAL INSPECTOR FOR FURTHER INVESTIGATION.
9. TEMPORARY AND PERMANENT EROSION CONTROL: ALL DISTURBED AREAS SHALL BE RESTORED AS NOTED BELOW.
   A. ALL DISTURBED AREAS TO BE REVEGETATED ARE REQUIRED TO PLACE A MINIMUM OF SIX (6) INCHES OF TOPSOIL [SEE STANDARD SPECIFICATION ITEM NO. 601S.3(A)]. DO NOT ADD TOPSOIL WITHIN THE CRITICAL ROOT ZONE OF EXISTING TREES. THE TOPSOIL SHALL BE COMPOSED OF 4 PARTS OF SOIL MIXED WITH 1 PART COMPOST, BY VOLUME. THE COMPOST SHALL MEET THE DEFINITION OF COMPOST AS DEFINED BY TXDOT SPECIFICATION ITEM 161. THE SOIL SHALL BE LOCALLY AVAILABLE NATIVE SOIL THAT MEETS THE FOLLOWING SPECIFICATIONS:
      - SHALL BE FREE OF TRASH, WEEDS, DELETERIOUS MATERIALS, ROCKS, AND DEBRIS.
      - 100% SHALL PASS THROUGH A 0.375 - INCH (3/8") SCREEN.
      - SOIL TEXTURE CLASS TO BE LOAM, SANDY CLAY LOAM, OR SANDY LOAM IN ACCORDANCE WITH THE USDA TEXTURE TRIANGLE. SOIL KNOWN LOCALLY AS "RED DEATH" OR AUSTIN SANDY LOAM IS NOT AN ALLOWABLE SOIL. TEXTURAL COMPOSITION SHALL MEET THE FOLLOWING CRITERIA:

TEXTURE CLASS	MINIMUM	MAXIMUM
CLAY	5%	50%
SILT	10%	50%
SAND	15%	67%

      - AN OWNER/ENGINEER MAY PROPOSE USE OF ONSITE SALVAGED TOPSOIL WHICH DOES NOT MEET THE SOIL TEXTURE CLASS REQUIRED ABOVE BY PROVIDING A SOIL ANALYSIS AND A WRITTEN STATEMENT FROM A QUALIFIED PROFESSIONAL IN SOILS, LANDSCAPE ARCHITECTURE, OR AGRONOMY INDICATING THE ONSITE TOPSOIL WILL PROVIDE AN EQUIVALENT GROWTH MEDIA AND SPECIFYING WHAT, IF ANY, SOIL AMENDMENTS ARE REQUIRED.
      - SOIL AMENDMENTS SHALL BE WORKED INTO THE EXISTING ONSITE TOPSOIL WITH A DISC OR TILLER TO CREATE A WELL-BLENDED MATERIAL.

NOTE:
FOR AUSTIN WATER UTILITY GENERAL CONSTRUCTION NOTES, SEE SHEET .

TOPSOIL SALVAGED FROM THE EXISTING SITE MAY OFTEN BE USED, BUT IT SHOULD MEET THE SAME STANDARDS AS SET FORTH IN THESE STANDARDS.

THE VEGETATIVE STABILIZATION OF AREAS DISTURBED BY CONSTRUCTION SHALL BE AS FOLLOWS:

TEMPORARY VEGETATIVE STABILIZATION:

1. FROM SEPTEMBER 15 TO MARCH 1, SEEDING SHALL BE WITH COOL SEASON COVER CROPS (WHEAT AT 0.5 POUNDS PER 1000 SF, OATS AT 0.5 POUNDS PER 1000 SF, CEREAL RYE GRAIN AT 0.5 POUNDS PER 1000 SF) WITH A TOTAL RATE OF 1.5 POUNDS PER 1000 SF. COOL SEASON COVER CROPS ARE NOT PERMANENT EROSION CONTROL.
2. FROM MARCH 2 TO SEPTEMBER 14, SEEDING SHALL BE WITH HULLED BERMUDA AT A RATE OF 1 POUNDS PER 1000 SF.
   A. FERTILIZER SHALL BE WATER SOLUBLE WITH AN ANALYSIS OF 15-15-15 TO BE APPLIED ONCE AT PLANTING AND ONCE DURING THE PERIOD OF ESTABLISHMENT AT A RATE OF 1/2 POUND PER 1000 SF.
   B. HYDROMULCH SHALL COMPLY WITH TABLE1, BELOW.
   C. TEMPORARY EROSION CONTROL SHALL BE ACCEPTABLE WHEN THE GRASS HAS GROWN AT LEAST 1 1/2 INCHES HIGH WITH 95% COVERAGE, PROVIDED NO BARE SPOTS LARGER THAN 16 SQUARE FEET EXIST.
   D. WHEN REQUIRED, NATIVE GRASS SEEDING SHALL COMPLY WITH REQUIREMENTS OF THE CITY OF AUSTIN ENVIRONMENTAL CRITERIA MANUAL.

TABLE 1: HYDROMULCHING FOR TEMPORARY VEGETATIVE STABILIZATION

MATERIAL	DESCRIPTION	LONGEVITY	TYPICAL APPLICATIONS	APPLICATION RATES
100% OR ANY BLEND OF WOOD, CELLULOSE STRAW, AND/OR COTTON PLANT MATERIAL (EXCEPT NO MULCH SHALL EXCEED 30% PAPER)	70% OR GREATER WOOD/STRAW 30% OR LESS PAPER OR NATURAL FIBERS	0-3 MONTHS	MODERATE SLOPES; FROM FLAT TO 3:1	1500 TO 2000 LBS PER ACRE

PERMANENT VEGETATIVE STABILIZATION:

1. FROM SEPTEMBER 15 TO MARCH 1, SEEDING IS CONSIDERED TO BE TEMPORARY STABILIZATION ONLY. IF COOL SEASON COVER CROPS EXIST WHERE PERMANENT VEGETATIVE STABILIZATION IS DESIRED, THE GRASSES SHALL BE MOWED TO A HEIGHT OF LESS THAN ONE-HALF (1/2) INCH AND THE AREA SHALL BE RE-SEEDED IN ACCORDANCE WITH 2. BELOW.
2. FROM MARCH 2 TO SEPTEMBER 14, SEEDING SHALL BE WITH HULLED BERMUDA AT A RATE OF 1 POUND PER 1000 SF WITH A PURITY OF 95% WITH 85% GERMINATION. BERMUDA GRASS IS A WARM SEASON GRASS AND IS CONSIDERED PERMANENT EROSION CONTROL.
   A. FERTILIZER SHALL BE A WATER SOLUBLE WITH AN ANALYSIS OF 15-15-15 TO BE APPLIED ONCE AT PLANTING AND ONCE DURING THE PERIOD OF ESTABLISHMENT AT A RATE OF 1/2 POUND PER 1000 SF.
   B. HYDROMULCH SHALL COMPLY WITH TABLE 2, BELOW.
   C. THE PLANTED AREA SHALL BE IRRIGATED OR SPRINKLED IN A MANNER THAT WILL NOT ERODE THE TOPSOIL, BUT WILL SUFFICIENTLY SOAK THE SOIL TO A DEPTH OF SIX INCHES. THE IRRIGATION SHALL OCCUR AT DAILY INTERVALS (MINIMUM) DURING THE FIRST TWO MONTHS. RAINFALL OCCURRENCES OF ½ INCH OR MORE SHALL POSTPONE THE WATERING SCHEDULE FOR ONE WEEK.
   D. PERMANENT EROSION CONTROL SHALL BE ACCEPTABLE WHEN THE GRASS HAS GROWN AT LEAST 1½ INCHES HIGH WITH 95% COVERAGE, PROVIDED NO BARE SPOTS LARGER THAN 16 SQUARE FEET EXIST.
   E. WHEN REQUIRED, NATIVE GRASS SEEDING SHALL COMPLY WITH REQUIREMENTS OF THE CITY OF AUSTIN ENVIRONMENTAL CRITERIA MANUAL.

TABLE 2: HYDROMULCHING FOR PERMANENT VEGETATIVE STABILIZATION

MATERIAL	DESCRIPTION	LONGEVITY	TYPICAL APPLICATIONS	APPLICATION RATES
BONDED FIBER MATRIX (BFM)	80% ORGANIC DEFIBRATED FIBERS 10% TACKIFIER	6 MONTHS	ON SLOPES UP TO 2:1 AND EROSIVE SOIL CONDITIONS	2500 TO 4000 LBS PER ACRE (SEE MANUFACTURERS RECOMMENDATIONS)
FIBER REINFORCED MATRIX (FRM)	65% ORGANIC DEFIBRATED FIBERS 25% REINFORCING FIBERS OR LESS 10% TACKIFIER	UP TO 12 MONTHS	ON SLOPES UP TO 1:1 AND EROSIVE SOIL CONDITIONS	3000 TO 4500 LBS PER ACRE (SEE MANUFACTURERS RECOMMENDATIONS)

10. DEVELOPER INFORMATION:

OWNER: CITY OF AUSTIN

PHONE # (512) 974-7157

ADDRESS: P.O. BOX 1088, AUSTIN TX. 78748

OWNER'S REPRESENTATIVE RESPONSIBLE FOR PLAN ALTERATIONS:

CHAN AND PARTNERS ENGINEERING PHONE # (512) 480-8155

PERSON OR FIRM RESPONSIBLE FOR EROSION/SEDIMENTATION CONTROL MAINTENANCE:

CONTRACTOR PHONE # (512) XXX-XXXX

PERSON OR FIRM RESPONSIBLE FOR TREE/NATURAL AREA PROTECTION MAINTENANCE:

CONTRACTOR PHONE # (512) XXX-XXXX

11. THE CONTRACTOR SHALL NOT DISPOSE OF SURPLUS EXCAVATED MATERIAL FROM THE SITE WITHOUT NOTIFYING THE PLANNING AND DEVELOPMENT REVIEW DEPARTMENT AT 974-2278 AT LEAST 48 HOURS PRIOR WITH THE LOCATION AND A COPY OF THE PERMIT ISSUED TO RECEIVE THE MATERIAL.
    A. IMMEDIATELY UPON PLACEMENT OF SEED, CONTRACTOR SHALL COVER ALL SLOPES 5:1 OR STEEPER WITH AN EROSION CONTROL BLANKET (CURLEX 1 OR APPROVED EQUAL). CONTRACTOR TO FASTEN IN ACCORDANCE WITH THE MANUFACTURER'S RECOMMENDATIONS.
    B. DUST CONTROL:
       DUST CONTROL METHODS ARE REQUIRED AS PER E.C.M. SECTION 1.4.5.D.
    C. TEMPORARY SPOILS DISPOSAL SITE:
       THE TEMPORARY SPOILS DISPOSAL SITE IS XX,XXX SF. THE SITE SHALL BEGIN BEING USED UPON COMMENCEMENT OF CONSTRUCTION. THE SPOILS ON THE SITE SHALL NOT BE ALLOWED TO REACH A DEPTH GREATER THAN 4'. UPON REACHING A DEPTH OF 4', THE SPOILS SHALL BE REMOVED TO AN APPROVED PERMANENT SPOILS DISPOSAL SITE. JUST PRIOR TO COMMENCEMENT OF THE RESTORATION OF THE SITE REVEGETATION, ALL REMAINING SPOILS SHALL BE DISPOSED OF AT AN APPROVED PERMANENT SPOILS DISPOSAL SITE. THE TEMPORARY SPOILS DISPOSAL SITE SHALL BE RESTORED AT THE SAME TIME AS THE REST OF THE CONSTRUCTION SITE.

APPENDIX P-6
REMEDIAL TREE CARE NOTES AERATION AND SUPPLEMENTAL NUTRIENT REQUIREMENTS FOR N TREES WITHIN CONSTRUCTION AREAS

AS A COMPONENT OF AN EFFECTIVE REMEDIAL TREE CARE PROGRAM PER ENVIRONMENTAL CRITERIA MANUAL SECTION 3.5.4, PRESERVED TREES WITHIN THE LIMITS OF CONSTRUCTION MAY REQUIRE SOIL AERATION AND SUPPLEMENTAL NUTRIENTS. SOIL AND/OR FOLIAR ANALYSIS SHOULD BE USED TO DETERMINE THE NEED FOR SUPPLEMENTAL NUTRIENTS. THE CITY ARBORIST MAY REQUIRE THESE ANALYSES AS PART OF A COMPREHENSIVE TREE CARE PLAN. SOIL PH SHALL BE CONSIDERED WHEN DETERMINING THE FERTILIZATION COMPOSITION AS SOIL PH INFLUENCES THE TREE'S ABILITY TO UPTAKE NUTRIENTS FROM THE SOIL. IF ANALYSES INDICATE THE NEED FOR SUPPLEMENTAL NUTRIENTS, THEN HUMATE/NUTRIENT SOLUTIONS WITH MYCORRHIZAE COMPONENTS ARE HIGHLY RECOMMENDED. IN ADDITION, SOIL ANALYSIS MAY BE NEEDED TO DETERMINE IF ORGANIC MATERIAL OR BENEFICIAL MICROORGANISMS ARE NEEDED TO IMPROVE SOIL HEALTH. MATERIALS AND METHODS ARE TO BE APPROVED BY THE CITY ARBORIST (512-974-1876) PRIOR TO APPLICATION. THE OWNER OR GENERAL CONTRACTOR SHALL SELECT A FERTILIZATION CONTRACTOR AND IENSURE COORDINATION WITH THE CITY ARBORIST.

PRE-CONSTRUCTION TREATMENT SHOULD BE APPLIED IN THE APPROPRIATE SEASON, IDEALLY THE SEASON PRECEDING THE PROPOSED CONSTRUCTION. MINIMALLY, AREAS TO BE TREATED INCLUDE THE ENTIRE CRITICAL ROOT ZONE OF TREES AS DEPICTED ON THE CITY APPROVED PLANS. TREATMENT SHOULD INCLUDE, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, FERTILIZATION, SOIL TREATMENT, MULCHING, AND PROPER PRUNING.

POST-CONSTRUCTION TREATMENT SHOULD OCCUR DURING FINAL REVEGETATION OR AS DETERMINED BY A QUALIFIED ARBORIST AFTER CONSTRUCTION. CONSTRUCTION ACTIVITIES OFTEN RESULT IN A REDUCTION IN SOIL MACRO AND MICRO PORES AND AN INCREASE IN SOIL BULK DENSITY. TO AMELIORATE THE DEGRADED SOIL CONDITIONS, AERATION VIA WATER AND/OR AIR INJECTED INTO THE SOIL IS NEEDED OR BY OTHER METHODS AS APPROVED BY THE CITY ARBORIST. THE PROPOSED NUTRIENT MIX SPECIFICATIONS AND SOIL AND/OR FOLIAR ANALYSIS RESULTS NEED TO BE PROVIDED TO AND APPROVED BY THE CITY ARBORIST PRIOR TO APPLICATION (FAX # 512-974-3010). CONSTRUCTION WHICH WILL BE COMPLETED IN LESS THAN 90 DAYS MAY USE MATERIALS AT ½ RECOMMENDED RATES. ALTERNATIVE ORGANIC FERTILIZER MATERIALS ARE ACCEPTABLE WHEN APPROVED BY THE CITY ARBORIST. WITHIN 7 DAYS AFTER FERTILIZATION IS PERFORMED, THE CONTRACTOR SHALL PROVIDE DOCUMENTATION OF THE WORK PERFORMED TO THE CITY ARBORIST, PLANNING AND DEVELOPMENT REVIEW DEPARTMENT. P.O. BOX 1088, AUSTIN, TX 78767. THIS NOTE SHOULD BE REFERENCED AS ITEM #1 IN THE SEQUENCE OF CONSTRUCTION.

APPENDIX P-2:
CITY OF AUSTIN STANDARD NOTES FOR TREE AND NATURAL AREA PROTECTION

1. ALL TREES AND NATURAL AREAS SHOWN ON PLAN TO BE PRESERVED SHALL BE PROTECTED DURING CONSTRUCTION WITH TEMPORARY FENCING.
2. PROTECTIVE FENCES SHALL BE ERECTED ACCORDING TO CITY OF AUSTIN STANDARDS FOR TREE PROTECTION.
3. PROTECTIVE FENCES SHALL BE INSTALLED PRIOR TO THE START OF ANY SITE PREPARATION WORK (CLEARING, GRUBBING OR GRADING), AND SHALL BE MAINTAINED THROUGHOUT ALL PHASES OF THE CONSTRUCTION PROJECT.
4. EROSION AND SEDIMENTATION CONTROL BARRIERS SHALL BE INSTALLED OR MAINTAINED IN A MANNER WHICH DOES NOT RESULT IN SOIL BUILD-UP WITHIN TREE DRIP LINES.
5. PROTECTIVE FENCES SHALL SURROUND THE TREES OR GROUP OF TREES, AND WILL BE LOCATED AT THE OUTERMOST LIMIT OF BRANCHES (DRIP LINE) , FOR NATURAL AREAS, PROTECTIVE FENCES SHALL FOLLOW THE LIMIT OF CONSTRUCTION LINE, IN ORDER TO PREVENT THE FOLLOWING:
   A. SOIL COMPACTION IN THE ROOT ZONE AREA RESULTING FROM VEHICULAR TRAFFIC OR STORAGE OF EQUIPMENT OR MATERIALS;
   B. ROOT ZONE DISTURBANCES DUE TO GRADE CHANGES (GREATER THAN 6 INCHES CUT OR FILL), OR TRENCHING NOT REVIEWED AND AUTHORIZED BY THE CITY ARBORIST;
   C. WOUNDS TO EXPOSED ROOTS, TRUNK OR LIMBS BY MECHANICAL EQUIPMENT;
   D. OTHER ACTIVITIES DETRIMENTAL TO TREES SUCH AS CHEMICAL STORAGE, CEMENT TRUCK CLEANING, AND FIRES.
6. EXCEPTIONS TO INSTALLING FENCES AT TREE DRIP LINES MAY BE PERMITTED IN THE FOLLOWING CASES:
   A. WHERE THERE IS TO BE AN APPROVED GRADE CHANGE, IMPERMEABLE PAVING SURFACE, TREE WELL, OR OTHER SUCH SITE DEVELOPMENT, ERECT THE FENCE APPROXIMATELY 2 TO 4 FEET BEYOND THE AREA DISTURBED;
   B. WHERE PERMEABLE PAVING IS TO BE INSTALLED WITHIN A TREE'S DRIP LINE, ERECT THE FENCE AT THE OUTER LIMITS OF THE PERMEABLE PAVING AREA (PRIOR TO SITE GRADING SO THAT THIS AREA IS GRADED SEPARATELY PRIOR TO PAVING INSTALLATION TO MINIMIZED ROOT DAMAGE);
   C. WHERE TREES ARE CLOSE TO PROPOSED BUILDINGS, ERECT THE FENCE TO ALLOW 6 TO 10 FEET OF WORK SPACE BETWEEN THE FENCE AND THE BUILDING;
   D. WHERE THERE ARE SEVERE SPACE CONSTRAINTS DUE TO TRACT SIZE, OR OTHER SPECIAL REQUIREMENTS, CONTACT THE CITY ARBORIST AT 974-1876 TO DISCUSS ALTERNATIVES.

   SPECIAL NOTE: FOR THE PROTECTION OF NATURAL AREAS, NO EXCEPTIONS TO INSTALLING FENCES AT THE LIMIT OF CONSTRUCTION LINE WILL BE PERMITTED.
7. WHERE ANY OF THE ABOVE EXCEPTIONS RESULT IN A FENCE BEING CLOSER THAN 4 FEET TO A TREE TRUNK, PROTECT THE TRUNK WITH STRAPPED-ON PLANKING TO A HEIGHT OF 8 FT (OR TO THE LIMITS OF LOWER BRANCHING) IN ADDITION TO THE REDUCED FENCING PROVIDED.
8. TREES APPROVED FOR REMOVAL SHALL BE REMOVED IN A MANNER WHICH DOES NOT IMPACT TREES TO BE PRESERVED.
9. ANY ROOTS EXPOSED BY CONSTRUCTION ACTIVITY SHALL BE PRUNED FLUSH WITH THE SOIL. BACKFILL ROOT AREAS WITH GOOD QUALITY TOP SOIL AS SOON AS POSSIBLE. IF EXPOSED ROOT AREAS ARE NOT BACKFILLED WITHIN 2 DAYS, COVER THEM WITH ORGANIC MATERIAL IN A MANNER WHICH REDUCES SOIL TEMPERATURE AND MINIMIZES WATER LOSS DUE TO EVAPORATION.
10. ANY TRENCHING REQUIRED FOR THE INSTALLATION OF LANDSCAPE IRRIGATION SHALL BE PLACED AS FAR FROM EXISTING TREE TRUNKS AS POSSIBLE.
11. NO LANDSCAPE TOPSOIL DRESSING GREATER THAN 4 INCHES SHALL BE PERMITTED WITHIN THE DRIP LINE OF TREES. NO SOIL IS PERMITTED ON THE ROOT FLARE OF ANY TREE.
12. PRUNING TO PROVIDE CLEARANCE FOR STRUCTURES, VEHICULAR TRAFFIC AND EQUIPMENT SHALL TAKE PLACE BEFORE DAMAGE OCCURS (RIPPING OF BRANCHES, ETC.).
13. ALL FINISHED PRUNING SHALL BE DONE ACCORDING TO RECOGNIZED, APPROVED STANDARDS OF THE INDUSTRY (REFERENCE THE NATIONAL ARBORIST ASSOCIATION PRUNING STANDARDS FOR SHADE TREES AVAILABLE ON REQUEST FROM THE CITY ARBORIST).
14. DEVIATIONS FROM THE ABOVE NOTES MAY BE CONSIDERED ORDINANCE VIOLATIONS IF THERE IS SUBSTANTIAL NON-COMPLIANCE OR IF A TREE SUSTAINS DAMAGE AS A RESULT.

APPENDIX P-4:
STANDARD SEQUENCE OF CONSTRUCTION

1. TEMPORARY EROSION AND SEDIMENTATION CONTROLS ARE TO BE INSTALLED AS INDICATED ON THE APPROVED SITE PLAN OR SUBDIVISION CONSTRUCTION PLAN AND IN ACCORDANCE WITH THE STORMWATER POLLUTION PREVENTION PLAN (SWPPP) THAT IS REQUIRED TO BE POSTED ON THE SITE. INSTALL TREE PROTECTION AND INITIATE TREE MITIGATION MEASURES.
2. THE ENVIRONMENTAL PROJECT MANAGER OR SITE SUPERVISOR MUST CONTACT THE WATERSHED PROTECTION DEPARTMENT, ENVIRONMENTAL INSPECTION, AT 512-974-2278, 72 HOURS PRIOR TO THE SCHEDULED DATE OF THE REQUIRED ON-SITE PRE-CONSTRUCTION MEETING.
3. THE ENVIRONMENTAL PROJECT MANAGER, AND/OR SITE SUPERVISOR, AND/OR DESIGNATED RESPONSIBLE PARTY, AND THE GENERAL CONTRACTOR WILL FOLLOW THE STORM WATER POLLUTION PREVENTION PLAN (SWPPP) POSTED ON THE SITE. TEMPORARY EROSION AND SEDIMENTATION CONTROLS WILL BE REVISED, IF NEEDED, TO COMPLY WITH CITY INSPECTORS' DIRECTIVES, AND REVISED CONSTRUCTION SCHEDULE RELATIVE TO THE WATER QUALITY PLAN REQUIREMENTS AND THE EROSION PLAN.
4. ROUGH GRADE THE POND(S) AT 100% PROPOSED CAPACITY. EITHER THE PERMANENT OUTLET STRUCTURE OR A TEMPORARY OUTLET MUST BE CONSTRUCTED PRIOR TO DEVELOPMENT OF EMBANKMENT OR EXCAVATION THAT LEADS TO PONDING CONDITIONS. THE OUTLET SYSTEM MUST CONSIST OF A SUMP PIT OUTLET AND AN EMERGENCY SPILLWAY MEETING THE REQUIREMENTS OF THE DRAINAGE CRITERIA MANUAL AND/OR THE ENVIRONMENTAL CRITERIA MANUAL, AS REQUIRED. THE OUTLET SYSTEM SHALL BE PROTECTED FROM EROSION AND SHALL BE MAINTAINED THROUGHOUT THE COURSE OF CONSTRUCTION UNTIL INSTALLATION OF THE PERMANENT WATER QUALITY POND(S).
5. TEMPORARY EROSION AND SEDIMENTATION CONTROLS WILL BE INSPECTED AND MAINTAINED IN ACCORDANCE WITH THE STORM WATER POLLUTION PREVENTION PLAN (SWPPP) POSTED ON SITE.
6. BEGIN SITE CLEARING/CONSTRUCTION (OR DEMOLITION) ACTIVITIES.
7. IN THE BARTON SPRINGS ZONE, THE ENVIRONMENTAL PROJECT MANAGER OR SITE SUPERVISOR WILL SCHEDULE A MID-CONSTRUCTION CONFERENCE TO COORDINATE CHANGES IN THE CONSTRUCTION SCHEDULE AND EVALUATE EFFECTIVENESS OF THE EROSION CONTROL PLAN AFTER POSSIBLE CONSTRUCTION ALTERATIONS TO THE SITE. PARTICIPANTS SHALL INCLUDE THE CITY INSPECTOR, PROJECT ENGINEER, GENERAL CONTRACTOR, AND ENVIRONMENTAL PROJECT MANAGER OR SITE SUPERVISOR. THE ANTICIPATED COMPLETION DATE AND FINAL CONSTRUCTION SEQUENCE AND INSPECTION SCHEDULE WILL BE COORDINATED WITH THE APPROPRIATE CITY INSPECTOR.
8. PERMANENT WATER QUALITY PONDS OR CONTROLS WILL BE CLEANED OUT AND FILTER MEDIA WILL BE INSTALLED PRIOR TO/CONCURRENTLY WITH RE-VEGETATION OF SITE.
9. COMPLETE CONSTRUCTION AND START RE-VEGTATION OF THE SITE AND INSTALLATION OF LANDSCAPING.
10. UPON COMPLETION OF THE SITE CONSTRUCTION AND RE-VEGETATION OF A PROJECT SITE, THE DESIGN ENGINEER SHALL SUBMIT AN ENGINEER'S LETTER OF CONCURRENCE TO THE WATERSHED PROTECTION AND DEVELOPMENT REVIEW DEPARTMENT INDICATING THAT CONSTRUCTION, INCLUDING RE-VEGETATION, IS COMPLETE AND IN SUBSTANTIAL CONFORMITY WITH THE APPROVED PLANS. AFTER RECEIVING THIS LETTER, A FINAL INSPECTION WILL BE SCHEDULED BY THE APPROPRIATE CITY INSPECTOR.
11. UPON COMPLETION OF LANDSCAPE INSTALLATION OF A PROJECT SITE, THE LANDSCAPE ARCHITECT SHALL SUBMIT A LETTER OF CONCURRENCE TO THE WATERSHED PROTECTION AND DEVELOPMENT REVIEW DEPARTMENT INDICATING THAT THE REQUIRED LANDSCAPING IS COMPLETE AND IN SUBSTANTIAL CONFORMITY WITH THE APPROVED PLANS. AFTER RECEIVING THIS LETTER, A FINAL INSPECTION WILL BE SCHEDULED BY THE APPROPRIATE CITY INSPECTOR.
12. AFTER A FINAL INSPECTION HAS BEEN CONDUCTED BY THE CITY INSPECTOR AND WITH APPROVAL FROM THE CITY INSPECTOR, REMOVE THE TEMPORARY EROSION AND SEDIMENTATION CONTROLS AND COMPLETE ANY NECESSARY FINAL RE-VEGETATION RESULTING FROM REMOVAL OF THE CONTROLS. CONDUCT ANY MAINTENANCE AND REHABILITATION OF THE WATER QUALITY PONDS OR CONTROLS.

SITE PLAN RELEASE

SITE PLAN APPROVAL SHEET 2 OF 33
FILE NUMBER: SPC-2016-0287C APPLICATION DATE: 6-22-2016
APPROVED BY COMMISSION ON . UNDER SECTION 142 OF
CHAPTER 25-5 OF THE CITY OF AUSTIN CODE.
EXPIRATION DATE (25-5-81, LDC) . CASE MANAGER LYNDA COURTNEY
PROJECT EXPIRATION DATE (ORD.#970905) . DWPZ . DDZ .

Development Services Department
RELEASED FOR GENERAL COMPLIANCE: . ZONING P
Rev. 1 Correction 1
Rev. 2 Correction 2
Rev. 3 Correction 3

Final plat must be recorded by the Project Expiration Date, if applicable. Subsequent Site Plans which do not comply with the Code current at the time of filing, and all required Building Permits and/or a notice of construction (if a building permit is not required), must also be approved prior to the Project Expiration Date.

SPC-2016-0287C

STATE OF TEXAS
JOHN R. KING
58429
LICENSED PROFESSIONAL ENGINEER
9/6/2016

CPE CHAN & PARTNERS
CONSULTING CIVIL ENGINEERS
CHAN & PARTNERS ENGINEERING, LLC
4319 JAMES CASEY STREET, #300
AUSTIN, TEXAS 78745
512-480-8155 (PH) ♦ 512-480-8811 (FAX)
E-mail: info@chanpartners.com
WWW.CHANPARTNERS.COM
TEXAS REGISTRATION NO. F-13013

AUSTIN ONION CREEK FIRE & EMS STATION
11112 OLD SAN ANTONIO ROAD
AUSTIN, TEXAS 78748

CITY OF AUSTIN FOUNDED 1839

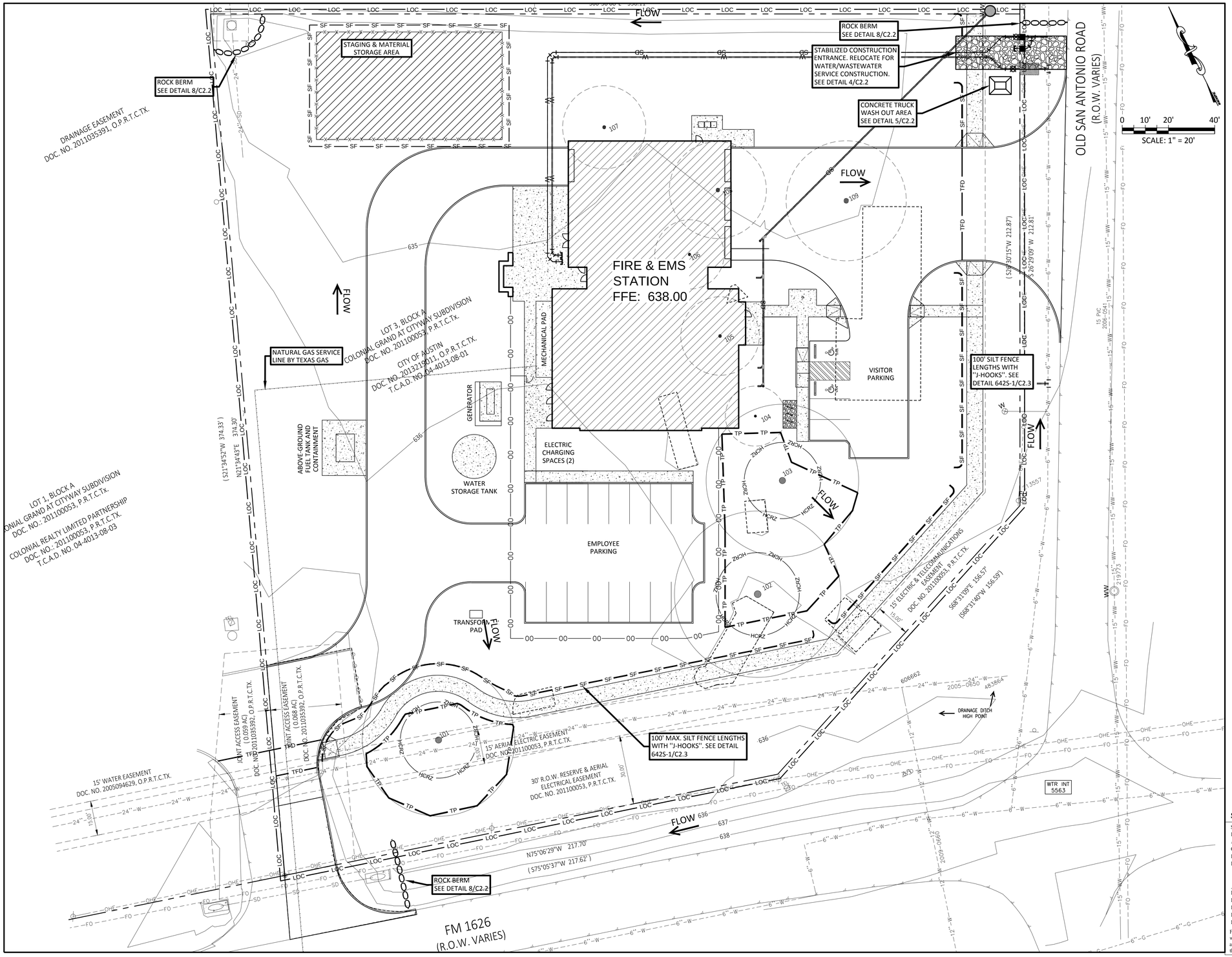
REVISIONS

COPYRIGHT © 2015 BROWN REYNOLDS WATFORD ARCHITECTS, INC.

DATE	9/6/2016
DRAWN BY	CD
CHECKED BY	JRK
PROJECT NO.	214106.00

GENERAL NOTES

C1.1
SHEET 2 OF 33



TREE LIST
(SURVEY DATE: 9/10/2015)

TAG NO.	SIZE/TYPE
101	33" MULTI-TRUNK ASH
102	36" MULBERRY
103	33" MULBERRY
R104	13" MULBERRY
R105	17" TWIN MULBERRY
R106	15" MULBERRY
R107	18" ASH
R108	21" ASH
R109	26" ASH (H)

R- TREES TO REMOVE
H- HERITAGE TREE

EROSION / SEDIMENTATION AND TREE PROTECTION LEGEND

- LOC — LIMITS OF CONSTRUCTION
- DRAINAGE FLOW DIRECTION
- TP — TREE PROTECTION FENCE (C.O.A. DETAIL 610S-1 & 610S-4)
- REINFORCED ROCK BERM (C.O.A. DETAIL 639S-1)
- MS — MULCH SOCK
- OMF — ORANGE MESH SAFETY FENCE
- SF — SILT FENCE
- F D — FILTER DIKE CURB INLET PROTECTION (C.O.A. DETAIL 628S-2)
- TFD — TRIANGULAR FILTER DIKE HALF CRITICAL ROOT ZONE
- STABILIZED CONSTRUCTION ENTRANCE (SCE) (C.O.A. DETAIL 641S-1)
- TEMPORARY SPOILS SITE
- CONSTRUCTION STAGING AREA
- EROSION CONTROL BLANKET
- CONCRETE WASHOUT AREA
- 1000 EXISTING TREES (TO REMAIN)
- 1000 EXISTING TREES (TO BE REMOVED)
- DETAIL NUMBER / SHEET NUMBER — DETAIL NAME — DETAIL CALLOUT REFERENCE

NOTES:

1. THE ENVIRONMENTAL INSPECTOR HAS THE AUTHORITY TO ADD AND/OR MODIFY EROSION/ SEDIMENTATION CONTROLS ON SITE TO KEEP PROJECT IN COMPLIANCE WITH THE CITY OF AUSTIN RULES AND REGULATIONS.
2. CONTRACTOR SHALL UTILIZE DUST CONTROL MEASURES DURING SITE CONSTRUCTION SUCH AS IRRIGATION TRUCKS AND MULCHING AS PER ECM 1.4.5(D), OR AS DIRECTED BY THE ENVIRONMENTAL INSPECTOR.
3. SILT FENCE TYPE AND INSTALLATION SHALL COMPLY WITH ECM 1.4.2(G).
4. ALL DISTURBED AREAS SHALL BE REVEGETATED WITH NATIVE GRASSES (REFER TO NOTE SHEET FOR SPECS). ALL DISTURBED AREAS WITH SLOPES 5:1 OR STEEPER, WHICH ARE NOT ARMORED OTHERWISE, SHALL HAVE A SOIL RETENTION BLANKET (EXCELSIOR II OR APPROVED EQUAL) INSTALLED TO ASSIST WITH REVEGETATION.
5. IF DISTURBED AREA IS NOT TO BE WORKED ON FOR MORE THAN 14 DAYS, DISTRUBED AREA NEEDS TO BE STABILIZED BY REVEGETATION, MULCH, TARP OR REVEGETATION MATTING. (ECM 1.4.4.B.3, SECTION 5, I.)
6. THE CONTRACTOR WILL CLEAN UP SPOILS THAT MIGRATE ONTO THE ROADS A MINIMUM OF ONCE DAILY. (ECM 1.4.4.D.4)
7. PROPOSED TREE WELL AND SLOPE PROTECTION AT TREES #201, 202, 203 SHOWN ON SHEET C4.0 GRADING PLAN.
8. THE DISTURBED AREAS WITHIN THIS PROJECT SHALL BE RE-VEGETATED AND ALL PERMANENT EROSION/SEDIMENTATION CONTROLS COMPLETED PRIOR TO THE RELEASE OF FISCAL SECURITY FOR THE PROJECT.
9. SEE SHEET C1.1 FOR CITY OF AUSTIN ENVIRONMENTAL CRITERIA MANUAL (ECM) APPENDIX NOTES.
10. CONTRACTOR IS RESPONSIBLE FOR REMOVING ANY SEDIMENT TRANSPORTED FROM THE LOC TO THE OFFSITE DETENTION/WATER QUALITY POND.
11. FOR THE EXISTING TREES THAT REMAIN ON SITE: (A) MINIMUM OF 50% OF THE CRZ MUST BE PRESERVED AT NATURAL GRADE WITH NATURAL GROUND COVER, (B) CUT OR FILL IS LIMITED TO 4 INCHES FROM THE 1/2 CRZ TO THE 1/4 CRZ, AND (C) NO CUT OR FILL IS PERMITTED WITHIN THE 1/4 CRZ.

SITE PLAN RELEASE

SITE PLAN APPROVAL SHEET 6 OF 33
FILE NUMBER: SPC-2016-0287C APPLICATION DATE: 6-22-2016
APPROVED BY COMMISSION ON _____ UNDER SECTION 142 OF CHAPTER 25-5 _____ OF THE CITY OF AUSTIN CODE.
EXPIRATION DATE (25-5-81, LDC) _____ CASE MANAGER LYNDA COURTNEY
PROJECT EXPIRATION DATE (ORD.#970905) _____ DWPZ _____ DDZ _____

Development Services Department
RELEASED FOR GENERAL COMPLIANCE: _____ ZONING P
Rev. 1 _____ Correction 1 _____
Rev. 2 _____ Correction 2 _____
Rev. 3 _____ Correction 3 _____

Final plat must be recorded by the Project Expiration Date, if applicable. Subsequent Site Plans which do not comply with the Code current at the time of filing, and all required Building Permits and/or a notice of construction (if a building permit is not required), must also be approved prior to the Project Expiration Date.

STATE OF TEXAS
JOHN R. KING
59429
LICENSED PROFESSIONAL ENGINEER
9/6/2016

CHAN & PARTNERS CONSULTING CIVIL ENGINEERS

CHAN & PARTNERS ENGINEERING, LLC
4319 JAMES CASEY STREET, #300
AUSTIN, TEXAS 78745
512-469-8185 (PH) • 512-469-8811 (FAX)
E-mail: info@chanpartners.com
WWW.CHANPARTNERS.COM
TEXAS REGISTRATION NO. F-13013

AUSTIN ONION CREEK FIRE & EMS STATION
11112 OLD SAN ANTONIO ROAD
AUSTIN, TEXAS 78748

CITY OF AUSTIN — AUSTIN FOUNDED

REVISIONS

DATE	9/6/2016
DRAWN BY	CD
CHECKED BY	JRK
PROJECT NO.	214106.00

COPYRIGHT © 2015 BROWN REYNOLDS WATFORD ARCHITECTS, INC.

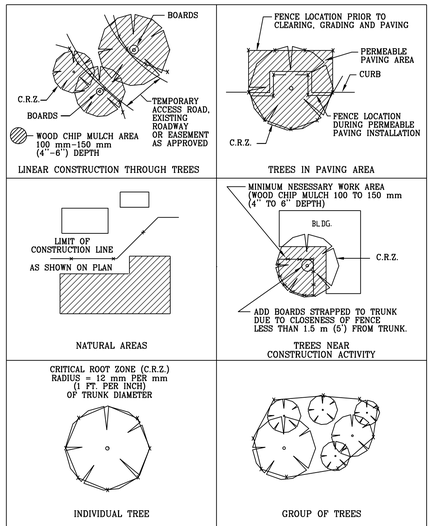
ES & TREE PROTECTION PLAN

C2.1

SHEET 6 OF 33

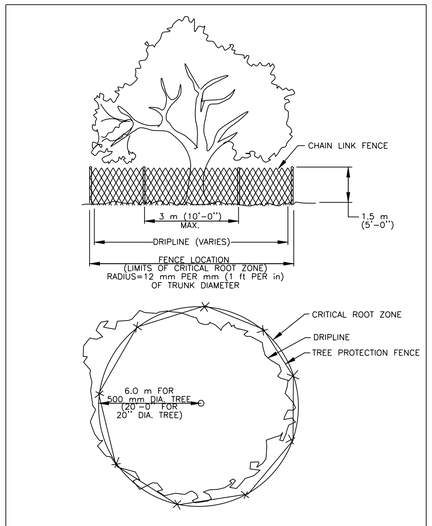
IF THIS SHEET IS NOT 36" X 24", IT IS A REDUCED PRINT. Sep 06, 2016 - 11:24am Drawing name: J:\1139-Onion Creek Fire EMS\00-DRAWINGS\PERMIT\1139--C-ES PLAN.dwg

SPC-2016-0287C



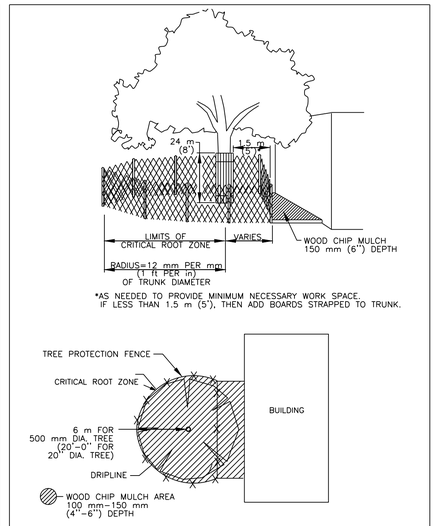
CITY OF AUSTIN WATERSHED PROTECTION DEPARTMENT	TREE PROTECTION FENCE LOCATIONS	
RECORD COPY SIGNED BY J. PATRICK MURPHY 11/15/99 ADOPTED	THE ARCHITECT/ENGINEER ASSUMES RESPONSIBILITY FOR APPROPRIATE USE OF THIS STANDARD.	STANDARD NO. 610S–1

1 / C2.2



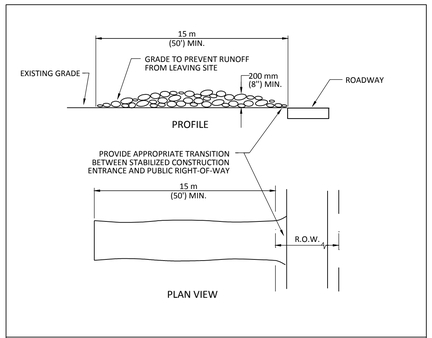
CITY OF AUSTIN WATERSHED PROTECTION DEPARTMENT	TREE PROPTECTION FENCE TYPE A – CHAIN LINK	
RECORD COPY SIGNED BY J. PATRICK MURPHY 11/15/99 ADOPTED	THE ARCHITECT/ENGINEER ASSUMES RESPONSIBILITY FOR APPROPRIATE USE OF THIS STANDARD.	STANDARD NO. 610S–2

2 / C2.2



CITY OF AUSTIN WATERSHED PROTECTION DEPARTMENT	TREE PROTECTION FENCE MODIFIED TYPE A – CHAIN LINK	
RECORD COPY SIGNED BY J. PATRICK MURPHY 11/15/99 ADOPTED	THE ARCHITECT/ENGINEER ASSUMES RESPONSIBILITY FOR APPROPRIATE USE OF THIS STANDARD.	STANDARD NO. 610S–4

3 / C2.2

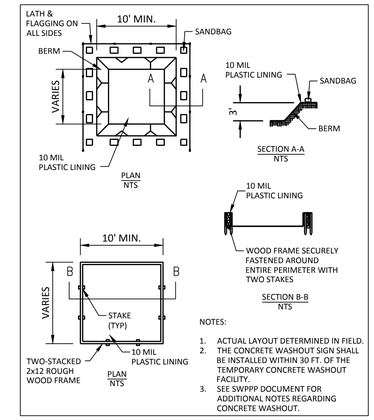


NOTES:

1. STONE SIZE: 75-125 mm (3-5") OPEN GRADED ROCK.
2. LENGTH: AS EFFECTIVE BUT NOT LESS THAN 15 m (50').
3. THICKNESS: NOT LESS THAN 200 mm (8").
4. WIDTH: NOT LESS THAN FULL WIDTH OF ALL POINTS OF INGRESS/EGRESS.
5. WASHING: WHEN NECESSARY, VEHICLE WHEELS SHALL BE CLEANED TO REMOVE SEDIMENT PRIOR TO ENTRANCE ONTO PUBLIC ROADWAY. WHEN WASHING IS REQUIRED, IT SHALL BE DONE ON AN AREA STABILIZED WITH CRUSHED STONE AND DRAINS INTO AN APPROVED TRAP OR SEDIMENT BASIN. ALL SEDIMENT SHALL BE PREVENTED FROM ENTERING ANY STORM DRAIN, DITCH OR WATERCOURSE USING APPROVED METHODS.
6. MAINTENANCE: THE ENTRANCE SHALL BE MAINTAINED IN A CONDITION THAT WILL PREVENT TRACKING OR FLOWING OF SEDIMENT ONTO PUBLIC ROADWAY. THIS MAY REQUIRE PERIODIC TOP DRESSING WITH ADDITIONAL STONE AS CONDITIONS DEMAND, AS WELL AS REPAIR AND CLEAN OUT OF ANY MEASURE DEVICES USED TO TRAP SEDIMENT. ALL SEDIMENTS THAT IS SPILLED, DROPPED, WASHED OR TRACKED ONTO PUBLIC ROADWAY MUST BE REMOVED IMMEDIATELY.
7. DRAINAGE: ENTRANCE MUST BE PROPERLY GRADED OR INCORPORATE A DRAINAGE SWALE TO PREVENT RUNOFF FROM LEAVING THE CONSTRUCTION SITE.

CITY OF AUSTIN WATERSHED PROTECTION DEPARTMENT	STABILIZED CONSTRUCTION ENTRANCE	
RECORD COPY SIGNED BY J. PATRICK MURPHY 5/23/00 ADOPTED	THE ARCHITECT/ENGINEER ASSUMES RESPONSIBILITY FOR APPROPRIATE USE OF THIS STANDARD.	STANDARD NO. 641S-1

4 / C2.2



NOTES:

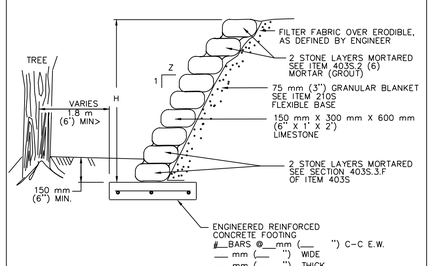
1. ACTUAL LAYOUT DETERMINED IN FIELD.
2. THE CONCRETE WASHOUT SIGN SHALL BE INSTALLED WITHIN 30 FT. OF THE TEMPORARY CONCRETE WASHOUT FACILITY.
3. SEE SWPPP DOCUMENT FOR ADDITIONAL NOTES REGARDING CONCRETE WASHOUT.

5 / C2.2

CONCRETE TRUCK WASHOUT DETAIL

SCALE: NONE

CUST- 360



THIS STANDARD APPLIES ONLY UNDER THE FOLLOWING CONDITIONS:

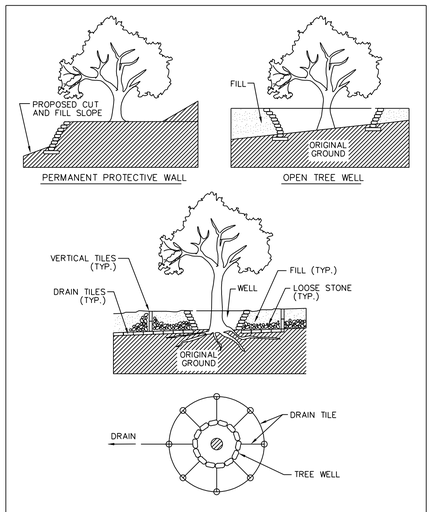
A. H AND Z ARE SPECIFIED ON THE DRAWING.
B. GROUNDWATER IS NO HIGHER THAN THE BOTTOM OF THE FOOTING.
C. THE MATERIAL BELOW THE FOOTING IS FIRM AND STABLE.
D. THE MATERIAL BEHIND THE WALL HAS A LEVEL SURFACE.
E. THE MATERIAL IN FRONT OF THE WALL HAS A SLOPE NO STEEPER THAN 4 HORIZONTAL TO 1 VERTICAL.
F. THE FACE OF THE WALL IS NO STEEPER THAN 1 HORIZONTAL TO 2 VERTICAL.
G. SURCHARGE LOADS BEHIND THE WALL ARE NO CLOSER THAN DISTANCE H FROM THE TOP OF WALL.

NOTES:

1. DESIGN AND CONSTRUCTION OF ROCK WALL SHALL CONFORM TO THE REQUIREMENTS OF CITY CODE 16–7–2, PLACEMENT OF FENCES IN STREET CORNER AREAS, AND THE CITY OF AUSTIN TRANSPORTATION CRITERIA MANUAL FOR MINIMIM SIGHT DISTANCE.
2. CONCRETE SHALL CONFORM TO ITEM 403S, "CONCRETE FOR STRUCTURES".

CITY OF AUSTIN DEPARTMENT OF WATERSHED PROTECTION AND DEVELOPMENT REVIEW	SLOPE PROTECTION AND TREE WELLS	
RECORD COPY SIGNED BY J. PATRICK MURPHY 03/13/06 ADOPTED	THE ARCHITECT/ENGINEER ASSUMES RESPONSIBILITY FOR APPROPRIATE USE OF THIS STANDARD.	STANDARD NO. 610S–6 1 OF 2

6 / C2.2



CITY OF AUSTIN DEPARTMENT OF WATERSHED PROTECTION AND DEVELOPMENT REVIEW	SLOPE PROTECTION AND TREE WELLS	
RECORD COPY SIGNED BY J. PATRICK MURPHY 03/13/06 ADOPTED	THE ARCHITECT/ENGINEER ASSUMES RESPONSIBILITY FOR APPROPRIATE USE OF THIS STANDARD.	STANDARD NO. 610S–6 2 OF 2

6 / 7

NOTES:

1. MATERIAL ˜ THE FPBRIC MUST CORRESPONDTO THE FOLLWNG REQUIREMENTS:

PROPERTY	ASTM TEST METHOD	REQUIREMENTS
FABRIC WEIGHT	D 3776	≥3.0 OUNCES/SQUARE YPAD
ULTRAVIOLET (UV) RADIATION STABILITY	D 4355	70% STRENGTH RETAINB) MIN., AFTER 500 HOURS IN XENON ARC DEVICE
MUUEN BURST STRENGTH	D 3786	≥120 POUND PER SQUPRE INCH
WATER FLOW RATE	D 4491	≥ 275 GALLONS/MINUTE/SQUARE FEET

2. THIS MATERIAL SHOULD HAVE A MAXIMUM EXPECTED USEFULLIFE OF APPROXIMATELY EIGHTEEN (18) MONTHS. THE INLET PROTECTION DEVICES SHOULD BE CONSTRUCTED IN A MANNER THAT WILL FACILITATE CLEAN OUT AND DISPOSAL OF TRAPPED SEDIMENT WILE MINIMIZING INTERFERENCE WITH CONSTRUCTION ACT IVITIES. THEY SHOU LD ALSO BE CONSTRUCTED SUCH THAT ANY PONDING OF STORM WATER WILL NOT CAUSE EXCESSIVE R.O.W. FLOODING (I.E. ˜4 INCHES OF STANDING WATER) OR DPMAGETO THESTRUCTURE OR ADJACENT AREAS.

3˜ COVERAGE THE FABRICWIRE SHOULD COMPLETELY COVER THE OPENING OF THE INLET AND DEVICES SHOULD BE INSTALLED WITHOUT PROTRUDING PARTS THAT COULD BE A TRAFFIC, WORKER, OR PEDESTRIAN HAZARD. WHERE SECTIONS OF THE FABRIC OVERLAP, THEY SHALL OVERLAP AT LEAST THREE (3) INCHES.

4. THE INLET FILTER SHALL BE ATTACHED IN A WAY THAT THEY CAN EASILY BE REMOVED AND ARE NOT SECURED OR ATTACHED BY THE USE OF SAND BAGS. THE INLET FILTER MUST BE REMOMD UPON COMPLETION OF WORK IF REMOVAL DAMAGES THE CONCREE CURB, THE CURB MUST BE REPAIRED IMMEDIATELY˜

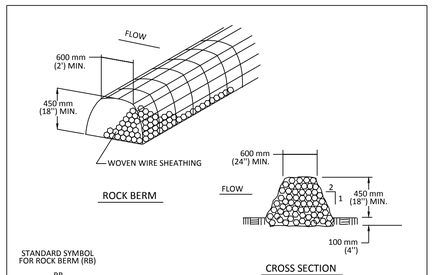
5. DAILY INSPECTION SHALL BE MADE BY THE CONTRACTOR AND SILT ACCUMULATION MUST BE REMOVED WHEN THE DEPTH REACHES 50 MM (2 INCHES) INCHES OR ONE THIRD THE HEIGHT OF THE INLET THROAT,AND DISPOSED OF IN A MANNER WHICH WILL NOT OWSE ADDITIONAL SILTATION.

6. CONTRACTOR SHALL MONITOR THE PERFORMANCE OF INLET PROTECTION DURING EACH RAINFALL E VENT AND IMMEDIATELY REMOVE THE INLET PROTECTIONS IF THE STORMWATER BEGINS TO OVERTOP THE CURB.

7. INLET PROTECTIONS SHALL BE REMOVED AS SOON AS THE SOURCE OF SEDIMENT HAS ACHIEVED FINAL STABILIZATION CONDITIONS.

CITY OF AUSTIN WATERSHED PROTECTION DEPARTMENT	FILTER DIKE CURB INLET PROTECTION	
RECORD COPY SIGNED BY MAPI VIGIL 10/30/09 ADOPTED	THE ARCHITECT/ENGINEER ASSUMES RESPONSIBILITY FOR APPROPRIATE USE OF THIS STANDARD.	STANDARD NO. 628S-2

7 / C2.2



NOTES:

1. USE ONLY OPEN GRADED ROCK 75 to 125 mm (3 to 5") DIAMETER FOR ALL CONDITIONS.
2. THE ROCK BERM SHALL BE SECURED WITH A WOVEN WIRE SHEATHING HAVING MAXIMUM 25 mm (1") OPENING AND MINIMUM WIRE DIAMETER OF 12.9 mm (20 GAUGE).
3. THE ROCK BERM SHALL BE INSPECTED DAILY OR AFTER EACH RAIN, AND THE STONE AND/OR FABRIC CORE-WOVEN SHEATHING SHALL BE REPLACED WHEN THE STRUCTURE CEASES TO FUNCTION AS INTENDED, DUE TO SEDIMENT ACCUMULATION AMONG THE ROCKS, WASHOUT, CONSTRUCTION TRAFFIC DAMAGE, ETC.
4. IF SEDIMENT REACHES A DEPTH EQUAL TO ONE-THIRD THE HEIGHT OF THE BERM OR 150 mm (6"), WHICHEVER IS LESS, THE SEDIMENT SHALL BE REMOVED AND DISPOSED OF ON AN APPROVED SITE AND IN A MANNER THAT WILL NOT CREATE A SEDIMENTION PROBLEM.
5. WHEN THE SITE IS COMPLETELY STABILIZED,THE BERM AND ACCUMULATED SEDIMENT SHALL BE REMOVED AND DISPOSED OF IN AN APPROVED MANNER.

CITY OF AUSTIN WATERSHED PROTECTION DEPARTMENT	ROCK BERM	
RECORD COPY SIGNED BY MORGAN BYARS 8/24/2010 ADOPTED	THE ARCHITECT/ENGINEER ASSUMES RESPONSIBILITY FOR APPROPRIATE USE OF THIS STANDARD.	STANDARD NO. 639S-1

8 / C2.2

SITE PLAN RELEASE

SITE PLAN APPROVAL SHEET 7 OF 33
FILE NUMBER: SPC-2016-0287C APPLICATION DATE: 6-22-2016
APPROVED BY COMMISSION ON ____ UNDER SECTION 142 OF
CHAPTER 25-5 ____ OF THE CITY OF AUSTIN CODE.
EXPIRATION DATE (25-5-81, LDC) ____ CASE MANAGER LYNDA COURTNEY
PROJECT EXPIRATION DATE (ORD.#970905) ____ DWPZ ____ DDZ ____

Development Services Department
RELEASED FOR GENERAL COMPLIANCE: ____ ZONING P
Rev. 1 ____ Correction 1 ____
Rev. 2 ____ Correction 2 ____
Rev. 3 ____ Correction 3 ____

Final plat must be recorded by the Project Expiration Date, if applicable. Subsequent Site Plans which do not comply with the Code current at the time of filing, and all required Building Permits and/or a notice of construction (if a building permit is not required), must also be approved prior to the Project Expiration Date.

SPC-2016-0287C

IF THIS SHEET IS NOT 36" X 24", IT IS A REDUCED PRINT.

Sep 06, 2016 - 11:24am Drawing name: J:\1139-Onion Creek Fire EMS\00-DRAWINGS\PERMIT\1139--C-ES PLAN.dwg

STATE OF TEXAS
JOHN R. KING
59429
LICENSED PROFESSIONAL ENGINEER
9/6/2016

CPE CHAN & PARTNERS CONSULTING CIVIL ENGINEERS
CHAN & PARTNERS ENGINEERING, LLC
4319 JAMES CASEY STREET, #300
AUSTIN, TEXAS 78745
512-490-8185 (PH) • 512-490-8811 (FAX)
E-mail: info@chanpartners.com
WWW.CHANPARTNERS.COM
TEXAS REGISTRATION NO. F-13013

AUSTIN ONION CREEK FIRE & EMS STATION
11112 OLD SAN ANTONIO ROAD
AUSTIN, TEXAS 78748

CITY OF AUSTIN FOUNDED 1839

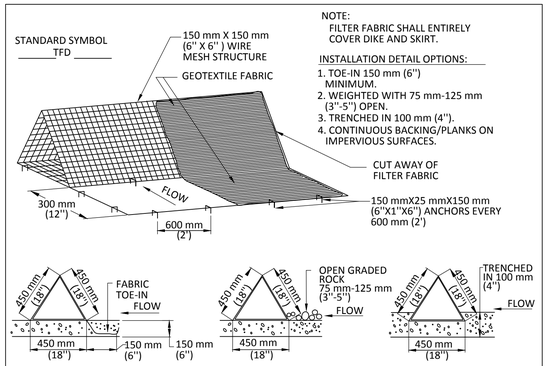
REVISIONS

DATE	9/6/2016
DRAWN BY	CD
CHECKED BY	JRK
PROJECT NO.	214106.00

ES DETAILS

C2.2
SHEET 7 OF 33

COPYRIGHT © 2015 BROWN REYNOLDS WATFORD ARCHITECTS, INC.



NOTE:
FILTER FABRIC SHALL ENTIRELY COVER DIKE AND SKIRT.

INSTALLATION DETAIL OPTIONS:

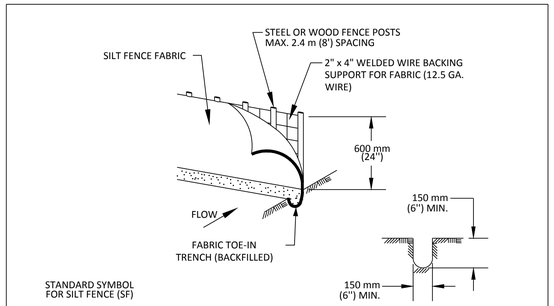
1. TOE-IN 150 mm (6'') MINIMUM.
2. WEIGHTED WITH 75 mm-125 mm (3''-5'') OPEN.
3. TRENCHED IN 100 mm (4'').
4. CONTINUOUS BACKING/PLANKS ON IMPERVIOUS SURFACES.

GENERAL NOTES

1. DIKES SHALL BE PLACED IN A ROW WITH ENDS TIGHTLY ABUTTING THE ADJACENT DIKE.
2. THE FABRIC COVER AND SKIRT SHALL BE A CONTINUOUS WRAPPING OF GEOTEXTILE. THE SKIRT SHALL BE A CONTINUOUS EXTENSION OF THE FABRIC ON THE UPSTREAM FACE.
3. THE SKIRT SHALL BE WEIGHTED WITH A CONTINUOUS LAYER OF 75-125 mm (3-5'') OPEN GRADED ROCK OR TOED-IN 150 mm (6'') WITH MECHANICALLY COMPACTED MATERIAL. OTHERWISE, THE ENTIRE STRUCTURE SHALL BE TRENCHED IN 100 mm (4'').
4. DIKES AND SKIRT SHALL BE SECURELY ANCHORED IN PLACE USING 150 mm (6'') WIRE STAPLES ON 600 mm (2') CENTERS ON BOTH EDGES AND SKIRT, OR STAKE USING 10M (3/8 '') DIAMETER RE-BAR WITH TEE ENDS.
5. FILTER MATERIAL SHALL BE LAPPED OVER ENDS 150 mm (6'') TO COVER DIKE TO DIKE JOINTS. JOINTS SHALL BE FASTENED WITH GALVANIZED SHOAT RINGS.
6. THE DIKE STRUCTURE SHALL BE MW40-150 mmX150 mm (6 GA. 6''X6'') WIRE MESH, 450 mm (18'') ON A SIDE.
7. INSPECTION SHALL BE MADE WEEKLY OR AFTER EACH RAINFALL EVENT AND REPAIR OR REPLACEMENT SHALL BE MADE PROMPTLY AS NEEDED BY THE CONTRACTOR.
8. ACCUMULATED SILT SHALL BE REMOVED WHEN IT REACHES A DEPTH OF 150 mm (6'') AND DISPOSED OF IN A MANNER WHICH WILL NOT CAUSE ADDITIONAL SILTATION.
9. AFTER THE DEVELOPMENT SITE IS COMPLETLY STABILIZED, THE DIKES AND ANY REMAINING SILT SHALL BE REMOVED. SILT SHALL BE DISPOSED OF AS INDICATED IN GENERAL NOTE 8 ABOVE.

CITY OF AUSTIN WATERSHED PROTECTION DEPARTMENT		TRIANGULAR SEDIMENT FILTER DIKE	
RECORD COPY SIGNED BY J. PATRICK MURPHY	3/27/00 ADOPTED	THE ARCHITECT/ENGINEER ASSUMES RESPONSIBILITY FOR APPROPRIATE USE OF THIS STANDARD.	STANDARD NO. 628S

1
C2.3



TRENCH CROSS SECTION

1. STEEL OR WOOD POSTS WHICH SUPPORT THE SILT FENCE SHALL BE INSTALLED ON A SLIGHT ANGLE TOWARD THE ANTICIPATED RUNOFF SOURCE. POST MUST BE EMBEDDED A MINIMUM OF 300 mm (12 INCHES). IF WOOD POSTS CANNOT ACHIEVE 300 mm (12 inches) DEPTH, USE STEEL POSTS.

2. THE TOE OF THE SILT FENCE SHALL BE TRENCHED IN WITH A SPADE OR MECHANICAL TRENCHER, SO THAT THE DOWNSLOPE FACE OF THE TRENCH IS FLAT AND PERPENDICULAR TO THE LINE OF FLOW.

3. THE TRENCH MUST BE A MINIMUM OF 150 mm (6 inches) DEEP AND 150 mm (6 inches) WIDE TO ALLOW FOR THE SILT FENCE FABRIC TO BE LAID IN THE GROUND AND BACKFILLED WITH COMPACTED MATERIAL.

4. SILT FENCE FABRIC SHOULD BE SECURELY FASTENED TO EACH STEEL OR WOOD SUPPORT POST OR TO WOVEN WIRE , WHICH IS IN TURN ATTACHED TO THE STEEL OR WOOD FENCE POST.

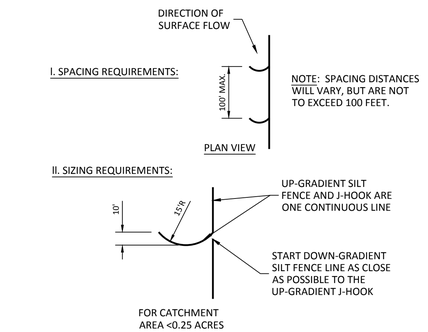
5. INSPECTION SHALL BE MADE WEEKLY OR AFTER EACH RAINFALL EVENT AND REPAIR OR REPLACEMENT SHALL BE MADE PROMPTY AS NEEDED.

6. SILT FENCE SHALL BE REMOVED WHEN THE SITE IS COMPLETELY STABILIZED SO AS NOT TO BLOCK OR IMPEDE STORM FLOW OR DRAINAGE.

7. ACCUMULATED SILT SHALL BE REMOVED WHEN IT REACHES A DEPTH OF 150 mm (6 inches). THE SILT SHALL BE DISPOSED OF ON AN APPROVED SITE AND IN SUCH A MANNER THAT WILL NOT CONTRIBUTE TO ADDITIONAL SILTATION.

CITY OF AUSTIN WATERSHED PROTECTION DEPARTMENT		SILT FENCE	
RECORD COPY SIGNED BY MORGAN BYARS	09/01/2011 ADOPTED	THE ARCHITECT/ENGINEER ASSUMES RESPONSIBILITY FOR APPROPRIATE USE OF THIS STANDARD.	STANDARD NO. 642S-1

2
C2.3



NOTE: SPACING DISTANCES WILL VARY, BUT ARE NOT TO EXCEED 100 FEET.

NOTE:
J-HOOKS SHALL ALSO BE USED WHEN THE SILT FENCE IS INSTALLED AT AN ANGLE OF 30 DEGREES OR GREATER FROM PARALLEL TO THE CONTOURS.

3
C2.3

SILT FENCE ''J'' - HOOK DETAIL

SCALE: NONE (COA DETAIL: ECM FIGURE 1.4.5.G.4)

CUST 388

SITE PLAN RELEASE

SITE PLAN APPROVAL SHEET ___ OF 33
FILE NUMBER: SPC-2016-0287C APPLICATION DATE: 6-22-2016
APPROVED BY COMMISSION ON _____ UNDER SECTION 142 OF
CHAPTER 25-5 OF THE CITY OF AUSTIN CODE.
EXPIRATION DATE (25-5-81, LDC) _____ CASE MANAGER LYNDA COURTNEY
PROJECT EXPIRATION DATE (ORD.970905) _____ DWPZ _____ DDZ _____

Development Services Department
RELEASED FOR GENERAL COMPLIANCE: _____ ZONING P
Rev. 1 _____ Correction 1 _____
Rev. 2 _____ Correction 2 _____
Rev. 3 _____ Correction 3 _____

Final plat must be recorded by the Project Expiration Date, if applicable. Subsequent Site Plans which do not comply with the Code current at the time of filing, and all required Building Permits and/or a notice of construction (if a building permit is not required), must also be approved prior to the Project Expiration Date.

SPC-2016-0287C

IF THIS SHEET IS NOT 36'' X 24'', IT IS A REDUCED PRINT. Sep 06, 2016 - 11:24am Drawing name: J:\1139-Onion Creek Fire EMS\00-DRAWINGS\PERMIT\1139--C-ES PLAN.dwg

STATE OF TEXAS
JOHN R. KING
58429
LICENSED PROFESSIONAL ENGINEER
9/6/2016

CHAN & PARTNERS CONSULTING CIVIL ENGINEERS
CHAN & PARTNERS ENGINEERING, LLC
4319 JAMES CASEY STREET, #300
AUSTIN, TEXAS 78745
512-480-8185 (PH) ♦ 512-480-8811 (FAX)
E-mail: info@chanpartners.com
WWW.CHANPARTNERS.COM
TEXAS REGISTRATION NO. F-13013

AUSTIN ONION CREEK FIRE & EMS STATION
11112 OLD SAN ANTONIO ROAD
AUSTIN, TEXAS 78748

CITY OF AUSTIN FOUNDED 1839

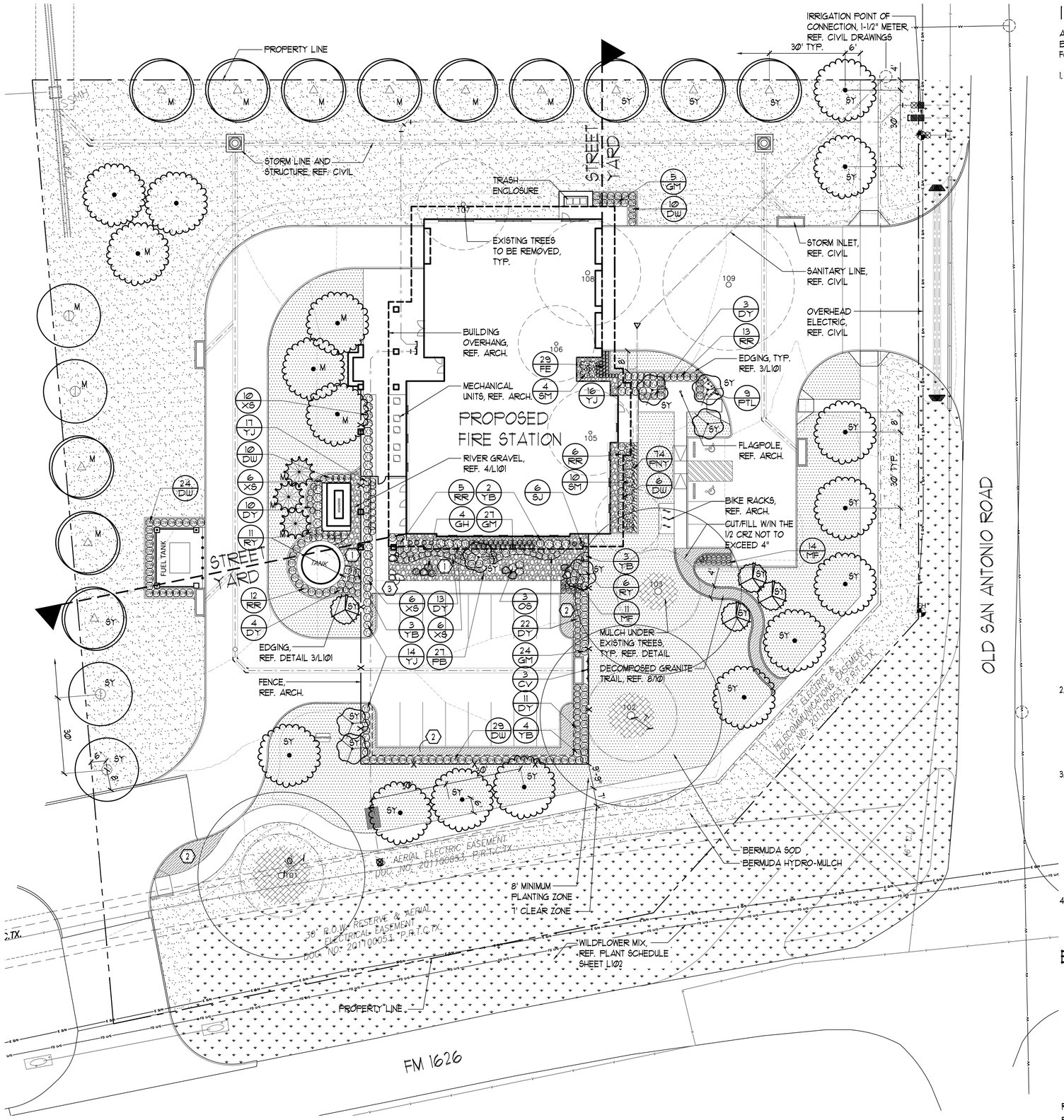
REVISIONS

DATE	9/6/2016
DRAWN BY	CD
CHECKED BY	JRK
PROJECT NO.	214106.00

ES DETAILS 2

C2.3

COPYRIGHT © 2015 BROWN REYNOLDS WATFORD ARCHITECTS, INC.



IRRIGATION NOTES.:

AUTOMATIC IRRIGATION SYSTEM SHALL BE DESIGNED AND SEALED BY A LICENCED IRRIGATOR AND SHALL COMPLY WITH THE FOLLOWING REQUIREMENTS.:

1. IRRIGATION SYSTEM MUST BE DESIGNED AND INSTALLED SO THAT.:
   - 1.1. THERE IS NOT DIRECT OVERSPRAY ONTO NON-IRRIGATED AREAS.
   - 1.2. THE SYSTEM DOES NOT INCLUDE SPRAY IRRIGATION ON AREAS LESS THAN SIX (6) FEET WIDE (SUCH AS MEDIANS, BUFFER STRIPS, AND PARKING LOT ISLANDS.)
   - 1.3. ABOVE-GROUND IRRIGATION EMISSION DEVISES ARE SET BACK AT LEAST 6 (6) INCHES FROM IMPERVIOUS SURFACES.
   - 1.4. THE IRRIGATION SYSTEM HAS A MASTER VALVE.
   - 1.5. CIRCUIT REMOTE CONTROL VALVES HAVE ADJUSTABLE FLOW CONTROLS.
   - 1.6. SERVICEABLE IN-HEAD CHECK VALVES ARE ADJACENT TO PAVED AREAS WHERE ELEVATION DIFFERENCES MAY CAUSE LOW HEAD DRAINAGE.
   - 1.7. THE IRRIGATION SYSTEM HAS S CITY-APPROVED WEATHER BASED CONTROLLER.
   - 1.8. AN AUTOMATIC RAIN SHUT-OFF DEVICE SHUTS OFF THE IRRIGATION SYSTEM AUTOMATICALLY AFTER NOT MORE THAN A ONE-HALF INCH ($\frac{1}{2}$") RAINFALL.
   - 1.9. ZONE VALVES ARE CIRCUITS ARE SEPARATED BASED ON PLANT WATER REQUIREMENTS.
   - 1.10. AN IRRIGATION EMISSION DEVICE (SUCH AS SPRAY, ROTOR, OR DRIP EMITTER) DOES NOT EXCEED THE MANUFACTURER'S RECOMMENDED OPERATING PRESSURE.
   - 1.11. NO COMPONENT OF THE IRRIGATION SYSTEM DEVIATES FROM THE MANUFACTURER'S RECOMMENDED USE OF THE PRODUCT.
   - 1.12. ALL MAINLINE AND LATERAL LINE PIPING AND CONTROL WIRES UNDER PAVING SHALL BE TWICE (2X) THE DIAMETER OF THE PIPE TO BE SLEEVED. MAINLINE SLEEVES SHALL BE ADEQUATE SIZE TO ALLOW FOR REMOVAL AND REPAIR OF PIPING. CONTROL WIRE SLEEVES SHALL BE OF SUFFICIENT SIZE FOR THE REQUIRED NUMBER OF WIRES UNDER PAVING.
   - 1.13. ALL SLEEVES, MAIN LINES, AND LATERAL LINES SHALL BE SCHEDULE 40 PIPE. NO CLASS PIPE WILL BE ALLOWED.
   - 1.14. CONTRACTOR TO INSTALL ALL BACKFLOW PREVENTION DEVICES AND ALL PIPING BETWEEN THE POINT OF CONNECTION AND THE BACKFLOW PREVENTER AS PER LOCAL AND GOVERNING AUTHORITIES.
   - 1.15. FINAL LOCATION OF THE BACKFLOW PREVENTER AND AUTOMATIC CONTROLLER(S) SHALL BE APPROVED BY THE OWNER'S AUTHORIZED REPRESENTATIVE.
   - 1.16. 120 VAC ELECTRICAL POWER SOURCES AT CONTROLLER LOCATION SHALL BE PROVIDED BY OTHERS. THE IRRIGATION CONTRACTOR SHALL MAKE THE FINAL CONNECTION FROM THE ELECTRICAL SOURCE TO THE CONTROLLER.
   - 1.17. ALL HEADS, VALVE BOXES, ETC. SHALL BE BLACK IN COLOR UNLESS OWNER OPTS TO INSTALL NON-POTABLE WATER SOURCE, IN WHICH CASE ALL COMPONENTS SHALL BE PURPLE.
   - 1.18. THE IRRIGATION CONTRACTOR SHALL FLUSH AND ADJUST SPRINKLER HEADS AND VALVES FOR OPTIMUM COVERAGE WITH MINIMAL OVERSPRAY ONTO WALKS, STREETS, WALLS, ETC.
2. THE MAXIMUM SPACING BETWEEN SPRAY OR ROTARY SPRINKLER HEADS MUST NOT EXCEED THE RADIUS OF THROW OF THE HEAD UNLESS MANUFACTURER OF THE SPRINKLER HEAD SPECIFICALLY RECOMMENDS A GREATER SPACING. THE RADIUS OF THROW IS DETERMINED BY REFERENCE TO THE MANUFACTURER'S SPECIFICATIONS FOR A SPECIFIC NOZZLE AT A SPECIFIC OPERATING PRESSURE.
3. THE IRRIGATION INSTALLER SHALL DEVELOP AND PROVIDE AN AS-BUILT DESIGN PLAN AND WATER BUDGET TO THE LOCAL JURISDICTION AT THE TIME THE FINAL INSPECTION IS PERFORMED. THE WATER BUDGET SHALL INCLUDE.:
   - 3.1. A CHART CONTAINING ZONE NUMBERS, PRECIPITATION RATE, AND GALLONS PER MINUTE.
   - 3.2. THE LOCATION OF THE EMERGENCY IRRIGATION SYSTEM SHUT-OFF VALVE.
   - 3.3. A LAMINATED COPY OF THE WATER BUDGET SHALL BE PERMANENTLY INSTALLED INSIDE THE IRRIGATION CONTROLLER DOOR.
4. THE IRRIGATION INSTALLER SHALL PROVIDE A REPORT TO THE JURISDICTION ON A FORM CERTIFYING COMPLIANCE WITH LOCAL/STATE CODE WHEN THE FINAL PLUMBING INSPECTION IS PERFORMED.

EXISTING TREE LIST.:

(SURVEYED 9/10/2015)

	TAG NO.	SIZE/TYPE
	101	33" MULTI-TRUNK TEXAS ASH
	102	36" TEXAS MULBERRY
	103	33" TEXAS MULBERRY
R	~~104~~	~~13" TEXAS MULBERRY~~
R	~~105~~	~~17" TWIN MULBERRY~~
R	~~106~~	~~15" TEXAS MULBERRY~~
R	~~107~~	~~18" TEXAS ASH~~ PH
R	~~108~~	~~21" TEXAS ASH~~
R	~~109~~	~~26" TEXAS ASH~~ (H)

R= TREE TO REMOVE

PH= TREE IN POOR HEALTH, REDUCE REQUIRED MITIGATION BY 25%

SITE DEVELOPMENT PERMIT LANDSCAPE NOTES.:

1. ALL LANDSCAPED AREAS TO BE PROTECTED BY 6 INCH CURBS, WHEEL-STOPS OR OTHER APPROVED BARRIERS AS PER ECM 2.4.7(A).
2. THE OWNER WILL CONTINUOUSLY MAINTAIN THE REQUIRED LANDSCAPING IN ACCORDANCE WITH LDC 25-2-984.
3. EXISTING TREES TO BE SAVED SHALL BE PROTECTED BY FENCING BEFORE CONSTRUCTION BEGINS. NO EQUIPMENT OR MATERIALS SHALL BE STORED OR OPERATED WITHIN THE FENCED-IN AREAS. FENCES SHALL BE AT THE DRIP LINE AND COMPLETELY SURROUND THE TREE OR CLUSTERS OF TREES. NO BURNING OF DEBRIS, CLEANING FLUIDS, CONCRETE SPILLS, ETC. WILL BE ALLOWED WITHIN THESE AREAS.
4. BUFFERING OF THE STREET YARD WILL BE ACCOMPLISHED THROUGH THE COMBINATION OF TREES, SHRUBS, GRADE CHANGES, AND FENCES.
5. GRADE CHANGES THAT DO NOT APPEAR ON THE SITE PLANS SHALL BE BROUGHT TO THE ATTENTION OF THE LANDSCAPE ARCHITECT BY THE GENERAL CONTRACTOR PRIOR TO CONSTRUCTION.
6. TRENCHING SHALL NOT OCCUR WITHIN THE FENCED DRIP LINE AREAS OF EXISTING TREES.
7. SHRUB MATERIAL NOT TO EXCEED 36" O.C. UNLESS OTHERWISE SPECIFIED. GROUNDCOVERS NOT TO EXCEED 18" O.C. DURING THE TIME OF MARCH 15-OCTOBER 15 INSTALLATION OF HYDROMULCH SHALL BE COMMON BERMUDA OR SAHARA BERMUDA FOR OCTOBER 16 -MARCH 14 INSTALLATION OF HYDROMULCH SHALL BE ANNUAL OR PERENNIAL RYE WITH A SPRING APPLICATION OF COMMON BERMUDA OR SAHARA BERMUDA.
8. EDGING SHALL BE PLACED AT ALL GROUNDCOVER BEDS THAT ARE ADJACENT TO LAWNS.
9. ALL LAWN AREAS WITHIN THE LIMITS OF CONSTRUCTION SHALL BE RE-VEGETATED WITH BERMUDA SOD OR UNLESS BERMUDA 'SAHARA' OR WILFLOWER MIX IS SPECIFIED.
10. NOT MORE THAN 50% OF THE TREES AND 50% OF SHRUBS PROPOSED WILL BE OF THE SAME SPECIES.
11. AN AUTOMATIC IRRIGATION SYSTEM SHALL BE INSTALLED. SEE IRRIGATION NOTES IN THESE DRAWINGS FOR REQUIREMENT.
12. IF ESTABLISHING VEGETATION DURING ANY STAGE OF DROUGHT, SECTION 6-4-30 MAY REQUIRE A VARIANCE. CONTACT AUSTIN WATER CONSERVATION STAFF AT (512-974-2199 OR AT WATERUSECOMPVAR@AUSTINTEXAS.GOV.

TREE LABEL LEGEND.:

SY= REQUIRED STREET YARD OR SUBCHAPTER E TREE, COUNTING MITIGATION OVER 15"

M= PROPOSED TREE COUNTING FULL MITIGATION

CONSTRUCTION NOTES.:

1. RIVER GRAVEL, REF. DETAIL 4/L101
2. GRANITE GRAVEL, REF. DETAIL 5/L101
3. FLAGSTONE, REF. DETAIL 7/L101

LANDSCAPE CERTIFICATION

I, MICHAEL R. FISHBAUGH, DO HEREBY CERTIFY THAT THE PLANS FOR THE DEVELOPMENT PROJECT LOCATED AT F.M. 1626 AND OLD SAN ANTONIO ROAD, SATISFY THE REQUIREMENTS OF THE LDC-25-2 OF THE CITY OF AUSTIN LAND DEVELOPMENT CODE, AND ALL AMENDMENTS.

MICHAEL R. FISHBAUGH — 9/19/2016 DATE

COLEMAN & ASSOCIATES

ALL RESPONSIBILITY FOR THE ADEQUACY OF THESE PLANS REMAINS WITH THE LANDSCAPE ARCHITECT WHO PREPARED THEM. IN REVIEWING THESE PLANS, THE CITY OF AUSTIN MUST RELY ON THE ADEQUACY OF THE WORK OF THE LANDSCAPE ARCHITECT.

NORTH — SCALE IN FEET (1"=20')

0 5 10 20 50

SITE PLAN RELEASE — Sheet ___ of ___

FILE NUMBER: SPC-2016-0287C EXPIRATION DATE:
CASE MANAGER: LYNDA COURTNEY APPLICATION DATE:
APPROVED ADMINISTRATIVELY ON:
APPROVED BY PLANNING COMMISSION ON:
APPROVED BY CITY COUNCIL ON:
Under Section 142 of Chapter 25-5 of the Austin City Code.

Signing For Director, Planning and Development Review Department

DATE OF RELEASE: ZONING: P
Rev. 1 Correction 1
Rev. 2 Correction 2
Rev. 3 Correction 3

RELEASE OF THIS APPLICATION DOES NOT CONSTITUTE A VERIFICATION OF ALL DATA. INFORMATION AND CALCULATIONS SUPPLIED BY THE APPLICANT. THE ENGINEER OF RECORD IS SOLELY RESPONSIBLE FOR THE COMPLETENESS, ACCURACY AND ADEQUACY OF HIS/HER SUBMITTAL, WHETHER OR NOT THE APPLICATION IS REVIEWED FOR CODE COMPLIANCE BY CITY ENGINEERS.

COLEMAN & ASSOCIATES
Landscape Architecture
Environmental Design

9890 Silver Mountain Drive
Austin, Texas 78737
Ph: 512-476-2090
F: 512-476-2099

1926 Cambria
San Antonio, Texas 78258
Ph: 210-492-4550
F: 210-492-9930

9511 Modesto Ave. NE
Albuquerque, New Mexico 87122
Ph: 505-433-3426

9/19/16

LANDSCAPE PLAN
CITY SUBMITTAL

ONION CREEK FIRE STATION
11112 OLD SAN ANTONIO RD.
AUSTIN, TX

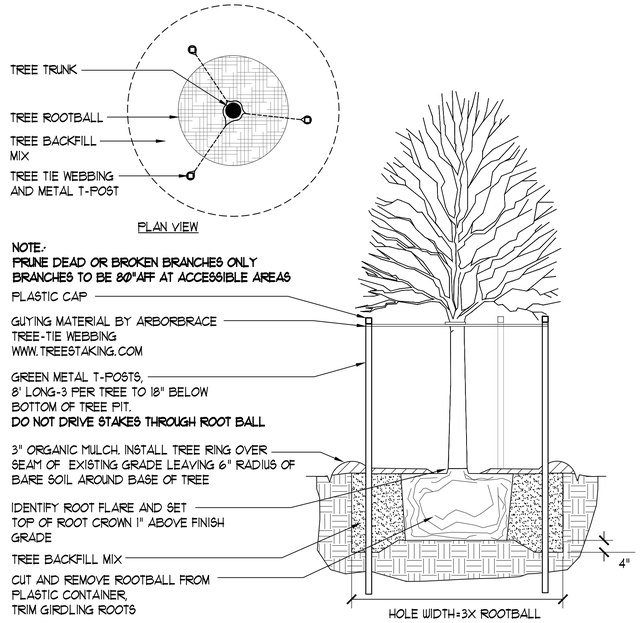
REVISIONS

SCALE:	1"=20'-0"
DRAWN BY:	JET
CHECKED BY:	MRF
APP. BY:	MRF
PROJECT NO.	342-15-01JT
DATE:	09-19-2016

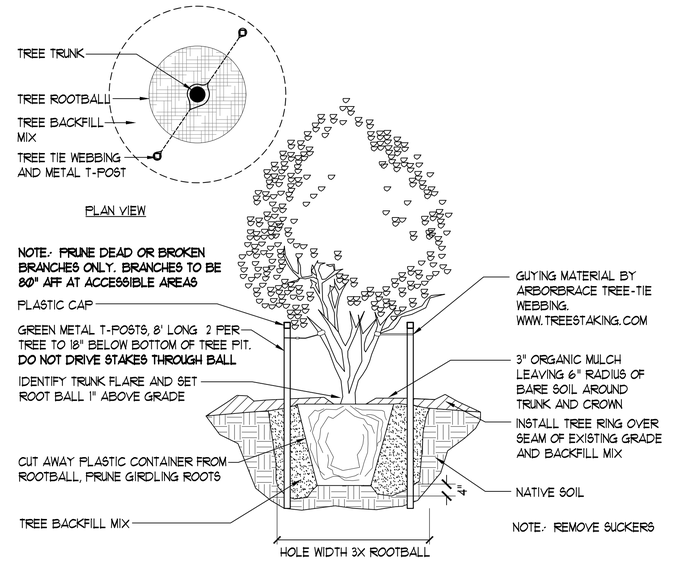
SHEET:

L100

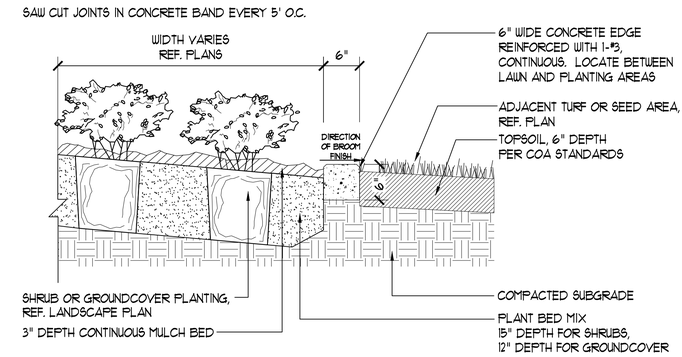
OF



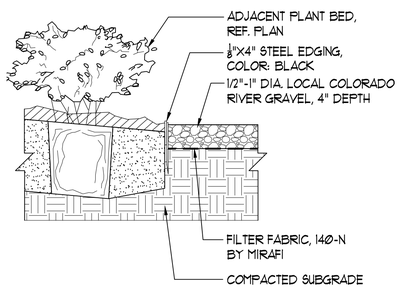
1 LARGE TREE PLANTING-CONTAINER
SECTION
SCALE: 1/2"=1'-0"



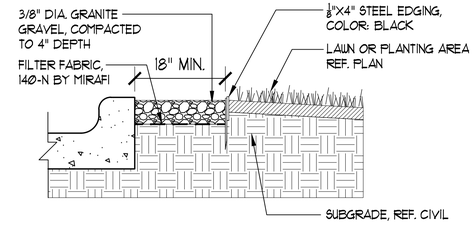
2 SMALL TREE PLANTING-CONTAINER
SECTION
SCALE: 1/2"=1'-0"



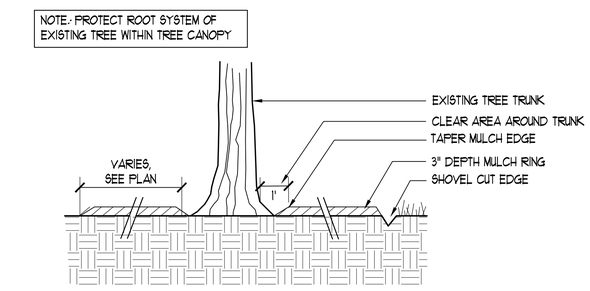
3 SHRUB PLANTING - CONCRETE EDGE
SECTION
SCALE: 1"=1'-0"



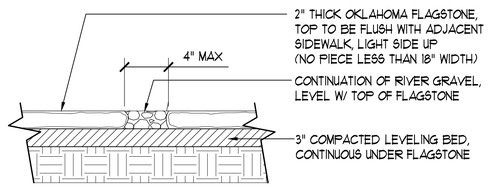
4 RIVER GRAVEL
SECTION
SCALE: 1"=1'-0"



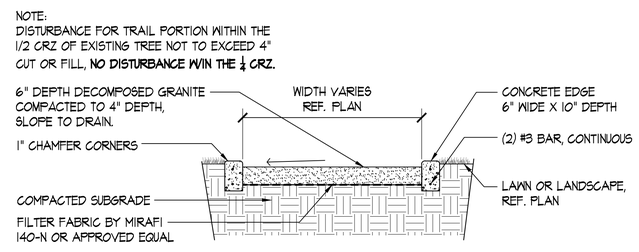
5 GRANITE GRAVEL
SECTION
SCALE: 1"=1'-0"



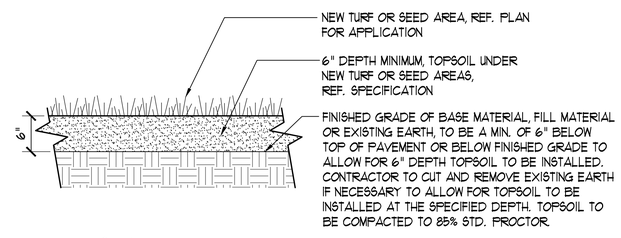
6 MULCH AT EXISTING TREE
SECTION
SCALE: 1/2"=1'-0"



7 FLAGSTONE
SECTION
SCALE: 1"=1'-0"



8 DECOMPOSED GRANITE TRAIL
SECTION
SCALE: 1/2"=1'-0"



9 TOPSOIL FOR NEW TURF
SECTION
SCALE: 1"=1'-0"

Sheet ____ of ____
FILE NUMBER: SPC-2016-0281C EXPIRATION DATE: _____
CASE MANAGER: LYNDA COURTNEY APPLICATION DATE: _____
APPROVED ADMINISTRATIVELY ON: _____
APPROVED BY PLANNING COMMISSION ON: _____
APPROVED BY CITY COUNCIL ON: _____
Under Section 142 of Chapter 25-5 of the Austin City Code.

Signing For Director, Planning and Development Review Department

DATE OF RELEASE: _____ ZONING: P
Rev. 1 _____ Correction 1 _____
Rev. 2 _____ Correction 2 _____
Rev. 3 _____ Correction 3 _____

RELEASE OF THIS APPLICATION DOES NOT CONSTITUTE A VERIFICATION OF ALL DATA, INFORMATION AND CALCULATIONS SUPPLIED BY THE APPLICANT. THE ENGINEER OF RECORD IS SOLELY RESPONSIBLE FOR THE COMPLETENESS, ACCURACY AND ADEQUACY OF HIS/HER SUBMITTAL, WHETHER OR NOT THE APPLICATION IS REVIEWED FOR CODE COMPLIANCE BY CITY ENGINEERS.

COLEMAN & ASSOCIATES
Landscape Architecture
Environmental Design

9890 Silver Mountain Drive
Austin, Texas 78737
Ph: 512-476-2090
F: 512-476-2099

1926 Cambria
San Antonio, Texas 78258
Ph: 210-492-4550
F: 210-492-9930

9511 Modesto Ave. NE
Albuquerque, New Mexico 87122
Ph: 505-433-3426

9/19/16

LANDSCAPE DETAILS
CITY SUBMITTAL

ONION CREEK FIRE STATION
11112 OLD SAN ANTONIO RD.
AUSTIN, TX

REVISIONS

SCALE:	VARIES
DRAWN BY:	JET
CHECKED BY:	MRF
APP. BY:	MRF
PROJECT NO.	342-15-01JT
DATE:	9-19-2016

SHEET:
L101
OF

COLEMAN & ASSOCIATES

Tree Evaluation

Project: Onion Creek Fire Station
Date: 07-11-2016

Tree Evaluation – Existing tree #107

Tree Evaluation Factors:

1. **Condition: 1** (Poor)
2. **Type: 3** (tree included in appendix F, 8-18.9")
3. **Size of tree trunk: 3** (14"-18.9")
4. **Aesthetics: 1** (Poor)
5. **Energy Conservation: 1** (Poor)
6. **Safety: 2** (Hazardous; medium mitigation potential)
7. **Adjacent Trees: 3** (Few adjacent trees)
8. **Water Quality Protection: 1** (Poor)
9. **Wildlife Habitat: 2** (Fair)
10. **Historical Significance: 1** (Less than 40 years old)

TOTAL EVALUATION SCORE: 18 (Low Value)

9890 SILVER MOUNTAIN DR • AUSTIN, TX 78737 • 512.476.2090 • FAX 512.476.2099
1926 CAMBRIA • SAN ANTONIO, TX 78258 • 210.492.4550
9511 MODESTO AVE. NE • ALBUQUERQUE, NM 87122 • 505.433.3426

PLANTING SCHEDULE

SMALL TREES	QTY	COMMON NAME / BOTANICAL NAME	CONT	MIN. CALIPER	HEIGHT
	3	ARIZONA CYPRESS / CUPRESSUS ARIZONICA	B & B	3" CAL.	8'-10' HT.
	7	TEXAS MOUNTAIN LAUREL / SOPHORA SECUNDIFLORA	45 GAL	3" CAL.	6'-7' HT.
	4	TREE YAUPON / ILEX VOMITORIA	45 GAL	3" CAL.	7'-8' HT.

LARGE TREES	QTY	COMMON NAME / BOTANICAL NAME	MIN. CONT	MIN. CALIPER	HEIGHT
	17	CEDAR ELM / ULMUS CRASSIFOLIA	100 GAL	4" CAL.	14'-16' HT.
	4	MONTEREY OAK / QUERCUS POLYMORPHA	100 GAL	4" CAL.	14'-16' HT.
	12	SOUTHERN LIVE OAK / QUERCUS VIRGINIANA	100 GAL	4" CAL.	14'-16' HT.

SHRUBS	QTY	COMMON NAME / BOTANICAL NAME	MIN. CONT	MAX SPACING
FE	27	BLUE FESCUE / FESTUCA GLAUCA 'ELIJAH BLUE'	1 GAL	18" o.c.
GH	4	GIANT HESPERALOE / HESPERALOE FUNIFERA	7 GAL	36" o.c.
RR	36	DOUBLE KNOCK OUT ROSE / ROSA X 'RADTKO'	5 GAL	36" o.c.
RY	17	RED YUCCA / HESPERALOE PARVIFLORA	3 GAL	36" o.c.
OS	3	SPINELESS PRICKLY PEAR / OPTUNTIA CACANAPA 'ELLISIANA'	5 GAL	36" o.c.
DW	79	DWARF WAX MYRTLE / MYRICA PUSILLA	3 GAL	36" o.c.
DY	60	DWARF YAUPON / ILEX VOMITORIA 'SCHILLINGS DWARF'	3 GAL	30" o.c.
SM	14	DWARF PALMETTO / SABAL MINOR	15 GAL	42" o.c.
SJ	6	SKYROCKET JUNIPER / JUNIPERUS SCOPULORUM 'SKYROCKET'	15 GAL	24" o.c.
XS	27	TEXAS SAGE / LEUCOPHYLLUM FRUTESCENS 'SILVERADO'	3 GAL	42" o.c.
YB	12	YELLOW BELLS / TECOMA X 'SIERRA APRICOT'	3 GAL	36" o.c.
GM	51	GULF MUHLY / MUHLENBERGIA CAPILLARIS 'REGAL MIST'	3 GAL	36" o.c.
MF	25	MEXICAN FEATHER GRASS / STIPA TENUISSIMA	1 GAL	24" o.c.
YJ	47	DWARF MAIDEN GRASS / MISCANTHUS SINENSIS 'YAKU JIMA'	3 GAL	36" o.c.
PB	27	PRIDE OF BARBADOS / CAESALPHINIA PULCHERRIMA	3 GAL	24" o.c.
CV	3	CROSS VINE / BIGNONIA CAPREOLATA 'TANGERINE BEAUTY'	3 GAL STAKED	36" o.c.

GROUND COVERS	CODE	QTY	COMMON NAME / BOTANICAL NAME	MIN. CONT	MAX SPACING
	PTL	9	PURPLE TRAILING LANTANA / LANTANA MONTEVIDENSIS 'PURPLE'	1 GAL	18" o.c.
	PNY	74	SILVER PONYFOOT / DICHONDRA ARGENTEA	4" POT	12" o.c.

TURF	CODE	QTY	COMMON NAME / BOTANICAL NAME	CONT
	SOD	REF. PLAN	BERMUDA GRASS / CYNODON DACTYLON 'TIF 419' INSTALL PER COA 609S STANDARDS	SOD
	SBG	REF. PLAN	SAHARA BERMUDA GRASS / CYNODON DACTYLON 'SAHARA' INSTALL PER COA 609S STANDARDS	HYDRO-MULCH
	WW	REF. PLAN	WILDFLOWER MIX - NATIVE TRAIL MIX BY NATIVE AMERICAN SEED - APPLY AT ¼ LB. PER 250 SF. INSTALL PER COA 609S STANDARDS	HYDRO-MULCH

NOTES:
QUANTITIES ABOVE ARE FOR CONTRACTOR'S CONVENIENCE FOR PRICING ONLY.
ALL PLANT QUANTITIES TO BE VERIFIED ON PLANS. PLAN GRAPHICS SHALL PREVAIL FOR ANY DISCREPANCIES.

STREETYARD

	REQUIRED	PROVIDED
TOTAL SITE AREA		109,235 S.F.
TOTAL STREETYARD AREA		68,268 S.F.
STREETYARD LANDSCAPE (20%) + EXISTING TREE CREDIT	13,653 S.F.	43,738 S.F.
TREES (STREET YARD)	34	34
EXISTING TREE CREDIT (225 SF X 1.25=)		0 SF
2" DIAMETER TO 6" DIAMETER		0 X 1 = 0
6" DIAMETER OR GREATER		3 X 2 =6
PROPOSED TREES		28

PARKING LOT LANDSCAPE AREA

20 PARKING SPOTS IN THE STREETYARD
LANDSCAPE AREA REQ.: 20 SPACES / 12 = 1.67 1.67 x 90 = 150 S.F.
LANDSCAPE AREA PROVIDED = 427 S.F.
0 PARKING SPOTS IN NON-STREETYARD

INNOVATIVE WATER MANAGEMENT

TOTAL REQUIRED LANDSCAPE AREA	13,856 S.F.
50% OF TOTAL REQUIRED LANDSCAPE AREA	6,928 S.F.
PROVIDED IRRIGATION AREA BY CISTERN	19,152 S.F.
SHRUB AND GROUNDCOVER BEDS	3,410 S.F.
ALL SOD AREAS	15,742 S.F.

COORDINATE W/ CIVIL/ARCHITECTURAL PLANS FOR IRRIGATION BY CISTERN

BUFFERING POINTS

	SIZE	QTY	PREFERRED		PROVIDED	
EXISTING TREES	6" CALIPER MIN.	2	9 POINTS		18	POINTS
LARGER TREES	4" CALIPER	0	9 POINTS		0	POINTS
SMALL TREES	1.5" CALIPER	0	3 POINTS		0	POINTS
LARGE SHRUBS	5 GALLON	0	3 POINTS		0	POINTS
DECORATIVE FENCE (3' MINIMUM HEIGHT)	LN. FT.	155	3 POINTS		465	POINTS
			REQUIRED		PROVIDED	
			203	POINTS	483	POINTS

REPLACEMENT TREES FOR SITE

TREES REMOVED		
TREES 24" OR GREATER REMOVED (IN APP. F)	26.00	INCHES
TREES 19" OR GREATER REMOVED (IN APP. F)	21.00	INCHES
TREES 8"-18.9" REMOVED (IN APP. F)	63.00	INCHES
TREES 19" OR GREATER REMOVED (NOT APP. F)	00.00	INCHES
TREES LESS THAN 19" REMOVED (NOT. APP. F)	00.00	INCHES
TOTAL.:	**110.00**	**INCHES**
REPLACEMENT INCHES REQUIRED		
TREES 24" OR GREATER (IN APP. F) (300%)	78.00	INCHES
TREES 19" OR GREATER (IN APP. F) (100%)	21.00	INCHES
TREES 8"-18.9" REMOVED (IN APP. F) (50%)	31.50	INCHES
TREES 19" OR GREATER (NOT APP. F) (50%)	00.00	INCHES
TREES LESS THAN 19" REMOVED (NOT APP. F) (25%)	00.00	INCHES
18" CALIPER TREE IN POOR HEALTH (ADDITIONAL 25% REDUCTION)	-6.75	INCHES
TOTAL.:	**123.75**	**INCHES**
REPLACEMENT INCHES PROVIDED		
17 SHADE TREES (4" CAL. APPLYING 2.5")	42.50	INCHES
14 SHADE TREES (4" CAL. APPLYING 4")	56.00	INCHES
11 SMALL TREES (3" CAL. APPLYING 1.5")	16.50	INCHES
3 SMALL TREES (3" CAL. APPLYING 3")	9.00	INCHES
TOTAL.:	**124.00**	**INCHES**
MITIGATION DEFICIT (REPLACE @ $200/INCH)	00.00	INCHES

SHADED SIDEWALK CALCULATIONS

TOTAL AREA.:	3,120 S.F.
TOTAL SHADED AREA.:	1,751 S.F.
PERCENT SHADED.:	56% SHADE

URBAN FORESTRY INFORMATION

1. TOTAL APPENDIX F TREE INCHES SURVEYED	212.00
2. TOTAL APPENDIX F TREE INCHES REMOVED	110.00
3. TOTAL NON-APPENDIX F TREE INCHES REMOVED	00.00
4. TOTAL INVASIVE TREE INCHES REMOVED	00.00
5. TOTAL MITIGATION INCHES PLANTED ON SITE	124.00
6. AMOUNT TO BE PAID INTO URBAN TREE FUND	$00.00

Sheet ____ of ____
FILE NUMBER: SPC-2016-0218C EXPIRATION DATE: _____
CASE MANAGER: LYNDA COURTNEY APPLICATION DATE: _____
APPROVED ADMINISTRATIVELY ON: _____
APPROVED BY PLANNING COMMISSION ON: _____
APPROVED BY CITY COUNCIL ON: _____
Under Section 142 of Chapter 25-5 of the Austin City Code.

Signing For Director, Planning and Development Review Department

DATE OF RELEASE: _____ ZONING: P
Rev. 1 _____ Correction 1 _____
Rev. 2 _____ Correction 2 _____
Rev. 3 _____ Correction 3 _____

RELEASE OF THIS APPLICATION DOES NOT CONSTITUTE A VERIFICATION OF ALL DATA. INFORMATION AND CALCULATIONS SUPPLIED BY THE APPLICANT. THE ENGINEER OF RECORD IS SOLELY RESPONSIBLE FOR THE COMPLETENESS, ACCURACY AND ADEQUACY OF HIS/HER SUBMITTAL, WHETHER OR NOT THE APPLICATION IS REVIEWED FOR CODE COMPLIANCE BY CITY ENGINEERS.

COLEMAN & ASSOCIATES
Landscape Architecture
Environmental Design

9890 Silver Mountain Drive
Austin, Texas 78737
Ph: 512-476-2090
F: 512-476-2099

1926 Cambria
San Antonio, Texas 78258
Ph: 210-492-4550
F: 210-492-9930

9511 Modesto Ave. NE
Albuquerque, New Mexico 87122
Ph: 505-433-3426

9/19/16

REGISTERED LANDSCAPE ARCHITECT MICHAEL R. FISHBAUGH 2453 STATE OF TEXAS

PLANTING SCHEDULE + NOTES
CITY SUBMITTAL

ONION CREEK FIRE STATION
11112 OLD SAN ANTONIO RD.
AUSTIN, TX

REVISIONS

SCALE:	NONE
DRAWN BY:	JET
CHECKED BY:	MRF
APP. BY:	MRF
PROJECT NO.	342-15-01JT
DATE:	9-19-2016

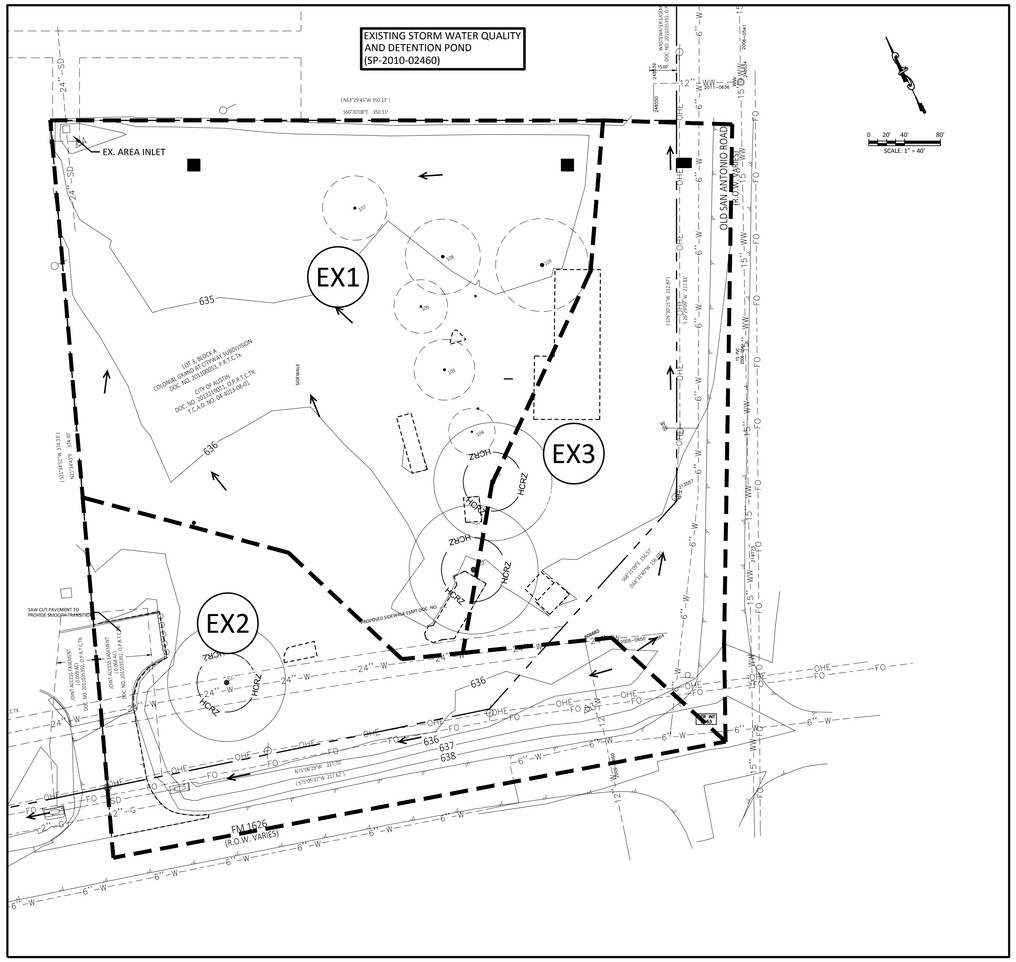
SHEET:
L102
OF

APPENDIX B
DRAINAGE MAP

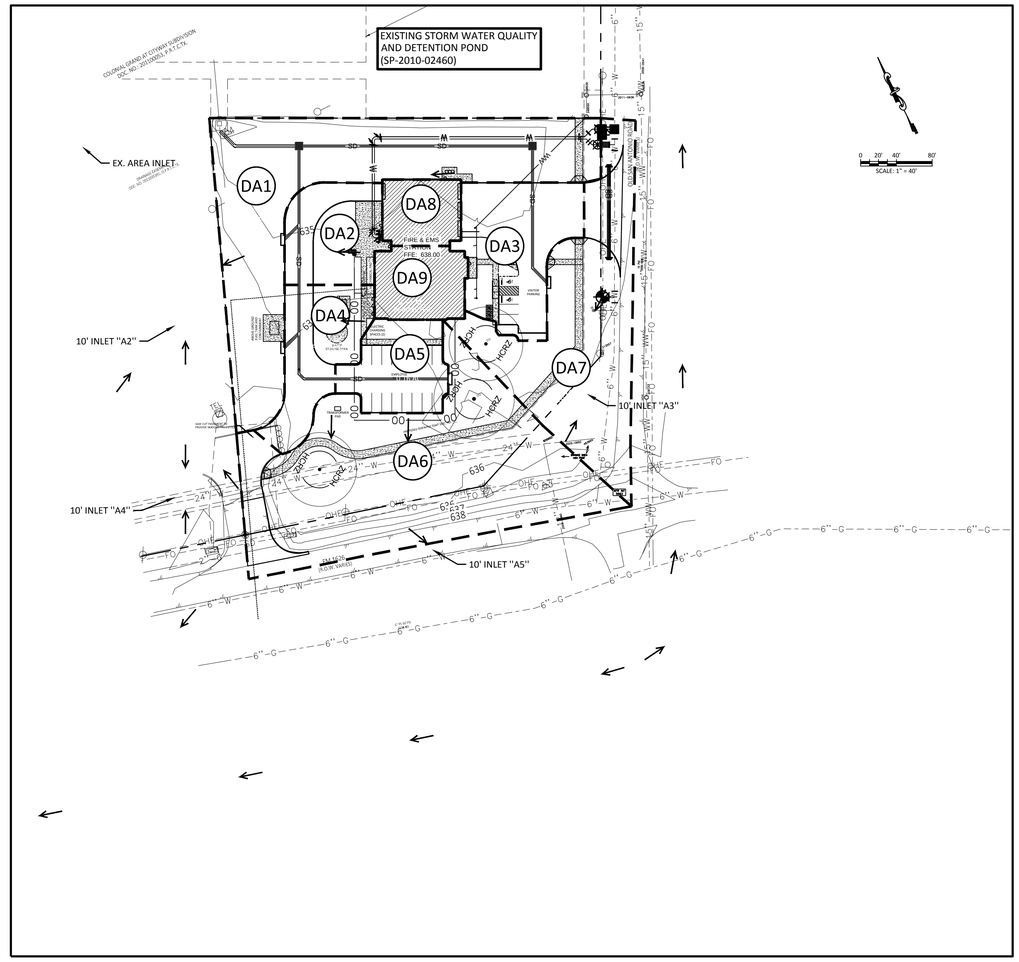
SITE LEGEND

- PROJECT BOUNDARY LINE
- EXISTING R.O.W./PROPERTY LINE
- EXISTING EASEMENT LINE
- EXISTING PAVEMENT
- PROPOSED CURB & GUTTER
- DRAINAGE BOUNDARY LINE
- (DA) DRAINAGE BOUNDARY LABEL

EXISTING DRAINAGE CONDITIONS



PROPOSED DRAINAGE CONDITIONS



NOTES:

1. STORM WATER DETENTION AND WATER QUALITY TREATMENT FOR THIS SITE IS PROVIDED BY THE COLONIAL GRAND AT CITY WAY DETENTION AND WATER QUALITY POND (SP-2010-0246C).
2. PROPOSED CONDITIONS Q25/Q100 DISCHARGE INTO OLD SAN ANTONIO ROAD. SHOULDER DITCH AT DA7= 1.5/2.2 CFS. EXISTING CONDITIONS Q25/Q100 DISCHARGE INTO OLD SAN ANTONIO ROAD SHOULDER DITCH AT EX3= 1.5/2.3 CFS
3. PROPOSED CONDITIONS Q25/Q100 DISCHARGE INTO F.M. 1626 SHOULDER DITCH AT DA6= 2.2/3.4 CFS. EXISTING CONDITIONS Q25/Q100 DISCHARGE INTO F.M. 1626 SHOULDER DITCH AT EX2= 1.5/2.3 CFS. HOWEVER, UNDER PROPOSED AND EXISTING CONDITIONS, Q25/Q100 FLOWS ARE CONTAINED WITHIN THE ROW DRAINAGE DITCH.
4. THE EXISTING AREA INLET (SP-2010-0246C) WAS DESIGNED FOR PEAK Q100= 21. 1/5 CFS AT 80% IMPERVIOUS COVER.

EXISTING HYDROLOGY CALCULATIONS

Drainage Area	Area Acres	T_c min	I_2	I_{10}	I_{25}	I_{100}	C_2	C_{10}	C_{25}	C_{100}	Q_2 cfs	Q_{10} cfs	Q_{25} cfs	Q_{100} cfs
EX 1	1.55	36.85	2.37	3.60	4.35	5.73	0.21	0.25	0.29	0.36	0.8	1.4	2.0	3.2
EX 2	0.85	31.38	2.61	3.96	4.77	6.27	0.28	0.32	0.36	0.43	0.6	1.1	1.5	2.3
EX 3	0.75	32.83	2.54	3.86	4.65	6.12	0.34	0.39	0.43	0.51	0.7	1.1	1.5	2.3

PROPOSED - HYDROLOGY CALCULATIONS

Drainage Area	Area Acres	T_c min	I_2	I_{10}	I_{25}	I_{100}	C_2	C_{10}	C_{25}	C_{100}	Q_2 cfs	Q_{10} cfs	Q_{25} cfs	Q_{100} cfs
DA 1	0.72	21.87	3.21	4.84	5.80	7.55	0.21	0.26	0.30	0.37	0.5	0.9	1.2	2.0
DA 2	0.17	6.27	5.41	8.06	9.53	11.91	0.55	0.62	0.67	0.75	0.5	0.9	1.1	1.6
DA 3	0.27	5.00	5.76	8.57	10.11	12.54	0.64	0.72	0.76	0.85	1.0	1.7	2.1	2.9
DA 4	0.19	6.35	5.39	8.03	9.50	11.87	0.58	0.65	0.70	0.78	0.6	1.0	1.3	1.8
DA 5	0.16	5.00	5.76	8.57	10.11	12.54	0.64	0.71	0.76	0.85	0.6	0.9	1.2	1.7
DA 6	0.89	21.31	3.26	4.90	5.88	7.65	0.33	0.38	0.42	0.50	1.0	1.7	2.2	3.4
DA 7	0.54	21.06	3.28	4.93	5.91	7.69	0.37	0.42	0.47	0.54	0.7	1.1	1.5	2.2
DA 8	0.09	5.00	5.76	8.57	10.11	12.54	0.73	0.81	0.86	0.95	0.4	0.7	0.8	1.1
DA 9	0.12	5.00	5.76	8.57	10.11	12.54	0.73	0.81	0.86	0.95	0.5	0.8	1.0	1.4

DA8 drains west onto DA2
DA9 drains south onto DA5

SITE PLAN RELEASE

SITE PLAN APPROVAL SHEET 9 OF 33
FILE NUMBER: SPC-2016-0287C APPLICATION DATE: 6-22-2016
APPROVED BY COMMISSION ON _____ UNDER SECTION 142 OF
CHAPTER 25-5 OF THE CITY OF AUSTIN CODE.
EXPIRATION DATE (25-5-81, LDC) _____ CASE MANAGER LYNDA COURTNEY
PROJECT EXPIRATION DATE (ORD.#970905) _____ DWPZ _____ DDZ _____

Development Services Department
RELEASED FOR GENERAL COMPLIANCE: _____ ZONING P
Rev. 1 _____ Correction 1 _____
Rev. 2 _____ Correction 2 _____
Rev. 3 _____ Correction 3 _____

Final plat must be recorded by the Project Expiration Date, if applicable. Subsequent Site Plans which do not comply with the Code current at the time of filing, and all required Building Permits and/or a notice of construction (if a building permit is not required), must also be approved prior to the Project Expiration Date.

SPC-2016-0287C

IF THIS SHEET IS NOT 36'' X 24'', IT IS A REDUCED PRINT. Sep 06, 2016 - 11:26am Drawing name: J:\1139-Onion Creek Fire EMS\00-DRAWINGS\PERMIT\1139--C-Proposed DA.dwg

STATE OF TEXAS
JOHN R. KING
59429
LICENSED PROFESSIONAL ENGINEER
9/6/2016

CHAN & PARTNERS CONSULTING CIVIL ENGINEERS
CHAN & PARTNERS ENGINEERING, LLC
4319 JAMES CASEY STREET, #300
AUSTIN, TEXAS 78745
512-480-8185 (PH) • 512-480-8811 (FAX)
E-mail: info@chanpartners.com
WWW.CHANPARTNERS.COM
TEXAS REGISTRATION NO. F-13013

AUSTIN ONION CREEK FIRE & EMS STATION
11112 OLD SAN ANTONIO ROAD
AUSTIN, TEXAS 78748

CITY OF AUSTIN FOUNDED 1839

REVISIONS

COPYRIGHT © 2015 BROWN REYNOLDS WATFORD ARCHITECTS, INC.

DATE 9/6/2016
DRAWN BY CD
CHECKED BY JRK
PROJECT NO. 214106.00

DRAINAGE PLAN

C3.0

APPENDIX C
SITE NOTICE

Note to contractor:

If the total disturbed acreage is five or more acres, the Contractor shall submit a Notice of Intent (NOI) to TCEQ for coverage under the Construction General Permit. The Contractor shall submit the NOI (if applicable) prior to the pre-construction conference and the Contractor will be a co-permittee for this project with the City of Austin, Department of Aviation. If there will be other Primary Operators besides the contractor, each primary operator must file an NOI and provide a copy to include in this appendix. Parties who sign the certification form and NOI must be authorized signatories per 30 TAC §305.44.

The Contractor shall insert copies of their NOI and TCEQ authorization certificate (if applicable), and the TCEQ Site Notice into Appendix C.

APPENDIX D
TPDES CONSTRUCTION GENERAL PERMIT NO. TXR 150000

For a full copy of the TCEQ permit, refer to this link

http://www.tceq.texas.gov/assets/public/permitting/stormwater/TXR150000_CGP.pdf

APPENDIX E
INSPECTION OF CONTROLS AND CORRECTIVE ACTION REPORT/CERTIFICATION FORM

(includes City of Austin, Appendix P-8 form items)

STORM WATER CONSTRUCTION SITE INSPECTION REPORT

General Information		
Location: Austin Onion Creek Fire & EMS Station 1112 Old San Antonio Road		
Date of Inspection:	**Start/End Time:**	
Inspector's Name:		
Inspector's Title:		
Inspector's Qualifications:		
Inspector's Employer:		
Inspector's Signature:		
Inspector's Contact Information	**Phone:** **E-mail:**	
Describe Present Phase of Construction:		
Type of Inspection:	☐ Regular ☐ During storm event	☐ Pre-storm event ☐ Post-storm event

Weather Information	
Has there been a storm event since the last inspection?	
☐ Yes	**Storm date and time:** **Storm duration (hours):** **Approximate amount of precipitation (inches):**
☐ No	**Number of days since last rainfall:**
Weather at time of inspection: ☐ Clear ☐ Cloudy ☐ Rain ☐ Sleet ☐ Fog ☐ Snow ☐ High winds **Other:**	**Temperature (° Fahrenheit):**
Have any discharges occurred since the last inspection? ☐ Yes ☐ No **If yes, describe and include the type of discharge (i.e. silt, mud, cement, asphalt, cloudy water):**	

Site-specific Best Management Practices				
Identify the structural and non-structural BMPs listed below on the site map. Carry a copy of the site map with you during inspections. This list will ensure that all required BMPs are inspected. BMPs will be inspected to verify that they meet the descriptions provided in Sections 3 and 4 of this SWPPP.				
BMP		**BMP Installed?**	**BMP Maintenance Required?**	**Corrective Action Needed and Comments**
1	Stabilized Construction Exits	☐Yes ☐No	☐Yes ☐No	
	Is sediment being tracked onto road?			
	Is the entry surface clean or sediment-filled?			
	Does all traffic use the entrance?			
2	Existing Vegetation	☐Yes ☐No	☐Yes ☐No	
3	Silt Fence	☐Yes ☐No	☐Yes ☐No	
	Is the bottom of the fabric still buried?			
	Is the fabric torn or sagging?			
	Are the posts tipping over?			
	How deep is the sediment?			
4	Storm Drain Inlet Protection	☐Yes ☐No	☐Yes ☐No	
5	Tracking on Roadways	☐Yes ☐No	☐Yes ☐No	
6	Spoils and Select Fill Stockpiles	☐Yes ☐No	☐Yes ☐No	
7	Staging and Materials Storage Area	☐Yes ☐No	☐Yes ☐No	
8	Dumpsters and Sanitary Facilities	☐Yes ☐No	☐Yes ☐No	
9	Concrete washout facilities are available, clearly marked, and maintained.	☐Yes ☐No	☐Yes ☐No	
10	Triangular Sediment Filter Dike	☐Yes ☐No	☐Yes ☐No	

11	Rock Berm	☐Yes ☐No	☐Yes ☐No	
12	Impacts of sediment-laden water from de-watering are mitigated, as required.	☐Yes ☐No	☐Yes ☐No	
13	Dust Control	☐Yes ☐No	☐Yes ☐No	
14	Tree Protection (City of Austin Requirement only)	☐Yes ☐No	☐Yes ☐No	
15	Grass Seeding	☐Yes ☐No	☐Yes ☐No	

Listed below are overall site issues that will be assessed during inspections. BMPs will be inspected to verify they meet the descriptions provided in Sections 3 and 4 of this SWPPP.

	BMP / Activity	Implemented?	Maintenance Required?	Corrective Action Needed and Comments
1	Litter Control – Trash from work areas is collected and placed in covered dumpsters.	☐Yes ☐No	☐Yes ☐No	
2	Sediment, road base, select fill, spoils, concrete, or debris, are contained.	☐Yes ☐No	☐Yes ☐No	
3	Demolition debris is contained.	☐Yes ☐No	☐Yes ☐No	
4	Oil and chemical products are stored inside Conex.	☐Yes ☐No	☐Yes ☐No	
5	Are slopes and disturbed areas not actively being worked properly stabilized?	☐Yes ☐No	☐Yes ☐No	

6	Natural resource areas (e.g., streams, wetlands, mature trees, etc.) are protected with barriers or similar BMPs.	☐Yes ☐No	☐Yes ☐No	
7	Perimeter controls and sediment barriers are adequately installed (keyed into substrate) and maintained.	☐Yes ☐No	☐Yes ☐No	
8	Vehicle tire wash	☐Yes ☐No	☐Yes ☐No	
9	Vehicle and equipment fueling, cleaning, and maintenance areas are free of spills, leaks, and other deleterious material.	☐Yes ☐No	☐Yes ☐No	
10	Recordkeeping and Site Postings are being maintained.	☐Yes ☐No	☐Yes ☐No	
11	Other erosion and sedimentation control issues (describe):	☐Yes ☐No	☐Yes ☐No	
Describe any incidents of non-compliance not described above:				

All corrective actions shall be implemented before the following SWPPP inspection.

CERTIFICATION OF COMPLIANCE:

I certify that this project is in compliance with the TPDES Construction General Permit TXR150000 for Storm Water Discharges from Construction Activities. I certify under penalty of law that this document and all attachments were prepared under my direction or supervision in accordance with a system designed to assure that qualified personnel properly gathered and evaluated the information submitted. Based on my inquiry of the person or persons who manage the system, or those persons directly responsible for gathering the information, the information is, to the best of my knowledge and belief, true, accurate, and complete. I am aware that there are significant penalties for submitting false information, including the possibility of fine and imprisonment for knowing violations.

I further certify that I am authorized under 30 Texas Administrative Code §305.44 to sign this document and can provide documentation in proof of such authorization upon request.

Name:

Title:

Signature: _____ Date: _____

APPENDIX F
SWPPP AMENDMENT AND UPDATE LOG

(City of Austin, Appendix P-9 form)

Project Name: *Austin Onion Creek Fire and EMS Station*

SWPPP Contact:

Amendment No.	Date of Amendment	Description of the Amendment	Amendment Prepared by [Name(s) and Title]	Signature

Note to contractor:
The contractor must record amendments or updates to the SWPPP throughout the project and keep this form current for review by TCEQ, upon request.

APPENDIX G
RECORD OF CONSTRUCTION ACTIVITY

(City of Austin, Appendix P-8 form)

Project Name: *Onion Creek Fire & EMS Station Facility*

SWPPP Contact:

CONSTRUCTION ACTIVITIES LOG

Name of Supervisor or Inspector	Start Date	End Date	Major Grading Activities	Temporary Suspension of Construction Activities	Permanent Suspension of Construction Activities	Initiation of Stabilization Measures	Comments

Date	Additional Changes

Note to contractor:
The contractor must record the dates of major construction activity throughout the project and keep this form current for review by TCEQ, upon request.

DRAFT

APPENDIX H
INSPECTOR CERTIFICATIONS

(as per City of Austin, Appendix P-1)

DRAFT

Note to contractor:

Insert copies of inspector's certifications. As per the City of Austin Notes for Erosion Control, Item 6 (see Plans in Appendix C), storm water inspections must be conducted by a Certified Erosion Sediment Storm Water Inspector (CESSWI), Certified Professional in Erosion and Sedimentation Control (CPESC) or Certified Inspector of Sedimentation and Erosion Controls (CISEC).

DRAFT

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

Documents related to this section will include the construction drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including the General Conditions, Section 00700, Supplemental General Conditions, Section 00810, and other Division 1 requirements.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. This section describes the preconstruction conference and other Project related meetings which may be held on a routine schedule throughout the duration of the Project.

B. The CONTRACTOR, or his authorized representative(s), shall attend all Project related meetings as indicated herein. The CONTRACTOR's representatives, as a minimum, shall include his Project Manager and Superintendent. Other CONTRACTOR's representatives may attend Project related meetings; however, there shall be a maximum of four (4) CONTRACTOR's representatives at any one meeting unless the ARCHITECT approves a larger number.

C. The CONTRACTOR shall provide all pertinent reports, copies of reports, etc., for each meeting as may be required by this or other sections of the Contract.

1.3 PARTNERING WORKSHOP

A. To complete this work most beneficially for all parties, the Owner desires to form a Partnering Team among the Owner, Engineer/Architect, Contractor, and Subcontractor(s). This relationship will draw on the strength of all parties to identify and achieve mutual goals. The objectives are effective and efficient contract performance, intended to achieve completion within budget, on schedule, and in accordance with the drawings and specifications.

B. The Owner will schedule a Partnering Workshop independent of or in conjunction with the Preconstruction Conference, to facilitate the project objectives. The partnering relationship will be multilateral in makeup and participation will be totally voluntary.

1.4 PRECONSTRUCTION CONFERENCE

A. Attendees

A preconstruction conference shall be held as soon after the award and execution of the Contract as possible and before any Work at the site is started. The conference will be held at a location selected by the Owner's Project Manager. The Owner's Project Manager shall prepare and distribute the meeting agenda, preside over the conference, and may distribute meeting minutes. The conference shall be attended by:

1. CONTRACTOR's Project Manager.
2. CONTRACTOR's Superintendent.
3. Any Subcontractors' and/or Suppliers' representatives whom the CONTRACTOR may desire to invite or whom the ENGINEER/ARCHITECT or OWNER may request to attend.
4. ARCHITECT's representative.
5. OWNER's Project Manager.
6. OWNER's REPRESENTATIVE

7. OWNER's Sponsor Department Representative.
8. Representative from the City of Austin, Transportation Department if a traffic management plan is required.
9. Representative from the City of Austin, Watershed Protection and Development Review Department, Environmental Inspection Division, if site erosion / sedimentation controls are required.
10. Representative from the City of Austin, Transportation Department if utility coordination has occurred through the Austin Utility Location and Coordination Committee.
11. Representative from the City of Austin, Contract Management Department, Contract Administration Division, to discuss wage.
12. Representative from the City of Austin, Small and Minority Business Resources Department to discuss M/WBE compliance.

B. Meeting topics

The topics to be discussed may include, but will not be limited to, the following items:

1. Introduction of persons attending the meeting.
2. General project description, including length of contract and liquidated damages.
3. Key personnel associated with the construction (may include, but is not limited to the following):
   - CONTRACTOR's Project Manager
   - CONTRACTOR's Superintendent
   - OWNER's Project Manager
   - ARCHITECT's representative
   - OWNER's Sponsor Department Representative.
   - Representatives of the various utilities.
4. Lines of communication and chains of command.
5. Wage and personnel records and reporting requirements.
6. Subcontractors and suppliers.
7. Submittal review and approval procedure. Submittals may include, but are not limited to the following:
   - Letter stating the name and qualifications of the CONTRACTOR's Superintendent
   - Letter(s) from the Subcontractor(s) listing their salaried specialists
   - If applicable, a letter designating the Registered Professional Land Surveyor
   - If applicable, a letter designating the Safety Representative (for general project safety) and the "Competent Person" for excavation safety
   - Excavation Safety Systems Plan
   - Schedule of Values
   - Schedule for submittals
   - Shop drawings
   - Construction schedule (The schedule shall indicate the phases of work in which subcontractors will be participating. Subcontractors shall be indicated by name.)
   - Payroll reports
   - Substitution of subcontractors
   - Non-use of asbestos materials affidavit

- Appropriate safety training certificates for workers that will initially be on site
- Documentation for all workers initially on site who are governed by a prevailing wage classification as described in Section 00830.
- Construction Equipment Emissions Reduction Plan

8. Job and traffic safety.
9. Permits.
10. Utility coordination report.
11. Notification of property owners and other affected by the project
12. Job meetings.
13. Use of the site for construction, storage, staging, etc., and interrelationship with other contracts.
14. Equal opportunity requirements.
15. Laboratory testing of material requirements.
16. Inventory of materials stored on site provisions.
17. Progress estimate and payment procedure.
18. Posting of signs.
19. Project safety.
20. Prompt payment procedure.
21. Review of contract - addenda, supplementary general conditions, special provisions, special specifications, and other unique project items.
22. Other

1.5 JOB MEETINGS

A. General

Job meetings shall be held as deemed necessary by the ENGINEER/ARCHITECT or OWNER or as requested by the CONTRACTOR throughout the duration of the Project. The meetings shall be held at a location selected by or approved by the Owner's Representative. The OWNER's REPRESENTATIVE, as agreed to, shall preside over the meeting and issue meeting minutes.

B. Attendees

Job meetings will be attended by the following:

1. CONTRACTOR's Project Manager, when requested to attend.
2. CONTRACTOR's Construction Superintendent.
3. Any subcontractors' and/or suppliers' representatives whom the CONTRACTOR may desire to invite or whom the ARCHITECT or OWNER requests to attend.
4. OWNER's REPRESENTATIVE
5. ARCHITECT's representative(s), if needed or required.
6. OWNER's PROJECT MANAGER, if needed or required
7. OWNER's Sponsor Department representative(s), if needed or required.

C. Meeting topics

The topics will include, but not necessarily be limited to, the following subjects:

1. Review of previous meetings' notes and update of pertinent information and Project status.
2. Identification and discussion of new job related construction problems. Such discussion will be toward resolving identified problems.
3. Review work accomplished to date and establish proposed construction activities for the upcoming week(s).
4. Discuss the status of or need for change orders.
5. Check of required bonds and insurance certificates (including Workers' Compensation Insurance verification for CONTRACTOR's, Subcontractor's, and Sub-Subcontractor's employees as stated in Section 00700, General Conditions, 5.2 Workers' Compensation).
6. Status of pay requests.
7. Work in progress.
8. Review and update construction schedule.
9. Review of submittals schedule and status of submittals.
10. Status of SMBR Compliance Plan.
11. Status of Safety Training certificates for all new workers on project.
12. Other.

1.6 OTHER MEETINGS

Other meetings shall be held from time to time as may be requested by the CONTRACTOR, the ENGINEER/ARCHITECT, or the OWNER. The time and place of the meetings shall be as mutually agreed upon. The attendance at the meetings shall be as requested by the party requesting the meeting.

END

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS:

The Contractor prepares submittals. Drawings and general provisions of Contract, including Section 00700, "General Conditions"; Section 00810, "Supplemental General Conditions"; Division 1 requirements and City of Austin Technical Specifications and Special Provisions thereto, should be used as the related documents for this requirement. Attachment 1 lists the submittals that have been identified for this project.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. This Section includes administrative and procedural requirements for submittals required for performance of the Work, including the following:

1. Security plan.
2. Contractor's construction schedule.
3. Submittal schedule.
4. Shop drawings.
5. Product data.
6. Samples.
7. Quality assurance and quality control submittals, including calculations, mix designs and substantiating test results.

B. Administrative Submittals: Refer to other Division 1 Sections and other Contract Documents for requirements for administrative submittals. Such submittals include, but are not limited to, the following:

1. Permits.
2. Applications for Payment.
3. Performance and Payment bonds.
4. Insurance certificates.
5. Monthly Subcontractors expense report.
6. Non-use of asbestos affidavits

C. Related Sections: The following Sections contain requirements that relate to this Section:

1. Section 00700, "General Conditions"; Section 00810, "Supplemental General Conditions"; "Measurement and Payment" specifies requirements for submittal of the Schedule of Values.
2. Division 1, Section 01200, "Project Meetings" specifies requirements for submittal and distribution of meeting and conference minutes.
3. Section 00700, "General Conditions"; Section 00810, "Supplemental General Conditions"; "Contract Close-out" specifies requirements for submittal of Project Record Documents and warranties at project close-out.
4. Section 00700, "General Conditions" Article 6.2.4 specifies requirements for Substitutes and "Approved Equal" Items.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS - not used

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES

Contractor shall be responsible for the following:

A. Coordination: Coordinate preparation and processing of submittals with performance of construction activities. Transmit each submittal sufficiently in advance of performance of related construction activities to avoid delay.

1. Coordinate each submittal with fabrication, purchasing, testing, delivery, other submittals, and related activities that require sequential activity.

2. Coordinate transmittal of different types of submittals for related elements of the Work so processing will not be delayed by the need to review submittals or resubmittals concurrently.

   a. The E/A reserves the right to withhold action on a submittal requiring coordination with other submittals until all related submittals are received.

3. Processing: To avoid the need to delay installation as a result of the time required to process submittals, allow sufficient time for submittal review, including time for resubmittals.

   a. Allow fourteen (14) calendar days for initial review. Allow additional time if the Engineer must delay processing to permit coordination with subsequent submittals.

   b. If an intermediate submittal is necessary, process the same as the initial submittal.

   c. Allow fourteen (14) calendar days for processing each resubmittal.

   d. No extension of Contract Time will be authorized because of failure to transmit submittals to the E/A sufficiently in advance of the Work to permit processing.

B. Submittal Preparation: Place a permanent label or title block on each submittal for identification. Indicate the name of the entity that prepared each submittal on the label or title block.

1. Provide a space approximately 4 inches by 5 inches (100 by 125 mm) on the label or beside the title block on Shop Drawings to record the Contractor's review and approval markings and the action taken.

2. Include the following information on the label for processing and recording action taken.

   a. Project name.
   b. Date.
   c. Name and address of the Contractor’s Engineer.
   d. Name and address of the Contractor.
   e. Name and address of the subcontractor.
   f. Name and address of the supplier.
   g. Name of the manufacturer.
   h. Number and title of appropriate Specification Section.
   i. Drawing number and detail references, as appropriate.

C. Number of Copies:

1. Two (2) copies of the proposed Construction schedule and subsequent revision are required.

2. Two (2) copies of the proposed Submittal schedule and subsequent revision are required.

3. Nine (9) copies of Shop Drawings, Product, Product Samples, Quality Assurance and Quality Control submittals are required.

D. Submittal Transmittal: Package each submittal appropriately for transmittal and handling. Transmit each submittal from the Contractor to the E/A through the Owner's Representative using a transmittal form (An example Transmittal Form is provided at the end of this section). The E/A will not accept submittals received from sources other than the Contractor.

1. On the transmittal, record relevant information and requests for data. On the form, or separate sheet, record deviations from Contract Document requirements, including variations and limitations. Include Contractor's certification that information complies with Contract Document requirements.

2. Number transmittals in sequence for each Series of the Specifications thus: x-xxx. The number after the dash indicates the Section of the Specifications, and the number before the dash is the sequence number of the transmittal. For example, the first item submitted related to Specification Item No. 506, "Manholes" would be labeled 1-506, the second item submitted would be labeled 2-506, etc. If the submittal item relates to a Special Provision or Special Specification, use SP506 or SS5061, for example, to indicate the applicable Specification Section. Identify resubmittals with a letter of the alphabet following the original sequence number, using "A" for the first resubmittal, "B" for the second resubmittal, etc. For example, the first resubmittal of the second item submitted for Specification SP506 would be labeled 2A-SP506.

3.2 CONTRACTOR'S CONSTRUCTION SCHEDULE

A. Construction Schedule: As described in Section 2.4.2 of Section 00700 "General Conditions", prepare a fully developed Contractor's construction schedule ("Baseline Schedule") using Microsoft Project© software unless otherwise approved by Owner's Representative. Submit Baseline Schedule prior to or at the preconstruction conference, and submit updated schedules as specified by the E/A, usually at each regularly scheduled Project Meeting and with each pay application.

1. Detail each significant construction activity and use a weekly timeframe for the schedule. Use the same breakdown of units of the Work as indicated in the "Schedule of Values."

2. With each update, revise task completion percentage and mark completed tasks.

3. Prepare the schedule on a sheet, or series of sheets, of stable transparency, or other reproducible media, of sufficient width to show data for the entire construction period.

4. Secure time commitments for performing critical elements of the Work from parties involved. Coordinate each element on the schedule with other construction activities; include minor elements involved in the sequence of the Work. Show each activity in proper sequence. Indicate graphically the critical path items and the sequences necessary for completion of related portions of the Work.

5. Indicate the phases of work in which subcontractors will be participating. Subcontractors shall be indicated by name.

6. Coordinate the Contractor's Construction Schedule with the Schedule of Values, list of subcontracts, Submittal Schedule, progress reports, payment requests, and other schedules.

7. Indicate substantial completion in advance of the date established for Final Completion to allow time for the E/A's procedures necessary for certification of Substantial and Final Completion.

B. Work Stages: Indicate important stages of construction for each major portion of the Work, including submittal review, testing, and installation.

C. Cost Correlation: Within the Baseline Schedule, provide cost information indicating planned and actual costs. On the appropriate task line(s), show dollar volume of Work performed as of the dates used for preparation of applications for payment. Refer to Section 00700, "General Conditions", Article 14 Payment to Contractor and Completion for cost reporting and payment procedures.

D. Distribution: Following response to the Baseline Schedule submittal, distribute electronic copies to the E/A, subcontractors, suppliers, and other parties required to comply with scheduled dates. Keep a copy at the Project Site at all times.

   1. When revisions are made, distribute to the same parties and post in the same locations. Delete parties from distribution when they have completed their assigned portion of the Work and are no longer involved in construction activities.

E. Schedule Updating: Revise the schedule after each meeting, event, or activity where revisions have been recognized or made and as requested by the E/A. Issue the updated schedule concurrently with the report of each meeting, or as requested by the E/A.

3.3 SUBMITTAL SCHEDULE

A. Concurrently with the development of the Contractor's Construction Schedule, prepare a complete schedule of submittals. Submit the initial Submittal Schedule along with the Construction Schedule, at, or prior to, the Pre-construction Conference.

   1. Coordinate Submittal Schedule with the list of subcontractors, Schedule of Values, and the list of products as well as the Contractor's Construction Schedule.

   2. Prepare the schedule in chronological order. Provide the following information:

      a. Scheduled date for the first submittal.
      b. Related Section number or Specification number.
      c. Submittal category (Shop Drawings, Product Data, Calculations, Test Results, or Samples).
      d. Name of the subcontractor.
      e. Description of the part of the Work covered.
      f. Scheduled date for resubmittal.
      g. Scheduled date for completion of the E/A's review.

B. Distribution: Following Owner's response to the initial submittal, print and distribute copies to the Owner's Representative, E/A, Owner, subcontractors, suppliers, and other parties required to comply with submittal dates indicated. Keep copies at the Project Site at all times.

   1. When revisions are made, distribute to the same parties and post in the same locations. Delete parties from distribution when they have completed their assigned portion of the Work and are no longer involved in construction activities.

C. Schedule Updating: Revise the schedule after each meeting or activity where revisions have been recognized or made. Issue the updated schedule concurrently with the report of each meeting, or as requested by the E/A.

3.4 CONSTRUCTION SEQUENCE PLANS

The Contractor is required to submit construction sequence plans to the City at, or prior to, the pre-construction conference for approval. The Project shall be divided into phases according to the sequence of construction given in the Drawings and traffic control plans. The Contractor shall arrange his/her work schedule to complete all Work on each phase, including street repair, any valve casting or manhole adjustments, and street overlay before moving on to the next work area.

3.5 SHOP DRAWINGS

A. Submit newly prepared information drawn accurately to scale. Highlight, circle, or otherwise indicate deviations from the Contract Documents. Do not reproduce Contract Documents or copy standard information as the basis of Shop Drawings. Standard information prepared without specific reference to the Project is not a Shop Drawing.

B. Shop Drawings include fabrication and installation Drawings, setting diagrams, schedules, patterns, templates and similar Drawings. Include the following information:

1. Dimensions;
2. Identification of products and materials included by sheet and detail number;
3. Compliance with specified standards;
4. Notation of coordination requirements; and
5. Notation of dimensions established by field measurement.
6. Sheet Size: Except for templates, patterns and similar full-size Drawings, submit Shop Drawings on sheets at least 8-1/2 inches by 11 inches but no larger than 24 inches by 36 inches.
7. Do not use Shop Drawings without an appropriate stamp indicating action taken.

3.6 PRODUCT DATA

A. Collect Product Data into a single submittal for each element of construction or system. Product Data includes printed information, such as manufacturer's installation instructions, catalog cuts, standard color charts, roughing-in diagrams and templates, standard wiring diagrams, applicable certifications and performance curves.

1. Mark each copy to show applicable choices and options. Where printed Product Data includes information on several products that are not required, mark copies to indicate the applicable information. Include the following information:

   a. Manufacturer's printed recommendations;
   b. Compliance with trade association standards;
   c. Compliance with recognized testing agency standards;
   d. Application of testing agency labels and seals;
   e. Notation of dimensions verified by field measurement; and
   f. Notation of coordination requirements.

2. Do not submit Product Data until compliance with requirements of the Contract Documents has been confirmed.

3. Distribution: Furnish copies of final submittal to installers, subcontractors, suppliers, manufacturers, fabricators, and others required for performance of construction activities. Show distribution on transmittal forms.

   a. Do not proceed with installation until a copy of the final submission of Product Data is in the Installer's possession.

   b. Do not permit use of unmarked copies of Product Data in connection with construction.

4. Potable Water, Reclaimed Water, and Wastewater Items or Projects: The Contractor shall submit descriptive information and evidence that the materials and equipment the Contractor proposes for incorporation into the Work is of the kind and quality that satisfies the specified functions and quality. Austin Water Utility Standard Products Lists (SPL) are a part of the Specifications. Contractors shall use products specified in the Contract Documents, listed on the SPLs, or approved by AWU through the process in Section 2.4.0 of the Utilities Criteria Manual. Products contained in the SPL cannot be substituted for items shown on the Drawings, or called for in the specifications, unless approved by the E/A in conjunction with the Austin Water Utility Standards Committee. Unless otherwise specified, products

current at the time of solicitation shall be installed except where an updated List has been issued to remove a product because of quality or performance issues.

3.7 SAMPLES

A. Submit full-size, fully fabricated Samples cured and finished when specified and physically identical with the material or product proposed. Samples include partial sections of manufactured or fabricated components, cuts or containers of materials, color range sets, and swatches showing color, texture, and pattern.

1. Mount or display Samples in the manner to facilitate review of qualities indicated. Include the following:

   a. Specification Section number and reference;
   b. Generic description of the Sample;
   c. Sample source;
   d. Product name or name of the manufacturer;
   e. Compliance with recognized standards; and
   f. Availability and delivery time.

2. Submit Samples for review of size, kind, color, pattern, and texture. Submit Samples for a final check of these characteristics with other elements and a comparison of these characteristics between the final submittal and the actual component as delivered and installed.

   a. Where variation in color, pattern, texture, or other characteristic is inherent in the material or product represented, submit at least 3 multiple units that show approximate limits of the variations.

   b. Refer to other Specification Sections for requirements of Samples that illustrate workmanship, fabrication techniques, details of assembly, connections, operation, and similar construction characteristics.

   c. Refer to other Sections for Samples to be returned to the Contractor for incorporation in the Work. Such Samples must be undamaged at time of use. On the transmittal, indicate special requests regarding disposition of Sample submittals.

   d. Samples not incorporated into the Work, or otherwise designated as the Owner's property, are the property of the Contractor and shall be removed from the site prior to Substantial Completion.

3. Maintain sets of Samples, as returned, at the Project Site, for quality comparisons throughout the course of construction.

   a. Unless noncompliance with Contract Document provisions is observed, the submittal may serve as the final submittal.

   b. Sample sets may be used by Owner for final acceptance of the construction associated with each set.

B. Distribution of Samples: Prepare and distribute additional sets to subcontractors, manufacturers, fabricators, suppliers, installers, and others as required for performance of the Work. Show distribution on transmittal forms.

3.8 QUALITY ASSURANCE AND QUALITY CONTROL SUBMITTALS

A. Submit quality assurance and quality control submittals, including design data, certifications, manufacturer's instructions, manufacturer's field reports, materials test results, field testing and inspection reports, and other quality-control submittals as required under other Sections of the Specifications.

B. Certifications: Where other Sections of the Specifications require certification that a product, material, or installation complies with specified requirements, submit a certification from the manufacturer or responsible Engineer certifying compliance with specified requirements.

1. Signature: Certification shall be signed by an officer of the corporation or other individual authorized to sign documents on behalf of the company.

C. Calculations: When required in the technical specification, calculations shall be prepared and stamped by a Professional Engineer registered in the State of Texas.

D. Concrete, Controlled Low Strength Material, Asphalt Stabilized Base and Hot Mix Asphaltic Concrete Mix Designs and Substantiating Test Data: Requirements for submittal of mix designs and substantiating test data are specified in the applicable Technical Specification Section. Each separate batch plant supplying ASB, HMAC and/or concrete shall submit mix designs to the Owner's Representative for review.

3.9 TECHNICAL SUBMITTALS REQUIRED

A. Technical submittals required include, but are not limited to, the following list. This list is provided as an aid to the Contractor, but is not intended to be all inclusive. The Contractor shall refer to the Technical Specifications for additional requirements.

Specification	Type of Submittal
130S - Borrow	Material Data
202S - Hydrated Lime and Lime Slurry	Material Data
203S – Lime Treatment for Materials in Place	Material Data, Mix Designs
210S - Flexible Base	Material Data, Test Results
281S – Termite Control	Product Data
301 - Asphalts, Oils, and Emulsions	Product Data
306 – Prime Coat	Product Data
307 – Tack Coat	Product Data
340 - Hot Mix Asphaltic Concrete	Material Data, Mix Designs, Test Results
360 - Concrete Pavement	Material Data, Mix Designs, Test Results
402S - Controlled Low Strength Material	Material Data, Mix Designs
403 - Concrete for Structures	Material Data, Mix Designs, Test Results
405 - Concrete Admixtures	Product Data
406 – Reinforcing Steel	Product Data
408 - Concrete Joint Materials	Product Data
409 - Membrane Curing	Product Data
485S – Concrete Paver Units for Sidewalk Ramps	Product Data
503S - Frames, Grates, Rings and Covers	Product Data
504S - Adjusting Structures	Material Data
505S - Concrete Encasement and Encasement Pipe	Material Data, Product Data
506S - Manholes	Material Data, Product Data
508S - Miscellaneous Structures and Appurtenances	Material Data, Product Data
509S - Excavation Safety Systems	Excavation Safety Systems Plan, Calculations
510 - Pipe	Material Data, Product Data
511S – Water Valves	Product Data
605S – Soil Retention Blanket	Material Data, Product Data
606S - Fertilizer	Material Data, Product Data
610S - Preservation of Trees and Other Vegetation	Product Data

620S – Filter Fabric	Product Data
642S – Silt Fence	Product Data
710S – Bicycle Racks	Product Data
802S – Project Signs	Product Data
824S – Traffic Signs	Product Data
860S – Pavement Marking Paint	Product Data
871S - Reflectorized Pavement Markers	Product Data

3.10 ARCHITECT'S ACTION

A. Except for submittals, for the record, or for information where action and return is not required, the E/A will review each submittal, mark to indicate action taken, and return within the time frame specified in Paragraph 3.1.A.3.

   1. Compliance with specified characteristics is the Contractor's responsibility.

B. Action Stamp: The E/A will stamp each submittal with a uniform, action stamp. The E/A will mark the stamp appropriately to indicate the action taken, as follows:

   1. "Reviewed": the Work covered by the submittal may proceed provided it complies with requirements of the Contract Documents. Final payment depends on that compliance.

   2. "Reviewed with Comments": the Work covered by the submittal may proceed provided it complies with notations or corrections on the submittal and requirements of the Contract Documents. Final payment depends on that compliance.

   3. "Revise and Resubmit" or "Rejected": do not proceed with Work covered by the submittal, including purchasing, fabrication, delivery, or other activity. Revise or prepare a new submittal according to the notations and resubmit without delay. Repeat if necessary to obtain different action mark.

      a. Do not use, or allow others to use, submittals marked "Revise and Resubmit" or "Rejected" at the Project Site or elsewhere where Work is in progress.

   4. Other Action: Where a submittal is for information, or for record purposes, or for special processing, or for other activity, the E/A will return the submittal marked "Record Copy", "Action Not Required" or "No Action Taken."

C. Unsolicited Submittals: The E/A will return unsolicited submittals to the sender without action.

3.11 PREPARATION AND SUBMITTAL OF CONSTRUCTION RECORD DRAWINGS

The Owner's Representative and the Contractor's Superintendent will each maintain a set of bluelines noting any changes in ink during construction of the Project. The Owner's Representative and the Contractor's Superintendent will compare bluelines at least weekly (at a time mutually acceptable to both) to exchange information and compare notes to ensure all items installed and changes are documented. The following is a recommended minimum of items to be noted:

<u>GENERAL</u>

1. Notes should be sufficiently clear to allow a draftsperson to easily make the necessary changes without the need for field checks and interpretation.
2. One complete set of Construction Record bluelines will be submitted prior to the final pay request and forwarded to the Owner.

<u>STREET RECONSTRUCTION AND OVERLAY PROJECTS</u>

1. Location, type, and quantity of all work added or deleted from the Project including repair areas, milled areas, sidewalk, ramps, curb and gutter, etc.
2. Deviations in street, sidewalk, curb and gutter location and grades from Drawings.

WATER/WASTEWATER PROJECTS

1. Type, name and model numbers of all valves (with # of turns to open/close), air release valves, drain and fire hydrants noted at locations installed.
2. Installed locations of all assignments, appurtenances and elevations which differ from those indicated on the Drawings.
3. Pipe manufacturer type and classification noted in sufficient detail to determine location and extent of each type or classification installed.
4. Modification to any standard or special details noted.
5. Location and description of pipe closures.
6. Thrust blocking locations and restrained pipe lengths, approximate dimensions and quantities noted.
7. Location, type and quantity of all addition and deletions.
8. Changes in grade.

The above list is not intended to be complete. Any information noted which could be used for future maintenance, location and construction projects is encouraged to be noted on the bluelines.

3.12 CONSTRUCTION DIARIES

The Contractor shall prepare a daily construction diary recording as a minimum the following information concerning events at the site and submit duplicate copies to the Owner's Representative at weekly intervals. The copies are to be signed by the project Superintendent as defined in Section 00700, Article 6.1.2.

1. Work performed;
2. Approximate count of Contractor's personnel, by classification, on the site;
3. List by classification, of all Subcontractors, personnel and any professionals on the site that day;
4. List of all equipment on the site by make and model;
5. High and low temperatures together with general weather conditions;
6. Start time and finish time of day's work;
7. Accidents and / or unusual events;
8. Meetings and significant decisions made;
9. Stoppages, delays, shortages and / or losses;
10. Meter readings and / or similar recordings;
11. Emergencies procedures that may have been needed;
12. Orders and requests of governing authorities;
13. Change Orders received and implemented;
14. Services connected and / or disconnected;
15. Installed equipment and / or system tests and / or startups and results;
16. Partial completions and / or occupancies; and
17. Date of substantial completion certified.

Shop Drawing Transmittal

Month XX, 2008

Transmittal No. _____
Previous Transmittal No. _____
Previous Submittal Date _____

City of Austin
Construction Inspection Division
Public Works Department
P.O. Box 1088
Austin, Texas 78767

Project Name: Austin Lakeside Drive

Attention: Owner's Representative

Enclosed are nine (9) copies of the following items for your review:

Item No.	Description	Submittal Type	Specification Section	Subcontractor/Supplier
1.	6" DI Pipe	Produce Data	510	ABC Company
2.	8" Resilient Seat Gate Valve	Product Data	511	DEF Company

Example

NOTE: Item 1 above contains a deviation from the Specifications as indicated on the item

Submitted by: _____

XYZ Company
101 Ranch Road 2974
Austin, Texas 78759

END

SECTION 01352.1

Building Project – LEED® Certification Being Pursued

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section. The requirements may or may not include reference to sustainability/LEED. Language in each section provides detailed guidelines to inform the Contractor of appropriate performance requirements for specific materials and products. All LEED/sustainable design materials, products, and methods must meet the specifications as written unless otherwise approved by the Architect. Related sections include the following:

1. Section 01300 Submittals.
2. Section 01505 Construction and Demolition Waste Management and Disposal.
3. Section 01510 Construction Indoor Air Quality Management.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. This Section includes general requirements and procedures for compliance with certain Sustainable Construction requirements, namely U.S. Green Building Council's LEED® prerequisites and credits needed for the project to achieve to obtain LEED Silver Certification under LEED **<NC version 2.2>.**

1. Some Sustainability/LEED requirements are dependent on material selections and may not be specifically identified as sustainability/LEED requirements. Compliance with requirements may be used as one criterion to evaluate substitution requests.

2. Additional Sustainability/LEED Construction requirements are dependent on Architect's design and other aspects of the Project that are not part of the Work of the Contract.

3. A copy of the LEED Project Score Card is attached at the end of this section as Appendix B, for information only.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. **Certificates of Chain-of-Custody:** Certificates signed by manufacturers certifying that wood used to make products was obtained from forests certified by an FSC-accredited certification body to comply with FSC 1.2, "Principles and Criteria." Certificates shall include evidence that mill is certified for chain-of-custody by an FSC-accredited certification body.

B. **LEED®:** Leadership in Energy & Environmental Design.

C. **Rapidly Renewable Materials:** Materials made from agricultural products that are typically harvested within a ten-year or shorter cycle. Rapidly renewable materials include products made from bamboo, cotton, flax, jute, straw, sunflower seed hulls, vegetable oils, or wool.

D. Regionally Manufactured Materials: Materials that are manufactured within a radius of 500 miles (800 km) from the Project location. Manufacturing refers to the final assembly of components into the building product that is installed at the Project site.

E. Regionally Extracted, Harvested, or Recovered Materials: Materials that are extracted, harvested or recovered and manufactured within a radius of 500 miles (800 km) from the Project site.

F. Recycled Content: The percentage by weight of constituents that have been recovered or otherwise diverted from the solid waste stream, either during the manufacturing process (pre-consumer), or after consumer use (post-consumer).

1. Spills and scraps from the original manufacturing process that are combined with other constituents after a minimal amount of reprocessing for use in further production of the same product are <u>not</u> recycled materials.
2. Discarded materials from one manufacturing process that are used as constituents in another manufacturing process are pre-consumer recycled materials.

G. Albedo: The ratio of the amount of light reflected from a material to the amount of light shone on the material ranging from 0 (black) to 1 (white). As defined by the USGBC, a high albedo material has a reflectance of at least .3. Albedo is also known as solar reflectance or reflectivity.

H. Composite agrifiber product: A board or sheet product that uses an agricultural waste product (such as straw from wheat, oats, rice, and rye) as its fiber source instead of wood.

I. Embodied energy: The total energy that a product may be said to "contain," including all energy used in growing, extracting, and manufacturing it and the energy used to transport it to the point of use. The embodied energy of a structure or system includes the embodied energy of its components plus the energy used in construction. In some cases, a material designed for energy conservation may have more energy invested in making it than it can save throughout most of its lifetime.

J. Formaldehyde: A colorless, pungent smelling gas used as an adhesive component in many glues (especially those used to make composite and laminated wood products), and as an additive in paint and other products. As a monomer, formaldehyde can cause respiratory problems, cancer, or chemical sensitivity even at very low exposure levels (National Institute for Occupational Safety and Health (NIOSH) exposure threshold level is one part per million (ppm). See urea formaldehyde below.

K. Heat island effect: When warmer temperatures (from 6 - 10°F) are experienced in urban landscapes as a result of solar energy retention on constructed surfaces. Principle surfaces that contribute to heat island effect include streets, sidewalks, parking lots, and buildings. Also called "Urban Heat Island Effect."

L. Impervious surfaces: Surfaces that promote runoff of precipitation volumes instead of infiltration into the subsurface. The imperviousness or degree of runoff potential can be estimated for different surface materials.

M. In-factory VOC Flushout: Curing and ventilating materials after manufacture in order to reduce overall VOC levels before shipping to project site.

N. Indoor Air Quality: The character of air inside a building that affects the health and well being of building occupants. According to the U.S. Environmental Protection Agency and National Institute of Occupational Safety and Health, the definition of good indoor air quality includes (1) introduction and distribution of adequate ventilation air; (2) control of airborne contaminants; and (3) maintenance of acceptable temperature and relative humidity. According to ASHRAE Standard 62-1999, acceptable indoor air quality is defined as "air in which there are no known contaminants at harmful concentrations as determined

by cognizant authorities and with which a substantial majority (80 percent or more) of the people exposed do not express dissatisfaction."

O. **Indoor Environmental Quality:** The overall character of the indoor environment that affects the health and well being of building occupants and is achieved through prevention, planning, and control of systems.

P. **Life cycle**: The consecutive, interlinked stages of a product, beginning with raw materials acquisition and manufacture and continuing with its fabrication, manufacture, construction, and use, and concluding with any of a variety of recovery, recycling, or waste management options.

Q. **Life cycle cost (LCC) of material**: The costs accruing throughout the service life of a material. Life-cycle costs address the capital costs involved in production, maintenance, and disposal, and can also include other environmentally related capital costs and societal costs.

R. **Local /regional materials:** Materials that are extracted, harvested or recovered, as well as manufactured within a 500-mile radius of the project site. See definition for manufactured below.

S. **Manufactured:** Refers to the final assembly of components into the building product before it is furnished and installed by tradesman (Reference: LEEDTM Materials & Resources credits 5.1 and 5.2)

T. **Material Safety Data Sheets (MSDS):** Occupational Safety and Health Administration (OSHA) required documents supplied by manufacturers of potentially hazardous products. MSDS contain information regarding potentially significant air-borne contaminants, precautions, steps for inspection, health effects, odor description, volatility, expected contaminants from combustion, reactivity, and procedures for cleanup.

U. **MERV:** The Minimum Efficiency Reporting Value for filtration media as determined by the ANSI/ASHRAE 52.2-1999.

V. **Off-gas/out-gas:** A process of evaporation or chemical decomposition through which vapors are released from materials. Carpeting, furniture, building materials, and wet-applied products (like paints, adhesives, and caulks) typically off-gas chemical compounds that are unpleasant to breathe and may be hazardous to installer and occupant health.

W. **Post-consumer recycled content:** The percentage (by weight) of a reclaimed waste material contained in a product. A reclaimed waste material (e.g., newspaper, magazines, beverage containers, etc.) has already served a purpose to a consumer and has been diverted or separated from waste stream for recycling.

X. **Pre-Consumer Recycled Content:** Previously referred to as Post-industrial recycled content. The percentage (by weight) of a waste material obtained from industrial processes, which are contained in a product.

Y. **Recycled material**: A material that would otherwise be destined for landfill disposal but is diverted or separated from the waste stream, reintroduced as material feedstock, and processed into marketed end products.

Z. **Reused Material:** Any item that is salvaged or reused without significant reprocessing as in a recycling process.

AA. **Source reduction:** Minimization of waste at the start of a process or activity so that there is a reduced amount of waste to recycle or dispose. Also called precycling.

BB. **Sustainable:** The condition of being able to "meet the needs of present generations without compromising those needs for future generations". Achieving a balance among extraction and renewal and environmental inputs and outputs, so as to cause no overall

net environmental burden or deficit. To be truly sustainable, a human community must not decrease biodiversity, must not consume resources faster than they are renewed, must recycle and reuse virtually all materials, and must rely primarily on resources of its own region.

CC. **Urea formaldehyde**: An adhesive resin polymer produced by reacting urea with formaldehyde (a VOC and a potential carcinogen). It is the least stable formaldehyde resin, emitting formaldehyde monomers for months or even years after manufacture. Generally used as a binder for interior composite wood products. See also formaldehyde and VOC.

DD. **Visible Transmittance (Tvis):** The ratio of total transmitted light to total incident light. In other words, the amount of light passing through a glazing surface divided by the amount of light striking the glazing surface. A higher Tvis value indicates that a greater percentage of incident light is passing through the glazing.

EE. **Volatile Organic Compound (VOC):** A large family of chemicals based on carbon and hydrogen structures that vaporize at room temperature. VOCs are one type of indoor air contaminant. They are found in many indoor sources including common building products and materials. Although thousands have been identified in indoor air, only a few are well understood and regulated. VOCs are considered unhealthful to humans - some individual VOCs are known or suspected human carcinogens or irritants to the eyes, nose, and mucous membranes. When released, VOCs can contribute to the formation of ground level ozone and smog. Formaldehyde and toluene are two examples of VOCs commonly found in building materials.

FF. **Xeriscape:** Quality landscaping that conserves water and protects the environment through its employment of seven principles: planning and design; soil analysis; appropriate plant selection; practical turf areas; efficient irrigation; use of mulches; and appropriate maintenance.

1.4 SUSTAINABILITY/LEED OBJECTIVES/GOALS

The City of Austin is committed to sustainability and expects the Project to reflect this commitment. The specific Sustainable (Design & Construction) goals for this project include:

1. Protection of the environment.
2. Limiting construction site area and disturbance of natural habitat and protection of trees and vegetation.
3. Reduction of waste created by construction activity.
4. Increasing the use of materials and products with recycled content.
5. Reliable systems.
6. Energy-efficient systems.
7. Chemically safe building materials and pest management.
8. Building materials that use less energy and create less pollution in manufacture, delivery, installation, renovation, and demolition.
9. Occupant health through good indoor air quality, thermal comfort, daylighting, views, access to the outdoors, and ergonomic work areas.

1.5 SUBMITTALS

A. ***General***: Submit additional Sustainability submittal requirements included in other sections of the Specifications. Provide completed Sustainable/LEED Construction Submittal Form with all submittals. See Appendix A.

B. ***Sustainability/LEED submittals*** are in addition to other submittals. If submitted item is identical to that submitted to comply with other requirements, submit duplicate copies as a separate submittal to verify compliance with indicated requirements.

C. ***Project Materials Cost Data***: Provide statement indicating total cost for building materials used for Project. Include statement indicating total cost of mechanical and electrical components. Include breakout of costs for Divisions 2 -10 including overhead transport and taxes and for the following categories of items:

1. Wood-based construction materials

D. ***Sustainable/LEED Construction Action Plans***: Provide preliminary submittals within 14 calendar days of date established for the Notice to Proceed indicating how the following requirements will be met.

1. Credit MR 2.1 and 2.2: Construction & Demolition Waste Management Plan complying with Division 1 Section 01505 "Construction Waste Management."

2. Credit MR 3.1 and 3.2: List of proposed salvaged and refurbished materials.

a. Identify each material that will be salvaged or refurbished, its source, and cost.

3. Credit MR 4.1 and 4.2: List of proposed materials with recycled content. Indicate cost, post consumer recycled content, and pre-consumer recycled content for each product having recycled content.

4. Credit MR 5.1 and 5.2: List of proposed regionally manufactured materials and regionally extracted, harvested, or recovered materials.

a. Identify each regionally manufactured material, its source, and cost.

b. Identify each regionally extracted, harvested or recovered material, its source, and cost.

5. Credit MR 7.0: List of proposed certified wood products.

a. Indicate each product containing certified wood, its source, and cost.

b. Include statement indicating total cost for permanently installed wood-based materials used for Project and non-rented temporary construction.

6. Credit EQ 3 and 3.1: Construction Indoor Air Quality (IAQ) Management plan complying with Division 1 Section "Construction 01510 IAQ Management."

E. ***Sustainable/LEED Construction Progress Reports***: Concurrent with each Application for Payment, submit reports comparing actual construction and purchasing activities with LEED action plans for the following:

1. Credit MR 2.1 and 2.2: Waste reduction progress reports complying with Division 1 Section "Construction & Demolition Waste Management and Disposal."

2. Credit MR 3.1 and 3.2: Salvaged and refurbished materials.

3. Credit MR 4.1 and 4.2: Recycled content.

4. Credit MR 5.1 and 5.2: Regionally manufactured materials and regionally extracted, harvested, or recovered materials.

5. Credit MR 6 and MR 7: Certified Wood Products.

F. ***LEED™ Documentation Submittals***:

Contractor shall complete the following website based LEED on-line construction phase templates at the appropriate time and provide required information documents for:

a. MR Credit 2 Construction Waste Management
b. MR Credit 3 Resource Reuse
c. MR Credit 4 Recycled Content
d. MR Credit 5 Regional Materials
e. MR Credit 6 Rapidly Renewable Materials
f. MR Credit 7 Certified Wood
g. EQ Credit 3.1 Construction IAQ Management Plan during Construction.
h. EQ Credit 3.2 Construction IAQ Management Plan before Occupancy.
i. EQ Credit 4.1 Low Emitting Materials: Adhesives and Sealants
j. EQ Credit 4.2 Low Emitting Materials: Paints and Coatings
k. EQ Credit 4.3 Low Emitting Materials: Carpet Systems
l. EQ Credit 4.4 Low Emitting Materials: Composite and Agrifiber products

Contractor shall provide the following information for others to complete credits of LEED application:

1. Credit SS 7.2: Product Data for roofing materials indicating Solar Reflective Index (SRI) and Energy Star compliance.

2. Credit SS 8.0: Product Data for interior and exterior lighting fixtures that stop direct beam illumination from leaving the building site.

3. Credit WE 2.0, 3.1 and 3.2: Product Data for plumbing fixtures indicating water consumption.

4. Prerequisite EA 3.0: Product Data for new HVAC equipment indicating absence of CFC refrigerants. Phase-out plan to replace CFC refrigerants in HVAC/R systems with CFC free refrigerants within the Construction Period.

5. Credit EA 4.0: Product Data for new HVAC equipment indicating absence of HCFC refrigerants, and for clean-agent fire-extinguishing systems indicating absence of HCFC and Halon.

6. Credit EA 5.0: Product Data and wiring diagrams for sensors and data collection system used to provide continuous metering of building energy and water consumption performance over time.

7. Credit MR 2.1 and 2.2: Comply with Division 1 Section 01505 "Construction Waste Management."

8. Credit MR 3.1 and 3.2: Receipts for salvaged and refurbished materials used for Project, indicating sources and costs for salvaged and refurbished materials.

9. Credit MR 4.1 and 4.2: Product Data and certification letter indicating percentages by weight of post-consumer and pre-consumer recycled content for products having recycled content. Include statement indicating costs for each product having recycled content.

10. Credit MR 5.1 and 5.2: Product Data indicating location of material manufacturer for regionally manufactured materials.

a. Include statement indicating cost and distance from manufacturer to Project for each regionally manufactured material.

b. Include statement indicating cost and distance from point of extraction, harvest, or recovery to Project for each raw material used in regionally manufactured materials.

11. Credit MR 6.0: Product Data for rapidly renewable materials.

a. Include statement indicating costs for each rapidly renewable material.

12. Credit MR 7.0: Documentation of wood veneer and lumber product/material qualifications:

a. Forest Stewardship Council chain-of-custody certificates documenting source of wood building components and each point of purchase from forest from which the material was harvested to incorporation into the Project.

b. Certification of compliance with the Forest Stewardship Council "Principals and Criteria" for forest management.

c. Submit vendor/supplier invoices for each certified wood product containing product name, vendor name, product cost, certified wood percentage, Forest Stewardship Council chain-of-custody certification numbers on a line-item basis. An example of this documentation can be found at the end of this section.

13. Credit EQ 1.0: Product Data and Shop Drawings for carbon dioxide monitoring system.

14. Credit EQ 3.1:

a. Construction Indoor Air Quality Management Plan.

b. Product Data for temporary filtration media indicating location used, model number and MERV value.

c. Product Data for filtration media used during occupancy indicating location used, model number and MERV value.

d. Construction Documentation: Six photographs at three different occasions during construction along with a brief description of the SMACNA approach employed, documenting implementation of the IAQ management measures, such as protection of ducts and on-site stored or installed absorptive materials.

15. Credit EQ 3.2:

a. Signed statement describing the building air flush-out procedures including the dates when flush-out was begun and completed and statement that filtration media was replaced after flush-out.

b. Product Data for filtration media used during flush-out and during occupancy.

c. Report from testing and inspecting agency indicating results of IAQ testing and documentation showing conformance with IAQ testing procedures and requirements.

16. Credit EQ 4.1: Product Data and material safety data sheets (MSDSs) for adhesives and sealants used on the interior (inside the weatherproofing system) of the building indicating all adhesives and sealants used and stating that they meet the noted requirements and indicating maximum volatile organic compound (VOC). Indicate VOC content in g/L calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA method 24). The VOC content of adhesives and sealants used must be less than the current VOC content limits of South Coast Air Quality Management District (SCAQMD) Rule #1168, and all sealants used as fillers must meet or exceed the requirements of the Bay Area Air Quality Management District Regulation 8, Rule 51.

17. Credit EQ 4.2: Product Data and material safety data sheets (MSDSs) for paints and coatings used on the interior (inside the weatherproofing system) of the building indicating chemical composition and VOC content of each product used. Indicate VOC content in g/L calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA method 24). VOC emissions from paints and coatings must not exceed the VOC and chemical component

limits of Green Seal's Standard GS-11 requirements. List all interior paints and coatings used in the building that are addressed by Green Seal Standard GS-11, GS 03 or South Coast Air Quality Management District (SCAQMD) Rule 1113 and document that they comply with the current VOC and chemical component limits of the standard. Include a summary table comparing credit requirements and actual VOC levels for each product.

18. Credit EQ 4.3: Product Data for carpet products indicating VOC content of each product used. Carpet systems must meet or exceed the requirements of the Carpet and Rug Institute's Green Label Indoor Air Quality Test Program. Product data for carpet cushion indicating it meets the requirements of the Carpet and Rug Institute's Green Label Program. Product data for all carpet adhesive indicating VOC content in grams/Liter. Carpet adhesive shall have no more than 50 g/L VOC content.

19. Credit EQ 4.4: Product Data for composite wood, agrifiber, bonding agent and laminating adhesive products indicating that products contain no added urea-formaldehyde resin.

20. Credit EQ 6.2: Product Data and Shop Drawings for sensors and control system used to provide individual airflow and temperature controls for minimum 50 percent of non-perimeter, regularly occupied space.

21. Credit EQ 7: Product Data and Shop Drawings for sensors and control system used to monitor and control room temperature and humidity.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Sustainability/LEED Coordinator: Engage a responsible person on the construction team who is familiar with Sustainable/LEED program and procedures. The LEED Coordinator may also serve as the Waste Management coordinator.

PART 2 – PRODUCTS

2.1 SALVAGED AND REFURBISHED MATERIALS

NOT USED

2.2 RECYCLED CONTENT OF MATERIALS

A. Credit 4.1 and 4.2: Provide building materials with recycled content for a minimum of 10% of the total value of all materials in Division 2 – 10 of the project, such that the sum of post-consumer recycled content plus one-half of the pre-consumer is 10% of content of the materials in the project.

1. The cost of post-consumer recycled content of an item shall be determined by dividing the weight of post-consumer recycled content in the item by the total weight of the item and multiplying by the cost of the item.

2. The cost of post consumer recycled content plus one-half of pre-consumer recycled content of an item shall be determined by dividing the weight of post-consumer recycled content plus one-half of pre-consumer recycled content in the item by the total weight of the item and multiplying by the cost of the item.

3. Do not include furniture, plumbing, mechanical and electrical components in the calculation.

4. Recycled content of materials shall be defined according to the Federal Trade Commission's "Guide for the Use of Environmental Marketing Claims," 16 CFR 260.7(e).

2.3 LOCAL/REGIONAL MATERIALS

A. Credit MR 5.1 and 5.2: Provide regionally manufactured materials with a goal of achieving 10 percent of the total value of all materials in Division 2 – 10 of the project.

2.4 CERTIFIED WOOD

A. Credit MR 7: Provide a minimum of 50 percent by cost of wood-based materials that are produced from wood obtained from forests certified by an Forest Stewardship Council (FSC) accredited certification body to comply with FSC STD-01-001, "Principles and Criteria for Forest Stewardship."

1. Wood-based materials include but are not limited to the following materials when made from made wood, engineered wood products, or wood-based panel products:

a. Rough carpentry.
b. Miscellaneous carpentry.
c. Heavy timber construction.
d. Wood decking.
e. Metal-plate-connected wood trusses.
f. Structural glued-laminated timber.
g. Finish carpentry.
h. Architectural woodwork.
i. Wood paneling.
j. Wood veneer wall covering.
k. Wood flooring.
l. Wood lockers.
m. Wood cabinets.
n. Furniture.
o. Non-rented temporary construction, including bracing, concrete formwork, pedestrian barriers, and temporary protection.

2.5 LOW-EMITTING MATERIALS

A. Credit EQ 4.1: For interior (inside the weatherproofing system) applications use adhesives and sealants that comply with the following limits for VOC content when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA method 24):

1. Wood Glues: 30 g/L.
2. Metal to Metal Adhesives: 30 g/L.
3. Adhesives for Porous Materials (Except Wood): 50 g/L.
4. Sub-floor Adhesives: 50 g/L.
5. Plastic Foam Adhesives: 50 g/L.
6. Carpet Adhesives: 50 g/L.
7. Carpet Pad Adhesives: 50 g/L.
8. Vinyl Composition Tile (VCT) and Asphalt Tile Adhesives: 50 g/L.
9. Cove Base Adhesives: 50 g/L.
10. Gypsum Board and Panel Adhesives: 50 g/L.
11. Rubber Floor Adhesives: 60 g/L.
12. Ceramic Tile Adhesives: 65 g/L.
13. Multipurpose Construction Adhesives: 70 g/L.
14. Fiberglass Adhesives: 80 g/L.
15. Structural Glazing Adhesives: 100 g/L.
16. Wood Flooring Adhesive: 100 g/L.
17. Contact Adhesive: 80 g/L.
18. Plastic Cement Welding Compounds: 250 g/L.
19. ABS Welding Compounds: 325 g/L.
20. CPVC Welding Compounds: 490 g/L.

21. PVC Welding Compounds: 510 g/L.
22. Adhesive Primer for Plastic: 550 g/L.
23. Sheet applied Rubber Lining Adhesive: 850g/L
24. Aerosol Adhesive, General Purpose Mist spray: 65% by weight
25. Aerosol Adhesive, General Purpose Web spray: 55% by weight
26. Special Purpose Aerosol Adhesive, (All types): 70% by weight
27. Structural Wood Member Adhesive: 140 g/L.
28. Special Purpose Contact Adhesive (contact adhesive that is used to bond melamine covered board, metal, rubber or wood veneer 1/16 inch or less in thickness to any surface): 250g/L.
29. Top and Trim Adhesive: 250g/L.
30. Architectural Sealants: 250g/L.
31. Non-membrane Roof Sealants: 450g/L.
32. Single Ply Roof Membrane Sealants: 450g/L
33. Sealant Primers for Nonporous Substrates: 250 g/L.
34. Sealant Primers for Porous Substrates: 775 g/L.
35. Modified Bituminous Sealant Primers: 500g/L
36. Other Sealant Primers: 750g/L

B. Credit EQ 4.2: For interior (inside the weatherproofing system) applications use paints and coatings that comply with the following limits for VOC content when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA method 24) and the following chemical restrictions:

1. Flat Paints and Coatings: VOC not more than 50 g/L.
2. Non-Flat Paints and Coatings: VOC not more than 150 g/L.
3. Anti-Corrosive/Anti-rust Coatings: VOC not more than 250 g/L.
4. Floor Coatings: VOC not more than 100 g/L.
5. Clear Wood Finishes: Do not exceed the VOC content limits established in the South Coast Air Quality Management District (SCAQMD) Rule 1113 January 1, 2004 including:
   a. Clear Wood Finishes: Varnishes VOC not more than 350 g/L, Lacquers 550g/L.
   b. Sanding Sealers: VOC not more than 275 g/L.
   c. Waterproofing Sealers: VOC not more than 250 g/L.
   d. Varnishes and Sanding Sealers: VOC not more than 350 g/L.
   e. Shellac: clear VOC 730g/L, pigmented 550g/L
   f. Stains: VOC not more than 250 g/L.
6. Aromatic Compounds: Paints and coatings shall not contain more than 1.0 percent by weight total aromatic compounds (hydrocarbon compounds containing one or more benzene rings).
7. Restricted Components: Paints and coatings shall not contain any of the following:
   a. Acrolein.
   b. Acrylonitrile.
   c. Antimony.
   d. Benzene.
   e. Butyl benzyl phthalate.
   f. Cadmium.
   g. Di (2-ethylhexyl) phthalate.
   h. Di-n-butyl phthalate.
   i. Di-n-octyl phthalate.
   j. 1,2-dichlorobenzene.
   k. Diethyl phthalate.
   l. Dimethyl phthalate.
   m. Ethylbenzene.
   n. Formaldehyde.
   o. Hexavalent chromium.
   p. Isophorone.

q. Lead.
r. Mercury.
s. Methyl ethyl ketone.
t. Methyl isobutyl ketone.
u. Methylene chloride.
v. Naphthalene.
w. Toluene (methylbenzene).
x. 1,1,1-trichloroethane.
y. Vinyl chloride.

C. Credit EQ 4.4: Composite wood and agrifiber products used on the interior of the building (defined as inside of the weatherproofing system) shall contain no added urea-formaldehyde resins. Laminating adhesives and bonding agents used to fabricate on-site and shop-applied composite wood and agrifiber assemblies bonding agent shall contain no added urea formaldehyde resin.

PART 3 – EXECUTION

3.1 SITE DISTURBANCE

A. Special Site Practices

1. Prerequisite SS 1: Construction Activity Pollution Prevention: Comply with City of Austin standard requirements.

2. Credit SS 5.1: Protect and restore natural vegetation per division 1 Sections and plans, and restrict construction activity only to defined site limits per plans.

3.2 CONSTRUCTION WASTE MANAGEMENT

A. Credit MR 2.1 and 2.2: Comply with Division 1 Section 01505 "Construction Waste Management."

3.3 CONSTRUCTION INDOOR AIR QUALITY MANAGEMENT

A. Credit EQ 3.1 and 3.2: Comply with Division 1 Section 01510 "Construction Indoor Air Quality Management."

B. Comply with SMACNA IAQ Guideline for Occupied Buildings under Construction.

C. Credit EQ 3.2 Comply with Division 1 Section 01510 "Construction Indoor Air Quality Management."

1. After construction ends prior to occupancy and with all interior finishes installed, conduct a building air flush-out by supplying a total air volume of 14,000 cubic ft. of outdoor air per sq.ft. of floor area while maintaining an internal temperature of at least 60°F and relative humidity no higher than 60%. Use new filtration media for the flush-out and 100 percent outside air. Replace filtration media after building air flush-out.

2. Contractor will conduct a baseline indoor air quality testing program according to EPA Protocol for Environmental Requirements, Baseline IAQ and Materials, for Research Triangle Park Campus, Section 01445.

3.4 COMMISSIONING

A. Credit EA Prerequisite 1 and credit 3: Comply with Division 1 Section "Facility Start-up/Commissioning."

APPENDIX A: Sustainable/LEED Construction Submittal Form

APPENDIX B: LEED Project Checklist

SECTION 01352.1 APPENDIX A

PROJECT NAME:

REQUIRED FOR ALL SUBMITTALS

LEED Construction Submittal Information

SUBMITTALS CAN NOT BE APPROVED UNTIL RECEIPT OF THIS COMPLETED FORM.

1. General Information: PROVIDE FOR ALL MATERIALS

This information is used exclusively for LEED calculations. All answers must be provided and supporting documentation must accompany this form.

Product/Material: _____ CSI Code(s): _____

Vendor/Sub: _____ Submittal #: _____

Contact name: _____ Phone: _____

Manufacturer: _____ Does the product/material meet the Project Specification requirements? YES OR NO ?

Cost Information: PROVIDE FOR ALL MATERIALS IN DIVS. 2 - 10 ONLY

Each material/product must have a separate spreadsheet.

Provide the "materials cost" for each product/material. The material cost is the cost paid to guarantee the material in final assembly form excluding installation costs (labor & equipment). Overhead, transportation, and taxes shall be included in materials costs.

Material Cost: $ _____ OR Unit Cost: $ _____ per _____ unit

# of units installed: _____

2. Recycled Content - LEED MR Credits 4.1, 4.2 - FOR MATERIALS IN DIVS. 2 - 10 ONLY

* If the product is NOT an assembly of various components:

* What percentage of the product is post-consumer? _____ %

post-consumer = product went through consumer stream as another product

* What is the source of this information? (Submittal, cost sheet, product brochure, letter from mfg., etc) _____

* What percentage of the product is pre-consumer / post-industrial: _____ %

pre-consumer/post-industrial = product is by-product from a manufacturing process

* What is the source of this information? (Submittal, cost sheet, product brochure, letter from mfg., etc) _____

* If the product is an assembly of various components, fill in the table below.

Assembly: (List Product) Components	Weight (lbs)	Recycled Content (%)	% By Weight	Recycled Content Source	Company Providing Components

3. Regional Materials - LEED MR Credits 5.1, 5.2 - FOR MATERIALS IN DIVS. 2 - 10 ONLY

* Was the product extracted, recovered, harvested, and manufactured within 500 miles of the project site? _____

* Provide the name and street address of the manufacturing facility. _____

* What is the distance of the manufacturing facility from the job site? _____ miles

* Provide the name and street address of the extraction or harvesting site or facility. _____

1 of 2

SECTION 01352.1 APPENDIX A

PROJECT NAME: REQUIRED FOR ALL SUBMITTALS

LEED Construction Submittal Information SUBMITTALS CAN NOT BE APPROVED UNTIL RECEIPT OF THIS COMPLETED FORM.

* What is the distance of the extraction or harvesting site from the project site? _____ miles

* Use table below for assemblies that have multiple sources for the same material:

Materials:	Extraction Site location (address):	Distance in miles	Manufacturing location (address):	Distance in miles

4. Low Emitting Materials - LEED EQ Credit 4.1 - 4.4

FOR PAINTS, COATINGS, STAINS, ADHESIVES, SEALANTS, CAULK, FIRESTOPPING, OR ANYTHING FROM A BUCKET, TUBE OR AEROSOL CAN
(Inside the weatherproofing system and applied on-site only)

* Does it meet the VOC requirements listed in the Specifications (shown in grams/Liter)?
If yes, provide manufacturer's data sheet with VOC content clearly shown. _____ grams/Liter

FOR CARPET OR CARPET TILE AND CARPET CUSHION

* For carpet, does it meet Green Label Plus certification? Yes or No
If yes, provide manufacturer's data sheet stating Green Label Plus certification has been met.

* For cushion, does it meet Green Label Plus certification? Yes or No
If yes, provide manufacturer's data sheet stating Green Label Plus certification has been met.

FOR COMPOSITE WOOD AND AGRIFIBER PRODUCTS (particleboard, MDF, plywood, wheatboard, strawboard, panel substrates and door cores)
(Inside the weatherproofing system and applied on-site only)

* Does it meet requirement of containing no added urea-formaldehyde resins? Yes or No
If yes, provide manufacturer's data sheet stating no added urea-formaldehyde resins are contained in material/product.

LAMINATING ADHESIVES USED TO FABRICATE ON-SITE AND SHOP-APPLIED COMPOSITE WOOD AND AGRIFIBER ASSEMBLIES

* Does the adhesive meet the requirement of containing no added urea-formaldehyde resins? Yes or No
If yes, provide manufacturer's data sheet stating no added urea-formaldehyde resins are contained in adhesive.

5. Rapidly Renewable Materials - LEED EQ Credit 6.1 - 6.2

INCLUDES MATERIALS SUCH AS: BAMBOO, CORK, COTTON, LINOLEUM, WOOL AND WHEAT

What percentage, if any, does the manfacturing process use any rapidly renewable materials _____ %

Wood Product Type	Cost	Percentage of product by weight	Manufacturer/Vendor

6. Certified Wood - LEED EQ Credit 7

INCLUDES WOOD PRODUCTS SUCH AS: FRAMING, FLOORS, DOORS AND FINISHES

What percentage, if any, of the wood based materials are FSC Certified? _____ %

Product Name	Cost	Percentage of product by weight	FSC Chain of Custody Number	Manufacturer/Vendor

2 of 2

END SECTION 01352.1

SECTION 01352.2 APPENDIX A

PROJECT NAME:

REQUIRED FOR ALL SUBMITTALS

Sustainable Construction Submittal Information

SUBMITTALS CAN NOT BE APPROVED UNTIL RECEIPT OF THIS COMPLETED FORM.

1. General Information: PROVIDE FOR ALL MATERIALS

This information is used exclusively for sustainability records. All answers must be provided and supporting documentation must accompany this form.

Product/Material: _____ CSI Code(s): _____

Vendor/Sub: _____ Submittal #: _____

Contact name: _____ Phone: _____

Manufacturer: _____ Does the product/material meet the Project Specification requirements? YES OR NO ?

Cost Information: PROVIDE FOR ALL MATERIALS IN DIVS. 2 - 10 ONLY

Each material/product must have a separate spreadsheet.

Provide the "materials cost" for each product/material. The material cost is the cost paid to guarantee the material in final assembly form excluding installation costs (labor & equipment). Overhead, transportation, and taxes shall be included in materials costs.

Material Cost: $ _____ OR Unit Cost: $ _____ per _____ unit

# of units installed: _____

2. Recycled Content - FOR MATERIALS IN DIVS. 2 - 10 ONLY

* If the product is NOT an assembly of various components:
  * What percentage of the product is post-consumer? _____ %

    post-consumer = product went through consumer stream as another product
  * What is the source of this information? (Submittal, cost sheet, product brochure, letter from mfg., etc) _____
  * What percentage of the product is pre-consumer / post-industrial: _____ %

    pre-consumer/post-industrial = product is by-product from a manufacturing process
  * What is the source of this information? (Submittal, cost sheet, product brochure, letter from mfg., etc) _____
* If the product is an assembly of various components, fill in the table below.

Assembly: (List Product) Components	Weight (lbs)	Recycled Content (%)	% By Weight	Recycled Content Source	Company Providing Components

3. Regional Materials - FOR MATERIALS IN DIVS. 2 - 10 ONLY

* Was the product extracted, recovered, harvested, and manufactured within 500 miles of the project site? _____
* Provide the name and street address of the manufacturing facility. _____
* What is the distance of the manufacturing facility from the job site? _____ miles
* Provide the name and street address of the extraction or harvesting site or facility. _____

1 of 2

Section 01352 Appendix A

SECTION 01352.2 APPENDIX A

PROJECT NAME: REQUIRED FOR ALL SUBMITTALS

Sustainable Construction Submittal Information SUBMITTALS CAN NOT BE APPROVED UNTIL RECEIPT OF THIS COMPLETED FORM.

* What is the distance of the extraction or harvesting site from the project site? _____ miles

* Use table below for assemblies that have multiple sources for the same material:

Materials:	Extraction Site location (address):	Distance in miles	Manufacturing location (address):	Distance in miles

4. Low Emitting Materials

FOR PAINTS, COATINGS, STAINS, ADHESIVES, SEALANTS, CAULK, FIRESTOPPING, OR ANYTHING FROM A BUCKET, TUBE OR AEROSOL CAN
(Inside the weatherproofing system and applied on-site only)

* Does it meet the VOC requirements listed in the Specifications (shown in grams/Liter)?
If yes, provide manufacturer's data sheet with VOC content clearly shown. _____ grams/Liter

FOR CARPET OR CARPET TILE AND CARPET CUSHION

* For carpet, does it meet Green Label Plus certification? Yes or No
If yes, provide manufacturer's data sheet stating Green Label Plus certification has been met.

* For cushion, does it meet Green Label Plus certification? Yes or No
If yes, provide manufacturer's data sheet stating Green Label Plus certification has been met.

FOR COMPOSITE WOOD AND AGRIFIBER PRODUCTS (particleboard, MDF, plywood, wheatboard, strawboard, panel substrates and door cores)
(Inside the weatherproofing system and applied on-site only)

* Does it meet requirement of containing no added urea-formaldehyde resins? Yes or No
If yes, provide manufacturer's data sheet stating no added urea-formaldehyde resins are contained in material/product.

LAMINATING ADHESIVES USED TO FABRICATE ON-SITE AND SHOP-APPLIED COMPOSITE WOOD AND AGRIFIBER ASSEMBLIES

* Does the adhesive meet the requirement of containing no added urea-formaldehyde resins? Yes or No
If yes, provide manufacturer's data sheet stating no added urea-formaldehyde resins are contained in adhesive.

5. Rapidly Renewable Material

INCLUDES MATERIALS SUCH AS: BAMBOO, CORK, COTTON, LINOLEUM, WOOL AND WHEAT

What percentage, if any, does the manfacturing process use any rapidly renewable materials _____ %

Wood Product Type	Cost	Percentage of product by weight	Manufacturer/Vendor

6. Certified Wood

INCLUDES WOOD PRODUCTS SUCH AS: FRAMING, FLOORS, DOORS AND FINISHES

What percentage, if any, of the wood based materials are FSC Certified? _____ %

Product Name	Cost	Percentage of product by weight	FSC Chain of Custody Number	Manufacturer/Vendor

CONSTRUCTION EQUIPMENT EMISSIONS REDUCTION PLAN
Section 01353

1. GENERAL

1.1. RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. This Section applies to Drawings and all provisions of Contract.

1.2. SUMMARY – CONSTRUCTION EQUIPMENT EMISSIONS PLAN

A. The OWNER, as part of the Council Resolution No. 20100211-019, has decided to take steps to reduce emissions associated with construction process including Nitrogen Oxides (NOx), particulate matter and greenhouse gas. Construction activity is a source of large quantities of particulate matter and ozone forming Nitrogen Oxides that adversely affect the health of our community and the natural environment.

B. The CONTRACTOR shall employ practices and take actions that reduce emissions from NOx, particulate matter (black soot) and greenhouse gases resulting from activities associated with new construction and demolition Projects.

C. The CONTRACTOR shall maximize the use of equipment and vehicles with advanced emission controls in support of the City's goals, utilizing equipment that meets defined EPA emissions standards.

1.3. DEFINITIONS

A. "Construction Equipment" means equipment powered by an internal combustion engine and used for performing or otherwise advancing the Work on the Project, other than motor vehicles intended for use on public highways and registered pursuant to Section 502.002 of the Texas Transportation Code.

B. The list of applicable Construction Equipment includes, but is not limited to excavators, backhoes, loaders, bulldozers, graders, rock saws, generators, and other similar equipment.

C. "EPA" means the United States Environmental Protection Agency.

D. "Low-Use Equipment" means any piece of construction equipment which is used for less than ten (10) hours per week on site for a single construction contract.

E. "Greenhouse Gases" are emissions that absorb and emit radiation within the atmosphere. Greenhouse Gases can be one or a combination of, these gases: carbon dioxide, methane, nitrous oxide and three groups of fluorinated gases (sulfur hexafluoride, hydro fluorocarbons, and perfluorocarbons)

1.4. REQUIREMENTS – Not Used

1.5. SUBMITTALS

A. CONSTRUCTION EQUIPMENT EMISSIONS REDUCTION PLAN:

1. The CONTRACTOR agrees to prepare a draft Emissions Reduction Plan (referred to as PLAN) prior to start of construction. This PLAN shall include an inventory report

containing identifying data for each piece of equipment to be used on the worksite and shall include the following:

- Vehicle/Equipment: Make & Model Year
- Vehicle/Equipment: Engine Make & Model Year
- Vehicle/Equipment: Fuel Type
- Vehicle/Equipment: Expected gallons or hours used for project duration

a) The OWNER will provide Emissions Reduction Toolkit to help the CONTRACTOR in preparation of the PLAN and inventory.

2. The CONTRACTOR shall develop a list of strategies to be used in this Project in order to reduce emissions from NOx, particulate matter and greenhouse gas (CO_2 equivalent). Once prepared, the agreed upon strategies shall be incorporated into the PLAN. The PLAN will then be signed by the CONTRACTOR and made ready for implementation. Implementation progress will be reviewed once a month in regularly scheduled project progress meetings. The PLAN may be modified during construction if changes are made to the Project, but adjustments shall be approved by the OWNER prior to implementation.

3. This PLAN may be used by the Owner's Representative or Inspector to conduct site inspections and/or verify compliance with specification elements.

4. If additional equipment is brought on-site after construction begins, the Contractor shall provide this same inventory information to the Owner's Representative for the new equipment on or before the day it begins work on-site. All additional equipment shall conform to the PLAN.

5. Reports shall be provided for all equipment used on-site.

B. EQUIPMENT EMISSIONS CLOSEOUT DOCUMENTATION:

1. Submit the following prior to final payment:

a) Record of changes made to the original PLAN and reasons.

b) Provide a summary and documentation of strategies used and estimated reductions in fuel & emissions.

c) Provide documentation of amount and % of alternative fuel used.

2. PRODUCTS

Not used

3. EXECUTION

3.1. GENERAL

A. Implement the submitted PLAN. Provide personnel, documentation, equipment, signage, transportation, and other items as required to implement the PLAN during the entire duration of the Contract.

3.2. EQUIPMENT EMISSIONS PLAN IMPLEMENTATION

A. Plan Coordinator (Could be same as superintendent): Designate an on-site person responsible for instructing workers on the Owner's intent to reduce emissions, overseeing implementation and documenting results of the PLAN for the Project.

B. Plan Review: Review the PLAN in monthly progress meeting and include comments in the meeting notes.

C. Instruction: Provide on-site instructions to all subcontractors of emissions reduction methods to be used by all parties for the appropriate activities of the Project.

D. Discuss Owner's goals and requirements at the following meetings:

1. Pre-bid conference.

2. Pre-construction conference.

3. Progress meetings (monthly).

3.3 EQUIPMENT EMISSIONS REDUCTION TOOLKIT

A. Equipment Emissions Reduction Toolkit available at:

1. Website: (http://austintexas.gov/department/capital-improvement-program)

2. City of Austin Public Works Department, Project Management Division, One Texas Center, Suite 900

3. Construction Job Site Office (after contract award)

B. Equipment Emissions Reduction Toolkit consists of:

1. A list of Construction Equipment Emissions Reduction Strategies

2. EPA fuel savings calculator by idling reductions

3. Posting of Anti-idling signs

4. Memorandum of Agreement by Local Area Governments

5. Equipment Inventory Form

3.4 A LIST OF EQUIPMENT EMISSIONS REDUCTION STRATEGIES

The following are suggested emissions reduction strategies and references. As per the specification section 01353, 1.5 Submittals, the CONTRACTOR shall develop a list of strategies to be used in this Project at the start of construction.

C-1 Anti-Idling Strategies:

1. Implement and enforce anti-idling practices for all equipment and vehicles on and adjacent to the site and associated with the project. City will provide a construction site sign and stickers for vehicles and equipment. (http://www.engineoff.org/)

2. Limit all idling of project associated vehicles and equipment operations to five (5) minutes unless the idling is applicable to one or more of the following exceptions:

a) Idling is being used for emergency response purposes;

b) Idling is necessary for component of mechanical operation, maintenance, or diagnostic purposes; or

c) Idling is for the health or safety of the equipment operator.

3. Provide education to all staff, vendors and subcontractors about emissions hazards and anti-idling practices and encourage use of EPA calculator for fuel savings.

4. To the extent possible, do not stop or idle haulage trucks directly under tree limbs and foliage overhanging the street along the haul route. Further avoid such damage from truck exhaust by means of exhaust diversion devices to redirect or diffuse exhaust from being directed in a concentrated manner to tree limbs and foliage.

5. Avoid vehicle loitering or queuing outside or inside the gates of the work area to minimize degradation of localized air quality.

   (http://data.capcog.org/air-quality/engineoff/AntiIdlingBrochure(2).pdf)

   (http://data.capcog.org/air-quality/engineoff/template-1/HowtoOrderSign.html)

   (http://data.capcog.org/air-quality/engineoff/smartwaycalculator.xls)

   (http://austintexas.gov/airquality/)

C-2 Alternative Fuels:

6. Utilize **alternative fuels** including, Texas LED Compliant B20 (or higher) biodiesel, Compressed Natural Gas (CNG), propane and electric. (Refer to EPA Energy Policy Act for full list).

7. Avoid unnecessary fuel use by providing on-site fuelling for alternate fuels.

   (http://www.tceq.texas.gov/airquality/mobilesource/txled/cleandiesel.html)

   (http://www.eere.energy.gov/cleancities)

   (http://lonestarcfa.org)

C-3 Vehicle/Equipment Improvements:

8. Eliminate use of vehicles in tier 0 and 1 categories per EPA and rent or purchase tier 2 and 3 or (4) compliant vehicles.

9. It is recommended that CONTRACTOR takes advantage of the **Texas Emission Reduction Plan (TERP)** grant incentives to upgrade (replace or repower) vehicles with retrofitted emission reduction technologies. (http://www.tceq.texas.gov/airquality/terp/index.html) or (www.terpgrants.com)

10. Utilize **battery powered and/or solar powered equipment** where available. This strategy can be combined with anti-idling strategies by using this technology for sign boards. (evtransportal.org/dieselengineidlereduction.pdf)

C-4 Maintenance Program:

11. Establish a preventative **maintenance program** addressing issues including but not limited to, fuel use, air emissions, tire pressure, smoke from exhaust and noise.

12. Make all efforts to **prevent oil/fuel spillage** on to site surfaces.

C-5 Resource Management:

13. Utilize equipment companies that are located closest to the construction site.

14. Store equipment on site during construction use or arrange for closest overnight storage including **temporary use of the Right of Way** if possible.

15. To the extent possible, CONTRACTOR shall maximize use of **local and regional materials** to reduce transportation emissions.

16. CONTRACTOR shall maximize **salvage and reuse** of appropriate on-site materials. (http://www.usgbc.org/ShowFile.aspx?DocumentID=1095)

17. To the greatest extent possible, stage equipment and vehicles away from, and minimize operation near, sensitive receptors including, but not limited to, operable windows, fresh air intakes, hospitals, schools, licensed day care facilities, residences and areas where people congregate.

END

CONSTRUCTION PHOTOGRAPHY & VIDEOS
Section 01380

1. GENERAL

CONTRACTOR shall be responsible for the production of pre-construction, construction progress and post-construction photographs as provided herein. Owner's Representative may also designate additional subjects for photographs in addition to the general guidelines identified below.

2. QUALITY

All photographs must be produced by a competent photographer and shall be digital (6 Mega-Pixel) date-stamped color photography of commercial quality. All CONTRACTOR-generated photographs must be stored in a .jpeg file format Each photograph shall be submitted in duplicate as two 3x5 prints with no more than 3 photos per page of professional quality enclosed in clear plastic sleeve within 3 tab folders. The prints shall be accompanied by digital date-stamped photographs in CD format or other format acceptable to the City. Each print shall be marked with the name and CIP ID number for the Contract, name of CONTRACTOR, description and location of view and identity of photographer.

Each photograph submittal must include a Photo Log that includes the name and CIP ID number of Contract, name of CONTRACTOR, the name of the photographer and company, photograph number, the date of the photograph and the filename that the camera assigns to the photo (e.g. MVC-001.jpg). In addition, appropriate descriptive information to properly identify the location of view must be entered into the Photo Log that includes a project drawing or sketch to assist in maintaining a concise project record (e.g. location of MH 5 - Line A or Sta. 2+00 - Line A or location of Sedimentation Basin 5, sludge pump A).

3. VIEWS AND QUANTITIES

<u>CONSTRUCTION PROGRESS PHOTOGRAPHS.</u>

Construction Progress photos must be taken at least once per month.

One set of Construction progress photographs, as the work progresses, of the same views taken during pre-construction photography must be taken during the progress of the Work.

One set of the progress photos must be taken to depict the work accomplished during the month that includes:

- Work not yet covered up
- When MEP or building inspections are scheduled
- The beginning of installation of major items of equipment
- After installation of major items of equipment
- Other significant construction activities.

Both sets of photos shall be submitted monthly with the CONTRACTOR'S monthly progress payment application.

3.4 POST CONSTRUCTION PHOTOGRAPHS

Post-construction photographs must be taken of the same views taken during pre-construction photography to fully document the completed project. Post-construction photographs must be taken after cleanup and site restoration, and must be submitted with the final payment.

End

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 Related Documents:

Drawings and general provisions of Contract, including General Conditions, Section 00700,and Supplemental General Conditions, Section 00810, and Division 1 requirements.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS (NOT USED)

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 Office at the Work Site (Job Shack)

During the performance of this Contract, CONTRACTOR shall maintain a suitable office at or near the site of the Work which shall be the headquarters of his superintendent. Any communication given to the superintendent or delivered to CONTRACTOR's office at the site of the Work in his absence shall be deemed to have been delivered to CONTRACTOR.

3.2 Water for Construction

All water required for and in connection with the Work to be performed shall be furnished by and at the expense of the CONTRACTOR through meters installed on hydrants, except for water used in the "disinfection of potable water lines" process per Specification 510.3(29). All water used in the disinfection process shall not be metered, but rather shall be measured by calculation. Such water use does not require a meter, but a double-check valve assembly is required when connecting to a fire hydrant or a City main. CONTRACTOR shall submit a written plan for the disinfection process for review and approval by OWNER prior to commencing Work. The written plan shall include the CONTRACTOR's plan for final flushing and discharge of chlorinated water, and shall specify the quantities of potable water that will be required for the procedure and dosage plan proposed by the CONTRACTOR. Water used in the disinfection process shall be supplied by the OWNER through hydrants or connection through a City main at no charge to the CONTRACTOR for the initial disinfection procedure up to the quantities agreed to in the written plan for the disinfection process. Should the initial disinfection procedure fail to produce acceptable bacteriological sample test results, the cost of water at standard rates used for subsequent disinfection procedures shall be the responsibility of the CONTRACTOR with quantities determined through calculations.

For all water required for and in connection with the Work to be performed other than for the disinfection process, water and meters will be available from OWNER at standard rates. All costs for obtaining a water meter shall be the responsibility of the CONTRACTOR. The CONTRACTOR shall contact the Austin Water Utility and arrange to pick up the meter. CONTRACTOR shall install a double-check valve assembly on the fire hydrant between the hydrant and the meter, to prevent backflow in the event of pressure failure. CONTRACTOR shall supply all necessary tools, hose and pipe, and shall make necessary arrangements for securing and transporting such water and shall take water in such a manner, and at such times, that will not produce a harmful drain or decrease of pressure in the OWNER's water system. It shall be the CONTRACTOR's responsibility to make arrangements with the Austin Water Utility for the metering and reporting of the amount of water used. Water shall not be used in a wasteful manner. Standard hydrant wrenches shall be used for opening and closing of fire hydrants. In no case shall pipe wrenches be used for this purpose. Temporary lines shall be removed when no longer required.

"If applicable, after the installation of the City of Austin's water meter(s) for the Project, the CONTRACTOR has the option to utilize the water available from this service at the CONTRACTOR's expense. An adjustment to the Contract amount will be made by Change Order at the end of the Project for the costs incurred by the City of Austin for the water."

3.3 Telephone Service

CONTRACTOR shall make all necessary arrangements and pay all installation charges for telephone lines in his offices at the site and shall provide all telephone instruments. The telephone service shall be available to the Owner's Representative for toll free calls.

3.4 Sanitary Facilities

CONTRACTOR shall furnish temporary sanitary facilities at the site, as provided herein, for the needs of all construction workers and others performing Work or furnishing services on the Project.

Sanitary facilities shall be of reasonable capacity, properly maintained throughout the construction period, and obscured from public view to the greatest practical extent. If toilets of the chemically treated type are used, at least one toilet shall be furnished for each 20 employees. CONTRACTOR shall enforce the use of such sanitary facilities by all personnel at the site.

3.5 Protection of Public and Private Property

CONTRACTOR shall protect, shore, brace, support and maintain all underground pipes, conduits, drains, and other underground construction uncovered or otherwise affected by the CONTRACTOR's operations. All pavement, surfacing, driveways, curbs, walks, buildings, utility poles, guy wires, fences, and other surface structures affected by construction operations, together with all sod and shrubs in yards, parkways, and medians, shall be restored to their original condition, whether within or outside the easement/right-of-way. All replacements shall be made with new materials.

CONTRACTOR shall be responsible for all damage to streets, roads, curbs, sidewalks, highways, shoulders, ditches, embankments, culverts, bridges, or other public or private property, which may be caused by transporting equipment, materials, or men to or from the Work, whether by him or his Subcontractors. CONTRACTOR shall make satisfactory and acceptable arrangements with the owner of, or the agency having jurisdiction over, the damaged property concerning its repair or replacement or payment of costs incurred in connection with the damage.

All fire hydrants and water control valves shall be kept free from obstruction and available for use at all times.

3.6 Tree and Plant Protection

All trees and other vegetation which must be removed to perform the Work shall be removed and disposed of by the CONTRACTOR; however, no trees or cultured plants shall be unnecessarily removed unless their removal is indicated on the Drawings. All trees and plants not removed shall be protected against injury from construction operations.

No tree shall be removed outside of permanent easement(s), except where authorized by the E/A. Whenever practicable, CONTRACTOR shall tunnel beneath trees in yards and parking lots when on or near the line of trenching operations. Hand excavations shall be employed as necessary to prevent injury to trees. Care shall be taken with exposed roots, unearthed during construction, so that roots do not dehydrate causing tree damage.

Trees considered by the E/A to have any significant effect on construction operations are indicated on the Drawings and those which are to be preserved are so indicated.

CONTRACTOR shall take extra measures to protect trees designated to be preserved, using methods shown on the Drawings and as specified in Standard Specification Item No. 610S "Preservation of Trees and other Vegetation".

3.7 Security

CONTRACTOR shall be responsible for protection of the site, and all Work, materials, equipment, and existing facilities hereon, against vandals and other unauthorized persons.

No claim shall be made against OWNER by reason of any act of an employee or trespasser, and CONTRACTOR shall make good all damage to the OWNER's property resulting from CONTRACTOR's failure to provide security measures as specified.

Security measures shall be at least equal to those usually provided by OWNER to protect existing facilities during normal operations, and shall also include such additional security fencing, barricades, lighting, and other measures as required to protect the site. When required, the CONTRACTOR shall provide a security plan to the OWNER for review as to appropriateness of the security measures proposed.

3.8 Access Roads

CONTRACTOR shall establish and maintain temporary access roads to various parts of the site as required to complete the Project. Such roads shall be available for the use of all others performing Work or furnishing services in connection with the Project.

3.9 Parking

CONTRACTOR shall provide and maintain suitable parking areas for the use of all construction workers and others performing Work or furnishing services in connection with the Project, as required, to avoid any need for parking personal vehicles where they may interfere with public traffic, the OWNER's operations, or construction activities.

3.10 Dust Control

Dust Control during construction of this Project shall conform to Standard Specifications Item No. 220S, "Sprinkling for Dust Control". No direct payment will be made for dust control. Dust Control shall be considered subsidiary work relating to various Bid items of the Contract.

3.11 Temporary Drainage Provisions

CONTRACTOR shall be responsible for providing for the drainage of stormwater and such water as may be applied or discharged on the site in performance of the Work. CONTRACTOR shall obtain E/A approval for temporary drainage facilities which will handle, carry through, or divert around his Work all drainage flow, including storm flow and flows created by construction activity, to prevent silting of waterways or flooding damage to the property and adjacent property.

3.12 Erosion Control

CONTRACTOR shall prevent erosion of soil on the site and adjacent property resulting from his construction activities. Effective measures shall be initiated prior to the commencement of clearing, grading, excavation, or other operations which will disturb the natural protection.

CONTRACTOR shall use controls found in "Environmental Criteria Manual" or developed from successful techniques elsewhere as approved by E/A. Siltation and/or sedimentation controls shall include dams, berms, and dikes as recommended in the "Environmental Criteria Manual".

3.13 Pollution Control

CONTRACTOR shall prevent the pollution of drains and watercourses by sanitary wastes, sediment, debris and the substances resulting from construction activities. No sanitary wastes will be permitted to enter any drain or watercourse. No sediment, debris or other substance will be permitted to enter sanitary sewers and reasonable measures shall be taken by CONTRACTOR to prevent such materials from entering any drain or watercourse.

CONTRACTOR shall observe the rules and regulations of the State of Texas and agencies of the U.S. Government prohibiting the pollution of any lake, stream, river, or wetland by the dumping of any refuse, rubbish, dredge material, or debris therein.

CONTRACTOR is specifically cautioned that disposal of materials into any water of the State must conform to the requirements of the Texas Commission on Environmental Quality (TCEQ), and any applicable permit from the U.S. Army Corps of Engineers.

3.14 Noise Control

CONTRACTOR shall comply with the City of Austin's Noise Ordinance. CONTRACTOR shall take reasonable measures to avoid unnecessary noise. Such measures shall be appropriate for the normal ambient sound level in the area during working hours. All construction machinery and vehicles shall be equipped with practical sound-muffling devices, and operated in a manner to cause the least noise consistent with efficient performance of the Work.

3.15 CIP Sign

CONTRACTOR shall erect install and maintain CIP signs as specified. Signs shall be constructed in accordance with City Standard Specification Item No. 802S "Project Signs," as indicated on the Drawings.

3.16 Fences

All existing fences affected by the Work shall be maintained by the CONTRACTOR until completion of the Work. Fences which interfere with construction operations shall not be relocated or dismantled until written permission is obtained from the owner of the fence, and the period the fence may be left relocated or dismantled has been agreed upon. Where fences must be maintained across any construction easement, adequate gates shall be installed. Gates shall be kept closed and locked at all times when not in use.

Upon completion of the Work across any tract of land, CONTRACTOR shall restore all fences to preconstruction, or to a better, condition and to their preconstruction location.

3.17 Mail Boxes

CONTRACTOR shall remove, reset temporarily, and relocate permanently all mail boxes that are within construction site limits conforming to requirements of United States Postal Service. Mailboxes shall not be laid on the ground, but shall be temporarily reset the same day as removed. Payment for removing and resetting of mail boxes will not be paid for directly, but will be considered subsidiary to the various Bid items. Any damage to mail boxes or posts shall be the responsibility of the CONTRACTOR.

3.18 Emergency Facilities

Free access shall be maintained at all times to fire lanes and emergency and utility control facilities such as fire hydrants, fire alarm boxes, police call boxes, and utility valves, manholes, junction boxes, etc. In the event that it is necessary to make one of these facilities temporarily inaccessible, CONTRACTOR shall obtain approval of such action and schedule of Work from the OWNER. CONTRACTOR shall also provide at least 24 hours prior notice to the Fire Department, Police Department, and City Department governing the affected utility. The same Department(s) shall be promptly notified by the CONTRACTOR when such facilities are placed back in unobstructed service.

3.19 Notification of Owners

Unless otherwise indicated, the OWNER will notify property owners abutting the right-of-way of impending construction. The CONTRACTOR shall exercise diplomacy and tact with individual property owners.

3.20 Maintenance of Traffic

CONTRACTOR shall conduct his Work to interfere as little as possible with public travel, whether vehicular or pedestrian. Whenever it is necessary to cross, obstruct, or close roads, driveways, and walks whether public or private, the CONTRACTOR shall provide and maintain suitable safe bridges, detours or other temporary measures to accommodate public

and private travel, and shall provide reasonable notice to owners of private drives before interfering with them. Such maintenance of traffic will not be required when CONTRACTOR has obtained written permission from the owner and the tenant of the private property, or from the authority having jurisdiction over public property involved, to obstruct traffic at the designated point. A copy of the initial written permission shall be provided to the Owner's Representative.

Safety and conveyance of traffic shall be regarded as prime importance. Unless otherwise directed, all portions of streets associated with this Project shall be kept open and provided a dust free, smooth and comfortable ride to traffic. It shall be the responsibility of the CONTRACTOR to ensure that two-way traffic may safely bypass the construction site and that access is provided to abutting private property. In making open cut street crossings, the CONTRACTOR shall not block more than one-half of the street at one time without approval of the OWNER. Whenever possible, CONTRACTOR shall widen the shoulder on the opposite side to facilitate traffic control. Temporary surfacing shall be provided as necessary on shoulders.

Prior to beginning Work, CONTRACTOR shall designate, in writing, a competent person who will be responsible and available on the Project site, or in the immediate area, to ensure compliance with the traffic control plan. CONTRACTOR shall provide documentation to demonstrate the sufficient training in Traffic Control for his competent person. Owner will designate a qualified person to observe implementation and who will have authority to assure compliance with the traffic control plan.

The CONTRACTOR shall perform the necessary cleanup and finishing immediately after all or a portion of the Work is completed. When the Work includes paving operations, the entire site shall be kept clean to facilitate placement of required traffic control devices. Temporary and permanent striping lay-out shall be approved by the Transportation Department prior to placement, when included in the Work.

1. Detours

Where indicated on the traffic control plan CONTRACTOR shall erect and maintain detours around construction activities. Should CONTRACTOR desire to propose a detour, not already included in the traffic control plan, it shall be his responsibility to prepare a revised traffic control plan showing the detour, and obtain approval of the revised traffic control plan from the Transportation Department, prior to implementation of the detour. The Transportation Department has final authority as to the acceptability of any proposed revisions to the traffic control plan. The CONTRACTOR shall bear all costs for revising the traffic control plan and for maintaining the proposed detour.

2. Barricades and lights

CONTRACTOR shall place and maintain in good condition, standard barricades at each end of the Project and at other locations where traffic is rerouted or blocked from using regular traffic lanes. Barricades and warning signs shall be in accordance with the Texas Manual on Uniform Traffic Control Devices (MUTCD) and City of Austin Standard Specification Item No. 803S, "Barricades, Signs and Traffic Handling". Signs, barricades, and warning devices informing the public of construction features will be placed and maintained by the CONTRACTOR, who shall be solely responsible for their maintenance. The decision to use a particular device at a particular location as indicated in the traffic control plan or as determined by the CONTRACTOR, shall be the sole responsibility of the CONTRACTOR.

All open trenches and other excavations shall have suitable barricades, signs, and lights to provide adequate protection to the public. Obstructions, such as material piles and equipment shall be provided with similar warning signs and lights.

All barricades and obstructions shall be illuminated with warning lights from sunset to sunrise. Material storage and conduct of the Work on, or along side, public streets and highways shall cause a minimum obstruction and inconvenience of the traveling public.

3.21 Required Job Site Postings and Notices

CONTRACTOR shall post the following postings and notices in English and Spanish at one or more conspicuous locations on the job site. In the case of Projects with multiple sites, the notices and postings must be displayed at each site. In the case of Projects that do not have a job shack or other temporary facility on the site, CONTRACTOR shall post all notices on a temporary bulletin board. Other special conditions are noted below.

Required for all Projects	
Poster	Available at:
Baseline Schedule for Project identifying when all subcontractors will be used	N/A (as required under Section 00700, paragraph 2.4.2.1.)
Wage Rates as required under Section 00830.	Section 00830BC and/or Section 008300HH
City of Austin Wage Contact posters	Provided at Pre-Construction meeting (English and Spanish)
City of Austin Equal Employment Opportunity posters	http://austintexas.gov/department/wage-compliance (English and Spanish)
Texas Commission on Environmental Quality "Construction Site Notice" form, if applicable, as required or the required TPDES information	http://www.tceq.state.tx.us/assets/public/permitting/waterquality/attachments/stormwater/txr152d2.pdf (Option 1 – as required under Section 00810, 6.7.4.2 N/A (Option 2 – as required under Section 00810, 2.6.7.4.3)
OSHA poster "Job Safety and Health: It's the Law"	http://www.osha.gov/Publications/osha3165.pdf (English) http://www.osha.gov/Publications/osha3167.pdf (Spanish)
City of Austin Rest Break Ordinance Signs	http://austintexas.gov/department/wage-compliance (English and Spanish) As required to be posted in English and Spanish under Ordinance No. 20100729-047
Texas Payday Law Poster	http://www.twc.state.tx.us/ui/lablaw/ll10.pdf (English) http://www.twc.state.tx.us/ui/lablaw/ll10s.pdf (Spanish)
Texas Workers Compensation notice that the employer does or does not carry Workers Compensation insurance	Does not carry Workers Compensation Insurance: http://www.tdi.state.tx.us/forms/dwc/notice5.pdf (English) http://www.tdi.state.tx.us/forms/dwc/notice5s.pdf (Spanish) Does carry Workers Compensation Insurance: http://www.tdi.state.tx.us/forms/dwc/notice6.pdf (English) http://www.tdi.state.tx.us/forms/dwc/notice6s.pdf (Spanish)
TWC Employer's Notification of the Ombudsman Program to Employees	http://www.oiec.state.tx.us/documents/Employer_Notice_of_O.pdf (both versions)
DOL – The Uniformed Services Employment and Reemployment Rights Act (USERRA)	http://www.dol.gov/vets/programs/userra/USERRA_Private.pdf
EEOC Equal Employment Act and the Americans with Disabilities Act (ADA)	http://www.dol.gov/ofccp/regs/compliance/posters/pdf/eeopost.pdf (English) http://www.dol.gov/ofccp/regs/compliance/posters/pdf/eeosp.pdf (Spanish)

Fair Labor Standards Act (FLSA) Minimum Wage Poster	http://www.dol.gov/whd/regs/compliance/posters/flsa.htm (English) http://www.dol.gov/whd/regs/compliance/posters/flsaspan.htm (Spanish)
If applicable: Employee Rights for Workers with Disabilities/Special Minimum Wage Poster – Employment Standards	http://www.dol.gov/whd/regs/compliance/posters/disabc.pdf http://www.dol.gov/whd/regs/compliance/posters/disabspanc3p.pdf
"Your Rights Under the Family and Medical Leave Act (FLMA)"	http://www.dol.gov/whd/regs/compliance/posters/fmlaen.pdf (English) http://www.dol.gov/whd/regs/compliance/posters/fmlasp.pdf (Spanish)
Title VI Rights Poster	http://austintexas.gov/department/wage-compliance
Additional Postings Required for Federally Funded Projects	
"Employee Rights Under the Davis-Bacon Act"	http://www.dol.gov/whd/regs/compliance/posters/fedprojc.pdf (English) http://www.dol.gov/whd/regs/compliance/posters/davispan.pdf (Spanish)
Applies to USDOT/FHWA funded projects: "Notice of False Statements Concerning Highway Projects"	http://www.mdt.mt.gov/publications/docs/forms/dbe/eeo_board/false_statements.pdf (as required in Section 00810A Standard Federal-Aid Assurances)
Applies to USDOT/FHWA funded projects; "Contractors EEO Policy"	N/A (as required in Section 00810A Standard Federal-Aid Assurances)

END

SECTION 01505.1

Building Projects

PART 1 – GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

1. Division 01 Section 01200 "Project Meetings"
2. Division 01 Section 01500 "Temporary Facilities"
3. Division 01 Section 01352 "Sustainable Construction Requirements".

1.2 SUMMARY

A. The Owner has established that the Project shall minimize the creation of construction and demolition waste on the Project site and shall recycle and/or salvage non-hazardous construction, demolition, and land clearing debris to divert waste from Landfills.

1. Contractor shall minimize factors that contribute to waste such as over packaging, improper storage, ordering error, poor planning, breakage, mishandling, and contamination.

2. Contractor shall reuse, salvage, or recycle as many of the non-hazardous waste materials as economically feasible.

3. As an incentive to encourage resourcefulness, all profits resulting from salvaging and recycling shall go to the Contractor.

4. In cases where there is little to no cost difference between recycling/salvaging and land-filling of items not required to be recycled or salvaged, the Contractor is directed to recycle/salvage.

5. Contractor shall minimize waste disposal in landfills.

B. Hazardous materials are an exception to this Section. Comply with applicable requirements of Local, State and Federal regulations.

C. This Section includes administrative and procedural requirements for the following:

1. Salvaging non-hazardous demolition and construction waste

2. Recycling non-hazardous demolition and construction waste

3. Disposing of non-hazardous demolition and construction waste.

1.3 REFERENCES

A. The standards listed below form a part of this Section to the extent referenced. Standards are referred to in the text by basic reference only.

1. LEED-NCv2.2 Reference Guide MR credit 2
2. Sustainable Building Sourcebook – Austin Energy Green Building:

   www.austinenergy.com/Energy%20Efficiency/Programs/Green%20Building/Sourcebook/constructionWasteManagement.htm

3. Resource Exchange Network for Eliminating Waste, Biannual catalog lists materials available and wanted; serves Texas and surrounding states; lists are posted on the Internet: http://www.tceq.state.tx.us/assistance/P2Recycle/renew/renew.html
4. Recycle Texas Online, A service of the Texas Commission on Environmental Quality. Contains information on about 1000 businesses and local governments handling materials from Texas. Organizations' information is self-reported and listings are free of charge. http://www.tceq.state.tx.us/assistance/P2Recycle/rtol/rtol.htm
5. The "Construction Materials Management Guidelines", a publication of AIA/Austin for the Governor's Energy Office provides construction waste recycling economics worksheets, recycling market information and other related information that may be useful in estimating the construction waste quantities and recycling costs for this project. Available from AIA/Austin (512) 452-4332.
6. "WasteSpec", Triangle J Council of Governments, Research Triangle Park, NC 27709, (919) 549-9390.

1.4 DEFINITIONS

A. Chemical Waste: Includes petroleum products, bituminous materials, salts, acids, alkalis, herbicides, pesticides, organic chemicals, and inorganic wastes.

B. Clean: Untreated and unpainted, not contaminated with oils, solvents, caulk, or the like.

C. Co-mingled: Keeping mixed recyclable materials in one container on site. The container is then taken to a material recovery facility where materials are separated for recycling.

D. Deconstruction: Process of carefully dismantling a building in order to salvage components for reuse and recycling. Also known as "construction in reverse".

E. Disposal: Removal off-site of demolition and construction waste and subsequent sale, recycling, reuse, or deposit in landfill or incinerator acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.

F. Demolition: Process of removing structures as quickly as possible by using heavy machinery and generating large amounts of waste.

G. Disposal: Acceptance of solid wastes at legally permitted and operating facility for the purposes of land-filling.

H. Diversion: Avoidance of demolition and construction waste sent to landfill or incineration. Diversion does not include using materials for landfill, alternate daily cover on landfills, or materials used as fuel in waste-to-energy processes.

I. Hazardous Waste: Byproducts of society that can pose a substantial or potential hazard to human health or the environment when improperly managed, and possessing at least 1 of 4 of the following characteristics, or appearing on a special Environmental Protection Agency (EPA) list.

1. Ignitability.

2. Corrosivity.

3. Reactivity.

4. Toxicity.

J. Non-Hazardous Waste: Solid wastes, such as building materials, packaging, rubbish, debris, and rubble resulting from construction, remodeling, repair, and demolition operations, possessing none of the 4 characteristics of hazardous substances, i.e., ignitability, corrosivity, reactivity, or toxicity.

K. Landfill: Authorized land waste disposal site that is located to minimize waste pollution from runoff and leaching. Waste is spread in thin layers, compacted and covered with a fresh layer of soil each day to minimize pest, aesthetic, disease and air and water pollution problems.

L. Municipal Solid Waste Landfill: A permitted facility that accepts solid, non-hazardous waste such as household, commercial, and industrial waste, including construction and demolition waste.

M. Non-hazardous: Exhibiting none of the characteristics of hazardous substance, i.e. ignitability, corrosiveness, toxicity or reactivity.

N. Non- toxic: Neither immediately poisonous nor poisonous after a long period of exposure.

O. Recyclable: The ability of a product or material to be recovered at the end of its life cycle and remanufactured into a new product for reuse by others.

P. Recycle: To remove a waste material from the Project site to another site for remanufacture into a new product for reuse by others.

Q. Recycling: The process of sorting, cleansing, treating, and reconstituting solid waste and other discarded materials for the purpose of using the altered form. Recycling does not include burning, incinerating, or thermally destroying waste.

R. Return: To give back reusable items or unused products to vendors for credit.

S. Reuse: A strategy to return materials to active use in the same or a related capacity.

T. Salvage: To remove a waste material from the Project site to another site for resale or reuse by others.

U. Source Separation: The act of keeping different types of waste materials separate beginning from the first time they become a waste.

V. Toxic: Poisonous to living beings either immediately or after a long period of exposure.

W. Trash: Any product or material unable to be reused, returned, recycled, or salvaged.

X. Waste: Extra material or material that has reached the end of its useful life in its intended use. Waste includes salvageable, returnable, recyclable, and reusable material.

All materials removed from the Project site to be land-filled, recycled, or salvaged for reuse. Pallets, containers, packaging and packing materials in which construction products are delivered to the Project site are considered waste materials. New, leftover materials that are returned to the material suppliers are <u>not</u> considered waste.

Y. Waste Management Plan: A Project-related plan for the collection, transportation, and disposal of the waste generated at the construction site. The purpose of the plan is to ultimately reduce the amount of material being land-filled.

1.5 WASTE MANAGEMENT GOALS

A. The Owner has established that at least **50%** of the "waste" materials produced as a result of the Work, shall be employed, salvaged, reused, or recycled in order to minimize the impact of construction and demolition waste on landfills, and to minimize the expenditure of energy and cost in fabricating new materials. Of the waste that is generated, as many of the waste materials as economically feasible shall be reused, salvaged, or recycled. Waste disposal in landfills or incinerators shall be minimized, thereby reducing disposal costs. As a minimum, **50%** of material that would otherwise go to the landfill shall be diverted.

B. Contractor shall employ and encourage practices that ensure the generation of as little waste as possible due to error, poor planning, breakage, mishandling, contamination, or other factors.

C. Revenues, savings, rebates, tax credits and other incentives received for recycling waste materials shall accrue to the Contractor.

D. Contractor is responsible for knowing and complying with regulatory requirements, including but not limited to Federal, State and local laws and regulations, pertaining to legal disposal of all construction waste materials.

E. Recycle material including diverting materials for secondary uses whenever economically feasible.

F. Dispose of materials with no practical use or economic benefit at landfill.

G. Acceptable methods of diversion include:
Donation to nonprofit organizations
Removal from jobsite by staff or subcontractors for use (not disposal)
Return to supplier
Sale to organizations or individuals
Recycling

H. The Contractor shall develop a Construction Demolition Waste Management Plan that results in end-of-Project rates for recycle and/or salvage at least **50%** of non-hazardous construction and demolition debris. Develop and implement the plan that, at a minimum, identifies the materials to be diverted from disposal and whether the materials will be sorted on-site or co-mingled. Calculations can be done by weight or volume, but must be consistent throughout.

1.6 SUBMITTALS

A. ***Draft Waste Management Plan***: Within 14 calendar days after date of the Notice to Proceed, or prior to any waste removal, whichever occurs first, submit a draft Waste Management Plan outlining how demolished items and waste material will be removed from the Project Site.

An example template is included as "Appendix A" to this section.

1. The Waste Management Plan shall include the following:

a. Identify each type of demolished and waste material produced as a result of the Work on the Project Site.

b. Identify each type of demolished and waste material intended to be recycled or reused.

c. Identify estimated quantities for each type of demolished and waste material that can be recycled or reused.

d. Identify material separation requirements.

e. Identify location of temporary on-Site storage for recycled and reused materials.

f. Identify final destination for each recycled and reused material.

g. Identify means of transportation for each recycled and reused material to their final destination.

h. Identify the name/phone number of the Coordinator of the Waste Management Plan. The Coordinator is Contractor-designated on-site party responsible for workers and overseeing and documenting results of Waste Management Plan.

i. Indicate permit or license and the location of the municipal solid waste landfills and other disposal area(s) to be used.

j. List of materials that cannot be recycled or reused.

B. ***Final Construction Waste Management Plan:*** Once the Owner has determined which of the recycling options addressed in the draft Construction Waste Management Plan are acceptable, revise and resubmit, within 14 calendar days, a final Construction Waste Management Plan. Approval of Contractor's Plan will not relieve the Contractor of responsibility for compliance with applicable environmental regulations.

C. ***Waste Management Reports:*** Prepare and maintain through Project duration a record of waste management. An Example template of a waste management record form is attached as "Appendix B" of this Section. With each application for progress payment, Contractor shall submit a summary of solid waste generated by the construction and demolition operations. Submit an electronic version of the updated form (showing new and cumulative information), indicating solid waste generated by the construction and means of disposal or diversion. Failure to submit updated reports with each Application for Progress Payment may delay payment. Include as a minimum the following information on the form: manifests, weight tickets, receipts and invoices, specifically identifying the Project and waste material for:

1. Municipal solid waste landfills.

2. Recycling centers.

3. Non-Profit organizations.

4. Landfill or Incinerator Disposal: Updates to the form and other updates required as part of the Waste Management Report shall include:

a. Land-fill Materials Description. Include date removed from jobsite.

b. Land-fill Hauler and Location of disposal or incineration.

c. Quantity of Land-filled (or incinerated) Waste

d. Submit electronic copy of manifests, weight tickets, receipts, and invoices as evidence of quantity and cost.

e. The amount (in tons or cubic yards) of material land-filled from the Project, the identity of the landfill, the total amount of tipping fees paid at the landfill, and the total disposal cost.

f. For each material recycled, reused, or salvaged from the Project, include the amount (in tons or cubic yards, pounds, feet, square yards, gallons, etc.), the date removed from the Project site, the receiving party, the transportation cost, the amount of any money paid or received for the recycled or salvaged material, and the net total cost or savings of salvaging or recycling each material.

5. Recycled and Salvaged Materials: Updates to the form shall include the following information:

a. Diverted / Recycled Materials Description, including those retrieved by installer for use on other projects, those taken by the Contractor's staff or subcontractors for use on their projects, and those donated to charitable organizations. Include date item was removed from jobsite.

b. Diversion / Recycling Hauler and Location, indicating name of person or company removing the material for future use and the location to which the item was removed.

c. Quantity of Diverted / Recycled Waste

d. Submit electronic copy of manifests, weight tickets, receipts, and invoices as evidence of quantity and cost.

e. The City of Austin Project manager may request further information regarding how the diverted material was used or is intended to be used.

D. ***CWM Closeout Documentation:*** Submit the following upon the completion of The Work and prior to final payment:

a. The completed Project Waste Management Record Form with Contract closeout documents, "signed" by the Contractor's representative and including calculations on end-of-project recycling rates, salvage rates, and landfill rates demonstrating that 100% of all non-hazardous construction wastes were recycled, salvaged or disposed of properly.

b. Copy of all receipts, manifests, weight tickets, and other documentation of materials recycled, salvaged, land-filled or incinerated, that have not already been documented.

c. Electronic copy of a final summary.

2 PART 2 - PRODUCTS

Not used

3 PART 3 – EXECUTION

3.1 GENERAL

A. Implement the waste management plan as approved by the City of Austin Project Manager. Provide handling, containers, storage, signage, transportation, and other items as required to implement waste management plan during the entire duration of the Contract.

B. Satisfy the requirements outlined in Subsection 1.5, Waste Management Goals.

3.2 WASTE MANAGEMENT PLAN IMPLEMENTATION

A. Plan Coordinator: Designate an on-site party (or parties) responsible for instructing workers, overseeing implementation and documenting results of the Waste Management Plan for the Project.

B. Plan Distribution: Provide copies of the Waste Management Plan to the Contractor's superintendent, each Subcontractor, the Owner, and the Engineer.

C. Instruction: Provide on-site instruction of appropriate separation, handling, and recycling, salvage, reuse, and return methods to be used by all parties at the appropriate stages of the Project. Contractor is responsible for requiring participation of subcontractors.

D. Meetings: Conduct construction waste management meetings. Include subcontractors affected by the Waste Management Plan. At a minimum, discuss and develop a mutual understanding for achieving all of the Owner's waste management goals at the following meetings:

1. Pre-bid conference.

2. Pre-construction conference.

3. Progress meetings.

E. Careful Ordering.

F. Materials Handling Procedures: Protect materials to be recycled from contamination. Handle, store and transport in a manner that meets the requirements set by the designated facilities for acceptance. All materials shall be covered during transportation to prevent contamination and littering.

G. Separation Facilities: The Contractor shall lay out and label a specific area to facilitate separation of materials for potential recycling, salvage, reuse, and return. Recycling and waste bin areas shall be kept neat and clean and clearly marked in order to avoid contamination of materials.

H. Handling:

1. Clean materials which are contaminated prior to placing in collection containers. Deliver materials free of dirt, adhesives, solvents, petroleum contamination, and other substances deleterious to recycling process.

2. Arrange for collection by, or delivery to, the appropriate recycling or reuse facility.

I. Hazardous Wastes: shall be separated, stored, and disposed of according to local prevailing regulations, and in accordance with the appropriate section of this specification.

3.3 RECYCLING REQUIREMENTS

A. Materials: Refer to individual specification sections for detailed Waste Management requirements. In general, the following types of construction waste materials generated during the course of this project that are not salvaged shall be recycled:

1. Asphalt concrete pavement.

2. Concrete.

3. Concrete block.

4. Metals, including the following.

a. Banding straps.
b. Reinforcing steel.

c. Iron.
d. Brass and bronze.
e. Lead.
f. Extruded aluminum.
g. Aluminum sheet.
h. Stainless steel sheet.
i. Steel studs.
j. Copper pipe.
k. Steel pipe.
l. Galvanized steel pipe.
m. Metal ductwork.

5. Clean dimensional lumber.
6. Broken wood crates and pallets.
7. Glass and glass containers.
8. Plastics.
9. Plaster.
10. Gypsum board.
11. Acoustic ceiling tile.
12. Carpet and pad.
13. Paint and paint containers.
14. Metal toilet partitions.
15. Food service equipment.
16. HVAC heating and cooling coils.
17. HVAC equipment.
18. Plumbing fixtures.
19. Electrical conduit.
20. Electrical wiring.
21. Light fixtures.
22. Cardboard, paper, and packaging.
23. Beverage containers.

B. Methods: The following recycling methods may be used.
1. On-site separation: Each material to be recycled shall be separated at the Project site and delivered to the recycling markets or directly from the Project site.
   a. If on-site separation method is used, designate a specific area or areas to facilitate separation of materials for potential reuse, salvage, recycling, and return.
   b. Maintain recycling and waste bin areas neat and clean and clearly marked, both in Spanish and in English, in order to avoid commingling of materials.
   c. Protect bins during non-working hours from off site contamination.

2. Off-site separation: Materials to be recycled are delivered unsorted from the Project site to a materials recovery facility or transfer station where recyclable materials are separated from other waste.
    a. If this method is selected, Contractor shall verify that the entity responsible for the off-site separation has a market for all of the materials that are required to be recycled that it receives from the Project site.
    b. The same Submittals procedures shall apply.
    c. Protect bins during non-working hours from off site contamination.
3. A combination of each of the above methods.

C. Area Recyclers: A reference for waste recycling markets and resources for the Austin, Texas area is included at the end of this Section.

3.4 REUSE

A. Contractor is encouraged to reuse as many demolished and waste materials as possible.

B. Reuse of demolished and waste materials includes the following:
    a. Salvaging existing materials scheduled for resale.
    b. Off-Site storage of demolished materials for future reuse by Contractor on other projects.
    c. Returning reusable materials, such as packaging and pallets, to vendor.
    d. Returning unused new materials to vendor.
    e. Assemble designated reuse items in a single location safe from damage, for review and approval by the Owner's Representative.

C. Submit a list of reused materials as part of the Waste Management Record

D. Contractor shall investigate the possibility of off-Site reuse of demolished and removed materials in the Austin, Texas metropolitan area.

3.5 SALVAGE

A. Salvage materials as identified on the Architectural and Engineering Demolition Plans.

B. Salvage Guidelines:
    1. The contractor shall salvage as many items as deemed economically possible, considering that each item salvaged saves on land filling fees and may be of use to others.
    2. Assemble potentially salvageable items in one area for review by the City of Austin Project Manager. No items may be donated or sold to the public without prior approval by the City of Austin Project Manager.
    3. The Contractor, with assistance requested from the City of Austin Waste Reduction Assistance contact and Engineer, shall consider several possible markets for salvaged items. Examples of potential markets are:
        a. Habitat for Humanity Restore.
        b. Project site display for public purchase/donation
        c. Demolition Contractor's sales yard/area

4. Salvage items shall be stored in a manner that prevents damage.
5. All proceeds from the sale of salvaged items shall go to the contractor.
6. The contractor shall submit a list of items salvaged as part of the Waste Management Records.

3.6 SCHEDULE OF MATERIAL DISPOSAL & RECYCLING SERVICES

A. The following list is provided for informational purposes only. Additional opportunities may be available. All information contained in this list is from the Austin Energy Green Building Program. Shortcut to: http://www.austinenergy.com/Energy%20Efficiency/Programs/Green%20Building/Sourcebook/constructionWasteManagement.htm

Contractor shall re-verify any crucial information prior to making arrangements that involve any of the firms listed.

Appendix A. Sample Construction Waste Management Plan

Construction Waste Management Plan

Project:
Contractor:
Date:
Contact:
Phone:
Prepared by:

Diversion Goal: Salvage and recycle at least ***50%*** *(by weight or volume) of land-clearing and construction waste*

Complete all sections below that are required by or pertinent to this project as outlined in the Construction Documents.

I. Coordination and Training

a. Name of Contractor's representative responsible for CWM implementation & coordination:

b. How will Contractor's staff and subcontractors be instructed and updated regarding demolition and construction phase **salvaging** activities?

c. How will Contractor's staff and subcontractors be instructed and updated regarding proper **recycling and separation** procedures, and how will contamination of separated waste materials will be prevented?

d. Describe and/or show on an attached site map where the temporary waste material storage area(s) will be located.

e. Recycling and trash containers and areas shall be clearly marked in English and Spanish in order to avoid contamination. Architect's review and approval of the storage area(s) and signage will be required as part of the approval of this Construction Waste Management Plan.

II. Waste Minimization

a. What waste minimization techniques will be employed during the construction phase? (See "Waste Minimization" subsection in specifications Section 01505, Construction Waste Management)_____
_____
_____
_____

b. Which employees and / or subcontractors will be involved with each technique?
_____
_____
_____
_____

III. Construction Waste Analysis (including site / land-clearing materials, as applicable)

a. ***Diverted Materials***: For each of the materials anticipated to be reused or recycled (and thereby diverted from the landfill) to meet the minimum **50%** diversion goal, provide information to complete the table below. (Note: Whenever possible, please make efforts to use or donate usable construction waste materials rather than recycling.)

Material or Item	Storage Method (roll-off, bin, area, on pallet, etc.)	Quantity estimate (no., linear ft., square ft., etc.)	Proposed Recipient

Add rows (or paper pages) as required

b. ***Landfill***: For construction phase trash and materials / items that will not be diverted, complete the following table:

Quantity estimate (weight or volume)	Number and size of roll offs anticipated	Proposed landfill site

Appendix B. Summary of Solid Waste Disposal and Diversion

Project name _____ Project Number _____
Contractor Name _____ License Number_____
Contractor Address_____

Solid Waste Material	**Date Material Disposed/ diverted**	**Amount Disposed/ Diverted** (Ton or cubic yd.)	**Municipal Solid Waste Facility** (Name, address, Phone)	**Recycling/Reuse Facility** Name Address Phone	**Comment** (If disposed state why not diverted)
Land Clearing Debris					
Asphalt					
Concrete					
Metal					
Wood					
Debris					
Glass					
Clay Brick					
Paper/Cardboard					
Plastic					
Gypsum					
Paint					
Carpet					
Other					
Other					

Signature _____ Date _____

END SECTION 01505.1

CONSTRUCTION INDOOR AIR QUALITY MANAGEMENT PLAN
Section 01510

PART 1 – GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. This Section includes requirements for construction indoor air quality, including:

1. Construction Indoor Air Quality Management Purpose
2. Construction Indoor Air Quality Procedures
3. Construction Indoor Air Quality Submittals

B. This section includes references to the following external documents:

1. The U.S. Green Building Council's Leadership in Energy and Environmental Design (LEED^{AP}) "NC", for New Construction, version 2.2. This information is available from the U.S. Green Building Council, 1015 18th St NW, Ste. 105, Washington, DC 20036, 202-828-7422 or 866-828-7422, www.usgbc.org.

2. "IAQ Guidelines for Occupied Buildings Under Construction", Sheet Metal and Air Conditioning Contractors' National Association (SMACNA), www.smacna.org, (703) 803-2980.

3. "ANSI/AHSRAE 52.2-1999: Method of Testing General Ventilation Air-Cleaning Devices for Removal Efficiency by Particle Size", American Society of Heating, Refrigerating and Air-Conditioning Engineers (ASHRAE), www.ashrae.org, (800) 527-4723.

1.3 PURPOSE

A. The intent of Construction IAQ (Indoor Air Quality) management is to reduce indoor air quality problems resulting from the construction process in order to help sustain the health and well-being of construction workers and building occupants.

1.4 PROCEDURES

A. The Contractor shall make every effort to reduce pollutants throughout the construction process in order to achieve compliance with IAQ testing maximum concentrations discussed below. The most significant method for achieving success is through source control, that is:

1. Install products and materials that are low- or zero-VOC, do not contain added formaldehyde, and are free of particulates

2. Request in-factory flush-out from manufacturers wherever possible, to flush out pollutants before products arrive at the site

B. The Contractor shall adopt an IAQ management plan to protect the HVAC system during construction, control pollutant sources, and interrupt contamination pathways.

C. Contractor shall sequence the installation of materials to avoid contamination of absorptive materials such as insulation, carpeting, ceiling tile, and gypsum wallboard.

D. Temporary HVAC units (independent of permanent ductwork and distribution systems) are recommended as the optimal method for achieving the Construction IAQ requirements. This allows permanent HVAC equipment to be fully protected. If contractor is utilizing permanent HVAC equipment for fresh air, heating, or cooling during construction, all air intakes shall be protected from incoming construction debris. Contractor shall use filtration media in all permanent air handling equipment during construction, and replace this media immediately before occupancy.

1. Regularly occupied spaces: Filtration media during and after construction shall have a Minimum Efficiency Reporting Value (MERV) of 13 as determined by ANSI/ASHRAE 52.2-1999. Obtain a diagram from MEP Engineer indicating location of all regularly occupied spaces.
2. All other spaces: Filtration media during and after construction shall have a Minimum Efficiency Reporting Value (MERV) of 8 as determined by ANSI/ASHRAE 52.2- 1999.

E. The Contractor shall employ Green Housekeeping methods wherever practicable.

1. Use non-toxic cleaners per Green Seal: http://www.greenseal.org/
2. Conserve energy by shutting off lights and HVAC in all areas except those currently being cleaned.

F. AFTER all finishes are installed, but BEFORE occupancy, the Contractor shall coordinate testing for Indoor Air Quality by a qualified testing agency. Testing shall be performed per LEED-NC Version 2.2 IEQ Credit 3.2. The testing agency shall employ the following procedures:

1. One testing point per 25,000 sq. ft., or for each contiguous floor area, whichever is less.
2. Test for the following contaminants, and demonstrate that the maximum concentrations listed below are not exceeded.
   - **a.** Formaldehyde: 50 parts per billion
   - **b.** Particulates (PM10): 50 micrograms per cubic meter
   - **c.** Total Volatile Organic Compounds (TVOC): 500 micrograms per cubic meter.
   - **d.** 4-Phenylcyclohexane (4-PCH): 6.5 micrograms per cubic meter (only required if carpets and fabrics with styrene butadiene rubber (SBR) latex backing material are installed as part of the base building systems).
   - **e.** Carbon Monoxide (CO): 9 parts per million and no greater than 2 parts per million above outdoor levels
3. All measurements shall be conducted prior to occupancy, but during normal occupied hours, and with the building ventilation system starting at the normal daily start time and operated at the minimum outside air flow rate for the occupied mode throughout the duration of air testing.
4. The building shall have all interior finishes installed, including but not limited to millwork, doors, paint, carpet and acoustic tiles. Non-fixed furnishings such as workstations and partitions are not required, to be in place for the testing. Better results will be achieved without furniture.

5. The number of sampling locations will vary depending upon the size of the building and number of ventilation systems. For each portion of a building served by a separate ventilation system, the number of points shall not be less than one per 25,000 sq. ft., or for each contiguous floor are, whichever is larger, and include areas with the least ventilation and the greatest presumed pollutant source strength.
6. Air samples shall be collected between 3 feet and 6 feet from the floor to represent the breathing zone of occupants, and over a minimum 4-hour period.
7. For each sampling point where the maximum concentration limits are exceeded, conduct additional flush-out with outside air and retest the specific parameters exceeded to indicate the requirements are achieved. When re-testing non-complying building areas, take samples from the same locations as in the first test.

1.5 SUBMITTALS

A. With first Application for Payment, the General Contractor is to submit a draft Construction IAQ Management Plan. Architect will return plan with revisions or approval, to be resubmitted as many times as necessary for Architect's final approval. The plan shall be divided into 6 parts, addressing each of the following topics per "IAQ Guidelines for Occupied Buildings Under Construction", Sheet Metal and Air Conditioning Contractors' National Association (SMACNA); http://www.smacna.org/ ; (703) 803-2980. The plan shall also include requirements described in "Procedures" above.

1. HVAC protection
2. Source Control
3. Pathway Interruption
4. Housekeeping
5. Filter Maintenance Schedule
6. Scheduling

B. With subsequent Applications for Payment, the General Contractor is to submit documentation of IAQ procedures as follows:

1. Provide cut sheets of filtration media used during construction with MERV values highlighted (per ANSI/ASHRAE 52.2-1999). Fresh clean filters must be installed immediately prior to occupancy.

2. During construction, take photographs of Construction IAQ Management procedures, such as protection of ducts, physical barriers protecting areas under construction, and the sequencing of installation for absorptive materials.

C. The Contractor shall provide a report from the Indoor Air Quality Testing Agency, describing the testing process, reporting results for every testing point, and indicating compliance with the pollutant maximum concentration levels.

END

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 Related Documents:

Drawings and general provisions of Contract, including General Conditions, Section 00700, and Supplemental General Conditions, Section 00810, and Division 1 requirements.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS (NOT USED)

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 General

CONTRACTOR shall maintain reasonable local vehicular and pedestrian dust free traffic, including use of driveways, to proceed safely with minimum inconvenience, except during actual construction operations. CONTRACTOR provided flaggers shall assist traffic when a street is operating under a single lane. Two-way traffic shall be maintained at all other times unless otherwise authorized by Owner.

CONTRACTOR shall provide, at the work zone location during temporary traffic control installation, a designated Competent Traffic Control Person to ensure compliance with the traffic control plans and the provisions of the Contract. Training Certificates for the designated Competent Person shall be provided with submittals at the Precon. Training certificates for competent persons shall be good for four (4) years from the date of training. After such time the competent person must show that additional training or re-certification has been completed to maintain competent person status.

CONTRACTOR shall maintain a smooth and safe ride for traffic by placing steel plates with Asphaltic concrete berms, temporary fill or bridging and temporary surfacing with cold or hot-mix Asphaltic concrete paving in accordance with applicable City Standards.

Sidewalks shall not be obstructed, except by special permission of Owner or E/A. Access to private dwelling and to commercial establishments shall be provided at all times.

CONTRACTOR shall plan and execute his operations in a manner that will cause a minimum interference with traffic. The CONTRACTOR shall place and maintain in good condition, standard barricades at each end of the Project and at other locations where traffic is rerouted or blocked from using regular traffic lanes. Barricades and warning signs shall be in accordance with Texas Manual on Uniform Traffic Control Devices (MUTCD) and the City of Austin Transportation Criteria Manual.

Signs, barricades and warning devices informing public of construction features shall be placed and maintained by the CONTRACTOR who shall be solely responsible for their maintenance.

Unless otherwise specified elsewhere in Division 1, neither explosives nor blasting shall be permitted on this Project.

3.2 Traffic Control

3.2.1 It shall be the sole responsibility of the CONTRACTOR to furnish, install, maintain and remove barricades, detour signs, warning signs, lights and all regulatory traffic control devices of the size and type specified, at locations indicated, or as directed or approved by the OWNER in accordance with the Texas Manual on Uniform Traffic Control Devices, (MUTCD), Part VI, Traffic Control for Street and Highway Construction and Maintenance Operations and the City of Austin Transportation Criteria Manual. Upon phase completion, the Contractor shall immediately revise the

temporary traffic devices to reflect the next phase or if the project is complete remove them from the public right of way.

3.2.2 Throughout the life of the Contract, all existing roads and Traffic Control devices included in the Work shall be maintained by the CONTRACTOR to a condition, in the opinion of the OWNER, which is equal to or better than that which existed when Work commenced. Maintenance of existing roads and devices shall take priority over all other Work items and shall be subject to a seven-day-a-week, 24-hours-per-day time frame. The CONTRACTOR shall provide a smooth and safe riding surface for all vehicles along the route of this Project. This could include, but not be limited to, small cars, motorcycles, mopeds and bicycles. If the condition of the street surface deteriorates, for any reason, CONTRACTOR shall take necessary steps to insure immediate restoration.

3.2.3 During construction of streets, drainage, and utility projects, if conditions of existing street surface require maintenance to upgrade from their state when the Work began, a separate pay item may be included in Bid. Otherwise, maintenance work will not be paid for directly but will be considered subsidiary to various Bid items of this Contract.

3.2.4 In the event that CONTRACTOR fails, in opinion of OWNER, to maintain a smooth surface for public comfort, fails to provide ingress and egress to private property, and/or does not provide and maintain proper traffic control devices, OWNER may provide these services and deduct any cost thereof, including overtime and administrative expenses, from all estimates thereafter due the CONTRACTOR. Such action by the OWNER shall not relieve the CONTRACTOR of his liability to protect the public at construction site. Owner may also assess an investigation fee, as established by separate Fee Ordinance, for violations resulting in more than one deficiency report issued to Contractor.

3.2.5 A permit must be obtained from Texas Department of Transportation (TxDOT), prior to Work being performed on state highway routes passing through the City.

3.2.6 CONTRACTOR shall notify the Owner's Representative, Police Department, Fire Department, EMS, and Right of Way Management Division at least seven Calendar Days in advance of beginning proposed Work, with intention to close or partially block any street or any part thereof, or of any construction affecting free flow of traffic. The CONTRACTOR shall plan and adequately provide barricades and warning devices. The same parties shall be notified when normal traffic flow is restored.

3.2.7 Should the CONTRACTOR, in his operations, reduce an existing two-way roadway to less than 20 feet in width, CONTRACTOR shall provide a route through or around the narrowed area as approved by Owner or E/A.

3.2.8 The CONTRACTOR's Flaggers shall be required any time it is necessary for the CONTRACTOR's equipment to move into or across an open traffic lane, or at other such times as directed by the Owner's Representative. A flagger shall be utilized to aid exit of hauling equipment from open traffic lanes to the Work area, and entry of hauling equipment from Work area to open traffic lanes. Flaggers shall be dressed and conduct operations in accordance with Texas Manual on Uniform Traffic Control Devices and the Transportation Criteria Manual. Flagging operations shall be the sole responsibility of the CONTRACTOR.

3.2.9 The CONTRACTOR and Subcontractors shall confine their activities to the immediate area of the construction site and provide the following:

a. Appropriate temporary fences, barricades, and/or Metal Beam Guard Fence if required, for site work involving excavation, utility extensions, remote construction work or other circumstances involving safety of public or protection of the work in progress.

b. Warning lights at open trenches, excavations, etc., during hours from dusk to dawn each day. Protection of structures, utilities, sidewalks, pavements, and other facilities immediately adjacent to excavations, from damages caused by settlement, lateral movement, undermining, washout and other hazards.

3.3 Spoil Disposal

CONTRACTOR may make other arrangements for spoil disposal subject to E/A evaluation of the CONTRACTOR-supplied proof that the Owner(s) of the proposed site(s) has a valid fill permit issued by the appropriate governmental agency. Finally, the CONTRACTOR shall submit a haul route plan including a map of the proposed route(s) for the E/A and Owner's approval.

3.4 Restoration

3.4.1 In order to minimize environmental and potential flood impacts, the sum of the amount of trench opened in advance of the completed line and the amount of trench left unfilled at any time shall be restricted to one (1) full block or 300 linear feet, whichever is less.

3.4.2 Restoration shall be an on-going process during construction operations and shall immediately precede completion of construction of each successive section of the line, which shall not exceed 1,200 linear feet without approval of the E/A.

3.5 Street Markers and Traffic Control Signs

It shall be responsibility of the CONTRACTOR to remove, preserve and reset, as required, Street Marker and Traffic Control Signs that are within construction limits to the line and heights as described in Texas Manual on Uniform Traffic Control Devices before any sidewalks or street excavation is begun. Signs shall not be laid on the ground. No payment will be made for this work but shall be considered subsidiary to the various Bid items. Traffic Sign Activity Section of the Transportation Department (457-4850) shall be notified a minimum of five Working Days prior to completion of the Project so that signs may be checked for damage. Any damage to signs or posts shall be paid for by the CONTRACTOR.

3.6 Burning Permit

Open burning within City limits will not be allowed. Trench burning shall require a permit from the Fire Marshal. Burning permits outside City limits shall be obtained from the appropriate authority.

The CONTRACTOR shall secure and pay for all burning permits.

3.7 Driveways

Unless otherwise indicated, the approach grade of existing driveways shall be modified as indicated and as directed by the Owner's Representative. The OWNER will contact property owners whose driveways require grade modification beyond street right-of-way and the OWNER will obtain their concurrence for approach grade modification. Within the right-of-way, all driveways shall be replaced with concrete driveways. Outside the right-of-way, when approach grade modifications are required, flexible base shall be placed by the CONTRACTOR to resurface existing dirt or gravel driveways; asphalt and concrete drives shall be replaced in kind by the CONTRACTOR. Excavation, Flexible Base, Portland Cement Concrete and Asphaltic Concrete, used for driveways as prescribed above shall not be measured for payment but shall be considered subsidiary to various Bid items in the Contract unless payment is included as a separate Contract pay item.

3.8 Removal or Relocation of Fences and Sprinkler Systems

Removal or relocation of privately owned fences and sprinkler systems not specified in Bid, and within public right-of-way is the primary responsibility of the property owner. OWNER will cause property owners to be aware of any known conflicts and encourage them to make desired adjustments in advance of construction. In the event the property owner does not,

or will not, make adjustments necessary for construction of improvements to be made under this Contract, CONTRACTOR, after receiving written approval from the OWNER, shall remove those portions that interfere with the Work, as follows:

3.8.1 Fences shall be disassembled, by hand, into hand manageable sizes and placed on the private property.

3.8.2 For sprinkler systems, the CONTRACTOR, after assuring that electrical and/or mechanical controls are disconnected, shall remove sprinkler heads, valves, controls, and any other miscellaneous items, including distribution pipe, or wire, saw cut from the system. The CONTRACTOR shall present these materials to the property owner. Where piping is cut, the pipe shall be permanently capped or plugged, unless otherwise directed by the OWNER.

Work for removal or relocation of fences and sprinkler systems shall not be paid for directly but shall be subsidiary to the various Bid items.

End

ARTICLE 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

The following documents are a part of this section:

All documents in Bidding Requirements, Contract Forms and Conditions of the Contract.

Other sections of Division 1 - General Requirements apply to this section.

1.2 DESCRIPTION AND INTENT OF THE WORK

No asbestos containing material (ACM) shall be brought onto the Project site, and/or incorporated into the Project construction without the written consent of the OWNER. Any asbestos containing material found at any time including after contract completion, to have been brought onto the site or incorporated into the Project construction by the CONTRACTOR, or any Subcontractors, Sub-Subcontractors or Suppliers, shall be removed and disposed of in accordance with the then current governmental regulatory standards.

All costs associated with the inspection, sampling, testing, removal and disposal of ACM as described above shall be paid by the CONTRACTOR.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

ASBESTOS: The asbestiform varieties of serpentine (chrysotile), riebeckite (crocidolite) cummingtonite-grunerite (amosite), anthophyllite, actinolite and tremolite.

ASBESTOS CONTAINING MATERIAL (ACM): Any material containing more than one percent (1%) by weight of asbestos of any type or mixture of types.

ASBESTOS CONTAINING BUILDING MATERIAL (ACBM): Any material used in the construction of, or incorporated into the construction of, any building that contains more than one percent (1%) by weight of asbestos of any type or mixture of types.

MSDS: A material safety data sheet (MSDS) is a form containing data regarding the properties of component substances that comprise a manufactured product. They are a basic hazard communication tool that gives details on chemical and physical dangers, safety procedures, and emergency responses for chemicals.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

PROHIBITION OF ASBESTOS CONTAINING MATERIALS

The E/A has been instructed to not permit any asbestos containing materials to be specified, requested or approved for use in conjunction with this Project.

The E/A has signed the following:

A. 01900A Statement of Non-Inclusion of Asbestos Containing Material (E/A, Prior to Design): stating that the Engineer/Architect shall not specify, request or approve any ACM in this Project without prior written approval of OWNER.

B. 01900B Statement of Non-Inclusion of Asbestos Containing Material (E/A, After Design): stating that the Engineer/Architect has not specified, requested or approved any ACM in this Project without the prior written approval of the OWNER, and that any ACM allowed in this Project is identified in the Statements.

These Statements are included in the Construction Documents.

ASBESTOS CONTAINING MATERIALS PROHIBITED FROM SITE

No asbestos containing materials will be permitted as part of the Project construction. The following list is intended to be used as a general guide to show which types of materials are suspected to contain asbestos:

- Cement Pipes
- Cement Wallboard
- Cement Siding
- Asphalt Floor Tile
- Vinyl Floor Tile
- Vinyl Sheet Flooring/vinyl wall coverings
- Flooring Backing
- Construction Mastics (floor tile, carpet, ceiling tile, etc.)
- Acoustical Plaster
- Decorative Plaster / stucco
- Textured Paintings/Coatings
- Ceiling Tiles and Lay-in Panels
- Spray-Applied Insulation
- Blown-in Insulation
- Fireproofing Materials
- Taping Compounds (thermal)
- Packing Materials (for wall/floor penetrations)
- High Temperature Gaskets
- Laboratory Gloves
- Fire Blankets
- Fire Curtains
- Elevator Equipment Panels
- Elevator Brake Shoes
- HVAC Duct Insulation
- Boiler Insulation
- Breeching Insulation
- Ductwork Flexible Fabric Connections
- Cooling Towers
- Pipe Insulation (corrugated air-cell, block, etc.)
- Heating and Electrical Ducts
- Electrical Panel Partitions
- Electric Cloth
- Electric Wiring Insulation
- Chalkboards
- Roofing Shingles / tiles / membranes
- Roofing Felt
- Roof Coatings
- Base Flashing
- Thermal Paper Products
- Fire Doors
- Caulking/Putties
- Adhesives / mastics
- Wallboard
- Joint Compounds
- Spackling Compounds
- Laboratory hoods/tabletops
- CMU block fill materials

If any of these suspect materials are specified for use on the Project, and if they do not have specific labelling identifying them as asbestos free, then the CONTRACTOR shall notify the OWNER immediately. Laboratory analysis of the material by an OWNER-approved laboratory shall be performed at CONTRACTOR's expense in order to warrant that the material does not contain asbestos. A copy of the package labelling or results of laboratory testing must be provided to the OWNER prior to inclusion of the specified material during construction. Contractor's construction submittals must include MSDSs for all new materials used in construction of buildings, facilties and infrastructure.

1.5 SUBMITTALS

NON-USE OF ASBESTOS AFFIDAVITS

At the time that the CONTRACTOR signs the Agreement, they shall sign a Non-Use of Asbestos Affidavit (Contractor Prior to Construction), Contract Document 00680. This Affidavit certifies that the CONTRACTOR agrees that they will not allow any asbestos containing materials to be incorporated into the construction of the Project or allow any asbestos containing building materials on the site for which the OWNER has not given prior written approval.

Prior to final payment, the CONTRACTOR will provide to the OWNER a Non-Use of Asbestos Affidavit (Contractor After Construction), Contract Document 00681. This Affidavit certifies that the CONTRACTOR did not allow asbestos containing materials to be incorporated into the construction or allowed any asbestos containing building materials on the site for which the OWNER of the Project did not give prior written approval.

ASBESTOS CONTAINING MATERIALS: When any asbestos containing materials are used on the Project, provide the following information:

A detailed description of the material containing the asbestos.

The type and percent of asbestos contained in the material.

The quantity of the materials used, including the square footage, or in the case of pipe insulation, the size and linear footage.

A drawing showing the exact location of any asbestos containing materials.

Final payment shall be withheld until the above described Affidavits, submittals and/or information are received and approved.

END

CITY OF AUSTIN

STATEMENT OF NON-INCLUSION OF ASBESTOS CONTAINING MATERIAL

STATE OF TEXAS
COUNTY OF TRAVIS

ENGINEER/ARCHITECT PRIOR TO DESIGN

"My name is Ray Holliday, hereinafter known as Authorized Representative.

"I am over the age of 18 years and I have never been convicted of a crime. I am the Project Manager of Brown Reynolds Watford Architects, Inc. hereinafter known as ENGINEER/ARCHITECT.

"I am fully competent to make this statement. I have personal knowledge of the facts set forth below and they are all true and correct.

"WHEREAS ENGINEER/ARCHITECT has been selected to provide designs, to prepare the bid and construction documents, and to assist the City of Austin, Texas, hereinafter known as OWNER, during the construction of City of Austin Onion Creek Fire Station, located at 11112 Old San Antonio Road, Austin, Texas, hereinafter known as Project, and

"WHEREAS asbestos in a dust form is a recognized health hazard, and
"WHEREAS the OWNER desires not to have any asbestos containing materials used or incorporated into the construction of the Project;
"THEREFORE the ENGINEER/ARCHITECT affirms that to the best of its knowledge and belief:

1. The ENGINEER/ARCHITECT, any person, firm or organization representing or represented by the ENGINEER/ARCHITECT, shall not knowingly specify, request, or approve for use in conjunction with the Project, any asbestos containing materials or any other materials defined as containing asbestos by any laws, rules or regulations promulgated by the United States Government, the State of Texas or any governmental organization or agency operating under the authority of either of those entities.
2. Realizing that there might be materials required in which a satisfactory non-asbestos containing material cannot be obtained, the ENGINEER/ARCHITECT will do the following before specifying any asbestos containing material:
   A. Inform the OWNER's Project Manager for this Project, in writing, of any intent to specify asbestos containing materials.
   B. Receive written approval from the City of Austin Project Manager for the specifying of any asbestos containing materials.
   C. At the completion of the design phase, and before the OWNER receives any bids for this Project, provide to the Project Manager, in writing, the proposed location of any asbestos containing materials, the type of asbestos they contain, and the percent of asbestos by types.
3. The ENGINEER/ARCHITECT states its understanding that if any asbestos containing materials not approved by the OWNER for inclusion into the Project, are determined, as a result of any inspection and sample analysis performed by an individual(s) and/or firm(s) certified and/or licensed to perform such inspection by the United States Government and/or the State of Texas, to have been knowingly specified, requested and/or approved by the ENGINEER/ARCHITECT for inclusion in the Project, the OWNER shall look to the ENGINEER/ARCHITECT for reimbursement of any and all costs incurred in the removal and/or other abatement of said asbestos containing materials.
4. ENGINEER/ARCHITECT further understands that OWNER shall also look to the ENGINEER/ARCHITECT for any and all damages to OWNER which result from the inability of the OWNER to use any portion or all of the Project due to the incorporation of asbestos containing materials that have been knowingly specified, requested and/or approved by the ENGINEER/ARCHITECT.
5. ENGINEER/ARCHITECT further understands that OWNER will pursue reimbursement of any said cost and compensation for any said damages from the ENGINEER/ARCHITECT by any and every means within OWNER's right and power.

Signature of Authorized Representative: Ray Holliday

STATE OF TEXAS
COUNTY OF TRAVIS

ON Aug. 29, 2016, personally appeared Ray Holliday and been duly sworn by me, subscribed to the foregoing statement and has stated that the facts stated therein are true and correct.

RECHELLE SHARI PARKER
Notary Public, State of Texas
Comm. Expires 08-24-2020
Notary ID 12277047

Notary Public, State of Texas Rechelle S. Parker

Printed Name of Notary Rechelle Parker

My Commission Expires: 8/24/2020

01605A.00/110392

CITY OF AUSTIN

STATEMENT OF NON-INCLUSION OF ASBESTOS CONTAINING MATERIAL

ENGINEER/ARCHITECT AFTER DESIGN

STATE OF TEXAS
COUNTY OF TRAVIS

"My name is Ray Holliday, hereinafter known as Authorized Representative.

"I am over the age of 18 years and I have never been convicted of a crime. I am the Project Manager of Brown Reynolds Watford Architects hereinafter known as ENGINEER/ARCHITECT.

"I am fully competent to make this statement. I have personal knowledge of the facts set forth below and they are all true and correct.

"WHEREAS ENGINEER/ARCHITECT has been selected to provide designs, to prepare the bid and construction documents, and to assist the City of Austin, Texas, hereinafter known as OWNER, during the construction of City of Austin Onion Creek Fire Station, located at 1112 Old San Antonio Rd. Austin, Texas, hereinafter known as Project, and

"WHEREAS asbestos in a dust form is a recognized health hazard, and
"WHEREAS the OWNER desires not to have any asbestos containing materials used or incorporated into the construction of the Project;
"THEREFORE the ENGINEER/ARCHITECT affirms that to the best of its knowledge and belief:

1. The ENGINEER/ARCHITECT, any person, firm or organization representing or represented by the ENGINEER/ARCHITECT, shall not knowingly specify, request, or approve for use in conjunction with the Project, any asbestos containing materials or any other materials defined as containing asbestos by any laws, rules or regulations promulgated by the United States Government, the State of Texas or any governmental organization or agency operating under the authority of either of those entities.
2. The only exceptions to the above statement are the following materials that are required because a satisfactory non-asbestos containing material cannot be obtained. The inclusion of these materials has been approved by the OWNER's Project Manager for this Project.

   _____

   _____

   _____

   _____

3. The ENGINEER/ARCHITECT states its understanding that if any asbestos containing materials not approved by the OWNER for inclusion into the Project, are determined, as a result of any inspection and sample analysis performed by an individual(s) and/or firm(s) certified and/or licensed to perform such inspection by the United States Government and/or the State of Texas, to have been knowingly specified, requested and/or approved by the ENGINEER/ARCHITECT for inclusion in the Project, the OWNER shall look to the ENGINEER/ARCHITECT for reimbursement of any and all costs incurred in the removal and/or other abatement of said asbestos containing materials.
4. ENGINEER/ARCHITECT further understands that OWNER shall also look to the ENGINEER/ARCHITECT for any and all damages to OWNER which result from the inability of the OWNER to use any portion or all of the Project due to the incorporation of asbestos containing materials that have been knowingly specified, requested and/or approved by the ENGINEER/ARCHITECT.
5. ENGINEER/ARCHITECT further understands that OWNER will pursue reimbursement of any said cost and compensation for any said damages from the ENGINEER/ARCHITECT by any and every means within OWNER's right and power.

Signature of Authorized Representative: Ray Holliday

STATE OF TEXAS
COUNTY OF TRAVIS

ON Aug. 29, 2016, personally appeared Ray Holliday and been duly sworn by me, subscribed to the foregoing statement and has stated that the facts stated therein are true and correct.

RECHELLE SHARI PARKER
Notary Public, State of Texas
Comm. Expires 08-24-2020
Notary ID 12277047

Notary Public, State of Texas Rechelle S. Parker

Printed Name of Notary Rechelle Parker

My Commission Expires: 8/24/2020

01605B/110392

Item No. 101S
Preparing Right of Way

101S.1 Description

This item shall govern the preparation of the right of way for construction operations by removal and disposal of all obstructions from the right of way and from designated easements, where removal of such obstructions is not otherwise indicated as a separate pay item.

Such obstructions shall be considered to include, but not be limited to, remains of houses not completely removed by others, foundations, floor slabs, concrete, brick, lumber, plaster, cisterns, water wells, septic tanks and drain fields, basements; abandoned utility pipes, conduits, underground service station tanks, fences, retaining walls, outhouses, shacks and all other debris.

This item shall also include, but not be limited to, the removal of trees, stumps, roots, bushes, shrubs, curb and gutter, driveways, paved parking areas, miscellaneous stone, brick, sidewalks, drainage structures, manholes, inlets, abandoned railroad tracks, scrap iron, and all rubbish and debris whether above or below ground. Care should be taken to identify and protect existing infrastructure.

This specification is applicable for projects or work involving either inch-pound or SI units. Within the text the inch-pound units are given preference followed by SI units shown within parentheses.

101S.2 Submittals

The submittal requirements of this specification item may include:

A. A permit when utility adjustments are made in the right-of-way, and

B. A plan for removal and deposition of all non-salvageable materials and debris.

101S.3 Construction Methods

Prior to commencement of this work, all required erosion controls and tree protection measures indicated on the Drawings shall be in place. The existing utilities shall be located and protected as specified in the Standard Contract Documents, Section 00700, "General Conditions" and/or as specified on the Drawings. A permit shall be required when utility adjustments are to be made in preparation for construction in the right-of-way, as specified in Section 5.2.0 of the City of Austin Utilities Criteria Manual.

Areas within the construction limits shall be cleared of all obstructions, abandoned structures, and other items as defined above. All vegetation, except trees or shrubs indicated for preservation, shall also be removed. Trees and shrubs, which are scheduled for preservation, shall be carefully trimmed as directed and shall be protected from scarring, barking or other injuries during construction operations in accordance with Item

No. 610S, " Preservation of Trees and Other Vegetation". All exposed cuts over 2 inches (50 millimeters) in diameter, exposed ends of pruned limbs or scarred bark shall be treated with an approved asphalt material within 24 hours of the pruning or injury.

Construction equipment shall not be operated nor construction materials stockpiled under the canopies of trees, unless otherwise indicated on the Drawings and/or specified in the Contract Documents. Excavation or embankment materials shall not be placed within the drip line of trees until tree wells are constructed.

Culverts, storm sewers, manholes and inlets shall be removed in proper sequence for maintenance of traffic and drainage.

Unless otherwise indicated on the Drawings and/or Contract Documents, all underground obstructions, stumps and roots shall be removed to the following depths:

1. In areas to receive 6 inches (150 mm) or more embankment, a minimum of 12 inches (300 mm) below natural ground.
2. In areas to receive less than 6 inches (150 mm) of embankment, a minimum of 18 inches (450 mm) below the lower elevation of embankment, structure or excavation.
3. In areas to be excavated a minimum of 18 inches (450 mm) below the lower elevation of the embankment, structure or excavation.
4. In all other areas, a minimum of 12 inches (300 mm) below natural ground.

Holes remaining after removal of all obstructions, objectionable material, trees, stumps, etc. shall be backfilled with select embankment material and compacted by approved methods.

When a utility in service conflicts with the construction, it shall be modified as specified in the Standard Contract Documents, Section 00700, "General Conditions" and/or as specified on the Drawings.

Where an abandoned underground piped utility is found, it shall be cut and plugged with 6 inches (150 mm) of concrete (in accordance with Specification Item 403S, “Concrete for Structures”) brick and mortar (in accordance with Specification Item 506S, “Manholes”) or a precast stopper grouted in place.

Material to be removed will be designated as salvageable or non-salvageable by the Engineer or designated representative prior to removal from the construction site by the Contractor. All material, which is located within the public right-of-way and is declared by the Engineer as salvageable, will remain the property of the City of Austin and will be stored at the site or loaded on city trucks as directed by the Engineer. All non-salvageable materials and debris shall become the property of the Contractor and shall be removed from the site and deposited at a permitted disposal site.

101S.4 Measurement

The preparation of right of way for new construction, when included in the contract as a pay item, will be measured by the acre (hectare: 1 hectare equals 2.471 acres), 100 foot (100 feet equals 30.5 meters) stations or lump sum, regardless of the width of the right of way.

Measurement for payment will be made only on areas indicated and classified as "Preparing Right of Way".

101S.5 Payment

The work and material presented herein will not be paid for directly, but shall be included in the unit price bid for the item of construction in which this item is used unless specified as a separate pay item in the contract bid form. When included for payment, it shall be paid for at the contract bid price for "Preparing Right of Way". This price shall include full compensation for work herein specified, including the furnishing of all materials, equipment, tools, labor and incidentals necessary to complete the work.

Payment, when included as a contract pay item, will be made under one of the following:

Pay Item No. 101S-A:	Preparing Right of Way -	Per Acre.
Pay Item No. 101S-B:	Preparing Right of Way -	Per 100 foot Station.
Pay Item No. 101S-C:	Preparing Right of Way -	Per Lump Sum.

End

SPECIFIC CROSS REFERENCE MATERIALS
Specification 101S, “PREPARING RIGHT-OF-WAY”

City of Austin Standard Contract Documents

Designation	Description
00700	General Conditions

City of Austin Utilities Criteria Manual

Designation	Description
Section 5.2.0	Permit for Excavation in the Public Right-of-Way

City of Austin Standard Specifications

Designation	Description
Item No. 110S	Street Excavation
Item No. 111S	Excavation
Item No. 120S	Channel Excavation
Item No. 132S	Embankment
Item No. 403S	Concrete for Structures
Item No. 506S	Manholes
Item No. 610S	Preservation of Trees and Other Vegetation

Item No. 102S
Clearing and Grubbing

102S.1 Description

This item shall govern the removal and disposal of all trees, stumps, brush, roots, shrubs, vegetation, logs, rubbish and other objectionable material.

This specification is applicable for projects or work involving either inch-pound or SI units. Within the text the inch-pound units are given preference followed by SI units shown within parentheses.

102S.2 Submittals

The submittal requirements of this specification item may include:

A. A permit when utility adjustments are made in the right-of-way, and

B. A plan for removal and deposition of all clearing and grubbing materials and debris.

102S.3 Construction Methods

Prior to commencement of this work, all required erosion control and tree protection measures indicated on the Drawings shall be in place. The existing utilities shall be located and protected as specified in the Standard Contract Documents, Section 00700, "General Conditions" and/or indicated on the Drawings. A permit shall be required when utility adjustments are to be made in preparation for construction in the right-of-way, as specified in Section 5.2.0 of the City of Austin Utilities Criteria Manual.

Areas within the construction limits indicated on the Drawings shall be cleared of all trees, stumps, brush, etc., as defined in section 102S.1; except trees or shrubs scheduled for preservation which shall be carefully trimmed as directed, in accordance with Item No. 610S, " Preservation of Trees and Other Vegetation" and shall be protected from scarring, barking or other injuries during construction operations. All exposed cuts over 2 inches (50 millimeters) in diameter, exposed ends of pruned limbs or scarred bark shall be treated with an approved asphalt material within 24 hours of the pruning or injury.

Construction equipment shall not be operated nor construction materials stockpiled under the canopies of trees, unless otherwise indicated on the Drawings and/or specified in the Contract Documents. Excavation or embankment materials shall not be placed within the drip line of trees until tree wells are constructed.

Within the construction limits or areas indicated, all obstructions, stumps, roots, vegetation, abandoned structures, rubbish and objectionable material shall be removed to the following depths:

1. In areas to receive 6 inches (150 mm) or more embankment, a minimum of 12 inches (300 mm) below natural ground.

2. In areas to receive embankment less than 6 inches (150 mm), a minimum of 18 inches (450 mm) below the lower elevation of embankment, structure or excavation.
3. In areas to be excavated a minimum of 18 inches (450 mm) below the lower elevation of the embankment, structure or excavation.
4. In all other areas a minimum of 12 inches (300 mm) below natural ground.

Holes remaining after removal of all obstructions, objectionable material, trees, stumps, etc. shall be backfilled with select embankment material and compacted by approved methods. All cleared and grubbed material shall be disposed of in a manner satisfactory to the Engineer or designated representative. Unless otherwise provided, all materials as described above shall become the property of the Contractor and removed from the site and disposed of at a permitted disposal site.

Burning materials at the site shall conform to Standard Contract Document Section 01550, "Public Safety and Convenience".

102S.4 Measurement

"Clearing and Grubbing", when included in the contract as a pay item, will be measured by the acre (hectare: 1 hectare is equal to 2.471 acres), 100 foot (100 feet is equal to 30.5 meters) stations or lump sum, regardless of the width of the right of way.

102S.5 Payment

The work and materials presented herein will not be paid for directly, but shall be included in the unit price bid for the item of construction in which this item is used, unless specified as a separate pay item in the contract bid form. When included for payment, it shall be paid for at the unit bid price for "Clearing and Grubbing". This price shall include full compensation for all work herein specified, including the furnishing of all materials, equipment, tools, labor and incidentals necessary to complete the Work.

Payment, when included as a contract pay items, will be made under one of the following:

Pay Item No. 102S-A: Clearing and Grubbing	Per Acre.
Pay Item No. 102S-B: Clearing and Grubbing	Per 100 foot Station.
Pay Item No. 102S-C: Clearing and Grubbing	Lump Sum.

End

SPECIFIC CROSS REFERENCE MATERIALS
Specification Item 102S, “CLEARING AND GRUBBING”

City of Austin Standard Contract Documents

Designation	Description
00700	General Conditions
01550	Public Safety and Convenience

City of Austin Utilities Criteria Manual

Designation	Description

Section 5.2.0 Permit for Excavation in the Public Right-of-Way

City of Austin Standard Specifications

Designation	Description
Item No. 110S	Street Excavation
Item No. 111S	Excavation
Item No. 610S	Preservation of Trees and Other Vegetation

RELATED CROSS REFERENCE MATERIALS

The Code of the City of Austin, Code of Ordinances, Volume 1

Designation	Description
Article 14-11-181	Permit Required
Article 14-11-189	Conditions for Permit Issuance
Article 14-11-190	Excavation Sequence and Permit Term

City of Austin Standard Contract Documents

Designation	Description
01500	Temporary Facilities

City of Austin Standard Specifications

Designation	Description
Item No. 101S	Preparing Right of Way
Item No. 104S	Removing Portland Cement Concrete
Item No. 120S	Channel Excavation
Item No. 132S	Embankment
Item No. 201S	Subgrade Preparation
Item No. 203S	Lime Treatment for Materials In Place
Item No. 204S	Portland Cement Treatment for Materials In Place
Item No. 230S	Rolling (Flat Wheel)
Item No. 232S	Rolling (Pneumatic Tire)
Item No. 234S	Rolling (Tamping)
Item No. 236S	Rolling (Proof)
Item No. 602S	Sodding for Erosion Control
Item No. 604S	Seeding for Erosion Control
Item No. 622S	Diversion Dike
Item No. 628S	Sediment Containment Dikes
Item No. 642S	Silt Fence

City of Austin Standard Details

Designation	Description
610S-1	Tree Protection Fence Locations
610S-2	Tree Protection Fence, Type B Chainlink
610S-3	Tree Protection Fence, Type B Wood
610S-4	Tree Protection Fence, Modified Type A
610S-5	Tree Protection Fence, Modified Type B
621S-1	Diversion
622S-1	Diversion Dike
624S-1	Earth Outlet Sediment Trap

RELATED CROSS REFERENCE MATERIALS-Continued

Specification 102S, “CLEARING AND GRUBBING”

City of Austin Standard Details

Designation	Description
625S-1	Grade Stabilization Structure
627S-1	Grass Lined Swale

627S-2	Grass Lined Swale With Stone Center
628S	Triangular Sediment Filter Dike
628S-1	Hay Bale Dike
629S-1	Brush Berm
630S-1	Interceptor Dike
631S-1	Interceptor Swale
632S-1	Storm Inlet Sediment Trap
633S-1	Landgrading
634S-1	Level Spreader
635S-1	Perimeter Dike
636S-1	Perimeter Swale
637S-1	Pipe Slope Drain (Flexible)
637S-2	Pipe Slope Drain (Flexible)
638S-1	Pipe Outlet Sediment Trap
639S-1	Rock Berm
641S-1	Stabilized Construction Entrance
642S-1	Silt Fence
643S-1	Stone Outlet Structure
644S-1	Stone Outlet Sediment Trap

Texas Department of Transportation: Standard Specifications for Construction and Maintenance of Highways, Streets, and Bridges

Designation	Description
Item No. 100	Preparing Right of Way
Item No. 110	Excavation
Item No. 112	Subgrade Widening
Item No. 132	Embankment
Item No. 150	Blading
Item No. 158	Specialized Excavation Work
Item No. 160	Furnishing and Placing Topsoil
Item No. 164	Seeding for Erosion Control
Item No. 204	Sprinkling
Item No. 210	Rolling (Flat Wheel)
Item No. 211	Rolling (Tamping)
Item No. 213	Rolling (Pneumatic Tire)
Item No. 260	Lime Treatment for Materials Used as Subgrade (Road Mixed)
Item No. 265	Lime-Fly Ash (LFA) Treatment for Materials Used as Subgrade

Texas Department of Transportation:
Manual of Testing Procedures

Designation	Description
Tex-103-E	Determination of Moisture Content of Soil Materials
Tex-105-E	Determination of Plastic Limit of Soils
Tex-106-E	Method of Calculating the Plasticity Index of Soils
Tex-114-E	Laboratory Compaction Characteristics and Moisture Density Relationship of Subgrade & Embankment Soil
Tex-115-E	Field Method for Determination of In-Place Density of Soils and Base Materials

Current Version: September 26, 2012 Previous Versions: 08/20/07, 11/18/04, 04/05/99, 08/17/94 and 08/18/00

Item No. 104S
Removing Portland Cement Concrete

104S.1 Description

This item shall govern the demolition, removal and satisfactory disposal of existing Portland cement concrete, as classified, at locations indicated on the Drawings or as directed by the Engineer or designated representative.

This specification is applicable for projects or work involving either inch-pound or SI units. Within the text inch-pound units are given preference followed by SI units shown within parentheses.

104S.2 Submittals

The submittal requirements of this specification item may include:

A. A permit when utility adjustments are made in the right-of-way, and

B. plan for removal and deposition of all 'broken up' existing Portland cement (p.c.) concrete materials and debris.

104S.3 Classification

Existing Portland cement concrete, when removed under this section, will be classified as follows:

1. Concrete Curb will include curb, curb and gutter and combinations thereof,
2. Concrete Slabs will include, but not be limited to, house slabs, patio slabs, porch slabs, concrete riprap and concrete pavement,
3. Sidewalks and Driveways will include concrete sidewalks and driveways,
4. Concrete Walls will include all walls, regardless of height, and wall footings,
5. Concrete Steps will include all steps and combinations of walls and steps,
6. Abandoned Foundations will include abandoned utility foundations,
7. Miscellaneous Concrete shall include all other concrete items, which are not identified in items 1 through 6 above.

104S.4 Materials

Mortar shall conform to mortar specified in Standard Specification Item No. 403S, “Concrete for Structures”.

104S.5 Construction Methods

Prior to commencement of this work, all required erosion control and tree protection measures shall be in place. The existing utilities shall be located and protected as specified in the Standard Contract Documents, Section 00700, "General Conditions". A permit shall be required when utility adjustments are to be made in preparation for highway construction, as specified in Section 5.2.0 of the City of Austin Utilities Criteria Manual.

The existing Portland cement concrete shall be broken up, removed in accordance with Item No. 101S, "Preparing Right of Way" and disposed of by the Contractor and deposited at a permitted disposal site.

When it is specified that only a portion of the existing Portland cement (p.c.) concrete is to be removed and that the remaining p.c. concrete will continue to serve its purpose, special care shall be exercised to avoid damage to that portion which will remain in place. Unless otherwise established by the Engineer or designated representative, existing p.c. concrete shall be cut to the neat lines, that are indicated on the Drawings, by sawing with an appropriate type circular type circular concrete saw to a minimum depth of 1/2 inch (12.5 mm). Any reinforcing steel encountered shall be cut off 1 inch (25 mm) inside of p.c. concrete sawed line. Any existing p.c. concrete, which is damaged or destroyed beyond the neat lines so established, shall be replaced at the Contractor's expense. Remaining p.c. concrete shall be mortared to protect the reinforcing steel and provide a neat clean appearance.

When reinforcement is encountered during the removal of portions of existing structures to be modified, a minimum of 1 foot (300 mm) of steel length shall be cleaned of all old p.c. concrete and left in place to tie into the new construction where applicable. All unsuitable material shall be removed and replaced with approved material. All foundations, walls or other objectionable material shall be removed to a minimum depth of 18 inches (450 mm) below all structures and 12 inches (300 mm) below areas to be vegetated.

104S.6 Measurement

When included in the contract as a separate pay item, the removal of p.c. concrete curb and p.c. concrete wall as prescribed above will be measured by the lineal foot (meter: 1 meter is equal to 3.281 feet) in its original position regardless of the dimensions or size. The removal of p.c. concrete slabs, p.c. concrete sidewalks and driveways, as prescribed above, will be measured by the square foot (square meter: 1 square meter is equal to 10.764 square feet) in original position, regardless of the thickness and existence of reinforcing steel. Portland cement concrete steps removed will be measured per lineal foot (meter: 1 meter is equal to 3.281 feet) of each individual step tread including the bottom step. The removal of p.c. concrete foundations will be measured per each individual foundation. The removal of miscellaneous concrete will be measured per lump sum.

104S.7 Payment

The work and materials presented herein will generally not be paid for directly, but shall be included in the unit price bid for the item of construction in which this item is used.

When specified in the contract bid form as a separate pay item, the item will be paid for at the contract unit bid price(s) for "Remove P.C. Concrete Curb", "Remove P.C. Concrete Slab", "Remove P.C. Concrete Sidewalks and Driveways", "Remove P.C. Concrete Walls", "Remove P.C. Concrete Steps", "Remove P.C. Concrete Foundations" and "Remove Miscellaneous P.C. Concrete". The bid prices shall include full compensation for all Work herein specified, including the disposal of all material not required in the Work, the furnishing of all materials, equipment, tools, labor and incidentals necessary to complete the Work

Payment will be made under one of the following:

Pay Item No. 104S-A:	Remove P.C. Concrete Curb	Per Lineal foot.
Pay Item No. 104S-B:	Remove P.C. Concrete Slab	Per Square foot.
Pay Item No. 104S-C:	Remove P.C. Concrete Sidewalks and Driveways	Per Square foot
Pay Item No. 104S-D:	Remove P.C. Concrete Wall	Lineal foot.
Pay Item No. 104S-E:	Remove P.C. Concrete Steps	Per Lineal foot.
Pay Item No. 104S-F:	Remove P.C. Concrete Foundations	Per Each.
Pay Item No. 104S-G:	Remove Miscellaneous P.C. Concrete	Per Lump Sum.

End

SPECIFIC **CROSS REFERENCE MATERIALS**
Specification Item 104S, "REMOVING CONCRETE"

City of Austin Standard Contract Documents

Designation	Description
00700	General Conditions

City of Austin Utilities Criteria Manual

Designation	Description
Section 5.2.0	Permit for Excavation in the Public Right-of-Way

City of Austin Standard Specifications

Designation	**Description**
Item No. 101S	Preparing Right of Way
Item No. 110S	Street Excavation
Item No. 111S	Excavation
Item No. 120S	Channel Excavation
Item No. 132S	Embankment
Item No. 403S	Concrete for Structures
Item No. 610S	Preservation of Trees and Other Vegetation

RELATED CROSS REFERENCE MATERIALS

City of Austin Standard Contract Documents

Designation	Description
01500	Temporary Facilities
01550	Public Safety and Convenience

The Code of the City of Austin, Code of Ordinances, Volume 1

Designation	Description
Article 14-11-181	*Permit Required*
Article 14-11-189	Conditions for Permit Issuance
Article 14-11-190	Excavation Sequence and Permit Term

City of Austin Standard Specifications

Designation	Description
Item No. 201S	Subgrade Preparation
Item No. 602S	Sodding for Erosion Control
Item No. 604S	Seeding for Erosion Control
Item No. 622S	Diversion Dike
Item No. 628S	Sediment Containment Dikes
Item No. 642S	Silt Fence

RELATED CROSS REFERENCE MATERIALS - Continued
Specification Item 104S, "REMOVING CONCRETE"

City of Austin Standard Details

Designation	Description
610S-1	Tree Protection Fence Locations
610S-2	Tree Protection Fence, Type B Chainlink
610S-3	Tree Protection Fence, Type B Wood
610S-4	Tree Protection Fence, Modified Type A
610S-5	Tree Protection Fence, Modified Type B
621S-1	Diversion
622S-1	Diversion Dike
624S-1	Earth Outlet Sediment Trap
625S-1	Grade Stabilization Structure
627S-1	Grass Lined Swale
627S-2	Grass Lined Swale With Stone Center
628S	Sediment Filter Dike
628S-1	Hay Bale Dike
629S-1	Brush Berm
630S-1	Interceptor Dike
631S-1	Interceptor Swale
632S-1	Storm Inlet Sediment Trap
633S-1	Landgrading
634S-1	Level Spreader
635S-1	Perimeter Dike
636S-1	Perimeter Swale
637S-1	Pipe Slope Drain (Flexible)
637S-2	Pipe Slope Drain (Flexible)
638S-1	Pipe Outlet Sediment Trap
639S-1	Rock Berm
641S-1	Stabilized Construction Entrance
642S-1	Silt Fence
643S-1	Stone Outlet Structure
644S-1	Stone Outlet Sediment Trap

Texas Department of Transportation: Standard Specifications for Construction & Maintenance of Highways, Streets, & Bridges

Designation	Description
Item No. 100	Preparing Right of Way
Item No. 104	Removing Concrete
Item No. 110	Excavation
Item No. 112	Subgrade Widening
Item No. 132	Embankment
Item No. 158	Specialized Excavation Work
Item No. 420	Concrete Structures

Item No. 110S
Street Excavation

110S.1 Description

This item shall govern: (1) the excavation and proper utilization or otherwise satisfactory disposal of all excavated material, of whatever character, within the right of way or other limits of the work indicated and (2) the construction, compaction, shaping and finishing of all earthwork on the entire project in accordance with the specification requirements herein outlined, in conformity with the required lines, grades and typical cross sections indicated on the Drawings or as directed by the Engineer or designated representative. When not otherwise included in the Contract Documents, this item shall include the Work described in specification Item Nos. 101S, "Preparing Right of Way", 102S, "Clearing and Grubbing", 104S, "Removing Portland Cement Concrete", 132S, "Embankment", 201S, "Subgrade Preparation" and 236S, “Proof Rolling”.

This specification is applicable for projects or work involving either inch-pound or SI units. Within the text inch-pound units are given preference followed by SI units shown within parentheses.

110S.2 Submittals

The submittal requirements of this specification item may include:

A. A permit when utility adjustments are made in the right-of-way,
B. A plan for removal and deposition of all 'Waste' materials, and
C. A Blasting Permit if blasting is required and allowed on the project.

110S.3 Classification

All excavation shall be unclassified and shall include all materials encountered regardless of their nature or the manner in which they are removed.

110S.4 Construction Methods

Prior to commencement of this work, all required erosion control and tree protection measures shall be in place. The existing utilities shall be located and protected as specified in the Standard Contract Documents, Section 00700, "General Conditions" and/or indicated on the Drawings. A permit shall be required when utility adjustments are to be made in preparation for construction in the right-of-way, as specified in Section 5.2.0 of the City of Austin Utilities Criteria Manual.

Construction equipment shall not be operated nor construction materials stockpiled under the canopies of trees, unless otherwise indicated on the Drawings. Excavation or embankment materials shall not be placed within the drip line of trees until tree wells are constructed, that conform to Item No. 610S, " Preservation of Trees and Other Vegetation ".

All street excavation shall be performed as specified herein and shall conform to the established alignment, grades and cross sections. The Contractor will be required to set blue-tops for the subgrade along centerlines, at quarter points and curb lines or edge of

pavement at intervals not exceeding 50 feet (15 meters). Suitable excavated materials shall be utilized, insofar as practicable, in constructing any required embankments. The construction of all embankments shall conform to Item No. 132S, "Embankment".

All earth cuts for base and/or pavement structure construction shall be scarified to a uniform depth of at least 6 inches (150 millimeters) below the required finished subgrade elevation for the entire roadbed width. The material shall be mixed, reshaped by blading, sprinkled and then rolled in accordance with Section 2 of the City of Austin Specification Item 132S, "Embankment".

High PI materials (i.e. PI $\geq$ 20 %) which exhibit a Plasticity Index (PI) greater by 5 % than the surrounding materials or any materials with a moisture content greater than 2 percent (%) in excess of optimum moisture shall be classified as unsuitable and must be removed or manipulated to meet the above criteria before use.

Unsuitable excavated materials or excavation in excess of that needed for construction shall be known as "Waste" and shall become the property of the Contractor. Unsuitable material encountered below the subgrade elevation in roadway cuts, when declared "Waste" by the Engineer, shall be replaced with material from the roadway excavation or with other suitable material as approved by the Engineer or designated representative. It shall become the Contractor's responsibility to dispose of this material off the limits of the right of way in an environmentally sound manner at a permitted disposal site.

All blasting shall conform to the General Notes on the Drawings and to the Standard Contract Document Section 01550, "Public Safety and Convenience". In all cases where blasting is permitted, a Blasting Permit must be obtained in advance from the City of Austin Department of Public Works and Transportation.

110S.5 Measurement

All accepted street excavation will be measured by either Method A or B as follows:

A. Method A

Measurement of the volume of excavation in cubic yards (cubic meters: 1 cubic meter is equal to 1.308 cubic yards) by the average end areas. Cross sectional areas shall be computed from the existing ground surface to the established line of the subgrade over the limits of the right of way or other work limits shown on the Drawings, including parkway slopes and sidewalk areas.

B. Method B

Measurement of the volume of excavation in cubic yards (cubic meters: 1 cubic meter is equal to 1.308 cubic yards), based upon the average end areas taken from pre-construction cross sections and planned grades. The planned quantities for street excavation will be used as the measurement for payment of this item.

110S.6 Payment

This item will be paid for at the contract unit bid price for "Street Excavation", as provided under measurement Method A or B as included in the bid. The bid price shall include full compensation for all work herein specified, including subgrade preparation, unless specified otherwise, and the furnishing of all materials, equipment, tools, labor and incidentals necessary to complete the work.

Payment will be made under one of the following:

Pay Item No. 110S-A:	Street Excavation	Per Cubic yard.
Pay Item No. 110S-B:	Street Excavation, Plan Quantity	Per Cubic yard.

End

SPECIFIC CROSS REFERENCE MATERIALS
Specification Item 110S, "STREET EXCAVATION"

City of Austin Standard Contract Documents

Designation	Description
00700	General Conditions
01550	Public Safety and Convenience

City of Austin Utilities Criteria Manual

Designation	Description
Section 5.2.0	Permit for Excavation in the Public Right-of-Way

City of Austin Standard Specifications

Designation	Description
Item No. 101S	Preparing Right of Way
Item No. 102S	Clearing and Grubbing
Item No. 104S	Removing Portland Cement Concrete
Item No. 132S	Embankment
Item No. 201S	Subgrade Preparation
Item No. 236S	Proof Rolling
Item No. 610S	Preservation of Trees and Other Vegetation

RELATED CROSS REFERENCE MATERIALS

City of Austin Standard Contract Documents

Designation	Description
01500	Temporary Facilities

The Code of the City of Austin, Code of Ordinances, Volume 1

Designation	Description
Article 14-11-181	Permit Required
Article 14-11-189	Conditions for Permit Issuance
Article 14-11-190	Excavation Sequence and Permit Term

City of Austin Standard Specifications

Designation	Description
Item No. 111S	Excavation
Item No. 120S	Channel Excavation
Item No. 203S	Lime Treatment for Materials In Place
Item No. 204S	Portland Cement Treatment for Materials In Place
Item No. 230S	Rolling (Flat Wheel)
Item No. 232S	Rolling (Pneumatic Tire)
Item No. 234S	Rolling (Tamping)
Item No. 602S	Sodding for Erosion Control
Item No. 604S	Seeding for Erosion Control
Item No. 610S	Preservation of Trees and Other Vegetation
Item No. 622S	Diversion Dike
Item No. 628S	Sediment Containment Dikes
Item No. 642S	Silt Fence

RELATED CROSS REFERENCE MATERIALS - Continued
Specification Item 110S, "STREET EXCAVATION"

City of Austin Standard Details

Designation	Description
610S-1	Tree Protection Fence Locations
610S-2	Tree Protection Fence, Type B Chainlink
610S-3	Tree Protection Fence, Type B Wood
610S-4	Tree Protection Fence, Modified Type A
610S-5	Tree Protection Fence, Modified Type B
610S-6	Tree Protection, Tree Wells
621S-1	Diversion
622S-1	Diversion Dike
624S-1	Earth Outlet Sediment Trap
625S-1	Grade Stabilization Structure
627S-1	Grass Lined Swale
627S-2	Grass Lined Swale With Stone Center
628S	Triangular Sediment Filter Dike
628S-1	Hay Bale Dike
629S-1	Brush Berm
630S-1	Interceptor Dike
631S-1	Interceptor Swale
632S-1	Storm Inlet Sediment Trap
633S-1	Landgrading
634S-1	Level Spreader
635S-1	Perimeter Dike
636S-1	Perimeter Swale
637S-1	Pipe Slope Drain (Flexible)
637S-2	Pipe Slope Drain (Rigid)
638S-1	Pipe Outlet Sediment Trap
639S-1	Rock Berm
641S-1	Stabilized Construction Entrance
642S-1	Silt Fence
643S-1	Stone Outlet Structure
644S-1	Stone Outlet Sediment Trap

Texas Department of Transportation: Standard Specifications for Construction and Maintenance of Highways, Streets, and Bridges

Designation	Description
Item No. 100	Preparing Right of Way
Item No. 110	Excavation
Item No. 112	Subgrade Widening
Item No. 132	Embankment
Item No. 150	Blading
Item No. 158	Specialized Excavation Work
Item No. 160	Furnishing and Placing Topsoil
Item No. 164	Seeding for Erosion Control
Item No. 204	Sprinkling
Item No. 210	Rolling (Flat Wheel)
Item No. 211	Rolling (Tamping)
Item No. 213	Rolling (Pneumatic Tire)
Item No. 260	Lime Treatment for Materials Used as Subgrade (Road Mixed)
Item No. 265	Lime-Fly Ash (LFA) Treatment for Materials Used as Subgrade

RELATED CROSS REFERENCE MATERIALS - Continued
Specification Item 110S, "STREET EXCAVATION"

Texas Department of Transportation:
Manual of Testing Procedures

Designation	Description
Tex-103-E	Determination of Moisture Content of Soil Materials
Tex-104-E	Determination of Liquid Limit of Soils
Tex-105-E	Determination of Plastic Limit of Soils
Tex-106-E	Method of Calculating the Plasticity Index of Soils
Tex-114-E	Laboratory Compaction Characteristics and Moisture-Density Relationship of Subgrade & Embankment Soil
Tex-115-E	Field Method for Determination of In-Place Density of Soils and Base Materials

Current Version: September 26, 2012 Previous Versions: 11/18/04 , 04/05/99, 08/17/94 & 08/18/00

Item No. 111S
Excavation

111S.1 Description

This item shall govern: (1) the excavation and proper utilization or satisfactory disposal of all excavated materials, of whatever character, within the limits of the Work and (2) construction, compaction, shaping and finishing of all designated earthwork areas in accordance with the specification requirements outlined herein and in conformity with the required lines, grades and typical cross sections indicated on the Drawings or as directed by the Engineer or designated representative. When not otherwise included in the Contract Documents, this item shall include the work described in Specification Item Nos. 101S, "Preparing Right of Way", No. 102S, "Clearing and Grubbing", No. 104S, "Removing Portland Cement Concrete", No. 132S "Embankment" and No. 201S, "Subgrade Preparation".

This specification is applicable for projects or work involving either inch-pound or SI units. Within the text inch-pound units are given preference followed by SI units shown within parentheses.

111S.2 Submittals

The submittal requirements of this specification item may include:

A. A permit when utility adjustments are made in the right-of-way,

B. A plan for removal and deposition of all 'Waste' materials, and

C. A Blasting Permit if blasting is required and allowed on the project.

111S.3 Classification

All excavation shall be unclassified and shall include all materials encountered regardless of their nature or the manner in which they are removed.

111S.4 Construction Methods

Prior to commencement of this work, all required erosion control and tree protection measures shall be in place. The existing utilities shall be located and shall be protected as specified in the Standard Contracts Document Section 00700, "General Conditions" and/or indicated on the Drawings. A permit shall be required when utility adjustments are to be made in preparation for construction in the right-of-way, as specified in Section 5.2.0 of the City of Austin Utilities Criteria Manual.

Construction equipment shall not be operated nor construction materials stockpiled under the canopies of trees, unless otherwise indicated on the Drawings. Excavation or embankment materials shall not be placed within the drip line of trees until tree wells are constructed, that conform to Specification Item No. 610S, “Preservation of Trees and Other Vegetation”.

All excavation shall be performed as specified herein and shall conform to the established alignment, grades and cross sections indicated on the Drawings. Suitable excavated materials shall be utilized, insofar as practical, in constructing required embankments. The construction of all embankments shall conform to Specification Item No. 132S, "Embankment". No material shall be stockpiled within the banks of a waterway.

Unsuitable excavated materials or excavation in excess of that needed for construction shall be known as "Waste" and shall become the property of the Contractor. Unsuitable material encountered below the subgrade elevation in roadway cuts, when declared “Waste” by the Engineer or designated representative, shall be replaced with material from the roadway excavation or with other suitable material as approved by the Engineer. It shall become the Contractor’s responsibility to dispose of this material off the limits of the right of way in an environmentally sound manner at a permitted disposal site.

All blasting shall conform to the Provisions of the Standard Contract Document Section 01550, "Public Safety and Convenience". In all cases, a Blasting Permit must be obtained in advance from the City of Austin, Department of Public Works and Transportation.

Adequate dewatering and drainage of excavation shall be maintained throughout the time required to complete the excavation work.

111S.5 Measurement

All accepted excavation will be measured by either Method A or B as follows:

(1) Method A

Measurement of the volume of excavation in cubic yards (cubic meters: 1 square meter is equal to 1.306 square yards) by the average end area methods. Cross-sectional areas shall be computed from the existing ground surface to the established line of the subgrade, as shown on typical sections in the Drawings, over the limits of the right of way or other work limits, including parkway slopes and sidewalk areas.

(2) Method B

Measurement of the volume of excavation in cubic yards (cubic meters: 1 square meter is equal to 1.306 square yards), based upon the average end area method taken from pre-construction cross sections and planned grades. The planned

quantities for excavation will be used as the measurement for payment for this item.

111S.6 Payment

This item will be paid for at the contract unit bid price for "Excavation", as provided under measurement Method A or B as included in the bid. The bid price shall include full compensation for all work herein specified including dewatering, drainage, subgrade preparation, unless otherwise indicated, and the furnishing of all materials, equipment, tools, labor and incidentals necessary to complete the work.

Payment will be made under one of the following:

Pay Item No. 111S-A:	Excavation	Per Cubic Yard.
Pay Item No. 111S-B:	Excavation, Plan Quantity	Per Cubic Yard.

End

SPECIFIC CROSS REFERENCE MATERIALS

City of Austin Standard Contract Documents

Designation	Description
00700	General Conditions
01550	Public Safety and Convenience

City of Austin Utilities Criteria Manual

Designation	Description
Section 5.2.0	Permit for Excavation in the Public Right-of-Way

City of Austin Technical Specifications

Designation	Description
Item No. 101S	Preparing Right of Way
Item No. 102S	Clearing and Grubbing-
Item No. 104S	Removing Portland Cement Concrete
Item No. 132S	Embankment
Item No. 201S	Subgrade Preparation
Item No. 236S	Proof Rolling
Item No. 610S	Preservation of Trees and Other Vegetation

RELATED CROSS REFERENCE MATERIALS
Specification Item 111S, "EXCAVATION"

City of Austin Standard Contract Documents

Designation	Description
01500	Temporary Facilities

City of Austin Standard Specifications

Designation	Description
Item No. 120S	Channel Excavation
Item No. 203	Lime Treatment for Materials In Place
Item No. 204S	Portland Cement Treatment for Materials In Place
Item No. 230S	Rolling (Flat Wheel)
Item No. 232S	Rolling (Pneumatic Tire)
Item No. 234S	Rolling (Tamping)
Item No. 602S	Sodding for Erosion Control
Item No. 604S	Seeding for Erosion Control
Item No. 622S	Diversion Dike

Item No. 628S	Sediment Containment Dikes
Item No. 642S	Silt Fence

City of Austin Standard Details

Designation	Description
No. 610S-1	Tree Protection Fence Locations
No. 610S-2	Tree Protection Fence, Type B Chainlink
No. 610S-3	Tree Protection Fence, Type B Wood
No. 610S-4	Tree Protection Fence, Modified Type A
No. 610S-5	Tree Protection Fence, Modified Type B
No. 621S-1	Diversion
No. 622S-1	Diversion Dike
No. 624S-1	Earth Outlet Sediment Trap
No. 625S-1	Grade Stabilization Structure
No. 627S-1	Grass Lined Swale
No. 627S-2	Grass Lined Swale With Stone Center
No. 628S	Triangular Sediment Filter Dike

City of Austin Standard Details

Designation	Description
No. 628S-1	Hay Bale Dike
No. 629S-1	Brush Berm
No. 630S-1	Interceptor Dike
No. 631S-1	Interceptor Swale
No. 632S-1	Storm Inlet Sediment Trap
No. 633S-1	Landgrading
No. 634S-1	Level Spreader
No. 635S-1	Perimeter Dike
No. 636S-1	Perimeter Swale
No. 637S-1	Pipe Slope Drain (Flexible)
No. 637S-2	Pipe Slope Drain (Flexible)
No. 638S-1	Pipe Outlet Sediment Trap
No. 639S-1	Rock Berm
No. 641S-1	Stabilized Construction Entrance
No. 642S-1	Silt Fence
No. 643S-1	Stone Outlet Structure
No. 644S-1	Stone Outlet Sediment Trap

The Code of the City of Austin, Code of Ordinances, Volume 1

Designation	Description
Article 14-11-181	Permit Required
Article 14-11-189	Conditions for Permit Issuance
Article 14-11-190	Excavation Sequence and Permit Term

Texas Department of Transportation: Standard Specifications for Construction and Maintenance of Highways, Streets, and Bridges

Designation	Description

Item No. 100	Preparing Right of Way
Item No. 110	Excavation
Item No. 112	Subgrade Widening
Item No. 132	Embankment
Item No. 150	Blading
Item No. 158	Specialized Excavation Work
Item No. 160	Furnishing and Placing Topsoil
Item No. 164	Seeding for Erosion Control
Item No. 204	Sprinkling
Item No. 210	Rolling (Flat Wheel)
Item No. 211	Rolling (Tamping)
Item No. 213	Rolling (Pneumatic Tire)
Item No. 260	Lime Treatment for Materials Used as Subgrade (Road Mixed)
Item No. 265	Lime-Fly Ash (LFA) Treatment for Materials Used as Subgrade

Texas Department of Transportation: Manual of Testing Procedures

Designation	Description
Tex-103-E	Determination of Moisture Content of Soil Materials
Tex-104-E	Determination of Liquid Limit of Soils
Tex-105-E	Determination of Plastic Limit of Soils
Tex-106-E	Method of Calculating the Plasticity Index of Soils
Tex-114-E	Laboratory Compaction Characteristics and Moisture-Density Relationship of Subgrade & Embankment Soil
Tex-115-E	Field Method for Determination of In-Place Density of Soils and Base Materials

Current Version: September 26, 2012 Previous Versions: 03/24/09, 11/18/04, 04/05/99, 04/17/86 and 8/18/00

Item No. 130S
Borrow

130S.1 Description

This item shall govern required excavation, removal and proper utilization of materials secured from sources, selected by the Contractor and approved by the Engineer or designated representative. The compaction of embankments constructed from borrow as provided herein shall conform to the appropriate sections of Specification Item Nos. 132S, "Embankment" and 236S, “Proof Rolling”.

Borrow will be used only when indicated on the Drawings or directed by the Engineer or designated representative and shall only be acquired from approved sources.

This specification is applicable for projects or work involving either inch-pound or SI units. Within the text inch-pound units are given preference followed by SI units shown within parentheses.

130S.2 Submittals

The submittal requirements of this specification item may include:

A. Identification of Class, source and characteristics (P.I., linear shrinkage, etc.) of proposed borrow material, and

B. A plan for managing and maintaining borrow sites.

130S.3 Materials

All authorized borrow shall conform to one of the following classes:

Class A (Select Borrow)

Class A Borrow material shall consist of suitable granular material, free from vegetation or other objectionable matter and reasonably free from lumps of earth. When tested by standard TxDOT laboratory methods Tex-105-E, Tex-106-E and Tex-107-E, the Class A Select Borrow, shall meet the following requirements:

The Liquid Limit shall not exceed	45
The Plasticity Index shall not exceed	15
The bar linear shrinkage shall not be less than	2

Class B (Borrow)

Class B Borrow material shall consist of suitable non swelling [i.e. soils with a plasticity index (P.I.) less than 20] earth material such as loam, clay or other such materials that will form a stable embankment.

Class C (Topsoil)

See Standard Specification Item No. 601S.3(A)

130S.4 Construction Methods

Prior to commencing this work, all required erosion control and environmental measures shall be in place. All suitable materials removed from excavations shall be used, insofar as practicable in the formation of embankments conforming to Specification Item No. 132S, "Embankment", as otherwise indicated on the Drawings or as directed by the Engineer or designated representative. The completed work shall conform to the established alignment, grades and cross section as shown on the Drawings. The additional material necessary to complete the work described above shall be "Borrow" of the class specified.

The Contractor shall arrange for borrow from one of the following sources:

1. Existing borrow pit,
2. New borrow pit, or
3. Surplus excavated material from a site, with a site development permit.

The Contractor shall notify the Engineer 3 weeks prior to opening a pit or any other borrow source to allow necessary testing for approval of materials. All borrow sites shall comply with the requirements of the site development permit.

During construction, borrow sources shall be kept drained to permit final cross sections to be measured, when required.

Borrow sites shall be managed and maintained to minimize the impact of the appearance of the natural topographic features and at no time create a potential hazard to the public.

130S.5 Measurement

Borrow will be measured by the cubic yard (cubic meters: 1 cubic meter is equal to 1.196 cubic yards) in its final position based upon the average end areas, calculated from pre-construction cross sections and plan grades. The plan quantities for Borrow or Topsoil will be used as the measurement for payment for this item.

Current Version: September 26, 2012 Previous Versions: 03/24/09, 11/18/04, 04/05/99, 04/17/86 and 8/18/00

130S.6 Payment

All work performed as required herein and measured as provided under "Measurement" will be paid for at the unit bid price. The bid prices shall include full compensation for furnishing all labor; all materials; all royalty and freight involved; all hauling and delivering on the road; and all tools, equipment and incidentals necessary to complete the work. Payment will not be made for unauthorized work.

Payment will be made under one of the following:

Pay Item No. 130S-A:	Class A (Select Borrow), Plan Quantity	Per Cubic Yard.
Pay Item No. 130S-B:	Class B (Borrow), Plan Quantity	Per Cubic Yard.
Pay Item No. 130S-T:	Class C (Topsoil), Plan Quantity	Per Cubic Yard.

End

SPECIFIC CROSS REFERENCE MATERIALS
Specification 130S, "BORROW"

City of Austin Standard Specifications

Designation	Description
Item No. 132S	Embankment
Item No. 236S	Rolling (Proof)

Texas Department of Transportation: Manual of Testing Procedures

Designation	Description
Tex-105-E	Determination of Plastic Limit of Soils
Tex-106-E	Method of Calculating the Plasticity Index of Soils
Tex-107-E	Determination of Bar Linear Shrinkage of Soils

RELATED CROSS REFERENCE MATERIALS
Specification 130S, "BORROW"

City of Austin Standard Contract Documents

Designation	Description
00700	General Conditions

City of Austin Standard Specifications

Designation	Description
Item No. 101S	Preparing Right of Way
Item No. 102S	Clearing and Grubbing
Item No. 110S	Street Excavation
Item No. 111S	Excavation
Item No. 230S	Rolling (Flat Wheel)
Item No. 232S	Rolling (Pneumatic Tire)
Item No. 234S	Rolling (Tamping)
Item No. 602S	Sodding for Erosion Control
Item No. 604S	Seeding for Erosion Control
Item No. 610S	Preservation of Trees and Other Vegetation
Item No. 622S	Diversion Dike
Item No. 628S	Sediment Containment Dikes
Item No. 642S	Silt Fence

City of Austin Standard Details

Designation	Description
No. 610S-1	Tree Protection Fence Locations
No. 610S-2	Tree Protection Fence, Type B Chainlink
No. 610S-3	Tree Protection Fence, Type B Wood
No. 610S-4	Tree Protection Fence, Modified Type A
No. 610S-5	Tree Protection Fence, Modified Type B
No. 621S-1	Diversion
No. 622S-1	Diversion Dike
No. 624S-1	Earth Outlet Sediment Trap
No. 625S-1	Grade Stabilization Structure
No. 626S-1	Grass Lined Swale
No. 627S-1	Grass Lined Swale With Stone Center
No. 628S	Triangular Sediment Filter Dike
No. 628S-1	Hay Bale Dike
No. 629S-1	Brush Berm
No. 630S-1	Interceptor Dike
No. 631S-1	Interceptor Swale
No. 632S-1	Storm Inlet Sediment Trap
No. 633S-1	Landgrading
No. 634S-1	Level Spreader
No. 635S-1	Perimeter Dike
No. 636S-1	Perimeter Swale
No. 637S-1	Pipe Slope Drain (Flexible)
No. 637S-2	Pipe Slope Drain (Flexible)
No. 638S-1	Pipe Outlet Sediment Trap
No. 639S-1	Rock Berm
No. 641S-1	Stabilized Construction Entrance
No. 642S-1	Silt Fence
No. 643S-1	Stone Outlet Structure
No. 644S-1	Stone Outlet Sediment Trap

Texas Department of Transportation: Standard Specifications for Construction and Maintenance of Highways, Streets, and Bridges

Designation	Description
Item No. 100	Preparing Right of Way
Item No. 110	Excavation
Item No. 132	Embankment
Item No. 158	Specialized Excavation Work
Item No. 160	Furnishing and Placing Topsoil
Item No. 164	Seeding for Erosion Control
Item No. 204	Sprinkling
Item No. 210	Rolling (Flat Wheel)
Item No. 211	Rolling (Tamping)
Item No. 213	Rolling (Pneumatic Tire)

Texas Department of Transportation: Manual of Testing Procedures

Designation	Description
Tex-103-E	Determination of Moisture Content of Soil Materials
Tex-104-E	Determination of Liquid Limit of Soils

Current Version: September 26, 2012 Previous Versions: 03/24/09, 11/18/04, 04/05/99, 04/17/86 and 8/18/00

Tex-114-E Laboratory Compaction Characteristics and Moisture-Density Relationship of Subgrade & Embankment Soil

Tex-115-E Field Method for Determination of In-Place Density of Soils and Base Materials

132S.1 Description

This item shall govern the placement and compaction of suitable materials obtained from approved sources for utilization in the construction of street or channel embankments, berms, levees, dikes and structures. When not otherwise included in the Contract Documents or indicated on the Drawings, this item shall include the work described in Specification Item Nos. 101S, "Preparing Right of Way", 102S, "Clearing and Grubbing", 104S, "Removing Portland Cement Concrete", 201S, "Subgrade Preparation" and No. 236S, “Proof Rolling.

This specification is applicable for projects or work involving either inch-pound or SI units. Within the text inch-pound units are given preference followed by SI units shown within parentheses.

132S.2 Submittals

The submittal requirements of this specification item may include:

A. A plan identifying source, material type, classification and characteristics (P.I., optimum moisture-density, etc.) of the proposed embankment material,
B. Type and size of equipment proposed to produce the required compaction, and
C. Compaction (Density-moisture, etc) test results for in-place embankment layers.

132S.3 Construction Methods

A. General

Prior to the placement of any embankment, all tree protection and tree wells and erosion control devices shall be in place and all operations involving Standard Specification Item No. 101S, "Preparing Right of Way" and/or Standard Specification Item No. 102S, "Clearing and Grubbing" shall have been completed for the areas over which the embankment is to be placed. Stump holes or other small excavations encountered within the limits of the embankments shall be backfilled with suitable material and thoroughly tamped by approved methods before commencement of the embankment construction.

The area of embankment placement shall be proof rolled (Specification Item No. 236S, “Proof Rolling”) and any unstable or spongy areas shall be undercut and backfilled with suitable material or otherwise mechanically manipulated and compacted by approved methods. Where shown on the Drawings or required by the Engineer or designated representative, the ground surface thus prepared shall be compacted by sprinkling and rolling. The surface of the ground, including those plowed and loosened or roughened by small washes, shall be restored to approximately its original slope and the ground surface thus prepared shall be compacted by sprinkling and rolling.

Construction equipment shall not be operated within the drip line of trees, unless otherwise indicated. Construction materials shall not be stockpiled under the canopies of trees. Excavation or embankment materials shall not be placed within the drip line of

trees until tree wells are constructed in accordance with Item No. 610S, "Preservation of Trees and Other Vegetation".

Unless otherwise indicated on the Drawings and with the exception of rock, the surface of the ground of all unpaved areas, which are to receive embankment, shall be loosened by scarifying or plowing to a depth of not less than 4 inches (100 mm). The loosened material shall be re-compacted with the new embankment as hereinafter specified.

The surface of hillsides, which are to receive embankment, shall be loosened, by scarifying or plowing, to a depth of not less than 4 inches (100 mm) and benches constructed before the embankment materials are placed. The embankment shall then be placed in layers, as hereinafter specified, beginning at the low side with partial width layers and increasing the widths of the layers as the embankment is raised. The material, which has been loosened during preparation of the original ground surface, shall be re-compacted simultaneously with the embankment material placed at the same elevation.

Where embankments are to be placed adjacent to or over existing roadbeds, the roadbed slopes shall be plowed or scarified to a depth of not less than 6 inches (150 mm) and the embankment along the roadbed slopes shall be built up in successive layers, as hereinafter specified, to the elevation of the old roadbed. Then, if specified, the top surface of the old roadbed shall be scarified to a minimum depth of 6 inches (150 mm) and re-compacted along with the next layer of the new embankment. The total depth of the scarified and added material shall not exceed the permissible layer depth, specified hereinafter.

Trees, stumps, roots, vegetation or other unsuitable materials shall not be placed in embankment.

All embankment shall be constructed in layers approximately parallel to the finished grade and unless otherwise indicated, each layer shall be so constructed as to provide a uniform slope of 1/4 inch per foot (20 mm per meter) from the centerline of the roadbed to the outside. In the case of superelevated curves, each layer shall be constructed to conform to the specified superelevation or cross slope.

The embankment shall be continuously maintained at its finished section and grade until that portion of the work is accepted. After completion of the embankment to the finished section and grade, the Contractor shall proof roll the subgrade or finished grade in accordance with Specification Item No. 236S, "Proof Rolling". Any unstable or spongy areas shall be undercut and backfilled with suitable material or otherwise mechanically manipulated and compacted by approved methods. After acceptance of the embankment, re-vegetation activities shall commence immediately to minimize the soil loss and air pollution.

B. Earth Embankments

Earth embankments shall be defined as embankments composed of soil material other than rock and shall be constructed of acceptable material from approved sources.

Unless directed otherwise, earth embankments shall be constructed in successive layers, with a thickness of 8 inches (200 mm) or less in loose measure, for the full width of the individual cross section and in a length that is best suited to the sprinkling and compaction methods utilized.

Minor quantities of rocks with a maximum dimension of 4 inches (100 mm) may be incorporated in the earth embankment layers, provided that the rock is not placed immediately adjacent to structures.

Each layer of embankment shall be uniform as to material type and classification, density and moisture content before beginning compaction. Where layers of unlike materials abut each other, each layer shall be feathered on a slope of 1:20 or the materials shall be so mixed as to prevent abrupt changes in the soil. Any material placed in the embankment by dumping in a pile or windrows shall not be incorporated in a layer in that position. All such piles or windrows shall be incorporated in an embankment layer by blading and mixing or by similar methods. Clods or lumps of material shall be broken down into smaller sizes and the embankment material in a layer shall be mixed by blading, harrowing, discing or similar methods to insure that a uniform material of uniform density is secured in each layer.

The water required in sprinkling the layers, to obtain the moisture content necessary for optimum compaction, shall be evenly applied. It shall be the responsibility of the Contractor to secure uniform moisture content throughout the layer by such methods as may be necessary.

All earth cuts, whether full width or partial width side hill cuts and which are not required to be excavated below the subgrade elevation, shall be scarified to a uniform depth of at least 6 inches (150 mm) below grade. The material shall be mixed and reshaped by blading, sprinkled and rolled in accordance with the requirements outlined above for earth embankments to the same density required for the adjacent embankment.

Compaction of embankments shall conform to Item No. 201S, "Subgrade Preparation". Each layer shall be compacted to the required density by any method, and/or type and size of equipment, which will produce the required compaction. Prior to and in conjunction with the rolling operation, each layer shall be brought to the moisture content necessary to obtain the required density and shall be kept leveled with suitable equipment to insure uniform compaction over the entire layer.

It is the intent of this specification to provide the required density and moisture control for each layer of earth embankment and select material based on the plasticity characteristics of the embankment soil. Each layer shall be sprinkled as required and compacted to the extent necessary to provide the density specified below, unless otherwise indicated.

Description	Density, Percent	Moisture
Non-swelling Soils (PI less than 20)	Not less than 95	
Swelling Soils (PI between 20 and 35)	Not less than 95 nor more than 102	Not less than optimum
Swelling Soils (P.I. greater than 35)	Not less than 95 nor more than 100	Not less than optimum

The Plasticity Index (PI) will be established in accordance with TxDoT Test Methods Tex-104-E, Tex-105-E and Tex-106-E and the density determination will be made in accordance with TxDoT Test Method Tex-114-E, “Laboratory Compaction Characteristics and Moisture-Density Relationship of Subgrade and Embankment Soil”. Field density measurements will be made in accordance with TxDoT Test Method Tex-115-E, “Field Method for Determination of In-Place Density of Soils and Base Materials”.

After each layer of earth embankment or select material is complete, tests, as necessary, will be conducted as directed by the Engineer or designated representative. If the material fails to meet the density specified, the course shall be reworked as necessary to obtain the specified compaction.

C. Rock Embankments

Rock embankments shall be defined as those composed principally of rock and shall be constructed of accepted material from approved sources. Rock embankments shall not be placed immediately adjacent to structures.

Except as otherwise indicated on the Drawings, rock embankments shall be constructed in successive layers of 18 inches (450 mm) or less in thickness for the full width of the cross section. When, in the opinion of the Engineer or designated representative, the rock sizes necessitate a greater thickness of layer than specified, the layer thickness may be increased as necessary, but in no case shall the thickness of layer exceed 2 1/2 feet (750 mm). Each layer shall be constructed by starting at one end and dumping the rock on top of the layer being constructed then pushing the material ahead with a bulldozer in such a manner that the larger rock will be placed on either the ground or the preceding embankment layer. Each layer shall be constructed in such a manner that the interstices between the larger stones are filled with small stones and spalls which have been created by this operation and from the placement of succeeding layers of material.

The maximum dimension of any rock used in embankment shall be less than the thickness of the embankment layer and in no case shall any rock over 2 feet (600 mm) in its greatest dimension be placed in the embankment, unless otherwise approved by the Engineer or designated representative. All oversized rocks, which are otherwise suitable for construction, shall be broken to the required dimension and utilized in embankment construction where indicated. When preferred by the Contractor and acceptable to the Engineer or designated representative, oversized rocks may be placed at other locations where the embankment layer is of greater depth, thus requiring less breakage.

Each layer shall be compacted to the required density as outlined for "Earth Embankments", above, except in those layers where rock will make density testing difficult, the Engineer or designated representative may accept the layer by visual inspection or proof rolling conforming to Specification Item No. 236S, "Proof Rolling)".

Unless otherwise indicated, the upper 3 feet (1 meter) of the embankment shall not contain stones larger than 4 inches (100 mm) in their greatest dimension and shall be composed of material so graded that the density and uniformity of the surface layer may be secured in accordance with TxDoT Test Method Tex-114-E.

Exposed oversize material shall be broken up or removed.

D. At Culverts and Bridges

Embankment materials, which are to be placed adjacent to culverts and bridges and cannot be compacted by the blading and rolling equipment that was used in compacting the adjoining sections of embankment, shall be compacted in the manner prescribed under Item No. 401, "Structural Excavation and Backfill".

Embankment constructed around ‘spill through’ type abutments shall be constructed in 6 inch (150 mm) loose layers of a uniform suitable material and shall be placed so as to

maintain approximately the same elevation on each side of the abutment. All materials shall be mixed, wetted and compacted as specified above. Embankment material placed adjacent to any portion of a structure or above the top of any culvert or similar structure shall be free of any appreciable amount of gravel or stone particles and shall be thoroughly compacted by mechanical compaction equipment.

132S.4 Measurement

All accepted embankment, when included in the contract as a separate pay item, will be measured in place and the volume computed in cubic yards (cubic meters: 1 cubic meter is equal to 1.196 cubic yards) by the method of average end areas. No allowance shall be made for shrinkage.

132S.5 Payment

The work and materials presented herein will generally not be paid for directly, but shall be included in the unit price bid for the item of construction in which this item is used.

However, when specified in the contract bid form as a separate pay item, it shall be paid for at the contract unit bid price for "Embankment". The bid price shall include full compensation for all work herein specified, including the furnishing of all materials, (except "Borrow" when paid as a separate bid item) compaction, equipment, tools, labor, water for sprinkling, proof rolling and incidentals necessary to complete the work.

Payment, when included in the contract as a separate pay item, will be made under:

Pay Item No. 132S-A: Embankment Per Cubic Yard.

End

SPECIFIC CROSS REFERENCE MATERIALS
Specification 132S, "EMBANKMENT"

City of Austin Standard Specifications

Designation	Description
Item No. 101S	Preparing Right of Way
Item No. 102S	Clearing and Grubbing
Item No. 104S	Removing Portland Cement Concrete
Item No. 110S	Street Excavation
Item No. 111S	Excavation
Item No. 130S	Borrow
Item No. 201S	Subgrade Preparation
Item No. 236S	Proof Rolling
Item No. 401	Structural Excavation and Backfill
Item No. 610S	Preservation of Trees and Other Vegetation

Texas Department of Transportation: Manual of Testing Procedures

Designation	Description
Tex-103-E	Determination of Moisture Content of Soil Materials
Tex-104-E	Determination of Liquid Limit of Soils
Tex-105-E	Determination of Plastic Limit of Soils

Tex-106-E	Method of Calculating the Plasticity Index of Soils
Tex-107-E	Determination of Bar Linear Shrinkage of Soils
Tex-114-E	Laboratory Compaction Characteristics and Moisture-Density Relationship of Subgrade & Embankment Soil
Tex-115-E	Field Method for Determination of In-Place Density of Soils and Base Materials

RELATED CROSS REFERENCE MATERIALS - Continued

City of Austin Standard Contract Documents

Designation	Description
00700	General Conditions

City of Austin Standard Specifications

Designation	Description
Item No. 230S	Rolling (Flat Wheel)
Item No. 232S	Rolling (Pneumatic Tire)
Item No. 234S	Rolling (Tamping)
Item No. 602S	Sodding for Erosion Control
Item No. 604S	Seeding for Erosion Control
Item No. 622S	Diversion Dike
Item No. 628S	Sediment Containment Dikes
Item No. 642S	Silt Fence

City of Austin Standard Details

Designation	Description
No. 610S-1	Tree Protection Fence Locations
No. 610S-2	Tree Protection Fence, Type B Chainlink
No. 610S-3	Tree Protection Fence, Type B Wood
No. 610S-4	Tree Protection Fence, Modified Type A
No. 610S-5	Tree Protection Fence, Modified Type B
No. 621S-1	Diversion
No. 622S-1	Diversion Dike
No. 624S-1	Earth Outlet Sediment Trap
No. 625S-1	Grade Stabilization Structure
No. 627S-1	Grass Lined Swale
No. 627S-2	Grass Lined Swale With Stone Center
No. 628S	Triangular Sediment Filter Dike
No. 628S-1	Hay Bale Dike
No. 629S-1	Brush Berm
No. 630S-1	Interceptor Dike
No. 631S-1	Interceptor Swale
No. 632S-1	Storm Inlet Sediment Trap
No. 633S-1	Landgrading
No. 634S-1	Level Spreader

No. 635S-1	Perimeter Dike
No. 636S-1	Perimeter Swale
No. 637S-1	Pipe Slope Drain (Flexible)
No. 637S-2	Pipe Slope Drain (Flexible)
No. 638S-1	Pipe Outlet Sediment Trap
No. 639S-1	Rock Berm
No. 641S-1	Stabilized Construction Entrance
No. 642S-1	Silt Fence
No. 643S-1	Stone Outlet Structure
No. 644S-1	Stone Outlet Sediment Trap

Texas Department of Transportation: Standard Specifications for Construction and Maintenance of Highways, Streets, and Bridges

Designation	Description
Item No. 100	Preparing Right of Way
Item No. 110	Excavation
Item No. 132	Embankment
Item No. 158	Specialized Excavation Work

RELATED CROSS REFERENCE MATERIALS - Continued
Specification 132S, "EMBANKMENT"

Texas Department of Transportation: Standard Specifications for Construction and Maintenance of Highways, Streets, and Bridges

Designation	Description
Item No. 160	Furnishing and Placing Topsoil
Item No. 164	Seeding for Erosion Control
Item No. 204	Sprinkling
Item No. 210	Rolling (Flat Wheel)
Item No. 211	Rolling (Tamping)
Item No. 213	Rolling (Pneumatic Tire)

Texas Department of Transportation: Manual of Testing Procedures

Designation	Description
Tex-103-E	Determination of Moisture Content of Soil Materials
Tex-107-E	Determination of Bar Linear Shrinkage of Soils

Item No. 201S
Subgrade Preparation

201S.1 Description

This item shall govern scarifying; blading and rolling the subgrade to obtain a uniform texture and provide as nearly as practicable a uniform density for the top 6 inches (150 mm) of the subgrade.

This specification is applicable for projects or work involving either inch-pound or SI units. Within the text and accompanying tables, the inch-pound units are given preference followed by SI units shown within parentheses.

201S.2 Submittals

The submittal requirements of this specification item may include:

A. A plan identifying classification and characteristics (P.I., optimum moisture-density, etc.) of insitu subgrade soils, as well as the source, classification and characteristics of any proposed borrow material,
B. Type and size of equipment proposed to produce the required compaction, and
C. Compaction (moisture-density, etc) test results for in-situ subgrade soils and/or borrow materials.

201S.3 Construction Methods

Prior to initiation of subgrade preparation activities, all operations involving Standard Specification Item No. 101S," Preparing Right of Way" and/or Standard Specification Item No. 102S, "Clearing and Grubbing" shall be completed. The surface of the subgrade shall be scarified and shaped in conformity with the typical sections and the lines and grades indicated on the Drawings; by the removal of existing material or addition of approved material as established by the Engineer or designated representative. Any deviation in the subgrade cross section which exceeds 1/2 inch in a length of 10 feet (12 mm in a length of 3 meters), measured longitudinally, shall be corrected by loosening, adding or removing material, and then reshaping and compacting by sprinkling and rolling.

All unsuitable material shall be removed and replaced with approved material. All foundations, walls or other objectionable material shall be removed in accordance with Standard Specification Item No. 104S, "Removing Portland Cement Concrete" to a minimum depth of 18 inches (450 mm) under all structures and 12 inches (300 mm) under areas to be vegetated. All holes, ruts and depressions shall be filled with approved material and compacted by approved methods.

The subgrade shall be prepared sufficiently in advance to insure satisfactory prosecution of the Work. The Contractor will be required to set blue tops for the subgrade on the centerline, at the quarter points and along the curb lines or edge of pavement at maximum intervals of 50 feet (15 meters). The subgrade shall be tested by proof rolling

in conformity with Standard Specification Item No. 236S, "Proof Rolling" prior to placement of the first course of base material. Any unstable or spongy subgrade areas identified by proof rolling shall be corrected either by additional re-working, drying and compaction, or by removal and replacement of unsuitable materials. When specifically directed by the Engineer or designated representative, the Contractor shall re-work the subgrade* as follows:

A. Remove the unstable subgrade to the full depth of the unstable insitu material or to a minimum depth of 6 inches (150 mm), whichever is greater;
B. Spread the material over a sufficient area to allow reworking of the excavated material;
C. Disc, scarify or otherwise breakup the excavated material and allow to dry (Note: If approved by the Engineer or designated representative, the addition of lime or other additive may be used to aid in the drying process or to stabilize the unstable material);
D. Fill the excavated area with the re-worked material and compact to specified densities; and
E. Proof roll the re-worked area.

* The Rework process will not be allowed for unstable organic subgrade soils. These type soils will be permanently removed and replaced with materials approved by the Engineer or designated representative.

All suitable material removed in accordance with Standard Specification Item No, 111S, "Excavation", may be utilized in the subgrade with the approval of the Engineer or designated representative. All other material required for completion of the Subgrade, including those defined in accordance with Specification Item No. 130S, "Borrow", shall also be subject to approval by the Engineer or designated representative.

It is the intent of this specification to provide the required density and moisture control for the subgrade based on the plasticity characteristics of the approved materials. The subgrade materials shall be sprinkled as required and compacted to the extent necessary to provide the density specified below, unless otherwise indicated on the Drawings. The Plasticity Index (P.I.) will be established in accordance with TxDOT Test Methods Tex-104-E, Tex-105-E and Tex-106-E. The density determination will be made in accordance with TxDOT Test Method Tex-114-E and field density measurements will be made in accordance with TxDOT Test Method Tex-115-E.

Description	Density, Percent	Moisture
Non-swelling Soils (P.I. less than 20)	Not less than 95	
Swelling Soils (P.I. between 20 and 35)	Not less than 95 nor more than 102	Not less than optimum
Swelling Soils (P.I. greater than 35)	Not less than 95 nor more than 100	Not less than optimum

Subgrade materials on which planting or turf will be established shall be compacted to a minimum of 85 percent of the density as determined in accordance with TxDOT Test

Method Tex-114-E. Field tests for density in accordance with TxDOT Test Method Tex-115-E will be made as soon as possible after compaction operations are completed. If the material fails to meet the density specified, it shall be reworked as necessary to obtain the density required.

Prior to placement of any base materials, the in-place density and moisture content of the top 6 inches (150 mm) of compacted subgrade shall be checked. If the tests indicate that the relative density and moisture do not meet the limits specified in the table above, the subgrade shall be reworked as necessary to obtain the specified compaction and moisture content. All initial testing will be paid for by the City of Austin. All retesting shall be paid for by the Contractor.

201S.4 Measurement

All acceptable subgrade preparation when included in the contract as a separate pay item, will be measured by the square yard (square meter: 1 square meter equals 1.196 Square yards). The measured area includes the entire width of the roadway for the entire length as indicated on the Drawings.

201S.5 Payment

The work and materials presented herein will generally not be paid for directly, but shall be included in the unit price bid for the item of construction in which this item is used when specified as a separate pay item in the contract bid form, subgrade preparation shall be measured as specified above and paid for at the contract unit bid price for "Subgrade Preparation". The bid price shall include full compensation for all work herein specified, including the furnishing of all materials, equipment, tools and labor and incidentals necessary to complete the work.

Payment, when included as a contract pay item, will be made under:

Pay Item No. 201S: Subgrade Preparation Per Square Yard.

End

SPECIFIC CROSS REFERENCE MATERIALS
Specification Item 201S, "SUBGRADE PREPARATION"

City of Austin Standard Specification Items

Designation	Description
Item No. 101S	Preparing Right of Way
Item No. 102S	Clearing and Grubbing
Item No. 104S	Removing Portland Cement Concrete
Item No. 110S	Street Excavation
Item No. 111S	Excavation
Item No. 130S	Borrow
Item No. 236S	Proof Rolling

Texas Department of Transportation: Manual of Testing Procedures

Designation	Description
Tex-103-E	Determination of Moisture Content of Soil Materials
Tex-104-E	Determination of Liquid Limit of Soils
Tex-105-E	Determination of Plastic limit of Soils
Tex-106-E	Method of Calculating the Plasticity Index of Soils
Tex-114-E	Laboratory Compaction Characteristics & Moisture Density Relationship of Subgrade & Embankment Soil
Tex-115-E	Field Method for Determination of In-Place Density of Soils & Base Materials

RELATED CROSS REFERENCE MATERIALS

City of Austin Standard Specifications

Designation	Description
Item No.132S	Embankment

Texas Department of Transportation: Standard Specifications for Construction and Maintenance of Highways, Streets, and Bridges

Designation	Description
Item No. 100	Preparing Right of Way
Item No. 110	Excavation
Item No. 112	Subgrade Widening
Item No. 132	Embankment
Item No. 150	Blading
Item No. 158	Specialized Excavation Work
Item No. 204	Sprinkling
Item No. 210	Rolling (Flat Wheel)
Item No. 211	Rolling (Tamping)
Item No. 213	Rolling (Pneumatic Tire)

Texas Department of Transportation: Manual of Testing Procedures

Designation	Description
Tex-103-E	Determination of Moisture Content of Soil Materials

Item No. 202S
Hydrated Lime and Lime Slurry

202S.1 Description

This item establishes the requirements for hydrated lime and commercial lime slurry of the type and grade considered suitable for use in the treatment of natural or processed materials or mixtures for stabilization of subgrade, subbase and base construction.

This specification is applicable for projects or work involving either inch-pound or SI units. Within the text and accompanying tables, the inch-pound units are given preference followed by SI units shown within parentheses.

202S.2 Submittals

The submittal requirements of this specification item may include:

A. A plan identifying type, grade, chemical and physical composition of proposed lime application, and
B. A plan for sampling and testing of lime slurry.

202S.3 Materials

The various types and grades are defined and identified as follows:

A. Type A (Hydrated Lime)

Type A Hydrated Lime shall consist of a dry powder obtained by treating quicklime with enough water to satisfy its chemical affinity for water under the conditions of its hydration. This material shall consist essentially of calcium hydroxide or a mixture of calcium hydroxide and a small allowable percentage of calcium oxide, magnesium oxide and magnesium hydroxide.

When sampled and tested according to prescribed TxDOT Standard Specification Item No. 264, hydrated lime shall conform to the following requirements as to chemical and physical composition:

Chemical Composition Requirements

Total “active” lime content, percent by weight (mass) {i.e., % by weight (mass) [$Ca(OH)_2$] + % by weight (mass) [CaO]}	Minimum 90.0 %
Note: No more than 5 % by weight (mass) calcium oxide (unhydrated lime) will be allowed in determining the total ‘active’ lime content.	
Unhydrated lime content, % by weight (mass), CaO	Maximum 5.0 %
"Free water" content, % by weight (mass), H_2O	Maximum 5.0 %t

The percent by weight (mass) of residue retained, wet sieve, shall conform to the following requirements:

Wet Sieve Requirements

Residue retained on No. 6 (3.35 mm) sieve	Maximum. 0.2 %
Residue retained on No. 30 (600 μm) sieve	4.0 %

Specifications for Type A applies specifically to the normal hydrate of lime made from "high-calcium" type limestone. Hydrated Lime for stabilization purposes shall be applied as a dry powder or mixed to form a slurry before application as indicated on the Drawings. The slurry shall be free of liquid other than water.

B. Type B (Commercial Lime Slurry)

Type B Lime Slurry shall be a pumpable suspension of solids in water. The slurry shall be furnished at or above the minimum “Dry Solids” content as approved by the Engineer or designated representative and must be of a consistency that can be handled and uniformly applied without difficulty. The water of the liquid portion of the slurry shall not contain dissolved material in sufficient quantity and/or nature to make it injurious or objectionable for the purpose intended. The solids portion of the mixture, when considered on the basis of “solids content”, shall consist principally of hydrated lime of a quality and fineness sufficient to meet the requirements as to chemical composition and residue identified below.

When sampled and tested according to prescribed TxDOT Standard Specification Item No. 264, hydrated lime shall conform to the following requirements as to chemical and physical composition:

1. Chemical Composition. The "solids content" of lime slurry shall have a hydrate alkalinity $Ca(OH)_2$ of not less than 87 percent by weight (mass).
2. Residue (Wet Sieve)

   The percent by weight (mass) of residue retained in the "solids content" of lime slurry shall conform to the following requirements:

Residue retained on No. 6 (3.35 mm) sieve	Maximum 0.2 %
Residue retained on No. 30 (600 μm) sieve	Maximum 4.0 %.

C. Type C: Quicklime Pellets

Quicklime pellets shall conform to TxDOT Grade DS (TxDOT Specification Item 264) and are only allowable when indicated on the Drawings or when approved by the Engineer or designated representative. Quicklime pellets shall be of a gradation suitable for either “Dry Placing” or for preparation of a slurry for “Wet Placing”.

When sampled and tested according to prescribed TxDOT Standard Specification Item No. 264, the quicklime lime shall conform to the following requirements as to chemical and physical composition:

1. Chemical Composition. The "solids content" of lime slurry shall have a hydrate alkalinity CaO of not less than 87 percent by weight (mass).
2. Residue (Wet and Dry Sieve)

   The percent by weight (mass) retained in the "solids content" of quicklime shall conform to the following requirements:

Wet Sieve Requirements

Residue retained on No. 6 (3.35 mm) sieve	Maximum 8.0 %

Dry Sieve Requirements

Retained on 1 inch (25 mm) sieve	0.0 %
Retained on 3/4 inch (19 mm) sieve	Maximum of 10.0 %
Retained on No. 100 (150 μm) sieve	Minimum of 80.0 %

D. Water

Water shall be clean and free of industrial wastes and other objectionable substances harmful to the lime and the environment.

202S.4 Sampling and Testing

The sampling and testing of lime slurry shall be conducted in accordance with TxDOT Test Methods: Tex-112-E, Tex-121-E and Tex-600-J.

202S.5 Measurement and Payment

Lime will be measured and paid for in accordance with the governing specifications for the items of construction in which lime is used (e.g. Standard Specification Item 203S, " Lime Treatment for Materials in Place"), except that lime treatment for small applications required to stabilize a problem area shall be paid per pound (kilograms: 1 kilogram equals 2.205 pounds) applied. The unit bid price for small applications shall include full compensation for all spreading, mixing and shaping required to stabilize the surface and for any other materials, manipulation, labor, tools, equipment and incidentals necessary to complete the work.

Payment will be made under the following:

Pay Item No. 202S-A: Small Area Application of Hydrated Lime, Type A Per Pound.

Pay Item No. 202S-B: Small Area Application of Lime Slurry, Type B Per Pound.

Pay Item No. 202S-C: Small Area Application of QuickLime, Type C Per Pound.

End

SPECIFIC Cross Reference Materials
Specification Item 202S, "Hydrated Lime and Lime Slurry"

City of Austin Standard Specification Items

Designation	Description
Item No. 203S	Lime Treatment for Materials in Place

Texas Department of Transportation: Standard Specifications for Construction and Maintenance of Highways, Streets, and Bridges

Designation	Description
Item No. 264	Lime and Lime Slurry

Texas Department of Transportation: Manual of Testing Procedures

Designation	Description
Tex-112-E	Methods of Admixing Lime to Reduce Plasticity Index of Soils
Tex-121-E	Soil Lime Testing
Tex-600-J	Sampling and Testing of Hydrated Lime, Quicklime and Commercial Lime Slurry

RELATED Cross Reference Materials

City of Austin Standard Specifications

Designation	Description
Item No. 101S	Preparing Right of Way
Item No. 110S	Street Excavation
Item No. 111S	Excavation
Item No. 130S	Borrow
Item No. 132S	Embankment
Item No. 210S	Flexible Base
Item No. 236S	Proof Rolling

Texas Department of Transportation: Standard Specifications for Construction and Maintenance of Highways, Streets, and Bridges

Designation	Description
Item No. 100	Preparing Right of Way
Item No. 110	Excavation
Item No. 112	Subgrade Widening
Item No. 132	Embankment
Item No. 150	Blading
Item No. 158	Specialized Excavation Work
Item No. 204	Sprinkling
Item No. 210	Rolling (Flat Wheel)
Item No. 211	Rolling (Tamping)
Item No. 213	Rolling (Pneumatic Tire)

Texas Department of Transportation: Manual of Testing Procedures

Designation	Description
Tex-103-E	Determination of Moisture Content of Soil Materials
Tex-104-E	Determination of Liquid Limit of Soils
Tex-105-E	Determination of Plastic limit of Soils
Tex-106-E	Method of Calculating the Plasticity Index of Soils
Tex-114-E	Laboratory Compaction Characteristics & Moisture Density Relationship of Subgrade and Soil
Tex-115-E	Field Method for Determination of In-Place Density of Soils & Base Materials

Current Version: September 26, 2012 Previous Versions: 11/21/05, 5/20/02 & 9/30/87

Item No. 203S
Lime Treatment for Materials in Place

203S.1 Description

This item shall govern the preparation and treatment of the subgrade, existing subbase or existing base by pulverizing the existing materials; furnishing and applying lime; mixing; mellowing for a minimum of 12 hours and compacting the mixed material to the required depth and density. This item applies to treatment of natural ground, embankment or existing pavement structure and shall be constructed as specified herein and in conformity with the typical sections, lines and grades on the drawings or as directed by the Engineer or designated representative. If the type of lime to be placed is not indicated on the drawings, the Contractor shall use Type B, Commercial Lime Slurry or Type C quick lime pebbles for all applications on areas larger than 100 square feet (10 square meters).

This specification is applicable for projects or work involving either inch-pound or SI units. Within the text inch-pound units are given preference followed by SI units shown within parentheses.

203S.2 Submittals

The submittal requirements of this specification item may include:

A. Mix design information (Transportation Criteria Manual Section 3.2.1.A, “Lime Stabilization”),

B. Type of lime and rate of lime application, and

C. Equipment proposed for use in proof rolling, pulverizing, mixing, placement and compaction operations.

203S.3 Materials

A. Lime.

The lime shall meet the requirements of Item No. 202S, "Hydrated Lime and Lime Slurry" for the type of lime specified in the drawings or as directed by the Engineer or designated representative.

When Type B, Commercial Lime Slurry, is specified, the Contractor shall select the “Dry Solids” content to be used in the slurry prior to construction and shall notify the Engineer in writing 5 working days before changing the “Dry Solids” content.

When dry placement of Type C quicklime pebbles are indicated on the Drawings or approved by the Engineer or designated representative, the pebbles shall conform to TxDOT Grade DS (TxDOT Specification Item 264) and shall have a gradation suitable for dry placement.

If lime is furnished in bags, each bag shall bear the manufacturer's certified weight (mass). Bags varying more than 5 percent from that weight (mass) may be rejected and the average weight (mass) of bags in any shipment, as shown by weighing 10 bags selected at random, shall not be less than the manufacturer's certified weight (mass).

B. Water.

The water shall meet the material requirements of Standard Specification Item No. 220S, “Sprinkling for Dust Control”

C. Asphalt.

The asphalt shall conform to the requirements of Standard Specification Item No. 301S, “Asphalts, Oils and Emulsions”

203S.4 Equipment

The pulverizing, mixing and proof rolling machinery, tools and equipment, which are necessary for the proper execution of the work, shall be approved by the Engineer or designated representative. The equipment shall be located on the project site prior to the initiation of construction operations.

During the conduct of the Work all in-use machinery, tools and equipment shall be maintained in a satisfactory and workmanlike manner.

Hydrated lime shall be stored and handled in closed, weatherproof containers up to the time that mixing is initiated to form a slurry for distribution on the areas to be treated. If storage bins are used, they shall be completely enclosed. Hydrated lime in bags shall be stored in weatherproof buildings with adequate protection from ground dampness.

If lime is furnished in trucks, each truck shall have the weight (mass) of lime certified on public scales or the Contractor shall place a set of standard platform truck scales or hopper scales at a location approved by the Engineer or designated representative.

203S.5 Construction Methods

A. General

Prior to commencement of the work, all required erosion control and tree protection measures shall be in place and the utilities located and protected as specified in the City of Austin Standard Contract Document Section 00700, “General Conditions”. Construction equipment shall not be operated within the drip line of trees unless otherwise indicated on the drawings or directed by the Engineer or designated representative. Construction materials shall not be stockpiled under the canopies of trees. Excavation or embankment materials shall not be placed within the drip line of trees until appropriate tree wells are constructed.

The placement of lime shall not be allowed to adversely impact vegetation, drainageways or waterways, storm water inlets or overflow channels. Structures shall be screened, blocked or protected to prevent lime from entering any structure or waterway.

It is the primary requirement of this specification to secure a completed course of treated material, which contains a uniform lime mixture at the rate specified on the drawings or directed by the Engineer or designated representative, is free from loose or segregated areas, exhibits uniform density and moisture content, is well bound for its full depth and displays a smooth surface suitable for placement of subsequent courses. It shall be the responsibility of the Contractor to: regulate the sequence of his work, use the proper amount of lime, maintain the work and rework the courses as necessary to meet the above requirements.

B. Preparation of Subgrade or Existing Base.

Unless indicated otherwise on the drawings or directed otherwise by the Engineer or designated representative, the Contractor shall proof roll the roadbed/subgrade in accordance with Standard Specification Item No. 236S, “Rolling (Proof)” prior to pulverization or scarification of the existing material and/or subgrade. Any unstable or spongy subgrade areas identified by proof rolling shall be corrected either by additional re-working, drying and compaction, or by removal and replacement of unsuitable materials. When specifically directed by the Engineer or designated representative, the Contractor shall re-work the subgrade in accordance with Section 201S.3, ‘Construction Methods’ of Standard Specification Item No. 201S, “Subgrade Preparation”.

Prior to treatment of existing material and/or subgrade the layer to be treated shall be constructed shaped to conform to the typical sections, lines and grades as indicated on the Drawings or as established by the Engineer or designated representative. This work shall be done in accordance with the provisions of applicable bid items. When shown on the Drawings, any existing asphaltic concrete pavement shall be removed and the work will be paid for in accordance with the applicable bid items.

When the Contractor elects to use a cutting and pulverizing machine that will process the material to the specified depth, the Contractor will not be required to excavate to the secondary grade or windrow the material. This method will be permitted only if a machine is provided, which will insure that the material is cut uniformly to the proper depth and which has cutters that will plane the secondary grade to a uniform surface over the entire width of the cut. The machine shall provide a visible indication of the depth of cut at all times.

The material, either before or after lime is applied, shall be excavated to the secondary grade (i.e. proposed depth of lime treatment) and removed or windrowed to expose the secondary grade. The secondary grade shall be blue topped at the edge, 1/4 points and along the centerline at not more than 50-foot (15.25 meters) centers. Any wet or unstable materials, located below the secondary grade, shall be corrected, as directed by the Engineer or designated representative, by removing the unstable material or by scarifying, adding lime and compacting until uniform stability is attained.

The Contractor shall instruct their crews in the proper handling of lime to ensure that the workers and the public are adequately protected during lime handling and application operations.

C. Premixing Surface

When any material is uncovered during the premixing operation that exhibits properties different from the anticipated material, the Engineer or designated representative shall secure a sample of the material for appropriate testing to establish a suitable rate of lime application for the material.

D. Lime Application

The percentage of lime to be added by weight (mass) in pounds per square yard (kilograms per square meter) shall be as directed in this document or in accordance with the Lime mix design indicated on the Drawings and may be varied by the Engineer or designated representative if conditions warrant.

Unless otherwise approved by the Engineer or designated representative, the lime operation shall not be started when the air temperature is below 41oF (5oC) and falling, but may be started when the air temperature is above 35oF (2oC) and rising. The temperature will be taken in the shade and away from artificial heat.

Lime shall not be placed when weather conditions in the opinion of the Engineer or designated representative are unsuitable.

Lime shall only be applied to those areas that can be properly processed during the same working day.

The application and mixing of lime with the existing material shall be accomplished by the methods hereinafter described as “Dry Placement” or Slurry Placement’. Dry placement will only be permitted for small isolated areas as indicated on the drawings or as directed by the Engineer or designated representative. The minimum rate of lime solids application shall be seven (7) percent by weight (mass), unless indicated otherwise on the Drawings or as directed by the Engineer or designated representative.

Any lime exposed to the air for more than six (6) hours and any lime lost or damaged before application due to rain, wind or other cause will be rejected and replaced by the Contractor at its own expense.

1. Dry Placement

The lime shall be spread by a spreader approved by the Engineer or designated representative or by bag distribution at the rates shown on the Drawings or as directed by the Engineer or designated representative.

The lime shall be distributed at a uniform rate and in such manner as to reduce the scattering of lime by wind. Lime shall not be applied when the wind conditions, in the opinion of the Engineer or designated representative, are such that blowing lime becomes objectionable to adjacent property owners or dangerous to traffic. A motor grader will not be used to spread

Type A Hydrated lime but may be used to spread Type C Quicklime Grade "DS" pebbles.

The material shall be sprinkled, as approved by the Engineer or designated representative, until the proper moisture content has been secured.

2. Slurry Placement

The lime shall be mixed with water in a mixer or trucks with approved distributors to form a slurry with a solids content approved by the Engineer or designated representative. Application of the slurry shall be attained by successive passes over a measured section of roadway until the proper moisture and lime content has been secured. The distributor truck shall be equipped with an agitator, which will keep the lime and water in a uniform mixture.

E. Mixing

The mixing procedure shall be the same for "Dry Placemen' or "Slurry Placement" as herein described.

During the interval of time between application and mixing, hydrated lime that has been exposed to the open air for a period of 6 hours or more or to excessive loss due to washing or blowing will not be accepted and the area shall be retreated.

In addition to the above, when Type C Quicklime, Grade "DS", is used under "Dry Placing", the material and lime shall be mixed as thoroughly as possible at the time of the lime application. Sufficient moisture shall be added during the mixing to hydrate the quicklime. After mixing, and prior to compaction, the mixture of material, quicklime and water, shall be moist cured for two (2) to seven (7) days, as approved by the Engineer or designated representative. After curing, mixing shall continue until the material and lime are thoroughly blended to the satisfaction of the Engineer or designated representative.

The material and lime shall be thoroughly mixed by road pulverizer equipment approved by the Engineer or designated representative. The material and lime shall be brought to the proper moisture content and the mixing shall be continued until a homogeneous, friable mixture of material and lime is obtained. The lime-material mixture shall be free from all clods or lumps so that, when all nonslaking aggregates retained on the #4 (4.75 mm) sieve are removed, the remainder of the material shall meet the following pulverization requirements, when tested in accordance with TxDOT Test Method Tex-101-E, Part III:

	Percent
Minimum Passing the 1 3/4 inch (45 mm) Sieve	100
Minimum Passing the 3/4 inch (19 mm) Sieve	85
Minimum Passing the No. 4 (4.75 mm) Sieve	60

When the lime-material mixture satisfies the requirements above, the mixture shall be allowed to "mellow" for a minimum of 12 hours prior to the initiation of compaction.

F. Compaction

Prior to initiation of compaction, the material shall be aerated or sprinkled as necessary to provide the optimum moisture. The lime-conditioned materials shall then be shaped and uniformly compacted to the sections; lines and grades indicated on the drawings or as directed by the Engineer or designated representative. Compaction shall continue until the entire depth of mixture is uniformly compacted as shown on the Drawings, as specified herein, or as directed by the Engineer or designated representative.

When shown on the Drawings or approved by the Engineer or designated representative, multiple lifts will be permitted; however the 12-hour "mellowing" procedure is required for each lift. Individual lift thickness should not exceed 8 inches (200 mm).

The course shall be sprinkled as required and compacted to the extent necessary to provide the density specified below:

Description	Density, Percent
For lime-conditioned subgrade, existing subbase or existing base that will receive subsequent subbase or base courses.	Not less than 95% of 'optimum density' or as otherwise indicated on the drawings.
For lime-conditioned existing base that will receive surface courses	Not less than 98% of 'optimum density' or as otherwise indicated on the drawings.

Testing for the 'optimum density' used for compaction control shall conform to TxDOT Test Method Tex-113-E. In addition to the requirements specified for density, the full depth of the material indicated shall be compacted to the extent necessary to remain firm and stable under construction equipment. After each section is completed and proof rolled in accordance with Specification Section No. 236S, in place compaction tests will be conducted, as necessary, by the Engineer or designated representative in accordance with TxDOT Test Method, Tex 115-E. If the material fails to meet the density requirements, it shall be reworked as necessary to meet these requirements. Throughout the entire operation the shape of the course shall be maintained by blading and the surface upon completion shall be smooth and in conformity with the typical sections, lines and grades as shown on the Drawings or as established by the Engineer or designated representative.

If the lime-conditioned material, due to any reason or cause, loses the required stability, density and finish before the next course is placed, it shall be re-compacted and refinished at the sole expense of the Contractor.

G. Reworking a Section

When a section is reworked within 72 hours after completion of compaction, the Contractor shall rework the section to provide the required compaction. When a section is reworked more than 72 hours after completion of compaction, the Contractor shall add 25 percent of the original specified rate of lime application during the reworking operation.

Reworking shall include loosening, road mixing as approved by the Engineer or designated representative, compacting and finishing. When a section is reworked, a new optimum density will be determined from the reworked material in accordance with TxDOT Test Method Tex-113-E.

203S.6 Finishing, Curing and Preparation for Surfacing

After the final layer or course of the lime conditioned subgrade, subbase or base has been compacted, it shall be brought to the required lines and grades in accordance with the typical sections indicated on the drawings. The completed section shall then be “finished off” by rolling with a pneumatic tire or other suitable roller, approved by the Engineer or designated representative, that is sufficiently light in loading to prevent hair cracking.

The Contractor shall set blue tops at edges, 1/4 point, and along the centerline at not more than 50 foot (15.25 meter) spacing. The completed section shall be maintained in a moist cured condition for a minimum of 3 days either by maintenance of moist conditions by water sprinkling or by the prevention of moisture loss due to drying by the addition of an asphalt prime coat as indicated on the drawings or as directed by the Engineer or designated representative at the rate of 0.05 to 0.20 gallons per square yard (0.2 to 0.9 liters per square meter) before further courses are added or any through traffic is permitted, unless otherwise directed by the Engineer or designated representative. Curing shall continue for a minimum of seven (7) days before further courses are added or traffic is permitted access, unless a shorter curing period is approved by the Engineer or designated representative

If the drawings require the lime-conditioned material to be sealed or covered by other courses of material, the seal or other course shall be applied within 14 days after final mixing is completed, unless otherwise directed by the Engineer or designated representative. If the 14 day limit cannot be achieved because of insufficient strength gain or other problem with the lime-treated layer, the Contractor shall rework the section in accordance with Section 203S.5(G) above.

203S.7 Sampling and Testing

The lime-conditioned mixture shall be tested daily at the Project site for conformance to specification requirements. The Engineer or designated representative shall determine sample locations based on the Contractor's anticipated production. Each day's anticipated production shall be sectioned into three (3) equal, single-pass, sub-area lots. Each day's sample locations shall be equally distributed over the three (3) sub-areas.

Also, no more than one location of the three (3) sub-areas is to be located in an irregular shaped area such as a cul-de-sac.

When, in the opinion of the Engineer or designated representative, test results appear unrepresentative, additional testing may be authorized. Retesting due to failures or to resolve unrepresentative results will be at the expense of the Contractor and the results of the retesting shall be averaged with the results of the original testing. If the results of retesting indicate that the original testing was erroneous, the original test results will be discarded.

The Engineer will obtain samples of completed work to conduct the following tests:

Testing Requirement	TxDOT Test Procedure
Optimum Moisture Density	Test Method Tex-113E
In-Place Density of Lime Conditioning	Test Method, Tex 115-E
Thickness of Lime Conditioning	Test Methods Tex-140-E & Tex-600-J
PI Reduction	Test Method Tex-106-E

The contractor shall repair areas disturbed while obtaining samples.

203S.8 Tolerances

A. In-Place Density

The Work may be accepted provided no more than one (1) out of the most recent five (5) density tests performed is below the specified density, provided that the failing test is not more than 3 pounds per cubic foot (50 kilograms per cubic meter) below the specified density.

B. Dimensional

Areas of lime conditioning which do not meet the tolerances specified below will be delineated and shall be corrected to drawing dimensions by scarifying, remanipulating and recompacting the deficient areas at the Contractor's sole expense.

1. Thickness Requirements:

Under thickness shall not exceed ¾ inch (19 mm). Overthickness will be waived at no additional cost to the City.

2. Widths Requirements:

Roadway under width shall not exceed 6 inches (150 mm). Shoulder underwidth shall not exceed 3 inches (75 mm). If lime conditioning for both roadway and shoulder is constructed at the same time, the 6-inch (150-mm) underwidth tolerance shall apply. Overwidth will be waived at no additional cost to the City.

203S.9 Measurement

Lime-conditioning of the type, grade and rate of application on the subgrade, existing subbase and existing base shall be measured by the square yard (square meter: 1 square yard equals 0.836 square meters) to neat lines as shown on the typical sections.

Reworking a section to provide the proper compaction shall be measured by the square yard (square meter: 1 square yard equals 0.836 square meters).

203S.10 Payment

Work performed and materials furnished as prescribed by this item and measured as provided under "Measurement" will be paid for as follows:

"Lime Treated Subgrade", "Lime Treated Existing Subbase" and "Lime Treated Existing Base" will be paid for at the unit bid price per square yard.

The unit bid prices shall include full compensation for: preparing the roadbed; furnishing all materials; all freight involved; public scales weighing charges or furnishing scales and labor involved in weighing the material; loosening, mixing, pulverizing, spreading, drying, furnishing and application of lime, sprinkling, rolling, shaping, proof rolling, maintenance and all manipulations, reworking, labor, equipment, fuels, tools and incidentals necessary to complete the work.

Reworking a section shall include full compensation for: loosening lime treated layer, furnishing and application of additional lime, road mixing, sprinkling, rolling, shaping, proof rolling, maintenance and all manipulations, labor, equipment, fuels, tools and incidentals necessary to complete reworking.

Payment will be made under one of the following:

Pay Item No. 203S-A:	Lime Treated Subgrade, (____in. Thick)	Per Square Yard.
Pay Item No. 203S-B:	Lime Treated Existing Subbase, (____in. Thick)	Per Square Yard.
Pay Item No. 203S-C:	Lime Treated Existing Base, (____in. Thick)	Per Square Yard.
Pay Item No. 203S-R:	Reworking Lime Treated Layer, (____in. Thick)	Per Square Yard.

End

SPECIFIC CROSS REFERENCE MATERIALS
Specification 203S, "Lime Treatment for Materials in Place"

City of Austin Contract Documents

Designation	Description
Section 00700	General Conditions

City of Austin Standard Specifications

Designation	Description
Item No. 202S	Hydrated Lime and Lime Slurry
Item No. 220S	Sprinkling for Dust Control
Item No. 236S	Proof Rolling
Item No. 301S	Asphalts, Oils and Emulsions

Texas Department of Transportation: Manual of Testing Procedures

Designation	Description
Tex-101-E, Part III	Preparation of Soil and Flexible Base Materials for Testing
Tex-106-E	Methods of Calculating the Plasticity Index of Soils
Tex-114-E	Laboratory Compaction Characteristics & Moisture Density Relationship of Subgrade & Embankment Soil
Tex-115-E	Field Method for Determination of In-Place Density of Soils & Base Materials
Tex-121-E, Part II	Soil Lime Testing
Tex-140-E	Measuring Thickness of Pavement Layer
Tex-600-J	Sampling and Testing of Hydrated Lime, Quicklime and Commercial Lime Slurry

***RELATED* CROSS REFERENCE MATERIALS**
Specification 203S, "Lime Treatment for Materials in Place"

City of Austin Standard Specifications

Designation	Description
Item No. 101S	Preparing Right of Way
Item No. 102S	Clearing and Grubbing
Item No. 110S	Street Excavation
Item No. 111S	Excavation
Item No. 130S	Borrow
Item No. 132S	Embankment
Item No. 210S	Flexible Base
Item No. 230S	Rolling (Flat Wheel)

Item No. 231S	Rolling (Pneumatic Tire)
Item No. 306S	Prime Coat

Texas Department of Transportation: Standard Specifications for Construction and Maintenance of Highways, Streets, and Bridges

Designation	Description
Item No. 100	Preparing Right of Way
Item No. 110	Excavation
Item No. 112	Subgrade Widening
Item No. 132	Embankment
Item No. 150	Blading
Item No. 158	Specialized Excavation Work
Item No. 204	Sprinkling
Item No. 210	Rolling (Flat Wheel)
Item No. 211	Rolling (Tamping)
Item No. 213	Rolling (Pneumatic Tire)
Item No. 264	Lime and Lime Slurry
Item No. 300	Asphalts, Oils and Emulsions

Texas Department of Transportation: Manual of Testing Procedures

Designation	Description
Tex-103-E	Determination of Moisture Content in Soil Materials
Tex-104-E	Determination of Liquid Limit of Soils
Tex-105-E	Determination of Plastic limit of Soils

Item No. 210S
Flexible Base

210S.1 Description

This item governs furnishing and placing a crushed stone base course for surfacing, pavement, or other base courses. "Flexible Base" shall be constructed on an approved, prepared surface in one or more courses conforming to the typical sections and to the lines and grades, indicated on the Drawings or established by the Engineer or designated representative.

This specification is applicable for projects or work involving either inch-pound or SI units. Within the text and accompanying tables, the inch-pound units are given preference followed by SI units shown within parentheses.

210S.2 Submittals

The submittal requirements of this specification item may include:

A. Source, gradation and test results for the crushed limestone material,

B. Notification that the crushed limestone stockpile is completed and ready for testing, and

C. Field density test results for in-place compacted flexible base,

210S.3 Material

A. Mineral Aggregate

The material shall be crushed argillaceous limestone meeting the requirements specified herein. The material shall be from sources approved by the City and shall consist of durable crushed stone that has been screened to the required gradation.

Flexible base materials shall be tested according to the following TxDoT standard test methods:

a) Preparation for Soil Constants and Sieve Analysis	Tex-101-E
b) Liquid Limit	Tex-104-E
c) Plastic Limit[1]	Tex-105-E
d) Plasticity Index	Tex-106-E
e) Sieve Analysis	Tex-110-E
f) Wet Ball Mill[2]	Tex-116-E
g) Triaxial Test	Tex-117-E, Part II

1. Plasticity Index shall be determined in accordance with Tex-107-E (Linear Shrinkage) when liquid limit is unattainable as defined in Tex-104-E.
2. When a soundness value is required on the drawings, the material shall be tested in accordance with Tex-411-A.

Base material shall be stockpiled after crushing, then tested by the City's designated laboratory and approved by the Engineer or designated representative prior to being hauled to the Project.

The material shall be well graded and shall meet the following requirements:

Sieve Designation		Other Requirements	% Retained	
US	SI			
1 3/4"	45 mm		0	
7/8"	22.4 mm		10-35	
3/8"	9.5 mm		30-50	
#4	4.75 mm		45-65	
#40	425 μm		70-85	
		Maximum Plasticity Index		10
		Maximum Wet Ball Mill		42
Maximum Increase in passing #40 (425 μm) sieve from Wet Ball Mill Test			20	

Minimum compressive strength when subjected to the triaxial test shall be 35 psi at 0 psi lateral pressure [240 kiloPascal (kPa) at 0 kPa lateral pressure] and 175 psi at 15 psi lateral pressure [1200 kiloPascal (kPa) at 100 kPa lateral pressure].

B. Asphaltic Material

Prime Coat. Prime Coat shall conform to the requirements of Standard Specification Item 306S, "Prime Coat", except for measurement and payment.

210S.4 Stockpiling, Storage and Management

A. Managing Material**:**

The stockpile shall be constructed on a relatively smooth area that has been cleared of debris, weeds, brush, trees and grass. Stockpiles shall contain between 25,000 and 50,000 cubic yards (19,100 to 38,200 cubic meters). The stockpile shall be constructed using scrapers, bottom dumps or other similar equipment that allows dumping and spreading without rehandling. The stockpile shall be constructed to allow dumping and spreading in one direction only. The height of the stockpile shall not exceed the capabilities of available equipment to make a full cut (bottom to top) on any of the four sides.

A stockpile shall be completed before being tested by the City. The Contractor's supplier shall notify the City when a stockpile has been completed and is ready to be tested. The stockpile shall not be added to after it has been tested.

The Contractor shall provide material only from stockpiles that have been inspected, tested and accepted by the City. A ticket showing the date, source,

stockpile number, and net weight (mass) shall be provided to the Inspector with each load of material delivered to the Project.

Material shall be loaded from the stockpile by making successive vertical cuts through its entire depth.

B. Test Sampling:

The Contractor's supplier may choose the method of sample gathering for testing by the City's laboratory as follows:

1. The supplier shall make a full-height cut a sufficient distance into each side of the stockpile to obtain a uniform sample. The four samples (one from each side of the stockpile) shall then be combined and mixed into a single "test" specimen from which the City's laboratory can obtain a sample.

2. As the stockpile is constructed, a perpendicular cut will be made across the spreading direction at every two feet to four feet (0.6 to 1.2 meters) of height and the sample used to start a "mini" stockpile. The process shall be repeated in two feet to four feet (0.6 to 1.2 meter) increments of height, until the stockpile and the "mini" stockpile are completed. Samples shall be obtained from the "mini" stockpile in the same manner described in (1) above.

C. Testing and Acceptance:

When initial tests indicate
that the material is unacceptable, the City may, if requested by the Contractor's supplier, sample and test the material one more time. The additional sampling and testing shall be paid for by the supplier.

210S.5 Construction Methods

A. Preparation of Subgrade:

Flexible base shall not be placed until the Contractor has verified by proof rolling that the subgrade has been prepared and compacted in conformity with Standard Specification Item 201S, "Subgrade Preparation," to the typical sections, lines and grades indicated on the Drawings. Any deviation shall be corrected and proof rolled prior to placement of the flexible base material.

The Contractor shall not place flexible base until the subgrade has cured to the satisfaction of the Engineer or designated representative, regardless of whether or not the subgrade has been successfully proof rolled. As a minimum, this will be after the surface displays no damp spots and there is no evidence of "sponginess" in the subgrade.

B. First Lift:

Immediately before placing the flexible base material, the subgrade shall be checked for conformity with grade and section. The thickness of each lift of flexible base shall be equal increments of the total base depth. No single lift shall be more than six inches (150 mm) or less than three inches (75 mm) compacted thickness.

The material shall be delivered in approved vehicles. It shall be the responsibility of the Contractor to deliver the required amount of material. If it becomes evident that insufficient material was placed, additional material as necessary shall be delivered and the entire course scarified, mixed and compacted.

Material deposited upon the subgrade shall be spread and shaped the same day unless otherwise approved by the Engineer or designated representative. In the event inclement weather or other unforeseen circumstances render spreading of the material impractical, the material shall be spread as soon as conditions allow.

Additionally, if the material cannot be spread and worked the same day it is deposited, the Contractor shall "close up" the dump piles before leaving the job site. “Closed up” shall be defined as the use of a motor grader to blade all dump piles together, leaving no open space between piles.

The material shall be spread, sprinkled, if required, then thoroughly mixed; bladed, dragged and shaped to conform to the typical sections indicated on the Drawings.

All areas and "nests" of segregated coarse or fine material shall be corrected or removed and replaced with well-graded material.

Each lift shall be sprinkled as required to bring the material to optimum moisture content, then compacted to the extent necessary to provide not less than the percent density specified in Section 210S.5.D, "Density." In addition to the requirements specified for density, the full depth of flexible base material shall be compacted to the extent necessary to remain firm and stable under construction equipment. After each section of flexible base material is completed, tests, as necessary, will be made by the Engineer or designated representative. As a minimum, three in-place density tests per section per day will be taken. If the material fails to meet the density requirements, it shall be reworked as necessary to meet these requirements. All initial testing will be paid for by the City. All retesting shall be paid for by the Contractor.

Throughout the entire operation, the surface of the material shall be maintained by blading and, upon completion, shall be smooth and shall conform to the typical section indicated on the Drawings and to the established lines and grades.

In that area on which pavement is to be placed, any deviation in excess of 1/4 inch (6.5 mm) in cross section or 1/4 inch in a length of 16 feet (6.5 mm in a length of 5 meters) measured longitudinally shall be corrected by loosening, adding or removing material, and by reshaping and recompacting. All irregularities, depressions or weak spots shall be corrected immediately by scarifying the areas affected, adding suitable material as required, and by reshaping and recompacting. Should the lift, due to any reason or cause, lose the required stability, density and/or finish before the surfacing is complete, it shall be recompacted and refinished at the Contractor's expense.

C. Succeeding Lifts:

Construction methods for succeeding lifts shall be the same as prescribed for the first lift. For that lift of the flexible base upon which the curb and gutter will be constructed, as well as the last flexible base lift (i.e. top of the flexible base), the Contractor shall check the surface of the lift for conformity to the lines and grades by setting "blue tops" at intervals not exceeding 50 feet (15 meters) on the centerline, at quarterpoints, at curb lines or edge of pavement, and at other points that may be indicated on the Drawings.

When the thickness of a particular lift of the flexible base is in question, the Contractor shall check the surface of the lift for conformity to the lines and grades by setting "blue tops" at intervals not exceeding 50 feet (15 meters) on the centerline, at quarter points, at curb lines or edge of pavement, and at other points that may be indicated on the Drawings

D. Density:

The flexible base shall be compacted to not less than 100 percent density as determined by TxDoT Test Method Tex-113-E.

Field density determination shall be made in accordance with TxDoT Test Method Tex-115-E unless otherwise approved by the Engineer or designated representative. Each lift of the flexible base shall also be tested by proof rolling in conformity with Standard Specification Item 236S “Proof Rolling.”

E. Priming:

After the flexible base material has been compacted to not less than 100 percent density, and tested by proof rolling, a prime coat will be applied in accordance with Standard Specification Item 306S, "Prime Coat."

F. Curing:

Pavement materials, such as a tack coat or surface course, shall not be placed on the primed surface until the prime coat has been absorbed into the base course. At least 24 hours, or longer if designated by the Engineer or designated representative, shall be allowed when cutback asphalt is used as the prime coat.

210S.6 Measurement

"Flexible Base" will be measured by the cubic yard (cubic meter: 1 cubic meter equals 1.196 cubic yards), complete in place, as indicated in the Contract Documents.

210S.7 Payment

This item will be paid for at the contract unit bid price for "Flexible Base". The unit bid price shall include full compensation for all work specified herein, including the furnishing, hauling, placing and compacting of all materials; for rolling, proof rolling, recompacting and refinishing; for all water required; for retesting as necessary; for priming; and for all equipment, tools, labor and incidentals necessary to complete the Work.

Prime coat will not be measured and paid for directly but shall be included in the unit price bid for Standard Specification Item 210S, "Flexible Base.”

Payment will be made under one of the following:

Pay Item No. 210S-A: Flexible Base Per Cubic Yard.

End

SPECIFIC CROSS REFERENCE MATERIALS

City of Austin Standard Specifications

Designation	Description
Item No. 201S	Subgrade Preparation
Item No. 236S	Proof Rolling
Item No. 306S	Prime Coat

Texas Department of Transportation: Standard Specifications for Construction and Maintenance of Highways, Streets, and Bridges

Designation	Description
Tex-101-E	Preparation of Soil and Flexible Base Materials for Testing
Tex-104-E	Determination of Liquid Limit of Soils
Tex-105-E	Determination of Plastic Limit of Soils
Tex-106-E	Method of Calculating the Plasticity Index of Soils
Tex-107-A	Determination of Bar Linear Shrinkage of Soils
Tex-110-E	Determination of Particle Size Analysis of Soils
Tex-113-E	Laboratory Compaction Characteristics and Moisture-Density Relationship of Base Materials and Cohesionless Sands
Tex-115-E	Field Method for Determination of In-Place Density of Soils and Base Materials
Tex-116-E	Ball Mill Method for Determination of the Disintegration of Flexible Base Material
Tex-117-E	Triaxial Compression Tests for Disturbed Soils and Base Materials
Tex-411-A	Soundness of Aggregate By Use Of Sodium Sulfate Or Magnesium Sulfate

RELATED CROSS REFERENCE MATERIALS

City of Austin Standard Details

Designation	Description
No. 1000S-2	Flexible Base with Asphalt Surface Trench Repair-Existing Pavement
No. 510S-3	Typical Trench with Paved Surface
No. 1000S	Bus Stop Paving
No. 1000S-10	Local Street Sections
No. 1000S-11(1)	Residential and City of Austin Neighborhood Collector Street Sections
No. 1000S-11(2)	Industrial and Commercial Collector Street Sections
No. 1000S-12(1)	Primary Collector Street Sections
No. 1000S-12(2)	Primary Arterial Street Sections
No. 1000S-13(1)	Minor Arterial Street Sections (4 Lanes)
No. 1000S-13(2)	Minor Arterial Street Sections-(4 Lanes divided)
No. 1000S-14	Major Arterial Street Sections

City of Austin Utility Criteria Manual

Designation	Description
Section 5.8.2	Flexible Base
Section 5.7.3	Flexible Base with Asphalt Surface
Section 5.9.1	Excavation in Alley

City of Austin Transportation Criteria Manual

Designation	Description
Section 3.2.0	General Criteria
Section 3.4.3 .D	Layer Data-Minimum Thickness
Table 3-1	Minimum Layer Thickness
Section 3.4.3 .F	Layer Data- Minimum Thickness
Table 3-2	Layer Thickness Increment
Section 3.4.3 .J	Layer Data- Stiffness Coefficient
Table 3-3	Stiffness Coefficient
Table 3-9	Recommended Salvage values
Table 3-10	AASHTO Layer Coefficients

Item No. 220S
Sprinkling for Dust Control

220S.1 Description

This item shall govern the authorized application of water for dust control on specified streets, detours, haul routes or construction sites, as shown on the Drawings or directed by the Engineer or designated representative, for the purpose of maintaining these areas relatively free of dust.

This specification is applicable for projects or work involving either inch-pound or SI units. Within the text, inch-pound units are given preference with SI units shown within parentheses.

220S.2 Submittals

The submittal requirements of this specification item include

A. The manufacturer, model and description of the proposed dust control equipment,

B. The sprinkling plan including application rate, pattern of sprinkling and scheduled times of application.

220S.3 Materials

Water shall be furnished by the Contractor and shall be clean and free from industrial wastes and other objectionable matter.

220S.4 Construction Methods

Dust control shall only be conducted when directed by the Engineer or designated representative. The Contractor shall furnish and operate an approved sprinkler, equipped with positive and rapidly working cut-off valves and approved spray bars to insure the distribution of water in a uniform and controllable rate of application over the entire width sprinkled. The Contractor shall apply the water in the quantity specified on the Drawings or as directed by the Engineer or designated representative.

It shall be the Contractor's continuous responsibility at all times, including nights, holidays and weekends until acceptance of the project by the City, to maintain the specified areas relatively free of dust in a manner that will cause the least inconvenience to the public.

220S.5 Measurement

Sprinkling for dust control will be included in the unit price bid for other items of the contract unless included as a separate pay item in the contract. When included for payment in the contract as a separate contract pay item, it will be measured in units of 1,000 gallons (3.785 kiloliters) actually placed as authorized by the Engineer or designated representative.

220S.6 Payment

When this item is specified on the Drawings as a separate pay item, the water furnished and the work performed as prescribed by this item and measured as provided under Section 220S.5, "Measurement" will be paid for in accordance with the contract unit bid price for 'Sprinkling for Dust Control'. The unit bid price shall include total compensation for all labor, materials, tools, machinery, equipment and incidentals necessary to complete the work as indicated on the Drawings.

Payment, when specified in the contract, will be made under the following:

Pay Item No. 220S-A: Sprinkling for Dust Control (Water) - Per 1000 gallon Unit.

End

RELATED CROSS REFERENCE MATERIALS
Specification 220S, “Sprinkling For Dust Control”

City of Austin Standard Specification Items

Designation	*Description*
Item No. 101S	Preparing Right of Way
Item No. 102S	Clearing and Grubbing
Item No. 110S	Street Excavation
Item No. 111S	Excavation
Item No. 120S	Channel Excavation
Item No. 132S	Embankment
Item No. 201S	Subgrade Preparation

Texas Department of Transportation: Standard Specifications for Construction and Maintenance of Highways, Streets, and Bridges

Designation	Description
Item No. 100	Preparing Right of Way
Item No. 110	Excavation
Item No. 132	Embankment
Item No. 158	Specialized Excavation Work
Item No. 204	Sprinkling

Item No. 230S
Rolling (Flat Wheel)

230S.1 Description

This item shall govern compaction of subgrade, embankment, flexible base, surface treatments and asphalt surfaces by the operation of approved power rollers as herein specified and as directed by the Engineer or designated representative.

This specification is applicable for projects or work involving either inch-pound or SI units. Within the text and accompanying tables, the inch-pound units are given preference followed by SI units shown within parentheses.

230S.2 Submittals

The submittal requirements of this specification item may include:

A. A plan describing the condition of each roller proposed for the work, as well as the type, size, weight, configuration (three wheel, tandem, etc) for each individual roller, and
B. The operating speed proposed for each individual roller.

230S.3 Equipment

A. Embankments and Flexible Bases

Power rollers shall be of the 3-wheel, self-propelled type, weighing not less than 10 tons (9 megagrams) and shall provide compression on the rear wheels of not less than 325 pounds per linear inch (5.80 kilograms per linear millimeter) of wheel width. All wheels shall be flat. The rear wheels shall have a diameter of not less than 48 inches (1.2 meters) and each shall have a wheel width of not less than 20 inches (510 millimeters).

B. Surface Treatments and Pavements

Power rollers shall be the 3-wheel or tandem, self-propelled type, weighing not less than 3 tons (2.7 megagrams) nor more than 6 tons (5.4 megagrams). All wheels shall be flat. Rollers shall be equipped with an adequate scraping or cleaning device on each wheel. Rollers used to compact asphalt mixture shall be equipped with a water system, which will keep all tires uniformly wet.

In lieu of the rolling equipment specified, the Contractor may, upon written permission from the Engineer or designated representative, operate other compacting equipment that will produce equivalent relative compaction in the same period of time as the specified equipment. If the substituted compaction equipment fails to produce the desired compaction within the same period of time as would be expected of the specified equipment, as determined by the Engineer or designated representative, its use shall be discontinued and the Contractor will be required to furnish the specified equipment.

Rollers shall be maintained in good repair and operating condition and shall be approved by the Engineer or designated representative.

230S.4 Construction Methods

This work shall only be conducted at the direction of the Engineer or designated representative. A sufficient number of rollers shall be provided to compact the material in a satisfactory manner. When operations are isolated and a single roller unit cannot produce the required compaction satisfactorily, additional roller units shall be provided.

A. Subgrades, Embankments and Flexible Base

The subgrade, embankment layer or base course shall be sprinkled, if required by Standard Specification Item Nos. 201S, "Subgrade Preparation" and 210S, "Flexible Base". Rolling with a power roller shall start longitudinally at the sides of the designated area and proceed towards the center, overlapping on successive trips by at least 1/2 the width of the rear wheel of the power roller. On superelevated curves, rolling shall begin at the low sides and progress toward the high sides. Alternate trips of the roller shall be slightly different in length. Rolling shall be conducted in accordance with Standard Specification Item Nos. 201S, "Subgrade Preparation" and 210S, "Flexible Base". The rollers, unless otherwise directed by the Engineer or designated representative, shall be operated at a speed between 2 and 3 miles (3 and 5 kilometers) per hour.

B. Surface Treatments and Pavements

Rolling shall be done as called for in the surface treatment (Items 310S and 320S) and asphalt pavement (Item 340S) Standard Specification Items. The sequence of work shall be as specified above for embankment layer or base course. The operating speed shall be determined by the Contractor and approved by the Engineer or designated representative.

230S.4 Measurement and Payment

Compensation will not be allowed for materials, equipment or labor required by this item, but shall be included in the unit price bid for the item of construction in which this item is used.

End

SPECIFIC CROSS REFERENCE MATERIALS
Specification 230S, "ROLLING (FLATWHEEL)"

City of Austin Standard Specifications

Designation	Description
Item No. 201S	Subgrade Preparation
Item No. 210S	Flexible Base
Item No. 310S	Emulsified Asphalt Treatment
Item No. 320S	Two Course Surface Treatment

Item No. 340S Hot Mix Asphaltic Concrete Pavement

RELATED CROSS REFERENCE MATERIALS
Specification 230S, "ROLLING (FLATWHEEL)"

City of Austin Standard Specifications

Designation	**Description**
Item No. 101S	Preparing Right of Way
Item No. 102S	Clearing and Grubbing
Item No. 104S	Removing Portland Cement Concrete
Item No. 110S	Street Excavation
Item No. 111S	Excavation
Item No. 130S	Borrow
Item No. 132S	Embankment
Item No. 202S	Hydrated Lime and Lime Slurry
Item No. 203S	Lime Treatment for Materials in Place
Item No. 232S	Rolling (Pneumatic Tire)
Item No. 236S	Proof Rolling
Item No. 301S	Asphalts, Oils and Emulsions
Item No. 306S	Prime Coat
Item No. 307S	Tack Coat
Item No. 402S	Controlled Low Strength Material
Item No. 403S	Concrete for Structures

City of Austin Standard Details

Designation	**Description**
No. 1000S-10	Local Street Sections
No. 1000S-11(1)	Residential and City of Austin Neighborhood Collector Street Sections
No. 1000S-11(2)	Industrial and Commercial Collector Street Sections
No. 1000S-12(1)	Primary Collector Street Sections
No. 1000S-12(2)	Primary Arterial Street Sections
No. 1000S-13(1)	Minor Arterial Street Sections (4 Lanes)
No. 1000S-13(2)	Minor Arterial Street Sections- (4 Lanes divided)
No. 1000S-14	Major Arterial Street Sections

Texas Department of Transportation: Standard Specifications for Construction and Maintenance of Highways, Streets, and Bridges

Designation	Description
Item No. 100	Preparing Right of Way
Item No. 110	Excavation
Item No. 112	Subgrade Widening
Item No. 132	Embankment

Item No. 150	Blading
Item No. 158	Specialized Excavation Work
Item No. 204	Sprinkling
Item No. 210	Rolling (Flat Wheel)
Item No. 211	Rolling (Tamping)
Item No. 264	Lime and Lime Slurry
Item No. 300	Asphalts, Oils and Emulsions
Item No. 301	Asphalt Anti-stripping Agents
Item No. 310	Prime Coat (Cutback Asphaltic Materials)
Item No. 314	Emulsified Asphalt Treatment
Item No. 316	Surface Treatments
Item No. 345	Asphalt Stabilized Base (Plant Mixed)

RELATED CROSS REFERENCE MATERIALS
Specification 230S, "ROLLING (FLATWHEEL)"

Texas Department of Transportation: Manual of Testing Procedures

Designation	Description
Tex-101-E	Surveying and Sampling Soils for Highways
Tex-103-E	Determination of Moisture Content of Soil Materials
Tex-104-E	Determination of Liquid Limit of Soils
Tex-105-E	Determination of Plastic limit of Soils
Tex-106-E	Method of Calculating the Plasticity Index of Soils
Tex-114-E	Laboratory Compaction Characteristics & Moisture Density Relationship of Subgrade & Embankment Soil
Tex-115-E	Field Method for Determination of In-Place Density of Soils & Base Materials
Tex-117-E	Triaxial Compression Tests for Disturbed Soils and Base Materials
Tex-120-E	Soil Cement Testing
Tex-121-E	Soil Lime Testing
Tex-126-E	Molding, Testing and Evaluation of Bituminous Black Base
Tex-207-F	Determination of Density of Compacted Bituminous Mixtures
Tex-210-F	Determination of Asphalt Content of Bituminous Mixtures by Extraction
Tex-222-F	Method of Sampling Bituminous Mixtures
Tex-228-F	Determination of Asphalt Content of Bituminous Mixtures By The Nuclear Method
Tex-600-J	Sampling and Testing of Hydrated Lime, Quicklime & Commercial Lime Slurry

Item No. 232S
Rolling (Pneumatic Tire)

232S.1 Description

This item shall govern compaction of embankment, flexible base, surface treatments or pavements by the operation of approved pneumatic tire rollers as herein specified and as directed by the Engineer or designated representative.

This specification is applicable for projects or work involving either inch-pound or SI units. Within the text and accompanying tables, the inch-pound units are given preference followed by SI units shown within parentheses.

232S.2 Submittals

The submittal requirements of this specification item may include:

A. A plan describing the condition of each roller proposed for the work, as well as the type of traction (self propelled or drawn), Type, size, weight, tire pressure and configuration for each individual roller, and

B. The operating speed proposed for each individual roller.

232S.3 Equipment

A. General Requirements

When used on seal coats, asphaltic surface treatments and bituminous mixture pavements, the roller shall be self propelled and equipped with smooth tread tires whether "Rolling (Light Pneumatic Tire)" or "Rolling (Medium Pneumatic Tire)" is specified on the Drawings. The roller shall be so constructed as to be capable of being operated in both a forward and a reverse direction. When used on bituminous mixture pavements, the roller shall have suitable provisions for moistening the surface of the tires while operating.

When turning is impractical or detrimental to the work and when specifically directed by the Engineer or designated representative, the roller shall be capable of being operated in a forward or backward motion.

In lieu of the rolling equipment specified, the Contractor may, upon written permission of the Engineer or designated representative, operate other compacting equipment that will produce equivalent relative compaction in the same period of time as the specified equipment. If the substituted compaction equipment fails to produce the desired compaction within the same period of time as would be expected of the specified equipment, as determined by the Engineer or designated representative, its use shall be discontinued and the Contractor will be required to furnish the specified equipment.

Rollers shall be maintained in good repair and operating condition and shall be approved by the Engineer or designated representative.

Tire pressure is critical to successful operation of the roller. The Contractor shall have equipment on the construction site to inflate tires as required.

B. Light Pneumatic Tire Roller

The light pneumatic tire roller shall consist of not less than 9 pneumatic tired wheels, running on axles in such manner that the rear group of tires will cover the entire gap between adjacent tires of the forward group and mounted in a rigid frame and provided with a loading platform or body suitable for ballast loading. The front axle shall be attached to the frame in such a manner that the roller may be turned within a minimum circle. The pneumatic tire roller, under working conditions, shall have an effective rolling width of approximately 60 inches (1.5 meters) and shall be so designed that by ballast loading, the total load may be varied uniformly from 9,000 pounds (4 megagrams) or less to 18,000 pounds (8 megagrams) or more. The roller shall be equipped with tires that will afford ground contact pressures to 45 pounds per square inch (310 kiloPascals) or more. The operating load and tire air pressure shall be within the range of the manufacturer's chart or tabulations showing the contact areas and contact pressures for the full range of tire inflation pressures and for the full range of loadings for the particular tires furnished. The roller under working conditions shall provide a uniform compression under all wheels. Individual tire inflation pressures shall be within + 5 psi (+ 34 kiloPascals) of each other. The pneumatic tire roller shall be drawn by a suitable crawler type tractor, a pneumatic tired tractor, a truck of adequate tractive effort or may be of the self-propelled type. The roller, when drawn or propelled by either type of equipment, shall be considered a light pneumatic tire roller unit.

C. Medium Pneumatic Tire Roller (Type A)

The medium pneumatic tire roller (Type A) shall consist of not less than 7 pneumatic tired wheels, running on axles in such manner that the rear group of tires will cover the entire gap between adjacent tires of the forward group and mounted in a rigid frame and provided with a loading platform or body suitable for ballast loading. The front axle shall be attached to the frame in such a manner that the roller may be turned within a minimum circle. The pneumatic tire roller, under working conditions, shall have an effective rolling width of approximately 84 inches (2.1 meters) and shall be so designed that, by ballast loading, the total load may be varied uniformly from 23,500 pounds (10.5 megagrams) or less to 50,000 pounds (22.5 megagrams) or more. The roller shall be equipped with tires that will afford ground contact pressures of 80 pounds per square inch (550 kiloPascals) or more. The operating load and tire air pressure shall be within the range of the manufacturer’s chart. The roller under working conditions shall provide a uniform compression under all wheels. Individual tire inflation pressures shall be within + 5 psi (+ 34 kiloPascals) of each other.

The pneumatic tire roller shall be drawn by a suitable crawler type tractor, a pneumatic tired tractor, a truck of adequate tractive effort or may be of the self-propelled type. The roller, when drawn or propelled by any type of equipment, shall be considered a medium pneumatic tire roller unit. The power unit shall have adequate tractive effort to properly move the operating roller at variable uniform speeds up to approximately 5 miles per hour (8 kilometers per hour).

D. Medium Pneumatic Tire Roller (Type B)

The medium pneumatic tire roller (Type B) shall conform to the requirements for Medium Pneumatic Tire Roller (Type A) as specified above, except that the roller shall be equipped with tires that will afford ground contact pressures to 90 psi (620 kiloPascals) or more.

232S.4 Construction Methods

The embankment layer or the base course shall be sprinkled in accordance with Standard Specification Item Nos. 201S, "Subgrade Preparation" and 210S, "Flexible Base". Rolling with a pneumatic tire roller shall start longitudinally at the sides of the designated area and shall proceed towards the center, overlapping on successive trips by at least 1/2 of the width of the pneumatic tire roller. On superelevated curves, rolling shall begin at the low sides and progress toward the high sides. Alternate trips of the roller shall be slightly different in length.

The light pneumatic tire roller shall be operated at speeds, which shall be between 3 and 11 miles per hour (between 6 and 19 kilometers per hour) for asphalt surfacing work and between 2 and 6 miles per hour (between 3 and 10 kilometers per hour) for all other work.

The medium pneumatic tire roller shall be operated at speeds as directed by the Engineer or designated representative, which produce a satisfactory product.

Sufficient rollers shall be provided to compact the material in a satisfactory manner. When operations are so isolated from one another that 1 roller unit cannot produce the required compaction satisfactorily, additional roller units shall be provided.

232S.5 Measurement and Payment

Compensation will not be allowed for materials, equipment or labor required by this item. These items shall be included in the unit price bid for the item of construction in which this item is used.

End

SPECIFIC CROSS REFERENCE MATERIALS
Specification 232S, "Rolling (Pneumatic Tire)"

City of Austin Standard Specifications

Designation	Description
Item No. 201S	Subgrade Preparation
Item No. 210S	Flexible Base

RELATED CROSS REFERENCE MATERIALS

City of Austin Contract Documents

Designation	Description
Section 00700	General Conditions

City of Austin Standard Specifications

Designation	Description
Item No. 101S	Preparing Right of Way
Item No. 102S	Clearing and Grubbing
Item No. 110S	Street Excavation
Item No. 111S	Excavation
Item No. 130S	Borrow
Item No. 132S	Embankment
Item No. 202S	Hydrated Lime and Lime Slurry
Item No. 203S	Lime Treatment for Materials in Place
Item No. 230S	Rolling (Flat Wheel)

RELATED CROSS REFERENCE MATERIALS-Continued
Specification 232S, "Rolling (Pneumatic Tire)"

City of Austin Standard Specifications

Designation	Description
Item No. 236S	Proof Rolling
Item No. 301S	Asphalts, Oils and Emulsions
Item No. 306S	Prime Coat
Item No. 307S	Tack Coat
Item No. 310S	Emulsified Asphalt Treatment
Item No. 320S	Two Course Surface Treatment
Item No. 340S	Hot Mix Asphaltic Concrete Pavement
Item No. 402S	Controlled Low Strength Material
Item No. 403S	Concrete for Structures

City of Austin Standard Details

Designation	Description
No. 1000S-10	Local Street Sections
No. 1000S-11(1)	Residential and City of Austin Neighborhood Collector Street Sections
No. 1000S-11(2)	Industrial and Commercial Collector Street Sections
No. 1000S-12(1)	Primary Collector Street Sections
No. 1000S-12(2)	Primary Arterial Street Sections
No. 1000S-13(1)	Minor Arterial Street Sections (4 Lanes)
No. 1000S-13(2)	Minor Arterial Street Sections- (4 Lanes divided)
No. 1000S-14	Major Arterial Street Sections

Texas Department of Transportation: Standard Specifications for Construction and Maintenance of Highways, Streets, and Bridges

Designation	Description
Item No. 100	Preparing Right of Way
Item No. 110	Excavation
Item No. 112	Subgrade Widening
Item No. 132	Embankment
Item No. 150	Blading
Item No. 158	Specialized Excavation Work
Item No. 204	Sprinkling
Item No. 210	Rolling (Flat Wheel)
Item No. 211	Rolling (Tamping)
Item No. 213	Rolling (Pneumatic Tire)
Item No. 264	Lime and Lime Slurry
Item No. 300	Asphalts, Oils and Emulsions
Item No. 301	Asphalt Anti-stripping Agents
Item No. 310	Prime Coat (Cutback Asphaltic Materials)
Item No. 314	Emulsified Asphalt Treatment
Item No. 316	Surface Treatments
Item No. 345	Asphalt Stabilized Base (Plant Mixed)

Texas Department of Transportation: Manual of Testing Procedures

Designation	Description
Tex-101-E	Surveying and Sampling Soils for Highways
Tex-103-E	Determination of Moisture Content of Soil Materials
Tex-104-E	Determination of Liquid Limit of Soils
Tex-105-E	Determination of Plastic limit of Soils

Tex-106-E	Method of Calculating the Plasticity Index of Soils

RELATED CROSS REFERENCE MATERIALS-Continued
Specification 232S, "Rolling (Pneumatic Tire)"

Texas Department of Transportation: Manual of Testing Procedures

Designation	Description
Tex-114-E	Laboratory Compaction Characteristics & Moisture Density Relationship of Subgrade & Embankment Soil
Tex-115-E	Field Method for Determination of In-Place Density of Soil & Base Materials
Tex-117-E	Triaxial Compression Tests for Disturbed Soils and Base Materials
Tex-120-E	Soil Cement Testing
Tex-121-E	Soil Lime Testing
Tex-126-E	Molding, Testing and Evaluation of Bituminous Black Base Materials
Tex-207-F	Determination of Density of Compacted Bituminous Mixtures
Tex-210-F	Determination of Asphalt Content of Bituminous Mixtures by Extraction
Tex-228-F	Determination of Asphalt Content of Bituminous Mixtures By The Nuclear Method
Tex-600-J	Sampling and Testing of Hydrated Lime, Quicklime & Commercial Lime Slurry

Item No. 234S
Rolling (Tamping)

234S.1 Description

This item shall govern compaction of embankment, lime-treated subgrade or other courses by the operation of approved tamping rollers as herein specified and as directed by the Engineer or designated representative.

This specification is applicable for projects or work involving either inch-pound or SI units. Within the text and accompanying tables, the inch-pound units are given preference followed by SI units shown within parentheses.

234S.2 Submittals

The submittal requirements of this specification item may include:

A. A plan describing the condition of each roller proposed for the work, as well as the type of traction (self propelled or drawn), Type of roller, size, weight, and configuration of each individual tamping roller, and

B. The operating speed proposed for each individual tamping roller.

234S.3 Equipment

The tamping rollers shall consist of 2 metal rollers, drums or shells of 40 inches (1 meter) minimum diameter; each not less than 42 inches (1.067 meters) in length. The drums shall be unit mounted in a rigid frame in such a manner that each roller may oscillate independently of the other.

Each roller, drum or shell shall be surmounted by metal studs with tamping feet projecting not less than 7 inches (180 millimeters) from the surface and spaced not less than 6 inches (150 millimeters) nor more than 10 inches (254 millimeters), measured diagonally center to center and the cross-sectional area of each tamping foot, measured perpendicularly to the axis of the stud, shall not be less than 5 nor more than 8 square inches (less than 3200 nor more than 5200 square millimeters). The roller shall be supplemented with cleaning teeth to provide self-cleaning.

The roller shall be so designed that, by ballast loading, the load on each tamping foot may be varied uniformly from 125 to 550 psi (860 to 3800 kiloPascals) of cross sectional area. The load per tamping foot will be determined by dividing the total weight (mass) of the roller by the number of tamping feet in 1 row parallel to or approximately parallel to the axis of the roller. The compression to be provided at any time shall be as directed by the Engineer or designated representative.

The tamping roller shall be drawn by suitable power equipment of adequate tractive effort. Two tamping rollers, consisting of 4 cylinders, conforming to the above prescribed requirements, drawn by approved power equipment, shall be considered a roller unit.

Where turning is impractical or detrimental to the work and when specifically directed by the Engineer or designated representative, the roller shall be capable of being operated in a forward and backward direction. When operations are confined to narrow widths and when specifically directed in writing by the Engineer or designated representative, 1

tamping roller consisting of 2 cylinders, fastened to the front end of approved power equipment shall be considered a roller unit.

In lieu of the rolling equipment specified, the Contractor may, upon written permission from the Engineer or designated representative, operate other compacting equipment that will produce equivalent relative compaction in the same period of time as the specified equipment. If the substituted compaction equipment fails to produce the desired compaction within the same period of time as would be expected of the specified equipment, as determined by the Engineer or designated representative, its use shall be discontinued and the Contractor will be required to furnish the specified equipment.

Rollers shall be maintained in good repair and operating condition and shall be approved by the Engineer or designated representative.

234S.4 Construction Methods

The embankment layer, subbase or the base course shall be sprinkled in accordance with Standard Specification Item Nos. 201S, "Subgrade Preparation" and 203S, "Lime Treatment for Materials In Place". Rolling with a tamping roller unit shall start longitudinally at the sides of the designated area and proceed toward the center, overlapping on successive trips by at least 1/2 of the width of the tamping roller unit. On superelevated curves, rolling shall begin at the low sides and progress toward the high sides. Alternate trips of the unit shall be slightly different in length. The tamping roller unit, unless otherwise directed by the Engineer or designated representative, shall be operated at a speed between 2 and 3 miles per hour (3 and 5 kilometers per hour).

Sufficient rollers shall be provided to compact the material in a satisfactory manner. When operations are so isolated from one another that one roller cannot perform the required compaction satisfactorily, additional rollers shall be provided and operated as directed by the Engineer.

234S.5 Measurement and Payment

No additional payment will be made for the materials, equipment or labor required by this item, but shall be included in the unit price bid for the item of construction in which this item is used.

End

SPECIFIC CROSS REFERENCE MATERIALS
Specification 234S, "Rolling (Tamping)"

City of Austin Standard Specifications

Designation	Description
Item No. 201S	Subgrade Preparation
Item No. 203S	Lime Treatment for Materials in Place

RELATED CROSS REFERENCE MATERIALS
Specification 234S, "Rolling (Tamping)"

City of Austin Contract Documents

Designation	Description
Section 00700	General Conditions

RELATED CROSS REFERENCE MATERIALS – Continued
Specification 234S, "Rolling (Tamping)"

Texas Department of Transportation: Standard Specifications for Construction and Maintenance of Highways, Streets, and Bridges

Designation	Description
Item No. 132	Embankment
Item No. 204	Sprinkling
Item No. 210	Rolling (Flat Wheel)
Item No. 211	Rolling (Tamping)
Item No. 213	Rolling (Pneumatic Tire)

City of Austin Standard Specifications

Designation	Description
Item No. 101S	Preparing Right of Way
Item No. 102S	Clearing and Grubbing
Item No. 110S	Street Excavation
Item No. 111S	Excavation
Item No. 130S	Borrow
Item No. 132S	Embankment
Item No. 202S	Hydrated Lime and Lime Slurry
Item No. 210S	Flexible Base
Item No. 230S	Rolling (Flat Wheel)
Item No. 232S	Rolling (Pneumatic Tire)
Item No. 236S	Proof Rolling
Item No. 301S	Asphalts, Oils and Emulsions
Item No. 306S	Prime Coat
Item No. 307S	Tack Coat
Item No. 310S	Emulsified Asphalt Treatment
Item No. 320S	Two Course Surface Treatment
Item No. 340S	Hot Mix Asphaltic Concrete Pavement
Item No. 402S	Controlled Low Strength Material
Item No. 403S	Concrete for Structures

City of Austin Standard Details

Designation	Description
No. 1000S-10	Local Street Sections
No. 1000S-11(1)	Residential and City of Austin Neighborhood Collector Street Sections
No. 1000S-11(2)	Industrial and Commercial Collector Street Sections
No. 1000S-12(1)	Primary Collector Street Sections
No. 1000S-12(2)	Primary Arterial Street Sections
No. 1000S-13(1)	Minor Arterial Street Sections (4 Lanes)
No. 1000S-13(2)	Minor Arterial Street Sections- (4 Lanes divided)
No. 1000S-14	Major Arterial Street Sections

Texas Department of Transportation: Standard Specifications for Construction and Maintenance of Highways, Streets, and Bridges

Designation	Description
Item No. 100	Preparing Right of Way
Item No. 110	Excavation
Item No. 112	Subgrade Widening
Item No. 132	Embankment
Item No. 150	Blading
Item No. 158	Specialized Excavation Work
Item No. 264	Lime and Lime Slurry

RELATED CROSS REFERENCE MATERIALS-Continued
Specification 234S, "Rolling (Tamping)"

Texas Department of Transportation: Standard Specifications for Construction and Maintenance of Highways, Streets, and Bridges

Designation	Description
Item No. 300	Asphalts, Oils and Emulsions
Item No. 301	Asphalt Anti-stripping Agents
Item No. 310	Prime Coat (Cutback Asphaltic Materials)
Item No. 314	Emulsified Asphalt Treatment
Item No. 316	Surface Treatments
Item No. 345	Asphalt Stabilized Base (Plant Mixed)

Texas Department of Transportation: Manual of Testing Procedures

Designation	Description
Tex-101-E	Surveying and Sampling Soils for Highways
Tex-103-E	Determination of Moisture Content of Soil Materials
Tex-104-E	Determination of Liquid Limit of Soils
Tex-105-E	Determination of Plastic limit of Soils
Tex-106-E	Method of Calculating the Plasticity Index of Soils
Tex-114-E	Laboratory Compaction Characteristics & Moisture Density Relationship of Subgrade & Embankment Soil
Tex-115-E	Field Method for Determination of In-Place Density of Soils & Base Materials
Tex-117-E	Triaxial Compression Tests for Disturbed Soils and Base Materials
Tex-120-E	Soil Cement Testing
Tex-121-E	Soil Lime Testing
Tex-126-E	Molding, Testing and Evaluation of Bituminous Black Base Materials
Tex-207-F	Determination of Density of Compacted Bituminous Mixtures
Tex-210-F	Determination of Asphalt Content of Bituminous Mixtures
Tex-600-J	Sampling and Testing of Hydrated Lime, Quicklime & Commercial Lime Slurry

Item No. 236S
Proof Rolling

236S.1 Description

This item shall govern furnishing and operating heavy pneumatic tired compaction equipment for locating unstable areas of embankment, subgrade and flexible base courses.

This specification is applicable for projects or work involving either inch-pound or SI units. Within the text, the inch-pound units are given preference followed by SI units shown within parentheses.

236S.2 Submittals

The submittal requirements of this specification item may include:

A. A plan describing the condition of each roller proposed for the work, as well as the type of traction (self propelled or drawn), Type of roller, size, weight, tire pressure (if appropriate) and configuration of each individual roller, and

B. The operating speed proposed for each individual roller.

236S.3 Equipment

A. Standard Proof Roller:

The proof rolling equipment shall have a loading platform or body suitable for ballast loading that is supported on a minimum of two (2) axles with not more than two (2) pneumatic tired wheels per axle. All wheels shall be arranged so that they will carry approximately equal loads when operating on uneven surfaces. Pneumatic proof rolling equipment with multiple pivotal axles and more than two tires along the front or rear axle axis shall have articulating axle supports to equally distribute the load to all tires over uneven surfaces.

The proof roller unit, under working conditions, shall have a minimum contact width of 7-1/2 feet (2.3 meters) and shall be so designed that the gross roller weight may be varied uniformly from 25 tons to 50 tons (23 megagrams to 45 megagrams) by ballast loading. The tires shall be capable of operating under various loads with variable air pressures up to 145 psi (up to 1000 kiloPascals). The tires shall be smooth tread and shall impart a minimum ground contact pressure of 75 pounds per square inch (520 kiloPascals). Tires shall be practically full of liquid (i.e. when liquid will flow from the valve stem of a fully inflated tire with the stem in the uppermost position). The operating load and tire pressure shall be within the range of the manufacturer's chart as directed by the Engineer or designated representative.

The proof roller shall be drawn by a power train of adequate tractive effort or may be of a self-propelled type. The proof rolling equipment shall be equipped with a reverse mode transmission or be capable of turning 180 degrees in the street width. When a separate power train is used to draw the proof roller, the power train weight shall not be considered in the weight of the proof roller. The power train shall be rubber-tired when rolling subgrade and base materials. A cleated or track-type power train may be used on earth and rock embankments.

B. Alternate Equipment:

With the written approval of the Engineer or designated representative, the Contractor may utilize alternate equipment on embankment courses, subgrade and base courses subject to the requirements of the standard proof roller except with respect to minimum contact width, axle/tire arrangement and tire tread.

Alternate equipment for stability testing of embankments shall be restricted to equipment that can be shown to impart a stress distribution on the embankment structure equivalent to or greater than the stress induced by the concentrated weight of a standard proof roller.

C. Equipment Submittals:

All standard proof rollers and proposed alternate equipment must be approved by the Engineer or designated representative prior to their use. The Contractor shall furnish the Engineer or designated representative with charts or tabulations showing the contact areas and contact pressures for the full range of tire inflation pressures and for the full range of loadings for the particular tires furnished.

Alternate equipment submittals for proof rolling of embankments shall be signed and sealed by a registered Professional Engineer licensed in the State of Texas.

236S.4 Construction Methods

A. General:

Within the ranges set forth in Section 236S.3, the load and tire inflation pressures shall be adjusted as directed by the Engineer or designated representative. It is proposed to use a contact pressure corresponding as nearly as practical to the maximum supporting value of the earthwork or base. The entirety of prepared surfaces to be tested by this method shall be proof rolled by a minimum of two passes of the proof roller tires. Each succeeding trip of the proof roller shall be offset by not greater than one tire width.

When alternate equipment is proposed and only one axle meets minimum requirements, only the qualifying axle shall be used to proof roll. If the operation of the proof roller shows an area to be unstable, the substandard area shall be brought to satisfactory stability and uniformity by additional curing, compaction, or by removal and replacement of unsuitable materials. The re-worked area shall then be proof rolled.

Proof rollers shall be operated at speeds between 2 and 6 miles per hour (3 and 10 kilometers per hour) or as directed by the Engineer or designated representative.

Acceptable limits of elastic and plastic deformation of prepared subgrade courses shall be established by proof rolling Test Sections of representative soil conditions, previously tested and approved for density and moisture requirements of the governing subgrade and earth embankment items. Proof rolling of first course base over a plastic subgrade may be waived by the Engineer or designated representative if it is determined that the prepared first course base will be damaged by the proof roller.

B. Roadway Construction:

The subgrade and all lifts of base material shall be proof rolled in new roadway construction and in the reconstruction of existing streets. Proof rolling of the curb course base shall be substituted for proof rolling of final course base at the direction of the Engineer or designated representative. Proof rolling may be waived by the Engineer or designated

representative where construction is limited to turn lanes, street widening less than 7-1/2 feet (2.3 meters) in width, or where the site is otherwise congested.

C. Trenches:

Trenches shall be proof rolled where no limitations to the operation of the proof roller exist as may be determined by the Engineer subject to the provisions hereunder.

All trenches shall be proof rolled in new roadways or in existing roadways under reconstruction. Trenches shall be proof rolled at the street subgrade elevation by longitudinal and perpendicular passes of the roller as may be dictated by the width of the trench.

Proof rolling of trenches in existing paved streets shall be limited to pavement cross-sections capable of sustaining the weight of the proof rolling equipment without imparting damage to the remaining pavement structure as determined by the Engineer. Trenches less than 4 feet (1.2 meters) in width shall be exempted of all proof rolling requirements. Only the final course base shall be proof rolled in trenches 4 feet (1.2 meters) or wider but narrower than the proof roller contact width. The subgrade, the first course and the final course base shall be proof rolled in trenches 7-1/2 feet (2.3 meters) or wider.

D. Embankment Construction:

All embankment courses shall be proof rolled, unless otherwise directed by the Engineer or designated representative.

If required by the Engineer or designated representative, stability testing of embankments constructed to the finished cross-section and elevation or to interim elevations shall either be conducted with a standard proof roller or alternate equipment, which can be proven to impart a horizontal and vertical pressure distributions equivalent to or greater than those induced by a standard proof roller.

236S.5 Measurement and Payment

No direct payment will be made for the materials, equipment or labor required by this item, but shall be included in the unit price bid for the item of construction in which this item is used.

End

RELATED CROSS REFERENCE MATERIALS
Specification Item 236S, “Proof Rolling”

City of Austin Contract Documents

Designation	Description
Section 00700	General Conditions

City of Austin Standard Specifications

Designation	Description
Item No. 101S	Preparing Right of Way
Item No. 102S	Clearing and Grubbing
Item No. 110S	Street Excavation
Item No. 111S	Excavation
Item No. 130S	Borrow
Item No. 132S	Embankment

RELATED CROSS REFERENCE MATERIALS-Continued
Specification 236S, "Proof Rolling"

City of Austin Standard Specifications

Designation	Description
Item No. 201S	Subgrade Preparation
Item No. 202S	Hydrated Lime and Lime Slurry
Item No. 203S	Lime Treatment for Materials in Place
Item No. 204S	Portland Cement Treatment For Materials in Place
Item No. 206S	Asphalt Stabilized Base (Plant Mix)
Item No. 210S	Flexible Base
Item No. 230S	Rolling (Flat Wheel)
Item No. 232S	Rolling (Pneumatic Tire)
Item No. 234S	Rolling (Tamping)
Item No. 301S	Asphalts, Oils and Emulsions
Item No. 306S	Prime Coat
Item No. 307S	Tack Coat
Item No. 310S	Emulsified Asphalt Treatment
Item No. 320S	Two Course Surface Treatment
Item No. 340S	Hot Mix Asphaltic Concrete Pavement
Item No. 402S	Controlled Low Strength Material
Item No. 403S	Concrete for Structures

City of Austin Standard Details

Designation	Description
No. 1000S-10	Local Street Sections
No. 1000S-11(1)	Residential and City of Austin Neighborhood Collector Street Sections
No. 1000S-11(2)	Industrial and Commercial Collector Street Sections
No. 1000S-12(1)	Primary Collector Street Sections
No. 1000S-12(2)	Primary Arterial Street Sections
No. 1000S-13(1)	Minor Arterial Street Sections (4 Lanes)
No.1000S-13 (2)	Minor Arterial Street Sections- (4 Lanes divided)
No. 1000S-14	Major Arterial Street Sections

Texas Department of Transportation: Standard Specifications for Construction and Maintenance of Highways, Streets, and Bridges

Designation	Description
Item No. 100	Preparing Right of Way
Item No. 110	Excavation
Item No. 112	Subgrade Widening
Item No. 132	Embankment
Item No. 150	Blading
Item No. 158	Specialized Excavation Work
Item No. 204	Sprinkling
Item No. 210	Rolling (Flat Wheel)
Item No. 211	Rolling (Tamping)
Item No. 213	Rolling (Pneumatic Tire)
Item No. 264	Lime and Lime Slurry
Item No. 300	Asphalts, Oils and Emulsions
Item No. 301	Asphalt Anti-stripping Agents
Item No. 310	Prime Coat (Cutback Asphaltic Materials)
Item No. 314	Emulsified Asphalt Treatment
Item No. 316	Surface Treatments
Item No. 345	Asphalt Stabilized Base (Plant Mixed)

RELATED CROSS REFERENCE MATERIALS-Continued
Specification 236S, "Proof Rolling"

Texas Department of Transportation: Manual of Testing Procedures

Designation	Description
Tex-101-E	Surveying and Sampling Soils for Highways
Tex-103-E	Determination of Moisture Content of Soil Materials
Tex-104-E	Determination of Liquid Limit of Soils
Tex-105-E	Determination of Plastic limit of Soils
Tex-106-E	Method of Calculating the Plasticity Index of Soils
Tex-114-E	Laboratory Compaction Characteristics & Moisture Density Relationship of Subgrade & Embankment Soil
Tex-115-E	Field Method for Determination of In-Place Density of Soils & Base Materials
Tex-117-E	Triaxial Compression Tests for Disturbed Soil and Base Materials
Tex-120-E	Soil Cement Testing
Tex-121-E	Soil Lime Testing
Tex-126-E	Molding, Testing and Evaluation of Bituminous Black Base Materials
Tex-207-F	Determination of Density of Compacted Bituminous Mixtures
Tex-210-F	Determination of Asphalt Content of Bituminous Mixtures
Tex-600-J	Sampling and Testing of Hydrated Lime, Quicklime & Commercial Lime Slurry

Item No. 281S
Termite Control

281S.1 Description

This item shall govern soil treatment below slabs-on-grade and at foundation perimeter for subterranean insects. The lines and grades shall not be disturbed without approval of the Engineer or designated representative.

This specification is applicable for projects or work involving either inch-pound or SI units. Within the text, the inch-pound units are given preference followed by SI units shown within parentheses.

281S.2 Submittals

The submittal requirements shall include:

A. A listing of each proposed application (i.e. slab on grade, foundation walls, utilities, etc.) of a toxicant chemical.

B. Specific information for each chemical toxicant in the listing including:
   1. Manufacturer, product name and description of chemical composition,
   2. Handling, storage and mixing requirements,
   3. Application recommendations, retreatment procedures, and
   4. MSDS Sheets.

C. Warning sign information including Description, legend and areas of application.

281S.3 Materials

A. Toxicant Chemical

   The toxicant chemical shall be a water-based emulsion of uniform composition with a synthetic dye to permit visual identification of the treated soil.

B. Acceptable Products

   1. Pryfon 6
   2. Dursban TC
   3 Tribute
   4 Dragnet
   5 Demon

The toxicant chemical shall be diluted with water to yield the manufacturer's recommended concentration.

281S.4 Construction Methods

A. Inspection

The inspection shall verify that the soil surfaces are not frozen, surface dry sufficiently to absorb toxicant and ready to receive the treatment.

B. Application

The user shall acquire and review the current Material Safety Data Sheet (MSDS), for warnings and precautions, and shall follow the directions in the use of the product and disposal of all containers after use. The user shall apply the toxicant chemical with a low-pressure spray (less than 50 p.s.i. [345 kPa]) consistent with the manufacturer's recommendations.

The diluted toxicant solution shall be applied using a metered applicator to the soil in the following locations at the rates recommended by the manufacturer:

1. Under floor slabs-on-grade
2. Both sides of foundation wall.
3. Soil within 10 feet (3 meters) of building perimeter for a depth of 1 foot (0.3 meter).
4. Expansion joints.
5. Utility entrances.
6. Critical locations such as where utilities pass through exterior walls and through floor slabs.

The diluted toxicant solution shall be applied immediately prior to installation of vapor barrier under slabs-on-grade or finish grading outside foundation walls.

Extra treatment shall be applied in a coarse spray to ensure uniform distribution to structure penetrations, pipe ducts and other soil penetrations. . Any treated soil that is disturbed shall be retreated.

C. Directions For Use

The user shall become fully informed of the recommended precautions in the handling and storage of the chemical toxicant, as well as the directions for use of the toxicant chemical as listed on the current MSDS and in conformance with the Uniform Fire Code, Article 86, Pesticide Storage and Display.

Signs warning workers that soil poisoning has been applied shall be posted in areas of application. The signs shall be removed once the areas are covered by other construction.

D. Retreatment

If inspection identifies the presence of termites, the soil shall be retreated and subsequently retested. The retreatment toxicant shall be the same as the original toxicant treatment.

281S.5 Measurement

Accepted work performed as prescribed by this item will be measured by the square foot (square meter: 1 square meter equals 10.764 square feet) of treated area for "Termite Control".

281S.6 Payment

The work performed as prescribed by this item will be paid for at the unit bid price per square foot of treated area for "Termite Control". The unit bid price shall include full compensation for furnishing chemicals and application of solution on the prepared subgrade.

Payment, when included as a pay item, will be made under:

Pay Item No. 281S-A: Termite Control	Per Square Foot

End

Related CROSS REFERENCE MATERIALS
Standard Specification Item Number 281S, “Termite Control”

City of Austin Standard Specifications

Designation	Description
Item No. 410	Concrete Structures
Item No. 721	Steel Structures

Item No. 301S
Asphalts, Oils and Emulsions

301S.1 Description

This item includes the requirements for cutback asphalts, emulsified asphalts, polymer modified asphalt cements, performance graded asphalt binders and other miscellaneous asphaltic materials and latex additives.

This specification is applicable for projects or work involving either inch-pound or SI units. Within the text the inch-pound units are given preference followed by SI units shown within parentheses.

301S.2 Submittals

Submittals shall include test results for each the materials described herein when specifically identified on the Drawings and/or referenced in associated standard specification items and standard details.

Submittals may include samples of the base asphalt cement and polymer additives.

301S.3 Materials

When tested in accordance with designated TxDoT, AASHTO and/or ASTM Test Methods, the various materials shall meet the applicable requirements of this specification.

A. Acronyms

The acronyms used in this specification are defined in the following table.

Table 1: Acronyms

Acronym	Definition	Acronym	Definition
Test Method Prefix Tex T D	 TxDOT AASHTO ASTM	Polymer Modifier SBR or L SBS TR P	 Styrene-Butadiene Rubber (Latex) Styrene-Butadiene-Styrene Block Copolymer Tire Rubber, from ambient temperature grinding of truck and passenger tires Polymer Modified
AC	Asphalt Cement	SS	Slow Setting
RC	Rapid Curing	H-suffix	Harder Residue (Lower Penetration)
MC	Medium Curing	AE	Asphalt Emulsion
SCM	Special Cutback Material	S-suffix	Stockpile Usage
HF	High Float	AE-P	Asphalt Emulsion Prime
C	Cationic	EAP&T	Emulsified Asphalt Prime and Tack
RS	Rapid Setting	PCE	Prime, Cure, and Erosion Control
MS	Medium Setting	PG	Performance Grade

B. Asphalt Cement

The material shall be homogeneous, free from water, shall not foam when heated to 350°F (177°C) and shall meet the requirements in Table 2.

Table 2: Asphalt Cement Requirements

Viscosity Grade		AC-10		AC-20		AC-30	
Property	Test Method	Min	Max	Min	Max	Min	Max
Viscosity: 140°F, poises (60°C, pascals)	T202	800 (80)	1200 (120)	1600 (160)	2400 (240)	2400 (240)	3600 (360)
Viscosity: 275°F, stokes (135°C, pascals)	T202	1.9 (.19)	-	2.5 (.25)	-	3.0 (.30)	-
Penetration: 77°F (25°C), 100g, 5s	T49	85	-	55	-	45	-
Flash Point, C.O.C. °F (°C)	T48	450 (232)	-	450 (232)	-	450 (232)	-
% Solubility trichloroethylene	T44	99.0	-	99.0	-	99.0	-
Spot test	Tex 509-C						
Viscosity: 140°F stokes (60°C pascals)	T202	-	3000 (300)	-	6000 (600)	-	9000 (900)
Ductility 77°F (25°C), 5 cm/min, cm	T202	100	-	70	-	50	-

C. Polymer Modified Asphalt Cement.

Polymer modified asphalt cement must be smooth, homogeneous, and shall comply with the requirements listed in Table 3.

Table 3: Polymer Modified Asphalt Cement Requirements

Polymer Modified Viscosity Grade		AC-5		AC-10		AC-15P		AC-45P*	
Polymer Type		SBR		SBR		SBS		SBS	
Property	Test Method	Min	Max	Min	Max	Min	Max	Min	Max
Polymer in % (solids basis)	Tex-533-C	2.0	-	2.0	-	3.0	-	3.0	-
Viscosity									
140ºF, poise (60°C, pascals)	T 202	700 (70)	- -	1300 (130)	- -	1500 (150)	- -	4500 (450)	- -
275ºF, poise (135°C, pascals)	T 202	- -	7.0 (0.7)	- -	8.0 (0.8)	- -	8.0 (0.8)	14.0 (1.4)	
Penetration, 77ºF (25°C), 100 g, 5 s.	T 49	120	-	80	-	100	150	50	74
Ductility, 5cm/min., 39.2ºF, cm	T 51	70	-	60	-	-	-	15	-
Elastic Recovery, 50ºF (10°C), %	Tex-539-C	-	-	-	-	55	-		-
Polymer Separation, 48 hrs**.	Tex-540-C	None		None		None		None	
Flash Point, C.O.C., ºF (°C),	T 48	425 (218)	- -	425 (218)	- -	425 (218)	- -	425 (218)	- -
Tests on Residue from Thin Film Oven Test: (T179)									
Retained Penetration Ratio, 77ºF (25°C), % original	T 49	-	-	-	-	0.60	1.00	0.60	0.90

* The SBS block copolymer may be pre-blended with a polymer processing oil (up to a 1:1 ratio of polymer to oil) to aid the solution of the polymer in the asphalt.

** A 350-gram (0.77 pound) sample of the asphalt-SBS blend is stored for 48 hours at 325°F (163°C). Upon completion of the storage time, the sample is visually examined for separation of the SBS from the asphalt (smoothness and homogeneity). If a question still exists about the separation of the SBS, samples shall be taken from the top and bottom of the sample for Infrared Spectroscopy analysis. A difference of 0.4% or more in the concentration of the SBS between the top and bottom samples shall constitute separation.

D. Cutback Asphalt

Cutback Asphalt shall meet the requirements presented in tables 4, and 5 for the specified type and grade.

Table 4: RAPID CURING TYPE CUTBACK ASPHALT Requirements

Type-Grade		RC-250		RC-800		RC-3000	
Properties	Test Method	Min	Max	Min	Max	Min	Max
Water, percent	T55	-	0.2	-	0.2	-	0.2
Flash Point, T.O.C.,°F [°C]	T79	80 (27)	-	80 (27)	-	80 (27)	-
Kinematic viscosity @ 140°F, cst [60°C, mm²/s]	T201	250	400	800	1600	3000	6000
Distillation Test:	T78						
Distillate, % by volume of total distillate to 680°F [360°C]:							
to 437°F [225°C]:		40	75	35	70	20	55
to 500°F [260°C]:		65	90	55	85	45	75
to 600°F [316°C]:		85	-	80	-	70	-
Residue from Distillation, Volume %		70	-	75	-	82	-
Tests of Distillation Residue:							
Penetration, 100g, 5 sec., 77°F [25°C], cm	T49	80	120	80	120	80	120
Ductility, 5 cm/min., 77°F, 5 cm/min., cm	T51	100	-	100	-	100	-
[25°C, 50 mm/min., mm]		1000	-	1000	-	1000	-
Solubility in trichloroethylene, %	T44	99.0	-	99.0	-	99.0	-
Spot Test	Tex 509-C	ALL NEGATIVE					

Table 5: MEDIUM CURING TYPE CUTBACK ASPHALT Requirements

Type		MC-30		MC-70		MC-250		MC-800		MC-3000	
Properties	Test Method	Min	Max	Min	Max	Min	Max	Min	Max	Min	Max
Water, %	T55	-	0.2	-	0.2	-	0.2	-	0.2	-	0.2
Flash Point, T.O.C.,°F [°C]	T79	100 [38]	-	100 [38]	-	150 [65]	-	150 [65]	-	150 [65]	-
Kinematic viscosity. @ 140°F. cst [60°C, mm²/s]	T201	30	60	70	140	250	500	800	1600	3000	6000
Distillation Test:	T78										
Distillate, as % by volume to total distillate to 680°F[360°C]:, shall be as follows:											
to 437°F [225°C]:		-	25	-	20	-	10	-	-	-	-
to 500°F [260°C]:		40	70	20	60	15	55	-	35	-	15
to 600°F [316°C]:		75	93	65	90	60	87	45	80	15	75
Residue from 80°F [225°C] distillation											
Volume Percent		50	-	55	-	67	-	75	-	80	-
Tests on Distillation Residue:											
Penetration @ 77°F [25°C], 100g, s, 01mm:	T49	120	250	120	250	120	250	120	250	120	250
Ductility @ 77°F, 5 cm/min, cms	T51	100*	-	100*	-	100*	-	100*	-	100*	-
[25°C, 50 mm/min., mm]		1000*	-	1000*	-	1000*	-	1000*	-	1000*	-
% Solubility in trichloroethylene	T44	99.0	-	99.0	-	99.0	-	99.0	-	99.0	-
Spot Test	Tex 509-C	ALL NEGATIVE									

* If penetration of residue is more than 200 and the ductility at 77°F [25°C] is less than 100 cm [1000 mm], the material will be acceptable if its ductility at 60°F [16°C] is more than 100cm [1000 mm].

E. Emulsified Asphalt

The material shall be homogenous. It shall show no separation of asphalt after thorough mixing and shall meet the requirements for the specified type and grade presented in Tables 6, 7 and 8.

Table 6: ANIONIC EMULSION Requirements

	Type	Medium Setting		Slow Setting			
	Grade	MS-2		SS-1		SS-1h	
Property	Test Method	Min	Max	Min	Max	Min	Max
Furol Viscosity @ 77°F [25°C], sec.	T72	-	-	20	100	30	100
@ 122°F[50°C], sec		100	300	-	-	-	-
Sieve Test, %.	T59	-	0.1	-	0.1	-	0.1
Miscibility (Standard Test)	T59	-	-	Passing		Passing	
Cement Mixing, %	T59	-	-	-	2.0	-	2.0
% Demulsibility: 35 cc 0.02N $CaCl_2$	T59	-	30	-	-	-	-
Storage Stability 1 day, %	T59	-	1	-	1	-	1
Freezing Test, 3 Cycles*	T59	Passing		Passing		Passing	
Distillation Test	T59						
Distillation Residue, %		65	-	60	-	60	-
Distillate Oil Portion, %		-	½	-	½	-	½
Tests of Residue from Distillation:							
Penetration @ 77°F [25°C], 100g, 5s	T49	120	160	120	160	70	100
Solubility in Trichloroethylene, %	T44	97.5	-	97.5	-	97.5	-
Ductility @ 77F, 5 cm/min., cm	T51	100	-	100	-	80	-
[@ 25°C, 50 mm/min., mm]		1000	-	1000	-	800	-

* Applies only when Engineer or designated representative specifies the material for winter use.

Table 7: HIGH FLOAT ANIONIC EMULSION Requirements

	Type	Rapid Setting		Medium Setting	
	Grade	HFRS-2		AES-300	
Property	Test Method	Min	Max	Min	Max
Viscosity, Saybolt Furol	T72				
@ 77°F [25°C], sec.		-	-	75	400
@ 122°F [50°C], sec.		150	400	-	-
Oil Portion of Distillate, %	T59	-	2	-	7
Sieve Test, %	T59	-	0.1	-	0.1
Particle Charge	T59	positive		positive	
Coating Ability and Water Resistance:	T59				
Coating, dry aggregate		-	-	good	
Coating, after spraying		-	-	fair	
Coating, wet aggregate				fair	
Coating, after spraying				fair	
% Demulsibility: 35 ml 0.02 N $CaCl_2$	T59	50	-	-	-
Storage Stability Test, 1 day, %	T59	-	1	-	1
Distillation Test	T59				
Residue by Distillation, % by weight		65	-	65	-
Oil Distillate, by volume of emulsion, %		-	1/2	-	5
Tests on Residue from Distillation:					
Penetration at 77°F [25°C], 100 g, 5s	T49	100	140	300	-
Solubility in Trichloroethylene, %	T44	97.5	-	97.5	-

Ductility @ 77°F., 5 cm/min, cms [25°C., 50 mm/min, mm]	T51	100 [1000}	-	-	-
Float Test at 140°F [60°C], sec.	Tex 509-C	1200	-	1200	-

Table 8: CATIONIC EMULSION Requirements

Type		Rapid Setting				Medium Setting				Slow Setting			
Grade		CRS-2		CRS-2h		CMS-2		CMS-2s		CSS-1		CSS-1h	
Property	Test Method	Min	Max	Min	Max	Min.	Max	Min	Max	Min	Max	Min	Max
Viscosity, Saybolt Furol	T72												
@ 77°F [25°C], sec.		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	20	100	20	100
@ 122°F [50°C],sec.		150	400	150	400	100	300	100	300	-	-	-	-
Storage stability test, 1 day %	T59	-	1	-	1	-	1	-	1	-	1	-	1
% Demulsibility: *,**	T59	40	-	40	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Coating, ability & water resistance	T59												
Coating, dry aggregate		-	-	-	-	good		good		-	-	-	-
Coating, after spraying		-	-	-	-	fair		fair		-	-	-	-
Coating, wet aggregate		-	-	-	-	fair		fair		-	-	-	-
Coating, after spraying		-	-	-	-	fair		fair		-	-	-	-
Particle charge test	T59	Positive		Positive		Positive		Positive		Positive		Positive	
Sieve test, %	T59	-	0.10	-	0.10	-	0.10	-	0.10	-	0.10	-	0.10
Cement Mixing test, %	T59	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	2.0	-	2.0
Distillation Test:	T59												
% Oil distillate, vol. of emulsion		-	1/2	-	1/2	-	7	-	5	-	1/2	-	1/2
Residue by Distillation,% by wgt		65	-	65	-	65	-	65	-	60	-	60	-
Tests on Residue from Distillation:													
Penetration,77°F [25°C], 100g, 5s.	T49	120	160	80	110	120	200	300	-	120	160	80	110
Ductility,	T51												
77°F, 5 cm/min, cm		100	-	80	-	100	-	-	-	100	-	80	-
[25°C, 50 mm/min, mm]		1000	-	800	-	1000	-	-	-	1000	-	800	-
% Solubility in trichloroethylene	T44	97.5	-	97.5	-	97.5	-	97.5	-	97.5	-	97.5	-

* At a level of 35 ml 0.8% sodium dioctyl sulfosuccinate.

** The demulsibility test shall be made within 30 days from date of shipment.

F. Polymer Modified Emulsions

The material shall be homogenous. It shall show no separation of asphalt after thorough mixing and shall meet the requirements for the specified type and grade presented in Tables 9 and 10.

G. Specialty Emulsions.

Specialty emulsions may be either asphaltic-based or resin-based and must meet the requirements included in Table 11.

H. Recycling Agent.

Recycling agent and emulsified recycling agent must meet the requirements of table 12. Additionally, recycling agent and residue from emulsified recycling agent, when added in

the specified proportions to the recycled asphalt, must meet the properties specified on the drawings.

Table 9: Polymer Modified Emulsified Asphalt Requirements

Type-Grade		Rapid Setting				Medium Setting						Slow Setting	
		RS-1P		HFRS-2P		AES-150P		AES-300P		AES-300S		SS-1P	
Property	Test Method	Min	Max	Min	Max	Min	Max	Min	Max	Min	Max	Min	Max
Viscosity, Saybolt Furol	T 72												
77ºF, sec.		-	-	-	-	75	400	75	400	75	400	30	100
122ºF, sec.		50	200	150	400	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Sieve Test, %	T 59	-	0.1	-	0.1	-	0.1	-	0.1	-	0.1	-	0.1
Miscibility	T 59	-		-		-		-		-		pass	
Coating Ability and Water Resistance:	T59												
dry aggregate/after spray		-		-		good/fair		good/fair		good/fair		-	
wet aggregate/after spray		-		-		fair/fair		fair/fair		fair/fair		-	
Demulsibility, 35 ml of 0.02 N $CaCl_2$, %	T 59	60	-	50	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Storage Stability, 1 day, %	T 59	-	1	-	1	-	1	-	1	-	1	-	1
Breaking Index, g	Tex-542-C	-	80	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Distillation Test:[1]	T 59												
Residue by Distillation, % by wt.		65	-	65	-	65	-	65	-	65	-	60	-
Oil Distillate, % by vol of emulsion		-	3	-	0.5	-	3	-	5	-	7	-	0.5
Tests: Residue from Distillation:													
Polymer Content, wt. % (solids basis)	Tex-533-C	-	-	3.0	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	3.0	-
Penetration, 77ºF, (25ºC) 100 g, 5 sec.	T 49	225	300	90	140	150	300	300	-	300	-	100	140
Solubility in Trichloroethylene, %	T 44	97.0	-	97.0	-	97.0	-	97.0	-	97.0	-	97.0	-
Viscosity, 140ºF, poise 60ºC, Pa-s	T 202	-	-	1500	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	1300	-
Float Test, 140ºF, sec.	T 50	-	-	1200	-	1200	-	1200	-	1200	-	-	-
Ductility[2], 39.2ºF, 5 cm/min., cm (4ºC, 5 cm/min., mm)	T 51	-	-	50 500	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	50 500	-
Elastic Recovery[2], 50ºF,(10ºC), %	Tex-539-C	55	-	55	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Tests on RTFO Curing of Distillation Residue:	Tex-541-C												
Elastic Recovery, 50ºF,(10ºF) %	Tex-539-C	-	-	-	-	50	-	50	-	30	-	-	-

[1] Exception to AASHTO T 59: Bring the temperature on the lower thermometer slowly to 350ºF +/- 10ºF. Maintain at this temperature for 20 min. Complete total distillation in 60 +/- 5 min. from the first application of heat.

[2] HFRS-2P must meet one of either the Ductility or Elastic Recovery.

Table 10: Polymer Modified Cationic Emulsified Asphalt Requirements

Type-Grade		Rapid Setting				Slow Setting	
		CRS-1P		CRS-2P		CSS-1P	
Property	Test Method	Min	Max	Min	Max	Min	Max
Viscosity, Saybolt Furol	T 72						
77ºF (25ºC), sec.		-	-	-	-	20	100
122ºF (50ºC), sec.		50	150	150	400	-	-
Sieve Test, %	T 59	-	0.1	-	0.1	-	0.1
Demulsibility, 35 ml of 0.8% sodium dioctyl sulfosuccinate, %	T 59	60	-	70	-	-	-
Storage Stability, 1 day, %	T 59	-	1	-	1	-	1
Breaking Index, g	Tex-542-C	-	80	-	-	-	-
Particle Charge	T 59	positive		positive		positive	
Distillation Test:[1]	T 59						
Residue by Distillation, % by wt.		65	-	65	-	62	-
Oil Distillate, % by volume of emulsion		-	3	-	0.5	-	0.5
Tests on Residue from Distillation:							
Polymer Content, wt. % (solids basis)	Tex-533-C	-	-	3.0	-	3.0	-
Penetration, 77ºF (25ºC), 100 g, 5 sec.	T 49	225	300	90	150	55	90
Viscosity, 140ºF, poise (60ºC, Pa-s)	T 202	-	-	1300	-	-	-
Solubility in Trichloroethylene, %	T 44	97.0	-	97.0	-	97.0	-
Softening Point, ºF	T 53	-	-	-	-	135	-
Ductility, 77ºF, 5 cm/min., cm (25ºC, 5 cm/min., mm)	T 51	-	-	-	-	70 700	-
Ductility[2], 39.2ºF, 5 cm/min., cm (4ºC, 5 cm/min., mm)	T 51	-	-	50	-	-	-
Elastic Recovery[2], 50ºF (10ºC), %	Tex-539-C	45	-	55	-	-	-

[1] Exception to AASHTO T 59: Bring the temperature on the lower thermometer slowly to 350ºF +/- 10ºF. Maintain at this temperature for 20 min. Complete total distillation in 60 +/- 5 min. from the first application of heat.

[2] CRS-2P must meet one of either the Ductility or Elastic Recovery.

Table 11: Specialty Emulsion Requirements

Type-Grade		Medium Setting				Slow Setting	
		AE-P		EAP&T		PCE[1]	
Property	Test Method	Min	Max	Min	Max	Min	Max
Viscosity, Saybolt Furol	T 72						
77ºF (25ºC), sec.		-	-	-	-	10	100
122ºF (50ºC), sec.		15	150	-	-	-	-
Sieve Test, %	T 59	-	0.1	-	0.1	-	0.1
Miscibility[2]	T 59	-		pass		pass	
Demulsibility, 35 ml of 0.10 N $CaCl_2$, %	T 59	-	70	-	-	-	-
Storage Stability, 1 day, %	T 59	-	1	-	1	-	-
Particle Size[3], % by volume < 2.5 □m	Tex-238-F	-	-	90	-	-	-
Asphalt Emulsion Distillation to 500ºF (260ºC) followed by Cutback Asphalt Distillation of Residue to 680ºF (360ºC):	T 59 & T 78						
Residue after both Distillations, % by wt.		40	-	-	-	-	-
Total Oil Distillate from both distillations, % by volume of emulsion		25	40	-	-	-	-
Distillation:	T 59						
Residue by Distillation, % by wt.		-	-	60	-	-	-
Evaporation:[4]	T 59						
Residue by Evaporation, % by wt.		-	-	-	-	60	-
Tests on Residue after all Distillation(s):							
Viscosity, 140ºF, poise (60ºC, Pa-s)	T 202	-	-	800	-	-	-
Kinematic Viscosity, 140ºF, cSt [60°C, mm^2/s]	T 201	-	-	-	-	100	350
Flash Point, C.O.C., ºF [°C]	T 48	-	-	-	-	400 204	-
Solubility in Trichloroethylene, %	T 44	97.5	-	-	-	-	-
Float Test, 122ºF (50ºC), sec.	T 50	50	200	-	-	-	-

[1] Supply with each shipment of PCE:

a) a copy of a lab report from an approved analytical lab, signed by a lab official, indicating the PCE formulation does not meet any characteristics of a Resource Conservation Recovery Act (RCRA) hazardous waste;

b) a certification from the producer that the formulation supplied does not differ from the one tested and that no listed RCRA hazardous wastes or PCB's have been mixed with the product; and

c) a Materials Safety Data Sheet.

[2] Exception to AASHTO T 59: In dilution, use 350 ml of distilled or deionized water and a 1000-ml beaker.

[3] Tex-238-F, beginning at "Particle Size Analysis by Laser Diffraction," "Procedure" (using - medium: distilled or deionized water and dispersant: none), or other approved method.

[4] Exception to AASHTO T 59: Leave sample in the oven until foaming ceases, then cool and weigh.

Table 12: Recycling Agent and Emulsified Recycling Agent Requirements

Property	Test Method	Recycling Agent		Emulsified Recycling Agent	
		Min	Max	Min	Max
Viscosity, Saybolt Furol, 77ºF, sec.	T 72	-	-	15	100
Sieve Test, %	T 59	-	-	-	0.1
Miscibility[1]	T 59	-		No Coagulation	
Evaporation Test:[2]	T 59				
Residue by Evaporation, % by wt.		-	-	60	-
Tests on Recycling Agent or Residue from Evaporation:					
Flash Point, C.O.C., ºF	T 48	400	-	400	-
Kinematic Viscosity,	T 201				
140ºF, cSt		75	200	75	200
275ºF, cSt		-	10.0	-	10.0

[1]Exception to AASHTO T 59: Use 0.02 N $CaCl_2$ solution in place of water.

[2]Exception to AASHTO T 59: Maintain sample at 300ºF until foaming ceases, then cool and weigh.

I. Crack Sealer

This section sets forth the requirements for a polymer modified emulsion suitable for sealing fine cracks, and a rubber asphalt compound suitable for sealing cracks of 1/8 inch [3 mm] or greater width.

1. Polymer Modified Asphalt Emulsion Crack Sealer

For cracks on the order of 1/8 inch [3 mm] width, HFRS-2P polymer modified emulsion as described in the table included in Section F, Polymer Modified Emulsions of this item may be used. Requirements for the polymer modified emulsion and rubber-asphalt crack-sealing compound are presented in Table 13.

Table 13: Polymer Modified Asphalt Emulsion Crack Sealer Requirements

Property	Test Methods	Min	Max
Rotational Viscosity, 77ºF, cP	ASTM D 2196, Method A	10,000	25,000
Sieve Test, %	T 59	-	0.1
Storage Stability, 1 day, %	T 59	-	1
Evaporation	Tex-543-C		
Residue by Evaporation, % by wt.		65	-
Tests on Residue from Evaporation:			
Penetration, 77ºF, 100 g, 5 sec.	T 49	35	75
Softening Point, ºF	T 53	140	-
Ductility, 39.2ºF, 5 cm/min., cm	T 51	100	-

2. Rubber-Asphalt Crack Sealing Compound

This specification item may be a proprietary product. The compound shall be capable of being melted and applied at a temperature of 400°F [200°C] or less by a suitable oil jacketed kettle equipped with a pressure pump, a hose and a nozzle. It shall contain no water or highly-volatile matter. It shall not be tracked by vehicular traffic once it cools to road pavement temperature.

The rubber-asphalt crack sealing compound shall meet requirements in Table 14.

Table 14: Rubber-Asphalt Crack Sealer Requirements

Property	Test Methods	Class A		Class B	
		Min	Max	Min	Max
CRM Content, Grade A or B, % by wt.	Tex-544-C	22	26	-	-
CRM Content, Grade B, % by wt.	Tex-544-C	-	-	13	17
Virgin Rubber Content[1], % by wt.		-	-	2	-
Flash Point[2], COC, ºF	T 48	400	-	400	-
Penetration[3], 77ºF, 150g, 5 sec.	T 49	30	50	30	50
Penetration[3], 32ºF, 200g, 60 sec.	T 49	12	-	12	-
Softening Point, ºF	T 53	-	-	170	-
Bond[4], 3 cycles, 20ºF	Tex-525-C	-		Pass	

1 Provide certification that the min. % virgin-rubber was added.

2 Before passing the test flame over the cup, agitate the sealing compound with a 3/8 to 1/2 in. (9.5 to 12.7 mm) wide, square-end metal spatula in a manner so as to bring the material on the bottom of the cup to the surface, i.e., turn the material over. Start at one side of the thermometer, move around to the other, and then return to the starting point using 8 to 10 rapid circular strokes. Accomplish agitation in 3 to 4 sec. Pass the test flame over the cup immediately after stirring is completed.

3 Exception to AASHTO T 49: Substitute the cone specified in ASTM D 217 for the penetration needle.

4 No crack in the crack sealing materials or break in the bond between the sealer and the mortar blocks over 1/4 in. deep for any specimen after completion of the test.

a. Properties of Rubber Used in Sealer. The rubber shall be one of the following types;

1) Type I - Ground tire rubber.

2) Type II - A mixture of ground tire rubber and high natural reclaimed scrap rubber. The natural rubber content, determined by ASTM D 297, shall be a minimum of 25 percent.

b. Ground Rubber. The ground rubber shall comply with the following gradation requirements when tested by TxDoT Test Method Tex-200-F, Part I.

Table 15: Ground Rubber Gradation Requirements

Sieve Size		Percent Retained	
U.S.	SI	Type I	Type II
No. 8	2.36 mm	0	-
No. 10	2.00 mm	0-5	0
No. 30	600µm	90-100	50-70
No. 50	300µm	95-100	70-95
No. 100	150µm	-	95-100

The ground rubber shall be free from fabric, wire, cord or other contaminating materials.

c. Packaging. The rubber-asphalt crack sealing compound shall be packaged in boxes, which contain two (2) 30-35 pound [14-16 kilogram] blocks that are individually packaged in a liner made of polyethylene, or other packaging approved by the Engineer or designated representative.

J. Performance Graded Binders.

Performance graded binders must be smooth, homogeneous, show no separation when tested in accordance with Test Method Tex-540-C, and must meet the requirements in the following table.

Separation testing is not required if:

- a modifier is introduced separately at the mix plant either by injection in the asphalt line or mixer, or
- the binder is blended on site in continuously agitated tanks, or
- binder acceptance is based on field samples taken from an in-line sampling port at the hot mix plant after the addition of modifiers.

Table 16 Performance Graded Binder Requirements

Performance Grade	PG 58			PG 64				PG 70				PG 76				PG 82		
	-22	-28	-34	-16	-22	-28	-34	-16	-22	-28	-34	-16	-22	-28	-34	-16	-22	-28
Average 7-day Max Pavement Design Temperature, ºC[1]	58			64				70				76				82		
Min Pavement Design Temperature, ºC[1]	>-22	>-28	>-34	>-16	>-22	>-28	>-34	>-16	>-22	>-28	>-34	>-16	>-22	>-28	>-34	>-16	>-22	>-28
ORIGINAL BINDER																		
Flash Point, AASHTO T 48: Min,	230ºC																	
Viscosity, AASHTO TP 48:[2, 3] Max, 3.0 Pas, Test Temperature,	135ºC																	
Dynamic Shear, AASHTO TP 5:[4] G*/sin (δ), Min, 1.00 kPa Test Temperature @ 10 rad/sec.,	58ºC			64ºC				70ºC				76ºC				82ºC		
Elastic Recovery, ASTM D 6084, 50ºF, % Min	-	-	30	-	-	30	50	-	30	50	60	30	50	60	70	50	60	70
ROLLING THIN FILM OVEN (Tex-541-C)																		
Mass Loss, Max, %	1.0																	
Dynamic Shear, AASHTO TP 5: G*/sin (δ), Min, 2.20 kPa Test Temperature @10 red/sec.,	58ºC			64ºC				70ºC				76ºC				82ºC		
PRESSURE AGING VESSEL (PAV) RESIDUE (AASHTO PP 1)																		
PAV Aging Temperature	100ºC																	
Dynamic Shear, AASHTO TP 5: G*/sin (δ), Max, 5000 kPa Test Temperature10 rad/sec., ºC	25	22	19	28	25	22	19	28	25	22	19	28	25	22	19	28	25	22
Creep Stiffness, AASHTO TP 1:[5, 6] S, Max, 300 mPa, M - value, Min, 0.300 Test Temperature @ 60 sec., ºC	-12	-18	-24	-6	-12	-18	-24	-6	-12	-18	-24	-6	-12	-18	-24	-6	-12	-18

Direct Tension, AASHTO TP 3:[6] Failure Strain, Min, 1.0% Test Temperature @1.0 mm/min., ºC	-12	-18	-24	-6	-12	-18	-24	-6	-12	-18	-24	-6	-12	-18	-24	-6	-12	-18

[1] Pavement temperatures are estimated from air temperatures using an algorithm contained in the PGEXCEL3.xls software program, may be provided by the Department or by following the procedures as outlined in AASHTO MP 2 and PP 28.

[2] This requirement may be waived at the Department's discretion if the supplier warrants that the asphalt binder can be adequately pumped, mixed and compacted at temperatures that meet all applicable safety, environmental, and constructability requirements. At test temperatures where the binder is a Newtonian fluid, any suitable standard means of viscosity measurement may be used, including capillary (AASTHO T 201 or T 202) or rotational viscometry (AASHTO TP 48).

[3] Viscosity at 135ºC is an indicator of mixing and compaction temperatures that can be expected in the lab and field. High values may indicate high mixing and compaction temperatures. Additionally, significant variation can occur from batch to batch. Contractors should be aware that variation could significantly impact their mixing and compaction operations. Contractors are therefore responsible for addressing any constructability issues that may arise.

[4] For quality control of unmodified asphalt binder production, measurement of the viscosity of the original asphalt binder may be substituted for dynamic shear measurements of G*/sin (□) at test temperatures where the asphalt is a Newtonian fluid. Any suitable standard means of viscosity measurement may be used, including capillary (AASHTO T 201 or T 202) or rotational viscometry (AASHTO TP 48).

[5] Silicone beam molds, as described in AASHTO TP 1-93, are acceptable for use.

[6] If creep stiffness is below 300 mPa, direct tension test is not required. If creep stiffness is between 300 and 600 mPa, the direct tension failure strain requirement can be used instead of the creep stiffness requirement. The m-value requirement must be satisfied in both cases.

301S.4 Equipment.

All equipment necessary to transport, store, sample, heat, apply, and incorporate asphalts, oils, and emulsions shall be provided.

301S.5 Construction

Typical materials used for specific applications are identified in table 17. These are typical uses only and circumstances may require use of other material.

Table 17: Typical Material Use

Material Application	Typically Used Materials
Hot-Mixed, Hot-Laid Asphalt Mixtures	PG Binders, Modified PG Binders
Surface Treatment	AC-5, AC-10, AC-5 w/2% SBR, AC-10 w/2% SBR, AC-15P, AC-15-5TR, HFRS-2, MS-2, CRS-2, CRS-2H, HFRS-2P, CRS-2P,
Surface Treatment (Cool Weather)	RS-1P, CRS-1P, RC-250, RC-800, RC-3000, MC-250, MC-800, MC-3000, MC-2400L
Precoating	AC-5, AC-10, PG 64-22, SS-1, SS-1H, CSS-1, CSS-1H
Tack Coat	RC-250, SS-1, SS-1H, CSS-1, CSS-1H, EAP&T
Fog Seal	SS-1, SS-1H, CSS-1, CSS-1H
Hot-Mixed, Cold-Laid Asphalt Mixtures	AC-0.6, AC-1.5, AC-3, AES-300, AES-300P, CMS-2, CMS-2S
Patching Mix	MC-800, SCM I, SCM II, AES-300S
Recycling	AC-3, AES-150P, AES-300P, Recycling Agent, Emulsified Recycling Agent
Crack Sealing	SS-1P, Polymer Mod AE Crack Sealant, Rubber Asphalt Crack Sealers (Class A, Class B)
Prime	MC-30, AE-P, EAP&T, PCE
Curing Membrane	SS-1, SS-1H, CSS-1, CSS-1H, PCE
Erosion Control	SS-1, SS-1H, CSS-1, CSS-1H, PCE

301S.6 Storage, Heating and Application Temperatures

Asphaltic materials should be applied at the temperature, which provides proper and uniform distribution. Within practical limits higher temperatures than necessary to produce the desired results shall be avoided. Satisfactory application usually should be obtained within the recommended ranges shown below.

No material shall be heated above the following maximum temperatures:

Table:18 Recommended Temperature Ranges

	Recommended Range; °F [°C]		Maximum Temperature; °F [°C] for	
Type-Grade	Application/Mixing		Allowable Application	Storage
AC-5, 10,20,30	275-350	[135-177]	375 [191]	400 [204]
AC-5 or AC-10 + 2% SBR	300-375	[142-191]	390* [199]	375 [191]
AC-10 + 3% SBR, AC-45P	300-350	[142-191]	350 [177]	360 [182]
RC-250	125-180	[52-82]	200 [93]	200 [93]
RC-800	170-230	[77-110]	260 [127]	260 [127]
RC-3000	215-275	[102-135]	285 [141]	285 [141]
MC-30, AEP	70-150	[21-66]	175 [79]	175 [79]
MC-70	125-175	[52-79]	200 [93]	200 [93]
MC-250	125-210	[52-99]	240 [116]	240 [116]
MC-800, SCM I, SCM II	175-260	[79-127]	275 [135]	275 [135]
MC-3000 & MC-2400 Latex	225-275	[107-135]	290 [143]	290 [143]
HFRS-2, MS-2, CRS-2, CRS-2H, HFRS-2P, CRS-2P, CMS-2, CMS-2S, AES-300, AES-300S, AES-150P, AES-300P	120 - 160		180	180

SS-1, SS-1h, SS-1P, CSS-1, CSS-1h, PCE, EAP & T, SS-1P, RS-1P, CRS-1P, CSS-1P, recycling agent, emulsified recycling agent, polymer modified AE crack sealant.	50-130 [10-54]	140 [60]	140 [60]
RS-2, RS-2h, MS-2, CRS-2, CRS-2h, CRS-2p, CMS-2, CMS-2S, HFRS-2, HFRS-2p, AES-300	110-160 [43-71]	170 [77]	170 [77]
Special Precoat Material	125-250 [52-121]	275 [135]	275 [135]
PG Binders, Modified PG Binders	275 - 350	350	350
Rubber Asphalt Crack Sealers (Class A, Class B)	350 - 375	400	-
Rubber-Asphalt Crack Sealer	350-375 [177-191]	400 [204]	-

* AC-5 + 2% SBR and AC-10 + 2% SBR, which is designated for surface treatment work, may be heated to a maximum temperature of 390°F [200°C] by the supplier loading through an in-line heater, or with the permission of the Engineer or designated representative, these materials may be heated to maximum of 390°F [200°C] by the Contractor just prior to application. When any of the SBR-modified asphalt cements are used in asphaltic concrete, the storage temperature at the mix plant should not exceed 350°F [177°C].

Attention is called to the fact that asphaltic materials (except emulsions) are very flammable and constitute fire hazards. Proper precautions should be used in all cases, especially with RC cutbacks.

Utmost care shall be taken to prevent open flames from coming in contact with the asphaltic material or the gases of it. The Contractor shall be responsible for any fires or accidents, which may result from heating the asphaltic materials.

301S.7 Measurement and Payment

All asphaltic materials included in this specification will not be paid for directly but shall be included in the unit price bid for the item of construction in which this item is used.

End

Specific CROSS REFERENCE MATERIALS
Specification Item 301S "Asphalts, Oils and Emulsions"

American Association of State Highway and Transportation Officials (AASHTO)

Designation	Description
AASHTO T-44	Solubility Of Bituminous Materials in Organic Solvents
AASHTO T-48	Flash and Fire Points By Cleveland Open Cup
AASHTO T-49	Penetration of Bituminous Materials
AASHTO T-50	Float Test for Bituminous Materials
AASHTO T-51	Ductility of Bituminous Materials
AASHTO T-53	Distillation of Road Tar
AASHTO T-55	Water in Petroleum Products and Bituminous Materials by Distillation
AASHTO T-59	Testing Emulsified Asphalt
AASHTO T-72	Saybolt Viscosity
AASHTO T-78	Distillation of Cut-Back Asphaltic (Bituminous) Products
AASHTO T-79	Flash Point With Tag Open-Cup Apparatus
AASHTO T-201	Kinematic Viscosity of Asphalts
AASHTO T-202	Viscosity of Asphalts by Vacuum Capillary Viscometer
AASHTO TP-1	Creep Stiffness
AASHTO TP-3	Direct Tension
AASHTO TP-5	Dynamic Shear
AASHTO TP-48	Rotational Viscometry

Texas Department of Transportation: Manual of Testing Procedures

Designation	Description
Tex-200-F	Sieve Analysis of Fine and Coarse Aggregates
Tex-238-F	Laser Diffraction Particle Size Distribution Analyzer
Tex-509-C	Spot Test of Asphaltic Materials
Tex-525-C	Tests for Asphalt and Concrete Joint Sealers
Tex-533-C	Determination of Polymer Additive Percentages in Polymer Modified Asphalt Cements
Tex-539-C	
Tex-540-C	
Tex-541-C	
Tex-542-C	
Tex-543-C	
Tex-544-C	

American Society for Testing and Materials (ASTM)

Designation	Description
D 217	Test Methods for Cone Penetration of Lubricating Grease
D 297	Test Methods for Rubber Products-Chemical Analysis
D 2186 Method A	Test Methods for Deposit-Forming Impurities in Steam
D 6084	Test Method for Elastic Recovery of Bituminous Materials by Ductilometer

RELATED CROSS REFERENCE MATERIALS
Specification Item 301S "Asphalts, Oils and Emulsions"

City of Austin Standard Specifications

Designation	Description
Item No. 206S	Asphalt Stabilized Base
Item No. 210S	Flexible Base
Item No. 302S	Aggregates for Surface Treatments
Item No. 306S	Prime Coat
Item No. 307S	Tack Coat
Item No. 310S	Emulsified Asphalt Treatment
Item No. 311S	Emulsified Asphalt Repaving

RELATED CROSS REFERENCE MATERIALS - Continued
Specification Item 301S "Asphalts, Oils and Emulsions"

City of Austin Standard Specifications

Designation	Description
Item No. 312S	Seal Coat
Item No. 313S	Rubber Asphalt Joint and Crack Sealant
Item No. 315S	Milling Asphaltic Concrete Paving
Item No. 320S	Two Course Surface Treatment
Item No. 340S	Hot Mix Asphaltic Concrete Pavement
Item No. 341S	Paving Fabric
Item No. 350S	Heating, Scarifying and Repaving
Item No. 351S	Recycling Agent

City of Austin Standard Details

Designation	Description
1000S-10	Local Street Sections
1000S-11(1)	Residential and Neighborhood collector Street Sections
1000S-11(2)	Industrial and Collector Street Sections
1000S-12(1)	Primary Collector Street Sections
1000S-12(2)	Primary Arterial Street Sections
1000S-13(1)	Minor Arterial Street Sections (4 Lanes)

1000S-13(2)	Minor Arterial Street Sections- (4 Lanes divided)
1000S-14	Major Arterial Street

Texas Department of Transportation: Standard Specifications for Construction And Maintenance of Highways, Streets, and Bridges

Designation	Description
Item 300	Asphalts, Oils and Emulsions
Item 301	Asphalt Antistripping Agents
Item 310	Prime Coat (Cutback Asphaltic Materials)
Item 314	Emulsified Asphalt Treatment
Item 316	Surface Treatments
Item 345	Asphalt Stabilized Base (Plant Mixed)
Item 354	Planing and/or Texturing Pavement
Item 520	Weighing and Measuring Equipment

Texas Department of Transportation: Manual of Testing Procedures

Designation	Description
Tex-126-E	Molding, Testing and Evaluation of Bituminous Black Base Materials
Tex-207-F	Determination of Density of Compacted Bituminous Mixtures
Tex-211-F	Recovery of Asphalt From Bituminous Mixtures By Abson
Tex-215-	Determination of Asphalt Content of Rock Asphalt Process by Hot Solvent Method
Tex-217-F	Determination of Deleterious Material and Decantation Test For Coarse Aggregates
Tex-224-F	Determination of Flakiness
Tex-400-A	Method of Sampling Stone, Gravel, Sand and Mineral Aggregates
Tex-410-A	Abrasion of Coarse Aggregate Using the Los Angeles Machine
Tex-411-A	Soundness of Aggregate by Use of Sodium Sulfate or Magnesium Sulfate
Tex-438-A	Accelerated Polish Test for Aggregate
Tex-460-A	Determination of Crushed Face Particle
Tex-501-C	Test for Water in Petroleum Products and Other Bituminous Materials
Tex-502-C	Test for Penetration of Bituminous Material
Tex-503-C	Test for Ductility of Bituminous Materials
Tex-504-C	Test for Flash and Fire Points of Petroleum Materials by Cleveland Open Cup

RELATED CROSS REFERENCE MATERIALS - Continued
Specification Item 301S "Asphalts, Oils and Emulsions"

Texas Department of Transportation: Manual of Testing Procedures

Designation	Description
Tex-505-C	Test for Softening Point of Bituminous Materials by Ring-and-Ball Method
Tex-506-C	Test for Loss on Heating of Oils and Asphaltic Compounds
Tex-507-C	Proportion of Bitumen Soluble in Trichloroethylene
Tex-510-C	Determining the Effect of Heat and Air on Asphaltic Materials when Exposed in Thin Films
Tex-512-C	Test for Flash Points of Volative Flammable Materials By Tag Open-Cup Apparatus
Tex-513-C	Test for Saybolt Viscosity
Tex-515-C	Distillation of Cut-Back Asphalt Products
Tex-519-C	Float Test for Bituminous Materials
Tex-520-C	Test for Residue of Specified Penetration
Tex-521-C	Testing Emulsified Asphalts
Tex-528-C	Test for Absolute Viscosity of Asphalt Cements
Tex-529-C	Test for Kinematic Viscosity of Asphalts

Item No. 306S
Prime Coat

306S.1 Description

This item shall govern the application of asphaltic material on the completed base course and/or other approved areas in accordance with the Drawings, these specifications or as directed by the Engineer or designated representative.

This specification is applicable for projects or work involving either inch-pound or SI units. Within the text, the inch-pound units are given preference followed by SI units shown within parentheses.

306S.2 Submittals

The submittal requirements of this specification item include:

A. List of recommended materials (i.e. prime material, dispersal agent, etc.).

B. Temperature Viscosity data and proposed temperature of application.

C. Characteristics (i.e. manufacturer, rate of application, speed, etc.) of the proposed pressure distributor including calibration documentation.

D. List of facilities and equipment proposed for temperature measurements.

E. List of facilities and equipment proposed for storage and handling of asphaltic materials.

306S.3 Materials

A. Asphalt Materials

The asphalt material for Prime Coat shall meet the requirements of Cutback Asphalt, MC-30, Emulsion, SS-1, Emulsion CSS-1 or AE-P, Standard Specification Item No. 301S, "Asphalts, Oils and Emulsions".

B. Water

Water shall be furnished by the Contractor and shall be clean and free from industrial wastes and other objectionable matter.

C. Dispersal Agent

Agent shall be added to water and sprayed on surfaces to be primed in accordance with asphalt manufacturer's recommendations.

306S.4 Construction Methods

When, in the opinion of the Engineer or designated representative, the base course or other surface is satisfactory to receive the prime coat, the surface shall be prepared by sweeping or other approved methods as directed by the Engineer or designated representative. The surface shall be lightly sprinkled with water just prior to application of the asphaltic material unless this

requirement is waived by the Engineer or designated representative. The Contractor shall submit a list of prime material(s) recommended for application on the work to the Engineer or designated representative for approval. When emulsions are approved, a dispersal agent shall be added to the water before sprinkling.

The asphaltic material shall be applied on the clean surface by an approved type of self-propelled pressure distributor operated so as to distribute the prime coat at a rate ranging from 0.1 to 0.3 gallons per square yard (0.45 to 1.36 liters per square meter) of surface area. The material shall be evenly and smoothly distributed under pressure sufficient to assure proper distribution. During the application of prime coat, care shall be taken to prevent splattering of adjacent pavement, curb and gutters or structures. The Contractor shall be responsible for cleaning all splattered areas.

Prime Coat may be applied when the temperature of the surface on which the prime coat is to be placed is 60°F (16°C) or above and the air temperature is above 50^{0}F (10^{0}C) and rising; the air temperature being taken in the shade and away from artificial heat. Asphaltic material shall not be placed when general weather conditions, in the opinion of the Engineer or designated representative, are not suitable.

The Contractor shall provide all necessary facilities and equipment for determining the temperature of the asphaltic material in all of the heating equipment and in the distributor, for determining the rate at which it is applied, and for securing uniformity at the junction of two (2) distributor loads.

The distributor shall have been calibrated within three (3) years from the date it is first used on this project. The Engineer or designated representative shall be furnished an accurate and satisfactory record of such calibration. After beginning the work, if the yield on the asphaltic material applied appears in error, the distributor shall be calibrated in a manner satisfactory to the Engineer or designated representative before proceeding with the work.

The Contractor shall be responsible for the maintenance of the surface until the work is accepted by the Engineer or designated representative. No traffic, hauling or placement of any subsequent courses shall be permitted over the freshly applied prime coat for a minimum of 48 hours or until the prime coat is accepted as dry and cured completely by the Engineer or designated representative.

All storage tanks, piping, retorts, booster tanks and distributors used in storing or handling asphaltic material shall be kept clean and in good operating condition at all times and they shall be operated in such a manner that there will be no contamination of the asphaltic material with foreign material. It shall be the responsibility of the Contractor to provide and maintain in good working order a recording thermometer at the storage heating unit at all times.

The Engineer or designated representative will approve the temperature of application based on the temperature-viscosity relationship that will permit application of the asphalt within the limits recommended in Standard Specification Item No. 301S, "Asphalts, Oils and Emulsions". The Contractor

shall apply the asphalt at a temperature within 15^0F (8^0C) of the temperature specified in Standard Specification Item No. 301S, "Asphalt, Oils and Emulsions".

306S.5 Measurement

The prime coat will be included in the unit price bid for Standard Specification Item No. 340, "Hot Mix Asphaltic Concrete Pavement" unless included as a separate pay item in the contract. When included for payment, it shall be measured at point of delivery on the project in gallons (liters: 1 liter equals 0.264 gallons) at the applied temperature. The quantity to be paid for shall be the number of gallons used in the accepted prime coat.

306S.6 Payment

The work performed and materials furnished as prescribed by this item, when included as a contract pay item, will be paid for at the unit bid price per gallon for "Prime Coat". The price shall include full compensation for cleaning the base course or other surface, for furnishing, heating, hauling and distributing the prime coat specified; for all freight involved and for all manipulations, labor, tools, equipment and incidentals necessary to complete the work.

Payment, when included as a contract pay item, will be made under:

Pay Item No. 306S: Prime Coat Per Gallon.

End

SPECIFIC *CROSS REFERENCE MATERIALS*

Specification Item 306S "Prime Coat"

City of Austin Standard Specifications

Designation	**Description**
Item No. 301S	Asphalts, Oils and Emulsions
Item No. 340S	*Hot Mix Asphaltic Concrete Pavement*

RELATED *CROSS REFERENCE MATERIALS*

City of Austin Standard Specifications

Designation	**Description**
Item No. 206S	Asphalt Stabilized Base
Item No. 210S	Flexible Base
Item No. 307S	Tack Coat
Item No. 310S	Emulsified Asphalt Treatment
Item No. 311S	Emulsified Asphalt Repaving
Item No. 320S	Two Course Surface Treatment

City of Austin Standard Details

Designation	Description
1000S-10	Local Street Sections
1000S-11 (1)	Residential and Neighborhood collector Street Sections
1000S-11 (2)	Industrial and Collector Street Sections
1000S-12 (1)	Primary Collector Street Sections
1000S-12 (2)	Primary Arterial Street Sections
1000S-13 (1)	Minor Arterial Street Sections (4 Lanes)
1000S-13 (2)	Minor Arterial Street Sections- (4 Lanes divided)
1000S-14	Major Arterial Street

RELATED *CROSS REFERENCE MATERIALS - Continued*
Specification Item 306S "Prime Coat"

Texas Department of Transportation: Standard Specifications for Construction and Maintenance of Highways, Streets, and Bridges

Designation	Description
Item 300	Asphalts, Oils and Emulsions
Item 301	Asphalt Antistripping Agents
Item 310	Prime Coat (Cutback Asphaltic Materials)
Item 314	Emulsified Asphalt Treatment
Item 345	Asphalt Stabilized Base (Plant Mixed)
Item 520	Weighing and Measuring Equipment

Item No. 307S
Tack Coat

307S.1 Description

This item shall govern the application of asphaltic material on completed base courses, existing pavement, bituminous surface, bridge deck, slab or prepared surface as indicated on the Drawings and as directed by the Engineer or designated representative. The application of asphaltic material on completed base courses shall only be applied after the prime coat has completely cured in accordance with Standard Specification Item No. 306S, "Prime Coat"

This specification is applicable for projects or work involving either inch-pound or SI units. Within the text, the inch-pound units are given preference followed by SI units shown within parentheses.

307S.2 Submittals

The submittal requirements of this specification item include:

A. List of recommended materials (i.e. tack coat material, sand type, etc.).

B. Temperature Viscosity data and proposed temperature of application.

C. Characteristics (i.e. manufacturer, rate of application, speed, etc.) of the proposed pressure distributor including calibration documentation.

D. List of facilities and equipment proposed for temperature measurements.

E. List of facilities and equipment proposed for storage and handling of asphaltic materials.

307S.3 Materials

A. Asphalt Materials

The asphalt material for "Tack Coat" shall meet the requirements for Cutback Asphalt or Emulsified Asphalt, Standard Specification Item No. 301S, "Asphalts, Oils and Emulsions" as listed below. Cutback asphalt shall be made by combining 50 to 70 percent by volume of the asphaltic material as specified for the type of paving mixture with 30 to 50 percent by volume of gasoline and/or kerosene. The type of material shall be selected from the following table:

Temperature of Surface, ^{0}F (^{0}C)	40 – 70 ^{0}F (5 to 21^{0}C)	Over 70^{0}F (Over 21^{0}C)
	RS-2	SS-1
	RS-2H	
	RC-250	MC-70
	CRS-2	CSS-1
	CRS-2H	CSS-1h

B. Water

Water shall be furnished by the Contractor and shall be clean and free from industrial wastes and other objectionable matter.

C. Sand

Sand may be Grade 1 conforming to Standard Specification Item No. 403S, "Concrete Structures" or washed sand, largely siliceous, with the following gradation:

Sieve Designation US	SI	**Percent Retained by Weight (Mass) Natural Sand**
No. 8	2.36 mm	0
No. 16	1.18 mm	0-40
No. 30	600μm	25-65
No. 50	300μm	65-85
No. 100	150μm	85-98
No. 200	75μm	98-100

There shall not be more than 50 percent of the aggregate retained between any 2 sieves listed above and not more than 25 percent of the aggregate retained between the No. 50 (300 μm) and the No. 100 (150 μm) sieves.

307S.4 Construction Methods

Tack coat shall be applied when the surface on which the tack coat is to be placed is 60° F (16°C) or above and the air temperature is above 50°F (10°C) and rising, where the air temperature is measured in the shade and away from any artificial heat. Asphaltic material shall not be placed when general weather conditions, in the opinion of the Engineer or designated representative, are not suitable.

Before the tack coat is applied, the surface shall be cleaned thoroughly to the satisfaction of the Engineer or designated representative. The asphaltic material shall be applied on the clean surface by an approved type of self-propelled pressure distributor, so operated as to distribute the tack coat at a rate not to exceed 0.10 gallon per square yard (0.45 liters per square meter) of surface, evenly and smoothly with sufficient pressure to provide proper distribution.

In those instances where the pavement mixture will adhere to the surface on which it is to be placed without the use of a tack coat, the tack coat may be eliminated by the Engineer or designated representative. All contact surfaces of curbs and structures and all joints shall be cleaned thoroughly and painted with a thin uniform coat of the asphaltic material used for tack coat. The tack coat shall be rolled with a pneumatic tire roller to distribute the asphaltic material uniformly over the tacked area. During the application of tack coat, care shall be taken to prevent splattering of adjacent pavement, curb and gutters or structures. The Contractor shall clean splattered areas.

The distributor shall have been calibrated within three (3) years from the date it is first used on this project. The Engineer or designated representative shall be

furnished an accurate and satisfactory record of such calibration. After beginning of the work, if the yield on the asphaltic material applied appears in error, the distributor shall be calibrated in a manner satisfactory to the Engineer or designated representative before proceeding with the work.

The Contractor shall provide all necessary facilities and equipment for determining the temperature of the asphaltic material in all of the heating equipment and in the distributor, for determining the rate at which it is applied, and for securing uniformity at the junction of two (2) distributor loads.

The Contractor shall be responsible for the maintenance of the surface until the HMAC is placed over the tack coat or the work is accepted by the Engineer or designated representative. No traffic, hauling or placement of any subsequent courses shall be permitted over the freshly applied tack coat unless it is blotted by the application of sand as directed by the Engineer or designated representative.

All storage tanks, piping, retorts, booster tanks and distributors used in storing or handling asphaltic material shall be kept clean and in good operating condition at all times and they shall be operated in such a manner that there will be no contamination of the asphaltic material with foreign material. It shall be the responsibility of the Contractor to provide and maintain in good working order a recording thermometer at the storage heating unit at all times.

The Contractor shall apply the asphalt at a temperature that will permit application of the asphalt within the limits recommended in Standard Specification Item No 301S, “Asphalts, Oils and Emulsions”. The application temperature shall be within 15^0 F (8^0C) of 160^0 F (71^0C).

307S.5 Measurement

The asphaltic material for "Tack Coat" will be included in the unit price bid for Standard Specification Item 340S, "Hot Mix Asphaltic Concrete Pavement" unless included as a separate pay item in the contract. When included for payment, "Tack Coat" shall be measured at point of delivery on the project in gallons (liters: 1 liter equals 0.264 gallons) at the applied temperature. The quantity to be paid for shall be the number of gallons used.

307S.6 Payment

The work performed and materials furnished as prescribed by this item, when included as a contract pay item, will be paid for at the unit bid price per gallon for "Tack Coat". The price shall include full compensation for cleaning the area to receive the "Tack Coat"; for furnishing, heating, hauling and distributing the tack coat specified; for all freight involved and for all manipulations, labor, tools, equipment and incidentals necessary to complete the work.

Payment, when included as a contract pay item, will be made under:

Pay Item No. 307S:	Tack Per Gallon.	Coat

End

SPECIFIC *CROSS REFERENCE MATERIALS*
Specification Item 307S "Tack Coat"

City of Austin Standard Specifications

Designation	**Description**
Item No. 301S	Asphalts, Oils and Emulsions
Item No. 340S	Hot Mix Asphaltic Concrete Pavement

RELATED *CROSS REFERENCE MATERIALS*

City of Austin Standard Specifications

Designation	**Description**
Item No. 206S	Asphalt Stabilized Base
Item No. 210S	Flexible Base
Item No. 306S	Prime Coat
Item No. 310S	Emulsified Asphalt Treatment
Item No. 311S	Emulsified Asphalt Repaving
Item No. 320S	Two Course Surface Treatment

City of Austin Standard Details

Designation	Description
1000S-10	Local Street Sections
1000S-11(1)	Residential and Neighborhood collector Street Sections
1000S-11(2)	Industrial and Collector Street Sections
1000S-12(1)	Primary Collector Street Sections
1000S-12(2)	Primary Arterial Street Sections
1000S-13(1)	Minor Arterial Street Sections (4 Lanes)
1000S-13(2)	Minor Arterial Street Sections- (4 Lanes divided)
1000S-14	Major Arterial Street

Texas Department of Transportation: Standard Specifications for Construction

And Maintenance of Highways, Streets, and Bridges

Designation	Description
Item 300	Asphalts, Oils and Emulsions
Item 301	Asphalt Antistripping Agents
Item 310	Prime Coat (Cutback Asphaltic Materials)
Item 314	Emulsified Asphalt Treatment
Item 345	Asphalt Stabilized Base (Plant Mixed)
Item 520	Weighting and Measuring Equipment

Current Version: September 26, 2012 Previous Versions: 02/24/10, 02/21/01, 09/29/99 and 4/17/86

Item No. 315S
Milling Asphaltic Concrete Pavement and Non-Portland Cement Concrete Bases

315S.1 Description

This item shall govern for the planing or the planing and texturing of existing asphaltic concrete pavement, asphalt stabilized and other non Portland cement Concrete base to depths indicated at the locations shown on the Drawings or as directed by the Engineer or designated representative. The item shall also include removal, and disposal or salvage/stockpiling the milled materials at the locations designated by the Engineer or designated representative.

When shown on the Drawings, the salvaged asphaltic concrete pavement and/or stabilized base, including any accompanying surface treatment, plant mix seal and micro-surfacing, may be allowed or required for use in other construction items of this project

This specification is applicable for projects or work involving either inch-pound or SI units. Within the text, the inch-pound units are given preference followed by SI units shown within parentheses.

315S.2 Submittals

The submittal requirements of this specification item include:

A. Characteristics (i.e. manufacturer, power, stability, speed, etc.) and capabilities (depth of cut, dust control, etc.) of the proposed milling equipment.

B. Proposed plan for grade reference, control point spacing and support system.

C. Proposed dust control plans including proposed equipment (type street sweeper, loader, water trucks, sprayers, etc.).

315S.3 Equipment

The equipment for removing the pavement surface shall be a power operated planing machine or grinder with a minimum 2 feet (1.8 meter) cutting width. For detail work and cutting widths less than 2 feet (1.8 meter), equipment with less than 2 feet (1.8 meter) cutting width shall be allowed. The equipment shall be self-propelled with sufficient power, traction and stability to maintain accurate depth of cut and slope. The equipment shall be capable of removing in one pass, asphaltic concrete pavement of a thickness of 1 inch and any required thickness less than 1 inch (25 millimeters) in a minimum 3 foot (0.9 meters) width. Machines capable of removing, in one pass, a depth greater than 1 inch (25 millimeters) will be permitted.

The grade reference used by the Contractor may be of any type approved by the Engineer or designated representative. Control points, if required by the Drawings, shall be set at intervals not to exceed 50 feet (15 meters). The Contractor shall set the grade reference from the control points. The grade reference shall have sufficient support so that the maximum deflection shall not exceed two millimeters (1/16 inch) between supports.

The machine shall have a manual system providing for uniformly varying the depth of cut while the machine is in motion, thereby making it possible to cut flush to all inlets, manholes, or other obstructions within the paved area. The speed of the machine shall be variable in order to leave the desired grid pattern as specified in sections 315S.4 and 315S.5.

The machine shall be equipped with an integral loading and reclaiming means to immediately remove material being cut from the surface of the roadway and discharge the cuttings into a truck, all in one operation. The machine shall be equipped with means to control dust created by the cutting action. Adequate backup equipment (mechanical street sweepers, loaders, water truck, sprayers, brooms etc.) and personnel will also be provided to keep flying dust to a minimum and to insure that all cuttings are removed from the street surface daily. Stockpiling of planed material will not be permitted on the project site.

Various machines may be permitted to make trial runs to demonstrate the capabilities of that machine and to determine the acceptability of that machine to the Engineer or designated representative. Any machine that is incapable, in the opinion of the Engineer or designated representative, of meeting these requirements will not be permitted.

315S.4 Construction Methods

A. General.

The pavement surface shall be removed for the length, depth and width and to the typical section shown on the Drawings, and to the lines and grades established by the Engineer or designated representative. The planed surface shall provide a satisfactory riding surface free from gouges, continuous longitudinal grooves, ridges, oil film and other imperfections and shall have a uniform textured appearance.

When an existing asphaltic concrete pavement overlay is to be removed from an underlying Portland cement concrete pavement, all of the asphaltic concrete pavement shall be removed, leaving a uniform surface of Portland cement concrete, unless otherwise directed by the Engineer or designated representative.

B. Surface Milling.

Surface milling shall be taken to a minimum depth of 2 inches (50 mm) or deeper as may be dictated by delamination of asphalt layers during the milling operation,

to a depth of 1 inch (25 millimeters) below the lip gutter transitioning to the existing surface in 3 feet (0.9 meter) or as indicated on the Drawings for resurfacing operations. The pavement surface shall be removed to the appropriate milling depths around all castings within the area to be milled. When milling is used for leveling without the addition of asphalt, the milled surface shall be free of ridges deeper than 3/16 inch (5 millimeters).

Pavement, which is adjacent to steep curbs, inlets, manholes or other obstructions and that is not removed by the planing machine, shall be removed by other methods, acceptable to the Engineer or designated representative.

The pavement and curb surfaces shall be swept with a street sweeper or other sweeping equipment approved by the Engineer or designated representative to remove all debris leaving a clean and presentable condition.

C. Edge Milling.

Edge milling at the gutter lip shall be taken to a minimum depth of 1/4 inch (6 mm) less than the overlay thickness and shall transition to the existing surface in a minimum of 6 feet (1.8 meters).

D. Spot Milling.

Milling for spot repairs shall be completed in successive passes to the depth specified. Ramping for spot repairs shall be minimized. "Transition milling required at the beginning and ending of the overlay shall be taken to a minimum depth of the overlay thickness and transition to the existing surface for the length specified in the plans.

E. Miscellaneous.

Unless otherwise specified, the milling material shall remain the property of the Contractor. Temporary stockpiling shall not be permitted on site. Temporary pavement markings shall conform to Item No. 864S, "Abbreviated Pavement Markings".

315S.5 Surface Texture (Temporary Traffic Only)

In those areas where traffic will temporarily be permitted, the texture produced shall be a grid pattern or any other pattern with discontinuous longitudinal striations that will provide, in the opinion of the Engineer, a satisfactory riding surface.

When the planed pavement will not be overlaid, the minimum texture depth resulting from the number of measurements directed by the Engineer shall not be less than 3/64 inch (1.25 millimeters), unless specified otherwise on the Drawings. When these texture requirements are not met, the Contractor shall cease operations until the Engineer is satisfied that changes in the texturing procedures will produce an acceptable texture.

The Contractor shall take care to prevent damage to armor joints, sealed expansion joints and/or other appurtenances.

The surface of the pavement, after planing, shall have a smooth riding quality and shall be true to the established line, grade and cross section.

315S.6 Measurement

Work prescribed by this item will be measured by the square yard (square meter: 1 square meter equals 1.196 square yards) of surface area for actual quantities based on the neat dimensions indicated for surface and transition milling, spot repairs and edge milling to the specified width. Ramping for spot repairs shall not be measured for payment. Surface milling for spot repairs shall be included in the unit price bid for the spot milling area measured.

Measurement will be made only one time regardless of the number of passes required by the machine to secure the depth desired.

315S.7 Payment

The work performed in accordance with this item and measured as provided under "Measurement", will be paid for at the unit bid price per square yard for "Milling Asphaltic Concrete Paving and Non-Portland Cement Bases". The price shall include full compensation for removal of all materials to the depth shown; minimizing the dust escaping to the atmosphere; loading, hauling, unloading and satisfactorily storing or disposing of the material; and for all labor, tools, equipment, manipulation, temporary pavement markings and incidentals to complete the work, including mobilization of the milling machine.

No payment will be made for work done by any machine on a trial run to demonstrate its ability to meet this specification unless the work performed is acceptable under this specification.

Payment will be made under the following:

Pay Item No. 315S-A:	Surface Milling	Per Square Yard.
Pay Item No. 315S-B:	Profile Milling	Per Square Yard.
Pay Item No. 315S-C:	Transition Milling	Per Square Yard.
Pay Item No. 315S-D:	Edge Milling	Per Square Yard.
Pay Item No. 315S-E:	Spot Milling	Per Square Yard.

End

SPECIFIC **CROSS REFERENCE MATERIALS**
Specification Item 315S "Milling Asphaltic Concrete"

City of Austin Standard Specifications

Designation	Description
Item No. 642S	Silt Fence (SF)
Item No. 864S	Abbreviated Pavement Markings

RELATED CROSS REFERENCE MATERIALS

City of Austin Standard Specifications

Designation	Description
Item No. 206S	Asphalt Stabilized Base
Item No. 210S	Flexible Base
Item No. 301S	Asphalts, Oils and Emulsions
Item No. 306S	Prime Coat
Item No. 307S	Tack Coat
Item No. 310S	Emulsified Asphalt Treatment
Item No. 311S	Emulsified Asphalt Repaving
Item No. 312S	Seal Coat
Item No. 320S	Two Course Surface Treatment
Item No. 340S	Hot Mix Asphaltic Concrete Pavement
Item No. 341S	Paving Fabric
Item No. 350S	Heating, Scarifying and Repaving
Item No. 351S	Recycling Agent

RELATED CROSS REFERENCE MATERIALS (Continued)
Specification Item 315S "Milling Asphaltic Concrete"

City of Austin Standard Details

Designation	Description
1000S-10	Local Street Sections
1000S-11(1)	Residential and Neighborhood collector Street Sections
1000S-11(2)	Industrial and Collector Street Sections
1000S-12(1)	Primary Collector Street Sections
1000S-12(2)	Primary Arterial Street Sections
1000S-13(1)	Minor Arterial Street Sections (4 Lanes)
1000S-13(2)	Minor Arterial Street Sections- (4 Lanes divided)
1000S-14	Major Arterial Street

Texas Department of Transportation: Standard Specifications for Construction And Maintenance of Highways, Streets, and Bridges

Designation	Description
Item 300	Asphalts, Oils and Emulsions
Item 301	Asphalt Antistripping Agents
Item 310	Prime Coat (Cutback Asphaltic Materials)
Item 314	Emulsified Asphalt Treatment
Item 345	Asphalt Stabilized Base (Plant Mixed)
Item 354	Planing and/or Texturing Pavement

Item No. 340S
Hot Mix Asphaltic Concrete Pavement

340S.1 Description

This item shall govern base, level up, and pavement surface courses composed of a compacted mixture of aggregate and asphaltic cement mixed hot in a mixing plant. The hot mix asphaltic (HMA) concrete pavement shall be constructed on a previously completed and approved subgrade, subbase material, base material, concrete slab or existing pavement.

This specification is applicable for projects or work involving either inch-pound or SI units. Within the text and accompanying tables, the inch-pound units are given preference followed by SI units shown within parentheses.

340S.2 Submittals

The submittal requirements of this specification item may include:

A. A mix design submittal including the plant corrected Job Mix Formula (JMF) for the hot mix asphaltic concrete,
B. Certification that the aggregate materials meet appropriate quality requirements.
C. Particle-size gradation and specific gravity tests on all aggregate materials.
D. Certification that the asphalt cement for paving materials meet appropriate quality requirements.

340S.3 Materials

The Contractor shall furnish materials to meet the requirements specified herein and shall be solely responsible for the quality and consistency of the product delivered to the Project.

A. Aggregate: The aggregate shall be composed of coarse aggregate, a fine aggregate and, if required or allowed, mineral filler and reclaimed asphalt pavement (RAP). RAP use will be allowed in all base course mixtures except as specifically excluded herein, in the Contract Documents or on the Drawings, provided no more than 20% RAP is used.

   RAP use will not be permitted in pavement surface courses.

   Aggregates shall meet the quality requirements of Table 1 and other requirements as specified herein. The aggregate contained in RAP will not be required to meet Table 1 requirements unless indicated otherwise on the Drawings.

   1. Coarse Aggregate: Coarse aggregate is defined as that part of the aggregate retained on the No. 10 (2.00 mm) sieve and shall consist of clean, tough, durable fragments of crushed stone or crushed gravel of uniform quality throughout.

      Gravel from each source shall be crushed to the extent that it has a minimum of 85% of the particles retained on the No. 4 (4.75 mm) sieve with two or more mechanically induced crushed faces as determined by TxDOT Test Method TEX-460-A (Part I). The material passing the No. 4 (4.75 mm) sieve and retained on the No. 10 (2.00 mm) sieve must be the produced from crushing aggregate that was originally retained on the No. 4 (4.75 mm) sieve.

   2. Reclaimed Asphalt Pavement (RAP): RAP is defined as a salvaged, milled, pulverized, broken or crushed asphaltic pavement. The RAP to be used in the mix

shall be crushed or broken to the extent that 100 percent will pass the 2-inch (50 mm) sieve.

The RAP shall be stockpiled in such a manner that assures that it will not become contaminated by dirt or other objectionable materials. Unless indicated otherwise on the Drawings, stockpiled, crushed RAP must not exhibit a decantation more than 5 percent or a plasticity index more than 8, when tested in accordance with TxDOT Test Method Tex-406-A, Part I, or Test Method Tex-106-E, respectively.

3. Fine Aggregate: Fine aggregate is defined as that part of the aggregate passing the No. 10 (2.00 mm) sieve and shall be of uniform quality throughout. A maximum of 15 percent of the total aggregate may be field sand or other uncrushed fine aggregate.

   Screenings shall be supplied from sources whose coarse aggregate meets the abrasion and magnesium sulfate soundness loss requirements shown in Table 1.

   a) Unless indicated otherwise on the Drawings, stone screenings, which are the product of a rock crushing operation, are required and shall meet the following gradation requirements when tested in accordance with TxDOT Test Method Tex-200-F, Part I.

Material	Percent by Weight (Mass)
Passing 3/8 inch (9.50 mm) sieve	100
Passing No. 10 (2.00 mm) sieve	70-100
Passing No. 200 (75 µm) sieve	0-15

   b) Crushed gravel screenings may be used with, or in lieu of, stone screenings only when indicated on the Drawings. Crushed gravel screenings must be the product of crushing aggregate that was originally retained on the No. 4 (4.75 mm) sieve and must meet the gradation for stone screenings shown above.

4) Mineral Filler: Mineral filler shall consist of thoroughly dried stone dust, Portland cement, fly ash, lime or other mineral dust approved by the Engineer or designated representative. The mineral filler shall be free from foreign matter.

   Portland cement manufactured in a cement kiln fueled by hazardous waste shall be considered as an approved product if the production facility is authorized to operate under regulation of the Texas Natural Resource Conservation Commission (TNRCC) and the U. S. Environmental Protection Agency (EPA). Supplier shall provide current TNRCC and EPA authorizations to operate the facility.

   Fly ash obtained from a source using a process fueled by hazardous waste shall be considered as an approved product if the production facility is authorized to operate under regulation of the Texas Natural Resource Conservation Commission (TNRCC) and the U. S. Environmental Protection Agency (EPA). Supplier shall provide current TNRCC and EPA authorizations to operate the facility.

   The addition of baghouse fines or other collected fines will be permitted if the mixture quality is not adversely affected in the opinion of the Engineer or designated representative. In no case shall the amount of material passing the No. 200 (75 µm) sieve exceed the tolerances of the job-mix formula or the master gradation limits.

   When tested by TEX-200-F (Part I or Part III, as applicable), the mineral filler shall meet the following gradation requirements. Baghouse fines are not required to meet the gradation requirements.

Material	Percent by Weight (mass)
Passing No. 30 (600 µm) Sieve.....	95 - 100
Passing No. 80 (187.5 µm) Sieve, not less than.....	75
Passing No. 200 (75 µm) Sieve, not less than.....	55

TABLE 1: AGGREGATE QUALITY REQUIREMENTS *

Requirement	Test Method	Amount
COARSE AGGREGATE		
Deleterious Material, percent, maximum	Tex-217-F, I	1.5
Decantation, percent, maximum	Tex-217-F, II	1.5
Los Angeles Abrasion, percent, maximum	Tex-410-A	40
Magnesium Sulfate Soundness Loss 5 cycle, percent, maximum	Tex-410-A	30
FINE AGGREGATE		
Linear Shrinkage, maximum	Tex-107-E, II	3
COMBINED AGGREGATES		
Sand Equivalent Value, minimum	Tex-203-F	45

***** - Aggregates, without added mineral filler or additives, combined as used in the job-mix formula (Plant Corrected).

B. Asphaltic Material

1. Paving Mixture. Asphalt cement for the paving mixture shall conform to the requirements of Standard Specification Item No. 301S, “Asphalts, Oils and Emulsions”, for AC-20 or PG64-22, Styrene (SBS) Modified Asphalt Cement, AC-SBS Blend AC-45P or PG76-22S, unless otherwise indicated in the Project Documents.

2. Tack Coat: Tack Coat shall conform to Standard Specification Item No. 307S, “Tack Coat”.

C. Additives: Additives to facilitate mixing and/or improve the quality of the asphaltic mixture or tack coat may be used with the authorization of the Engineer or designated representative. The Contractor may choose to use either lime or a liquid anti-stripping agent to reduce moisture susceptibility of the aggregate.

340S.4 Paving Mixtures

An asphalt mixture design is developed by a laboratory process, which includes the determination of the quality and quantity of the asphalt cement and the individual aggregates, and the testing of the combined mixture (Laboratory Design). The Laboratory Design is subsequently revised to produce an appropriate job mix formula.

The job mix formula (JMF) lists the quantity of each component to be used in the mix after the laboratory design has been adjusted by running it through a particular plant (i.e. the mix design is Plant Corrected). The JMF will be the standard to which the Acceptance Plan will be applied. The JMF of one drum or batching unit shall not be used for another unit.

The Contractor shall submit to the Engineer on forms provided by the Engineer or designated representative, an asphalt mixture design reviewed, signed and sealed by a Registered Professional Engineer licensed in the State of Texas or certified by a TxDOT Level II Certified Asphalt Technician. An asphalt mixture design shall be submitted for a comprehensive review every two (2) years. Mix designs older than one year will not be accepted without a review of current test data of the proposed materials and current mix design to ensure that the materials meet specification requirements.

The JMF (Plant Corrected) shall be submitted to the Engineer or designated representative on a form provided by the Engineer through the Construction Inspector or Project Manager of the Project for review, for each individual Project, a minimum of three (3) working days before the mixture is to be placed. Under no circumstances will a mixture be placed before its use is reviewed and approved by the Engineer or designated representative.

Performance of the mix design shall remain the responsibility of the Contractor.

A. Mixture Design: The mix shall be designed in accordance with TxDOT Construction Bulletin C-14 and Test Method Tex-204-F to conform with the requirements herein. The master grading limits of the appropriate type and the JMF will be plotted on a graduated chart with sieve sizes raised to the 0.45 power and will be submitted to the Engineer or designated representative with the asphalt mixture design.

   The Bulk Specific Gravity of aggregates in RAP will be determined on extracted aggregates.

B. Types: The blend of coarse aggregate, fine aggregate, and mineral filler, if allowed, that is established by TxDOT Test Method Tex-200-F, Dry Sieve Analysis, shall conform to the master gradation shown in Table 2 for the type of specified mixture. The voids in the mineral aggregate (VMA) will be determined as a mixture design requirement only, in accordance with TxDOT Test Method Tex-207-F, and shall not be less than the value indicated in Table 2.

TABLE 2: Master Grading - Percent Passing by Weight (Mass) or Volume

Sieve Size US (SI)	Type A Coarse Base	Type B Fine Base	Type C Coarse Surface	Type D Fine Surface	Type F Fine Mixture
1-1/2" (37.5 mm)	100				
1-1/4" " (31 mm)	95-100				
1" (25 mm)		100			
7/8" (22 mm)	70-90	95-100	100		
5/8 (15.5 mm)"		75-95	95-100		
1/2" (12.5 mm)	50-70			100	
3/8" (9.5 mm)		60-80	70-85	85-100	100
1/4" (6.25 mm)					95-100
No. 4 (4.75 mm)	30-50	40-60	43-63	50-70	
No. 10 (2.00 mm)	20-34	27-40	30-40	32-42	32-42
No. 40 (425 µm)	5-20	10-25	10-25	11-26	9-24
No. 80 (187.5 µm)	2-12	3-13	3-13	4-14	3-13
No. 200 (75 µm)	1-6*	1-6*	1-6*	1-6*	1-6*
VMA % minimum	11	12	13	14	15

Rec. Min. Lift	3” (75 mm)	2” (50 mm)	1-3/4” (45 mm)	1” (25 mm)	3/4” (20 mm)

C. Tolerances: Fluctuations in the aggregate gradation and asphalt content of the Job Mix Formula (JMF) shall not vary by more than the following criteria but the aggregate gradation shall be limited to the range of the master gradation as established by TEX-210-F.

SIEVES	Percent By Weight (Mass)
2" ” (50 mm) Sieve through No. 10 ” (2.00 mm) Sieve	±5.0
No. 40 (425 µm) through No. 200 (75 µm) Sieve	± 3.0
Asphalt Content	±0.5

D. Stability and Density: The mixture shall be designed at or near optimum density, as indicated on the Drawings, to conform to the following percent of Maximum Theoretical Density as measured by TxDOT Test Method TEX-227-F and Stability conforming to TxDOT Test Method TEX-208-F. The laboratory mixture shall be molded in accordance with TxDOT Test Method TEX-206-F and the Bulk Specific Gravity determined in accordance with TxDOT Test Method TEX-207-F.

	Optimum Laboratory Density (%)	Laboratory Density (%) Min.	Laboratory Density (%) Max.	Stability
Local Streets Surface Courses	96	94.5	97.5	35 Min.
Collectors & Arterials Surface Courses	96	94.5	97.5	40-60
All Base Courses	96	94.5	97.5	35 Min.

E. Job Mix Formula Field Adjustments: The Contractor shall produce a mixture of uniform composition closely conforming to the reviewed JMF, that falls within the limits of the tolerances given above and the Acceptance Plan.

If it is determined by the City of Austin that adjustments to the JMF are necessary to achieve the specified requirements, the Engineer or designated representative may allow adjustments of the JMF within the following limits without a laboratory redesign of the mixture. The adjusted JMF shall not exceed the master grading criteria for the type of mixture specified. The proposed JMF adjustments shall not exceed 5 percent on any one sieve, ½-inch (12.5 mm) size and larger, or 3 percent on the sieve size below the 1/2-inch (12.5 mm) sieve of the JMF (Plant Corrected) reviewed for the Project.

When the proposed adjustments exceed either the 5 or 3 percent limits, and the Engineer or designated representative determines that the impact of these changes may adversely affect pavement performance, a new laboratory mixture design will be required.

The asphalt content may be adjusted with the concurrence of the Engineer or designated representative to maintain desirable laboratory density near the optimum value while achieving other mix requirements. However, increasing the asphalt content of the mixture in order to reduce pavement air voids will not be allowed. Also, if the percent air voids is determined to be less than 4 percent, adjustments shall be made to the plant production by the Contractor, within the tolerances as outlined above, so that an adequate air void level is attained.

340S.5 Equipment

The trucks that deliver the hot mix asphalt concrete material to the project shall be of sufficient number to insure a continuous paving operation. All equipment used for the production, placement and compaction of the mixture shall be maintained in good repair and operating conditions to the satisfaction of the Engineer or designated representative. All equipment shall be made available for inspection. If the Engineer or designated representative expresses concern about the condition of any equipment, it shall not be used until it is repaired to the satisfaction of the Engineer or designated representative.

A. Mixing Plants: Plants may be of the weigh-batch type, the modified weigh-batch type or drum-mix type equipped with suitable material conveyers, power units, mixing equipment, aggregate proportioning devices, dryers, bins, dust collectors and sensing and recording devices as appropriate for the mixing plant type. The mixing plants shall meet the requirements specified in Section 340.4, 'Equipment' of TxDOT Specification Item No. 340, "Hot Mix Asphaltic Concrete Pavement".

B. Spreading and Finishing Paving Machine: The paving machine shall be self-propelled and equipped with a heated compacting screed capable of producing a finish surface meeting the requirements of the street cross-section indicated on the Drawings and all surface criteria. Extensions to the screed shall have the same heating and compacting capabilities as the primary unit, except for use on variable depth tapered areas and/or as approved by the Engineer or designated representative.

   The paving machine shall be equipped with an approved automatic dual longitudinal screed control system and an automatic transverse screed control system. The longitudinal controls shall be capable of operating from any longitudinal grade reference including a string line, ski, mobile string line or matching shoe. Unless indicated otherwise on the Drawings, the Contractor may use any one of these grade references. The selected grade reference equipment shall be maintained in good operating condition by personnel trained in the use of the specific type of equipment.

   The Contractor shall furnish all labor and equipment required for establishing and maintaining appropriate grade reference.

C. Rollers: The Contractor shall select rollers conforming to Item 230S, "Rolling (Flat Wheel)" and Item 232S, "Rolling (Pneumatic Tire)". Rollers that do not conform to these requirements shall be immediately removed from the Project.

D. Motor Grader: A self-propelled power motor grader may only be used, when its use is approved by the Engineer or designated representative. It shall have a blade of not less than 12 feet (3.66 meters) and a wheelbase of not less than 16 feet (4.88 meters). Smaller graders may be used for small irregular areas when approved by the Engineer or designated representative.

E. Material Transfer Equipment: Equipment for transferring the HMA mixture from the hauling units or the roadbed to the spreading and finishing machine will be allowed unless indicated otherwise on the Drawings.

   Windrow pick-up equipment, if permitted by the Engineer or designated representative, shall be constructed in such a manner that substantially all of the HMA mixture deposited on the roadbed is picked up and loaded into the spreading and finishing machine. The HMA mixture shall not be contaminated with foreign material. The loading equipment shall

be designed so that it does not interfere with the spreading and finishing machine in obtaining the required line, grade and surface without resorting to hand finishing.

F. Straightedges and Templates: The Contractor shall provide a ten-foot (3.05 meter) straightedge acceptable to the Engineer or designated representative for surface testing. Satisfactory templates shall be provided as required by the Engineer or designated representative.

340S.6 Stockpiling Aggregates

Aggregates shall be stockpiled to facilitate blending. When the aggregate is not stockpiled on a hard, non-contaminant base, the bottom six-inch (150 mm) depth of the stockpiles shall not be used in asphaltic mixtures. Where space is limited at the plant site, the aggregate stockpiles shall be separated by walls or other appropriate barriers.

Aggregates shall be stockpiled and handled in a manner that will insure minimization of segregation and contamination. Aggregate and RAP stockpiles shall only contain material from a single source.

340S.7 Mixture Temperature

The Contractor shall select a target temperature for discharge of the HMA mixture from the mixer between 250°F (120°C) and 350°F (176°C) that is suitable to weather and Project conditions. The target temperature shall be reported to the Engineer or designated representative daily and recorded in the Daily Progress Report. The HMA mixture temperature shall not vary by more than 25°F (14°C) from the target temperature for discharge from the mixer. HMA mixtures that are discharged from the mixer at a temperature exceeding 360°F (182°C) or a temperature more than 50°F (28°C) below the target temperature shall not be accepted and shall not be placed on the Project.

340S.8 Mixture Storage

A surge-storage system may be used to minimize production interruptions during a normal day of operation. When approved by the Engineer or designated representative, overnight storage of HMA mixture in insulated storage bins may be used provided that material temperature and physical properties of the HMA mixture are not adversely affected. HMA mixtures that include hardened lumps shall not be used. Stored HMA mixtures shall not be exempt from any requirements provided in this specification.

When a surge-storage system is used, it shall be equipped with a device such as a gob hopper or other device approved by the Engineer or designated representative to prevent segregation in the surge-storage bin.

340S.9 Mixture Moisture Content

Hot mix asphalt (HMA) mixtures produced from any plant shall not have a moisture content in excess of 1 percent by weight (mass) when discharged from the mixer. The moisture content shall be determined in accordance with TxDOT Test Method Tex-212-F, Part II, except that the sample shall be left in the oven a total of not less than four (4) hours.

340S10 Construction Methods

A General: The Contractor shall be responsible for the production, transportation, placement and compaction of the specified HMA paving mixture to the requirements of this specification. The Contractor shall also be responsible for providing a safe environment for inspection personnel to inspect the equipment and to acquire samples.

All hot mix asphalt concrete pavement surface courses shall be placed with a spreading and finishing (lay-down) machine only. All hot mix asphalt concrete pavement base layers with the possible exception of the first lift of the base layer shall also be placed with a spreading and finishing (lay-down) machine. Longitudinal pavement joints shall be located under the proposed lane lines. Density tests shall be taken prior to opening to traffic.

The first lift of a base layer may be placed with a motor grader if approved in advance by the Engineer or designated representative. The loose measure thickness of this first lift shall not exceed 6 inches (150 mm). If placed with a motor grader, the first lift shall achieve a minimum in-place relative density of 89% as determined by TxDOT test procedures TEX-207-F and TEX-227-F. All subsequent lifts should be placed with a spreading and finishing (lay-down) machine and shall be subject to the requirements of Section 340S.12, “Acceptance Plan”. Density tests will be taken randomly to confirm compliance with the specification requirements.

For hot mix asphalt overlays, an automatic screed shall be used with outriggers.

Any material delivered to the Project that by visual inspection can reasonably be expected not to meet specification requirements (i.e. segregated or burned material, deficient or excess asphalt, low mixing temperature, visible contaminants, etc.), as determined by the Engineer or designated representative, shall not be used or left in place.

Equipment shall be inspected prior to use and, if found to be defective or in an operating condition that could potentially affect the quality of the finished pavement, as determined by the Engineer or designated representative, its use shall not be allowed. Leakage of fuels, oils, grease, hydraulic or brake fluids or other contaminants onto the prepared surface or newly-laid HMA layer will not be allowed and may require replacement of the affected pavement area.

The HMA paving mixture, when placed with a spreading and finishing machine, shall not be placed when the air temperature is below 50°F (10°C) and is falling, but it may be placed when the air temperature is above 40°F (4°C) and is rising.

The paving mixture, when used as a level-up course or when spread with a motor grader, shall not be placed when the air temperature is below 60°F (15°C) and is falling, but it may be placed when the air temperature is 50°F (10°C) and is rising. An HMA layer with a thickness of 1-1/2 inches (37.5 mm) and less shall not be placed when the temperature of the surface on which the layer is to be placed is below 50°F (10°C). The temperature shall be taken in a shaded area away from artificial heat.

Additional surface temperature requirements may be included in the Contract Documents or indicated on the Drawings.

Surfaces to be paved shall be finished, primed, cured, broomed and tacked, as appropriate, to the satisfaction of the Engineer or designated representative. If the surface on which the first course of the paving mixture is to be placed is a flexible base course, and a cut-back asphalt is to be used as a prime coat, the flexible base shall have been primed and cured a minimum of 24 hours before the paving mixture may be placed. The

24-hour restriction will not apply to a flexible base that has been primed with material other than a cutback. However, the surface on which the tack coat and/or paving mixture are to be placed shall be in a dry condition.

Pavement shall be opened to traffic as soon as possible after temporary pavement markings or permanent markings are in place as indicated on the Drawings) or as directed by the Engineer or designated representative. Construction traffic allowed on pavements open to the public will be subject to all laws governing traffic on streets and highways.

B. Tack Coat: The surface upon which the tack is to be placed shall be cleaned thoroughly to the satisfaction of the Engineer or designated representative. The surface shall be given a uniform application of tack coat as governed by Standard Specification Item No. 307S, "Tack Coat". The tack coat shall be applied, as directed by the Engineer or designated representative, with an approved sprayer at a rate not to exceed 0.05 gallons per square yard. (0.225 liters per square meter) of surface area. Where the paving mixture will adhere to the surface on which it is to be placed without the use of a tack coat, the tack coat may be eliminated when approved by the Engineer or designated representative. All contact surfaces of curbs, castings and all structures and all joints shall be painted with a thin uniform application of tack coat.

During the application of tack coat, care shall be taken to prevent splattering of adjacent pavement, curb and gutter and structures. Before the Work can be accepted, all splatter shall be removed by the Contractor at the Contractor's expense.

C. Transporting Hot Mix Asphaltic (HMA) Concrete: The HMA mixture shall be hauled to the Work site in tight vehicles that were previously cleaned of all foreign material. Dispatching of the vehicles shall normally be arranged so that all material delivered is placed and all rolling completed during daylight hours. Nighttime paving may be allowed, when approved in advance by the Engineer or designated representative.

In cool weather or for long hauls, truck bodies containing the HMA mixture shall be covered.

If necessary, to prevent the HMA mixture from adhering to the truck body, the inside of the truck may be given a light coating of a release agent satisfactory to the Engineer or designated representative.

D. HMA Placement: The HMA mixture shall be dumped and spread on the approved prepared surface with the spreading and finishing machine. When properly compacted, the finished pavement shall be smooth, of uniform texture and density and shall meet the requirements of the typical cross sections and the surface tests. In addition the placement of the HMA mixture shall be done without tearing, shoving, gouging or segregating the mixture and without producing streaks in the HMA layer.

Discharge of the HMA mixture into the finishing machine shall be controlled so that the spreading and finishing machine is not bounced or jarred and the required lines and grades shall be obtained without resorting to hand finishing except as permitted below in this Section.

Unless indicated otherwise on the Drawings, dumping of the HMA material in a windrow and then placing the HMA mixture in the finishing machine with windrow pick-up equipment will be permitted provided the temperature of the HMA mixture does not drop more than 50°F (28°C) below the target temperature before being placed by the finishing machine.

Under no circumstances will the HMA material be permitted to be dumped on or near the job site and then reloaded for hauling to the site of placement. Exceptions may be allowed if approved by the Engineer or designated representative.

The windrow pick-up equipment shall be operated in such a manner that substantially all the mixture deposited on the roadbed or prepared surface is picked up and loaded into the finishing machine without contamination by foreign material. The windrow pick-up equipment will also be so operated that the finishing machine will obtain the required line, grade and surface without resorting to hand finishing. Any operation of the windrow pick-up equipment resulting in accumulation and subsequent shedding of accumulated material into the HMA mixture will not be permitted.

When approved by the Engineer or designated representative, level-up courses may be spread with a motor grader that meets the requirements of this specification item.

The spreading and finishing machine shall be operated at a uniform forward speed consistent with the plant production rate, hauling capability and roller train capacity to result in a continuous operation. Stopping of the spreading and finishing machine between trucks is to be held to a minimum. If, in the opinion of the Engineer or designated representative, delivery of material is adversely affecting the condition of the HMA layer (excessive stopping of the spreading and finishing machine, loss of mixture temperature, etc.), the Engineer or designated representative may require paving operations to cease until acceptable methods are provided to minimize starting and stopping of the spreading and finishing machine.

The hopper gates of the spreading and finishing machine shall be adjusted to provide an adequate and consistent flow of material. This shall result in enough material being delivered to the augers so that they are operating approximately 85 percent of the time or more. The augers shall provide means to supply adequate flow of material to the center of the paver. Augers shall supply an adequate flow of material for the full width of the mat being placed, as approved by the Engineer or designated representative. Augers should be kept approximately one-half to three-quarters full of HMA mixture at all times during the paving operation.

When the HMA mixture is placed in a narrow strip along the edge of an existing pavement, or is used to level up small areas of an existing pavement or is placed in small irregular areas where the use of a finishing machine is not practical, the finishing machine may be eliminated when permitted by the Engineer or designated representative.

The paving material adjacent to castings and flush curb and gutter and structures shall be finished uniformly high so that when compacted, it will be slightly above but not more than 1/8 inch (3 mm) above the edge of the casting or gutter lip.

Construction joints of successive courses of HMA material shall be offset at least 6 inches (150 mm). Longitudinal joints in the layer shall be placed to coincide with lane lines as directed the Engineer or designated representative. Transverse joints shall be offset a minimum of 5 feet (1.5 meters).

E. Compaction: The pavement layers/lifts shall be compacted thoroughly and uniformly to obtain the compaction and cross section meeting the requirements indicated on the Drawings and this specification item.

Regardless of the method used for compaction, all rolling to achieve specified density shall cease before the temperature of the HMA mixture drops below 175°F (80°C).

Rolling with a pneumatic tire roller shall be used to seal the surface. Rolling with a tandem or other steel-wheel roller shall be provided if required to iron out any roller marks. Surface sealing and removal of roller marks may be accomplished at HMA temperatures below 175°F (80°C).

Vibratory rollers shall not be allowed in the vibrating mode on layers with a plan thickness less than 1-1/2 inches (37.5 mm).

The motion of the rollers shall be slow enough to avoid other than usual initial displacement. If any displacement occurs, it shall be corrected to the satisfaction of the Engineer or designated representative.

The roller shall not be allowed to stand on pavement, which has not been compacted to minimum density requirements. In order to prevent adhesion of the surface mixture to the steel-wheel rollers, the wheels shall be thoroughly moistened with water; however an excess of water will not be allowed. Necessary precautions shall be taken to prevent the dropping of diesel, gasoline, oil, grease or other foreign matter on the pavement, either when the rollers are in operation or when standing.

The edges of the pavement along curbs, headers and similar structures, and all places not accessible to the roller, or in such positions as will not allow thorough compaction with the rollers, shall be thoroughly compacted with lightly oiled tamps.

Rolling with a trench roller will be required on widened areas, in trenches and other limited areas where satisfactory density cannot be obtained with the approved rollers.

340S.11 Sampling and Testing

The HMA mixture shall be tested daily at the Project site for conformance to specification requirements. The Engineer or designated representative shall utilize a random selection method to determine sample locations based on the Contractor's anticipated production. Each day's anticipated production shall be divided into three (3) essentially equal single-pass, sub-area lots. Each day's sample locations shall be equally distributed over the three (3) sub-areas. If, due to the weather or plant malfunctions, the Contractor’s daily-anticipated production is not attained, the random locations will not be recalculated. Also, no more than one location of the three (3) sub-areas shall be located in an irregular shaped area such as a cul-de-sac.

Unless directed otherwise by the Engineer or designated representative, a minimum of three bag samples and three correlating 6-inch (150-mm) cores will be obtained from each day's production.

Bag samples shall be taken during lay-down operations. The primary sampling point for the bag samples shall be from the windrow if a windrow elevator is used. If a windrow elevator is not used, the sample shall be taken from the middle of the paving machine hopper. This sampling location will require a stoppage in the paving operation in order for the Inspector to safely secure a sample from the hopper.

One core shall be taken for every 2,000 single-pass square yards (1 675 single-pass square meters) with a minimum of three (3) cores for all projects. One core shall be taken at the same station and pass sampled for each of the bag samples. Cores shall be taken by the City’s laboratory within 48 hours of pavement laydown unless otherwise directed by the Engineer or designated representative.

For total areas of less than 500 square yards (420 square meters), a total of only two bag samples and two correlating cores will be obtained. If the Contractor desires additional testing, it shall be at its own entire expense.

The Engineer or designated representative may alter, increase or waive the testing schedule to ensure that the Work performed and the material used meet specification requirements. Acceptability of the completed pavement shall be based on the average of test results for the Project as defined in Section 340S.12, "Acceptance Plan" of this item.

Gradation, asphalt content and stability value of the HMA mixture shall be reported for each of the bag samples. The stability value reported for each of the bag samples shall be the average of three (3) tests per bag.

Pavement thickness and density shall be determined from 6-inch (150 mm) field cores. For each day's placement, density of cores for which no corresponding bag samples were taken shall be determined by using the average Maximum Theoretical Density of the day's three (3) bag samples or as may otherwise be determined by the Engineer or designated representative.

When, in the opinion of the Engineer or designated representative, test results appear unrepresentative, additional testing may be authorized. The retesting will be at the expense of the Contractor and the results of the retesting shall be averaged with the results of the original testing. If the results of retesting indicate that the original test results were erroneous, the original test results will be discarded. In the instance of erroneous original test results the subsequent first set of retests will be at the expense of the City of Austin.

Pavements with low-density results may be recored; but the pavement shall not receive any additional compactive effort.

Pavements that will not or cannot be cored within 48 hours shall be closed to both public and construction traffic.

340S.12 Acceptance Plan

For the purpose of the Acceptance Plan only, the "Paving Project" of each of the specified mixture types shall be defined by the Engineer or designated representative before the paving operation begins

Considerations for defining the Paving Project shall include paving operations staged due to traffic considerations, pavement structural section (i.e. with varying layer thicknesses), time required for paving, changes to the Job Mix Formula, phasing of large projects, or other factors affecting the consistency in the production, lay-down/compaction, use of completed portions, and/or aging of in-place material.

Acceptability of the completed pavement structure for a Paving Project shall be based on all daily averages of three test results and when approved by the Engineer or designated representative the overall average of all test results for each of the mixture/layer types specified on the Drawings.

Pay adjustments for two or more acceptance factors shall be accumulative. Pay adjustments of 100% unit price reduction shall require removal and replacement of the Work. Replacement materials shall be subject to all requirements of this specification. Alternatively, the Engineer or designated representative may allow the Work to remain in place without payment provided that the Work is warranted for an extended period under conditions as determined by the Engineer or

designated representative. The decision of the Engineer or designated representative related to the removal and replacement of the Work shall be the final authority.

A. Non-Pay-Adjustment Acceptance Factors:

1 Surface Characteristics: Unless otherwise directed by the Engineer or designated representative, all pavements shall be tested for smoothness. Surfaces shall be tested with a 10-foot (3.05 meter) straightedge parallel to the roadway centerline and perpendicular to the centerline on flat, cross-slope sections. Maximum allowable deviation in 10 feet shall be 1/8 inch (1-mm per meter) parallel to the centerline and 1/4 inch (2-mm per meter) perpendicular to the centerline. Sections exceeding these maximums shall be corrected to the satisfaction of the Engineer or designated representative. The completed surface must meet the approval of the Engineer or designated representative for surface smoothness, finish and appearance.

If the surface ravels, ruts or deteriorates in any manner prior to the end of the warranty period, it will be the Contractor's responsibility to correct this condition at its own entire expense to the satisfaction of the Engineer or designated representative in conformance with the requirements of this specification.

For HMAC rehabilitation and overlay projects, if cracks develop in the pavement surface within the one-year warranty period, the Contractor shall seal the cracks in accordance with Standard Specification Item No. 313S, "Cleaning and/or Sealing Joints and Cracks (Asphaltic Concrete). Payment for this work will be measured and paid for as Mobilization (LS) and Crack Sealing (LF).

For new HMAC roadways constructed in accordance with the Drawings and specifications, if cracks less than 1/4 inch (6 mm) in width develop in the pavement surface within the one year warranty period the Contractor shall seal the cracks in accordance with Standard Specification Item No. 313S, "Cleaning and/or Sealing Joints and Cracks (Asphaltic Concrete). Payment for this Work will be measured and paid for as Mobilization (LS) and Crack Sealing (LF).

If cracks equal to or greater than 1/4 inch (6 mm) in width develop in the pavement surface within the one-year warranty period, the cracking shall be reviewed and evaluated by the Engineer or designated representative before corrective action is taken.

2. Stability: Stability test results shall be used as indicators of potential problems. Where stability test results fall below the range specified in this specification, additional tests shall be taken as directed by the Engineer or designated representative for further evaluation and monitoring of the paving mixture. This additional stability testing will be at the expense of the Contractor. When, in the opinion of the Engineer or designated representative, the stability is deemed unacceptable for the intended use of the pavement, the paving mixture shall be removed and replaced to the limits indicated by test results or may be left in place on conditions acceptable to the Engineer or designated representative. When the paving mixture is removed and replaced, it shall be at the sole expense of the Contractor.

3. Laboratory Density: Laboratory density results as determined by TxDOT Test Method Tex-207-F shall be used as indicators of potential problems. Where laboratory density test results are less than 94.5% or more than 97.5% of mix design maximum density, additional tests shall be taken as directed by the Engineer or designated representative for further evaluation and monitoring of the paving mixture. This additional laboratory density testing will be at the expense of the Contractor. When, in the opinion of the

Engineer or designated representative, the laboratory density is deemed unacceptable for the intended use of the pavement, the paving mixture shall be removed and replaced to the limits indicated by test results.

The removal and replacement of the paving mixture shall be at the sole expense of the Contractor.

4. Limited Areas: Irrespective of an acceptable overall Paving Project average for any or all of the Pay-Adjustment Acceptance Factors, limited substandard portions of the Work, as determined by the Engineer or designated representative, shall be remedied or removed and replaced to the satisfaction of the Engineer or designated representative at the sole expense of the Contractor.

B. Pay-Adjustment Acceptance Factors: Contract unit prices shall be adjusted for paving mixtures that fail to meet acceptance criteria for gradation, asphalt content, density and mat thickness in accordance with the following:

Gradation Acceptance Schedule (TEX-210-F)

Sieve	Deviation From Job Mix Formula		Percent Contract Unit Price Reduction
	Daily Average	Overall Average	
Total retained on No. 10 (2.00 mm)	± 6.5 6.6±	± 5.0 5.1±	0 10
Passing No. 200 (75 µm)	± 3.9 4.0±	± 3.0 3.1±	0 5

Asphalt Content Acceptance Schedule (TEX-210-F, PartII)

Deviation from the Job Mix Formula		Percent Contract Unit Price Reduction	
Daily Average	Overall Average	Local Streets*	All Others
± 0.5	± 0.4	0	0
±0.51 to ±0.60	±0. 41 to ±0.50	15	25
+0.61 to +0.70	+0.51 to +0.60	25**	100; Remove and Replace
-0.61 to -0.70	-0.51 to -0.60	100: Remove and Replace	100; Remove and Replace
Over ±0.70	Over ±0.60	100: Remove and Replace	100; Remove and Replace

*A local or residential street that serves as access to residence or other abutting property.

**If the street has an ADT of 500, or less, with 1%, or less, of truck traffic, plus a 2 year warranty; otherwise, Remove and Replace

Density Acceptance Schedule (TEX-207-F/TEX-227-F)

*Percent Density	Percent Contract Unit Price Reduction

Daily Average	Overall Average	1-1/2" (38 mm) Thickness or Greater	Less than 1-1/2" (38 mm) Thickness
Above 96.5	Above 96	100; Remove and Replace	100; Remove and Replace
90.5 to 96.5	91 to 96	0	0
90.5 to 87.6	90.9 to 88.1	0.625 per 0.10% deficiency in density	0.50 per 0.10% deficiency in density
Less than 87.6	Less than 88.1	100: Remove and Replace	100; Remove and Replace
*Core bulk density divided by max. theoretical density			

Thickness Acceptance Schedule

Variance Percent of Thickness		Percent Contract Unit Price Reduction
Daily Average	Overall Average	
0 – 15.0	0 - 10	0
15.1 – 20.0	10.1 - 16	20
20.1 – 30.0	16.1 - 25	50
Over 30.0	Over 25	100; Remove and Replace or mill/overlay 1" (25 mm) minimum

The Density Acceptance Schedule For Irregularly Shaped Areas; Hike And Bike Trails And Utility Trenches (see following table) will apply to utility trenches of widths less than 4 feet (1.2 meter) and to irregular shaped areas and hike and bike trails in which an appropriate rolling pattern cannot be established making it difficult to achieve compaction.

Density Acceptance Schedule For Irregularly Shaped Areas; Hike And Bike Trails and Utility Trenches (TEX-207-F/TEX-227-F)

*Percent Density	Percent Contract Unit Price Reduction	
Daily Average	1-1/2" (38 mm) Thickness or Greater	Less than 1-1/2" (38 mm) Thickness
Above 96.5	100; Remove and Replace	100; Remove and Replace
96.5 to 89.0	0	0
89.0 to 86.1	0.625 per 0.10% deficiency in density	0.50 per 0.10% deficiency in density
Less than 86.1	100: Remove and Replace	100; Remove and Replace
*Core bulk density divided by maximum theoretical density		

The Density Acceptance Schedule will apply to utility trenches 4 feet (1.2 meter) or wider.

Core thicknesses greater than Drawing requirements shall be factored into the average thickness calculation as the Drawing required thickness. If total thickness of lift(s) proves to be less than required, the Contractor may remove and replace the overlay deficient areas as agreed to by the Engineer or designated representative. Overlays to correct thickness deficiencies shall be not less than one (1) inch (25-mm) thick. Overlays shall require milling of the asphalt in order to prevent a “featheredge” of the overlaying pavement.

The extent of the area to be overlaid or removed and replaced shall be determined by additional cores with thicknesses greater than or equal to the required thickness. All additional coring that is necessary to determine the area shall be paid for by the Contractor.

340S.13 Measurement

Work performed and material placed shall be measured under one of the following methods. When Drawing quantity measurement is specified, adjustment of quantity may be made as follows. If the quantity measured as outlined vary from those shown on the Drawings by more than 5%, either party to the Contract may request in writing and adjustment of the quantity by each separate bid item. The party to the Contract which requests the adjustment shall present to the other party one copy of measurements and calculations showing the revised quantity in question. This revised quantity, when approved by the Engineer or designated representative, shall constitute the final quantity for which payment will be made. However, no adjustment will be made for any quantity, which exceeds the Drawing required thickness.

A. Method A: Asphaltic concrete pavement shall be measured by the ton (2,000 pounds) of the type actually used in completed and accepted Work in accordance with the Drawings and specifications.

   The measurement shall be made on approved truck scales that meet the requirements of the National Institute of Standards and Technology Handbooks 44 and 112 except that the required accuracy shall be 0.4 percent of the load being weighed. The Contractor shall furnish a report of calibration from a scale mechanic licensed by the Texas Department of Agriculture certifying that the scales meet this requirement.

B. Method B: Asphaltic concrete pavement shall be measured by the square yard of specified total thickness of the type of paving mixture actually used in completed and accepted Work in accordance with Drawings and specifications. Multiple lifts of the same type shall be considered as one for square yard measurement purposes.

C. Method C: Asphaltic concrete pavement shall be measured by the lineal foot of specified total thickness of the type of paving mixture actually used in completed and accepted Work in accordance with Drawings and specifications. Multiple lifts of the same type shall be considered as one for linear foot measurement purposes.

340S.14 Payment

Work performed and materials furnished as prescribed by this item and measured as provided under "Measurement" will be paid for at the unit bid prices or pay adjusted unit price for Hot Mix Asphaltic Concrete Pavement, of the types and thicknesses specified. The unit bid prices shall include full compensation for furnishing all labor, equipment, time, materials and incidentals necessary to complete the Work.

Removal of existing hot mix asphalt concrete transition areas prior to overlay, tack coat, saw cutting and temporary pavement markings will not be measured or paid for directly but shall be included in the unit price bid for Standard Specification Item No. 340S, "Hot Mix Asphaltic Concrete Pavement".

Payment for Work meeting these specifications will be made under one of the following:

Pay Item No. 340S-A: Hot Mix Asphaltic Concrete Pavement, Per Ton.

	Type ____,	
Pay Item No. 340S-B:	Hot Mix Asphaltic Concrete Pavement, ___Inches, Type ____,	Per Square Yard.
Pay Item No. 340S-C:	Hot Mix Asphaltic Concrete Pavement, ___Inches, Type ____,	Per Lineal Foot.
Pay Item No. 340S-PQ:	Hot Mix Asphaltic Concrete Pavement, ___Inches, Type ____, Plan Quantity,	Per Ton
Pay Item No. 340S-L:	Hot Mix Asphaltic Concrete Pavement, ___In., Type ____, Level-up Course,	Lump Sum.
Pay Item No. 340S-M:	Crack Sealing Mobilization,	Lump Sum.
Pay Item No. 340S-S:	Crack Sealing,	Per Lineal Foot.

End

SPECIFIC CROSS REFERENCE MATERIALS
Special Specification Item 340S "Hot Mix Asphaltic Concrete Pavement"

City of Austin Standard Specifications

Designation	Description
Item No. 230S	Rolling (Flat Wheel)
Item No. 232S	Rolling (Pneumatic Tire)
Item No. 301S	Asphalts, Oils and Emulsions
Item No. 307S	Tack Coat
Item No. 313S	Cleaning and/or Sealing Joints and Cracks (Asphaltic Concrete)

Texas Department of Transportation: Manual of Testing Procedures

Designation	Description
Tex-106E	Method of Calculating the Plasticity Index of Soils
Tex-107E	Determination of Bar Linear Shrinkage of Soils
Tex-200-F	Sieve Analysis of Fine and Coarse Aggregates
Tex-203-F	Sand Equivalent Test
Tex-204-F	Design of Bituminous Mixtures
Tex-207-F	Determination of Density of Compacted Bituminous Mixtures

Tex-208-F	Test for Stabilometer Value of Bituminous Mixtures
Tex-210-F	Determination of Asphalt Content of Bituminous Mixtures by Extraction
Tex-212-F, Part II	Determination of Moisture Content of Bituminous Mixtures (by oven drying)
Tex-217-F	Determination of Deleterious Material and Decantation Test For Coarse Aggregates
Tex-227-F	Theoretical Maximum Specific Gravity of Bituminous Mixtures
Tex-410-A	Abrasion of Coarse Aggregate Using the Los Angeles Machine
Tex-460-A	Determination of Crushed Face Particle

Texas Department of Transportation: Standard Specifications for Construction and Maintenance of Highways, Streets, and Bridges

Designation	Description
Item 340	Hot Mix Asphalt Concrete Pavement

RELATED CROSS REFERENCE MATERIALS
Special Specification Item 340S "Hot Mix Asphaltic Concrete Pavement"

City of Austin Standard Specifications

Designation	Description
Item No. 206S	Asphalt Stabilized Base
Item No. 210S	Flexible Base
Item No. 306S	Prime Coat
Item No. 310S	Emulsified Asphalt Treatment
Item No. 311S	Emulsified Asphalt Repaving
Item No. 320S	Two Course Surface Treatment

Texas Department of Transportation: Manual of Testing Procedures

Designation	Description
Tex-215-F	Determination of Asphalt Content of Rock Asphalt By Hot Solvent Method
Tex-224-F	Determination of Flakiness
Tex-400-A	Method of Sampling Stone, Gravel, Sand and Mineral Aggregates
Tex-411-A	Soundness of Aggregate by Use of Sodium Sulfate or magnesium Sulfate
Tex-438-A	Accelerated Polish Test for Aggregate

Current Version: September 26, 2012 Previous Versions: 02/24/10, 06/16/08, 08/20/07

Item No. 360S
Concrete Pavement

360S.1 Description

This item shall consist of a pavement and/or base of Portland Cement concrete, with or without reinforcement as indicated on the Drawings, with or without monolithic curbs, constructed as herein specified, on prepared subgrade or base course in conformity with the thickness and typical cross sections indicated on the Drawings. Concrete to be considered of satisfactory quality provided it is made (a) of materials accepted for job, (b) in the proportions established by the Contractor and (c) mixed, placed, finished and cured in accordance with the requirements of this specification.

This specification is applicable for projects or work involving either inch-pound or SI units. Within the text and accompanying tables, the inch-pound units are given preference followed by SI units shown within parentheses.

360S.2 Submittals

The submittal requirements of this specification item may include:

Mix design option(s) of the class of concrete required on the project,

The supplier of the concrete mix design(s) and type of mixing equipment, and

Type of admixtures to be used with the concrete mixes.

360S.3 Materials

A. Cementatious Materials

Portland cement shall conform to ASTM C 150, Type I (General Purpose) and Type III (High Early Strength). Type III cement shall be used when high early strength concrete is indicated on the Drawings. If the use of high early cement is not specified and the Contractor desires to use it, the Contractor shall obtain written permission from the Engineer or designated representative prior to its use and shall assume all additional costs incurred by the use of such cement. All cement shall be of the same type and from the same source for a project unless written permission if first received from the Engineer or designated representative.

Portland cement manufactured in a cement kiln fueled by hazardous waste shall be considered as an approved product if the production facility is authorized to operate under regulation of the Texas Commission on Environmental Quality (TCEQ) and the United States Environmental Protection Agency (USEPA). Supplier shall provide current TCEQ and EPA authorizations to operate the facility.

Bulk or sacked cement may be used and a bag shall contain 94 pounds (42.6 KG) net. All bags shall be in good condition at the time of inspection. Bulk cement shall be weighed on approved scales as herein prescribed.

All cement shall be stored in a suitable weather tight building or bin, which will protect the cement from dampness. The cement shall be so stored as to provide easy access for proper inspection. Any cement, which has become partially set or which contains hard lumps or cakes or cement salvaged from discarded or used bags, shall not be used.

Fly ash (denoted by Texas DOT designations Type A and Type B) may replace 20 to 35 percent of a mix design's Portland cement content by absolute volume. Fly ash shall not be used in mix designs with less that five (5) sacks of Portland cement per cubic yard [six and a half (6.5) sacks of Portland cement per cubic meter] unless specifically permitted by the Contract plans of project manual. Fly ash shall conform to the requirements of Item 405S, "Concrete Admixtures".

B. Admixtures

Concrete admixtures conforming to Item No. 405S, "Concrete Admixtures" may be used when approved by the Engineer or designated representative to minimize segregation, improve workability, reduce the amount of mixing water and to provide normal hot weather concreting provisions. The use of admixtures shall not alter the approved mix designs, except for water content.

C. Coarse Aggregate

Coarse aggregate shall consist of durable particles of gravel, crushed blast furnace slag and/or crushed stone of reasonably uniform quality throughout, free from injurious amounts of salt, alkali, vegetable matter or other objectionable material, either free or as an adherent coating on the aggregate. It shall not contain more than 0.25 percent by weight of clay lumps nor more than 1.0 percent by weight of shale nor more than 5.0 percent by weight of laminated and/or friable particles when tested in accordance with TxDOT Test Method Tex-413-A.

Coarse aggregate shall have a wear of not more than 45 percent when tested according to TxDOT Test Method Tex-410-A and when tested by standard laboratory methods shall meet the following grading requirements:

Retained on 1 3/4 inch (43.75 mm) sieve	0%
Retained on 1 1/2 inch (37.5 mm) sieve	0 to 5%
Retained on 3/4 inch (19.0 mm)sieve	30 to 65%
Retained on 3/8 inch (9.5 mm) sieve	70 to 90%
Retained on No. 4 (4.75 mm) sieve	95 to 100%

Loss by Decantation TxDOT Test Method *Tex-406-A. 1.0% Maximum

* In the case of aggregate made primarily from crushing of stone. If the material finer than the 200 sieve is definitely established to be the dust of fracture essentially free from clay or shale as established by Part III of TxDOT Test Method Tex-406-A, the percent may be increased to 1.5.

When the plans do not require a monolithic pour of curb or curb and gutter, the Contractor may elect to use the following gradation of coarse aggregate for curb or curb and gutter:

Retained on 1 1/2 inch (37.5 mm) sieve	0%
Retained on 3/8 inch (9.5 mm) sieve	5 to 30%
Retained on No. 4 (4.75 mm) sieve	75 to 100%

Where the coarse aggregate is delivered on the job in 2 or more sizes or types, each type and/or size shall be batched and weighed separately.

All aggregates shall be handled and stored in such a manner as to prevent size segregation and contamination by foreign substances and maintain as nearly as possible in a uniform condition of moisture. When segregation is apparent, the aggregate shall be remixed with suitable equipment as required. At time of its use, the aggregate shall be free from frozen material and aggregate containing foreign materials will be rejected. Coarse aggregate that contains more than 0.5 percent free moisture by weight shall be stockpiled for at least 24 hours prior to use.

Adequate storage facilities shall be provided for approved materials. The intermixing of non-approved materials with approved materials either in stockpiles or in bins will not be permitted. Aggregates from different sources shall be stored in different stockpiles unless otherwise approved by the Engineer or designated representative.

D. Fine Aggregate

Fine aggregate shall be free from injurious materials of salt, alkali or vegetable matter. It shall not contain more than 0.5 percent by weight of clay lumps. When subjected to the color test for organic impurities, TxDOT Test Method Tex-408-A, the fine aggregate shall not show a color darker than standard.

Unless shown otherwise on the drawings, fine aggregate shall have an acid insoluble residue of at least 60% by weight when tested in accordance with Tex 612-J.

Unless specified otherwise, fine aggregate shall meet the following grading requirements:

Retained on 3/8 inch (9.5 mm) sieve	0%
Retained on No. 4 (4.75 mm) sieve	0 to 5%
Retained on No. 8 (2.36 mm) sieve	0 to 20%
Retained on No. 16 (1.185 mm) sieve	15 to 30%
Retained on No. 30 (600 µm) sieve	35 to 75%
Retained on No. 50 (300 µm) sieve	70 to 90%
Retained on No. 100 (150 µm) sieve	90 to 100%
Retained on No. 200 (75 µm) sieve	97 to 100%

Fine aggregate will be subjected to the Sand Equivalent Test, TxDOT Test Method Tex-203-F. The sand equivalent value shall not be less than 80.

E. Mineral Filler

Mineral filler shall consist of clean stone dust, crushed sand, crushed shell or other approved inert material. It shall meet the following requirements when tested in accordance with TxDOT Test Method Tex-401-A:

Retained on No. 30 (600 µm) sieve	0%
Retained on No. 200 (75 µm) sieve	0 to 35%

Where fine aggregate is delivered to the job in 2 or more sizes or types, each type and/or size of material shall be batched and weighed separately. Where mineral filler is used, it shall be batched and weighed separately. At the time of its use the fine aggregate shall be free from frozen material and aggregate containing foreign material will be rejected.

All fine aggregate shall be stockpiled for at least 24 hours prior to use.

F. Mixing Water

Water for use in concrete and for curing shall be free from oils, acids, organic matter or other deleterious substances and shall not contain more than 1,000 parts per million of chlorides as Cl nor more than 1,000 parts per million of sulfates as SO4.

Water from municipal supplies approved by the State Health Department will not require testing. Contractor shall sample and test water from other sources and submit test results to the Engineer or designated representative for approval 10 days prior to proposed use.

Tests shall be made in accordance with "Standard Method of Test for Quality of Water to be used in Concrete", AASHTO Method T-26.

G. Transit-mixed Concrete

The use of transit-mixed (ready-mixed) concrete will be permitted by the Engineer or designated representative provided the batching plant and mixer trucks meet requirements of quality specified herein.

When ready-mixed concrete is used, additional mortar (1 sack cement, 3 parts sand and sufficient water) shall be added to each batch to coat the drum of the mixer or agitator truck. Delivery of concrete to the site of the work and its discharge from the truck mixer, agitator or non-agitating equipment shall be in accordance with the requirements of Item No. 410S, "Concrete Structures".

Ready-mixed concrete, batching plant and mixer truck operation shall include the following:

1) A ticket system will be used that includes a copy for the construction inspector. The ticket will have machine stamped time/date of the concrete batch, weight of cement, sand and aggregates; exact nomenclature and written quantities of admixtures and water. Any item missing or incomplete on the ticket may be cause for rejection of the concrete.

2) Sufficient trucks will be available to support continuous slab placements. The Contractor will satisfy the Engineer or designated representative that adequate standby trucks are available to support monolithic placement requirements.

3) A portion of the mixing water, required by the batch design to produce the specified slump, may be withheld and added at the job site but only with the permission of the Engineer or designated representative and under the Inspector's observation. When water is added under these conditions, it will be thoroughly mixed before any slump or strength samples are taken.

H. Joint Sealer

Unless otherwise shown on the plans, joint sealant for concrete pavement used on airport runways and/or taxiways shall be TxDOT Class 5. All other joint sealant shall be TxDOT Class 2.

As a minimum, the joint sealant shall comply with the following. The manufacturer of the joint sealant shall furnish certification that the product to be supplied meets or exceeds the specification.

1) Class 2 (Hot Poured Rubber-Asphalt). This sealer shall conform to Standard Specification Item No. 313S, "Cleaning and/or Sealing Joints and Cracks (Asphaltic Concrete)The sealer must be compatible with asphaltic concrete.

2) Class 5 (Low Modulus Silicone Sealant for Concrete Pavement). This material shall conform to Item 413S, "Cleaning and/or Sealing Joints and Cracks (PCC) and shall be furnished in a one-part silicone formulation, which does not require a primer for bond to concrete. A backer rod shall be required which will be compatible with the sealant. No bond or reaction shall occur between the rod and sealant. The sealant shall adhere to the sides of the concrete joint. It shall not crack or break when exposed to temperatures below 32°F (0°C).

The sealant material shall have the following properties:

Color	Gray
Flow, MIL-2-8802D, Sec 4.8.4, max	0.2
Working time, minutes	10
Tack-free time at 77° F +/- 2 o F (25°C +/- 1.1^{o}C), MIL-2-8802D,	
Sec 4.8.7, minutes	60
Cure time at 77°F (25oC), days	7-14
Full Adhesion, days	14-21

As Cured - after 7 days at 77°F (25°C), and 40% Relative Humidity

Elongation, minimum percent	1200
Durometer Hardness, Shore A, ASTM D 2240, min	15
Joint movement capability, percent	+100/-50
Tensile Strength, maximum elongation, percent	100
Peal strength, psi	25 (172 kPa)

I. Backer Rod

Backer Rod shall be expanded closed cell polyethylene foam compatible with sealant. No bond or reaction shall occur between rod and sealant. Backer Rod shall be of sufficient width to be in compression after placement.

J. Joint Filler

Boards for expansion joint filler and for contraction and longitudinal joints shall be of the size, shape and type indicated.

Board shall be obtained from Redwood, Cypress, Gum, Southern Yellow Pine or Douglas Fir timber. They shall be solid heartwood and shall be free from sapwood, knots, clustered birdseye, checks and splits. Occasional sound or hollow birdseye, when not in clusters, will be permitted provided the board is free from any other defects that will impair its usefulness as a joint filler. With the exception of Redwood and Cypress, all boards shall have a creosote or pentachlorophenol treatment of 6 pounds per cubic foot (96 kg/m3). When oven dried at 230°F (110oC) to a constant weight, the weight of the board per cubic foot (minus treatment), shall not be less than 20 pounds nor more than 35 pounds (not less than 320 nor more than 561 kgs per cubic meter).

K. Asphalt Board

Asphalt board when used as indicated shall be of required size, full depth of concrete placement and uniform thickness. When used in transverse joints, it shall conform approximately to shape of the pavement crown as indicated. Asphalt board shall consist of 2 liners of 0.016-inch (0.4 mm) asphalt impregnated paper filled with a mastic mixture of asphalt and vegetable fiber and/or mineral filler. Boards shall be smooth, flat and straight throughout and shall be sufficiently rigid to permit easy installation. Boards that crack or shatter during installing and finishing operations will not be acceptable. Board shall be furnished in lengths equal to 1/2 the pavement width or in lengths equal to the width between longitudinal joints and may be furnished in strips or scored sheets of the required shape. When tested in accordance with TxDOT Test Method Tex-524-C the asphalt boards shall not deflect from the horizontal more than 3/4 inch in 3 1/2 inches (19.3 cm in 90 cm). The asphalt board shall be placed such that they will not interfere with the bonding of the joint sealer.

L. Load Transmission Devices for Expansion and Contraction Joints

Approved load transmission devices, when indicated, shall meet the requirements specified herein:

Smooth steel bar dowels, used when indicated, shall be of the size and type indicated and shall be open-hearth, basic oxygen or electric-furnace steel conforming to the properties specified for grade 60 in ASTM A 615. The free end of dowel bars shall be smooth and free of shearing burrs.

When indicated, one end of each dowel bar shall be encased in an approved cap having an inside diameter of 1/16 inch (16 mm) greater than the diameter of the dowel bar. The cap shall be of such strength, durability and design as to provide free movement of the dowel bar and shall be approved by the Engineer or designated representative prior to use. One end of the cap shall be filled with a soft felt plug or shall be void in order to permit free movement of the dowel bar for a distance equivalent to 150 percent of the width of the expansion joint used. The dowel caps and dowel bars shall be held securely in place by bar ties as indicated on the drawings. Mechanical methods of implanting dowel bars in the plastic concrete may be used when approved by the Engineer or designated representative.

Where required, dowel bars shall be coated with a plastic material meeting the requirements indicated.

Where red lead and oil bar coating is indicated, the red lead may be of any standard commercial grade and the oil shall be clean and no lighter than Standard No. 30 SAE grade. Approved thinner and dryer may be added to the red lead, but the material upon application shall be of such consistency that will provide a uniform and heavy coating on the bar. Where asphalt bar coating is indicated, the material may be any standard grade of oil asphalt and shall be applied hot. Cutback asphalt will not be permitted for bar coating.

M. Metal Installing Devices for Joint Assembly

Metal installing devices for expansion and contraction joint assemblies (such as welded wire bar chairs, bar stakes and marker channels, channel caps, etc.) shall be as indicated or may be similar devices of equivalent or greater strength, approved by the Engineer or designated representative, that will secure joint assembly in correct position during the placing and finishing of concrete. Load transmission devices used in joint assemblies shall be secured in position by a transverse metal brace of the type and design indicated or may be secured in position by other approved devices of equivalent or greater strength that will provide positive mechanical connection between the brace and each unit (or than by wire tie) and prevent transverse movement of each load transmission device.

N. Steel Reinforcement

Steel reinforcing bars as required including tie bars shall be open-hearth, basic oxygen or electric-furnace new billet steel of Grade 60 or Grade 40 for concrete reinforcement as indicated. Bars that require bending shall be Grade 40 conforming to the requirements of ASTM A 615.

High yield reinforcing steel shall be either (a) open-hearth, basic oxygen or electric-furnace new billet steel conforming to ASTM A 615 Grade 60 or (b) rail steel bars for concrete reinforcement, conforming to ASTM A 616 Grade 60. Bars produced by piling method will not be accepted. High yield reinforcing steel bars shall be further identified by a special marking rolled into each bar. All reinforcing steel shall be deformed bars conforming to the requirements of pertinent ASTM Specifications.

Where prefabricated deformed wire mats are indicated or permitted, the wire shall be cold worked deformed steel wire conforming to the requirements of ASTM A 496, except that steel shall be made by open-hearth, electric-furnace or basic oxygen processes. The prefabricated deformed wire mats shall conform to the requirements of ASTM A 497, except that wires used shall be deformed and transverse wires shall project beyond the centerline of each edge longitudinal wire as indicated. Mats that have been bent or wires dislocated or parted during shipping or project handling shall be realigned to within 1/2 inch (13 mm) of original horizontal plane of the mat. Mats with any portion of the wires out of vertical alignment more than 1/2 inch (13 mm) after realignment and/or wires dislocated or mutilated so that, in the opinion of the Engineer, they do not represent the original mat, shall be rejected. The reinforcement may be clamped or wired so that the reinforcement will retain the horizontal and vertical alignment as indicated or as approved by the Engineer or designated representative. Deformed wire may be used for tie bars and load transfer bars that require bending. The nominal size, area and theoretical weight of reinforcing steel wires covered by this provision are as listed in Table II. When fabricated steel bars or rod mats are indicated, the mats shall meet requirements of ASTM A 184.

Steel wire fabric reinforcement shall be of the gage and spacing indicated and shall conform to the requirements of ASTM A 82. Longitudinal and transverse wires shall be electrically welded together at all points of intersection and the welds shall be of sufficient strength that they will not be broken during handling or placing. All welding and fabrication of fabric sheets shall conform to the requirements of ASTM A 185. Welded steel wire fabric shall be furnished in sheets as indicated and steel having been previously bundled into rolls will not be accepted. An approved hinge will be permitted in each sheet to provide for each sheet longitudinally. When wire fabric is used, it will replace only the longitudinal and transverse bars. The tie bars and load transmission units at joints will not be affected.

Table II: DIMENSIONAL REQUIREMENTS FOR DEFORMED STEEL WIRE FOR CONCRETE REINFORCEMENT

Deformed Wire	Unit Weight	Diameter	Cross-Sectional Area,	Perimeter
Size No	Pounds Per Ft. (Kgs per Meter)	Inches (Centimeters)	Sq. inches (Sq, Centimeters)	Inches (Centimeters)
D-1	0.034 (.051)	0.113 (.287)	0.01 (.06)	0.355 (.902)
D-2	0.068 (.101)	0.159 (.404)	0.02 (.13)	0.499 (1.267)
D-3	0.102 (.152)	0.195 (.495)	0.03 (.19)	0.612 (1.554)
D-4	0.136 (.202)	0.225 (.572)	0.04 (.26)	0.706 (1.793)

D-5	0.170 (.253)	0.252 (.640)	0.05 (.32)	0.791 (2.009)
D-6	0.204 (.304)	0.276 (.701)	0.06 (.39)	0.867 (2.202)
D-7	0.238 (.354)	0.296 (.752)	0.07 (.45)	0.936 (2.377)
D-8	0.272 (.405)	0.319 (.810)	0.08 (.52)	1.002 (2.545)
D-9	0.306 (.455)	0.338 (.859)	0.09 (.58)	1.061 (2.695)
D-10	0.340 (.506)	0.356 (.904)	0.10 (.65)	1.118 (2.840)
D-11	0.374 (.557)	0.374 (.950)	0.11 (.71)	1.174 (2.982)
D-12	0.408 (.607)	0.390 (.991)	0.12 (.77)	1.225 (3.112)
D-13	0.442 (.658)	0.406 (1.031)	0.13 (.84)	1.275 (3.239)
D-14	0.476 (.708)	0.422 (1.072)	0.14 (.90)	1.325 (3.366)
D-15	0.510 (.759)	0.437 (1.110)	0.15 (.97)	1.372 (3.485)
D-16	0.544 (.810)	0.451 (1.146)	0.16 (1.03)	1.416 (3.600)
D-17	0.578 (.860)	0.465 (1.181)	0.17 (1.10)	1.460 (3.708)
D-18	0.612 (.911)	0.478 (1.214)	0.18 (1.16)	1.501 (3.813)
D-19	0.646 (.961)	0.491 (1.247)	0.19 (1.23)	1.542 (3.917)
D-20	0.680 (1.012)	0.504 (1.280)	0.20 (1.29)	1.583 (4.021)
D-21	0.714 (1.063)	0.517 (1.313)	0.21 (1.35)	1.624 (4.125)
D-22	0.748 (1.113)	0.529 (1.344)	0.22 (1.42)	1.662 (4.221)
D-23	0.782 (1.164)	0.541 (1.375)	0.23 (1.48)	1.700 (4.318)
D-24	0.816 (1.214)	0.553 (1.405)	0.24 (1.55)	1.737 (4.412)
D-25	0.850 (1.265)	0.564 (1.433)	0.25 (1.61)	1.772 (4.500)

D-26	0.884 (1.316)	0.575 (1.461)	0.26 (1.68)	1.806 (4.587)
D-27	0.918 (1.366)	0.586 (1.488)	0.27 (1.74)	1.841 (4.676)
D-28	0.952 (1.417)	0.597 (1.516)	0.28 (1.81)	1.876 (4.765)
D-29	0.986 (1.467)	0.608 (1.544)	0.29 (1.87)	1.910 (4.851)
D-30	1.020 (1.518)	0.618 (1.570)	0.30 (1.94)	1.942 (4.933)
D-31	1.054 (1.569)	0.628 (1.595)	0.31 (2.00)	1.973 (5.011)

O. Polyethylene Film

Polyethylene film shall be opaque pigmented white in color and shall be manufactured from virgin resin without additives or scrap. It shall be sufficiently strong and tough to permit its use under the conditions existing on street paving work without being torn or otherwise rendered unfit for the purpose during the curing period. The film shall have a minimum thickness of 4 mils (0.004 inch), shall have a minimum tensile strength of 1,700 psi at 77°F (11,720 kPa at 25°C) in the longitudinal direction and 1,200 psi at 77°F (8,275 kPa at 25°C) in the transverse direction and shall have a minimum elongation of 200 percent at 77°F (25°C)in the longitudinal direction and 150 percent at 77°F(25°C) in the transverse direction. The permissible percent moisture loss shall not exceed 2 percent after 24 hours and 4 percent after 72 hours. Tests for tensile strength and elongation will be conducted in accordance with ASTM Designation: D 882, Method A. Tests for moisture retention will be conducted in accordance with ASTM Designation: C 156.

P. Membrane Curing Compound

Membrane curing compound shall conform to Item No. 409S, "Membrane Curing", Type 2 white pigmented.

Q. Asphalt Curing

Where asphalt is to be placed on a concrete base, asphalt shall be used for curing concrete base, the material shall conform to Item No. 301S, "Asphalts, Oils and Emulsions" for RS-2 or RS-2h or as indicated on the drawings.

360S.4 Equipment

A. General

All equipment necessary for construction of this item shall be on the Project and shall be approved by Engineer or designated representative as to conditions before the Contractor will be permitted to begin construction operations on which the equipment is to be used. When approved by the Engineer or designated representative in writing, a commercial or independently operated batching plant for measuring materials outside limits of the project may be used.

B. Mixer

The mixer furnished may be either a paving mixer (operated at site of construction or centrally located), a stationary mixer (central mixer) or a paving mixer (truck mounted) that will produce adequately mixed concrete meeting the specified requirements. The mixer, or mixers, shall conform to the following requirements:

1) Each mixer shall have attached in a prominent place a manufacturer's plate showing rated capacity of the drum in terms of volume of mixed concrete and the recommended speed of rotation of the mixing drum or blades.

2) The stationary mixer (central mixer) or truck mounted paving mixer shall be operated at the manufacturer's recommended speed.

3) The size of the paving mixer shall not be less than that of a 27-E paver, as established by the Mixer Manufacturer's Bureau of Associated General Contractors. The paving mixer shall be operated at a drum speed of not less than 16 revolutions per minute and not more than 22 revolutions per minute. Pickup and throw over blades in the drum of the mixer shall be replaced when worn down 3/4 inch (19 mm) or more.

4) Each truck mounted paving mixer shall be approved by the Engineer or designated representative prior to use on the project. It shall be classified as a "paving mixer" by the manufacturer and shall be so designed that a uniform and low slump concrete (approximately 1 1/2 inch [38 mm] slump) can be mixed without aggregate size segregation. The mixer shall be capable of discharging the low slump concrete at a speed of 10 seconds per cubic yard (13 seconds per cubic meter) or faster.

5) Each mixer shall be equipped with an approved automatic device for satisfactorily timing the mix and locking the discharging device in order to prevent the discharging of the mixer before the end of the required mixing period. This timing device shall operate a sounding device to signal plainly the completion of the mixing time. When permitted by the Engineer a light signal device may be used.

6) Multiple drum mixers will be permitted provided their operation is properly synchronized. The mixing time shall be determined exclusive of the time required to transfer concrete from one drum to the next drum.

7) Each mixer shall be equipped with a water-measuring device so constructed that it will measure the water within 1 percent of the total amount required for each batch. Unless the water is to be weighed, the water measuring

equipment shall include an auxiliary tank with a capacity greater than that of the measuring tank and from which the measuring tank will be filled by gravity flow. The measuring tank shall be open to the atmosphere and shall be so placed and constructed that the water for a batch can be discharged into a calibrated tank or weighing device for checking the accuracy of water measurement without seriously delaying the paving operations. The Contractor shall have a calibrated tank or weighing device available at all times at a location satisfactory to the Engineer or designated representative.

8) If a paving mixer is furnished and operated at the site of construction, it shall be equipped with a power controlled boom and bucket, so designed as to permit uniform distribution of the concrete for the full width between pavement forms. Alternate equipment for distributing concrete may be substituted when approved by the Engineer in writing, provided uniform distribution is obtained without segregation.

9) If central mixed concrete is used on the project, the Contractor shall provide equipment designed to provide uniform distribution for the concrete for the full width between pavement forms without segregation.

C. Transit-mix Trucks

When transit-mix (ready-mix) concrete is used, additional mortar (1 sack cement, 3 parts sand and sufficient water) shall be added to the batch to coat the drum of the mixer or agitator truck. This shall be required for every load of concrete. The mixing speed shall be attained as soon as all ingredients are in the mixer. Each complete batch (containing all the required ingredients) shall be mixed not less than 70 nor more than 100 revolutions of the drum at mixing speed.

A portion of the mixing water, required by the batch design to produce the desired slump, may be withheld and added at the job site, but only with permission of the Engineer and under the Engineer's supervision. When water is added at the job site, 25 revolutions (minimum) at mixing speed, will be required to flush down the blades after charging shall be accurately measured and included in the quantity of mixing water. The introduction of the initial mixing water, except blade wash down water and that permitted in this Article shall be prior to or simultaneous with the charging of the aggregates and cementitious material.

Mixing and agitating speed shall be as designated by the mixer manufacturer. All revolutions after prescribed mixing shall be at agitating speed. Except for short periods of time during discharge, the drum shall be kept in continuous motion from the time the mixing is started until the discharge is completed.

Additional mortar, consisting of 1 sack cement, 3 parts sand and sufficient water, shall be added to the batch to coat the drum of the transit mixer or agitator truck. This shall be required for every load of concrete.

The loading of transit-mixers shall not exceed 63 percent of the drum volume. When used as an agitator only, the loading of truck mixers shall not exceed 80 percent of the drum volume.

The batching plant and transit-mix trucks shall operate under the following system:

1) A ticket system will be used that includes a copy for the construction inspector. The ticket will have machine stamped time/date of water/cement batch; weight of cement, fly ash (if applicable), water, sand and aggregates; exact nomenclature and quantities of admixture. Any item missing or incomplete on the ticket will be cause for rejection. Coded readouts may be used if approved in advance by the Engineer.

2) Sufficient trucks will be available to support continuous placements. The Contractor will satisfy the Engineer that adequate standby trucks are available to support monolithic placement when required.

3) A portion of the mixing water, required by the batch design to produce the desired slump, may be withheld and added at the job site, but only with the permission of the Engineer and under the Inspector's observation. When water is added under these conditions, it will be thoroughly mixed before any slump or strength beam samples are taken.

D. Hauling Equipment

Batch hauling equipment for the transportation of measured materials from the batching plant to the mixer shall be equipped with tight covers, which shall be used to prevent excessive evaporation of moisture or any loss of material.

If a central mixer is used, concrete may be transported to the point of delivery in truck agitators or non-agitating trucks.

If a truck mounted paving mixer is used, it may be used to transport the concrete after mixing is complete.

If non-agitator trucks are used they shall conform to the following requirements:

The bed of non-agitating hauling equipment shall be a smooth, mortar-tight, metal container. The hauling equipment shall be capable of delivering the concrete to the work site in a thoroughly mixed and uniform mass and capable of discharging the concrete at a satisfactory controlled rate without segregation. If in the opinion of the Engineer any appreciable segregation or accumulation of excess water and/or mortar occurs on the surface of the concrete, this may be cause for rejection and this method of transporting the concrete to the point of delivery shall be suspended as directed by the Engineer.

E. Subgrade or Subbase Planer and Templates

Unless a stabilized subbase is provided, an approved subbase planer shall be provided, mounted on visible rollers riding on the forms and having adjustable cutting blades which shall trim the subgrade to the exact section as indicated. The planer frame shall be heavy enough to remain on the forms at all times and shall be of such strength and rigidity that, under a test made by changing the support from the wheels to the center, it shall not develop a deflection for more than 1/8 inch (3 mm). Tractive power equipment used to pull the planer shall not be such as to produce ruts or indentations in the subgrade.

When the slip form method of paving is to be used, the subgrade planer will be operated on a prepared track grade or controlled by an electronic sensor system

operated from a string line that establishes the horizontal alignment and the elevation of the subbase.

A template for checking the contour of the subbase shall be provided and operated by the Contractor. The template shall rest upon the side forms and shall be of such strength and rigidity that, under a test made by changing the support to the center, it shall not show a deflection of more than 1/8 inch (3 mm). It shall be provided with accurately adjustable rods projecting downward to the subgrade at 1-foot (30 cm) intervals and these rods shall be adjusted to the required cross section of the bottom of the slab when the template is resting upon the side forms. Where stabilized subbase is provided, use of a scratch template will be required.

F. Forms

Side forms shall be of metal of approved cross section. The preferred depth of the form shall be equal to the required edge thickness of the pavement. Forms with depth greater than the required edge thickness of the pavement will be permitted.

The length of form sections shall not be less than 10 feet (0.3 meters) and each section shall provide for staking in position with not less than 3 pins. Flexible or curved forms of wood or metal of proper radius shall be used for curves of 200-foot (61 meter) radius or less. Forms shall be of ample strength and shall be provided with adequate devices for secure setting so that when in place they will withstand, without visible springing or settlement, the impact and vibration of the spreading and finishing machinery. In no case shall the base be less than 6 inches (15.2 cm) for a form 6 inches (15.2 cm) or more in height. The forms shall be free from warps, bends or kinks and shall be sufficiently true to provide a reasonably straight edge on the concrete. The top of each form section, when tested with a straightedge shall conform to the requirements specified for the surface of the completed pavement. Sufficient forms shall be provided for satisfactory prosecution of the work.

Outside curb forms shall be of wood or metal of a section satisfactory to the Engineer or designated representative, straight, free of warp and shall be in a depth at least equal to the depth of the curb. They shall be mounted on the paving forms and securely attached thereto and maintained in true position during the placing of the concrete. Inside curb forms, if required, shall be of approved material and of such design as to provide the curb required and shall be rigidly attached to the outside forms.

G. Concrete Spreader

Use of concrete spreader shall be required and it shall be a self-propelled machine having sufficient power and traction to spread and strike off concrete without slippage on the forms. It shall be equipped with a power driven device for spreading the concrete uniformly between the forms. The spreading device may be either a reciprocating blade, a screw conveyer or a belt conveyer. The spreader shall be capable of striking off the surface of the concrete between the forms in the longitudinal direction of the slab at any required elevation.

Mechanically operated concrete spreaders of other designs, which uniformly distribute the concrete with a minimum of segregation, may be used when approved by the Engineer.

H. Slipform Paver

With prior approval, the Contractor may place concrete with slip form paver. This paver shall be equipped with a longitudinal trans-angular finishing float adjustable to crown and grade and be satisfactory to the Engineer or designated representatve. The float shall extend across the pavement practically to the side forms and/or the edge of slab. A "string line" shall be used to provide grade control for the paver.

I. Mechanical Vibratory Equipment

All concrete placed for pavement shall be consolidated by approved mechanical vibrators operated ahead of the transverse finishing machine and designed to vibrate the concrete internally and/or from the surface. Vibratory members shall extend across the pavement practically to, but shall not come in contact with the side forms. Mechanically operated vibrators shall be mounted in such manner as not to interfere with transverse or longitudinal joints. The internal-type vibrators shall be spaced at not more than 24 inches (61 cm) and shall be equipped with synchronized vibratory units. Separate vibratory units shall be spaced at sufficiently close intervals to provide uniform vibration and consolidation to the entire width of the pavement. The frequency in air of the interval spud type vibratory units shall be not less than 8,000 cycles per minute and not less than 5,000 cycles per minute for tube types and the method of operation shall be as directed by the Engineer or designated representative. The Contractor shall have a satisfactory tachometer available for checking vibratory the elements.

The pavement vibrators shall not be used to level or spread the concrete but shall be used only for purposes of consolidation. The vibrators will not be operated where the surface of the concrete, as spread, is below the elevation of the finished surface of the pavement, except for the first lift of concrete where double strike off method of placement is employed and the vibrators shall not be operated for more than 15 seconds while the machine upon which they are installed is standing still.

The pan type vibratory units shall apply the vibrating impulses directly to the surface of the concrete. The operating frequency shall be not less than 3,500 cycles nor more than 4,200 cycles per minute in air. The Contractor shall have a satisfactory tachometer available for checking the speed of the vibratory elements.

Approved hand manipulated mechanical vibrators shall be furnished in the number required for provision of proper consolidation of the concrete along forms, at joints and in areas not covered by mechanically controlled vibrators. These vibrators shall be sufficiently rigid to insure control of the operating position of the vibrating head.

Complete and satisfactory consolidation of the concrete pavement is a most important requirement of this specification. Cores taken shall be carefully examined for voids, honeycombing or other evidence of incomplete consolidation.

If such evidence is present, changes in the consolidation procedures and/or equipment will be made to insure satisfactory consolidation.

J. Finishing Equipment

1. Transverse Finishing Machine

The Transverse finishing machine shall be provided with 2 screeds accurately adjusted to the crown of the pavement, shall be self-propelled and mounted in a substantial frame equipped to ride on the forms, or may be slip form finished, and shall be so designed and operated as to strike off and consolidate the concrete.

2. Longitudinal Finishing

A transverse drag float may be used in lieu of the longitudinal finishing machine with the Engineer's approval. Finishing machines shall be maintained in a tight and good operating condition, accurately adjusted to the required crown or profile and free from deflection, wobble or vibration tending to affect the precision of finish. Machines failing to meet these requirements will be rejected by the Engineer or designated representative and the Contractor shall provide approved equipment.

Where hand finishing is permitted under this specification, the Contractor shall provide a strike template and a tamping template both of 4 by 10 inch (10 by 25 cm) lumber or equivalent metal section and at least 2 feet longer than the width of the pavement. Both templates to conform to the crown section of the pavement and the tamp, if of wood, shall have a steel face not less than 3/8 inch (9.5 mm) in thickness. The Contractor shall also provide a longitudinal float of approved design and not less than 14 feet (4.25 meters) in length.

The Contractor shall furnish and maintain at least two standard 10-foot (3.05 meter) steel straightedges on the work site at all times during the paving operations. The Contractor shall operate same in the presence of the Engineer or designated representative.

The Contractor shall furnish a sufficient number of bridges to ride on the forms and span the pavement for finishing operations and for the installation and finishing of joints. All necessary finishing and edging tools shall be furnished as may be required to complete the pavement as indicated.

360S.5 Proportioning of Concrete

A. Proportions

Concrete shall be composed of Cementitious Materials, fine aggregate, coarse aggregate, mineral filler and/or admixture if used and water, mixed in the proportions designated by the approved Mix Design and in the manner set forth in this specification. On the basis of job and laboratory investigations of the proposed materials, the Contractor will fix proportions by weight of water, coarse

aggregate, fine aggregate, cementitious materials, admixture and mineral filler where required, in order to produce concrete of the specified strength and workability for the actual delivery time and site conditions to be encountered. Where curbs are placed separately, the Engineer or designated representative. may allow aggregate gradation conforming to Class A Concrete, Item No. 403S, "Concrete for Structures".

B. Concrete Strength

The concrete mix to be designed to produce a concrete with the following requirements:

Table 1: CONCRETE PAVEMENT		
Item	Test	Value
Entrained Air	Tex-416-A	3 to 6 percent
Water-Cement Ratio gal.(liter)/sack, Maximum		6.25 (23.66)
Sacks Cement, Minimum, 4 pounds (42.6 KG) ea		6 per cubic yard (7.85 per cubic meter)
Coarse Aggregate Factor		0.65 min - 0.85 max.
Compressive Strength after 7 Day, psi (kPa)	Tex-418-A	4000 (27,600)
Compressive Strength after 28 day, psi (kPa)	Tex-418-A	4500 (31,000)
Maximum Concrete Mix Temperature ^{o}F (^{o}C)		95 (35)
Retarder: Regular Concrete increase in time over 360S.7(3) , minutes, Maximum		60

Table 2: HIGH EARLY STRENGTH CONCRETE		
Item	Test	Value

Cement Type		III
Entrained Air	Tex-416-A	3 to 6 percent
Water-Cement Ratio gal. .(liter)/sack, Maximum		6.25 (23.66)
Sacks Cement, Minimum, 94 pounds (42.6 KG) ea		7 per (9.16 per cubic meter)
Coarse Aggregate Factor		0.65 min-0.85 max
Slump, inches (Centimeters)	Tex-415-A	1/2 to 2 (1.25 to 5.0)
Compressive Strength, after 24 hours, psi (kPa)	Tex-418-A	2,100 (14,500)
Compressive Strength, after 3 days, psi (kPa)	Tex-418-A	2,750 (19,000)
Compressive Strength, after 7 Days, psi (kPa)	Tex-418-A	4,500 (31,000)
Compressive Strength, after 28 Days, psi (kPa)	Tex-418-A	4,925 (34,000)
Maximum Concrete Mix, Temperature oF (oC)		95 (35)

The Contractor may submit a mix design using high range water reducing admixtures conforming to Item No. 405S, "Concrete Admixtures" in lieu of the concrete pavement mix specified and shall meet the following requirements:

Table 3: HIGH RANGE WATER REDUCING ADMIXTURES: SUPERPLASTERSIZER CONFORMING TO SPECIFICATION ITEM NO. 405S, "CONCRETE ADMIXTURES"		
Item	Test	Value
Entrained Air	Tex-416-A	3 to 6 percent

Water-Cement Ratio, (liter)//sack, Maximum		6.25
Sacks Cement, Minimum, 94 pounds (42.6 KG) ea		6 per cubic yard(7.85 per cubic meter)
Coarse Aggregate Factor		0.65 min. - 0.85 max.
Slump, inches (cms) before Admixture	Tex-415-A	1/2 to 2 (1.25 to 5)
Slump, Inches (cms) after Admixture	Tex-415-A	4 to 10 (2.5 to 25)
Compressive Strength, after 3 days, psi (kPa)	Tex-418-A	3,125 (21,500)
Compressive Strength, after 7 days, psi, (kPa)	Tex-418-A	4,500 (31,000)
Compressive l Strength, after 28 days, psi (kPa)	Tex-418-A	4,925 (34,000)
Maximum Concrete Mix, Temperature, °F (°C)		100 (37.8)
Retarder, Regular Concrete Over 360S.7C, Minutes, Maximum		120

Table 4: Over Design Required to Meet Compressive Strength Requirements1

Number Of Tests2,3	Standard Deviation, psi (mPa)				
	300 (2.06)	400 (2.75)	500 (3.44)	600 (4.13)	700 (4.82)
15	470 (3.24)	620 (4.27)	850 (5.85)	1,120 (7.71)	1,390 (9.57)
20	430 (2.96)	580 (3.99)	760 (5.23)	1,010 (6.95)	1,260 (8.67)
30 or more	400 (2.75)	530 (3.65)	670 (4.61)	900 (6.20)	1,130 (7.78)

Notes:

1. When designing the mix, add the tabulated amounts to the minimum design strength in Tables 1, 2 or 3.Maximum water-cement or water-cementitious ratio by weight

2. Number of tests of a concrete mixture used to estimate the standard deviation of a concrete production facility. Test of another mix within 1,000 psi (6.88 MPa) of the specified strength may be used.

3. If less than 15 prior tests are available, the overdesign should be 1,200 psi (8.26 MPa) for specified strengths from 3,000 to 5,000 psi (20.65 to 34.42 MPa) and 1,400 psi (9.64 MPa) for specified strengths greater than 5,000 psi (34.42 MPa).

High range water reducing admixtures shall be capable of maintaining the original slump until placement and screeding, which may be 2 hours, without the addition of water, additional admixture or other retempering or remixing techniques.

C. Workability of Concrete

Concrete shall be uniformly plastic, cohesive and workable. Workable concrete is defined as concrete which can be placed without honeycomb and without voids in the surface of the pavement after the specified finishing machine has been over a given area twice. Workability shall be obtained without producing a condition such that free water appears on the surface of the slab when being finished as specified. Where water appears on the surface of the concrete after finishing and this condition cannot be corrected by reasonable adjustment in the batch design, the bleeding to be immediately corrected by one of the following measures or a combination of two or more of the following listed measures:

1. Redesign of the batch.

2. Addition of mineral filler to fine aggregates.

3. Increase of cement content.

4. Use of an approved air entraining agent or approved admixture.

In the event that the measures taken do not eliminate the bleeding immediately, concrete placement operations will be suspended, as directed by the Engineer or designated representative, by placing a bulkhead or "header" as indicated and according to applicable requirements for intentional stoppage of placement of concrete under Item No. 360S, "Concrete Pavement" and will remain suspended until such time as additional trial mixes demonstrate that a non-bleeding batch design has been achieved. Failing to achieve a satisfactory laboratory batch design the Contractor will be required to use different materials and to submit samples thereof for additional trial mixes and pilot beams.

The mix will be designed with the intention of producing concrete, which will have a slump of 1 1/2 inches (3.8 cms). The slump shall not be less than 1/2 inch (1.25 cms) nor more than 2 inches (5 cms).

D. Mix Design

The Contractor shall be responsible for the design of the concrete mix. The mix design shall be prepared and sealed by a person qualified and experienced in such work. Establish proportions on the basis either of laboratory trial batches or of field experience with the materials to be employed.

When ice is used to lower the concrete temperature during hot weather concrete placement (Section 13 of Standard Specification Item No.410S, “Concrete Structures”), the Contractor shall furnish a mix design (Section 6 of Standard Specification Item No. 403S, “Concrete for Structures”) acceptable to the Engineer or designated representative for class of concrete specified. The addition of ice shall not exceed 50% of the total mix water weight.

Complete concrete mix design data shall be submitted to the Engineer or designated representative for approval at least 10 days before concrete placement begins. Submittal of the mix shall be accompanied by such test data and certifications as may be necessary to demonstrate compliance with specification requirements. Approval of this mix design shall in no way relieve the Contractor of responsibility for the quality of the concrete.

It shall also be the responsibility of the Contractor to determine and measure batch quantity of each ingredient, including water, not only for batch designs but for all concrete produced for the project, so that the mix conforms to these specifications.

Trial batches shall be made and tested using all the proposed ingredients prior to the placing of concrete and also when the aggregate and/or type, brand or source of cement or admixture is changed. When the brand and/or source of cement only is changed, the Engineer or designated representative may waive trial batches only if a prior record of satisfactory performance of the cement has been established.

Mix designs used successfully on previous or concurrent jobs may be approved by the Engineer or designated representative without trial batches if it is shown that there is no substantial change in any of the proposed ingredients.

The Contractor shall prepare a minimum of four concrete test beams of each mix design, cure and test two each at the age of 7 and 28 days. From these preliminary tests the water-cement ratio required to produce concrete of the specified strength will be selected by the Contractor for approval by the Engineer or designated representative. The Contractor may at any time present in writing a suggested mix design and if the Engineer or designated representative concurs with the suggested design, the Contractor shall conduct trial batches necessary to determine its acceptability under these specification requirements.

The Contractor shall furnish and operate the mixer approved for use on this project unless the concrete is to be furnished from a transit mix (ready-mix) plant. For mixing the concrete to be used in making the preliminary test specimens, a minimum 1 cubic yard (1 cubic meter) batch shall be mixed or a batch of sufficient size to afford proper mixing, whichever is the greater. In lieu of the above mixer and procedure, the Contractor may furnish a portable mixer of sufficient rated capacity to mix a minimum 3-sack batch; in which case, the batch mixed for the preliminary test not to be less than the rated capacity of the mixer furnished. A coating batch will be mixed prior to mixing for test beams.

No additional compensation to be allowed for equipment, materials or labor involved in making job mix design test specimens.

After the mix proportions and water-cement ratio required to produce concrete of the specified strength have been determined, placing of the concrete may be started. The strength of the concrete in the completed pavement will be determined by a minimum of four compressive strength test specimens made, cured with a minimum of two each tested at 7 and 28 days as provided in Texas DOT Bulletin C-11. Modifications of the mix design may be requested by the Contractor on basis of conformity of the strength of these test specimens with the requirements and intent of this specification.

Changes in the water-cement ratio and the mix design, including an increase in cement factor if necessary, will be made when the average 7 day and/or 28 day compressive strength of the concrete, as indicated by the last 10 compressive strength values obtained from tests of cylinders made from concrete of the same water-cement ratio, departs from the desired minimum average strength by more than 4 percent.

E. Construction Testing:

Straightedge surface testing to be carried out as prescribed above.

The Engineer shall take test cylinders for compressive strength values on a random basis. The comparative results shall consist of the average of 2 cylinders each at 7 and 28 days for regular concrete, High early strength concrete and high range water reducing admixture concrete. Tests shall be made for each 500 square yards constructed, in accordance with TxDOT Bulletin C-11. Additional tests may be taken as determined by the concrete placement conditions or for adequately determining the strength of concrete where the early opening of the pavement to traffic is dependent upon concrete strength tests. No extra compensation will be allowed for materials and work involved in fulfilling these requirements.

360S.6 Construction Methods

A. Preparation of Subgrade

Where stabilized subbase is not provided, the subgrade shall be excavated as required, all unstable or otherwise objectionable material removed and all holes, ruts and depressions filled with approved material and compacted. Rolling and sprinkling shall be performed when and to the extent required and the roadbed shall be completed to or above the plane of the typical sections, lines and grades indicated or as established by the Engineer or designated representative. The subgrade shall be proof rolled and any soft areas shall be repaired before the forms are placed. In the event that the proof rolled subgrade is exposed to rainfall or other conditions, which may soften the subgrade, corrective measures shall be taken and the subgrade shall be proof rolled again.

The subgrade planer shall be operated from approved forms immediately ahead of paving operations and the subgrade shall be finished to the exact section of the bottom of the pavement as indicated. Where traveling form pavers are used, the subgrade planer shall operate on a prepared track grade or be controlled by electronic sensors operating from a stringline that establishes line and grade. It shall be tested with the approved template, operated and maintained by the Contractor. The subgrade shall be maintained in a smooth, compacted condition in conformity with the required section and established grade until the pavement is placed and shall be kept thoroughly wetted down sufficiently in advance of placing any pavement to insure its being in a firm and moist condition for at least 2 inches (5 cms) below the prepared surface. Sufficient subgrade shall always be prepared in advance to insure satisfactory prosecution of the work.

No equipment or hauling shall be permitted on the prepared subgrade, except by special permission of the Engineer or designated representative, which will be granted only in exceptional cases and only where suitable protection in the form of 2-ply timber mats or other approved material is provided.

B. Placing and Removing Forms

The subgrade under the forms shall be firm and cut true to grade so that each form section when placed will be firmly in contact for its whole length and base width and exactly at the established grade. Any subgrade under the forms below established grade shall be corrected, using suitable material, placed, sprinkled and rolled as directed. Forms shall be staked with at least 3 pins for each 10-foot (3-meter) section. A pin shall be placed at each side of every joint. Form sections shall be tightly joined and keyed to prevent relative displacement. Forms shall be cleaned and oiled each time they are used.

Forms shall be set for a sufficient distance in advance of the point where concrete is being placed to permit a finished and approved subgrade length of not less than 300 feet (90 meters) ahead of the mixer. Conformity of the grade and alignment of forms shall be checked immediately prior to placing concrete and necessary corrections made by the Contractor. Where any form has been disturbed or any subgrade becomes unstable, the form shall be reset and rechecked. In exceptional cases, the Engineer or designated representative may require suitable stakes driven to the grade of the bottom of the forms to afford additional support. Sufficient stability of forms to support the equipment operated and to withstand its vibration without springing or settlement shall be required. If forms settle and/or deflect over 1/8 inch (3 mm) under finishing operations, paving operations shall be stopped and the forms shall be reset to line and grade.

Forms shall be leveled using cement-stabilized material containing not less than 1 1/2 sacks of cement per ton (1 2/3 sacks of cement per MG) of mix as placed. The aggregate gradation and water content shall be determined by the Contractor. The cement-stabilized material shall be sufficiently plastic to insure filling voids underneath the paving forms. Paving equipment will not to be permitted on the forms until the cement-stabilized material has cured for at least 12 hours.

Forms shall remain in place for not less than 8 hours after the concrete has been placed. Forms shall be carefully removed in such a manner that little or no damage will be done to the edge of the pavement. Any damage resulting from this operation shall be immediately repaired. After the forms have been removed, the ends of all joints shall be cleaned and any honeycombed areas pointed up with approved mortar and the surfaces protected with curing material conforming to Item No. 409S, "Membrane Curing".

Immediately after pointing is complete, the form trench, if used, shall be filled with granular material or earth from the shoulders in such manner as to shed water from rainfall and prevent curing material from washing away from the edge of pavement. On completion of the required curing, the subgrade or shoulders adjacent to the pavement shall be placed and compacted in condition to maintain drainage.

360S.7 Concrete Mixing and Placing

A. Mixing Methods

The concrete shall be mixed in a mixer conforming to the requirements of this item.

B. Mixing

The aggregates, mineral filler if required, cementitious materials and water shall be measured separately, introduced into the mixer and mixed for a period of not less than 50 seconds nor more than 90 seconds, measured from the time the last aggregate enters the drum to the time discharge of the concrete begins. The required water shall be introduced into the mixing drum during the first 15 seconds of mixing. The entire contents of the drum shall be discharged before any materials of the succeeding batch are introduced.

The Engineer or designated representative may increase the minimum mixing time to that necessary to produce thoroughly mixed concrete based on inspection or appropriate uniformity tests. The mixing time may be varied at any time as necessary to produce acceptable concrete.

If a central mixer is used, the concrete shall be discharged into the specified hauling equipment and delivered to the road site. If truck agitators are used, the concrete shall be continuously agitated at not less than 1 nor more than 6 rpm as directed by the Engineer or designated representative.

The maximum size of the concrete batch, absolute volume, shall not exceed 120 percent of the rated size of the mixer (40.8 cubic feet maximum batch for 34 cubic foot paver-1.2 cubic meter maximum batch for 1 cubic meter paver). Spilling of material from the mixer drum shall be corrected by reducing the size of the batch. Retempering or remixing of concrete will not be permitted.

The initial batch of concrete mixed after each time the mixer is washed out shall be enriched by additional mortar. The additional mortar shall be 1 sack of cement and 3 parts of sand.

When transit-mix (ready-mix) concrete is permitted, the batching plant shall meet the requirements of Item 403S, "Concrete for Structures".

C. Placement

Unless otherwise indicated, the concrete may be placed by using forms or by use of a slipform paver. Any concrete not placed as herein prescribed within 30 minutes after mixing shall be rejected and disposed of as directed except as provided otherwise herein. If in the opinion of the Engineer or designated representative, the temperature, wind and/or humidity conditions are such that the quality of concrete will not be adversely affected, the specified placing time may be extended by a maximum of 45 minutes. Concrete with high range water reducing admixture shall not be placed after the slump has dropped by 3 inches (7.5 cms) or more. Except by specific written authorization of the Engineer or designated representative, concrete shall not be placed when the temperature is below 40oF (4.5oC) and falling but may be placed when the temperature is above

35oF (1.7oC) and rising, the temperature being taken in the shade and away from artificial heat.

When the temperature of the air is above 85oF (29.4oC), an approved retarding agent will be required in concrete. The maximum temperature of all regular concrete placed shall not exceed 95oF (35.0oC), unless otherwise specified.

When concrete is being placed in cold weather, the Contractor shall have available a sufficient supply of an approved covering material to immediately protect concrete if the air temperature falls to 32oF (0oC) or below, before concrete has been placed 4 hours. Such protection shall remain in place during the period the temperature continues below 32oF (0oC) or for a period of not more than 5 days. Neither salt nor other chemical admixtures shall be added to the concrete to prevent freezing. The Contractor shall be responsible for the quality and strength of concrete under cold weather conditions and any concrete damaged by freezing shall be removed and replaced at the Contractor's expense. Concrete shall not be placed before sunrise and shall not be placed later than will permit finishing of the pavement during sufficient natural light.

Concrete shall be placed only on approved subgrade or subbase and unless otherwise indicated on the drawings, the full width of the pavement shall be constructed monolithically. The concrete shall be deposited on the subgrade or subbase in such manner as to require as little rehandling as possible. Where hand spreading is necessary, concrete shall be distributed to the required depth by use of shovels. The use of rakes will not be permitted. Workers will not be permitted to walk in the concrete with any earth or foreign material on their boots or shoes. The placing of concrete shall be rapid and continuous.

When the concrete is to be placed in separate lanes, the junction line shall not deviate from the true line more than 1/2 inch (1.25 cm) at any point and shall be finished as indicated on the drawings.

The mixer shall not be located on completed pavement, except as herein provided, but may be located on the subgrade of that lane of the pavement being constructed, as provided under "Preparation of Subgrade". When limited space, in the opinion of the Engineer or designated representative, requires operation of the mixer on completed pavement, the mixer may be so operated provided the concrete has attained the minimum average compressive strength required and provided suitable protection to the pavement in the form of 2 ply timber mats or otherwise approved material is provided.

Concrete shall be distributed to such depth that when consolidated and finished, the slab thickness indicated will be obtained at all points and the surface shall not, at any point, be below established grade. Special care shall be exercised in placing and spading concrete against forms and at all joints to prevent the forming of honeycombs and voids.

Concrete for the monolithic curbs shall be the same as for the pavement and if carried back from the paving mixer shall be placed within 20 minutes after being mixed. It may be placed from the separate mixer, if desired, but in any case must be placed while the pavement concrete is still plastic. When sawed joints are used, curbs shall be doweled as indicated and poured after sawing. Curbs doweled on and placed separately may be placed with an extrusion machine.

If a central mixer or batcher is used, the Contractor shall provide a system satisfactory to the Engineer or designated representative for determining that concrete delivered to the road meets the specified requirements for mixing and time of placing.

Unless otherwise indicated, 2 mixers or transit mixers will be required where the double strike off method is employed.

D. Reinforcing Steel and Joint Assemblies

All reinforcing steel, including steel, welded wire fabric reinforcement, tie bars, dowel bars and load transmission devices used in accordance with plan provisions shall be accurately placed and secured in position in accordance with details indicated on the drawings. Reinforcing bars shall be securely wired together at alternate intersections, following a pattern approved by the Engineer or designated representative and at all splices and shall be securely wired to each dowel intersected. When wire fabric is used, it shall replace only the longitudinal and transverse bars and shall be securely wired together at all splices and to each dowel intersected. When welded wire fabric is selected, the Contractor shall pour the lower half of the slab, place the welded wire fabric and place the remaining concrete. Tie bars shall be installed in the required position by the method and device indicated. Bar coating indicated and of material specified, shall be completed and the bars and coating shall be free of dirt or other foreign matter at the time of installation in the concrete.

Tightly adhered scale or rust which resists removal by vigorous wire brushing need not be removed except that excessive loss of section to the reinforcement due to rust shall be cause for rejection. Excessive loss of section shall be defined as loss of section to the extent that the reinforcement will no longer meet the physical requirements for the size and grade of steel specified.

Where indicated on the drawings, an assembly of parts at pavement joints, the assembly shall be completed, placed at required location and elevated and all parts rigidly secured in required position by the method and devices indicated on the drawings. Dowel bars shall be accurately installed in joint assemblies as indicated on the drawings, each parallel to the pavement surface and to the center line of the pavement and shall be rigidly secured in the required position by such means as indicated that will prevent their displacement during placing and finishing of the concrete. Unless specifically authorized by the Engineer or designated representative in writing, the load transmission devices shall be accurately installed in joint assemblies indicated, each unit vertical with its length parallel to the center line of the pavement and all units shall be rigidly secured in required position by such means as indicated that will prevent their displacement during placing and finishing of the concrete. Header boards, joint filler and other material used for forming joints shall be accurately notched to receive each load transmission device. All load transmission devices shall be free of rust and clean when installed in the concrete.

The Contractor has the option of substituting welded wire fabric in place of reinforcement bars. The welded wire fabric selected shall have an area and distribution of steel at least equal to the plan requirements. The Contractor shall

submit their proposed design to the Engineer for approval before any material is ordered.

If welded wire fabric is used, the entire width of the bottom layer of concrete shall be struck off to conform to the cross section and elevation indicated on the drawings. The reinforcement shall then be placed immediately upon the concrete, after which the top layer of concrete shall be placed, struck off and screeded. Any portion of the bottom layer of concrete which has been placed more than 15 minutes without being covered with the top layer of concrete shall be removed and replaced with freshly mixed concrete at the Contractor's expense.

E. Joints

1. General

All transverse and longitudinal joints when required in the pavement shall be of the types indicated and shall be at required location, on required alignment, in required relationship to tie bars and joint assemblies and in accordance with details indicated. When no transverse joints are indicated, joints shall not exceed 40 feet (13.1 meters). Such stakes, braces, brackets or other devices shall be used as necessary to keep the entire joint assembly in true vertical and horizontal position. Where concrete base is overlaid by asphaltic concrete, the joints to be prepared as specified herein, but joint sealing will not be required unless indicated.

If necessary for proper installation of the sealer, excessive spalling of the joint groove shall be repaired to the satisfaction of the Engineer.

Care shall be exercised during the construction of all joints to insure that the concrete sections are completely separated by an open joint or by the joint materials and to insure that the joints will be true to the outline indicated on the drawings. The Contractor shall install joint materials, which will function as a compatible system. Joint sealer shall not be placed where a bond breaker is present.

Green concrete or wet sawed joints are permitted provided the Contractor cleans the joint within 5 minutes after cutting with a 3000 psi (20.7 mPa) water blast followed by a minimum of 7 day cure and sand blast the saw cut immediately prior to placing joint sealer.

Dry sawed joints are permitted provided the Contractor sand blasts the saw cut immediately prior to placing joint sealer.

2. Expansion Joints

Transverse expansion joints shall be formed perpendicular to the centerline and surface of pavement and shall be constructed in accordance with the sequence of operations indicated on the drawings. After the transverse finishing machine and before the longitudinal finishing machine have passed over the joint, the Contractor shall test the joint filler for correctness of position and make any required adjustment in the position of the filler and shall install the joint seal space form as indicated on the drawings. After removal of the joint seal form as indicated on the drawings, the joint seal

space above the joint filler shall be thoroughly sandblasted or machine routed to remove all projecting concrete, laitance, dirt or foreign matter. The concrete faces of the joint seal space shall be left true to line and section throughout the entire length of the joint. On completion of curing of the pavement, the joint sealing filler of the type specified shall be placed as indicated. The faces of the joint seal space shall be clean and surface dry at the time joint sealing filler is placed. On completion of the joint seal, the pavement adjacent to the joint shall be left free of joint sealing material. The joint seal space shall be exactly above and not narrower than the joint filler with no concrete overhangings.

3. Weakened Plane Joints

Weakened plane joints shall consist of transverse contraction joints and longitudinal joints and shall be formed or sawed as indicated on the drawings. When the joints are sawed, the saw shall be power driven, shall be manufactured especially for the purpose of sawing concrete and shall be capable of performing the work. Saw blades shall be as indicated. Tracks adequately anchored, the chalk, string line or other approved methods shall be used to provide true alignment of the joints. The concrete saw shall be maintained in good operating condition and the Contractor shall keep a standby power saw on the project at all times when concrete operations are under way.

If membrane curing is used, the portion of the seal, which has been disturbed by sawing operations, shall be restored by the Contractor by spraying the areas with additional curing seal.

Forming, finishing and sealing of the joint seal space shall conform to this item, described above and details indicated on the drawings.

4. Contraction Joints

Transverse contraction joints shall be formed or sawed joints perpendicular to the centerline and surface of the pavement and shall be constructed by the method and in the sequence of operations as indicated. Where sawed joints are used, contraction joints at intervals indicated shall be sawed as soon as sawing can be accomplished without damage to the pavement and before 24 hours after the concrete has been placed, the exact time to be approved by the Engineer or designated representative. The remaining contraction joints shall be sawed in a uniform pattern as directed by the Engineer or designated representative and they shall be completed before uncontrolled cracking of the pavement takes place. All joints shall be completed before placing concrete in succeeding lanes and before permitting traffic to use the pavement.

5. Longitudinal Joints

Longitudinal joints shall be of the type or alternate types indicated and shall be constructed of specified materials in accordance with provisions indicated

on the drawings. Longitudinal joints shall be constructed accurately to required lines, shall be perpendicular to the pavement surface at the joint and the pavement surface over and adjacent to the joint shall be finished as specified on the drawings.

Longitudinal joints shall be sawed as soon as sawing can be accomplished without damage to the pavement. Sawing shall not cause damage to the pavement and the groove shall be cut with a minimum of spalling. No traffic (including construction traffic) shall be permitted on pavement until the longitudinal joint is cut.

6. Construction Joints

Intentional stoppage of the placing of the concrete shall be at either an expansion joint or at a weakened plane joint. The following provisions shall govern for each type of joint at which the placing of concrete is stopped:

a) When the placing of concrete is stopped at an expansion joint, the complete joint assembly shall be installed and rigidly secured in required position as indicated. A bulkhead of sufficient cross sectional area to prevent deflection, accurately notched to receive the load transmission devices or dowels, as the case may be, and shaped accurately to the cross section of the pavement shall be provided and installed as a back-up for the joint filler and rigidly secured in required position to permit accurate finishing of the concrete up to the joint. After the concrete has been finished to the joint, formation of the joint seal space and finishing of the joint shall be executed as specified herein and as indicated. The backup bulkhead shall remain in place until immediately prior to the time when concrete placement is resumed, then it shall be carefully removed in such manner that no element of the joint assembly will be disturbed. The exposed portion of the joint assembly shall be free of adherent concrete, dirt or other material at the time placing of concrete is resumed.

b) When placing of concrete is stopped at a weakened plane joint, all applicable provisions of paragraph (a) above shall apply in addition to the following requirement:

The face of the bulkhead adjoining the slab end shall be notched and grooved to fit the exposed half section of the joint assembly and shall be shaped to form the slab end at the center of the joint as indicated on the drawings. The 1/2 width of joint seal space may be formed by a strip of required section placed and removed as indicated for construction of transverse contraction joints. The Contractor shall have available a bulkhead shaped to section of the pavement. This bulkhead must be drilled to permit the continuation of all longitudinal reinforcing steel through the construction joint and shall be of sufficient section and strength to prevent deflection.

c) When load transmission devices are not provided in the design, intentional stopping of placement of concrete shall occur in the middle of a slab. Provisions shall be made to provide a bulkhead, which will

accommodate tie bars of the same length, size and spacing as tie bars used for the longitudinal joints. When the concrete placement is resumed, the bulkhead shall be removed without bending tie bars or damaging the concrete. The joint seal space and sealer shall be the same as for longitudinal joints.

Immediately upon the unintended stoppage of the placing of concrete, the Contractor shall place the available concrete to a line and install the above-described bulkhead at right angles to the centerline of the pavement, perpendicular to the surface and at the required elevation. Concrete shall be placed and finished to this bulkhead. Any concrete remaining on the subgrade ahead shall be removed and disposed of as directed by the Engineer or designated representative. When placing of concrete is resumed before the concrete has set to the extent that the concrete will stand on removal of the bulkhead, the new concrete shall be rodded with the first. An edge created by a construction joint of this type shall have a joint seal space and shall be sealed as required for contraction joints.

F. Joint Sealers

1. Class 2 Material

This material shall conform to Standard Specification Item No. 313S, ""Cleaning and/or Sealing Joints and Cracks (Asphaltic Concrete).

For placement in vertical joints (curb faces, etc.) either of the following procedures may be used.

a) An amount of the mixed material may be set aside until partial curing has taken place and carefully trowelled into the joint with a suitable tool.

b) The portion of the joint in the roadway shall be poured and cured. The vertical curb faces shall then be taped or formed and the material poured into the vertical joint from the top.

2. Class 5 Material

This material together with backer rods shall be applied as indicated in accordance with manufacturer's recommendations.

G. Asphalt Board

Premolded materials, wherever used, shall be anchored to the concrete on one side of the joint by means of copper wire or nails not lighter than No. 12 B and S gage. Such anchorage shall be sufficient to overcome the tendency of the material to fall out of the joint. The Contractor shall not contaminate joints to receive Class 5 Joint Material with asphalt from the asphalt board.

H. Curbs

The curb shall be constructed in lengths equal to the adjoining pavement slab lengths and expansion joints shall be provided in the curb opposite each transverse expansion joint in the pavement. Expansion joint material shall be of the same thickness, type and quality as indicated for the pavement and shall be of the section as indicated for the curb. All expansion joints shall be carried through the curb, sidewalk and retaining walls when these items are indicated.

When sawed joints are provided for the pavement, the curb placement shall be delayed until all transverse joints have been sawed. To provide bond for the curb, dowel bars shall be placed as indicated on the drawings, while the pavement concrete is still plastic.

Weakened plane joints shall be formed in monolithic curbs at a spacing to coincide with the joints in the concrete pavement. The joints shall be formed by inserting in the curb an asphaltic board strip cut to conform to the shape of the curb. When the concrete is sufficiently set, the joint on the top and face of curb shall be grooved with an approved type of grooving tool.

A finish coat of mortar shall be applied on the exposed surfaces of the monolithic curbs. The mortar shall be composed of 1 part of Portland Cement and 2 parts of fine aggregate. A mortar coat will not be required for extruded curbs.

The curb face, lower radius and top of curb shall be plastered with the sand-cement mortar. The mortar shall be applied with a template or "mule" made to conform to the curb dimensions as indicated. All exposed surfaces of the curb shall be finished with a steel trowel and brushed to a smooth and uniform surface. The mortar finish as required shall be included in the unit price bid for this item.

I. Machine Finishing

All concrete pavement shall be finished mechanically with approved self-propelled machines, except as herein provided. Hand finishing will be permitted on the transition from a crowned section to a superelevated section without crown on curves, on straight line superelevation sections less than 300 feet (91.4 meters) in length, on that portion of a widened pavement outside normal pavement width and on sections where the pavement width is not uniform, isolated, narrow in width or required monolithic widths are greater than that of available finishing machines.

Machine finishing of pavement shall include the use of power-driven vibrators, power-driven transverse strike off and screed or such alternate equipment as may be substituted and approved under this item.

All concrete pavement shall be consolidated by a mechanical vibrator. As soon as concrete has been spread between the forms, the approved mechanical vibrator shall be operated to consolidate the concrete and remove all voids. Hand manipulated vibrators shall be used for areas not covered by the mechanical vibratory unit.

The transverse finishing machine shall first be operated to compact and finish pavement to the required section and grade, without surface voids. The machine shall be operated over each area as many times and at such intervals as directed. At least 2 trips will be required and the last trip over a given area shall be a

continuous run of not less than 40 feet (12.2 meters). After completion of finishing with the transverse finishing machine, a transverse drag float may be used.

The consistency of the concrete as placed should allow completion of finishing operations without the addition of water to the surface. When field conditions are such that additional moisture is needed for the final concrete surface finishing operation, the required water shall be applied to surface by fog spray only and shall be held to a minimum.

After finishing is complete and the concrete still workable, the surface shall be tested by the Contractor for trueness with an approved 10 foot (3.05 meter) straightedge. The straightedge shall be operated from the side of the pavement, placed parallel to the pavement centerline and passed across the slab to reveal any high spots or depressions. The straightedge shall be advanced along the pavement in successive stages of not more than 1/2 its length. Practically perfect contact of the straightedge with the surface will be required and the pavement shall be leveled to this condition, in order to insure conformity with the surface test required below after the pavement has fully hardened. Any correction of the surface required shall be accomplished by adding concrete if required and by operating the longitudinal float over the area. The surface test with the straightedge shall then be repeated.

For one lane pavement placement and uniform widening, the equipment for machine finishing of concrete pavement shall be as directed by the Engineer or designated representative but shall not exceed requirements of these specifications.

After completion of the straightedge operation, as soon as construction operations permit, texture shall be applied with 1/8 inch (3 mm) wide metal tines with clear spacing between the tines being not less than 1/4 inch (6.3 mm)nor more than 1/2 inch (12.7 mm).

If approved by the Engineer or designated representative, other equipment and methods may be used, provided that a surface texture meeting the specified requirements is obtained. The texture shall be applied transversely. It is the intent that the average depth resulting from the number of tests directed by the Engineer or designated representative be not less than 0.060 inch (1.52 mm) with a minimum texture depth of 0.050 inch (1.27 mm) for any one test when tested in accordance with TxDOT Test Method Tex-436-A. Should the texture depth fall below that intended, the finishing procedures shall be revised to produce the desired texture.

1. Emergency Procedures

   The Contractor shall have available at all times hand rakes with tines for the purpose of providing textures in the event of equipment breakdown.

   The Contractor also shall have available a conventional garden spray type can containing a commercially available monomolecular film compound. This shall be applied in the case of equipment breakdown or other emergencies to prevent the pavement from drying too rapidly. The use of this product will give the Contractor additional time to provide adequate texturing.

After completion of texturing and about the time the concrete becomes hard, the edge of the slab and joints shall be carefully finished with an edger and the pavement shall be left smooth and true to line.

J. Hand Finishing

Hand finishing shall be resorted to only in those conditions provided for above and upon specific authorization by the Engineer or designated representative. When hand finishing is permitted, concrete shall be struck off with an approved strike off screed to such elevation that when consolidated and finished the surface of the pavement to conform to the required section and grade. The strike template shall be moved forward with a combined transverse and longitudinal motion in the direction work is progressing, maintaining the template in contact with the forms and maintaining a slight excess of material in front of the cutting edge. The Concrete shall then be tamped with an approved tamping template to compact the concrete thoroughly and eliminate surface voids and the surface screed to required section.

After completion of a strike off, consolidation and transverse screeding, a hand-operated longitudinal float shall be operated to test and level the surface to the required grade.

Workers shall operate the float from approved bridges riding on the forms and spanning the pavement. The longitudinal float shall be held in contact with the surface and parallel to the centerline and operated with short longitudinal strokes while being passed from one side of the pavement to the other. If contact with the pavement is not made at all points, additional concrete shall be placed, if required and screed and the float shall be used to produce a satisfactory surface. Care shall be exercised to keep the ends of the float from digging into the surface of the pavement. After a section has been smoothed so that the float maintains contact with the surface at all points in being passed from one side to the other, the bridges may be moved forward half the length of the float and the operations repeated.

Other operations and surface tests shall be as required for machine finishing.

K. Surface Testing:

After the concrete has been placed 12 hours or more, the Engineer or designated representative will test the surface of the pavement with a 10-foot (3.05 meter) straightedge placed parallel to the centerline. Unless specified otherwise, the surface shall not vary from the straightedge by more than 1/16 inch per foot (5 mm per meter) from the nearest point of contact and in no case shall the maximum ordinate from a straightedge to the pavement be greater than 1/8 inch (3 mm). Any high spots causing a departure from the straightedge in excess of that specified shall be ground down by the Contractor to meet the surface test requirements. Where the texture of the pavement is removed by extensive grinding, the texture shall be restored by grooving the concrete to meet the surface finishing specifications.

L. Curing

All concrete pavement shall be cured by protecting it against loss of moisture for a period of not less than 72 hours from the beginning of the curing operations. Immediately after finishing operations have been completed, the entire surface of the newly laid concrete shall be covered and cured in accordance with the requirements specified for whichever of the following methods the Contractor may elect. Newly laid concrete base to be overlaid by asphaltic concrete shall not be cured by "Membrane Curing" and surfaces not to be overlaid by asphaltic concrete shall not be cured by "Asphalt Curing". In all cases in which curing requires the use of water, the curing shall have prior right to water supply or supplies. Failure to provide sufficient cover material of the type the Contractor elects to use, failure to maintain saturation in wet curing methods, lack of water to adequately take care of both curing and other requirements or other failures to comply with curing requirements shall be cause for immediate suspension of concreting operations. The covering material used in curing shall be removed as necessary to saw joints or to comply with the requirements for "Surface Test". The concrete surface shall be maintained wet with a water spray if indicated and the covering material replaced immediately on completion of sawing and testing and any required surface correction.

1. Waterproofed Paper Curing

Immediately after the finishing of the surface has been completed and the concrete has taken its initial set, it shall be wetted with water applied in the form of a fine spray and covered with waterproofed paper so placed and weighted as to cause it to remain in intimate contact with the surface. Waterproofed paper used for the curing of concrete pavement shall be of a type and quality approved by the Engineer. It shall be sufficiently strong and tough to permit its use under the conditions existing on street paving work without being torn or otherwise rendered unfit for the purpose during the curing period. The paper covering shall be maintained in place continuously for not less than the specified curing period.

The waterproofed paper shall be prepared to form blankets of sufficient width to cover the entire surface and both edges of the pavement slab and such blankets shall not be more than 60 feet in length. All joints in the blankets occasioned by joining paper sheets shall lap not less than 5 inches (12.7 cms) and shall be securely sealed with asphalt cement having a melting point of approximately 180o F (82.2 oC). Blankets shall be placed to secure an overlap of at least 12 inches (30.5 cms) and this lap securely weighted to form a closed joint.

The waterproofed paper blankets shall be adequately weighted to prevent displacement or billowing due to wind and the paper folded down over the side of the pavement shall be secured by a continuous bank of earth. Plowing of this windrow into place will not be permitted.

All tears or holes appearing in the paper during the curing period shall be immediately repaired by cementing patches over such defects. It shall be the Contractor's responsibility to prevent damage to paper blankets, which would affect their serviceability and effectiveness as a concrete curing method. Blankets may be rejected by the Engineer or designated

representative at any time if it appears they do not provide an airtight covering.

Paper blankets rejected on account of pinholes or minor tears may be continued in service by folding the blanket over lengthwise, first thoroughly spraying 1/2 the blanket with the asphalt cement used for seams. The 2 thicknesses shall be firmly pressed together and well cemented. Blankets shall be of a width sufficient to cover the pavement surface and both edges. Doubled blankets may be rejected for the same cause as provided for single blankets. All paper blankets rejected by the

Engineer shall be immediately marked by the Contractor for identification and then destroyed or stored entirely separate from approved blankets.

No walking on paper shall be permitted at any time and, in locations where pedestrian traffic cannot be entirely controlled, the Contractor shall provide walkways and barricades or shall substitute other permissible curing methods on such sections of pavement.

2. Polyethylene Film Curing

Immediately after the finishing of the surface has been completed and the concrete has taken its initial set, it shall be wetted with water applied in the form of a fine spray and covered with the polyethylene film so placed and weighted as to cause it to remain in intimate contact with the surface. The polyethylene film covering shall be maintained in place continuously for not less than the specified curing period.

The film shall be prepared to form blankets of sufficient width to cover the entire surface and both edges of the pavement slab. All joints in the blankets occasioned by joining film sheets shall lap not less than 12 inches (30.5 cms). All joints shall be sealed in a manner acceptable to the Engineer or designated representative to provide a moisture-proof lap.

The polyethylene film blankets shall be adequately weighted to prevent displacement or billowing due to wind and the film folded down over the side of the pavement shall be secured by a continuous bank of earth. Plowing of this windrow into place not to be permitted.

All tears or holes appearing in the polyethylene film during the curing period shall be immediately repaired by placing acceptable moisture proof patches over such defects or by replacing the blankets. It shall be the Contractor's responsibility to prevent damage to the film blankets, which would affect their serviceability and effectiveness as a concrete curing method. Blankets may be rejected by the Engineer at any time if it appears they do not provide an airtight covering.

Polyethylene film blankets rejected on account of pinholes or minor tears may be continued in service when repaired to an airtight condition. All polyethylene film blankets rejected by the Engineer or designated representative shall be immediately marked by the Contractor for identification and then destroyed or stored entirely separate from approved blankets.

Should the film blanket be damaged or torn for any cause during the first 72 hours of the curing period such damage shall be repaired immediately.

3. Membrane Curing

Immediately after the finishing of pavement has been completed and after the free surface moisture has disappeared, the pavement shall be sprayed uniformly with a curing compound. Membrane curing shall conform to Standard Specification Item No. 409S, "Membrane Curing", Type 2 white pigmented. Should the film of compound be damaged from any cause before the expiration of 72 hours after original application, the damaged portions shall be repaired with additional compound. Unless otherwise indicated on the drawings, membrane curing shall be used when the concrete (except that concrete to be used as a base) is placed with a slip form paver.

4. Asphalt Curing

Where emulsified asphalt is used for curing concrete base, the material shall conform to Item No. 301S, "Asphalts, Oils and Emulsions", for the type and grade shown on the drawings. The rate of application may vary between the limits of 1 gallon per 180 square feet and 1 gallon per 90 square feet (1 liter per 4.4 square meters and 1 liter per 2.2 square meters). The rate of application will be determined by the Engineer or designated representative, after observation of sections where amounts varying between the above limits have been applied. If it is found necessary to add water to the emulsion for the proper distribution through the spray, this may be done upon approval of the Engineer or designated representative. When the emulsion is diluted with water the amount of the applied mixture shall be increased to give a coverage of the original emulsion between the limits as set out herein. Care shall be taken to properly mix the emulsion and water and to keep the mixture well agitated during application.

M. Protection of Pavement

The Contractor shall erect and maintain the barricades indicated on the drawings and such other standard and approved devices as will exclude public traffic and traffic of the Contractor's employees and agents from the newly placed pavement for a minimum of 14 days. Portions of the roadway or crossings of the roadbed required to be maintained open for use by traffic shall not be obstructed by above required barricades. Crossings of the pavement indicated on the drawings or by construction sequence, during the period prior to opening to traffic as herein indicated, shall be provided with an adequate and substantial bridge approved by the Engineer or designated representative.

Curb shall be backfilled to the full height of the concrete, tamped and sloped as indicated on the drawings or as directed by the Engineer. The top 4 inches (10 cms) of backfill shall be of clean, friable soil capable of supporting plant life. This material shall also be free of stones and all other debris.

N. Opening Pavement to Traffic

The pavement shall be closed to traffic, including vehicles of the Contractor, until the concrete is at least 14 days old and has attained an average compressive strength acceptable to the Engineer or designated representative. This period of closure to traffic may be extended if, in the opinion of the Engineer or designated representative, weather or other conditions make it advisable to provide an extension of the time of protection.

At the end of the 14 day period and as long thereafter as ordered by the Engineer or designated representative and if so desired by the Contractor, the pavement may be opened for use by vehicles of the Contractor provided the gross weight (vehicle plus load) of such vehicles does not exceed 14,000 pounds (6350 KGs). Such opening, however, shall in no manner relieve the Contractor from responsibility for the Contractor's work. On those sections of the pavement thus opened to traffic, all joints shall first be sealed, the pavement cleaned and topsoil placed against the pavement edges or behind the curb where turf or vegetation is to be established before permitting vehicles thereon.

After the concrete in any section is 14 days old or as long thereafter as ordered by the Engineer, such section of pavement may be opened to all traffic indicated on the drawings or when so directed by the Engineer or designated representative. On those sections of the pavement thus opened to traffic, all joints shall first be sealed, the pavement cleaned and 4 inches (10 cms) of top soil placed against the pavement edges and all other work performed as required for the safety of traffic. Such opening, however, shall in no manner relieve the Contractor from responsibility for the Contractor's work.

When High Early Strength Concrete, resulting from the use of Type III cement as indicated on the drawings is used, the pavement may be opened to all traffic after the concrete is 7 days old or as long thereafter as ordered by the Engineer or designated representative, subject to the same provisions governing the opening after 14 days as above indicated.

Where the Contractor desires to move any equipment not licensed for operation on public streets, on or across any pavement opened to traffic, the Contractor shall protect the pavement from damage by means of 2 ply timber mats of 2 inch (5 cm) stock or runways of heavier material laid on a layer of earth, all as approved by the Engineer or designated representative.

1. Emergency Opening to Traffic

   The Engineer or designated representative may require the opening of pavement to traffic prior to the minimum time specified above under conditions of emergency, which in the Engineer's or designated representative's opinion require such action in the interest of the public. In no case will the Engineer or designated representative order opening of the pavement to traffic within less than 72 hours after the last concrete in the section is placed. The Contractor shall remove all obstructing materials, place earth against pavement edges and perform other work involved in providing for the safety of traffic as required by the Engineer or designated representative in ordering emergency opening. Orders for emergency opening of the pavement to traffic will be issued by the Engineer or designated representative in writing.

360S.8 Penalty for Deficient Pavement Thickness or Strength

The adjustment in unit prices provided for in this item will apply only when measurement for payment is by the square yard.

It is the intent of this specification that the pavement be constructed in strict conformity with the thickness, strength and typical sections indicated on the drawings. Where any pavement is found not so constructed, the following rules relative to adjustment of payment for acceptable pavement and to replacement of faulty pavement shall govern.

A. Pavement

The pavement will be core drilled after any grinding operations have been completed for surface corrections prior to final acceptance. Locations of core tests may be selected by the Engineer or designated representative; however, spacing interval for core tests, as specified herein, shall be maintained. The thickness of the pavement will be determined by measurement of the cores in accordance with TxDOT Test Method Tex-424-A.

For the purpose of establishing an adjusted unit price for pavement, units to be considered separately are defined as 1000 linear feet of pavement in each traffic lane starting at the end of the pavement bearing the smaller station number. The last unit in each lane shall be 1000 feet plus the fractional part of 1000 feet remaining. Traffic lane width will be as shown on typical sections and pavement design standards.

For the purpose of establishing an adjusted unit price for ramps, widening, acceleration and deceleration lanes that are machine placed, isolated pavements of traffic lane width but less than 1000 feet in length and other areas designated by the Engineer or designated representative, units will be considered separately and are defined as 1000 square yards of pavement or fraction thereof.

One core will be taken at the location selected by the Engineer or designated representative or at random in each unit. When the measurement of the core from any unit is not deficient more than 0.2 inches from the plan thickness, full payment will be made. When the measurement of the core from any unit is deficient more than 0.2 inch but not more than 0.75 inch from the plan thickness, 2 additional cores will be taken from the unit and the average of the 3 cores determined. The 2 additional cores from any 1000-foot unit will be taken at intervals of not less than 300 feet. The 2 additional cores from any 1000 square yard unit will be taken at locations such that the pavement in the unit will be well represented. If the average measurement of these 3 cores is not deficient more than 0.2 inches from the plan thickness, full payment will be made. If the average thickness of the 3 cores is deficient by more than 0.2 inch but not more than 0.75 inch from the indicated thickness, an adjusted unit price as provided below will be paid for the areas represented by these cores.

In calculating the average thickness of the pavement, measurements which are in excess of the specified thickness by more than 0.2 inch will be considered as the specified thickness plus 0.2 inch and measurements which are less than the

specified thickness by more than 0.75 inch will be considered as the specified thickness less 0.75 inch.

When the measurement of any core is less than the specified thickness by more than 0.75 inch, the actual thickness of pavement in this area will be determined by taking additional cores at 10 foot intervals parallel to the center line in each direction from the deficient core until, in each direction, a core is taken which is not deficient by more than 0.75 inch. Exploratory cores for deficient thickness will not be used in averages for adjusted unit price. Exploratory cores are to be used only to determine the length of pavement in a unit that is to be left in place without pay and/or removed and replaced as provided herein.

For new Concrete Pavement roadways, and for Concrete Pavement rehabilitation and overlay projects, if cracks develop in the pavement surface within the one year warranty period, the Contractor shall seal the cracks in accordance Standard Specification Item No. 313S, "Cleaning and/or Sealing Joints and Cracks (Asphaltic Concrete), or perform other corrective measures as directed by the Engineer. Payment for this work will be included in the unit price bid for Concrete Pavement, unless included as a separate pay item in the Contract.

For new Concrete Pavement roadways constructed in accordance with the plans and specifications, if cracks greater than or equal to 1/4 inch in width develop in the pavement surface within the one year warranty period, complete replacement of pavement sections as directed by the Engineer shall be performed by the Contractor at no additional expense to the City.

Irrespective of an acceptable overall project average for any or all of the Pay-Adjustment Acceptance Factors, limited substandard portions of the work, as determined by the Engineer or designated representative, shall be remedied or removed and replaced to the satisfaction thereof.

B. Price Adjustments

After any grinding or milling operations have been completed to meet the surface-testing requirement of this specification, if average thickness of pavement is deficient in thickness by more than 0.2 inch, but not more than 0.75 inch, payment will be made at an adjusted price as specified in the following table:

Concrete Pavement Deficiency	
Deficiency in Thickness Determined by Cores, Inches	Proportional Part of Contract Price Allowed
0.00 to 0.20	100 percent
0.21 to 0.30	80 percent

0.31 to 0.40	72 percent
0.41 to 0.50	68 percent
0.51 to 0.75	57 percent

Any area of pavement found deficient in thickness by more than 0.75 inch but not more than 1 inch or 1/8 of the indicated thickness, whichever is greater, shall be evaluated by the Engineer. If, in the judgment of the Engineer, the area of such deficiency should not be removed and replaced, there will be no payment for the area retained. If, in the judgment of the Engineer, the area of such deficiency warrants removal, the area shall be removed and replaced at the Contractor's entire expense, with concrete of the thickness indicated on the drawings.

Any area of pavement found deficient in thickness by more than 1 inch or more than 1/8 of the indicated thickness, whichever is greater, shall be removed and replaced, at the Contractor's entire expense, with concrete of the thickness indicated on the drawings.

No additional payment over the Contract unit price will be made for any pavement of a thickness exceeding that indicated on the drawings.

If the average compressive strength based on concrete test cylinders at 28 days is less than the specified minimum strength of the concrete, then payment will be made at an adjusted price as specified in the following table.

Pay Adjustment Factor for Deficient Compressive Strength	
Ratio of Average Strength from Test Cylinders to Specified Minimum Compressive Strength both at 28 Days	Proportional Part of Contract Price Allowed
More then 0.95	100 percent
0.90 to 0.95	85 percent
0.85 to 0.90	70 percent
0.80 to 0.85	60 percent
Less than 0.80	0 percent (Remove & Replace)

When, in the opinion of the Engineer or designated representative, the compressive strength test results appear unrepresentative, additional testing of field cores may be authorized. To be considered acceptable for consideration the field cores shall be acquired, properly handled and tested in accordance with ASTM C 42/C 42M, "Standard Test Method for Obtaining and Testing Drilled Cores and Sawed Beams of Concrete" within 45 days of the original concrete placement date. The retesting will be at the expense of the Contractor and the

results of the retesting shall be averaged with the results of the original testing. If the results of retesting indicate that the original test results were erroneous in the opinion of the Engineer or designated representative, the original test results will be discarded. In the instance of erroneous original test results the subsequent first set of retests will be at the expense of the City of Austin.

When, in the opinion of the Engineer or designated representative, the concrete compressive strength is deemed unacceptable for the intended use of the pavement, the concrete shall be removed and replaced to the limits indicated by test results.

360S.9 Measurement

A. When indicated, concrete pavement will be measured by the square yard of surface area of completed and accepted work. The surface area shall be so measured to also include that portion of pavement slab extending beneath the curb. When concrete pavement is to be measured by the square yard and monolithic curb is required, measurements for "Monolithic Curb" will be by the linear foot complete in place.

B. When indicated on the drawing, concrete pavement, including monolithic curb when required, will be measured by the cubic yard of absolute volume of materials entering the mixture.

360S.10 Payment

The work performed and materials furnished as prescribed by this item and measured as provided under "Measurement" will be paid for at the unit price bid for "Concrete Pavement", of the depth indicated on the drawings, "Concrete Pavement (High Early Strength)" of the depth indicated on the drawings and "Monolithic Curb" of the type indicated on the drawings (when pavement is measured by the square yard), as required or adjusted unit price for pavement of deficient thickness as provided under "Deficient Pavement Thickness", which price shall be full compensation for shaping and fine grading the roadbed, including furnishing and applying all water required; for furnishing, loading and unloading, storing, hauling and handling all concrete ingredients, including all freight and royalty involved; for placing and adjusting forms, including supporting material or preparing track grade; for mixing, placing, finishing, sawing, cleaning and sealing joints and curing all concrete; for furnishing and installing all reinforcing steel; for furnishing all materials for sealing joints and placing longitudinal, expansion and weakened plane joints, including all steel dowel caps and load transmission devices required and wire and devices for placing, holding and supporting steel bars, load transmission devices and joint filler material in proper position, for coating steel bars where complete the work.

Excavation required by this item in the preparation of the subgrade and for completion of the parkway will be measured and paid for in accordance with provisions governing the Items of "Street Excavation" and "Borrow", respectively, with provision that yardage

to be measured and paid for once only, regardless of manipulations involved. Measurement of subgrade excavation for payment shall be limited to a total width of that of pavement plus 1 foot on each side.

Sprinkling and rolling required for the compaction of the rough subgrade in advance of fine grading will be measured and paid for as indicated in the governing items of excavation. Maintenance of a moist condition of the subgrade in advance of fine grading and concrete placing will not be paid for directly but shall be included in the unit price bid, as provided above.

Payment will be made under one of the following:

Pay Item No.	360S-A:	__In. Concrete Pavement	Per Square Yard.
Pay Item No.	360S-AH:	__In. Concrete Pavement (High Early Strength)	Per Square Yard.
Pay Item No.	360S-AS:	__In. Concrete Pavement (High Range Water Reducing Admixture)	Per Square Yard.
Pay Item No.	360S-B:	Monolithic Curb	Per Linear Foot.
Pay Item No.	360S-C:	__Concrete Pavement Including Monolithic Curb	Per Cubic Yard.

End

SPECIFIC CROSS REFERENCE MATERIALS
Standard Specification Item 360S, "Concrete Pavement"

City of Austin Standard Specification Items

Designation	Description
Item No. 301S	Asphalts, Oils and Emulsions
Item No. 313S	Cleaning and/or Sealing Joints and Cracks (Asphaltic Concrete)
Item No. 403S	Concrete for Structures
Item No. 405S	Concrete Admixtures
Item No. 410S	Concrete Structures
Item No. 411S	Surface Finishes for Concrete
Item No. 413S	Cleaning and/or Sealing Joints and Cracks (PCC)

American Society for Testing and Materials, ASTM

Designation	Description
ASTM C 42/C 42M and	Standard Test Method for Obtaining and Testing Drilled Cores Sawed Beams of Concrete"
ASTM A 82	Specification for Steel Wire, Plain, for Concrete Reinforcement
ASTM A 184	Specification for Fabricated Deformed Steel Bar Mats for Concrete Reinforcement
ASTM A 185	Specification for Steel Welded Wire Fabric, Plain, for Concrete Reinforcement
ASTM A 496	Specification for Steel Wire, Deformed, for Concrete Reinforcement
ASTM A 497	Specification for Steel Welded Wire Fabric, Deformed, for Concrete Reinforcement

ASTM A 615 Specification for Deformed and Plain Billet-Steel Bars, for Concrete Reinforcement

ASTM A 616 Specification Rail-Steel Deformed and Plain Bars for Concrete Reinforcement

ASTM C 94 Specification for Ready-Mixed Concrete

ASTM C 150 Specification for Portland Cement

ASTM C 156 Test Method for Water Retention by Concrete Curing Materials

ASTM D 2240 Test Method for Rubber Property-Durameter Hardness

ASTM D 882, Method A Test Methods for Tensile Properties of Thin Plastic Sheeting

Texas Department of Transportation: Publications

Designation	Description
Bulletin C-11	Construction Bulletin

Texas Department of Transportation: Manual of Testing Procedures

Designation	Description
TEX-203-F	Sand Equivalent Test
TEX-401-A	Sieve Analysis of Fine and Coarse Aggregate
TEX-406-A	Mineral Finer than 75 µm (No. 200) Sieve in Mineral Aggregates (Decantation Test for Concrete Aggregates)
TEX-408-A	Organic Impurities in Fine Aggregate for Concrete
TEX-410-A	Abrasion of Coarse Aggregate Using The Los Angeles Machine
TEX-411-A	Soundness of Aggregate by Use of Sodium Sulfate or Magnesium Sulfate

TEX-413-A	Determination of Deleterious Materials in Mineral Aggregate
TEX-415-A	Slump of Portland Cement Concrete
TEX-416-A	Air Content of Freshly-Mixed Concrete by the Pressure Method
Tex-424-A	Obtaining and Testing Drilled Cores of Concrete
Tex-436-A	Measurement of Texture Depth by the Sand Patch Method
Tex 418-A	Compressive Strength of Cylindrical Concrete
Tex-524-C	Testing Premolded Joint Filler for Concrete
Tex-612	Acid Insoluble Residue

Texas Department of Transportation: Departmental Material Specifications

Designation	Description
DMS 8900	Fly Ash

American Association of State Highway & Transportation Officials, AASHTO Standard

Designation	Description
Method T 26	Quality of Water to be Used in Concrete

RELATED CROSS REFERENCE MATERIALS
Standard Specification Item 360S, "Concrete Pavement"

Texas Department of Transportation: Standard Specifications for Construction and Maintenance of Highways, Streets, and Bridges

Designation	Description
Item 360	Concrete Pavement

Item 420	Concrete Structures
Item 421	Hydraulic Cement Concrete
Item 427	Surface Finishes for Concrete
Item 431	Pneumatically Placed Concrete
Item 520	Weighing and Measuring Equipment

Texas Department of Transportation: Departmental Material Specifications

Designation	Description
DMS-4650	Hydraulic Cement Concrete Curing Materials and Evaporation Retardants"
DMS-6100	Epoxy and Adhesives

American Society for Testing and Materials, ASTM

Designation	Description
ASTM C 685	Concrete Made By Volumetric Batching and Continuous Mixing
ASTM C-1260	Standard Test Method for Potential Alkali Reactivity of Aggregates
ASTM D-512	Test Methods for Chloride Ion in Water
ASTM D-516	Test Methods for Sulfate Ion in Water
ASTM D-4191	Test Method for Sodium in Water by Atomic Absorption
ASTM D-4192	Test Method for Potassium Water by Atomic Absorption

American Concrete Institute, ACI

Designation	Description

ACI 211.1 Standard Practice for Selecting Proportions for Normal, Heavyweight, and Mass Concrete

Texas Department of Transportation: Manual of Testing Procedures

Designation	Description
TEX-418-A	Compressive Strength of Cylindrical Concrete Specimens

Current Version: September 26, 2012 Previous Versions: 11/13/07, 09/14/05, 09/30/87

Item No. 401S
Structural Excavation and Backfill

401S.1 Description

This item shall govern the excavation for placement of structures, except pipe sewers, the disposal of such excavated material and the backfill around completed structures to the level of the original ground or grade indicated on the Drawings. The work shall include all necessary pumping or bailing, sheathing, drainage, and the construction and removal of any required cofferdams. Unless otherwise indicated on the Drawings, the work included hereunder shall provide for the removal of old structures or portions thereof (abutments, buildings, foundations, wingwalls, piers, etc.), trees and all other obstructions necessary to the proposed construction.

Where excavation is not classified, it will be grouped under "Unclassified Structural Excavation", which shall include the removal of all materials encountered regardless of their nature or the manner in which they are removed.

Where excavation is classified, it shall be classed as "Common Structural Excavation" or "Rock Structural Excavation" in accordance with the following criteria:

"Common Structural Excavation" shall include the removal of all materials other than rock.

"Rock Structural Excavation" shall include the removal of firm and compact materials that cannot be excavated with power equipment, without first being loosened or broken by blasting, sledging or drilling.

This specification is applicable for projects or work involving either inch-pound or SI units. Within the text and accompanying tables, the inch-pound units are given preference followed by SI units shown within parentheses.

401S.2 Submittals

The submittal requirements of this specification item may include:

Supplier and certified test results for fine aggregate/sand material

Supplier and certified test results for flexible base material

Mix design and test results for lime stabilized subgrade material

Mix design and test results for Class J Concrete Base

Supplier and certified test results for granular material (coarse aggregate, foundation rock and pea gravel)

Mix design and test results for cement-stabilized backfill

Mix design and test results for controlled low strength material (CLSM)

Excavation Safety System Plan for proposed cofferdams, trench excavation and special shoring installations

401S.3 Materials

A. Sand

1. Fine aggregate sand shall be Grade 1 conforming to Standard Specification Item No. 302S, "Aggregates for Surface Treatments".

2. Native Sand shall be local material obtained from approved sources and subject to the approval of the Engineer or designated representative.

B. Flexible Base

Flexible base shall conform to the requirements of Standard Specification Item No. 210S, "Flexible Base".

C. Lime Stabilized Base

Lime stabilized base shall conform to the requirements of Standard Specification Item No. 202S, "Hydrated Lime and Lime Slurry" and Item No. 203S, "Lime Treatment for Materials in Place".

D. Concrete Base

Concrete base shall conform to a Class J Concrete as defined in Standard Specification Item No. 403S, "Concrete for Structures".

E. Granular Material

1. Coarse aggregate shall conform to the requirements of section 403S.3.C of Standard Specification Item No. 403S "Concrete for Structures".

2. Foundation Rock

Foundation rock shall be well graded, hard, durable coarse aggregate ranging in size from 2 to 6 inches (50 to 150 mm).

3. Pea Gravel

Pea gravel shall consist of hard, durable, opaque gravel, free of clay, loam, sand or other foreign substances, ranging in size from 1/4 inch to 3/8 inch (6.4 to 9.5 mm) conforming to ASTM C 33.

F. Cement Stabilized Backfill

Cement stabilized backfill shall contain aggregate, water and a minimum of 7% hydraulic cement based on the dry weight of the aggregate in accordance with TxDoT Test Method Tex-120-E, “Soil-Cement Testing". Unless directed otherwise

on the Drawings, the aggregate shall be clean sand approved by the Engineer or designated representative.

G. Controlled Low Strength Material

Controlled low strength material (CLSM) shall conform to Standard Specification Item No. 402S, "Controlled Low Strength Material" and shall be approved by the Engineer or designated representative.

401S.4 Construction Methods

A. Erosion Control and Tree Protection

Prior to commencement of this work, all required erosion control and tree protection measures indicated on the Drawings shall be in place. The existing utilities shall be located and protected as specified in the Standard Contract Documents, Section 00700, "General Conditions" and/or indicated on the Drawings. A permit shall be required when utility adjustments are to be made in preparation for construction in the right-of-way, as specified in Section 5.2.0 of the City of Austin Utilities Criteria Manual.

Areas within the construction limits indicated on the Drawings shall be cleared of all trees, stumps, brush, etc., except trees or shrubs scheduled for preservation which shall be carefully trimmed as directed by the Engineer or designated representative, in accordance with Standard Specification Item No. 610S, " Preservation of Trees and Other Vegetation" and shall be protected from scarring, barking or other injuries during construction operations. All exposed cuts over 2 inches (50 millimeters) in diameter, exposed ends of pruned limbs or scarred bark shall be treated with an approved asphalt material within 24 hours of the pruning or injury.

Construction equipment shall not be operated nor construction materials stockpiled under the canopies of trees, unless otherwise indicated on the Drawings and/or specified in the Contract Documents. Excavation or embankment materials shall not be placed within the drip line of trees until tree wells are constructed.

Within the construction limits or areas indicated, all obstructions, stumps, roots, vegetation, abandoned structures, rubbish and objectionable material shall be removed to the following depths:

1. In areas to receive 6 inches (150 mm) or more embankment, a minimum of 12 inches (300 mm) below natural ground.

2. In areas to receive embankment less than 6 inches (150 mm), a minimum of 18 inches (450 mm) below the lower elevation of embankment, structure or excavation.

3. In areas to be excavated a minimum of 18 inches (450 mm) below the lower elevation of the embankment, structure or excavation.

4. In all other areas a minimum of 12 inches (300 mm) below natural ground.

When abandoned storm drains, sewers or other drainage systems are encountered they shall be removed as required to clear the new structure and plugged in a manner approved by the Engineer or designated representative.

Holes remaining after removal of all obstructions, objectionable material, trees, stumps, etc. shall be backfilled with select embankment material and compacted by approved methods. All cleared and grubbed material shall be disposed of in a manner satisfactory to the Engineer or designated representative. Unless otherwise provided, all materials as described above shall become the property of the Contractor and removed from the site and disposed of at a permitted disposal site.

Burning materials at the site shall conform to Standard Contract Document Section 01550, "Public Safety and Convenience".

B. Excavation

1. Excavation shall be done in accordance with the lines and depths indicated on the Drawings or as established by the Engineer or designated representative. Unless otherwise indicated on the Drawings or permitted by the Engineer or designated representative no excavation shall be made outside a vertical plane 3 feet (0.9 meter) from the footing lines and parallel thereto.

   When structures are installed in streets, highways or other paved areas, the pavement and base shall be cut to neat lines. After completion of the excavation and backfilling, the pavement structure shall be restored to the satisfaction of the Engineer or designated representative.

2. Slopes, benching, sheeting, bracing, pumping and bailing shall be provided as necessary to maintain the stability and safety of excavations up to 5 feet (1.5 meters) deep. Excavation protection for excavations deeper than 5 feet (1.5 meters) shall be governed by Standard Specification Item No. 509S, "Excavation Safety Systems".

3. Excavation shall conform to elevations indicated on the Drawing or raised or lowered by written order of the Engineer or designated representative, when such alterations are judged proper. When it is deemed necessary to increase or decrease the plan depth of footings, the alterations in the details of the structure shall be as directed by the Engineer or designated representative. The Engineer or designated representative shall have the right to substitute revised details resulting from consideration of changes in the design conditions.

4. When a structure is to rest on an excavated surface other than rock, special care shall be taken not to disturb the bottom of the excavation and the final excavation to grade shall not be performed until just before the footing is placed. Equipment selected and used by the Contractor for excavation which results in disturbance of what was otherwise stable subgrade material, as

shown by laboratory tests, will not be used as a justification for payment for excavating to extra depth or for payment for stabilizing materials which may be ordered by the Engineer or designated representative.

5. Excavated material required to be used for backfill may be deposited by the Contractor in storage piles as indicated on the Drawing or at points convenient for its rehandling during the backfilling operations, subject to the approval of the Engineer or designated representative, who may require that the survey center line of the structure and the transverse or hub line of any unit of the structure be kept free of any obstruction. The Contractor shall adjust any stockpiles, to facilitate surveying and the work of other Contractors working in the immediate proximity, as directed by the Engineer or designated representative.

6. Excavated material required to be wasted shall be disposed of as directed by the Engineer or designated representative, in a manner which will not obstruct the stream or otherwise impair the efficiency or appearance of the structure or other part of the work.

7. For all single and multiple box culverts, pipe culverts, pipe arch culverts and box sewers of all types, where the soil encountered at established footing grade is a quicksand, muck or similar unstable material, the following procedure shall be used unless other methods are indicated:

   a) The depth to which unstable material is removed will be determined by the Engineer or designated representative. It will not exceed 2 feet (0.6 meter) below the footing of culverts that are 2 feet (0.6 meter) or more in height and will not exceed the height of culverts for those less than 2 feet (0.6 meter) high. Excavation shall be carried at least 1 foot (0.3 meter) horizontally beyond the limits of the structure on all sides. All unstable soil removed shall be replaced with suitable stable material, in uniform layers of suitable depth for compaction as directed by the Engineer or designated representative. Each layer shall be wetted, if necessary and compacted by rolling or tamping as required to provide a stable foundation for the structure. Soil, which has sufficient stability to properly sustain the adjacent sections of the roadway embankment, will be considered a suitable foundation material.

   b) When, in the opinion of the Engineer or designated representative, it is not feasible to construct a stable footing as outlined above, the Contractor shall construct it by the use of special materials, such as flexible base, cement stabilized base, cement stabilized rockfill or other material, as directed by the Engineer or designated representative. This work will be paid for as provided in Section 401S.9, " Payment".

8. When the material encountered at footing grade of a culvert is found to be partially rock or incompressible material and partially a compressible soil which is satisfactory for the foundation, the incompressible material shall be removed for a depth of 6 inches (150 mm) below the footing grade and

backfilled with a compressible material similar to that used for the rest of the structure.

9. When the material encountered at footing grade of a bridge bent or pier is found to be partially of rock or incompressible material, and partially of a compressible material, the foundation shall not be placed until the Engineer or designated representative has inspected the footing and authorized such changes found necessary to provide an adequate foundation.

401S.5 Bridge Foundations and Retaining Walls

The material below the bottom of the footing grade shall not be disturbed. Backfill material shall not be used to compensate for excavation that is extended below the proposed footing grade. When excavation is carried below the proposed footing grade, the over excavated area shall be filled with concrete at the time the footing is placed. The additional concrete placement shall be at the Contractor's sole expense.

When required by the Engineer or designated representative, cores shall be taken to determine the character of the supporting material(s). The cores shall be taken when the excavation is nearing completion and shall be an intact sample adequate to judge the character of the founding material. The cores shall be acquired at a minimum depth of 5 feet (1.5 meters) below the proposed footing founding grade.

When the founding stratum is rock or other hard material, all loose material shall be removed and the founding grade cleaned and cut to a firm surface that is level, stepped or serrated as directed by the Engineer or designated representative. All soft seams shall be cleaned and filled with concrete at the time the footing is placed.

When the material at the footing grade of a retaining wall, bridge bent or pier is a mixture of compressible and incompressible material, the foundation shall not be placed until the Engineer or designated representative has inspected the excavation and authorized changes to provide a uniform bearing condition.

401S.6 Cofferdams

The term cofferdams, whenever used in this specification, designates any temporary or removable structure constructed to hold the surrounding earth, water or both, out of the excavation, whether the structure is formed of earth, timber, steel, concrete or a combination of these. It includes earthen dikes, timber cribs, any type of sheet piling, removable steel shells and the like and all necessary bracing and it shall be understood also to include the use of pumping wells or well points for de-watering. The cost of cofferdams, when required, shall be included as a part of the bid price for excavation.

It is the intent of this specification to require that a suitable cofferdam be provided, when necessary, to insure that the foundation may be placed in a dry condition, as to preclude

sliding and caving of the walls of the excavation. The cofferdam shall conform with the requirements of Standard Specification Item No. 509S, "Excavation Safety Systems" and shall provide a safe work area with sufficient clearance for the construction, inspection and removal of required forms and, if necessary, sufficient room to allow pumping outside the forms. Where no ground or surface water is encountered, the cofferdam need be sufficient only to protect the workmen and to avoid cave-ins or slides beyond the excavation limits.

Unless otherwise indicated on the Drawings, cofferdams shall be removed by the Contractor after the completion of the substructure without disturbing or marring the structure.

401S.7 De-Watering

Structures shall not be constructed or placed in the presence of water unless otherwise approved by the Engineer or designated representative. Precast members, pipe and concrete shall only be placed on a dry, firm surface. Water shall be removed by bailing, pumping, well-point installation, deep wells, underdrains or other approved method.

When structures are approved for placement in the presence of water, standing water shall be removed in a manner that shall preclude the possibility of the movement of water through or alongside any concrete being placed. Pumping or bailing will not be permitted during the placing of concrete or for a period of at least 36 hours thereafter, unless from a suitable sump separated from the concrete work by a water-tight wall.

Pumping or bailing during placement of seal concrete shall only be allowed to the extent necessary to maintain a static head of water within the cofferdam. De-watering inside a sealed cofferdam shall not commence until the seal has aged a minimum of 36 hours.

When the bottom of an excavation cannot be de-watered to the point that the subgrade is free of mud or it is difficult to keep the reinforcing steel clean a stabilizing material (e.g. flexible base, cement-stabilized-backfill or lean concrete) shall be placed in the bottom of the excavation. When a lean concrete is used, the concrete shall include a minimum of 275 Pounds of cement per cubic yard (163 kilograms of cement per cubic meter) and be placed to a minimum depth of 3 inches (75 mm). Stabilizing material that is placed for the convenience of the Contractor will be at the Contractor's own expense.

401S.8 Backfilling

A. General

As soon as practicable, all portions of excavation not occupied by the permanent structure shall be backfilled. Back-fill material shall be free from stones large enough to interfere with compaction, large or frozen lumps that will not break down readily under compaction, wood or other extraneous material. Backfill material shall be approved by the Engineer or designated representative.

That portion of backfill which will support any portion of completed roadbed, retaining wall or embankment shall be placed in layers not more than 8 inches (200 mm) in depth (loose measurement) and shall be compacted to meet the density requirements of the roadbed, retaining wall, embankment material, or as indicated on the Drawings.

That portion of backfill which will not support any portion of completed roadbed or embankment shall be placed in layers not more than 10 inches (250 mm) in depth (loose measurement) and shall be compacted to a minimum of 95 percent of maximum density as determined by TxDoT Test Method Tex-114-E and the re-excavated to the proper grade and dimensions.

If the excavation has been made through a hard material resistant to erosion, the backfill around piers and in front of abutments and wings may be ordered by the Engineer or designated representative to be of stone or lean concrete. Unless otherwise indicated on the Drawings, such backfill shall be paid for as extra work.

That portion of the backfill which will support any portion of the roadbed, retaining wall or embankment shall be placed in uniform layers not more than 8 inches (200 mm) in depth (loose measurement) and shall be compacted to a minimum of 95 percent of maximum density, as determined by TxDoT Test Method Tex-114-E and then re-excavated to the proper grade and wetted uniformly to the moisture content required to obtain the specified density and shall be compacted to that density by means of mechanical tampers or rammers, except that the use of rolling equipment of the type generally used in compaction embankments will be permitted on portions which are accessible to such equipment.

All portions of embankment too close to any portion of a structure to permit compaction by the use of the blading and rolling equipment used on adjoining sections of embankment, shall be placed and compacted with mechanical tamps and rammers to avoid damage to the structure.

These provisions require mechanical compaction by means of either rolling equipment or mechanical tampers or rammers, of all backfill and embankment adjoining the barrels and wingwalls or culverts and adjoining all sides of bridge abutments and retaining walls, regardless of whether or not such embankment or backfill is above or below the original surface of the ground and regardless of whether the excavation at structure site was performed conforming to Standard Specification Item No.111S, "Excavation", this item 401S, "Structural Excavation", Standard Specification Item No. 110S, "Street Excavation" or Standard Specification Item No. 120S, "Channel Excavation". Unless otherwise indicated on the Drawings, hand tamping will not be accepted as an alternate for mechanical compaction.

As a general rule, material used in filling or backfilling the portions described in this paragraph shall be an earth, free of any appreciable amount of gravel or stone particles larger than 4 inches (100 mm) in greater dimension and of a gradation that permits thorough compaction. When, in the opinion of the Engineer or designated representative, such material is not readily available, the use of rock or gravel mixed with earth will be permitted, provided that no particles larger than 12 inches (300 mm) or smaller than 6 inches (150 mm) may be used. The percentage of fines shall be sufficient to fill all voids and insure a uniform and

thoroughly compacted mass of proper density. When required by the Drawings or by written order of the Engineer or designated representative, cement-stabilized-backfill material shall be used for backfilling.

All portions of fill and backfill described in the preceding paragraph shall be compacted to the same density requirements specified for the adjoining sections of embankment in accordance with the governing specifications. Where no embankment is involved on the project and no relevant specifications are included in the contract, all backfill shall be compacted to a density comparable with the adjacent undisturbed material.

No backfill shall be placed against any abutment or retaining wall until such structure has been in place at least 7 days. No backfill shall be placed adjacent to or over single and multiple boxes until the top slab has attained 500 psi (3450 kPa) flexural strength. Backfill placed around abutments and piers shall be deposited on both sides to approximately the same elevation at the same time.

Care shall be taken to prevent any wedging action of backfill against the structure and the slopes bounding the excavation shall be stepped or serrated to prevent such action. Backfill shall be uniformly placed around bridge foundations.

B. Pipe Culverts

The following requirements shall apply to the backfilling of pipe culverts in addition to the pertinent portions of the general requirements given in the preceding section.

Selected materials from excavation, borrow or other approved material shall be wetted, if required and placed along both sides of the pipe equally, in uniform layers not exceeding 8 inches (200 mm) in depth (loose measurement) and thoroughly compacted so that there shall be a berm of thoroughly compacted material on each side of the pipe. The method and degree of compaction shall be the same as specified above for portions of backfill within the limits of embankment or roadbed.

Filling and/or backfilling shall be continued in this manner to the elevation of the top of the pipe. Special care shall be taken to secure thorough compaction of the material placed under the haunches of the pipe to prevent damage or displacement of the pipe. All fill or backfill below the top of pipe shall be compacted mechanically in the manner and to the density prescribed above, regardless of whether or not such material is placed within the limits of the embankment or roadbed. In the case of pipe placed in trenches, that portion of the backfill above the top of the pipe which supports embankment or the roadbed shall receive mechanical compaction as specified above and the portion which will not support any portion of embankment or roadbed shall be placed in layers not more than 8 inches (200 mm) in depth (loose measurement) and shall be compacted by whatever means the Contractor chooses, to a density comparable with the adjacent, undisturbed material. Embankments above the top of pipe shall be placed conforming to Item No. 132S, "Embankment". During construction adequate cover must be provided to protect the structure from damage.

The Engineer or designated representative may reject backfill material that contains more than 20% by weight of material retained on a 3-in (75 mm) sieve, with large lumps not easily broken down, or that cannot be spread in loose layers. Material excavated by a trenching machine will generally meet the requirements of this Section as long as large stones are not present.

Where pipe extends beyond the toe of slope of the embankment and the depth of cover provided by backfill to the original ground level is less than the minimum required by the specifications for the type of pipe involved, additional material shall be placed and compacted until the minimum cover has been provided.

Whenever excavation is made for installing pipe culverts or box sewers across private property or beyond the limits of the embankment, the top soil removed in excavating the trench shall be kept separate and replaced as nearly as feasible in its original position and the entire area involved in the construction operations shall be restored to a presentable condition.

C. Cement Stabilized Backfill

When indicated on the Drawings, trenches shall be backfilled to the elevations shown with cement stabilized backfill. The cement-stabilized backfill shall be placed equally along the sides of structures to prevent strain on or displacement of the structure.

Cement stabilized backfill below the spring line of pipe culverts shall be sufficiently plastic to completely fill all voids in the trench. Hand operated tampers may be used if necessary to fill the voids. The pipe shall be held in alignment by jacks or other suitable means to prevent the mortared joints from cracking due to displacement caused by placing the backfill material.

Cement stabilized backfill above the spring line of pipe culverts may be dry enough to be transported without special mixing equipment.

On structures other than pipe culverts, special mixing equipment will not be required to transport the cement stabilized backfill unless otherwise indicated on the Drawings.

D. Controlled Low Strength Material (CLSM)

When indicated on the Drawings the excavation shall be backfilled with CLSM to the elevations shown. The structure shall be prevented from being displaced or “floated out” during the placement of CLSM. The CLSM shall be prevented from entering culverts and drainage structures.

401S.9 Measurement

Unless otherwise indicated on the Drawings, structural excavation for pipe headwalls, inlets, manholes, culvert widening (extensions), bridge abutments and side road and private entrance pipe culverts will not be measured in the field but shall be included in the Plan Quantity unit price bid by the cubic yard (cubic meters: 1 cubic meter is equal to 1.308 cubic yards). Determination of plan quantities for structural excavation shall be

made by the method of average end-areas using the following limits to establish templates for measurement.

A. For all structures requiring measurement, except the barrels of pipe culverts, no material outside of vertical planes 1 foot (300 mm) beyond the edges of the footings and parallel thereto will be included.

B. For the barrels of pipe culverts of 42 inches (1.09 meters) or less nominal or equivalent diameter, no material outside of vertical planes 1 foot (300 mm) beyond the horizontal projection of the outside surfaces of the pipe and parallel thereto will be included. For the barrels of pipe culverts more than 42 inches (1.09 meters) in nominal or equivalent diameter, no material outside of vertical planes located 2 feet (600 mm) beyond the horizontal projection of the outside surfaces of the pipe and parallel thereto will be included.

C. If a cofferdam, as herein defined, is used, the limitations indicated above shall apply just as if no cofferdams were used.

D. Where excavation in addition to that allowed for the footings is required for other portions of the structure, such as for the cap, cross strut or tie beam of a pier or bent or for the superstructure, measurements for such additional excavation will be limited laterally by vertical planes 1 foot (300 mm) beyond the face of the member and parallel thereto and vertically to a depth of 1 foot (300 mm) below the bottom of such member.

E. Except as allowed by the above conditions, no account will be taken of any excavation necessary for placing forms or falsework.

F. Except at side road culverts, all street excavation called for on the contract drawings at all structure sites shall be assumed to be completed before starting the structural excavation and the measurement of structural excavation will include only material below or outside the limits of the completed street excavation. Excavation for side road and private entrance pipe culverts will not be measured for payment but shall be included in the unit price bid for this specification item.

G. On all structures of bridge classification where the contract drawings call for channel excavation at the structure site, it shall be assumed to have been completed before starting the structural excavation and the measurement of structural excavation will include only material below or outside the limits of the completed channel section. The method of measurement for payment will be in accordance with this procedure regardless of the actual construction methods followed.

H. Where excavation diagrams are indicated on the Drawings, they shall take precedence over these provisions.

I. Measurement will not include materials removed below footing grades to compensate for anticipated swellage due to pile driving and it will not include

material required to be removed due to swellage beyond the specified limits during pile driving operations.

J. Measurement will not include additional yardage caused by slips, slides, cave-ins, siltings or fillings due to the action of the elements or the carelessness of the Contractor. Water will not be classed as excavated material.

K. Where rock, other incompressible or unstable material is undercut to provide suitable foundation for pipe or box culverts, such material below grade, ordered by the Engineer or designated representative to be removed, will be measured for payment.

L. Except for any required undercut, quantities for "Structural Excavation", as indicated on the Drawings, shall be considered as final quantities and no further measurement will be required, unless the alignment, grades or structure locations are revised by the Engineer or designated representative during construction. Final determination of quantities for individual structures will be made, if in the opinion of the Engineer or designated representative or upon evidence furnished by the Contractor, substantial variations exist between quantities indicated on the Drawings and actual quantities due to changes in cross sections or apparent errors. Excavation quantities for foundations indicated on the Drawings where cofferdams are required shall be considered as final quantities and no further measurement will be made.

M. For any footing, foundation or other structure unit within the scope of this specification, additional measurement will be made of the volume of excavation involved in the lowering or raising of the elevation of a footing, foundation or structure unit, when such grade change is authorized by the Engineer or designated representative. Measurement will be made by the addition to or the deduction from, the original quantities for the volume of excavation involved in the authorized grade change.

N. Cement stabilized backfill shall be measured by the backfill diagram as indicated on the Drawings. The quantity of "Cement Stabilized Backfill" as indicated on the Drawings shall be considered as final quantities and no further measurement will be required, unless alignment or grade elevations as indicated are revised by the Engineer or designated representative. If such revisions result in an increase or decrease in this quantity, the final quantity will be revised by the amount represented by the changes in alignment or grade elevations.

401S.10 Payment

Payment for all work prescribed under this item and measured as provided above will be made at the unit bid price per cubic yard for the particular class of excavation specified on the Drawings in the amount shown on the Drawings and in the proposal. Payment for revised quantities will be made as specified above and for the removal of unstable and incompressible material as noted below.

Payment for removal and replacement of unstable or incompressible material below the footing grades of culverts and box sewers as indicated above will be made as follows:

When indicated on the Drawings or the Engineer or designated representative directs the use of special materials such as flexible base, concretebase, cement stabilized backfill, controlled low strength material or other special material, payment for excavation below the footing grades shall be made at the unit bid price for "Unclassified Structural Excavation", "Common Structural Excavation" or "Rock Structural Excavation", as the case may be. Payment for furnishing, hauling, placing and compacting the flexible base, concretebase, cement stabilized backfill, controlled low strength material or other special material will be made at the unit bid price for these items in the bid or in accordance with pertinent provisions for extra work.

Where special materials are not required or specified, the removal and replacement of the unstable material will be performed as described above. Payment therefore will be made at a price equal to 200 percent of the unit bid price per cubic yard for "Unclassified Structural Excavation", "Common Structural Excavation" or "Rock Structural Excavation", as the case may be. The unit bid price shall include full compensation for removing the unstable or incompressible material, for furnishing, hauling, placing and compacting suitable material required to replace it and for all labor, equipment, tools and incidentals necessary to complete the work.

Payment for "Concrete Base", "Cement Stabilized Backfill" and “Controlled Low Strength Material” measured as prescribed above shall be made at the unit bid price per cubic yard. The unit bid price shall include full compensation for furnishing all materials, tools, labor, equipment, sheathing and incidentals required to perform the applicable work prescribed herein.

When the Engineer or designated representative judges it necessary to lower the structure footings to an elevation below the grade indicated on the Drawings, payment for the "Unclassified Structural Excavation", "Common Structural Excavation" or "Rock Structural Excavation" as the case may be, required below plan grade down to and including an elevation 5 feet (1.5 meters) below drawing grade for any individual footing will be made at a unit price equal to 115 percent of the contract unit bid price. Payment for the excavation from an elevation over 5 feet (1.5 meters) below plan grade down to and including an elevation 10 feet (3.05 meters) below plan grade will be made at a unit price equal to 125 percent of the contract unit bid price for "Unclassified Structural Excavation", "Common Structural Excavation" or "Rock Structural Excavation" as the case may be. No increase in unit price will be allowed for other bid items of the contract and no additional compensation will be allowed for any required cofferdam adjustments made necessary by such lowering of footings. These provisions shall not apply to the lowering of culverts, except when the flow line grade is lowered 1 foot (300 mm) or more below plan grade.

In cases where the extra depths required for any footing or footings exceeds 10 feet (3.05 meters), a supplemental agreement shall be made covering the quantities removed from depths in excess of 10 feet (3.05 meters) below plan grade.

No direct payment will be made for filling or backfilling around structures. Payment for the backfilling and compacting of areas, which were removed as structural excavation shall be included in the unit bid prices for the various classes of structural excavation.

At the end of each estimate period, the Engineer or designated representative shall determine the completed portion of the total work under Standard Specification Item No. 401S "Structural Excavation and Backfill" and payment shall be made accordingly.

Filling or backfilling of areas above the natural ground level or above the limits of street excavation or channel excavation sections shall be considered as Standard Specification Item No. 132S, "Embankment" and payment therefore shall be included in the unit prices bid for the various classes of Standard Specification Item No. 110S, "Street Excavation", Standard Specification Item No. 120S, "Channel Excavation" or Standard Specification Item No. 130S, "Borrow".

Where no channel excavation is provided for at culvert sites and where it is necessary to excavate beyond the limits of structural excavation, as herein described in order that the culvert may function properly, such excavation shall be included with structural excavation as may be indicated on the Drawings.

Payment for all work prescribed under this item shall include full compensation for all excavation and backfill including compaction, all soundings, construction of all cofferdams, all dewatering and for furnishing all materials, labor, equipment, tools, sheathing, bracing, cofferdams, pumps, drills, explosives and incidentals necessary to complete the work, except for specific allowances stated above.

Special materials used or additional excavation made for the Contractor's convenience to expedite the work will not be paid for directly, but shall be included in the unit price bid for this specification item. In addition, if the Contractor's construction methods and equipment creates conditions necessitating usage of special materials or additional excavation, the work and materials will not be paid for directly, but shall be included in the unit price bid for this specification item.

When specified in the contract bid form as separate pay item(s), the item(s) will be paid for at the contract unit price(s) for "Flexible Base", "Lime Stabilized Base" and "Controlled Low Strength Material". The bid prices shall include full compensation for all Work herein, specified, including the disposal of all material not required in the Work, the furnishing of all material, equipment, tools, labor and incidentals necessary to complete the Work.

Payment will be made under one of the following:

Pay Item No. 401S-A:	Unclassified Structural Excavation, Plan Quantity.	Per Cubic Yard.
Pay Item No. 401S-B:	Common Structural Excavation	Per Cubic Yard.
Pay Item No. 401S-C:	Rock Structural Excavation	Per Cubic Yard.

Pay Item No. 401S-D:	Concrete Base	Per Cubic Yard.
Pay Item No. 401S-E:	Cement Stabilized Backfill	Per Cubic Yard.
Pay Item No. 401S-F:	Flexible Base	Per Cubic Yard.
Pay Item No. 401S-G:	Lime Stabilized Base	Per Square Yard.
Pay Item No. 401S-H:	Controlled Low Strength Material	Per Cubic Yard.
Pay Item No. 401S-I:	Cofferdams, type _____	Per Cubic Yard.
Pay Item No. 401S-J:	Dewatering	Per Cubic Yard.

End

***SPECIFIC* CROSS REFERENCE MATERIALS**
Standard Specification Item 401S, "Structural Excavation and Backfill"

City of Austin Standard Contract Documents

Designation	Description
Section 00700	General Conditions
Section 01550	Public Safety and Convenience

City of Austin Utilities Criteria Manual

Designation	Description
Section 5.2.0	Permit Information and Format

City of Austin Standard Specification Items

Designation	Description
Item No. 110S	Street Excavation
Item No. 111S	Excavation
Item No. 120S	Channel Excavation
Item No. 130S	Borrow
Item No. 132S	Embankment
Item No. 202S	Hydrated Lime and Lime Slurry
Item No. 203S	Lime Treatment for Materials in Place
Item No. 210S	Flexible Base
Item No. 302S	Aggregates for Surface Treatments

Item No. 402S	Controlled Low Strength Material
Item No. 403S	Concrete for Structures
Item No.509S	Excavation Safety Systems
Item No. 610S	Preservation of Trees and Other Vegetation

Texas Department of Transportation: Departmental Material Specifications

Designation	Description
DMS-4640	Chemical Admixtures for Concrete

American Society for Testing and Materials, ASTM

Designation	Description
ASTM C 33	Specification For Concrete Aggregates

Texas Department of Transportation: Manual of Testing Procedures

Designation	Description
Tex-114-E	Laboratory Compaction Characteristics & Moisture-Density Relationship of Subgrade & Embankment Soil
Tex-120-E	Soil-Cement Testing

RELATED **CROSS REFERENCE MATERIALS**
Standard Specification Item 401S, "Structural Excavation and Backfill"

Texas Department of Transportation: Standard Specifications for Construction and Maintenance of Highways, Streets, and Bridges

Current Version: September 26, 2012 Previous Versions: 11/13/07, 09/14/05, 09/30/87

Designation	Description
Item 110	Excavation
Item 132	Embankment
Item 400	Excavation and Backfill for Structures
Item 401	Flowable Backfill
Item 402	Trench Excavation Protection
Item 403	Temporary Special Shoring
Item 421	Hydraulic Cement Concrete

Item No. 402S
Controlled Low Strength Material

402S.1 Description

This item governs Controlled Low Strength Material (CLSM) used for trench backfill and for filling abandoned culverts, pipes, other enclosures, and for other uses as indicated on the drawings, Standard Details or as approved by the Engineer or designated representative. CLSM is a low strength, self-compacting, flowable, cementitious material used in lieu of soil backfill. It is intentionally prepared at low strength to allow for future removal using conventional excavation equipment.

The CLSM shall be composed of Portland cement or fly ash, or both, filler aggregate and water. The CLSM, specified for use in filling abandoned culverts, pipes, or other enclosures, shall contain a settlement compensator, in addition to the other ingredients, to minimize settlement of the CLSM within the enclosure.

Normal Set CLSM shall be specified whenever the material will remain uncovered or will not be subjected to traffic or other loads within 24 hours after placement. Fast Set CLSM shall be specified whenever the material will be covered, subjected to traffic or other loads within 24 hours, or needed to expedite construction.

CLSM can be used for permanent subgrade repairs below the base layer, but shall not be used for permanent pavement repairs. For temporary traffic applications, a minimum 2 inch (50 mm) cap composed of Hot Mix-Cold Laid Asphaltic Concrete (TxDoT Standard Specification Item 334) shall be placed on the CLSM.

This specification is applicable for projects or work involving either inch-pound or SI units. Within the text and accompanying tables, the inch-pound units are given preference followed by SI units shown within parentheses.

402S.2 Submittals

The submittal requirements of this specification item include:

A. A mix design submittal including the results of unconfined compressive strength tests, air entrainment (if applicable), flow consistency, hardened unit weight, and timed Ball Drop and corresponding Penetrometer tests.
B. Certifications and test results for the cement fly ash, and admixtures.
C. Particle-size gradation and specific gravity tests on the filler aggregate.

402S.3 Materials

A. Cement.

Portland cement shall conform to ASTM C 150, Type I (General Purpose).

Portland cement manufactured in a cement kiln fueled by hazardous waste shall be considered as an approved product if the production facility is authorized to operate under regulation of the Texas Natural Resource Conservation Commission

(TNRCC) and the U. S. Environmental Protection Agency (EPA). Supplier shall provide current TNRCC and EPA authorizations to operate the facility.

B. Fly Ash

Fly ash shall conform to the requirements of Standard Specification Item No. 405, "Concrete Admixtures" and TxDOT Specification Item 437.

C. Filler Aggregate.

Filler aggregate shall consist of sand, stone screenings, pavement milling cuttings or other granular material that is compatible with the other mixture components. The filler aggregate shall be fine enough to stay in suspension to the extent required for proper flow without segregation, and, in the case of filling of enclosures, for minimal settlement. Filler aggregate shall have a Plasticity Index (TxDOT Test Method Tex-106-E) less than 15 and shall conform to the following gradation:

Sieve Designation US	(SI)	Percent Passing
No. 200	(75μm)	0 - 10

D. Mixing Water.

Mixing water shall conform to the requirements of Standard Specification Item No. 403, "Concrete for Structures".

E. Settlement Compensator

An air entraining admixture with a higher than usual dosage, which meets the requirements of Standard Specification Item No. 405, "Concrete Admixtures", shall be used as a settlement compensator. The settlement compensator may be introduced to the CLSM at the job site by placement of prepackaged admixture in capsules or bags in the mixing drum in accordance with the admixture manufacturer's recommendations.

402S.4 Mix Design

The proportioning of CLSM shall be the responsibility of the Contractor. The Contractor shall furnish a mix design conforming to the requirements herein, for review and approval by the Engineer or designated representative. The mix design shall be prepared by a qualified commercial laboratory and then reviewed and signed by a registered Professional Engineer licensed in the State of Texas.

The Mix Design submittal must include:

A. Test results for unconfined compressive strength, air entrainment (if applicable), flow consistency, hardened unit weight, and timed Ball Drop (ASTM C-360) and corresponding Penetrometer tests (with a concrete pocket penetrometer),

B. Certifications and test results for the cement, fly ash, and admixtures, and

C. Results of particle-size gradation and specific gravity tests on the filler aggregate. The submittal shall include Penetrometer tests performed every thirty minutes until the Ball Drop test shows a 2-inch (50 mm) indentation, as well as the predicted Penetrometer reading that corresponds to a 3-inch (75 mm) Ball Drop indentation. Particle-size gradation shall be determined using a series of sieves that gives no fewer than five uniformly spaced points for graphing the entire range of particle sizes larger than a No. 200 sieve (75-µm).

The Contractor shall perform the work required to substantiate the design at no cost to the City, including all testing. Approved mix designs shall be valid for one year, provided there are no changes in the type, source, or characteristics of the materials during that year.

At the end of one year, the mix design may be submitted for renewal, provided that:

A. field tests of the CLSM during the year have been satisfactory,
B. there have been no changes in type or source of the materials of the mix, and
C. the characteristics of the materials have not changed significantly since the original submittal.

The Contractor shall also submit certifications and test results for the cement, fly ash and admixtures, and particle-size gradation and specific gravity test results for the filler aggregate. The Contractor shall compare results of tests made on the filler aggregate at the end of the year to the results of tests reported in the original submittal. Gradation changes less than ten percent in percent passing any sieve and specific gravity changes less than five percent shall not be considered significant.

402S.5 Strength

The CLSM mix designs shall meet the unconfined compressive strength requirements outlined in the table below. The compression tests shall be conducted in accordance with TxDOT Method Tex-418-A, using approved unbonded caps on specimens with four-inch (100 mm) diameter and eight-inch (200 mm) height [or three-inch (75 mm) diameter by six-inch (150 mm) high specimens if a smaller capacity loading device gives more accurate results].

Unconfined Compressive Strength, psi (mPa)		
Age	Normal Set CLSM	Fast Set CLSM
3 hours	—	35 (0.24) minimum
24 hours	35 (0.24) minimum	—
28 days	300 (2.1) maximum	300 (2.1) maximum

402S.6 Flow Consistency

Flow consistency shall be established in tests involving the use of a six-inch (150 mm) length by three-inch (75 mm) diameter open-ended straight tubing made of steel, plastic or other non-absorbent material that is non-reactive with cement or fly ash. The tube shall be placed with one end on a horizontal flat surface and held in a vertical position.

The tube shall then be filled to the top with CLSM. The top surface shall be struck off with a suitable straight edge and any spillage shall be removed from the base of the tube. Within five seconds thereafter the tube shall be raised carefully, using a steady upward lift with no lateral or torsional motion. The entire test, from the start of filling until removal of the tube, shall be completed within 1½ minutes without interruption.

After removal of the tube, the spread of the CLSM shall be measured immediately along two diameters that are perpendicular to one another. The average of those two measurements is defined as the flow consistency of the mix. The flow consistency of the CLSM shall be considered satisfactory if a circular-type spread of the mix occurs without segregation and a flow consistency (average diameter of spread) of 8 inches (200 mm) or more is achieved.

402S.7 Air Entrainment

Air entraining admixture shall be added as a settlement compensator, whenever the CLSM will be used to fill an enclosure (Section 402S-1). The dosage shall be sufficient to result in an air content of 15 to 25 percent (as determined by TxDOT Method Tex-416-A) at the time of placement of the CLSM.

402S.8 Field Strength Tests

Ball Drop or Penetrometer tests shall be used to determine, when the CLSM has developed sufficient strength to be covered or subjected to traffic or other loads as approved by the Engineer or designated representative.

The Ball Drop test shall be performed according to the latest version of ASTM C-360. An indentation diameter of three inches (75 mm) or less, and the absence of a sheen or any visible surface water in the indentation area shall indicate that the CLSM has achieved the desired strength. Because trench width and depth may affect the test results, the Contractor may perform this test on a control sample of CLSM in a two-foot (600 mm) square by six-inch (150 mm) deep container.

Penetrometer tests using a hand-held, spring reaction-type device commonly called a concrete pocket penetrometer, shall be performed on the surface of the CLMS. A Penetrometer reading, equal to or greater than the value established in the mix design (Section 402S.4) for a Ball Drop test indentation of 3-inches (75 mm), shall indicate that the CLSM has achieved the desired strength.

402S.9 Construction Methods

A. General

The height of free fall placement of the CLSM shall not exceed four feet (1.2 meters). Since CLSM is considered to be self-compacting, a vibrator shall not be allowed. The CLSM shall not be covered with any overlying materials or subjected to traffic or other loads until the Ball Drop test or the Penetrometer test shows acceptable results (Section 402S.8) or until the CLSM has been in place a minimum of 24 hours for Normal Set CLSM and a minimum of 3 hours for Fast Set CLSM. Curing of the CLSM will not be required.

B. Utility Line Backfill

After the utility pipe has been placed and the proper bedding material placed in accordance with the details on the drawings, the trench may be immediately backfilled with the CLSM to the subgrade level shown on the drawings, Standard Details 1100S-6A, B, C & D, 430S-4, 511S-13A and 511S-13B or as directed by the Engineer or designated representative.

C. Culvert Backfill

Care shall be taken to prevent movement of the structure. If the pipe or structure moves either horizontally or vertically, the CLSM and the structure shall be immediately removed and the pipe or structure re-laid to proper line and grade.

D. Other Backfill

CLSM may be used for backfill material in lieu of soil as shown on the drawings, Standard Details or as approved by the Engineer or designated representative.

E. Filling Abandoned Culverts, Pipe, or other Enclosures

The CLSM shall be placed in a manner that allows all air or water, or both, to be displaced readily as the CLSM fills the enclosure.

402S.10 Acceptance Testing During Construction

The Engineer or designated representative may perform flow consistency, air entrainment, and unconfined compressive strength tests to determine if the CLSM meets the specification requirements. The number and frequency of acceptance tests will be determined by the Engineer or designated representative.

402S.11 Measurement and Payment

The work and materials presented herein will generally not be paid for directly, but shall be included in the unit price bid for the item of construction in which this item is used.

When specified in the contract bid form as a separate pay item, the item will be paid for at the contract unit bid price(s) for "Controlled Low Strength Material". The bid prices shall include full compensation for all Work herein specified, including the furnishing of all materials, equipment, tools, labor and incidentals necessary to complete the Work.

Payment will be made under the following:

Pay Item No. 402S-A: Controlled Low Strength Material Per Cubic Yard.

End

SPECIFIC CROSS REFERENCE MATERIALS
Standard Specification Item 402S, “Controlled Low Strength Material”

City of Austin Standard Details

Designation	Description
430S-4	Concrete Backfill Under Curb & Gutter
506S-14	Control or Mini Manhole

511S-13A	Water Valve Box Adjustment to Grade W/ Full Depth Concrete
511S-13B	Water Valve Box Adjustment to Grade W/ Concrete and H.M.A.C.
1100S-6A	Narrow Excavation Next to C&G - Trench Width 0.3 M (12") & Less
1100S-6B	Narrow Excavations - Trench Width 0.3 M (12") & Less
1100S-6C	Excavation Next to C&G - Trench Width Greater than 0.3 M (12")
1100S-6D	Excavations - Trench Width Greater than 0.3 M (12")

City of Austin Standard Specification Items

Designation	Description
Item No 403S	Concrete for Structures
Item No 405S	Concrete Admixtures

Texas Department of Transportation: Standard Specifications for Construction and Maintenance of Highways, Streets, and Bridges

Designation	Description
Item No. 334	Hot Mix-Cold Laid Asphaltic Concrete Pavement
Item No. 420	Concrete Structures
Item No. 421	Portland Cement Concrete
Item No. 437	Concrete Admixtures

RELATED CROSS REFERENCE MATERIALS
Standard Specification Item 402S, “Controlled Low Strength Material”

Texas Department of Transportation: Manual of Testing Procedures

Designation	Description
Tex-106-E	Method Of Calculating the Plasticity Index of Soils
Tex-416-A	Air Content of Freshly Mixed Concrete By The Pressure Method
Tex-418-A	Compressive Strength of Cylindrical Concrete

American Society for Testing and Materials (ASTM)

Designation	Description
ASTM C 150	Portland Cement
ASTM C 360	Ball Penetration in Fresh Portland Cement Concrete
ASTM C 403	Time of Setting of Concrete Mixtures by Penetration Resistance

City of Austin Standard Specification Items

Designation	Description
Item No. 504S	Adjusting Structures
Item No. 506S	Manholes
Item No. 508S	Miscellaneous Structures and Appurtenances
Item No. 510	Pipe

Current Version: September 26, 2012

Previous Versions: 01/04/11, 06/16/08, 11/13/07, 03/13/06, 09/14/05, 02/18/04, 02/19/02 and 05/19/95

Item No. 403S
Concrete for Structures

403S.1 Description

This item shall govern quality, storage, handling, proportioning and mixing of materials for hydraulic cement concrete construction of buildings, bridges, culverts, slabs, prestressed concrete and incidental appurtenances.

This specification is applicable for projects or work involving either inch-pound or SI units. Within the text, the inch-pound units are given preference followed by SI units shown within parentheses.

403S.2 Submittals

The submittal requirements of this specification item may include:

Mix design option(s) of the class of concrete required on the project,

The supplier of the concrete mix design(s) and type of mixing equipment, and

Type of admixtures to be used with the concrete mixes.

403S.3 Materials

Concrete shall be composed of hydraulic cement or hydraulic cement and supplementary cementing materials, water, aggregates (fine and coarse), and admixtures proportioned and mixed as hereinafter provided to achieve specified results.

A. Cementitious Materials

Hydraulic cement shall conform to ASTM C 150, Type I (General Purpose), Type II (General Purpose with Moderate Sulfate Resistance) and Type III (High Early Strength). Type I shall be used when none is specified or indicated on the drawings. Type I and Type III cements shall not be used when a Type II cement is specified or indicated on the drawings. Type III cement may be used in lieu of a Type I cement, when the anticipated air temperature for the succeeding 12 hours will not exceed 60oF (15.6oC). A Type III cement shall only be used in precast concrete or when otherwise specified or allowed. All cement shall be of the same type and from the same source for a monolithic placement.

Unless otherwise specified the cementitious material content shall be limited to no more than 700 lbs. per cubic yard (417 kg per cubic meter). When supplementary cementing materials are used, cement is defined as “cement plus supplementary cementing material.” Supplementary cementing materials include fly ash (DMS

4610), ultra-fine fly ash (DMS-4610), ground granulated blast furnace slag grade 100 or 120 (DMS-4620), silica fume (DMS-4630) and metakaolin (DMS-4635).

Supplementary cementing materials shall not be used when white hydraulic cement is specified.

Class C flyash shall not be used in sulfate-resistant concrete.

Hydraulic cement manufactured in a cement kiln fueled by hazardous waste shall be considered as an approved product if the production facility is authorized to operate under regulation of the Texas Commission on Environmental Quality (TCEQ) and the U. S. Environmental Protection Agency (EPA). Supplier shall provide current TNRCC and EPA authorizations to operate the facility.

When sulfate-resistant concrete is required for a project, mix design options 1, 2, 3 or 4 presented in Section 403S.8, “Mix Design Options” shall be used to develop appropriate mix design utilizing Type I/II, II, V, IP or IS cement.

B. Mixing Water

Water for use in concrete and for curing shall be potable water free of oils, acids, organic matter or other deleterious substances and shall not contain more than 1,000 parts per million of chlorides as Cl or sulfates as SO4.

Water from the City of Austin will not require testing. Contractor may request approval of water from other sources. Contractor shall arrange for samples to be taken from the source and tested at the Contractor’s expense. When water from other sources is proposed, test reports shall be provided that indicates compliance with Table 1 before use.

Table 1: Chemical Limits for Mix Water		
Contaminant	Test Method	Maximum Concentration (ppm)
Chloride (CL) Prestressed concrete Bridge decks & superstructure All other concrete	ASTM D-512	 500 500 1,000
Sulfate (SO4)	ASTM D-516	1,000
Alkalies (NA2O + 0.658 K2O)	ASTM D-4191 & D-4192	600
Total Solids	AASHTO T-26	50,000

Water that has an adverse effect on the air-entraining agent or any other chemical admixture or on strength or time of set of the concrete shall not be used. Water used in white Portland cement concrete shall be free from iron and other impurities, which may cause staining, or discoloration.

C. Coarse Aggregate

Coarse aggregate shall consist of durable particles of crushed or uncrushed gravel, crushed blast furnace slag, crushed stone or combinations thereof; free from frozen material or injurious amounts of salt, alkali, vegetable matter or other objectionable material either free or as an adherent coating. When white hydraulic cement is specified, the coarse aggregates used in the concrete shall be light colored. Quality shall be reasonably uniform throughout.

The coarse aggregate from each source shall not contain more than 0.25 percent by weight of clay lumps, nor more than 1.0 percent by weight of shale nor more than 5 percent by weight of laminated and/or friable particles when tested in accordance with TXDOT Test Method TEX-413-A. The coarse aggregate from each source shall have a wear of not more than 40 percent when tested in accordance with TXDOT Test Method TEX-410-A.

Unless otherwise indicated on the drawings, the coarse aggregate from each source shall be subjected to 5 cycles of the soundness test conforming to TXDOT Test Method TEX-411-A. The loss shall not be greater than 12 percent when sodium sulfate is used or 18 percent when magnesium sulfate is used.

Coarse aggregate shall be washed. The Loss by Decantation (TXDOT Test Method TEX-406-A), plus allowable weight of clay lumps, shall not exceed 1 percent or the value indicated on the drawings or in the project manual, whichever is less. If material finer than the # 200 (75 micrometer) sieve is definitely established to be dust of fracture of aggregates made primarily from crushing of stone, essentially free from clay or shale as established by Part III of TXDOT Test Method TEX-406-A, the percent may be increased to 1.5. When crushed limestone coarse aggregate is used in concrete pavements, the decant may exceed 1% but not more than 3% if the material finer than the # 200 (75 micrometer) sieve is determined to be at least 67% calcium carbonate in accordance with TxDoT Test Method Tex-406-A, Part III.

The coarse aggregate factor may not be more than 0.82; however, when voids in the coarse aggregate exceed 48 percent of the total rodded volume, the coarse aggregate factor shall not exceed 0.85. The coarse aggregate factor may not be less than 0.68 except for a Class I machine extruded mix that shall not have a coarse aggregate factor lower than 0.61.

When exposed aggregate surfaces are required, the coarse aggregate shall consist of particles with at least 40 percent crushed faces. Uncrushed gravel, polished aggregates and clear resilient coatings are not acceptable for exposed aggregate finishes.

When tested by approved methods, the coarse aggregate including combinations of aggregates when used, shall conform to the grading requirements shown in Table 2.

Table 2: Coarse Aggregate Gradation Chart (Percent Passing)

Grade	Nom. Size	2-1/2" (62.5 mm)	2" (50 mm)	1 ½" (37.5 mm)	1" (25 mm)	3/4" (19 mm)	1/2" (12.5 mm)	3/8" (9.5 mm)	No. 4 (4.75 mm)	No. 8 (2.36 mm)

1	2" (50 mm)	100	80-100	50-85		20-40			0-5	
2 (467)*	1 1/2" (37.5 mm)		100	95-100		35-70		10-30	0-5	
3	1" (50 mm)		100	95-100		60-90	25-60		0-5	
4 (57)*	1" (50 mm)			100	95-100		25-60		0-10	0-5
5 (67)*	3/4" (19 mm)				100	90-100		20-55	0-10	0-5
6 (7)*	½" (12.5 mm)					100	90-100	40-70	0-15	0-5
7	3/8" (9.5 mm)						100	70-95	0-25	
8	3/8" (9.5 mm)						100	95-100	20-65	0-10

Notes:

1. Recycled crushed concrete fine aggregate shall be limited to a maximum of 20% of the fine aggregate.

2. The use of recycled crushed hydraulic cement concrete as a coarse aggregate shall be limited to Concrete Classes A, B and D (see Table 5).

D. Fine Aggregate

Fine aggregate shall be washed and consist of clean, hard, durable and uncoated particles of natural or manufactured sand or a combination thereof, with or without a mineral filler. When white hydraulic cement is specified, the fine aggregates used in the concrete shall be light colored. Quality shall be reasonably uniform throughout It shall be free from frozen material or injurious amounts of salt, alkali, vegetable matter or other objectionable material and it shall not contain more than 0.5 percent by weight of clay lumps in accordance with TEX-413-A. When subjected to color test for organic impurities per TXDOT Test Method TEX-408-A, it shall not show a color darker than standard.

Unless indicated otherwise on the drawings the acid insoluble residue of fine aggregate used in slab concrete subject to direct traffic shall not be less than 60 percent by weight (mass) when tested conforming to TXDOT Test Method TEX-612-J.

Unless indicated otherwise on the Drawings, fine aggregate shall be blended, when necessary, to meet the acid insoluble residue requirement.

When blending the following equation shall be used:

Acid Insoluble (%) = {(A1)(P1)+(A2)(P2)}/100

Where:

A1 = acid insoluble (%) of aggregate 1,

A2 = acid insoluble (%) of aggregate 2,

P1 = % by weight of A1 of the fine aggregate blend, and

P2 = % by weight of A2 of the fine aggregate blend.

When tested in accordance with TxDoT Test Method Tex-401-A, the fine aggregate, including mineral filler and combinations of aggregates, when used, shall conform to the grading requirements shown in Table 3.

Table 3: Fine Aggregate Gradation Chart1 (Grade 1 - Percent Passing)

3/8 (9.5 mm)	No. 4 (4.75 mm)	No. 8 (2.36 mm)	No. 16 (1.18 mm)	No. 30 (600 µm)	No. 50 (300 µm)	No. 100 (150 µm)	No. 200 (75 µm)
100	95-100	80-100	50-85	25-65	10-351	0-10	0-32

Notes:

1. Recycled crushed concrete fine aggregate shall be limited to a maximum of 20% of the fine aggregate.

2. The use of recycled crushed hydraulic cement concrete as a fine aggregate shall be limited to Concrete Classes A, B and D (see Table 5).

3. 6 to 35 when sand equivalent value is greater than 85.

4. 0 to 6 for manufactured sand.

   Sand equivalent per TXDOT Test Method TEX-203-F shall not be less than 80 nor less than otherwise indicated on the drawings, whichever is greater.

   The fineness modulus will be determined by adding the percentages by weight retained on sieve Nos. 4, 8, 16, 30, 50 and 100 (4.75 mm, 2.36 mm, 1.18mm, 600 µm, 300 µm, and 150 µm) and dividing the sum of the six sieves by 100. For all classes of concrete except K (see Table 5), the fineness modulus shall be between 2.30 and 3.10. For Class K concrete, the fineness modulus shall be between 2.40 and 2.90, unless indicated otherwise on the Drawings.

E. Mineral Filler

Mineral filler shall consist of stone dust, clean crushed sand or other approved inert material. When tested in accordance with TxDoT Test Method Tex-401-A, it shall conform to the following gradation:

Passing the No. 30 (600 µm) Sieve 100 percent

Passing the No. 200 (75 µm) Sieve 65 to 100 percent

F. Mortar and Grout

Unless otherwise specified, indicated on the drawings or approved by the Engineer or designated representative mortar and grout shall consist of 1 part hydraulic cement, 2 parts finely graded sand and enough water to make the mixture plastic. When required to prevent color difference, white cement shall be added to produce color required. When required by the Engineer or designated representative, approved latex adhesive may be added to the mortar. Mortar shall be provided with a consistency such that the mortar can be easily handled and spread by trowel. Grout shall be provided of a consistency that will flow into and completely fill all voids.

G. Admixtures

All chemical admixtures including water reducing, placticizers and air entrainment shall conform to TxDoT DMS-4640, “Chemical Admixtures for Concrete”. Calcium chloride-based admixtures shall not be approved. Admixtures shall be included in the prequalified concrete admixtures list maintained by TxDot’s Construction Division. High-range water-reducing admixtures (TxDoT Type F or G) and accelerating admixtures (TxDoT Type C or E) shall not be used in bridge deck concrete.

H. Air Entrainment

Unless indicated otherwise on the drawings, all concrete classes with the exception of Class B shall be air;entained in accordance with Table 8. If the air content is more than 1-1/2 percentage points below or 3 percentage points above the required air, the load of concrete will be rejected. If the air content is more than 1-1/2 but less than 3 percentage points above the required air, the concrete may be accepted based on strength test results.

403S.4 Storage of Materials

A. Cement, Supplementary Cementing Materials and Mineral Filler

All cement, supplementary cementing materials and mineral filler shall be stored in separate and well ventilated, weatherproof buildings or approved bins, which will protect the material from dampness or absorption of moisture. Storage facilities shall be easily accessible and each shipment of packaged cement shall be kept separated to provide for identification and inspection. The Engineer or designated representative may permit small quantities of sacked cement to be stored in the open for a maximum of 48 hours on a raised platform and under waterproof covering.

B. Aggregates

The method of handling and storing concrete aggregates shall prevent contamination with foreign materials. If the aggregates are stored on the ground, the sites for the stockpiles shall be clear of all vegetation and shall be level. Aggregates shall be stockpiled in sizes to facilitate blending. If the aggregate is

not stockpiled on a hard, non-contaminant base, the bottom 6-inch (150 mm) layer of the stockpile shall not be used without recleaning the aggregate.

When conditions require the use of 2 or more grades of coarse aggregates, separate stockpiles shall be maintained to prevent intermixing. Where space is limited, stockpiles shall be separated by walls or other appropriate barriers.

Aggregate shall be stockpiled and protected from the weather a minimum of 24 hours prior to use to minimize free moisture content. When stockpiles are too large to protect from the weather, accurate and continuous means acceptable to the Engineer or designated representative shall be provided to monitor aggregate temperature and moisture. Aggregates shall be stockpiled and handled such that segregation and contamination are minimized.

The stockpiles shall be sprinkled to control moisture and temperature as necessary. A reasonably uniform moisture content shall be maintained in aggregate stockpiles.

C. Admixtures

Admixtures shall be stored in accordance with manufacturer's recommendations and shall be protected against freezing.

D. Hot Weather Concrete Mixes

Ice may be used during hot weather concrete placement (Section 13 of Standard Specification Item No. 410S, "Concrete Structures") to lower the concrete temperature; however, the Contractor shall furnish a mix design acceptable to the Engineer or designated representative for class of concrete specified. The addition of ice shall not exceed 50% of the total mix water weight.

403S.5 Measurement of Materials

Water shall be accurately metered. Fine and coarse aggregates, mineral filler, bulk cement and fly ash shall be weighed separately. Allowances shall be made in the water volume and aggregate weights during batching for moisture content of aggregates and admixtures. Volumetric and weight measuring devices shall be acceptable to the Engineer or designated representative. Measurement of materials in non-volumetric and volumetric mixers shall conform to Section 421.4.D of TxDot Specification Item 421, "Hydraulic Cement Concrete".

Batch weighing of sacked cement is not required; however, bags, individually and entire shipments, may not vary by more than 3 percent from the specified weight of 94 pounds (42.6 kilograms) per bag. The average bag weight of a shipment shall be determined by weighing 50 bags taken at random.

403S.6 Mix Design

The Contractor shall furnish a mix design acceptable to the Engineer or designated representative for the class of concrete required in accordance with Table 5. The mix shall be designed by a qualified commercial laboratory and signed/sealed by a registered Professional Engineer, licensed in the state of Texas to conform with requirements contained herein, to ACI 211.1 or TXDOT Bulletin C-11 (and supplements thereto). The maximum water-to-cementitious material ratio identified in Table 5 for specific classes of concrete shall not be exceeded.

A higher-strength class of concrete with equal or lower water-to-cementituous-material ratio may be substituted for the specified class of concrete.

The mix design shall be over-designed in accordance with Table 5 in order to account for production variability and to ensure minimum compressive strength requirements are met.

Allowable mix design options are presented in Section 403S.8.

The Contractor shall perform, at the Contractor's expense, the work required to substantiate the design, including testing of strength specimens. Complete concrete design data shall be submitted to the Engineer or designated representative for approval. The mix design will be valid for a period of one (1) year provided that there are no changes to the component materials.

When there are changes in aggregates or in type, brand or source of cement, supplementary cementing material or chemical admixtures, the mix shall be evaluated as n new mix design. A change in vendor does not necessarily constitute a change in materials or source. When only the brand or source of cement is changed and there is a prior record of satisfactory performance of the cement with the ingredients, the submittal of new trial batches may be waived by the Engineer or designated representative.

At the end of one (1) year, a previously approved mix may be resubmitted for approval if it can be shown that no substantial change in the component materials has occurred and that test results confirming the adequacy of the mix designs have been acquired during the previous year. The resubmittal analysis must be reviewed, signed and sealed by a registered Professional Engineer, licensed in the state of Texas. This resubmittal shall include a reanalysis of specific gravity, absorption, fineness modulus, sand equivalent, soundness, wear and unit weights of the aggregates. Provided that the fineness modulus did not deviate by more than 0.20 or that the re-proportioned total mixing water, aggregate and cement (or cement plus fly ash) are within 1, 2, and 3 percent, respectively, of pre-approved quantities, a one-year extension on the approval of the mix may be granted by the Engineer or designated representative. Updated cement, fly ash, and admixture certifications shall accompany the resubmittal.

Approved admixtures that are included in the prequalified concrete admixtures list maintained by TxDot's Construction Division may be used with all classes of concrete at

the option of the Contractor provided that specific requirements of the governing concrete structure specification are met. Water reducing and retarding agents shall be required for hot weather, large mass, and continuous slab placements. Air entraining agents may be used in all mixes but must be used in the classes indicated on Table 5. Unless approved by the Engineer or designated representative, mix designs shall not exceed air contents for extreme exposure conditions as recommended by ACI 211.1 for the various aggregate grades.

403S.7 Consistency and Quality of Concrete

Concrete shall be workable, cohesive, possess satisfactory finishing qualities and of stiffest consistency that can be placed and vibrated into a homogeneous mass within slump requirements specified in Table 4 without the development of segregation or honeycombing. No concrete will be permitted with a slump in excess of the maximums shown unless water-reducing admixtures have been previously approved. Concrete that exceeds the maximum acceptable placement slump at time of delivery will be rejected. Slump values shall be conducted in accordance with TXDOT Test Method TEX-415-A.

Consistency and quality of concrete should allow efficient placement and completion of finishing operations before initial set. Re-tempering (i.e. addition of water and reworking concrete after initial set) shall not be allowed. When field conditions are such that additional moisture is needed for final concrete surface finishing operation, the required water shall be applied to surface by fog spray only and shall be held to a minimum. Excessive bleeding shall be avoided and in no case will it be permissible to expedite finishing and drying by sprinkling the surface with cement powder.

Table 4: Slump Requirements

	Slump1, inches (mm)	
Type of Construction	Maximum	Minimum
Cased Drilled Shafts	4 (100)	3 (75)
Reinforced Foundation Caissons and Footings	3 (75)	1 (25)
Reinforced Footings and Substructure Walls	3 (75)	1 (25)
Uncased Drilled Shafts	6 (150)	5 (125)
Thin-walled Sections; 9 inches (225 mm) or less	6 ½ (165)	4 (100)
Prestressed Concrete Members1	6 ½ (165)	4 (100)
Precast Drainage Structures	6 (150)	4 (100)
Wall Sections over 9 inches (225 mm)	5 (125)	3 (75)
Reinforced Building Slabs, Beams, Columns and Walls	4 (100)	1 (25)
Bridge Decks	4 (100)	2 (50)
Pavements, Fixed-form	6 ½ (165)	4 (100)
Pavements, Slip-form	3 (75)	1-½ (37.5)
Sidewalks, Driveways and Slabs on Ground	4 (100)	2 (50)
Curb & Gutter, Hand-vibrated	3 (75)	1 (25)

Curb & Gutter, Hand-tamped or spaded	4 (100)	2 (50)
Curb & Gutter, Slip-form/extrusion machine	2 (50)	½ (12.5)
Heavy Mass Construction	2 (50)	1 (25)
High Strength Concrete	4 (100)	3 (75)
Riprap and Other Miscellaneous Concrete	6 (150)	1 (25)
Under Water or Seal Concrete	8 ½ (213)	6 (150)

1. Slump values when a high range water reducer (HRWR) is not used.

2. When a high range water reducer (HRWR) is used, maximum acceptable placement slump will be 9 in (225 mm)

During progress of the work, the Engineer or designated representative shall cast test cylinders as a check on compressive strength of concrete actually placed. The Engineer or designated representative may also perform slump tests, entrained air tests and temperature checks to ensure compliance with specifications.

Proportioning of all material components shall be checked prior to discharging. Excluding mortar material for pre-coating of the mixer drum [see section 403S.8.B and adjustment for moisture content of admixtures and aggregates, material components shall fall within the range of + 1% for water, + 2% for aggregates, + 3% for cement, +2% for fly ash and within manufacturer recommended dosage rates for admixtures except that air entrainment shall be within + 1-1/2 percentage points of the mix design requirements.

Unless otherwise specified or indicated on the drawings, concrete mix temperature shall not exceed 90°F (32oC) except in mixes with high range water reducers where a maximum mix temperature of 100°F (38oC) will be allowed. Cooling an otherwise acceptable mix by addition of water or ice during agitation will not be allowed.

Test cylinders will be required for small placements such as manholes, inlets, culverts, wing walls, etc. The Engineer or designated representative may vary the number of tests to a minimum of 1 for each 25 cubic yards (1 for each 19 cubic meters) placed over a several day period.

Test cylinders shall be required for each monolithic placement of bridge decks or superstructures, top slabs of direct traffic culverts, cased drilled shafts, structural beams and as otherwise directed by Engineer or designated representative for design strength confirmation or early form removal. Test cylinders made for early form removal or for consideration of use of structure will be at Contractor's expense, except when required by Engineer or designated representative.

A strength test shall be defined as the average breaking strength of 2 cylinders. A minimum of four test cylinders shall be prepared; two each to be tested at 7 and 28 days. Specimens will be tested conforming to TXDOT Test Method TEX-418-A. If required strength or consistency of class of concrete being produced cannot be secured with minimum cementitious material specified or without exceeding maximum water/cementitious material ratio, Contractor will be required to furnish different

aggregates, use a water reducing agent, an air entraining agent or increase the cement content in order to provide concrete meeting these specifications.

Slump tests will be performed in accordance with TxDoT Test Method Tex-415-A. Entrained air tests will be performed in accordance with TxDoT Test Method Tex-416-A.

Test specimens shall be cured using the same methods and under the same conditions as the concrete represented. Design strength cylinders shall be cured conforming to TXDOT Bulletin C-11 (and supplements thereto).

When control of concrete quality is by 28-day compressive tests, job control testing will be by 7-day compressive strength tests. The minimum strength requirement for seven (7) day test will be 70 percent of the specified minimum 28-day compressive strength. If the required 7-day strength is not secured with the quantity of cement specified in Table 4, changes in the mix design shall be made and resubmitted for approval. For an occasional failure of the seven-day compressive test, the concrete may be tested at 28 days for final evaluation.

Table 5: Classes of Concrete

Class	Cement Sks Per CY	Minimum Strength, psi (MPa)		Maximum W/C Ratio1	Coarse Aggr. Grade 2,3,4	Air Entrain.
		28 Days	7 Days			
A	5.0 (280 kg/m3)	3000 (20.6)	2100 (14.5)	0.6	1,2,3,4, 8	Yes
B	4.0 (225 kg/m^3)	2000 (13.8)	1400 (9.7)	0.6	2,3,4,5,6,7	No
C5	6.0 (335 kg/m^3)	3600(24.8)	2520 (17.4)	0.45	1,2,3,4,5,6	Yes
D	4.5 (252 kg/m^3)	2500 (17.2)	1750 (12.1)	0.6	2,3,4,5,6,7	No
H5	6.0 (335 kg/m^3)	As indicated	As Indicated	0.45	3,4,5,6	Yes
I	5.5 (308 kg/m^3)	3500 (24.1)	2450 (16.9)	0.45	2,3,4,5	Yes
J	2.0 (112 kg/m^3)	800 (5.5)	560 (3.9)	N/A	2,3,4,5	No
S5	6.0 (335 kg/m^3)	4000 (27.6)	2800 (19.3)	0.45	2,3,4,5	Yes

Notes:

1. Maximum water-cement or water-cementitious ratio by weight

2 Unless otherwise allowed, Grade 1 coarse aggregate shall only be used in massive foundations with 4-in (100-mm) minimum clear spacing between reinforcing steel bars.

3. Grade 1 coarse aggregate grading shall not be used in drilled shafts.

4. Unless otherwise allowed, Grade 8 coarse aggregate shall be used in extruded curbs.

5. Structural concrete classes.

6. When Type II cement is used in Class C, S or A concrete, the 7-day compressive strength requirement will be 2310 psi (15.9 MPa) for Class C, 2570 psi (17.7 MPa) for Class S and 1925 psi (13.3 MPa) for Class A minimum.

Table 6: Over Design Required to Meet Compressive Strength Requirements[1]

Number Of Tests [2,3]	Standard Deviation, psi (MPa)				
	300 (2.06)	400 (2.75)	500 (3.44)	600 (4.13)	700 (4.82)
15	470 (3.24)	620 (4.27)	850 (5.85)	1,120 (7.71)	1,390 (9.57)
20	430 (2.96)	580 (3.99)	760 (5.23)	1,010 (6.95)	1,260 (8.67)
30 or more	400 (2.75)	530 (3.65)	670 (4.61)	900 (6.20)	1,130 (7.78)

Notes:

1. When designing the mix, add the tabulated amounts to the minimum design strength in Table 5.Maximum water-cement or water-cementitious ratio by weight

2. Number of tests of a concrete mixture used to estimate the standard deviation of a concrete production facility. Test of another mix within 1,000 psi (6.88 MPa) of the specified strength may be used.

3. If less than 15 prior tests are available, the overdesign should be 1,000 psi (6.88 MPa) for specified strength less than 3,000 psi (20.65 MPa), 1,200 psi (8.26 MPa) for specified strengths from 3,000 to 5,000 psi (20.65 to 34.42 MPa) and 1,400 psi (9.64 MPa) for specified strengths greater than 5,000 psi (34.42 MPa).

Table 7: Expected Usage of Concrete Classes

Class	General Usage
A	Inlets, manholes, curb, gutter, curb & gutter, concrete retards, sidewalks, driveways, backup walls and anchors
B	Riprap, small roadside signs and anchors

C5	Drilled shafts, bridge substructure, bridge railing, culverts except top slab of direct traffic culverts, headwalls, wing walls, approach slabs, and cast-in-place concrete traffic barrier
D	Riprap
H5	Prestressed concrete beams, boxes, piling and precast concrete traffic barrier
J	Utility trench repair
S5	Bridge slabs and top slabs of direct traffic culverts

Table 8: Air Entrainment[1]

Nominal Maximum Aggregate Size In (mm)	% Air Entrainment	
	Moderate Exposure	Severe Exposure
3/8 (9.5)- Grades 7 & 8	6	7-1/2
1/2 (12.5)- Grades 6	5-1/2	7
3/4 (19)- Grades 5	5	6
1 (25)- Grades 4	4-1/2	6
1-1/2 (37.5)- Grades 2 & 3	4-1/2	5-1/2
2 (50)- Grades 2	4	5

1. For specified concrete strengths above 5,000 psi (34.42 MPa) a reduction of 1 percentage point is allowed.

403S.8 Mix Design Options

For the structural concretes identified in Table 5 (Classes C, H and S) and any other class of concrete designed using more than 520 lbs. of cementitious material per cubic yard (310 kgs per cubic meter), one of the mix design options presented below shall be used.

For the non-structural concretes identified in Table 5 (Classes A, B, D and I) and any other class of concrete designed using less than 520 lbs. of cementitious material per cubic yard (310 kgs per cubic meter), one of the mix design options presented below will be used, except that Class C fly ash may be used instead of Class F fly ash for Options 1, 3 and 4 unless a sulfate-resistant concrete is required.

A. Option 1: Twenty (20) to thirty-five (35) percent of the cement may be replaced with Class F fly ash.

B. Option 2: Thirty-five (35) to fifty (50) percent of the cement may be replaced with ground granulated blast-furnace slag.

C. Option 3: Thirty-five (35) to fifty (50) percent of the cement may be replaced with a combination of Class F fly ash, ground granulated blast-furnace slag or silica fume. The combination may not include more than thirty-five (35) percent fly ash and no more than ten (10) percent silica fume.

D. Option 4: Type IP or Type IS will be used and up to ten (10) percent of the cement may be replaced with Class F fly ash, ground granulated blast-furnace slag or silica fume.

E. Option 5: Thirty-five (35) to fifty (50) percent of the cement may be replaced with a combination of Class C fly ash and at least six (6) percent of silica fume, ultra fine fly ash or metakaolin. The combination may not include more than thirty-five (35) percent fly ash and no more than ten (10) percent silica fume.

F. Option 6: A lithium nitrate admixture will be added at a minimum dosage of 0.55 gal. Of thirty (30) percent lithium nitrate solution per pound of alkalis present in the hydraulic cement.

G. Option 7: When hydraulic cement only is used in the design, the total alkali contribution from the cement in the concrete does not exceed 4.0 lbs. Per cubic yard, when calculated as follows:

alkali (lbs. per CY) = .01 (lbs cement/CY) (% Na_2O equivalent in cement)

where (% Na_2O equivalent in cement) is assumed to be the maximum cement alkali content reported on the cement mill certificate.

H. Option 8: When there are deviations from Options 1 through 7, the following shall be performed:

1. Conduct tests on both coarse and fine aggregate separately in accordance with ASTM C-1260, using 440 g of the proposed cementitious in the same proportions of hydraulic cement to supplementary cementing material to be used in the mix.

2. Prior to use of the mix, a certified test report signed and sealed by a Professional Engineer, licensed in the state of Texas shall be submitted that demonstrates that ASTM C 1260 test results for each aggregate do not exceed 0.10 percent expansion.

403S.9 Mixing and Mixing Equipment

All equipment, tools and machinery used for hauling materials and performing any part of the work shall be maintained in such condition to insure completion of the work without excessive delays for repairs and replacement. Mixing shall be done in a mixer of approved type and size that will produce uniform distribution of material throughout the mass and shall be capable of producing concrete meeting requirements of ASTM C 94, Ready-mixed Concrete and these specifications. Mixing equipment shall be capable of producing sufficient concrete to provide required quantities. Entire contents of the drum shall be discharged before any materials are placed therein for a succeeding batch. Improperly mixed concrete shall not be placed in a structure. For all mixers an adequate water supply and an accurate method of measuring the water shall be provided.

The mixer may be batched by either volumetric or weight sensing equipment and shall be equipped with a suitable timing device that will lock the discharging mechanism and signal when specified time of mixing has elapsed.

A. Proportioning and Mixing Equipment

For all miscellaneous concrete placements, a mobile, continuous, volumetric mixer or a volumetric or weight batch mixer of the rotating paddle type may be used.

When approved by Engineer or designated representative in writing or when specified for use in other items, these mixers may be used for other types of concrete construction, including structural concrete, if the number of mixers furnished will supply the amount of concrete required for the particular operation in question.

These mixers shall be designed to receive all the concrete ingredients, including admixtures, required by the mix design in a continuous uniform rate and mix them to the required consistency before discharging.

For continuous volumetric mixers, the materials delivered during a revolution of the driving mechanism or in a selected interval, will be considered a batch and the proportion of each ingredient will be calculated in the same manner as for a batch type plant.

Mixing time shall conform to recommendations of manufacturer of mixer unless otherwise directed by Engineer or designated representative.

B. Ready-mixed Concrete

Use of ready-mixed concrete will be permitted provided the batching plant and mixer trucks meet quality requirements specified herein. When ready-mixed concrete is used, additional mortar (1 sack cement, 3 parts sand and sufficient water) shall be added to each batch to coat the mixer drum. Ready-mixed concrete, batching plant and mixer truck operation shall include the following:

1. A ticket system will be used that includes a copy for the Inspector. Ticket will have machine stamped time/date of concrete batch, a mix design designation, weight of cement, fly ash, sand and aggregates; exact nomenclature and written quantities of admixtures and water. Any item missing or incomplete on ticket may be cause for rejection of concrete.

2. Sufficient trucks will be available to support continuous placements. The Contractor will satisfy the Engineer or designated representative that adequate standby trucks are available to support monolithic concrete placement requirements.

3. A portion of mixing water required by the mix design to produce the specified slump may be withheld and added at the job site, but only with permission of the Engineer or designated representative and under the Inspector's observation. When water is added under these conditions, the concrete batch will be thoroughly mixed before any slump or strength samples are

taken. Additional cement shall not be added at the job site to otherwise unacceptable mixes.

4. A metal plate(s) shall be attached in a prominent place on each truck mixer plainly showing the various uses for which it was designed. The data shall include the drum's speed of rotation for mixing and for agitating and the capacity for complete mixing and/or agitating only. A copy of the manufacturer's design, showing dimensions of blades, shall be available for inspection at the plant at all times. Accumulations of hardened concrete shall be removed to the satisfaction of the Engineer or designated representative.

5. The loading of the transit mixers shall not exceed capacity as shown on the manufacturer's plate attached to the mixer or 63 percent of the drum volume, whichever is the lesser volume. The loading of transit mixers to the extent of causing spill-out enroute to delivery will not be acceptable. Consistent spillage will be cause for disqualification of a supplier.

6. Excess concrete remaining in the drum after delivery and wash water after delivery shall not be dumped on the project site unless approval of the dump location is first secured from the Engineer or designated representative.

C. Volumetric Batching

Use of volumetric batched concrete will be permitted provided the batching and continuous mixing operations conform to ASTM C 685, “Concrete Made By Volumetric Batching and Continuous Mixing”. This type concrete shall be made from materials continuously batched by volume, mixed in a continuous mixer and delivered to the site in a freshly mixed and unhardened state. Tests and criteria for batching accuracy and mixing efficiency shall be as specified in ASTM C 685.

A ticket system will be used that includes a copy for the Inspector. The ticket will have machine stamped time/date of concrete batch, a mix design designation, weight of cement, fly ash, sand and aggregates; exact nomenclature and written quantities of admixtures and water. Any item missing or incomplete on ticket may be cause for rejection of concrete.

Each batching or mixing unit, or both, shall carry in a prominent place a metal plate or plates on which are plainly marked the gross volume of the unit in terms of mixed concrete, discharge speed and the weight-calibrated constant of the machine in terms of a revolution counter or other output indicator. The mixer shall produce a thoroughly mixed and uniform concrete.

The batcher-mixer unit shall contain in separate compartments all the necessary ingredients needed for the manufacture of concrete. The unit shall be equipped with calibrated proportioning devices to vary the mix proportions and it shall produce concrete as required by the Work and ASTM C 685.

D. Truck-mixed Concrete

The concrete shall be mixed in a truck mixer from 70 to 100 revolutions at the mixing speed designated by the manufacturer that will produce a uniform concrete mix. The concrete shall be delivered to the project in a thoroughly mixed and uniform mass and shall be discharged with a satisfactory degree of uniformity. Additional mixing at the job site, at the mixing speed designated by the manufacturer, may be allowed by the Engineer or designated representative as long as the concrete is discharged before the drum has revolved a total of 300 revolutions after the introduction of the mixing water to the cement and the aggregates.

Re-tempering or adding concrete chemical admixtures is only permitted at the job site when concrete is delivered in a truck mixer. Water shall not be added after introduction of mixing water at the batch plant except on arrival at the job site with approval of the Engineer or designated representative, in order to adjust the slump of the concrete. When this water is added, the mix design water-cementitious-material ratio shall not be exceeded. The drum or blades shall be turned at least 30 additional revolutions at mixing speed to ensure thorough and uniform mixing of the concrete. Water or chemical admixtures shall not be added to the batch after any concrete has been discharged.

When the concrete contains silica fume, mixing times and batching operations shall be adjusted as necessary to ensure that the material is completely and uniformly dispersed in the mix. The dispersion of the silica fume within the mix shall be verified in trial batches.

E. Hand-mixed Concrete

Hand mixing of concrete may be permitted for small placements or in case of an emergency and then only on authorization of the Engineer or designated representative. Hand-mixed batches shall not exceed a 4 cubic foot (0.113 cubic meters) batch in volume. Material volume ratios shall not be leaner than 1 part cement, 2 parts large aggregate, 1 part fine aggregate and enough water to produce a consistent mix with a slump not to exceed 4 inches (100 mm). Admixtures shall not be used unless specifically approved by the Engineer or designated representative.

403S.10 Excavation, Placing of Concrete, Finishing, Curing and Backfill

Excavation, placing of concrete, finishing, curing and backfill shall conform to Standard Specification Item No. 401S, "Structural Excavation and Backfill", Standard Specification Item No. 410S, "Concrete Structures" and Standard Specification Item No. 411S, "Surface Finishes for Concrete".

403S.11 Measurement

Where measurement of concrete for a structure is not provided by another governing pay item, measurement shall be made under this specification in accordance with the following.

The quantities of concrete of the various classifications which constitute the completed and accepted structure or structures in place will be measured by the cubic yard (cubic meters:1 cubic meter is equal to 1.308 cubic yards), each, square yard (square meter: 1 square yard equals 0.836 square meters) or linear foot as indicated in the Contract Documents. Measurement will be as follows:

A. General

1. Measurement based on dimensions shall be for the completed structure as measured in place. However, field-measured dimensions shall not exceed those indicated on the drawings or as may have been directed by the Engineer or designated representative in writing.

2. No deductions shall be made for chamfers less than 2 inches (50 mm) in depth, embedded portions of structural steel, reinforcing steel, nuts, bolts, conduits less than 5 inches (125 mm) in diameter, pre/post tensioning tendons, keys, water stops, weep holes and expansion joints 2 inches (50 mm) or less in width.

3. No measurement shall be made for concrete keys between adjoining beams or prestressed concrete planks.

4. No measurement shall be made for fill concrete between the ends or adjoining prestressed concrete planks/box beams at bent caps or between the ends of prestressed concrete planks/box beams and abutment end walls.

5. No measurement shall be made for inlet and junction box invert concrete.

6. No measurement shall be made for any additional concrete required above the normal slab thickness for camber or crown.

B. Plan Quantity. For those items measured for plan quantity payment, adequate calculations have been made. If no adjustment is required by Article 403S.12, additional measurements or calculations will not be required or made.

C. Measured in Place. For those items not measured for Plan Quantity payment, measurement will be made in place, subject to the requirements of Article 403S.10.A.1 above.

403S.12 Payment

The work performed and materials furnished as prescribed by this item and measured in accordance with the applicable provisions of "Measurement" above will be paid for as follows.

The quantity to be paid for will be that quantity indicated in the contract documents and/or shown on the drawings, regardless of errors in calculations, except as may be modified by the following.

Plan Quantities will be adjusted:

A. When a complete structure element has been erroneously included or omitted from the drawings, the quantity shown on the drawings for that element will be added to or deducted from the plan quantity and included for payment. A complete structure element will be the smallest portion of a total structure for which a quantity is included on the drawings. Quantities revised in this manner will not be subject to the provisions of the "General Conditions", Article 11.

B. When the plan quantity for a complete structure element is in error by 5 percent or more, a recalculation will be made and the corrected quantity included for payment. Quantities revised in this manner will not be subject to the provisions of the "General Conditions", Article 11

C. When quantities are revised by a change in design, the "plan quantity" will be increased or decreased by the amount involved in the design change. Quantities revised in this manner will be subject to the provisions of the "General Conditions", Article 11.

   The party to the contract requesting the adjustment shall present to the other, a copy of the description and location, together with calculations of the quantity for the structure element involved. When this quantity is certified correct by the Engineer or designated representative, it will become the revised plan quantity.

   Payment for increased or decreased costs due to a change in design on those items measured as "Cubic Yard", "Each", "Square Foot", "Square Yard" or "Linear Foot" will be determined by Change Order. Quantities revised in this manner will be subject to the provisions of the "General Conditions", Article 11.

   The unit prices bid for the various classes of concrete shown shall include full compensation for furnishing, hauling, and mixing all concrete material; placing, finishing and curing all concrete; all grouting, pointing and finishing; furnishing and placing drains; furnishing and placing metal flashing strips; furnishing and placing expansion joint material required by this item; and for all forms and false work, labor, tools, equipment and incidentals necessary to complete the work.

Pay Item No. 403S-CY: (Structure or Structural Component) - Per Cubic Yard.

Pay Item No. 403S-EA: (Structure or Structural Component) - Per Each.

Pay Item No. 403S-SY: (Structure or Structural Component) - Per Square Yard.

Pay Item No. 403S-LF: (Structure or Structural Component) - Per Lineal Foot.

End

SPECIFIC CROSS REFERENCE MATERIALS
Standard Specification Item 403S, "Concrete For Structures"

City of Austin Standard Specification Items

Designation	Description
Item No. 401S	Structural Excavation and Backfill
Item No. 410S	Concrete Structures
Item No. 411S	Surface Finishes for Concrete

Texas Department of Transportation: Departmental Material Specifications

Designation	Description
DMS-4640	Chemical Admixtures for Concrete
DMS-4610	Fly Ash
DMS-4620	Ground Granulated Blast-Furnace Slag
DMS-4630	Silica Fume
DMS-4635	Metakaolin

American Association of State Highway & Transportation Officials,
AASHTO Standard Method of Test for

Designation	Description
Method T 26	Quality of Water to be Used in Concrete

American Concrete Institute, ACI

Designation	Description
ACI 211.1	Standard Practice for Selecting Proportions for Normal, Heavyweight, and Mass Concrete

American Society for Testing and Materials, ASTM

Designation	Description
ASTM C 94	Specification For Ready-Mixed Concrete
ASTM C 150	Specification For Portland Cement
ASTM C 685	Concrete Made By Volumetric Batching and Continuous Mixing
ASTM C-1260	Standard Test Method for Potential Alkali Reactivity of Aggregates
ASTM D-512	Test Methods for Chloride Ion in Water
ASTM D-516	Test Methods for Sulfate Ion in Water
ASTM D-4191	Test Method for Sodium in Water by Atomic Absorption
ASTM D-4192	Test Method for Potassium Water by Atomic Absorption

Texas Department of Transportation: Manual of Testing Procedures

Designation	Description
TEX-203-F	Sand Equivalent Test
TEX-401-A	Sieve Analysis of Fine and Coarse Aggregate
TEX-406-A	Mineral Finer than 75 µm (No. 200) Sieve in Mineral Aggregates (Decantation Test for Concrete Aggregates)
TEX-408-A	Organic Impurities in Fine Aggregate for Concrete

TEX-410-A	Abrasion of Coarse Aggregate Using The Los Angeles Machine
TEX-411-A	Soundness of Aggregate by Use of Sodium Sulfate or Magnesium Sulfate
TEX-413-A	Determination of Deleterious Materials in Mineral Aggregate
TEX-415-A	Slump of Portland Cement Concrete
TEX-416-A	Air Content of Freshly-Mixed Concrete by the Pressure Method
TEX-418-A	Compressive Strength of Cylindrical Concrete Specimens
TEX-612-J	Acid Insoluble Residue

SPECIFIC CROSS REFERENCE MATERIALS (Continued)
Standard Specification Item 403S, "Concrete For Structures"

Texas Department of Transportation: Publications

Designation	Description
Bulletin C-11	Construction Bulletin

RELATED CROSS REFERENCE MATERIALS
Standard Specification Item 403S, "Concrete For Structures"

Texas Department of Transportation: Standard Specifications for Construction and Maintenance of Highways, Streets, and Bridges

Designation	Description
Item 360	Concrete Pavement
Item 420	Concrete Structures
Item 421	Hydraulic Cement Concrete

Item 427	Surface Finishes for Concrete
Item 431	Pneumatically Placed Concrete
Item 520	Weighing and Measuring Equipment

Texas Department of Transportation: Departmental Material Specifications

Designation	Description
DMS-4650	Hydraulic Cement Concrete Curing Materials and Evaporation Retardants”
DMS-6100	Epoxy and Adhesives
DMS 8900	Fly Ash

Item No. 405S
Concrete Admixtures

405S.1 Description

This item shall govern material requirements of admixtures for Portland cement concrete.

This specification is applicable for projects or work involving either inch-pound or SI units. Within the text and accompanying tables, the inch-pound units are given preference followed by SI units shown within parentheses.

405S.2 Submittals

The submittal requirements of this specification item include:

A. Type and manufacturer of any proposed admixture.

B. Certification that proposed admixture meet the requirements of this specification, ASTM C260 and ASTM C494.

C. For a specific mix design, a statement of compatibility of products shall be submitted when admixtures from multiple manufacturers are proposed.

405S.3 Materials

All admixture submittals must be approved by the Engineer or designated representative. No admixture shall be chloride-based or have chloride(s) added in the manufacturing process. Admixtures must be pretested by the Texas Department of Transportation (TXDOT) Materials and Tests Engineer and be included in the State's current approved admixture list. All admixtures must retain an approved status through the duration of a mix design's one-year approval period.

(1) Air Entraining Admixture:

An "Air Entraining Admixture" is defined as a material which, when added to a concrete mixture in the proper quantity, will entrain uniformly dispersed microscopic air bubbles in the concrete mix. The admixture shall meet the requirements of ASTM Designation: C 260 modified as follows:

(a) The cement used in any series of test shall be either the cement proposed for the specific work or a "reference" Type I cement from one mill.

(b) The air entraining admixture used in the reference concrete shall be Neutralized Vinsol Resin.

(2) Water-reducing Admixture:

A "Water-reducing Admixture" is defined as a material which, when added to a concrete mixture in the correct quantity, will reduce the quantity of mixing water required to produce concrete of a given consistency and required strength. This admixture shall conform to ASTM C 494, Type A.

(3) Accelerating Admixture:

An "Accelerating Admixture" is defined as an admixture that accelerates the setting time and the early strength development of concrete. This admixture shall conform to ASTM C 494, Type C. The accelerating admixture will contain no chlorides.

(4) Water-reducing, Retarding Admixture:

A "Water-reducing, Retarding Admixture" is defined as a material which, when added to a concrete mixture in the correct quantity, will reduce the quantity of mixing water required to produce concrete of a given consistency and retard the initial set of the concrete. This admixture shall conform to ASTM C 494, Type D.

(5) High-range Water Reducing Admixtures:

A "High-range Water Reducing Admixture", referred to as a superplasticizer, is defined as a synthetic polymer material which, when added to a low slump concrete mixture increases the slump without adversely affecting segregation, impermeability or durability of the mix. This admixture shall conform to ASTM C 494, Type F or G.

(6) Fly Ash:

Fly ash used in Portland cement concrete as a substitute for Portland cement or as a mineral filler shall comply with TXDOT Materials Specification D-9-8900 and be listed on TXDOT's current list of approved fly ash sources. Fly ash obtained from a source using a process fueled by hazardous waste (30 Texas Administrative Code, Section 335.1) shall be prohibited. This applies to any other specification concerning the use of fly ash. Contractor shall maintain a record of source for each batch. Supplier shall certify that no hazardous waste is used in the fuel mix or raw materials.

405S.4 Certification and Product Information

The Contractor shall submit the name of the admixture proposed and manufacturer's certification that the selected admixtures meet the requirements of this item and of ASTM C 260 and C 494 as applicable. Admixtures for a mix design shall be of the same brand. If more than one admixture is proposed in the concrete mix, a statement of compatibility of components shall accompany certification. Manufacturer's product literature shall specify when in the batching/mixing operation the admixture must be added.

The Engineer or designated representative may request additional information such as infrared spectrophotometry scan, solids content, pH value, etc., for further consideration. Any unreported changes in formulation discovered by any of the tests prescribed herein may be cause to permanently bar the manufacturer from furnishing admixtures for Owner's work.

405S.5 Construction Use of Admixtures

All admixtures used shall be liquid except high-range water reducers which may be a powder. Liquid admixtures shall be agitated as needed to prevent separation or sedimentation of solids; however, air agitation of Neutralized Vinsol Resin will not be allowed.

No admixture shall be dispensed on dry aggregates. Admixtures shall be dispensed at the batching site separately, but at the same time as the mixing water. Only high range water reducers may be introduced into the mix at the job site.

When other admixtures are used with fly ash, the amount of the other admixture to be used shall be based on the amount of Portland cement only and not the amount of Portland cement and fly ash.

When high-range water reducers are to be added at the job site, transit mixers shall be used. Admixture manufacturer literature shall indicate recommended mixing methods and time for the specific equipment and mix design used. The transit mix equipment shall not be loaded in excess of 63 percent of its rated capacity to ensure proper mixing of the admixture at the site. If during discharging of concrete a change in slump in excess of 30% is noted, the remaining concrete shall be rejected unless prior approval was given by the Engineer or designated representative to retemper a load with a second charge of admixture. Retempering with water shall not be allowed.

Accelerating admixtures will not be permitted in combination with Type II cement.

All mixes with air entrainment shall have a minimum relative durability factor of 80 in accordance with ASTM C 260. Dosage of air entrainment admixtures may be adjusted by the Contractor to stay within the specified tolerances for air entrainment of Standard Specification Item No. 403S, "Concrete for Structures".

405S.6 Measurement and Payment

The requirements of this specifications shall not be measured and paid for directly, but shall be included in the unit price bid for the item of construction in which this item is used.

End

SPECIFIC CROSS REFERENCE MATERIALS
Specification Item No. 405S, "Concrete Admixtures"

City of Austin Standard Specifications

Designation	*Description*
Item No. 403S	*Concrete for Structures*

American Society for Testing and Materials, ASTM

Designation	*Description*
ASTM C260	*Air-Entraining Admixtures for Concrete*
ASTM C495	*Chemical Admixtures for Concrete*

Texas Department of Transportation: Department Material Specification

Designation	*Description*
DMS-8900	*Fly Ash*

RELATED CROSS REFERENCE MATERIALS
Specification Item No. 405S, “Concrete Admixtures”

Texas Department of Transportation: Standard Specifications for Construction and Maintenance of Highways, Streets, and Bridges

Designation	Description
Item 360	Concrete Pavement
Item 420	Concrete Structures
Item 421	Portland Cement Concrete
Item 427	Surface Finishes for Concrete
Item 431	Pneumatically Placed Concrete
Item 437	Concrete Admixtures
Item 520	Weighing and Measuring Equipment
Item 522	Portland Cement Concrete Plants
Item 524	Hydraulic Cement

Current Version: September 26, 2012

Previous Versions: 11/13/07, 09/14/05, 04/17/86

Item No. 406S
Reinforcing Steel

406S.1 Description

This item shall govern furnishing and placement of reinforcing steel, deformed and smooth, of the size and quantity indicated on the drawings and in accordance with these specifications.

This specification is applicable for projects or work involving either inch-pound or SI units. Within the text and accompanying tables, the inch-pound units are given preference followed by SI units shown within parentheses.

406S.2 Submittals

The submittal requirements of this specification item may include:

A. Evidence that the steel reinforcement producer is included on the TxDoT list of approved producing mills

B. Listing of the size, grade, type and quantity of reinforcing steel proposed for the project.

C. If welding of reinforcing steel is proposed, evidence that carbon equivalent (C.E.) of the proposed steel is at least 0.55% with a report of chemical analysis showing the percentages of elements necessary to establish C.E.

D. If epoxy coated steel is proposed, evidence that the steel reinforcement producer is included on the TxDoT list of approved epoxy coating applicators

E. If epoxy coated steel is proposed, written certification that the epoxy-coated reinforcing steel meets the requirements of this Item with a copy of the manufacturer's control tests.

F. When mechanical splices are proposed, the types of couplers proposed for use.

406S.3 Materials

A. Approved Mills

Prior to furnishing reinforcing steel, the producing mills must be included on the list of approved producing mills that is maintained by the Construction Division of the State of Texas Department of Transportation

B. Deformed Bars and Wire Reinforcement

Unless indicated otherwise on the drawings, Bar reinforcement shall be Grade 60 and deformed. Reinforcing steel must conform to one of the following:

ASTM A615/ 615M, Grades 40 or 60 (300 or 420)

ASTM A996/ 996M, Type A, Grades 40 or 60 (300 or 420)

ASTM A996/996M, Type R, Grade 60 (420), permitted in concrete pavement only (furnished as straight bars only without bends. Bend tests are not required)

ASTM A706/706M

In cases where the provisions of this item are in conflict with the provisions of the ASTM Designation to which reference is made, the provisions of this item shall govern.

The nominal size, area and weight (mass) of reinforcing steel bars covered by these specifications are as follows:

Bar Size Number 1/8th ins (mm)	Nominal Diameter, inches (mm)	Nominal Area, Sq. ins. (mm2)	Weight/Linear Foot Lbs. (kg)
2 (6)	0.250 (6.6)	0.05 (32)	0.167 (.075)
3 (10)	0.375 (9.5)	0.11 (71)	0.376 (.171)
4 (13)	0.500 (12.5)	0.20 (127)	0.668 (.303)
5 (16)	0.625 (15.5)	0.31 (198)	1.043 (.473)
6 (19)	0.750 (19.0)	0.44 (285)	1.502 (.681)
7 (22)	0.875 (22.0)	0.60 (388)	2.044 (.927)
8 (25)	1.000 (25.5)	0.79 (507)	2.670 (2.211)
9 (29)	1.128 (28.5)	1.00 (641)	3.400 (1.542)
10 (32)	1.270 (32.0)	1.27 (792)	4.303 (1.952)
11 (36)	1.410 (36.0)	1.56 (958)	5.313 (2.410)

14 (43)	1.693 (43.0)	2.25 (1552)	7.65 (3.470)
18 (57)	2.257 (57.5)	4.00 (2565)	13.60 (6.169)

Smooth, round bars shall be designated by size number through a No. 4. Smooth bars above No. 4 shall be designated by diameter in inches.

C. Smooth Bar and Spiral Reinforcement

Smooth bars and dowels for concrete pavement must have a minimum yield strength of 60 ksi (414 MPa) and meet ASTM A615/615M. Smooth bars that are greater in diameter than a No. 3 (10 mm) designation shall conform to ASTM A615 or meet the physical requirements of ASTM A36.

Spiral reinforcement shall be either smooth or deformed bars or wire of the minimum size or gauge indicated on the drawings. Bars for spiral reinforcement shall comply with ASTM A615 Grade 40(300), ASTM A996, Type A, Grade 40 (300); or ASTM A675, Grade 80(550), meeting dimensional requirements of ASTM A615. Smooth wire shall comply with ASTM A82, and deformed wire shall comply with ASTM A496.

D. Weldable Reinforcing Steel

Reinforcing steel to be welded must comply with ASTM A706 or have a carbon equivalent (C.E.) of at most 0.55%. A report of chemical analysis showing the percentages of elements necessary to establish C.E. is required for reinforcing steel that does not meet ASTM A706 to be structurally welded. No tack welding will be allowed. All welding shall conform to the requirements of AWS D1.1/D1.1M.

The requirements above do not apply to the following miscellaneous welding applications:

Splicing reinforcing steel to extend bars in the bottom of a drilled shaft;

Attaching chairs to the reinforcing steel cage of a drilled shaft;

Armor joints and their supports;

Screed rail and form hanger supports where permitted on steel units;

Reinforcing steel to R-bars for lateral stability between prestressed beams, spirals, or bands of reinforcing bars in drilled shaft cages;

Permanent bridge deck forms;

Steel added in railing when slip-form construction is used; and

Other similar miscellaneous members that have no load carrying capacity in the completed structure.

E. Welded Wire Fabric

Wire shall conform to the requirements of the Standard Specifications for Cold-Drawn Steel Wire for Concrete Reinforcement, ASTM A 82 or A 496. Wire fabric, when used as reinforcement, shall conform to ASTM A 185 or A 497.

When wire is ordered by size numbers, the following relation between size number, diameter in inches and area shall apply unless otherwise indicated on the drawings:

Size, W Number 1/100 in^2 (mm2)	Nominal Diameter inch (mm)	Nominal Area, sq. inches (mm^2)
31 (200)	0.628 (16.0)	0.310 (200)
30 (194)	0.618 (15.7)	0.300 (194)
28 (181)	0.597 (15.2)	0.280 (181)
26 (168)	0.575 (14.6)	0.260 (168)
24 (155)	0.553 (14.0)	0.240 (155)
22 (142)	0.529 (13.4)	0.220 (142)
20 (129)	0.505 (12.8)	0.200 (129)
18 (116)	0.479 (12.2)	0.180 (116)
16 (103)	0.451 (11.5)	0.160 (103)
14 (90)	0.422 (10.7)	0.140 (90)
12 (77)	0.391 (9.9)	0.120 (77)
10 (65)	0.357 (9.1)	0.100 (65)
8 (52)	0.319 (8.1)	0.080 (52)
7 (45)	0.299 (7.6)	0.070 (45)
6 (39)	0.276 (7.0)	0.060 (39)
5.5 (35)	0.265 (6.7)	0.055 (35)

5 (32)	0.252 (6.4)	0.050 (32)
4.5 (29)	0.239 (6.1)	0.045 (29)
4 (26)	0.226 (5.7)	0.040 (26)
3.5 (23)	0.211 (5.4)	0.035 (23)
3 (19)	0.195 (5.0)	0.030 (19)
2.5 (16)	0.178 (4.5)	0.025 (16)
2 (13)	0.160 (4.1)	0.020 (13)
1.5 (9)	0.138 (3.5)	0.015 (9.7)
1.2 (8)	0.124 (3.1)	0.012 (7.7)
1 (6)	0.113 (2.9)	0.010 (6.5)
0.5 (3)	0.080 (2.0)	0.005 (3.2)

Where deformed wire is required, the size number shall be preceded by D and for smooth wire the prefix W shall be shown.

Welded wire fabric shall be designated as follows: 6 x 12 – W16 x W8, which indicates a 6 in. (150 mm) longitudinal wire spacing and 12-in (300 mm) transverse wire spacing with smooth No. 16 (103) wire longitudinally and smooth no. 8 (52) wire transversely.

F. Epoxy Coating

Epoxy coating shall be required as indicated on the drawings. Prior to furnishing epoxy-coated reinforcing steel, the epoxy applicator must be included on the list of approved applicators that is maintained by the Construction Division of the State of Texas Department of Transportation.

The reinforcing steel shall be epoxy coated in accordance with the following.

Epoxy Coating Requirements for Reinforcing Steel

Material	Specification

Bar	ASTM A775 or A934
Wire or Fabric	ASTM A884 Class A or B
Mechanical Coupler	As indicated on the drawings
Hardware	As indicated on the drawings

The epoxy coating material and coating repair material shall comply with TxDoT's DMS-8130, "Epoxy Powder Coating for Reinforcing Steel". The applicator shall not patch more than ¼ inch total length in any foot (20 mm total length in any meter) at the applicator's plant.

The epoxy-coated reinforcing steel shall be sampled and tested in accordance with TxDoT Test Method Tex-739-I, "Sampling and Testing Epoxy Coated Reinforcing Steel".

The identification of all reinforcing steel shall be maintained throughout the epoxy coating and fabrication and until delivery to the project site.

Written certification that the epoxy-coated reinforcing steel meets the requirements of this Item shall be provided along with a copy of the manufacturer's control tests.

G. Mechanical Couplers

When mechanical splices in reinforcing steel bars are indicated on the drawings, the following types of couplers may be used:

Sleeve-filler

Sleeve-threaded

Sleeve-swaged, or

Sleeve-wedge.

H. Chairs and Supports

Chairs and Supports shall be steel, precast mortar or concrete blocks cast in molds meeting the approval of the Engineer or designated representative of sufficient strength to position the reinforcement as indicated on the drawings when supporting the dead load of the reinforcement, the weight of the workers placing concrete and the weight of the concrete bearing on the steel. Chairs shall be plastic coated when indicated on the drawings.

Chair Types and Applicable Uses

Structural or Architectural Elements (columns, beams, walls, slabs) exposed to weather, not subjected to sand blasting, water blasting or grinding.	Galvanized steel or steel chairs with plastic coated feet.
Structural or Architectural Elements exposed to weather and subject to sand blasting, water blasting or grinding.	Stainless steel chairs.
Structural or Architectural Elements not exposed to weather or corrosive conditions.	Uncoated steel chairs
Slabs and grade beams cast on grade.	Steel chairs with a base with 9 inch² (58 cm^2) minimum area or sufficient area to prevent the chair from sinking into fill or subgrade. Precast mortar or concrete blocks meeting the requirements of this item may be used.

406S.4 Bending

The reinforcement shall be bent cold, true to the shapes indicated on the drawings. Bending shall preferably be done in the shop. Irregularities in bending shall be cause for rejection. Improperly fabricated, damaged or broken bars shall be replaced at no additional expense to the City. Damaged or broken bars embedded in a previous concrete placement shall be repaired using a method approved by the Engineer or designated representative.

Unless otherwise indicated on the drawings, the inside diameter of bar bends, in terms of the nominal bar diameter (d), shall be as follows:

Bends of 90 degrees and greater in stirrups, ties and other secondary bars that enclose another bar in the bend.

Bar Number in 1/8th inches (mm)	Diameter
3, 4, 5 (10, 13, 16)	4d

6, 7, 8	6d

All bends in main bars and in secondary bars not covered above.

Bar Number in 1/8th inches (mm)	Diameter
3 thru 8 (10 thru 25)	6d
9, 10, 11 (29, 32, 36)	8d
14, 18 (43, 57)	10d

406S.5 Tolerances

Fabricating tolerances for bars shall not be greater than shown on Standard (Detail) 406S-1.

406S.6 Storing

Steel reinforcement shall be stored above the surface of the ground upon platforms, skids or other supports and shall be protected as far as practicable from mechanical injury and surface deterioration caused by exposure to conditions producing rust. When placed in the work, reinforcement shall be free from dirt, paint, grease, oil or other foreign materials. Reinforcement shall be free from injurious defects such as cracks and laminations. Rust, surface seams, surface irregularities or mill scale will not be cause for rejection, provided the minimum dimensions, cross sectional area and tensile properties of a hand wire brushed specimen meets the physical requirements for the size and grade of steel indicated on the drawings.

406S.7 Splices

Splicing of bars, except when indicated on the drawings or specified herein, will not be permitted without written approval of the Engineer or designated representative. No substitution of bars will be allowed without the approval of the Engineer or designated representative. Any splicing of substituted bars shall conform to the requirements in the Table below.

Splices not indicated on the drawings will be permitted in slabs not more than 15 inches (380 mm) in thickness, columns, walls and parapets.

Splices will not be permitted in bars 30 feet (9.1 meters) or less in plan length unless otherwise approved. For bars exceeding 30 feet (9.1 meters) in plan length, the distance center to center of splices shall not be less than 30 feet (9.1 meters) minus 1 splice length, with no more than 1 individual bar length less than 10 feet (3 meters). Splices not indicated on the drawings, but permitted hereby, shall conform to the Table below. The specified concrete cover shall be maintained at such splices and the bars placed in contact and securely tied together.

Minimum Lap Requirements		
Bar Number in 1/8th inches (mm)	Uncoated Lap Length	Coated Lap Length
3 (10)	1 foot 4 inches (0.4 meters)	2 foot 0 inches (0.610 meters)
4 (13)	1 foot 9 inches (0.533 meters)	2 foot 8 inches (0.813 meters)
5 (16)	2 foot 2 inches (0.660 meters)	3 feet 3 inches (0.991meters)
6 (19)	2 foot 7 inches (0.787 meters)	3 feet 11 inches (1.194 meters)
7 (22)	3 feet 5 inches (1.041 meters)	5 feet 2 inches (1.575 meters)
No. 8 (25)	4 feet 6 inches (1.372 meters)	6 feet 9 inches (2.057 meters)
No. 9 (29)	5 feet 8 inches (1.727 meters)	8 feet 6 inches (2.591 meters)
No. 10 (32)	7 feet 3 inches (2.210 meters)	10 feet 11 inches (3.327 meters)
No. 11 (36)	8 feet 11 inches (2.718 meters)	13 feet 5 inches (4.089 meters)

Spiral steel shall be lapped a minimum of 1 turn. Bar No. 14 and No. 18 may not be lapped.

Welded wire fabric shall be spliced using a lap length that includes an overlap of at least 2 cross wires plus 2 inches (50 mm) on each sheet or roll.

Splices using bars that develop equivalent strength and are lapped in accordance with the table above are permitted.

Welding of reinforcing bars may be used only where indicated on the drawings or as permitted herein. All welding operations, processes, equipment, materials, quality of work and inspection shall conform to the requirements indicated on the drawings. All splices shall be of such dimension and character as to develop the full strength of the bar being spliced.

End preparation for butt-welding reinforcing bars shall be done in the field, except Bar No. 6 and larger shall be done in the shop. Delivered bars shall be of sufficient length to permit this practice.

For box culvert extensions with less than 1 foot (0.3 meters) of fill, the existing longitudinal bars shall have a lap with the new bars as shown in the table above. For box culvert extensions with more than 1 foot (0.3 meters) of fill, a minimum lap of 12 inches (300 mm) will be required.

Unless otherwise indicated on the drawings, dowel bars transferring tensile stresses shall have a minimum embedment equal to the minimum lap requirements shown in the table above. Shear transfer dowels shall have a minimum embedment of 12 inches (300 mm).

406S.8 Placement

Reinforcement shall be placed as near as possible in the position indicated on the drawings. Unless otherwise indicated on the drawings, dimensions shown for reinforcement are to the centers of the bars. In the plane of the steel parallel to the nearest surface of concrete, bars shall not vary from plan placement by more than 1/12 of the spacing between bars. In the plane of the steel perpendicular to the nearest surface of concrete, bars shall not vary from plan placement by more than 1/4 inch (6 mm). Cover of concrete to the nearest surface of steel shall be as follows:

	Minimum Cover, Inches (mm)
(a) Concrete cast against and permanently exposed to earth	3 (76 mm)
(b) Concrete exposed to earth or weather:	
Bar No. 6 (19) through No. 18 bars (57)	2 (51 mm)

Bar No. 5 (16), W31 (W200) or D31 (D200) wire and smaller	1 ½ (38 mm)
(c) Concrete not exposed to weather or in contact with ground:	
Slabs, walls, joists:	
Bar No. 14 (43) and 18 (57)	1 ½ (38mm)
Bar No. 11 (36) and smaller	1 (25 mm)
Beams, columns:	
Primary reinforcement, ties, stirrups, spirals	1 ½ (38 mm)
Shells, folded plate members:	
Bar No. 6 (19) and larger	1 (25 mm)
Bar No. 5 (16), W31 (W200) or D31 (D200) wire, and smaller	1 (25 mm)

Vertical stirrups shall always pass around the main tension members and be attached securely thereto.

The reinforcing steel shall be located accurately in the forms and held firmly in place before and during concrete placement by means of bar supports that are adequate in strength and number to prevent displacement and to keep the steel at the required distance from the form surface. Bars shall be supported by means of approved galvanized metal spacers, metal spacers with plastic coated tips, stainless steel spacers, plastic spacers or approved precast mortar or concrete blocks when supports are in contact with removable or stay-in-place forms. Bright basic bar supports shall be used to support reinforcing steel placed in slab overlays on concrete panels or on existing concrete slabs. Bar supports in contact with soil or subgrade shall be approved.

For bar supports with plastic tips, the plastic protection must be at least 3/32 in. (2.4 mm) thick and extend upward on the wire to a point at least ½ in. (12.5 mm) above the formwork.

For approval of plastic spacers on a project, representative samples of the plastic shall show no visible indications of deterioration after immersion in a 5 percent solution of sodium hydroxide for 120 hours.

All accessories such as tie wires, bar chairs, supports, or clips used with epoxy-coated reinforcement shall be of steel, fully coated with epoxy or plastic. When approved by the Engineer or designated representative, plastic supports may also be used with epoxy-coated reinforcement.

All reinforcing steel shall be tied at all intersections, except that where spacing is less than 1 foot (300 mm) in each direction, alternate intersections only need be tied. For reinforcing steel cages for other structural members, the steel shall be tied at enough intersections to provide a rigid cage of steel. Mats of wire fabric shall overlap each other 1 full space as a minimum to maintain a uniform strength and shall be tied at the ends and edges.

Where prefabricated deformed wire mats are specified or if the Contractor requests, welded wire fabric may be substituted for a comparable area of steel reinforcing bar plan, subject to the approval of the Engineer or designated representative.

Mortar or concrete blocks shall be cast to uniform dimensions with adequate bearing area. A suitable tie wire shall be provided in each block, to be used for anchoring to the steel. Except in unusual cases and when specifically authorized by the Engineer, the size of the surface to be placed adjacent to the forms shall not exceed 2 1/2 inches (63.5 mm) square or the equivalent thereof in cases where circular or rectangular areas are provided. Blocks shall be cast accurately to the thickness required and the surface to be placed adjacent to the forms shall be a true plane, free of surface imperfections. The blocks shall be cured by covering them with wet burlap or mats for a period of 72 hours. Mortar for blocks should contain approximately 1 part hydraulic cement to three parts sand. Concrete for blocks should contain 850 pounds of hydraulic cement per cubic yard (500 kilograms per cubic meter) of concrete

Individual bar supports shall be placed in rows at 4-ft (1.22 meters) maximum spacing in each direction. Continuous type bar supports shall be placed at 4-ft (1.22 meters) maximum spacing. Continuous bar supports shall be used with permanent metal deck forms.

The exposure of the ends of longitudinals, stirrups and spacers used to position the reinforcement in concrete pipe and in precast box culverts or storm drains is not a cause for rejection.

Reinforcing steel for bridge slabs, top slabs of direct traffic culverts, and top slabs of prestressed box beams at all intersections, except tie only alternate intersections where spacing is less than 1 ft. (300 mm) in each direction.

For steel reinforcing cages for other structural members, reinforcement shall be supported and tied in such a manner that a sufficiently rigid cage of steel is provided.

Fasten mats of wire fabric securely at the ends and edges. If the cage is not adequately supported to resist settlement or floating upward of the steel, overturning of truss bars or movement in any direction during concrete placement, permission to continue concrete placement will be withheld until corrective measures are taken. Sufficient measurements shall be made during concrete placement to insure compliance with the above.

No concrete shall be deposited until the Engineer or designated representative has reviewed the placement of the reinforcing steel and all mortar, mud, dirt, etc, shall be cleaned from the reinforcement, forms, workers' boots and tools. Do not place concrete until authorized by the Engineer or designated representative

406S.9 Handling, Placement and Repair of Epoxy-coated Reinforcement Steel

A. Handling

Systems for handling coated-reinforcement with padded contact areas shall be provided. Handling bands shall be padded to prevent damage to the coating. Bundles of coated reinforcement shall be lifted with a strongback, spreader bar, multiple supports or a platform bridge. The bundled reinforcement shall be carefully transported and stored on protective cribbing. The coated reinforcement should not be dropped or drug during handling.

B. Construction Methods

Coated reinforcement shall not be flame-cut but shall be sawn or shear-cut only when approved. Cut ends shall be coated as specified in Section C, “Repair of Coating”.

Coated reinforcement steel shall not be welded or mechanically coupled except where specifically indicated on the drawings. When welding or coupling is indicated on the drawing, the epoxy coating shall be removed at least 6 in. (150 mm) beyond the weld limits before welding and 2 in. (50 mm) beyond the limits of the mechanical coupler before assembly. After the welding or coupling operation is completed the steel shall be cleaned of oil, grease, moisture, dirt, welding contamination (slag or acid residue) and rust to a near-white finish. The existing epoxy coating shall be examined for damage and any damaged or loose epoxy shall be removed to expose sound epoxy coating.

After cleaning the coated-steel, the splice area shall be coated with epoxy repair material to a thickness of 7 to 17 mils (0.18 to 0.43 mm) after curing. A second application of the repair material shall be applied to the bar and coupler interface to ensure complete sealing of the joint.

C. Repair of Coating

The material used for coating repair shall comply with the requirements of this Item and ASTM D3963/D3963M, “Specification for Fabrication and Jobsite Handling of Epoxy-coated Reinforcing Steel Bars”. Repairs shall be made in

accordance with procedures recommended by the manufacturer of the epoxy coating powder. For areas to be patched, a minimum coating thickness as required for the original coating shall be applied. All visible damage to the coating shall be repaired.

Sawed and sheared ends, cuts, breaks and other damage shall be promptly repaired before additional oxidation occurs. The areas to be repaired shall be cleaned to ensure that they free from surface contaminants. Repairs shall be made in the shop or in the field as required.

406S.10 Measurement

The measurement of quantities of reinforcement furnished and placed will be based on the calculated weight of the steel actually placed as indicated on the drawings, with no allowance made for added bar lengths for splices requested by the Contractor nor for extra steel used when bars larger than those indicated on the drawings are used or for a higher grade of steel that is substituted with the permission of the Engineer or designated representative. Tie wires and supporting devices will not be included in the calculated weights. The calculated weight of bar reinforcement will be determined using the theoretical bar weight set forth in this item.

Measurement required by a change in design will be computed as described above for the actual steel required to complete the work.

406S.11 Payment

Reinforcing steel will generally not be paid for directly, but shall be included in the unit price bid for the items of construction in which the reinforcing steel is used.

When specified in the contract bid form as a separate pay item, this item shall be paid for at the contract unit price bid per pound of "Reinforcing Steel". The unit bid price shall include full compensation for all work specified herein including furnishing, bending, fabricating, welding and placing reinforcement, for all clips, blocks, metal spacers, ties, chairs, wire or other materials used for fastening reinforcement in place and for all tools, labor, equipment and incidentals necessary to complete the work.

Payment, when included as a contract pay item, will be made under:

Pay Item No. 406S-RC:	Reinforcing Steel -	Per Pound.
Pay Item No. 406S-ERC:	Epoxy-Coated Reinforcing Steel -	Per Pound.

END

SPECIFIC CROSS REFERENCE MATERIALS
Standard Specification Item 406S, "Reinforcing Steel"

American Society for Testing and Materials, ASTM

Designation	Description
ASTM A 36/A 36M	Carbon Structural Steel
ASTM A 82	Steel Wire, Plain, for Concrete Reinforcement
ASTM A 185	Steel Welded Wire Fabric, Plain, for Concrete Reinforcement
ASTM A 496	Steel Wire, Deformed, for Concrete Reinforcement
ASTM A 497	Steel Welded Wire Fabric, Deformed, for Concrete Reinforcement
ASTM A 615/A 615M	Deformed and Plain Billet-steel Bars for Concrete Reinforcement
ASTM A 675/A 675M	Steel Bars, Carbon, Hot-Wrought, Special Quality, Mechanical Properties
ASTM A 706/A 706M	Low- Alloy Steel Deformed and Plain Bars for Concrete Reinforcement
ASTM A 775/A 775M	Epoxy-Coated Reinforcing Steel Bars
ASTM A 884/A 884M	Epoxy-Coated Steel Wire and Welded Wire Fabric For Reinforcement
ASTM A 934/A 934M	Epoxy-Coated Prefabricated Reinforcing Steel Bars
ASTM A 996/A 996M	Rail-Steel and Axle-Steel Deformed Bars for Concrete Reinforcement
ASTM D3963/D3963M	Fabrication and Jobsite Handling of Epoxy-coated Reinforcing Steel Bars

Texas Department of Transportation: Manual of Testing Procedures

Designation	Description
Tex-739-I	Sampling and Testing Epoxy Coated Reinforcing Steel

City of Austin Standard (Details)

Designation	Description
Standard 406S-1	Reinforced Steel Tolerances

Texas Department of Transportation: Departmental Material Specifications

Designation	Description
DMS 8130	Epoxy Powder Coating for Reinforcing Steel

American Welding Society

Designation	Description
AWS D1.1/D1.1M	Structural Welding Code

RELATED CROSS REFERENCE MATERIALS
Standard Specification Item 406S, "Reinforcing Steel"

City of Austin Standard Specification Items

Designation	Description
Item No. 360	Concrete Pavement
Item No. 403S	Concrete for Structures

Item No. 410S	Concrete Structures
Item No. 414S	Concrete Retaining Walls
Item No. 420S	Drilled Shaft Foundations
Item No. 830S	Traffic Signal Controller Foundation
Item No. 831S	Traffic Signal Drilled Shaft Foundation

Texas Department of Transportation: Standard Specifications for Construction and Maintenance of Highways, Streets, and Bridges

Designation	Description
Item No. 360	Concrete Pavement
Item No. 420	Concrete Structures
Item No. 421	Hydraulic Cement Concrete
Item No. 422	Reinforced Concrete Slab
Item No. 423	Retaining Walls
Item No. 440	Reinforcing Steel

Item No. 408S
Concrete Joint Materials

408S.1 Description

This item shall govern the furnishing and placing of all longitudinal, transverse contraction and expansion joint material in concrete work as herein specified in the various items of these specifications as indicated or as directed by the Engineer or designated representative.

This specification is applicable for projects or work involving either inch-pound or SI units. Within the text and accompanying tables, the inch-pound units are given preference followed by SI units shown within parentheses.

408S.2 Submittals

The submittal requirements of this specification item include:

A. Type and manufacturer of all joint materials proposed for use.

B. Technical data indicating that proposed products meet the requirements specified herein.

408S.3 Materials

(1) Preformed Asphalt Board

Preformed asphalt board formed from cane or other suitable fibers of a cellular nature securely bound together and uniformly impregnated with a suitable asphaltic binder and meeting the requirements of the Standard Specifications for Preformed Expansion Joint Filler for Concrete (Bituminous Type), ASTM D 994.

(2) Preformed Nonbituminous Fiber Material

Preformed nonbituminous fiber material shall meet the requirements of the Standard Specifications for the Preformed Expansion Joint Filler for Concrete Paving and Structural Construction, ASTM D 1751, except that the requirements pertaining to bitumen content, density and water absorption shall be voided.

(3) Boards

Boards obtained from Redwood timber, of sound heartwood, free from sapwood, knots, clustered birdseye, checks and splits. Occasional sound or hollow birdseye, when not in clusters, will be permitted provided the board is free from any other defects that will impair its usefulness as a joint filler.

(4) Joint Sealer (Concrete Pavement)

This material shall be a one part low modulus silicone especially designed to cure at ambient temperatures by reacting with moisture in the air and shall have the following properties:

As Supplied	
Color	Gray

Flow, MIL-2-8802D Sec. 4.8.4	0.2 maximum
Working Time, minutes	10
Tack-Free Time at 77°F ± 2F (25°C ± -1.66°C) Min. MIL-2-8802D Sec.4.8.7	60
Cure time, at 77°F (25°C), days	7-14
Full Adhesion, days	14-21
As Cured---after 7 days at 77°F (25°C) and 40% RH	
Elongation, percent minimum	1200
Durometer Hardness, Shore A, points ASTM 2240	15
Joint Movement Capability, percent	+100/-50
Tensile Strength, maximum elongation,psi (kPa)	100 (689)
Peel Strength, psi (kPa)	25 (172)

The joint sealer shall adhere to the sides of the concrete joint or crack and shall be an effective seal against infiltration of water and incompressibles. The material shall not crack or break when exposed to low temperature.

(5) Backer Rod

Backer Rod shall be expanded closed cell polyethylene foam compatible with sealant. No bond or reaction shall occur between rod and sealant. Backer Rod shall be of sufficient width to be in compression after placement and shall be used with joint sealer.

(6) Joint Sealing Material

Joint Sealing Material for other than pavement use may be a two-component, synthetic polymer or cold-pourable, self leveling type meeting the following requirements:

The material shall adhere to the sides of the concrete joint or crack and shall form an effective seal against infiltration of water and incompressibles. The material shall not crack or break when exposed to low temperatures. Curing is to be by polymerization and not by evaporation of solvent or fluxing of harder particles. It shall cure sufficiently at an average temperature of 77°F± 3°F (25°C ± -1.66°C) so as not to pick up under wheels of traffic in a maximum of 3 hours.

Performance Requirements:

When tested in accordance with Test Method Tex-525-C, the joint sealing material shall meet the above curing times and the requirements as follows:

It shall be of such consistency that it can be mixed and poured or mixed and extruded into joints at temperatures above 60°F (1.66°C).

Penetration 77°F (25°C), 150 gm. Cone, 5 sec., max.-cm	0.90
Bond and Extension 75%, 0F, 5 cycles:	
Dry Concrete Blocks	Pass
Wet Concrete Blocks	Pass
Steel Blocks (Primed if specified by manufacturer)	Pass

Flow at 200 °F (93°C)	None
Water content % by weight, max.	5.0
Resilience: Original sample min. % (cured) Oven-aged at 158°F (70°C) min. %	 50 50
For Class 1-a material only, Cold Flow (10 minute)	None

(7) Rebonded Recycled Tire Rubber

This material consists of granular particles of rubber, made by grinding automobile and truck tires, securely bound together by a synthetic resin or plastic binder. The filler must be molded into sheets of the required dimensions, which meet the testing requirements of both ASTM D 1751 and ASTM D 1752, except that the requirements for asphalt content and expansion are waived. The density of the material must be at least 30 lb/ft ^{3} (440kg/m^3).

408S.4 Construction Methods

The Contractor shall install "Concrete Joint Materials" which will function as a compatible system. Joint sealer shall not be placed where a bond braker is present.

Asphalt, Redwood board or other materials used shall extend the full depth of the concrete and shall be perpendicular to the exposed face. All joints shall be shaped to conform to the contour of the finished section in which they are installed. All material shall be a minimum of 1/2 inch (12.5 mm) thick or as indicated. Wood materials shall be anchored to the adjacent concrete to permanently hold them in place. Joint sealer shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations.

The material used for side walk expansion joints shall conform to No. 3 above, unless otherwise indicated.

The material used for curb and gutter expansion joints filler shall conform to any of the above, except when placed adjacent to concrete pavement, the joint material shall match the pavement joint material.

408S.5 Measurement and Payment

No additional compensation will be made for materials, equipment or labor required by this item, but shall be included in the unit price bid for the item of construction in which this item is used.

End

SPECIFIC Cross Reference Materials
Standard Specification Item No. 408S, " Concrete Joint Materials”

American Society for Testing and Materials (ASTM)

Designation	Description
D 994	Specification for Preformed Expansion Joint Filler for Concrete (Bituminous Type)
D 1751	Specification for Preformed Expansion Joint Filler for Concrete Paving and Structural Construction (Nonextruding and Resilient Bituminous Types)
D 1752	Specification for Preformed Sponge Rubber and Cork Expansion Joint Fillers for Concrete Paving and Structural Construction
D 2240	Standard Test Method for Rubber Property-Durameter Hardness

Texas Department of Transportation: Manual of Testing Procedures

Designation	Description
Tex-525-C	Tests for Asphalt and Concrete Joint Sealers

Item No. 409S
Membrane Curing

409S.1 Description

This item shall govern curing concrete pavement, concrete base, pavement, curbs, gutters, retards, sidewalks, driveways, medians, islands, concrete riprap, cement stabilized riprap, concrete structures and other concrete as indicated by applying an impervious liquid membrane forming material.

This specification is applicable for projects or work involving either inch-pound or SI units. Within the text and accompanying tables, the inch-pound units are given preference followed by SI units shown within parentheses.

409S.2 Submittals

The submittal requirements of this specification item include:

A. Type and manufacturer for all membrane curing materials proposed.

B. Proposed curing procedures.

409S.3 Material

The liquid forming membrane curing compound shall comply with the "Standard Specification for Liquid Membrane-forming Compounds for Curing Concrete", ASTM C 309, Type 1-D clear or translucent, with fugitive dye or Type 2 white pigmented. The material shall have a minimum flash point of 80°F (26.7°C) when tested by the "Pensky-Martin Closed Cup Tester", ASTM D 93.

It shall be of such consistency that it can be satisfactorily applied as a fine mist through an atomizing nozzle by means of approved pressure spraying equipment at atmospheric temperatures above 40° F (4.4°C).

It shall be of such nature that it will not produce permanent discoloration of concrete surfaces nor react deleteriously with the concrete or its components. Type 1 compound shall contain a fugitive dye that will be distinctly visible not less than 4 hours nor more than 7 days after application.

Type 2 compound shall not settle out excessively or cake in the container and shall be capable of being mixed to a uniform consistency by moderate stirring and shall exhibit a daylight reflectance of not less than 60 percent of that of magnesium oxide when tested as indicated.

The compound shall produce a firm, continuous, uniform moisture impermeable film, free from pinholes and shall adhere satisfactorily to the surfaces of damp concrete. When applied to the damp concrete surface at the rate of coverage indicated, the compound shall dry to the touch in not more than 4 hours and shall not be tacky or track off concrete after 12 hours.

It shall adhere to horizontal and vertical surfaces in a tenacious film and shall not run off or show an appreciable sag, disintegrate, check, peel or crack during the required curing period.

Under traffic, the compound shall not pick up or peel and shall gradually disintegrate from the surface.

The compound shall be delivered to the job only in the manufacturer's original containers, which shall be clearly labeled with the manufacturer's name, the trade name of the material and a batch number or symbol with which test samples may be correlated.

The water retention test shall be in accordance with the following:

Percentage loss shall be defined as the water lost after the application of the curing material was applied. The permissible percentage moisture loss (at the rate of coverage specified herein) shall not exceed the following:

24 hours after application	2 percent
72 hours after application	4 percent

409S.4 Construction Methods

The membrane curing compound shall be applied after the surface finishing has been completed and immediately after the free surface moisture has disappeared. The surface shall be sealed with a single uniform coating of the specified type of curing compound applied at the rate of coverage recommended by the manufacturer and directed by the Engineer or designated representative, but not less than 1 gallon per 180 square feet (3.8 liters per 16.7 square meters) of area. The Contractor shall provide satisfactory means and facilities to properly control and check the rate of application of the compound.

The compounds shall not be applied before the surface has become dry, but shall be applied just after free moisture has disappeared.

The compound shall be thoroughly agitated during its use and shall be applied by means of approved mechanical power pressure sprayers for street and bridge applications. The sprayers used to apply the membrane to concrete exposed surfaces shall travel at a uniform speed along the forms and be mechanically driven. The equipment shall be of such design that it will insure uniform and even application of the membrane material. The sprayers shall be equipped with satisfactory atomizing nozzles. On small miscellaneous items or on interim bridge deck curing will the Contractor be permitted to use hand-powered spray equipment. For all spraying equipment, the Contractor shall provide facilities to prevent the loss of the compound between the nozzle and the concrete surface during the spraying operations.

At locations where the coating shows discontinuities, pinholes or other defects or if rain falls on the newly coated surface before the film has dried sufficiently to resist damage, an additional coat of the compound shall be applied immediately at the same rate of coverage specified herein.

To insure proper coverage, the Engineer or designated representative shall inspect all treated areas after application of the compound for the period of time designated in the specification for curing, either for membrane curing or for other methods. Dry areas are identifiable because of the lighter color of dry concrete as compared to damp concrete. All suspected areas shall be tested by placing a few drops of water on the suspected areas. If the water stands in rounded beads or small pools which can be blown along the surface of the concrete without wetting the surface, the water impervious film is present. If the water wets the surface of the concrete as determined by obvious darkening of the surface or by visible soaking into the surface, no water-impervious film is present. Should the foregoing test indicate that any area during the curing period is not protected by the required water-impervious film an additional coat or coats of the compound shall be applied immediately and the rate of application of the membrane compound shall be increased until all areas are uniformly covered by the required water-impervious film.

The compounds shall not be applied to a dry surface and if the surface of the concrete has become dry, it shall be thoroughly moistened prior to the application of the membrane by fogging or mist application. Sprinkling or coarse spraying will not be allowed.

When temperatures are such as to warrant protection against freezing, curing by this method shall be supplemented with an approved insulating material capable of protecting the concrete for the specified curing period.

If at any time there is reason to believe that this method of curing is unsatisfactory or is detrimental to the work, the Contractor, when notified, shall immediately cease the use of this method and shall change to curing by one of the other methods specified under this contract.

Curing compounds shall be compatible with the adhesion of toppings or overlays where curing has been applied to the concrete base surface in order to assure adequate bond.

When forms are stripped before the 4 minimum curing days have passed, curing shall continue by an approved method.

409S.5 Measurement and Payment

Membrane curing will not be measured for payment. The work and materials prescribed herein will not be paid for directly, but shall be included in the unit price bid for the item of construction in which these materials are used.

End

SPECIFIC CROSS REFERENCE MATERIALS
Specification Item No. 409S, “Membrane Curing”

American Society for Testing and Materials (ASTM)

Designation	Description
C 309	Liquid Membrane-forming Compounds for Curing Concrete
D 93	Pensky-Martin Closed Cup Tester

RELATED CROSS REFERENCE MATERIALS
Specification Item No. 409S, "Membrane Curing"

Texas Department of Transportation: Standard Specifications for Construction and Maintenance of Highways, Streets, and Bridges

Designation	Description
Item 360	Concrete Pavement
Item 420	Concrete Structures
Item 421	Portland Cement Concrete
Item 427	Surface Finishes for Concrete
Item 431	Pneumatically Placed Concrete
Item 437	Concrete Admixtures
Item 520	Weighing and Measuring Equipment
Item 522	Portland Cement Concrete Plants
Item 524	Hydraulic Cement

Current Version: September 26, 2012 Previous Versions: 11/13/07, 03/13/06, 09/14/05, 11/17/03, 02/26/02, and 09/30/87

Item No. 410S
Concrete Structures

410S.1 Description

This item shall govern the construction of all types of structures involving the use of structural concrete, except where the requirements are waived or revised by other governing specifications.

All concrete structures shall be constructed in accordance with the design requirements and details indicated on the drawings, in conformity with the pertinent provisions of the items contracted for, the incidental items referred to and in conformity with the requirements herein.

This specification is applicable for projects or work involving either inch-pound or SI units. Within the text and accompanying tables, the inch-pound units are given preference followed by SI units shown within parentheses.

410S.2 Submittals

The submittal requirements of this specification item may include:

Appropriate mix designs for class of concrete for each type of structure or unit;

Appropriate mortar and grout mix designs;

Product name, description, technical information and supplier of any acrylic-polymer latex admixture;

Type, supplier and certified test results for expansion joint materials;

Type of waterstop and confirmation that the product conforms to TxDoT DMS-6160;

Type and manufacturer of proposed evaporation retardant and confirmation that it meets the requirements of test results for TxDoT DMS-4650;

Type and manufacturer of proposed chemical admixtures and confirmation that it meets the requirements of test results for TxDoT DMS-4640;

Type and manufacturer of proposed curing admixtures and confirmation that it meets the requirements of test results for TxDoT DMS-4640;

Type and manufacturer of proposed chemical admixtures and confirmation that it meets the requirements of test results for TxDoT DMS-4640;

Type and manufacturer of proposed epoxy and/or adhesives and confirmation that it meets the requirements of test results for TxDoT DMS-6100;

Reinforcing steel shall conform to Standard Specification Item No. 406S, “Reinforcing Steel”.

Contractors formwork plan for placing and consolidating concrete around wall penetrations and at locations designated as having congested reinforcing steel.

410S.3 Materials

A. Concrete

Concrete shall conform to Item No. 403S, "Concrete for Structures".

The class of concrete for each type of structure or unit shall be as indicated on the drawings or by pertinent governing specifications.

B. Grout or Mortar

When required or shown on the drawings, mortar and grout consisting of 1 part hydraulic cement and 2 parts sand with sufficient water to provide the desired consistency shall be provided. Mortar shall be provided with a consistency that can be handled easily and spread by a trowel. Grout shall be provided with a consistency that will flow into and completely fill all voids.

C. Latex

When required an acrylic-polymer latex admixture (acrylic resin emulsion in accordance with TxDoT DMS-4640, “Chemical Admixtures for Concrete”) suitable for producing polymer-modified concrete or mortar shall be provided. The latex shall not be allowed to freeze.

The following information shall be submitted for latex:

Name and information of company contact personnel,

Product name and polymer description, and

The latex shall meet the following requirements.

Table 1: LATEX ADDITIVE REQUIREMENTS

Property	Value
Total Solids, minimum, percent	47
PH	9.0 to 11.0
Brookfield viscosity (# 1 spindle @ 10 rpm), mPas, maximum	60
Butadiene Content, percent	30 to 40
Freeze-thaw stability, 2 cycles. maximum	0.1

Specification targets and production tolerances shall also be provided for the following properties.

1. viscosity (including test method and temperature reference),
2. percent solids,
3. pH,
4. specific gravity, and
5. styrene/butadiene ratio.

D. Reinforcing Steel

Reinforcing steel shall conform to Standard Specification Item No. 406S, “Reinforcing Steel”.

E. Expansion Joint Material

The expansion joint material shall conform to the requirements of TxDoT DMS-6310, "Joint Materials and Fillers".

1. Preformed Fiber Sheets

   Unless otherwise indicated on the drawings preformed bituminous fiber material shall be provided. The preformed fiber material shall conform to the dimensions indicated on the drawings. Preformed fiber sheets shall meet the requirements of ASTM D-1751, "Preformed Expansion Joint Filler for Concrete Paving and Structural Construction (Nonextruding and Resilient Bituminous Types). The requirements related to bitumen content, density and water absorption shall not apply to nonbituminous materials.

2. Joint Sealing Material

   Unless otherwise indicated on the drawings a Class 4, 5 or 7 low-modulus silicone sealant shall be provided that conforms to the requirements of TxDoT DMS-6310, "Joint Sealants and Fillers".

3. Timber Boards

   Timber boards shall be made from redwood or cypress and must be free from sapwood, knots, clustered bird's eye, checks and splits. When oven dried at 230°F (110°C) to a constant weight (mass), the density of the board shall be between 20 and 35 lbs. Per cubic foot (between 320 and 560 kgs per cubic meter)

4. Asphalt Board

   Asphalt Board shall conform to the dimensions indicated on the drawings and shall meet the description, general requirements and distortion testing of ASTM D-994, "Preformed Expansion Joint Filler for Concrete (bituminous Type)".

5. Rebonded Neoprene Filler Sheet

   Rebonded neoprene filler shall consist of ground closed cell neoprene particles, rebonded and molded into sheets of uniform thickness of the dimensions indicated on the drawings. These sheets shall meet the requirements of ASTM D-1752, Type I.

   The manufacturer shall furnish the Engineer or designated representative with certified test results as to the compliance with the above requirements.

F. Waterstop

Unless otherwise indicated on the drawings, rubber waterstops or Polyvinyl Chloride (PVC) waterstops that conform to TxDoT DMS-6160, "Waterstops, Nylon Reinforced Neoprene Sheet, and Elastomeric Pads" shall be provided.

G. Evaporation Retardants

Evaporation retardants shall conform to the requirements of TxDoT DMS-4650, "Hydraulic Cement Concrete Curing Materials and Evaporation Retardants". The evaporation retardant must be a commercially available monomolecular film compound. The evaporation retardant shall have no adverse effect on the cement hydration process or the concrete and shall reduce surface moisture evaporation

from the concrete when performing concrete operations in direct sun, wind, high temperatures, or low relative humidity. The producer of the evaporation retardant shall certify that it meets these specified requirements.

H. Curing Materials

1. Liquid Membrane Forming compounds

Liquid Membrane Forming compounds shall conform to the requirements of TxDoT DMS-4650, “Hydraulic Cement Concrete Curing Materials and Evaporation Retardants”. The compound shall be applied to damp concrete as a fine mist through atomizing nozzles at a wet film thickness of 8 to 9 mils (200 to 230 µm). The liquid membrane-forming compound must not react deleteriously with concrete or its components. It must produce a firm, continuous, uniform moisture-impermeable film that is free of pinholes, cracks, or other film defects. It must also exhibit satisfactory adhesion.

The consistency must be such that the compound can be applied satisfactorily by conventional or airless spray at atmospheric and material temperatures above 40°F (5°C) without thinning. When applied at the manufacturer's recommended thickness, not less than 8 mils (200 µm) wet, to vertical surfaces of damp concrete, the compound must not run off or appreciably sag. The liquid membrane-forming compound must not disintegrate, check, peel, or crack during the required curing period. It must not peel or pick up under traffic, and must disappear from the surface of the cured concrete by gradual disintegration.

2. Cotton Mats

Cotton mats shall consist of a filling material of cotton “bat” or “bats” [at least 12 oz. Per square yard (400 grams per square meter)] completely covered with unsized cloth [at least 6 oz. Per square yard (200 grams per square meter)] stitched longitudinally with continuous parallel rows of stitching spaced at less than 4 in. (100 mm), or tuft both longitudinally and transversely at intervals less than 3 in. (75 mm).

The cotton mats shall be free from tears and in good general condition. A flap at least 6 in. (150 mm) wide with two (2) thicknesses of the covering that extends along one side of the mat shall be provided.

3. Polyethylene Sheeting

The polyethylene sheeting shall be at least 4 mils thick (0.1 mm) and free from visible defects. Clear or opaque white sheeting shall be provided when the ambient temperature during curing exceeds 60°F (15°C) or when applicable to control temperature during mass pours.

4. Burlap-Polyethylene Mats

The burlap-polyethylene mats shall be made from burlap impregnated on 1 side with a film of opaque white-pigmented polyethylene, free from visible defects. The laminated mats shall have at least 1 layer of an impervious material such as polyethylene, vinyl plastic, or other acceptable material (either as a solid sheet or impregnated into another fabric) and shall be free of visible defects.

I. Chemical Admixtures

Chemical admixtures including water reducing, placticizers and air entrainment shall conform to TxDoT DMS-4640, "Chemical Admixtures for Concrete" Calcium chloride shall not be used. Admixtures shall be included in the prequalified concrete admixtures list maintained by TxDot's Construction Division.

J. City of Austin Survey Monuments

The Public Works Department may furnish permanent survey monuments to be cast in concrete as indicated on the drawings or as directed by the Engineer or designated representative.

K. Epoxy

Unless indicated otherwise on the drawings, epoxy materials shall conform to TxDoT DMS-6100, "Epoxy and Adhesives".

410S.4 General Requirements

Before starting work, the Contractor shall inform the Engineer or designated representative fully of the construction methods the Contractor proposes to use, the adequacy of which shall be subject to the review by the Engineer or designated representative. Drawings for forms and falsework for piers and superstructure spans over 20 feet (6 meters) long, bracing systems for girders when the overhang exceeds 3 ft. 6 in. (1 meter) and for all bridge widening details shall be submitted to the Engineer or designated representative for review, if requested. Similar drawings shall be submitted for other units of the structure, if requested by the Engineer or designated representative. The drawings shall be prepared on standard 22 inch by 36-inch (550mm by 900 mm) sheets and shall show all essential details of the proposed forms, falsework and bracing to permit a structural analysis. Four sets of such drawings will be required.

Concurrence on the part of the Engineer or designated representative in any proposed construction methods, approval of equipment or of form and falsework drawings does not relieve the Contractor of the responsibility for the safety or correctness of the Contractor's methods, adequacy of equipment or from carrying out the work in full accordance with the contract.

Unless otherwise indicated on the drawings, the requirements in the succeeding paragraphs shall govern the time sequence in which construction operations may be carried on and for the opening of completed structures to traffic:

Superstructure members, forms, falsework or erection equipment shall not be placed on the substructure before the concrete therein has attained a 3000 psi (20.7 MPa) compressive strength.

Storage of materials on completed portions of a structure will not be permitted until all curing requirements for those particular portions have been met.

No forms shall be erected on concrete footings supported by piling or drilled shafts until the concrete therein has attained a minimum compressive strength of 2500 psi (17.2

MPa). Such work may begin on spread footings after the therein has aged at least 2 curing days. Concrete may be placed as soon as the forms and reinforcing steel are approved by the Engineer or designated representative.

The support of tie beam and/or forms by falsework placed on previously placed tie beams is permissible provided such beams have attained 3000 psi (20.7 MPa) compressive strength, curing requirements are completed and the beams are properly supported to eliminate stresses not provided for in the design.

Bridges and direct traffic culverts shall not be opened to construction traffic or to the traveling public until authorized by the Engineer or designated representative in accordance with the following:

Authorization may be given after the last slab concrete has been in place at least 14 days for light construction traffic not to exceed a 3/4-ton (0.68 Mg) vehicle.

Authorization to place embankments to allow normal construction traffic and when necessary to the traveling public, may be given after the last slab concrete has been in place 30 days or when the minimum compressive strength (f_c') has reached the 28 day strength conforming to Item No. 403S, "Concrete for Structures" or as indicated on the drawings.

410S.5 Drains

Weep holes and roadway drains shall be installed and constructed as indicated on the drawings.

410S.6 Expansion Joints

Joints and devices shall be used to provide for expansion and contraction of concrete slabs and shall be constructed as indicated on the drawings.

The bearing area under the expansion ends of concrete slabs and slab and girder spans shall be given a steel trowel finish and finished to the exact grades required on the drawings. The material used to separate expansion surfaces shall be as indicated on the drawings and placed so that concrete or mortar cannot be subsequently worked around or under it. The bridging of concrete or mortar around expansion joint material in bearings and expansion joints shall be prevented.

Concrete adjacent to armor joints and finger joints shall be placed carefully to avoid defective anchorage and porous or honeycombed concrete in such areas.

All open joints and joints to be filled with expansion joint material shall be constructed using forms adaptable to loosening or early removal. To avoid expansion or contraction damage to the adjacent concrete, these forms shall be loosened as soon as possible after final concrete set to permit free movement of the span without requiring full form removal.

Preformed fiber joint material or other material indicated shall be used in the vertical joints of the roadway slab, curb, median or sidewalk. The top 1-inch (25 mm) thereof shall be filled with joint sealing material, as specified herein. The sealer shall be installed in

accordance with Standard Specification Item No. 413S, "Cleaning and/or Sealing Joints and Cracks (PC Concrete)" and the manufacturer's recommendations.

Prior to placing the sealing material, the vertical faces of the joint shall be cleaned of all laitance by sandblasting or by mechanical routing. Cracked or spalled edges shall be repaired. The joint shall be blown clean of all foreign material and sealed.

Where preformed fiber joint material is used, it shall be anchored to the concrete on one side of the joint by light wire or nails to prevent the material from falling out.

Finished joints shall conform to the drawing details with the concrete sections completely separated by the specified opening or joint material.

Soon after form removal and where necessary after surface finishing, all projecting concrete shall be removed along exposed edges to secure full effectiveness of the expansion joints.

410S.7 Construction Joints

The joint formed by placing plastic concrete in direct contact with concrete that has attained its initial set shall be deemed a construction joint. The term monolithic placement shall be interpreted to mean that the manner and sequence of concrete placing shall not create construction joints.

Construction joints shall be of the type and at the locations indicated on the drawings. Additional joints will not be permitted without written authorization from the Engineer or designated representative and when authorized, shall have details equivalent to those indicated for joints in similar locations.

Unless otherwise provided, construction joints shall be square and normal to the forms. Bulkheads shall be provided in the forms for all joints, except when horizontal. All vertical construction joints shall be chamfered. All horizontal construction joints shall be routed or grooved.

Construction joints requiring the use of joint sealing material shall be as indicated on the drawings or as directed by the Engineer or designated representative. The material will be indicated on the drawings without reference to joint type.

A concrete placement terminating at a horizontal construction joint shall have the top surface roughened thoroughly as soon as practicable after initial set is attained. The surfaces at bulkheads shall be roughened as soon as the forms are removed.

The hardened concrete surface shall be thoroughly cleaned of all loose material, laitance, dirt or foreign matter and saturated with water so it is moist when placing fresh concrete against it. Remove all free water and moisten the surface before concrete or bonding grout is placed against it. Forms shall be drawn tight against the existing concrete and the joint surface flushed with grout just prior to placing the fresh concrete.

The joint surface shall be coated with bonding mortar, grout, epoxy or other material as indicated on the drawings or other items. A Type V epoxy shall be provided in accordance

with TxDoT DMS-6100, “Epoxies and Adhesives” for bonding fresh concrete to hardened concrete. The epoxy shall be placed on a clean dry surface and the fresh concrete shall be placed while the epoxy is still tacky. Bonding mortar or grout shall be placed on a surface that is saturated surface dry and the concrete shall be placed before the bonding mortar or grout dries. Other bonding agents shall be placed in accordance with the manufacturer’s recommendations.

410S.8 Foundation and Substructure

Excavation for foundations and substructure shall conform to Standard Specification Item No. 401S, "Structural Excavation and Backfill".

Concrete for foundation seals, unless otherwise indicated on the drawings, shall be Class C Concrete with a coarse aggregate grade of 2, 3, 4 or 5 and placed in accordance with the requirements herein. The top of the completed seal shall not vary from plan grade or the grade established by the Engineer or designated representative.

Where a concrete seal is indicated on the Drawings, the design will be based on the normal water elevation as indicated on the Drawings. If the foundation concrete can be placed in the dry at the time of construction, the seal will not be required. If additional seal is necessary for the conditions existing during the time of construction, its thickness shall be increased as deemed necessary by the Contractor and at the Contractor’s expense. If the conditions existing at the time of construction require a seal for placing the foundation concrete in the dry and none is indicated on the Drawings, the Contractor shall place an adequate seal at the Contractor’s expense.

The seal shall be allowed to set for at least 36 hours before the caisson or cofferdam is dewatered, after which the top of the seal shall be cleaned of all laitance or other soft material and all high spots exceeding the above limitation shall be cut off and removed.

410S.9 Falsework

The Contractor is totally responsible for all falsework. The Contractor shall design and construct it to safely carry the maximum anticipated loads and to provide the necessary rigidity. Details of falsework construction shall be subject to review by the Engineer or designated representative, but Engineer's review shall in no way relieve the Contractor of responsibility of the adequacy and safety of the falsework design.

All timber used in falsework centering shall be sound, in good condition and free from defects which will impair its strength. When wedges are used to adjust falsework to desired elevations, they shall be used in pairs to insure even bearing.

Sills or grillages shall be large enough to support the superimposed load without settlement and unless founded on solid rock, shale or other hard materials, precautions shall be taken to prevent yielding of the supporting material.

Falsework, which cannot be founded on a satisfactory spread footing, shall be placed on piling driven to a bearing capacity sufficient to support the superimposed load without

settlement. The safe bearing capacity of piling shall be determined by test loads or by such other methods that may be required or acceptable to the Engineer or designated representative.

In general, each falsework bent shall be capped transversely by a member of proper size. A short cap section forming a T-head may be substituted to permit the removal of portions of the forms without disturbing the falsework. Caps shall be securely fastened to each pile or column in the bent and set at the proper elevation to produce, in conjunction with the use of approved wedges or jacks, permanent camber indicated on the Drawings, plus a construction camber covering allowance for deformation of the forms and falsework. The use of wedges to compensate for incorrectly cut bearing surfaces will not be permitted. Each falsework bent shall be securely braced to provide the stiffness required with the bracing securely fastened to each pile or column it crosses.

In setting falsework for arches, allowances shall be made for settlement of falsework, deflection of the arch and permanent camber. Provision shall be made by suitable wedges, sand jacks or other acceptable devices for the controlled lowering of falsework when the arch is swung. Falsework may be required to be placed on jacks to provide for settlement correction during concrete placement.

When the falsework is no longer required, it shall be removed. Falsework piling shall be pulled or cut off not less than 2 feet (0.6 meter) below finished ground level. Falsework and piling in a stream, lake or bay shall be completely removed to a point specified by the Engineer or designated representative to prevent any obstruction to the waterway.

410S.10 Forms

Forms for precast prestressed concrete members and for prestressed piling shall be constructed conforming to Item No. 425S, "Prestressed Concrete Structures".

A. General

Except where otherwise indicated on the drawings, forms may be of either timber or metal.

Forms for round columns exposed to view shall be of steel, except that other materials will be allowed with written permission of the Engineer or designated representative.

Forming plans shall be submitted for approval by the Engineer or designated representative. Forms shall be designed for the pressure exerted by a liquid weighing 150 pounds per cubic foot (2.4 Mega grams per cubic meter). The rate of placing the concrete shall be taken into consideration in determining the depth of the equivalent liquid. For job-fabricated forms an additional live load of 50 pounds per square foot (1.675 MPa) shall be allowed on horizontal surfaces. The maximum unit stresses shall not exceed 125 percent of the allowable stresses used by the Engineer or designated representative for the design of structures.

Formwork for wall and/or column pours equal or exceeding 8 feet (2.44 meters) shall be designed in accordance with ACI 347, “Guide to Formwork for Concrete” and sealed by a Registered Civil Engineer Licensed in the State of Texas, who is experienced in formwork design.

Commercially produced structural units used in formwork shall not exceed the manufacturer's maximum allowable working load for moment, shear or end reaction. The maximum working load shall include a live load of 35 pounds per square foot (1.175 MPa) of horizontal form surface and sufficient details and data shall be submitted for use in checking formwork details for approval.

Forms shall be practically mortar-tight, rigidly braced and strong enough to prevent bulging between supports and maintained to the proper line and grade during concrete placement. Forms shall be maintained in a manner that will prevent warping and shrinkage.

Deflections due to cast-in-place slab concrete and railing shown in the dead load deflection diagram shall be taken into account in the setting of slab forms.

All forms and footing areas shall be cleaned of any extraneous matter before placing concrete.

Permission to place concrete will not be given until all of such work is complete to the satisfaction of the Engineer or designated representative.

If, at any stage of the work, the forms show signs of bulging or sagging, the portion of the concrete causing such condition shall be removed immediately, if necessary and the forms shall be reset and securely braced against further movement.

B. Timber Forms

Lumber for forms shall be properly seasoned, of good quality and free from imperfections, which would affect its strength or impair the finished surface of the concrete. The lumber used for facing or sheathing shall be finished on at least 1 side and 2 edges and shall be sized to uniform thickness.

Form or form lumber that will be reused shall be maintained clean and in good condition. Lumber that is split, warped, bulged, or marred or that has defects that will produce inferior forms shall not be used but shall be removed from the work.

Form lining will be required for all formed surfaces, except for the inside of culvert barrels, inlets, manholes and box girders, the bottom of bridge decks between beams or girders, surfaces that are subsequently covered by backfill material or are completely enclosed and any surface formed by a single finished board. Lining will not be required when plywood forms are used.

Form lining shall be of an approved type such as masonite or plywood. Thin membrane sheeting such as polyethylene sheets shall not be used for form lining.

Forms may be constructed of plywood not less than ¾ inch (19 mm) in thickness, with no form lining required. The grain of the face plies on plywood forms shall be placed parallel to the span between the supporting studs or joists.

Plywood used for forming surfaces, which remain exposed, shall be equal to that specified as B-B Plyform Class I or Class II Exterior of the U.S. Department of Commerce Voluntary Product Standard, PS 1.

Studs and joists shall be spaced so that the facing form material remains in true alignment under the imposed loads.

Wales shall be spaced close enough to hold forms securely to the designated lines and scabbed at least 4 feet (1.22 meters) on each side of joints to provide continuity. A row of wales shall be placed near the bottom of each placement.

Facing material shall be placed with parallel and square joints and securely fastened to supporting studs.

Forms for surfaces receiving only an ordinary finish and exposed to view shall be placed with the form panels symmetrical, i.e., long dimensions set in the same direction. Horizontal joints shall be continuous.

Molding specified for chamfer strips or other uses shall be made of materials of a grade that will not split when nailed and which can be maintained to a true line without warping. Wood molding shall be mill cut and dressed on all faces. Unless indicated otherwise on the drawings, forms shall be filleted at all sharp corners and edges with triangular chamfer strips measuring 3/4 inch (19 mm) on the sides.

Forms for railings and ornamental work shall be constructed to standards equivalent to first class millwork. All moldings, panel work and bevel strips shall be straight and true with neatly mitered joints designed so the finish work is true, sharp and clean cut. All forms shall be constructed to permit their removal without marring or damaging the concrete. The forms may be given a slight draft to permit ease of removal.

Metal form ties of an approved type or a satisfactory substitute shall be used to hold forms in place and shall be of a type that permits ease of removal of the metal as hereinafter specified.

All metal appliances used inside of forms for alignment purposes shall be removed to a depth of at least 1/2 inch (13 mm) from the concrete surface. They shall be made so the metal may be removed without undue chipping or spalling and when removed, shall leave a smooth opening in the concrete surface. Burning off of rods, bolts or ties will not be permitted.

Any wire ties used shall be cut back at least 1/2 inch (13 mm) from the face of the concrete and properly patched.

Devices holding metal ties in place shall be capable of developing the strength of the tie and adjustable to allow for proper alignment.

Metal and wooden spreaders, which are separate from the forms, shall be removed entirely as the concrete is being placed.

Adequate clean-out openings shall be provided for narrow walls and other locations where access to the bottom of the forms is not readily attainable.

Prior to placing concrete, the facing of all forms shall be treated with oil or other bond breaking coating of such composition that it will not discolor or otherwise injuriously affect the concrete surface. Care shall be exercised to prevent coating of the reinforcing steel.

C. Metal Forms

The foregoing requirements for timber forms as regards design, mortar-tightness, filleted corners, beveled projections, bracing, alignment, removal, reuse and wetting shall also apply to metal forms, except that these will not require lining, unless specifically indicated on the drawings.

The thickness of form metal shall be as required to maintain the true shape without warping or bulging. All bolt and rivet heads on the facing sides shall be countersunk. Clamps, pins or other connecting devices shall be designed to hold the forms rigidly together and to allow removal without injury to the concrete. Metal forms, which do not present a smooth surface or line up properly, shall not be used. Metal shall be kept free from rust, grease or other foreign materials.

D. Form Supports for Overhang Slabs

Form supports which transmit a horizontal force to a steel girder or beam or to a prestressed concrete beam will be permitted, but shall not be used unless a structural analysis has been made of the affect on the girder or beam and approval is granted by the Engineer or designated representative.

In normal or skewed spans with standard overhangs not exceeding 3 feet, 1 1/2 inches (0.95 meter), beam bracing as shown in the drawings shall be used.

Spans in which the overhang width exceeds 3 feet, 1 1/2 inches (0.95 meter) will require additional support for the outside beams to resist torsion. Details of the Contractor's proposed method of providing additional support shall be included with the slab forming plans submitted to the Engineer or designated representative for review and approval.

Holes in steel members for support of overhang brackets may be punched or drilled full size or may be torch cut to 1/4 inch (6 mm) under size and reamed full size. In no case shall the holes be burned full size. The hole shall be left open unless indicated to be filled with a button head bolt. They shall never be filled by welding.

410S.11 Placing Reinforcement

Reinforcement in concrete structures shall be placed carefully and accurately and rigidly supported as provided in Standard Specification Item No. 406S, "Reinforcing Steel". Reinforcing steel supports shall not be welded to I-beams or girders or stirrups of prestressed concrete beams.

410S.12 Placing Concrete

A. General

Concrete shall not be placed when impending weather conditions would impair the quality of the finished work. If conditions of wind, humidity and temperature are such that concrete cannot be placed without the potential for shrinkage cracking, the concrete should be placed in early morning, at night or on a schedule with more

favorable weather. When mixing, placing and finishing concrete is scheduled during non-daylight hours; the entire placement site should be illuminated to the satisfaction of the Engineer or designated representative.

If changes in weather conditions require protective measures after work starts, adequate shelter shall be provided to protect the concrete against damage from rainfall or from freezing temperatures as outlined in this Item. Operations during rainfall shall only be continued if approved by the Engineer or designated representative. Aggregate stockpiles shall be covered to the extent necessary to control the moisture conditions in the aggregates.

Slab concrete shall be mixed in a plant located off the structure. Carting or wheeling concrete batches over completed slabs will not be permitted until they have aged at least 4 full curing days or timber planking placed on top of the slab for the carts to traverse along. Carts shall be equipped with pneumatic tires. Curing operations shall not be interrupted for the purpose of wheeling concrete over finished slabs.

Exposed concrete surfaces, while still plastic, shall be stamped with an impression having the Contractor's name, the month and year. The stamp shall be of an approved design.

At least 1 day of curing shall be allowed after the concrete has achieved initial set before placing strain on projecting reinforcement to prevent damage to the concrete.

The storing of reinforcing or structural steel on completed roadway slabs generally shall be avoided and when permitted, shall be limited to quantities and distribution that will not induce excessive stresses.

B. Preparation of Surfaces

All forms, prestressed concrete panels, T-beams and concrete box beams on which concrete will be placed shall be thoroughly wetted before the placement of concrete. Puddles of excess water shall be removed before placing the concrete. The various surfaces shall be in a moist, saturated surface dry condition when concrete is placed on or against them.

The subgrade or foundation shall be moist before placing concrete for bridge approach slabs or other concrete placed on grade. If dry the subgrade shall be lightly sprinkled.

C. Placing Temperature

The minimum temperature of all concrete at the time of placement shall not be less than 50°F (10°C). The maximum temperature of any concrete, unless otherwise indicated on the drawings, shall not exceed 95°F (35°C) when placed. The maximum temperature of cast-in-place concrete in bridge superstructures, diaphragms, parapets, concrete portions of railing, curbs and sidewalks and direct traffic box culverts shall not exceed 85°F (30°C) when placed. Other portions of structures, when indicated on the drawings, shall require the temperature control specified.

For continuous placement of the deck on continuous steel units, the initial set of the concrete shall be retarded sufficiently to insure that it remains plastic in not less than 3 spans immediately preceding the one being placed. For simple spans, retardation shall be required only if necessary to complete finishing operations.

The consistency of the concrete as placed should allow the completion of all finishing operations without the addition of water to the surface. When conditions are such that additional moisture is needed for finishing, the required water shall be applied to the surface by fog spray only and shall be held to a minimum amount. Fog spray for this purpose may be applied with hand operated fogging equipment.

The height of free fall of concrete shall be limited to 5 feet (1.575 meters) to prevent segregation.

D. Transporting Time

The maximum time interval between the addition of cement to the batch and the placing of concrete in the forms shall not exceed the following:

Table 2: Allowable Transportation Times

Air or ConcreteTemperature whichever is higher	Maximum Time w/o Retarder	Maximum Time with Retarder	
		*Specific Applications	All others
Non-agitated Concrete			
35°F to 79°F (2°C to 26°C)	45 minutes	45 minutes	45 minutes
Over 80°F (Over 25°C)	30 minutes	45 minutes	45 minutes
Agitated Concrete			
90°F (32°C) or above	45 minutes	75 minutes	105 minutes
75°F to 89°F (24°C to 32°C)	60 minutes	90 minutes	120 minutes
35°F to 74°F (2°C to 23°C)	90 minutes	120 minutes	150 minutes

* Specific applications include Bridge decks, cased drilled shafts and slabs of direct traffic culverts

The use of an approved retarding agent in the concrete will permit the extension of each of the above temperature-time maximums by 30 minutes for bridge decks, top slabs of direct traffic culverts and cased drilled shafts and 1 hour for all other concrete except that the maximum time shall not exceed 45 minutes for non-agitated concrete.

E. Handling and Placing

The Contractor shall give the Engineer or designated representative sufficient advance notice before placing concrete in any unit of the structure to permit the review of forms,

reinforcing steel placement and other preparations. Concrete shall not be placed in any unit prior to the completion of formwork and placement of reinforcement therein.

The sequence for placing concrete shall be as indicated on the drawings or as required herein. The placing shall be regulated so the pressures caused by the plastic concrete shall not exceed the loads used in the form design.

The method of handling, placing and consolidation of concrete shall minimize segregation and displacement of the reinforcement and produce a uniformly dense and compact mass. Concrete shall not have a free fall of more than 5 feet (1.5 meters), except in the case of drilled shafts, thin wall sections such as in culverts, or as allowed by other Items. Any hardened concrete spatter ahead of the plastic concrete shall be removed.

Each part of the forms shall be filled by depositing concrete as near its final position as possible. The coarse aggregate shall be worked back from the face and the concrete forced under and around the reinforcement bars without displacing them. Depositing large quantities at one point and running or working it along the forms will not be allowed.

Concrete shall be deposited in the forms in layers of suitable depth but not more than 36 inches (0.9 meter) in thickness, unless otherwise directed by the Engineer or designated representative.

Cold joints in a monolithic placement shall be avoided. The sequence of successive layers or adjacent portions of concrete shall be such that they can be vibrated into a homogeneous mass with the previously placed concrete without a cold joint. Not more than 1 hour (1 ½ hours if a normal dosage of retarding admixture is used) shall elapse between adjacent or successive placements of concrete. Unauthorized construction joints shall be avoided by placing all concrete between the authorized joints in one continuous operation.

An approved retarding agent shall be used to control stress cracks and/or authorized cold joints in mass placements where differential settlement and/or setting time may induce stress cracking, such as on false work, in deep girder stems, etc.

Openings in forms shall be provided, if needed, for the removal of laitance or foreign matter of any kind.

All forms shall be wetted thoroughly before the concrete is placed therein.

F. Consolidation

All concrete shall be carefully consolidated and the mortar flushed to the form surfaces by continuous working with immersion type vibrators. Vibrators which operate by attachment to forms or reinforcement will not be permitted, except on steel forms. At least 1 standby vibrator shall be provided for emergency use in addition to the ones required for placement. For lightweight concrete, vibrators of the high frequency type, which produce a minimum of 7000 impulses per minute, will be required.

The concrete shall be vibrated immediately after deposition. Prior to the beginning of work, a systematic spacing of the points of vibration shall be established to insure complete consolidation and thorough working of the concrete around the reinforcement, embedded fixtures and into the corners and angles of the forms. Immersion type vibrators shall be inserted vertically, at points 18 to 30 inches (450 to 750 mm) apart and slowly withdrawn. The vibrator may only be inserted in a sloping or horizontal position in shallow slabs. The entire depth of each lift shall be vibrated, allowing the vibrator to penetrate several inches (several cms) into the preceding lift. The vibrator shall not be used to move the concrete to other locations. In addition the vibrator shall not be dragged through the concrete. Concrete along construction joints shall be thoroughly consolidated by operating the vibrator along and close to but not against the joint surface. The vibration shall continue until thorough consolidation and complete embedment of reinforcement and fixtures is produced, but not long enough to cause segregation. Vibration may be supplemented by hand spading or rodding, if necessary, to insure the flushing of mortar to the surface of all forms.

G. Finishing

From the time of initial strike off until final finish is completed and required interim curing is in place, the unformed surfaces of slab concrete in bridge decks and top slab of direct traffic culverts and concrete slabs, shall be kept damp, not wet, to offset the effects of rapid evaporation of mixing water from the concrete due to wind, temperature, low humidity or combinations thereof. Fogging equipment capable of applying water in the form of a fine fog mist, not a spray, will be required. Fogging will be applied at the times and in the manner directed by the Engineer or designated representative.

Fogging equipment may be either water pumped under high pressure or a combination of air and water, either system in combination with a proper atomizing nozzle. The equipment shall be sufficiently portable for use in the direction of any prevailing winds. The equipment shall be adapted for intermittent use to prevent excessive wetting of the surfaces.

Upon completion of the final finish, interim curing will be required for slab concrete in bridge decks and top slabs of direct traffic culverts as follows:

(1) Required water curing shall begin as soon as it can be done without damaging the concrete finish.

(2) Unless otherwise indicated on the Drawings, Type 1-D membrane curing compound that conforms to TxDoT DMS-4650, “Hydraulic Cement Concrete Curing Materials and Evaporation Retardants” shall be applied to the slab surface.

H. Installation of Dowels and Anchor Bolts

Dowels and anchor bolts shall be installed by casting them in place or by grouting with grout, epoxy, or epoxy mortar unless indicated otherwise on the drawings.

Holes for grouting shall be formed or drilled. Holes for anchor bolts shall be drilled to accommodate the bolt embedment required on the drawings. Holes for dowels shall be made at least 12 in. (300 mm) deep unless indicated otherwise on the drawings. When

grout or epoxy mortar is specified the diameter of the hole shall be at least twice the dowel or bolt diameter but shall not exceed the dowel or bolt diameter plus 1 ½ in (38 mm). When epoxy is specified the hole diameter should be 1/16 to ¼ in. (1.6 to 6.35 mm) greater than the dowel or bolt diameter.

Holes for anchor bolts in piers, abutments, bents or pedestals may be drilled or formed by the insertion of oiled wooden plugs or metal sleeves in the plastic concrete. Formed holes shall be large enough to permit horizontal adjustments of the bolts. The bolts shall be carefully set in mortar. In lieu of the above, anchor bolts may be set to exact locations when the concrete is placed.

The holes shall be thoroughly cleaned of all loose material, oil, grease or other bond-breaking substance and blow them clean with filtered compressed air. When an epoxy type material is used the holes shall be in a surface dry condition. When hydraulic cement grout is used the holes shall be in a surface moist condition. The void space between the hole and the dowel or bolt shall be completely filled with grouting material. The requirements for cleaning outlined in the product specification for prepackaged systems shall be followed exactly.

The following should be used as a guide in selection of an appropriate grout, mortar, epoxy or epoxy grout.

Table 3: Guide for Selection of Epoxy, Epoxy Mortar, Grout and Epoxy Grout

Material Type	Recommendation
Epoxy, Epoxy Mortar or other prepackaged Mortar	As Approved
Cast-in-place or Grouted system	1 part hydraulic cement, 2 parts sand and sufficient water for desired consistency
Neat Epoxy	Type III epoxy per TxDoT DMS-6100, “Epoxies and Adhesives”
Epoxy Grout	Type III epoxy per TxDoT DMS-6100, “Epoxies and Adhesives”
Provide grout, epoxy or epoxy mortar as the binding agent unless otherwise indicated on the drawings	

410S.13 Placing Concrete in Cold Weather

A. General

The Contractor is responsible for the protection of concrete placed under any and all weather conditions and is responsible for producing concrete equal in quality to that placed under normal conditions. Permission given by the Engineer or designated representative to allow placement of the concrete during cold weather does not relieve the Contractor of the responsibility for producing concrete equal in quality to that placed under normal conditions. Concrete placed under adverse weather conditions that proves to be unsatisfactory shall be removed and replaced at Contractor’ expense.

B. Cast-in-Place Concrete

Concrete may be placed when the ambient temperature is not less than 35°F (2°C) in the shade and rising or above 40°F (4°C). Concrete shall not be placed when the ambient temperature in the shade is below 40°F (4°C) and falling unless approved by the Engineer or designated representative. Concrete shall not be placed in contact with any material coated with frost or having a temperature less than 32°F (0°C).

Aggregates shall be free from ice, frost and frozen lumps. When required, in order to produce the minimum specified concrete temperature; the aggregate and/or the water shall be heated uniformly, in accordance with the following:

The water temperature shall not exceed 180°F(82°C) and/or the aggregate temperature shall not exceed 150°F(66°C). The heating apparatus shall heat the mass of aggregate uniformly. The temperature of the mixture of aggregates and water shall be between 50°F(10°C) and 85°F(29°C) before introduction of the cement.

All concrete shall be effectively protected as follows:

1. The temperature of slab concrete of all unformed surfaces shall be maintained at 50°F(10°C) or above for a period of 72 hours from time of placement and above 40°F(4°C) for an additional 72 hours.
2. The temperature at the surface of all concrete in bents, piers, culvert walls, retaining walls, parapets, wingwalls, bottom of slabs and other similar forms shall be maintained at 40°F(4°C) or above for a period of 72 hours from time of placement.
3. The temperature of all concrete, including the bottom slabs of culverts placed on or in the ground, shall be maintained above 32°F(0°C) for a period of 72 hours from time of placement.

Protection shall consist of providing additional covering, insulated forms or other means and if necessary, supplementing such covering with artificial heating. Avoid applying heat directly to concrete surfaces. Curing shall be provided during this period until all requirements for curing have been satisfied.

When impending weather conditions indicate the possibility of the need for such temperature protection, all necessary heating and covering material shall be on hand ready for use before permission is granted to begin placement.

Sufficient extra test specimens will be made and cured with the placement to ascertain the condition of the concrete as placed prior to form removal and acceptance.

C. Precast Concrete

A fabricating plant for precast products which has adequate protection from cold weather in the form of permanent or portable framework and covering, which protects the concrete when placed the forms and is equipped with approved steam curing facilities may place concrete under any low temperature conditions provided:

1. The framework and covering are placed and heat is provided for the concrete and the forms within 1 hour after the concrete is placed. This shall not be construed to be 1 hour after the last concrete is placed, but that no concrete shall remain unprotected longer than 1 hour.
2. Steam heat shall keep the air surrounding the concrete between 50°F (10°C) and 85°F(29°C) for a minimum of 3 hours prior to beginning the temperature rise, which is required for steam curing.

410S.14 Placing Concrete in Hot Weather

When the temperature of the air is above 85ºF (29°C), an approved retarding agent will be required in all exposed concrete, concrete used in superstructures, top slabs of direct traffic culverts and all cased drilled shafts regardless of temperatures. Concrete mix temperatures shall not exceed 90ºF (32°C) except for mixes that include high range water reducers where a maximum mix temperature of 100ºF (38°C) will be allowed.

If the concrete mix temperature is expected to exceed 90ºF (32°C) (or 100ºF (38°C) in mixes with high range water reducers) ice may be utilized to lower the concrete mix temperature. Ice may be added to the concrete mix as a portion by weight of the mix water. However the addition of ice shall not exceed 50% of the total mix water weight.

When weather conditions are such that the addition of ice at 50% of the mix water is not sufficient to reduce the concrete mix temperature to an acceptable temperature, concrete work shall not be allowed.

When ice is to be used in hot weather concrete placement, the Contractor shall furnish a mix design (Section 4.4 of Standard Specification Item 360S, “Concrete Pavement” and Section 6 of Standard Specification Item No. 403S, “Concrete for Structures”) acceptable to the Engineer or designated representative for class of concrete specified on the drawings.

410S.15 Placing Concrete in Water

Concrete shall be deposited in water only when indicated on the drawings or with written permission of the Engineer or designated representative. The forms, cofferdams or caissons shall be sufficiently tight to prevent any water current passing through the space in which the concrete is being deposited. Pumping will not be permitted during the concrete placing nor until it has set for at least 36 hours.

The concrete shall be placed with a tremie, pump or other approved method and shall not be permitted to fall freely through the water nor shall it be disturbed after it has been placed. Its surface shall be kept approximately level during placement.

The tremie shall be supported or the pump operated so that it can be easily moved horizontally to cover all the work area and vertically to control the concrete flow. The lower end of the tremie or pump hose shall be submerged in the concrete at all times.

The placing operations shall be continuous until the work is complete.

For concrete to be placed under water, the concrete mix shall be designed in accordance with Standard Specification Item No. 403S, “Concrete For Structures” with a minimum cement content of 650 lb. Per cubic yard (10.4 Mg per cubic meter). An anti-wash admixture may be included in the mix design as necessary to produce a satisfactory finished product.

410S.16 Placing Concrete in Superstructure

A. General

Unless otherwise indicated on the drawings, simple span roadway slabs shall be placed without transverse construction joints by using a mechanical longitudinal screed or a self-propelled transverse finishing machine or a mechanical longitudinal screed. For small placements or unusual conditions such as narrow widening, variable cross-slopes, or transitions, manually operated screeding equipment may be used if approved by the Engineer or designated representative.

B. Transverse Screeding

Unless otherwise indicated on the drawings, slabs on continuous units shall be placed in one continuous operation without transverse construction joints using a longitudinal screed or a self-propelled transverse finishing machine. Rails for transverse finishing machines supported from the beams or girders shall be installed so they may be removed without damage to the slab. Bond between removable supports and the concrete shall be prevented in a manner acceptable to the Engineer or designated representative. Rail support parts, which remain embedded in the slab, shall not project above the upper mat of reinforcing steel. Rail or screed supports attached to I-beams or girders shall be subject to "General Requirements" stated above. Unless indicated otherwise on the drawings, the minimum rate of concrete placement is 30 lineal feet (9.144 lineal meters) of bridge slab per hour. The concrete shall be deposited parallel to the skew of the bridge so that all girders are loaded uniformly along their length. Slab concrete shall be deposited between the exterior beam and the adjacent beam before placing concrete in the overhang portion of the slab. Personnel and equipment shall be furnished that is capable of placing, finishing and curing the slab at an acceptable rate to ensure compliance with this Item. Concrete shall be placed in transverse strips. On profile grades greater than 1.5 %, placement shall be started at the lower end.

C. Longitudinal Screeding

The screed shall be adequately supported on a header or rail system sufficiently stable to withstand the longitudinal or lateral thrust of the equipment. Unless otherwise indicated on the drawings, temporary intermediate headers will be permitted for placements exceeding 50 feet (15.24 meters) in length for the longitudinal screed, provided the rate of placement is rapid enough to prevent a cold joint and these headers are designed for early removal to permit satisfactory consolidation and finish of the concrete at their locations. The slab concrete shall be deposited between the exterior beam and the adjacent beam before placing concrete in the overhang portion of the slab.

For longitudinal screeding, concrete shall be placed in longitudinal strips starting at a point in the center of the segment adjacent to one side, except as provided herein and the strip completed by placing uniformly in both directions toward the ends except that for spans on a grade of 1.5 percent or more, placing shall start at the lower end. The width of strips shall be such that the concrete therein will remain plastic until the adjacent strip is placed. Where monolithic curb construction is specified, the concrete shall be placed therein in proper sequence to be monolithic with the adjacent longitudinal strips of the slabs.

D. Placements on Continuous Steel Units

Unless otherwise indicated on the drawings, slabs on continuous steel units shall be placed in a single continuous operation without transverse construction joints using a mechanical longitudinal screed or a self-propelled transverse finishing machine. The initial set of the concrete shall be retarded sufficiently to ensure that concrete remains plastic in at least 3 spans immediately preceding the slab being placed. Construction joints shall be used, when required for slab placements on steel beams or girders, as shown on the drawings. When staged placement of a slab is specified in the drawings, it shall be necessary to ensure that the previously placed concrete attains a compressive strength of 3000 psi (20.7 MPa) before placing the next stage concrete. Multiple stages may be placed in a single day if approved by the Engineer or designated representative. When drawings permit staged concrete placement without specifying a particular order of placement, a placing sequence that will not overstress any of the supporting members shall be submitted for the approval of the Engineer or designated representative.

E. Slab and Girder Units

Unless indicated otherwise on the drawings, girders, slab and curbs of slab and girder spans shall be placed monolithically. Concrete girders shall be filled first, and the slab concrete placed within the time limits specified in this Item. If a transverse screed is used, the concrete shall be placed in the stem for a short distance and then the concrete placed in transverse strips. If a longitudinal screed is used, the concrete shall be placed in the outside girder stem first beginning at the low end or side, and then continue the concrete placed in longitudinal strips.

410S.17 Placing Concrete in Concrete Arches

Concrete shall be placed in arch rings so the loading is kept symmetrical on the falsework. The arch rings and ribs shall be placed in one continuous operation unless otherwise indicated on the drawings or permitted by the Engineer or designated representative. The spandrel walls or columns and the beams shall not be placed until the arch is swung. Floor slab, railing, parapet walls, etc., shall not be placed until all spandrels are complete. Slab placement shall be symmetrical about the transverse centerline so the loading of the arch is kept approximately symmetrical.

The placing sequence shall be as indicated on the drawings.

410S.18 Placing Concrete in Box Culverts

In general, construction joints will be permitted only where indicated on the drawings.

Where the top slab and walls are placed monolithically in culverts more than 4 feet (1.22 meters) in clear height, an interval of not less than 1 nor more than 2 hours shall elapse before placing the top slab to allow for settlement and shrinkage in the concrete wall.

The base slab shall be trowel finished accurately at the proper time to provide a smooth uniform surface. Top slabs, which carry traffic, shall be finished as specified for roadway slabs in "Finish of Roadway Slabs", below. Top slabs of fill type culverts shall be given a reasonably smooth float finish.

410S.19 Placing Concrete in Foundations and Substructure

Concrete shall not be placed in footings until the depth and character of the foundation has been inspected by the Engineer or designated representative and permission has been given to proceed.

Placing of concrete footings upon seal courses will be permitted after the caissons or cofferdams are free from water and the seal course cleaned. Any necessary pumping or bailing during the concrete placement shall be done from a suitable sump located outside the forms.

All temporary wales or braces inside cofferdams or caissons shall be constructed or adjusted as the work proceeds to prevent unauthorized construction joints in footings or shafts.

When footings can be placed in a dry excavation without the use of cofferdams or caissons, forms may be omitted if desired by the Contractor and approved by the Engineer or designated representative and the entire excavation filled with concrete to the elevation of the top of footing.

Concrete in columns shall be placed monolithically unless otherwise indicated on the drawings. Columns and caps and/or tie beams supported thereon may be placed in the same operation or separately. To allow for settlement and shrinkage of the column concrete, it shall be placed o the lower level of the cap or tie beam and placement delayed for not less than 1 hour nor more than 2 before proceeding with the cap or tie beam placement.

410S.20 Treatment and Finishing of Horizontal Surfaces Except Bridge Slabs

All unformed upper surfaces shall be struck off to grade and finished. The use of mortar topping for surfaces under this classification will not be permitted.

After the concrete has been struck off, the surface shall be floated with a suitable float. Bridge sidewalks shall be given a wood float or broom finish or may be striped with a brush as specified by the Engineer or designated representative.

The tops of caps and piers between bearing areas shall be sloped slightly from the center toward the edge and the tops of abutments and transition bents sloped from the back wall to the edge, as directed by the Engineer or designated representative, so that water will drain from the surface. The concrete shall be given a smooth trowel finish. Bearing areas for steel units shall be constructed in such a manner to have a full and even bearing upon the concrete. When the concrete is placed below grade, bearing areas may be raised to grade on beds of Portland cement mortar consisting of 1 part cement, 2 parts sand and a minimum amount of water.

Bearing seat buildups or pedestals for concrete units shall be cast integrally with the cap or with a construction joint. The construction joint area under the bearing shall have the surface roughened thoroughly as soon as practical after initial set is obtained. The bearing seat buildups shall be placed using a latex based grout, an epoxy grout, or an approved proprietary bearing mortar, mixed in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendation. Pedestals shall be placed using Class C concrete, reinforced as indicated on the drawings.

The bearing area under the expansion end of concrete slabs and slab and girder spans shall be given a steel-trowel finish to the exact grades required on the drawings. Bearing areas under elastomeric bearing pads or nonreinforced bearing seat buildups shall be given a textured wood float finish. The bearing area shall not vary from a level plane more than 1/16 in. (1.6 mm) in all directions.

410S.21 Finish of Bridge Slabs

In all roadway slab-finishing operations, camber for specified vertical curvature and transverse slopes shall be provided.

For concrete flat slab and concrete slab and girder spans cast in place on falsework, an additional amount of camber shall be provided to offset the initial and final deflections of the span indicated in the drawings. For concrete slab and girder spans using pan forms, a camber of approximately 3/8 in. for 30 ft. (9.5 mm for 9.14 meter) spans and ½ in. for 40 ft. (12.7 mm for 12.19 meter) spans shall be provided to offset initial and final deflections unless otherwise directed by the Engineer or designated representative. When dead load deflection requirements for concrete flat slab and concrete slab and girder spans not using pan forms is not indicated on the drawings, the additional amount of camber shall be 1/8 inch per 10 foot (3.2 mm per 3 meter) of span length but not to exceed 1/2 inch (12.7 mm).

Bridge slabs supported on prestressed concrete beams, steel beams or girders shall receive no additional camber, except that for slabs without vertical curvature, the longitudinal camber shall be approximately 1/4 inch (6.35 mm).

Work bridges or other suitable facilities shall be provided from which to perform all finishing operations and to provide access, if necessary, for the Engineer or designated representative to check measurements for slab thickness and reinforcement cover.

As soon as the concrete has been placed and vibrated in a section of sufficient width to permit working, the surface shall be struck off, leveled and screeded, carrying a slight excess of concrete ahead of the screed to insure filling of all low spots. The screed shall be designed rigid enough to hold true to shape and shall have sufficient adjustments to provide for the required camber. A vibrating screed shall be used in all slabs more than 20 feet (6.1

meters) in width. A vibrating screed may be used if heavy enough to prevent undue distortion. The screeds shall be provided with a metal edge.

Longitudinal screeds shall be moved across the concrete with a saw like motion while their ends rest on headers or templates set true to the roadway grade or on the adjacent finished slab. The transverse screeds shall be moved longitudinally approximately 1/5 of the drum length for each complete out-and-back pass of the carriage.

The surface of the concrete shall be screeded a sufficient number of times and at such intervals to produce a uniform surface, true to grade and free of voids. If necessary, the screeded surface shall be worked to a smooth finish with a long handled wood or metal float of the proper size or hand floated from bridges over the slab. Floating may not be necessary if the pan float attached to a transverse screed produces an acceptable finish. Overworking the concrete surface and overuse of finish water shall be avoided.

The Contractor shall perform in the presence of the Engineer or designated representative sufficient checks with a long handled 16-foot (5 meter) straightedge on the plastic concrete to insure that the final surface will be within the specified tolerances. The check shall be made with the straightedge parallel to the centerline. Each pass thereof shall lap half of the preceding pass. All high spots shall be removed and all depressions over 1/16 inch (1.6 mm) in depth shall be filled with fresh concrete and floated. The checking and floating shall be continued until the surface is true to grade and free of depressions, high spots, voids or rough spots.

Screed-rail support holes shall be filled with concrete and finished to match the top of the slab.

The concrete surface shall be finished to a uniform texture using a carpet drag, burlap drag or broom finish. The surface shall be finished to a smooth sandy texture without blemishes, marks or scratches deeper than 1/16 inch (1.6 mm). The surface texturing shall be applied using a work bridge or platform immediately after completing the straightedge checks. The carpet or burlap drag shall be drug longitudinally along the concrete surface, adjusting the surface contact area or pressure to provide a satisfactory coarsely textured surface. A broom finish may be performed using a fine bristle broom transversely.

The concrete surface shall be coated immediately after the carpet or burlay drag, or broom finish with a single application of evaporation retardant at a rate recommended by the manufacturer. The time between the texturing at any location and subsequent application of evaporation retardant shall not exceed 10 minutes. The evaporation retardant may be applied using the same workbridge used for surface texturing. The concrete surface shall not be worked once the evaporation retardant has been applied.

Interim and final curing shall be applied in accordance with Section P410S.23, “Curing Concrete”.

The Contractor is responsible for the ride quality of the finished bridge slab. The Engineer or designated representative will use a 10-ft. (3.05 meter) straightedge to verify ride quality [1/8 in. or less in 10 ft (3.2 mm or less in 3.05 meters)] and to determine locations where corrections are needed. If the Engineer or designated representative determines that the ride quality is unacceptable, then the Contractor shall submit to the Engineer or designated

representative for approval a plan to produce a ride of acceptable quality. All corrections for ride-quality shall be made before saw-cutting grooves.

At the option of the Contractor or when indicated on the drawings, the hardened concrete surface of bridge slabs, bridge approach slabs and direct-traffic culverts shall be given its final texture by saw grooving to meet the above requirements after completion of the required curing period. Grooves shall be cut perpendicular to the structure centerline. The grooves shall be cut continuously across the slab to within 18 in. (450 mm) of the barrier rail, curb or median divider. At skewed metal expansion joints in bridge slabs, groove cutting shall be adjusted by using narrow-width cutting heads so that all grooves end within 6 in. (150 mm) of the joint, measured perpendicular to the centerline of the metal joint. There should not be any ungrooved surface wider than 6 in. (150 mm) adjacent to either side of the joint. The minimum distance to the first groove, measured perpendicular to the edge of the concrete joint or from the junction between the concrete and the metal leg of the joint shall be 1 in. (25 mm), Grooves shall be continuously cut across construction joints or other joints in the concrete that are less than ½ in. (13 mm) wide. The same procedure described above shall be used where barrier rails, curbs or median dividers are not parallel to the structure centerline in order to maintain the 18-in. (450-mm) maximum dimension from the end of the grooves to the gutter line. The grooves shall be cut continuously across formed concrete joints.

When the plans require that a concrete overlay be placed on the slab (new construction) or on prestressed concrete box beams or other precast elements, a carpet drag, burlap drag or broom finish shall be given to all concrete surfaces to be overlaid. Saw grooving is not necessary in this case. An average texture depth for the finish of approximately 0.035 in. (0.9 mm) shall be provided with no individual test falling below 0.020 in. (0.5 mm), unless otherwise indicated on the drawings, when tested in accordance with TxDoT's Tex-436-A, "Measurement of Texture Depth by the Sand Patch Method". If the texture depth falls below what is specified, the finishing procedure shall be revised to produce the desired texture.

When the drawings require an asphalt seal with or without overlay on the slab (new construction), on prestressed concrete box beams or on other precast elements, all concrete surfaces to be covered shall be given a lightly textured broom or carpet drag finish, similar to a sidewalk finish having an average texture depth of approximately 0.025 inch (0.635 mm), when tested in accordance with TxDoT's Tex-436-A, ".

410S.22 Placing Survey Monuments

The Contractor shall obtain City Survey Monuments, for a fee of 10 dollars, from the Department of Public Works, Construction Inspection Division. Monuments shall be embedded in freshly poured concrete at locations indicated on the drawings and accessible to survey equipment at the completion of the project. The monuments shall be installed flush with the adjacent concrete.

410S.23 Curing Concrete

The Contractor shall inform the Engineer or designated representative fully of the methods and procedures proposed for curing, shall provide the proper equipment and material in adequate amounts and shall have the proposed method, equipment and material approved by the Engineer or designated representative prior to placing concrete.

Inadequate curing and/or facilities therefore shall be cause for the Engineer or designated representative to notify the Contractor, in writing, that the work is unsatisfactory and the concrete will have to be removed and replaced.

All concrete shall be cured for a period of 4 curing days except as noted herein. A curing day is a calendar day when the temperature, taken in the shade away from artificial heat is above 50°F (10°C) for at least 19 hours or on colder days if the temperature of all surfaces of the concrete is maintained above 40°F (4°C) for the entire 24 hours. The required curing shall begin when all concrete has attained its initial set. TxDoT's Tex-440-A, "Initial Time-of-Set of Fresh Concrete" may be used to establish when the concrete has attained its initial set.

Table 4: Exceptions to 4-Day Curing

Description	Type of Cement	Required Curing Days
Upper Surfaces of Bridge Slabs, Top Slabs of Direct Traffic Culverts and Concrete Overlays	I or II	8
	II or I/II	10
	All types with supplementary cementing materials	10
Concrete Piling buildups		6

For upper surfaces of bridge slabs, bridge support slabs, median and sidewalk slabs and culvert top slabs constructed using Class S Concrete (Standard Specification Item No. 403S, "Concrete for Structures") interim curing using a Type 1-D curing compound shall be applied as soon as possible after application of the evaporation retardant and after the water sheen has disappeared, but no more than 45 minutes after application of the evaporation retardant. Membrane interim curing shall be applied using a work bridge or other approved apparatus to ensure a uniform application. Final curing with water cure in accordance with this section shall start as soon as possible without damaging the surface finish. Water curing shall be maintained for the duration noted in the table above. Polyethylene sheeting, burlap-polyethylene blankets, laminated mats or insulating curing mats shall be placed in direct contact with the slab when the ambient temperature is expected to drop below 40°F (4°C) during the first 72 hours of the curing period. The curing materials will be weighed down with dry mats to maintain direct contact with the concrete and to provide insulation against cold weather. Supplemental heating or insulation may be required in cold and wet weather if the insulating cotton mats become wet or if the concrete temperature drops below the specified curing temperature. Application of heat directly to concrete surfaces shall be avoided.

For the top surface of any concrete unit upon which concrete is to be placed and bonded at a later date (i.e. stub walls, risers, etc.), only water-cure in accordance with this Section shall be used.

All other concrete shall be cured as specified in pertinent Items.

The following methods are permitted for curing concrete subject to the restrictions of this Item .

A. Form Curing

When forms are left in intimate contact with the concrete, other curing methods will not be required except for exposed surfaces and for cold weather protection.

When forms are striped before the 4-day minimum curing time has elapsed, curing shall continue by an approved method.

B. Water Curing

All exposed surfaces of the concrete shall be kept wet continuously for the required curing time. The water used for curing shall meet the requirements for concrete mixing water as indicated in Item No. 403S, "Concrete for Structures". Seawater will not be permitted. Water, which stains or leaves an unsightly residue, shall not be used.

1. Wet Mats

Wet cotton mats placed in direct contact with the slab shall be maintained for the required curing time. If needed damp burlap blankets made from 9-ounce (255 gm) stock may be placed on the damp concrete surface for temporary protection prior to the application of the cotton mats, which may be placed dry and wetted down after placement.

The mats shall be weighted down adequately to provide continuous contact with all concrete surfaces where possible. The surfaces of the concrete shall be kept wet for the required curing time. Surfaces, which cannot be cured by contact, shall be enclosed with mats, anchored positively to the forms or to the ground, so that outside air cannot enter the enclosure. Sufficient moisture shall be provided inside the enclosure to keep all surfaces of the concrete wet.

2. Water Spray

This method shall consist of overlapping sprays or sprinklers that keep all unformed surfaces continuously wet.

3. Ponding

This method requires the covering of the surfaces with a minimum of 2 inches (50 mm) of clean granular material, kept wet at all times or a minimum of 1 inch (25 mm) depth of water. Satisfactory provisions shall be made to provide a dam to retain the water or saturated granular material.

C. Membrane Curing

Unless otherwise indicated on the drawings, either Type 1-D or Type 2 membrane curing compound may be used where permitted except that Type 1-D (Resin Base Only) will be permitted for slab concrete in bridge decks and top slabs of direct traffic culverts and all other surfaces that require a higher grade of surface finish. For substructure concrete, only one Type of curing compound will be permitted on any one structure.

TABLE 5

	REQUIRED		PERMITTED	
STRUCTURE UNIT DESCRIPTION	**Water for Complete Curing**	**Membrane for Interim Curing**	**Water for Complete Curing**	**Membrane for Complete Curing**
1. Upper surfaces of Bridge Roadway, Median and Side walk Slabs, Top Slabs of Direct Traffic, and Culverts.	X	X (resin base)		
2.Top Surface of any Concrete Unit upon which Concrete is to be placed and bonded at a later interval (Stub Walls, Risers, etc.). Other Super-structure Concrete (curbs, wing-walls, Parapet Walls, etc.).	X		*X	*X
3. Top Surface of Precast and/or Pre-stressed Piling.	X	X		
4. All Substructure Concrete Culverts. Box Sewers, Inlets, Manholes, Retaining Walls, Riprap.			*X	*X

* Polyethylene Sheeting, Burlap-Polyethylene Mats or Laminated Mats in close intimate contact with the concrete surfaces, will be considered equivalent to water or membrane curing for items under 4.

The membrane curing shall be applied just after free moisture has disappeared in a single, uniform coating at the rate of coverage recommended by the manufacturer and as approved by the Engineer or designated representative, but not less than 1 gallon per 180 square feet (1 liter per 4.4 square meters) of area. Tests for acceptance shall be at this specified rate.

Membrane curing shall not be applied to dry surfaces, but shall be applied just after free moisture has disappeared. Formed surfaces and surfaces which have given a first rub shall be dampened and shall be moist at the time of application of the membrane.

When membrane is used for complete curing, the film shall remain unbroken for the minimum curing period specified. Membrane, which is damaged, shall be corrected immediately by reapplication of membrane. Polyethylene sheeting, burlap-polyethylene mats or laminated mats in close intimate contact with the concrete surfaces, will be considered equivalent to membrane curing. Unless otherwise indicated on the drawing, the choice of membrane type shall be at the option of the Contractor, except that the Engineer or designated representative may require the same curing method for like portions of a single structure.

410S.24 Removal of Forms and Falsework

Unless otherwise indicated on the drawing, forms for vertical surfaces may be removed when the concrete has aged 12 hours after initial set, provided it can be done without damage to the concrete. Forms for mass concrete placements shall be maintained in place for 4-days following concrete placement. Mass placements are defined as concrete placements with a least dimension greater than equal to 5 ft. (1.575 meters), or those designated as such on the drawings.

Forms for inside curb faces may be removed in approximately 3 hours provided it can be done without damage to the curb.

Unless indicated otherwise on the drawings weight supporting forms and falsework spanning more than 1 ft. (300 mm) for structures, bridge components and culvert slabs shall remain in place until the concrete has attained a minimum compressive strength of 2500 psi (17.25 MPa). Forms for other structural components may be removed as specified by the Engineer or designated representative.

Inside forms (walls and top slabs) for inlets, box culverts and sewers may be removed after the concrete has attained a minimum compressive strength of 1800 psi (12.4 MPa), provided an overhead support system, approved by the Engineer or designated representative, is used to transfer the weight (mass) of the top slab to the walls of the box culvert or sewer before the support provided by the forms is removed.

If all test cylinders made for the purpose of form removal have been broken without attaining the required strength, forms shall remain in place for a total of 14 curing days.

The above provisions relative to form removal shall apply only to forms or parts thereof which are constructed to permit removal without disturbing forms or falsework required to be left in place for a longer period on other portions of the structure.

Remove all metal appliances used inside forms for alignment shall be removed to a depth of at least ½ in. (13 mm) from the concrete surface. The appliances shall be manufactured to allow the removal without undue chipping or spalling of the concrete, and so that it leaves a smooth opening in the concrete surface when removed. Rods, bolts and ties shall not be burned-off.

Backfilling against walls of Type I or Type II cement shall not take place for a minimum of 7 days. Backfilling against walls of Type III cement shall not take place until the cylinder compressive strength has reached 3000 psi (20.7 MPa) or the wall has cured for 5 days.

All forms and falsework shall be removed unless indicated otherwise on the drawings.

410S.25 Defective Work

Any defective work discovered after the forms have been removed shall be repaired as soon as possible in accordance with "Finishing Exposed Surfaces", below.

If the surface of the concrete is bulged, uneven or shows excess honeycombing or form marks, which in the opinion of the Engineer or designated representative, cannot be

repaired satisfactorily, the entire section shall be removed and replaced at the expense of the Contractor.

410S.26 Finishing Exposed Surfaces

A. Ordinary Surface Finish

An Ordinary Surface Finish shall be applied to all concrete surfaces either as a final finish or preparatory to a higher grade or class of finish. Higher grades and classes of finish shall conform to Item No. 411S, "Surface Finishes for Concrete". Where neither a grade or class of finish is specified, an Ordinary Surface Finish only, will be required.

Ordinary Surface Finish shall be provided as follows:

1. After formal removal, all porous, honeycombed areas and spalled areas shall be corrected by chipping away all loose or broken material to sound concrete.
2. Featheredges shall be eliminated by saw-cutting and chipping spalled areas to a depth at least ½ in. (13 mm) deep perpendicular to the surface. Shallow cavities shall be repaired using a latex adhesive grout, cement mortar or epoxy grout approved by the Engineer or designated representative. If judged repairable by the Engineer or designated representative, large defective areas shall be corrected using concrete or other material approved by the Engineer or designated representative.
3. Holes and spalls caused by removal of form ties, etc., shall be cleaned and filled with latex adhesive grout, cement mortar or epoxy grout approved by the Engineer or designated representative. Only the holes shall be filled. The patch shall not be blended with the surrounding concrete. On surfaces to receive a rub finish in accordance with Standard Specification Item No. 411S, “Surface Finishes for Concrete” the exposed parts of metal chairs shall be chipped out to a depth of 1/2 inch (13 mm) and the surface repaired.
4. All fins, runs, drips or mortar that will be exposed shall be removed from surfaces. Form marks and chamfer edges shall be smoothed by grinding and/or dry rubbing.
5. Grease, oil, dirt, curing compound, etc., shall be removed from surfaces requiring a higher grade of finish. Discolorations resulting from spillage or splashing of asphalt, paint or other similar material shall be removed.
6. Repairs shall be dense, well bonded and properly cured and when made on surfaces, which remain exposed and do not require a higher finish, shall be finished to blend with the surrounding concrete.

Unless otherwise indicated on the drawings Ordinary Surface Finish shall be the final finish for the following exposed surfaces:

1. inside and top of inlets,
2. inside and top of manholes,
3. inside of sewer appurtenances,
4. inside of culvert barrels,

5. bottom of bridge decks between beams or girders,
6. vertical and bottom surfaces of interior concrete beams or girders.

B. Rubbed Finish

In general, the following areas shall require a rubbed finish and shall receive a first and second rubbing:

1. The top, exterior and roadway facia of curbs and parapet walls.
2. All concrete surfaces of railing.
3. The exterior vertical facia of slab spans, rigid frames, arches and box girders.
4. The outside and bottom surfaces of facia beams or girders (except precast concrete beams).
5. The underside of overhanging slabs to the point of juncture of the supporting beams.
6. All vertical surfaces of piers, columns, bent caps, abutments, wing walls and retaining walls which are exposed to view after all backfill and embankments is placed.
7. Exposed formed surfaces of inlet and outlet structures on culverts, transition structures, headwalls and inlets.
8. Such other surfaces specified elsewhere to receive a rubbed finish and such additional surfaces required by the Engineer or designated representative to receive a rubbed finish.

After removal of forms and as soon as the mortar used in pointing has set sufficiently, surfaces to be rubbed shall be wet with a brush and given a first surface rubbing with a medium coarse carborundum stone. This rubbing shall be done before the concrete has cured more than 48 hours.

The second rubbing shall present a cleaned uniform appearance free from drip marks and discoloration. It shall be given with a No.30 carborundum stone or an abrasive of equal quality.

If the Contractor elects to use epoxy paint in lieu of the second rubbings the Contractor may do so upon approval of the Engineer or designated representative.

C. Special Surface Finishes

Striated, exposed aggregate and other special surface finishes shall conform to Standard Specification Item No. 411S, "Surface Finishes for Concrete" and/or with the requirements indicated on the drawings.

410S.27 Measurement and Payment

No direct measurement or payment will be made for the work to be done or the equipment to be furnished under this item, but shall be included in the unit price bid for the item of construction in which this item is used.

End

SPECIFIC CROSS REFERENCE MATERIALS
Standard Specification Item 410S, "Concrete Structures"

City of Austin Standard Specification Items

Designation	Description
Item No. 360S	Concrete Pavement
Item No. 401S	Structural Excavation and Backfill
Item No. 403S	Concrete for Structures
Item No. 406S	Reinforcing Steel
Item No. 411S	Surface Finishes for Concrete
Item No. 413S	Cleaning and/or Sealing Joints and Cracks (PC Concrete)
Item No. 425S	Prestressed Concrete Structures

U.S. Department of Commerce Voluntary Product Standard, PS 1

American Concrete Institute

Designation	Description
ACI 347	Guide to Formwork for Concrete

American Society for Testing and Materials (ASTM)

Designation	Description
ASTM D-994	Preformed Expansion Joint Filler for Concrete (bituminous Type)
ASTM D-1751	Prefprmed Expansion Joint Filler for Concrete Paving and Structural Construction (Nonextruding and Resilient Bituminous Types)
ASTM D-1752	Prefprmed Sponge Rubber and Cork Expansion Joint Fillers for Concrete Paving and Structural Construction

Texas Department of Transportation: Departmental Material Specifications

Designation	Description
DMS-4640	Chemical Admixtures for Concrete
DMS-4650	Hydraulic Cement Concrete Curing Materials and Evaporation Retardants"
DMS-6100	Epoxy and Adhesives
DMS-6160	Waterstops, Nylon Reinforced Neoprene Sheet, and Elastomeric Pads
DMS-6310	Joint Materials and Fillers

Texas Department of Transportation: Manual of Testing Procedures

Designation	Description
Tex-436-A	Measurement of Texture Depth by the Sand Patch Method
Tex-440-A	Initial Time-of-Set of Fresh Concrete

RELATED CROSS REFERENCE MATERIALS
Standard Specification Item 410S, "Concrete Structures"

American Society for Testing and Materials, ASTM

Designation	Description
A 36/A 36M	Carbon Structural Steel
A 82	Steel Wire, Plain, for Concrete Reinforcement

A 185	Steel Welded Wire Fabric, Plain, for Concrete Reinforcement
A 496	Steel Wire, Deformed, for Concrete Reinforcement
A 497	Steel Welded Wire Fabric, Deformed, for Concrete Reinforcement
A 615/A 615M	Deformed and Plain Billet-steel Bars for Concrete Reinforcement
A 675/A 675M	Steel Bars, Carbon, Hot-Wrought, Special Quality, Mechanical Properties
A 706/A 706M	Low- Alloy Steel Deformed and Plain Bars for Concrete Reinforcement
A 775/A 775M	Epoxy-Coated Reinforcing Steel Bars
A 884/A 884M	Epoxy-Coated Steel Wire and Welded Wire Fabric For Reinforcement
A 934/A 934M	Epoxy-Coated Prefabricated Reinforcing Steel Bars
A 996/A 996M	Rail-Steel and Axle-Steel Deformed Bars for Concrete Reinforcement
D3963/D3963M	Fabrication and Jobsite Handling of Epoxy-coated Reinforcing Steel Bars

Texas Department of Transportation: Manual of Testing Procedures

Designation	Description
Tex-739-I	Sampling and Testing Epoxy Coated Reinforcing Steel

City of Austin Standard (Details)

Designation	Description
Standard 406S-1	Reinforced Steel Tolerances

Texas Department of Transportation: Departmental Material Specifications

Designation	Description
DMS 8130	Epoxy Powder Coating for Reinforcing Steel

City of Austin Standard Specification Items

Designation	Description
Item No. 404S	Pneumatically Placed Concrete
Item No. 407S	Fibrous Concrete
Item No. 414S	Concrete Retaining Walls
Item No. 420S	Drilled Shaft Foundations

Texas Department of Transportation: Standard Specifications for Construction and Maintenance of Highways, Streets, and Bridges

Designation	Description
Item No. 360	Concrete Pavement
Item No. 420	Concrete Structures
Item No. 421	Hydraulic Cement Concrete
Item No. 422	Reinforced Concrete Slab
Item No. 423	Retaining Walls
Item No. 440	Reinforcing Steels

Item No. 411S
Surface Finishes for Concrete

411S.1 Description

This item shall govern the furnishing of all materials and the application by the methods of construction indicated on the Drawings for the application of a surface finish to concrete.

This specification is applicable for projects or work involving either inch-pound or SI units. Within the text and accompanying tables, the inch-pound units are given preference followed by SI units shown within parentheses.

411S.2 Submittals

The submittal requirements of this specification item include:

A. Type and manufacturer of cement(s).

B. Type and manufacturer of membrane curing compound.

C. Type and manufacturer of adhesive grout.

D. Type and manufacturer of resin paint.

E. Samples as requested.

F. Locations of proposed grade/class of finishes.

411S.3 Materials

(1) Masonry Sand

Masonry sand shall conform to ASTM C 144.

(2) White Cement

White cement shall conform to ASTM C 150.

(3) Portland Cement

All cement unless otherwise indicated shall be Portland cement conforming to ASTM C 150.

Portland cement manufactured in a cement kiln fueled by hazardous waste shall be considered as an approved product if the production facility is authorized to operate under regulation of the Texas Natural Resource Conservation Commission (TNRCC) and the U. S. Environmental Protection Agency (EPA). Supplier shall provide current TNRCC and EPA authorizations to operate the facility.

(4) Membrane Curing

Membrane curing shall conform to Item No. 409S, "Membrane Curing".

(5) Adhesive Grout

This subsection sets forth the requirements for three epoxy adhesives with different viscosities designed to bond fresh Portland Cement concrete to existing Portland Cement concrete, hardened concrete to hardened concrete and steel to fresh or hardened concrete. These adhesives are as follows:

Type V: Standard (medium viscosity) for applying to horizontal and vertical surfaces. This material is suitable for surface sealing of fine cracks in concrete.

Type VI: Low viscosity for application with spray equipment to horizontal surfaces.

Type VII: Paste consistency for overhead application and where a high buildup is required. This material is suitable for surface sealing of cracks in concrete, which are veed out prior to sealing, and for grouting of dowel bars where clearance is 1/16 inch (1.6 mm) or less.

(a) Mixing Ratio: The ratio of resin and hardener components to be mixed together to form the finished adhesive shall be either 1 to 1 or 2 to 1 by volume.

Any specific coloring of resin and/or hardener components desired will be stated by the Engineer or designated representative.

Fillers, pigments and thixotropic agents. All fillers, pigments and/or thixotropic agents in either the epoxy resin or hardener component must be of sufficiently fine particle size and dispersed so that no appreciable separation or settling will occur during storage.

Any fillers present in the low viscosity version must be of such a nature that they will not interfere with application by spray equipment or abrade or damage such equipment.

The concrete adhesive shall contain no volatile solvents.

(b) Consistency: The adhesives shall comply with the following:

	Type V	Type VI	Type VII
Viscosity of mixed adhesive 77° ± 1°F, (25° ± -17°C) Poises	400 Maximum	150 Maximum	must be sufficiently fluid to apply by trowel or spatula without difficulty
Pot Life at 77°F (25°C), minutes minimum - 30			
Set Time at 77°F (25°C) (Time required to attain 180 psi (1.3 mPa), hours maximum - 12			

Thixotropy test shall be performed at both 77° and 120° F (25° and 49° C). Average thickness of cured adhesive remaining on test panel, mils minimum.

Type V	Type VII
30	45

Samples of the individual components in sealed containers shall be maintained at 115° + 3° F (46° + -16° C) for 2 weeks. The mixed adhesive prepared from these samples must still comply with the minimum thixotropy requirements.

The viscosity of the Type V and Type VI versions must not show an increase of more than 20 percent compared with the viscosity prior to the stability test. The Type VII adhesive must still be sufficiently fluid to apply by trowel or spatula without difficulty.

(c) Physical Properties of the Cured Adhesive

Property	**Requirements**
Adhesive Shear Strength, psi, (mPa), minimum	2200 (15)
Water Gain, percent by weight, maximum	0.20
Ability to bond fresh Portland cement concrete to cured Portland cement concrete psi, (mPa), minimum (7 days cure time)	400 (2.8)

(6) Synthetic Resin Paint

Type X Epoxy: This is a high solids epoxy coating designed for application by brush or roller. The materials can also be applied by airless spray by addition of a maximum of 5 percent toluene solvent at the direction of the Engineer or designated representative.

Raw Materials: The basic raw materials to be incorporated into this coating are listed below, along with the specific requirements for each material. The final decision as to the quality of materials shall be made by the Engineer or designated representative. After the Engineer or designated representative has approved the brand names of raw materials proposed by the Contractor, no substitution will be allowed during the manufacture without prior approval of the Engineer or designated representative.

Epoxy Resin: The basic epoxy resin used in the formulation shall be an unmodified liquid resin conforming to the following chemical and physical requirements:

Viscosity at 25.0 + 0.1 C, cps	7,000 to 10,000
Weight per epoxy equivalent, gms per gm - mole	175 to 195
Color (Gardner Number), maximum	5
Hydrolyzable chlorine, maximum % by weight	0.2
Specific gravity, 25/25 degrees	1.14. to 1.18

Test methods to be used in determining these qualities are listed below:

(a) Viscosity - Test for Kinematic Viscosity (ASTM Designation: D 445).

(b) Weight per Epoxy Equivalent - Test for Epoxy Content of Epoxy Resins (ASTM Designation: D 1652).

(c) Color - Test for Color of Transparent Liquids (Gardner Color Scale) (ASTM Designation: D 1544).

(d) Hydrolyzable Chlorine - Test for Hydrolyzable Chlorine Content of Liquid Epoxy Resins (ASTM Designation D: 1726).

(e) Specific Gravity - Method of Test for Density of Paint, Varnish, Lacquer and Related Products (ASTM Designation: D 1475).

Pigment

Titanium Dioxide: The titanium dioxide used in this formulation shall be equivalent to DuPont R-900. This shall be a pure, chalk-resistant, rutile titanium dioxide meeting the requirements of ASTM D 476, Type III.

Extender: The extender used in this formulation shall be Nyad 400, manufactured by Interpace Pigments. Specific requirements are as follows:

Particle size distribution	Minimum	Maximum
Minus 20 microns, percent by weight	95	
Minus 10 microns, percent by weight	70	80
Minus 5 microns, percent by weight	40	50
Minus 3 microns, percent by weight	30	40
Minus 1 micron, percent by weight	14	20
Oil Absorption (rub out, lbs/100 lbs)		25 maximum
Brightness (G.E.)	92.5 minimum	

411S.4 Grade of Finish

(1) General

The grade and/or class of finish shall be as described herein and as indicated.

"Grade" of finish designates the areas to which a higher finish is to be applied beyond the requirements of an Ordinary Surface Finish. Four grades of finish are included herein.

"Class" of finish designates the materials or the process to be used in providing the grade of finish. Three classes of finish are included herein.

For structures and surfaces not described herein under grade of finish, a class of finish only may be indicated. Where neither a grade nor class is specified, an Ordinary Surface Finish only will be required as specified in Item No. 410S, "Concrete Structures".

Where the plans specify a grade and class of finish, i.e., Grade II, Class C, only that type of finish shall be furnished.

Where the plans specify a grade of finish only, i.e., Grade I Finish, any of the classes of finish may be furnished. Only one class of finish shall be furnished on any individual structure, twin structures or on structures in close proximity to each other, except as specified for prestressed concrete members below.

(2) Grade I

The following areas shall receive a Class A, B or C (two rub) Finish, except that prestressed members shall receive either a Class A or B Finish only.

All concrete surfaces of railing, including the parapet types; exterior vertical faces of slabs, slab spans, arches and box girders; the outside and bottom surfaces of fascia beams or girders (including prestressed members); the underside of overhanging slabs to the point of juncture of the supporting beam; all exposed vertical surfaces of bents and piers and bottom surfaces of bent caps; all exposed surfaces of tie beams, abutments, bridge wingwalls, culvert headwalls and wingwalls and retaining walls exposed to view after all backfill and is placed.

Unless otherwise indicated, the underside of the slab of slab spans shall be finished its entire width.

Unless otherwise indicated, exposed surfaces of pump houses and other miscellaneous concrete surfaces shall receive a Class A, B or C (one rub) Finish.

(3) Grade II

All concrete surfaces of railing, including the parapet types, all exposed surfaces of bridge wingwalls and the exterior vertical faces of slabs and slab spans shall receive a Class A, B or C (two rub) Finish. All other surfaces described under Grade I Finish shall receive a Class A or B finish only. The underside of slab spans shall receive an Ordinary Surface Finish only.

(4) Grade III

All concrete surfaces of railing, including the parapet types, all exposed surfaces of bridge wingwalls and the exterior vertical faces of slabs shall receive a Class A, B or C (two rub) Finish. All other surfaces described under Grade I Finish shall receive an Ordinary Surface Finish.

(5) Grade IV

The top and roadway faces only of all concrete railing, including the parapet types and bridge wingwalls shall receive a Class A, B or C (one rub) Finish. All other surfaces described under Grade I shall receive an Ordinary Surface Finish.

411S.5 Class of Finish

The Class of Finish designates either an adhesive grout material, a paint-type material or a rubbing process applied to surfaces specified in "Grade of Finish", as required above and/or as indicated.

Unless otherwise indicated the color shall be concrete gray.

(1) Class A

This finish shall consist of an adhesive grout textured coating with a minimum 1/16 inch thickness, composed of 1 part white cement, 1 part natural (gray) cement, 2 parts masonry sand, 1 part (latex) emulsion and enough water to form a viscous slurry of a consistency that may be applied by spray gun, brush or roller without

appreciable running or sagging. The proportions of white and gray cement may be varied slightly to obtain the desired color.

Gradation of the masonry sand shall be as required to produce a texture satisfactory to the Engineer or designated representative.

Prepackaged materials meeting these requirements and acceptable to the Engineer or designated representative as to color, texture and appearance will be permitted.

(2) Class B

The finish shall be a paint-type material, consisting of a synthetic resin, containing fibrous as well as texturing pigments, which when applied by a 1 coat spray application at the rate of 45 + 5 square feet per gallon (15.9 + 1.9 square meters per liter) will yield an acceptable textured coating. Certification by the manufacturer of the above materials will be required.

(3) Class C

This finish shall consist of a one rub or two rub system, as the case may be, meeting the requirements set forth below under "Construction Methods".

411S.6 Approval of Surface Finishing Materials

The material to be furnished shall meet the requirements of TxDoT Specification DMS-8110, Structural Coatings, latest revision.

In addition to the above, the manufacturer shall furnish the following:

(1) At the time of original request for approval of the surface furnishing material, the manufacturer shall supply a 1-gallon (3.8 L) sample of the material to the Engineer or designated representative, if requested.

(2) Each 6 months after approval of the material, the manufacturer shall furnish a notarized certification indicating that the material originally approved has not been changed or altered in any way. Any change in formulation of a surface finish shall require retesting prior to use.

The Engineer or designated representative may request additional information to be submitted such as infrared spectophotometry scan, solids content, etc., for further identification. A change in formula discovered by any of the tests prescribed herein or by other means and not reported and retested, may be cause to permanently bar the manufacturer from furnishing surface finish materials for City work.

The City reserves the right to perform any or all of the tests required by this specification as a check on the tests reported by the manufacturer. In case of any variance the City tests will govern.

411S.7 Construction Methods

Prior to application of any of the finishes required herein, concrete surfaces shall be given an Ordinary Surface Finish. For Class A and B materials, concrete surfaces shall be clean and free of dirt, grease, curing compound or any other bond breaking substance. Class A

shall be applied on moistened surfaces but Class B requires a dry surface. The temperature of the atmosphere, concrete and compound shall be above 50°F (10°C) for Classes A and B at the time of application. The finished surfaces shall be protected against rain or freezing for a period of 24 hours after application.

Class A materials shall be applied by spraying, by roller or by brush. Class B materials shall be applied by spraying only. All applications shall provide an acceptable texture of the proper coverage.

The Class A and B material shall be applied after all preparation work required by Ordinary Surface Finish has been completed.

The Class C Finish shall be performed with a carborundum stone as follows, after all preparatory work required by Ordinary Surface Finish has been completed:

For a two-rub system, the first rubbing shall bring the wetted concrete face to a paste and produce a smooth dense surface without pits, form marks or other irregularities. The use of cement or grout to form the paste will not be permitted. Striping with a brush and washing after the first rubbing will not be required. Chamfer lines shall be finished during the second rubbing.

The first rubbing shall be done soon after form removal. Membrane curing, if used, shall be applied after the first rub is complete. Prior to the second rubbing, any remaining curing membrane shall be removed from the surface by brushing, buffing or other satisfactory methods.

The second rubbing shall be performed when conditioning the structure for final acceptance. The specified surfaces shall be cleaned of drip marks and discolorations and given a final rubbing. The surface shall be striped neatly with a brush and the paste allowed to take a reset, after which the surfaces shall be washed with clean water leaving them with a neat and uniform appearance and texture.

For a one rub system, the rubbing requirements shall be the same as for the first rub above, except chamfer lines shall be finished and the paste spread uniformly, striped with a brush and allowed to take a reset after which the surfaces shall be washed with clean water leaving them with a neat and uniform appearance and texture.

411S.8 Special Surfaces Finishes

(1) General

When special surface finishes are required for retaining walls, panels, copings or similar construction, the Contractor shall prepare sample panels for approval of the finish and the method of application. Unless otherwise indicated, panel or pattern arrangement and dimensions may be varied to achieve a more pleasing appearance or to utilize forming material more efficiently when approved by the Engineer or designated representative. Aggregates, materials, variation of panel or pattern arrangement, dimensions and other features affecting the work shall be approved prior to start of the work.

(2) Striated Finish

The striated (grooved) pattern shall be as indicated or as approved by the Engineer or designated representative.

The finish shall be made by lining the forms with striated sheets of plywood, plastic, fiberglass, metal or other material acceptable to the Engineer or designated representative. The striations on the panels shall be of a smooth, wide pattern, not sharp or angular.

A chamfer groove shall be used along all edges of each panel. All ties, bolts or other forming accessories shall be located along the chamfer grooves or panel edges.

(3) Exposed Aggregate Finish

(a) Structural Concrete

Exposed aggregate panels may be either raised, recessed or as indicated with the sides of each panel chamfered as directed by the Engineer or designated representative.

The aggregate used for this finish shall be approved by the Engineer or designated representative. Unless otherwise indicated, aggregate shall conform to the grading requirements of Grade 2 aggregate except that a minimum of 50 percent shall be retained on the ¾-inch (19 mm) sieve. Gravel of predominately rounded particles shall be used, except that when indicated or approved by the Engineer or designated representative in writing, crushed stone may be used. The aggregate shall be large enough to remain firmly anchored in the face of the final product. The depth shall be 1/4-inch (6.4 mm) minimum to 1/2-inch (12.7 mm), unless otherwise indicated or directed by the Engineer or designated representative.

A surface retarder that penetrates the concrete approximately 1/4 inch (6.4 mm) shall be applied to the forms or concrete surface as an aid in achieving the desired finish. Wood forms may require 2 or 3 coatings to compensate for absorption. Form joints shall be taped or caulked to prevent escape of the retarder during placing operations.

Treated form surfaces shall be protected from sun and rain while exposed to the atmosphere. In case of high humidity or if rain has dampened the forms prior to placing concrete, a reapplication of the surface retarder may be required to provide uniform coverage of the retarder on the forms.

Adjacent areas of fresh concrete not requiring exposed aggregate finish shall be protected when the retarder is applied.

The finish shall be obtained by sandblasting, bush hammering, water blasting or other methods, as approved by the Engineer or designated representative. Horizontal surfaces may be finished by a combination of brushing and washing, but only after the concrete has set sufficiently to prevent loosening of the aggregate.

Unless otherwise directed by the Engineer or designated representative, forms for surface requiring exposed aggregate finish shall be removed 12 to 15 hours after concrete placement. The exposed aggregate operation shall be accomplished

immediately after form removal. Except for the time required for obtaining the exposed aggregate finish, curing of all surfaces shall be maintained for the minimum 4 day curing time. All surfaces shall be either water cured or may be cured with an approved clean membrane compound. If water curing is used, it shall be followed by a clear membrane curing compound conforming to Item No. 409S, "Membrane Curing".

Care shall be taken to ensure proper vibration at all points of concrete placement to prevent honeycomb or segregation of the materials. Vibration shall be done in such a manner as to provide adequate penetration of previously placed concrete lifts. Care shall be taken to prevent contact of the vibrator with the face form.

(b) Sidewalks

When exposed aggregate surfaces are required for sidewalks, driveways and/or medians, the coarse aggregate shall consist of particles with at least 40 percent crushed faces. Uncrushed gravel, polished aggregates and clear resilient coatings are not acceptable. Grade 5 coarse aggregates shall be used for exposed aggregate finishes for sidewalks, driveways and/or medians.

411S.9 Measurement and Payment

No direct measurement or payment will be made for the work to be done, the equipment or materials to be furnished under this item, but shall be included in the unit price bid for the item of construction in which this item is used.

End

SPECIFIC Cross Reference Materials
Standard Specification Item No. 411S, " Surface Finishes for Concrete”

City of Austin Standard Specification Items

Designation	Description
Item No. 410S	Concrete Structures

Texas Department of Transportation: Manual of Testing Procedures

Designation	Description
DMS-8110	Coatings for Concrete

American Society for Testing and Materials (ASTM)

Designation	Description
C 144	Aggregate for Masonry Mortar
C 150	Portland Cement
D 445	Kinematic Viscosity of Transparent and Opaque Liquids
D 476	Standard Classification for Dry Pigmentary Titanium Dioxide Products
D 1475	Standard Test Method for Density of Liquid Coatings, Inks and Related Products
D 1544	Standard Test Method for Color of Transparent Liquids (Gardner Color Scale)

D 1652	Standard Test Method for Epoxy Content of Epoxy Resins
D 1726	Standard Test Method for Hydrolyzable Chloride Content of Liquid Epoxy Resins

RELATED CROSS REFERENCE MATERIALS
Specification Item No. 411S, " Surface Finishes for Concrete"

City of Austin Standard Specification Items

Designation	Description
Item No. 403S	Concrete for Structures
Item No. 410S	Concrete Structures
Item No. 411S	Surface Finished for Concrete

Item No. 413S
Cleaning and/or Sealing Joints and Cracks (Portland Cement Concrete)

413S.1 Description

This item shall govern the cleaning and/or sealing of joints and cracks in either new or existing Portland cement concrete pavements and bridge decks in conformance with the requirements herein and the details indicated on the Drawings or as established by the Engineer or designated representative.

This specification is applicable for projects or work involving either inch-pound or SI units. Within the text, the inch-pound units are given preference followed by SI units shown within parentheses.

413S.2 Submittals

The submittal requirements of this specification item include:

A. Sealant Type (Rubber-Asphalt, Polymer Modified Emulsion, Low Modulus Silicone or Polyurethane), Class and method of application (crack sealing, joint sealing, etc),
B. Manufacturer recommendations concerning the use of primer and backer rod
C. Manufacturer recommended equipment and procedures for preparation, dispensing, application, curing etc of the sealant, and
D. Manufacturer certification that the product to be supplied meets or exceeds the specifications,
E. Listing of the equipment proposed for the Work.

413S.3 Materials

Joints and/or cracks shall be sealed with the type and/or class of materials indicated on the Drawings. The materials shall conform to the requirements of TxDoT Specification Item No. 433S, “Joint Sealants and Fillers” and TxDoT Departmental Materials Specification No. DMS 6310, “Joint Sealants and Seals”.

Primers, if required, shall be as recommended by the manufacturer of the sealant. Backer rods, when required, shall be compatible with the sealant and shall not react with or bond to the sealant.

The sealing compound shall be delivered in the manufacturer's original sealed containers. Each container shall be legibly marked with the name of the manufacturer, the trade name of the sealer, the manufacturer's batch number or lot, the pouring temperature, and the safe heating temperature.

413S.4 Equipment

All equipment shall be in accordance with the sealant manufacturer’s recommendations. Air compressors shall be equipped with appropriate filters for removing oil and water from the air.

Any equipment, that damages dowels, reinforcing steel, Portland cement concrete, base, subbase or subgrade in the process of cleaning the joints and/or cracks, shall be discontinued and the joint and/or crack shall be cleaned by other methods approved by the Engineer or designated representative, which do not cause such damage.

413S.5 Construction Methods

Equipment, tools and machinery recommended for proper prosecution of the Work shall be on the project and shall be approved by the Engineer or designated representative prior to the initiation of the joint and/or crack cleaning and sealing operations.

A. Joint and Crack Preparation.

The bonding surface of cracks and joints shall be cleaned of infiltrated material, saw cuttings or other foreign material. All material removed from joints and cracks shall be removed from the paved surface of the roadway.

No sealing of any joints or cracks shall be done when the joints or cracks are damp, unless drying of the joints and cracks with compressed air can be demonstrated and meets with the approval of the Engineer or designated representative.

1. Joint Preparation.

The joints shall be cleaned with filtered compressed air or other methods approved by the Engineer or designated representative. Unless noted otherwise on the Drawings, hand tools, air guns, power routers, abrasive equipment or other equipment may be used to clean the joints. Where indicated on the Drawings, the joint sealant space shall be resized by sawing to the width and depth shown on the Drawings to accommodate the type of sealant specified.

2. Crack Preparation.

Unless indicated otherwise on the Drawings, the crack shall be grooved initially at the surface so that a reservoir of rectangular cross section is provided for the sealant. The grooves shall be cut to the dimensions shown on the Drawings. The devices that are used for grooving, such as diamond blade random cut saws, random-crack grinders, etc., shall be capable of following the path of the crack without causing excessive spalling or other damage to the concrete.

B. Joint and Crack Sealing

The sealant shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's recommended procedure. The joint and/or crack surfaces shall be surface dry unless recommended otherwise by the manufacturer of the sealant.

The surface temperature at the time of the sealing operation shall not be less than 40°F (4.5°C).

The minimum depth of sealant shall be ½ inch (12.5 mm) or a depth recommended by the sealant manufacturer and the top of the sealant shall be located 1/8 to ¼ inch (3 to 6.5 mm) below the adjacent pavement surface.

1. Primer.

If required, the primer shall be applied as soon as possible after cleaning is accomplished. The primer shall be applied uniformly at the rate recommended by the sealant manufacturer. The primer shall be applied to exposed metal surfaces before new corrosion begins and shall be allowed to cure for a minimum of thirty

(30) minutes, but no longer than eight (8) hours prior to the application of the sealant, unless sealant manufacturer recommendations indicate otherwise.

2. Backer Rods.

   Backer rods shall be used to pr4event a fluid type sealant from flowing through the joint and crack and to retain the sealant at its required elevation. The application and use of backer rod shall be as recommended by the sealant manufacturer and approved by the Engineer or designated representative.

413S.6 Measurement

Accepted work performed under this item shall be included in other pay items and will not be measured and paid for unless a separate pay item is provided in the contract bid form documents.

If a pay item is included in the contract documents, acceptable work for "Cleaning and/or Sealing Joints and Cracks" shall be measured by the lineal foot (meter: 1 meter equals 3.281 feet) of sealant in place.

If a pay item is included in the contract documents, acceptable work "Cleaning and/or Sealing Joints and Cracks" shall be measured by the pound (kilograms: 1 kilogram equals 2.205 pounds).

413S.7 Payment

When included as a pay item in the contract documents, the work performed and materials furnished as provided by this item and measured in accordance with Article 413S.6, "Measurement", will be paid for at the appropriate unit bid price bid. The unit bid prices shall include full compensation for cleaning and, if necessary, grooving and/or sawing the crack/joint; furnishing, hauling and placing primer and backer rod, if necessary; furnishing, heating, hauling, and placing the crack/joint sealer; all freight involved and all manipulations, labor, tools, equipment and incidentals necessary to complete the work.

Payment, when included as a contract pay item, will be made under:

Pay Item No. 413S-A:	_____	Sealer	Per Lineal Foot.
Pay Item No. 413S-B:	_____	Sealer	Per Pound of Sealer Used.

End

SPECIFIC Cross Reference Materials
Item No. 413S, "Cleaning and/or Sealing Joints and Cracks (Portland Cement Concrete)"

Texas Department of Transportation: Standard Specifications for Construction and Maintenance of Highways, Streets, and Bridges

Designation	Description
Item No. 433S	Joint Sealants and Fillers
Item No. 438	Cleaning and/or Sealing Joints and Cracks (Portland Cement Concrete)

Texas Department of Transportation: Departmental Materials Specifications

Designation	Description
DMS 6310	Joint Sealants and Seals

RELATED Cross Reference Materials

City of Austin Standard Specifications

Designation	Description
Item No. 301S	Asphalts, Oils and Emulsions
Item No. 313S	Cleaning and/or Sealing Joints and Cracks (Asphaltic Concrete)

Texas Department of Transportation: Standard Specifications for Construction and Maintenance of Highways, Streets, and Bridges

Designation	Description
Item No. 300	Asphalts, Oils and Emulsions
Item No. 352	Cleaning and/or Sealing Joints and Cracks (Asphaltic Concrete)

Item No. 414S
Concrete Retaining Walls

414S.1 Description

This item shall govern reinforced Portland cement concrete precast or cast-in-place retaining walls constructed in conformity with the lines, grades and details indicated on the Drawings or as directed by the Engineer or designated representative.

When indicated on the drawings or directed by the Engineer or designated representative, this item shall also govern any requirements for pumping, bailing, drainage and/or protection of workers in trenches in compliance with Standard Specification Item No. 509S, "Excavation Safety Systems".

This specification is applicable for projects or work involving either inch-pound or SI units. Within the text and accompanying tables, the inch-pound units are given preference followed by SI units shown within parentheses.

414S.2 Submittals

The submittal requirements of this specification item may include:

A. Type of concrete
B. Reinforcing steel type, size, area, lengths
C. Joint sealants and fillers type, manufacturer, fact sheets and application recommendations.
D. Curing compound: manufacturer, type compound material, batch number or symbol and appropriate fact sheets
E. Filter fabric manufacturer, fact sheets and test results.
F. Select Backfill source, gradation and test results.
G. Type and manufacturer of waterstops

414S.3 Materials

A. Concrete

Cast-in-place Portland cement concrete shall conform to the requirements of a Class C Concrete, as specified in Standard Specification Item No. 403S, "Concrete For Structures". Precast Portland cement concrete shall conform to the requirements of Standard Specification Item No. 403S, "Concrete for Structures" but shall have a minimum 28 day compressive strength of 4500 psi (31027 kPa).

B. Reinforcing Steel

Reinforcing steel shall conform to Standard Specification Item No. 406S, "Reinforcing Steel".

C. Joint Sealants and Fillers

Preformed Bituminous Fiber Material shall meet the requirements of ASTM D 1751. Joint sealant shall be a non-sag low-modulus silicone.

D. Membrane Curing Compound

Membrane curing compound shall conform to Standard Specification Item No. 409S, "Membrane Curing".

E. Filter Fabric

Filter fabric shall conform to Standard Specification Item No. 620S, "Filter Fabric".

F. Select Backfill

Select backfill shall conform to Standard Specification Item No. 210S, "Flexible Base".

G. Waterstops

Waterstops, if shown on the Drawings, shall conform to Standard Specification Item 416S, “Waterstops”.

H. Pipe Underdrains

Pipe Underdrains, if shown on the Drawings, shall conform to Standard Specification Item 551, “Pipe Underdrains”.

414S.4 Construction Methods

A. General

All excavation shall be done in accordance with Standard Specification Item No. 401S, "Structural Excavation and Backfill".

All forms and forming, placement of reinforcement, placement of Portland cement concrete, form removal, finishing and curing shall conform to Standard Specification Item No. 410S, "Concrete Structures". Cast-in-place Portland cement concrete retaining walls shall be constructed in one continuous vertical pour from the top of the footing to the top of the wall unless intermediate horizontal construction joints are shown on the Drawings.

The height of the retaining wall will be determined by established grades or as directed by the Engineer or designated representative but and shall be such that water will not be trapped or ponded on private or public property.

Reinforcement for the wall shall be as indicated on the Drawings. The Contractor shall provide dowel bars of the proper size, shape and spacing, as indicated on the drawings.

Devices to release the hydrostatic head shall be installed as indicated on the drawings.

All exposed corners and edges shall be filleted with triangular chamfer strips measuring 3/4 inch (19 mm) on each side. Exposed horizontal surfaces shall be level and flat, and exposed vertical surfaces shall be plumb and flat, unless indicated otherwise on the Drawings.

B. Vertical Control Joints

Unless indicated otherwise on the Drawings, vertical control joints shall be constructed in the retaining wall stem (the vertical portion of the wall) to create planes of weakness to control cracking. Horizontal wall reinforcement shall extend

through the vertical control joints. These joints shall be constructed at abrupt changes in wall height and at a spacing not to exceed 20 feet (6 meters) in wall sections of uniform. The joints shall be formed by placing triangular chamfer strips to create grooves in both faces of the wall to a depth of at least ten percent of the wall thickness. Control joints shall be sealed, on the backfilled side of the retaining wall, with a non-sag low-modulus silicone sealant, or, alternatively, the joint may be covered with a waterproofing material consisting of an 18-inch (450-mm) wide strip of self-adhering polyethylene having a rubberized asphalt mastic, as approved by the Engineer or designated representative.

C. Vertical Expansion Joints

Vertical expansion joints shall conform to the applicable section of Standard Specification Item 410S, "Concrete Structures". These joints shall be constructed at a spacing not to exceed 60 feet (15 meters), unless indicated otherwise on the Drawings. They shall extend the full height and width of the wall, including the wall footing, and shall consist of sleeved dowels and 1/2-inch (13 mm) thick preformed bituminous fiber material. The edges and corners of the joints shall be formed by triangular chamfer strips measuring 3/4 inch (19 mm) on each side. The concrete on the two sides of an expansion joint shall be placed in two separate pours unless approved otherwise by the Engineer or designated representative.

D. Construction Joints

Construction joints shall conform to the applicable section of Standard Specification Item 410S, "Concrete Structures". Wall reinforcement shall extend through the construction joint unless indicated otherwise on the Drawings,

E. Waterstops

Waterstops shall be provided in construction and expansion joints in retaining walls where water-tightness is essential to the function of the structure, as in detention, retention, or water quality ponds or flood walls.

414S.5 Measurement

Accepted cast in place or precast Portland cement concrete work as prescribed by this item will be measured by the cubic yard for reinforced concrete retaining wall, complete in place.

All concrete quantities will be based on the dimensions indicated on the drawings.

414S.6 Payment

The cast-in-place or precast Portland cement concrete work performed as prescribed by this item will be paid for at the unit bid price per cubic yard for "Concrete Retaining Wall". The unit bid price shall include full compensation for all excavation, forms, concrete, curing, finishing, backfilling, sloping that is not part of an excavation safety system covered by Item No. 509S, and for all labor, tools, materials, equipment and incidentals necessary to complete the work.

Payment will be made under one of the following:

Pay Item No. 414S-C: Cast-in-place Portland Cement Concrete Retaining Wall, Including Reinforcement - Per Cubic Yard.

Pay Item No. 414S-P: Precast Concrete Retaining Wall - Per Cubic Yard.

End

SPECIFIC CROSS REFERENCE MATERIALS
Standard Specification Item 414S, "Concrete Retaining Walls"

City of Austin Standard Specification Items

Designation	Description
Item No. 210S	Flexible Base
Item No. 401S	Structural Excavation and Backfill
Item No, 403S	Concrete for Structures
Item No. 406S	Reinforcing Steel
Item No, 409S	Membrane Curing
Item No. 410S	Concrete Structures
Item No. 416S	Waterstops
Item No. 509S	Excavation Safety Systens
Item No, 551	Pipe Underdrains
Item No. 620S	Filter Fabric

American Society for Testing and Materials, ASTM

Designation	Description
ASTM D 1751	Preformed Expansion Joint Filler for Concrete Paving and Structural Construction

RELATED CROSS REFERENCE MATERIALS
Standard Specification Item 414S, "Concrete Retaining Walls"

City of Austin Standard Specification Items

Designation	Description
Item No. 404S	Pneumatically Placed Concrete
Item No. 405S	Concrete Admixtures
Item No, 408S	Concrete Joint Materials
Item No. 411S	Surface Finishes for Concrete

Texas Department of Transportation: Standard Specifications for Construction and Maintenance of Highways, Streets, and Bridges

Designation	Description
Item No. 360	Concrete Pavement
Item No. 420	Concrete Structures
Item No. 421	Portland Cement Concrete
Item No. 427	Surface Finishes for Concrete
Item No. 431	Pneumatically Placed Concrete
Item No. 437	Concrete Admixtures
Item No. 520	Weighing and Measuring Equipment
Item No. 522	Portland Cement Concrete Plants
Item No. 524	Hydraulic Cement

Texas Department of Transportation: Departmental Material Specifications

Designation	Description
DMS 8900	Fly Ash

Current Version: November 15, 2011

Previous Versions: 12/09/08, 06/16/08, 11/13/07, 02/26/02, 04/17/86 and 05/23/00

Item No. 430S
P.C. Concrete Curb and Gutter

430S.1 Description

This item shall govern Portland Cement (p.c.) concrete curb, p.c. concrete curb and gutter with reinforcing steel or p.c. concrete laydown curb as required, that is constructed in accordance with this specification on an approved subgrade and base in conformity with Standard Detail Series 430S and the lines, grades, section indicated on the Drawings or as established by the Engineer or designated representative.

This specification is applicable for projects or work involving either inch-pound or SI units. Within the text, the inch-pound units are given preference followed by SI units shown within parentheses.

430S.2 Submittals

The submittal requirements of this specification item include:

A. Class A p.c. concrete mix design,

B. Type of Installation (i.e. P.C. Concrete Curb and Gutter or P.C. Concrete Curb or P.C. Concrete Laydown Curb) and construction details (i.e. base, reinforcing steel, joints, curing membrane),

C. Identification of the type, source, mixture, Pure Live Seed (PLS) and rate of application of the seeding.

430S.3 Materials

A. Concrete

The Portland cement (p.c.) concrete shall conform to Class A Concrete, Section 403S.7 (Table 4) of Standard Specification Item No. 403S, "Concrete for Structures" or Sections 360S.4 and 360S.6 of Standard Specification Item No. 360S, "Concrete Pavement" when curb and gutter is to be constructed integral with the pavement.

B. Reinforcing Steel

Reinforcing steel shall conform to Standard Specification Item No. 406S, "Reinforcing Steel".

C. Expansion Joint Materials

Expansion joint materials shall conform to Standard Specification Item No. 408S, "Expansion Joint Materials".

D. Membrane Curing Compound

Membrane curing compound shall conform to Standard Specification Item No. 409S, "Membrane Curing".

E. Flexible Base

Aggregate shall conform to Standard Specification Item No. 210S, "Flexible Base".

430S.4 Construction Methods

A. Subgrade and Base Preparation

Subgrade for curb and gutter shall be excavated and prepared to depth and width requirements indicated on the Drawings, including a minimum of 12 inches (300 mm) behind the curb, unless a greater width is indicated on the Drawings. The subgrade shall be shaped to the line, grades, cross section and dimensions indicated on the Drawings. A minimum of 4 inches (100 mm) of flexible base shall be spread, wetted and thoroughly compacted under curb and gutter as specified in Standard Specification Item No. 210S, "Flexible Base". If dry, the base shall be sprinkled lightly with water before p.c. concrete is deposited thereon.

B. C & G Forms

Forms shall be of metal, well-seasoned wood or other approved material. The length of the forms shall be a minimum of 10 feet (3 meters). Flexible or curved forms shall be used for curves of 100-foot (30 meter) radius or less. Wood forms for straight sections shall be not less than 2 inches (50 mm) in thickness. Forms shall be a section, that is satisfactory to the Engineer or designated representative, of the depth required and clean, straight, free from warp and, if required, oiled with a light form oil. All forms shall be securely staked to line and grade and maintained in a true position during the placement of p.c. concrete.

C. Reinforcing Steel

The reinforcing steel, if required, shall be placed as shown on the typical section of the Drawings. Care shall be exercised to keep all steel in its proper location during p.c. concrete placement.

D. Joints

Joints shall be of the type and spacing shown on the Drawings. Expansion joint material, 3/4 inch (19 mm) in thickness, shall be provided at intervals not to exceed 40 feet (12 meters) and shall extend the full width and depth of the p.c. concrete. Weakened plane joints shall be made 3/4 inch (19 mm) deep at 10-foot (3 meters) intervals. All joint headers shall be braced perpendicular and at right angles to the curb.

Two round smooth dowel bars, 1/2 inch (12.5 mm) in diameter and 24 inches (600 mm) in length, shall be installed at each expansion joint. Sixteen inches (400 mm) of one end of each dowel shall be thoroughly coated with hot oil, asphalt or red lead, so that it will not bond to the concrete. The dowels shall be installed with a dowel sleeve on the coated end as indicated on the Drawings or equivalent method as directed by the Engineer or designated representative.

E. P.C. Concrete Placement and Form Removal

Concrete shall be placed in the forms and properly consolidated. Within 1 hour after p.c. concrete placement, a thin coating, that is no more than 1/2 inch (12.5 mm) nor less than 1/4 inch (6.25 mm) thick of finish mortar, composed of 1 part Portland Cement to 2 parts fine aggregate, shall be worked into the exposed faces of the curb and gutter by means of a "mule". After the p.c. concrete has become sufficiently set, the exposed edges shall be rounded by the use of an edging tool to the radii indicated on Standard Detail 430S-1. The entire exposed surface of the curb and gutter shall be floated to a uniform smooth surface, and then finished with a camel hairbrush to a gritty texture. The forms shall remain in place a minimum of 24 hours unless approved otherwise by the Engineer or designated representative.

After removal of the forms, any minor honeycombed surfaces shall be plastered with a mortar mix as described above. Excessively honeycombed curb and gutter, as determined by the Engineer or designated representative, shall be completely removed and replaced when directed.

F. Curing

Immediately after finishing the curb, concrete shall be protected by a membrane curing conforming to Standard Specification Item No. 409S, "Membrane Curing".

After a minimum of 3 days curing and before placement of the final lift of the base course, the curb shall be backfilled to the full height of the p.c. concrete, tamped and sloped as directed by the Engineer or designated representative. The upper 4 inches (100-mm) of backfill shall be of clean topsoil that conforms to Standard Specification Item No. 130S, "Borrow" and is free of stones and debris.

G. Seeding in Turf Areas

When turf is to be established, preparation of the seedbed shall conform to Item No. 604S, "Seeding for Erosion Control".

430S.5 Measurement

Accepted work as prescribed by this item will be measured by the lineal foot (lineal meter: 1 lineal meter equals 3.281 lineal feet) of p.c. concrete curb and gutter, p.c. concrete curb and/or p.c. concrete laydown curb, complete in place.

430S.6 Payment

The work performed as prescribed by this item will be paid for at the unit bid price per lineal foot for "P.C. Concrete Curb and Gutter" or P.C. Concrete Curb. The price shall include full compensation for all work as set forth and described under payment Method A and/or B.

A. Method A (Pay Item No. 430S-A)

This payment method shall include all the work performed for "P.C. Concrete Curb and Gutter" complete, at the unit bid price. The unit bid price shall include full compensation for excavation, preparation of the subgrade, furnishing and placing all concrete and base material, reinforcing steel, dowels, expansion joint material,

curing material, backfill and for all other materials, manipulations, labor, tools, equipment and incidentals necessary to complete the work.

B. Method B (Pay Item No. 430S-B)

This payment method includes all the work performed for "P.C. Concrete Curb and Gutter", complete, at the unit bid price. The unit bid price shall include full compensation for fine grading, furnishing and placing concrete and reinforcing steel, dowels, expansion joint material, curing material, backfill and for all other materials, manipulations, labor, tools, equipment and incidentals necessary to complete the work.

C. Method C (Pay Item No. 430S-C)

This payment method includes all the work performed for " P.C. Concrete Curb" complete, at the unit bid price. The unit bid price shall include full compensation for excavation, furnishing and placing all concrete and base material, reinforcing steel, dowels, expansion joint material, curing material, backfill and for all other materials, manipulations, labor, tools, equipment and incidentals necessary to complete the work.

D. Method D (Pay Item No. 430S-D)

This payment method includes all the work performed for "P.C. Concrete Curb" complete, at the unit bid price. The unit bid price shall include full compensation for fine grading, furnishing and placing concrete and reinforcing steel, dowels, expansion joint material, curing material, backfill and for other materials, manipulations, labor, tools, equipment and incidentals necessary to complete the work.

E. Method E (Pay Item No. 430S-E)

This payment method shall include all the work performed for "P.C. Concrete Laydown Curb" complete, at the unit bid price. The unit bid price shall include full compensation for excavation, preparation of the subgrade, furnishing and placing all concrete and base material, reinforcing steel, dowels, expansion joint material, curing material, backfill and for all other materials, manipulations, labor, tools, equipment and incidentals necessary to complete the work

F. Method F (Pay Item No. 430S-F)

This payment method includes all the work performed for "P.C. Concrete Laydown Curb" complete, at the unit bid price. The unit bid price shall include full compensation for fine grading, furnishing and placing concrete and reinforcing steel, dowels, expansion joint material, curing material, backfill and for other materials, manipulations, labor, tools, equipment and incidentals necessary to complete the work.

Payment will be made under one of the following:

Pay Item No. 430S-A:	P.C. Concrete Curb and Gutter (Excavation)	Per Lineal Foot.
Pay Item No. 430S-B:	P.C. Concrete Curb and Gutter (Fine Grading)	Per Lineal Foot.
Pay Item No. 430S-C:	P.C. Concrete Curb (Excavation)	Per Lineal Foot.

Pay Item No. 430S-D:	P.C. Concrete Curb (Fine Grading)	Per Lineal Foot.
Pay Item No. 430S-E:	P.C. Concrete Laydown Curb (Excavation)	Per Lineal Foot.
Pay Item No. 430S-F:	P.C. Concrete Laydown Curb (Fine Grading)	Per Lineal Foot.

End

SPECIFIC CROSS REFERENCE MATERIALS
Specification Item No. 430S, "P.C. Concrete Curb and Gutter"

City of Austin Standard Specifications

Designation	*Description*
Item No 130S	Borrow
Item No 210S	Flexible Base
Item No. 360S	Concrete Pavement
Section 360S.4 of Item 360S	Proportioning of Concrete
Section 360S.6 of Item 360S	Concrete Mixing and Placing
Item No. 403S	Concrete for Structures
Section 403S.7 of Item No. 403S	(Table 4)
Item No. 406S	Reinforcing Steel
Item No. 408S	Expansion Joint Materials
Item No. 409S	Membrane Curing
Item No. 604S	Seeding for Erosion Control

City of Austin Standard Details

Designation	*Description*
430S-1	Curb and Gutter Section
430S-3	Curb Expansion Joint Dowel Detail
430S-4	Concrete Backfill Under Curb & Gutter
430S-5	Reinforcing Bar Detail at Existing Curb and Gutter

RELATED CROSS REFERENCE MATERIALS
Specification Item No. 430S, "P.C. Concrete Curb and Gutter"

City of Austin Standard Specifications

Designation	*Description*
Item No. 301S	Asphalts, Oils and Emulsions
Item No. 302S	Aggregates for Surface Treatments
Item No. 340S	Hot Mix Asphaltic Concrete Pavement
Item No. 431S	Machine Laid PCC Curb and Gutters
Item No. 433S	P.C. Concrete Driveways
Item No. 434S	P.C. Concrete Medians and Islands
Item No. 436S	P.C. Concrete Valley Gutters
Item No. 606S	Fertilizer

Item No. 432S
Portland Cement Concrete Sidewalks

432S.1 Description

This item shall govern the construction of Portland cement concrete sidewalks (Standard Detail No. 432S-1), as herein specified, on an approved subgrade and in conformance with the lines, grades and details indicated on the Drawings or as established by the Engineer or designated representative.

This specification is applicable for projects or work involving either inch-pound or SI units. Within the text inch-pound units are given preference followed by SI units shown within parentheses.

432S.2 Submittals

The submittal requirements of this specification item include:

A. Class A portland cement (p.c). concrete mix design,
B. Type of Installation (i.e. Type I, Type II, etc.) and construction details (i.e. cushion layer, base, reinforcing steel, joints, curing membrane),
C. Identification of the type, source, mixture, Pure Live Seed (PLS) and rate of application of the seeding.
D. Number, manufacturer, model, construction, finish and installation details of streetscape appurtenances of bicycle racks, benches, chairs, trash receptacles, streetlights, tree wells and above grade tree planters [for sidewalks, 12 feet (3.66 meters) or wider].

432S.3 Materials

A. Portland Cement Concrete

Portland cement concrete shall be Class A conforming to Specification Item No. 403S, "Concrete for Structures" or Specification Item No. 407S, "Fibrous Concrete".

B. Reinforcement

Reinforcement shall conform to Specification Item No. 406S, "Reinforcing Steel" or Specification Item No. 407S, "Fibrous Concrete".

C. Expansion Joint Materials

Expansion joint materials shall conform to Specification Item No. 408S, "Expansion Joint Materials".

D. Membrane Curing Compound

Membrane curing compound shall conform to Specification Item No. 409S, "Membrane Curing".

432S.4 Construction Methods

The subgrade shall be excavated in accordance with Specification Item No. 111S, “Excavation”, prepared in accordance with Specification Item No. 201S, “Subgrade Preparation”, shaped to the lines, grades and cross section as indicated on the Drawings or as directed by the Engineer or designated representative and thoroughly compacted in accordance with Specification Item No. 201S. A granular cushion of a minimum thickness of 2 inches (50 mm) but maximum thickness of 5 inches (125 mm), composed of crusher screenings, gravel and sand, crushed rock or coarse sand,

shall be spread, wetted thoroughly, tamped and leveled. The granular cushion shall be moist at the time the Portland cement concrete is placed.

If the subgrade is undercut by more than 4 inches (100 mm) or the elevation of the natural ground is more than 4 inches (100 mm) below "top of subgrade", then a necessary backfill/embankment layer of an approved material shall be placed and compacted with a mechanical tamper. Hand tamping will not be permitted.

Where the subgrade is rock or gravel, 70 percent of which is rock; the 2-inch (50 mm) cushion need not be used. The Engineer or designated representative will determine if the subgrade meets the above requirements.

Sidewalk forms shall be constructed of metal or well-seasoned wood not less than 2 inches (50 mm) in thickness, with a section satisfactory to the Engineer or designated representative. The forms shall be clean, straight, and free from warp with a depth equal to the thickness of the finished work. All forms shall be securely staked to line and grade and maintained in a true position during the deposition of Portland cement concrete. Before p.c. concrete is placed, the forms shall be thoroughly oiled with a light form oil.

Expansion joint material 3/4 inch (19 mm) thick, shall be provided where the new construction abuts an existing structure, sidewalk or driveway. Similar expansion material shall be placed around all obstructions protruding through the sidewalk. The expansion joint material shall be placed vertically and shall extend the full depth of the p.c. concrete. Maximum spacing of expansion joints shall be 40 feet (12 meters) as indicated on the Drawings or as directed by the Engineer or designated representative. Weakened plane joints shall be spaced at 5 feet (1.5 meters) on center. Normal dimensions of the weakened plane joints shall be 1/4 inch wide and 3/4 inch deep (6 mm wide and 19 mm deep). All joints shall be constructed perpendicular (90 degrees) to the centerline of walk and shall match any previously placed concrete joints. For sidewalks with widths exceeding 6 feet (1.83 meters) longitudinal weakened-plane tooled joints shall be provided as indicated on the Drawings or as directed by the Engineer or designated representative.

Reinforcement for sidewalks shall consist either of polypropylene fibrillated fibers or 6” x 6” x W1.4 x W1.4 (150mm x 150mm x MW9 x MW9) welded wire fabric or one layer #3 (10M) reinforcing bars, placed no more than 18 inches (450 mm) on center both directions. All reinforcement shall be accurately placed at slab mid-depth, equidistant from the top and bottom of the p.c. concrete and held firmly in place by means of bar supports of adequate strength and number that will prevent displacement and keep the steel at its proper position during the placement of the p.c concrete. In no instance shall the steel be placed directly on the subgrade or sand cushion layer.

Prior to placement of the concrete, the reinforcement installation shall be inspected by the Engineer or designated representative to insure conformance with the drawings, specifications and this item. In addition care shall be exercised to keep all steel in its proper position during placement of the p.c. concrete. If during placement of the concrete, the reinforcement is observed to loose bar support, float upward or move in any direction, the placement shall be stopped until corrective action is taken.

Splices in wire fabric shall overlap sufficiently to allow two pairs of transverse wires to be tied together and no splice of less than 6 inches (150 mm) will be permitted. Splices in the #3 (10M) bars shall have a minimum lap of 12 inches (300 mm).

Where driveways cross sidewalks, additional reinforcing shall be placed in the sidewalk as indicated on the Drawings.

Portland cement concrete shall be placed in the forms and spaded, tamped and thoroughly consolidated until it covers the entire surface with a monolithic finish. The top surface shall be floated and troweled to a uniform smooth surface; then finished with a broom or wood float to a

gritty texture unless indicated otherwise on the Drawings or as directed by the Engineer or designated representative. The outer edges and joints shall be rounded with approved tools to a 1/4-inch (6 mm) radius. Care will be exercised to prevent loss of dummy joints or rounded edges when applying the brush finish.

Portland cement concrete sidewalk ramps shall be formed to produce a finished surface with detectable warnings (Standard Detail 432S-2A) in accordance with the requirements of the American Disabilities Act and Texas Accessibility Standards (TAS), including Sections 4.29.2 and A4.29.2. The p.c. concrete sidewalk ramps shall be constructed in accordance with appropriate City of Austin Standard Details (Standard Details 432S-3, 432S-3A through 432S-3H, 432S-5, 432S-5A, 432S-5B, etc.).

Detectable warning for the ramps shall consist of raised truncated domes with a diameter of nominal 0.9 inch (23 mm), a height of nominal 0.2 inch (5 mm) and center-to-center spacing of nominal 2.35 inches (60 mm) and shall contrast visually with adjoining surfaces, either light on dark or dark-on-light. The material used to provide contrast shall be an integral part of the walking surface.

When indicated on the Drawings or as directed by the Engineer or designated representative, the construction of the sidewalk ramp shall include the installation of interlocking concrete paving units (Standard Specification Item No. 480S, "Concrete Paving Units"). The concrete paving units shall be constructed in accordance in accordance with Standard Specification Item No. 485S, "Concrete Paving Units for Sidewalk Ramps) and appropriate City of Austin Standard Details (Standard Details 432S-2A, 432S-3, 432S-3A through 432S-3H, 432S-5, 432S-5A and 432S-5B).

At the proper time after finishing, the surface shall be protected by a membrane, compound curing agent or by wetted cotton or burlap mats, conforming to Item No.409S, "Membrane Curing". The sides of the p.c. concrete shall be cured in the forms. If the forms are removed during the curing process, the curing shall be continued by the placement of fill against the exposed concrete edges or by other procedures conforming to Item No. 410S, "Concrete Structures". The top 4 inches (100 mm) of fill shall be clean topsoil conforming to Item No. 604S, "Seeding for Erosion Control".

Existing sidewalk that is scheduled for removal and replacement shall be removed and the underlying material shaped to the lines, grades and cross section as indicated in the drawings or as directed by the Engineer or designated representative. The removal and/or relocation of obstructions, including but not limited to signs, trash cans and benches on concrete pads, abandoned manholes, sprinkler control valves and landscaping, shall be performed, as indicated on the drawings, in a manner acceptable to the Engineer or designated representative. Removal and/or relocation of obstructions will be considered incidental work to this item and will not be paid for directly.

Existing PVC pipe drains in and behind curb shall be removed and replaced as required in new sidewalk and/or curb and gutter. In areas of proposed sidewalk construction, where curb and gutter is to remain in place, existing PVC pipe shall be cut far enough behind the back of curb to allow sufficient room for joint fittings to connect to new or salvaged PVC pipe.

The Contractor shall be responsible for removing and replacing mailboxes that are located in the construction area, while assuring that mail delivery will not be interrupted as a result of the construction activities. Mailboxes shall not be laid on the ground.

All necessary excavation, filling and grading of the slopes adjacent to the completed concrete sidewalks will be considered incidental work pertaining to this item and will not be paid for directly. The adjacent excavation and grading of the slopes shall be done in a manner acceptable to the Engineer or designated representative.

432S.5 Streetscape Furniture Installation Requirements

A. General General

Bicycle racks, benches and chairs, trash receptacles, tree wells and above grade tree wells and planters shall only be installed in sidewalks that are 12 feet (3.66 meters) or wider. When installation is indicated on the Drawings or directed by the Engineer or designated representative, these items shall be permanently installed as indicated in Standard Details 710S-4 and 710S-5; 432S-9B; 432S-7C, and 432S-7F; and 432S-8B. Above grade tree wells shall be installed in conformance with Standard Detail 432S-7E, while above grade tree planters shall be installed in conformance with Standard Detail Nos. 432S-7D and 432S-7G.

B. Location Requirements

1. Benches.

   Benches shall be placed either perpendicular to the curb with the center of the bench on line with trees and light poles and facing toward the building entry, or parallel to the building and within 6” (150 mm) of the building wall, facing out to the street.

   Bench siting shall be in conformance with Standard Detail No. 432S-9C in 12’ (3.6 M) or wider sidewalks and Standard Detail No. 432S-9D in sidewalks of width between 12’ (3.6 M) and 18’ (5.4 M).

2. Bike Racks.

   Bike racks are to be placed perpendicular to the curb with the centerline of the rack on line with trees and light poles.

   Bike rack siting shall be in conformance with Standard Detail No. 710S-6A in 12’ (3.6 M) or wider sidewalks and Standard Detail No. 710S-6B in sidewalks of width between 12’ (3.6 M) and 18’ (5.4 M).

3. Trash Receptacles.

   Trash receptacles shall either be placed along the curb, with the center line of the receptacle on line with the trees and light poles, or shall be located at the building entry in alignment with the structural bay system of the building. If located at the entry there shall be no more than 1 foot (300 mm) clearance between the receptacle and the building wall.

   Trash receptacle siting adjacent to curb ramps within an intersection shall be in conformance with Standard Detail No. 432S-8C in 12’ (3.6 M) or wider sidewalks.

P432S.6 Pedestrian Railing

When a pedestrian railing installation is required along sidewalks for pedestrian protection as indicated on the Drawings or directed by the Engineer or designated representative, this type of pedestrian railing shall be permanently installed in conformance with one of the following designated Standard Details: 707S-1, 707S-2, 707S-3 or 707S-4.

When a pedestrian railing installation is required along portions of sidewalks identified as ‘ramps’ for ADA accessibility purposes as indicated on the Drawings or directed by the Engineer or

designated representative, this type of pedestrian railing shall be permanently installed in conformance with one of the following designated Standard Details: 707S-2, 707S-3 or 707S-4.

432S.7 Measurement

Accepted work performed as prescribed by this item will be measured by the square foot (square meter: 1 square meter is equal to 10.764 square feet) of surface area of "Concrete Sidewalk".

Accepted work performed as prescribed by "Sidewalk Ramps" will be measured per each for the type of ramp indicated on the Drawings.

Accepted work performed as prescribed by "Streetscape Appurtenances" will be measured per each for the type of appurtenance indicated on the Drawings.

Accepted work performed as prescribed by "Pedestrian Railing" will be measured per lineal foot of the type of railing indicated on the Drawings.

432S.8 Payment

The work performed as prescribed by this item for concrete sidewalk will be paid for at the unit bid price per square foot for "Concrete Sidewalk" and/or "Sidewalks Reconstruction"; per each for "Concrete Sidewalk Ramps" and "Streetscape Appurtenances" or per lineal foot for "Pedestrian Railing".

The unit bid price for new sidewalk shall include full compensation for excavating and/or removal and/or relocating obstructions, vegetating adjacent areas disturbed by sidewalk construction, preparing the subgrade; for furnishing and placing all materials including cushion material, all reinforcement, bar supports, joints, expansion joint materials, and for any other materials, manipulations, labor, tools, equipment, finishing, curing and incidentals necessary to complete the work.

The unit bid price for sidewalk reconstruction shall include full compensation for excavating and/or removal of existing sidewalk and other obstructions, relocating obstructions, replacing PVC drain pipe, re-vegetating adjacent areas disturbed by sidewalk construction, preparing the subgrade; for furnishing and placing all materials including cushion material, all reinforcement, bar supports, joints, expansion joint materials, and for any other materials, manipulations, labor, tools, equipment, finishing, curing and incidentals necessary to complete the work.

The unit bid price for ramps shall include full compensation for preparing the subgrade when not included as a separate item; for furnishing and placing all materials, manipulation, labor, tools, equipment and incidentals necessary to complete the work. All necessary excavation, filling and grading of the slopes adjacent to the completed concrete paver units will be included in the unit price bid for the item of construction in which this item is used, unless included as a separate pay item in the Contract bid form.

The unit bid price for streetscape appurtenances shall include full compensation for the individual item (i.e. bench, chair, bicycle rack, trash receptacle, street light or above grade tree planter), as well as the removal of existing sidewalk, preparation of footings, furnishing and placing all materials, manipulation and finishing, labor, tools, equipment and incidentals necessary to complete the work.

The unit bid price for pedestrian railing shall include full compensation for the complete installation of the specific pedestrian railing including but not limited to preparation of footings or curb, furnishing and placing all materials, manipulation and finishing, labor, tools, equipment and incidentals necessary to complete the work.

Payment will be made under one of the following:

New Sidewalks

Pay Item 432S-4:	New P.C. Concrete Sidewalks, 4 Inch thickness	Per Square Foot.
Pay Item 432S-5:	New P.C. Concrete Sidewalks, 5 Inch thickness	Per Square Foot.
Pay Item 432S-6:	New P.C. Concrete Sidewalks, 6 Inch thickness	Per Square Foot.
Pay Item 432S-7:	New P.C. Concrete Sidewalks, 7 Inch thickness	Per Square Foot.

Sidewalks Reconstruction

Pay Item 432SR-4:	Reconstruct Concrete Sidewalks to 4 Inch thickness, including removal of existing sidewalk	Per Square Foot.
Pay Item 432SR-5:	Reconstruct Concrete Sidewalks to 5 Inch thickness, including removal of existing sidewalk	Per Square Foot.
Pay Item 432SR-6:	Reconstruct Concrete Sidewalks to 6 Inch thickness, including removal of existing sidewalk	Per Square Foot.
Pay Item 432SR-7:	Reconstruct Concrete Sidewalks to 7 Inch thickness, including removal of existing sidewalk	Per Square Foot.

Ramps

Pay Item 432S - RP-1:	P.C. Sidewalk Curb Ramp with Pavers (Type I)	Per Each.
Pay Item 432S-RP-1A:	P.C. Sidewalk Curb Ramp with Pavers (Type IA)	Per Each.
Pay Item 432S-RP-1B:	P.C. Sidewalk Curb Ramp with Pavers (Type IB)	Per Each.

Streetscape Appurtenances

Pay Item 432S-SAC-1	Streetscape Bench (____ inches in length)	Per Each.
Pay Item 432S-SAC-2	Streetscape Chair	Per Each.
Pay Item 432S-SAC-3	Streetscape Bicycle Rack	Per Each.
Pay Item 432S-SAC-4	Streetscape Trash Receptacle	Per Each.
Pay Item 432S-SAC-5	Streetscape Street Light	Per Each.
Pay Item 432S-SAC-7C	Streetscape Tree Well for Concrete Sidewalks	Per Each.
Pay Item 432S-SAC-7D	Streetscape Above Grade Tree Planters with Bench	Per Each.
Pay Item 432S-SAC-7E	Streetscape Above Grade Tree Well with Seat	Per Each.
Pay Item 432S-SAC-7F	Streetscape Tree Well without Grate	Per Each.
Pay Item 432S-SAC-7G	Streetscape Above Grade Galvanized Steel Tree Planters	Per Each

Pedestrian Railing

Pay Item 432S-PRC-1	Pedestrian Railing (Standard 707S-1)	Per LF.
Pay Item 432S-PRC-2	Pedestrian ADA Railing – Option 1 (Standard 707S-2)	Per LF.
Pay Item 432S-PRC-3	Pedestrian ADA Railing – Option 2 (Standard 707S-3)	Per LF.
Pay Item 432S-PRC-4	Pedestrian ADA Railing – Option 3 (Standard 707S-4)	Per LF.

End

SPECIFIC CROSS REFERENCE MATERIALS
Specification 432S, "P. C. Concrete Sidewalks"

City of Austin Standard Specifications

Designation	Description
Item No. 111S	Excavation
Item No. 201S	Subgrade Preparation
Item No. 403S	Concrete for Structures
Item No. 406S	Reinforcing Steel
Item No. 407S	Fibrous Concrete
Item No. 408S	Expansion Joint Materials
Item No. 409S	Membrane Curing
Item No. 410S	Concrete Structures
Item No. 480S	Concrete Paving Unit
Item No. 485S	Concrete Paving Units for Sidewalk Ramps
Item No. 604S	Seeding for Erosion Control

City of Austin Standard Details

Designation	Description
432S-1	Sidewalk
432S-2A	Detectable Warning-Paver
432S-3	Type I Curb Ramps-Full Intersection
432S-3A	Type I Curb Ramps-T Intersection
432S-3B	Type IA/IB Curb Ramps-Full Intersection
432S-3C	Type IA/IB Curb Ramps-T Intersection
432S-3D	Combined Curb Ramps-Full Intersection
432S-3E	Combined Curb Ramps-T Intersection
432S-3F	Combined Sidewalk Curb Ramp with Pavers
432S-3G	Combined Sidewalk Curb Ramp with Pavers within Limited ROW
432S-3H	Type I Curb Ramps within PC/PT of Curb and Gutter
432S-5	Type I Sidewalk Curb Ramp
432S-5A	Type IA Sidewalk Curb Ramp
432S-7C	Tree Well for New Trees Planted Within Concrete Sidewalk 3.6 M (12') or Greater
432S-7D	Above Grade Tree Planters
432S-7E	Above Grade Tree Well with Bench
432S-7F	Tree Well Without Grate
432S-7G	Above Grade Galvanized Steel Tree Planters
432S-8B	Trash Receptacle Installation in Concrete Sidewalk
432A-8C	Furnishing Location in 12' (3.6 M) or greater Trash Receptacle Siting
432S-9B	Bench/Chair Installation in Sidewalks
432S-9C	Furnishing Location in 12' (3.6 M) or greater Sidewalks-Bench Siting
432S-9D	Furnishing Location in Greater than 12' (3.6 M) or Less than 18' (5.4 M) Sidewalks-Bench Siting

707S-1	Pedestrian Railing
707S-2	Pedestrian ADA Railing – Option 1
707S-3	Pedestrian ADA Railing – Option 2
707S-4	Pedestrian ADA Railing – Option 3
710S-4	Bicycle Rack Installation in Concrete Sidewalks (Alternate 1)
710S-5	Bicycle Rack Installation in Concrete Sidewalks (Alternate 2)
710S-6A	Furnishing Location in 12' (3.6 M) or greater Sidewalks-Bicycle Rack Siting
710S-6B	Furnishing Location in Greater than 12' (3.6 M) or Less than 18' (5.4 M) Sidewalks-Bicycle Rack Siting

American Disabilities Act, Federal Register; Volume 56, No. 144; July 26, 1991
ADA Accessibility Guidelines For Building And Facilities

Designation	Description
Section 4.29	Detectable Warnings on Walking Surfaces
Section A4.29.2	Detectable Warnings on Walking Surfaces

Architectural Barriers; Texas Civil Statutes, Article 9102; June 14, 1995
Texas Accessibility Standards (TAS)

Designation	Description
Section 4.29	Detectable Warnings on Walking Surfaces
Section A4.29.2	Detectable Warnings on Walking Surfaces

RELATED CROSS REFERENCE MATERIALS

City of Austin Standard Contract Documents

Designation	Description
00700	General Conditions
01500	Temporary Facilities
01550	Public Safety and Convenience

City of Austin Utilities Criteria Manual

Designation	Description
Section 5.2.3	Utility Adjustments For Roadway Construction Projects

City of Austin Standard Specifications

Designation	Description
Item No. 102S	Clearing and Grubbing
Item No. 104S	Removing Portland Cement Concrete
Item No. 110S	Street Excavation
Item No. 132S	Embankment
Item No. 203S	Lime Treatment for Materials In Place
Item No. 204S	Portland Cement Treatment for Materials In Place
Item No. 230S	Rolling (Flat Wheel)
Item No. 232S	Rolling (Pneumatic Tire)
Item No. 234S	Rolling (Tamping)
Item No. 236S	Rolling (Proof)
Item No. 360S	Concrete Pavement
Item No. 402S	Controlled Low Strength Material
Item No. 404S	Pneumatically Placed Concrete
Item No. 405S	Concrete Admixtures
Item No. 411S	Surface Finishes for Concrete

433S.1 Description

This item shall govern construction of Portland Cement (p.c.) concrete driveways, as herein specified, on an approved subgrade, in conformity with the lines, grades and cross section indicated on the Drawings, identified in Standard Detail Series 433S, or as established by the Engineer or designated representative.

This specification is applicable for projects or work involving either inch-pound or SI units. Within the text, the inch-pound units are given preference followed by SI units shown within parentheses.

433S.2 Submittals

The submittal requirements of this specification item include:

A. Class A and/or Item 360S p.c. concrete mix design,

B. Type of Installation (i.e. Type I, Flared Type I, Type II, etc.) and construction details (i.e. cushion layer, base, reinforcing steel, joints, curing membrane),

C. Identification of the type, source, mixture, Pure Live Seed (PLS) and rate of application of the seeding.

433S.3 Materials

A. Concrete

The Portland Cement Concrete for a Type I driveway (Standards 433S-1 and 433S-1A shall conform to Class A, Section 403S.7 (Table 4) of Standard Specification Item No. 403S, "Concrete for Structures." The Portland Cement Concrete for a Type II driveway (Standard 433S-2) shall conform to a normal concrete mix design for concrete pavement, Section 360S.4(2) of Standard Specification Item No. 360S, "Concrete Pavement".

B. Reinforcing Steel

Reinforcing steel and welded wire fabric shall conform to Standard Specification Item No. 406S, "Reinforcing Steel".

C. Expansion Joint Materials

Expansion joint materials shall conform to Standard Specification Item No. 408S, "Expansion Joint Materials".

D. Membrane Curing Compound

Membrane curing compound shall conform to Standard Specification Item No. 409S, "Membrane Curing".

E. Cushion Layer

The Cushion layer shall consist of crusher screenings, gravel or coarse sand.

433S.4 Construction Methods

All forms and forming, placement of reinforcement, placement of concrete, form removal, finishing and curing shall conform to Standard Specification Item No. 410S, "Concrete Structures".

A. Subgrade Preparation

The subgrade shall be excavated, prepared and shaped to the lines, grades and cross sections indicated on the Drawings or as directed by the Engineer or designated representative. The subgrade shall be thoroughly compacted in accordance with Standard Specification Item No. 201S, "Subgrade Preparation". A 2-inch (50-mm) minimum compacted thickness cushion shall be spread, wetted thoroughly, tamped and leveled. The cushion shall be moist at the time the p.c. concrete is placed.

If the subgrade is undercut or natural ground is located below the top of subgrade, the necessary backfill material shall conform with Standard Specification Item 130S, "Borrow" and shall be compacted with a mechanical tamper. Hand tamping will not be permitted.

Where the subgrade material consists of gravel or includes 70 percent of rock, the 2-inch (50-mm) cushion layer may not be required. The Engineer or designated representative will determine if the subgrade meets the above requirements.

B. Forms

Forms shall be of metal, well-seasoned wood or other approved material of a section satisfactory to the Engineer or designated representative. Wood forms shall not be less than 2 inches (50 mm) nominal thickness for straight runs and 1-inch (25-mm) nominal thickness for curved runs. Forms shall be a section satisfactory to the Engineer or designated representative and clean, straight, free from warp and of a depth equal to the thickness of the finished work.

All forms shall be securely staked to line and grade and maintained in a true position during the placement of p.c. concrete.

C. Joints

Joints shall be of the type and spacing shown on the Drawings. Expansion joint material, 3/4 inch (19 mm) thick, shall be provided where the new construction abuts the existing sidewalks or driveways or as directed by the Engineer or designated representative. The expansion joint material shall be placed vertically and shall extend the full depth of the p.c. concrete. Similar expansion material shall be placed around all obstructions protruding through the driveway. Weakened plane joints shall be located on 10-foot (3-meter) centers or as directed by the Engineer or designated representative. Normal dimensions of the weakened plane groove joints shall be 1/4-inch (6.25-mm) wide and 3/4 inch (19 mm) deep.

D. Reinforcement

Reinforcement for Type I driveways shall consist of 1 layer of 6 x 6 by W 1.4 x W 1.4 (150 x 150 by MW9 x MW9) wire fabric or No. 3 (10 M) bars placed not more than 18 inches (450 mm) on center, both directions. Reinforcement for Type II driveways shall consist of 1 layer of layer of No. 4 (13M) bars placed no more than 18 inches (450 mm) on center, both directions.

All reinforcements shall be accurately placed equidistant from the top and bottom of the p.c. concrete slab and held firmly in place by means of bar supports of adequate strength and number that will prevent displacement and keep the steel at its proper position. In no instance shall the steel be placed directly on the subgrade or sand cushion layer.

Prior to placement of the concrete, the reinforcement installation shall be inspected by the Engineer or designated representative to insure conformance with the drawings, specifications and this item. In addition, care shall be exercised to keep all steel in its proper position during the placement of p.c. concrete. If during placement of the concrete, the reinforcement is observed to loose bar support, float upward or move in any direction, the placement shall be stopped until corrective action is taken.

Splices in wire fabric shall overlap sufficiently to allow two pairs of transverse wires to be tied together and no splice of less than 6 inches (150 mm) will be permitted. Splices in the No. 3 (10 M) and No. 4 (13M) bars shall have a minimum lap of 12 inches (300 mm).

E. P.C. Concrete Placement and Finishing

The p.c. concrete shall be placed in the forms and spaced, tamped and thoroughly compacted until it entirely covers the surface and has a monolithic finish. The top surface shall be floated and troweled to a uniform smooth surface, then finished with a broom or wood float to a gritty texture unless otherwise indicated on the Drawings. The outer edges and joints shall be rounded with approved tools to a 1/4-inch (6.3 mm) radius. Care shall be exercised to prevent loss of dummy joints or rounded edges when applying the broom finish.

F. Curing

At the proper time after finishing, the surface shall be protected by a membrane compound curing agent in conformance with Standard Specification Item No. 409S, "Membrane Curing" or by wetting cotton or burlap mats. Either method shall be subject to approval by the Engineer or designated representative.

Traffic shall be barricaded from using the driveway for a minimum of 4 days after initial placing and may be opened to traffic only with approval of the Engineer or designated representative.

G. Incidental Work

All necessary excavation, filling and grading of the slopes, adjacent to the completed pcc driveways, will be considered incidental work pertaining to this item and will not be paid for directly.

The adjacent excavation and grading of the slopes shall be done with topsoil conforming to Standard Specification Item No. 130S, "Borrow". When turf is to be established, the preparation of the seedbed shall conform to Standard Specification Item No. 604S, "Seeding for Erosion Control", in a manner acceptable to the Engineer or designated representative.

433S.5 Measurement

Accepted work performed as prescribed by this item will be measured by the square foot (square meters: 1 square meter equals 10.764 square feet) of surface area of the specific type of p.c. concrete driveway.

433S.6 Payment

The work performed as prescribed by this item will be paid for at the unit bid price per square foot for "Concrete Driveways". The unit bid price shall include full compensation for preparation of the subgrade; furnishing and placing all materials, including cushion layer, all reinforcing steel, bar supports and expansion joint materials; and any other materials, manipulations, labor, tools, equipment and incidentals necessary to complete the work.

Payment will be made under:

Pay Item No. 433S-A:	Type I P.C. Concrete Driveway	Per Square Foot.
Pay Item No. 433S-B:	Flared Type I P.C. Concrete Driveway	Per Square Foot.
Pay Item No. 433S-C:	Type II P.C. Concrete Driveway	Per Square Foot.

End

SPECIFIC CROSS REFERENCE MATERIALS
Specification Item No. 433S, "P.C. Concrete Driveways"

City of Austin Standard Specifications

Designation	Description
Item No. 130S	Borrow
Item No. 201S	Subgrade Preparation
Item No. 360S	Concrete Pavement
Item No. 403S	Concrete for Structures, Section 403S.7
Item No. 403S	Concrete for Structures, Table 4: Classes of Concrete
Item No. 406S	Reinforcing Steel
Item No. 408S	Expansion Joint Materials
Item No. 409S	Membrane Curing
Item No. 410S	Concrete Structures
Item No. 604S	Seeding for Erosion Control

City of Austin Standard Details

Designation	Description
No. 433S-1	Type I Driveway (1 & 2 Family Residential Use Only)
No. 433S-1A	Flared Type I Driveway (1 & 2 Family Residential Use Only)
No. 433S-2	Type II Driveway

RELATED CROSS REFERENCE MATERIALS
Specification Item No. 433S, "P.C. Concrete Driveways"

City of Austin Standard Specifications

Designation	Description
Item No. 430S	P.C. Concrete Curb and Gutter
Item No. 431S	Machine Laid PCC Curb and Gutter
Item No. 432S	Concrete Sidewalks
Item No. 434S	P.C. Concrete Medians and Islands
Item No. 436S	P.C. Concrete Valley Gutters
Item No. 470S	Curb Cuts for Sidewalk Ramps and Driveways
Item No. 606S	Fertilizer

Item No. 439S
Parking Lot Bumper Curbs

439S.1 Description

This item shall govern parking lot bumper curbs, composed of precast concrete and reinforcing steel for placement on gravel, asphalt and concrete surfaces as indicated on the Drawings.

This specification is applicable for projects or work involving either inch-pound or SI units. Within the text, the inch-pound units are given preference followed by SI units shown within parentheses.

439S.2 Submittals

The submittal requirements of this specification item include:

A. Type A Portland cement concrete design mix.

B. Reinforcing steel details.

439S.3 Materials

A. Concrete. All precast concrete shall be Class A Concrete conforming to Specification Item No. 403S, "Concrete for Structures".

B. Reinforcing Steel. All reinforcing steel shall be #3 (10M) bar conforming to Specification Item No. 406S, "Reinforcing Steel".

439S.4 Construction Methods

All forms and forming, placement of reinforcement, placement of concrete, form removal, finishing and curing shall conform to Specification Item No. 410S, "Concrete Structures".

Reinforcement shall conform to the details indicated on the Drawings. Care shall be exercised to keep reinforcement in its proper position during the depositing of concrete.

Concrete shall be placed in the forms to the depth indicated and vibrated until thoroughly compacted. Care shall be taken during vibration to insure that a vibrator is not held too long at one location that segregation is produced. The top surface of the concrete shall be floated and troweled to a uniform smooth surface, and then finished with a camel hair brush or wood float to a gritty texture. The outer edges shall be rounded with approved tools to the radii shown on the Drawings.

When the ambient air temperature is above 85°F (30°C), an approved retarding agent will be required in all concrete unless moist curing procedures are employed. The maximum temperature of all concrete placed shall not exceed 95°F (35°C).

439S.5 Measurement

Parking Lot Bumper Curbs shall be measured per each, complete and in place.

439S.6 Payment

The work performed as prescribed by this Specification Item will be paid for at the unit bid price per each. The unit bid price shall include full compensation for: all materials, including all reinforcing steel, placing and the concrete curb, and all labor, tools, equipment and incidentals necessary to complete the work.

Payment will be made under:

Pay Item No. 439S: Parking Lot Bumper Curbs - Per Each.

End

SPECIFIC CROSS REFERENCE MATERIALS
Specification Item 439S "Parking Lot Bumper Curbs"

City of Austin Technical Specifications

Designation	Description
Item No. 403S	Concrete for Structures
Item No. 406S	Reinforcing Steel
Item No. 410S	Concrete Structures

RELATED CROSS REFERENCE MATERIALS
Specification Item 439S "Parking Lot Bumper Curbs"

City of Austin Technical Specifications

Designation	Description
Item No. 405S	Concrete Admixtures
Item No. 409S	Membrane Curing
Item No. 411S	Surface Finishes for Concrete

City of Austin Standards

Designation	Description
Item No. 406S-1	Reinforced Steel Tolerances

Texas Department of Transportation: Standard Specifications for Construction and Maintenance of Highways, Streets, and Bridges

Designation	Description
Item 420	Concrete Structures
Item 421	Portland Cement Concrete
Item 427	Surface Finishes for Concrete
Item 437	Concrete Admixtures
Item 440	Reinforcing Steel

American Society for Testing and Materials

Designation	Description
A-496	Standard Specification for Steel Wire, Deformed for Concrete Reinforcement
A-615/615M	Standard Specification for Deformed and Plain Billet-Steel Bars for Concrete Reinforcement

Item No. 470S
Curb Cuts for Sidewalk Ramps and Driveways

470S.1 Description

This item shall govern horizontal and vertical curb saw cuts, which are undertaken on existing or newly placed Portland cement concrete curb, in order to accommodate the construction of new concrete sidewalk ramps and/or driveways at the locations indicated on the Drawings or as directed by the Engineer or designated representative. The curb cutting operation shall be conducted from the street side of the existing or newly placed curb.

This specification is optional and is applicable for projects or work involving either inch-pound or SI units. Within the text inch-pound units are given preference followed by SI units shown within parentheses.

470S.2 Submittals

The submittal requirements of this specification item include:

A. Manufacturer and model number of saw to be used for curb cuts.

B. Documentation that the saw that is to be used on the project is designated specifically to curb cuts.

470S.3 Materials

A diamond-blade-cutting saw shall be utilized for all required curb sawing/cutting. The saw shall be capable of cutting existing or newly placed curb material into the shape of a ramp and/or driveway; leaving a smooth, accurate top face. The saw shall be specifically designed for this purpose and shall be approved by the Engineer or designated representative prior to the start of any curb cut work.

A diamond-grinding wheel shall be used for rounding the sawed concrete edges.

470S.4 Construction Methods

The curb shall be sawn in accordance with City of Austin Standard Detail 470S-1 or as directed by the Engineer or designated representative. The sawing shall be made along neat lines and shall result in smooth edges and top faces. The length of curb face, which must be removed in order to conform to the proposed sidewalk ramp or driveway, shall be sawn full depth at the bottom of the curb face using a diamond saw blade.

The saw cutting of the curb face shall be initiated at an elevation ½ inch (12.5 millimeters) above the existing gutter and extended at an angle of ¾ inch per foot (63 mm per meter) upwards and away from the gutter pan to conform with the new sidewalk ramp or driveway grade. End cuts shall be sawn full depth on an angle so that the saw cut face provides a dimension of 55 to 60 inches (1.4 to 1.5 meters) for ADA ramps and 30 inches (750mm) for driveways (Standard Detail No. 470S-1). The corners of the tops of the end cuts shall be ground using a diamond-grinding wheel to a radius of ¼ inch (6 mm).

Special care shall be taken to insure that there is no disturbance or damage to the existing roadway pavement, sidewalk pavement or curbs scheduled to remain. Any damage to remaining pavements, sidewalks and/or curb due to the Contractor's operations shall be repaired at the Contractor's sole cost and expense.

The work under this specification item shall also include the disposal of all concrete curb materials removed during the curb cutting operation. Disposal shall conform to the requirements of City of Austin Standard Specification Item No. 401S, "Structural Excavation and Backfill".

470S.5 Measurement

Accepted work as prescribed by this item shall include the removal and disposal of all sawn material and shall be measured by the number of lineal feet (lineal meters: 1 meter is equal to 3.281 feet) of sawcutting from top of curb cut at beginning to top of curb cut at ending for each proposed sidewalk ramp location that are completed in accordance with the Drawings, Standard Detail or as directed by the Engineer or designated representative.

470S.6 Payment

The work performed as prescribed by this item will be paid for at the unit bid price per lineal foot of "Curb Cuts" for sidewalk ramps and driveways. The bid price shall include full compensation for the cost of all labor, materials and equipment necessary to complete the Work, the removal and disposal of the curb cut, and the cost of any repairs necessitated from damage produced during the Contractor's operations.

Pay Item No. 470S-D: Curb Cuts for Driveways ---------- Per Lineal Foot.

Pay Item No. 470S-R: Curb Cuts for Sidewalk Ramps ------ Per Lineal Foot.

End

SPECIFIC CROSS REFERENCE MATERIALS
Specification 470S, "Curb Cuts For Sidewalk Ramps and Driveways"

City of Austin Technical Specifications

Designation	Description
Item No. 401S	Structural Excavation and Backfill

City of Austin Standard Details

Designation	Description
470S-1	Typical Curb Cuts for Sidewalk Ramps

RELATED CROSS REFERENCE MATERIALS
Specification 470S, "Curb Cuts For Sidewalk Ramps and Driveways"

City of Austin Technical Specifications

Designation	Description
Item No. 104S	Removing Concrete

Item No. 110S	Street Excavation
Item No. 340S	Hot Mix Asphaltic Concrete Pavement
Item No. 360	Concrete Pavement
Item No. 370S	Concrete Pavers
Item No. 375S	Concrete Pavers for Sidewalk Ramps
Item No. 403S	Concrete for Structures
Item No. 410S	Concrete Structures
Item No. 430S	Concrete Curb and Gutter
Item No. 431S	Machine Laid Curb and Gutter
Item No. 432S	Concrete Sidewalks
Item No. 433S	Concrete Driveways

RELATED CROSS REFERENCE MATERIALS - Continued
Specification 470S, "Curb Cuts For Sidewalk Ramps and Driveways"

City of Austin Technical Specifications

Designation	Description
Item No. 434S	Concrete Median and Islands
Item No. 602S	Sodding for Erosion Control
Item No. 604S	Seeding for Erosion Control
Item No. 610S	Preservation of Trees and Other Vegetation

City of Austin Standard Details

Designation	Description
430S-1	Curb and Gutter Section
430S-3	Curb Expansion Joint Dowel Detail
430S-4	Concrete Backfill Under Curb & Gutter
432S-1	Sidewalk
432S-3	Intersection Curb Ramps
432S-3A	Curb Ramps at T-Type Intersections
432S-3B	Intersection Curb Ramps with Returned Curb
432S-3C	Curb Ramps with Returned Curb at T Intersections
432S-3D	Combined Curb Ramps
432S-3E	Combined Curb Ramp at T type Intersection
432S-3F	Combined Sidewalk Curb Ramp with Pavers
432S-5	Sidewalk Curb Ramp With Pavers (type I)
432S-5A	Sidewalk Curb Ramp With Pavers (type IA)
432S-5B	Sidewalk Curb Ramp With Pavers (type IB)
432S-6	Concrete Stamp
433S-1	Type I Driveway
433S-2	Type II Driveway
610S-1	Tree Protection Fence Locations

Texas Department of Transportation:
Standard Specifications for Construction and Maintenance of Highways, Streets, and Bridges

Designation	Description
Item No. 104	Removing Concrete
Item No. 420	Concrete Structures

Item No. 485S
Concrete Paver Units for Sidewalk Ramps

485S.1 Description

This item shall govern furnishing and installing interlocking concrete paver units, manufactured for the construction of paved sidewalk ramps, constructed as herein specified on an approved base or subgrade in conformity to the lines, grades and details indicated on the Drawings, Standard Detail or as established by the Engineer or designated representative.

485S.2 Submittals

The submittal requirements of this specification item may include:

A. Samples for initial selection from manufacturer color charts showing the full range of colors, textures and patterns for each type of paving unit indicated on the Drawings,

B. Shop drawings indicating pattern orientation and cross section details,

C. Manufacturer Certification that the Interlocking Paving Units meet or exceed all the requirements of ASTM C-936 and this specification item.

485S.3 Materials

A. Base Course

Base Course shall be constructed of either a fibrous reinforced concrete (Standard Specification Item No. 407S, Class J Portland cement concrete (Standard Specification Item No. 403S, “Concrete For Structures”) or cement treated material (Standard Specification Item No. 204S, “Portland Cement Treatment for Materials In Place”).

B. Concrete Paver Units

Paving units shall be modular concrete pavers conforming to ASTM Designation: C 936, Solid Concrete Interlocking Paving Units" and the requirements specified in this Item. The paver units shall be made using normal weight aggregates conforming to ASTM C-33.

C. Pigments

Pigments used in concrete paver units shall be synthetic iron oxide and shall be alkali-resistant, light fast, water insoluble, chemically inert and weather resistant.

D. Grout Mix

When required in conjunction with a bedding layer for the concrete paver units or with paver closure units, the grout mix shall be composed of one part Portland cement, one part masonry cement (or 1/4 part hydrated lime), parts of concrete sand equal to 2-1/2 to 3 times the sum of the volumes of the cement and lime used, and sufficient water to make the mixture plastic.

485S.4 Physical Requirements

The general shape of the concrete paver units shall be similar to that indicated on the Drawings. The concrete paver units shall be of the color and laid in the pattern as specified or as approved in writing by the Engineer or designated representative.

All units shall be sound and free of defects that would interfere with the appearance or proper placement of the unit or impair the strength or longevity of the final structure. Any units, that are structurally damaged during the work shall be immediately removed and replaced.

485S.5 Construction Method

A. Preparation of Subgrade, subbase and base layers

The subgrade, subbase or base course shall be shaped to the lines, grades and cross sections as indicated on the Drawings or as directed by the Engineer or designated representative and shall be thoroughly compacted. Any unsuitable material encountered in the subgrade shall be removed and replaced by a suitable material and compacted to a uniform grade. When subgrade stabilization has been specified, the subgrade shall be prepared accordingly.

If the subgrade is undercut by more than 4 inches (100 mm) or the natural ground is below "top of subgrade" by more than 4 inches (100 mm), the necessary backfill shall be made with an approved material and compacted with a mechanical tamper. Hand tamping will not be permitted.

B. Paver Unit Installation

Concrete paver units shall be bedded in a 1” (25 mm) thick mortar bed placed on top of a 3" (75-mm) minimum Class A Fibrous Concrete pad (see Standard Specification Item 407S, "Fibrous Concrete"; Standard Specification Item 403S, "Concrete for Structures") or on top of 4” (100-mm) thick layer of cement treated material (see Standard Specification Item No. 204S, “Portland Cement Treatment for Materials In Place”). The concrete paver units shall be placed in conformance with Standard Detail Series 432S to the laying pattern indicated on the Drawings. The Contractor shall exercise particular care to maintain the laying pattern throughout the job. Paving units shall be placed to achieve gaps nominally 1/8 inch (3.2 mm) wide between adjacent units to insure that all joints are correctly aligned.

The first row shall abut an edge restraint with a gap of 1/8 inch (3.2 mm) and shall be laid at a suitable angle to the edge restraint to achieve the required visual orientation of paving units in the completed sidewalk.

In each row, all full units shall be placed first. Closure units shall be cut and fitted subsequently. In no case shall a closure unit consist of less than 25 percent of a full unit. Areas with closure units less than 25 percent of a full unit shall be filled solid with mortar. Units may be cut using a mechanical or hydraulic cutter or by power sawing. A grout mix shall be used to fill larger edge spaces.

Any foot or wheelbarrow traffic during the construction shall use boards overlaying paver units to prevent disturbance of units prior to final set. No other traffic shall be allowed on the pavement at this stage of construction.

As soon as practical after placement of pavers in the mortar bed, and in any case prior to the termination of work on that day, and prior to the acceptance of construction traffic, bedding sand for joint-filling shall be spread over the sidewalk and allowed to dry. When dry, the filling sand shall be swept to fill the joints. After traffic has been allowed on the pavers, joints shall be refilled with dry sand periodically until no additional sand will be accepted in the joints.

485S.6 Measurement

Accepted work performed as prescribed by this item will be measured as indicated in Section 432S.5 of Standard Specification Item No. 432S, “P.C. Concrete Sidewalks” or Section 480S.6 of Standard Specification Item No. 480S, “Concrete Paver Units for Sidewalks”.

485.7 Payment

The work performed as prescribed by this item is included in the unit price bid for either Standard Specification Item No. 432S, “P.C. Concrete Sidewalks” or Standard Specification Item No. 480S, “Concrete Paver Units for Sidewalks” and payment for the sidewalk ramps shall be made under the appropriate standard specification item.

End

SPECIFIC CROSS REFERENCE MATERIALS
Specification Item 485S, "Concrete Paver Units For Sidewalk Ramps"

City of Austin Standard Specifications

Designation	Description
Item No. 204S	Portland Cement Treatment for Materials In Place
Item No. 403S	Concrete for Structures
Item No. 407S	Fibrous Concrete
Item No. 432S	P.C. Concrete Sidewalks
Item No. 480S	Concrete Paving Units

City of Austin Standard Details

Designation	Description
432S-2A	Detectable Warning-Paver
432S-3	Type 1 Curb Ramps-Full Intersection
432S-3A	Type 1 Curb Ramps-“T” Intersection

City of Austin Standard Details (Continued)

Designation	Description
432S-3B	Type 1A/1B Curb Ramps-Full Intersection
432S-3C	Type 1A/1B Curb Ramps-“T” Intersection

432S-3D	Combined Curb Ramps-Full Intersection
432S-3E	Combined Curb Ramps-"T" Intersection
432S-3F	Combined Sidewalk Curb Ramps with Pavers
432S-5	Type 1 Sidewalk Curb Ramp
432S-5A	Type 1A Sidewalk Curb Ramp
432S-5B	Type 1B Sidewalk Curb Ramp

American Society for Testing and Materials, ASTM

Designation	Description
ASTM C-33	Standard Specifications for Concrete Aggregates
ASTM C-936	Specifications for Solid Concrete Interlocking Paving Units

RELATED CROSS REFERENCE MATERIALS
Specification Item 485S, "Concrete Paver Units For Sidewalk Ramps"

City of Austin Standard Specifications

Designation	Description
Item No. 201S	Subgrade Preparation

City of Austin Standard Details

Designation	Description
432S-1	Sidewalk

Item No. 503S
Frames, Grates, Rings and Covers

503S.1 Description

This item shall govern furnishing and installation of frames, grates, rings and covers for inlets, manholes and other structures indicated on the Drawings.

This specification is applicable for projects or work involving either inch-pound or SI units. Within the text, the inch-pound units are given preference followed by SI units shown within parentheses.

503S.2 Submittals

The submittal requirements of this specification item include manufacturer, model number, description, painting requirements and characteristics of frames, grates, rings, covers, height adjustment insert and nuts and bolts required for completion of the work.

503S.3 Materials

The Contractor shall submit descriptive information and evidence that the materials and equipment the Contractor proposes for incorporation in the Work is the kind and quality that satisfies the specified functions and quality. The City of Austin Water and Wastewater Utility Standard Products Lists (SPLs) form a part of these Specifications. Contractors may, when appropriate, elect to use products from the SPLs; however, submittal to the Engineer or designated representative is still required. If the Contractor elects to use any materials from these lists, each product shall be completely and clearly identified by its corresponding SPL number when making the product submittal.

The purpose of the SPLs is to expedite the review by the Engineer or designated representative and, if necessary, the City of Austin Water and Wastewater Utility Standard Products Committee of Contractor product submittals. The SPL's should not be interpreted as being a pre-approved list of products necessarily meeting the requirements for a given construction Project. Items contained in the SPL cannot be substituted for items that are shown on the Drawings, called for in the specifications, or specified in the Bidding Requirements, Contract Forms and Conditions of Contract, unless approved by the Engineer or designated representative in conjunction with the Water and Wastewater Utility Standard Products Committee. The Standard Product List current at the time of plan approval will govern.

A. Welded Steel

Welded steel grates and frames shall conform to the number; size, dimensions and details indicated on the Drawings and shall be welded into an assembly in accordance with those details. Steel shall conform to the requirements of ASTM A 36/A 36M, "Specification for Structural Steel".

B. Castings

Castings, whether Carbon-Steel, Gray Cast Iron or Ductile Iron shall conform to the shape and dimensions indicated on the Drawings and shall be clean substantial castings, free from sand or blowholes or other defects. Surfaces of the castings shall be free from burnt on sand and shall be reasonably smooth. Runners, risers, fins and other cast on pieces shall be removed from the castings and such areas ground smooth. Bearing surfaces between manhole rings and covers or grates and frames shall be cast or machined with such precision that uniform bearing shall be provided throughout the perimeter area of contact. Pairs of machined castings shall be matchmarked to facilitate subsequent identification at installation with the exception of water and wastewater manhole and valve castings. These manhole and valve castings shall be fabricated with such draft, tolerances, bolt hole spacing, etc., that all rings and covers of a particular type or class are interchangeable and match-marking will not be required.

Steel castings shall conform to ASTM A 27/27M, “Specifications for Steel Castings, Carbon, for General Application”. Grade 70-36 (480-250) shall be furnished unless otherwise specified on the Drawings.

Cast iron castings shall conform to ASTM A 48, “Specification for Gray Iron Castings”, Class 30.

Ductile Iron castings shall conform to ASTM A 536, “Specification for Ductile Iron Castings”. Grade 60-40-18 (415-275-125) shall be used unless otherwise indicated on the Drawings.

C. Manhole Cover Riser Rings

Height-adjustment inserts for wastewater manhole rings, which are used for raising standard manhole covers, shall be those models listed in Water and Wastewater Standard Products List item QPL WW-330.

D. Nuts and Bolts

Nuts and bolts shall be hex head 5/8” x 2.5” (16 mm x 63.5 mm) #11 National Coarse Thread, Type 316 stainless steel. For bolted manhole covers, a thin film of an approved "Anti-freeze" compound, approved by the Engineer or designated representative, shall be applied to all bolts.

E. Mortar

Unless otherwise specified or approved by the Engineer or designated representative, the mortar for bedding castings shall consist of one (1) part Portland cement and three (3) parts sand and sufficient water to provide the desired consistency. The gradation of the fine aggregate shall meet the requirements for Grade No. 1, Item No. 403, "Concrete for Structures".

503S.4 Construction Methods

Frames, grates, rings and covers shall be constructed of the specified materials in accordance with the details indicated on the Drawings or in the City of Austin Standard

Details. The Frames, grates, rings and covers shall be placed carefully to the lines or grades indicated on the Drawings or as directed by the Engineer or designated representative.

All welding shall conform to the requirements of the ANSI/AWS Structural Welding Code D1.1. Welded frames, grates, rings and covers shall be given 1 coat of a commercial grade red lead oil paint and 2 coats of commercial grade aluminum paint. All coats shall be a minimum of 1.5 mils (0.4 mm), dry.

Painting of gray iron castings will not be required, except when used in conjunction with structural steel shapes.

503S.5 Measurement and Payment

Frames, grates, rings and covers will not be measured and payment for furnishing all materials, tools, equipment, labor and incidentals to complete the Work will be included in the Bid Items which constitute the complete structures.

End

SPECIFIED Cross Reference Materials
Standard Specification Item Number 503S, "Frames, Grates, Rings and Covers"

City of Austin Standard Specifications

Designation	Description
Item No. 403S	Concrete for Structures

City of Austin Water and Wastewater Standard Products List

Designation	Description
QPL WW-330	Manhole Cover Riser Rings for raising City of Austin Standard Manhole Covers

American Society for Testing Materials (ASTM)

Designation	Description
A36/A36M	Specification for Structural Steel
A27/A27M	Specification for Steel Castings, Carbon, for General Application
A48	Specification for Gray Iron Castings
A536	Specification for Ductile Iron Castings

ANSI/AWS

Designation	Description
Code D 1.1	Structural Welding Code

RELATED Cross Reference Materials
Standard Specification Item Number 503S, "Frames, Grates, Rings and Covers"

City of Austin Standard Specifications

Designation	Description
Item No. 504S	Adjusting Structures
Item No. 510	Pipe

City of Austin Standard Details

Designation	Description
No. 503S-1	457mm (18") Cover and Frame
No. 503S-2S	Storm Sewer Manhole Ring and 610 mm (24") Cover
No. 503S-2W	Sanitary Sewer Manhole Ring and 610 mm (24") Cover
No. 503S-3S	Bolted Storm Sewer Manhole Ring and 610 mm (24") Cover
No. 503S-3W	Bolted Sanitary Sewer Manhole Ring and 610 mm (24") Cover
No. 503S-4S	Storm Sewer Manhole Ring and 813 mm (32") Cover
No. 503S-4W	Sanitary Sewer Manhole Ring and 813 mm (32") Cover
No. 503S-5S	Bolted Storm Sewer Manhole Ring and 813 mm (32") Cover
No. 503S-5W	Watertight Manhole Ring and 813 mm (32") Cover
No. 506S-2	Major Manhole Adjustment
No. 506S-11	Storm Sewer Manhole Details

TxDOT Specifications

Designation	Description
Item 421	Portland Cement Concrete

Item No. 504S
Adjusting Structures

504*S*.1 Description

This item shall govern the removal and replacement of surfacing, furnishing of materials, adjusting and/or repositioning existing structures, valve boxes, pull boxes, survey monument boxes and water meters in accordance with these specifications to the locations or elevations indicated on the Drawings or as directed by the Engineer or designated representative. This item shall also govern any pumping, bailing and drainage required to complete the Work and Standard Specification Item No. 509S, "Excavation Safety Systems" for trench walls when indicated on the Drawings.

This specification is applicable for projects or work involving either inch-pound or SI units. Within the text the inch-pound units are given preference followed by SI units shown within parentheses

504S.2 Submittals

The submittal requirements of this specification item include:

A. Aggregate type, gradations and physical characteristics for the Portland cement concrete mix.
B. Proposed proportioning of materials for the mortar mix.
C. Type structures and proposed adjustment technique (lowering, raising, lateral displacement).
D. Type structure, repair technique and materials to be furnished (new replacement or reuse of existing) Type of mixing plant and associated equipage including chart indicating the calibration of each cold bin

504S.3 Materials

Precast reinforced concrete rings and castings in good condition, which are removed from the structures to be adjusted, may be reused with the written approval of the Engineer or designated representative. Additional materials required shall conform to the details indicated on the Drawings.

A. Portland Cement Concrete

The Portland cement concrete shall be Class A conforming to Standard Specification Item No. 403S, "Concrete for Structures".

B. Mortar

Unless otherwise specified or approved by the Engineer or designated representative, the mortar for bedding castings shall consist of one (1) part Portland cement and three (3) parts sand, by volume based on dry materials. Sufficient water will be added to provide the desired consistency. The gradation of the fine aggregate shall meet the requirements for "Fine Aggregate" as given in Standard Specification Item No. 403S, "Concrete for Structures".

504S.4 Construction Methods

All adjustments shall be completed prior to the placement of the final surface.

Pull box and valve box components scheduled for reuse shall be carefully removed and the contact areas shall be cleaned of all mortar, concrete, grease and sealing compounds. Any items broken in the process of removal and cleaning shall be replaced in kind by the Contractor at its own expense.

If the adjustment involves slight lowering or raising a valve box or survey monument box, the outside shell of a slip or screw casing shall be excavated to its full length and adjusted to the proposed grade. Pipe castings shall be excavated to the depth required to cut from or weld a section to the casing as may be needed to adjust the ring to the proposed elevation. The ring shall be welded to the casing prior to pouring concrete around the casing.

If the adjustment involves a vertical (lowering or raising) or a horizontal reassignment of a water meter and the property owner's cut off valve, this work shall be completed in accordance with Standard Installation Details included in the City of Austin Standard Details Series (501S-1, 504S-3, 511S-13A, 511S-13B, etc.).

After the adjustments have been completed and cured, structures within the paved area shall be paved as indicated on the Drawings.

504S.5 Measurement

The work performed and materials furnished as prescribed by this item as indicated shall be measured per each.

504S.6 Payment

The work performed, materials furnished and measures as provided above, will be paid by the unit bid price per each. The price shall include full compensation for furnishing all materials, handling, placing, labor, tools, equipment and incidentals necessary to complete the work.

Payment will be made under one of the following:

Pay Item No. 504S-1WM:	Adjusting Water Meters -	Per Each
Pay Item No. 504S-1RM:	Repositioning & Adjusting Water Meters -	Per Each
Pay Item No. 504S-3G:	Adjusting Gas Valve Boxes to Grade -	Per Each
Pay Item No. 504S-3S:	Adjusting Survey Monument Boxes to Grade -	Per Each
Pay Item No. 504S-3W:	Adjusting Water Valve Boxes to Grade -	Per Each
Pay Item No. 504S-4PB:	Adjusting Pull Boxes to Grade -	Per Each

End

SPECIFIC CROSS REFERENCE MATERIALS
Specification 504S, "Adjusting Structures"

City of Austin Standard Specifications

Designation	Description
Item No. 403S	Concrete for Structures
Item No. 509S	Excavation Safety Systems

City of Austin Standard Details

Designation	Description
No. 501S-1	Encasement Detail W/ Casing Spacers
No. 504S-3	Gas Valve Casing Adjustment
No. 511S-13A	Water Valve Box Adjustment to Grade w/ Full Depth Concrete
No. 511S-13B	Water Valve Box Adjustment to Grade w/ Concrete and HMAC

RELATED CROSS REFERENCE MATERIALS
Specification 504S, "Adjusting Structures"

City of Austin Standard Specifications

Designation	Description
Item No. 501S	Jacking or Boring
Item No. 503S	Frames, Grates, Rings and Covers
Item No. 505S	Concrete Encasement and Encasement Pipe
Item No. 507S	Bulkheads
Item No. 508S	Miscellaneous Structures and Appurtenances
Item No. 511S	Water Valves

City of Austin Standard Details

Designation	Description
No. 1100S-1	Casting Adjustment
No. 725S-1	Monument, Type A Survey Identification Marker
No. 725S-2	Monument, Type B Survey Identification Marker
No. 725S-3	Monument, Type C Survey Identification Marker
No. 725S-7	Survey Identification Marker Non-Traffic Construction Detail
No. 725S-10	Survey Identification Marker Roadway Construction Detail
No. 725S-11	Adjustable Valve Box For Survey Monument

Texas Department of Transportation: Standard Specifications for Construction and Maintenance of Highways, Streets, and Bridges

Designation	Description
Item No.421	Portland Cement Concrete

Item No. 505S
Concrete Encasement and Encasement Pipe

505S.1 Description

This item shall govern the furnishing of materials and the methods of constructing a Portland cement concrete encasement or encasement pipe in a trench.

This specification is applicable for projects or work involving either inch-pound or SI units. Within the text and accompanying tables, the inch-pound units are given preference followed by SI units shown within parentheses.

505S.2 Submittals

The submittal requirements of this specification item include:

A. Type, of pipe, construction methods and sequence,

B. Aggregate types, gradations and physical characteristics for the Portland cement concrete mix,

C. Proposed proportioning of materials for the mortar mix.

505S.3 Materials

A. Portland Cement Concrete

The Portland cement concrete shall conform to Class D Concrete, Item No. 403S, "Concrete for Structures".

B. Pipe

Portland Cement concrete pipe shall conform to ASTM C-76, Class III or better.

Corrugated Metal Pipe (CMP) shall conform to Section 510.2 (8) (o) of the City of Austin Standard Specification Item No. 510, "Pipe".

Steel Pipe shall conform to ASTM A134 with a minimum thickness of 3/8 inch (9.5 mm) for pipe with a diameter of 16 inches (400 mm) and greater.

C. Grout

Grout shall consist of not less than 6 sacks Portland cement per cubic yard (335 kilograms Portland cement per cubic meter) and clean washed sand mixed with water. The grout shall have a consistency such that the grout will flow into and completely fill all voids. If allowed by the Engineer or designated representative, an air entraining admixture may be added to facilitate placement.

505S.4 Construction Methods

When indicated on the Drawings or acceptable to Engineer or designated representative, concrete encasement shall be placed to protect the pipe. Pipe or bedding shall not be placed where:

(a) the top of the pipe would have less than 30 inches (750 mm) of cover from finish grade,

(b) the ground water invades the trench, or

(c) the trench bottom is of unstable material.

If either of these conditions is encountered, the Engineer or designated representative shall be notified and may direct the Contractor to:

(a) encase the pipe with concrete,

(b) change pipe material, or

(c) use a higher strength class of pipe.

Concrete encasement shall extend from 6 inches (150 mm) below to 6 inches (150 mm) above the outer projections of the pipe over the entire width of the trench in accordance with the City of Austin Standard Detail 501S-1," Encasement Detail w/ Casing Spacers".

The ends of the encasement pipe shall be bulkheaded (Standard Specification Item No. 507S) with concrete blocks, bricks or stones, dry-stacked without mortar, sufficient to prevent the intrusion of trench backfill material into the encasement, but fitted loosely enough to facilitate the escape of water from the encasement should carrier pipe leakage or failure occur.

505S. 5 Measurement

Concrete encasement will be measured by the lineal foot (meter: 1 meter equals 3.281 feet), for size of pipe being encased, complete in place. The measurement will be made between ends of the encasement, along the central axis as installed.

Encasement pipe installed by open cut will be measured by size of encasement installed, complete in place. The measurement will be made between the ends of the pipe, along the central axis as installed.

505S.6 Payment

Work performed and materials furnished as prescribed by this item will be included in a unit price bid item from Standard Specification Item No. 510, "Pipe" unless included as a separate pay item in the contract.

When included for payment, it shall be measured as provided under "Measurement" and will be paid at the unit bid price per lineal foot for "Concrete Encasement" or "Encasement Pipe" of the size indicated on the Drawings. The unit bid price shall include full compensation for furnishing all materials, pipe for all preparation, hauling, installation and for all labor, tools, equipment and incidentals necessary to complete the work, including bench excavation and disposal of surplus material.

Payment, when included as a contract Pay Item, will be made under one of the following:

Pay Item No. 505*S*-A:	Concrete Encasement for ___ Dia. Pipe -	Per Lineal Foot.
Pay Item No. 505*S*-B:	Encasement Pipe ___ Dia., Type ___, -	Per Lineal Foot.

End

SPECIFIC Cross Reference Materials
Standard Specification Item No. 505S, "Encasement and Encasement Pipe"

City of Austin Standard Specification Items

Designation	Description
Item 403S	Concrete For Structures
Item 507S	Bulkheads
Item 510	Pipe
Section 510.2(8)(o)	Corrugated Metal Pipe (CMP)

City of Austin Standard Details

Designation	Description
Detail 501S-1	Encasement Detail w/ Casing Spacers

American Society for Testing and Materials (ASTM)

Designation	Description
A-134	Specification for Pipe, Steel, Electric-Fusion (Arc)-Welded (Sizes NPS 16 and Over)
C-76/C-76M	Specification for Reinforced Concrete Culvert, Storm Drain, and Sewer Pipe

RELATED Cross Reference Materials
Standard Specification Item No. 505S, "Encasement and Encasement Pipe"

TxDOT Specifications

Designation	Description
Item 421	Portland Cement Concrete
Section 421.9	Quality of Concrete
Section 421.2(8)	Mortar and Grout

City of Austin Standard Specification Items

Designation	Description
Item No. 501S	Jacking or Boring Pipe
Item No. 506	Manholes
Section 510.2(8)(c)	Concrete pipe
Section 510.2(8)(m)	Steel Pipe
Item No. 593S	Concrete Retards

Item No. 506
Manholes

506.1 Description

This item governs construction of pre-cast and cast-in-place wastewater manholes, storm water manholes, storm water junction boxes and cast-in-place wastewater junction boxes, complete in place, including excavation, installation, backfilling and surface restoration; required items including rings, covers, coatings, and appurtenances; and incidental work such as pumping and drainage necessary to complete the work. Contractor-performed acceptance testing is required for wastewater manholes.

506.2 Qualifications

Applicators of coatings to the interior surfaces of wastewater manholes, as specified in 506S.4.R and 506S.5.J, shall be listed on Standard Products List WW-511.

506.3 Project Submittals

A. Products and Materials

The Contractor shall submit descriptive information and evidence that the materials the Contractor proposes for incorporation in the Work are of the kind and quality that satisfy the requirements in the Contract Documents. The City of Austin Water Utility Standard Products Lists are considered a part of the Specifications for the Work. The Contractor shall use products from the SPLs for all water and wastewater construction unless alternative products are shown on the Drawings; called for in the specifications; or specified in the Bidding Requirements, Contract Forms and Conditions of the Contract.

The products included in the Standard Products Lists current at the time of plan approval shall govern; unless a specific product or products on the lists have subsequently been removed from those SPLs because of quality or performance issues. Products and materials that are not covered by SPLs shall meet the requirements in the contract documents.

Submittals for the products and materials covered by this specification shall include manufacturer catalog sheets, technical data sheets, shop drawings, product or material test results, requirements listed below, and any other information needed to adequately describe the product or material. For products covered by SPLs, the submittal shall include a copy of the applicable SPL with the proposed product identified. An SPL by itself is not considered an adequate submittal.

The submittal requirements of this specification item include:

1. For pre-cast manholes and junction boxes: shop drawings for each structure showing, at a minimum, the Project and Contractor's name: manufacturer's name and plant location; applicable specifications; list of materials (such as adjusting rings, boots, gaskets, and pre-cast sections) by type and quantity; elevation view showing diameter or size, ring and cover size and elevation, ring type (bolted or unbolted, flared top or flared bottom) wall thickness,

elevations of transitions from large diameter sections to smaller diameter sections, base width and thickness, total depth, size of openings, reinforcement, and length of each pre-cast section; structure identification number and station location; pipe line identification; pipe material and size; pipe flowline elevations; plan view showing azimuthal orientation (based on 360 degrees clockwise) of the pipes relative to the outflow pipe; technical data sheets covering pipe-to-manhole or pipe-to-junction box connectors, and gaskets

2. For cast-in-place manholes and junction boxes: formwork drawings sealed by a registered Professional Engineer licensed in the State of Texas with documented experience in formwork design for wall pours that exceed 4 feet in height and slabs that are not ground supported

3. For hydraulic cement concrete; mix components and proportions, material sources, materials test results

4. For mortar: mix components and proportions, material sources, materials test results

5. For non-shrink grout: technical data sheet indicating ASTM type and containing instructions on surface preparation, mixing, placing, and curing procedures

6. For wastewater manhole coatings and linings: technical data sheets that include instructions on surface preparation, mixing, placing, and curing procedures

B. Acceptance Test Records

Submittal of acceptance test records is required for wastewater manholes and shall include as a minimum the following items:

Name of the manhole manufacturer

Interior surface coating type and application method

Model and manufacturer of vacuum tester

Date tested/date re-tested

Indication of whether test passed or failed and statement of corrective action taken if test failed

Test Method Used

Location/station of manhole

Type of base: Precast/cast-in-place

Type of repairs made to the joints

The test records shall also be included as part of the Project records turned in with the acceptance package.

506.4 Materials

A. Concrete

All cast-in-place concrete shall conform to City of Austin Standard Specification Item No. 403S, "Concrete for Structures." Cast in place concrete shall be Class A or as specified on the Drawings. Concrete used in precast concrete manhole base sections, riser sections and appurtenances shall conform to the requirements of Texas Department of Transportation Item 421, Hydraulic Cement Concrete. Concrete for backfill of over-excavated areas shall be City of Austin Class A, or Class J (City of Austin Standard Specification Item 403S, Concrete For Structures) or Controlled Low Strength Material (City of Austin Standard Specification Item 402S) as indicated on the Drawings.

B. Mortar

Mortar shall be composed of one part Portland cement, one part masonry cement (or 1/4 part hydrated lime), and sand equal to 2-1/2 to 3 times the sum of the volumes of the cements and lime used. The sand shall meet the requirements for "Fine Aggregate" as given in Standard Specification Item No. 403S "Concrete For Structures." Mortar shall not be used for any purpose on the inside of wastewater manholes.

C. Grout

Grout shall be the non-shrink type conforming to ASTM C 1107, Packaged, Dry, Hydraulic Cement Grout (Nonshrink), Grade C. Grout shall be used as packaged, with the mixed ingredients requiring only the addition of water.

D. Reinforcement

The reinforcing steel shall conform to the requirements of Standard Specification Item No. 406S, "Reinforcing Steel." Secondary, non-structural steel in cast-in-place stormwater manholes may be replaced by collated fibrillated polypropylene fibers, if approved by the Engineer or designated representative.

E. Brick

The brick for ring adjustment courses and for stormwater manholes shall be of first quality, sound, hard burned, perfectly shaped brick conforming to the requirements of ASTM C 62, Grade SW, or concrete brick meeting the requirements of ASTM C 55, Grade N-1.

F. Rings and Covers

Rings and covers shall conform to the requirements of City of Austin Standard Specification Item No. 503S, "Frames, Grates, Rings and Covers."

1. Replacement Rings and Covers, 24 in Diameter Lids

   This ring and cover shall be used for the replacement of broken rings and covers, minor manhole adjustment, or as otherwise directed by the Engineer or designated representative.

2. Rings and Covers, 32 in. Diameter Lids

This ring and cover shall be used for all new manhole construction, except as otherwise directed by the Engineer or designated representative.

G. Bulkheads

Bulkheads shall meet the requirements of City of Austin Standard Specification Item No. 507S "Bulkheads."

H. Precast Base Sections, Riser Sections, Flat-top Slabs and Cones

Precast concrete base sections, riser sections, flat-top slabs, and cones shall conform to the requirements of ASTM C 478. The width of the invert shall be specifically sized for the connecting pipes. Inverts shall be "U" shaped channels. The channel depth at the point where a pipe connects to the manhole wall, for pipes 24 inches in diameter and smaller, shall be a minimum of three fourths of the diameter of the pipe, with the top of the channel being a smooth transition between the inlet and outlet pipe connection points. For manholes connecting to pipes larger than 24 inches in diameter, the channel depth at the point where a pipe connects to the manhole wall shall be at least equal to the full pipe diameter. Changes in flow direction in the inverts of manholes shall be made by constructing smooth, long-radius sweeps to minimize splashing, turbulence, and eddies. The manhole invert grade shall 1) be a continuation of the inlet and outlet pipe grades carried through to the centerline of the manhole, or 2) have a minimum slope of 2.5 percent between the inlet and outlet pipe inverts, or 3) have a minimum difference of 0.10 feet between the inlet and outlet pipe inverts, whichever provides the maximum difference in invert elevation between the inlet and outlet pipes. In all cases, the bottom(s) of the channel(s) shall provide a smooth transition between the inlet and outlet pipes. Where wastewater lines enter a manhole above the flowline of the outlet, the invert shall be filleted to prevent splashing and solids deposition.

Joints for wastewater base sections, riser sections, and cones shall conform to the requirements of ASTM C 443. Additionally, joint dimensions for 48-inch inside diameter wastewater manhole sections and cones shall comply with City of Austin Standard No. 506S-13, "Wedge Seal Joint Detail, Precast Manhole Section." Joint dimensions for wastewater manhole sections and cones larger than 48-inch inside diameter shall comply with City of Austin Standard No. 506S-12, " O-Ring Joint Detail Precast Manhole Section" or City of Austin Standard No. 506S-13, "Wedge Seal Joint Detail, Precast Manhole Section". Precast bases for 48 inch inside diameter manholes shall have preformed inverts. Inserts acceptable to the Engineer or designated representative shall be embedded in the concrete wall of the manhole sections to facilitate handling; however, through-wall holes for lifting will not be permitted.

I. Precast Junction Boxes

Precast junction boxes shall be allowed only where indicated on the Drawings or acceptable to the Engineer or designated representative.

J. Pipe-to-Manhole and Pipe-to-Junction-Box Connectors

Resilient connectors, ring waterstops, and seals at connections of wastewater pipes to pre-cast and cast-in-place manholes and junction boxes shall be watertight, flexible, resilient and non-corrosive, conforming to ASTM C 923.

Metallic mechanical devices for securing the connectors, ring waterstops, and seals in place shall be Type 304 stainless steel.

K. Precast Flat-Slab Transition/Junction Box Lids

Precast slab transitions and lids shall be designed to safely resist pressures resulting from loads which might result from any combination of forces imposed by an HS-20 loading as defined by the American Association of State Highway and Transportation Officials (AASHTO). The joints of precast slab transitions and of lids for wastewater applications shall conform to the requirements of ASTM C443.

L. Precast-Prefabricated Tee Manholes

Tee manholes shall be allowed only where indicated on the Drawings or as directed by the Engineer or designated representative. The main pipe section shall conform to the requirements of City of Austin Standard Specification Item No. 510, "Pipe." The vertical manhole portion (tee) above the main pipe shall conform to the requirements of the precast components.

The manhole tee shall have a minimum inside diameter of 48 inches and shall rise vertically centered or tangent to the main pipe, as indicated on the Drawings or as directed by the Engineer or designated representative. An access hole less than 48-inches in diameter shall be cut into the main pipe to allow a ledge for support of access ladders. Unless otherwise specified on the Drawings, the main pipe portion of the tee manhole shall be included in the unit price bid for the unit tee manhole price.

M. Precast Grade Rings

Rings shall be reinforced Class A concrete

1. Precast Grade Rings, 24-1/2 inches Inside Diameter

   This adjustment ring shall be used only for adjusting existing manholes with 24 inch diameter lids and for Wastewater Access Device. Inside to outside diameter dimension of ring shall be 6 inches with a thickness of 3 inches to 6 inches.

2. Precast Grade Rings, 35 inches Inside Diameter

   This adjustment ring shall be used for all new manhole construction with 32 inch diameter lids. Inside to outside diameter dimension of ring shall be 6 inches with a thickness of 2 inches to 6 inches.

N. High Density Polyethylene Grade Rings

Plastic grade (adjusting) rings shall be injection molded from high density polyethylene identified according to ASTM D4976. Reprocessable and recyclable ethylene plastic materials are allowed. Manufacturers of HDPE adjusting rings shall be listed on SPL WW-703.

O. Controlled Low Strength Material

Controlled low strength material (CLSM) shall meet Standard Specification Item 402S, Controlled Low Strength Material.

P. Cement Stabilized Sand

Cement stabilized sand for bedding or backfilling shall contain 2 bags of Portland cement per cubic yard. The sand shall meet the requirements for "Fine Aggregate" in Standard Specification Item 403S, Concrete for Structures.

Q. Waterproofing Joint Materials

O-rings and wedge seals for the joints of all wastewater manholes, and for stormwater manholes when indicated on the Drawings, shall conform to the requirements of ASTM C443. Cold applied preformed plastic gaskets for stormwater manholes shall be as specified in City of Austin Standard Specification Item No. 510, “Pipe.” Plastic seals wrapped around manholes at joints, and hydrophillic waterstops installed in joints, shall be listed on SPL WW-146A. PVC waterstops installed in joints and waterproofing compounds applied to the exterior surfaces of manholes and junction boxes shall be as specified in the Contract Documents.

R. Interior Surface Coatings for Wastewater Manholes

Interior surface coatings for wastewater manholes shall be either: as specified on the Drawings, as designated in writing by the Engineer or designated representative, or as included on SPL WW-511, which lists acceptable products, uses and applicators.

S. Structural Lining Systems for Wastewater Manholes

Structural lining systems for wastewater manholes shall be either: as specified on the Drawings, as designated in writing by the Engineer or designated representative, or as included on SPL WW-511A.

506.5 Construction

A. General

A minimum horizontal separation of 12 inches shall be maintained between adjacent pipes inside and outside a manhole or junction box. Pipe ends within the base section or junction box walls shall not be relied upon to support overlying manhole dead and live load weights. All wastewater branch connections to new or existing mains shall be made at manholes, with the branch pipe crown installed at an elevation no lower than the elevation of the effluent pipe crown. Changes in flow direction in the inverts shall be made by constructing smooth, long-radius sweeps to minimize splashing, turbulence, and eddies. Where wastewater lines enter the manhole up to 24 inches above the flowline of the outlet, the invert shall be sloped upward in a U-shaped channel three-fourths of the diameter of the incoming pipe to receive the flow, thus preventing splashing or solids deposition. A drop pipe shall be provided for a wastewater pipe entering a manhole whenever the invert cannot be constructed to prevent splashing and solids deposition. Construction of extensions to existing systems shall require placement of bulkheads at locations indicated or directed by the Engineer or designated representative.

Unless otherwise indicated on the Drawings, stormwater manholes shall have eccentric cones and wastewater manholes shall have concentric cones, except on manholes over large mains where an eccentric cone shall be situated to provide access to an invert ledge. Eccentric cones may be used where conflicts with other

utilities dictate. Flat-slab tops may be used only where clearance problems are encountered or where specified on the Drawings. Cast-in-place wastewater junction boxes shall be allowed only where indicated on the Drawings or where accepted by the Engineer or designated representative.

B. Foundation Support

Manholes shall be founded at the established elevations on uniformly stable subgrade. Unstable subgrade shall be over-excavated a minimum of 12 inches and replaced with a material acceptable to the Engineer or designated representative. Precast base units shall be founded and leveled on a 6 inch thick layer of coarse aggregate bedding. A pipe section with a prefabricated tee manhole and half the length of the adjoining pipe sections on each side shall be founded on a minimum of 6 inch thick layer of unreinforced Class A concrete (City of Austin Standard Specification Item No. 403S, "Concrete For Structures"). The cast-in-place concrete cradle shall be placed against undisturbed trench walls up to the pipe's springline.

C. Cast-in-Place Concrete

Structural concrete work shall conform to Standard Specification Item No. 410S, Concrete for Structures. Forms shall be used for all slabs that are not ground supported and for all vertical surfaces above the foundation level. Formwork shall be designed according to American Concrete Institute ACI 347, Guide to Formwork for Concrete. Outside forms on vertical surfaces may be omitted where concrete can be cast against the surrounding earthen material that can be trimmed to a smooth vertical face.

D. Manhole Bases

Pre-cast bases shall conform to requirements in 506.4.H.

Cast-in-place bases shall have a minimum thickness of 12 inches at the invert flowline. The widths of all manhole inverts shall be specifically sized for the connecting pipes. Inverts shall be "U" shaped channels. The channel depth at the point where a pipe connects to the manhole wall, for pipes 24 inches in diameter and smaller, shall be a minimum of three-fourths of the pipe diameter, with the top of the channel being a smooth transition between the inlet and outlet pipe connection points. For manholes connecting to pipes greater than 24 inches in diameter, the channel depth at the point where a pipe connects to the manhole wall shall be equal to the full pipe diameter. The manhole invert grade shall

1) be a continuation of the inlet and outlet pipe grades carried through to the centerline of the manhole, or
2) have a minimum slope of 2.5 percent between the inlet and outlet pipe inverts, or
3) have a minimum difference of 0.10 feet between the inlet and outlet pipe inverts,

whichever provides the maximum difference in invert elevation between the inlet and outlet pipes. In all cases, the bottom(s) of the channel(s) shall provide a smooth transition between the inlet and outlet pipes. Changes in flow direction in the inverts of manholes shall be made by constructing smooth, large-radius sweeps to prevent splashing, turbulence, and eddies. The lowermost riser section

may be set in the Portland cement concrete, while still plastic, after which the base shall be cured a minimum of 24 hours prior to proceeding with construction of the manhole up to 12 feet in depth. The base shall be cured an additional 24 hours prior to continuing construction above the 12-foot level.

Wastewater manholes having cast-in-place bases may be constructed over existing wastewater pipes and the top half of the pipe removed to facilitate invert construction, except where the existing pipe is PVC, in which case, the entire pipe shall be removed from inside the manhole. The manhole floor shall rise outwardly from the springline elevation of the pipe, approximately one inch for each 12 inch of run (8 percent slope). The floors of stormwater manholes, also, shall rise outwardly from the springline elevation of the pipe, approximately one inch for each 12 inches of run (8 percent slope).

Wastewater manholes with lines larger than 18 inches shall require pre-cast bases; manholes constructed over in-service mains however, may be built on cast-in-place bases if the flow cannot be interrupted.

E. Pipe Connections to Manholes and Junctions Boxes

Wastewater pipe connections to manholes and junction boxes shall be made using flexible, resilient, and non-corrosive watertight boot connectors or ring waterstops acceptable to the Engineer and conforming to the requirements of ASTM C-923. Any voids in the annular space between the pipe and boot connector or ring waterstop and the inside of the manhole wall shall be filled with non-shrink grout to prevent solids collection.

F. Pipe Connections to Existing Manholes and Junction Boxes

Wastewater pipe connections to existing manholes and junction boxes shall be made by removing the wall section by coring or alternative method approved by the Engineer or designated representative; installing flexible, resilient, and non-corrosive boot connectors or ring waterstops acceptable to the Engineer or designated representative and conforming to the requirements of ASTM C-923; filling any voids in the annular space between the pipe and boot connector or ring waterstop and the inside of the manhole or junction box wall with non-shrink grout; rebuilding the invert to conform to Section 506S.5.D; rehabilitating the interior walls with structural lining material listed on SPL WW-511A, and coating the interior of the manhole with material listed on SPL WW-511.

G. Waterproofing

PVC waterstops, hydrophillic waterstops, joint wrapping, and waterproofing compounds shall be installed as specified. Material wrapped around manholes at joints shall be listed on SPL WW-146A regardless of whether installation of the material is required by the Contract for waterproofing or is volunteered by the Contractor for ensuring acceptance of the manhole joints.

H. Backfilling

Backfilling of manholes shall conform to the density requirements of City of Austin Standard Specification Item No.510, Pipe. Manhole construction in roadways may be staged to facilitate pavement base construction. Manholes constructed to interim elevations to facilitate interim construction shall be covered with steel plates

that conform to the requirements of City of Austin Standard 804S-4, sheets 5, 6 and 7, Steel Plating. Steel plates on wastewater manholes shall be set in mortar to minimize inflow of storm water runoff. Manholes shall be completed to finish elevation prior to placement of the roadway's finish surface except on pavement reconstruction projects, where castings may be adjusted after paving is completed. The excavation for completion of manhole construction shall be backfilled in accordance with City of Austin Standards for Trench Repair.

I. Height Adjustment of Manholes

1. General

All adjustments shall be completed prior to the placement of the final roadway surface except on pavement reconstruction projects, where castings may be adjusted after paving is completed.

Brick shall not be used in making height adjustments to wastewater manholes. Mortar shall not be used for any purpose on the inside of wastewater manholes.

Manhole components to be reused shall be carefully removed and the contact areas shall be cleaned of all mortar, concrete, grease and sealing compounds. Any items broken in the process of removal and cleaning shall be replaced in kind by the Contractor at its expense.

If the adjustment involves lowering the top of a manhole, a sufficient depth of pre-cast concrete rings or brick courses shall be removed to permit reconstruction. Existing mortar shall be cleaned from the top surface remaining in place and from all brick or concrete rings to be reused and the manhole rebuilt to the required elevation. The manhole ring and cover shall then be installed with the top surface conforming to the proposed grade.

If the adjustment involves raising the elevation of the top of the manhole in accordance with Minor Manhole Height Adjustment," the top of brick or concrete ring shall be cleaned and built up vertically to the new elevation, using new or salvaged concrete rings or bricks and the ring and cover installed with the top surface conforming to the proposed grade.

After rings and covers are set to grade, the inside and outside of the precast concrete grade rings shall be wiped with non-shrink grout to form a durable surface and water-tight joints. The grouted surface shall be smooth and even with the manhole cone section. Grout shall not be placed when the atmospheric temperature is at or below 40F. If a sudden drop in temperature below 40F occurs or tempartures below 40F are predicted, the grouted surfaces shall be protected against freezing for at least 24 hours.

2. Minor Manhole Height Adjustment (New and Existing Manholes)

Minor manhole height adjustments shall be performed as indicated on City of Austin Standard 506S-4, "Minor Manhole Height Adjustment", and shall consist of adding precast reinforced concrete rings to adjust new and existing manholes to final grade. Brick shall not be used in making height adjustments to wastewater manholes.

If the adjustment involves raising the elevation of the top of the manhole, the top of brick or concrete ring shall be cleaned and built up vertically to the new elevation, using new or salvaged concrete rings or bricks and the ring and cover installed with the top surface conforming to the proposed grade.

For new manhole construction, the maximum allowable throat or chimney height, including the depth of the ring casting, shall be limited to 21 inches of vertical face on the interior surface. For adjustments of existing manholes that fall within the limits of overlay and street reconstruction projects, the maximum vertical allowable height, including the depth of the ring casting, shall be limited to 27 inches of vertical face on the interior surface. All other existing manholes shall have a maximum allowable throat or chimney height adjustment, including the depth of the ring casting, of 12 inches of vertical face on the interior surface. Any adjustment that will exceed these requirements shall be accomplished as indicated on City of Austin Standard 506S-2, Major Manhole Height Adjustment and as described below. Manholes not located in paved areas shall have bolted covers. Manholes located within paved areas (street right of way only) shall be standard non-bolted unless otherwise noted on the drawings.

3. Major Manhole Height Adjustment (Existing Manholes Only)

Any adjustment that exceeds the requirements of Minor Manhole Adjustments, shall be accomplished as indicated on City of Austin Standard 506S-2, Major Manhole Height Adjustment, and shall consist of any combination of removing the concrete rings, and/or the manhole cone section, and/or the straight riser section of the manhole in order to bring the manhole to final grade. Major manhole adjustments shall apply only to existing manholes. Manholes not located in paved areas shall have bolted covers. Manholes located within paved areas (street right of way only) shall be standard non-bolted unless otherwise noted on the drawings.

J. Interior Coatings of Wastewater Manholes and Junction Boxes

The interior surfaces of all Portland cement concrete wastewater manholes and junction boxes shall be coated with products specified either on the Drawings, designated in writing by the Engineer or representative, or listed on SPL WW-511. Product selection shall conform to usage described in that SPL. Surface preparation shall follow the product manufacturer's recommended procedures contained in technical data sheets unless otherwise specified in the contract documents. The Contractor shall measure the coating thickness according to ASTM D 6132, Nondestructive Measurement of Dry Film Thickness of Applied Organic Coatings Over Concrete Using an Ultrasonic Gage. Thickness measures shall be made at locations designated by the Engineer or designated representative. All thickness measurements shall be witnessed by the Engineer or designated representative.

K. Structural Linings of Existing Wastewater Manholes

The interior surfaces of existing wastewater manholes and junction boxes at locations shown in the Drawings or as designated by the Engineer shall be strengthened by application of structural lining systems either as specified on the Drawings, directed in writing by the Engineer or designated representative, or listed

on SPL WW-511A. Selection of products for coating the interior of existing manholes shall be based on the condition of the manholes. Surface preparation shall follow the product manufacturer's recommended procedures contained in technical data sheets unless otherwise specified in the contract documents.

L. Abandonment of Existing Manholes

Manholes designated on the Drawings for abandonment, shall be removed to a level not less than four feet below grade. Two-foot long sections of the inlet and outlet pipes shall be cut and removed on the outside of the manhole, the ends of the remaining pipe and the pipe sections penetrating the manhole wall shall be securely plugged, and the structure filled with material in accordance with Standard 506S-15 or as directed by the Engineer or designated representative.

506.6 Acceptance Testing of Wastewater Manholes

Manholes shall be tested separately and independently of the wastewater lines.

A. Test by the Vacuum Method

A vacuum test shall be performed by the Contractor prior to backfilling those manholes that fall within the right-of-way that require detouring of vehicular traffic. A second vacuum test will not be required after backfilling and compaction is complete unless there is evidence that the manhole has been damaged or disturbed subsequent to the initial vacuum test.

For manhole installations which do not require detouring of vehicular traffic, the vacuum method is recommended and may be used by the Contractor prior to backfilling the manhole to insure proper installation so that defects may be located and repaired; however, a vacuum test shall be performed after backfilling, and compaction are complete. Testing after backfill and compaction are complete will be the basis for acceptance of the manhole.

1. Equipment

   a) The manhole vacuum tester shall be a device approved for use by the Engineer or designated representative.

   b) Pipe sealing plugs shall have a load resisting capacity equal to or greater than that required for the size of the connected pipe to be sealed.

2. Procedures - applicable to new 48-inch diameter manholes

   a) Manhole section interiors shall be carefully inspected; units found to have through-wall lift holes, or any penetration of the interior surface by inserts provided to facilitate handling, will not be accepted. Coating shall be applied after the testing unless coating is applied before installation or unless it is applied at the factory. All lift holes and exterior joints shall be plugged with an acceptable non-shrink grout. No grout shall be placed in horizontal joints. Tests shall be performed before grouting the invert or around pipe penetrations and before coating the interior surfaces of the manhole or junction box.

b) After cleaning the interior surfaces of the manhole, the Contractor shall place and inflate pneumatic plugs in all of the connecting pipes to isolate the manhole; sealing pressure within the plugs shall be as recommended by the plug manufacturer. Plugs and the ends of pipes connected by flexible boots shall be blocked to prevent their movement during the vacuum test.

c) The vacuum test head shall be placed on the top of the cone section or, inside of the top of the manhole cone section, and the compression seal band inflated to the pressure recommended by its manufacturer. The vacuum pump shall be connected to the outlet port with the valve open. When a vacuum of 10 inches of mercury (-5 psig) has been attained, the valve shall be closed and the time noted. Tampering with the test equipment will not be allowed.

d) The manhole shall have passed the test if the vacuum does not drop below 9 inches of mercury (-4.5 psig) within 3 minutes of the time the valve was closed. The actual vacuum shall be recorded at the end of the 3 minutes during which the valve was closed.

e) When the standard vacuum test cannot be performed because of design or material constraints (examples: T-Type manholes, T-Lock Liners, or other reasons acceptable to the Engineer or designated representative), testing of individual joints shall be performed as directed by the Engineer or designated representative.

B. Test by the Exfiltration Method

At the discretion of the Engineer or designated representative, the Contractor may substitute the Exfiltration Method of testing for the Vacuum test described in Section 506.6. A. above. This method may only be used when ground water is not present. If ground water is present a Vacuum Test shall be used unless otherwise directed by the Engineer or designated representative. All backfilling and compaction shall be completed prior to the commencement of testing.

The procedures for the test shall include the following:

1. Manhole section interiors shall be carefully inspected; units found to have through-wall lift holes, or any penetration of the interior surface by inserts provided to facilitate handling, will not be accepted. Coating shall be applied after the testing unless coating is applied before field assembly, or at the factory. All lift holes and exterior joints shall be plugged with an acceptable non-shrink grout. No grout shall be placed in horizontal joints. Tests shall be performed before grouting the invert or around pipe penetrations and before coating the interior surfaces of the manhole or junction box.

2. After cleaning the interior surface of the manhole, the Contractor shall place and inflate pneumatic plugs in all of the connecting pipes to isolate the manhole; sealing pressure within the plugs shall be as recommended by the plug manufacturer.

3. Concrete manholes shall be filled with water or otherwise thoroughly wetted for a period of 24 hours prior to testing.

4. At the start of the test, the manhole shall be filled to the top with water. The test time shall be 1 hour. The Construction Inspector must be present for observation during the entire time of the test. Permissible loss of water in the 1-hour test time is 0.025 gallons per diameter foot, per foot of manhole depth. For a 4-foot diameter manhole, this quantity converts to a maximum permissible drop in the water level (from the top of the manhole cone) of 0.1 inches per foot of manhole depth or 1.0 inches for a 10-foot deep manhole.

C. Failure to Pass the Test – Records of Tests

If the manhole fails to pass the initial test method as described in (A) Test by the Vacuum Method and, if allowed, (B) Test by the Exfiltration Method, or if visible groundwater leakage into the manhole is observed, the Contractor shall locate the leak, if necessary by disassembly of the manhole. The Contractor shall check the gaskets and replace them if necessary. The Contractor may re-lubricate the joints and re-assemble the manhole, or the Contractor may install an acceptable exterior joint sealing product (see City of Austin Standard Products List Item SPL WW-146A) on all joints and then retest the manhole. If any manhole fails the vacuum and/or exfiltration test twice, the Contractor shall consider replacing that manhole. If the Contractor chooses to attempt to repair that manhole, the manhole must be retested until it passes. In no case shall cold applied preformed plastic gaskets be used for repair. Records of all manhole testing shall be made available to the Engineer or designated representative at the close of each working day, or as otherwise directed by the Engineer or designated representative. Any damaged or visually defective products, or any products out of acceptable tolerance shall be removed from the site.

D. Inspection

The Engineer or designated representative shall make a visual inspection of each manhole after it has passed the testing requirements and is considered to be in its final condition. The inspection shall determine the completeness of the manhole; any defects shall be corrected to the satisfaction of Engineer or designated representative.

506.7 Measurement

A "Junction Box" and "Box Manholes" will be measured by each structure of the indicated size regardless of depth.

A "Standard Pre-cast Manhole with Pre-cast Base", "Standard Pre-cast Manhole with Cast-in-Place (CIP) Base", “Special Manhole", "Drop Manhole with Pre-cast Base", "Drop Manhole with Cast-in-Place (CIP) Base”, "Centered Tee Manhole", or "Tangent Tee Manhole" will be measured by each structure of the indicated size for the first 8 feet of depth.

An "Extra Depth Manhole" will be measured by linear vertical foot of Standard Pre-cast Manhole with Pre-cast Base, Standard Pre-cast Manhole with CIP Base, Drop Manhole with Pre-cast Base, Drop Manhole with CIP Base, Special Manhole, Centered Tee Manhole, or Tangent Tee Manhole of the indicated size in excess of eight feet of depth.

Manhole depth will be measured from the invert flow line to the finished surface elevation.

"Minor Manhole Height Adjustment" and "Major Manhole Height Adjustment" will be measured by each unit for the indicated size. Only existing manholes will be measured for minor or major manhole height adjustment.

"Connection to Existing Manhole or Junction Box" will be measured per each for the indicated type of structure and location.

"Structural Lining" will be measured by the linear vertical foot for the indicated structure.

New manholes constructed to interim elevations to facilitate stage construction shall be measured as one unit regardless of the number of interim elevations constructed. All labor, materials and other expenses necessary for the stage construction shall be included in the unit price bid for the completed unit. Cost of abandonment of existing manholes shall be included in the unit price bid for the completed unit, unless Pay Item No. 506 AB is indicated on the Drawings and identified in Standard Contract Bid Form 00300U.

506.8 Payment

Payment for completed junction boxes and manholes of the type indicated on the Drawings shall be made at the appropriate unit bid price. The unit bid price shall include all labor, equipment, materials, (including but not limited to frames and grates, rings and covers, adjusting rings, cone sections, riser sections, gaskets, drop piping and fittings, bases, pipe-to-manhole connectors, concrete, reinforcing steel, non-shrink grout, mortar, joint wrap where specified, and, for wastewater manholes, interior coatings), time and incidentals necessary to complete the work.

Payment for a "Junction Box" and "Box Manhole" will be made at the unit price bid for the indicated size, complete in place.

Payment for the first 8 feet of a "Standard Pre-cast Manhole with Pre-cast Base", "Standard Pre-cast Manhole with Cast-in-Place (CIP) Base", "Special Manhole", "Drop Manhole with Pre-cast Base", "Drop Manhole with Cast-in-Place (CIP) Base","Centered Tee Manhole", or "Tangent Tee Manhole" will be made at the unit price bid for the indicated type and size, complete in place.

Payment for that portion of a Standard Pre-cast Manhole with Pre-cast Base, Standard Pre-cast Manhole with CIP Base, Drop Manhole with Pre-cast Base, Drop Manhole with CIP Base, Special Manhole, Centered Tee Manhole, or Tangent Tee Manhole in excess of 8 feet in depth will be made at the unit price bid for "Extra Depth Manhole" of the indicated type and size, complete in place.

Payment for "Minor Manhole Height Adjustment" and "Major Manhole Height Adjustment" will be made at the unit bid price, complete in place.

Payment for "Structural Lining" will be made at the unit price per linear vertical foot, which will include surface preparation, environmental adjustments, lining application, and curing, as required.

Payment for "Connection to Existing Manhole or Junction Box" shall be made at the unit price per connection and will include removing the wall section by coring or alternative method approved by the Engineer or designated representative, rehabilitating the interior walls, rebuilding the invert, and preparing and coating the interior surfaces of the structure.

When indicated in the Drawings, abandonment of existing manholes shall be made at the unit price for abandonment.

The intended use of each item shall be designated by a two-letter code (Wastewater = WW; Stormwater = SW) in the spaces provided after the pay item number:

Pay Item No. 506S M__:	Standard Pre-cast Manhole w/Pre-cast Base, ___ Dia.	Per Each.
Pay Item No. 506S M1__:	Standard Pre-Cast Manhole w/CIP Base, ___ Dia.	Per Each.
Pay Item No. 506S S__:	Special Manhole, ___ Dia.	Per Each.
Pay Item No. 506S D__:	Drop Manhole w/Pre-cast Base, ___ Dia.	Per Each.
Pay Item No. 506S D1__:	Drop Manhole w/CIP Base, ___ Dia.	Per Each.
Pay Item No. 506S C__:	Centered Tee Manhole, __ Dia. x ___ Dia.	Per Each.
Pay Item No. 506S T__:	Tangent Tee Manhole, ___ Dia. x ___ Dia.	Per Each.
Pay Item No. 506S J__:	Junction Box, ___ Ft. x ___ Ft.	Per Each.
Pay Item No. 506S B__:	Box Manhole ___ Ft. x ___ Ft.	Per Each.
Pay Item No. 506S 2__:	Major Manhole Height Adjustment, ___ Dia.	Per Each.
Pay Item No. 506S 4__:	Minor Manhole Height Adjustment, ___ Dia.	Per Each.
Pay Item No. 506S AB__:	Abandonment of existing Manholes:	Per Each.
Pay Item No. 506S EDM__	Extra Depth of Manhole, ___ Dia.	Per Linear Vert. Foot.
Pay Item No. 506S SL__:	Structural Lining of _____:	Per Linear Vert. Foot.
Pay Item No. 506S CN__:	Connection to Existing _____:	Per Each.

End

SPECIFIC **CROSS REFERENCE MATERIALS**

Standard Specification Item No. 506, "Manholes"

City of Austin Standard Specifications

Designation	Description
Item 403S	Concrete For Structures
Item 406S	Reinforcing Steel
Item 402S	Controlled Low Strength Material
Item 410S	Concrete Structures
Item 503S	Frames, Grates, Rings and Covers
Item 504S	Adjusting Structures
Item 507S	Bulkheads
Item 510	Pipe

Texas Department of Transportation Standard Specifications For Construction and Maintenance of Highways, Streets and Bridges

Designation	Description
Item 421	Hydraulic Cement Concrete

City of Austin Utilities Criteria Manual

Designation	Description
Section 2.8.0	Abandonment of Facilities
Subsection 2.8.2	Manholes

City of Austin Water Utility Documents

Designation	Description
SPL WW-146A	Manhole Seals, Plastic, Watertight
SPL WW-511	Lining System for Wastewater Manholes
SPL WW-511A	Structural Lining System for Wastewater Manholes
SPL WW-703	Adjusting (grade) rings for manhole chimney sections

City of Austin Standard

Designation	Description
506S-2	Major Manhole Height Adjustment
506S-4	Minor Manhole Height Adjustment
506S-15	Abandoned Manhole
506S-12	O-Ring Joint Detail, Precast Manhole Section
506S-13	Wedge Seal Joint Detail, Precast Manhole Section Adjustment
506S-15	Abandoned Manhole
804S-4, 5, 6 and 7 of 9	Steel Plating

City of Austin Standard Contract

Designation	Description
00300U	Bid Form (Unit Prices)

American Society for Testing and Materials (ASTM)

Designation	Description
ASTM C 55	Specification for Concrete Building Brick
ASTM C 62	Specification for Building Brick Solid Masonry Units Made from Clay of Shale
ASTM C478/C478M	Standard Specification for Precast Concrete Manhole
ASTM C443/C443M	Specification for Joints for Circular Concrete Sewer and Culvert Pipe, Using Rubber Gaskets
ASTM C923/C923M	Specification for Resilient Connectors Between Reinforced Concrete Manhole Structures Pipes
ASTM C1107	Specification for Packaged Dry, Hydraulic-Cement Grout (Nonshrink)
ASTM D6132	Specification for Polyethylene Plastics Molding and Extrusion Materials
D4976	Test Method for Nondestructive Measurement of Dry Film Thickness of Applied Organic Coating Over Concrete Using an Ultrasonic Gage

American Concrete Institute

Designation	Description

Item 347 Guide to Formwork for Concrete

***RELATED* CROSS REFERENCE MATERIALS**
Standard Specification Item No. 506, "Manholes"

City of Austin Utilities Criteria Manual

Designation	Description
Section 2	Water and Wastewater Design Criteria

City of Austin Standards

Designation	Description
1100S-1	Casting Adjustments
503S-4S	Storm Sewer Manhole Ring and 32" Cover
503S-4W	Sanitary Sewer Manhole Ring and 32" Cover
503S-5S	Bolted Storm Sewer Manhole Ring and 32" Cover
503S-5W	Watertight Manhole Ring and 32" Cover (W&WW)
506S-1	Manhole Invert Plan
506S-5	Typical Box Manhole 30" and Larger Pipe
506S-7	Precast Manhole with Drop Inlet on Cast in Place Foundation
506S-8	Precast Manhole with Drop Inlet on Precast Base
506S-9	Precast Manhole On Cast-In-Place Foundation
506S-10	Wastewater Manhole on Precast Base
506S-11	Storm Sewer Manhole Details

American Association of State Highway and Transportation Officials (AASHTO)

Designation	Description
M306	Standard Specifications for Drainage Structure Castings

Current version: 02/24/10

Previous Versions: 03/26/08, 02/26/02, 02/17/00, 11/15/99 and 06/08/88

Item No. 508S
Miscellaneous Structures and Appurtenances

508S.1 Description

This item governs the construction of miscellaneous structures and appurtenances, complete in place or to the stage detailed and/or indicated in the Drawings, using the materials specified herein, including the excavation, installation, backfilling, placement of the concrete and when required, the furnishing and installation of frames, grates, rings, covers, safety end treatment and any concrete curb and gutter indicated on the Drawings.

This specification is applicable for projects or work involving either SI or inch-pound units. Within the text, the inch-pound units are given preference followed by SI units shown within parentheses

508S.2 Submittals

The submittal requirements of this specification item include:

A. Type of structure and appurtenances (inlets, headwalls, frames, grates, energy dissipators, etc.), construction methods and sequence (precast, cast in place), materials (bolts, nuts, plates, angles, etc.)

B. Aggregate types, gradations and physical characteristics for the Portland cement concrete mix.

C. Proposed proportioning of materials for the mortar mix.

D. Analysis and thickness calculations for temporary steel covers.

508S.3 Types

The various types of structures and appurtenances such as inlets, headwalls, energy dissipators, etc., are designated on the Drawings by letter or by number for the particular design of structure to be constructed in accordance with the details indicated on the Drawings. Unless otherwise indicated on the Drawings, the Contractor may have the option of furnishing cast in place or precast structures.

508S.4 Materials

A. Portland Cement Concrete

The Portland cement concrete shall conform to Item No. 403S, "Concrete For Structures", with the following classes:

Cast in Place Concrete	Class A
Precast Concrete	Class C

B. Mortar

Mortar shall be composed of 1 part Portland cement and 2 parts clean, sharp mortar sand suitably graded for the purpose by conforming in other respects to the provisions of Standard Specification Item No. 403S, "Concrete for Structures" for fine aggregate. Hydrated lime or lime putty may be added to the mix, but in no case shall it exceed 10 percent by weight (mass) of the total dry mix.

C. Reinforcement and Steel

Reinforcing Steel shall conform to Standard Specification Item No. 406S,"Reinforcing Steel".

Structural Steel shall conform to Standard Specification Item No. 720S, "Metal for Structures".

D. Frames, Grates, Rings and Covers

Frames, grates, rings and covers shall conform to City of Austin Standard Specification Item No. 503S, “Frames, Grates, Rings and Covers".

E. Safety End Treatment for Structures

The safety end treatment for structures shall conform to TxDOT Specification Item No. 467, “Safety End Treatment”.

1. Bolts and Nuts. All bolts, nuts and associated hardware shall meet the specifications of ASTM A 307.
2. Plates and Angles. All plates and similar angles and brackets shall meet the specifications of ASTM A 36.
3. Pipe Runners. Pipe Runners shall conform to the requirements of ASTM A53, Grade B.
4. Galvanizing. All hardware including nuts, bolts and plates listed above shall be galvanized conforming to ASTM A 123 or A 153.

F. Miscellaneous Items

Cast iron for supports, steps and inlet units shall conform to the shape and dimensions indicated on the Drawings. The casting shall be clean and perfect, free from sand or blowholes or other defects. Cast iron castings shall meet the requirements of ASTM A 48, Class 30. Steel for temporary covers when used with stage construction shall be adequate for the loads imposed.

508S.5 Construction Methods

All concrete work shall be performed in accordance with Standard Specification Item No.410S, "Concrete Structures". Forms will be required for all cast-in-place concrete walls, except where the nature of the surrounding material is such that it can be trimmed to a smooth vertical face (the outside form for concrete bases). Where cast in place concrete is used in wall construction of storm sewers, the steps shall be cast into the wall when the concrete is placed.

The construction inlets shall be completed, as soon as is practicable after installation is complete of the sewer lines in the inlet. All sewer line shall be cut neatly at the inside face of the walls of the inlet and pointed up with mortar.

Bases for cast in place inlets may be placed prior to or at the Contractor's option after the sewer is constructed.

Bases for box sewers shall be cast as an integral part of the sewer. The manholes may be constructed prior to backfilling or if the Contractor so elects, the manhole opening may be covered temporarily with a steel plate to facilitate the compaction of backfill for the sewer as a whole. Thereafter, required excavation for the inlet shall be made and the inlet constructed and backfilled.

The inverts passing out or through an inlet shall be shaped and grouted across the floor of the inlet as indicated on the Drawings. This shaping may be accomplished by adding shaping mortar or concrete after the base is cast or by placing the required additional material with the base.

All miscellaneous structures shall be completed in accordance with the details indicated on the Drawings. Backfilling to original ground elevation shall be in accordance with the provisions of the appropriate items and as directed by the Engineer or designated representative.

Energy dissipators and headwalls shall be constructed in accordance with City of Austin Standard Detail 508S-13.

508S.6 Measurement

All miscellaneous structures and safety end treatments satisfactorily completed as indicated on the Drawings will be measured as completed units per each.

Concrete removal, excavation and backfill, riprap, pipe, headwalls, wing walls, collars and apron slabs will not be measured under this item but will be included in the unit price bid for the item of construction in which this item is used.

Frames, grates, rings, covers, safety end treatment and any concrete curb and gutter indicated will not be measured and paid for but shall be included in the unit price bid of one of the pay items identified in the contract bid form.

508S.7 Payment

A . Inlets

Payment for Inlets of the type indicated in place in accordance with these specifications and measured as prescribed above will be made at the unit bid price for each Inlet, of the type specified.

B. Energy Dissipators and Headwalls

Payment for special complete structures will be made at the unit price bid per each.

C Safety End Treatment

Payment for Safety End Treatment, complete in place, will be made at the unit bid price for each unit of the type indicated on the Drawings.

Payment will be made under one of the following:

Pay Item No. 508S-E:	Energy Dissipators, _____ In. Dia. -	Per Each.
Pay Item No. 508S-H:	Headwalls, Type _____, ___ In. Dia. Pipe -	Per Each.
Pay Item No. 508S-IG:	Inlet, Grated -	Per Each.
Pay Item No. 508S-SET	Safety End Treatment, Type ___ Size ___	Per Each
Pay Item No. 508S-I5R:	Inlet, Recessed -	Per Each.
Pay Item No. 508S-I10R:	Inlet, Recessed -	Per Each.
Pay Item No. 508S-I15R:	Inlet, Recessed -	Per Each.
Pay Item No. 508S-I20R:	Inlet, Recessed -	Per Each.
Pay Item No. 508S-I5S:	Inlet, Recessed -	Per Each.
Pay Item No. 508S-I10S:	Inlet, Standard -	Per Each.
Pay Item No. 508S-I15S:	Inlet, Standard -	Per Each.
Pay Item No. 508S-I20S:	Inlet, Standard -	Per Each.

End

SPECIFIED Cross Reference Materials
Standard Specification Item No. 508S, "Miscellaneous Structures and Appurtenances"

City of Austin Standard Specification Items

Designation	Description
Item No. 403S	Concrete For Structures
Item No. 406	Reinforcing Steel
Item No. 410	Concrete Structures
Item No. 720	Structural Steel
Item No. 503S	Frames, Grates, Rings and Covers

TxDOT Standard Specifications For Construction And Maintenance Of Highways, Streets, And Bridges

Designation	Description
Item 467	Safety End Treatment

American Society for Testing and Materials (ASTM)

Designation	Description
ASTM A36/36M	Specification for Structural Steel
ASTM A48	Specification for Gray Iron Castings
ASTM A53	Specification for Pipe, Steel, Black and Hot-Dipped, Zinc Coated Welded and Seamless

ASTM A123	Specification for Zinc (Hot-Dip Galvanized) Coatings on Iron and Steel Products
ASTM A153	Specification for Zinc Coating (Hot-Dip) on Iron and Steel Hardware
ASTM A307	Specifications for Carbon Steel Externally Threaded Standard Fasteners
ASTM C913	Specifications for Precast Concrete Water and Wastewater Structures

RELATED Cross Reference Materials

City of Austin Drainage Criteria Manual

Designation	Description
Section 6.6.0	Energy Dissipators

City of Austin Standard Specification Items

Designation	Description
Item No. 501S	Jacking or Boring Pipe
Item No. 504S	Adjusting Structures
Item No. 506	Manholes
Item No. 507S	Bulkheads
Item No. 510	Pipe

City of Austin Standard Details

Designation	Description
508S-13	Standard Headwall and Energy Dissipators
510S-1	Concrete Trench Cap

TxDOT Specifications

Designation	Description
Item 420	Concrete Structures
Item 421	Portland Cement Concrete
Section 421.2(5)	Fine Aggregate
Item 424	Precast Concrete Structures (Fabrication)
Item 440	Reinforcing Steel
Item 466	Headwalls and Wingwalls
Item 467	Safety End Treatment
Item 471	Frames, Grates, Rings and Covers
Item 529	Concrete Curb, Gutter and Combined Curb and Gutter

Current Version: September 26, 2012

Previous Versions: 02/24/10, 03/26/08, 03/09/04, 02/17/00 and 05/16/97

Item No. 509S
Excavation Safety Systems

509S.1 Description

This item shall govern the designing, furnishing, installing, maintaining and removing or abandoning of temporary Excavation Safety Systems consisting of trench shields, aluminum hydraulic shoring, timber shoring, trench jacks, tieback or braced sheeting, tieback slurry walls, soil nailing, rock bolting, tieback or braced soldier piles and lagging, and other systems for protecting workers in excavations. This item shall also govern the designing and constructing of sloping and benching systems for protecting workers in excavations.

At a minimum, the Excavation Safety Systems shall conform to United States Department of Labor Rules 29 CFR, Occupational Safety and Health Administration, Part 1926 Safety and Health Regulations for Construction, Subpart P, Excavation (hereinafter called OSHA).

This specification is applicable for projects or work involving either inch-pound or SI units. Within the text, the inch-pound units are given preference followed by SI units shown within parentheses.

509S.2 Definitions

"Competent Person" shall mean one who is capable of identifying existing and predictable hazards in the surroundings, or working conditions which are unsanitary, hazardous, or dangerous to employees, and who has authorization to take prompt corrective measures to eliminate them. The competent person shall be capable of interpreting the manufacturer's data sheets and interpreting and implementing the Excavation Safety System Plan.

An "Excavation" shall mean any cut, cavity, trench, or depression in an earth surface, formed by earth removed by the Contractor. The Contractor shall provide an Excavation Safety System for all excavations except when 1) the excavation is in stable rock as determined by the Texas-licensed Professional Engineer who prepared the Contractor's Excavation Safety System Plan or 2) the excavation is less than 5 feet (1.52 m) in depth and examination of the ground by the Contractor's competent person provides no indication of a potential cave-in.

"Trench" (trench excavation) shall mean any narrow excavation (in relation to its length) made below the surface of the ground. In general, the depth shall be greater than the width, but the width of a trench (measured at the bottom) shall not be greater than 15 feet (4.56 m). Excavation Safety Systems for such trenches shall be defined as "Trench Excavation Safety Protective Systems".

If the Contractor installs or constructs forms or other structures in an excavation such that the dimension measured from the forms or structures to the sides of the excavation is reduced to 15 feet (4.6 m) or less (measured at the bottom of the excavation), those excavations shall also be defined as a Trench if workers must enter it. Excavation Safety Systems for such trenches shall also be defined as "Trench Excavation Safety Protective Systems".

509S.3 Excavation Safety System Submittals

A. The Notice to Proceed with construction may be issued by the Owner before the Contractor has submitted the necessary Excavation Safety Plan(s); however, excavation shall not

proceed until the Owner has received the Contractor's Excavation Safety Plan(s) for the Project.

B. Prior to Starting Excavation

Prior to starting any Excavation, the Contractor shall submit to the Owner:

1. A certificate indicating that the Contractor's Competent Person(s) has completed training in an excavation safety program based on OSHA regulations within the past 5 years.
2. Manufacturer's tabulated data or other tabulated data for Excavation Safety Systems consisting of pre-engineered protective systems such as trench shields, aluminum hydraulic shoring, timber shoring, pneumatic shoring, or trench jacks, or benching or sloping or other protective systems that are not designed specifically for the Project.

   Manufacturer's tabulated data shall meet the requirements in OSHA and shall describe the specific equipment to be used on the Project. Tabulated data must bear the seal of the licensed professional engineer who approved the data. Manufacturer's tabulated data shall be an attachment to the Contractor's Excavation Safety System Plan described below.

509S.4 Excavation Safety System Plan

The Contractor shall prepare an Excavation Safety System Plan (hereafter called the "Plan") specifically for the Project. The Contractor shall retain a Texas-licensed Professional Engineer to prepare the Plan. On City-funded projects, the Contractor must follow qualifications-based procedures to procure the required Professional Engineering services, according to Chapter 2254 of the Texas Government Code.

The Contractor shall be responsible for obtaining geotechnical information necessary for design of the Excavation Safety System. If geotechnical information for design of the Project has been acquired by the Owner or designated representative, it shall be provided to the Contractor for information purposes subject to the provisions of City of Austin Standard Contract Section 00220, "Geotechnical Data."

A. The Plan for Excavation Safety Systems consisting of pre-engineered protective systems such as trench shields, aluminum hydraulic shoring, timber shoring, pneumatic shoring, or trench jacks, or benching or sloping or other protective systems that are not designed specifically for the Project shall include:

   1. Detailed Drawings of the Excavation Safety System(s) that will provide worker protection conforming to OSHA. The Drawings shall note the required load carrying capacity, dimensions, materials, and other physical properties or characteristics in sufficient detail to describe thoroughly and completely the Excavation Safety System(s).
   2. Drawings, notes, or tables clearly detailing the specific areas of the Project in which each Excavation Safety System shall be used, the permissible size of the excavation, the length of time that the excavation shall remain open, the means of egress from the excavation, the location of material storage sites in relation to the excavation, the methods for placing/compacting bedding/backfill within the safety of the system, any excavation safety equipment restrictions and subsequent removal of the system.
   3. Recommendations and limitations for using the Excavation Safety Systems.

4. A Certificate of Insurance of the Excavation Safety System Engineer's Professional Liability Insurance coverage. For City-funded projects, coverage meeting the requirements of Standard Contact Documents Section 00810 shall be provided. For privately funded projects the coverage shall be at least $1,000,000.

B. The Plan for Excavation Safety Systems consisting of tieback or braced sheeting, tieback or braced soldier piles and lagging, slurry walls, soil nailing, rock bolting or other protective systems that are designed specifically for the Project shall include:

1. Detailed Drawings of the Excavation Safety System(s) that will provide worker protection conforming to OSHA. The Drawings shall note the design assumptions, design criteria, factors of safety, applicable codes, dimensions, components, types of materials, and other physical properties or characteristics in sufficient detail to describe thoroughly and completely the Excavation Safety System(s).
2. Detailed technical specifications for the Excavation Safety System addressing the properties of the materials, construction means and methods, quality control and quality assurance testing, performance monitoring, and monitoring of adjacent features, as appropriate.
3. Drawings that clearly detail the specific areas of the Project in which each type of system shall be used and showing the plan and elevation (vertical profile) views.
4. Drawings, notes or tables clearly detailing the length of time that the excavation shall remain open, the means of egress from the excavation, the location of material storage sites in relation to the excavation, the methods for placing/compacting bedding/backfill within the safety of the system, any excavation safety equipment restrictions and subsequent removal or abandonment of the system or parts thereof.
5. Recommendations and limitations for using the Excavation Safety Systems.
6. A Certificate of Insurance of the Excavation Safety System Engineer's Professional Liability Insurance coverage. For City-funded projects, coverage meeting the requirements of Standard Contract Documents Section 00810 shall be provided. For privately funded projects the coverage shall be at least $1,000,000.

509S.5 Excavation Safety System Submittal Review

Review of the Excavation Safety System submittal conducted by the Owner or designated representative shall only relate to conformance with the requirements herein. The Owner's failure to note exceptions to the submittal shall not relieve the Contractor of any or all responsibility or liability for the adequacy of the Excavation Safety System. The Contractor shall remain solely and completely responsible for all Excavation Safety Systems and for the associated means, methods, procedures, and materials.

509S.6 Contractor’s Responsibility

The Contractor shall be responsible for implementing the Excavation Safety System Plan and for confirming that the Excavation Safety System(s) used on the Project meets the requirements of the Plan.

The Contractor’s Competent Person(s) shall be on the Project whenever workers are in an excavation meeting the definitions of a Trench given in 509S.2.

509S.7 Construction Methods

The Contractor's Competent Person(s) shall maintain a copy of appropriate OSHA regulations onsite and shall implement OSHA excavation safety regulations at the work site. The Contractor shall perform all excavation in a safe manner and shall maintain the Excavation Safety Systems to prevent death or injury to personnel or damage to structures, utilities or property in or near excavation.

If evidence of possible cave-ins or earthen slides is apparent or an installed Excavation Safety System is damaged, the Contractor shall immediately cease work in the excavation, evacuate personnel from any potentially hazardous areas and notify the Owner. Personnel shall not be allowed to re-enter the excavation until necessary repairs or replacements are completed and are inspected and approved by the Contractor's Competent Person(s). Repair and replacement of damaged Excavation Safety System shall be at the Contractor's sole expense.

509S.8 Changed Conditions

When changed conditions require modifications to the Excavation Safety System, the Contractor shall provide to the Owner or designated representative a new design or an alternate Excavation Safety System Plan that is proposed by the Contractor's Excavation Safety System Engineer to address the changed conditions. Copies of the new design or alternate system shall be provided to the Owner or designated representative in accordance with the requirements of section 509S.3, "Excavation Safety System Plan Submittals". A copy of the most current Excavation Safety System Plan shall be maintained on site and made available to inspection and enforcement officials at all times.

Any changes to the Excavation Safety System Plan that are initiated by the Contractor for operational efficiency or as a result of changed conditions, that could be reasonably anticipated, will not be cause for contract time extension or cost adjustment. When changes to the Excavation Safety System Plan are necessitated by severe and uncharacteristic natural conditions or other conditions not reasonably within the control of the Contractor, the Contractor may make a written request to the Owner for a Change Order to address the anticipated work. The Contractor shall notify the Owner in writing within 24 hours of the occurrence of changed conditions that the Contractor anticipates the submittal of a claim for additional compensation. Under 'Changed Conditions" the work deemed immediately necessary by the Contractor to protect the safety of workers and public, equipment or materials may only be accomplished until the Owner or designated representative has a reasonable opportunity to investigate the Contractor's written request for a Change Order and respond in writing to the request.

509S.9 Measurement

Trench Excavation Safety Protective Systems will only be measured and paid for those trenches that workers would reasonably be expected to enter.

Trench Excavation Safety Protective Systems for Trenches excavated to a final width (measured at the bottom of the excavation) not exceeding 15 feet (4.56 m) shall be measured by the linear foot (meter: 1 meter equals 3.281 feet) through manholes, bore pits, receiving pits, and other appurtenances along the centerline of the trench. This method of measurement shall apply to any and all protective systems, including but not limited to tieback or braced sheeting, tieback or braced soldier piles and lagging, slurry walls, soil nails, rock bolts, shoring, trench boxes, and

sloping or benching as used to provide a Trench Excavation Safety Protective System in accordance with the Excavation Safety System Plan.

Trench Excavation Safety Protective Systems for Trenches created by installation or construction of forms or other structures in an excavation whose width is greater than 15 feet (4.56 m) such that the dimension measured from the forms or structures to the sides of the excavation is reduced to 15 feet (4.56 m) or less (measured at the bottom of the excavation) shall be measured by the linear foot along the centerline of the Trench. Where forms or structures create multiple Trenches in one excavation, each Trench shall be measured separately. This method of measurement shall apply to any and all protective systems, including but not limited to tieback or braced sheeting, tieback or braced soldier piles and lagging, slurry walls, soil nails, rock bolts, shoring, trench boxes, and sloping or benching as used to provide a Trench Excavation Safety Protective System in accordance with the Excavation Safety System Plan.

509S.10 Payment

Payment for Trench Excavation Safety Protective Systems, measured as prescribed above, will be made at unit bid price per centerline linear foot of Trench. The unit bid price shall include full compensation for designing, furnishing, installing the system; for dewatering, and for maintaining, replacing, repairing and removing the Trench Excavation Safety Protective System and for sloping, special clearing, and excavation necessary to safely implement the Excavation Safety System Plan. No payment will be made for Trench Excavation Safety Protective Systems made necessary by the Contractor's selection of an optional design or sequence of work that creates the need for the Trench Excavation Safety Protective System.

Payment will be made under the following:

Pay Item No. 509S-1: Trench Excavation Safety Protective Systems, (all depths) Per Linear Foot.

END

SPECIFIC Cross Reference Materials
Standard Specification Item No. 509S, "Excavation Safety Systems"

City of Austin Standard Contract Documents

Designation	Description
Section 00020	Invitation for Bids
Section 00220	Geotechnical Data
Section 00650	Certificate of Insurance
Section 00700, Article 6.11	Safety and Protection
Section 810	Supplemental General Conditions

29 CFR, Occupational Safety and Health Administration, Part 1926 Safety and Health Regulations for Construction, Subpart P, Excavation
Texas Health and Safety Code Title 9 Chapter 756 Subchapter C
Texas Government Code Chapter 2254

RELATED Cross Reference Materials
Standard Specification Item No. 509S, "Excavation Safety Systems"

Texas Department of Transportation Standard Specifications
For Construction and Maintenance of Highways, Streets, and Bridges

Designation	Description
Item 104	Removing Concrete
Item 110	Excavation
Item 402	Trench Excavation Protection

City of Austin Standard Specification Items

Designation	Description
Item No. 101S	Preparing Right of Way
Item No. 102S	Clearing and Grubbing
Item No. 110S	Street Excavation
Item No. 111S	Excavation
Item No. 130S	Borrow
Item No. 132S	Embankment
Item No. 201S	Subgrade Preparation
Item No. 402S	Controlled Low Strength Material
Item No. 501S	Jacking or Boring Pipe
Item No. 503S	Frames, Grates, Rings and Covers
Item No. 504S	Adjusting Structures
Item No. 505S	Concrete Encasement and Encasement Pipe
Item No. 506	Manholes
Item No. 507S	Bulkheads
Item No. 510	Pipe
Item No. 511S	Water Valves
Item No. 593S	Concrete Retards
Item No. 594S	Gabions and Revet Mattresses

Current Version: October 3, 2013

Previous Versions: 01/02/13, 09/26/12, 02/24/10, 06/06/08, 03/26/08, 8/16/04, 5/10/04, 12/23/02, 12/14/01, 4/05/99, and 8/18/98

Item No. 510
Pipe

510.1 Description

This item governs the furnishing and installing of all pipe and/or materials for constructing pipe mains, sewers, laterals, stubs, inlet leads, service connections, culverts, temporary service lines and temporary diversion lines, including all applicable Work such as excavating, bedding, jointing, backfilling materials, tests, concrete trench cap, concrete cap and encasement, etc., prescribed under this item in accordance with the provisions of the Edwards Aquifer Protection Ordinance, when applicable, and City of Austin Utility Criteria Manual, Section 5, "Working in Public Rights-of-Way". The pipe shall be of the sizes, types, class and dimensions indicated or as designated by the E/A and shall include all joints or connections to new or existing mains, pipes, sewers, manholes, inlets, structures, etc., as may be required to complete the Work in accordance with specifications and published standard practices of the trade associations for the material specified and to the lines and grades indicated. This item shall include any pumping, bailing, and drainage when indicated or applicable. Unless otherwise provided, this item shall consist of the removal and disposition of trees, stumps and other obstructions, old structures or portions thereof such as house foundations, old sewers, masonry or concrete walls, the plugging of the ends of abandoned piped utilities cut and left in place and the restoration of existing utilities damaged in the process of excavation, cutting and restoration of pavement and base courses, the furnishing and placing of select bedding, backfilling and cement or lime stabilized backfill, the hauling and disposition of surplus materials, bridging of trenches and other provisions for maintenance of traffic or access as indicated.

510.2 Materials

The Contractor shall submit descriptive information and evidence that the materials and equipment the Contractor proposes for incorporation into the Work are of the kind and quality that satisfies the specified functions and quality. Austin Water Utility Standard Products Lists (SPL) form a part of the Specifications. Contractors may, when appropriate, elect to use products from the SPL; however, submittal to the E/A is still required. Should the Contractor elect to use any materials from these lists, each product shall be completely and clearly identified by its corresponding SPL number when making the product submittal. This will expedite the review process in which the E/A, and, if necessary, the Austin Water Utility Standard Products Committee, decides whether the products meet the Contract requirements and the specific use foreseen by the E/A in the design of this engineered Project. The purpose of the SPL's is to expedite review, by the E/A and, if necessary, the Austin Water Utility Standard Products Committee, of Contractor product submittals. The SPL's shall not be considered as being a pre-approved list of products necessarily meeting the requirements of the Project. Items contained in the SPL cannot be substituted for items shown on the Drawings, or called for in the specifications, or specified in the Bidding Requirements, Contract Forms and Conditions of Contract, unless approved by the E/A in conjunction with the Austin Water

Utility Standard Products Committee. The Standard Product List current at the time of plan approval will govern.

(1) Concrete

Concrete shall conform to Item No. 403S, "Concrete for Structures".

(2) Coarse Aggregate

Coarse aggregate shall conform to Item No. 403S, "Concrete for Structures" or one of the following:

(a) Pipe Bedding Stone

Pipe bedding stone shall be clean gravel, crushed gravel or crushed limestone, free of mud, clay, vegetation or other debris, conforming to ASTM C 33 for stone quality. Size gradation shall conform to ASTM C-33 No. 57 or No. 67 or the following Table:

SIEVE SIZE	% RETAINED BY WEIGHT
1-1/2"	0
1"	0-10
1/2"	40-85
#4	90-100
#8	95-100

(b) Foundation Rock

Foundation rock shall be well graded coarse aggregate ranging in size from 2 to 8 inches.

(c) Flexible Base

Flexible base shall conform to Item No. 210S, "Flexible Base".

(3) Fine Aggregate

(a) Concrete and Mortar Sand

Fine aggregate shall conform to Item No. 403S, "Concrete for Structures".

(b) Bedding Sand

Sand for use as pipe bedding shall be clean, granular and homogeneous material composed mainly of mineral matter, free of mud, silt, clay lumps or

clods, vegetation or debris. The material removed by decantation TxDOT Test Method Tex-406-A, plus the weight of any clay lumps, shall not exceed 4.5 percent by weight.

The resistivity shall not be less than 3000 ohms-cm as determined by TxDOT Test Method Tex-129-E. Size gradation of sand for bedding shall be as follows:

GRADATION TABLE	
SIEVE SIZE	% RETAINED BY WEIGHT
1/4"	0
#60	75-100
#100	95-100

(c) Stone Screenings

Stone screenings shall be free of mud, clay, vegetation or other debris, and shall conform to the following Table:

SIEVE SIZE	% PASSING
3/8"	100
No. 4	95 to 100
No. 8	80 to 100
No. 16	50 to 85
No. 30	25 to 60
No. 50	10 to 30
No. 100	2 to 10

All screenings shall be the result of a rock crushing operation.

(4) Controlled Low Strength Material

Controlled Low Strength Material (CLSM) shall conform to Item 402S, "Controlled Low Strength Material.

(5) Pea Gravel

Pea gravel bedding shall be clean washed material, hard and insoluble in water, free of mud, clay, silt, vegetation or other debris. Stone quality shall meet ASTM C 33. Size gradation shall be as follows:

SIEVE SIZE	% RETAINED BY WEIGHT
3/4"	0
1/2"	0-25
1/4"	90-100

(6) Select Backfill or Borrow

This material shall consist of borrow or suitable material excavated from the trench. It shall be free of stones or rocks over 8 inches and shall have a plasticity index of less than 20. The moisture content at the time of compaction shall be within 2 percent of optimum as determined by TxDOT Test Method Tex-114-E. Sandy loam borrow will not be allowed unless shown on the Drawings or authorized by the E/A.

All suitable materials from excavation operations not required for backfilling the trench may be placed in embankments, if applicable. All unsuitable materials that cannot be made suitable shall be considered surplus excavated materials as described in 510.3(13). The Contractor may, if approved by the engineer, modify unsuitable materials to make them suitable for use. Modification may include drying, removal or crushing of over-size material, and lime or cement treatment.

(7) Cement Stabilized Backfill

When indicated or directed by the E/A, all backfill shall be with cement-stabilized backfill rather than the usual materials. Unless otherwise indicated, cement stabilized backfill material shall consist of a mixture of the dry constituents described for Class J Concrete. The cement and aggregates shall be thoroughly dry mixed with no water added to the mixture except as may be directed by the E/A.

(8) Pipe

General

Fire line leads and fire hydrant leads shall be ductile iron. Domestic water services shall not be supplied from fire service leads, unless the domestic and fire connections are on separately valved branches with an approved backflow prevention device in the fire service branch. All wastewater force mains shall be constructed of ductile iron pipe Pressure Class 250 minimum for pipe greater than 12-inch size and Pressure Class 350 for pipe 12-inch size and smaller. Wastewater pipe shall be in accordance with Austin Water Utility's Standard Products List SPL WW-534 and shall have a corrosion resistant interior lining acceptable to the Owner.

All water pipe within utility easements on private property shall be Ductile Iron Pipe, Pressure Class 350 minimum for pipe 12-inch size and smaller and Pressure Class 250 minimum for pipe greater than 12-inch size wrapped as indicated. For sizes over 24 inches, Concrete Pressure Pipe, steel cylinder type, conforming to the requirements of AWWA C-301 will be acceptable.

There may be no service connections to Concrete Pressure Pipe installed in utility easements on private property. Approved service clamps or saddles shall be used

when tapping ductile iron pipe 12 inch size and smaller. All service tubing (3/4 inch thru 2 inches) installed in utility easements on private property shall be 150 psi annealed seamless Type K copper tubing with no sweat or soldered joints.

All reclaimed water mains shall be constructed of ductile iron pipe, Pressure Class 350 minimum for pipe 12-inch size and smaller and Pressure Class 250 for pipe greater than 12-inch size. For mains 12-inch size and smaller, PVC pipe, conforming to the requirements of AWWA C-900, DR 14 shall be acceptable. Reclaimed water pipe shall be manufactured purple, painted purple, or wrapped in purple polyethylene film wrap.

Manufacturers of concrete pipe and pipe larger than 24-inch diameter shall have a quality control program consisting of one or more of the following:

1) a quality management system certified by the American National Standards Institute (ANSI) or National Sanitation Foundation (NSF) to comply with ISO 9001:2000,

2) a quality management system certified by the QCast Program following the requirements of the ACPA Plant Certification Manual,

3) a quality management system certified by the National Precast Concrete Association

4) a quality control program approved by the OWNER prior to submittal of bids for the PROJECT, or

5) an independent, third party quality control testing and inspection firm for testing and inspecting pipe produced for the PROJECT and approved by the OWNER prior to submittal of bids for the PROJECT.

All such quality control programs shall be paid for by the manufacturer. It is the intent of this requirement that the manufacturer will document all appropriate tests and inspections with sampling and inspection criteria, frequency of testing and inspection, date of testing and inspection and date on which every piece was manufactured. Required testing and inspection, including that by an independent, third party, shall be performed full-time during production of pipe for the PROJECT. When requested by the OWNER, the manufacturer will provide copies of test data and results and inspection reports with the shipment of pipe for the PROJECT. Test data and results and inspection reports shall be traceable to specific pipe lots or pieces. Owner approval of the manufacturer's quality control program will expire after three years, at which time the manufacturer must present a current quality control program for approval in order to retain listing on the applicable SPL. Owner approval of the Concrete Pipe manufacturer's quality control program will expire after three years, at which time the manufacturer must present a current quality control program for approval.

The quality of materials, the process of manufacture and the finished pipe shall be subject to inspection and approval by the E/A at the pipe manufacturing plant and at the project site prior to and during installation. Plant inspections shall be conducted at the discretion of the City Representative. Only manufacturers having a quality control program of the type described above will be considered as approved providers of concrete pipe and pipe products as listed in the Standard Products List (SPL).

All water distribution pipe and fittings shall be listed in the Fire Protection Equipment Directory published by the Underwriter's Laboratories, Inc., or shall be Factory Mutual approved for fire service. All water pipe and related products shall be registered by the National Sanitation Foundation as having been certified to meet NSF/ANSI Standard 61.

(a) Reserved

(b) Iron Pipe

Iron pipe shall be ductile iron pipe meeting all requirements of standards as follows:

-For push-on and mechanical joint pipe: AWWA C-151

-For flanged pipe: AWWA C-115

Barrels shall have a nominal thickness required by Table 1 of AWWA C-115, which thickness corresponds to Special Class 53 in sizes through 54 inch, and Class 350 in 60 and 64-inch sizes. Flanges shall be ductile iron (gray iron is not acceptable); they shall be as shown in ANSI/AWWA C115/A21.15 and shall conform to dimensions shown in Table 2 and Figure 1 of AWWA C115. These flanges are the same in all respects as flanges shown in ANSI/AWWA C110/A21.10 for fittings and are standard for all flanges used with pipe, valve, and equipment units in the City of Austin water distribution and wastewater force main systems. Flanges shall be fabricated and attached to the pipe barrels by U.S. fabricators using flanges and pipe barrels of U.S. manufacture. If fabrication is to be by other than the pipe barrel manufacturer, a complete product submittal and approval by the Austin Water Utility will be required. Additionally, such fabricator shall furnish certification that each fabricated joint has been satisfactorily tested hydrostatically at a minimum pressure of 300 psi.

-Linings and Coating:

Interior surfaces of all iron potable or reclaimed water pipe shall be cement-mortar lined and seal coated as required by AWWA C104. Interior surfaces of all iron wastewater line and force main pipe shall be coated with a non-corrosive lining material as indicated on Austin Water Utility's Standard Products List SPL WW-534. Pipe exteriors shall be coated as required by the

applicable pipe specification. The type and brand of interior lining shall be clearly marked on the outside of the pipe and fittings. Except as authorized by the E/A, only one type and brand of pipe lining shall be used on a given project.

Except as described above for flanged pipe (Thickness Class 53) and where not otherwise indicated, ductile iron pipe shall be minimum Class 250 as defined by ANSI/AWWA C150/A21.50-current; all ductile iron pipe and flanges shall meet the following minimum physical requirements:

Grade 60-42-10:

-Minimum tensile strength: 60,000 psi (414 mPa).

-Minimum yield strength: 42,000 psi (290 mPa).

-Minimum elongation: 10 percent.

The flanges for AWWA C115 pipe may be also be made from:

Grade 70-50-05:

-Minimum tensile strength: 70,000 psi (483 map).

-Minimum yield strength: 50,000 psi (345 mPa).

-Minimum elongation: 5 percent.

1. Ductile Iron Fittings:

   Fittings shall be push-on, flanged or mechanical joint as indicated or approved and shall meet all requirements of standards as follows:

   -Sizes 4 inch through 24 inch: AWWA C-110 or AWWA C-153

   -Sizes larger than 24 inch: AWWA C-110.

   -Lining and Coating:

   Interior surfaces or all iron potable/reclaimed water pipe fittings shall be lined with cement- mortar and seal coated as required by AWWA C104. Interior surfaces of all iron wastewater and force main fittings shall be coated with a non-corrosive lining material acceptable to Owner. Fitting exteriors shall be coated as required by the applicable pipe specification.

2. Joint Materials

Gaskets for mechanical joints shall conform to ANSI/AWWA A21.11/C-111.

Joining of slip joint iron pipe shall, without exception, be accomplished with the natural or synthetic rubber gaskets of the manufacturer of that particular pipe being used. A joint lubricant shall be used and applicable recommendations of the manufacturer shall be followed.

Gaskets for flanged joints shall be continuous full face gaskets, of 1/8 inch minimum thickness of natural or synthetic rubber, cloth-reinforced rubber or neoprene material, preferably of deformed cross section design and shall meet all applicable requirements of ANSI/AWWA A21.11/C-111 for gaskets. They shall be manufactured by, or satisfy all recommendations of, the manufacturer of the pipe/fittings being used and be fabricated for use with Class 125 ANSI B16.1 flanges.

Tee-head bolts, nuts and washers for mechanical joints shall be high strength, low alloy, corrosion resistant steel stock equal to "COR-TEN A" having UNC Class 2 rolled threads or alloyed ductile iron conforming to ASTM A 536; either shall be fabricated in accordance with ANSI/AWWA A21.11/C-111.

Hex head bolts and nuts shall satisfy the chemical and mechanical requirements of ASTM A449 SAE Grade 5 plain, and shall be fabricated in accordance with ASTM B 18.2 with UNC Class 2 rolled threads.

Either Tee-Head or Hex-Head bolts, nuts and washers as required, shall be protected with bonded fluoro-polymer corrosion resistant coating where specifically required by the E/A.

All threaded fasteners shall be marked with a readily visible symbol cast, forged or stamped on each nut and bolt, which will identify the fastener material and grade. The producer and the supplier shall provide adequate literature to facilitate such identification; painted markings are not acceptable.

3. Polyethylene Film Wrap

All iron pipe, fittings and accessories shall be wrapped with standard 8 mil (minimum) low density polyethylene film or 4-mil (minimum) cross laminated high-density polyethylene conforming to AWWA C-105, with all edges overlapped and taped securely with duct tape to provide a continuous wrap to prevent contact between the piping and the surrounding backfill. Repair all punctures of the polyethylene, including those caused in the placement of bedding aggregates, with duct tape to restore the continuous protective wrap before backfilling. Polyethylene film wrap for reclaimed water pipe shall be purple.

4. Marking

Each pipe joint and fitting shall be marked as required by the applicable AWWA specification. This includes in all cases: Manufacturer's identification, Country where cast, year of casting, and "DUCTILE" or "DI". Barrels of flanged pipe shall show thickness class; others shall show pressure class. The flanges of pipe sections shall be stamped with the fabricators identification; fittings shall show pressure rating, the nominal diameter of openings and the number of degrees for bends. Painted markings are not acceptable.

5 Warning Tape

Warning tape for identifying restrained joint pipe and fittings shall be yellow and shall have black lettering at least 2 inches high that reads "Restrained Joint / Junta de Restriccion" at intervals not exceeding 24 inches. The warning tape shall be polypropylene having a minimum thickness of 2 mils, a minimum width of 3 inches, and adhesive backing on the side opposite the lettering.

(c) Concrete

1. General

Pipe shall conform to ASTM C 76 for Circular Pipe. Concrete pipe smaller than 12 inches in diameter shall conform to ASTM C 14, Extra Strength. All pipe shall be machine made or cast by a process which will provide uniform placement of the concrete in the form and compaction by mechanical devices, which will assure a dense concrete. Concrete shall be mixed in a central batch plant or other approved batching facility from which the quality and uniformity of the concrete can be assured. Transit mixed concrete shall not be acceptable for use in precast pipe. The pipe shall be Class III or the class indicated. Storm sewer pipe shall be of the tongue and groove or 0-ring joint design. Wastewater pipe shall be of the 0-ring joint design; it shall be acceptably lined for corrosion protection.

2. Marking

Each joint of pipe shall be marked with the pipe class, the date of manufacture, the manufacturer's name or trade mark, diameter of pipe and orientation, if required.

Pipe marking shall be waterproof and conform to ASTM C 76.

3. Minimum Age for Shipment

Pipe shall be considered ready for shipment when it conforms to the tests specified in ASTM C 76.

4. Joint Materials

When installing storm sewers (or storm drains), the Contractor shall have the option of using joints with preformed flexible joint sealants or with rubber gaskets. Preformed flexible joint sealants for storm drain joints shall comply with ASTM C990, and rubber gaskets for storm drain joints shall comply with ASTM C 1619**.** Mortar shall not be used to seal pre-fabricated joints. Pipe manufacturer shall be responsible for submitting to the Owner a detailed design of the joint upon request. The pipe manufacturer shall be responsible for submitting to the Owner a complete list of joint sizes showing the minimum size of material to be used with each size joint, along with complete instructions on recommended installation procedures. Quality control testing at the manufacturing plant shall be in accordance with Texas Department of Transportation (TxDOT) Departmental Materials Specifications (DMS) 7310, “Reinforced Concrete Pipe And Machine-Made Precast Concrete Box Culvert Fabrication And Plant Qualification”. The pipe manufacturer shall be verified as compliant with TxDOT DMS 7310 at time of pipe delivery to the jobsite.

a. Mortar

Mortar for joints shall meet the requirements set forth below in "Mortar".

b. Cold Applied Preformed Plastic Gaskets

Cold Applied Plastic Gaskets shall be suitable for sealing joints of tongue and groove concrete pipe. The gasket sealing the joint shall be produced from blends of refined hydrocarbon resins and plasticizing compounds reinforced with inert mineral filler and shall contain no solvents, irritating fumes or obnoxious odors. The gasket joint sealer shall not depend on oxidizing, evaporating or chemical action for its adhesive or cohesive strength and shall be supplied in extruded rope form of suitable cross section. The size of the plastic gasket joint sealer shall be in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations and sufficient to obtain squeeze-out around the joint. The gasket joint sealer shall be protected by a suitable removable wrapper that may be removed longitudinally without disturbing the joint sealer to facilitate application.

The chemical composition of the gasket joint sealing compound as shipped shall meet the following requirements:

Composition (% by weight)	Test Method	Typical Analysis

Bitumen (petroleum plastic content)	ASTM D 4	50-70
Ash-inert Mineral Water	Tex-526-C	30-50
Volatile Matter (at 325 F)	Tex-506-C	2.0 Maximum

The gasket joint sealing compound when immersed for 30 days at ambient room temperature separately in 5 percent solution of caustic potash, a mixture of 5 percent hydrochloric acid, a 5 percent solution of sulfuric acid and a saturated H2S solution shall show no visible deterioration.

The physical properties of the gasket joint sealing compound as shipped shall meet the following requirements:

Property	Test Method	Typical Analysis	
		Minimum	Maximum
Specific Gravity at 77 F	ASTM D 71	1.20	1.35
Ductility at 77F (cm) Minimum	Tex-503-C	5.0	
Softening point	Tex-505-C	275 F	
Penetration:			
32 F (300 g) 60 sec	Tex-502-C	75	
77 F (150 g) 5 sec	Tex-502-C	50	120
115 F (150 g) 5 sec	Tex-502-C		150
Flashpoint C.O.C. F	Tex-504-C	600 F	
Fire Point C.O.C. F	Tex-504-C	625 F	

When constructing wastewater lines, the Contractor shall use 0-ring gasket joints conforming to ASTM C 443. Just before making a joint, the ends of the pipe shall be clean, dry, free of blisters or foreign matter and shall be wire brushed. For O-ring joints, the gasket and the inside surface of the bell shall be lubricated with a light film of soft vegetable soap compound to facilitate assembly of the joint. The rubber O-ring gasket shall be stretched uniformly in the joint. Wedge seal type ("Forsheda" pre-lubricated) gaskets may be used if joint details submitted are approved; installation of such gaskets shall be in strict accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations, and shall be the sole element depended upon to make the joint flexible and watertight.

In wastewater lines no horizontal or vertical angles in the alignment of pipes shall be permitted unless indicated. The spigot shall be centered in the bell, the pipe pushed uniformly home and

brought into true alignment. Bedding material shall be placed and tamped against pipe to secure the joint.

5. Bends

When horizontal or vertical angles in the alignment of storm sewers are indicated, the bend or angle shall be constructed by cutting on a bias one or both pipes as may be required for the alignment indicated. The pipe cut shall be sufficiently long to allow exposing the reinforcement, which shall be bent, welded and incorporated into the pipe bend and reinforced concrete collar to maintain the structural integrity. The collar shall be 6 inches minimum, reinforced with #4 bars on a 1 foot center both directions. Builder's hardware cloth may be used on the outside of the joint to aid in holding cementing materials in place. Plywood, fiberboard or other materials placed on the inside of the pipe as formwork shall be removed as soon as the joint materials have obtained initial set, after which the inside surface of the pipe joint shall be finished smooth and true to the line and grade established. The Contractor may use prefabricated bends meeting the specification requirements in lieu of field fabricated bends. All bends shall be watertight, have a smooth flow line and be equal or greater in strength to the adjacent pipe.

Horizontal or vertical changes in alignment in wastewater lines shall be accomplished by use of manholes. With the E/A's approval, horizontal changes in alignment may be made by the "Joint Deflection" method. Joint deflection is limited by regulations of the Texas Commission on Environmental Quality (TCEQ) to 80 percent of the maximum recommended by the manufacturer; such deflection may not exceed 5 degrees at any joint. Changes in alignment using pipe flexure shall not be allowed.

6. Sulfide and Corrosion Control

All concrete pipe used for wastewater installations shall be protected from sulfide and corrosion damage by using limestone aggregate.

(d) Concrete Steel Cylinder (CSC) Pipe

1. General Requirements

The Contractor shall submit to the E/A for approval along with other required data a tabulated layout schedule with reference to the stationing and grade lines to be used.

The manufacturer shall furnish all fittings and special pieces required for closures, bends, branches, manholes, air valves, blow offs and connections to main line valves and other fittings as indicated.

Each pipe length, fitting and special joint shall have plainly marked on the bell end of the pipe, the head condition for which it is designed. In addition, marking shall be required to indicate the location of each pipe length or special joint in the line and such markings will be referenced to the layout schedules and drawings and submitted for approval.

Concrete steel cylinder fittings shall be tested as required by the applicable AWWA Standards.

2. Design and Inspection

Where not otherwise indicated, concrete steel cylinder pipe shall be Class 150, designed to withstand a vacuum of not less than 28 feet of water. Valve reducers, tees and outlets from a pipe run shall be designed and fabricated so that all stresses are carried by the steel forming the fitting or outlet.

Concrete steel cylinder pipe shall meet one of the following specifications:

AWWA C-301 - Any Size

AWWA C-303 - 24-inch maximum size

All pipe flanges shall conform to AWWA C-207, requirements for standard steel flanges of pressure classes corresponding to the pipe class.

Pipe to be installed in a tunnel or encasement shall be manufactured with 1 inch thick by 24-inch wide skid bands of mechanically impacted mortar in addition to the normal coating.

All concrete steel cylinder fittings shall be constructed of steel plate of adequate strength to withstand both internal pressure and external loading. Rod reinforcing shall not be used to figure the required steel area. The fittings shall have a concrete lining and 1 inch minimum coating of cement mortar, except that centrifugally spun lining need not be reinforced.

Minimum lining thickness shall be 1/2 inch for 16-inch pipe and 3/4 inch for sizes larger than 16-inch pipe. Where it is impractical to place such concrete protection on interior surfaces of small outlets, 2 coats of "Bitumastic Tank Solution" shall be applied.

No fitting shall be made by cutting of standard pipe, except that outlets of less than 75 percent of the pipe diameter may be placed in a standard pipe. Beveled spigots may be placed on standard pipe.

3. Joint Materials

Joints shall be of the rubber gasket type conforming to the applicable standards. The inside and outside recesses between the bell and spigot shall be completely filled with Cement Grout in accordance with the pipe manufacturer's recommendations. Grout materials for jointing such pipe, unless otherwise indicated, shall be as described herein.

(e) Reserved

(f) Polyethylene Tubing

1. General

All polyethylene (PE) tubing shall be high density, high molecular weight plastic tubing meeting ASTM D 2737; it shall be pressure rated at 200 psi working pressure and must bear the National Sanitation Foundation seal of approval for potable water service. Pipe manufacturers shall be listed on SPL WW-65.

2. Materials

Polyethylene plastics shall be Designation PE3408 (Grade P34 with hydrostatic design stress of 800 psi).

3. Markings

Permanent marking on the tubing shall include the following at intervals of not more than 5 feet:

Nominal tubing size.

Type of plastic material, i.e., PE 3408.

Dimension Ratio (DR) and pressure rating in psi for water at 73.4 F (e.g., SDR-9, 200 psi).

ASTM D 2737 designation.

Manufacturer's name or trademark, code and seal of approval (NSF mark) of the National Sanitation Foundation.

Polyethylene tubing for reclaimed service lines shall be purple.

4. Tube Size

PE tubing shall be standard copper tube size outside diameter, with Standard Dimension Ratio (SDR) of 9.

(g) Copper Tubing

All copper service tubing shall be annealed seamless Type K water tube meeting ASTM B88 and rated at 150 psi working pressure. The tubing shall be homogenous throughout and free from cracks, holes, crimping, foreign inclusions or other defects. It shall be uniform in density and other physical properties. Copper tubing for reclaimed water shall be wrapped in purple polyethylene film wrap. Pipe manufacturers shall be listed on SPL WW-613.

(h) Service Connection Fittings

All fittings used in customer service connection - tapping mains, connecting meters, etc. - must be currently listed on the applicable Water and Wastewater Standard Products List (SPL WW-68), or called for in the City of Austin Standard Details (520 - series).

(i) Brass Goods

All brass valves, couplings, bends, connections, nipples and miscellaneous brass pipe fittings and accessories used in meter connections, service lines, air release piping assemblies, and wherever needed in the water distribution system, shall conform to the City of Austin Standards, Austin Water Utility Standard Products Lists, and AWWA C-800, except as herein modified or supplemented.

Unless otherwise noted, the goods described herein shall be fabricated of standard Red Brass (Waterworks Brass) meeting ASTM B62 or B584, alloy 83600, consisting of 85 percent copper and 5 percent each of tin, lead and zinc.

Exposed threads shall be covered with plastic caps or sheeting to protect the threads.

Brass goods of each type and class shall be compatible with other fittings in common usage for similar purposes. Where not otherwise indicated, all such materials shall meet the following requirements:

Inlet threads of corporation valves shall be AWWA iron pipe (IP) thread (male); outlets of service saddles shall be tapped with AWWA IP thread (female). AWWA IP threads shall conform to ANSI/ASME B1.20.1 as required by AWWA C800 for “General Purpose (Inch) Pipe Threads”. For 3/4” and 1” sizes only, corporation valve inlet threads, and the internal threads of saddles may be the AWWA taper thread conforming to AWWA C800 Figure 1 and Table 6. External threads of corporation valve inlet must be compatible with internal threads of the service saddle.

Connections of all new tubing, and of tubing repairs wherever possible, shall be by compression fittings. Compression connections shall be designed to provide a seal and to retain the tubing, without slippage, at a working water pressure of 150 psig.

Flanges shall conform to ANSI B16.1, Class 125, as to dimensions, drillings, etc. Copper tubing, when used, shall be Type K tubing having dimensions and weights given in Table A.1 of AWWA C800.

Brass pipe shall conform to the weights and dimensions for Extra Strong pipe given in Table A.2 of AWWA C800.

All fittings shall be suitable for use at hydrostatic working pressures up to 150 psig (hydrostatic testing of installed systems is at 200 psig).

(j) Reserved

(k) Polyvinyl Chloride Potable/Reclaimed Water Pipe

1. General

All polyvinyl chloride (PVC) potable/reclaimed water pipe shall be of the rigid (UNPLASTICIZED) type and must bear the National Sanitation Foundation seal of approval for potable water pipe. Each joint of pipe shall consist of single continuous extrusion; bells or other components attached by solvent welding are not acceptable. Pipe shall be pressure rated at 200 psi (SDR-14).

Pipe shall have push-on, rubber gasket joints of the bell and spigot type with thickened integral bells with rubber gasket joints. The wall thickness of each pipe bell and joint coupling must be greater than the standard pipe barrel thickness. Clearance must be provided in every gasket joint for both lateral pipe deflection and for linear expansion and contraction. Concrete thrust blocking shall be placed behind bends and tees. Concrete support cradles or blocking shall be required for support of all fire hydrants, valves and AWWA C110 fittings; such support shall be provided for AWWA C153 fittings when required by the E/A.

2. Applicable Specifications

Except as modified or supplemented herein, PVC pipe shall meet the following standards:

AWWA C-900, SDR 14 for PVC Pressure Pipe, in 4, 6, 8 and 12 inch nominal sizes, having Cast Iron Pipe size outside diameters.

Fittings used with PVC Pressure pipe shall be AWWA C-110 or AWWA C-153 compact ductile iron fittings.

All pipe 4 inches and larger must be approved Underwriter's Laboratories for use in buried water supply and fire protection systems.

3. Material Requirements

All pipe and fittings shall be made from clean, virgin, NSF certified, Class 12454B PVC. Clean reworked materials generated from the manufacturers own production may be used within the current limits of the referenced AWWA C-900.

4. Marking

PVC for reclaimed piping shall be purple or wrapped in purple polyethylene film wrap.

Permanent marking on each joint of pipe shall include the following at intervals of not more than 5 feet:

Nominal pipe size and OD base (e.g., 4 CIPS).

Type of plastic material (e.g., PVC 12454B).

Standard Dimension Ratio and the pressure rating in psi for water at 73 F (e.g., SDR 14, 200 psi).

AWWA designation with which the pipe complies (e.g., AWWA C-900).

Manufacturer's name or code and the National Sanitation Foundation (NSF) mark.

5. Tracer Tape

Inductive Tracer Detection Tape shall be placed directly above the centerline of all non-metallic pipe a minimum of 12 inches below subgrade or, in areas outside the limits of pavement, a minimum of 18 inches below finished grade. The tracer tape shall be encased in a protective, inert, plastic jacket and color coded according to American Public Works Association Uniform Color Code. Except for minimum depth of cover, the tracer tape shall be placed according to manufacturer’s recommendations. Manufacturers must be listed on SPL WW-597.

(l) Polyvinyl Chloride (PVC) Pipe (Nonpressure) and Fittings

1. General

PVC sewer and wastewater pipe and fittings 6 through 15 inch diameter shall conform to ASTM D 3034. Pipe shall have minimum cell classification of 12364 or 12454. Fittings shall have cell classification of 12454 or 13343. Pipe stiffness shall be at least 115 psi as determined by ASTM D 2412. Pipe manufacturers shall be on SPL WW-227, and fitting manufacturers shall be on SPL WW-227B.

PVC sewer and wastewater pipe and fittings 18 through 27 inch diameter shall conform to ASTM F 679. Pipe shall have minimum cell classification of 12364 or 12454. Pipe stiffness shall be at least 72 psi as determined by ASTM D 2412. Pipe manufacturers shall be on SPL WW-227A, and fitting manufacturers shall be on SPL WW-227B.

2. Joints

PVC pipe and fitting shall have elastomeric gasket joints conforming to ASTM D 3212. Gaskets shall conform to ASTM F 477.

3. Pipe Markings

Pipe meeting ASTM D 3034 shall have permanent marking on the pipe that includes the following at intervals of not more than 5 feet:

Manufacturer's name and/or trademark and code.

Nominal pipe size.

PVC cell classification per ASTM D 1784

The legend “SDR-_ _ PVC Sewer Pipe” (SDR 26, 23.5. or less is required)

The designation “ASTM D 3034”

Pipe meeting ASTM F 679 shall have permanent marking that includes the following at intervals of not more than 5 feet:

Manufacturer’s name or trademark and code

Nominal pipe size

PVC cell classification per ASTM D 1784

Pipe stiffness designation “PS _ _ PVC Sewer Pipe” (PS of at least 72 is required

The designation “ASTM F 679”

4. Fitting Markings

Fittings meeting ASTM D 3034 shall have permanent marking that includes the following:

Manufacturer's name or trademark,

Nominal size

The material designation "PVC"

The designation, "ASTM D 3034"

Fittings meeting ASTM F 679 shall have permanent marking that includes the following:

Manufacturer's name or trademark and code

Nominal size

The material designation "PVC"

The designation "ASTM F 679"

5. Tracer Tape

Inductive Tracer Detection Tape shall be placed directly above the centerline of all non-metallic pipe a minimum of 12 inches below subgrade or, in areas outside the limits of pavement, a minimum of 18 inches below finished grade. The tracer tape shall be encased in a protective, inert, plastic jacket and color coded according to American Public Works Association Uniform Color Code. Except for minimum depth of cover, the tracer tape shall be placed according to manufacturer's recommendations. Manufacturers must be listed on SPL WW-597.

(m) Steel Pipe

1. Standard Weight

ASTM A 53, Schedule 40.

2. Extra Heavy Weight

Seamless ASTM A 53, Schedule 80.

3. Encasement Pipe

a. For direct-bury installations, pipe shall conform to ASTM A134 with minimum thickness of 3/8 inch (9.5 mm).

b. For jacked installations, pipe shall conform to requirements on drawings.

4. Fittings

Nipples and fittings extra strong Federal Specification WW-N 351 or WW-P 521.

5. Coatings

Black or galvanized as indicated.

(n) Welded Steel Pipe and Fittings for Water-Pipe

1. General Reference Standards Specification.

Specifications of the American Water Works Association (AWWA) listed below shall apply to this Section.

C-200 Steel Water Pipe 6 inches and larger.

C-205 Cement-Mortar Protective Lining and Coating for Steel Water Pipe, 4 inches and larger, Shop Applied.

C-206 Field Welding of Steel Water Pipe.

C-207 Steel Pipe Flanges for Waterworks Services, Sizes 4 inches through 144 inches.

C-208 Dimensions for Steel Water Pipe Fittings.

C-602 Cement-Mortar Lining of Water Pipelines, 4 inches and larger in Place.

2. Submittals

Furnish Shop Drawings, product data, design calculations and test reports as described below:

a. Certified copies of mill tests confirming the type of materials used in steel plates, mill pipe flanges and bolts and nuts to show compliance with the requirements of the applicable standards.

b. Complete and dimensional working drawings of all pipe layouts. Shop Drawings shall include the grade of material, size, wall thickness of the pipe and fittings, type and location of fittings and the type and limits of the lining and coating systems of the pipe and fittings.

c. Product data to show compliance of all couplings, supports, fittings, coatings and related items.

3. Job Conditions

a. The internal design pressure of all steel pipe and fittings shall be as indicated.

b. The interior of all steel pipe for potable water, 4 inches and larger, shall be cement-mortar lined.

4. Manufacturing

a. Description

Pipe shall comply with AWWA C-200.

(1) Circumferential deflection of all pipe in-place shall not exceed 2.0 percent of pipe diameter.

(2) Diameter

Nominal pipe diameter shall be the inside diameter of lining or pipe barrel, unless otherwise designated in Job Conditions.

b. Wall Thickness

(1) Steel pipe wall thickness shall be designed for the internal and external loads specified in this section. The cylinder thickness needed to resist internal pressure shall be based on an allowable stress in the steel equal to 1/2 the minimum yield stress of the material used.

5. Fittings

a. Welded

Fabricated steel fittings shall be of the same material as pipe and shall comply with AWWA C-208.

6. Flanges

a. Flanges shall comply with the requirements of AWWA C-207, Class D or Class E. The class shall be based on operating conditions and mating flanges of valves and equipment.

b. Gaskets shall be cloth-inserted rubber, 1/8 inch thick.

c. Flanges shall be flat faced with a serrated finish.

7. Pipe Joints

a. Lap Joints for Field Welding

(1) Lap joints for field welding shall conform to AWWA C-206. This item applies only to pipes 72 inches in diameter and larger.

(2) The bell ends shall be formed by pressing on a hydraulic expander or a plug die. After forming, the minimum radius of curvature of the bell end at any point shall not be less than 15 times the thickness of the steel shell. Bell ends shall be formed in a manner to avoid impairment of the physical properties of the steel shell. Joints shall permit a lap at least 1 1/2 inches when assembled. The longitudinal or spiral weld on the inside of the bell end and the outside of the spigot end on each section of pipe shall be ground flush with the plate surface. The inside edge of the bell and the outside edge of the spigot shall be scarfed or lightly ground to remove the sharp edges or burrs.

b. Bell and Spigot Joints with O-Ring Gasket

(1) Bell and spigot joints with rubber gasket shall conform to AWWA C-200.

(2) The bell and spigot ends shall be so designed that when the joint is assembled, it will be self-centered and the gasket will be confined to an annular space in such manner that movement of the pipe or hydrostatic pressure cannot displace it. Compression of the gasket when the joint is completed shall not be dependent upon water pressure in the pipe and shall be adequate to ensure a watertight seal when subjected to the specified conditions of service. Bell and spigot ends shall be welded on preformed shapes. The bell and spigot ends shall conform to the reviewed Shop Drawings.

8. Interior and Exterior Protective Surface Coatings

a. Exterior Surface to be mortar coated shall conform to AWWA C-205 for shop application and AWWA C-602 for field application. Pipe materials shall be the product of an organization, which has had not less than 5 years successful experience manufacturing pipe materials, and the design and manufacture of the pipe, including all materials, shall be the product of one company.

b. All surfaces except as noted in c and d below shall receive shop application of mortar lining and coating.

c. Field Welded Joints. After installation, clean, line and coat unlined or uncoated ends adjacent to welded field joints, including the weld proper, as specified for pipe adjacent to the weld. Potable water only shall be used in the preparation of any cement, mortar, or grout lining.

d. Machined Surfaces. Shop coat machined surfaces with a rust preventative compound. After jointing surfaces, remaining exposed surfaces shall be coated per a) and b) above.

(o) Corrugated Metal Pipe

1. General

Pipe shall be corrugated continuous lock or welded seam helically corrugated pipe. Corrugated metal pipe may be galvanized steel, aluminized steel or aluminum conforming to the following:

Galvanized Steel	AASHTO M 218
Aluminized Steel	AASHTO M 274
Aluminum	AASHTO M 197

Where reference is made herein to gage of metal, the reference is to U.S. Standard Gage for uncoated sheets. Tables in AASHTO M 218 and AASHTO M 274 list thickness for coated sheets in inches. The Tables in AASHTO M 197 list thickness in inches for clad aluminum sheets.

Sampling and testing of metal sheets and coils used for corrugated metal pipe shall be in accordance with TXDOT Test Method Tex-708-I.

Damaged spelter coating shall be repaired by thoroughly wire brushing the damaged area and removing all loose, cracked or weld-burned spelter coating. The cleaned area shall be painted with a zinc dust-zinc oxide paint conforming to Federal Specifications TT-P 641b. Damaged pipe shall be rejected and removed from the project.

Damaged aluminized coating shall be repaired in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations.

The following information shall be clearly marked on each section of pipe:

Thickness and corrugations

Trade Mark of the manufacturer

Specification compliance

2. Fabrication

a. Steel Pipe

Galvanized or aluminized steel pipe shall be full circle or arch pipe conforming to AASHTO M 36, Type I or Type II as indicated.

It may be fabricated with circumferential corrugations; lap joint construction with riveted or spot welded seams or it may be fabricated with helical corrugations with continuous helical lock seam or ultra high frequency resistance butt-welded seams.

b. Aluminum Pipe

Pipe shall conform to AASHTO M 196, Type I, circular pipe or Type II, pipe arch as indicated. It may be fabricated with circumferential corrugations; lap joint construction with riveted or spot welded seams or it may be fabricated with helical corrugations with a continuous helical lock seam.

Portions of aluminum pipe that are to be in contact with high chloride concrete or metal other than aluminum, shall be insulated from these materials by a coating of bituminous material. The coating applied to the pipe or pipe arch to provide insulation between the aluminum and other material shall extend a minimum distance of 1 foot beyond the area of contact.

3. Selection of Gages

The pipe diameter, permissible corrugations and required gauges for circular pipe shall be as indicated on the drawings.

For pipe arch, the span, rise, gage, corrugation size and coating thickness shall be as shown on the drawings. A tolerance of plus or minus 1 inch or 2 percent of equivalent circular diameter, whichever is greater, will be permissible in span and rise, with all dimensions measured from the inside crests of the corrugations.

4. Joint Material

Except as otherwise indicated, coupling bands and other hardware for galvanized or aluminized steel pipe shall conform to AASHTO M 36 for steel pipe and AASHTO M 196 for aluminum pipe. Field joints for each type of corrugated metal pipe shall maintain pipe alignment during construction and prevent infiltration of soil material during the life of the installation.

Coupling bands shall be not more than 3 nominal sheet thickness lighter than the thickness of the pipe to be connected and in no case lighter than 0.052 inch for steel or 0.048 inch for aluminum.

Coupling bands shall be made of the same base metal and coating (metallic or otherwise) as the pipe.

Coupling bands shall lap equally on each of the pipes being connected to form a tightly closed joint after installation.

Pipes furnished with circumferential corrugations shall be field jointed with corrugated locking bands. This includes pipe with helical corrugations, which has reformed circumferential corrugations on the ends. The locking bands shall securely fit into at least one full circumferential corrugation on each of the pipe ends being coupled. The minimum width of the corrugated locking bands shall be as shown below for the corrugation which corresponds to the end circumferential corrugations on the pipes being joined:

10 1/2 inches wide for 2 2/3 inches x 1/2-inch corrugations.

12 inches wide for 3 inches x 1 inch or 5 inches x 1-inch corrugations.

Helical pipe without circumferential end corrugations will be permitted only when it is necessary to join a new pipe to an existing pipe, which was installed with no circumferential end corrugations. In this event pipe furnished with helical corrugations at the ends shall be field jointed with either helically corrugated bands or with bands with projections or dimples. The minimum width of helically corrugated bands shall conform to the following:

12 inches wide for pipe diameters up to and including 72 inches.

14 inches wide for 1 inch deep helical end corrugations.

Bands with projections shall have circumferential rows of projections with one projection for each corrugation. The width of bands with projections shall be not less than the following:

12 inches wide for pipe diameters up to and including 72 inches.

The bands shall have 2 circumferential rows of projections.

16 1/4 inches wide for pipe diameters of 78 inches and greater.

The bands shall have 4 circumferential rows of projections.

Unless otherwise indicated, all bolts for coupling bands shall be 1/2-inch diameter. Bands 12 inches wide or less shall have a minimum of 2 bolts and bands greater than 12 inches wide shall have a minimum of 3 bolts.

Galvanized bolts may be hot dip galvanized conforming to AASHTO M 232, mechanically galvanized to provide the same requirements as AASHTO M 232 or electro-galvanized per ASTM A 164 Type RS.

5. Additional Coatings or Linings

a. Bituminous Coated

Bituminous Coated pipe or pipe arch shall be as indicated both as to base metal and fabrication and in addition shall be coated inside and out with a bituminous coating which shall meet the performance requirements set forth herein. The bituminous coating shall be 99.5 percent soluble in carbon bisulphide. The pipe shall be uniformly coated inside and out to a minimum thickness of 0.05 inch, measured on the crests of the corrugations.

The bituminous coating shall adhere to the metal tenaciously, shall not chip off in handling and shall protect the pipe from deterioration as evidenced by samples prepared from the coating material successfully meeting the Shock Test and Flow Test in accordance with Test Method Tex-522-C.

b. Paved Invert

Where a Paved Invert is indicated, the pipe or pipe arch, in addition to the fully coated treatment described above, shall receive additional bituminous material of the same specification as above, applied to the bottom quarter of the circumference to form a smooth pavement with a minimum thickness of 1/8 inch above the crests of the corrugations.

c. Cement Lined

(1) General

Except as modified herein, pipe shall conform to AASHTO M 36 for lock seam or welded helically corrugated steel pipe. Pipe shall be of full circle and shall be fabricated with two annular corrugations for purposes of joining pipes together with band couplers. Lock seams shall develop the seam strength as required in Table 3 of AASHTO M 36. Concrete lining shall conform to the following:

Composition

Concrete for the lining shall be composed of cement, fine aggregate and water that are well mixed and of such consistency as to produce a dense, homogeneous, non-segregated lining.

Cement

Portland Cement shall conform to AASHTO M 85.

Aggregate

Aggregates shall conform to AASHTO M 6 except that the requirements for gradation and uniformity of gradation shall not apply.

Mixture

The aggregates shall be sized, graded, proportioned and thoroughly mixed with such proportions of cement and water as will produce a homogenous concrete mixture of such quality that the pipe will conform to the design requirements indicated. In no case, however, shall the proportions of Portland Cement, blended cement or Portland Cement plus pozzolanic admixture be less than 470 lb/cu. yd of concrete.

Thickness

The lining shall have a minimum thickness of 1/8 inch above the crest of the corrugations.

Lining Procedures

The lining shall be plant applied by a machine traveling through a stationary pipe. The rate of travel of the machine and the rate of concrete placement shall be mechanically regulated so as to produce a homogenous nonsegregated lining throughout.

Surface Finish

The lining machine shall also mechanically trowel the concrete lining as the unit moves through the pipe.

Certification

Furnish manufacturer's standard certification of compliance upon request of the purchaser.

Joints

Pipe shall be joined together with coupling bands made from steel sheets to an indicated thickness of 0.064 inch (12 ga.). Coupling bands shall be formed with two corrugations that are spaced to provide seating in the third corrugation of

each pipe end without creating more than 1/2 inch ± annular space between pipe ends when joined together.

Bands shall be drawn together by two 1/2 inch galvanized bolts through the use of a bar and strap suitably welded to the band.

When O-ring gaskets are indicated they shall be placed in the first corrugation of each pipe and shall be compressed by tightening the coupling band. Rubber O-ring gaskets shall conform to Section 5.9, ASTM C 361.

(2) Causes for Rejection

Pipe shall be subject to rejection on account of failure to conform to any of the indications. Individual sections of pipe may be rejected because of any of the following:

Damaged ends, where such damage would prevent making satisfactory joint.

Defects that indicate poor quality of work and could not be easily repaired in the field.

Severe dents or bends in the metal itself.

If concrete lining is broken out, pipe may be rejected or at the discretion of the E/A, repaired in the field in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendation.

Hairline cracks or contraction cracks in the concrete lining are to be expected and does not constitute cause for rejection.

d. Fiber Bonded

Where fiber bonded pipe is indicated, the pipe or pipe arch shall be formed from sheets whose base metal shall be as indicated. In addition, the sheets shall have been coated with a layer of fibers, applied in sheet form by pressing them into a molten metallic bonding. If a paved invert is indicated it shall be in accordance with the procedure outlined above. The test for spelter coating above is waived for fiber bonded pipe.

6. Slotted Drain Storm Sewers

The pipes for the slotted drain and slotted drain outfall shall be helically corrugated, lock seam or welded seam pipe. Materials and fabrication

shall be in accordance with the above. The metal thickness shall be a minimum 16 gage.

The chimney assemblies shall be constructed of 3/16 inch welded plate or machine formed 14 gage galvanized steel sheets. The height of the chimney required shall be as indicated. Metal for the welded plate slot shall meet the requirements of ASTM A 36 and the completed plate slot shall be galvanized after fabrication in accordance with ASTM A 123.

Weld areas and the heat affected zones where the slot is welded to the corrugated pipe shall be thoroughly cleaned and painted with a good quality asphalt base aluminum paint.

7. Mortar

Mortar shall be composed of 1 part Type I Portland Cement and 2 parts clean, sharp mortar sand suitably graded for the purpose and conforming in other respects to the provisions for fine aggregate of Item No. 403, "Concrete for Structures". Hydrated lime or lime putty may be added to the mix, but in no case shall it exceed 10 percent by weight of the total dry mix.

(9) Geotextile Filter Fabric for Pipe Bedding Material

Geotextile filter fabric for pipe bedding material shall be Hanes Geo Components - TerraTex NO4.5 (AOS US Standard Sieve 70) geotextile fabric or approved equal.

510.3 Construction Methods

(1) General

Prior to commencing this Work, all erosion control and tree protection measures required shall be in place and all utilities located and protected as set forth in "General Conditions". Clearing the site shall conform to Item No. 102S, "Clearing and Grubbing". Maintenance of environmental quality protection shall comply with all requirements of "General Conditions" and Item No. 601S, "Salvaging and Placing Topsoil".

The Contractor shall Work such that a reasonable minimum of disturbance to existing utilities will result. Particular care shall be exercised to avoid the cutting or breakage of all existing utilities. If at any time the Contractor’s operations damage the utilities in place, the Contractor shall immediately notify the owner of the utility to make the necessary repairs. When active wastewater sewer lines are cut in the trenching operations, temporary flumes shall be provided across the trench while open and the lines shall be restored when the backfilling has progressed to the original bedding lines of the sewer so cut.

The Contractor shall inform utility owners sufficiently in advance of the Contractor's operations to enable such utility owners to reroute, provide temporary detours or to make other adjustments to utility lines in order that the Contractor may Work with a minimum of delay and expense. The Contractor shall cooperate with all utility owners concerned in effecting any utility adjustments necessary and shall not hold the City liable for any expense due to delay or additional Work because of conflicts arising from existing utilities.

The Contractor shall do all trenching in accordance with the provisions and the directions of the E/A as to the amount of trench left unfilled at any time. All excavation and backfilling shall be accomplished as indicated and in compliance with State Statutes.

Where excavation for a pipe line is required in an existing City street, a street cut permit is required and control of traffic shall be as indicated in accordance with the Texas Manual on Uniform Traffic Control Devices.

Wherever existing utility branch connections, sewers, drains, conduits, ducts, pipes or structures present obstructions to the grade and alignment of the pipe, they shall be permanently supported, removed, relocated or reconstructed by the Contractor through cooperation with the owner of the utility, structure or obstruction involved. In those instances where their relocation or reconstruction is impractical, a deviation from line and grade will be ordered by the E/A and the change shall be made in the manner directed.

Adequate temporary support, protection and maintenance of all underground and surface utility structures, drains, sewers and other obstructions encountered in the progress of the Work shall be furnished by, and at the expense of, the Contractor and as approved by the E/A.

Where traffic must cross open trenches, the Contractor shall provide suitable bridges in conformance with Standard 804S-4. Adequate provisions shall be made for the flow of sewers; drains and watercourses encountered during construction and any structures, which may have been disturbed, shall be satisfactorily restored upon completion of Work.

When rainfall or runoff is occurring or is forecast by the U.S. Weather Service, the Contractor shall not perform or attempt any excavation or other earth moving Work in or near the flood plain of any stream or watercourse or on slopes subject to erosion or runoff, unless given specific approval by the E/A. When such conditions delay the Work, an extension of time for working day contracts will be allowed in accordance with "General Conditions".

(2) Water Line/New Wastewater Line Separation

Separation between water, reclaimed water, and wastewater lines shall be provided as shown in the Drawings.

Crossings of water, reclaimed water, and wastewater lines shall conform to details in the Drawings.

Wastewater manholes within 9 feet of water and reclaimed water lines shall be made watertight according to details in the Drawings.

(3) Utility and Storm Sewer Crossings

When the Contractor installs a pipe that crosses under a utility or storm sewer structure and the top of the pipe is within 18 inches of the bottom of the structure, the pipe shall be backfilled as shown in the Drawings. When the Contractor installs a pipe that crosses under a utility or storm sewer structure that is not shown in the Drawings, the pipe shall be backfilled as directed by the Engineer. Payment for backfilling pipe at utility or storm sewer structures not shown in the Drawings shall be by Change Order.

(4) Trench Excavation

Excavation in a paved street shall be preceded by saw cutting completely through any asphaltic cement concrete or portland cement concrete surface, base, or subbase to the underlying subgrade. This requirement shall not apply to excavations made with trenching machines that use a rotating continuous belt or chain for cutting and removing of material.

Underground piped utilities shall be constructed in an open cut in accordance with Federal regulations, applicable State Statutes conforming to Item No. 509S, "Excavation Safety Systems" and with a trench width and depth described below. When pipe is to be constructed in fill above the natural ground, Contractor shall construct embankment to an elevation not less than one foot above the top of the pipe, after which trench is excavated. Required vertical sides shall be sheeted and braced as indicated to maintain the sides of the required vertical excavation throughout the construction period. Adequacy of the design of sheeting and bracing shall be the responsibility of the Contractor's design professional. The Contractor shall be responsible for installation as indicated. After the pipe has been laid and the backfill placed and compacted to 12 inches above the top of the pipe, any sheeting, shoring and bracing required may be removed with special care to insure that the pipe is not disturbed. As each piece of sheeting is removed, the space left by its removal must be thoroughly filled and compacted with suitable material and provisions made to prevent the sides of the trench from caving until the backfill has been completed. Any sheeting left in place will not be paid for and shall be included in the unit price bid for pipe.

(5) Trench Width

Trenches for water, reclaimed, and wastewater lines shall have a clear width on each side beyond the outside surfaces of the pipe bell or coupling of not less than 6 inches nor more than 12 inches.

Trenches for Storm Sewers up to 42 inches shall have a width of 1 foot on each side beyond the outside surfaces of the pipe. Pipes more than 42 inches shall have a trench width not to exceed 18 inches on each side beyond the outside surfaces of the pipe.

If the trench width within the pipe zone exceeds this maximum, the entire pipe zone shall be refilled with approved backfill material, thoroughly compacted to a minimum of 95 percent of maximum density as determined by TxDOT Test Method Tex-114-E and then re-excavated to the proper grade and dimensions. Excavation along curves and bends shall be so oriented that the trench and pipe are approximately centered on the centerline of the curve, using short lengths of pipe and/or bend fittings if necessary.

For all utilities to be constructed in fill above natural ground, the embankment shall first be constructed to an elevation not less than 1 foot above the top of the utility after which excavation for the utility shall be made.

(6) Trench Depth and Depth of Cover

All pipe and in-line appurtenances shall be laid to the grades indicated. The depth of cover shall be measured from the established finish grade, natural ground surface, subgrade for staged construction, street or other permanent surface to the top or uppermost projection of the pipe.

(a) Where not otherwise indicated, all potable/reclaimed water piping shall be laid to the following minimum depths:

1. Potable/reclaimed water piping installed in undisturbed ground in easements of undeveloped areas, which are not within existing or planned streets, roads or other traffic areas shall be laid with at least 36 inches of cover.

2. Potable/reclaimed water piping installed in existing streets, roads or other traffic areas shall be laid with at least 48 inches of cover below finish grade.

3. Unless approved by the E/A, installation of potable/reclaimed water piping in proposed new streets will not be permitted until paving and drainage plans have been approved and the roadway traffic areas excavated to the specified or standard paving subgrade, with all parkways and sidewalk areas graded according to any applicable provisions of the drainage plans or sloped upward from the curb line to the right of way line at a minimum slope of 1/4 inch per foot. Piping and appurtenances installed in such proposed streets shall be laid with at least 36 inches of cover below the actual subgrade.

(b) Where not otherwise indicated, all wastewater piping shall be laid to the following minimum depths:

1. Wastewater piping installed in natural ground in easements or other undeveloped areas, which are not within existing or planned streets, roads or other traffic areas shall be laid with at least 42 inches of cover.

2. Wastewater piping installed in existing streets, roads or other traffic areas shall be laid with at least 66 inches of cover.

3. Wastewater piping installed in such proposed streets shall be laid with at least 48 inches of cover below the actual subgrade.

(7) Classification of Excavation

Excavation will not be considered or paid for as a separate item of Work, so excavated material will not be classified as to type or measured as to quantity. Full payment for all excavation required for the construction shall be included in the various unit or lump sum Contract prices for the various items of Work installed, complete in place. No extra compensation, special treatment or other consideration will be allowed due to rock, pavement, caving, sheeting and bracing, falling or rising water, working under and in the proximity of trees or any other handicaps to excavation.

(8) Dewatering Excavation

Underground piped utilities shall not be constructed or the pipe laid in the presence of water. All water shall be removed from the excavation prior to the pipe placing operation to insure a dry firm granular bed on which to place the underground piped utilities and shall be maintained in such unwatered condition until all concrete and mortar is set. Removal of water may be accomplished by bailing, pumping or by a well-point installation as conditions warrant.

In the event that the excavation cannot be dewatered to the point where the pipe bedding is free of mud, a seal shall be used in the bottom of the excavation. Such seal shall consist of Class B concrete, conforming to Item No. 403, "Concrete for Structures", with a minimum depth of 3 inches.

(9) Trench Conditions

Before attempting to lay pipe, all water, slush, debris, loose material, etc., encountered in the trench must be pumped or bailed out and the trench must be kept clean and dry while the pipe is laid and backfilled. Where needed, sump pits shall be dug adjoining the trench and pumped as necessary to keep the excavation dewatered.

Backfilling shall closely follow pipe laying so that no pipe is left exposed and unattended after initial assembly. All open ends, outlets or other openings in the pipe shall be protected from damage and shall be properly plugged and blocked watertight to prevent the entrance of trench water, dirt, etc. The interior of the pipeline shall at all times be kept clean, dry and unobstructed.

Where the soil encountered at established footing grade is a quicksand, saturated or unstable material, the following procedure shall be used unless other methods are indicated:

All unstable soils shall be removed to a depth of a minimum 2 feet below bottom of piped utility or as required to stabilize the trench foundation. Such excavation shall be carried out for the entire trench width.

All unstable soil so removed shall be replaced with a concrete seal, foundation rock or coarse aggregate materials placed across the entire trench width in uniform layers not to exceed 6 inches, loose measure and compacted by mechanical tamping or other means which shall provide a stable foundation for the utility.

Forms, sheathing and bracing, pumping, additional excavation and backfill required in unstable trench conditions shall be included in the unit price bid for pipe.

(10) Blasting

All blasting shall conform to the provisions of the "General Conditions" and/or "Public Safety and Convenience".

(11) Removing Old Structures

When out of service masonry structures or foundations are encountered in the excavation, such obstructions shall be removed for the full width of the trench and to a depth of 1 foot below the bottom of the trench. When abandoned inlets or manholes are encountered and no plan provision is made for adjustment or connection to the new sewers, such manholes and inlets within the construction limits shall be removed completely to a depth 1 foot below the bottom of the trench. In each instance, the bottom of the trench shall be restored to grade by backfilling and compacting by the methods provided above. Where the trench cuts through storm or wastewater sewers which are known to be abandoned, these sewers shall be cut flush with the sides of the trench and blocked with a concrete plug in a manner satisfactory to the E/A. When old structures are encountered, which are not visible from the existing surface and are still in service, they shall be protected and adjusted as required to the finished grade.

(12) Lines and Grades

Grades, lines and levels shall conform to the General Conditions and/or "Grades, Lines and Levels". Any damage to the above by the Contractor shall be re-established at the Contractor's expense. The Contractor shall furnish copies of all field notes and "cut sheets" to the City.

The location of the lines and grades indicated may be changed only by direction of the E/A. It is understood that the Contractor will be paid for Work actually performed on the basis of the unit Contract prices and that the Contractor shall

make no claim for damages or loss of anticipated profits due to the change of location or grade.

All necessary batter boards or electronic devices for controlling the Work shall be furnished by, and at the expense of, the Contractor. Batter boards shall be of adequate size material and shall be supported substantially. The boards and all location stakes must be protected from possible damage or change of location. The Contractor shall furnish good, sound twilled lines for use in achieving lines and grades and the necessary plummets and graduated poles.

The Contractor shall submit to the Engineer at least six copies of a detailed pipe laying schedule for review and approval. The laying schedule shall list all types of pipe, fittings, valves, hydrants, flanged outlets, and other appurtenances required for construction. The Contractor shall submit the laying schedule at least 30 days in advance of construction on the project. The Engineer will forward review comments to the Contractor for revisions. The Contractor shall make revisions and forward to the Engineer for review. Prior to start of construction on the Project, the Engineer will send a reviewed final laying schedule marked for construction to the Contractor. Should the Contractor's procedures not produce a finished pipe placed to grade and alignment, the pipe shall be removed and relayed and the Contractors procedures modified to the satisfaction of the E/A. No additional compensation shall be paid for the removal and relaying of pipe required above.

(13) Surplus Excavated Materials

Excess material or material which cannot be made suitable for use in embankments will be declared surplus by the E/A and shall become the property of the Contractor to dispose of off site at a permitted fill site, without liability to the City or any individual. Such surplus material shall be removed from the Work site promptly following the completion of the portion of the utility involved.

(14) Pipe Bedding Envelope

Pipe shall be installed in a continuous bedding envelope of the type shown on the drawings or as described herein. The envelope shall extend the full trench width, to a depth of at least 6 inches (150 mm) below the pipe and to a depth of the springline of storm water pipe and at least 12 inches (300 mm) above water, reclaimed, and wastewater pipe.

Standard Bedding Materials

USE / PIPE MATERIAL	Cement Stabilized Backfill	Natural or Mf'd Sand	Pea Gravel	PIPE BEDDING STONE			
				Uncrushed Gravel	Crushed Gravel	Crushed Stone	Stone Screenings
WATER and RECLAIMED WATER							
Welded Steel	X					X	

Service Tubing 3/4" to 2-1/2"		X	X				X
WATER and RECLAIMED WATER (Ductile Iron)							
Up to 15 Inch ID		X	X	X			X
Larger Than 15 Inch ID			X	X			
WATER and RECLAIMED WATER (PVC only) and WASTEWATER							
Up to 15 Inch ID		X	X	X	X	X	X
Larger Than 15 Inch ID			X	X	X	X	
STORMWATER							
Concrete		X	X	X	X	X	X
Metal		X	X	X			X

(b) General requirements and limitations governing bedding selection.

1. Crushed gravel or crushed stone shall not be used with polyethylene tubing or polyethylene film wrap.

2. Uncrushed gravel may be used with polyethylene film wrap in trenches up to 6 feet deep and in deeper trenches where ample trench width, a tremmie, or conditions will allow controlled placement of the gravel without damaging the polyethylene wrap.

3. Bedding shall be placed in lifts not exceeding 8 inches loose thickness and compacted thoroughly to provide uniform support for the pipe barrel and to fill all voids around the pipe.

4. Pea Gravel or bedding stone shall be used in blasted trenches.

(c) Requirements to prevent particle migration.

Bedding material shall be compatible with the materials in the trench bottom, walls and backfill so that particle migration from, into or through the bedding is minimized. The E/A may require one or more of the following measures to minimize particle migration: use of impervious cut-off collars; selected bedding materials, such as pea gravel or bedding stone mixed with sand; filter fabric envelopment of the bedding; cement stabilized backfill; or other approved materials or methods. Measures to minimize particle migration will be shown on the Drawings or designated by the E/A, and, unless provisions for payment are provided in the contract documents, the cost of these

measures shall be agreed by change order. The following limitations shall apply.

1. groundwater is present, or in trenches with grades greater than 5 percent.

2. Pea gravel or bedding stone, alone, shall not be used in the street right-of-way within 5 feet of subgrade elevation in trenches that are 3 feet or wider.

3. each gravel or bedding stone, alone, shall not be used where the trench bottom, sides, or backfill is composed of non-cementitious, silty or sandy soils having plasticity indices less than 20, as determined by the E/A.

4. Sand, alone, shall not be used for installation of concrete storm water pipe unless the bedding envelope is wrapped with a geotextile membrane and the joints of the stormdrain conduit are wrapped to prevent the migration of fines into the bedding envelope and into the stormdrain conduit

5. For concrete storm water pipe, if pea gravel, uncrushed gravel, crushed gravel, crushed stone, or combination thereof is used for pipe bedding material, a geotextile filter fabric shall be placed around the perimeter of the joint

(15) Laying Pipe

No pipe shall be installed in the trench until excavation has been completed, the bottom of the trench graded and the trench completed as indicated.

Laying of corrugated metal pipes on the prepared foundation shall be started at the outlet end with the separate sections firmly joined together, with outside laps of circumferential joints pointing upstream and with longitudinal laps on the sides. Any metal in joints, which is not protected by galvanizing, shall be coated with suitable asphaltum paint. Proper facilities shall be provided for hoisting and lowering the sections of pipe into the trench without damaging the pipe or disturbing the prepared foundation and the sides of the trench. Any pipe which is not in alignment or which shows any undue settlement after laying or damage shall be taken up and re-laid without extra compensation.

Multiple installations of corrugated pipe or arches shall be laid with the centerlines of individual barrels parallel. When not otherwise indicated, clear distances of 2 feet between outer surfaces of adjacent pipes shall be maintained.

No debris shall remain in the drainways or drainage structures.

All recommendations of the manufacturer shall be carefully observed during handling and installation of each material. Unless otherwise indicated, all materials shall be delivered to the project by the manufacturer or agent and unloaded as directed by the Contractor. Each piece shall be placed facing the proper direction near to where it will be installed.

The interior of all pipe, fittings and other accessories shall be kept free from dirt and foreign matter at all times and stored in a manner that will protect them from damage. Stockpiled materials shall be stacked so as to minimize entrance of foreign matter.

The interior of all pipeline components shall be clean, dry and unobstructed when installed.

Piping materials shall not be skidded or rolled against other pipe, etc. and under no circumstances shall pipe, fittings or other accessories be dropped or jolted.

During handling and placement, materials shall be carefully observed and inspected and any damaged, defective or unsound materials shall be marked, rejected and removed from the job site. Minor damage shall be marked and repaired in a manner satisfactory to the E/A. Joints, which have been placed, but not joined, backfilled, etc., shall be protected in a manner satisfactory to the E/A.

(16) Assembling of Pipe

Angular spacing of all joints shall meet the manufacturer's recommendations for the pipe and accessories being used. Side outlets shall be rotated so that the operating stems of valves shall be vertical when the valves are installed. Pressure pipe shall be laid with bell ends facing the direction of pipe installation. Pipe end bells shall be placed upgrade for all wastewater lines.

Orientation marks, when applicable, shall be in their proper position before pipe is seated.

Before joining any pipe, all foreign matter, lumps, blisters, excess coal tar coating, oil or grease shall be removed from the ends of each pipe and the pipe ends shall then be wire brushed and wiped clean and dry. Pipe ends shall be kept clean until joints are made.

Every precaution shall be taken to prevent foreign material from entering the pipe during installation. No debris, tools, clothing or other materials shall be placed in the pipe.

(17) Joints

(a) Mortar (Storm Drain joints only)

Pipe ends shall be clean, free of asphalt or other contaminants, which will inhibit the bond of the mortar to the pipe. The pipe ends shall be moistened immediately prior to placing the mortar in the joint.

(b) Cold Applied Preformed Plastic Gaskets (Storm Drain joints only)

The pipe ends shall be clean and the joint material applied to the dry pipe. In cold weather, the joint material shall be heated to facilitate the seal of the joint.

(c) O-Ring and Push-on Joints

Just before making a joint the ends of the pipe shall be clean, dry, free of any foreign matter, lump blisters, excessive coal tar coating and grease or oil and shall be wire brushed. The gasket and the inside surface of the bell shall be lubricated with a light film of soft vegetable soap compound (Flax Soap) to facilitate telescoping the joints. The rubber gasket if not factory installed shall be stretched uniformly as it is placed in the spigot groove to insure a uniform volume of rubber around the circumference of the groove. The spigot shall be centered in the bell, the pipe pushed home uniformly and brought into true alignment. Bedding material shall be placed and tamped against pipe to secure the joint. Care should be taken to prevent dirt or foreign matter from entering the joint space.

(d) Bolted Joints

All flanged, mechanical or other bolted joints shall be joined with nuts and bolts and be coated as indicated above in Iron Pipe.

(e) Storm Drain Joints

Storm drain joints sealed with preformed flexible joint sealants shall be provided and installed in compliance with ASTM C990. Storm drain joints sealed with rubber gaskets shall comply with ASTM C443. Install joint sealants in accordance with the pipe and joint sealant manufacturers' recommendations. Place the joint sealer so that no dirt or other deleterious materials come in contact with the joint sealing material. Pull or push home the pipe with enough force to properly seal the joint with the final joint opening (gap) on the inside of the installed pipe being less than or equal to the pipe manufacturer's recommended dimensions. Protrusion of joint material greater than 1/8" into the interior of the pipe will not be accepted. Excess joint material will be removed to within 1/8''of pipe surface. Observe joint sealant manufacturer's recommendations for installation temperature of the joint sealant. Apply joint sealant to pipe joint immediately before placing pipe in trench, and then connect pipe to previously laid pipe.

If inspection (video or other means) reveal C-990 joints that show signs of backfill infiltration, or where joints or conduits exhibit excessive joint gap or are otherwise defective, then the contractor has the following options:

1. Conduits less than 36-inches in any dimension**:** pour a concrete collar around the joint or wrap joint with a wrap meeting requirements of ASTM C-877 or approved equal
2. Conduits greater than or equal to 36-inches in all dimensions: repair joints using joint repair techniques recommended by the manufacturer to achieve a completed system that meets all Contract requirements.

(18) Pressure Pipe Laying

(a) Grout for Concrete Steel Cylinder Pipe (CSC) and Welded Steel Pipe

Aggregate, cement, etc., shall be as indicated in "Mortar" herein. Potable water shall be used in the preparation of any cement, mortar, or grout lining.

Grout shall be poured into the recess between the bell and spigot on the outside of the pipe and contained by a joint wrapper ("diaper") recommended by the pipe manufacturer. The wrapper shall have a minimum width of 7 inches for 30 inch and smaller and 9 inches for larger pipe, secured to the pipe by "Band Iron" steel straps. The grout shall be poured in one continuous operation in such manner that after shrinkage and curing the joint recess shall be completely filled.

Mortar for the inside recess shall be of the consistency of plaster. The inside recess between the bell and spigot shall be filled with mortar after the pipe joint on either side of the recess has been backfilled and well tamped with no less than one pipe joint installed ahead of the pipe forming the recess. The mortar shall completely fill the recess and shall be trowelled and packed into place and finished off smooth with the inside of the pipe.

The Contractor shall inspect the joint after the mortar has set and make repairs of any pockets, cracks or other defects caused by shrinkage to the satisfaction of the E/A. The inside surface shall be cleared of any mortar droppings, cement, water, slurry, etc., before they have become set and shall be cleared of any other foreign matter. The inside surface of the pipe shall be left clean and smooth.

Pipe shall be handled at all times with wide non abrasive slings, belts or other equipment designed to prevent damage to the coating and all such equipment shall be kept in such repair that its continued use is not injurious to the coating. The use of tongs, bare pinch-bars, chain slings, rope slings without canvas covers, canvas or composition belt slings with protruding rivets, pipe hooks without proper padding or any other handling equipment, which the E/A deems to be injurious to the coating, shall not be permitted.

The spacing of pipe supports required to handle the pipe shall be adequate to prevent cracking or damage to the cement mortar lining.

(19) Placing Pipe in Tunnels

Piping installed as a carrier pipe in a tunnel, encasement pipe, etc., shall have uniform alignment, grade, bearing and conform to the reviewed Shop Drawings. All necessary casing spacers, bedding material, grout cradle or paving, bracing, blocking, etc., as stipulated by the Contract or as may be required to provide and maintain the required pipe alignment and grade, shall be provided by the Contractor at no cost except as provided by the Bid Items. This shall include casing spacers acceptable to the Owner attached to the carrier pipe in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations. The insertion pushing forces shall not exceed the pipe manufacturer's recommendation. Such carrier piping shall have flexible bolted or gasketed push-on joints or Concrete Steel Cylinder pipe installed as follows:

(a) 21 Inch Pipe and Smaller

Prior to placing the pipe in the tunnel, the inside joint recess at the bell shall be buttered with cement mortar.

After the joint is engaged, the excess mortar shall be smoothed by pulling a tight fitting swab through the joint. Cement mortar protection shall then be placed in the normal manner to the exterior of the joint and allowed to harden sufficiently to avoid dislodgment during installation. If time is of the essence, a quick setting compound may be used.

(b) 24 Inch Pipe and Larger

Each length of pipe shall be pushed into the tunnel as single units. A flexible mastic sealer shall be applied to the exterior of the joint prior to joint engagement. The surfaces receiving the mastic sealer shall be cleaned and primed in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendation. Sufficient quantities of the mastic sealer shall be applied to assure complete protection of all steel in the joint area. The interior of the joint shall be filled with cement mortar in the normal manner after the pipe is in its final position within the tunnel.

(20) Temporary Pipe Plugs, Caps, Bulkheads and Trench Caps

Temporary plugs, caps or plywood bulkheads shall be installed to close all openings of the pipe and fittings when pipeline construction is not in progress.

All temporary end plugs or caps shall be secured to the pipe as provided under Item No. 507, "Bulkheads".

Trench caps shall be reinforced Class D concrete as indicated.

(21) Corrosion Control

(a) Protective Covering

Unless otherwise indicated, all flanges, nuts, bolts, threaded outlets and all other iron or steel components buried and in contact with earth or backfill shall be wrapped with 8-mil (minimum) polyethylene film meeting ANSI/AWWA C-105 to provide a continuous wrap.

(22) Pipe Anchorage, Support and Protection

Pressure pipeline tees, plugs, caps and bends exceeding 22-1/2 degrees; other bends as directed shall be securely anchored by suitable concrete thrust blocking or by approved metal harness. Unless otherwise indicated, on 24 inch or larger piping, all bends greater than 11 1/4 degrees shall be anchored as described herein.

Storm sewers on steep grades shall be lugged as indicated.

(a) Concrete Thrust Blocking

Concrete for use as reaction or thrust blocking shall be Class B conforming to Item No. 403, "Concrete for Structures".

Concrete blocking shall be placed between solid ground and the fitting to be anchored. The area of bearing on the pipe and on the ground shall be as indicated or directed by the E/A. The blocking shall, unless otherwise indicated, be so placed that the pipe, fittings and joints will be accessible for repair.

The trench shall be excavated at least 6 inches outside the outermost projections of the pipe or appurtenance and the trench walls shaped or undercut according to the detail Drawings or as required to provide adequate space and bearing area for the concrete.

The pipe and fittings shall be adequately weighted and laterally braced to prevent floating, shifting or straining of the pipeline while the concrete is being placed and taking initial set. The Contractor shall be solely responsible for the sufficiency of such restraints.

(b) Metal Thrust Restraint

Fabricated thrust restraint systems such as those described below may be approved for use instead of concrete blocking. To obtain approval, the project Drawings must include sufficient drawings, notes, schedules, etc., to assure that the proposed restraints as installed will be adequate to prevent undesirable movement of the piping components. Such restraint systems may only be used where and as specifically detailed and scheduled on approved Project Drawings.

1. Thrust Harness

   A metal thrust harness of tie rods, pipe clamps or lugs, turnbuckles, etc., may be approved. All carbon steel components of such systems, including nuts and washers, shall be hot-dip galvanized; all other members shall be cast ductile iron. After installation, the entire assembly shall be wrapped with 8-mil polyethylene film, overlapped and taped in place with duct tape to form a continuous protective wrap.

2. Restrained Joints

   Piping or fitting systems utilizing integral mechanically restrained joints may be approved. All components of such systems shall be standard manufactured products fabricated from cast ductile iron, hot-dip galvanized steel, brass or other corrosion resistant materials and the entire assembly shall be protected with a continuous film wrap as described for 1. above. Manufacturers of pipe with restrained joints integral to the pipe shall be listed on SPL WW-27F. All pipe and fitting systems with restrained joints shall be identified by applying an adhesive-backed warning tape to the top of the pipe and for the full length of the pipe, regardless of the type of pipe. For plastic pipes the warning tape shall be applied directly to the top of the pipe. For metal pipes and fittings the warning tape shall be applied to the top of the polyethylene film wrap. The warning tape shall conform to 510.2(8)(b)5.

   Location, configuration and description of such products shall be specifically detailed on the Drawings. (Add-on attachments such as retainer glands, all-thread rods, etc., are not acceptable.)

(c) Concrete Encasement, Cradles, Caps and Seals

When trench foundation is excessively wet or unstable or installation of water or wastewater pipe will result in less than 30 inches of cover, Contractor shall notify E/A. E/A may require Contractor to install a concrete seal, cradle, cap, encasement or other appropriate action.

All concrete cap, etc., shall be continuous and begin and end within 6 inches of pipe joints. Concrete cap, cradle and encasement shall conform to City of Austin Standard No. 510S-1, “Concrete Trench Cap”. The pipe shall be well secured to prevent shifting or flotation while the concrete is being placed.

(d) Anchorage Bulkheads

Concrete bulkheads keyed into the undisturbed earth shall be placed as indicated to support and anchor the pipe and/or backfill against end thrust, slippage on slopes, etc. Concrete material and placement shall be Class A, Item No. 403, "Concrete for Structures".

(e) Trench Caps, Concrete Rip-Rap and Shaped Retards

Where called for by the Contract or as directed by the E/A, concrete trench caps, concrete rip-rap and/or shaped retards shall be placed as detailed by the Drawings as protection against erosion. Concrete material and placement shall be Class B, Item No. 403, "Concrete for Structures".

(23) Wastewater Connections

(a) Connections to Mains 12 Inches and Smaller

All branch connections of new main lines shall be made by use of manholes.

Service stubs shall be installed as indicated. Minimum grade shall be 1 percent downward to main and minimum cover shall be 4 1/2 feet at the curb. Standard plugs shall be installed in the dead end before backfilling.

Where a service connection to a main 12 inches or smaller is indicated, a wye, tee or double wye shall be installed.

Where a service connection to a main 15 inches or larger is indicated, a field tap may be made with the pipes installed crown to crown. The tap should be made conforming to the pipe manufacturer's recommendations with the E/A's approval.

Where not otherwise indicated, (wastewater) service connections shall be installed so that the outlet is at an angle of not more than 45 degrees above horizontal at the main line.

(b) Connections to the Existing System

Unless otherwise specified by the E/A, all connections made to existing mains shall be made at manholes with the crown of the inlet pipe installed at the same elevation as the crown of the existing pipe. Service stubs installed on the existing system shall be installed by use of tapping saddles unless otherwise approved by the E/A. Extreme care shall be exercised to prevent material from depositing in the existing pipe as the taps are being made.

When connections to existing mains are made, a temporary plug approved by the E/A must be installed downstream in the manhole to prevent water and debris from entering the existing system before Final Completion. These plugs shall be removed after the castings are adjusted to finish grade or prior to Final Completion.

(c) Connecting Existing Services to New Mains

Where wastewater services currently exist and are being replaced from the main to the property line, those services shall be physically located at the property line prior to installing any new mains into which the services will be

connected. Where wastewater services currently exist but are not being replaced to the property line, those services shall be physically located at the point of connection between the new and existing pipes prior to installing any new mains into which the services will be connected.

(24) Potable or Reclaimed Water System Connections

All necessary connections of new piping or accessories to the existing potable or reclaimed water system shall be made by, and at the expense of, the Contractor. To minimize any inconvenience from outages, the Contractor shall schedule all such connections in advance and such schedule must be approved by the E/A before beginning any Work.

(a) Shutoffs

The City will make all shutoffs on existing potable or reclaimed water mains. The Contractor shall be required to notify the E/A's field representative on the job at least 72 hours prior to the desired time for any shutoff. The E/A's field representative will notify any affected utility customers at least 48 hours prior to the shutoff. The Water Utility will make the shutoff after ensuring that all appropriate measures have been taken to protect the potable or reclaimed water system, customers and employees.

The City will operate all valves to fill existing mains. Where a newly constructed main has not been placed in service and has only one connection to the potable or reclaimed system, the Contractor may operate one valve to fill the main after approval has been obtained from the Water Utility. The operation of the valve is to be conducted under the immediate supervision of the E/A's field representative.

Water for the Work shall be metered and furnished by the Contractor in accordance with Section 01500 of the Standard Contract Documents.

(b) Wet Connections to Existing Water Potable or Reclaimed System

The Contractor shall make all wet connections called for by the Contract or required to complete the Work. Two connections to an existing line performed during the same shutout, at the same time and at a distance less than 50 linear feet apart, will be considered one wet connection. Two connections to an existing line performed during the same shutout, at the same time and at a distance equal to, or greater than 50 linear feet will be considered two wet connections. A wet connection shall include draining and cutting into existing piping and connecting a new pipeline or other extension into the existing pressure piping, forming an addition to the potable or reclaimed water transmission and distribution network.

The Contract price for wet connections shall be full payment for all necessary shutoffs, excavation, removing plugs and fittings, pumping water to drain the

lines, cutting in new fittings, blocking and anchoring piping, bedding and backfilling, placing the lines and service and all site cleanup.

No water containing detectable amounts of chlorine may be drained, released or discharged until specific planning and appropriate preparations to handle, dilute and dispose of such chlorinated water are approved in advance by the City and the disposal operations will be witnessed by an authorized representative from the City.

(c) Pressure Taps to Existing Potable or Reclaimed Water System

The Contractor shall make all pressure taps called for by the Contract Documents or required to complete the Work. A pressure tap shall consist of connecting new piping to the existing potable or reclaimed water system by drilling into the existing pipe while it is carrying water under normal pressure without taking the existing piping out of service.

Unless otherwise provided by the Contract, the Contractor shall, at the Contractor's expense, perform all necessary excavation, furnish and install the tapping sleeve, valve and accessories, provide the tapping machine, drill the tap and shall block, anchor and backfill the piping, valve and all accessories, place the new piping in service and perform all site cleanup. When the City makes the tap, City forces are not obligated or expected to perform any Work except to provide tapping machine and drill the actual hole. If City crews are to make the tap, fiscal arrangements must be made in advance at the Taps Office, Waller Creek Center, 625 East 10th Street.

If a private Contractor makes the tap, an Austin Water Utility Inspector must be present. "Size on size" taps will not be permitted, unless made by use of an approved full circle gasket tapping sleeve. Concrete blocking shall be placed behind and under all tap sleeves 24 hours prior to making the wet tap.

(d) Service Connections

Service connection taps into PVC or AC pipe or into CI or DI pipe 12 inches or smaller shall be made using either a service clamp or saddle or a tapping sleeve as recommended by the pipe manufacturer and as approved by the E/A. Direct tapping of these pipes will not be permitted.

All potable or reclaimed water service connections shall be installed so that the outlet is at an angle of not more than 45 degrees above horizontal at the main line.

Precautions should be taken to ensure that the tapping saddle or sleeve is placed on the pipe straight to prevent any binding or deformation of the PVC pipe. The mounting chain or U-bolt strap must be tight.

Tapping shall be performed with a sharp shell type cutter so designed that it will smoothly penetrate heavy walled PVC DR14 and 200 psi AC and will retain and extract the coupon from the pipe.

(25) Backfilling

(a) General

Special emphasis is placed upon the need to obtain uniform density throughout the backfill material. The maximum lift of backfill shall be determined by the compaction equipment selected and in no case shall it exceed 18 inches, loose measurement.

No heavy equipment, which might damage pipe, will be allowed over the pipe until sufficient cover has been placed and compacted. All internal pipe bracing installed or recommended by the manufacturer shall be kept in place until the pipe bedding and trench backfill have been completed over the braced pipe section. Testing of the completed backfill in streets and under and around structures shall meet the specified density requirements. Initial testing shall not be at Contractor's expense and shall conform to the "General Conditions."

(b) General Corrugated Metal Pipe

After the corrugated metal pipe structure has been completely assembled on the proper line and grade and headwalls constructed where indicated; selected material free from rocks over 8 inches in size from excavation or borrow, as approved by the E/A, shall be placed along both sides of the completed structures equally, in uniform layers not exceeding 6 inches in depth (loose measurement), sprinkled if required and thoroughly compacted between adjacent structures and between the structures and the sides of the trench.

Backfill material shall be compacted to the same density requirements as indicated for the adjoining sections of embankment in accordance with the governing specifications thereof. Above the 3/4 point of the structure, the fill shall be placed uniformly on each side of the pipe in layers not to exceed 12 inches, loose measure.

Prior to adding each new layer of loose backfill material, until a minimum of 12 inches of cover is obtained over the crown of the pipe, an inspection will be made of the inside periphery of the corrugated metal structure to determine if any floating, local or unequal deformation has occurred as a result of improper construction methods.

(c) Backfill Materials

The E/A may approve any of the following well graded materials:

1. Select trench material
2. Sand
3. Crushed rock cuttings
4. Rock cuttings
5. Foundation Rock
6. Blasted material with fines and rock
7. Cement stabilized material
8. Borrow

Within the 100-year flood plain, sand will not be permitted for backfilling. The E/A will approve the topsoil for areas to be seeded or sodded.

(d) Backfill in Street Right of Way

Placement of backfill under existing or future pavement structures and within 2 feet of any structures shall be compacted to the required density using any method, type and size of equipment, which will give the required compaction without damaging the pipe or bedding. Placement of backfill greater than 2 feet beyond structures in Right of Way shall be conform to (g) below. The depth of layers, prior to compaction, shall depend upon the type of sprinkling and compacting equipment used and the test results thereby obtained. Prior to and in conjunction with the compaction operation, each layer shall be brought to the moisture content necessary to obtain the required density and shall be kept level to insure uniform compaction over the entire layer. Testing for density shall be in accordance with Test Method Tex-114-E and Test Method Tex-115-E.

Each layer of backfill must provide the density as required herein. Swelling soils (soils with plasticity index of 20 or more) shall be sprinkled as required to provide not less than optimum moisture nor more than 2 percent over optimum moisture content and compacted to the extent necessary to provide not less than 95 percent nor more than 102 percent of the density as determined in accordance with Test Method Tex-114-E. Non-swelling soils (soils with plasticity index less than 20) shall be sprinkled as required and compacted to the extent necessary to provide not less than 95 percent of the density as determined in accordance with Test Method Tex-114-E.

After each layer of backfill is complete, tests may be made by the E/A. If the material fails to meet the density indicated, the course shall be reworked as necessary to obtain the indicated compaction and the compaction method shall be altered on subsequent Work to obtain indicated density.

At any time, the E/A may order proof rolling to test the uniformity of compaction of the backfill layers. All irregularities, depressions, weak or soft spots that develop shall be corrected immediately by the Contractor.

Should the backfill, due to any reason, lose the required stability, density or finish before the pavement structure is placed, it shall be recompacted and refinished at the sole expense of the Contractor. Excessive loss of moisture in the subgrade shall be prevented by sprinkling, sealing or covering with a subsequent backfill layer or granular material. Excessive loss of moisture shall be construed to exist when the subgrade soil moisture content is more than 4 percent below the optimum of compaction ratio density. Backfill shall be placed from the top of the bedding material to the existing grade, base course, subgrade or as indicated. The remainder of the street backfill shall be Flexible Base, Concrete or Hot Mix Asphalt Concrete as indicated or to replaced in kind to the surface removed to construct the pipe.

(e) Backfill in County Street or State Highway Right of Way

All Work within the right of way shall meet the requirements of (d) above, as a minimum and shall meet the requirements of the permit issued by the County when their requirements are more stringent. Prior to the start of construction, the Contractor shall be responsible for contacting the appropriate TxDOT office or County Commissioner's Precinct Office and following the operating procedures in effect for utility cut permits and pavement repair under their jurisdiction. Approval for all completed Work in the State or County right of way shall be obtained from the appropriate Official prior to final payment by the Owner.

(f) Backfill in Railroad Right of Way

All Work within the railroad right of way shall meet the requirements of (d) above, as a minimum and shall meet the requirements of the permit issued by the Railroad Owner when their requirements are more stringent. Approval for all completed Work in the railroad right of way shall be obtained from the Railroad prior to Final Completion.

(g) Backfill in Easements

Where not otherwise indicated, Contractor may select whatever methods and procedures may be necessary to restore entire Work area to a safe, useful and geologically stable condition with a minimum density of 85 percent or a density superior to that prior to construction.

In and near flood plain of all streams and watercourses, under or adjacent to utilities, structures, etc. all backfill shall be compacted to a density of not less than 95 percent conforming to TxDOT Test Method Tex-114-E, unless otherwise directed by E/A.

All soil areas disturbed by construction shall be covered with top soil and seeded conforming to Item No. 604, "Seeding for Erosion Control". All turf, drainways and drainage structures shall be constructed or replaced to their original condition or better. No debris shall remain in the drainways or drainage structures.

(h) Temporary Trench Repair/Surfacing

If details of temporary trench repair/surfacing are not provided in the contract documents, the Contractor shall submit for approval of the E/A (1) a plan for temporary trench repair for areas that will be open to traffic but will be excavated later for full depth repair, and (2) a proposed method for covering trenches to maintain access to properties. The temporary surfacing shall afford a smooth riding surface and shall be maintained by the Contractor the entire time the temporary surface is in place.

(i) Permanent Trench Repair

The Contractor shall install permanent trench repairs conforming to details in the drawings.

(26) Quality Testing for Installed Pipe

(a) Wastewater Pipe Acceptance Testing

After wastewater pipe has been backfilled, the Contractor shall perform infiltration tests, exfiltration tests, or low pressure air tests as determined by the E/A. In addition. the Contractor shall perform deflection tests and shall assist OWNER'S personnel, as directed, in performing pipeline settlement tests. The Contractor shall be responsible for making appropriate repairs to those element that do not pass any of these tests.

(b) Exfiltration Test

Water for the Work shall be metered and furnished by the Contractor in accordance with Section 01500 of the Standard Contract Documents.

Exfiltration testing shall be performed by the Contractor when determined by the E/A to be the appropriate test method. Exfiltration testing shall conform to requirements of the Texas Commission on Environmental Quality given in the Texas Administrative Code Title 30 Part 1 Chapter 317 Rule §317.2.

(c) Infiltration Test

Infiltration testing shall be performed by the Contractor when determined by the E/A to be the appropriate test method. Infiltration testing shall conform to requirements of the Texas Commission on Environmental Quality given in the Texas Administrative Code Title 30 Part 1 Chapter 317 Rule §317.2.

(d) Pipeline Settlement Test

During the infiltration test or after the exfiltration test, the pipe will be TV inspected for possible settlement. When air testing has been used, water shall be flowed into the pipe to permit meaningful observations. Any pipe settlement which causes excessive ponding of water in the pipe shall be cause for rejection. Excessive ponding shall be defined as a golf ball (1-5/8" dia.) submerged at any point along the line.

(e) Low Pressure Air Test of Gravity Flow Wastewater Lines

1. General

Wastewater lines up to 24-inch diameter shall be air tested between manholes. Wastewater lines 30-inch in diameter shall be air tested between manholes or at pipe joints. Wastewater lines 36-inch diameter and larger shall be air tested at joints. Backfilling to grade shall be completed before the test and all laterals and stubs shall be capped or plugged by the Contractor so as not to allow air losses, which could cause an erroneous test result. Manholes shall be plugged so they are isolated from the pipe and cannot be included in the test.

All plugs used to close the sewer for the air test shall be capable of resisting the internal pressures and must be securely braced. Place all air testing equipment above ground and allow no one to enter a manhole or trench where a plugged sewer is under pressure. Release all pressure before the plugs are removed. The testing equipment used must include a pressure relief device designed to relieve pressure in the sewer under test at 10 psi or less and must allow continuous monitoring of the test pressures in order to avoid excessive pressure. Use care to avoid the flooding of the air inlet by infiltrated ground water. (Inject the air at the upper plug if possible.) Use only qualified personnel to conduct the test.

2. Ground Water

Since the presence of ground water will affect the test results, test holes shall be dug to the pipe zone at intervals of not more than 100 feet and the average height of ground water above the pipe (if any) shall be determined before starting the test.

3. Test Procedure

The E/A may, at any time, require a calibration check of the instrumentation used. Use a pressure gauge having minimum divisions of 0.10 psi and an accuracy of 0.0625 psi. (One ounce per square inch.) All air used shall pass through a single control panel. Clean the sewer to be tested and remove all debris where indicated. Wet the sewer prior

to testing. The average backpressure of any ground water shall be determined (0.433 psi) for each foot of average water depth (if any) above the sewer.

Add air slowly to the section of sewer being tested until the internal air pressure is raised to 3.5 psig greater than the average backpressure of any ground water that may submerge the pipe. After the internal test pressure is reached, allow at least 2 minutes for the air temperature to stabilize, adding only the amount of air required to maintain pressure. After the temperature stabilization period, disconnect the air supply. Determine and record the time in seconds that is required for the internal air pressure to drop from 3.5 psig to 2.5 psig greater than the average backpressure of any ground water that may submerge the pipe.

For pipe less than 36-inch diameter, compare the time recorded with the time computed using the following equation:

$T = (0.0850 \times D \times K) \div Q$, where

T = time for pressure to drop 1.0 pounds per square inch gauge in seconds;

$K = 0.000419 \times D \times L$, but not less than 1.0

D = nominal inside diameter, in inches, as marked on the pipe;

L = length of line of same pipe size in feet; and

Q = rate of loss, 0.0015 cubic feet per minute per square foot of internal surface area (ft3/min/ft sq) shall be used.

Because a K value of less than 1.0 shall not be used, there are minimum test times for each pipe diameter as shown in the following table:

Table For Low Pressure Air Testing of Pipe

Pipe Diameter (inches)	Minimum Time (seconds)	Minimum Time applies to All Pipes Shorter than (feet)	Time for Longer Pipes (seconds)
8	454	298	1.520 × L
10 (See Note 1)	567	239	2.374 × L
12	680	199	3.419 × L
15	850	159	5.342 × L
18	1020	133	7.693 × L
21	1190	114	10.471 × L
24	1360	100	13.676 × L

30	1700	80	21.369 × L

Note 1. 10 inch diameter pipe to be used only by Austin Water Utility maintenance personnel.

Any drop in pressure, from 3.5 psig to 2.5 psig (adjusted for groundwater level), in a time less than that required by the above equation or table shall be cause for rejection. When the line tested includes more than one size pipe, the minimum time shall be that given for the largest size pipe included.

Lines that are 36 inches or larger inside diameter must be air tested at each joint. Lines that are 30-inch diameter may be air tested at each joint. The minimum time allowable for the pressure to drop from 3.5 pounds per square inch to 2.5 pounds per square inch gauge during a joint test, regardless of pipe size, shall be twenty (20) seconds. A drop in pressure from 3.5 psig to 2.5 psig (adjusted for groundwater level) in less than twenty seconds shall be cause for rejection.

Manholes must be tested separately and independently. All manholes must be hydrostatically tested with a maximum loss allowance of 0.025 gallon per foot diameter per foot of head per hour.

When lines are air tested, manholes are to be tested separately by exfiltration or vacuum method (see Standard Specification Item No. 506S, “Manholes”).

(f) Deflection Test

Deflection tests shall be performed by the Contractor on all flexible and semi-rigid wastewater pipes. The tests shall be conducted after the final backfill has been in place at least 30 days. Testing for in-place deflection shall be with a pipe mandrel at 95% of the inside diameter of the pipe. A second test of flexible and semi-rigid wastewater pipes 18 inch size and larger, also with a pipe mandrel sized at 95% of the inside diameter of the pipe, shall be conducted by the Contractor 30 days before the warranty expires on the Contractor’s Work.

Contractor shall submit proposed pipe mandrels to the E/A or the E/A’s designated representative for concurrence prior to testing the line.

Test(s) must be performed without mechanical pulling devices and must be witnessed by the E/A or the E/A’s designated representative.

Any deficiencies noted shall be corrected by the Contractor and the test(s) shall be redone.

(g) Inspection of Installed Storm Drain Conduits

1. General

All storm drain conduits (pipe and box culvert) shall be inspected for conformance to the requirements of this specification. Smart Housing, low/moderate income housing, and projects that are 100-percent privately funded are exempt from the cost of the initial video inspection. All deficiencies revealed by inspection shall be corrected. Video re-inspection meeting the requirements of this specification shall be provided at the Contractor's expense to show that deficiencies have been corrected satisfactorily. Further, the contractor shall provide video in complete segments (manhole to manhole) versus specific deficiency locations.

Projects that are not exempt from the cost of the initial video inspection are also subject to the following constraints:

- All inspectors utilized by the Contractor for video inspection shall be NASSCO-PACP certified for a minimum of 3 years.
- The Contractor will be required to inspect, assess, and record the condition of the storm drain pipe using National Association of Sewer Service Companies (NASSCOs) Pipeline Assessment Certification Program (PACP) coding standards.

2. Video Inspection of Installed Storm Drain Conduits

Contractor shall provide all labor, equipment, material and supplies and perform all operations required to conduct internal closed-circuit television and video recording of all storm drain conduits. Video recording of each storm drain conduit section shall be conducted after the trench has been backfilled and prior to placement of permanent pavement repairs or permanent pavement reconstruction. The video recording shall be provided to the Owner for review. Contractor shall not place permanent pavement repairs or permanent pavement reconstruction over the storm drain conduit until Owner has reviewed the video and agrees that there are no defects in the storm drain conduit installation shown in the video submitted by the Contractor or shown in any video acquired by the Owner through other means. Placement of permanent pavement repair or permanent pavement reconstruction over the installed storm drain conduit before the Owner acknowledges no defects shall be at the Contractor's risk. Any defects revealed by the video inspection shall be corrected at the Contractor's expense and a new video submitted to the Owner for review prior to acceptance of the conduit.

All video work shall be conducted under the direct full-time supervision of a NASSCO-PACP certified operator.

The conduit inspection camera shall have the capability of panning plus/minus 275 degrees and rotating 360 degrees. The television camera shall be specifically designed and constructed for such use. The camera shall be operative in 100% humidity conditions. Camera shall have an accurate

footage counter that displays on the monitor the exact distance of the camera (to the nearest tenth of a foot) from the centerline of the starting manhole or access point. Camera shall have height adjustment so that the camera lens is always centered within plus/minus 10% of the center axis of the conduit being videoed. Camera shall provide a minimum of 460 lines of horizontal resolution and 400 lines of vertical resolution. Camera shall be equipped with a remote iris to control the illumination range for an acceptable picture. Geometrical distortion of the image shall not exceed one percent (1%). The video image produced by each camera shall be calibrated using a Marconi Resolution Chart No. 1 or equivalent.

Lighting for the camera shall be sufficient to allow a clear picture of the entire periphery of the conduit without loss of contrast, flare out of picture or shadowing. A reflector in front of the camera may be required to enhance lighting in dark or large sized conduit. The video camera shall be capable of showing on the digital display the Owner's name, Project name, Contractor name, date, line size and material, conduit identification, and ongoing footage counter. The camera, television monitor, and other components of the video system shall be capable of producing a picture quality satisfactory to the satisfaction of the Owner. The recording of the internal condition of the storm drain conduit shall be clear, accurate, focused and in color. If the recording fails to meet these requirements, the, equipment shall be removed and replaced with equipment that is suitable. No payment will be made for an unsatisfactory recording.

If during video inspection, water is encountered inside the conduit, the conduit shall be dewatered by the Contractor. The storm drain section must be dry. Video recording conducted while the camera is floating is not acceptable unless approved by the Owner.

If during video inspection, debris is encountered that prohibits a proper inspection of the conduit, the Contractor shall remove the debris before proceeding.

All video shall be documented using a data logger and reporting system that are PACP compliant and which use codes as established by the National Association of Sewer Service Companies (NASSCO)s - Pipeline Assessment and Certification Program (PACP).

Computer printed location records shall be kept by the Contractor and shall clearly show the location and orientation of all points of significance such as joints, conduit connections, connections at manholes and inlets, and defects. Copy of all records shall be supplied to the Owner. Noted defects shall be documented as color digital files and color hard copy print-outs. Photo logs shall accompany each photo submitted.

The video recording shall supply a visual and audio record of the storm drain conduits that may be replayed. Video recordings shall include an audio track recorded by the video technician during the actual video work describing the parameters of the storm drain conduit being videoed (i.e. location, depth, diameter, pipe material), as well as describing connections, defects and unusual conditions observed during the video work. Video recording playback shall be at the same speed that it was recorded. Slow motion or stop-motion playback features may be supplied at the option of the Contractor. Once videoed, the CDs/DVDs shall be labeled and become the property of the Owner. The Contractor shall have all video and necessary playback equipment readily accessible for review by the Owner while the project is under construction.

Post-installation video shall not be completed until all work is completed on a section of storm drain conduit. Post-installation video work shall be completed by the Contractor in the presence of the Owner. The post-installation video work shall be completed to confirm that the storm drain conduits are free of defects. Provide a color video showing the completed work. Prepare and submit video logs providing location of storm drain conduit along with location of any defects. Manhole and inlet work shall be complete prior to post-installation video work.

For post-installation video, exercise the full capabilities of the camera equipment to document the completion and conformance of the storm drain installation work with the Contract Documents. Provide a full 360-degree view of conduit, all joints, and all connections. The camera shall be moved through the storm drain conduit in either direction at a moderate rate, stopping and slowly panning when necessary to permit proper documentation of the conduit condition at each pipe connection, joint, and defect. In no case shall the camera be pulled at a speed greater than 30 feet per minute. Manual winches, power winches, TV cable, and powered rewinds or other devices that do not obstruct the camera view or interfere with proper documentation of the storm drain conditions shall be used to move the camera through the storm drain conduit. When manually operated winches are used to pull the camera through the conduit, telephones or other suitable means of communication shall be set up between the two access points of the conduit being videoed to insure good communication between members of the video crew.

Distance measurements shall be provided to an accuracy of one tenth of a foot.

Video shall be continuous for each storm drain conduit segment. Do not show a single segment on more than one CD/DVD, unless specifically allowed by the Owner."

Contractor shall submit to Owner the following:

A. National Association of Sewer Service Companies (NASSCO) Pipeline Assessment and Certification Program (PACP) certification of operators who will be performing video work.

B. Compact Disc (CD) or Digital Video Disc (DVD) of recording of storm drain conduits (concrete storm water pipe or box culvert).
   a. The color CD or DVD shall include a digital color key map in a format acceptable to the Owner with each segment of storm drain conduit labeled with the appropriate inspection ID on the map.
   b. The file folder for each segment of the storm drain conduit shall have a unique name based on the Owner's approved inspection naming convention and shall contain the following:
      i. Video files
      ii. Video inspection logs with information coded in accordance with the PACP
      iii. Photo logs
      iv. A report summarizing the results of the video inspection
      v. A proposed method of repair for any defects discovered.

3. Time commitments from City for projects that are exempt from the cost of the initial video inspection

Projects that are exempt from the cost of the initial video inspection are afforded the following time commitments from the City.

A. Initial inspection – contractor must inform the City of Austin construction inspector assigned to the project in writing that all stormdrain infrastructure for the project has been completed according to the permit and is ready for inspection. The inspector will then notify the Watershed Protection Department (WPD) in writing that the all of the stormdrain infrastructure for the project has been completed and is ready for inspection. The WPD is allowed 15-days to complete inspection from written notification by the inspector. The outcome of this item does not impact the one-year warranty requirements.

B. Video re-inspection by the contractor for deficient installed stormdrain infrastructure. The contractor must submit the video inspection data as defined in this specification to the City of Austin construction inspector assigned to the project along with a written letter of transmittal certified by a professional engineer stating that all identified stormdrain infrastructure installation deficiencies for the project have been corrected. The inspector will then notify the Watershed Protection Department (WPD) in writing and convey the video inspection data to the WPD. The WPD is allowed 15-days to

complete review of the data from the date of delivery by the inspector.

(27) Pressure Pipe Hydrostatic Testing

After the pipe has been installed and backfilled and all service laterals, fire hydrants and other appurtenances installed and connected, a pressure test, followed by a leakage test, will be conducted by the City. The City will furnish the pump and gauges for the tests. The Contractor shall be present and shall furnish all necessary assistance for conducting the tests. The specified test pressures will be based on the elevation of the lowest point of the line or section under test. Before applying the specified test pressure, all air shall be expelled from the pipe. If permanent air vents are not located at all high points, the Contractor shall install corporation cocks at such points.

All drain hydrant and fire hydrant leads, with the main 6-inch gate valve open and the hydrant valve seats closed and nozzle caps removed, shall be included in the test.

(a) Pressure Test

The entire project or each valved section shall be tested, at a constant pressure of 200 psi for a sufficient period (approximately 10 minutes) to discover defective materials or substandard work. The Contractor assumes all risks associated with testing against valves. Repairs shall be made by the Contractor to correct any defective materials or substandard work. The Contractor shall pre-test new lines before requesting pressure tests by City Forces. The Contractor shall have new lines pressurized to a minimum of 100 psi, on the date of testing, prior to arrival of City Forces.

(b) Leakage Test

A leakage test will follow the pressure test and will be conducted on the entire project or each valved section. The Contractor assumes all risks associated with testing against valves. The leakage test shall be conducted at 150 psi for at least 2 hours. The test pressure shall not vary by more than ±5 psi for the duration of the test.

(1) Allowable Leakage

Leakage shall be defined as the quantity of water that must be supplied into any test section of pipe to maintain the specified leakage test pressure after the air in the pipeline has been expelled and the pipe has been filled with water.

No pipe installation will be accepted if leakage exceeds the amount given by the following formula:

Allowable leakage (gal / hr) = [L × D] ÷ 10,875

Where L = length of pipe tested, in feet

D = nominal pipe diameter, in inches, as marked on the pipe

(2) Location and Correction of Leakage

If such testing discloses leakage in excess of this specified allowable, the Contractor, at the Contractor's expense, shall locate and correct all defects in the pipeline until the leakage is within the indicated allowance.

All visible leakage in pipe shall also be corrected by Contractor at the Contractor's expense.

(28) Service Charges for Testing

Initial testing performed by City forces for the Contractor will be at the City's expense. Retesting, by City forces, of Contractor's work that fails initial testing will be at the Contractor's expense. The City's charge for retests will be $265.00, plus $50.00 for each hour over four hours. On City-funded projects, the charges incurred by the City for retesting will be deducted from funds due the Contractor. On non-City-funded projects, the charges incurred by the City for retesting will be billed to the Contractor. The City will withhold acceptance of the Contractor's work until the Contractor has paid the City for the retesting costs.

(29) Disinfection of Potable Water Lines

(a) Preventing Contamination

The Contractor shall protect all piping materials from contamination during storage, handling and installation. Prior to disinfection, the pipeline interior shall be clean, dry and unobstructed. All openings in the pipeline shall be closed with watertight plugs when pipe laying is stopped at the close of the day's work.

(b) Cleaning

Prior to disinfection the Contractor shall clean the pipeline to remove foreign matter. For pipelines 16" in diameter or smaller, cleaning shall consist of flushing the pipeline. For pipelines greater than 16" in diameter, cleaning shall be performed by operating hydrants and blow-offs located at low points in the pipeline, or by mechanical means (sweeping or pigging. Water for the Work shall be metered and furnished by the Contractor in accordance with Section 01500 of the Standard Contract Documents.

(c) Procedure and Dosage

The Contractor, at its expense, will supply the test gauges and the Sodium Hypochlorite conforming to ANSI/AWWA B300, which contains approximately 5 percent to fifteen percent available chlorine, and will submit for approval a written plan for the disinfection process. Calcium Hypochlorite conforming to ANSI/AWWA B300, which contains approximately 65 percent available chlorine by weight, may be used in granular form or in 5 g tablets for 16" diameter or smaller lines, if it is included as part of the written plan of disinfection that is approved by the City of Austin. The Contractor, at its expense, shall provide all other equipment, supplies and the necessary labor to perform the disinfection under the general supervision of the City.

One connection to the existing system will be allowed with a valve arranged to prevent the strong disinfecting dosage from flowing back into the existing water supply piping. The valve shall be kept closed and locked in a valve box with the lid painted red. No other connection shall be made until the disinfection of the new line is complete and the water samples have met the established criteria. The valve shall remain closed at all times except when filling or flushing the line and must be staffed during these operations. Backflow prevention in the form of a reduced pressure backflow assembly must be provided if the valve is left unattended. The new pipeline shall be filled completely with disinfecting solution by feeding the concentrated chlorine and approved water from the existing system uniformly into the new piping in such proportions that every part of the line has a minimum concentration of 50 mg/liter available chlorine.

The disinfecting solution shall be retained in the piping for at least 24 hours and all valves, hydrants, services, stubs, etc. shall be operated so as to disinfect all their parts. After this retention period, the water shall contain no less than 25 mg/liter chlorine throughout the treated section of the pipeline.

For pipelines larger than 16" in diameter, the Contractor may use the AWWA C-651 "Slug Method" for disinfecting the pipeline. Chlorine shall be fed at a constant rate and at a sufficient concentration at one end of the pipeline to develop a slug of chlorinated water having not less than 100 mg/liter of free chlorine. The Contractor shall move the slug through the main so that all interior surfaces are exposed to the slug for at least three (3) hours. The chlorine concentration in the slug shall be measured as it moves through the pipeline. If the chlorine concentration drops below 50 mg/liter, the Contractor shall stop the slug and feed additional chlorine to the head of the slug to restore the chlorine concentration to at least 100 mg/liter before proceeding. As the slug flows past fittings and valves, related valves and hydrants shall be operated so as to disinfect appurtenances and pipe branches.

Unless otherwise indicated, all quantities specified herein refer to measurements required by the testing procedures included in the current edition of "Standard Methods". The chlorine concentration at each step in the disinfection procedure shall be verified by chlorine residual determinations.

(d) Final Flushing

The heavily chlorinated water shall then be carefully flushed from the potable water line until the chlorine concentration is no higher than the residual generally prevailing in the existing distribution system. Proper planning and appropriate preparations in handling, diluting, if necessary, and disposing of this strong chlorine solution is necessary to insure that there is no injury or damage to the public, the water system or the environment. The plans and preparations of the Contractor must be approved by the City before flushing of the line may begin. Additionally the flushing must be witnessed by an authorized representative of the City.

Approval for discharge of the diluted chlorine water or heavily chlorinated water into the wastewater system must be obtained from the Austin Water Utility. The line flushing operations shall be regulated by the Contractor so as not to overload the wastewater system or cause damage to the odor feed systems at the lift stations. The City shall designate its own representative to oversee the work.

Daily notice of line discharging must be reported to the Austin Water Utility Dispatch office.

(e) Bacteriological Testing

After final flushing of the strong disinfecting solution, two (2) sets of water samples from the line, that are taken at least twenty-four (24) hours apart, will be tested for bacteriological quality by the City and must be found free of coliform organisms before the pipeline may be placed in service. Each set shall consist of one (1) sample that is drawn from the end of the main and additional samples that are collected at intervals of not more than 1000 feet along the pipeline. All stubs shall be tested before connections are made to existing systems.

The Contractor, at its expense, shall install sufficient sampling taps at proper locations along the pipeline. Each sampling tap shall consist of a standard corporation cock installed in the line and extended with a copper tubing gooseneck assembly. After samples have been collected, the gooseneck assembly may be removed and retained for future use.

Samples for bacteriological analysis will only be collected from suitable sampling taps in sterile bottles treated with sodium thiosulfate. Samples shall not be drawn from hoses or unregulated sources. The City, at its expense, will furnish the sterile sample bottles and may, at its discretion, collect the test samples with City personnel.

If the initial disinfection fails to produce acceptable sample test results, the disinfection procedure shall be repeated at the Contractor’s expense. Before

the piping may be placed in service, two (2) consecutive sets of acceptable test results must be obtained.

An acceptable test sample is one in which: (1) the chlorine level is similar to the level of the existing distribution system; (2) there is no free chlorine and (3) total coliform organisms are absent. An invalid sample is one, which has excessive free chlorine, silt or non-coliform growth as defined in the current issue of the "Standards Methods." If unacceptable sample results are obtained for any pipe, the Contractor may, with the concurrence of the Inspector, for one time only flush the lines and then collect a second series of test samples for testing by the City. After this flushing sequence is completed, any pipe with one or more failed samples must be disinfected again in accordance with the approved disinfection procedure followed by appropriate sampling and testing of the water.

The City of Austin Water Quality Laboratory will notify the assigned City of Austin Inspector in writing of all test results. The Inspector will subsequently notify the Contractor of all test results. The Water Quality Laboratory will not release test results directly to the Contractor.

(30) Cleanup and Restoration

It shall be the Contractor's responsibility to keep the construction site neat, clean and orderly at all times. Cleanup shall be vigorous and continuous to minimize traffic hazards or obstructions along the streets and to driveways. Trenching, backfill, pavement repair (as necessary), and cleanup shall be coordinated as directed by the City. The E/A will regulate the amount of open ditch and may halt additional trenching if cleanup is not adequate to allow for orderly traffic flow and access.

Materials at the site shall be stored in a neat and orderly manner so as not to obstruct pedestrian or vehicular traffic. All damaged material shall be removed from the construction site immediately and disposed of in a proper manner. All surplus excavated materials shall become the property of the Contractor for disposal at the Contractor’s expense. After trenching, the Contractor shall immediately remove all excavated materials unsuitable for or in excess of, backfill requirements. Immediately following the pipe laying Work as it progresses, the Contractor shall backfill, grade and compact all excavations as provided elsewhere. The backfill placed at that time shall meet all compaction test requirements. The Contractor shall immediately clean up and remove all unused soil, waste and debris and restore all surfaces and improvements to a condition equal or superior to that before construction began and to an appearance which complements the surroundings. The Contractor shall grade and dress the top 6 inches of earth surfaces with soil or other material similar and equal to the surrounding, fill and smooth any visible tracks or ruts, replace and re-establish all damaged or disturbed turf or other vegetation and otherwise make every effort to encourage the return of the entire surface and all improvements to a pleasant appearance and useful

condition appropriate and complementary to the surroundings and equal or similar to that before construction began.

Placement of the final lift of permanent pavement, if a pavement is required, shall begin immediately after all testing of each segment of piping is satisfactorily completed.

510.4 Measurement

Pipe will be measured by the linear foot for the various types, sizes and classes. Parallel lines will be measured individually.

Where a line ties into an existing system, the length of the new line will be measured from the visible end of the existing system at the completed joint. Unless otherwise indicated, the length of water, reclaimed, and wastewater lines will be measured along pipe horizontal centerline stationing through fittings, valves, manholes, and other appurtenances.

Ductile iron fittings, whether standard mechanical joint or integral factory restrained joint type, will be measured by the ton and paid for in accordance with the schedule in Standard Products List WW-27C. Bolts, glands and gaskets will not be measured for payment. Steel cylinder concrete pipe fittings and welded steel pipe fittings will not be measured separately and are included in the unit price for the respective pipe bid items.

Factory restrained joint pipe meeting the requirements of Standard Products List WW-27F will be measured by the linear foot. The estimated quantity on the bid form is only for restrained joint pipe having integral mechanically restrained joints.

Connecting a new water, wastewater, or reclaimed water service to an existing, comparable type of private service will be measured by each connection. Service pipe from the main to the service connection will be measured by the linear foot.

The Contractor shall be responsible for removing and treating ground water flowing into a trench up to a baseline flow rate of 350 gpm of sustained flow for each mainline open trench (no more that 300 linear feet open trench per work zone segment is allowed at one time). This baseline flow rate is not a prediction of ground water conditions to be expected on the Project. Rather, it establishes contract terms regarding the quantity of ground water for which the contractor is responsible without extra or separate compensation. The flow rate must exceed 350 gpm continuously for at least 4 consecutive hours to be considered sustained flow. It is expected that trench dewatering for this baseline rate may be accomplished with a single 3-inch trash-type pump per open trench; however, measured flow rate, not pump size, type or characteristics shall be used to determine if the baseline rate has been exceeded. Flow rate shall be determined by measurements made at the discharge point of the water treatment facilities. Surface storm water flowing into a trench shall be the Contractor's

responsibility to remove and treat without compensation, regardless of inflow rate or volume.

Adjustment of elevations during construction resulting in changes in flow line elevations of plus or minus two feet or less will not be considered for credit or additional compensation and no measurement for payment will be made.

Stormwater pipe will be measured along the slope of the pipe. Where drainage pipe ties into inlets, headwalls, catch basins, manholes, junction boxes or other structures that length of pipe tying into the structure wall will be included for measurement but no other portion of the structure length or width will be so included.

Excavation and backfill, when included as pipe installation will not be measured as such but shall be included in the unit price bid for constructing pipe and measured as pipe complete in place including excavation and backfill.

When pay items are provided for the other components of the system, measurement will be made as addressed hereunder.

Video inspection of newly installed box culverts and storm drain pipe will be measured per linear foot of pipe videoed.

510.5 Payment

Payment for pipe, measured as prescribed above, will be made at the unit price bid per linear foot for the various sizes of pipe, of the materials and type indicated, unless unstable material is encountered or trench excavation and backfill is bid as a separate item.

The concrete seal, foundation rock or coarse aggregate when used as directed in unstable material will be paid for at the unit price bid per cubic yard, which shall be full payment for all excavation and removal of unsuitable material and furnishing, placing and compacting the foundation rock, coarse aggregate or other approved material all complete in place.

Excavation and backfill, when included as a separate pay item, will be paid for by Pay Item No. 510-E or 510-F.

No separate payment will be made for dewatering a trench with ground water inflow of less than the baseline rate of 350 gpm of sustained flow as described above. Dewatering of those trenches shall be included in the contract unit price of the Pipe pay item. Payment for dewatering a trench with ground water inflow exceeding 350 gpm of sustained flow shall be agreed by change order. Dewatering of bore pits shall be included in the contract unit price for Bore Entry Pit or Exit Pit regardless of inflow rate or volume unless specified otherwise in the bid item for Bore Entry Pit or Exit Pit.

(1) Pipe

Payment for pipe, measured as prescribed above, will be made at the unit price bid per linear foot complete-in-place as designed and represented in the Drawings and other Contract documents. Restrained joint pipe meeting the requirements of Standard Products List WW-27F will be paid for separately at the unit price bid per linear foot. Unless otherwise provided herein, as separate pay item(s), the bid price per linear foot of pipe shall include the following:

clearing

constructing any necessary embankment

excavation

disposal of surplus or unusable excavated material

furnishing, hauling and placing pipe

field constructed joints, collars, temporary plugs, caps or bulkheads

all necessary lugs, rods or braces

pipe coatings and protection

connections to existing systems or structures, concrete blocking and thrust blocks and restrained joints

preparing, shaping, pumping for dewatering, and shoring of trenches

bedding materials

backfill materials

hauling, placing and preparing bedding materials

particle migration measures

hauling, moving, placing and compacting backfill materials

temporary pavement repairs and maintenance

temporary and permanent removal and replacement of pavement, curb, drainage structures, driveways, sidewalks and any other improvements damaged or removed during construction

cleanup

vertical stack on deep wastewater services

all other incidentals necessary to complete the pipe installation as indicated.

pipe joint restraint devices, where specified or allowed, meeting Standard Products Lists WW-27A or WW-27G .

No separate payment will be made for thrust restraint measures.

Steel cylinder concrete pipe fittings and welded steel pipe fittings will not be paid for separately. These will be including in the unit price bid for the bid item Pipe.

(2) Concrete Cradles and Seals

When called for in the Bid, concrete cradles and seals will be paid for at the unit Contract price bid per linear foot for the size of pipe specified, complete in place.

(3) Concrete Retards

When called for in the Bid, Concrete retards will be paid under Item No. 593S, “Concrete Retards".

(4) Boring or Jacking

When called for in the Bid, boring or jacking will be paid under Item 501S, "Jacking or Boring Pipe”.

(5) Wet Connections to Water Mains

When called for in the bid, wet connections will be paid at the unit price bid per each, complete in place, according to the size of the main that is in service and shall be full compensation for all Work required to make the connection and place the pipe in service. (See subsection 510.3 ‘Construction Methods’ part (24) (b) ‘Wet Connections to Existing Water System’).

(6) Fittings

Ductile iron fittings, furnished in accordance with these specifications, will be paid for at the unit price bid per ton, complete in place, according to the schedule of weights in Standard Products List WW-27C. Bolts, glands, and gaskets will not be paid for separately and shall be included in the contract unit price for fittings.

(7) Concrete Trench Cap and Encasement

Where the distance between the top of the concrete encasement and the top of the trench cap is less than 36 inches, the concrete cap and encasement shall be poured as one unit and paid for under this bid item at the Contract price bid per linear foot. When the distance above is greater than 36 inches or when the trench cap is placed separately, the trench cap shall be paid for as a separate item, per linear foot, complete in place.

(8) Cement-Stabilized Backfill

Cement-stabilized backfill will be paid for at the unit price bid per linear foot and shall be full payment to the Contractor for furnishing and installing the required material, mixed, placed and cured complete in place.

(9) Concrete Encasement

When called for in the Bid, Concrete Pipe Encasement will be paid under Item No. 505S, “Encasement and Encasement Pipe".

(10) Pressure Taps

Pressure taps will be paid for at the unit price bid, complete in place, according to the size tap made and the size main tapped and shall be full payment for furnishing all necessary materials, including tapping sleeve and valve, making the tap, testing and placing the connection in service.

(11) Excavation Safety Systems

When called for in Bid, Trench Safety Systems shall conform to Item No. 509S, "Excavation Safety Systems".

(12) Connecting a New Water, Wastewater, or Reclaimed Water Service to an existing, comparable type of private service will be paid for at the unit price bid, complete in place, according to the size of new service and size of existing private service, and shall be full payment for furnishing and installing all necessary materials, such as cleanouts, pipe, couplings, and fittings, and including excavation and backfill.

(13) Video Inspection

Video Inspection of Newly Installed Box Culverts and Storm Drain Pipe will be paid for at the unit price bid per linear foot and shall be full payment for all labor, equipment, and materials required for video inspection per this specification, including all submittals of CD/DVD as required.

Payment, when included as a Contract pay item, will be made under one of the following:

Pay Item No. 510-AR __Dia.	Pipe, __Dia. _____Type (all depths), including Excavation and Backfill	Per Linear Foot.
Pay Item No. 510-ARRJ-__Dia.:	Factory Restrained Joint Pipe, __Dia. Class____ Ductile Iron, (all depths) including Excavation and Backfill	Per Linear Foot.
Pay Item No. 510-BR___x___Dia.:	Connecting New_____Service to Existing Private Service (____Dia. New	Per Each.

	Service to ____Dia. Private Service)	
Pay Item No. 510 - CR:	Pipe Excavation, ____Ft. Width	Per Linear Foot.
Pay Item No. 510 - DR:	Pipe Trench Backfill, ____Ft. Width	Per Linear Foot.
Pay Item No. 510 - ER:	Concrete Seal or Cradle, ____Dia. Pipe	Per Linear Foot.
Pay Item No. 510 - FR:	Concrete Trench Cap, ____Ft. Width	Per Linear Foot.
Pay Item No. 510 - GR:	Concrete Cap and Encasement, ____Dia. Pipe	Per Linear Foot.
Pay Item No. 510 - HR:	Cement Stabilized Backfill, ___Dia. Pipe	Per Linear Foot.
Pay Item No. 510 - IR___x___Dia.:	Pressure Taps, ___ Dia. X ___ Dia.	Per Each.
Pay Item No. 510 - JR___x___Dia.:	Wet Connections, ___ Dia. x ___ Dia.	Per Each.
Pay Item No. 510 - KR:	Ductile Iron Fittings	Per Ton.
Pay Item No. 510-ASD___Dia.:	Pipe, __Dia. Type (all depths), including Excavation and Backfill	Per Linear Foot.
Pay Item No. 510-CSD:	Pipe Excavation, ____Ft. Width	Per Linear Foot.
Pay Item No. 510-DSD:	Pipe Trench Backfill, ____Ft. Width	Per Linear Foot.
Pay Item No. 510-ESD:	Concrete Seal or Cradle, ____Dia. Pipe	Per Linear Foot.
Pay Item No. 510-FSD:	Concrete Trench Cap, ____Ft. Width	Per Linear Foot.
Pay Item No. 510-GSD	Concrete Cap and Encasement, __Dia. Pipe	Per Linear Foot.
Pay Item No. 510-HSD:	Cement Stabilized Backfill, ___Dia. Pipe	Per Linear Foot.
Pay Item No. 510-AW___Dia.:	Pipe, __Dia. Type (all depths), including Excavation and Backfill	Per Linear Foot.
Pay Item No. 510-AWRJ___Dia.:	Factory Restrained Joint Pipe, ___Dia., Class____ Ductile Iron, (all depths) including Excavation and Backfill	Per Linear Foot.
Pay Item No. 510-BW___x___Dia.:	Connecting New_____Service to Existing Private Service (____Dia. New Service to ____Dia. Private Service)	Per Each.
Pay Item No. 510-CW:	Pipe Excavation, ____Ft. Width	Per Linear Foot.

Pay Item No. 510-DW:	Pipe Trench Backfill, ____Ft. Width	Per Linear Foot.
Pay Item No. 510-EW:	Concrete Seal or Cradle, ____Dia. Pipe	Per Linear Foot.
Pay Item No. 510-FW:	Concrete Trench Cap, ____Ft. Width	Per Linear Foot.
Pay Item No. 510-GW:	Concrete Cap and Encasement, __Dia. Pipe	Per Linear Foot.
Pay Item No. 510-HW:	Cement Stabilized Backfill, ___Dia. Pipe	Per Linear Foot.
Pay Item No. 510-IW___x___Dia.	Pressure Taps, ___ Dia. X ___ Dia.	Per Each.
Pay Item No. 510-JW___x___Dia.:	Wet Connections, ___ Dia. x ___ Dia.	Per Each.
Pay Item No. 510-KW:	Ductile Iron Fittings	Per Ton.
Pay Item No. 510-AWW___Dia.:	Pipe, __Dia. ___Type (all depths), including Excavation and Backfill	Per Linear Foot.
Pay Item No. 510-AWWRJ___Dia.	Factory Restrained Joint Pipe, ___Dia., Class Ductile Iron, (all depths) including Excavation and Backfill	Per Linear Foot.
Pay Item No. 510-BWW___x___Dia.:	Connecting New_____Service to Existing Private Service (____Dia. New Service to ____Dia. Private Service)	Per Each.
Pay Item No. 510-CWW:	Pipe Excavation, ____Ft. Width	Per Linear Foot.
Pay Item No. 510-DWW:	Pipe Trench Backfill, ____Ft. Width	Per Linear Foot.
Pay Item No. 510-EWW:	Concrete Seal or Cradle, ____Dia. Pipe	Per Linear Foot.
Pay Item No. 510-FWW:	Concrete Trench Cap, ____Ft. Width	Per Linear Foot.
Pay Item No. 510-GWW:	Concrete Cap and Encasement, _Dia. Pipe	Per Linear Foot.
Pay Item No. 510-HWW:	Cement Stabilized Backfill, ___Dia. Pipe	Per Linear Foot.
Pay Item No. 510-KWW:	Ductile Iron Fittings	Per Ton.

Current Version: October 3, 2013

Previous Versions: 01/02/13, 09/26/12, 02/24/10, 06/06/08, 03/26/08, 8/16/04, 5/10/04, 12/23/02, 12/14/01, 4/05/99, and 8/18/98

Pay Item No. 510-VIDEO	Video Inspection of Newly Installed Box Culverts and Storm Drain Pipe	Per Linear Foot.

An “R” after the pay item indicates the use for reclaimed water.

An “SD” after the pay item indicates the use for storm drain.

A "W" after the pay item indicates the use for water.

A "WW" after the pay item indicates the use for wastewater.

End

Applicable References:

Standard Specifications Manual: Item Nos. Ref: 102S, 210S, 402S, 403S, 501S, 505S, 506, 507S, 509S, 593S, 601S, 604S

Standards Manual: Standard Detail Nos. 510S-1, (520 - series).

Design Criteria Manuals: Utilities Criteria Manual, Section 5.

Current Version: September 26, 2012

Previous Versions: 02/24/10, 06/06/08, 3/26/08, 3/09/04, 9/17/01, 4/05/99 and 8/15/97

Item No. 511S
Water Valves

511S.1 Description

This item shall govern the valves furnished and installed as indicated on the Drawings. Unless otherwise indicated on the Drawings, all valves 4 inches (102 mm) and larger shall be AWWA-type valves of suitable design and fully equipped for service buried in the earth, without need for further modification and shall be wrapped with 8-mil (0.2 mm) polyethylene film with all edges and laps securely taped to provide a continuous wrap. For reclaimed water piping, the polyethylene film shall be purple. Where not indicated, the Contractor may use valves with any type end-joint allowed for fittings of the pipe class being used. Unless otherwise indicated on the Drawings, all valve stems shall be adjusted to situate the operating nut not more than 24 inches (0.6 meters) below the proposed ground or paving surface of the finished project. Laydown valves shall not be used unless indicated otherwise on the Drawings by call out. Standard details shall not be an indicator of options.

This specification is applicable for projects or work involving either inch-pounds or SI units. Within the text, inch-pound units are given preference followed by SI units shown within parentheses.

511S.2 Materials

The Contractor shall submit descriptive information and evidence that the materials and equipment the Contractor proposes for incorporation in the Work is of the kind and quality that satisfies the specified functions and quality. The City of Austin Water and Wastewater Utility Standard Products Lists (SPL) are considered to form a part of these Specifications. Contractors may, when appropriate, elect to use products from the SPL; however, submittal to the Engineer/Architect (E/A) is still required. If the Contractor elects to use any materials from these lists, each product shall be completely and clearly identified by its corresponding SPL number when making the product submittal. This will expedite the review process in which the E/A, and, if necessary, the Water and Wastewater Utility Standard Products Committee, decide whether the products meet the Contract requirements and the specific use foreseen by the E/A in the design of this engineered Project.

The SPL's should not be interpreted as being a pre-approved list of products necessarily meeting the requirements for a given construction Project. Items contained in the SPL cannot be substituted for items shown on the Drawings, or called for in the specifications, or specified in the Bidding Requirements, Contract Forms and Conditions of Contract, unless approved by the E/A in conjunction with the Water and Wastewater Utility Standard Products Committee. The Standard Product List current at the time of plan approval will govern.

A) Samples, Inspection and Testing Requirements:

All tests and inspections called for by the applicable standards shall be performed by the manufacturer. Upon request, results of these tests shall be made available to the purchaser.

B) Other Requirements:

Each submittal shall be accompanied by:

1) Complete data covering:

a). the operator, including type and size, model number, etc.,

b). the name and address of the manufacturer's nearest service facility,

c). the number of turns to fully open or close the valve.

2) Detailed instructions for calibrating the limit stops for open and closed positions, and

3) Any other information that may be necessary to operate and maintain the operator.

4) Complete dimensional data and installation instructions for the valve assembly as it is to be installed, including the operator.

5) Complete replacement parts lists and drawings, identifying every part for both the valve and operator.

511S.3 Valves

A) Iron-Body Gate Valves

Resilient-seated gate valves for potable or reclaimed service, including tapping valves, shall conform to AWWA C-509 and Standard Products List item WW-282.

Reduced-wall, resilient-seated gate valves for potable or reclaimed service, including tapping valves, shall conform to AWWA C-515 and Standard Products List item WW-700,

Metal-seated gate valves for potable or reclaimed service, including tapping valves, shall conform to AWWA C-500 and Standard Products List item WW-132.

1) Stem Seals: All valves shall have approved O-ring type stem seals. At least two O-rings shall be in contact with the valve stem where it penetrates the valve body.

2) Operation: All valves shall have non-rising stems with a 2" (50 mm) square operating nut, or with a spoke type handwheel when so ordered, turning clockwise to close.

3) Gearing: Gate valves in 24 inch (610 mm) and larger sizes shall be geared and, when necessary for proper bury depth and cover, shall be the horizontal bevel-geared type enclosed in a lubricated gear case.

4) Bypass: Unless otherwise indicated on the Drawings, 16 inch (406 mm) and larger metal-seated gate valves shall be equipped with a bypass of the non-rising stem type which meets the same AWWA standard required for the main valve.

5) Valve Ends: Valve ends shall be push-on, flanged or mechanical joint, as indicated or approved.

   Tapping valves shall have inlet flanges conforming to MSS SP-60, with boltholes drilled per ANSI B16.1 Class 125. Seat rings and body casting shall be over-sized as required to accommodate full size cutters; the outlet end shall be constructed and drilled to allow the drilling machine adapter to be attached directly to the valve.

6) Gear Case: All geared valves shall have enclosed gear cases of the extended type, attached to the valve bonnet in a manner that makes it possible to replace the stem seal without disassembly and without disturbing the gears, bearing or gear lubricant. Gear cases shall be designed and fabricated with an opening to atmosphere so that leakage past the stem seal does not enter the gear case.

7) Valve Body: Double disc gate valves in 16 inch (406 mm) and larger sizes installed in the horizontal position shall have bronze rollers, tracks, scrapers, etc. For reclaimed water valves, the body shall be manufactured in purple, factory painted purple, or field painted purple.

B) Butterfly Valves:

Unless otherwise indicated, all valves shall conform to the current "AWWA" Standard C-504, "Rubber-Seated Butterfly Valves", Class 150B, except as modified or supplemented herein.

1) Functional Requirements

a). Valves shall be the short body design and shall have flanged connections on both ends unless otherwise called for.

b). Valves shall be of such design that the valve discs will not vibrate or flutter when operated in a throttled position. Valve discs shall be secured to the shafts by means of keys or pins so arranged that the valve discs can be readily removed without damage thereto. All keys and pins used in securing valve discs to shafts shall be stainless steel or monel. Valve discs shall be stainless steel or ductile iron, ASTM A 536, Grade 65-45-12 (448-310-12); seating edge shall be stainless steel or other corrosion resistant material.

c). Valve shafts shall be constructed of wrought stainless steel or monel. The ends of the shaft shall be permanently marked to indicate the position of the disc on the shaft.

d). All buried valves shall have approved manufacturer's O-ring type or split V type "Chevron" shaft seals. When O-ring seals are used, there shall be at least two O-rings in contact with the valve shaft where it penetrates the valve body.

On 24 inch (635 mm) and larger valves, the seat shall be completely replaceable and/or adjustable with common hand tools without disassembling the valve from the pipeline.

Rubber seats located on the valve disc shall be mechanically secured with stainless steel retainer rings and fasteners.

e). Unless otherwise indicated, valves shall be provided with manual operators with vertical stems and 2 inches (50 mm) square operating nut turning clockwise to close and equipped with a valve disc position indicator. All keys or pins shall be stainless steel or monel. Buried valves shall have the valve stems extended or adjusted to locate the top of the operating nut no more than 24 inches (0.6 meter) below finish grade.

f). Unless otherwise indicated, motorized butterfly valves shall be equipped with 230/460 volt, 3-phase reversing motor operators, extended as required to locate the center line of the operator shaft approximately 4 feet to 4 feet, 6 inches (1.2 to 1.4 meters) above finish grade. Operators shall be equipped with cast iron or malleable iron manual override hand wheel with a valve position indicator, local push button controls, lighted status/position indicator, torque and travel limit switches and all switches, relays and controls (except external power and signal wiring) necessary for both local and remote operation.

2) Performance Requirements

a). Unless otherwise indicated, valve operators shall be sized to seat, unseat, open and close the valve with 150 psi (1 megapascal) shutoff pressure differential across the disk and allow a flow velocity of 16 feet (4.9 meters) per second past the disc in either direction.

b). Motorized valve motors shall be capable of producing at least 140 percent of the torque required to operate the valves under conditions of maximum non-shock shutoff pressure without exceeding a permissible temperature rise of 131^{0}F over 104^{0}F ambient (55 degrees Celsius over 40 degrees Celsius ambient); they shall have a duty rating of not less than 15 minutes and shall be capable of operating the valve through 4 1/2 cycles against full unbalanced pressure without exceeding the permissible temperature rise. Motors shall be suitable for operating the valve under maximum differential pressure when voltage to motor terminals is 80 percent of nominal voltage. Motor bearings shall be permanently lubricated and sealed.

C) Ball Valves:

Ball valves shall be brass, bronze, stainless steel or PVC as indicated on the Drawings or Details or as approved by the Engineer or designated representative.

D) Air-Vacuum Release Valves

1) Valves shall be combination air-release, air-vacuum units having small and large orifice units contained and operating within a single body or assembled unit.

The small orifice system shall automatically release small volumes of air while the pipe is operating under normal conditions. The large air-vacuum orifice system shall automatically exhaust large volumes of air while the pipe is being filled and shall permit immediate re-entry of air while being drained.

Valves shall be rated for at least 150 psi (1 megapascal) {maximum} normal service pressure.

2) Material Requirements

Valve exterior bodies and covers shall be cast iron or reinforced nylon.

Internal bushings, hinge pins, float guide and retaining screws, pins, etc., shall be stainless steel, bronze, nylon or Buna-N rubber.

Orifice seats shall be Buna-N rubber.

Floats shall be stainless steel, nylon or Buna-N rubber, rated at 1000 psi (6.9 megapascals).

Unless otherwise indicated, these valves shall be as included in the Standard Products List (SPL WW-367 for water, WW-462 for wastewater force mains).

E) Fire Hydrants

All fire hydrants shall be Dry Barrel, Traffic Model (break-away), Post Type having Compression Type Main Valves with 5 1/4" (133 mm) opening, closing with line pressure. Approved models are listed on SPL WW-3 of the Water and Wastewater Utility Standard Products List.

1) Applicable Specifications

AWWA C-502 current: "AWWA Standard for Dry-Barrel Fire Hydrants".

NFPA 1963: "National (American) Standard Fire Hose Coupling Screw Thread" and City of Austin 4 inch (102 mm) Fire Hose Connection Standard (Available upon request from the Austin Water Utility's Standards Committee Chairperson at 972-0204).

ANSI A-21.11 current: "American National Standard for Rubber Gasket Joints for Cast Iron and Ductile Iron Pressure Pipe and Fittings".

2) Functional Requirements

Design Working Pressure shall be 200 psi (1.38 megapascals) and a test pressure of 400 psi (2.76 megapascals).

Inlet shall be side connection hub end for mechanical joint (ANSI A-21.11-current). Shoe shall be rigidly designed to prevent breakage.

Lower Barrel shall be rigid to assure above ground break at traffic feature. Bury length of hydrant shall be four (4) feet (1.2 meters) minimum, five (5) feet (1.5 meters) maximum (hydrant lead pipe may be elbowed up from main using restrained joints; flanged joints in lead pipes are not allowed). Flange type connections between hydrant shoe, barrel sections and bonnet shall have minimum of 6 corrosion resistant bolts.

Hydrant Main Valve shall be 5 1/4 inch (133 mm) I.D. Valve stem design shall meet requirements of AWWA C502, with Operating Nut turning clockwise to close. Operating Nut shall be pentagonal, 1 1/2 inch (38 mm) point to flat at base, and 1 7/16 inches (36.5 mm) at top and 1 inch (25 mm) minimum height. Seat ring shall be bronze (bronze to bronze threading), and shall be removable with lightweight stem wrench. Valve mechanisms shall be flushed with each operation of valve; there shall be a minimum of two (2) drain ports.

Traffic Feature shall have replaceable breakaway ferrous metal stem coupling held to stem by readily removable type 302 or 304 stainless steel fastenings. Breakaway flange or frangible lugs shall be designed to assure aboveground break. Breakaway or frangible bolts will not be acceptable.

Outlet Nozzles shall be located approximately 18 inches (450 mm) above ground. Each hydrant shall have two (2) 2 1/2 inch (63.5 mm) nozzles 180 degrees apart with National (American) Standard Fire Hose Coupling Screw Thread NFPA 1963 and one (1) 4 inch (102 mm) pumper nozzle with City of Austin standard thread–six (6) threads per inch (25 mm) "Higbee" cut, 4.8590 inch (123.4 mm) O.D., 4.6425 inch (117.9 mm) root diameter. Nozzles shall be threaded or cam-locked, O-ring sealed, and shall have type 302 or 304 stainless steel locking devices. Nozzle caps (without chains) and cap gaskets shall be furnished on the hydrant. The cap nut shall have the same configuration as the operating nut.

Hydrants shall be Dry-Top Construction, factory lubricated oil or grease with the lubricant plug readily accessible. The system shall be described for City approval.

A blue Type II-B-B reflectorized pavement marker, conforming to Standard Specification Item No. 863S, shall be placed 2 to 3 feet (0.6 to 0.9 meters) offset from the centerline of paved streets, on the side of and in line with, all newly installed fire hydrants.

Hydrant shall have double O-ring seals in a bronze stem sheath housing to assure separation of lubricant from water and shall have a weather cap or seal, or both, as approved by the Owner, to provide complete weather protection.

3) Material Requirements

All below ground bolts shall be corrosion resistant. The hydrant valve shall be Neoprene, 90-durometer minimum. The seat ring, drain ring, operating nut and nozzles shall be bronze, AWWA C-502 current, containing not over 16 percent zinc. Break-away stem coupling shall be of ferrous material; its retaining pins, bolts, nuts, etc. of type 302 or 304 stainless steel.

Coatings shall be durable and applied to clean surfaces. Exterior surfaces above ground shall receive a coating of the type and color specified in the applicable version of City of Austin SPL WW-3. The coating shall be applied according to coating manufacturer's specifications. Other exposed ferrous metal shall receive asphalt-based varnish, or approved equal, applied according to the coating manufacturer's specifications.

F) Pressure/Flow Control Valves:

All control valves to regulate pressure, flow, etc., in City lines shall be models listed in the City of Austin Water and Wastewater Standard Products List (SPL).

G) Drain Valves:

Drain valve materials and installation shall conform to City of Austin Standard Detail No. 511S-9A.

H) Valve Stem Extensions:

Valve stem extensions shall consist of a single piece of the required length with a socket on one end and a nut on the other.

511S.4 Construction Methods

A) Setting Valves, Drains and Air Releases

Unless otherwise indicated, main line valves, drain valves and piping, air and vacuum release assemblies and other miscellaneous accessories shall be set and jointed in the manner described for cleaning, laying, and jointing pipe.

Unless otherwise indicated, valves shall be set at the locations shown on the Drawings and such that their location does not confict with other appurtenances such as curb ramps. Valves shall be installed so that the tops of operating stems will be at the proper elevation required for the piping at the location indicated above. Valve boxes and valve stem casings shall be firmly supported and maintained, centered and aligned plumb over the valve or operating stem, with the top of the box or casing installed flush with the finished ground or pavement in existing streets, and installed with the top of the box or casing approximately 6 inches (150 mm) below the standard street subgrade in streets which are excavated for paving construction or where such excavation is scheduled or elsewhere as directed by the Engineer or designated representative.

Drainage branches or air blowoffs shall not be connected to any sanitary sewer or submerged in any stream or be installed in any other manner that will permit back siphonage into the

distribution system (see City of Austin "Standard Detail Drawings- Series 500/500S"). Every drain line and every air release line shall have a full sized independent gate valve flanged directly to the main. Flap-valves, shear gates, etc., will not be accepted.

B) Setting Fire Hydrants:

Fire hydrants shall be located in a manner to provide accessibility and in such a manner that the possibility of damage from vehicles or conflict with pedestrian travel will be minimized. Unless otherwise directed, the setting of any hydrant shall conform to the following:

Hydrants between curb and sidewalk on public streets shall be installed as shown on Standard 511S-17, with outermost point of large nozzle cap 6" to 18" (150 mm to 450 mm) behind back of curb. Where walk abuts curb, and in other public areas or in commercial areas, dimension from gutter face of curb to outermost part of any nozzle cap shall be not less than 3 feet (0.9 meters), nor more than 6 feet (1.8 meters), except that no part of a hydrant or its nozzle caps shall be within 6 inches (150 mm) of any sidewalk or pedestrian ramp. Any fire hydrant placed near a street corner shall be no less than 20 feet (6 meters) from the curb line point of tangency. Fire hydrants shall not be installed within nine feet (2.75 meters) vertically or horizontally of any sanitary sewer line regardless of construction.

All hydrants shall stand plumb; those near curbs shall have the 4-inch (102 mm) nozzle facing the curb and perpendicular to it. The hydrant bury mark shall be located at ground or other finish grade; nozzles of all new hydrants shall be approximately 18 inches (450 mm) above grade. Lower barrel length shall not exceed 5 feet (1.5 meters). Barrel extensions are not permitted unless approved by the Engineer or designated representative. Each hydrant shall be connected to the main by 6-inch (152 mm) ductile iron pipe; a 6-inch (152 mm) gate valve shall be installed in the line for individual shutoff of each new hydrant.

Below each hydrant, a drainage pit 2 feet (0.6 meter) in diameter and 2 feet (0.6 meter) deep shall be excavated and filled with compacted coarse gravel or broken stone mixed with coarse sand under and around the bowl of the hydrant, except where thrust blocking is located (City of Austin Specification Item 510 and Standard Detail 510-6 and to a level 6 inches (150 mm) above the hydrant drain opening.

The hydrant drainage pit shall not be connected to a sanitary sewer. The drain gravel shall be covered with filter fabric to prevent blockage of voids in the gravel by migration of backfill material. The bowl of each hydrant shall be well braced against unexcavated earth at the end of the trench with concrete thrust blocking (taking care not to obstruct the hydrant drain holes), or the hydrant shall be tied to the pipe with approved metal harness rods and clamps. The fire line shall be provided with joint restraint from the main line to the fire hydrant. Hydrants shall be thoroughly cleaned of dirt or foreign matter before setting.

Fire hydrants on mains under construction shall be securely wrapped with a poly wrap bag or envelope taped into place. When the mains are accepted and placed in service the bag shall be removed.

C) Pressure Taps: Refer to Section 510.3 (24) of Standard Specification Item Number 510, "Pipe".

D) Plugging Dead Ends

Standard plugs shall be inserted into the bells of all dead ends of pipes, tees or crosses and spigot ends shall be capped. All end plugs or caps shall be secured to the pipe conforming to Section 510.3 (22) of Standard Specification Item Number 510, "Pipe".

E) Protective Covering:

Unless otherwise indicated, all flanges, nuts, bolts, threaded outlets and all other steel component shall be coal tar coated and shall be wrapped with standard minimum 8-mil (0.2 mm) low density polyethylene film or a minimum 4-mil (0.1 mm) cross laminated high-density polyethylene meeting ANSI/AWWA Specification C-105-current, with all edges and laps taped securely to provide a continuous and watertight wrap. Repair all punctures of the polyethylene, including those caused in the placement of bedding aggregates, with duct tape to restore the continuous protective wrap before backfilling. For reclaimed water piping, the polyethylene shall be purple.

F) Valve Box, Casing and Cover:

Stems of all buried valves shall be protected by valve box assemblies. Valve box castings shall conform to ASTM A 48, Class 30B. Testing shall be verified by the manufacturer at the time of shipment. Each casting shall have cast upon it a distinct mark identifying the manufacturer and the country of origin. Valve boxes and covers for potable water shall be round. Valve boxes and covers for reclaimed water piping shall be square and shall have “Reclaimed Water” indicated on the lid.

G) Drain Valve Installations:

Refer to City of Austin Standards 511S-9A.

H) Air Release Assemblies:

Refer to City of Austin Standards 511S-1A, 511S-1B, 511S-2A, 511S-2B, 511S-3A and 511S-3B.

I) Pressure/Flow Control Valves:

Assemblies shall be installed as indicated.

J) Connections to Existing System:

Refer to Item No. 510, "Pipe" for connections to the existing system.

K) Shutoffs:

Refer to Item No. 510, "Pipe" for shutoffs.

511S.5 Measurement

All types of valves will be measured per each. Fire hydrants and drain valve assemblies will be measured per each. Fire Hydrant barrel extensions will be measured per vertical foot (meter: 1 meter equals 3.28 feet). Pressure/Flow control valve assemblies and both manual and automatic air release assemblies will be measured per each. Reflectorized pavement markers for identifying the location of newly installed fire hydrants shall be measured per each, as per Standard Specification Item No. 863S.7.

Bury depths exceeding 5.5 feet (1.68 meters) are defined as Additional Bury Depths. Additional bury depths will only be measured if indicated on the Drawings and identified in the Standard Contract Bid Form 00300U; otherwise, the unit bid price for each completed unit includes all depths.

511S.6 Payment

Payment shall include full compensation, in accordance with the pay item established in the bid, for excavation, furnishing, hauling and placing valves, drain valve assemblies, fire hydrants and barrel extensions including anchorage and all incidental materials and work; preparing, shaping, dewatering, bedding, placing and compacting backfill materials and for all other incidentals necessary to complete the installation, as indicated in the Drawings, complete in place.

Payment for iron fittings and for wet connections is covered in Section 510.6 of Standard Specification Item 510, “Pipe".

Payment for excavation safety systems is covered in Section 509S.10 of Standard Specification Item 509S, Excavation Safety Systems.

A) Valves: Valves will be paid for at the unit bid price for the size and type valve installed, including valve stem casing and cover, excavation and backfill, setting, adjusting to grade, anchoring in place, and other appurtenances necessary for proper operation.

B) Fire Hydrants: Fire Hydrants installation shall be paid for at the unit bid price, which includes all necessary labor and materials to set, adjust to grade and anchor the hydrant body, barrel extensions, concrete block, gravel drain, and other appurtenances necessary for proper operation; but shall not include pipe and valve between the main line and fire hydrant base.

C) Pressure or Flow Control Valve Assemblies: Pressure control and flow control valve assemblies will be paid for at the unit bid price, including box or vault, setting, adjusting to grade, anchoring in place, adjusting the control device to the required conditions, providing other appurtenances necessary for proper operation, and placing in operation.

D) Drain Valve Assemblies: Drain valve installation shall be paid for at the unit bid price , which includes all necessary labor and materials to set, adjust to grade and anchor the bends, vertical piping, blind flange, joint restraint devices, concrete blocking, concrete pad, and other appurtenances necessary for proper operation; but shall not include pipe and valve between the main line and drain valve buried bend.

E) Manual Air Release Assemblies: Manual air release installations will be paid for at the unit bid price and shall include valves, fittings, pipe, tapping the main, box and cover, and other appurtenances necessary for proper operation.

F) Automatic Combination Air/Vacuum Release Valve Assembly: Automatic air-vacuum release assemblies will be paid for at the unit bid price and will include the main line tap or outlet, all pipe, valves, fittings, box or vault and cover, and other appurtenances necessary for proper operation.

G) Additional Bury Depth: Additional bury depth will be paid for at the unit bid price, which will include all work necessary to install units with bury depths exceeding 5.5 feet (1.68 meters).

H) Fire Hydrant Barrel Extensions: Hydrant barrel extensions will be paid for at the unit bid price which will include necessary hardware and rod extensions.

I) Reflectorized Pavement Markers: Pavement markers will be paid for at the unit bid price, which will include necessary surface preparation and adhesive, as per Standard Specification Item No. 863S.8.

Payment, when included as a contract pay item, will be made under one of the following:

Pay Item No. 511S-A:	Valves, _____ Type, _____Diameter	Per Each.
Pay Item No. 511S-B:	Fire Hydrants (See Standard No. 511S-17)	Per Each.
Pay Item No. 511S- C:	Pressure or Flow Control Valve Assemblies	Per Each.
Pay Item No. 511S- D:	Drain Valve Assemblies (See Standard No. 511S-9A)	Per Each.
Pay Item No. 511S- E:	Manual Air Release Assemblies, ____Diameter	Per Each.

Pay Item No. 511S- F:	Automatic Combination Air/Vacuum Release Valve Assembly, _____ Diameter.	Per Each.
Pay Item No. 511S- G:	Additional Bury Depth	Per Vertical Foot.
Pay Item No. 511S-H:	Fire Hydrant Barrel Extensions	Per Vertical Foot

END

SPECIFIC CROSS REFERENCE MATERIALS
Specification 511S, "Water Valves"

City of Austin Standard Specification Items

Designation	Description
Item No. 510	Pipe
Section-510.3 (22)	Pipe Anchorage, Support and Protection
Section-510.3(24)	Water System Connections

City of Austin Standard Details

Designation	Description
511S-1A	25 mm (1") – 76 mm (2") Vented Air Release Valve Installation (Type I)
511S-1B	25 mm (1") – 76 mm (2") Non-Vented Air Release Valve Installation (Type I)
511S-2A	Type II - 76 mm (3") or Larger Vented Air/Vacuum Valve Installation
511S-2B	Type II - 76 mm (3") or Larger Non-Vented Air/Vacuum Valve Installation
511S-3A	Type III - 76mm (3") or Larger Vented Air/Vacuum Valve Installation
511S-3B	Type III-76mm (3") or Larger Non-Vented Air/Vacuum Valve Installation
511S-9A	Drain Valve Assembly
511S-17	Standard Fire Hydrant Installation

SPECIFIC CROSS REFERENCE MATERIALS (Continued)
Specification 511S, "Water Valves"

City of Austin W/WW Standard Products

Designation	Description
WW-3	Standard Products List for Fire Hydrants
WW-132	Standard Products List for Metal-Seated Gate Valves, AWWA C-500
WW-282	Standard Products List for Resilient-Seated Gate Valves, AWWA C-509
WW-367	Standard Products List for Air Release Valves for Water
WW-462	Standard Products List for Air Release/Vacuum Relief Valves for Wastewater
WW-700	Standard Products List for Resilient-Seated Gate Valves, AWWA C-515

ANSI/AWWA Standards

Designation	Description
A-21.11	American National Standard for Rubber Gasket Joints for Cast Iron and Ductile Iron Pressure Pipe and Fittings
C-105	American National Standard for Polyethylene Encasement for Ductile-Iron Pipe
C-500	Metal-Seated Gate Valves for Water Supply Service
C-502	Dry-Barrel Fire Hydrants
C-504	Rubber-Seated Butterfly Valves
C-509	Resilient Seated Gate Valves for Water and Sewerage Systems
C-515	Reduced-Wall, Resilient-Seated Gate Valves For Water Supply Service

ASTM Standards

Designation	Description
ASTM A48/A48M	Specification for Gray Iron Castings
ASTM A 536	Specification for Ductile Iron Castings

National Fire Protection Association (NFPA)

1963	National (American) Standard Fire Hose Coupling Screw Thread

RELATED CROSS REFERENCE MATERIALS
Specification 511S, "Water Valves"

City of Austin Standard Specification Items

Designation	Description
Item No. 501S	Jacking or Boring Pipe
Item No. 503S	Frames, Grates, Rings and Covers
Item No. 505S	Concrete Encasement and Encasement Pipe
Item No. 506S	Manholes
Item No. 507S	Bulkheads
Item No. 508S	Miscellaneous Structures and Appurtenances
Item No. 509S	Excavation Safety Systems

Item No. 601S
Salvaging and Placing Topsoil

601S.1 Description

This item shall govern the removal, storage and placement of approved topsoil to the depths and area shown on the Drawings or as directed by the Engineer or designated representative.

This specification is applicable for projects or work involving either inch-pound or SI units. Within the text and accompanying tables, the inch-pound units are given preference followed by SI units shown within parentheses.

601S.2 Submittals

The submittal requirements of this specification item shall include the test results and soil classification necessary for approval of material as suitable topsoil.

601S.3 Materials

A. Topsoil

1. The topsoil shall be composed of 4 parts of soil mixed with 1 part compost, by volume. The compost shall meet TxDOT Specification Item 161. The soil shall be locally available native soil that meets the following specifications:
   - Shall be free of trash, weeds, deleterious materials, rocks and debris.
   - 100% shall pass through a 1.5-inch (38-mm) screen.
   - Soil to be a loamy material that meets the requirements of the table below in a accordance with the USDA textural triangle. Soil known locally as “red death” is not an allowable soil. Textural composition shall meet the following criteria:

Textural Class	Minimum	Maximum
Clay	5%	50%
Silt	10%	50%
Sand	15%	67%

   - An owner/engineer may propose use of onsite salvaged topsoil which does not meet the soil texture class required above by providing a soil analysis and a written statement from a qualified professional in soils,

landscape architecture, or agronomy indicating the onsite topsoil will provide an equivalent growth media and specifying what, if any, soil amendments are required.

- Soil amendments shall be worked into the existing onsite topsoil with a disc or tiller to create a well-blended material.

2. All disturbed areas to be revegetated are required to provide a minimum of six (6) inches of topsoil. The topsoil shall be able to support the growth of planting (Standard Specification Item No. 608S), seeding (Standard Specification Item No. 604S), sodding (Standard Specification Item No. 602S) and native grassland seeding and planting (Standard Specification Item No. 609S).

B. Water

Water shall be furnished by the Contractor and shall be clean and free from industrial wastes and other objectionable matter.

601S.4 Sources

The topsoil may be obtained from the right-of-way at sites of proposed excavation or embankment when shown on the Drawings or identified by the Engineer or designated representative. The approximate quantity of acceptable topsoil to be salvaged from the project will be shown on the Drawings. The topsoil may also be obtained from approved sources, which are located outside the right-of-way and have been secured by the Contractor.

601S.5 Construction Methods

Precautions will be maintained at all times to protect all trees in the area of construction. Where removal of trees is indicated on the Drawings, they shall be marked as directed by the Engineer or designated representative.

Construction equipment shall not be operated nor construction materials stockpiled under the canopies of trees, unless otherwise indicated on the Drawings and/or specified in the Contract Documents. Topsoil materials shall not be placed within the drip line of trees until tree wells are constructed that conform to Item No. 610S, "Preservation of Trees and Other Vegetation " and Standard Details 591S-1 and 610S-6. The source and stockpile areas shall be kept drained, insofar as practicable, during the period of topsoil removal

The existing topsoil shall be removed from the area indicated on the Drawings, stockpiled in a windrow along the right of way or spread over an area that is ready for topsoil application in accordance with the Drawings or as directed by the Engineer or designated representative.

Trash, wood, brush, stumps, rocks over 1 1/2 inches (37.5 mm) in size and other objectionable material encountered shall be removed and disposed of as directed by the Engineer or designated representative prior to beginning of work required by this item.

Grass and other herbaceous plant materials may remain. Large clumps shall be broken up.

After the grading has been completed to the required alignment, grades and cross-sections and prior to the spreading of the salvaged topsoil, any clay or tight soil surfaces shall be scarified by plowing furrows approximately 4 inches (100 mm) deep along horizontal slope lines at 2 foot (600 mm) vertical intervals. The spreading of the salvaged topsoil shall be undertaken as soon as the grading has been completed. The topsoil shall be spread so as to form a cover of uniform thickness indicated. After the topsoil has been placed and shaped, it shall be sprinkled and rolled to provide a suitable seed bed.

601S.6 Measurement and Payment

Salvaging, removal and/or placing topsoil materials will not be measured for payment, but shall be included in the unit price bid for the item of construction in which these activities are used.

End

SPECIFIC CROSS REFERENCE MATERIALS
Specification 601S, "Salvaging and Placing Topsoil"

City of Austin Standard Specification Items

Designation	Description
Item No. 602S	Sodding for Erosion Control
Item No. 604S	Seeding for Erosion Control
Item No. 608S	Planting
Item No. 609S	Native Grassland Seeding and Planting For Erosion Control
Item No. 610S	Preservation of Trees and Other Vegetation

City of Austin Standard Details

Designation	Description
591S-1	Dry Stack Rock Wall
610S-6	Typical Tree Well Applications

RELATED CROSS REFERENCE MATERIALS
Specification 601S, "Salvaging and Placing Topsoil"

City of Austin Standard Specification Items

Designation	Description
Item No. 102S	Clearing and Grubbing

Item No. 104S	Removing Concrete
Item No. 110S	Street Excavation
Item No. 111S	Excavation
Item No. 120S	Channel Excavation
Item No. 132S	Embankment
Item No. 606S	Fertilizer

City of Austin Standard Details

Designation	Description
610S-1	Tree Protection Fence Locations
610S-2	Tree Protection Fence, Type B Chainlink
610S-3	Tree Protection Fence, Type B Wood
610S-4	Tree Protection Fence, Modified Type A
610S-5	Tree Protection Fence, Modified Type B

Texas Department of Transportation: Standard Specifications for Construction and Maintenance of Highways, Streets, and Bridges

Designation	Description
Item No. 100	Preparing Right of Way
Item No. 110	Excavation
Item No. 160	Furnishing and Placing Topsoil
Item No. 164	Seeding for Erosion Control
Item No. 204	Sprinkling

Texas Department of Transportation: Manual of Testing Procedures

Designation	Description
Tex-103-E	Determination of Moisture Content of Soil Materials
Tex-104-E	Determination of Liquid Limit of Soils
Tex-105-E	Determination of Plastic Limit of Soils
Tex-106-E	Method of Calculating the Plasticity Index of Soils

Item No. 605S
Soil Retention Blanket

605S.1 Description

This item shall govern the provision and placement of wood, straw or coconut fiber mat, synthetic mat, paper mat, jute mesh or other material as a soil retention blanket for erosion control on slopes or ditches or short-term or long-term protection of seeded or sodded areas indicated on the Drawings or as specified by the Engineer or designated representative.

This specification is applicable for projects or work involving either inch-pound or SI units. Within the text, inch-pound units are given preference with SI units shown within parentheses.

605S.2 Submittals

The submittal requirements for this specification item shall include the soil retention blanket material type and sample, evidence that the material is listed on TxDoT/TTI Approved Products List, one (1) full set of Manufacturer's literature and installation recommendations, and any special details necessary for the proposed application.

605S.3 Materials

A. Soil Retention Blankets

All soil retention blankets must be listed on TxDoT Approved Products List or approved by the Engineer or designated representative.

The soil retention blanket shall be one (1) of the following classes and types as shown on the Drawings:

1. Class 1. "Slope Protection"
   - (a) Type A. Slopes 1:3 or flatter - Clay soils
   - (b) Type B. Slopes 1:3 or flatter - Sandy soils
   - (c) Type C Slopes steeper than 1:3 - Clay soils
   - (d) Type D Slopes steeper than 1:3 - Sandy soils
2. Class 2. "Flexible Channel Liner"
   - (a) Type E Short-term duration (Up to 2 years)
     Shear Stress (t_d) < 1 pound per square foot [psf] (48 Pa)
   - (b) Type F Short-term duration (Up to 2 years)
     Shear Stress (t_d) 1 to 2 psf (48 to 96 Pa)
   - (c) Type G Long-term duration (Longer than 2 years)
     Shear Stress (t_d) >2 to <5 psf (>96 to <239 Pa)
   - (d) Type H Long-term duration (Longer than 2 years)
     Shear Stress (t_d) ≥ 5 psf (≥ 239 Pa)

B. Fasteners

The fasteners shall conform to the recommendations of the manufacturer for the selected soil retention blanket.

605S.4 Construction Methods

A. General

The soil retention blanket shall conform to the class and type shown on the Drawings. The Contractor has the option of selecting an approved soil retention blanket conforming to the class and type shown on the Drawings which is included on the Approved Products List published by TxDoT/TTI Hydraulics and Erosion Control Laboratory.

B. Site Preparation:

Prior to placement of the soil retention blanket, the seedbed area to be covered shall be relatively free of all clods and rocks over 1 1/2 inches (37.5 mm) in maximum dimension and all sticks or other foreign matter that will prevent close contact of the preparation mat with the soil surface. The area shall be smooth and free of ruts and other depressions. If the prepared seedbed becomes crusted or eroded as a result of rain or if any eroded places, ruts or depressions exist for any reason, the Contractor shall be required to rework the soil until it is smooth and to reseed or resod the area at the Contractor's own expense. After the area has been properly prepared, the blanket shall be laid out flat, even and smooth, without stretching or crimping the material.

C. Installation

The Soil Retention Blanket, whether installed as slope protection or as flexible channel liner in accordance with the TxDoT/TTI Approved Products List, shall be placed within 24 hours after seeding (Standard Specification Item No. 604S), sodding (Standard Specification Item No. 602S) or native grassland seeding and planting (Standard Specification Item No. 609S) erosion control operations have been completed, or as approved by the Engineer or designated representative. The soil retention blanket shall be installed and anchored in accordance with the Manufacturer's recommendations. The Contractor shall contact the Engineer or designated representative three (3) days prior to the installation of the soil retention blanket to allow for inspection of the installation by City of Austin personnel.

605S.5 Measurement

This work and acceptable material for "Soil Retention Blanket" will be measured by the square yard (square meter: 1 square meter is equal to 1.196 square yards) of surface area covered, complete in place.

605S.6 Payment

The work performed and materials furnished in accordance with this Item and measured as provided under "Measurement" will be paid for at the unit bid price for "Soil Retention Blanket" of the class shown on the Drawings or approved by the Engineer or designated representative. The unit price shall include full compensation for furnishing all materials, labor, tools, equipment and incidentals necessary to complete the work. Anchors, checks, terminal and wire staples will not be paid for directly, but will be included in the unit price bid for this specification item.

Payment will be made under the following:

Pay Item No. 605S-A: Soil Retention Blanket Class___; Type __- Per Square Yard.

End

SPECIFIC CROSS REFERENCE MATERIALS
Specification 605S, "Soil Retention Blanket"

City of Austin Standard Specification Items

Designation	Description
Item No. 602S	Sodding for Erosion Control
Item No. 604S	Seeding for Erosion Control
Item No. 609S	Native Grassland Seeding and Planting for Erosion Control

RELATED CROSS REFERENCE MATERIALS

City of Austin Standard Specification Items

Designation	Description
Item No. 101S	Preparing Right of Way
Item No. 102S	Clearing and Grubbing
Item No. 111S	Excavation
Item No. 120S	Channel Excavation
Item No. 132S	Embankment
Item No. 606S	Fertilizer
Item No. 608S	Planting
Item No. 610S	Preservation of Trees and Other Vegetation

Texas Department of Transportation: Standard Specifications for Construction and Maintenance of Highways, Streets, and Bridges

Designation	Description
Item No. 100	Preparing Right of Way
Item No. 110	Excavation
Item No. 132	Embankment
Item No. 158	Specialized Excavation Work
Item No. 160	Furnishing and Placing Topsoil
Item No. 162	Sodding for Erosion Control
Item No. 164	Seeding for Erosion Control
Item No. 166	Fertilizer
Item No. 168	Vegetative Watering
Item No. 169	Soil Retention Blanket
Item No. 204	Sprinkling

Item No. 606S
Fertilizer

606S.1 Description

This item shall govern the provision and distribution of fertilizer over the areas indicated on the Drawings and in accordance with these specifications.

This specification is applicable for projects or work involving either inch-pound or SI units. Within the text, inch-pound units are given preference with SI units shown within parentheses.

606S.2 Submittals

The submittal requirements for this specification item shall include:

A. Type of soil(s) at the site.
B. Type(s) of re-vegetation (seeding, sodding, etc).
C. Type(s) of fertilizer.
D. Rate(s) of application of fertilizer.
E. Chemical analysis of the fertilizer(s).

606S.3 Materials

All fertilizer used on site shall be delivered in bags or containers, which are clearly labeled and show the analysis. The figures in the analysis shall represent the percent of nitrogen, phosphoric acid and potash nutrients, respectively, as determined by the methods of the Association of Official Agricultural Chemists. The fertilizer may be subject to testing by the State Chemist in accordance with the Texas Fertilizer Law. A pelleted or granulated fertilizer shall be used.. Fifty percent or greater of the Nitrogen required shall be in the form of Nitrate Nitrogen ($N0_3$). The remaining Nitrogen required may be in the form of Urea Nitrogen [$CO(NH_2)_2$].

The total amount of nutrients furnished and applied per acre (hectare: 1 hectare equals 2.471 acres) shall equal or exceed that specified for each nutrient.

606S.4 Construction Methods

General requirements and criterion for vegetative activities, including fertilizing, for the City of Austin are presented in Section 1.4.4, "Vegetative Practice", and Section 1.5.4, "Revegetation Criteria" of the City of Austin Environmental Criteria Manual.

The fertilizer type and rate of application should be based on chemical tests of representative soil samples taken after completion of construction and ground work. Appropriate initial fertilizer application rates for the Austin area (in lieu of recommendations from soil testing) are provided in the sections of the City of Austin Environmental Criteria Manual identified below:

A. Permanent seeding. - [Section 1.4.4.B.4].
B. Restoring Climax Grasses - [Section 1.5.5.E].
C. Sod. -. [Section 1.4.4.E.5].
D. Maintenance of Mulch Sod. - [Section 1.4.4.C.4].

Pelleted or granulated fertilizer shall be applied uniformly into the soil to a depth of 4 inches (100 mm) over the area specified on the Drawings to be fertilized and in the manner directed for the particular item of work. The fertilizer shall be dry and in good physical condition. Fertilizer that is powdered or caked will be rejected. Distribution of the fertilizer for the particular item of work shall meet the approval of the Engineer or Designated Representative.

Maintenance fertilizing shall be applied every 6 months after the new sod or grass is placed or until the work is accepted by the City.

The fertilizer may also be applied with the hydromulch

606S.5 Measurement

Work and acceptable material for "Fertilizer" will be measured by the normal ton of 2,000 pounds (megagrams: 1 megagram equals 1.1023 tons) or by the 100 pounds (50 kilograms: 1 kilogram equals 2.205 pounds) as determined by approved scales or guaranteed weight of sacks shown by the manufacturer.

606S.6 Payment

The work performed and materials furnished and measured as provided under "Measurement" shall be included in the unit price bid for the item of construction in which fertilizer is used, unless specified in the Drawings as a Pay Item.

When fertilizer is specified on the Drawings as a pay item or included in the contract bid form, the work performed and materials furnished and measured as provided under "Measurement" will be paid for at the unit bid price for "Fertilizer" of the analysis specified on the Drawings. The unit bid price shall include full compensation for furnishing all materials and performing all operations necessary to complete the work.

Payment, when specified, will be made under one of the following:

Pay Item No. 606S-A:	Fertilizer	Per Ton.
Pay Item No. 606S-B:	Fertilizer	Per 100 Pounds.

End

SPECIFIC CROSS REFERENCE MATERIALS
Specification Item 606S "Fertilizer"

City of Austin Environmental Criteria Manual

Designation	Description
Section 1.4.4.B.4	Design Criteria of Section B. Critical Area Stabilization (with Permanent Seeding)
Section 1.4.4.C.4	Design Criteria of Section C. Critical Area Stabilization (with Mulch Sod)
Section 1.4.4.E.5	Site Preparation of Section E. Critical Area Stabilization (with Sod)
Section 1.5.5.E	Fertilizer, Section E of 1.5.5, "Restoring Climax Grasses"

RELATED CROSS REFERENCE MATERIALS
Specification Item 606S "Fertilizer"

City of Austin Technical Specifications

Designation	Description
Item No. 601S	Salvaging and Placing Topsoil
Item No. 602S	Sodding for Erosion Control
Item No. 604S	Seeding for Erosion Control
Item No. 605S	Soil Retention Blanket
Item No. 607S	Slope Stabilization
Item No. 608S	Planting
Item No. 609S	Native Grassland Seeding and Planting for Erosion Control
Item No. 610S	Preservation of Trees and Other Vegetation

Current Version: September 26, 2012 Previous Versions: 01/04/11, 12/09/08, 06/21/07, 03/27/00 and 08/25/95

Item No. 610S
Preservation of Trees and Other Vegetation

610S.1 Description and Definitions

This item shall govern the proper care, protection and treatment of trees and other vegetation in the vicinity of the permitted development activity (as defined in Land Development Code 25-1-21(27)). All work shall be performed in accordance with the City approved drawings and specifications (e.g. Standard Series 600) or as approved by the City Arborist (as defined below). Tree pruning and/or treatments shall be performed under the direct supervision of a qualified arborist (as defined below) or as allowed by the City Arborist.

Definitions

City Arborist – City official designated by the Director of the Planning and Development Review Department (Land Development Code 25-8-603) or as designated by the City Arborist.

Oak wilt - a tree disease caused by a fungus "Ceratocystis fagacearum" that infects the vascular system of Oak "genus Quercus" trees and prevents water transport through the trunk and canopy of the tree. This usually fatal tree disease can be spread by certain insects that come into contact with tree wounds or by interconnected tree roots. February through June is a high risk period due to the stage of the fungus and insect activity. See section 610S.4(H) for additional requirements for preventing Oak wilt infection.

Qualified Arborist – an individual engaged in the profession of arboriculture or closely related field who, through experience, education, and related training, possesses the competence to provide for, or supervise, the management of trees and other woody plants (as defined in the most current version of ANSI A300 (Part 1)-2001, section 4.1).

This specification is applicable for projects or work involving either inch-pound or SI units. Within the text and accompanying tables, the inch-pound units are given preference followed by SI units shown within parentheses.

610S.2 Submittals

The following is a list of the minimum submittal requirements for this specification item shall include:

A. Identification of the location, type of protective fencing (i.e. A, B or C), materials of construction and installation details;

B. Qualified Arborist credentials (i.e. proof of certification from the International Society of Arboriculture, licenses, resume and/or references);

C. Type, location and construction details for proposed tree wells;

D. Location, type, materials of construction and installation details for permeable paving;

E. Proposed nutrient mix specifications and when required by the City Arborist, soil and/or foliar analysis for fertilizer applications.

610S.3 Materials

A. Protective Fencing and Signage

Protective fencing is designated as the materials used to protect the root zones of trees as illustrated in City of Austin Standard Detail 610S-1. Three basic types of protective fencing materials are allowed by the City of Austin. Type A and Type B are typical applications and shall be installed where damage potential to a tree root system is high, while Type C shall be installed where damage potential is minimal. The specific type of protective fencing for the work shall be as indicated on the drawings. Type C fence materials shall be subject to approval by the City Arborist. Type C fencing shall be replaced by Type A or Type B fencing as directed by the City Arborist if it fails to perform the necessary function.

1. Type A Chain Link fence (Typical Application-high potential damage)

   Type A protective fencing shall be installed in accordance with City of Austin Standard Details 610S-2 and 610S-4 and shall consist of a minimum five-foot (1.5 meters) high chain link fencing with tubular steel support poles or "T" posts.

2. Type B Wood Fence (Typical Application-high potential damage)

   Type B protective fencing shall be installed in accordance with City of Austin Standard Details 610S-3 and 610S-5 and shall consist of any vertical planking attached to 2x4-inch (50 x 100 mm) horizontal stringers which are supported by 2x4-inch (50 x 100 mm) intermediate vertical supports and a 4x4-inch (100 x 100 mm) at every fourth vertical support .

3. Type C Other Materials (Limited Application-minimal potential damage)

   The following materials may be permitted as alternates for limited or temporary applications (3 days or less) where tree damage potential is minimal (as determined by the City Arborist):

   (a) High visibility plastic construction fencing.

   The fabric shall be 4 feet (1.2 meters) in width and made of high density polyethylene resin, extruded and stretched to provide a highly visible international orange, non-fading fence. The fabric shall remain flexible from -60oF to 200oF (-16oC to 93oC) and shall be inert to most chemicals and acid. The fabric pattern may vary from diamond to circular with a minimum unit weight of 0.4 lbs./Ft. (0.6 kilograms per meter).

The fabric shall have a 4 foot (1.2 meters) width minimum tensile yield strength (Horizontal) of 2000 psi [13.9 megaPascals], ultimate tensile strength of 2680 psi [18.5 megaPascals] (Horizontal) and a maximum opening no greater than 2 inches (50 mm).

(b) Other approved equivalent restraining material.

The fencing materials, identified in (a) and (b) above, shall be supported by steel pipe, tee posts, U posts or 2" x 4" (50 mm x 100 mm) timber posts that are a minimum of 5-1/2 feet (1.68 meters) in height and spaced no more than 8 feet (2.44 meters) on centers. The fabric shall be secured to post by bands or wire ties.

4. Signage

A laminated sign, no smaller than 8.5 X 11 inches, shall be posted on each tree protective device, and at least every 100 linear feet on protective fencing, identifying the following information: Tree & Root Protection Zone, Per City of Austin code (Chapter 25-8, Subchapter B, Article 1) this protective device is to remain in place for the entirety of the development project and illegal removal is subject to fines and work suspensions. Additional information can be obtained at the City Arborist (512-974-1876) web site (http://www.ci.austin.tx.us/trees). Zona de Protección del Árbol y las Raíces: el dispositivo protector debe quedarse en el lugar para la totalidad del proyecto de la construcción. Para información adicional, contacta la Arborista Municipal (512) 974-1876 o http://www.ci.austin.tx.us/trees/trees_spanish.htm.

B. Trunk Protection (Limited Application)

When indicated on the drawings or directed by the City Arborist tree trunk protection shall be provided in accordance with City of Austin Standard Details 610S-4 and 610S-5. Tree trunk protection shall consist of any 2 x 4-inch (50 x 100 mm) or 2 x 6-inch (50 x 150 mm) planking or plastic strapping and shall be attached in a manner that does not damage the tree.

C. Tree Dressing

Wound treatments should not be used to cover wounds or pruning cuts, except when recommended for disease (see section 610S.4 (H)), insect, mistletoe, or sprout control (from ANSI A300 (Part 1)-2001, section 5.4.1).

D. Tree Wells for Raised Grades

When existing grades are raised by more than 4 inches (10.16 cm), the tree root system shall be protected by the installation of tree wells in accordance with City of Austin Standard Detail 610S-6. Native stone or non-toxic timber shall be used for the separator wall of the well and PVC conforming to ASTM D-2729, SDR-35 shall be used for the aeration systems in fill areas.

E. Permeable Paving (Environmental Criteria Manual Section 3.5.A.1)

Permeable segmented pavers in conjunction with PVC pipe aeration system or concrete on gravel base with cored holes shall be used to protect existing tree root zones when indicated on the drawings or directed by the City Arborist.

F. Fertilizer

Humate/nutrient solutions with mycorrhizae components or soil injection at recommended rates are to be used when appropriate. Construction which will be completed in less than 90 days may use materials at half the recommended rates. Alternative organic fertilizer materials are acceptable when approved by the City Arborist.

610S.4 Construction Methods

A. Protective Fencing

All trees and shrubs in the proximity of the construction site shall be carefully checked for damage prior to initiation of the permitted development activity.

All individual or groups of trees, shrubs, and natural areas shown to be protected on the drawings or identified to be protected by the City Arborist, shall be protected during construction with temporary fencing as indicated on the drawings or as directed by the City Arborist.

Protective fences (section 610S.4.A) shall be installed prior to the start of any site preparation work (clearing, grubbing, or grading), and shall be maintained in functioning condition throughout all phases of the construction project.

Protective fence locations in close proximity to intersecting streets or drives shall adhere to the sight distance (Section 1.3.1.C.6) and desirable sight triangle (Figure 1-6 criteria found in the City of Austin Transportation Criteria Manual).

1. Protective fences shall be constructed at the locations (typically the outer limits of the critical root zone) and with materials indicated on the drawings to prevent the following (Environment Criteria Manual, Appendix P-2, Note 6):

   (a) Soil compaction in the root zone area resulting from vehicular traffic or storage of equipment or materials.

   (b) Critical root zone disturbances due to grade changes [greater than 4" (10.16 cm) cut or fill] or trenching not reviewed and authorized by the City Arborist.

   (c) Damage to exposed roots, trunks or limbs by mechanical equipment.

   (d) Other activities detrimental to trees such as chemical storage, concrete truck cleaning, and fires.

2. Exceptions to the installation of protective fences at the tree drip lines may be permitted in the following cases:

   (a) Where there is to be an approved grade change, impermeable paving surface, tree well, or other such site development, the fence shall be

erected no more than 2 feet (0.6 meters) beyond the area of disturbance unless approved by the City Arborist;

(b) When permeable paving is to be installed within a tree's critical root zone, the fence shall be erected at the outer limits of the permeable paving area (prior to any site grading so that this enclosed area is graded separately to minimize root damage);

(c) When trees are located close to a proposed building or other construction activity (Environment Criteria Manual, Appendix P-2, Note 6.c), the fence shall be erected up to 10 feet (3 meters) to allow work space between the fence and the structure. Apply organic mulch to a depth of 8 inches [30.48 cm] in the unprotected root zone area;

(d) When there are street-side pedestrian walkways, fences shall be constructed in a manner that does not obstruct safe passage;

(e) When there are severe space constraints due to tract size or other special requirements, the Contractor shall contact the City Arborist to discuss alternatives.

When any of the exceptions listed above will result in a fence being located closer than five (5) feet (1.5 meters) to a tree trunk, the Contractor shall also protect the trunk with strapped-on planking to a height of 8 feet [2.4 meters] (or to the limits of lower branching) in addition to the fencing requirement (City of Austin Standard Details 610S-4 and 610S-5).

B. Pruning and Repair of Damage

Tree pruning, to provide clearance for the work and/or to remove hazards, shall be performed under the direct supervision of a qualified arborist and shall follow standards identified in ANSI A300 (Part 1), "Pruning". A minimum clearance height of eight (8) feet (2.4 meters) above the street level must be provided and maintained for all existing trees if adjacent to a sidewalk. However, if the limbs of trees overhang the curb line or edge of travel lane of any street, a minimum clearance height of fourteen (14) feet (4.2 meters) is required (Transportation Criteria manual section 6.2.3,A, 4, "Clearance Height"). Pruning shall provide the minimum clearance needed to perform the work or remove a hazard unless otherwise directed by the City Arborist to comply with transportation criteria or to mitigate for damage.

If tree damage compromises a tree's structural integrity then the area shall be adequately secured until a qualified arborist makes an assessment of the tree and corrective actions are completed with approval from the City Arborist. Damage to oak trees shall be treated immediately, with consideration for site safety, to reduce the risk of Oak Wilt infection (See 610S.4.H, "Oak Wilt Prevention"). Tree root wounds shall be treated to remove loose, damaged tissue from in and around the wound or if necessary the root shall be cut cleanly and covered with topsoil, or other material approved by the City Arborist, to prevent drying of root tissue and to create a favorable environment for root sprouting. Trunk wounds shall also be treated to remove loose, damaged tissue around the wound. Tree canopy repairs shall be performed in accordance with the most current version of ANSI A300

(Part 1), “Pruning”, to prevent further damage to the tree and to promote recovery of the tree to sound condition. The ANSI standard describes proper pruning methods for limb removal and for making finish pruning cuts.

Trees damaged or removed without prior approval or where minimum design criteria is exceeded due to failure to maintain approved tree protection shall be mitigated (Environmental Criteria Manual section 3.5.4, “Mitigation Measures”) in accordance with Land Development Code Chapter 25-8, Subchapter B, Article 1.

All trees damaged during construction shall receive an application of fertilizer within the drip line conforming to Standard Specification Item No. 606S, "Fertilizer" at the rate of 4 pounds per caliper inch (.07 kilograms per caliper mm).

C. Cutting and Filling Around Trees

When the depth of an excavation or embankment exceeds 4 inches (10.16 cm) within the critical root zone of any tree with a trunk diameter greater than 8 inches (200 mm), the City Arborist may require a tree well to be constructed per the City of Austin approved specifications and details (Section 610S.3.D and City of Austin Standard Detail 610S-6).

D. Paving Around Trees

Where new paving within the ½ critical root zone of any tree greater than a 8 inches (10.16 cm) diameter is approved, a permeable pavement and aeration system may be required by the City Arborist per the City of Austin Standard Detail (Section 610S.3.E, Environmental Criteria Manual Section 3.5.3.A.1 and Figure 3-8) must be installed as indicated on the Drawings, except for street construction.

E. Tree Removal

Tree removal shall comply with Land Development Code Chapter 25-8, Subchapter B, Article 1. An approved permit, or an approved site plan is required for removal of trees 8” and larger (see Environmental Criteria manual section 3.3.2.A.2 and figure 3-1 for measurement standards) with additional requirements for City Parkland properties and for Hill Country Roadway Corridor sites. Trees 19 inches in diameter and greater are defined as protected trees and require specific review from the City Arborist to approve a permit or site plan for removal. In addition heritage trees require a more extensive evaluation by the City Arborist and may require rulings from boards and commissions.

All trees to be removed shall be performed in a manner that does not damage the canopies, trunks or root systems of remaining trees and that protects all existing facilities, improvements and vegetation. Removal of oak trees shall follow the Oak Wilt Prevention procedures per the City of Austin Standards (Section 610S.4,(H)). All tree material shall be removed from the site unless authorized by the City Arborist or if it will be used as wood chips or mulch.

When a tree or shrub is scheduled for removal, it shall be cut to a maximum depth of 12 inches (30.5 cm) below the surrounding grade (the tree(s) should be removed at grade, and with hand saws, in situations where other tree root systems are present which are to be preserved). When applicable, after tree removal, soil shall be placed in the hole to a depth matching the existing grade.

All damage resulting from tree removal or pruning shall be repaired at the Contractor's own expense and shall follow guidelines in this specification.

F. Final Cleanup

All temporary tree and shrub preservation and protection measures shall be removed when the construction has been completed and any mulch applications shall be removed or reduced to no more than 3 inches (7.62 cm) depth.

G. Root Zone Aeration and Fertilization

As a component of an effective remedial tree care program per Environmental Criteria Manual section 3.5.4, preserved trees within the limits of construction may require soil aeration and supplemental nutrients. Soil and/or foliar analysis should be used to determine the need for supplemental nutrients. The City Arborist may require these analyses as part of a comprehensive tree care plan. Soil pH shall be considered when determining the fertilization composition as soil pH influences the tree's ability to uptake nutrients from the soil. If analyses indicate the need for supplemental nutrients, then humate/nutrient solutions with mycorrhizae components are highly recommended. In addition, soil analysis may be needed to determine if organic material or beneficial microorganisms are needed to improve soil health. Materials and methods are to be approved by the City Arborist (512-974-1876) prior to application. The owner or general contractor shall select a fertilization contractor and ensure coordination with the City Arborist.

Pre-construction treatment should be applied in the appropriate season; ideally the season preceding the proposed construction. Minimally, areas to be treated include the entire critical root zone of trees as depicted on the City approved plans. Treatment should include, but not limited to, fertilization, soil treatment, mulching, and proper pruning.

Post-construction treatment should occur during final revegetation or as determined by a qualified arborist after construction. Construction activities often result in a reduction in soil macro and micro pores and an increase in soil bulk density. To ameliorate the degraded soil conditions, aeration via water and/or air injected into the soil is needed or by other methods as approved by the City Arborist. The proposed nutrient mix specifications and soil and/or foliar analysis results need to be provided to and approved by the City Arborist prior to application (Fax # 512-974-3010). Construction which will be completed in less than 90 days may use materials at ½ recommended rates. Alternative organic fertilizer materials are acceptable when approved by the City Arborist. Within 7 days after fertilization is performed, the contractor shall provide documentation of the work performed to the City Arborist, Planning and Development Review Department. P.O. Box 1088, Austin, TX 78767. This note should be referenced as item #1 in the Sequence of Construction.

H. Oak Wilt Prevention Policy

1. Purpose and Scope

The purpose of this Oak Wilt Prevention Policy is to identify measures that city staff and city-hired contractors and their sub-contractors, who perform

the services of removing or trimming trees, will take to prevent the spread of oak wilt.

2. Definitions

Oak Wilt Disease: A tree disease caused by the fungus, Ceratocystis fagacearum. The fungus infects the vascular system of a tree. The vascular system contains vessels which transport moisture throughout the tree. The vessels of an infected tree effectively become blocked by the infection of the fungus, and cannot transport adequate moisture to sustain a healthy or living tree. In most cases, the end result is tree mortality.

3 Prevention Policy

(a) Prior to beginning field work, all city staff associated with projects involving potential contact with oak trees shall be made aware of the city's official Oak Wilt Policy by receiving and reading a written copy of this policy. Staff receiving a written copy of the policy shall include, but not limited to, project managers, equipment operators responsible for removing or trimming trees, or operators using heavy equipment which could cause wounding of susceptible oaks in the use of the equipment. In addition, individual city departments will provide a written copy of the Oak Wilt Policy to contractors participating in city projects in areas where oak trees are present before initiating field work.

(b) When possible, city staff and contractors should avoid trimming, pruning, or wounding Live Oaks and Red Oaks (Spanish, Shumard, Texas Red, and Blackjack oaks) from February through June.

(c) At all times and irrespective of limb size, all cuts and wounds to oak trees shall be dressed immediately using a non-phytotoxic tree wound dressing. Stump cuts and damaged roots (both above and below ground) shall also be dressed.

(d) Disinfection of pruning tools, saws, and related equipment is mandatory during the trimming or pruning of oak trees. Disinfection of tree removal and trimming equipment shall occur before work begins in a project area, between work in individual oak trees, and again prior to leaving a project area. Acceptable disinfectants include either aerosol disinfectant or a 10 percent bleach-water solution.

*NOTE: Although this policy would require the disinfection of pruning equipment before and between oak trees as a precaution, research does not substantiate disinfection as a means of preventing the transmission of the oak wilt disease.

4. Disposal Policy

(a) Chipping or shredding the wood from infected trees to use as mulch is an acceptable means of recycling the wood. Chipping or shredding allows the wood to dry out quickly, thereby killing the fungus.

(b) Burning diseased wood is an acceptable means of disposal. Burning diseased logs will kill the fungus, and the fungus will not spread with the smoke.

(c) Logs from diseased Red Oaks, that are not chipped, shredded, or burned shall be disposed of at a landfill.

(d) Firewood from diseased Red Oak trees shall not be stored near healthy trees where fungal spores or insects that carry the spores have the potential to spread the fungus to healthy trees. It is recommended to store oak firewood under a sheet of clear plastic, tightly sealing the edges of plastic with soil or bricks. Doing so will prevent any spore carrying beetles from escaping and will solarize and heat the stored firewood to speed the drying process. It is also recommended to use clear plastic, as black plastic will reveal any escape holes to the beetles.

(e) In situations where diseased Red Oak trees are identified and are not accessible for chipping, shredding, or removal, the trunk of the diseased tree should be girdled, and the stem treated with an appropriate herbicide to deaden the tree and hasten the desiccation and drying of the wood below the minimum moisture content that could support the development of fungal spores.

610S.5 Measurement

Tree and shrub pruning, fencing, drains, fertilization, etc. will not be measured for payment unless included as a contract pay item. Tree wells for tree protection will be measured by the units, complete in place, conforming to the Drawings and City of Austin Standard Detail 610S-6, "Tree Protection, Tree Wells".

Removal of existing trees will be measured per each tree.

610S.6 Payment

The work and materials prescribed herein with the exception of the Protective Fencing and Tree Well (Tree Protection) will not be paid for directly but shall be included in the unit price bid for the item of construction in which this activity is used, unless a payment item is included as a contract pay item.

Payment will be made under:

Pay Item 610S-A:	Protective Fencing Type A Chain Link fence (Typical Application-high damage potential)	Per Lineal Foot
Pay Item 610S-B:	Protective Fencing Type B Wood Fence (Typical Application-high damage potential)	Per Lineal Foot

Pay Item 610S-C:	Protective Fencing Type C Other Materials (Limited Application-minimal damage potential)	Per Lineal Foot
Pay Item 610S-D:	Tree Well (Tree Protection)	Per Each
Pay Item 610S-E:	Tree Trunk Protection, Wood Planking	Per Each
Pay Item 610S-R:	Removal of Existing Trees	Per Each

End

SPECIFIC CROSS REFERENCE MATERIALS
Specification Item 610S, "Preservation of Trees and Other Vegetation"

City of Austin Standard Specification Items

Designation	Description
Item No. 606S	Fertilizer

City of Austin Standard Details

Designation	Description
Item No. 610S-1	Tree Protection Fence Locations
Item No. 610S-2	Tree Protection Fence, Type A, Chainlink
Item No. 610S-3	Tree Protection Fence, Type B, Wood
Item No. 610S-4	Tree Protection Fence, Modified Type A, Chainlink
Item No. 610S-5	Tree Protection Fence, Modified Type B, Wood
Item No. 610S-6	Tree Protection, Tree Wells

City of Austin Transportation Criteria Manual

Designation	Description
Section 1.3.1.C.6	Sight Distance
Section 6.2.3.A.4	Clearance Height
Figure 1-6	Desirable Sight Triangle

City of Austin Environmental Criteria Manual

Designation	Description
Appendix P-2, Note 6	Exceptions to Installing Fences
Appendix P-2, Note 6c	Trees close to proposed buildings-----
Appendix P-6	Remedial Tree Care Notes
Section 3.3.2.A.2	Diameter of trees------
Section 3.5.0	Design Criteria
Section 3.5.3.A.1	Permeable Paving

Figure 3-8	Example of Minimum Design Criteria Applied to Permeable Parking

City of Austin Land Development Code

Designation	Description
Section 25-8-603	Tree Protection Administration
Section 25-8-623	Inspection by City Arborist

ASTM, American Society for Testing and Materials

Designation	Description
D-2729	Specification for Poly (Vinyl Chloride) (PVC) Sewer Pipe and Fittings

***RELATED* CROSS REFERENCE MATERIALS**
Specification 610S, "Preservation of Trees and Other Vegetation"

City of Austin Standard Specification Items

Designation	Description
Item No. 101S	Preparing Right of Way
Item No. 102S	Clearing and Grubbing
Item No. 111S	Excavation
Item No. 120S	Channel Excavation
Item No. 132S	Embankment
Item No. 608S	Planting

Texas Department of Transportation: Standard Specifications for Construction and Maintenance of Highways, Streets, and Bridges

Designation	Description
Item No. 100	Preparing Right of Way
Item No. 110	Excavation
Item No. 132	Embankment
Item No. 158	Specialized Excavation Work
Item No. 160	Furnishing and Placing Topsoil
Item No. 166	Fertilizer

Item No. 168 Vegetative Watering

Item No. **620S**
Filter Fabric

620S.1 Description

This item shall govern the furnishing of materials and for placement of filter fabric as indicated on the Drawings or directed by the Engineer or designated representative. Filter Fabric shall have the capability for allowing the passage of ground water through it without transporting the soil placed around the filter fabric.

This specification is applicable for projects or work involving either inch-pound or SI units. Within the text, the inch-pound units are given preference followed by SI units shown within parentheses.

620S.2 Submittals

The submittal requirements of this specification item include:

A. catalog cuts,
B. samples of material selected,
C. testing results,
D. manufacturer's recommended installation procedures, and
E. manufacturer certification of compliance with this specification.

620S.3 Materials

A. General

The fabric shall be constructed exclusively of synthetic thermoplastic fibers and may be either woven or non-woven to form a mat of uniform quality. Fabric fibers may be either continuos or discontinuous and oriented in either a random or an aligned pattern throughout the fabric. The fabric shall be mildew resistant, rot proof and shall be satisfactory for use in a wet soil and aggregate environment. The fabric shall contain ultraviolet stabilizers and shall have non-raveling edges.

B. Physical Requirements

The fabric shall meet the requirements of table 1, when sampled and tested in accordance with the methods indicated in the table below.

All material shall be shipped with suitable wrapping to protect the fabric during shipping and storage at the job site.

620S.4 Construction Methods

The submittal requirements shall be completed before any materials are ordered.

The "Filter Fabric" shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations, as indicated on the Drawings or as directed by the Engineer or designated representative. When lapping is required, it shall be in accordance with the

manufacturer's recommendations. Backfilling around the Filter Fabric shall be done in such a manner that the Filter Fabric material will not be damaged during the placement.

TABLE 1: FILTER FABRIC REQUIREMENTS

Original Physical Properties	Test Method	Requirements
Fabric weight (mass), on an ambient temperature air-dried tension free sample, expressed in oz/ sq. yd (grams/ square meter)	TxDoT Tex-616-J*	Underdrains/Slope Stabilization 4.0 (135) minimum
		Gabions and Revet Mattresses 6.0 (200) minimum
Water flow rate by falling head method, 7.9 inches (20 cm) to 3.9 inches (10 cm) on 2 inch (50 mm) ID cylinder with 1 inch (25 mm) diameter orifice, with flow rate expressed in gal/sq.ft/minute (liters/square meter/minute).	TxDoT Tex-616-J*	80 (3,260) minimum
Breaking load in either machine or cross-machine direction, expressed in pounds (newtons)	ASTM D-1682 grab method G**	100 (445) minimum
Equivalent opening size for US Standard (SI) sieves.	CW-02215	70 to 100 (212 to 150μm)
"Apparent elongation" at breaking load in either machine or cross-machine direction, expressed as percent	ASTM D-1682 grab method G**	100 maximum

* TxDoT Tex-616-J, "Testing of Construction Fibers

** ASTM D 1682 grab method G, "Test Methods for Breaking Load and Elongation of Textile Fabrics"* as modified by TxDoT Test Method Tex-616-J

*** CW-02215, US Army Corps of Engineers, Civil Works Construction Guide Specification "Plastic Filter Fabric".

620S.5 Measurement

Work and acceptable material for "Filter Fabric" will be measured by the square yard (square meter: 1 square meter equals 1.196 square yards), complete in place.

620S.6 Payment

The work performed and the materials furnished and measured as provided under "Measurement" will be paid at the unit bid price for "Filter Fabric". The unit bid price, when included in the contract as a pay item, shall include full compensation for all materials, excavation and backfilling and all manipulations, labor, tools, equipment and incidentals necessary to complete the work.

Payment will be made under:

Pay Item No. 620S: Filter Fabric Per Square Yard.

End

SPECIFIC CROSS REFERENCE MATERIALS

Specification 620S, "Filter Fabric"

American Society for Testing and Materials (ASTM)

Designation	Description
D 1682	Test Methods for Breaking Load and Elongation of Textile Fabrics

Texas Department of Transportation Manual of Testing Procedures

Designation	Description
Tex-616-J	Testing of Construction Fabrics

RELATED CROSS REFERENCE MATERIALS

City of Austin Environmental Criteria Manual

Designation	Description
Section 1.4.2.E	Rock Berm

City of Austin Standard Details

Designation	Description
Number 639S-1	Rock Berm

City of Austin Standard Specifications

Designation	Description
Item No. 101S	Preparing Right of Way
Item No. 102S	Clearing and Grubbing
Item No. 111S	Excavation
Item No. 120S	Channel Excavation
Item No. 401	Structural Excavation and Backfill
Item No. 602S	Sodding for Erosion Control
Item No. 604S	Seeding for Erosion Control
Item No. 605S	Soil Retention Blanket
Item No. 606S	Fertilizer
Item No. 608S	Planting
Item No. 610S	Preservation of Trees and Other Vegetation

Texas Department of Transportation: Standard Specifications for Construction and Maintenance of Highways, Streets, and Bridges

Designation	Description
Item No. 100	Preparing Right of Way
Item No. 110	Excavation
Item No. 132	Embankment
Item No. 158	Specialized Excavation Work
Item No. 166	Fertilizer
Item No. 168	Vegetative Watering
Item No. 169	Soil Retention Blanket
Item No. 204	Sprinkling

Item No. 623S
Dry Stack Rock Wall

623S.1 Description

This item shall govern furnishing and placing dry stack gravity rock walls (Environmental Criteria Manual Section 1.8.2.B.6) in conformance with Standard Detail 623S.1 and as herein specified on a prepared subgrade, including the excavation and backfilling for the wall, to the height, lines, grades, details and locations indicated on the Drawings or as established by the Engineer or designated representative.

This specification is applicable for projects or work involving either inch-pound or SI units. Within the text, the inch-pound units are given preference followed by SI units shown within parentheses.

623S.2 Submittals

The submittal requirements for this specification item shall include:

A. Aggregate types, gradations and physical characteristics for the Portland cement concrete mix,

B. Proposed proportioning of materials for the mortar mix,

C. Test results for the weathered field limestone,

D. Aggregate type and gradation scheduled for granular blanket,

E. Description of filter fabric including characteristics, test data and manufacturer's recommendations for installation

623S.3 Materials

A. Rock

Native Rock shall be durable weathered field limestone of suitable quality to ensure permanence in the structure. The stone shall have a wearing loss less than 35 percent when the stone is tested with the Los Angeles Abrasion Machine in accordance with ASTM Test Method C535 (TxDOT Test Method Tex-410A). The loss of material experienced during five cycles of magnesium sulfate exposure conducted in accordance with TxDOT Test Method Tex-411A for Rock RipRap shall not exceed 18 percent.

B. Concrete

Concrete for footings shall be Class A Concrete and conform to Standard Specification Item No. 403S, "Concrete for Structures".

C. Granular Blanket

Flexible Base aggregate conforming to Standard Specification Item No. 210S, "Flexible Base", shall be used for the granular blanket.

D. Mortar

Mortar shall consist of 1 part masonry cement to 3 parts sand by volume, based on dry materials. Mortar which has been mixed longer than 30 minutes or which has developed its initial set shall not be used.

E. Filter Fabric

Filter Fabric conforming to Standard Specification Item No. 620S, "Filter Fabric", shall be used for dry stack rock walls constructed in erodible soils.

623S.4 Construction Methods

Dry Stack Rock Wall shall be constructed in horizontal courses, on the prepared and compacted subgrade, granular blanket or concrete foundation as indicated on the Drawings and Standard Detail 623S.1. The horizontal and vertical joints of the two lower and upper stone layers shall be mortared. The remaining horizontal and vertical joints shall be dry or mortared as indicated on the Drawings.

623S.5 Measurement

Acceptable work performed as prescribed by this item will be measured by the square foot (square meter: 1 square meter is equal to 10.764 square feet) of finished sloping face. Separate measurement will not be made for backfill, footing or the removal of existing mortared rock walls, and these items shall be included in the unit price bid for the item bids.

623S.6 Payment

Work performed and materials furnished or prescribed by this item and measured as provided under "Measurement" will be paid for at the unit bid price per square foot for "Dry Stack Rock Wall". The unit bid price shall include full compensation for: furnishing all materials, completing all excavation including existing mortared rock walls, constructing the footings, backfilling behind the wall and providing all equipment, tools, labor and incidentals necessary to complete the work.

Payment will be made under:

Pay Item No. 623S: Dry Stack Rock Wall - Per Square Foot.

End

SPECIFIC CROSS REFERENCE MATERIALS
Specification 623S, "Dry Stack Rock Wall"

City of Austin Environmental Criteria Manual

Designation	Description
Section 1.8.2.B.6	Construction on Slopes

City of Austin Standard Specifications

Designation	Description
Item No. 403S	Concrete for Structures
Item No. 210S	Flexible Base
Item No. 620S	Filter Fabric

Texas Department of Transportation: Manual of Testing Procedures

Designation	Description
410-A	Abrasion of Coarse Aggregate Using The Los Angeles Machine
411-A	Soundness of Aggregate By Use of Sodium Sulfate or Magnesium Sulfate

American Society for Testing and Materials (ASTM)

Designation	Description
C-535	Standard Test Method for Resistance of Large Size Coarse Aggregate by Abrasion and Impact in the Los Angeles Machine

RELATED CROSS REFERENCE MATERIALS

City of Austin Standard Specifications

Designation	Description
Item No. 101S	Preparing Right of Way
Item No. 102S	Clearing and Grubbing
Item No. 111S	Excavation
Item No. 120S	Channel Excavation
Item No. 132S	Embankment
Item No. 606S	Fertilizer
Item No. 608S	Planting
Item No. 610S	Preservation of Trees and Other Vegetation

Texas Department of Transportation: Standard Specifications for Construction and Maintenance of Highways, Streets, and Bridges

Designation	Description
Item No. 100	Preparing Right of Way
Item No. 110	Excavation
Item No. 132	Embankment
Item No. 158	Specialized Excavation Work
Item No. 166	Fertilizer
Item No. 168	Vegetative Watering
Item No. 169	Soil Retention Blanket
Item No. 204	Sprinkling

Current Version: December 31, 2013 Previous Versions: 10/30/09, 06/21/07, 05/21/01 and 04/17/86

Item No. 628S
Sediment Containment Dikes

628S.1 Description

This item shall govern the provision and placement of temporary filtration dikes along or across such areas as indicated on the Drawings. This method shall be used during construction only and its purpose shall be to temporarily control erosion by intercepting and retaining sediment.

This specification is applicable for projects or work involving either inch-pound or SI units. Within the text, the inch-pound units are given preference followed by SI units shown within parentheses.

628S.2 Submittals

The submittal requirements for this specification item shall include:

A. Locations and Types of containment dikes (Hay Bales or Triangular Sediment Filter Dike).

B. Seeding

1. Identification of the type, source, mixture, pure live seed (PLS) and rate of application of the seeding.

2. Type of mulch.

3. Type of tacking agent.

4. Type and rate of application of fertilizer.

628S.3 Materials

A. Hay Bales

"Hay Bales" shall be free of Johnson Grass or other nocuous weeds. The bales shall consist of either hay or straw in good condition and be securely tied with wire. Stakes for anchoring bales shall be #4 (10M) reinforcing bars, 1/2 inch (12.5 mm) steel pickets, or 2 x 2 inch (50 x 50 mm) wooden stakes. Hay bales shall be limited to drainage areas less than 2,500 square feet (0.02 hectares).

B. Filter Dike

"Filter Dike" shall be prefabricated from 6x6-D2.9xD2.9 (150x150-MW19xMW19) WWF and 4.5 oz. (127 grams) non-woven polyester filter fabric securely fastened to WWF with galvanized shoat rings or j-clips. A 12-inch (300-mm) skirt shall be a continuous extension of the filter fabric on the upstream face.

The filter fabric shall extend beyond the dike joints to provide a 3-inch (75-mm) overlap. Ends of dike not lapped with filter fabric shall be plugged with filter fabric.

628S.4 Construction Methods

The Contractor may select the material for the dikes, unless otherwise indicated, conforming to the details on the Drawings and Standard Detail Numbers 628S and 628S-1.

Bales shall be placed with ends tightly abutting the adjacent bales. Each bale shall be embedded in the soil a minimum of 4 inches (100 mm) and a maximum of 6 inches (150 mm). Bales shall be securely anchored in place by a minimum of 2 stakes per bale. The first stake in each bale shall be angled toward the previously placed bale to force the bales together. Stakes shall be embedded in the soil a minimum of 1 1/2 feet (0.45 meters). Bales that are not able to be imbedded and are place on impervious cover should be placed level with the concrete and have all bales butted end to end with no voids or gaps between them. Bales shall be bound by either wire or nylon string. Bales shall be replaced every 2 months or more often during wet periods.

For filter dikes, the filters shall be placed with ends tightly abutting the adjacent filter. Each filter and skirt shall be securely anchored in place using 6 inch (150 mm) staples at a maximum spacing of 12 inches (300 mm) on center. Anchoring on impervious areas shall be accomplished with gravel bags placed at 18 inches (450 mm) on center or with a nominal 1 inch by 4 inch (25 mm by 100 mm) board nailed at 18 inches (450 mm) on center.

Silt accumulation behind hay bales and triangular sediment filter dikes shall be removed at a maximum depth of 6 inches (150 mm) or when, in the opinion of the Engineer or designated representative, the structure ceases to function as intended.

All dikes shall be inspected by the Contractor at least monthly and after each rainfall. Dikes shall be repaired or replaced when necessary or as directed by the Engineer or designated representative.

After completion of construction or when directed by the Engineer or designated representative the dike shall be removed and the site re-graded to the final grades. Any depression shall be filled and any accumulations of silt shall be spread or removed to a permitted disposal area. After removal of the dike the area shall be graded and seeded conforming to Item No. 604S, "Seeding for Erosion Control".

628S.5 Measurement

The work performed and the materials furnished as prescribed by this item will be measured by the lineal foot (lineal meter: 1 lineal meter equals 3.281 lineal feet) of "Sediment Containment Dikes", complete in place.

628S.6 Payment

The work performed and materials furnished and measured as provided under "Measurement" will be paid for at the unit bid price per lineal foot of "Sediment Containment Dikes" indicated

on the Drawings. The Unit bid price shall include full compensation for: (a) furnishing, hauling and placing all materials including all labor, tools, equipment and incidentals needed to complete the work, (b) the repair and/or replacement of materials, (c) the removal and disposal of all silt and debris and (d) the removal of all dikes, silt and debris after completion of construction or when directed by the Engineer or designated representative.

When indicated on the Drawings, payment for sediment containment will be made under:

Pay Item No. 628S-A:	Sediment Containment Dikes with hay bales	Per Lineal Foot.
Pay Item No. 628S-B:	Sediment Containment Dikes with filter fabric	Per Lineal Foot.

End

SPECIFIC CROSS REFERENCE MATERIALS
Specification 628S, “Sediment Containment Dike"

City of Austin Standard Details

Designation	Description
Number 628S	Triangular Sediment Filter Dike
Number 628S-1	Hay Bale Dike

City of Austin Standard Specifications

Designation	Description
Item No. 604S	Seeding for Erosion Control

City of Austin Standard Contract

Section	Description
00300U	Bid Form (Unit Prices)

RELATED CROSS REFERENCE MATERIALS
Specification 628S, “Sediment Containment Dike"

City of Austin Standard Specifications

Designation	Description
Item No. 101S	Preparing Right of Way
Item No. 102S	Clearing and Grubbing
Item No. 111S	Excavation
Item No. 120S	Channel Excavation
Item No. 401S	Structural Excavation and Backfill
Item No. 406S	Reinforcing Steel
Item No. 602S	Sodding for Erosion Control
Item No. 605S	Soil Retention Blanket
Item No. 606S	Fertilizer
Item No. 608S	Planting
Item No. 610S	Preservation of Trees and Other Vegetation
Item No. 620S	Filter Fabric

RELATED CROSS REFERENCE MATERIALS (Continued)
Specification 628S, “Sediment Containment Dike"

Texas Department of Transportation: Standard Specifications for Construction and Maintenance of Highways, Streets, and Bridges

Designation	Description
Item No. 100	Preparing Right of Way
Item No. 110	Excavation
Item No. 132	Embankment
Item No. 158	Specialized Excavation Work
Item No. 166	Fertilizer
Item No. 168	Vegetative Watering
Item No. 169	Soil Retention Blanket

Current Version: December 31, 2013 Previous Versions: 10/30/09, 06/21/07, 05/21/01 and 04/17/86

Item No. 204 Sprinkling

ITEM NO. 639S
ROCK BERM

639S.1 Description

This item shall govern the construction of a temporary berm of open graded rock that is installed at the toe of a slope on the perimeter of a developing area. Rock berms are appropriate for use as flow diverters, energy dissipators, grade control, and level spreaders to release the water in sheet flow (Environmental Criteria Manual Section 1.4.5.E). This item shall also govern the removal of the "Rock Berm" and re-vegetation of the area.

This specification is applicable for projects or work involving either inch-pound or SI units. Within the text, the inch-pound units are given preference followed by SI units shown within parentheses.

639S.2 Submittals

The submittal requirements for this specification item shall include:

A. Function (flow diversion, grade control, energy dissipator, level spreader, or other) and dimensions of the rock berm

B. Source, type and gradation of rock

C. Re-vegetation program, including:

1. Identification of the type, source, mixture, Pure Live Seed (PLS) and rate of application of the seeding.
2. Type of mulch.
3. Type of tacking agent.
4. Type and rate of application of fertilizer.

639S.3 Design Criteria

A detailed design is not required for the installation of a rock berm; however, the following criteria shall be observed:

Drainage area	less than 5 acres (2 hectares).
Height	18 inches (450 mm) minimum height, measured vertically from the top of the existing ground at the upslope toe to the top of the berm.
Top width	2 feet (0.6 meter) minimum.
Side slopes	2:1 or flatter.

Grade	Berms will be built along a contour as near possible to a 0 percent grade.

639S.4 Materials

Surplus rock excavated from utility trenches or from other excavations may be used in construction of these berms. In general, the rocks shall be sound with a minimum of 3 inches (75 mm) in smallest dimension and shall weigh between 10 and 30 pounds (4.5 to 13.6 kilograms) each. Seeding for re-vegetation shall conform to Item No. 604S, "Seeding for Erosion Control".

Use only open-graded rock of the size indicated on Standard Detail No. 639S-1, with most of the fines removed.

639S.5 Construction Methods

All trees, brush, stumps and objectionable material shall be removed and disposed in a manner that will not interfere with the construction of the berm.

A trench shall be excavated to a minimum depth of 4 inches (100 mm) below existing grade for placement of the rock as indicated on Standard Detail No. 639S-1 and the Drawings. The rocks shall be placed in interlocking layers with close joints starting at the base. Open joints shall be filled with rock-spalled materials as required to stabilize the berm.

The area upstream from the rock berm shall be maintained in a condition, which will allow sediment to be removed following the runoff from a rainfall event. After each rainfall event with an accumulation of 1 inch (25 mm) or more, an inspection of the rock berm will be made by the Contractor and the stone shall be replaced, when the structure ceases to function as intended because of sediment accumulation among the rocks, washout, construction traffic damage, etc.

If the sediment reaches a depth equal to 1/3 the height of the berm or 6 inches (150 mm), whichever is less, the Contractor will remove the accumulated sediment and dispose of it at an approved disposal site in a manner that will not contribute to additional sedimentation. The berm will be reshaped as needed during construction.

When the site is completely stabilized, the berm will be removed and disposed of in a manner approved by the Engineer or designated representative.

The area will be re-vegetated as required by Item No. 604S, "Seeding for Erosion Control".

639S.6 Measurement

Acceptable work performed and prescribed in this item will be measured by the linear foot (lineal meter: 1 lineal meter equals 3.281 lineal feet) along the centerline of top of berm.

639S.7 Payment

The work performed and material furnished and measured as provided under "Measurement" to construct this item will be paid for at the unit bid price per linear foot of rock berm barrier as indicated on the Drawings. The Unit Bid Price shall include full compensation for:

(a) furnishing, hauling and placing all materials including all labor, tools, equipment and incidentals needed to complete the work,
(b) maintaining the berm,
(c) removing sediment accumulations,
(d) rock replacement,
(e) removing and disposing of all materials when the berm is no longer required and
(f) re-vegetating the site upon removal of the berm.

Payment will be made under:

Pay Item No. 639S:	Rock Berm	Per Lineal Foot.

End

***SPECIFIC* CROSS REFERENCE MATERIALS**
Specification 639S, "Rock Berm"

City of Austin Environmental Criteria Manual

Designation	Description
Section 1.4.2.E	Rock Berm

City of Austin Standard Details

Designation	Description
Number 639S-1	Rock Berm

City of Austin Standard Specifications

Designation	Description
Item No. 604S	Seeding for Erosion Control

***RELATED* CROSS REFERENCE MATERIALS**
Specification 639S, "Rock Berm"

City of Austin Environmental Criteria Manual

Designation	Description
Table 1-1.3	Recommended Design Values For Functional Controls
Table 1-2	Maximum Water Depth At The Barrier

City of Austin Standard Specifications

Designation	Description
Item No. 101S	Preparing Right of Way
Item No. 102S	Clearing and Grubbing
Item No. 111S	Excavation
Item No. 120S	Channel Excavation
Item No. 401S	Structural Excavation and Backfill
Item No. 602S	Sodding for Erosion Control
Item No. 605S	Soil Retention Blanket

Item No. 606S	Fertilizer
Item No. 608S	Planting
Item No. 610S	Preservation of Trees and Other Vegetation
Item No. 620S	Filter Fabric

Texas Department of Transportation: Standard Specifications for Construction and Maintenance of Highways, Streets, and Bridges

Designation	Description
Item No. 100	Preparing Right of Way
Item No. 110	Excavation
Item No. 132	Embankment
Item No. 158	Specialized Excavation Work
Item No. 166	Fertilizer
Item No. 168	Vegetative Watering
Item No. 169	Soil Retention Blanket
Item No. 204	Sprinkling

Item No. 640S
Mortared Rock Wall

640S.1 Description

This item shall govern the construction of mortared rock walls, as herein specified, on a prepared subgrade, including furnishing the stone, mortar and other related materials to construct walls, the excavation and backfilling the wall, removal of any old structure or portions thereof encountered, disposal of surplus excavated material and the completion Mortared Rock Walls as indicated on the Drawings or as directed by the Engineer or designated representative.

This specification is applicable for projects or work involving either inch-pound or SI units. Within the text, the inch-pound units are given preference followed by SI units shown within parentheses.

640S.2 Submittals

The submittal requirements for this specification item shall include:

A. Details concerning the p.c. concrete footing including dimensions of the footing, the p.c. concrete mix design, steel reinforcement, etc.

B. Source, type and gradation of rock

C. Mortar mix design.

640S.3 Materials

A. Rock:

All types used shall be native limestone suitable for horizontal course type construction. The size of rock to be used for construction shall be as indicated on the Drawings, but may vary as approved by the Engineer or designated representative.

B. Portland Cement: ASTM C 150, Type I

C. Masonry Cement: ASTM C 91

D. Sand: ASTM C 144, Natural

E. Water: Free from matter that could impair suitability for use in mortar

F. Hydrated Lime: ASTM C 207, Type S

G. Mortar:

Mortar shall be composed of 1 part Portland Cement, 1 part hydrated lime and 6 parts sand (by volume) and water. Mortar shall have a consistency that insures that it can be easily spread by a trowel. An alternate mix composed of 1 part masonry cement and 3 parts sand may be used. The sand shall be measured damp and loose.

640S.4 Construction Methods

Stone shall be laid plumb, level or true to a line. All stone shall be laid in a full bed of mortar with head joints and edge joints completely filled. The face shall be aligned or exposed as indicated on the Drawings. Exterior joints that will remain exposed shall be finished in a manner approved by the Engineer or designated representative.

In hot weather, stone work shall be kept moist until the mortar has set. No mortar work will be done when the temperature is below 40°F (4°C) in the shade and all work may be suspended during freezing or undesirable weather. The mortar materials shall be mixed mechanically for not less than 5 minutes after all ingredients are in the mixer. Mortar that has begun to set or that has been mixed for more than 2 hours shall not be used.

Spalls may be used in partially filling the large voids, provided they are keyed in properly and are well coated with mortar. All finished rockwork shall be protected from damage. Chipped rockwork, that will remain exposed, shall be satisfactorily repaired or replaced.

Mortared rock walls shall consist of courses or layers of rock with the spaces between them filled with mortar and shall be constructed at such places as indicated on the Drawings or as directed by the Engineer or designated representative, in accordance with these specifications and in conformity with the lines, grades, height, depth and other details shown on the pertinent typical sections.

Excavation and concrete footings for mortared rock walls shall not be paid for directly, but shall be included in the unit price bid for mortared rock wall construction.

Prior to placing any material, the footings shall have been placed by the Contractor as part of this contract to the approved line and grade and allowed at least 36 hours curing time. The rock shall then be thoroughly wet and bedded in 1 inch (25 mm) of mortar placed on the footings, one against the other, with the resulting voids being completely filled with mortar. The finished surface shall be even and level.

640S.5 Measurement

Mortared rock wall will be measured by the square foot (square meter: 1 square meter equals 10.76 square feet) of the outside, vertical face of wall. No measurement will be made for concrete footing and shall be included in the unit price bid for the rock wall construction.

640S.6 Payment

Mortared rock wall acceptably completed will be paid for at the contract unit bid price per square foot. The unit bid price shall include full compensation for furnishing all materials, for excavation, and backfill, for all forming, transporting, placing, finishing and for all equipment, tools, labor and incidentals necessary to place mortared rock wall on concrete footing as specified and indicated on the Drawings.

Payment will be made under:

Pay Item No. 640S:	Mortared Rock Wall	Per Square Foot.

End

SPECIFIC CROSS REFERENCE MATERIALS
Specification 640S, "Mortared Rock Wall"

American Society for Testing and Materials, ASTM

Designation	Description
C 91	Specification for Masonry Cement
C 144	Specification for Aggregate for Masonry
C 150	Specification for Portland Cement
C 207	Specification for Hydrated Lime for Masonry

RELATED CROSS REFERENCE MATERIALS
Specification 640S, "Mortared Rock Wall"

City of Austin Standard Specifications

Designation	Description
Item No. 101S	Preparing Right of Way
Item No. 102S	Clearing and Grubbing
Item No. 111S	Excavation
Item No. 401	Structural Excavation and Backfill
Item No. 403S	Concrete for Structures
Item No. 405	Concrete Admixtures
Item No. 406	Reinforcing Steel
Item No. 606S	Fertilizer
Item No. 608S	Planting
Item No. 610S	Preservation of Trees and Other Vegetation
Item No. 620S	Filter Fabric

Texas Department of Transportation: Standard Specifications for Construction and Maintenance of Highways, Streets, and Bridges

Designation	Description
Item No. 100	Preparing Right of Way
Item No. 110	Excavation
Item No. 132	Embankment
Item No. 158	Specialized Excavation Work

641S.1 Description

This item governs the construction of a stabilized pad of crushed stone located at any point where traffic will be entering or leaving a construction site to or from a public right of way, street, alley, sidewalk or parking area. The removal of the stabilized pad of crushed stone shall also be included in the item. The purpose of a stabilized construction entrance is to reduce or eliminate the tracking or deposition of sediment onto public right of way (Environmental Criteria Manual Section 1.4.2.N.4).

This specification is applicable for projects or work involving either inch-pound or SI units. Within the text, the inch-pound units are given preference followed by SI units shown within parentheses.

641S.2 Submittals

The submittal requirements for this specification item shall include:

A. Source, type and gradation of rock

B. Drainage technique (i.e. drainage swale or entrance grading) proposed to prevent runoff from exiting the construction site.

641S.3 Materials

Aggregate for construction shall conform to the following gradation:

Table 1: Aggregate Gradation Chart (TEX 401-A, % Retained per sieve)	
US 5 inch (SI 125 mm)	US 3 inch (SI 75 mm)
0	100

641S.4 Construction Methods

All trees, brush, stumps, obstructions and other objectionable material shall be removed and disposed of in a manner that will not interfere with the excavation and construction of the entrance as indicated on the Drawings or as presented in Standard Details No. 641S-1. The entrance shall not drain onto the public right of way or shall not allow surface water runoff to exit the construction site.

When necessary, vehicle wheels shall be cleaned to remove sediment prior to entrance onto public right of way. When vehicle washing is required, it shall be done on an area stabilized with crushed stone, which drains into an approved sediment trap or sediment basin. All sediment shall be prevented from entering any storm drain, ditch or watercourse through use of sand bags, gravel, boards, silt fence (Standard Specification Item No 642S) or other methods approved by the Engineer or designated representative.

The entrance shall be maintained in a condition that will prevent tracking or disposition of sediment onto public right of way. This restriction may require periodic top dressing with additional stone as conditions demand, as well as the repair and/or cleanout of any

measures used to trap sediment. All sediment that is spilled, dropped, washed or tracked onto public right of way must be removed immediately.

641S.5 Measurement

Acceptable work performed as prescribed in this item will be measured by unit of each stabilized construction entrance installed.

641S.6 Payment

The work performed and materials furnished and measured as provided under "Measurement" will be paid for at the unit bid price per lineal foot of "Stabilized Construction Entrance". The price shall include full compensation for furnishing, hauling and placing all materials, labor, tools, equipment and incidentals necessary to complete the work including inspecting, repairing, replacing and relocating existing fencing, removal of silt and removal and disposal of all materials at the completion of construction.

Payment, when included as a contract pay item, will be made under:

Pay Item No. 641S: Stabilized Construction Entrance Per Each.

End

SPECIFIC CROSS REFERENCE MATERIALS
Specification 641S, "Stabilized Construction Entrance (SCE)"

City of Austin Environmental Criteria Manual

Designation	Description
Section 1.4.2.N.4	Stabilized Construction Entrance "Design Criteria"

City of Austin Standard Details

Designation	Description
Number 641S-1	Stabilized Construction Entrance

City of Austin Standard Specifications

Designation	Description
Item No. 642S	Silt Fence (SF)

RELATED CROSS REFERENCE MATERIALS

City of Austin Environmental Criteria Manual

Designation	Description
Section 1.4.2.J	Sandbag Berm
Figure 1-11	Sand Bag Berm
Section 1.4.2.G	Silt Fence

City of Austin Standard Specifications

Designation	Description
Item No. 101S	Preparing Right of Way
Item No. 102S	Clearing and Grubbing
Item No. 111S	Excavation
Item No. 120S	Channel Excavation
Item No. 401S	Structural Excavation and Backfill
Item No. 610S	Preservation of Trees and Other Vegetation

Texas Department of Transportation: Standard Specifications for Construction and Maintenance of Highways, Streets, and Bridges

Designation	Description
Item No. 100	Preparing Right of Way
Item No. 110	Excavation
Item No. 132	Embankment
Item No. 158	Specialized Excavation Work
Item No. 168	Vegetative Watering

Current Version: September 01, 2011 Previous Versions: 10/30/09, 06/21/07, 05/23/00 and 05/01/90

ITEM NO. 642S
SILT FENCE

642S.1 Description

This item shall govern the provision and placement of a silt fence fabric fence (Environmental Criteria Manual Section 1.4.5.G) including maintenance of the fence, removal of accumulated silt, removal of the silt fence and re-vegetation of disturbed areas upon completion of the project.

This specification is applicable for projects or work involving either inch-pound or SI units. Within the text, the inch-pound units are given preference followed by SI units shown within parentheses.

642S.2 Submittals

The submittal requirements for this specification item shall include:

A. Source, manufacturer, characteristics and test data for the silt fence fabric,

B. Manufacturer, characteristics and test data for the posts and wire fence.

C. Re-vegetation program, including:

1. Identification of the type, source, mixture, Pure Live Seed (PLS) and rate of application of the seeding.
2. Type of mulch.
3. Type of tacking agent.
4. Type and rate of application of fertilizer.

642S.3 Materials

A. Fabric

1. General:

   The silt fence fabric shall be of nonwoven polypropylene, polyethylene or polyamide thermoplastic fibers with non-raveling edges. The silt fence fabric shall be non-biodegradable, inert to most soil chemicals, ultraviolet resistant, unaffected by moisture or other weather conditions, and permeable to water while retaining sediment. The silt fence fabric shall be supplied in rolls a minimum of 36 inches (0.9 meter) wide.

2. Physical Requirements:

   The fabric shall meet the requirements presented in Table 1, when sampled and tested in accordance with the methods indicated herein, on Standard Detail No. 642S-1 and/or on the Drawings.

B. Posts:

Posts shall be steel Tee or Y-posts, not less than 4 feet (1.22 meters) in length with a minimum weight of 1.25 pounds per foot (1.86 kilograms per meter) with a minimum Brinell Hardness of 143. Hangers shall be adequate to secure fence and fabric to posts. Posts and anchor plates shall conform to ASTM A-702. Caps are required (*not specifying discretionary criteria).

C. Wire Fence:

Wire fence shall be welded wire fabric 2 in. x 4 in. 12.5 SWG, wire diameter 0.099 in (±0.005 in.), and shall conform to Standard Specification Item No. 406, "Reinforcing Steel".

TABLE 1. Silt Fence Fabric Requirements		
Physical Properties	Method	Requirements
Fabric Weight in ounces per square yard (grams/square meter)	TEX-616-J[1]	5.0 minimum (150 minimum)
Equivalent Sieve Opening Size: US Standard (SI Standard sieve size)	CW-02215[2]	40 to 100 (425 to 150 □m)
Mullen Burst Strength: lbs. per sq. inch (psi) megaPascal (mPa)	ASTM D-3786[3]	280 minimum (1.9 minimum)
Ultraviolet Resistance; % Strength Retention	ASTM D-1682[4]	70 minimum

[1] TxDoT Test Method Tex-616-J, "Testing of Construction Fabrics".
[2] US Army Corps of Engineers Civil Works Construction Guide Specification CW-02215, "Plastic Filter Fabric".
[3] ASTM D-3786, " Test Method for Hydraulic Bursting Strength of Knitting Goods and Nonwoven Fabrics: Diaphragm Bursting Strength Tester Method".
[4] ASTM D-1682, " Test Methods for Breaking Load and Elongation of Textile Fabrics ".

642S.4 Construction Methods

The silt fence fabric shall be securely attached to the posts and the wire support fence with the bottom 12 inches (300 mm) of the material buried in a trench a minimum of 6 inches (150 mm) deep and 6 inches (150 mm) wide to prevent sediment from passing under the fence. When the silt fence is constructed on impervious material, a 12-inch (300-mm) flap of fabric shall be extended upstream from the bottom of the silt fence and weighted to limit particulate loss. No horizontal joints will be allowed in the silt fence fabric. Vertical joints shall be overlapped a minimum of 12 inches (300 mm) with the ends sewn or otherwise securely tied.

The silt fence shall be a minimum of 24 inches (0.6 meter) high. Posts shall be embedded a minimum of 12 inches (300 mm) in the ground, placed a maximum of 8 feet

(2.4 meters) apart and set on a slight angle toward the anticipated runoff source. When directed by the Engineer or designated representative, posts shall be set at specified intervals to support concentrated loads.

* Per OSHA §1926.701, 'all protruding reinforcing steel, onto and into which employees could fall, shall be guarded to eliminate the hazard of impalement'. Caps must be large enough to dissipate the forces of impact to prevent impalement from a reasonably foreseeable fall distance. It should be noted that the use of impalement protection caps is but one method of protection; covers or wooden troughs can be another means of meeting the guarding requirement. For City of Austin purposes, this also applies to t-posts and wooden stakes.

The silt fence shall be repaired, replaced, and/or relocated when necessary or as directed by the Engineer or designated representative. Accumulated silt shall be removed when it reaches a depth of 6 inches (150 mm).

642S. 5 Measurement

The work performed and the materials furnished under this item will be measured by the lineal foot of "Silt Fence", complete in place.

642S.6 Payment

The work performed and materials furnished and measured as provided under "Measurement" will be paid for at the unit bid price per lineal foot of "Silt Fence". The price shall include full compensation for furnishing, hauling and placing all materials, labor, tools, equipment and incidentals necessary to complete the work including inspecting, repairing, replacing and relocating the fence, removal of silt and removal and disposal of all materials at the completion of construction in and re-vegetation of disturbed areas.

Payment will be made under:

Pay Item No. 642S:	Silt Fence for Erosion Control	Per Lineal Foot.

END

SPECIFIC CROSS REFERENCE MATERIALS
Specification 642S, "Silt Fence"

City of Austin Environmental Criteria Manual

Designation	Description
Section 1.4.5.G	Silt Fence

City of Austin Standard Details

Designation	Description
Number 642S-1	Silt Fence

City of Austin Technical Specifications

Designation	Description
Item No. 406	Reinforcing Steel

American Society For Testing and Materials (ASTM)

Designation	Description
A-702	Specification for Steel Fence Posts and Assemblies, Hot Wrought
D-1682	Test Methods for Breaking Load and Elongation of Textile Fabrics
D-3786	Test Method for Hydraulic Bursting Strength of Knitting Goods and Nonwoven Fabrics: Diaphragm Bursting Strength Tester Method

Texas Department of Transportation Manual of Testing Procedures

Designation	Description
Tex-616-J	Testing of Construction Fabrics

U.S. Army Corps of Engineers

Designation	Description
CW-02215	Civil Works Construction Guide Specification "Plastic Filter Fabric"

RELATED CROSS REFERENCE MATERIALS
Specification 642S, "Silt Fence"

City of Austin Environmental Criteria Manual

Designation	Description
Table 1-1.3	Recommended Design Values For Functional Controls
Table 1-2	Maximum Water Depth At The Barrier

City of Austin Standard Specifications

Designation	Description
Item No. 101S	Preparing Right of Way
Item No. 102S	Clearing and Grubbing
Item No. 111S	Excavation
Item No. 120S	Channel Excavation
Item No. 401S	Structural Excavation and Backfill
Item No. 610S	Preservation of Trees and Other Vegetation

ITEM NO. 648S
MULCH SOCK

648S.1 Description

A Mulch sock consists of material encased in a tube of mesh. It is used to intercept, settle, and filter sheet flow and pond runoff. Mulch socks provide an environmentally sensitive and cost-effective alternative to sediment fences.

648S.2 Submittals

The submittal requirements for this specification item shall include the following:

A. Mulch Material

1. A small sample of mulch material proposed to be used on the site will be provided to the engineer.
2. Provide a designated project stockpile of mulch for sampling and testing at the producer's site.
3. A copy of the lab analysis, performed by an STA-certified lab, verifying that the mulch material meets the requirements of Table 1.

Table 1

Item	Requirement	Reference Specification
Particle Size	3" minus screening process	Equivalent to TXDOT item 161, Compost, Section 1.6.2.B, Wood Chip requirements
pH	5.5 – 8.5	TMECC 04. 11-A, "1.5 Slurry pH"
Organic Matter Content	25%, dry weight basis	TMECC 05.07-A, "Loss-On-Ignition Organic Matter Method"

B. Tube Material

The CONTRACTOR shall submit a sample of the material that the CONTRACTOR proposes to use on the project. A sample of the material should be accompanied by material data sheet identifying composition, ability of the material to biodegrade, and size of openings in tube at a minimum.

648S.3 Materials

A. Mulching material can be manufactured on or off the project site and may consist of:

1. Shredded bark
2. Stump grindings
3. Composted bark

B. The mulch shall have the following composition:

1. Wood chips shall be produced from a 3-inch minus screening process (equivalent to TxDOT item 161, Compost, Section 1.6.2.B Wood Chip Requirements).
2. Large portions of silts, clays, or fine sands are not acceptable.
3. The pH of the mulch shall be between 5.5 and 8.5.
4. The organic matter content shall be greater than or equal to 25% on a dry weight basis.

C. Mulch material must be free of refuse, physical contaminants, and material toxic to plant growth. It is not acceptable for the mulch material to contain ground construction debris, biosolids, manure, or recyclable material.

D. Prior to placement, a representative sample of the mulching material must be tested and certified by the project engineer or his/her designee and accepted by the city inspector.

E. “Sock” material will be 100% biodegradable, photodegradable, or recyclable such as burlap, twine, UV photodegradable plastic, polyester, or any other acceptable material. The material mesh opening should be equal to or less than 3/8 inch (10 mm) and the material tensile strength should be equal to or greater than 44 psi (3.09 kg/cm2).

648S.4 Installation

A. Use 12 or 18 inch diameter mulch socks for all sediment control applications. This diameter of mulch sock material has proven to be the most consistent for all sediment control applications (TxDOT, April 2006).

B. Install mulch socks per Figure 1.4.5.F in the City of Austin Environmental Criteria Manual.

C. Mulch socks should be used at the base of slopes no steeper than 2:1 and should not exceed the maximum spacing criteria provided in the following table.

Slope	Max. Slope Length Between *18 in. Dia. Sock* (ft)	Max. Drainage Area (sf) per 100ft of Sock
100:1 - 50:1	100	10,000
50:1 - 30:1	75	7,500
30:1 - 25:1	65	6,500
25:1 - 20:1	50	4,800
20:1 - 10:1	25	2,600
10:1 - 5:1	15	1,300
5:1 - 2:1	10	1,000

Slope	Max. Slope Length Between *12 in. Dia. Sock* (ft)	Max. Drainage Area (sf) per 100ft of Sock
100:1 - 50:1	100	6,000
50:1 - 30:1	40	4,000
30:1 - 25:1	30	3,000
25:1 - 20:1	25	2,600
20:1 - 10:1	15	1,300
10:1 - 5:1	10	1,000
5:1 - 2:1	5	500

D. Place mulch socks at a 5 ft or greater distance away from the toe of the slopes to maximize space available for sediment deposition.

E. When placed on level contours, sheet flow of water should be perpendicular to the mulch sock at impact and unconcentrated.

F. Install mulch socks using rebar (#5 minimum with safety caps) a minimum of 48 inches in length placed on 2-ft centers. In order to prevent the movement or floating of the mulch sock during rain events or construction operations, install steel posts on alternating sides of the sock. Drive the posts into the ground to a minimum depth of 24 inches, leaving less than 12 inches of post above the exposed mulch sock.

G. In order to prevent water flowing around the ends of the mulch socks, point the ends of the socks up slope.

H. In order to prevent water from flowing between the gaps at adjacent ends of mulch socks, overlap the ends of adjacent mulch socks a minimum of 12 inches. Never stack mulch socks on top of one another.

I. Mulch Socks should be placed using ‘smiles’ and ‘j-hooks’. See ECM Section 1.4.5 G (Silt Fence)

J. For steeper slopes, an additional mulch sock can be constructed on the top of the slope and within the slope area as determined by specific field conditions. Multiple mulch socks are recommended on steeper slopes.

K. Do not use mulch socks in areas of concentrated flow as they are intended to control sheet flow only.

648S.5 Inspection and Maintenance

A. Inspect mulch socks after installation for gaps under the mulch socks and for gaps between the joints of adjacent ends of mulch socks. Contractor shall repair gaps such that no water flows under or around sock.

B. Inspect every seven days and within 24 hours of a rainfall event of 0.5 inches or greater. Replace and repair mulch socks as necessary.

C. Sediment retained by the mulch socks shall be removed when it has reached one third of the exposed height of the mulch socks.

D. Mulch socks can be vegetated or un-vegetated. Vegetated mulch socks can be left in place. The vegetation will grow in the slope, further anchoring the sock.

648S.6 Payment

The work performed and the materials furnished as prescribed by this item shall be paid for by the linear foot of mulch sock installed.

Payment will be made under:

Pay Item No. 648S:	Mulch Sock	Per Lineal Foot.

END

***SPECIFIC* CROSS REFERENCE MATERIALS**
Specification Item No. 648S, "Mulch Sock"

City of Austin Environmental Criteria Manual

Designation	Description
1.4.5.F	Mulch Sock
1.4.5.G	Silt Fence

City of Austin Standard Details

Designation	Description
648S-1	Mulch Sock

Item No. 700S
Mobilization

700S.1 Description

This item shall govern the mobilization of personnel, equipment and materials at the work site for other contract items that will be performed by the Contractor. Mobilization shall include, but not be limited to the movement of equipment, personnel, material, supplies, etc. to the Work site; the installation of temporary facilities (when not paid for separately) and the establishment of office and other necessary facilities prior to the initiation of the Work. The cost of the Payment Bond and Performance Bond on the Work that is delayed due to circumstances beyond Contractor's control, a closed construction season or for the convenience of the City of Austin will be considered part of the mobilization item under this Contract.

700S.2 Measurement.

Measurement of the Specification Item, "Mobilization", as specified herein as "Total Mobilization Payment", will be by the "Lump Sum", as the Work progresses.

700S.3 Payment.

The adjusted contract amount as used below is defined as the original contract amount less the lump sum bid for Mobilization and any payments for materials or equipment not yet incorporated in the Work. The Contractor shall submit a lump sum amount for Payment Item No. 700S-TM, "Total Mobilization Payment".

"Initial Mobilization Payout" as used below is defined as:

1. 8% of the original contract amount for projects with an original contract amount of $ 0.5 million or less; or
2. 4% of the original contract amount for projects with an original contract amount greater than $ 0.5 million.

In those instances where the "Initial Mobilization Payout", as defined above, exceeds the "Total Mobilization Payment" lump sum bid item (i.e. Payment Item No. 700S-TM), the "Total Mobilization Payment" shall be used as the "Initial Mobilization Payout". In no instance shall the "Initial Mobilization Payout" exceed the "Total Mobilization Payment" bid item.

Partial payments of the "Initial Mobilization Payout" shall be as follows:

A. Upon presentation of a paid invoice for the Payment Bond, Performance Bond and/or required insurance, the Contractor will be paid that cost from the amount bid for "Total Mobilization Payment".

B. The Mobilization of tunnel boring machines, batch plants or other similar facilities, along with supporting materials and equipment, to the work site or to the vicinity of the Work site will be considered as partial Mobilization under this

contract. The Contractor shall provide a certified statement of the Contractor's expenditure for the Mobilization and setup of the facility and supporting equipment. Upon approval by the Engineer or designated representative, the certified expenditure will be paid from the amount bid for the Specification Item, "Total Mobilization Payment". In no case shall the combined amount for all of these facilities be more than 10 percent of the Mobilization "Total Mobilization Payment" lump sum bid or one (1) percent of the total contract amount, whichever is less.

C. When one (1) percent of the adjusted contract amount is earned, 50 percent of the "Initial Mobilization Payout" will be paid. Previous payments under this item will be deducted from this amount.

D. When five (5) percent of the adjusted contract amount is earned, seventy-five (75) of the "Initial Mobilization Payout" will be paid. Previous payments under this item will be deducted from this amount.

E. When ten (10) percent of the adjusted contract amount is earned, one hundred (100) percent of the "Initial Mobilization Payout" will be paid. Previous payments under this item will be deducted from this amount.

F. Payment for the remainder of Pay Item No. 700S-TM, "Total Mobilization Payment" will be made upon receipt of the final pay estimate.

Payment will be made under:

Pay Item No. 700S-TM: **"**Total Mobilization Payment" Lump Sum

END

RELATED CROSS REFERENCE MATERIALS
Specification 700S, "MOBILIZATION"

City of Austin Standard Contract Documents

Designation	Description
00020	Invitation for Bids
00100	Instructions To Bidders
00300	Bid Form
00425	Insurance Cost Form
00500	Agreement
00610	Performance Bond
00620	Bid Bond
00650	Certificate of Insurance
00700	General Conditions
00810	Supplemental General Conditions
00820	Modifications to Bidding Requirements & Contract Forms
01010	Summary of Work
01300	Submittals
01500	Temporary Facilities
01550	Public Safety and Convenience
01700	Contract Closeout

ROCIP Project: Withhold insurance cost. Please refer to sections 00425 & 00810 for information.

Current Version: September 26, 2012 **Previous Version: 08/18/00, 04/05/99**

01710 Final Cleaning

Item No. 710S
Bicycle Racks

710S.1 Description

This item shall govern Class II and Class III bicycle racks and associated support medium as indicated on the Drawings.

A Class II bicycle rack shall be a rack where both wheels and the frame of a bicycle can be secured with one (1) user-supplied lock without the requirement for wheel removal. The design, type and capacity of a Class II bicycle rack shall be approved by the Engineer or designated representative

A Class III bicycle rack shall be a rack where both one wheel and the frame can be secured with a user supplied lock (see Standard Detail 710S-1, "Class III Style Bicycle Parking"). The Class III rack shall consist of either a single U/Hoop (Rack 1), multiple inverted U/Hoop (Rack 2), single post (Rack 3), or other Rack approved by the Engineer or designated representative.

This specification is applicable for projects or work involving either inch-pound or SI units. Within the text, the inch-pound units are given preference followed by SI units shown within parentheses.

710S.2 Submittals

The submittal requirements of this specification item include:

A. Class (i.e. II or III) Type and capacity of bicycle rack (i.e. number of bicycles served).

B. Fabrication and installation details, color and finish of the rack(s).

C. Support medium (i.e. existing slab, new pad, concrete filled excavation, etc.) and details of installation.

D. Complete manufacturer's warranty against defects for a period not less than one year from date of installation.

710S.3 Materials

A. Steel elements.

All steel shall be ASTM A-36 1010-1018 low carbon prime steel and the screws, nuts and bolts shall be tamper proof and plated with commercial zinc. The bicycle racks shall be hot dipped galvanized (ASTM A 123) unless the Drawings indicate that the rack assembly shall be provided in a specific color with a polyester-vinyl coated finish, a powder coated finish, or a polyvinyl thermoplastic finish.

B. Portland Cement Concrete

Portland cement concrete shall be Class A conforming to Specification Item No. 403S, "Concrete for Structures" or Specification Item No. 407S, "Fibrous Concrete".

C. Reinforcement

Reinforcement shall conform to Specification Item No. 406S, "Reinforcing Steel" or Specification Item No. 407, "Fibrous Concrete".

D. Expansion Joint Materials

Expansion joint materials shall conform to Specification Item No. 408, "Expansion Joint Materials".

E. Membrane Curing Compound

Membrane curing compound shall conform to Specification Item No. 409, "Membrane Curing".

710S.4 Construction of Racks

A. Class II Bicycle Rack.

The Class II Rack shall consist of a locking system, which will secure both bicycle wheels and the frame with one (1) lock without the removal of either wheel.

B. Class III Bicycle Rack.

1. The Class III Rack Type 1 (Standard Detail 710S-1, sheet 1 of 3) shall consist of a one piece welded inverted U/Hoop assembly of Schedule 40 steel pipe with an minimum outside diameter (OD) of 1.5 inches (38 mm) on a minimum .25” (6.35 mm) thick base plate.

2. The Class III Rack Type 2 (Standard Detail 710S-1, sheet 2 of 3) shall consist of a single Schedule 40 steel pipe with an minimum outside diameter (OD) of 2 3/8 (60 mm) set in Portland cement concrete below the ground surface as indicated on the Drawings. The steel pipe shall be topped with a 7 1/2 inch (190 mm) polymer molded sphere that is secured with a hardened steel pin.

3. The Class III Rack Type 3 (Standard Detail 710S-1, sheet 3 of 3) shall consist of a one piece welded inverted U/Hoop assemble of Schedule 40 steel pipe with an minimum outside diameter (OD) of 2 3/8 inches (60 mm) supported with a minimum .25” (6.35 mm) thick circular base plate at one end of the rack and an in ground anchor mount on the other end.

4. The base plates can be round, square, or rectangular. If round, the diameter of the base plate must be at least 6” (150 mm) with a 4.5” (114 mm) bolt circle. If square, the base plate must be at least 4” by 4” (100 mm by 100 mm). If rectangular, the base plate must be 6” by 2” (150 mm by 50 mm). All base plates must be pre-drilled with two 3/8” (9.5 mm) diameter holes per plate for mounting. Each entire unit shall be hot dip galvanized after fabrication.

C. The bicycle racks shall be supported as indicated on the Drawings. The Class II racks and the Class III Rack Type 1 shall be supported on either existing or newly placed Portland cement concrete slabs. The Class III, Rack Types 2 and 3, can be placed on either existing or new slabs; however, these racks require additional underslab support of the steel pipe with p.c. concrete encasement as indicated in Standard Detail 710S-1 (sheets 2 and 3).

The construction of the new slabs shall be completed in accordance with Standard Specification Item Number 432S, “Concrete Sidewalks”. Unless noted otherwise on the Drawings, the slab shall be 4 inches (100 mm) in thickness.

710S.5 Installation of Bicycle Racks

Bicycle parking racks shall be installed in existing paver sidewalks, new paver sidewalks and concrete sidewalks in accordance with Standard Details 710S-3, 710S-4 and 710S-5, respectively.

710S.6 Measurement

Bicycle Parking Racks shall be measured per each, complete and in place and any new p.c. concrete slab will be measured by the square foot (square meter: 1 square meter is equal to 10.764 square feet) of surface area of "Bicycle Parking Concrete Pad".

710S.7 Payment

The installation of Bicycle Parking Racks, as described by this Specification Item, will be paid for at the unit bid price per each. The construction of a p.c. concrete bicycle-parking pad will be paid for at the unit bid price per square foot for "Concrete Bicycle Parking Pad".

The unit bid prices shall include full compensation for the specified equipment items; the excavation, removal and disposal of existing sidewalk, location, placement and installation of parking racks; all materials, including all steel pipe and plate, screws, nuts and bolts, reinforcing steel and concrete; placing and finishing the concrete pad, and all labor, tools, and incidentals necessary to complete the work.

Payment will be made under:

Pay Item No. 710S-A:	Class II Bicycle Rack	Per Each.
Pay Item No. 710S-B:	Class III, Type 1 Bicycle Rack	Per Each.
Pay Item No. 710S-C:	Class III, Type 2 Bicycle Rack	Per Each.
Pay Item No. 710S-D:	Class III, Type 3 Bicycle Rack	Per Each.
Pay Item No. 710S-E:	Class III, Other Type Bicycle Rack	Per Each.
Pay Item No. 710S-F:	4 inch Concrete Bicycle Parking Pad	Per Square Foot.

End

SPECIFIC CROSS REFERENCE MATERIALS
Standard Specification Item Number 710S, “Bicycle Racks”

City of Austin Standard Specifications

Designation	Description
Item No. 403S	Concrete for Structures
Item No. 406*S*	Reinforcing Steel
Item No. 407S	Fibrous Concrete
Item No. 408	Expansion Joint Materials

Item No. 409	Membrane Curing
Item No. 410	Concrete Structures
Item No. 432S	Concrete Sidewalks

SPECIFIC CROSS REFERENCE MATERIALS - Continued

Standard Specification Item Number 710S, "Bicycle Racks"

City of Austin Standard Details

Designation	Description
710S-1	Class III Style Bicycle Parking
710S-2	Class II Style Bicycle Parking
710S-3	Bicycle Rack Installation in Concrete Paver Sidewalk – Alternate 1
710S-4	Bicycle Rack Installation in Concrete Sidewalk – Alternate 1
710S-5	Bicycle Rack Installation in Sidewalk – Alternate 2

American Society for Testing and Materials (ASTM)

Designation	Description
ASTM A 36	Specification for Structural Steel
ASTM A 123	Specification for Zinc (Hot-Dipped Galvanized) Coatings on Iron and Steel Products

RELATED CROSS REFERENCE MATERIALS

City of Austin Standard Contract Documents

Designation	Description
00700	General Conditions
01500	Temporary Facilities
01550	Public Safety and Convenience

City of Austin Standard Specifications

Designation	Description
Item No. 102S	Clearing and Grubbing
Item No. 104S	Removing Concrete
Item No. 110S	Street Excavation
Item No. 111S	Excavation
Item No. 132S	Embankment
Item No. 201S	Subgrade Preparation
Item No. 405	Concrete Admixtures
Item No. 406	Reinforced Steel Tolerances
Item No. 411	Surface Finishes for Concrete
Item No. 602S	Sodding for Erosion Control
Item No. 604S	Seeding for Erosion Control
Item No. 610S	Preservation of Trees and Other Vegetation
Item No. 642S	Silt Fence

Texas Department of Transportation: Standard Specifications for Construction and Maintenance of Highways, Streets, and Bridges

Designation	Description
Item 420	Concrete Structures
Item 421	Hydraulic Cement Concrete
Item 427	Surface Finishes for Concrete
Item 437	Concrete Admixtures

Item 440 Reinforcing Steel

American Society for Testing and Materials (ASTM)

Designation	Description
A-496	Standard Specification for Steel Wire, Deformed for Concrete Reinforcement
A-615/615M	Standard Specification for Deformed and Plain Billet-Steel Bars for Concrete Reinforcement

Current Version: September 26, 2012

Previous Versions: 02/24/10, 03/26/08, 06/21/07, 02/17/04, 05/23/00, 05/16/97and 02/21/01

Item No. 802S
Project Signs

802S.1 Description

This item shall govern furnishing, fabricating, erecting, maintaining and removing Project Signs on Capital Improvement Projects (C.I.P.), Bond Program Projects and for project identification at other construction sites, when required on the Drawings. The C.I.P. signs shall be constructed in accordance with Standards 802S-1, 802S-1A, 802S-2, 802S-2A, 802S-2B and 804S-5 or as indicated on the Drawings.

This specification is applicable for projects or work involving either inch-pound or SI units. Within the text, the inch-pound units are given preference followed by SI units shown within parentheses.

802S.2 Materials

A. Sign Face

Sign face shall be manufactured on standard exterior waterproof plywood sheets or other suitable material approved by the Engineer or designated representative. Unless indicated otherwise on the Standard Details or Drawings, the thickness of the plywood sheet shall be a minimum of ¾ inches (19 mm).

B. Posts

Lumber posts, of the size indicated on the Standard Details or on the Drawings, shall be pressure treated with pentachlorophenol.

C. Paint

Exterior oil base paint, colors as indicated on the Standard Details or on the Drawings.

D. Decals for Capital Improvement Projects and Bond Program Projects

City seal shall be in color using the 4 color process. Electronic images, in EPS format, are available from the Public Works Website (http://www.ci.austin.tx.us/publicworks/techspecs.htm) for downloading.

802S.3 Installation

The signs shall be erected at each major entrance to the project for maximum public identification and exposure. At locations where construction is confined to a specific area, the installed sign size shall be 4 x 8 foot (1.2 x 2.4 meter). At locations where C.I.P. roadway construction is in progress, such as a street paving or construction of a sidewalk, the sign shall be 2 x 3 foot (0.2 x 0.8 meter). Signs for Bond Program Projects shall be 3 x 4 foot (0.9 x 1.2 meters).

The signs shall be posted on portable wood frames or stanchions and will be located in the proximity of the work area as construction progresses. All lumber shall be painted with 2 coats of paint as indicated herein, on the Standard Details or in the Drawings.

In special cases the size of the sign may be changed to meet special requirements, but general proportions shall be maintained.

It shall be the responsibility of the Contractor to maintain and relocate signs, if necessary during the progression of the project. Care shall be exercised to assure that placement of the signs does not interfere with or cause sight obstruction to vehicular and pedestrian traffic.

For projects located on a street with curb and gutter, signs shall be installed no closer than 2 feet (0.6 meter) from the face of curb on the street.

For projects located on a street without curb and gutter, signs shall be installed no closer than 6 feet (1.8 meters) from the edge of street pavement.

The Contractor may install, at the Contractor's own expense, company signs to identify the Contractor, architectural firm, etc. Signs are to be securely attached to the posts at locations indicated on the Drawings and shall not be larger than 18 x 36 inches (0.45 x 0.90 meter).

802S.4 Measurement

The CIP contract and/or Bond Program, signs shall be measured by either lump sum or per each.

802S.5 Payment

The work performed and the materials furnished as prescribed by this item shall be paid for by lump sum or per each price bid only. The 'lump sum' bid or 'per each' price bid shall include full compensation for all work performed and all materials furnished in constructing, transporting, maintaining and removing the signs as specified on the Drawings and as directed by the Engineer or designated representative.

Payment will be made under one of the following:

Pay Item No. 802S-A C.I.P.: C.I.P. Project Signs Lump Sum.
Pay Item No. 802S-B C.I.P.: C.I.P. Project Sign Per Each.
Pay Item No. 802S-A BOND: Bond Project Signs Lump Sum.
Pay Item No. 802S-B BOND: Bond Project Sign Per Each.

End

SPECIFIC CROSS REFERENCE MATERIALS
Specification Item No. 802S, "Project Signs"

City of Austin Standard Details

Designation	Description
Item No. 802S-1	2.4 m x 1.2 m (8'x4') C. I. P. Building Project Sign
Item No. 802S-1A	2.4 m x 1.2 m (8'x4')Bond Program Building Project Sign
Item No. 802S-2	600 mm x 900 mm (24" x 36")C. I. P. Movable Sign Type II
Item No. 802S-2A	600 mm x 900 mm (24" x 36")Joint C. I. P. Movable Sign Type II
Item No. 802S-2B	900 mm x1.2 m (36" x 48") Bond Program Project Movable Sign Type II

Item No. 804S-5 Typical CMTA / C.I.P. Sign Locations

Current Version: November 15, 2011

Previous Versions: 06/21/07, 02/17/04, 11/26/01, 02/21/01, 05/23/00 and 09/30/87

Item No. 803S
Barricades, Signs and Traffic Handling

803S.1 Description

This item shall govern for providing, installing, moving, replacing, maintaining, cleaning and removing upon completion of the work, all temporary or permanent street closure barricades, signs, cones, lights or other devices required to handle the traffic in conformance with the current edition of the Texas Manual of Uniform Traffic Control Devices for Street and Highways and as indicated on the Drawings or directed by the Engineer or designated representative.

Constructing A Detour, if required, shall conform to Standard Specification Item No. 801S, " Constructing A Detour". Capital Improvement Project Signs shall conform to Standard Specification Item No. 802S, " Project Signs".

This item shall also include the installation of all required safety fencing as described in the latest adopted version of Standard Detail 804S-4.

This specification is applicable for projects or work involving either inch-pound or SI units. Within the text, the inch-pound units are given preference followed by SI units shown within parentheses.

803S.2 Submittals

The submittal requirements of this specification item include:

A. Type of Barricade and proposed materials and Construction of the barricade,
B. Test results for Retro-Reflective sheeting.

803S.3 Materials

All barricades, signs, cones, lights and other types of devices to handle traffic, as indicated on the Drawings or directed by the Engineer or designated representative, shall conform to details shown on the Drawings or those indicated in the Texas Manual on Uniform Traffic Control Devices (TMUTCD).

803S.4 Construction Methods

Prior to commencement of construction, suitable "Barricades, Signs and Traffic Handling" devices shall be installed to protect the workers and the public.

The Contractor shall be responsible for the installation of all markers, signs and barricades in accordance with the Drawings and in conformance with the Texas Manual on Uniform Traffic Control Devices (TMUTCD) and/or as indicated on the Drawings or directed by the Engineer or designated representative. If, in the opinion of the Engineer or designated representative, additional markers, signs or barricades are needed in the interest of safety, the Contractor will install such as are required or as directed by the Engineer or designated representative. All changes and/or revisions to the detour/traffic control plan shall be approved by the Engineer or designated representative.

Lumber shall be painted with 2 coats of paint as indicated on the Drawings.

803S.5 Maintenance

It shall be the Contractor's responsibility to maintain, clean, move and replace if necessary, barricades, signs and traffic handling devices during the time required for construction of the project. Permanent barricades shall be constructed as required after the completion of the street by drilling holes to place the posts and concrete foundations. Foundation concrete shall be cured before the rails are attached. When no longer needed, all temporary Barricades, Signs and Traffic Handling Devices shall be removed and the area restored to its original condition or as directed by the Engineer or designated representative.

803S.6 Measurement

The work performed and material furnished as prescribed by this item, City of Austin Standard Details, details included on the Drawings or indicated in the TMUTCD shall be measured as follows:

A. Pavement Markings.

   All pavement marking required for proper installation of the designated Traffic Control Plans and Details, as well as required removal of existing pavement marking, shall be measured and paid for under Standard Specification Item No. 870S, “Work Zone Pavement Markings” and Standard Specification Item No. 874S, “Eliminating Existing Pavement Markings”.

B. Barricades, Signs and Traffic Handling.

   All work performed and material furnished as prescribed by this item, City of Austin Standard Details, details shown on the Drawings or indicated in the TMUTCD, that are not included in the above paragraph, shall be measured by the number of calendar days, working days or months of actual service.

   Traffic control for the project will be measured and paid for once per contract defined time period, i.e. either per Calendar Day, Working day or Month at the contract rate, regardless of the number of set-ups, locations or streets under construction.

C. Safety Fencing

   Safety fencing will be measured by the lineal foot.

803S.7 Payment

The work performed and materials furnished as prescribed by this item, measured as provided under section “803S.6 Measurement” shall be paid for at the contract unit price for barricades, signs and traffic handling. This unit price shall include full compensation for furnishing, placement and removal of all materials and for all labor, tools, equipment, and incidentals necessary to complete the work.

Payment will be made under:

Pay Item No. 803S -CD:	Barricades, Signs, and Traffic Handling	Per Calendar Day.
Pay Item No. 803S-WD:	Barricades, Signs, and Traffic Handling	Per Working Day.
Pay Item No. 803S-MO:	Barricades, Signs, and Traffic Handling	Per Month.
Pay Item No. 803S-SF:	Safety Fence	Per Lineal Foot.

End

SPECIFIC CROSS REFERENCE MATERIALS
Specification Item No. 803S, "Barricades, Signs and Traffic Handling"

City of Austin Standard Specifications

Designation	Description
Item No. 801S	Constructing A Detour
Item No. 802S	Project Signs
Item No. 870S	Work Zone Pavement Markings
Item No. 874S	Eliminating Existing Pavement Markings and Markers

Texas Technical Documents:

Designation	Description
(TMUTCD)	Texas Manual on Uniform Traffic Control Devices

RELATED CROSS REFERENCE MATERIALS
Specification Item No. 803S, "Barricades, Signs and Traffic Handling"

City of Austin Standard Specifications

Designation	Description
Item No. 403S	Concrete for Structures
Item No. 860S	Pavement Marking Paint (Reflectorized)
Item No. 863S	Reflectorized Pavement Markers
Item No. 864S	Abbreviated Pavement Markings
Item No. 867S	Epoxy Adhesive
Item No. 871S	Reflectorized Pavement Markings
Item No. 875S	Pavement Surface Preparation For Markings

City of Austin Standard Details

Designation	Description
803S-1	Street-End Barricades

Texas Department of Transportation: Standard Specifications for Construction and Maintenance of Highways, Streets, and Bridges

Designation	Description
Item No. 502	Barricades, Signs and Traffic Handling
Item No. 508	Constructing Detours
Item No. 510	One-Way Traffic Control
Item No. 512	Portable Concrete Traffic Barrier
Item No. 514	Permanent Concrete Traffic Barrier
Item No. 662	Work Zone Pavement Markings
Item No. 666	Reflectorized Pavement Markings
Item No. 667	Prefabricated Pavement Markings
Item No. 672	Raised Pavement Markers
Item No. 677	Eliminating Existing Pavement Markings and Markers
Item No. 678	Pavement Surface Preparation For Markings

Item No. 824S
Traffic Signs

824S.1 Description

This item shall govern furnishing and placement of Traffic Signs including excavation, posts, hardware and signs.

This specification is applicable for projects or work involving either inch-pound or SI units. Within the text, the inch-pound units are given preference followed by SI units shown within parentheses.

824S.2 Submittals

The submittal requirements of this specification item include:

A. Identification of the types of materials proposed for traffic sign, i.e. faces, posts, clamps, etc.,

B. Results of any State or Federal tests (reflectance, diffuse day color, specific intensity brightness, Weather-O-meter, etc.) performed on their products,

824S.3 Materials

The following ASTM Standards and documents, of the issue in effect on the date of Invitation for Bid, form a part of this specification to the extent herein.

A. ASTM B 209 Specification for Aluminum and Aluminum Alloy Sheet and Plate

B. ASTM D 523 Standard Method for Test for Specular Gloss

C. ASTM D 4956 Standard Specification for Retroreflective Sheeting for Traffic Control

D. ASTM E 284 Standard Definition of Terms Relating to Appearance of Materials

E. ASTM E 308 Computing the Colors of Objects by Using the CIE System

F. ASTM E 810 Standard Test Method for Coefficient of Retroreflection of Retroreflective Sheeting

G. ASTM E 1164 Standard Practice for Obtaining Spectrophotometric Data for Object-Color Evaluation

H. CIE Publication Number 39-2, Recommendation for Surface Colors for Visual Signaling

I. FP-92 Standard Specifications for Construction of Roads and Bridges on Federal Highway Project

J. Substrate. This shall be aluminum alloy 5052-H38 or 6061-T-6 and otherwise in conformance with ASTM B-209.

1. Metal working. The aluminum shall be free of burrs and pits on both sides, including edges

and holes, and shall be made ready for applications of the sheeting.

The aluminum shall be new and corrosion-free with holes drilled or punched, corners rounded to the radii shown in the standard detail sheet, and all edges smoothed prior to application of sheeting.

2. Size. The dimensions of substrate applications for regulatory, warning, and guide signs shall be as specified by the Engineer and as shown on the plans.

K. Background, Legends, Symbols, and Colors. These shall be in accordance with the Standard Highway Sign Designs (SHSD) for Texas and with the Texas Manual of Uniform Traffic Control Devices (TMUTCD).

1. Retroreflective Materials. Retroreflective materials shall comply with Texas Department of Transportation Departmental Materials Specification 8300, Sign Face Materials. The materials requirements for Reflective Sheeting must meet all the requirements of ASTM D 4956.

   a. Retroreflective Sheeting. Type III (High Intensity Prismatic): The materials as listed in these specifications shall comply with Texas Department of Transportation Departmental Materials Specification 8300, Sign Face Materials. The materials requirements for Reflective Sheeting must meet all the requirements of ASTM D 4956. Colors shall be as specified in specifications for Standard Highway Sign Colors (FHWA, HTO-21).

   b. Retroreflective Sheeting. Type IX (Fluorescent yellow green): The materials shall comply with ASTM 4956. Designed to provide higher nighttime sign brightness in the legibility distance and brightness at high entrance angles. The minimum fluorescence luminance factor (YF) for new sheeting shall be 35%.

2. Electronically Cuttable Film. Electronically cuttable film shall consist of flexible, transparent, durable acrylic colored films coated with a transparent pressure sensitive adhesive protected by a clear removable liner. These films are designed to be applied to retroreflective materials for the creation of traffic control signs and devices by either cutting by knife over roll (sprocket fed or friction fed) and flat bed electronic cutting machines. The films shall be available in standard traffic colors, be dimensionally stable, and be designed to optimally cut, weed, lift, and transfer. Use of electronic cuttable films will not require the release of any volatile organic compounds.

   When electronic cuttable film is applied to retroreflective sheeting, the resulting color of the composite sheeting will conform to Texas Department of Transportation Departmental Materials Specification 8300, Sign Face Materials. The materials requirements for Reflective Sheeting must meet all the requirements of ASTM D 4956.

   Only signage utilizing electronically cuttable film will be allowed. Silk screened sign faces will not be accepted.

   a. Color Test. Conformance to color requirements shall be determined by instrumental method in accordance with ASTM E 1164 on sheeting applied to aluminum test

panels. The values shall be determined on a HunterLab Labscan 6000 0/45 Spectrocolorimeter with option CMR 559 [or approved equal 0/45 (45/0) instrument with circumferential viewing (illumination)].

Computations shall be done in accordance with ASTM E 308 for the 2º observer.

b. Coefficient of Retroreflection R^. When electronic cuttable film is applied to retroreflective sheeting, the composite will conform to the percentage retained of the minimum coefficient of retroreflection specified by the using agency and the manufacturer for the retroreflective sheeting when the retroreflective sheeting is screen processed. The coefficient of retroreflection shall be determined in accordance with ASTM E 810. Coefficients of retroreflection R^ shall be specified in units of candelas as per foot candle per square foot (candelas per lux per square meter). The observation angles shall be 0.2 and 0.5 degrees unless otherwise specified. The entrance angles shall be -4 and 30 degrees unless otherwise specified. The electronic cuttable film shall have and 85º specular gloss of not less than 50 when tested in accordance with ASTM D 523.

c. Processing and Cuttability. The electronic cuttable film shall permit cutting, weeding, masking with transfer tape, lifting, and application to retroreflective sheeting when used in accordance with manufacturer's recommendations at temperatures between 65º and 95º F and relative humidifies between 30% and 70%. The film shall lay flat with minimal edge curl and be dimensionally stable.

d. Adhesive Liner. The protective liner attached to the adhesive shall be removable by peeling without soaking in water or other solutions, without breaking, tearing, or removing any adhesive from the electronic cuttable film. The liner shall have a controlled release from the adhesive coated film sufficient to allow cutting without the film popping off from the liner while still allowing the liner to easily be peeled from the film.

e. Film. Film with punched edges for use on sprocket fed knife over roll cutters shall be edge scored and weeded to remove film in the punched area as a means of eliminating adhesive build up on the sprockets.

f. Resistance to Accelerated Outdoor Weathering. When electronic cuttable film is applied to retroreflective sheeting, the surface of the film shall be weather resistant and show no appreciable cracking, blistering, crazing, or dimensional change after 2 years unprotected outdoor exposure, facing the equator and inclined 45º from the vertical. Following weather exposure, panels shall be washed in a 5% HCl solution for 45 seconds, rinsed thoroughly with clean water, blotted dry with a soft cloth and brought to equilibrium at standard conditions.

After cleaning, the coefficient of retroreflection shall not be less than the value specified by the using agency for the retroreflective sheeting when the retroreflective sheeting is screen processed. Show no appreciable evidence of cracking, scaling, pitting, blistering, edge lifting or curling or more than 1/32 inch shrinkage or expansion. Show good color fastness or better when tested. The electronic cuttable film shall not be removable from the retroreflective sheeting without damage.

3. Application Methods. The method of application of sheeting, letters, numbers, and

symbols shall be precisely as prescribed in writing by the manufacturer.

a. Legend Spacing and Layout. Spacing and layout for all traffic control signs shall conform to the Texas SHSD.

L. Sign Posts. Steel post shall conform to the standard specification for hot rolled carbon sheet steel, structural quality, ASTM designation A570, Grade 50. Average minimum yield strength after cold forming is 60,000 psi. The cross section of the post shall be square tube formed steel, carefully rolled to size and shall be welded directly in the comer by high frequency resistance welding or equivalent process and externally scarified to agree with corner radii. Sign posts shall be hot dipped galvanized conforming to ASTM A653, G90.

1. Sizes. Perforated sign posts, anchors and sleeves shall be of the following size:

Size	USS Gauge	Weight
1 ¾" X 1 ¾ "	14	1.71
2" X 2"	12	2.42

On square tubing, holes shall be on centerline of each side in true alignment and opposite each other directly and diagonally. The length of each post shall have a permissible length tolerance of ± ¼".

The finished posts shall be straight and have a smooth, uniform finish. It shall be possible to telescope all consecutive sizes of square tubes freely and for not less than ten feet of their length without the necessity of matching any particular face to any other face. All holes and ends shall be free from burrs and ends shall be cut square.

a. Tolerance on Outside Sizes

Nominal Outside Dimension	Outside Tolerances at Corners
1 ¾" X 1 ¾ "	±0.008"
2" X 2"	±0.008"

Note: Measurement from outside dimensions shall be made at least 2 inches from the end of the tube.

Permissible variation in wall thickness is +0.011", -0.005".

Convexity and concavity shall be measured in the center of the flat sides, tolerance in ±0.010", determined at the corner.

b. Squareness of Sides and Twist Permissible in 3" Length.

Nominal Outside Dimension	Squareness Tolerance	Twist
1 ¾" X 1 ¾ "	±0.010"	0.062"
2" X 2"	±0.012"	0.062"

Permissible variation in straightness is 1/16 of an inch in 3 feet. The standard outside corner radius shall be 5/32 of an inch ±1/64 inch.

2. Installation. The square end of the post shall not be modified or pointed.

   a. Mount Base. When sign post installation is required over building basements, bridges and cavities, a galvanized cast iron surface mount coupler shall be used. The square post surface mount base must be a NCHRP 350-Compliant breakaway system for use with 1 ¾ - inch square post.

   b. Hardware. All ground mounted signs shall be attached to posts using 3/8" aluminum drive rivets. Stainless steel banding material, brackets and clips will be used for signs installed on light standards or mast arms.

   c. Construction.
      1. Concrete specifications: Insert a 2” square x 30” 12 gauge into concrete with 1-2 inches exposed above ground. Make sure the anchor assembly is level. Attach the sign to the 1 ¾” square 14 gauge post (length varies with installation) at a minimum height of seven feet using drive rivets and nylon washers. Insert the post 6-8 inches into the anchor assembly. Bolt the signpost to the anchor assembly using a corner bolt and flange nut.

      2. Soil specifications: Drive a 2” square x 30” 12 gauge omni-directional anchor sleeve into soil with 1-2 inches exposed above ground. Make sure the anchor assembly is level. Attach the sign to the 1 ¾” square x 14 gauge post (length varies with installation) at a minimum height of seven feet using drive rivets and nylon washers. Insert the post 6-8 inches into the anchor assembly. Bolt the signpost to the anchor assembly using a corner bolt and flange nut.

M. Maker's Mark Decals. Each sign shall be permanently marked on the lower right corner of the back side with the month and year of installation, and name of manufacturer.

Table 1
Minimum Coefficient of Retroreflectivity
[0.2º observation angle and -4º entrance angle]

Type III Sheeting: 10 Year Life Span	
Sheeting Color	**Candelas per Foot-Candle per Sq. Ft.**
White	250
Yellow	170
Green	45
Red	45
Blue	20
Brown	12

Table 2

Minimum Coefficient of Retroreflectivity
[0.2º observation angle and -4º entrance angle]

Type IX Sheeting: 7 Year Life Span	
Sheeting Color	**Candelas per Foot-Candle per Sq. Ft.**
Fluorescent Yellow Green	300

824S.4 Equipment
Provide machinery, tools, and equipment necessary for proper execution of the work.

824S.5 Construction:
Construction shall be high quality with no visible defects in the finished product. Fabrication shall be in accordance with these specifications. Street name signs shall always be supplied and installed at each project intersection whether signs previously existed at the location or not.

A. Unsignalized Intersection. At unsignalized intersections, ground-mounted street name signs of 9 inch height with 6 inch letters and 3 inch suffix and block numbers are required. Lettering on street name signs must be in upper/lower case letters.

B. Signalized Intersection.

1. Ground Mounted Street Signs
   If a signalized intersection has either mast arms or span- wire on which overhead street name signs can be attached, no ground mounted streets name signs are required at that intersection.

2. Overhead Street Signs
   Signs shall be strapped to the mast arm or span wire. Attachments to mast arms shall be by means of a 3/4 inch stainless steel strap and a stainless steel flared strap bracket.

   a. Letter Heights
      Overhead street name signs shall be 18 inches high. Street name signs must be 8 inch (or larger) upper/lower case letters. The suffix and block numbers shall be at least 4 ½ inches high.

C. Existing Signs.
The removal of existing signs shall be coordinated with the Austin Transportation Department to assure required signage is in place during all construction phases. When existing signs are to be removed, they will be removed from their post by hand and delivered to the Traffic Sign Shop (974 - 4055).

D. No Parking Signs
No Parking signs with horizontal dimensions wider than 15” shall not be used unless specifically authorized in advance by the City. For 24 hour parking restriction see the attached detail for the typical No Parking sign.

824S.6 Measurement

Traffic signs shall be measured as each complete sign constructed and placed as indicated on the Drawings.

824S.7 Payment

The work performed and materials furnished as prescribed by this item will be paid for at the unit bid price for "Traffic Signs" per each complete in place. The unit bid price shall include full compensation for furnishing all materials, completing the excavation, placing p.c. concrete and reinforcing steel, setting posts in p.c. concrete and for all labor, tools, equipment and incidentals necessary to complete the work.

Payment will be made under:

Pay Item No. 824S: Traffic Signs Per Each.

End

SPECIFIC CROSS REFERENCE MATERIALS
Specification Item No. 824S, "Traffic Signs"

City of Austin Standard Specifications

Designation	Description
Item No. 401S	Structural Excavation and Backfill
Item No. 403S	Concrete for Structures
Item No. 406S	Reinforcing Steel
Item No. 410S	Concrete Structures
Item No. 411	Surface Finishes for Concrete
Item No. 722	Paint and Painting

Texas Department of Transportation Manual of Testing Procedures:

Designation	Description
Tex-839-B	Determining Color in Reflective Materials
Tex-842-B	Method for Measuring Retroreflectivity

Texas Department of Transportation; Departmental Materials Specifications

Designation	Description
DMS-8300	Flat Surface Reflective Sheeting

American Society for Testing and Materials (ASTM):

Designation	Description
A-36/A-36M	Specification for Structural Steel
A-307	Specification for Carbon Steel Externally Threaded Standard Fasteners
A-320	Specification for Alloys-Steel Bolting Materials For Low-Temperature Service
A-513	Specification for Electric Resistance-Welded Carbon and Alloy Steel Mechanical Tubing
B-26	Specification for Aluminum-Alloy Sand Castings
B-108/B-108M	Specification for Aluminum-Alloy Permanent Mold Castings
B-221/B-221M	Specification for Aluminum-Alloy Extended Bars, Rods, Wire, Shapes, and Tubes
D-523	Test Method for Specular Gloss

SPECIFIC CROSS REFERENCE MATERIALS- Continued
Specification Item No. 824S, "Traffic Signs"

American Society for Testing and Materials (ASTM):

Designation	Description
D 822	Recommended Practice for Operating Light- and Water-Exposure Apparatus (Carbon-Arc Type) for Testing Paint, Varnish, Lacquer, and Related Products
D 828	Test Method for Tensile Breaking Strength of Paper and Paperboard
E 97	45-degree, 0-degree Directional Reflectance Factor of Opaque Specimens by Broad-Band Filter Reflectometry
G 23	Recommended Practice for Operating Light- and Water-Exposure Apparatus (Carbon-Arc Type) for Exposure of Nonmetallic Materials

Other Specifications
Federal Specification A-G-90
Federal Test Method 8801
Federal Specification O-G-93 (stick only)
Federal Specification TT-P-64lb.

RELATED CROSS REFERENCE MATERIALS
Specification Item No. 824S, "Traffic Signs

Texas Department of Transportation Technical Documents:

Designation	Description
(TMUTCD)	Texas Manual on Uniform Traffic Control Devices

City of Austin Standard Details

Designation	Description
824S-1	Standard Street-End Markers

Texas Department of Transportation: Standard Specifications for Construction and Maintenance of Highways, Streets, and Bridges

Designation	Description
Item No. 445	Galvanizing
Item No. 636	Aluminum Signs (Type A)
Item No. 637	Aluminum Signs (Type G)
Item No. 642	Aluminum Signs (Type O)
Item No. 646	Small Roadside Sign Supports
Item No. 647	Large Roadside Sign Supports
Item No. 656	Foundations for Signs, Traffic Signals and Roadway Illumination Assemblies

Texas Department of Transportation: Departmental Materials Specifications

Designation	Description
DMS-7110	Aluminum Sign Blanks
DMS-7120	Sign Hardware
DMS-8310	Flexible Roll-up Reflective Signs
DMS-8320	Vinyl, Non-reflective Decal Sheeting

Item No. **860S**
Pavement Marking Paint

860S.1 Description

This item shall govern the installation of reflectorized paint pavement marking. The width of the line shall be 4 inches (100 millimeters) and the color as indicated on the Drawings.

This specification is applicable for projects or work involving either inch-pound or SI units. Within the text and accompanying tables, the inch-pound units are given preference followed by SI units shown within parentheses.

860S.2 Submittals

The submittal requirements of this specification item include:

A. Proposed paint color(s), brand names, raw materials and products for traffic paint.

B. Sampling and testing procedures and specific test results for pigment, calcium carbonate, acrylic resins and other materials used in the traffic paints.

C. Proposed shipping requirements including container type(s) (drums and/or buckets), and labeling.

D. Manufacturer's recommendations for mixing, storage and application of the traffic glass beads and traffic paint.

E. All applicable Materials Safety data Sheets for the traffic paint.

860S.3 Materials

A. Traffic Stripe Reflective Glass Traffic Beads

1. The glass spheres shall not contain more than 30 percent (by weight {mass}) irregular shaped particles when tested in accordance with TxDoT Test Method-832-B. The no. 20 (850 μm) sieve shall have a maximum of 35% by weight (mass) allowed irregular particles, based on a visual inspection.

   Unless noted otherwise on the Drawings or designated in writing by the Engineer or designated representative, the application rate of the glass traffic beads shall not be less than 6 pounds per gallon (0.7 kilograms per liter). Glass traffic beads shall be essentially free of sharp angular particles and particles showing milkiness or surface scarring or scratching. Glass traffic beads shall be water white in color.

2. The glass traffic beads shall meet the following graduation requirements when tested in accordance with TxDoT Test Method Tex-831-B:

US Sieve	SI Sieve	% weight (mass) retained
# 20	(850 μm)	3 to 10
# 30	(600 μm)	20 to 40
# 40	(425 μm)	30 to 50
# 50	(300 μm)	15 to 35
# 80	(180 μm)	0 to 10

3. Index of Refraction: The glass traffic beads, when tested by the liquid immersion method at 77^0F (25^0C), shall show an index of refraction within the range of 1.50 to 1.53.

4. Wetting: The glass traffic beads shall be capable of being readily wet with water, when tested according to TxDOT Test Method Tex-826-B.

5. Stability: The glass traffic beads shall show no tendency toward decomposition, surface etching, change in retroreflective characteristics or change in color after

   (a) One-hour exposure to concentrated hydrochloric acid at 77^oF (25^oC),

   (b) 24 hours exposure to weak acids, weak alkali, and

   (c) 100 hours of weather-o-meter (Atlas, Sunshine Type) exposure, ASTM G-23, Method 1, Type EH.

6. Contaminants: Glass traffic beads shall:

   (a) contain less than 1/4 of 1 percent moisture by weight (mass).

   (b) free of trash, dirt, etc.

   (c) show no evidence of objectionable static electricity when flowing through a regular traffic bead dispenser.

7. Sampling and Testing (TxDoT Test Method Tex-801-B) shall be in accordance with the latest applicable procedures included in the TxDOT Manual on Testing. Applicable test methods include but are not limited to the following:

   Tex 806-B, "Method for Determining Grind and Oversize Pigment Particles"
   Tex-810-B, "Test Method for Color and Color Stability of Opaque Colored Pigments"
   Tex-811-B, "Skinning Characteristics of Coatings"
   Tex-822-B, "Method for Determining Refractive Index of Glass Beads"
   Tex-826-B, "Water Absorption Test of Beads"
   Tex-828-B, "Determining Functional Characteristics of Pavement Markings"
   Tex-830-B, "Method for Sampling Traffic Stripe Beads"
   Tex-831-B, "Method for Determining The Gradation of Glass Traffic-Stripe Beads"
   Tex-832-B, "Methods for Determining the Roundness of Glass Spheres"

B. Pavement Marking Paint

1. Functional Requirements

   (a) All paint-type materials that are applied at ambient or slightly elevated temperatures shall conform to TxDoT Departmental Materials Specifications DMS-8200, YPT 10 and/or WPT-10 and DMS-8290.

   (b) The paint shall be homogenous, well ground to a uniform and smooth consistency and shall not skin nor settle badly nor cake, liver, thicken, curdle or gel in the container.

   (c) The paint, when applied to a bituminous pavement surface under normal field conditions at the required rate of .015 inch (0.4 mm) wet film thickness, shall have a maximum "no pickup" drying time of 15 minutes to prevent displacement or discoloration under traffic.

(d) In preparation of the paint, the pigments shall be dispersed in the vehicle by appropriate methods so that a fineness reading of not less than 4 is obtained with a Hegman grind gauge.

(e) Consistency viscosity, measured with a Krebs-Modified-Stormer Viscometer at 77°F (25°C), shall be from 80-90 K.U (with water deleted).

(f) A thin film of paint spread on a glass plate and allowed to dry thoroughly shall not darken or show any discoloration when subjected to ultraviolet rays for a period of 5 minutes.

2. Material Requirements

(a) Raw Materials

(1) The exact brands and types of raw materials used in the wet standards are listed for the purpose of facilitating the selection of parallel materials that are equal, not only in quality and composition but also in physical and chemical behavior after aging in the finished product.

(2) After proposed brand names and types of raw materials by the City of Austin, no substitution will be allowed during the manufacture without prior agreement with the City.

(3) It shall be the responsibility of the Contractor to utilize materials that not only meet the individual raw material specification, but that also produce a coating that meets the specific formula requirements.

(4) All materials required to meet TxDoT, Federal and ASTM specifications must meet the latest specification as indicated on the Drawings in effect on the date of the proposal or invitation to bid.

(b) Pigments

(1) Titanium Dioxide:

Titanium Dioxide shall meet ASTM D-476, Type II requirements.

(2) Yellow Pigment:

Yellow Pigment CI 65 (Reddish Yellow)	
Characteristic	Values
Specific Gravity	1.74 to 1.76
Oil Absorption	20 to 30 %
Moisture	0.5 % maximum
Pigment retained on #325 (45 μm) sieve	0.1 % maximum
C.I. Number	11740
Heat Stability	266°F (130°C)

In addition to the requirements identified above, evidence shall be provided that the infrared spectrum matches the standard spectrum on file with TxDoT's Construction Division, Materials Section (CSTM)

(3) Calcium Carbonate: Calcium Carbonate shall conform to ASTM D-1199, Type GC, Grade I, with a minimum of 95% $CaCO_3$ and Type PC, with a minimum of 98% $CaCO_3$.

(c) Acrylic Traffic Resins: The acrylic traffic resin shall be similar and equal to the standard sample submitted by the manufacturer. The resin shall be

approved prior to the contract award for the proposed use of the pavement paint.

Acrylic Traffic Emulsion	
Characteristic	Values
Solids Content	49.5 to 50.5
Viscosity, #2 Spindle, 60 rpm, 77°F (25°C), cps	250 maximum
pH	10.0 to 10.6
Film appearance, 3 mil (75 μm) dry	Smooth, clear, continuous

In addition to the requirements identified above, evidence shall be provided that the infrared spectrum matches the standard spectrum on file with TxDot's Construction Division, Materials Section (CSTM)

(d) Miscellaneous Materials: These materials shall be similar and equal to the standard sample submitted by the vendor. The specific materials shall be approved prior to the contract award for the proposed use of the pavement paint.

1) Dispersant
   Byk 156
   Tamol 850
   Colloids 226/35
2) Surfactant
   Triton X-405
   Colloids CA-407
3) Defoamer
   Foamaster 111
   Drew 493
   Colloids 654
4) Hydroxy Ethyl Cellulose
   Natrosol 250 HBR
   Bermocoll E431FQ
   Cellosize QP - 30,000
5) Coalescent
   Texanol
   Exxate 1200
6) Preservative
   Troysan
   Dowicil 75
   Nuosept 101
7) Methyl Alcohol
   ASTM D-1152, 1.3320 maximum

(e) Standard Formulae:

The following tables represent the Standard Formulae to be followed by the manufacturer when manufacturing paint to be used by the Contractor on City of Austin paint striping contracts.

Formula: White Traffic Paint

WPT-11 - LEAD FREE WHITE TRAFFIC PAINT		
Component	Pounds	Kilograms
Acrylic Emulsion, 50% Solids, Fastrack 2706	540.	245.
Coalescent, Texanol	20.	9.1
Titanium Dioxide, Rutile, Type II, Tiona RCL-9	100.	45.4
Calcium Carbonate, Type PC, Mississippi M-60	150.	68.
Calcium Carbonate, Type GC, Hubercarb M-4	440.	199.6
Hydroxy Ethyl Cellulose, Natrosol 250 HBR (*)	0.5	0.2
Defoamer, Foamaster 111	5.	2.3
Disapersant, Colloids 226/35	9.	4.1
Surfactant, Triton X-405	2.	0.9
Methyl Alcohol	30.	13.6
Preservative, Troysan 192	2.	0.9
Water, Potable (**)	18.**	8.1**
TOTALS	1316.5	597.2

(*) The Hydroxy Ethyl Cellulose amount may be varied up to two (2) pounds [0.9 kilograms].

(**) Only 10 pounds (4.5 kilograms) shall be used in the actual manufacture of the pavement paint. The remaining 8 pounds (3.6 kilograms) shall be used as a drum float.

Formula: Yellow Traffic Paint

YPT-11 - LEAD FREE YELLOW TRAFFIC PAINT		
Component	Pounds	Kilograms
Acrylic Emulsion, 50% Solids, Fastrack 2706	540	245.
Coalescent, Texanol	20	9.1
C.I. Pigment Yellow 65, Sunglow Yellow 1244	30.	13.6
Titanium Dioxide, Rutile, Type II, Tiona RCL-9(***)	20.	9.1
Calcium Carbonate, Type PC, Mississippi M-60	150	68.
Calcium Carbonate, Type GC, Hubercarb M-4	450	204.1
Hydroxy Ethyl Cellulose, Natrosol 250 HBR (*)	0.5	0.2
Defoamer, Foamaster 111	5.	2.3
Dispersant, Colloids 226/35	9.	4.1
Surfactant, Triton X-405	2.	0.9
Methyl Alcohol	30.	13.6
Preservative, Troysan 192	2.	0.9
Water, Potable (**)	18.**	8.1**
TOTALS	1276.5	579.0

Additional Criteria for Pavement Paint

Item	Requirements
Grind Particles:	4 minimum, 8 maximum (TxDoT Test Method Tex-806-B)
Gallon Weight:	± 0.10 lbs. of theoretical gallon weight
(Liter mass:)	(± 0.012 kilograms of theoretical liter mass)
Consistency:	80 to 90 K.U.
PH:	a minimum of 9.6
Skinning:	No skinning within 48 hours (TxDoT Test Method Tex-811-B)

(*) The Hydroxy Ethyl Cellulose amount may be varied up to two (2) pounds [0.9 kilograms]

(**) Only 10 pounds (4.5 kilograms) shall be used in the actual manufacture of the pavement paint. The remaining 8 pounds (3.6 kilograms) shall be used as a drum float.

(***) Titanium Dioxide, Rutile, Special, Hilox will be allowed as a substitute in the YPT-11 formula only.

(f) Container and Marking

1) Shipment: Shipment shall be made in suitable, strong, well-sealed containers that meet this specification, State of Texas, and federal requirements and are sufficiently sturdy to withstand normal shipping and handling.

2) Drum Package Requirements. The paint shall be provided in a new, serviceable, non-leaking, 55 gallon (209 liter) lined, steel drum meeting all applicable federal regulations. Drums are to be non-returnable with full removable heads, three (3) rolling hoops and 12 gauge locking rings with 5/8 inch (15.9 millimeter) locking nut bolt. The nominal metal thickness is to be 0.044 inch (1.1 mm). Each drum is to be equipped with a natural sponge-rubber cord, high-density gasket. The rubber shall be approximately 0.4375 inch (10.9 mm) thick. The gasket, when compressed, shall produce an airtight closure when the drum is sealed.

   When a locking nut is used on drum rings, the locking nut shall be in a non-locking position while tightening the ring. After the ring is tight, the locking nut shall be secured in the locking position.

   A seal shall be affixed to each drum in a manner that the contents of the drum cannot be adulterated without destroying the seal.

3) Bucket Packaging Requirements: Paint is to be furnished in new 5 gallon (19 liter) lined, 24 gauge steel, non-leaking buckets.

4) Filling Instructions: The paint drums will be filled at 54.5 gallons (206.4 liters) by weight (mass) with a water float of 0.53 gallons (2.0 liters).

   The paint buckets will be filled at 4.95 gallons (18.75 liters) by weight (mass) with a water float of 0.05 gallons (0.18 liters).

5) Labeling: Finished paint product containers and cases shall be plainly and securely labeled with:
   a) City of Austin
   b) Name and designation of the product,
   c) Requisition number,
   d) Batch number,
   e) Manufacturing date,
   f) Gross weight, and

g) Manufacturer's name.

Labeling shall be prominently displayed on the sides of containers and cases and must be moisture resistant to withstand outdoor storage for a minimum of one year. When the finished product is palletized for shipment, the labels shall be displayed on the outside fore easy identification. Once the finished product has been labeled properly, the label shall not be modified or changed in any manner without specific approval from the City of Austin. (Note: The material manufacturer shall supply a Materials Safety Data Sheet to comply with OSHA's "Hazard Communication Standard 29 CFR ξ 1910.1200").

860S.4 Construction Methods

The Contractor shall use a crew, that is experienced in the work of installing pavement markings and in the necessary traffic control for such operations on the roadway surface, and shall supply all the equipment, personnel, traffic control and materials necessary for the placement of the pavement markings as indicated on the Drawings or directed by the Engineer or designated representative. All work shall conform to the current edition of the Texas Manual of Uniform Traffic Control Devices (TMUTCD), The City of Austin Transportation Criteria Manual, Standard Details 804S-3C and 804S-3D, and this standard specification item.

The pavement surface to receive the pavement markings shall be thoroughly cleaned of all dirt, organic growth or other material that will prevent adhesion of the paint to the roadway surface.

The pavement markings shall be placed in the proper alignment with guides established on the roadway. Deviation from the alignment established shall not exceed 2 inches (50 millimeters) and in addition, the deviation in alignment of the markings being placed shall not exceed 1 inch per 200 feet (25 millimeters per 30 meters) of roadway nor shall any deviation be abrupt.

When deemed necessary by the Engineer or designated representative, the Contractor, at the Contractor’s expense, shall place any additional pilot markings required to facilitate the placement of the permanent markings in the alignment specified. Any and all additional markings placed on the roadway for alignment purposes shall be temporary in nature and shall not establish a permanent marking on the roadway.

Materials used for pilot markings and equipment used to place such markings shall be approved by the Engineer or designated representative.

Paint markings on the roadway that are not in alignment or sequence as indicated shall be totally and completely removed by any effective method approved by the Engineer or designated representative, except that grinding will not be permitted.

Paint shall be applied at a rate of not less than 15 gallons nor more than 20 gallons per mile of solid 4 inch stripe (not less than 35 liters nor more than 45 liters per kilometer of solid 100-mm stripe). Application rate for solid 8-inch (200-mm) stripe shall be between 30 and 40 gallons per mile (between 70 and 90 liters per kilometer). (These rates yield wet film thickness from 15 to 20 mils [0.4 to 0.5 mm].)

Beads shall be applied to the paint markings at a uniform rate sufficient to achieve the retroreflective characteristics specified when observed conforming to TxDoT Test Method

Tex-828-B. All markings placed shall have uniform and distinctive retroreflective characteristics.

Applied markings shall be protected from traffic until they have dried sufficiently so as not to be damaged or tracked by normal traffic movements.

860S.5 Equipment

Paint striping equipment used to place 4 inch (100 mm) solid or broken lines shall have the capability of placing a minimum of 60,000 linear feet (18 300 lineal meters) of marking per working day. Equipment used for placing markings in widths other than 4 inches (100 mm) shall have capabilities similar to 4 inch (100 mm) marking equipment and shall be capable of placing linear markings up to 8 inches (200 mm) in width in 1 pass.

The equipment shall be maintained in satisfactory operating condition. The equipment shall be equipped so that one 4-inch (100-mm) broken line and either 1 or 2 solid lines can be placed at the same time in alignment and spacing as indicated on the drawings. Four inch (100 mm) marking equipment will be considered as unsatisfactorily maintained if it fails to attain an average hourly placement rate of 7000 linear feet (2 100 linear meters) in any 5 consecutive working days of 7 hours or more.

The equipment shall be equipped with an automatic cutoff device (with manual operating capabilities) to provide clean, square marking ends and to provide a method of applying broken line in a stripe to gap ratio of 15 to 25. The length of the stripe shall not be less than 15 feet nor longer than 15.5 feet (less than 4.5 meters nor longer than 4.7 meters). The total length of the stripe-gap cycle shall not be less than 39.5 feet nor longer than 40.5 feet (less than 12 meters nor longer than 12.3 meters) in variance from one cycle to the next nor shall the average total length of a cycle for a road mile (1.6 kilometer) of broken line exceed 40.5 feet or be less than 39.5 feet (exceed 12.3 meters or be less than 12 meters).

The equipment shall be capable of placing lines of all widths with clean edges and of uniform cross section. Four-inch (100-mm) lines shall be 4 inches (100 mm) plus or minus 1/8 inch (3 mm). Eight inch (200 mm) lines shall be 8 inches (200 mm) minimum and 8 1/4 inches (210 mm) maximum in width.

The equipment shall be equipped with an outrigger or outriggers as required to place edge-lines as called for in the plans.

The equipment shall be equipped with traffic glass bead dispensers, 1 for each paint spray gun, placed on the equipment so that beads are applied to the paint almost instantly as the marking is being placed on the roadway surface. The traffic glass bead dispensers shall be designed and aligned so that the beads are applied uniformly to the entire surface of the marking. The traffic glass bead dispensers shall be equipped with automatic cutoff controls, synchronized with the cutoff of the marking equipment. Paint pots or tanks shall be equipped with an agitator that will keep the paint thoroughly mixed and may be either a pressurized or non-pressurized type.

860S.6 Measurement

Work for Pavement Marking Paint lines will be measured by the lineal foot (lineal meter: 1 meter equals 3.28 feet) of the various widths. Work for pavement marking, paint letter or figures will be measured by the square foot (square meter: 1 square meter equals 10.76 square feet).

860S.7 Payment

Work performed as prescribed by this item, measured as provided under "Measurement", shall be paid for at the unit bid price for "Pavement Marking Paint" per lineal foot or square foot of the various widths specified. This price shall include full compensation for furnishing all labor, tools, equipment, materials and incidentals necessary to complete the work specified.

Payment will be made under one of the following:

Pay Item No. 860S-A:	Pavement Marking Paint, ____ In.	Per Lineal Foot.
Pay Item No. 860S-B:	Pavement Marking Paint	Per Square Foot.
Pay Item No. 860S-C:	Pavement Marking Paint (Reflectorized), __In.	Per Lineal Foot.
Pay Item No. 860S-D:	Pavement Marking Paint (Reflectorized)	Per Square Foot.

End

SPECIFIC CROSS REFERENCE MATERIALS
Specification Item 860S "Pavement Marking Paint (Reflectorized)"

Texas Department of Transportation: Manual of Testing Procedures

Designation	Description
Tex 801-B	Testing Coatings and Related Materials
Tex 806-B	Method for Determining Grind and Oversize Pigment Particles
Tex-810-B	Test Method for Color and Color Stability of Opaque Colored Pigments
Tex-811-B	Skinning Characteristics of Coatings
Tex-822-B	Method for Determining Refractive Index of Glass Beads
Tex-826-B	Water Absorption Test of Beads
Tex-828-B	Determining Functional Characteristics of Pavement Markings
Tex-830-B	Method for Sampling Traffic Stripe Beads
Tex-831-B	Method for Determining The Gradation of Glass Traffic-Stripe Beads
Tex-832-B	Methods for Determining the Roundness of Glass Spheres

Texas Department of Transportation: Departmental Materials Specifications

Designation	Description
DMS-8200	Pavement Paint
YPT-11 and/or WPT-11	Pavement Paint

American Society for Testing and Materials (ASTM)

Designation	Description
D 476	Specification for Titanium Dioxide Pigments
D 1152	Specification for Methanol (Methyl Alcohol) with Refractive Index
D 1199	Specification for Calcium Carbonate Pigments
G-23	Recommended Practice for Operating Light-and- Water-Exposure Apparatus (Carbon-Arc Type) for Exposure of Nonmetallic Materials

Federal Specifications - OSHA 29 CFR

Designation	Description
ξ 1910.1200	Hazard Communication Standard."

City of Austin Standard Details

Designation	Description
804S-3C	Parking Stalls, Crosswalk, and Stop Bars
804S-3D	General Notes

City of Austin Transportation Criteria Manual

Designation	Description
Section 8	Traffic Control

SPECIFIC CROSS REFERENCE MATERIALS
Specification Item 860S "Pavement Marking Paint (Reflectorized)"

State of Texas Manual on Uniform Traffic Control Devices for Streets and Highways

Designation	Description
Part III	Markings
Part VI	Traffic Controls for Street and Highway Construction, Maintenance, Utility and Incident Management Operations
Part VI, Article D	Markings
Part VI, Article F	Control of Traffic Through Work Areas

RELATED CROSS REFERENCE MATERIALS
Specification Item 860S "Pavement Marking Paint (Reflectorized)"

City of Austin Standard Specifications

Designation	Description
Item No. 863S	Reflectorized Pavement Markers
Item No. 864S	Abbreviated Pavement Markings
Item No. 865S	Non-Reflectorized Traffic Buttons
Item No. 866S	Jiggle Bar Tile
Item No. 867S	Epoxy Adhesive
Item No. 870S	Work Zone Pavement Markings
Item No. 871S	Reflectorized Pavement Markings
Item No. 872S	Prefabricated Pavement Markings
Item No. 873S	Raised Pavement Markers
Item No. 874S	Eliminating Existing Pavement Markings and Markers
Item No. 875S	Pavement Surface Preparation For Markings

Texas Department of Transportation: Standard Specifications for Construction and Maintenance of Highways, Streets, and Bridges

Designation	Description
Item No. 662	Work Zone Pavement Markings
Item No. 666	Reflectorized Pavement Markings
Item No. 667	Prefabricated Pavement Markings
Item No. 672	Raised Pavement Markers
Item No. 677	Eliminating Existing Pavement Markings and Markers
Item No. 678	Pavement Surface Preparation For Markings

Texas Department of Transportation: Manual of Testing Procedures

Designation	Description
Tex-829-B	Method For Measuring Pavement Temperature

American Society for Testing and Materials (ASTM)

Designation	Description
D-235	Specification for Mineral Spirits
D-362	Specification for Industrial Grade Toluene
D-600	Specification for Liquid Paint Driers
D-605	Specification for Magnesium Silicate Pigment (Talc)
D-740	Specification for Methyl Ethyl Ketone
D-1210	Test Method For Fineness Of Dispersion Of Pigment-Vehicle Systems

Item No. 871S
Reflectorized Pavement Markings

871S.1 Description

This item shall govern furnishing and placement of reflectorized pavement markings of the colors, types, shapes, sizes, widths and thickness indicated on the Drawings.

This specification is applicable for projects or work involving either inch-pound or SI units. Within the text and accompanying tables, the inch-pound units are given preference followed by SI units shown within parentheses.

871S.2 Materials

A. Type I Marking Material.

Type I markings are thermoplastic type materials that require heating to elevated temperatures for application. Type I marking materials shall conform to TxDOT Departmental Materials Specification Item DMS-8220, "Thermoplastic Pavement Markings". Each container of Type I Marking Material shall be clearly marked to indicate the color, weight (mass), type of material, manufacturer's name and lot/batch number.

B. Type II Marking Material.

Type II markings are paint- type materials that are applied at ambient temperature or slightly elevated temperatures. Type II marking materials shall conform to Specification Item No. 860S, "Pavement Marking Paint".

C. Source of Supply.

All Type I marking materials shall be purchased on the open market. All glass traffic beads shall be purchased on the open market.

871S.3 Equipment Requirements

The equipment used to place pavement markings shall:

(1) be maintained in satisfactory operating condition;

(2) be considered in satisfactory operating condition if it has an average placement rate of 5,000 lineal feet (1 525 lineal meters) per hour of acceptable four (4) inch {100 millimeters} solid or broken lines over any five (5) consecutive working days;

(3) meet or exceed the material handling at elevated temperature requirements of the National Fire Underwriters and the Texas Railroad Commission;

(4) be capable of placing a minimum of 40,000 lineal feet (12 190 lineal meters) of 4 inch {100 millimeters} solid or broken markings per day;

(5) have production capabilities similar to four-inch (100 mm) marking equipment and shall be capable of placing linear markings up to 8 inches {200 millimeters} in width in a single pass when used for placing markings in widths other than 4 inches {100 millimeters};

(6) have production capabilities considered satisfactory by the Engineer or designated representative, when used to place markings other than solid or broken lines;

(7) be capable of placing a centerline and no-passing barrier-line configuration consisting of one broken line with two solid lines at the same time to the alignment and spacing shown on the Drawings;

(8) be capable of placing broken and/or continuous white line from both sides;

(9) be capable of placing lines with clean edges and of uniform cross-section. All lines shall have a tolerance of plus or minus 1/8 inch per 4-inch width {3 mm per 100-mm width};

(10) have an automatic cut-off device with manual operating capabilities to provide clean, reasonably square marking ends to the satisfaction of the Engineer, and to provide a method of applying broken line in an approximate stripe-to-gap ratio of 10 to 30. The length of the stripe shall not be less than 10 feet (3.05 meters) or more than 10.5 feet (3.2 meters). The total length of any stripe-gap cycle shall not be less than 39.5 feet (12 meters) or more than 40.5 feet (12.3 meters);

(11) provide continuous mixing and agitation of the pavement marking material. The use of pans, aprons or similar appliances, which the die overruns, will not be permitted for longitudinal striping applications;

(12) apply beads by an automatic bead dispenser attached to the pavement marking equipment in such a manner that the beads re-dispensed uniformly and almost instantly upon the marking as the marking is being applied to the road surface. The bead dispenser shall have an automatic cut-off control, synchronized with the cut-off of the pavement marking equipment.

871S.4 Construction Methods

A. General.

When required by the Engineer, the Contractor and the Engineer shall review the sequence of Work to be followed and the estimated progress schedule.

Markings may be placed on streets either free of traffic or open to traffic. On streets already open to traffic, the markings shall be placed under traffic conditions that exist with a minimum of interference to the operation of the facility. Traffic control shall be as shown on the Drawings or as approved in writing by the Engineer or designated representative. All markings placed under open-traffic conditions shall be protected from traffic damage and disfigurement. On streets open to traffic with 3 lanes of travel in one direction, all markings shall be placed from the outside lanes only, unless otherwise approved in writing by the Engineer or designated representative.

Guides to mark the lateral location of pavement markings shall be established as shown on the Drawings or as directed by the Engineer or designated representative. The Contractor shall establish the pavement marking guide and the Engineer or designated representative will verify the location of the guides.

Markings shall be placed in proper alignment with the guides. The deviation rate in alignment shall not exceed 1 inch per 200 feet {25 mm per 60 meters} of street. The maximum deviation shall not exceed 2 inches {50 millimeters} nor shall any deviation be abrupt.

Markings shall essentially have a uniform cross-section. The density and quality of markings shall be uniform throughout their thickness. The applied markings shall have no more than five (5) percent, by area, of holes or voids and shall be free of blisters.

Markings, in place on the street, shall be reflectorized both internally and externally. Glass beads shall be applied to the materials at a uniform rate sufficient to achieve uniform and distinctive retroflective characteristics when observed in accordance with TxDOT Test Method Tex-828-B.

Contractor personnel shall be sufficiently skilled in the Work of installing pavement markings.

Markings placed that are not in alignment or sequence, as shown on the drawings or as stated in the Standard Specification Item, shall be removed by the Contractor at its own expense. Removal shall be in accordance with Specification Item 874S, "Eliminating Existing Pavement Markings and Markers", except for measurement and payment. Guides placed on the street for alignment purposes shall not establish a permanent marking on the street.

Unless indicated otherwise on the Drawings, pavement markings shall not be placed sooner than 3 calendar days after the placement of a new hot mix asphaltic concrete surface course or surface treatment.

Unless otherwise shown on the Drawings, pavement markings may be applied by any method that will yield markings meeting the requirements of the Specification Item.

B. Surface Preparation

New Portland cement concrete surfaces shall be cleaned in accordance with Specification Item 875S, "Pavement Surface Preparation for Markings" to remove curing membrane, dirt, grease, loose and/or flaking existing construction markings and other forms of contamination.

Older Portland cement concrete surfaces and asphaltic surfaces that exhibit loose and/or flaking existing markings shall be cleaned in accordance with Specification Item 875S, "Pavement Surface Preparation for Markings" to remove all loose and flaking markings.

Pavement to which material is to be applied shall be completely dry. Pavements shall be considered dry if, on a sunny day after observation for 15 minutes, no condensation occurs in the underside of a 1 foot {300 mm} square piece of clear plastic that has been placed on the pavement and weighted on the edges.

C. Application of Type I Markings.

New Portland cement concrete surfaces shall be further prepared for Type I markings, after cleaning, by placing a Type II marking as a sealer in accordance with the Specification Item. When placing Type I markings in new locations on asphaltic surfaces 3 years old or older or any Portland cement concrete surfaces, a Type II marking shall be used as a sealer. Unless otherwise shown on the Drawings, existing Portland cement concrete and asphaltic surfaces to be restriped will not require Type II markings as a sealer; existing markings may be used as a sealer in lieu of Type II markings. Type II markings shall be placed a minimum of 2 and a maximum of 30 calendar days in advance of placing Type I markings. Type II markings which become dirty due to inclement

weather or street conditions shall be cleaned by washing, brushing, compressed air or other means approved by the Engineer, prior to application of Type I markings. If washing is used, the surface of Type II markings shall become thoroughly dry before placing Type I markings. Color, location and configuration of Type II markings shall be the same as that of Type I markings.

Type I pavement marking material shall be applied within temperature limits recommended by the material manufacturer. Application of Type I pavement markings shall be done only on clean, dry pavement having a surface temperature above 50^0F (10^0C). Pavement temperature shall be measured in accordance with TxDOT Test Method Tex-829-B.

When Type I pavement marking application is by spray, and operations cease for 5 minutes or more, the spray head shall be flushed by spraying pavement marking material into a pan or similar container until the pavement marking material being sprayed is at the proper temperature for application.

Unless otherwise directed by the Engineer in writing, Type I pavement-marking materials shall not be placed on streets between September 30 and March 1, subject to temperature and moisture limitations specified herein.

Unless otherwise shown on the Drawings, the minimum thickness of Type I marking shall be 0.060 inches (60 mil) {1.5 millimeters} for edgeline markings and 0.090 inches (90 mil) {2.3 millimeters} for stop-bars, legends, symbols, gore and center-line/no-passing barrier-line markings, when measured in accordance with TxDOT Test Method Tex-854-B. The maximum thickness of all Type I markings shall be 0.180 inches (180 mil) {4.6 millimeters}.

The thickness of Type I markings at the time of placement will be measured above the plane formed by the pavement surface. The Contractor will supply an approved device to measure the thickness of the applied markings. The markings shall be of uniform thickness throughout their lengths and widths.

D. Application of Type II Markings

The application of Type II marking materials shall be done only on surfaces with a minimum surface temperature of 50^0F (10^0C).

The application rate for Type II marking material shall be between 15 and 20 gallons per mile (35 to 47 liters per kilometer) of solid 4 inch {100 millimeter} line and between 30 and 40 gallons per mile (70 to 95 liters per kilometer) of solid 8 inch {200 millimeter} line. For new surface treatment projects the application rate shall be between 25 and 30 gallons per mile (60 to 70 liters per kilometer) of solid four (4) inch line {one hundred (100) millimeters} and between 40 and 50 gallons per mile (95 to 120 liters per kilometer) of solid 8 inch {200 millimeters} line.

Pavement markings for new surface treatment projects shall be applied in two applications, each approximately one-half the application rate. The first application shall not contain glass beads. The interval between the first and second application shall be a minimum of 1 hour.

When there is impending inclement weather and the Contractor chooses to apply water-based traffic paint and the markings, that are subsequently damaged by rain, sleet, hail,

etc., the Contractor is responsible for all costs associated with the replacement markings. The Contractor will be paid, when the work is acceptable.

871S.5 Performance Period for Type I Markings.

Type I pavement markings shall meet all the requirements of this technical specification for a minimum of 15 calendar days after installation. Pavement markings that fail to meet all requirements of this specification shall be removed and replaced by the Contractor at its own expense. The Contractor shall replace all pavement markings failing the requirements of this technical specification within 30 calendar days following notification by the Engineer or designated representative of such failing. All replacement markings shall also meet all requirements of this technical specification for a minimum of 15 calendar days after installation.

871S.6 Measurement

This Specification Item will be measured by the lineal foot (lineal meter), by each of the various words, shapes or symbols, or by any other unit as shown on the Drawings.

Where double stripes are placed, each stripe will be measured separately.

Type II pavement markings requiring 2 applications on new surface treatments (Specification Item No. 320S) will be measured as 1 marking.

Type II pavement marking materials, when used as a sealer for Type I markings will be measured as Type II markings.

Final work zone pavement markings (paint and beads), which will be used as a sealer for Type I pavement markings, will not be measured for payment.

871S.7 Payment

The work performed and materials furnished in accordance with this Standard Specification Item and measured as provided under “Measurement” will be paid for at the Unit bid price for “Reflectorized Pavement Markings” of the various types, colors, shapes, sizes, widths and thickness (Type I markings only) specified. This price shall include full compensation for furnishing all materials; for application of pavement markings; and for all other labor, tools, equipment and incidentals necessary to complete the Work, except as described below.

Surface Preparation, when indicated on the Drawings, will be paid for under Specification Item 875S, “Pavement Surface Preparation for Markings.”

Final work zone pavement markings (paint and beads), which will be used as a sealer for Type I pavement markings, shall be included in the unit price bid for the item of construction for which final work zone pavement markings are used.

When replacement Type II markings are required due to damage to the original markings from rain, sleet, hail, etc., and the original markings were placed at the Direction of the Engineer, the Contractor will be paid for the actual quantity of original and replacement markings at the unit bid price for the bid item.

Payment will be made under one or more of the following:

Original placement of Reflectorized Pavement Markings:

Pay Item 871S-A: Reflectorized Type I Thermoplastic Pavement Markings
___inches in width, ___mils in thickness_____ in color per lineal foot.

Pay Item 871S-B: Reflectorized Type I Thermoplastic Pavement Markings **Words**
___inches in width, ___ mils in thickness_____ in color per each.

Pay Item 871S-C: Reflectorized Type I Thermoplastic Pavement Markings **Shapes**
___inches in width, ___ mils in thickness_____ in color per each.

Pay Item 871S-D: Reflectorized Type I Thermoplastic Pavement Markings **Symbols**
___inches in width, ___ mils in thickness_____ in color per each.

Pay Item 871S-E: Reflectorized Type II Paint Pavement Markings
___inches in width, _____ in color per lineal foot.

Pay Item 871S-F: Reflectorized Type II Paint Pavement Markings **Words**
___inches in width, _____ in color per each.

Pay Item 871S-G: Reflectorized Type II Paint Pavement Markings **Shapes**
____inches in width, _____ in color per each.

Pay Item 871S-H: Reflectorized II Paint Pavement Markings **Symbols**
___inches in width, _____ in color per each.

Replacement of Reflectorized Pavement Markings:

Pay Item 871S-AR: Replace Reflectorized Type I Thermoplastic Pavement Markings
___inches in width, ___mils in thickness_____ in color per lineal foot.

Pay Item 871S-BR: Replace Reflectorized Type I Thermoplastic Pavement Markings **Words**
___inches in width, ___ mils in thickness_____ in color per each.

Pay Item 871S-CR: Replace Reflectorized Type I Thermoplastic Pavement Markings **Shapes**
___inches in width, ___ mils in thickness_____ in color per each.

Pay Item 871S-DR: Replace Reflectorized Type I Thermoplastic Pavement Markings **Symbols**
___inches in width, ___ mils in thickness_____ in color per each.

Pay Item 871S-ER: Replace Reflectorized Type II Paint Pavement Markings
___inches in width, _____ in color per lineal foot.

Pay Item 871S-FR: Replace Reflectorized Type II Paint Pavement Markings **Words**
___inches in width, _____ in color per each.

Pay Item 871S-GR: Replace Reflectorized Type II Paint Pavement Markings **Shapes**
___inches in width, _____ in color per each.

Pay Item 871S-HR: Replace Reflectorized Type II Paint Pavement Markings **Symbols**
___inches in width, _____ in color per each.

END

SPECIFIC CROSS REFERENCE MATERIALS
Specification Item No. 871S, "Reflectorized Pavement Markings"

City of Austin Contract Documents

Designation	Description
Section 00300U	Bid Form (Unit Price)

City of Austin Standard Specifications

Designation	Description

Item No. 320S	Two Course Surface Treatment
Item No. 860S	Pavement Marking Paint (Reflectorized)
Item No. 874S	Eliminating Existing Pavement Markings and Markers
Item No. 875S	Pavement Surface Preparation For Markings

Texas Department of Transportation: Manual of Testing Procedures

Designation	Description
Tex-828-B	Determining Functional Characteristics of Pavement Markings
Tex-829-B	Method For Measuring Pavement Temperature
Tex-854-B	Evaluation Of Thermoplastic Striping For Uniformity And Thickness

RELATED CROSS REFERENCE MATERIALS
Specification Item No. 871S, "Reflectorized Pavement Markings"

City of Austin Standard Specifications

Designation	Description
Item No. 301S	Asphalts, Oils and Emulsions
Item No. 302S	Aggregates for Surface Treatments
Item No. 310S	Emulsified Asphalt Treatment
Item No. 311S	Emulsified Asphalt Repaving
Item No. 312S	Seal Coat
Item No. 313S	Rubber Asphalt Joint and Crack Sealant
Item No. 315S	Milling Asphaltic Concrete Paving
Item No. 340S	Hot Mix Asphaltic Concrete Pavement
Item No. 341S	Paving Fabric
Item No. 350S	Heating, Scarifying and Repaving
Item No. 360	Concrete Pavement
Item No. 801S	Construction Detours
Item No. 803S	Barricades, Signs and Traffic Handling
Item No. 863S	Reflectorized Pavement Markers
Item No. 864S	Abbreviated Pavement Markings
Item No. 865S	Nonreflectorized Traffic Buttons
Item No. 866S	Jiggle Bar Tile
Item No. 867S	Epoxy Adhesive
Item No. 870S	Work Zone Pavement Markings
Item No. 872S	Prefabricated Pavement Markings
Item No. 873S	Raised Pavement Markers
Item No. 863S-1	Pavement Buttons (Reflectorized-Type I & Type II)
Item No. 865S-1	Traffic Buttons (Non-Reflectorized)

Texas Department of Transportation: Standard Specifications for Construction and Maintenance of Highways, Streets, and Bridges

Designation	Description
Item No. 302	Aggregates for Surface Treatments
Item No. 314	Emulsified Asphalt Treatment
Item No. 315	Emulsified Asphalt Seal
Item No. 316	Surface Treatments
Item No. 334	Hot Mix-Cold Laid Asphaltic Concrete Pavement

RELATED CROSS REFERENCE MATERIALS
Specification Item No. 871S, "Reflectorized Pavement Markings"

Texas Department of Transportation: Standard Specifications for Construction and Maintenance of Highways, Streets, and Bridges

Designation	Description

Item No. 340	Hot Mix Asphaltic Concrete Pavement
Item No. 342	Plant Mix Seal
Item No. 351	Repairing Existing Flexible Pavement Structure
Item No. 354	Planing and/or Texturing Pavement
Item No. 358	Asphaltic Concrete Surface Rehabilitation
Item No. 360	Concrete Pavement
Item No. 421	Hydraulic Cement Concrete
Item No. 427	Surface Finishes for Concrete
Item No. 428	Concrete Surface Treatment
Item No. 662	Work Zone Pavement Markings
Item No. 666	Reflectorized Pavement Markings
Item No. 667	Prefabricated Pavement Markings
Item No. 672	Raised Pavement Markers
Item No. 677	Eliminating Existing Pavement Markings and Markers
Item No. 678	Pavement Surface Preparation For Markings

Texas Department of Transportation: Manual of Testing Procedures

Designation	Description
Tex 729-I	Sampling of Traffic Markers

Texas Department of Transportation: Departmental Materials Specifications

Designation	Description
DM S-4100	Jiggle Bar Tile
DMS-4200	Pavement Markers (Reflectorized)
DMS-4300	Traffic Buttons
DMS-4210	Pavement Markers
DMS-6130	Bituminous Adhesive
DMS-8200	Pavement Paint
DMS-8220	Thermoplastic marking material
DMS-8240	Prefabricated Marking Materials
DMS-8241	Removable Tape
DMS-8290	Pavement Paint
YPT-10 and/or WPT-10	Pavement Paint

Item No. 875S
Pavement Surface Preparation For Markings

875S.1 Description

This item shall govern the surface preparation of pavement surface areas prior to placement of pavement markings or raised pavement markers.

This specification is applicable for projects or work involving either inch-pound or SI units. Within the text the inch-pound units are given preference followed by SI units shown within parentheses.

875S.2 Materials

Abrasive blasting medium, when used, shall be a quality commercial product capable of producing the specified surface cleanliness without the deposition of deleterious materials on the cleaned surface. Water used in blasting operations shall be potable.

875S.3 Equipment

Equipment shall be maintained in good condition. Air compression equipment shall utilize moisture and oil traps, in working order, of sufficient capacity to remove contaminants from blasting air and prevent the deposition of moisture, oil or other contaminants on the street surface.

875S.4 Construction Methods

Widths, lengths and shapes of the prepared surfaces shall be of sufficient size to include the full area of pavement markings or raised pavement markers shown on the Drawings.

Surface preparation of Portland cement concrete surfaces shall be sufficient to remove contaminants. Damage to the street due to over-blasting shall be held to a minimum. Asphaltic surfaces shall be cleaned by brushing, washing, compressed air, high pressure water or any combination thereof to remove all forms of contamination and loose materials. All other surfaces to be cleaned by blast cleaning shall be cleaned sufficiently to remove loose and flaking materials from the street surface.

When existing markings are encountered, they shall be cleaned sufficiently to remove all loose and flaking materials. Small spots of old markings or contaminants of up to 0.5 square inch (320 mm^2) in area may remain if the contaminant is not removed by the following test:

Firmly press a 10 inch (250 mm) long, two-inch (50 mm) wide strip of monofilament tape onto the surface to be tested, leaving approximately 2 inches {50 mm} free. Grasp the free end and remove the tape with a sharp pull.

Blasting pressure and technique shall be controlled to prevent damage to the pavement surface. Portland cement concrete surfaces shall not be cleaned by grinding.

875S.5 Measurement

This Specification Item will be measured by the lineal foot (lineal meter: 1 lineal meter is equal to 3.281 lineal feet) of the various widths, by each of the various words, symbols or shapes, or by any other unit as shown on the Drawings.

Payment for revised quantities will be paid for at the unit price bid for that bid item.

875S.6 Payment

The work performed and materials furnished in accordance with this Specification Item and measured as provided under "Measurement" will be paid for at the unit bid price for "Pavement Surface Preparation for Markings" of the various types specified. This price shall include full compensation for all materials, tools, equipment, labor and incidentals necessary to complete the Work.

Payment shall be made by one or more of the following:

Pay Item 875S-A: Pavement Surface Preparation for existing pavement surface ___inches in width, for _____ Surface Type per lineal foot

Pay Item 875S-B: Pavement Surface Preparation for existing Words ___inches in width, for _____ Surface Type per each

Pay Item 875S-C: Pavement Surface Preparation for existing Shapes ___inches in width, for _____ Surface Type per each

Pay Item 875S-D: Pavement Surface Preparation for existing Symbols ___inches in width, for _____ Surface Type per each

END

SPECIFIC CROSS REFERENCE MATERIALS
Specification Item No. 874S, "Eliminating Existing Pavement Markings And Markers"

City of Austin Contract Documents

Designation	Description
Section 00300U	Bid Form (Unit Prices)

RELATED CROSS REFERENCE MATERIALS
Specification Item No. 875S, "Pavement Surface Preparation For Markings"

City of Austin Technical Specifications

Designation	Description
Item No. 301S	Asphalts, Oils and Emulsions
Item No. 302S	Aggregates for Surface Treatments
Item No. 310S	Emulsified Asphalt Treatment
Item No. 311S	Emulsified Asphalt Repaving
Item No. 312S	Seal Coat
Item No. 313S	Rubber Asphalt Joint and Crack Sealant
Item No. 315S	Milling Asphaltic Concrete Paving

Item No. 320S	Two Course Surface Treatment
Item No. 340S	Hot Mix Asphaltic Concrete Pavement
Item No. 341S	Paving Fabric
Item No. 350S	Heating, Scarifying and Repaving
Item No. 360	Concrete Pavement
Item No. 801S	Construction Detours
Item No. 803S	Barricades, Signs and Traffic Handling
Item No. 860S	Pavement Marking Paint (Reflectorized)
Item No. 863S	Reflectorized Pavement Markers
Item No. 864S	Abbreviated Pavement Markings
Item No. 865S	Non-Reflectorized Traffic Buttons
Item No. 866S	Jiggle Bar Tile
Item No. 867S	Epoxy Adhesive
Item No. 870S	Work Zone Pavement Markings
Item No. 871S	Reflectorized Pavement Markers
Item No. 872S	Prefabricated Pavement Markings
Item No. 873S	Raised Pavement Markings
Item No. 874S	Eliminating Existing Pavement Markings and Markers

City of Austin Standard Details

Designation	Description
863S-1	Pavement Buttons (Reflectorized-Type I & Type II)
865S-1	Traffic Buttons (Non-Reflectorized)

Texas Department of Transportation: Standard Specifications for Construction and Maintenance of Highways, Streets, and Bridges

Designation	Description
Item No. 302	Aggregates for Surface Treatments
Item No. 314	Emulsified Asphalt Treatment
Item No. 315	Emulsified Asphalt Seal
Item No. 316	Surface Treatments

RELATED CROSS REFERENCE MATERIALS (Continued)
Specification Item No. 875S, "Pavement Surface Preparation For Markings"

Texas Department of Transportation: Standard Specifications for Construction and Maintenance of Highways, Streets, and Bridges (Continued)

Designation	Description
Item No. 334	Hot Mix-Cold Laid Asphaltic Concrete Pavement
Item No. 340	Hot Mix Asphaltic Concrete Pavement
Item No. 342	Plant Mix Seal
Item No. 351	Repairing Existing Flexible Pavement Structure
Item No. 354	Planing and/or Texturing Pavement
Item No. 358	Asphaltic Concrete Surface Rehabilitation
Item No. 360	Concrete Pavement
Item No. 421	Hydraulic Cement Concrete
Item No. 427	Surface Finishes for Concrete
Item No. 428	Concrete Surface Treatment
Item No. 662	Work Zone Pavement Markings
Item No. 666	Reflectorized Pavement Markings

Item No. 667	Prefabricated Pavement Markings
Item No. 672	Raised Pavement Markers
Item No. 677	Eliminating Existing Pavement Markings and Markers
Item No. 678	Pavement Surface Preparation For Markings

Texas Department of Transportation: Manual of Testing Procedures

Designation	Description
Tex 729-I	Sampling of Traffic Markers
Tex-828-B	Determining Functional Characteristics of Pavement Markings
Tex-829-B	Method For Measuring Pavement Temperature
Tex-854-B	Evaluation Of Thermoplastic Striping For Uniformity And Thickness

Texas Department of Transportation: Departmental Materials Specification

Designation	Description
DMS-4100	Jiggle Bar Tile
DMS-4200	Pavement Markers (Reflectorized)
DMS-4300	Traffic Buttons
DMS-4210	Pavement Markers
DMS-6130	Bituminous Adhesive
DMS-8200	Pavement Paint
DMS-8220	Thermoplastic marking material
DMS-8240	Prefabricated Marking Materials
DMS-8241	Removable Tape
DMS-8290	Pavement Paint
YPT-10 and/or WPT-10	Pavement Paint

SPECIAL PROVISION
To the Measurement and Payment Section of the
City of Austin Standard Technical Specifications

For this Project all adopted and/or referenced City of Austin Standard Technical Specification Items are hereby amended with respect to the clauses cited below. No other clauses or requirements of these Items are waived or changed hereby.

In all adopted and/or referenced City of Austin Standard Specifications, in the Sections titled "Measurement and Payment", delete all text in its entirety and replace with the following paragraph:

"All work items installed, provided, constructed, etc. under this specification shall not be paid for separately but shall be considered subsidiary to the lump sum bid price for the project. No separate pay will be provided for any work governed by this specification. The cost of all work materials, labor, overhead, insurance, equipment, etc. necessary to finish the work complete in place shall be included in the lump sum bid price for the project."

End

SPECIAL PROVISION TO
Standard Specification Item No. 101S Preparing Right of Way
(Version 01/04/11)

For this project Item No. 101S Preparing Right of Way of the City of Austin Standard Technical Specifications is hereby amended with respect to the clauses cited below. No other clauses or requirements of this Section of the City of Austin Standard Specifications are waived or changed.

Article 101S.1 Description

Delete the first paragraph and **replace** it with the following paragraph:

"This item shall govern the preparation of the right of way and City of Austin Property (City Property) for construction operations by demolition, removal, disposal and backfill of all obstructions from the right of way and City Property and from designated easements.

Delete the first sentence of the third paragraph and **replace** it with the following sentence:

"This item shall also include, but not be limited to, the demolition, removal, disposal and backfill of trees, stumps, roots, bushes, shrubs, curb and gutter, driveways, paved parking areas, miscellaneous stone, brick, sidewalks, drainage structures, manholes, inlets, abandoned railroad tracks, scrap iron, and all rubbish and debris whether above or below ground."

Article 101S.3 Construction Methods

Delete the second sentence of the first paragraph and **replace** it with the following sentence:

"The existing utilities shall be located and protected as specified in the Contract Documents and/or as specified on the Drawings."

Delete the sixth, seventh and eighth paragraphs and **replace** them with the following paragraphs:

"Holes remaining after removing of all obstructions, objectionable material, trees, stumps, etc. shall be backfilled with select embankment material and compacted in accordance with City of Austin Standard Specification Item 510 "Pipe" for water, wastewater and storm drain conduit obstructions and shall be backfilled with select embankment material and compacted in accordance with City of Austin Standard Specification Item 401S "Structural Excavation and Backfill" for water, wastewater and storm drain structural obstructions.

When a utility conflicts with the construction, it shall be modified as specified in the Standard Contract Documents and/or as specified on the Drawings.

Where an abandoned underground pipe or conduit utility is found it shall be cut and plugged with at least 6 inches (150mm) of concrete (in accordance with City of Austin Standard Specification Item 403S “Concrete for Structures”) or with a precast stopper grouted in place.”

End

SPECIAL PROVISION TO
Standard Specification Item No. 102S Clearing and Grubbing (Version 08/20/07)

For this project Item No. 102S Clearing and Grubbing of the City of Austin Standard Technical Specifications is hereby amended with respect to the clauses cited below. No other clauses or requirements of this Section of the City of Austin Standard Specifications are waived or changed.

Article 102S.1 Description

Insert the following paragraph after the first paragraph:

"This Item shall also include the removal and proper disposal of all obstructions from the limits of construction, to include, but not be limited to, remains of structures, foundations, slabs, concrete, brick, lumber, plaster, cisterns, water wells, septic tanks, drain fields, basements, abandoned utility conduits, tanks, fences, retaining walls, and all other debris. This Item shall also include all excavation, embankment, and grading work within the limits of construction."

End

SPECIAL PROVISION TO
Standard Specification Item No. 130S Borrow
(Version 09/26/12)

For this project Item No. 130S Borrow of the City of Austin Standard Technical Specifications is hereby amended with respect to the clauses cited below. No other clauses or requirements of this Section of the City of Austin Standard Specifications are waived or changed.

Article 130S.1 Description

Add the following sentences after the last sentence of the first paragraph:

"The compaction of pavement subgrade fill constructed from borrow shall conform to City of Austin Standard Specification Item 201S Subgrade Preparation. The compaction of structural backfill constructed from borrow shall conform to City of Austin Standard Specification Item 401S Structural Excavation and Backfill. The compaction of pipe and box culvert backfill constructed from borrow shall conform to City of Austin Standard Specification Item 510 Pipe."

Article 130S.3 Materials

Delete the first paragraph and replace it with the following paragraphs:

"All authorized borrow shall conform to one of the following fill classifications and classes:

Pavement Subgrade Fill

Borrow for the top two (2) feet of fill for pavement Subgrade shall comply with one of the following material requirements:

1. coarse-grained, low P.I. soils (P.I. of 20 or less) with a maximum particle size of three (3) inches and less than 30% passing the No. 200 mesh sieve;

2. low P.I. select fill soils meeting the following gradation requirements when properly slaked and tested by standard laboratory methods:

	% Retained
2-1/2 inch screen	0%
1-1/2 inch screen	0% to 25%
7/8 inch screen	15% to 55%
No. 4 Sieve	45% to 75%
No. 40 Sieve	60% to 90%

Material passing the No. 40 sieve shall have a minimum plasticity index of 3 and shall not have a plasticity index of greater than 18.

3. crushed limestone base material conforming to Item City of Austin Standard Specification Item 210S Flexible Base.

Pipe and Manhole Backfill

The top two (2) feet of borrow for pipe and manhole backfill below the flexible base for the asphalt pavement or below the concrete pavement shall comply with the material requirements for pavement subgrade fill."

End

SPECIAL PROVISION TO
Standard Specification Item No. 201S Subgrade Preparation
(Version 08/20/07)

For this project Item No. 201S Subgrade Preparation of the City of Austin Standard Technical Specifications is hereby amended with respect to the clauses cited below. No other clauses or requirements of this Section of the City of Austin Standard Specifications are waived or changed.

Article 201S.1 Description

Delete the first paragraph and **replace** it with the following paragraph:

"This item shall govern scarifying; blading and rolling the subgrade to obtain a uniform texture and provide as nearly as practicable a uniform density for the top eight (8) inches of the subgrade."

Article 201S.3 Construction Methods

Insert the following sentences after the first sentence of the second paragraph:

"All unsuitable materials within the pavement subgrade shall be removed and replaced with material complying with one of the following material requirements:

1. coarse-grained, low P.I. soils (P.I. of 20 or less) with 100% passing the 3-inch sieve and less than 30% passing the No. 200 mesh sieve;

2. low P.I. select fill soils meeting the following gradation requirements when properly slaked and tested by standard laboratory methods:

	% Retained
2-1/2 inch screen	0%
1-1/2 inch screen	0% to 25%
7/8 inch screen	15% to 55%
No. 4 Sieve	45% to 75%
No. 40 Sieve	60% to 90%

   Material passing the No. 40 sieve shall have a minimum plasticity index of 3 and shall not have a plasticity index of greater than 18.

3. crushed limestone base material conforming to Item City of Austin Standard Specification Item 210S Flexible Base.

Maximum pre-compacted loose lift thickness of subgrade fill soils shall be eight (8) inches."

Insert the following sentence after the fourth sentence of the third paragraph:

"Any unstable or soft subgrade materials or high P.I. soils (P.I. greater than 20) shall be removed and replaced with specified subgrade material."

Delete sub-paragraph "A" and **replace** it with the following sub-paragraph:

"A. Remove the unstable or soft or high P.I. soils to the full depth of the unstable or soft or high P.I. soils or to a minimum depth of eight (8) inches, whichever is greater and replace with specified subgrade material;"

Delete the first sentence of the seventh paragraph and **replace** it with the following sentence:

"Prior to placement of any base or pavement materials, the in-place density and moisture content of the top eight (8) inches of compacted subgrade shall be checked."

End

SPECIAL PROVISION TO
Standard Specification Item No. 401S Structural Excavation and Backfill
(Version 09/26/12)

For this project Item No. 401S Structural Excavation and Backfill of the City of Austin Standard Technical Specifications is hereby amended with respect to the clauses cited below. No other clauses or requirements of this Section of the City of Austin Standard Specifications are waived or changed.

Article 401S.3 Materials

Add the following sections after Section G:

"H. Storm Drain, Water and Wastewater Structural Backfill

The top two (2) feet of structural backfill below pavement sections shall comply with one of the following material requirements:

1. coarse-grained, low P.I. soils (P.I. of 20 or less) with 100% passing the 3-inch sieve and less than 30% passing the No. 200 mesh sieve;

2. low P.I. select fill soils meeting the following gradation requirements when properly slaked and tested by standard laboratory methods:

	% Retained
2-1/2 inch screen	0%
1-1/2 inch screen	0% to 25%
7/8 inch screen	15% to 55%
No. 4 Sieve	45% to 75%
No. 40 Sieve	60% to 90%

   Material passing the No. 40 sieve shall have a minimum plasticity index of 3 and shall not have a plasticity index of greater than 18.

3. crushed limestone base material conforming to Item City of Austin Standard Specification Item 210S Flexible Base.

Maximum pre-compacted loose lift thickness of structural backfill used for the top two (2) feet for pavement subgrade fill soils shall be eight (8) inches.

Soils from required on-site excavations may be used for structural backfill for storm drain, water and wastewater structures below the top two (2) feet provided all particles greater than three (3) inches are removed."

Article 401S.8 Backfilling

Insert the following paragraph after the fifth paragraph of Section A:

"All backfill shall be placed in uniform layers not more than 8 inches (200 mm) in depth (loose measurement). Soils with plasticity indices greater than 20 shall be compacted within a range of 95% to 102% of the maximum dry density in accordance with TxDOT Test Method TEX-114-E and soil moisture shall be at optimum to plus 2% of optimum moisture content. Soils with plasticity indices less than or equal to 20 shall be wetted and compacted as required to achieve a minimum of 95% of the maximum dry density in accordance with TxDOT Test Method TEX-114-E. Compaction equipment shall achieve required density without damaging the structure."

End

SPECIAL PROVISION TO
Standard Specification Item No. 510 Pipe (Version 10/03/13)

For this project Item No. 510 Pipe of the City of Austin Standard Technical Specifications is hereby amended with respect to the clauses cited below. No other clauses or requirements of this Section of the City of Austin Standard Specifications are waived or changed.

Article 510.2(6) Select Backfill or Borrow

Insert the following paragraph after the first paragraph:

"For storm drain and manhole trench backfill, this material shall consist of borrow or of suitable material excavated from the trench. It shall be free of particles greater than three (3) inches (75 mm). If the material is off-site borrow, it shall have a plasticity index of less than 20. Sandy loam shall not be used for backfill. The top two (2) feet (0.6 m) of backfill where it will be used as pavement subgrade shall consist of one of the following materials:

1. Coarse-grained, low P.I. soils (P.I. of 20 or less) with 100% passing the 3-inch sieve and less than 30% passing the No. 200 mesh sieve;

2. Low P.I. select fill soils meeting the following gradation requirements when properly slaked and tested by standard laboratory methods:

	% Retained
2-1/2 inch screen	0%
1-1/2 inch screen	0% to 25%
7/8 inch screen	15% to 55%
No. 4 Sieve	45% to 75%
No. 40 Sieve	60% to 90%

   Material passing the No. 40 sieve shall have a minimum plasticity index of 3 and shall not have a plasticity index of greater than 18.

3. Crushed limestone base material conforming to Item City of Austin Standard Specification Item 210S Flexible Base.

Article 510.2 Materials

Add the following section after section (8):

"(9) Geotextile Filter Fabric for Pipe Bedding Material

Geotextile filter fabric for pipe bedding material shall be Webtec, Terra Tex No. 4 (AOS US Standard Sieve 70) geotextile fabric or approved equal."

Article 510.3(14) Pipe Bedding Envelope

Delete the second sentence of the first paragraph and **replace** it with the following sentence:

"The envelope shall extend the full trench width, to a depth of at least six (6) inches (150 mm) below the pipe and to at least six (6) inches (150 mm) above storm pipe and twelve (12) inches (300 mm) above water and wastewater pipe."

Article 510.3(14)(c) Requirements to prevent particle migration

Delete section (1) and **replace** it with the following section:

"(1) Sand, alone, shall not be used on this Project."

Add the following section after section (3):

"(4) If pea gravel, uncrushed gravel, crushed gravel, crushed stone, or combination thereof is used for pipe bedding material, a geotextile filter fabric shall be placed on all four sides of the bedding envelope. Fabric shall overlap at least twelve (12) inches."

End

ROCIP Project: Withhold insurance cost. Please refer to sections 00425 & 00810 for information.

SECTION 03 10 00 - CONCRETE FORMWORK

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.01 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.02 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:
   1. Forming all flatwork
   2. Forming building pad.

B. Related Sections include the following:
   1. Division 03 Section “Concrete Reinforcement.”
   2. Division 03 Section “Cast-in-Place Concrete.”

1.03 SUBMITTALS

A. Submit diagrams of proposed construction joints not shown on the drawings for approval by the Engineer.

1.04 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. American Concrete Institute Standard ACI 347, "Recommended Practice for Concrete Formwork".

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.01 MATERIALS

A. Forms:
   1. Wood forms for unexposed concrete surfaces shall be built of sufficient thickness to sustain the loads to be imposed thereon, dressed to uniformly smooth contact surfaces, and so constructed as to be readily removable.
   2. Wood forms for exposed concrete surfaces shall be constructed of commercial standard Douglas Fir, moisture-resistant, concrete form plywood not less than

5-ply, and at least 9/16" thick, with one smooth face, or shall be forms with linings of one of the following types:

a. Plywood: Commercial standard Douglas Fir, concrete form, exterior 3-ply, not less than 1/4" thick, having one smooth face or,

b. Fiberboard: Treated, hard-pressed box forms, in size indicated on drawings and as manufactured by National Container Corporation or approved equal, and rated to sustain a load exceeding the total weight of fresh concrete placed over the voids.

B. Carton Forms

1. Formed Voids Under Beams and Slabs: Corrugated fiberboard box forms, in size indicated on drawings and as manufactured by Surevoid or approved equal, and rated to sustain a load exceeding the total weight of fresh concrete placed over the voids.
2. Provide ¼” tempered masonite protection board and 10 mill vapor retarder over carton forms.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.01 GENERAL

A. The design and engineering of the formwork, as well as its construction, shall be the responsibility of the Contractor. Adequately shore all concrete members to safely support all loads and lateral pressures outlined in "Recommended Practice for Concrete Formwork" (ACI 347) without distortion, excessive deflection or other damage. Build all necessary forms centering, shores and moulds to conform to the shapes, lines and dimensions of the various members of concrete construction lines, and dimensions of the various members of the concrete construction as shown or scheduled on the drawings. Construct sufficiently tight and so substantially assembled as to prevent bulging or leakage of mortar. Assemble forms to be readily removable without impact, shock or damage to the concrete. Provide temporary openings as required to facilitate cleaning, drainage and inspection. Clean all contact surfaces of lumber once used as forms thoroughly before reuse.

B. Install form ties at proper intervals to securely hold the forms in position during the placing of concrete, and to withstand the weight and pressure of the wet concrete. Coat ties of a type intended to be entirely removed with an approved lubricant to safeguard against damaging the concrete during removal. The use of wire ties will not be permitted.

C. Place and anchor in the forms wood strips, blocking, mouldings, nailers, etc., required to produce the finished profiles and surfaces shown on the drawings and to provide nailing for wood members or other features required to be attached to concrete surfaces in such manner. Coat wood strips, blocking and mouldings with form sealer.

D. Special care shall be given to formwork, ties, bracing, etc. for any concrete surface to be left exposed to permanent view. Waves, bulges, form marks, staining, joint marks or irregularities will not be tolerated and shall be considered unacceptable.

3.02 CONSTRUCTION JOINTS

A. Should construction joints prove to be absolutely unavoidable, locate such joints within the middle third of spans or as detailed on the drawings. Make no additional construction joints under any circumstances without the written approval of the Architect.

B. Provide appropriate keys in all construction joints, whether horizontal or vertical.

3.03 MISCELLANEOUS

A. Construction forms shall be provided for any and all items of concrete work required for or in connection with the satisfactory completion of the project, whether each such item is specifically shown or referred to or not.

3.04 SLABS

A. Form all openings in concrete slabs as required for the vertical passage of ducts, pipes, conduits, etc..

3.05 REMOVAL OF FORMS

A. Do not remove forms until concrete is adequately hardened and set. Clamps or tie rods may be loosened 24 hours after concrete is placed; ties, except for a sufficient number to hold the forms in place, may be removed at that time.

B. Form removal shall be accomplished as a hand operation, with due care to avoid damage to any finished concrete work or any reinforcing passing through forms being removed.

C. Proper cold weather curing procedures shall be observed if concrete forms are removed when the temperature is below 40 degrees F. Refer to recommendations that are set forth in "Recommended Practice for Cold Weather Concreting" (ACI 306).

3.06 CLEANING

A. Upon completion of work of this section, remove related debris from job site.

ROCIP Project: Withhold insurance cost. Please refer to sections 00425 & 00810 for information.

END OF SECTION 03 10 00

ROCIP Project: Withhold insurance cost. Please refer to sections 00425 & 00810 for information.

SECTION 03 20 00 - CONCRETE REINFORCEMENT

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.01 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.02 SUMMARY

A. Includes furnishing all materials, equipment, transportation and facilities and performing all labor necessary for the following:
   1. Prepare shop drawings of reinforcing steel.
   2. Furnish and place reinforcing steel.
   3. Fabrication and installation of embedded metal assemblies.

B. Related Sections include the following:
   1. Division 01 "Quality Requirements."
   2. Division 03 "Concrete Formwork."
   3. Division 03 "Cast-in-Place Concrete."

1.03 SUBMITTALS

A. Shop Drawings: Submit shop and installation drawings of reinforcement and embedded metal assemblies for review by the Engineer. Reproduce the bar bending diagram, the beam, slab and joist notes and cast-in-place concrete notes that concern the proper placing of reinforcing and submit it with each set of shop drawings for field use. Use same bar marks on bar bending diagrams as used on the beam, and slab schedule. Use same beam, and wall marks as Contract Documents.

B. Mill Test Reports: Deliver certified copies, evidencing compliance with all requirements of these specifications to the Engineer with all deliveries of reinforcing steel.

C. Submit copies of laboratory inspection reports as follows:
   Steel Supplier - 1 Copy
   General Contractor - 1 Copy
   Owner - 1 Copy
   Architect - 1 Copy
   Structural Engineer - 1 Copy

1.04 LABORATORY TESTING AND INSPECTION

A. Inspect welding of deformed bar anchors at the beginning of each period of production for size, length and quality. Re-inspect corrected welds.

B. Reinforcing: inspect all reinforcing steel prior to placement of concrete for compliance with the Contract Documents and the approved shop drawings. All instances of noncompliance shall be immediately brought to the attention of the Contractor. If uncorrected by the contractor, they shall be listed in the report.
   1. Observe and report the following: number and size of bars; bending; splicing; clearance to forms; clearance between bars; rust, form oil or other contamination; fabrication and installation of embedded metal assemblies, including visual inspection of all welds.

C. Inspector shall have a minimum of three years experience inspecting reinforcing steel in projects of similar size.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.01 MATERIALS

A. Reinforcing: All of domestic manufacturers.
   1. Bars: New deformed billet steel, ASTM A-615, grade 60.
   2. Reinforcing bars to be welded: ASTM A706; Bars shall have a carbon content not exceeding 0.30% and a manganese content not exceeding 0.60%. Provide certified copies of the ladle analysis for each lot of bars to be welded.
   3. Welded Wire Fabric: Not Used
   4. Epoxy coated reinforcing bars: ASTM A775.

B. Fiber reinforcing: Not Used

C. Concrete accessories including bar supports, chairs, spacers, etc.: Cold-drawn wire and fabricated in accordance with the requirements of Chapter Seven of the ACI Standard 315 with heights as required.

D. Bar supports for concrete resting on earth: Precast concrete briquettes having tie wires embedded therein, or individual high chairs No. HCP with welded plates on bottom as manufactured by Hohmann & Barnard, Inc. Provide bar supports, hot-dipped galvanized after fabrication, where concrete will be exposed including ceilings of flat slabs.

2.02 METAL ANCHORAGE & CONFINEMENT ASSEMBLIES

A. Steel Shapes and Plates and Rods: Conform to ASTM A572 Grade 50.

B. Welded Deformed Bar Anchors: Welded by full-fusion process; "Nelson" Anchors Type D2L or approved equal.

C. Headed Stud Anchors: Headed Studs welded by full fusion process as furnished by Nelson Stud Welding Company or approved equal.

D. Bolts: Conform to ASTM F1554 with regular hexagon nuts and carbon steel washers.

E. Straps: Conform to ASTM A245 or A284.

F. Welding Electrodes: ASTM Designation A233, Series E70 - AWS 5.5.

G. Dowels 5/8” smooth x 2’-0” long with sleeves, supports and end caps.

2.03 FABRICATION

A. Fabricate reinforcing steel in compliance with the CRSI "Manual of Standard Practice".

B. All bar splices shall be a minimum of Class “A” lap unless specified otherwise on drawings.

C. Shop-fabricate reinforcing bars to conform to the required shapes and dimensions, with fabrication tolerances complying with ACI 315. In case of fabricating errors, do not re-bend or straighten reinforcement in a manner that will injure or weaken the material.

D. Deliver all reinforcement to the project site bundled, tagged and marked. Use metal tags indicating bar size, lengths, and other information corresponding to markings shown on placement diagrams.

E. Reinforcing with any of the following defects will not be permitted in the work: Bar lengths, depths, and bends exceeding the specified fabrication tolerances, bends or kinks not indicated on drawings or final shop drawings, bars with reduced cross-section due to excessive rusting or other cause.

2.04 COATING

A. Rust inhibitor for field application to metal accessories shall be Hi-Build Epoxoline manufactured by the TNEMEC Co., Kansas City, Missouri or approved equal.

B. Hot dip galvanizing shall conform to ASTM A123.

C. Cold Galvanizing Compound for field repair of galvanizing shall be “ZRC Cold Galvanizing Compound” by ZRC Chemical Products Company, Quincy, Massachusetts, or approved equal.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.01 MATERIAL STORAGE

A. Stack reinforcing steel in tiers. Exercise care to maintain all reinforcement free of dirt, mud, paint, rust, etc.

3.02 GENERAL

A. Place reinforcing steel of the sizes, shapes, lengths, spacing and other dimensions where shown on the drawings. Details of reinforcing shall conform to the ACI Building Code Requirements for Structural Concrete (ACI 318-99).

3.03 MARKING

A. Mark bars plainly. Limit bundles to 1 size and 1 length and tag each bundle with metal tags.

3.04 CLEANING

A. Clean reinforcement thoroughly of rust, mill scale, dirt, oil or other coatings which might tend to reduce the bonding to the concrete.

3.05 BENDING

A. Bend bars cold. Heating of reinforcement, or handling by makeshift methods, will not be permitted and bars having kinks or bends not required will be rejected.

3.06 PLACING

A. Comply with the specified codes and standards, and the Concrete Reinforcing Steel Institute recommended practice for "Placing Reinforcing Bars", for details and methods of reinforcement placement and supports, and as herein specified.

B. Place reinforcement accurately, securely saddle tie at every other intersection with No. 18 gauge black annealed wire, and rigidly hold in place during the placing of the concrete by means of metal chairs or spacers.

C. Hold bars in position and to proper clearance of concrete surface by spacers, chairs, or other necessary supports with the following tolerances:
   1. Top bars in slabs and beams:

a. Members 8" deep or less: ± 3/8"
b. Members more than 8" but not over 2' deep: ± 1/2"
c. Members more than 2': ± 3/4"

2. Lengthwise of members: ± 2"
3. Concrete cover to formed surfaces: ± 1/4"
4. Minimum spacing between bars: ± 1/4"

3.07 CONCRETE PROTECTION

A. Minimum protection for reinforcing steel shall be as follows:
   1. Grade beams and exterior face of walls and columns exposed to the weather or in contact with the ground: 2".
   2. Reinforcing in structural elements deposited against soil: 3".
   3. Beam formed with fiberboard void boxes: 2".
   4. Slabs: 1".

3.08 EMBEDDED METAL ASSEMBLIES

A. Fabricate and assemble structural steel items in the shop. Shearing, flame cutting, and chipping shall be done carefully and accurately. Holes shall be cut, drilled, or punched at right angles to the surface of the metal and shall not be made or enlarged by burning. Welded construction shall conform to the AISC Specifications for the Design, Fabrication and Erection of Structural Steel for Buildings and AWS D1.1. Welding shall be done by AWS certified welders.

B. Welding of deformed bar anchors and headed stud anchors shall be done by full-fusion process equal to that of Nelson Stud Welding Company.

END OF SECTION 03 20 00

ROCIP Project: Withhold insurance cost. Please refer to sections 00425 & 00810 for information.

SECTION 03 30 00 – CAST-IN-PLACE CONCRETE

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. This Section specifies cast-in place concrete, including formwork, reinforcement, concrete materials, mixture design, placement procedures, and finishes, for the following:
   1. Foundation grade beams, pilasters and footings.
   2. Slabs-on-grade.

B. WORK INCLUDED

   1. Design, fabrication, erection, and stripping of formwork for cast-in-place concrete including shoring, falsework, bracing, proprietary forming systems, prefabricated forms, void forms, bulkheads, keys, blockouts, sleeves, pockets, and accessories. Erection shall include installation in formwork of items furnished by other trades.
   2. Furnish all labor and materials required to fabricate, deliver and install reinforcement and embedded metal assemblies for cast-in-place concrete, including steel bars, welded steel wire fabric, ties and supports.
   3. Furnish all labor and materials required to perform the following:
      a. Cast-in-place concrete
      b. Concrete mix designs

C. Related Sections include the following:

   1. Division 3 Section “Concrete Floor Finishing”
   2. Division 3 Section “Special Concrete Floor Finishes”
   3. Division 7 Section “Vapor Barrier Membrane”
   4. Division 32 Section “Concrete Paving” for concrete pavement and walks.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. Cementitious Materials: Portland cement alone or in combination with one or more of the following: blended hydraulic cement, fly ash and other pozzolans, ground granulated blast-furnace slag, and silica fume; subject to compliance with requirements.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.

B. Design Mixtures: For each concrete mixture submit proposed mix designs in accordance with ACI 318, chapter 5. Each proposed mix design shall be accompanied by a record of past performance.

1. Submit mix designs on forms supplied at the end of this Section.
2. Submit alternate design mixtures when characteristics of materials, Project conditions, weather, test results, or other circumstances warrant adjustments.
3. Indicate amounts of mixing water to be withheld for later addition at Project site.

C. Steel Reinforcement Shop Drawings: Placing drawings that detail fabrication, bending, and placement. Include bar sizes, lengths, material, grade, bar schedules, stirrup spacing, bent bar diagrams, bar arrangement, splices and laps, mechanical connections, tie spacing, hoop spacing, and supports for concrete reinforcement.

1. Do not reproduce the structural drawings for use as shop drawings.
2. Embedded metal assemblies: Submit shop drawings for fabrication and placement. Use standard AWS welding symbols.

D. Steel Reinforcement Submittals for Information: Mill test certificates of supplied concrete reinforcing, indicating physical and chemical analysis.

E. Welding certificates.

F. Qualification Data: For Installer, testing agency.

G. Material Test Reports: For the following, from a qualified testing agency, indicating compliance with requirements:

1. Aggregates. Include service record data indicating absence of deleterious expansion of concrete due to alkali aggregate reactivity.

H. Material Certificates: For each of the following, signed by manufacturers:

1. Cementitious materials
2. Admixtures
3. Form materials and form-release agents
4. Steel reinforcement and accessories
5. Waterstops
6. Curing compounds
7. Floor and slab treatments
8. Bonding agents
9. Adhesives
10. Vapor retarders

11. Semirigid joint filler
12. Joint-filler strips
13. Repair materials

I. Submit manufacturer's certification of maximum chloride ion content in admixtures.

J. Fly ash: Submit certification attesting to carbon content and compliance with ASTM C618.

K. Construction Joint Layout: Submit a diagram of proposed construction joint locations for horizontal framing that exceed the limits of a single placement as stated in the structural notes, other than those indicated on the Drawings.

L. Floor surface flatness and levelness measurements to determine compliance with specified tolerances.

M. Field quality-control test and inspection reports.

N. Minutes of preinstallation conference.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Manufacturer Qualifications: A firm experienced in manufacturing ready-mixed concrete products and that complies with ASTM C 94 requirements for production facilities and equipment.

1. Manufacturer certified according to NRMCA's "Certification of Ready Mixed Concrete Production Facilities."

B. Testing Agency Qualifications: An independent agency, acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, qualified according to ASTM C 1077 and ASTM E 329 for testing indicated.

1. Personnel conducting field tests shall be qualified as ACI Concrete Field Testing Technician, Grade 1, according to ACI CP-01 or an equivalent certification program.
2. Personnel performing laboratory tests shall be ACI-certified Concrete Strength Testing Technician and Concrete Laboratory Testing Technician - Grade I. Testing Agency laboratory supervisor shall be an ACI-certified Concrete Laboratory Testing Technician - Grade II.

C. Source Limitations: Obtain each type or class of cementitious material of the same brand from the same manufacturer's plant, obtain aggregate from one source, and obtain admixtures through one source from a single manufacturer.

D. Welding: Qualify procedures and personnel according to AWS D1.4, "Structural Welding Code--Reinforcing Steel."

E. ACI Publications: Comply with the following unless modified by requirements in the Contract Documents:

1. ACI 301, "Specification for Structural Concrete," Sections 1 through 5.
2. ACI 117, "Specifications for Tolerances for Concrete Construction and Materials."

F. Concrete Testing Service: Owner may engage a qualified independent testing agency to perform material evaluation tests.

G. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site to comply with requirements in Division 1 Section "Project Management and Coordination."

1. Before submitting design mixtures, review concrete design mixture and examine procedures for ensuring quality of concrete materials. Require representatives of each entity directly concerned with cast-in-place concrete to attend, including the following:

   a. Contractor's superintendent.
   b. Independent testing agency responsible for concrete design mixtures.
   c. Ready-mix concrete manufacturer.
   d. Concrete subcontractor.
   e. Specialty concrete finish subcontractor.

2. Review special inspection and testing and inspecting agency procedures for field quality control, concrete finishes and finishing, cold- and hot-weather concreting procedures, curing procedures, construction contraction and isolation joints, and joint-filler strips, semirigid joint fillers, forms and form removal limitations, shoring procedures, vapor-retarder installation, anchor rod and anchorage device installation tolerances, steel reinforcement installation, floor and slab flatness and levelness measurement, concrete repair procedures, and concrete protection.

1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Steel Reinforcement: Deliver, store, and handle steel reinforcement to prevent bending and damage.

B. Waterstops: Store waterstops under cover to protect from moisture, sunlight, dirt, oil, and other contaminants.

C. Store all proprietary materials in accordance with manufacturer’s recommendations.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 FORM-FACING MATERIALS

A. Smooth-Formed Finished Concrete: Form-facing panels that will provide continuous, true, and smooth concrete surfaces. Furnish in largest practicable sizes to minimize number of joints.

1. Plywood, metal, or other approved panel materials.
2. Exterior-grade plywood panels, suitable for concrete forms, complying with DOC PS 1, and as follows:

   a. High-density overlay, Class 1 or better.
   b. Medium-density overlay, Class 1 or better; mill-release agent treated and edge sealed.
   c. Structural 1, B-B or better; mill oiled and edge sealed.
   d. B-B (Concrete Form), Class 1 or better; mill oiled and edge sealed.

3. Steel Forms

B. Rough-Formed Finished Concrete: Plywood, lumber, metal, or another approved material. Provide lumber dressed on at least two edges and one side for tight fit.

C. Chamfer Strips: Wood, metal, PVC, or rubber strips, 3/4 by 3/4 inch, minimum.

D. Rustication Strips: Wood, metal, PVC, or rubber strips, kerfed for ease of form removal.

E. Form-Release Agent: Commercially formulated form-release agent that will not bond with, stain, or adversely affect concrete surfaces and will not impair subsequent treatments of concrete surfaces.

1. Formulate form-release agent with rust inhibitor for steel form-facing materials.

F. Form Ties: Factory-fabricated, removable or snap-off metal or glass-fiber-reinforced plastic form ties designed to resist lateral pressure of fresh concrete on forms and to prevent spalling of concrete on removal.

1. Furnish units that will leave no corrodible metal closer than 1 inch to the plane of exposed concrete surface.

2.2 STEEL REINFORCEMENT

A. Reinforcing Bars: ASTM A 615, Grade 60, deformed.

B. Low-Alloy-Steel Reinforcing Bars: ASTM A 706, deformed.

C. Plain-Steel Welded Wire Reinforcement: ASTM A 185, plain, fabricated from as-drawn steel wire into flat sheets.

2.3 REINFORCEMENT ACCESSORIES

A. Joint Dowel Bars: ASTM A 615, Grade 60, plain-steel bars, cut bars true to length with ends square and free of burrs.

B. Bar Supports: Bolsters, chairs, spacers, and other devices for spacing, supporting, and fastening reinforcing bars and welded wire reinforcement in place. Manufacture bar supports from steel wire, plastic, or precast concrete according to CRSI's "Manual of Standard Practice," of greater compressive strength than concrete and as follows:

1. For concrete surfaces exposed to view where legs of wire bar supports contact forms, use CRSI Class 1 plastic-protected steel wire or CRSI Class 2 stainless-steel bar supports.
2. For slabs on grade and slabs on void forms, provide sand plates, horizontal runners, or precast concrete blocks on bottom where base material will not support chair legs or where vapor barrier has been specified.

2.4 DOWEL BAR ANCHORS

A. Provide dowel bar anchors and threaded dowels designed to develop, in tension and compression, 125 percent of the minimum ASTM specified yield strength of the dowel bars. Unless otherwise indicated, anchors shall be furnished with ACI standard 90 degree hooks. Dowels shall be furnished by the anchor supplier. The following dowel splicing systems are acceptable:

1. Richmond Screw Anchor "Dowel Bar Splicer"
2. Erico "Lenton Form Saver"
3. Dayton Barsplice "Grip-Twist"

2.5 EMBEDDED METAL ASSEMBLIES

A. Steel Shapes and Plates: ASTM A36

B. Headed Studs: Heads welded by full-fusion process, as furnished by TRW Nelson Stud Welding Division.

C. Welded Deformed Bar Anchors: Welded by full fusion process, as furnished by TRW Nelson Stud Welding Division.

D. Reinforcing Bars to be Welded: ASTM A706.

2.6 CONCRETE MATERIALS

A. Cementitious Material: Use the following cementitious materials, of the same type, brand, and source, throughout Project:

1. Portland Cement: ASTM C 150, Type I/II, gray. Supplement with the following:

   a. Fly Ash: ASTM C 618, Class F or C.

B. Normal-Weight Aggregates: ASTM C 33, coarse aggregate or better, graded. Provide aggregates from a single source.

1. Maximum Coarse-Aggregate Size: As indicated on drawings.
2. Fine Aggregate: Free of materials with deleterious reactivity to alkali in cement.

C. Broadcast Aggregate

1. 3/8” pea gravel at areas to receive finish type F1 (RE: Drawings and Division 03 Section “ Special Concrete Floor Finishes”)

2. Aggregate: Well-graded, washed gravel and coarse sand as required to achieve intended aesthetic effect.
   a. Provide special size(s) and/or color(s) of aggregate when required.
   b. Proportion fine and coarse aggregate per manufacturer's recommendations for size of aggregate to be exposed and to achieve intended aesthetic effect.

3. Exposed Aggregate: Expose hard, sound, durable, and free of all deleterious materials and staining qualities. Provide aggregates fro, a single source.
   a. Store selct seeding aggregates off the ground and protected from moisture.
   b. Aggregate color: To be selected by Architect.
   c. Approved Suppliers:
   d. The Ground Up, Houston, Texas – Peal Gravel
   e. San Jacinto Stone, Houston, Texas – Pea Gravel
   f. Water: Potable

D. Water: ASTM C 94/C 94M and potable.

2.7 ADMIXTURES

A. Air-Entraining Admixture: ASTM C 260.

B. Chemical Admixtures: Provide admixtures certified by manufacturer to be compatible with other admixtures and that will not contribute water-soluble chloride ions exceeding those permitted in hardened concrete. Do not use calcium chloride or admixtures containing calcium chloride.

1. Water-Reducing Admixture: ASTM C 494/C 494M, Type A.
2. Retarding Admixture: ASTM C 494/C 494M, Type B.
3. Water-Reducing and Retarding Admixture: ASTM C 494/C 494M, Type D.
4. High-Range, Water-Reducing Admixture: ASTM C 494/C 494M, Type F.
5. High-Range, Water-Reducing and Retarding Admixture: ASTM C 494/C 494M, Type G.
6. Plasticizing and Retarding Admixture: ASTM C 1017/C 1017M, Type II.

2.8 WATERSTOPS

A. Waterstops: At all construction joints below grade.

B. Self-Expanding Butyl Strip Waterstops: Manufactured rectangular or trapezoidal strip, butyl rubber with sodium bentonite or other hydrophilic polymers, for adhesive bonding to concrete, 3/4 by 1 inch.

1. Products:

a. Carlise Coatings & Waterproofing, Inc.; MiraSTOP.
b. CETCO; Volclay Waterstop-RX.
c. Concrete Sealants Inc.; Conseal CS-231.
d. Greenstreak; Swellstop.
e. Henry Company, Sealants Division; Hydro-Flex.
f. JP Specialties, Inc.; Earthshield Type 20.

2.9 VAPOR RETARDERS

A. Plastic Vapor Retarder: ASTM E 1745, Class A.

1. Membrane shall have the following properties:

a. Minimum 15 mils thickness.
b. Permeance Rating: ASTM E96, 0.01 Perms [grains/(ft^2 * hr *- in Hg)] or lower as tested after mandatory conditioning (ASTM E 154 sections 8, 11, 12, 13)
c. Installation shall be in accordance with ASTM E1643 and manufacturer's instructions.

2. Products:

a. Carlisle Coatings & Waterproofing, Inc.: Blackline 400.
b. Epro; Ecoshield-E 15 mil.
c. Inteplast Group; Barrier Bac VBC-350 Composite Vapor Retarder
d. Reef Industries; Vaporguard.
e. Stego Wrap 15 mil, by Stego.

f. W.R. Meadows, Inc.: Premolded Membrane with Plasmatic Core (PMPC).

3. Accessories

a. Manufacturer's recommended standard adhesive or pressure sensitive tape for general use.

2.10 CURING MATERIALS

A. Evaporation Retarder: Waterborne, monomolecular film forming, manufactured for application to fresh concrete.

1. Products:

a. Axim Concrete Technologies; CATEXOL Cimfilm.
b. BASF Construction Chemicals – Building Systems; Confilm.
c. ChemMasters; Spray-Film.
d. Conspec by Dayton Superior; Aquafilm.
e. Dayton Superior Corporation; Sure Film (J-74).
f. Edoco by Dayton Superior; BurkeFilm.
g. Euclid Chemical Company (The), an RPM company; Eucobar.
h. Kaufman Products, Inc.; Vapor Aid.
i. Lambert Corporation; LAMBCO Skin.
j. L&M Construction Chemicals, Inc.; E-Con.
k. Meadows, W. R., Inc.; EVAPRE.
l. Metalcrete Industries; Waterhold.
m. Nox-Crete Products Group; Monofilm.
n. Sika Corporation, Inc.; SikaFilm.
o. SpecChem, LLC; Spec Film.
p. Symons by Dayton Superior; Finishing Aid.
q. TK Products, Division of Sierra Corporation; TK-2120 TRI-FILM.
r. Unitex; Pro-Film.
s. Vexcon Chemicals, Inc.; Certi-Vex Envio Set.

B. Absorptive Cover: AASHTO M 182, Class 2, burlap cloth made from jute or kenaf, weighing approximately 9 oz./sq. yd. when dry.

C. Moisture-Retaining Cover: ASTM C 171, polyethylene film or white burlap-polyethylene sheet.

D. Water: Potable.

E. Clear, Waterborne, Membrane-Forming Curing Compound: ASTM C 309, Type 1, Class B, dissipating.

1. Products:

    a. Anti-Hydro International, Inc.; AH Curing Compound #2 DR WB.
    b. BASF Construction Chemicals – Building Systems; Kure 200.
    c. ChemMasters; Safe-Cure Clear.
    d. Conspec by Dayton Superior; W.B. Resin Cure.
    e. Dayton Superior Corporation; Day Chem Rez Cure (J-11-W).
    f. Edoco by Dayton Superior; Res X Cure WB.
    g. Euclid Chemical Company (The), an RPM company; Kurez W VOX; TAMMSCURE WB 30C.
    h. Kaufman Products, Inc.; Thinfilm 420.
    i. Lambert Corporation; Aqua Kure-Clear.
    j. L&M Construction Chemicals, Inc.; L&M Cure R.
    k. Meadows, W. R., Inc.; 1100 Clear.
    l. Nox-Crete Products Group; Resin Cure E.
    m. Right Pointe; Clear Water Resin.
    n. SpecChem, LLC; Spec Rez Clear.
    o. Symons by Dayton Superior; Resi-Chem Clear.
    p. TK Products, Division of Sierra Corporation; TK-2519 DC WB.
    q. Vexcon Chemicals, Inc.; Certi-Vex Enviocure 100.

F. Clear, Waterborne, Membrane-Forming Curing Compound: ASTM C 309, Type 1, Class B, 18 to 25 percent solids, nondissipating, certified by curing compound manufacturer to not interfere with bonding of floor covering.

1. Products:

    a. BASF Construction Chemicals – Building Systems; Kure-N-Seal W.
    b. ChemMasters; Safe-Cure Clear.
    c. Conspec by Dayton Superior; High Seal.
    d. Dayton Superior Corporation; Safe Cure and Seal (J-19).
    e. Edoco by Dayton Superior; Spartan Cote WB II 20 Percent.
    f. Euclid Chemical Company (The), an RPM Company; Diamond Clear VOX; Clearseal WB STD.
    g. Kaufman Products, Inc.; SureCure Emulsion.
    h. Lambert Corporation; Glazecote Sealer-20.
    i. L&M Construction Chemicals, Inc.; Dress & Seal WB.
    j. Meadows, W. R., Inc.; Vocomp-20.
    k. Metalcrete Industries; Metcure 0800.
    l. Nox-Crete Products Group; Cure & Seal 200E.
    m. Symons by Dayton Superior; Cure & Seal 18 Percent E.
    n. Vexcon Chemicals, Inc.; Starseal 0800.

2.11 RELATED MATERIALS

A. Expansion- and Isolation-Joint-Filler Strips: ASTM D 1751, asphalt-saturated cellulosic fiber.

B. Semirigid Joint Filler: Two-component, semirigid, 100 percent solids, per ASTM D 2240.

C. Bonding Agent: ASTM C 1059, Type II, non-redispersible, acrylic emulsion or styrene butadiene.

D. Bonding Agent: Two component, moisture insensitive, extended pot life epoxy bonding agent equal to "Sikadur 32 Hi-Mod LPL", by the Sika Corporation.

E. Epoxy Bonding Adhesive: ASTM C 881, two-component epoxy resin, capable of humid curing and bonding to damp surfaces, of class suitable for application temperature and of grade to suit requirements, and as follows:

1. Types IV and V, load bearing, for bonding hardened or freshly mixed concrete to hardened concrete.

F. Sleeves and Blockouts: Formed with galvanized metal, galvanized pipe, polyvinyl chloride pipe, fiber tubes, or wood.

G. Nails, Spikes, Lag Bolts, Through Bolts, Anchorages: Sized as required; of strength and character to maintain formwork in place while placing concrete.

2.12 REPAIR MATERIALS

A. Repair Underlayment: Pre-packaged, cement-based, polymer-modified, self-leveling product that can be applied in thicknesses from 1/8 inch and that can be feathered at edges to match adjacent floor elevations.

1. Cement Binder: ASTM C 150, portland cement or hydraulic or blended hydraulic cement as defined in ASTM C 219.
2. Primer: Product of underlayment manufacturer recommended for substrate, conditions, and application.
3. Aggregate: Well-graded, washed gravel, 1/8 to 1/4 inch or coarse sand as recommended by underlayment manufacturer.
4. Compressive Strength: Not less than 5000 psi at 28 days when tested according to ASTM C 109/C 109M.

2.13 CONCRETE MIXTURES, GENERAL

A. Prepare design mixtures for each type and strength of concrete, proportioned on the basis of laboratory trial mixture or field test data, or both, according to ACI 301.

1. Use a qualified independent testing agency for preparing and reporting proposed mixture designs based on laboratory trial mixtures.

2. The required average strength above specified strength shall be based on the procedure given in the "MIX DESIGN SUBMITTAL FORM" appended to the end of this Specification.

3. Required average strength above specified strength:

a. Based on a record of past performance: Determination of required average strength above specified strength shall be based on the standard deviation record of the results of at least 30 consecutive strength tests in accordance with ACI 318, Chapter 5.3 by the larger amount defined by formulas 5-1 and 5-2.

b. Based on laboratory trial mixtures: Proportions shall be selected on the basis of laboratory trial batches prepared in accordance with ACI 318, Chapter 5.3.3.2 to produce an average strength greater than the specified strength f'c by the amount defined in table 5.3.2.2.

1) Proportions of ingredients for concrete mixes shall be determined by an independent testing laboratory or qualified concrete supplier.

2) For each proposed mixture, at least three compressive test cylinders shall be made and tested for strength at the specified age. Additional cylinders may be made for testing for information at earlier ages.

B. Cementitious Materials: Limit percentage, by weight, of cementitious materials other than portland cement in concrete as follows:

1. Fly Ash: 20 percent.

C. Limit water-soluble, chloride-ion content in hardened concrete to 0.06 percent by weight of cement.

D. Admixtures: Use admixtures according to manufacturer's written instructions.

1. Do not use admixtures which have not been incorporated and tested in accepted mixes.
2. Use water-reducing, high-range water-reducing or plasticizing admixture in concrete, as required, for placement and workability.
3. Use water-reducing and retarding admixture when required by high temperatures, low humidity, or other adverse placement conditions.

4. Use water-reducing admixture in pumped concrete, concrete for heavy-use industrial slabs and parking structure slabs, concrete required to be watertight, and concrete with a water-cementitious materials ratio below 0.50.

2.14 CONCRETE MIXTURES FOR BUILDING ELEMENTS

A. Proportion normal-weight concrete mixture as indicated on drawings.

2.15 FABRICATING REINFORCEMENT

A. Fabricate steel reinforcement according to CRSI's "Manual of Standard Practice."

2.16 FABRICATION OF EMBEDDED METAL ASSEMBLIES

A. Fabricate metal assemblies in the shop. Holes shall be made by drilling or punching. Holes shall not be made by or enlarged by burning. Welding shall be in accordance with AWS D1.1.

B. Welding of deformed bar anchors and headed stud anchors shall be done by full fusion process equal to that of TRW Nelson Stud Welding Division. A minimum of two headed studs shall be tested at the start of each production period for proper quality control. The studs shall be capable of being bent 45 degrees without failure.

C. Welding of reinforcement shall be done in accordance with AWS D1.4, using the recommended preheat temperature and electrode for the type of reinforcement being welded. Bars larger than no. 9 shall not be welded. Welding shall be subject to the observance and testing of the Testing Laboratory.

D. Metal assemblies exposed to earth, weather or moisture shall be hot dip galvanized. All other metal assemblies shall be either hot dip galvanized or painted with an epoxy paint. Repair galvanizing after welding with a Cold Galvanizing compound installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions. Repair painted assemblies after welding with same type of paint.

2.17 CONCRETE MIXING

A. Ready-Mixed Concrete: Measure, batch, mix, and deliver concrete according to ASTM C 94, and furnish batch ticket information.

1. When air temperature is between 85 and 95 deg F, reduce mixing and delivery time from 1-1/2 hours to 75 minutes; when air temperature is above 95 deg F, reduce mixing and delivery time to 60 minutes.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 FORMWORK

A. Design, erect, shore, brace, and maintain formwork, according to ACI 301, to support vertical, lateral, static, and dynamic loads, and construction loads that might be applied, until structure can support such loads.

B. Construct formwork so concrete members and structures are of size, shape, alignment, elevation, and position indicated, within tolerance limits of ACI 117.

1. Vertical alignment:

   a. Lines, surfaces and arises less than 100 feet in height - 1 inch.
   b. Outside corner of exposed corner columns and control joints in concrete exposed to view less than 100 feet in height - 1/2 inch.

2. Lateral alignment:

   a. Members - 1 inch.
   b. Centerline of openings 12 inches or smaller and edge location of larger openings in slabs - 1/2 inch.
   c. Sawcuts, joints, and weakened plane embedments in slabs - 3/4 inch.

3. Level alignment:

   a. Elevation of slabs-on-grade - 3/4 inch.
   b. Elevation of top surfaces of formed slabs before removal of shores - 3/4 inch.
   c. Elevation of formed surfaces before removal of shores - 3/4 inch.
   d. Lintels, sills, parapets, horizontal grooves, and other lines exposed to view - 1/2 inch.

4. Cross-sectional dimensions: Overall dimensions of beams, joists, and columns and thickness of walls and slabs.

   a. 12 inch dimension or less - plus 3/8 inch to minus 1/4 inch.
   b. Greater than 12 inch to 3 foot dimension - plus 1/2 inch to minus 3/8 inch.
   c. Greater than 3 foot dimension - plus 1 inch to minus 3/4 inch.

C. Limit concrete surface irregularities, designated by ACI 347R as abrupt or gradual, as follows:
   1. Class B, 1/4 inch for rough-formed finished surfaces.

D. Construct forms tight enough to prevent loss of concrete mortar.

E. Fabricate forms for easy removal without hammering or prying against concrete surfaces. Provide crush or wrecking plates where stripping may damage cast concrete surfaces. Provide top forms for inclined surfaces steeper than 1.5 horizontal to 1 vertical.

1. Install keyways, reglets, recesses, and the like, for easy removal.
2. Do not use rust-stained steel form-facing material.

F. Set edge forms, bulkheads, and intermediate screed strips for slabs to achieve required elevations and slopes in finished concrete surfaces. Provide and secure units to support screed strips; use strike-off templates or compacting-type screeds.

G. Foundation Elements: The sides of all below grade portions of beams, pier caps, walls, and columns shall be formed straight and to the lines and grades specified. Foundation elements shall not be earth formed unless specifically indicated on the Drawings.

H. Provide temporary openings for cleanouts and inspection ports where interior area of formwork is inaccessible. Close openings with panels tightly fitted to forms and securely braced to prevent loss of concrete mortar. Locate temporary openings in forms at inconspicuous locations.

I. Chamfer exterior corners and edges of permanently exposed concrete.

J. Form openings, chases, offsets, sinkages, keyways, reglets, blocking, screeds, and bulkheads required in the Work. Determine sizes and locations from trades providing such items.

K. Clean forms and adjacent surfaces to receive concrete. Remove chips, wood, sawdust, dirt, and other debris just before placing concrete.

L. Retighten forms and bracing before placing concrete, as required, to prevent mortar leaks and maintain proper alignment.

M. Coat contact surfaces of forms with form-release agent, according to manufacturer's written instructions, before placing reinforcement, anchoring devices, and embedded items.

1. Do not apply form release agent where concrete surfaces are scheduled to receive subsequent finishes which may be affected by agent. Soak contact surfaces of untreated forms with clean water. Keep surfaces wet prior to placing concrete.

3.2 EMBEDDED ITEMS

A. Place and secure anchorage devices and other embedded items required for adjoining work that is attached to or supported by cast-in-place concrete. Use setting drawings, templates, diagrams, instructions, and directions furnished with items to be embedded.

1. Install anchor rods, accurately located, to elevations required and complying with tolerances in Section 7.5 of AISC's "Code of Standard Practice for Steel Buildings and Bridges."

    a. Spacing within a bolt group: 1/8"
    b. Location of bolt group (center): 1/2"
    c. Rotation of bolt group: 5 degrees
    d. Angle off vertical: 5 degrees
    e. Bolt projection: ± 3/8"

3.3 REMOVING AND REUSING FORMS

A. General: Formwork for sides of beams, walls, columns, and similar parts of the Work that does not support weight of concrete may be removed after cumulatively curing at not less than 50 deg F for 24 hours after placing concrete, if concrete is hard enough to not be damaged by form-removal operations and curing and protection operations are maintained.

1. Leave formwork for beam soffits, joists, slabs, and other structural elements that supports weight of concrete in place until concrete has achieved at least 70 percent of its 28-day design compressive strength.

B. Clean and repair surfaces of forms to be reused in the Work. Split, frayed, delaminated, or otherwise damaged form-facing material will not be acceptable for exposed surfaces. Apply new form-release agent.

C. When forms are reused, clean surfaces, remove fins and laitance, and tighten to close joints. Align and secure joints to avoid offsets. Do not use patched forms for exposed concrete surfaces unless approved by Architect.

3.4 VAPOR RETARDERS

A. Plastic Vapor Retarders: Place, protect, and repair vapor retarders according to ASTM E 1643 and manufacturer's written instructions.

B. Lap joints 6 inches and seal with tape as noted below.

1. General sealing and at slabs on grade: Use manufacturer’s standard adhesive or pressure sensitive tape for sealing membrane at seams, pipe penetrations, tears, etc.

3.5 STEEL REINFORCEMENT

A. General: Comply with CRSI's "Manual of Standard Practice" for placing reinforcement.

1. Do not cut or puncture vapor retarder. Repair damage and reseal vapor retarder before placing concrete.

B. Clean reinforcement of loose rust and mill scale, earth, ice, and other foreign materials that would reduce bond to concrete.

C. Accurately position, support, and secure reinforcement against displacement. Locate and support reinforcement with bar supports to maintain minimum concrete cover. Do not tack weld crossing reinforcing bars.

1. Weld reinforcing bars according to AWS D1.4, where indicated. Only steel conforming to ASTM A706 may be welded.

D. Installation tolerances:

1. Top and bottom bars in slabs, girders, beams and joists:

a. Members 8" deep or less: ±3/8"
b. Members more than 8" deep: ±1/2"

2. Concrete Cover to Formed or Finished Surfaces: ±3/8" for members 8" deep or less; ±1/2" for members over 8" deep, except that tolerance for cover shall not exceed 1/3 of the specified cover.

E. Concrete Cover: Refer to the Structural Notes.

F. Splices: Provide standard reinforcement splices by lapping and tying ends. Comply with ACI 318 for minimum lap of spliced bars where not specified on the documents. No. 14 and 18 bars shall not be lap spliced.

G. Field Welding of Embedded Metal Assemblies: All paint and galvanizing shall be removed in areas to receive field welds. All areas where paint or galvanizing has been removed shall be field repaired with the specified paint or cold galvanizing compound, respectively.

H. Set wire ties with ends directed into concrete, not toward exposed concrete surfaces.

I. Install welded wire reinforcement in longest practicable lengths on bar supports spaced to minimize sagging. Lap edges and ends of adjoining sheets at least one mesh spacing. Offset laps of adjoining sheet widths to prevent continuous laps in either direction. Lace overlaps with wire.

3.6 JOINTS

A. General: Construct joints true to line with faces perpendicular to surface plane of concrete.

B. Construction Joints: Install so strength and appearance of concrete are not impaired, at locations indicated or as approved by Architect.

1. Place joints perpendicular to main reinforcement. Continue reinforcement across construction joints, unless otherwise indicated. Do not continue reinforcement through sides of strip placements of floors and slabs.
2. Form keyed joints as indicated. Embed keys at least 1-1/2 inches into concrete.
3. Locate joints for beams, slabs, joists, and girders in the middle third of spans. Offset joints in girders a minimum distance of twice the beam width from a beam-girder intersection.
4. Use a bonding agent at locations where fresh concrete is placed against hardened or partially hardened concrete surfaces.
5. Use epoxy-bonding adhesive at locations where fresh concrete is placed against hardened or partially hardened concrete surfaces.

C. Contraction Joints in Slabs-on-Grade: Form weakened-plane contraction joints, sectioning concrete into areas as indicated. Construct contraction joints for a depth equal to at least one-fourth of concrete thickness as follows:

1. Grooved Joints: Form contraction joints after initial floating by grooving and finishing each edge of joint to a radius of 1/8 inch. Repeat grooving of contraction joints after applying surface finishes. Eliminate groover tool marks on concrete surfaces.
2. Sawed Joints: Form contraction joints with power saws equipped with shatterproof abrasive or diamond-rimmed blades. Cut 1/8-inch- wide joints into concrete when cutting action will not tear, abrade, or otherwise damage surface and before concrete develops random contraction cracks.

D. Isolation Joints in Slabs-on-Grade: After removing formwork, install joint-filler strips at slab junctions with vertical surfaces, such as column pedestals, foundation walls, grade beams, and other locations, as indicated.

1. Extend joint-filler strips full width and depth of joint, terminating flush with finished concrete surface, unless otherwise indicated.
2. Terminate full-width joint-filler strips not less than 1/2 inch or more than 1 inch below finished concrete surface where joint sealants, specified in Division 7 Section "Joint Sealants," are indicated.
3. Install joint-filler strips in lengths as long as practicable. Where more than one length is required, lace or clip sections together.

E. Doweled Joints: Install dowel bars and support assemblies at joints where indicated. Lubricate or asphalt coat one-half of dowel length to prevent concrete bonding to one side of joint.

3.7 WATERSTOPS

A. Flexible Waterstops: Install in construction joints and at other joints indicated to form a continuous diaphragm. Install in longest lengths practicable. Support and protect exposed waterstops during progress of the Work. Field fabricate joints in waterstops according to manufacturer's written instructions.

B. Self-Expanding Strip Waterstops: Install in construction joints and at other locations indicated, according to manufacturer's written instructions, adhesive bonding, mechanically fastening, and firmly pressing into place. Install in longest lengths practicable.

3.8 CONCRETE PLACEMENT

A. Before placing concrete, verify that installation of formwork, reinforcement, and embedded items is complete and that required inspections have been performed.

B. Do not add water to concrete during delivery, at Project site, or during placement unless approved by Architect.

   1. Water may be added to the concrete at the project site only if specifically withheld at the time of batching and specifically noted on the batch ticket.

C. Before test sampling and placing concrete, water may be added at Project site, subject to limitations of ACI 301, and only if specifically noted as withheld on the batch ticket.

   1. Do not add water to concrete after adding high-range water-reducing admixtures to mixture.
   2. Water content shall not exceed the maximum specified water/cement ratio for the mix.

D. Deposit concrete continuously in one layer or in horizontal layers of such thickness that no new concrete will be placed on concrete that has hardened enough to cause seams or planes of weakness. If a section cannot be placed continuously, provide construction joints as indicated. Deposit concrete to avoid segregation.

   1. Deposit concrete in horizontal layers of depth to not exceed formwork design pressures and in a manner to avoid inclined construction joints.
   2. Consolidate placed concrete with mechanical vibrating equipment according to ACI 301.
   3. Do not use vibrators to transport concrete inside forms. Insert and withdraw vibrators vertically at uniformly spaced locations to rapidly penetrate placed layer and at least 6 inches into preceding layer. Do not insert vibrators into lower layers of concrete that have begun to lose plasticity. At each insertion, limit duration of vibration to time necessary to consolidate concrete and complete embedment of

reinforcement and other embedded items without causing mixture constituents to segregate.

4. Do not permit concrete to drop freely any distance greater than 20'-0" for concrete containing a high range water reducing admixture (superplasticizer) or 5'-0" for other concrete. Provide chute or tremie to place concrete where longer drops are necessary. Do not place concrete into excavations with standing water. If place of deposit cannot be pumped dry, pour concrete through a tremie with its outlet near the bottom of the place of deposit.
5. Pump priming grout shall be discarded and not used in the structure.

E. Deposit and consolidate concrete for floors and slabs in a continuous operation, within limits of construction joints, until placement of a panel or section is complete.

1. Consolidate concrete during placement operations so concrete is thoroughly worked around reinforcement and other embedded items and into corners.
2. Maintain reinforcement in position on chairs during concrete placement.
3. Screed slab surfaces with a straightedge and strike off to correct elevations.
4. Slope surfaces uniformly to drains where required.
5. Begin initial floating using bull floats or darbies to form a uniform and open-textured surface plane, before excess bleedwater appears on the surface. Do not further disturb slab surfaces before starting finishing operations.

F. Cold-Weather Placement: Comply with ACI 306.1 and as follows. Protect concrete work from physical damage or reduced strength that could be caused by frost, freezing actions, or low temperatures.

1. When average high and low temperature is expected to fall below 40 deg F for three successive days, maintain delivered concrete mixture temperature within the temperature range required by ACI 301.
2. Do not use frozen materials or materials containing ice or snow. Do not place concrete on frozen subgrade or on subgrade containing frozen materials.
3. Do not use calcium chloride, salt, or other materials containing antifreeze agents or chemical accelerators unless otherwise specified and approved in mixture designs.

G. Hot-Weather Placement: Comply with ACI 305.1 and as follows:

1. Maintain concrete temperature below 95 deg F at time of placement. Chilled mixing water or chopped ice may be used to control temperature, provided water equivalent of ice is calculated to total amount of mixing water. Using liquid nitrogen to cool concrete is Contractor's option.
2. Fog-spray forms, steel reinforcement, and subgrade just before placing concrete. Keep subgrade uniformly moist without standing water, soft spots, or dry areas.

3.9 FINISHING FORMED SURFACES

A. Rough-Formed Finish: As-cast concrete texture imparted by form-facing material with tie holes and defects repaired and patched. Remove fins and other projections that exceed specified limits on formed-surface irregularities.

1. Apply to concrete surfaces not exposed to public view.

B. Related Unformed Surfaces: At tops of walls, horizontal offsets, and similar unformed surfaces adjacent to formed surfaces, strike off smooth and finish with a texture matching adjacent formed surfaces. Continue final surface treatment of formed surfaces uniformly across adjacent unformed surfaces, unless otherwise indicated.

3.10 MISCELLANEOUS CONCRETE ITEMS

A. Filling In: Fill in holes and openings left in concrete structures, unless otherwise indicated, after work of other trades is in place. Mix, place, and cure concrete, as specified, to blend with in-place construction. Provide other miscellaneous concrete filling indicated or required to complete the Work.

B. Curbs: Provide monolithic finish to interior curbs by stripping forms while concrete is still green and by steel-troweling surfaces to a hard, dense finish with corners, intersections, and terminations slightly rounded.

C. Equipment Bases and Foundations: Provide machine and equipment bases and foundations as shown on Drawings. Set anchor bolts for machines and equipment at correct elevations, complying with diagrams or templates from manufacturer furnishing machines and equipment.

1. Housekeeping pads: Concrete fill shall be normal weight concrete (3000 psi), reinforced with 4x4-W2.1xW2.1 welded wire mesh set at middepth of pad. Trowel concrete to a dense, smooth finish. Set anchor bolts for securing mechanical or electrical equipment during pouring of concrete fill.

3.11 INSTALLATION OF NON-SHRINK GROUT UNDER BASEPLATES

A. Grout under all bearing and baseplates. Comply with manufacturer's instructions. Do not dry pack.

B. Mixing: Use a mechanical mixer. Add only enough water to make grout placeable. Do not mix more grout than can be used in 20 minutes. Under no circumstances shall grout be retempered.

3.12 CONCRETE PROTECTING AND CURING

A. General: Protect freshly placed concrete from premature drying and excessive cold or hot temperatures. Comply with ACI 306.1 for cold-weather protection and ACI 305.1 for hot-weather protection during curing.

B. Evaporation Retarder: Apply evaporation retarder to unformed concrete surfaces if hot, dry, or windy conditions cause moisture loss approaching 0.2 lb/sq. ft. x h before and during finishing operations. Apply according to manufacturer's written instructions after placing, screeding, and bull floating or darbying concrete, but before float finishing.

C. Unformed Surfaces: Begin curing immediately after finishing concrete. Cure unformed surfaces, including floors and slabs, concrete floor toppings, and other surfaces.

D. Cure concrete according to ACI 308.1, by one or a combination of the following methods. For concrete scheduled to receive a Type F1 or Type F7 finish, curing shall be either Moisture Curing or Moisture-Retaining-Curing-Cover Curing :

1. Moisture Curing: Keep surfaces continuously moist for not less than seven days with the following materials:

    a. Water.
    b. Continuous water-fog spray.
    c. Absorptive cover, water saturated, and kept continuously wet. Cover concrete surfaces and edges with 12-inch lap over adjacent absorptive covers.

2. Moisture-Retaining-Cover Curing: Cover concrete surfaces with moisture-retaining cover for curing concrete, placed in widest practicable width, with sides and ends lapped at least 12 inches, and sealed by waterproof tape or adhesive. Cure for not less than seven days. Immediately repair any holes or tears during curing period using cover material and waterproof tape.

    a. Moisture cure or use moisture-retaining covers to cure concrete surfaces to receive floor coverings.
    b. Moisture cure or use moisture-retaining covers to cure concrete surfaces to receive penetrating liquid floor treatments.
    c. Cure concrete surfaces to receive floor coverings with either a moisture-retaining cover or a curing compound that the manufacturer certifies will not interfere with bonding of floor covering used on Project.

3. Curing Compound: Apply uniformly in continuous operation by power spray or roller according to manufacturer's written instructions. Recoat areas subjected to heavy rainfall within three hours after initial application. Maintain continuity of coating and repair damage during curing period.

a. After curing period has elapsed, remove curing compound without damaging concrete surfaces by method recommended by curing compound manufacturer unless manufacturer certifies curing compound will not interfere with bonding of floor covering used on Project.

4. Curing and Sealing Compound: Apply uniformly to floors and slabs indicated in a continuous operation by power spray or roller according to manufacturer's written instructions. Recoat areas subjected to heavy rainfall within three hours after initial application. Repeat process 24 hours later and apply a second coat. Maintain continuity of coating and repair damage during curing period.

3.13 CONCRETE SURFACE REPAIRS

A. Surface Defects in Concrete: Repair and patch defective areas when approved by Engineer. Remove and replace concrete that cannot be repaired and patched to Owner's approval.

B. Contractor shall submit a detailed, descriptive procedure listing proposed pre-packaged repair materials and methods for the repair of surface defects prior to the start of repair work.

C. Patching Mortar: Mix, place and finish pre-packaged repair mortar in accordance with manufacturer’s instructions.

D. Repairing Formed Surfaces: Surface defects include color and texture irregularities, cracks, spalls, air bubbles, minor honeycombs and rock pockets with no exposed reinforcement, fins and other projections on the surface, and stains and other discolorations that cannot be removed by cleaning.

1. Immediately after form removal, cut out minor honeycombs, rock pockets, and voids more than 1/2 inch in any dimension in solid concrete, but not less than 1 inch in depth. Make edges of cuts perpendicular to concrete surface, 1/4 inch deep minimum. Clean, dampen with water, and brush-coat holes and voids with bonding agent. Fill and compact with patching mortar before bonding agent has dried. Fill form-tie voids with patching mortar or cone plugs secured in place with bonding agent.
2. Repair defects on surfaces exposed to view using pre-packaged repair mortar so that, when dry, patching mortar will match surrounding color. Patch a test area at inconspicuous locations to verify mixture and color match before proceeding with patching. Compact mortar in place and strike off slightly higher than surrounding surface.

E. Repairing Unformed Surfaces: Test unformed surfaces, such as floors and slabs, for finish and verify surface tolerances specified for each surface. Correct low and high

areas. Test surfaces sloped to drain for trueness of slope and smoothness; use a sloped template.

1. Repair finished surfaces containing defects. Surface defects include minor spalls, pop outs, honeycombs and rock pockets with no exposed reinforcement, crazing and cracks in excess of 0.01 inch wide that do not penetrate to reinforcement, and other objectionable conditions.
2. After concrete has cured at least 14 days, correct high areas by grinding.
3. Correct localized low areas during or immediately after completing surface finishing operations by cutting out low areas and replacing with patching mortar. Finish repaired areas to blend into adjacent concrete.
4. Correct other low areas scheduled to receive floor coverings with a repair underlayment. Prepare, mix, and apply repair underlayment and primer according to manufacturer's written instructions to produce a smooth, uniform, plane, and level surface. Feather edges to match adjacent floor elevations.
5. Correct other low areas scheduled to remain exposed with a repair topping. Cut out low areas to ensure a minimum repair topping depth of 1/4 inch to match adjacent floor elevations. Prepare, mix, and apply repair topping and primer according to manufacturer's written instructions to produce a smooth, uniform, plane, and level surface.
6. Repair defective areas, except random cracks and single holes 1 inch or less in diameter, by cutting out and replacing with patching mortar. Remove defective areas with clean, square cuts, ¼" deep minimum. Dampen concrete surfaces in contact with patching concrete and apply bonding agent. Place, compact, and finish patching mortar to blend with adjacent finished concrete. Cure in same manner as adjacent concrete.
7. Repair random cracks and single holes 1 inch or less in diameter with patching mortar. Groove top of cracks and cut out holes to sound concrete and clean off dust, dirt, and loose particles. Dampen cleaned concrete surfaces and apply bonding agent. Place patching mortar before bonding agent has dried. Compact patching mortar and finish to match adjacent concrete. Keep patched area continuously moist for at least 72 hours.
8. Unapproved and defective repairs shall be removed and replaced in accordance with requirements provided by the Engineer at no additional cost to the Owner.

3.14 STRUCTURAL REPAIRS

A. Structurally Defective Concrete: Structural defects include spalls, honeycombs or rock pockets with exposed reinforcement, hollow-sounding concrete, cracks that penetrate to the reinforcement or completely through concrete elements, inadequate cover over reinforcement, and other conditions that affect the structural performance or durability of the concrete as determined by the Engineer.

B. Repair structural defects in concrete in accordance with plans, specifications, details, etc. provided by the Engineer.

1. The cost of the additional services provided by the Engineer to prepare the repair documents, and to oversee the repair work shall be borne by the Contractor.

C. Unapproved and defective repairs shall be removed and replaced in accordance with requirements provided by the Engineer at no additional cost to the Owner.

3.15 CLEANUP

A. Imperfect or damaged work or any material damaged or determined to be defective before final completion and acceptance of the entire job shall be satisfactorily replaced at the Contractor's expense, and in conformity with all of the requirements of the Drawings and Specifications. Removal and replacement of concrete work shall be done in such manner as not to impair the appearance or strength of the structure in any way.

B. Cleaning: Upon completion of the work all forms, equipment, protective coverings and any rubbish resulting therefrom shall be removed from the site. After sweeping floors, wash floors with clean water. Finished concrete surfaces shall be left in a clean condition, satisfactory to the Owner.

3.16 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Testing and Inspecting: Owner may engage a special inspector and qualified testing and inspecting agency to perform field tests and inspections and prepare test reports.

B. Testing and Inspecting: Engage a qualified testing and inspecting agency to perform tests and inspections and to submit reports.

C. Inspections may include:

1. Steel reinforcement placement.
2. Steel reinforcement welding.
3. Headed bolts and studs.
4. Verification of use of required design mixture.
5. Concrete placement, including conveying and depositing.
6. Curing procedures and maintenance of curing temperature.
7. Verification of concrete strength before removal of shores and forms from beams and slabs.

D. Concrete Tests: Testing of composite samples of fresh concrete obtained according to ASTM C 172 shall be performed according to the following requirements:

1. Testing Frequency: Obtain one composite sample for each day's pour of each concrete mixture exceeding 5 cu. yd., but less than 25 cu. yd., plus one set for each additional 50 cu. yd. or fraction thereof.

2. Slump: ASTM C 143/C 143M; one test at point of placement for each composite sample, but not less than one test for each day's pour of each concrete mixture. Perform additional tests when concrete consistency appears to change.
3. Air Content: ASTM C 231, pressure method, for normal-weight concrete; one test for each composite sample, but not less than one test for each day's pour of each concrete mixture.
4. Concrete Temperature: ASTM C 1064/C 1064M; one test hourly when air temperature is 40 deg F and below and when 80 deg F and above, and one test for each composite sample.
5. Compression Test Specimens: ASTM C 31/C 31M.

    a. Cast and laboratory cure four cylinders for each composite sample.

        1) Do not transport field-cast cylinders until they have cured for a minimum of 24 hours.
        2) For High Volume Fly Ash Concrete do not transport field-cast cylinders until they have cured for a minimum of 48 hours.

6. Compressive-Strength Tests: ASTM C 39/C 39M;

    a. Test one cylinder at 7 days
    b. Test two cylinders at 28 days
    c. Retain one cylinder for testing at a later day, if necessary.
    d. If 4” by 8” cylinders are used, provide 1 additional cylinder at each stage

7. Strength of each concrete mixture will be satisfactory if every average of any three consecutive compressive-strength tests equals or exceeds specified compressive strength and no compressive-strength test value falls below specified compressive strength by more than 500 psi.
8. Test results shall be reported in writing to Architect, concrete manufacturer, and Contractor within 48 hours of testing. Reports of compressive-strength tests shall contain Project identification name and number, date of concrete placement, name of concrete testing and inspecting agency, location of concrete batch in Work, design compressive strength at 28 days, concrete mixture proportions and materials, compressive breaking strength, and type of break for both 7- and 28-day tests.
9. Nondestructive Testing: Impact hammer, sonoscope, or other nondestructive device may be permitted by Architect but will not be used as sole basis for approval or rejection of concrete.
10. Additional Tests: Testing and inspecting agency shall make additional tests of concrete when test results indicate that slump, air entrainment, compressive strengths, or other requirements have not been met, as directed by Architect. Testing and inspecting agency may conduct tests to determine adequacy of concrete by cored cylinders complying with ASTM C 42 or by other methods as directed by Architect.

    a. When the strength level of the concrete for any portion of the structure, as indicated by cylinder tests, falls below the specified requirements, the

Contractor shall provide improved curing conditions and/or adjustments to the mix design as required to obtain the required strength. If the average strength of the laboratory control cylinders falls so low as to be deemed unacceptable, the Contractor shall follow the core test procedure set forth in ACI 301, Section 1.6. Locations of core tests shall be approved by the Architect. Core sampling and testing shall be at Contractors expense.

b. If the results of the core tests indicate that the strength of the structure is inadequate, any replacement, load testing, or strengthening as may be ordered by the Architect shall be provided by the Contractor without cost to the Owner.

11. Additional testing and inspecting, at Contractor's expense, will be performed to determine compliance of replaced or additional work with specified requirements.
12. Correct deficiencies in the Work that test reports and inspections indicate does not comply with the Contract Documents.

E. Measure floor and slab flatness and levelness according to ASTM E 1155 within 48 hours of finishing.

END OF SECTION 03 30 00

ROCIP Project: Withhold insurance cost. Please refer to sections 00425 & 00810 for information.

MIX DESIGN SUBMITTAL FORM

Project: _____

Method used to select proportions (ACI 318, Sect. 5.3):

___ field experience or ___ trial mixture

Person that prepared the submittal: _____

Signed: _____ Date: _____

Person selecting the mixture proportions: _____

Ready-Mix Supplier Company: _____

Contact Person: _____ Phone Number: _____ Date: _____

Main Plant Location: _____ Miles from Project: ____

Secondary Plant Location: _____ Miles from Project: ____

SELECTION OF CONCRETE MIX PROPORTIONS

1. CEMENTITIOUS MATERIALS

Cement: ____(lbs) ____(cu.ft.) Type: _____ Source: _____ Manufacturer _____

Fly Ash: ____(lbs) ____(cu.ft.) Type: _____ Source: _____ Manufacturer _____

Other: ____(lbs) ____(cu.ft.) Type: _____ Source: _____ Manufacturer _____

Fly ash replacement: _____ %

2. AGGREGATES

Fine: ____(lbs) ____(cu.ft.) Size: _____ Type: _____ Source: _____

Coarse: ____(lbs) ____(cu.ft.) Size: _____ Type: _____ Source: _____

Total: ____(lbs) ____(cu.ft.) Size: _____ Type: _____ Source: _____

3. WATER

Water: ____(lbs) ____(cu.ft.) Source: _____

4. ADMIXTURES

HRWR_____ oz. per 100# cement dosage range

Non-Corrosive Accelerator _____ oz. per 100# Cement

W.R._____ oz. per 100# Cement

A.E.A._____ oz. per 100# Cement

Fibers or color pigments or other additions_____ oz. per 100# Cement

FRESHLY MIXED CONCRETE PROPERTIES

Slump before additive = _____ in. Air Content = _____ %

Final Slump after additive = _____ in. Unit Dry Wt. = _____ pcf

Unit Wet Wt. = _____ pcf

ROCIP Project: Withhold insurance cost. Please refer to sections 00425 & 00810 for information.

Placement Method = _____

ROCIP Project: Withhold insurance cost. Please refer to sections 00425 & 00810 for information.

DOCUMENTATION OF COMPRESSIVE STRENGTH AND REQUIRED STRENGTH ON THE BASIS OF FIELD EXPERIENCE

Check one, complete blanks and attach historical data used for these calculations:

- o Records attached represent 30 or more consecutive, recent tests of concrete within 1000 psi of the required, which was produced with similar materials and procedures, and under similar conditions, per ACI 318, paragraph 5.3.1.

  S= _____, f'c = _____, f'cr= _____, f'c(avg) = _____
- o Records attached represent two groups totaling 30 or more consecutive, recent tests of concrete within 1000 psi of the required, which was produced with similar materials and procedures, and under similar conditions, per ACI 318, paragraph 5.3.1

  S(avg)= _____, f'c = _____, f'cr= _____, f'c(avg) = _____
- o Records attached represent 15-29 consecutive, recent tests of concrete within 1000 psi of the required, which was produced with similar materials and procedures, and under similar conditions per ACI 318, paragraph 5.3.1.2, spanning a period of not less than 45 days.

  S(mod)=_____, f'c = _____, f'cr= _____, f'c(avg) = _____
- o Records attached represent 10-15 recent tests of concrete with similar materials and conditions, per ACI 318, paragraphs 5.3.2.2 and 5.3.3.1, spanning a period of not less than 45 days.

  f'c = _____, f'cr= _____, f'c(avg) = _____

DOCUMENTATION OF COMPRESSIVE STRENGTH AND REQUIRED STRENGTH ON THE BASIS OF TRIAL MIXTURES

Age (days)	Mix #1 (f'c. – W/C ratio)	Mix #2 (f'c. – W/C ratio)	Mix #3 (f'c – W/C ratio)
28	_____	_____	_____
28	_____	_____	_____
28	_____	_____	_____

Attach a water cement ratio vs. f'c graph.
Show W/C ratio selected based on f'c & f'cr from T5.3.2.2
Show mix design proportioned to achieve f'cr = f'c + 1200 psi (1400 psi for strength higher than 5000 psi at 28 days)

ATTACHMENTS

Manufacturer's certification of cement materials
Grading chart of Aggregate

ROCIP Project: Withhold insurance cost. Please refer to sections 00425 & 00810 for information.

Admixture certification
Water cement ratio vs. f'c graph
Past performance record submittal

END OF SECTION 03 30 00

SECTION 03 35 00 – CONCRETE FLOOR FINISHING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. This Section includes the following:

1. Finishing slabs-on-grade, monolithic floor slabs, and separate floor toppings.

B. Related Sections include the following:

1. Division 3 Section "Cast-in-Place Concrete" for concrete slab construction and finish.

2. Division 3 Section “Special Concrete Floor Finishes”

1.3 REFERENCES

A. The latest adopted edition of all standards referenced in this section shall apply, unless noted otherwise.

1. ACI 301 - Specifications for Structural Concrete for Buildings
2. ACI 302 - Guide for Concrete Floor and Slab Construction
3. ASTM E1155 - Determining Floor Flatness and Levelness Using the F-Number System (Inch-Pound Units).

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Testing Agency Qualifications: An independent agency qualified according to ASTM C 1077 and ASTM E 329 for testing indicated, as documented according to ASTM E 548.

B. Submittals

1. Product Data: Submit manufacturer's data showing compliance with the specifications for the following products:

a. Semi rigid joint filler
b. Joint filler strips

C. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site to comply with requirements in Division 1 Section "Project Meetings."

1. The Contractor shall call a meeting to review the detailed requirements for floor construction, including the concrete placing techniques, finishing techniques, curing techniques, and the application of floor finishing materials. All contractors involved in the floor installation shall attend the conference.
2. The Contractor shall notify the Owner, Architect and the Structural Engineer at least 10 business days prior to the scheduled date of the conference.

1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Deliver materials in original packages and containers, with seals unbroken, bearing manufacturer's labels indicating brand name and directions for storage, mixing with other components, and application.

B. Store materials to comply with manufacturer's written instructions to prevent deterioration from moisture or other detrimental effects.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 RELATED MATERIALS

A. Semirigid Joint Filler: Two-component, semirigid, 100 percent solids, epoxy resin with a Type A Shore durometer hardness of 80.

B. Joint-Filler Strips: ASTM D 1751, asphalt-saturated cellulosic fiber.

C. Sawcut joint filler: Euco 700 epoxy by The Euclid Chemical Company, or approved equal.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 FINISHING FLOORS AND SLABS

A. General: Comply with ACI 302.1R recommendations for screeding, restraightening, and finishing operations for concrete surfaces. Do not wet concrete surfaces.

B. Concrete slabs shall be finished as specified below, within the tolerances specified elsewhere in this Section.

1. Highway straightedges are recommended for use in lieu of bullfloats for all slab placement and finishing operations.
2. Screeding: Immediately after placing, slab shall be vibrated and struck off true by double screeding to the required level, at or below the elevation or grade of the finished slabs as indicated on the Drawings. Vibrators shall not be used to spread the concrete. When camber is indicated for slabs supported on formwork, screed to the required camber. Fixed screed guides are recommended where specified surface tolerance exceeds FF25/FL20.
3. Floating: Immediately after screeding, before any excess bleed water is present on the surface, float the surface using long-handled bull floats or darbies.
4. Straightedging: Immediately after screeding and before excess bleed water is present on the surface, straighten the surface using a highway straightedge.
5. Edging and jointing, where required, shall be done after bleed water has evaporated and before further finishing.
6. At areas to receive Finish Type F1 (Re: Drawings and Division 03 Section “Special Concrete Floor Finishes”): After completing power float finishing and before power troweling, uniformly spread 25 lb. of specified dampened aggregate per 100 square feet of surface. Tamp aggregate flush with surface using a steel trowel, but do not force aggregate below surface. After broadcasting and tamping, apply trowel finishing as specified

C. Trowel Finish: After applying float finish, apply first troweling and consolidate concrete by hand or power-driven trowel. Continue troweling passes and restraighten until surface is free of trowel marks and uniform in texture and appearance. Grind smooth any surface defects that would telegraph through applied coatings or floor coverings.

1. Apply a trowel finish to surfaces indicated or to be covered with resilient flooring, carpet, ceramic or quarry tile set over a cleavage membrane, paint, or another thin-film-finish coating system.

D. Broom Finish: Apply a broom finish to exterior concrete platforms, steps, and ramps, and elsewhere as indicated.

1. Immediately after float finishing, slightly roughen trafficked surface by brooming with fiber-bristle broom perpendicular to main traffic route. Coordinate required final finish with Architect before application.

3.2 CONTROL JOINTS

A. Saw-cut Control Joints with Soff-Cut saw: After completion of finishing operation, cut control joints using a "Soff-Cut" brand electric saw along straight lines where called for on the Drawings. Follow manufacturer's instructions in using "Soff-Cut" saw. Sawcutting

shall be done within 2 hours after the completion of finishing, but not so soon as to cause raveling of the joint. Cut to depth indicated on the Drawings.

1. After completion of finishing operations, cut control joints along straight lines where called for on the Drawings. Saw cutting shall be done within 4 hours after the completion of finishing, but not so soon to cause raveling of the joint. Cut to the depth indicated on the Drawings.

3.3 JOINT FILLING

A. Prepare, clean, and install joint filler according to manufacturer's written instructions.

1. Defer joint filling until concrete has aged at least one month. Do not fill joints until construction traffic has permanently ceased.

B. Remove dirt, debris, saw cuttings, curing compounds, and sealers from joints; leave contact faces of joint clean and dry.

C. Install sawcut joint filler full depth in saw-cut joints and install semi rigid joint filler least 2 inches deep in formed joints. Overfill joint and trim joint filler flush with top of joint after hardening.

D. Install joint-filler strips in lengths as long as practicable. Where more than one length is required, lace or clip sections together.

3.4 CONCRETE FINISH MEASUREMENT AND TOLERANCES

A. All floors are subject to measurement for flatness and levelness and shall comply with the following:
1. Measurement Standard: All floors are subject to measurement for flatness and levelness, according to ASTM E1155, "Standard Test Method for Determining Floor Flatness and Levelness Using the F-Number System."

B. Two Tiered Measurement Standard: Each floor test section and the overall floor area shall conform to the two-tiered measurement standard as specified herein.

1. Minimum Local Value: The minimum local FF/FL values represent the absolute minimum surface profile that will be acceptable for any one test sample (line of measurements) anywhere within the test area.
2. Specified Overall Value: The specified overall FF/FL values represent the minimum values acceptable for individual floor sections as well as the floor as a whole.

C. Floor Test Sections

1. A floor test section is defined as the smaller of the following areas:

   a. The area bounded by column and/or wall lines.
   b. The area bounded by construction and/or control joint lines.
   c. Any combination of column lines and/or control joint lines.

2. Test sample measurement lines within each test section shall be multidirectional along two orthogonal lines, as defined by ASTM E1155, at a spacing to be determined by the Owner's testing agency.
3. The precise layout of each test section shall be determined by the Owner's testing agency.

D. Concrete Floor Finish Tolerance

1. The following values apply before removal of shores. Levelness values (FL) do not apply to intentionally sloped or cambered areas, nor to slabs poured on metal deck or precast concrete.

   a. Typical floors, unless otherwise specified:
      1) Overall Value FF25/FL20
      2) Minimum Local Value FF17/FL15
   b. Floor Finish Type F1 and F7:
      1) Overall Value FF50/FL30
      2) Minimum Local Value FF35/FL20

E. Floor Elevation Tolerance Envelope:

1. The acceptable tolerance envelope for absolute elevation of any point on the slab surface, with respect to the elevation shown on the Drawings, is as follows:

   a. Slab-on-Grade Construction: +/- 3/4"
   b. Slabs specified to slope shall have a tolerance from the specified slope of 3/8" in 10'-0" at any point, up to 3/4" from theoretical elevation at any point.

3.5 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Concrete Floor Flatness and Levelness:

1. Measurement Standard: Floors shall be measured for flatness and levelness according to ASTM E1155, "Standard Test Method for Determining Floor Flatness and Levelness Using the F-Number System." Tolerances are specified in Section 03300.
2. Time Period for Measuring and Reporting: All measurements shall be made by the testing laboratory or designated agency before the end of the next workday after the completion of finishing operations. For structural elevated floors, measurement shall also be made prior to removal of forms and shores. The Contractor shall be

notified immediately after the measurements of any section are complete, and a written report of the floor measurement results shall be submitted within 72 hours after finishing operations are complete. The Contractor shall take immediate action to correct any work that is outside the specified tolerances.

3. Measuring Equipment: The concrete surface profile shall be measured using equipment manufactured for the purpose, such as the Dipstick Floor Profiler, as manufactured by the Edward W. Face Company, Norfolk, Virginia, or by other methods specified in ASTM E1155.
4. Floor Test Sections:

    a. A floor test section is defined as the smaller of the following areas:

        1) The area bounded by column and/or wall lines.
        2) The area bounded by construction and/or control joint lines.
        3) Any combination of column lines and/or control joint lines.

    b. Test sample measurement lines within each test section shall be multidirectional along two orthogonal lines.
    c. The precise layout of each test section shall be determined by the testing agency and shall be submitted for the Architect's review and approval.

3.6 REPAIRS

A. Defective Topping: Repair and patch defective concrete floor topping areas, including areas that have not bonded to concrete substrate.

B. Remedial Measures for Slab Finish Construction not Meeting Specified Tolerances:

1. Application of Remedial Measures. Remedial measures specified herein are required whenever either or both of the following occur:

    a. The composite overall values of flatness or levelness of any test section or the entire floor installation measure less than specified values.
    b. Any individual test sample (line of measurements) measures less than the specified absolute minimum flatness or levelness value.

2. Modification of Existing Surface:

    a. If, in the opinion of the Architect or Owner's representative, all or any portion of the substandard work can be repaired without sacrifice to the appearance or serviceability of the area, the Contractor shall immediately undertake the approved repair method.
    b. The Contractor shall submit for review and approval a detailed work plan of the proposed repair showing areas to be repaired, method of repair, and time required to make the repair.

c. Repair method(s), at the sole discretion of the Architect or Owner's Representative, may include grinding (floor stoning), planing, retopping with specified floor leveling compound, or any combination of the above.
d. All repair work shall be performed at no additional cost to the Owner and with no extension to the construction schedule.

3. Removal and Replacement:

a. If, in the opinion of the Architect/Engineer or Owner's Representative, all or any portion of the substandard work cannot be satisfactorily repaired without sacrifice to the appearance or serviceability of the area, the Contractor shall remove and replace the defective work as directed.
b. Replacement sections may be retested for compliance at the discretion of the Architect/Engineer or Owner's Representative.
c. All replacement work shall be performed at no additional cost to the Owner and with no extension to the construction schedule.

END OF SECTION 03 35 00

ROCIP Project: Withhold insurance cost. Please refer to sections 00425 & 00810 for information.

SECTION 03 36 80 – SPECIAL CONCRETE FLOOR FINISHES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.01 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the contract, including General and Special Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.02 SUMMARY

A. This section includes the following:
   1. Applying Sealer and Hardener, and polishing concrete to specified finish level**.**

B. Related sections include, but are not limited to, the following:
   1. Division 03 Section "Cast-in-Place Concrete."

1.03 REFERENCES

A. American Society for Testing and Materials:
   1. ASTM – C779 Standard Test Method for Abrasion Resistance of Horizontal Concrete Surfaces
   2. ASTM G23-81, Ultraviolet Light & Water Spray
   3. ASTM C805, Impact Strength
   4. ASTM – C171 Standard Specification for Sheet Materials for Curing Concrete.
   5. ASTM – C309 Standard Specification for Liquid Membrane-Forming Compounds for Curing Concrete.

B. American Concrete Institute
   1. ACI 302, 1R-89, Guide for Concrete Floor and Slab Construction.

C. Products shall comply with the United States Clean Air Act for maximum Volatile Organic Compound (VOC) content.

D. National Floor Safety Institute (NFSI):
   1. NFSI Test Method 101-A Standard for Evaluating High-Traction Flooring Materials, Coatings, and Finishes.
   2. ANSI Standards B-101.1-2009 Manufacturer required to a letter certifying compliance.

E. Reunion Internationale des Laboratoires D'Essais et de Recherches sur les Materiaux et les Construction (RILEM)

1. Rilem Test Method 101-A Standard Measurement of Reduction of Moisture Penetration Through Horizontal Concrete Surfaces.

1.04 SYSTEM DESCRIPTION

A. Performance Requirements: Provide polished flooring that has been selected, manufactured and installed to achieve the following:
   1. Abrasion Resistance: ASTM C779, Method A, high resistance, no more than 0.008 inch (0.20 mm) wear in 30 minutes.
   2. Reflectivity: Increase of 35% as determined by standard gloss meter.
   3. Waterproof Properties: Rilem Test Method 11.4, 70% or greater reduction in absorption.
   4. High Traction Rating: NFSI 101-A, non-slip properties.

B. Concrete Design Requirements:
   1. Hardened Concrete Properties:
      a. Minimum Concrete Compressive Strength: 3500 psi (24MPa).
      b. Normal Weight Concrete: No lightweight aggregate.
      c. Non-air entrained.
      d. Concrete must be cured a minimum of 28 days or as directed by the manufacturer before the application of concrete polishing system.
   2. Placement Properties:
      a. Natural concrete slump of 4 1/2 inches - 5 inches. Admixtures may be used.
      b. Flatness Requirements:
         1) Overall FF 50
   3. Hard-Steel Troweled (3 passes) Concrete: No burnishing marks. Finish to ACI 302.1R
      a. Class 5 floor.
   4. Curing Options:
      a. Membrane forming curing compounds (ASTM C309, Type 1, Class B, all resin, dissipating cure).
      b. Acrylic curing and sealing compounds not recommended.
      c. Sheet membrane (ASTM C171); polyethylene film not recommended.
      d. Damp Curing: Seven day cure.

1.05 SUBMITTALS

A. Comply with pertinent provisions of Division 01 Section “Submittal Procedures”, unless otherwise indicated.

B. Product data
   1. Submit special concrete finish manufacturer’s specifications and test data.
   2. Submit special concrete finish product data describing product to be provided, giving manufacturer’s names and product name for the specified material proposed to be provided under this section including sealers, stains and grout.

3. Submit special concrete finishes manufacturer's recommended installation procedures, including preparation and concrete grinding procedures, which when approved by the Architect will become the basis for accepting or rejecting actual installation procedures used on the work.
4. Submit special concrete finishes technical data sheet giving descriptive data, curing time and application requirements.
5. Submit special concrete finishes manufacture's Material Safety Data Sheet (MSDS) and other safety requirements.
6. Follow all special concrete finishes published manufacture's installation instructions.

C. Certificates:
1. Product certificates signed by manufacturer certifying materials comply with specified performance characteristics and criteria and physical requirements.
2. Letter of certification from the National Floor Safety Institute confirming the system has been tested and passed phase Two Level of certification when tested by Method 101-A. non-slip properties.
3. Current contractor's certificate signed by manufacturer declaring contractor as an approved installer of polishing system.

D. Test Reports:
1. Provide certified test reports, prepared by an independent testing laboratory, confirming compliance with specified performance criteria.
2. Provide certified test reports, prepared by an independent firm for flastness FF 40-50 for the slab. This test should be taken after placement of the concrete.

1.06 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Installer Qualifications
1. Use an experienced installer and adequate number of skilled workman who are thoroughly trained and experienced in the necessary craft and who can provide written evidence and references of such prior direct experience in installations of a similar scope and nature as this project.
2. The special concrete finish manufacturer shall certify applicator.
3. Applicator shall be familiar with the specified requirements and the methods needed for proper performance of work of this section.
4. Installer with a minimum of 5 years experience in performing work of this section who has specialized in installation of work similar to that required for this project.
5. Installer trained and holding a current certificate as an installer.
6. Current Certification from the CPAA stating that the technicians are trained craftsmen.

B. Manufacturer's Certification:
1. Provide letter of certification from concrete finish manufacturer stating that installer is certified applicator of special concrete finishes, and is familiar with proper procedures and installation requirements required by the manufacturer.

2. Floor manufacturer shall furnish a warranty of 10 years for the completed concrete finish. Warranty may be extended to lifetime if the manufacturer's floor cleaning material is used to maintain and clean finished floors.

C. Mock-ups:
1. Apply mock-ups of each type finish, to demonstrate typical joints, surface finish, and standard of workmanship.
   a. A sleeping room that will later be carpeted shall be used for the mockup, as approved by the Architect.
   b. Notify Architect seven days in advance of dates and times when mock-ups will be constructed.
   c. Obtain from the Architect approval of mock-ups before starting construction.
   d. Maintain mock-ups during construction in an undisturbed condition as a standard for judging the completed work.
   e. A repair must be included in the mock-up and approved by the Architect.

D. Protection
1. The concrete floor shall be covered and protected throughout construction. Materials include brown floor covering paper taping all seams and cover with 1/8" Masonite / hardwood or as approved by manufacturer as required to protect flooring from operations of other trades.
2. No satisfactory chemical or cleaning procedure is available to remove petroleum stains form the concrete surface. Protection is therefore essential.
   a. All hydraulic powered equipment must be diapered to avoid staining of the concrete.
   b. No trade will park vehicles on the inside slab. If necessary to complete their scope-of-work, drop clothes will be placed under vehicles at all times.
   c. No pipe cutting machine will be used on the inside floor slab.
   d. To avoid rust staining, steel will not be placed directly on the inside floor slab.
   e. No red chalk to be used on the floor.
   f. No sharpies to be used on the floor.

E. Disclosure of any type of cure agent, sealer, bond breaker, admixture, accelerator or other chemical mixture that is added to or applied to the concrete is required.

F. Moisture vapor emission and any related chemical transmission and/or change must be controlled by the concrete design and placement process.

G. Pre-Installation Conference:
1. Conduct conference at project site to comply with requirements in Division 1 Section "Project Management and Coordination," including Owner's Representative, Project Manager, Architect, General Contractor, Installer, Manufacturer's Representatives for sealing and stain products, and other trades affected by the work.

ROCIP Project: Withhold insurance cost. Please refer to sections 00425 & 00810 for information.

1.07 DELIVERY, STORAGE AND HANDLING

A. Deliver materials in original containers, with seals unbroken, bearing manufacturer labels indicating brand name and directions for storage.

B. Store materials protected from exposure to harmful weather conditions and at temperature conditions recommended by manufacturer.

C. Dispense special concrete finish material from factory numbered and sealed containers. Maintain record of container numbers

1.08 PROJECT CONDITIIONS

A. Environmental limitations:
   1. Comply with manufacturers written instructions for substrate temperature and moisture content, ambient temperature and humidity, ventilation, and other conditions affecting topping performance.

B. Close areas to traffic during floor application and after application, for time period recommended in writing by manufacturer.

1.09 WARRANTY

A. Submit, for Owner's acceptance, manufacturer's standard 10 year warranty document executed by authorized company official. Manufacturer's warranty is in addition to, and does not limit, other rights Owner may have under Contract Documents.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.01 MANUFACTURER

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
   1. L&M Construction Chemicals, Inc., 14851 Calhoun Rd., Omaha, NE 68152-1140; Telephone: (800) 362-3331, (402) 453-6600; website: www.LMCC.com, www.fgs-permashine.com
   2. Advanced Floor Products, Inc., P.O. Box 50533, Provo, Utah 84605; Telephone: (801)812-3420; website: www.retroplatesystem.com

B. Authorized Applicator:
   1. All the Marbles, Inc. 7700 Renwick, Ste 4A, Houston, TX 77081; Telephone: (713)528-7787; info@polishmyconcrete.net
      a. Manufacturer's Regional Representative: Jerry Maltz; Telephone: (713) 825-7093; jermarbleman@aol.com

2.02 PRORIETARY PRODUCTS/SYSTEMS

A. Hardener, Sealer, Densifier: Proprietary, water based, odorless liquid, VOC compliant, environmentally safe chemical hardening solution leaving no surface film.
   1. Advanced Floor Products, Inc.: Retro-Plate 99
      a. Performance Criteria:
         1) Abrasion Resistance: ASTM C779 – Up to 400% increase in abrasion resistance.
         2) Impact Strength: ASTM C805 – Up to 21% increase impact strerngth.
         3) Ultra Violet Light and Water Spray: ASTM G23-81 – No adverse effect to ultra violet and water spray.
         4) Reflectivity; Up to 30% increase in reflectivity.

B. Joint Filler: Semi-rigid, 2-component, self-leveling, 100% solids, rapid curing, polyurea control joint and crack filler with Shore A 85 or higher hardness.
   1. VersaFlex Incorporated: SL-85

C. Oil Repellant Sealer: Ready to use, silane, siloxane, and fluoropolymers blended water based solution sealer, quick drying, low-odor, oil and water repellant, VOC compliant and compatible with chemically hardened floors.
   1. L&M Construction Chemicals, Inc.: Petrotex.

D. Cleaning solution: Proprietary, mild, highly concentrated liquid concrete cleaner and conditioner containing wetting and emulsifying agents; biodegradable, environmentally safe and certified High Traction by National Floor Safety Institute (NFSI)
   1. L&M Construction Chemicals, Inc.: FGS Concrete Conditioner.

2.03 RELATED MATERIALS

A. Grout: Stainless colorfast epoxy. ASNI A118.3, TCE Service rating: extra heavy in multiple custom colors and as indicated. Acceptable products include LATAPOXY SP-100 Stainless epoxy Grout (Series 700); LATICRETE INTERNATIONAL INC. or as approved by manufacturer.

B. Neutralizing Agent:
   1. Tri-sodium Phosphate

C. Water:
   1. Potable.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.01 SURFACE CONDITIONS

A. Examine substrate with installer present for conditions affecting performance of finish. Correct conditions detrimental to timely and proper work. Do not proceed until unsatisfactory conditions are corrected.

B. Verify Concrete Slab Performance Requirements:

1. Verify concrete is cured to 28 days; 3500 psi strength.
2. Verify concrete surfaces received a hard steel-trowel finish (3 passes) during placement.
3. Verify overall floor flatness and floor leveness requirements is as specified.

C. Verify that base slab meets finish and surface profile requirements in Division 3 Section "Cast-In-Place Concrete," and Project Conditions above.

D. Prior to application, verify that floor surfaces are free of construction latents.

E. Liquid solvent-based curing materials shall not be used for curing structural slab.

F. Inspect floor prior to cleaning for spot problems and repair areas. Provide special measures to remove paint, oil, wax, grease and other foreign stains and materials. Use hand mechanical techniques if needed. Floor patching shall only be done with materials approved by the special floor finish installer. Review repair and spot cleaning methods with Architect before proceeding.

G. Cracks and control joints are to be grouted and cleaned.

H. Repair surface irregularities with patching compound as recommended by manufacturer.

I. Saw-cuts for grout joints shall be made with new diamond blades to minimize chipping and spalling.

3.02 INSTALLATION

A. Start any of the floor finish applications in presence of manufacturer's technical representative.

B. Provide consistent finish in all contiguous areas.

C. Apply floor finish prior to installation of fixtures and accessories.

D. Provide polished concrete floor system per all grinding and polishing steps of the FGS PermaShine process as recommended by manufacturer.

E. Diamond polish concrete floor surfaces with power disc machine recommended by floor finish manufacturer. Sequence with coarse to fine grit. Installer to determine the optimum starting grit in order to achieve the specified aggregate exposure.

1. Comply with manufacturer's recommended polishing grits for each sequence to achieve desired finish level. Following the initial passes of metal bond diamonds,

the installer shall drop back a minimum of one grit level when transitioning to resin bond diamonds. The separation in grit designation shall be a minimum of 50 for the transitioning step. The installer shall refine each abrasive grit to its fullest potential before moving on to the next level. Floor shall be thoroughly scrubbed between each grit pass to remove all loose material.

3.03 APPLICATION

A. Floor to be prepared for application with specified (wet only) diamond grinding steps, followed by the application of Retro-Plate 99 and final 2 polishing (dry) steps. (Note: The exact number of grinding and polishing steps required will be determined by the flatness achieved by the concrete finisher, along with the desired look that is specified by the owner. To achieve Totally Refined Polished Concrete each grit will require multiple grinding passes. In most case the initial 2 grinding process will require grinding 2 passes north and south and 2 passes east and west to properly prepare the concrete to achieve a Totally Refine Polished Concrete floor.

1. Apparatus Bay (Finish Type ‘F7’ on Drawings) 400 Grit Finish
    a. Level One (satin gloss finish) requires 50 grit or 100 grit resin, grit resin, 200 grit resin , 400 grit resin bonded diamonds.
    b. Apply 2 applications of Retro-Plate 99 should be to the point of rejection and allowed to dry over night prior to final polishing steps.
    c. Continue grinding wet using resin diamonds 120 grit, 220 grit, and 400 grit. Allow the floor to thoroughly dry.
    d. Final polishing steps will be 400 grit resin dry polish.
    e. A pplication of Petrotex.
    f. Prior to opening Burnish using 3000 grit diamond polish pad.
2. Public / Living (Finish Type ‘F1’ on Drawings) 1500 Grit Finish
    a. Grade Three cut (moderate to heavy aggregate exposure)
    b. Medium sheen
    c. Grinding / polishing schedule
        1) Prior to installation of walls:
            a) 30/40 metal grit
            b) 70/80 metal grit
            c) 100resin diamond grit
            d) Apply Retro-Plate 99 at a rate of 200 square feet per gallon and keep the floor wet (flood with Retro-Plate 99) for at least one hour. Rinse with plenty of clean potable water and let dry / cure for at least 8 hours before proceeding to the next polishing step.
            e) Continue grinding wet using resin diamonds 200 grit, 400 grit, and 800 grit. Allow the floor to thoroughly dry.
            f) Prior to opening Burnish using 1500 grit diamond polish pad

B. Grinding and Sealing, Hardening and Polishing of Concrete Surface

1. Concrete must be in place a minimum of 28 days or as directed by the manufacturer before application can begin.

2. Application is to take place at least 10 days prior to racking and other in-store accessory installation, thus providing a complete, uninhibited concrete slab for application.
3. Only a certified applicator shall apply Retro-Plate99. Applicable procedures must be followed as recommended by the product manufacturer and as required to match approved test sample.
4. Achieve waterproofing, hardening, dust-proofing, and abrasion resistance of the surface without changing the natural appearance of the concrete, except for the sheen.
5. Finish edges to within 1/4” of vertical surfaces.
6. Polish to pre-determined 400 grit level based on test sample.

C. Edge work and Trench Drains
1. Edge grinding to be accomplished using wet grinding process starting with stone abrasives or rigid grinding disk starting at 60 grit, 100 grit, 200 grit and 400 grit stone abrasive to match the body of the floor. Dry Polish using 400 resin after RetroPlate99 has dried over night.

D. Floor Joints / Control Joints: install per manufacturer’s recommendations after concrete placement.
1. Re-cut all control joints prior to installation of joint material.
2. Install full depth and over fill.
3. Shave/cut off extra using new razor blades to cut as clean as possible.

E. Protective Impregnator
1. Seal Entire floor using Petrotex Impregnator sealer. Pertotex will allow oil to float on top of the surface.

3.04 WORKMANSHIP AND CLEANING:

A. Clean polished concrete floor system per manufacturer’s written instruction and recommendation including the use of manufacturer’s concrete floor conditioner.

B. This premises shall be kept clean and free of debris at all times.

C. Remove spatter from adjoing surfaces, as necessary.

D. Repair damages to surface caused by cleaning operations.

E. Remove debris from job site.
1. Dispose of materials in separate, closed containers in accordance with local regulations.

3.05 PROTECTION

ROCIP Project: Withhold insurance cost. Please refer to sections 00425 & 00810 for information.

A. Protect finished work until fully cured in accordance with manufactures recommendations.

END OF SECTION 03 36 80

ROCIP Project: Withhold insurance cost. Please refer to sections 00425 & 00810 for information.

SECTION 04 22 00 - CONCRETE UNIT MASONRY

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.01 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.02 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:
   1. Concrete masonry units.
   2. Mortar and grout.
   3. Steel reinforcing bars.
   4. Masonry joint reinforcement.
   5. Ties and anchors.
   6. Embedded flashing.
   7. Miscellaneous masonry accessories.
   8. Masonry-cell insulation.

B. Related Sections:
   1. Division 01 Section “Sustainable Construction Requirements”
   2. Division 03 Section "Concrete Reinforcements."
   3. Division 05 Section "Structural Steel" for installing anchor sections of adjustable masonry anchors for connecting to structural-steel frame.
   4. Division 07 Section "Bituminous Dampproofing" for waterproofing applied to concrete unit masonry.
   5. Division 07 Section "Sheet Metal Flashing and Trim" for sheet metal flashing and for furnishing manufactured reglets installed in masonry joints.
   6. Division 07 Section "Joint Sealants."
   7. Division 09 Section "Painting."

1.03 DEFINITIONS

A. CMU(s): Concrete masonry unit(s).

B. Reinforced Masonry: Masonry containing reinforcing steel in grouted cells.

1.04 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Provide structural unit masonry that develops indicated net-area compressive strengths at 28 days.

1. Determine net-area compressive strength of masonry from average net-area compressive strengths of masonry units and mortar types (unit-strength method) according to Tables 1 and 2 in ACI 530.1/ASCE 6/TMS 602.
2. Determine net-area compressive strength of masonry by testing masonry prisms according to ASTM C 1314.

1.05 PRECONSTRUCTION TESTING

A. Preconstruction Testing Service: Owner will engage a qualified independent testing agency to perform preconstruction testing indicated below. Retesting of materials that fail to comply with specified requirements shall be done at Contractor's expense.
   1. Concrete Masonry Unit Test: For each type of unit required, according to ASTM C 140 for compressive strength.
   2. Mortar Test (Property Specification): For each mix required, according to ASTM C 109/C 109M for compressive strength.
   3. Mortar Test (Property Specification): For each mix required, according to ASTM C 780 for compressive strength.
   4. Grout Test (Compressive Strength): For each mix required, according to ASTM C 1019.
   5. Prism Test: For each type of construction required, according to ASTM C 1314.

1.06 SUBMITTALS & MOCK-UP PANEL

A. Division 01- “Submittals”.

B. Submit sample board of each brick color and/or type, and mortar batch showing full range of color.

C. Submit product literature on mortar color and waterproofing admixtures.

D. Construct minimum 6'-0" x 6'-0" mock-up panel of typical masonry wall at window, incorporating face brick, rowlock brick, window, and both CMU and metal stud wall backup in manner as used on project.

E. Provide range of 32 mortar colors for selection of one color by Architect.

F. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.

G. Shop Drawings: For the following:
   1. Masonry Units: Show sizes, profiles, coursing, and locations of special shapes.
   2. Reinforcing Steel: Detail bending and placement of unit masonry reinforcing bars. Comply with ACI 315, "Details and Detailing of Concrete Reinforcement."
   3. Fabricated Flashing: Detail corner units, end-dam units, and other special applications.

H. List of Materials Used in Constructing Mockups: List generic product names together with manufacturers, manufacturers' product names, model numbers, lot numbers, batch numbers, source of supply, and other information as required to identify materials used. Include mix proportions for mortar and grout and source of aggregates.
   1. Submittal is for information only. Neither receipt of list nor approval of mockup constitutes approval of deviations from the Contract Documents unless such deviations are specifically brought to the attention of Architect and approved in writing.

I. Qualification Data: For testing agency.

J. Material Certificates: For each type and size of the following:
   1. Masonry units.
      a. Include data on material properties material test reports substantiating compliance with requirements.
      b. For masonry units used in structural masonry, include data and calculations establishing average net-area compressive strength of units.
   2. Cementitious materials. Include brand, type, and name of manufacturer.
   3. Preblended, dry mortar mixes. Include description of type and proportions of ingredients.
   4. Grout mixes. Include description of type and proportions of ingredients.
   5. Reinforcing bars.
   6. Joint reinforcement.
   7. Anchors, ties, and metal accessories.

K. Mix Designs: For each type of mortar and grout. Include description of type and proportions of ingredients.
   1. Include test reports for mortar mixes required to comply with property specification. Test according to ASTM C 109/C 109M for compressive strength, ASTM C 1506 for water retention, and ASTM C 91 for air content.
   2. Include test reports, according to ASTM C 1019, for grout mixes required to comply with compressive strength requirement.

L. Statement of Compressive Strength of Masonry: For each combination of masonry unit type and mortar type, provide statement of average net-area compressive strength of masonry units, mortar type, and resulting net-area compressive strength of masonry determined according to Tables 1 and 2 in ACI 530.1/ASCE 6/TMS 602.

M. Cold-Weather and Hot-Weather Procedures: Detailed description of methods, materials, and equipment to be used to comply with requirements.

1.07 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Testing Agency Qualifications: Qualified according to ASTM C 1093 for testing indicated.

B. Source Limitations for Masonry Units: Obtain exposed masonry units of a uniform texture and color, or a uniform blend within the ranges accepted for these characteristics, from single source from single manufacturer for each product required.

C. Source Limitations for Mortar Materials: Obtain mortar ingredients of a uniform quality, including color for exposed masonry, from single manufacturer for each cementitious component and from single source or producer for each aggregate.

D. Masonry Standard: Comply with ACI 530.1/ASCE 6/TMS 602 unless modified by requirements in the Contract Documents.

E. Mockups: Build mockups to verify selections made under sample submittals and to demonstrate aesthetic effects and set quality standards for materials and execution.
   1. Build mockup of typical wall area as shown on Drawings.
   2. Build mockups for typical exterior and interior walls in sizes approximately 72 inches long by 72 inches high by full thickness, including face and backup wythes and accessories.
      a. Include a sealant-filled joint at least 16 inches long in each exterior wall mockup.
      b. Include lower corner of window opening at upper corner of exterior wall mockup. Make opening approximately 12 inches wide by 16 inches high.
      c. Include through-wall flashing installed for a 24-inch length in corner of exterior wall mockup approximately 16 inches down from top of mockup; with a 12-inch length of flashing left exposed to view (omit masonry above half of flashing).
      d. Include exterior stone cladding with weeps, anchors and mortar netting.
   3. Protect accepted mockups from the elements with weather-resistant membrane.
   4. Approval of mockups is for color, texture, and blending of masonry units; relationship of mortar and sealant colors to masonry unit colors; tooling of joints; and aesthetic qualities of workmanship.
      a. Approval of mockups is also for other material and construction qualities specifically approved by Architect in writing.
      b. Approval of mockups does not constitute approval of deviations from the Contract Documents contained in mockups unless such deviations are specifically approved by Architect in writing.
   5. Approved mockups may not become part of the completed Work.

F. Pre-installation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

G. General: Masonry shall not commence until Architect has approved mock-up. Use mock-up as standard comparison for all masonry constructed of similar and/or same material. Mock-up is to remain until all masonry is completed and accepted by the Owner.

1.08 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Store masonry units on elevated platforms in a dry location. If units are not stored in an enclosed location, cover tops and sides of stacks with waterproof sheeting, securely tied. If units become wet, do not install until they are dry.

B. Store cementitious materials on elevated platforms, under cover, and in a dry location. Do not use cementitious materials that have become damp.

C. Store aggregates where grading and other required characteristics can be maintained and contamination avoided.

D. Deliver preblended, dry mortar mix in moisture-resistant containers designed for use with dispensing silos. Store preblended, dry mortar mix in delivery containers on elevated platforms, under cover, and in a dry location or in covered weatherproof dispensing silos.

E. Store masonry accessories, including metal items, to prevent corrosion and accumulation of dirt and oil.

1.09 PROJECT CONDITIONS

A. Protection of Masonry: During construction, cover tops of walls, projections, and sills with waterproof sheeting at end of each day's work. Cover partially completed masonry when construction is not in progress.
   1. Extend cover a minimum of 24 inches down both sides of walls and hold cover securely in place.

B. Do not apply uniform floor or roof loads for at least 12 hours and concentrated loads for at least three days after building masonry walls or columns.

C. Stain Prevention: Prevent grout, mortar, and soil from staining the face of masonry to be left exposed or painted. Immediately remove grout, mortar, and soil that come in contact with such masonry.
   1. Protect base of walls from rain-splashed mud and from mortar splatter by spreading coverings on ground and over wall surface.
   2. Protect sills, ledges, and projections from mortar droppings.
   3. Protect surfaces of window and door frames, as well as similar products with painted and integral finishes, from mortar droppings.
   4. Turn scaffold boards near the wall on edge at the end of each day to prevent rain from splashing mortar and dirt onto completed masonry.

D. Cold-Weather Requirements: Do not use frozen materials or materials mixed or coated with ice or frost. Do not build on frozen substrates. Remove and replace unit masonry damaged by frost or by freezing conditions. Comply with cold-weather construction requirements contained in ACI 530.1/ASCE 6/TMS 602.
   1. Cold-Weather Cleaning: Use liquid cleaning methods only when air temperature is 40 deg F (4 deg C) and higher and will remain so until masonry has dried, but not less than 7 days after completing cleaning.

E. Hot-Weather Requirements: Comply with hot-weather construction requirements contained in ACI 530.1/ASCE 6/TMS 602.

F. Masonry work shall not be placed when there is any possibility of the water freezing before it has attained its initial set. In weather below freezing, all masonry units and mortar shall be heated. Walls which have frozen after making their initial set shall not be built upon until they have had sufficient time to make a proper set at temperatures above freezing.

G. All newly placed masonry shall be protected against damage from action of the elements and under no condition shall rain be allowed to fall on, drive against or flow down masonry surfaces until mortar has set a minimum of 12 hours. Tops of all walls shall be covered with a waterproof material at the end of each day.

H. During warm, dry weather, masonry shall be protected from drying too rapidly. Masonry surfaces shall be kept moist with water gently spraying the surface, covering work with burlap which is kept wet, or by other approved means. Such protection shall be continued until mortar has set for 3 days or until lowering temperatures or increased humidity in the air make such protection unnecessary.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.01 MASONRY UNITS, GENERAL

A. Defective Units: Referenced masonry unit standards may allow a certain percentage of units to contain chips, cracks, or other defects exceeding limits stated in the standard. Do not use units where such defects will be exposed in the completed Work.

2.02 CONCRETE MASONRY UNITS

A. Regional Materials: Provide CMUs that have been manufactured within 500 miles of Project site from aggregates and cement that have been extracted, harvested, or recovered, as well as manufactured, within 500 miles of Project site.

B. Shapes: Provide shapes indicated and as follows, with exposed surfaces matching exposed faces of adjacent units unless otherwise indicated.
   1. Provide special shapes for lintels, corners, jambs, sashes, movement joints, headers, bonding, and other special conditions.
   2. Provide square-edged units for outside corners unless otherwise indicated.

C. CMUs: ASTM C 90.
   1. Unit Compressive Strength: Provide units with minimum average net-area compressive strength of 3750 psi.
   2. Density Classification: Normal weight.
   3. Size (Width): Manufactured to dimensions 3/8 inch less than nominal dimensions.

4. Exposed Faces: Provide color array with standard smooth face.

D. Concrete Block: Hollow load bearing block, nominal size detailed height x 16" x detailed thickness, conforming to ASTM C90, Type N-I, normal light weight, Grades standard aggregate and U.B.C. Standard 24-3, with a minimum compressive strength of 3750 psi. Units of same manufacturer throughout. Furnish sizes, shapes, and miscellaneous items shown or required to complete work. Standard smooth face "grey" concrete block exposed to exterior as veneer shall be sealed and shall have consistent, unmottled appearance.

2.03 MORTAR AND GROUT MATERIALS

A. Regional Materials: Provide aggregate for mortar and grout, cement, and lime that have been extracted, harvested, or recovered, as well as manufactured, within 500 miles of Project site.

B. Portland Cement: ASTM C 150, Type I. Provide natural color to produce mortar color indicated.

C. Hydrated Lime: ASTM C 207, Type S.

D. Portland Cement-Lime Mix: Packaged blend of Portland cement and hydrated lime containing no other ingredients.

E. Masonry Cement: Not allowed.

F. Aggregate for Mortar: ASTM C 144.
   1. For mortar that is exposed to view, use washed aggregate consisting of natural sand or crushed stone.
   2. For joints less than 1/4 inch thick, use aggregate graded with 100 percent passing the No. 16 sieve.

G. Aggregate for Grout: ASTM C 404.

H. Water: Potable.

I. Sand: ASTM C144, graduation as required by mortar additive manufacturer.

J. Water Repellent Admixture: Rheomix 235 by Master Builders or approved equal.

K. Workability Additive: "A" Marble Dust by Armco Steel Corp., 90/200 Mineral Filler by Limestone Products.

L. Mortar Color Additive: Light Buff color equal to Solomon Grid-Chem Services Inc.

2.04 REINFORCEMENT

A. Uncoated Steel Reinforcing Bars: ASTM A 615/A 615M or ASTM A 996/A 996M, Grade 60 (Grade 420).

B. Masonry Joint Reinforcement, General: ASTM A 951/A 951M.
   1. Interior Walls: Hot-dip galvanized, carbon steel.
   2. Exterior Walls: Hot-dip galvanized, carbon steel.
   3. Wire Size for Side Rods and Cross Rods: 9-Gauge.
   4. Material shall be Dur-O-Wall DA 3200, Single Width Ladur.

C. Furnish and install steel reinforcement, maintaining minimum required clear distances.

D. Where detailed, install grout fully around steel reinforcement. Grouting done in lifts of 24" (for spaces less than 2" wide) and 48" (more than 2" wide). Agitate and puddle grout during and after placement. Exercise care to prevent grout from staining face of masonry. Immediately remove grout spillage on face and top of masonry.

E. Minimum compressive prism strength of the masonry (f'm) shall be 2500 psi when tested at 28 days.

2.05 TIES AND ANCHORS

A. Materials: Provide ties and anchors specified in this article that are made from materials that comply with the following unless otherwise indicated.
   1. Hot-Dip Galvanized, Carbon-Steel Wire: ASTM A 82/A 82M; with ASTM A 153/A 153M, Class B-2 coating.
   2. Galvanized Steel Sheet: ASTM A 653/A 653M, Commercial Steel, G60 (Z180) zinc coating.
   3. Steel Sheet, Galvanized after Fabrication: ASTM A 1008/A 1008M, Commercial Steel, with ASTM A 153/A 153M, Class B coating.
   4. Stainless-Steel Sheet: ASTM A 666, [Type 304] [Type 316].
   5. Steel Plates, Shapes, and Bars: ASTM A 36/A 36M.
   6. Stainless-Steel Bars: ASTM A 276 or ASTM A 666, Type 304.

B. Adjustable Anchors. Provide anchors that allow vertical or horizontal adjustment but resist tension and compression forces perpendicular to plane of wall.
   1. Masonry Wall Tab Anchors at CMU Wall Backup: A 4 inch hot-dip galvanized adjustable ladder tab for cavity installation equal to Wire Bond Series 600.
   2. Adjustable Veneer Anchors: Hot-dip galvanized wire anchors at 16 inches vertically and 16 inches horizontally at studs equal to Wire Bond No. 1004, Type III, secured with stainless steel screws. Triangular ties equal to Wire Bond No. 1100-5, typical.

C. Anchor Bolts: L-shaped steel bolts complying with ASTM A 307, Grade A (ASTM F 568M, Property Class 4.6); with ASTM A 563 where indicated, flat washers; hot-dip galvanized to comply with ASTM A 153/A 153M, Class C; of dimensions indicated. Minimum of 5/8” x 6”.

D. All CMU veneer/CMU backup walls shall be reinforced horizontally with reinforcing spaced 16" o.c. vertically, maximum. Lay reinforcing on wall and cover with

mortar, then bed unit as herein specified. At corners, reinforcing is to be provided in every horizontal course, with inside rod cut and bent to form corner. Provide reinforcing one course above and below all openings. Reinforcement placed as to assure a 5/8" mortar cover measured from the outside face of the joint. Side rods shall be lapped at least 14" at splices.

E. Intersecting and butting walls and partitions shall be bonded together by metal anchors spaced 2' - 0" o.c. vertically. Interlocking of units not permitted.

2.06 EMBEDDED FLASHING MATERIALS

A. Metal Flashing: Provide metal flashing complying with SMACNA's "Architectural Sheet Metal Manual Division 07 Section "Sheet Metal Flashing and Trim".

B. Flexible Flashing: Use the following unless otherwise indicated:
   1. Copper-Laminated Flashing: 3-oz./sq. ft .copper sheet bonded between 2 layers of glass-fiber cloth.
      a. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide the following:
         1) York Manufacturing, Inc.; 3 oz. Multi Flash Series 500.

C. Cell Vent Weep Baffles: Install cell vent weeps in vertical joint of first course immediately above all flashings, weep spaces 24" O.C. Extruded polypropylene copolymer weeps equal to Wire Bond No. 3601. Color to be selected by Architect.

2.07 MISCELLANEOUS MASONRY ACCESSORIES

A. Compressible Filler: Premolded filler strips complying with ASTM D 1056, Grade 2A1; compressible up to 35 percent; of width and thickness indicated; formulated from urethane.

B. Preformed Control-Joint Gaskets: Made from styrene-butadiene-rubber compound, complying with ASTM D 2000, Designation M2AA-80 or PVC, complying with ASTM D 2287, Type PVC-65406 and designed to fit standard sash block and to maintain lateral stability in masonry wall; size and configuration as indicated.

C. Bond-Breaker Strips: Asphalt-saturated, organic roofing felt complying with ASTM D 226, Type I (No. 15 asphalt felt).

D. Reinforcing Bar Positioners: Wire units designed to fit into mortar bed joints spanning masonry unit cells and hold reinforcing bars in center of cells. Units are formed from 0.148-inch steel wire, hot-dip galvanized after fabrication. Provide units designed for number of bars indicated.
   1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide the following:
      a. Dayton Superior Corporation, Dur-O-Wal Division; DA 810, DA 812 or DA 817.

E. Outside joints at the perimeter of exterior doors shall not be less than 1/4" nor more than 3/8" wide and shall be cleaned out to a uniform depth of at least 3/4" for sealant, provided under Division 07 Section “Joint Sealers”.

2.08 MASONRY-CELL INSULATION

A. Loose-Granular Fill Insulation: Perlite complying with ASTM C 549, Type II (surface treated for water repellency and limited moisture absorption) or Type IV (surface treated for water repellency and to limit dust generation).

2.09 MORTAR AND GROUT MIXES

A. General: Do not use admixtures, including pigments, air-entraining agents, accelerators, retarders, water-repellent agents, antifreeze compounds, or other admixtures unless otherwise indicated.
   1. Do not use calcium chloride in mortar or grout.
   2. Use Portland cement-lime masonry cement or mortar cement mortar unless otherwise indicated.
   3. For exterior masonry, use Portland cement-lime masonry cement or mortar cement mortar.
   4. For reinforced masonry, use Portland cement-lime masonry cement or mortar cement mortar.
   5. Add cold-weather admixture (if used) at same rate for all mortar that will be exposed to view, regardless of weather conditions, to ensure that mortar color is consistent.

B. Preblended, Dry Mortar Mix: Furnish dry mortar ingredients in form of a preblended mix. Measure quantities by weight to ensure accurate proportions, and thoroughly blend ingredients before delivering to Project site.

C. Mortar for Unit Masonry: Comply with ASTM C 270, Proportion Property Specification. Provide the following types of mortar for applications stated unless another type is indicated or needed to provide required compressive strength of masonry.
   1. For masonry below grade or in contact with earth, use Type S.
   2. For reinforced masonry, use Type S.
   3. Color pigments shall not exceed 10 percent of Portland cement by weight.
   4. Color to be selected by Architect.

D. Grout for Unit Masonry: Comply with ASTM C 476.
   1. Use grout of type indicated or, if not otherwise indicated, of type (fine or coarse) that will comply with Table 1.15.1 in ACI 530.1/ASCE 6/TMS 602 for dimensions of grout spaces and pour height.
   2. Proportion grout in accordance with ASTM C 476, Table 1.
   3. Provide grout with a slump of 8 to 11 inches as measured according to ASTM C 143/C 143M.

2.10 FORMWORK AND SCAFFOLDING

A. Design and engineering of formwork and scaffolding as well as its construction shall be the responsibility of the Contractor. Adequately shore all block soffits, beams, girders and similar members to safely support all loads and lateral pressures liable to come on the construction. Provide clean-out openings at each vertical bar at bottom course or in foundation wall when wall is erected in more than 5 foot lifts.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.01 INSPECTION

A. Inspect foundations to assure surfaces to support masonry are to proper grades and elevations, free of dirt or uneven surfaces. Defective surfaces shall be properly repaired prior to installation. Installation constitutes acceptance of substrate.

3.02 EXAMINATION

A. Examine conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
   1. For the record, prepare written report, endorsed by Installer, listing conditions detrimental to performance of work.
   2. Verify that foundations are within tolerances specified.
   3. Verify that reinforcing dowels are properly placed.

B. Before installation, examine rough-in and built-in construction for piping systems to verify actual locations of piping connections.

C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.03 BUILT-IN WORK

A. Contractor shall carefully examine architectural and mechanical drawings providing all slots, chases, recesses in masonry work as required. No pipes shall be enclosed unless tested. Build-in all wood grounds, inserts, anchor bolts, iron frames, brackets or other items furnished by others and cooperate with other contractors in placing of such items. Consult other trades and make provisions for introduction of their work.

B. Where bolts are required for attaching steel plates, fill cores of units solid with grout. Set bolts and inserts vertically in top of walls, pilasters, beams or columns 3" minimum from any face in masonry 7 inches or more in thickness, and at center line of thinner masonry sections. Hold all metal accessories to masonry by firmly embedding anchorage into grout 3" minimum.

3.04 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

A. Build chases and recesses to accommodate items specified in this and other Sections.

B. Leave openings for equipment to be installed before completing masonry. After installing equipment, complete masonry to match the construction immediately adjacent to opening.

C. Use full-size units without cutting if possible. If cutting is required to provide a continuous pattern or to fit adjoining construction, cut units with motor-driven saws; provide clean, sharp, unchipped edges. Allow units to dry before laying unless wetting of units is specified. Install cut units with cut surfaces and, where possible, cut edges concealed.

3.05 TOLERANCES

A. Dimensions and Locations of Elements:
   1. For dimensions in cross section or elevation do not vary by more than plus 1/2 inch or minus 1/4 inch.
   2. For location of elements in plan do not vary from that indicated by more than plus or minus 1/2 inch.
   3. For location of elements in elevation do not vary from that indicated by more than plus or minus 1/4 inch in a story height or 1/2 inch total.

B. Lines and Levels:
   1. For bed joints and top surfaces of bearing walls do not vary from level by more than 1/4 inch in 10 feet maximum.
   2. For conspicuous horizontal lines, such as lintels, sills, parapets, and reveals, do not vary from level by more than 1/8 inch in 10 feet, 1/4 inch in 20 feet maximum.
   3. For vertical lines and surfaces do not vary from plumb by more than 1/4 inch in 10 feet, 3/8 inch in 20 feet, or 1/2 inch maximum.
   4. For conspicuous vertical lines, such as external corners, door jambs, reveals, and expansion and control joints, do not vary from plumb by more than 1/8 inch in 10 feet, 1/4 inch in 20 feet maximum.
   5. For lines and surfaces do not vary from straight by more than 1/4 inch in 10 feet, 3/8 inch in 20 feet maximum.
   6. For vertical alignment of exposed head joints, do not vary from plumb by more than 1/4 inch in 10 feet maximum.

C. Concrete masonry units shall be set plumb and true in lines with regular bond and properly jointed to other work with fully bedded joints and cross joints. Vertical joints on exposed masonry units shall be concave tooled, mortar joints 3/8" thick unless otherwise noted. Units set in running bond pattern, vertical joints staggered on center of block below. Where indicated, align vertical cells to be filled with grout to provide a continuous unobstructed opening of dimensions. Provide mortar pointing of all scored concrete masonry to match adjacent joints.

D. Joints:

1. For bed joints, do not vary from thickness indicated by more than plus or minus 1/8 inch, with a maximum thickness limited to 1/2 inch.
2. For exposed bed joints, do not vary from bed-joint thickness of adjacent courses by more than 1/8 inch.
3. For head and collar joints, do not vary from thickness indicated by more than plus 3/8 inch or minus 1/4 inch.
4. For exposed head joints, do not vary from thickness indicated by more than plus or minus 1/8 inch.

E. When a block must be reduced in size or is shown on the drawings to be of a smaller size, use an approved masonry saw to cut the block and properly dress the roughened edges. Chipped, cracked, broken or otherwise defective blocks will not be acceptable.

F. All interior non-bearing partitions shall be carried to within 1/4 inch of the deck leaving a gap to be caulked, unless shown otherwise on drawings.

G. Use standard plain grey mortar at standard gray blocks.

3.06 LAYING MASONRY WALLS

A. Lay out walls in advance for accurate spacing of surface bond patterns with uniform joint thicknesses and for accurate location of openings, movement-type joints, returns, and offsets. Avoid using less-than-half-size units, particularly at corners, jambs, and, where possible, at other locations.

B. Bond Pattern for Exposed Masonry: Unless otherwise indicated, lay exposed masonry in running bond; do not use units with less than nominal 4-inch horizontal face dimensions at corners or jambs.

C. Lay concealed masonry with all units in a wythe in running bond. Bond and interlock each course of each wythe at corners. Do not use units with less than nominal 4-inch horizontal face dimensions at corners or jambs.

D. Stopping and Resuming Work: Stop work by racking back units in each course from those in course below; do not tooth. When resuming work, clean masonry surfaces that are to receive mortar before laying fresh masonry.

E. Built-in Work: As construction progresses, build in items specified in this and other Sections. Fill in solidly with masonry around built-in items.

F. Fill space between steel frames and masonry solidly with mortar unless otherwise indicated.

G. Where built-in items are to be embedded in cores of hollow masonry units, place a layer of metal lath, wire mesh, or plastic mesh in the joint below and rod mortar or grout into core.

H. Fill cores in hollow CMUs with grout 24 inches under bearing plates, beams, lintels, posts, and similar items unless otherwise indicated.

I. Build non-load-bearing interior partitions full height of story to underside of solid floor or roof structure above unless otherwise indicated.
   1. Install compressible filler in joint between top of partition and underside of structure above.
   2. Fasten partition top anchors to structure above and build into top of partition. Grout cells of CMUs solidly around plastic tubes of anchors and push tubes down into grout to provide 1/2-inch clearance between end of anchor rod and end of tube. Space anchors 48 inches o.c. unless otherwise indicated.
   3. Wedge non-load-bearing partitions against structure above with small pieces of tile, slate, or metal. Fill joint with mortar after dead-load deflection of structure above approaches final position.
   4. At fire-rated partitions, treat joint between top of partition and underside of structure above to comply with Division 07 Section "Fire-Resistive Joint Systems."

3.07 MORTAR BEDDING AND JOINTING

A. Lay hollow CMUs as follows:
   1. With face shells fully bedded in mortar and with head joints of depth equal to bed joints.
   2. With webs fully bedded in mortar in all courses of piers, columns, and pilasters.
   3. With webs fully bedded in mortar in grouted masonry, including starting course on footings.
   4. With entire units, including areas under cells, fully bedded in mortar at starting course on footings where cells are not grouted.

B. Lay solid masonry units with completely filled bed and head joints; butter ends with sufficient mortar to fill head joints and shove into place. Do not deeply furrow bed joints or slush head joints.

C. Set cast-stone trim units in full bed of mortar with full vertical joints. Fill dowel, anchor, and similar holes.
   1. Clean soiled surfaces with fiber brush and soap powder and rinse thoroughly with clear water.
   2. Allow cleaned surfaces to dry before setting.
   3. Wet joint surfaces thoroughly before applying mortar.

D. Tool exposed joints slightly concave when thumbprint hard, using a jointer larger than joint thickness unless otherwise indicated.

3.08 MASONRY-CELL INSULATION

A. Pour granular insulation into cavities to fill void spaces. Maintain inspection ports to show presence of insulation at extremities of each pour area. Close the ports af-

ter filling has been confirmed. Limit the fall of insulation to one story high, but not more than 20 feet.

B. All holes and openings in the wall through which insulation can escape shall be permanently sealed.

C. Insulation shall be poured directly into the block cells at maximum 3'-4" intervals. Wall sections below openings shall be filled before sills are placed.

3.09 MASONRY JOINT REINFORCEMENT

A. General: Install entire length of longitudinal side rods in mortar with a minimum cover of 5/8 inch on exterior side of walls, 1/2 inch elsewhere. Lap reinforcement a minimum of 6 inches.
   1. Space reinforcement not more than 16 inches o.c.
   2. Space reinforcement not more than 8 inches o.c. in foundation walls and parapet walls.
   3. Provide reinforcement not more than 8 inches above and below wall openings and extending 12 inches beyond openings in addition to continuous reinforcement.

B. Interrupt joint reinforcement at control and expansion joints unless otherwise indicated.

C. Provide continuity at wall intersections by using prefabricated T-shaped units.

D. Provide continuity at corners by using prefabricated L-shaped units.

E. Cut and bend reinforcing units as directed by manufacturer for continuity at corners, returns, offsets, column fireproofing, pipe enclosures, and other special conditions.

F. Furnish and install steel reinforcement, maintaining minimum required clear distances.

G. Where detailed, install grout fully around steel reinforcement. Grouting done in lifts of 24" (for spaces less than 2" wide) and 48" (more than 2" wide). Agitate and puddle grout during and after placement. Exercise care to prevent grout from staining face of masonry. Immediately remove grout spillage on face and top of masonry.

H. Minimum compressive prism strength of the masonry (f'm) shall be 2500 psi when tested at 28 days.

I. All CMU walls shall be reinforced horizontally with reinforcing spaced 16" o.c. vertically, maximum. Lay reinforcing on wall and cover with mortar, then bed unit as herein specified. At corners, reinforcing is to be provided in every horizontal course, with inside rod cut and bent to form corner. Provide reinforcing one course above and below all openings. Reinforcement placed as to assure a 5/8" mortar

cover measured from the outside face of the joint. Side rods shall be lapped at least 14" at splices.

J. Intersecting and butting walls and partitions shall be bonded together by metal anchors spaced 2' - 0" o.c. vertically. Interlocking of units not permitted.

3.10 ANCHORING MASONRY TO STRUCTURAL STEEL AND CONCRETE

A. Anchor masonry to structural steel and concrete where masonry abuts or faces structural steel or concrete to comply with the following:
   1. Provide an open space not less than 1/2 inch wide between masonry and structural steel or concrete unless otherwise indicated. Keep open space free of mortar and other rigid materials.
   2. Anchor masonry with anchors embedded in masonry joints and attached to structure.
   3. Space anchors as indicated, but not more than 16 inches o.c. vertically and 36 inches o.c. horizontally.

3.11 CONTROL AND EXPANSION JOINTS

A. General: Install control and expansion joint materials in unit masonry as masonry progresses. Do not allow materials to span control and expansion joints without provision to allow for in-plane wall or partition movement.

B. Form control joints in concrete masonry using the following method:
   1. Fit bond-breaker strips into hollow contour in ends of CMUs on one side of control joint. Fill resultant core with grout and rake out joints in exposed faces for application of sealant.

3.12 LINTELS

A. Provide galvanized steel lintels where shown and where openings of more than 12 inches for brick-size units and 24 inches for block-size units are shown without structural steel or other supporting lintels.

B. Provide minimum bearing of 8 inches at each jamb unless otherwise indicated.

3.13 FLASHING

A. General: Install embedded flashing in masonry at lintels, ledges, other obstructions to downward flow of water in wall, and where indicated.

B. Install flashing as follows unless otherwise indicated:
   1. Prepare masonry surfaces so they are smooth and free from projections that could puncture flashing. Where flashing is within mortar joint, place through-wall flashing on sloping bed of mortar and cover with mortar. Before cover-

ing with mortar, seal penetrations in flashing with adhesive, sealant, or tape as recommended by flashing manufacturer.

2. At lintels, extend flashing a minimum of 6 inches into masonry at each end. At heads and sills, extend flashing 6 inches at ends and turn up not less than 2 inches to form end dams.
3. Interlock end joints of ribbed sheet metal flashing by overlapping ribs not less than 1-1/2 inches or as recommended by flashing manufacturer, and seal lap with elastomeric sealant complying with requirements in Division 07 Section "Joint Sealants" for application indicated.
4. Install metal drip edges and sealant stops with ribbed sheet metal flashing by interlocking hemmed edges to form hooked seam. Seal seam with elastomeric sealant complying with requirements in Division 07 Section "Joint Sealants" for application indicated.
5. During the installation extend end of flexible flashing past face of the exterior wall so that Architect may verify installation.
6. Cut flexible flashing off flush with face of wall after masonry wall construction is completed.

C. Install single-wythe CMU flashing system in bed joints of CMU walls where indicated to comply with manufacturer's written instructions. Install CMU cell pans with upturned edges located below face shells and webs of CMUs above and with weep spouts aligned with face of wall. Install CMU web covers so that they cover upturned edges of CMU cell pans at CMU webs and extend from face shell to face shell.

D. Install reglets and nailers for flashing and other related construction where they are shown to be built into masonry.

E. Install cell vent weeps in vertical joint of first course immediately above all flashings, weep spaces 24" O.C.

3.14 REINFORCED UNIT MASONRY INSTALLATION

A. Placing Reinforcement: Comply with requirements in ACI 530.1/ASCE 6/TMS 602.

B. Grouting: Do not place grout until entire height of masonry to be grouted has attained enough strength to resist grout pressure.
   1. Comply with requirements in ACI 530.1/ASCE 6/TMS 602 for cleanouts and for grout placement, including minimum grout space and maximum pour height.
   2. Limit height of vertical grout pours to not more than 60 inches.

3.15 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Testing and Inspecting: Owner will engage special inspectors to perform tests and inspections and prepare reports. Allow inspectors access to scaffolding and work

areas, as needed to perform tests and inspections. Retesting of materials that fail to meet specified requirements shall be done at Contractor's expense.

B. Concrete Masonry Unit Test: For each type of unit provided, according to ASTM C 140 for compressive strength.

C. Mortar Aggregate Ratio Test (Proportion Specification): For each mix provided, according to ASTM C 780.

D. Owner will employ and pay for the services of an independent testing laboratory to perform the inspection and testing services specified in this section.

E. Provide a qualified inspector to inspect all structural masonry work on a periodic basis. Inspect the work in progress at least once for every 5000 square feet of wall laid, but not less than once per day.

F. Inspect the following:
   1. Preparation of masonry prisms for testing.
   2. Placement of reinforcing.
   3. Cavities to be grouted.
   4. Mortar mixing operation.
   5. Grouting operation.
   6. Condition of units before laying for excessive absorption.

G. Compressive Test for Mortar:
   1. Secure composite samples of mortar at the job site in accordance with ASTM C780.
   2. Mold and cure three cube specimens in accordance with ASTM C109 and C780. Supervise the curing protection provided by the contractor for test specimens in the field and the transportation from the field to the laboratory. The specimens shall be stored in the field 24 hours and then be moved to the laboratory and cured in accordance with ASTM C780.
   3. Test specimens in accordance with ASTM C780. Two specimens shall be tested at 28 days for acceptance and one shall be tested at seven days for information.
   4. Make one strength test (three cubes) for each 5000 square feet of wall area.

H. Test for Grout:
   1. Secure composite samples of grout at the job site in accordance with ASTM C172.
   2. Mold and cure three, 3” diameter by 6” tall cylinders form each sample in accordance with ASTM C31. Supervise the curing protection provided by the contractor for the test specimens in the field and transportation to the laboratory. The test cylinders shall be stored in the field 24 hours and then moved to the laboratory and cured in accordance with ASTM C31.
   3. Test specimens in accordance with ASTM C39. Two test specimens shall be tested at 28 days for acceptance and one shall be tested at seven days for information.

4. Make one strength test (three cylinders) for each five cubic yards of grout placed, but not less than one strength test for each 5000 square feet of wall area.

I. Prism Tests:
1. Build prisms at the job site using the same materials and methods as being used for the wall construction. Store prisms in a place where they will be undisturbed for two days and have approximately the same curing conditions as the masonry construction. After 48 hours, move prisms to the laboratory and test in accordance with ASTM E447.
2. Concrete Masonry Units: Build prisms of hollow masonry units the same width as the unit by 16” long by 16” high. Apply mortar to the face shells only. Do not fill hollow core with grout. Compute value of ultimate net compressive strength, by dividing the ultimate load by the net face shell area of the masonry units.
3. Bricks: Build brick prisms one brick width and length in plan and five bricks high, using full bed joints as specified. Compute ultimate compressive strength by dividing ultimate load by gross area of bricks.
4. The prisms shall be tested after 28 days, but may be tested at seven days provided the relationship between seven and 28 day strengths has been established for the materials used prior to the start of construction.

3.16 REPAIRING, POINTING, AND CLEANING

A. Remove and replace masonry units that are loose, chipped, broken, stained, or otherwise damaged or that do not match adjoining units. Install new units to match adjoining units; install in fresh mortar, pointed to eliminate evidence of replacement.

B. Pointing: During the tooling of joints, enlarge voids and holes, except weep holes, and completely fill with mortar. Point up joints, including corners, openings, and adjacent construction, to provide a neat, uniform appearance. Prepare joints for sealant application, where indicated.

C. In-Progress Cleaning: Clean unit masonry as work progresses by dry brushing to remove mortar fins and smears before tooling joints.

D. Final Cleaning: After mortar is thoroughly set and cured, clean exposed masonry as follows:
1. Remove large mortar particles by hand with wooden paddles and nonmetallic scrape hoes or chisels.
2. Test cleaning methods on sample wall panel; leave one-half of panel uncleaned for comparison purposes. Obtain Architect's approval of sample cleaning before proceeding with cleaning of masonry.
3. Protect adjacent stone and nonmasonry surfaces from contact with cleaner by covering them with liquid strippable masking agent or polyethylene film and waterproof masking tape.
4. Wet wall surfaces with water before applying cleaners; remove cleaners promptly by rinsing surfaces thoroughly with clear water.

5. Clean concrete masonry by cleaning method indicated in NCMA TEK 8-2A applicable to type of stain on exposed surfaces.

3.17 MASONRY WASTE DISPOSAL

A. Salvageable Materials: Unless otherwise indicated, excess masonry materials are Contractor's property. At completion of unit masonry work, remove from Project site.

B. Excess Masonry Waste: Remove excess clean masonry waste that cannot be used as fill, as described above, and other masonry waste, and legally dispose of off Owner's property.

END OF SECTION 04 22 00

ROCIP Project: Withhold insurance cost. Please refer to sections 00425 & 00810 for information.

SECTION 04 43 00 - STONE MASONRY

PART 1 - GENENERAL

1.01 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.02 SUMMARY

A. Section includes the following applications of stone masonry:
   1. Anchored to unit masonry backup.
   2. Anchored to cold-formed metal framing and wood sheathing.

B. Related Sections:
   1. Division 01 Section “Sustainable Construction Requirements”
   2. Division 04 Section "Unit Masonry" for concealed flashing, horizontal joint reinforcement, and veneer anchors.
   3. Division 07 Section "Joint Sealants".
   4. Division 07 Section "Sheet Metal Flashing and Trim" for exposed sheet metal flashing.

C. Products installed, but not furnished, in this Section include:
   1. Steel lintels for stone masonry specified in Division 05 Section "Metal Fabrications."

1.03 SUBMITTALS

A. Division 01 - “Submittals”.

B. Submit sample board of each stone color and/or type, and mortar batch showing full range of color.

C. Submit product literature on mortar color and waterproofing admixtures.

D. Construct 6'-0" x 6'-0" mock-up panel of typical masonry wall at window, incorporating face stone, rowlock brick, window, and CMU in manner as used on project.

E. Provide range of 32 mortar colors for selection of one color by Architect.

F. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
   1. For stone varieties proposed for use on Project, include test data indicating compliance with physical properties specified or required by referenced ASTM standards.

1.04 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Installer Qualifications: A qualified installer who employs experienced stonemasons and stone fitters.

B. Source Limitations for Stone: Obtain each variety of stone, regardless of finish, from one quarry, whether specified in this Section or in another Section of the Specifications, with resources to provide materials of consistent quality in appearance and physical properties.

C. Source Limitations for Mortar Materials: Obtain mortar ingredients of a uniform quality, including color for exposed masonry, from single manufacturer for each cementitious component and from single source or producer for each aggregate.

D. Mockups: Build mockups to demonstrate aesthetic effects and set quality standards for materials and execution.
   1. Build mockups for typical exterior wall in sizes approximately 72 inches long by 72 inches high by full thickness, including face and backup wythes and accessories.
      a. Include window framing.
      b. Include a sealant-filled joint at least 16 inches long in mockup.
      c. Include through-wall flashing installed for a 24-inch length in corner of mockup approximately 16 inches down from top of mockup, with a 12-inch length of flashing left exposed to view (omit stone masonry above half of flashing).
      d. Include metal studs, sheathing, veneer anchors, flashing, and weep holes in exterior masonry-veneer wall mockup.
   2. Protect accepted mockups from the elements with weather-resistant membrane.
   3. Approval of mockups is for color, texture, and blending of stone; relationship of mortar and sealant colors to stone colors; tooling of joints; and aesthetic qualities of workmanship.
      a. Approval of mockups does not constitute approval of deviations from the Contract Documents contained in mockups unless Architect specifically approves such deviations in writing.
   4. Remove mockups after Substantial Completion.

1.05 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Store cementitious materials on elevated platforms, under cover, and in a dry location. Do not use cementitious materials that have become damp.

B. Store aggregates where grading and other required characteristics can be maintained and contamination avoided.

C. Deliver preblended, dry mortar mix in moisture-resistant containers designed for lifting and emptying into dispensing silo. Store preblended, dry mortar mix in delivery containers on elevated platforms, under cover, and in a dry location or in a metal dispensing silo with weatherproof cover.

D. Store masonry accessories, including metal items, to prevent corrosion and accumulation of dirt and oil.

1.06 PROJECT CONDITIONS

A. Protection of Stone Masonry: During construction, cover tops of walls, projections, and sills with waterproof sheeting at end of each day's work. Cover partially completed stone masonry when construction is not in progress.
   1. Extend cover a minimum of 24 inches down both sides and hold cover securely in place.

B. Stain Prevention: Immediately remove mortar and soil to prevent them from staining the face of stone masonry.
   1. Protect base of walls from rain-splashed mud and mortar splatter by coverings spread on the ground and over the wall surface.
   2. Protect sills, ledges, and projections from mortar droppings.
   3. Protect surfaces of window and door frames, as well as similar products with painted and integral finishes, from mortar droppings.
   4. Turn scaffold boards near the wall on edge at end of each day to prevent rain from splashing mortar and dirt on completed stone masonry.

C. Cold-Weather Requirements: Do not use frozen materials or materials mixed or coated with ice or frost. Do not build on frozen substrates. Remove and replace stone masonry damaged by frost or freezing conditions. Comply with cold-weather construction requirements contained in ACI 530.1/ASCE 6/TMS 602.
   1. Cold-Weather Cleaning: Use liquid cleaning methods only when air temperature is 40 deg F (4 deg C) and above and will remain so until masonry has dried, but not less than 7 days after completing cleaning.

D. Hot-Weather Requirements: Comply with hot-weather construction requirements contained in ACI 530.1/ASCE 6/TMS 602.

1.07 COORDINATION

A. Advise installers of other work about specific requirements for placement of reinforcement, veneer anchors, flashing, and similar items to be built into stone masonry.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.01 STONE

A. Varieties and Sources: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide stone of varieties and from sources complying with Division 04 Section " Stone Masonry."

2.02 LIMESTONE

A. Regional Materials: Provide Limestone that have been manufactured within 500 miles of Project site from aggregates and cement that have been extracted, harvested, or recovered, as well as manufactured, within 500 miles of Project site.

B. Limestone: Comply with ASTM C 568.
   1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide the following:
      a. Lee Valley Blend, Quality Stone Company, Telephone No. (254) 793-3791.

C. Match Architect's samples for color, finish, and other stone characteristics relating to aesthetic effects.

2.03 MORTAR MATERIALS

A. Portland Cement: ASTM C 150, Type I or II, except Type III may be used for cold-weather construction. Provide natural color or white cement as required to produce mortar color indicated.

B. Hydrated Lime: ASTM C 207, Type S.

C. Mortar Cement: Not Used.

D. Masonry Cement: Not Used.

E. Aggregate: ASTM C 144 and as follows:
   1. For pointing mortar, use aggregate graded with 100 percent passing No. 16 sieve.
   2. White Aggregates: Natural white sand or ground white stone.
   3. Colored Aggregates: Natural-colored sand or ground marble, granite, or other sound stone; of color necessary to produce required mortar color.
      a. Match Architect's sample.

F. Water: Potable.

2.04 VENEER ANCHORS

A. Materials:
   1. Hot-Dip Galvanized-Steel Wire: ASTM A 82, with ASTM A 153/A 153M, Class B-2.

B. Size: Sufficient to extend at least halfway, but not less than 1-1/2 inches, through stone masonry and with at least 5/8-inch cover on outside face.

C. Wire Veneer Anchors: Wire ties formed from W1.7 or 0.148-inch-diameter, hot-dip galvanized-steel wire.

1. Ties are bent in the form of triangular loops designed to be attached to masonry joint reinforcement specified in Division 04 Section "Unit Masonry" with vertical wires passing through ties and through eyes projecting from masonry joint reinforcement.

D. Masonry Wall Tab Anchors at concrete block: A 4" rectangular hot-dip galvanized adjustable ladder tab for cavity installation equal to Wire Bond Series 600.

E. Adjustable, Screw-Attached Veneer Anchors: Units consisting of a wire tie section and a metal anchor section that allow vertical adjustment but resist tension and compression forces perpendicular to plane of wall, for attachment over sheathing to wood or metal studs, and as follows:
   1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements provide:
      a. Dur-O-Wal, a Dayton Superior Company; D/A 213 or D/A 210 with D/A 700-708.
      b. Heckmann Building Products Inc.; 315-D with 316 or Pos-I-Tie.
      c. Hohmann & Barnard, Inc.; DW-10, DW-10HS or DW-10-X.
      d. Wire-Bond; 1004, Type III or RJ-711.
   2. Structural Performance Characteristics: Capable of withstanding a 100-lbf (445-N) load in both tension and compression without deforming or developing play in excess of 0.05 inch.
   3. Anchor Section: Rib-stiffened, sheet metal plate with screw holes top and bottom, 2-3/4 inches wide by 3 inches high; with projecting tabs having slotted holes for inserting vertical legs of wire tie specially formed to fit veneer anchor section.
   4. Anchor Section: Sheet metal plate, 1-1/4 inches wide by 9 inches long, with screw holes top and bottom and with raised rib-stiffened strap, 5/8 inch wide by 3-5/8 inches long, stamped into center to provide a slot between strap and plate for inserting wire tie.
   5. Wire Ties: Triangular-, rectangular-, or T-shaped wire ties fabricated from 0.188-inch-diameter, hot-dip galvanized-steel wire.

2.05 STONE TRIM ANCHORS

A. Stone Trim Anchors: Units fabricated with tabs or dowels designed to engage kerfs or holes in stone trim units and holes for fasteners or postinstalled anchor bolts for fastening to substrates or framing as indicated.
   1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
      a. Halfen Anchoring Systems; Meadow Burke.
      b. Heckmann Building Products Inc.
      c. Hohmann & Barnard, Inc.

B. Materials: Fabricate anchors from stainless steel, ASTM A 240/A 240M, Type 304. Fabricate dowels from stainless steel, ASTM A 276, Type 304.

2.06 EMBEDDED FLASHING MATERIALS

A. Metal Flashing: Refer to Division 07 Section “Sheet Metal Flashing and Trim”.

2.07 MISCELLANEOUS MASONRY ACCESSORIES

A. Compressible Filler: Premolded filler strips complying with ASTM D 1056, Grade 2A1; compressible up to 35 percent; of width and thickness indicated; formulated from urethane.

B. Cementitious Dampproofing: Cementitious formulations that are recommended by ILI and that are nonstaining to stone, compatible with joint sealants, and noncorrosive to veneer anchors and attachments.

C. Asphalt Dampproofing: Refer to Division 07 Section “Dampproofing”.

D. Weep Baffle: Extruded Polypropylene Copolymer weeps equal to Dur-O-Wall “Cell Vent” Model DA 1006.

2.08 MASONRY CLEANERS

A. Proprietary Acidic Cleaner: Manufacturer's standard-strength cleaner designed for removing mortar and grout stains, efflorescence, and other new construction stains from stone masonry surfaces without discoloring or damaging masonry surfaces; expressly approved for intended use by cleaner manufacturer and stone producer.
   1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
      a. Diedrich Technologies, Inc.
      b. Dominion Restoration Products.
      c. EaCo Chem, Inc.
      d. Hydrochemical Techniques, Inc.
      e. Prosoco, Inc.

2.09 MORTAR MIXES

A. General: Do not use admixtures, including pigments, air-entraining agents, accelerators, retarders, water-repellent agents, antifreeze compounds, or other admixtures, unless otherwise indicated.
   1. Do not use calcium chloride.
   2. Limit cementitious materials in mortar to portland cement and lime.
   3. Add cold-weather admixture (if used) at same rate for all mortar that will be exposed to view, regardless of weather conditions, to ensure that mortar color is consistent.
   4. Mixing Pointing Mortar: Thoroughly mix cementitious and aggregate materials together before adding water. Then mix again, adding only enough water to produce a damp, unworkable mix that will retain its form when pressed into a ball. Maintain mortar in this dampened condition for one to two hours. Add remaining water in small portions until mortar reaches desired consistency.

Use mortar within 30 minutes of final mixing; do not retemper or use partially hardened material.

B. Colored-Aggregate Mortar: Produce required mortar color by using colored aggregates and natural color or white cement as necessary to produce required mortar color.
   1. Submit samples to be approved by Architect.

2.10 FABRICATION

A. Fabricate stone to comply with sizes, shapes, and tolerances recommended by applicable stone association or, if none, by stone source, for faces, edges, beds, and backs.
   1. For limestone, comply with recommendations in ILI's "Indiana Limestone Handbook."

B. Cut stone to produce pieces of thickness, size, and shape indicated, including details on Drawings. Dress joints (bed and vertical) straight and at right angle to face unless otherwise indicated.

C. Cut and drill sinkages and holes in stone for anchors and supports.

D. Thickness of Stone: Provide thickness indicated, but not less than the following:
   1. Thickness: 4 inches plus or minus 1/4 inch.

E. Shape stone for type of masonry (pattern) as follows:
   1. Sawed bed, random-range ashlar with random course heights and random lengths (interrupted coursed).

F. Finish exposed faces and edges of stone to comply with requirements indicated for finish and to match approved samples and mockups.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.01 EXAMINATION

A. Examine surfaces indicated to receive stone masonry, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance.

B. Examine substrate to verify that dovetail slots, inserts, reinforcement, veneer anchors, flashing, and other items installed in substrates and required for or extending into stone masonry are correctly installed.

C. Examine wall framing, sheathing, and weather-resistant sheathing paper to verify that stud locations are suitable for spacing of veneer anchors and that installation will result in a weatherproof covering.

D. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.02 PREPARATION

A. Accurately mark stud centerlines on face of weather-resistant sheathing paper before beginning stone installation.

B. Coat concrete and unit masonry backup with asphalt dampproofing.

C. Clean dirty or stained stone surfaces by removing soil, stains, and foreign materials before setting. Clean stone by thoroughly scrubbing with fiber brushes and then drenching with clear water. Use only mild cleaning compounds that contain no caustic or harsh materials or abrasives.

3.03 SETTING OF STONE MASONRY, GENERAL

A. Perform necessary field cutting and trimming as stone is set.
   1. Use power saws to cut stone that is fabricated with saw-cut surfaces. Cut lines straight and true, with edges eased slightly to prevent snipping.
   2. Use hammer and chisel to split stone that is fabricated with split surfaces. Make edges straight and true, matching similar surfaces that were shop or quarry fabricated.
   3. Pitch face at field-split edges as needed to match stones that are not field split.

B. Sort stone before it is placed in wall to remove stone that does not comply with requirements relating to aesthetic effects, physical properties, or fabrication, or that is otherwise unsuitable for intended use.

C. Arrange stones in range ashlar pattern with course heights as indicated, random lengths, and uniform joint widths, with offset between vertical joints as indicated.

D. Arrange stones with color and size variations uniformly dispersed for an evenly blended appearance.

E. Set stone to comply with requirements indicated on Drawings. Install supports, fasteners, and other attachments indicated or necessary to secure stone masonry in place. Set stone accurately in locations indicated with edges and faces aligned according to established relationships and indicated tolerances.

F. Maintain uniform joint widths except for variations due to different stone sizes and where minor variations are required to maintain bond alignment if any. Lay walls with joints not less than 3/8 inch at narrowest points or more than 3/8 inch minumum to 1/2 inch at widest points.

G. Provide sealant joints of widths and at locations indicated.
   1. Keep sealant joints free of mortar and other rigid materials.
   2. Sealing joints is specified in Division 07 Section "Joint Sealants."

H. Install metal expansion strips in sealant joints at locations indicated. Build flanges of expansion strips into masonry by embedding in mortar between stone masonry and backup wythe. Lap each joint 4 inches in direction of water flow. Seal joints below grade and at junctures with horizontal expansion joints if any.

I. Install embedded flashing and weep holes, lintels, ledges, other obstructions to downward flow of water in wall, and where indicated.
   1. At stud-framed walls, extend flashing through stone masonry, up the face of sheathing at least 8 inches and behind sheathing.
   2. At lintels and shelf angles, extend flashing full length of angles but not less than 6 inches into masonry at each end.
   3. At sills, extend flashing not less than 4 inches at ends.
   4. At ends of head and sill flashing turn up not less than 2 inches to form end dams.
   5. Interlock end joints of ribbed sheet metal flashing by overlapping ribs not less than 1-1/2 inches or as recommended by flashing manufacturer, and seal lap with elastomeric sealant complying with requirements in Division 07 Section "Joint Sealants" for application indicated.
   6. Extend sheet metal flashing 1/2 inch beyond face of masonry at exterior and turn flashing down to form a drip.
   7. Install metal drip edges beneath flexible flashing at exterior face of wall. Stop flexible flashing 1/2 inch back from outside face of wall and adhere flexible flashing to top of metal drip edge.
   8. Install metal flashing termination beneath flexible flashing at exterior face of wall. Stop flexible flashing 1/2 inch back from outside face of wall and adhere flexible flashing to top of metal flashing termination.

J. Coat limestone with cementitious dampproofing as follows:
   1. Stone at Grade: Beds, joints, and back surfaces to at least 12 inches above finish-grade elevations.
   2. Stone Extending below Grade: Beds, joints, back surfaces, and face surfaces below grade.
   3. Allow cementitious dampproofing formulations to cure before setting dampproofed stone. Do not damage or remove dampproofing in the course of handling and setting stone.

K. Place weep holes and vents in joints where moisture may accumulate, including at base of cavity walls and at flashing.
   1. Place cavity drainage material in cavities to comply with configuration requirements for cavity drainage material in "Miscellaneous Masonry Accessories" Article 2.07.

L. Install vents in vertical head joints at the top of each continuous cavity at spacing indicated.

3.04 CONSTRUCTION TOLERANCES

A. Variation from Plumb: For vertical lines and surfaces, do not exceed 1/4 inch in 10 feet, 3/8 inch in 20 feet, or 1/2 inch in 40 feet more. For external corners, expansion joints, control joints, and other conspicuous lines, do not exceed 1/4 inch in 20 feet 1/2 inch in 40 feet or more.

B. Variation from Level: For bed joints and lines of exposed lintels, sills, parapets, horizontal grooves, and other conspicuous lines, do not exceed 1/4 inch in 20 feet or 1/2 inch in 40 feet or more.

C. Variation of Linear Building Line: For position shown in plan, do not exceed 1/2 inch in 20 feet or 3/4 inch in 40 feet or more.

D. Measure variation from level, plumb, and position shown in plan as variation of the average plane of the face of each stone from level, plumb, or dimensioned plane.

E. Variation in Mortar-Joint Thickness: Do not vary from joint size range indicated.

F. Variation in Plane between Adjacent Stones: Do not exceed one-half of tolerance specified for thickness of stone.

3.05 INSTALLATION OF ANCHORED STONE MASONRY

A. Anchor stone masonry to concrete with corrugated-metal veneer anchors unless otherwise indicated. Secure anchors by inserting dovetailed ends into dovetail slots in concrete.

B. Anchor stone masonry to unit masonry with corrugated-metal veneer anchors unless otherwise indicated. Embed anchors in unit masonry mortar joints or grouted cells for distance at least one-half of unit masonry thickness.

C. Anchor stone masonry to stud framing with adjustable, screw-attached veneer anchors unless otherwise indicated. Fasten anchors through sheathing to framing with two screws.

D. Space anchors to provide not less than 1 anchor per 1.75 sq. ft. of wall area. Install additional anchors within 12 inches of openings, sealant joints, and perimeter at intervals not exceeding 12 inches.

E. Space anchors not more than 16 inches o.c. vertically and 16 inches o.c. horizontally. Install additional anchors within 12 inches of openings, sealant joints, and perimeter at intervals not exceeding 12 inches.

F. Anchor stone trim with stone trim anchors where indicated. Install anchors by fastening to substrate and inserting tabs and dowels into kerfs and holes in stone units. Provide compressible filler in ends of dowel holes and bottoms of kerfs to prevent end bearing of dowels and anchor tabs on stone. Fill remainder of anchor holes and kerfs with mortar.

G. Set stone in full bed of mortar with full head joints unless otherwise indicated. Build anchors into mortar joints as stone is set.

H. Provide cavity as indicated between stone masonry and backup construction unless otherwise indicated. Keep cavity free of mortar droppings and debris.

3.06 POINTING

A. Prepare stone-joint surfaces for pointing with mortar by removing dust and mortar particles. Where setting mortar was removed to depths greater than surrounding areas, apply pointing mortar in layers not more than 3/8 inch deep until a uniform depth is formed.

B. Point stone joints by placing and compacting pointing mortar in layers not more than 3/8 inch deep. Compact each layer thoroughly and allow to become thumbprint hard before applying next layer.

C. Tool joints, when pointing mortar is thumbprint hard, with a smooth jointing tool to produce the following joint profile:
   1. Joint Profile: Concave.

3.07 ADJUSTING AND CLEANING

A. Remove and replace stone masonry of the following description:
   1. Broken, chipped, stained, or otherwise damaged stone. Stone may be repaired if methods and results are approved by Architect.
   2. Defective joints.
   3. Stone masonry not matching approved samples and mockups.
   4. Stone masonry not complying with other requirements indicated.

B. Replace in a manner that results in stone masonry matching approved samples and mockups, complying with other requirements, and showing no evidence of replacement.

C. In-Progress Cleaning: Clean stone masonry as work progresses. Remove mortar fins and smears before tooling joints.

D. Final Cleaning: After mortar is thoroughly set and cured, clean stone masonry as follows:
   1. Remove large mortar particles by hand with wooden paddles and nonmetallic scrape hoes or chisels.
   2. Test cleaning methods on mockup; leave one-half of panel uncleaned for comparison purposes. Obtain Architect's approval of sample cleaning before cleaning stone masonry.
   3. Protect adjacent stone and nonmasonry surfaces from contact with cleaner by covering them with liquid strippable masking agent, polyethylene film, or waterproof masking tape.

4. Wet wall surfaces with water before applying cleaner; remove cleaner promptly by rinsing thoroughly with clear water.
5. Clean stone masonry by bucket and brush hand-cleaning method described in BIA Technical Note No. 20 Revised II, using job-mixed detergent solution.
6. Clean stone masonry with proprietary acidic cleaner applied according to manufacturer's written instructions.

END OF SECTION 04 43 00

ROCIP Project: Withhold insurance cost. Please refer to sections 00425 & 00810 for information.

SECTION 04 72 00 - CAST STONE MASONRY

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.01 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.02 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:
   1. Cast stone trim including the following:
      a. Window sills.

B. Related Sections:
   1. Division 01 Section “Sustainable Construction Requirements”.
   2. Division 04 Section "Concrete Unit Masonry".
   3. Division 04 Section "Stone Masonry."
   4. Division 07 Section "Joint Sealants."

1.03 SUBMITTALS

A. Comply with pertinent provisions of Division 01 Section “Submittals”, unless otherwise indicated.

B. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
   1. For cast stone units, include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes.

C. Shop Drawings: Show fabrication and installation details for cast stone units. Include dimensions, details of reinforcement and anchorages if any, and indication of finished faces.
   1. Include building elevations showing layout of units and locations of joints and anchors.

D. Samples for Initial Selection: For colored mortar.

E. Samples for Verification:
   1. For each color and texture of cast stone required, 10 inches square in size.
   2. For colored mortar. Make Samples using same sand and mortar ingredients to be used on Project. Label Samples to indicated types and amounts of pigments used.

ROCIP Project: Withhold insurance cost. Please refer to sections 00425 & 00810 for information.

1.04 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Manufacturer Qualifications: A qualified manufacturer of cast stone units similar to those indicated for this Project, that has sufficient production capacity to manufacture required units, and is a plant certified by the Cast Stone Institute the Architectural Precast Association.

B. Agency Qualifications: Qualified according to ASTM E 329 for testing indicated.

C. Source Limitations for Cast Stone: Obtain cast stone units through single source from single manufacturer.

D. Source Limitations for Mortar Materials: Obtain mortar ingredients of a uniform quality, including color, from one manufacturer for each cementitious component and from one source or producer for each aggregate.

1.05 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Coordinate delivery of cast stone with unit masonry work to avoid delaying the Work and to minimize the need for on-site storage.

B. Pack, handle, and ship cast stone units in suitable packs or pallets.
   1. Lift with wide-belt slings; do not use wire rope or ropes that might cause staining. Move cast stone units, if required, using dollies with wood supports.
   2. Store cast stone units on wood skids or pallets with nonstaining, waterproof covers, securely tied. Arrange to distribute weight evenly and to prevent damage to units. Ventilate under covers to prevent condensation.

C. Store cementitious materials on elevated platforms, under cover, and in a dry location. Do not use cementitious materials that have become damp.

D. Store mortar aggregates where grading and other required characteristics can be maintained and contamination can be avoided.

1.06 PROJECT CONDITIONS

A. Cold-Weather Requirements: Do not use frozen materials or materials mixed or coated with ice or frost. Do not build on frozen substrates. Comply with cold-weather construction requirements in ACI 530.1/ASCE 6/TMS 602.
   1. Cold-Weather Cleaning: Use liquid cleaning methods only when air temperature is 40 deg F (4 deg C) and above and will remain so until cast stone has dried, but no fewer than seven days after completing cleaning.

B. Hot-Weather Requirements: Comply with hot-weather construction requirements in ACI 530.1/ASCE 6/TMS 602.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.01 CAST STONE MATERIALS

A. General: Comply with ASTM C 1364 and the following:

B. Portland Cement: ASTM C 150, Type I or Type III, containing not more than 0.60 percent total alkali when tested according to ASTM C 114. Provide white cement as required to produce cast stone color indicated.

C. Coarse Aggregates: Granite, quartz, or limestone complying with ASTM C 33; gradation and colors as needed to produce required cast stone textures and colors.

D. Fine Aggregates: Natural sand or crushed stone complying with ASTM C 33, gradation and colors as needed to produce required cast stone textures and colors.

E. Color Pigment: ASTM C 979, synthetic mineral-oxide pigments or colored water-reducing admixtures; color stable, free of carbon black, nonfading, and resistant to lime and other alkalis.

F. Admixtures: Use only admixtures specified or approved in writing by Architect.
   1. Do not use admixtures that contain more than 0.1 percent water-soluble chloride ions by mass of cementitious materials. Do not use admixtures containing calcium chloride.
   2. Use only admixtures that are certified by manufacturer to be compatible with cement and other admixtures used.
   3. Air-Entraining Admixture: ASTM C 260. Add to mixes for units exposed to the exterior at manufacturer's prescribed rate to result in an air content of 4 to 6 percent, except do not add to zero-slump concrete mixes.

G. Reinforcement: Deformed steel bars complying with ASTM A 615/A 615M, Grade 60 (Grade 420). Use galvanized or epoxy-coated reinforcement when covered with less than 1-1/2 inches of cast stone material.
   1. Epoxy Coating: ASTM A 775/A 775M.
   2. Galvanized Coating: ASTM A 767/A 767M.

H. Embedded Anchors and Other Inserts: Fabricated from stainless steel complying with ASTM A 240/A 240M, ASTM A 276.

I. Color: To be selected by Architect.

2.02 CAST STONE UNITS

A. Regional Materials: Provide cast stone units that have been manufactured within 500 miles (800 km) of Project site from aggregates and cement that have been extracted, harvested, or recovered, as well as manufactured, within 500 miles (800 km) of Project site.

B. Fabricate units with sharp arris and accurately reproduced details, with indicated texture on all exposed surfaces unless otherwise indicated.
   1. Slope exposed horizontal surfaces 1:12 to drain unless otherwise indicated.
   2. Provide raised fillets at backs of sills and at ends indicated to be built into jambs.
   3. Provide drips on projecting elements unless otherwise indicated.

C. Fabrication Tolerances:
   1. Variation in Cross Section: Do not vary from indicated dimensions by more than 1/8 inch.
   2. Variation in Length: Do not vary from indicated dimensions by more than 1/360 of the length of unit or 1/8 inch, whichever is greater, but in no case by more than 1/4 inch.
   3. Warp, Bow, and Twist: Not to exceed 1/360 of the length of unit or 1/8 inch, whichever is greater.
   4. Location of Grooves, False Joints, Holes, Anchorages, and Similar Features: Do not vary from indicated position by more than 1/8 inch on formed surfaces of units and 3/8 inch on unformed surfaces.

D. Cure units as follows:
   1. Cure units in enclosed moist curing room at 95 to 100 percent 100 deg F (38 deg C) for 12 hours or relative humidity and temperature of 70 deg F (21 deg C) for 16 hours.
   2. Keep units damp and continue curing to comply with one of the following:
      a. No fewer than five days at mean daily temperature of 70 deg F (21 deg C) or above.
      b. No fewer than six days at mean daily temperature of 60 deg F (16 deg C) or above.
      c. No fewer than seven days at mean daily temperature of 50 deg F (10 deg C) or above.
      d. No fewer than eight days at mean daily temperature of 45 deg F (7 deg C) or above.

E. Colors and Textures: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.

2.03 MORTAR MATERIALS

A. Provide mortar materials that comply with Division 04 Section "Concrete Unit Masonry."

B. Regional Materials: Provide aggregate for mortar and grout, cement, and lime that have been extracted, harvested, or recovered, as well as manufactured, within 500 miles (800 km) of Project site.

C. Portland Cement: ASTM C 150, Type I. Provide natural color or white cement as required to produce mortar color indicated.

D. Hydrated Lime: ASTM C 207, Type S.

E. Portland Cement-Lime Mix: Packaged blend of Portland cement and hydrated lime containing no other ingredients.

F. Masonry Cement: Not acceptable.

G. Mortar Pigments: Natural and synthetic iron oxides and chromium oxides, compounded for use in mortar mixes and complying with ASTM C 979. Use only pigments with a record of satisfactory performance in masonry mortar.
   1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide the following:
      a. Solomon Colors, Inc.; SGS Mortar Colors.
      b. Color to be selected by Architect.

H. Aggregate for Mortar: ASTM C 144.
   1. For mortar that is exposed to view, use washed aggregate consisting of natural sand or crushed stone.
   2. For joints less than 1/4 inch thick, use aggregate graded with 100 percent passing the No. 16 sieve.
   3. White-Mortar Aggregates: Natural white sand or crushed white stone.
   4. Colored-Mortar Aggregates: Natural sand or crushed stone of color necessary to produce required mortar color.

I. Water: Potable.

2.04 ACCESSORIES

A. Anchors: Type and size indicated, fabricated from Type 304 stainless steel complying with ASTM A 240/A 240M, ASTM A 276.

B. Dowels: 1/2-inch diameter, round bars, fabricated from Type 304 stainless steel complying with ASTM A 240/A 240M, ASTM A 276.

C. Proprietary Acidic Cleaner: Manufacturer's standard-strength cleaner designed for removing mortar/grout stains, efflorescence, and other new construction stains from new masonry without discoloring or damaging masonry surfaces. Use product expressly approved for intended use by cast stone manufacturer and expressly approved by cleaner manufacturer for use on cast stone and adjacent masonry materials.

2.05 MORTAR MIXES

A. Comply with requirements in Division 04 Section "Concrete Unit Masonry" for mortar mixes.

B. Do not use admixtures including pigments, air-entraining agents, accelerators, retarders, water-repellent agents, antifreeze compounds, or other admixtures unless otherwise indicated.
   1. Do not use calcium chloride in mortar or grout.
   2. Use Portland cement-lime mortar unless otherwise indicated.

C. Comply with ASTM C 270, Proportion Specification.
   1. For pointing mortar, use Type N.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.01 EXAMINATION

A. Examine substrates and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of work.

B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.02 SETTING CAST STONE IN MORTAR

A. Install cast stone units to comply with requirements in Division 04 Section "Concrete Unit Masonry."

B. Set cast stone as indicated on Drawings. Set units accurately in locations indicated with edges and faces aligned according to established relationships and indicated tolerances.
   1. Install anchors, supports, fasteners, and other attachments indicated or necessary to secure units in place.
   2. Coordinate installation of cast stone with installation of flashing specified in other Sections.

C. Wet joint surfaces thoroughly before applying mortar or setting in mortar.

D. Set units in full bed of mortar with full head joints unless otherwise indicated.
   1. Set units with joints 1/4 to 3/8 inch wide unless otherwise indicated.
   2. Build anchors and ties into mortar joints as units are set.
   3. Fill dowel holes and anchor slots with mortar.
   4. Build concealed flashing into mortar joints as units are set.
   5. Keep head joints in coping and other units with exposed horizontal surfaces open to receive sealant.
   6. Keep joints at shelf angles open to receive sealant.

E. Rake out joints for pointing with mortar to depths of not less than 3/4 inch. Rake joints to uniform depths with square bottoms and clean sides. Scrub faces of units to remove excess mortar as joints are raked.

F. Point mortar joints by placing and compacting mortar in layers not greater than 3/8 inch. Compact each layer thoroughly and allow it to become thumbprint hard before applying next layer.

G. Tool exposed joints slightly concave when thumbprint hard, using a jointer larger than joint thickness unless otherwise indicated.

H. Provide sealant joints at copings and other horizontal surfaces, at expansion, control, and pressure-relieving joints, and at locations indicated.
   1. Keep joints free of mortar and other rigid materials.
   2. Build in compressible foam-plastic joint fillers where indicated.
   3. Form joint of width indicated, but not less than 3/8 inch.
   4. Prime cast stone surfaces to receive sealant and install compressible backer rod in joints before applying sealant unless otherwise indicated.
   5. Prepare and apply sealant of type and at locations indicated to comply with applicable requirements in Division 07 Section "Joint Sealants."

3.03 ADJUSTING AND CLEANING

A. Remove and replace stained and otherwise damaged units and units not matching approved Samples. Cast stone may be repaired if methods and results are approved by Architect.

B. Replace units in a manner that results in cast stone matching approved Samples, complying with other requirements, and showing no evidence of replacement.

C. In-Progress Cleaning: Clean cast stone as work progresses.
   1. Remove mortar fins and smears before tooling joints.
   2. Remove excess sealant immediately, including spills, smears, and spatter.

D. Final Cleaning: After mortar is thoroughly set and cured, clean exposed cast stone as follows:
   1. Remove large mortar particles by hand with wooden paddles and nonmetallic scrape hoes or chisels.
   2. Test cleaning methods on sample; leave one sample uncleaned for comparison purposes. Obtain Architect's approval of sample cleaning before proceeding with cleaning of cast stone.
   3. Protect adjacent surfaces from contact with cleaner by covering them with liquid strippable masking agent or polyethylene film and waterproof masking tape.
   4. Wet surfaces with water before applying cleaners; remove cleaners promptly by rinsing thoroughly with clear water.
   5. Clean cast stone by bucket-and-brush hand-cleaning method described in BIA Technical Notes 20.
   6. Clean cast stone with proprietary acidic cleaner applied according to manufacturer's written instructions.

END OF SECTION 04 72 00

SECTION 05 12 00 – STRUCTURAL STEEL

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. This Section includes the following:

1. Structural steel framing members and connections.
2. Shop prime painting and touch up painting in the field.
3. Temporary construction bracing.
4. Fabrication and erection inspection and testing.
5. Grouting under base plates and bearing plates.

B. Related Sections include the following:

1. Division 1 Section "Quality Requirements" for independent testing agency procedures and administrative requirements.
2. Division 1 Section “Submittals” for administrative requirements for the submission of shop drawings and other submittals.
3. Division 5 Section "Metal Fabrications" for steel lintels or shelf angles not attached to structural-steel frame, miscellaneous steel fabrications and other metal items not defined as structural steel.
4. Division 7 Section “Sprayed-On Fireproofing”.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. Structural Steel: Elements of structural-steel frame, as classified by AISC's "Code of Standard Practice for Steel Buildings and Bridges," that support design loads.

1.4 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Connections: Provide details of simple shear connections required by the Contract Documents to be selected or completed by structural-steel fabricator to withstand LRFD loads indicated and comply with other information and restrictions indicated.

1. Select and complete connections using schematic details indicated and AISC's " Steel Construction Manual, edition as referenced in the Building Code.
2. Engineering Responsibility: Fabricator's responsibilities include using a qualified professional engineer to prepare structural analysis data for structural-steel connections.

B. Construction: Type PR, partially restrained.

1.5 SUBMITTALS

A. Submit in accordance with Division 1 Section “Submittals”.

B. Submittals for Review

1. Provide complete details and schedules for fabrication and shop assembly of members, erection plans, details, procedures, and diagrams showing sequence of erection of structural steel components.

   a. Include details of cuts, connections, splices, camber, holes, and other pertinent data.
   b. Include embedment drawings.
   c. Indicate welds by standard AWS symbols, distinguishing between shop and field welds, and show size, length, and type of each weld.
   d. Indicate type, size, and length of bolts, distinguishing between shop and field bolts. Identify pretensioned and slip-critical high-strength bolted connections.

2. Shop drawings and erection drawings shall not be made by using reproductions of Contract Drawings.

3. Structural steel members for which shop drawings have not been reviewed shall not be fabricated. Engineer's review shall cover general locations, spacings, and details of design. Omission from shop drawings of any materials required by the Contract Documents shall not relieve the Contractor of the responsibility of furnishing and installing such materials, even though such shop drawings may have been reviewed and returned.

C. Submittals for Information:

1. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
2. For structural-steel connections indicated to comply with design loads, include structural analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.
3. Connection Calculations: Contractor shall design all connections not specifically detailed on the Drawings under direct supervision of a Professional Structural

Engineer experienced in design of this work and licensed in the State of Texas. Submit design calculations for the connections designed by the contractor, prior to or with the steel shop drawings. Shop drawings containing connections for which calculations have not been received shall be returned unchecked as an incomplete submittal. Calculations shall be retained for the Engineer's file and will not be approved or returned.

a. Connections shall be designed in accordance with the requirements specified in the Structural Drawings and Specifications.
b. Beam connections: Submit a complete calculation for each different beam connection used and detailed on the shop drawings. Conditions which are similar may be grouped together so as to utilize a single connection design.
c. Submit complete connection calculations for wind brace connections, truss connections, moment connections and other connections where specified on the Contract Drawings. Each calculation shall identify the location or locations for which the connection applies, the member mark(s) from the Contract Documents, the piece mark(s) from the shop drawings, the member size, the design loading(s), member size, and the end of the member to which the connection applies.

4. Welding certificates.
5. Qualification Data: For Installer and fabricator.
6. Material Test Reports: Signed by manufacturers certifying that the following products comply with requirements:

   a. Structural steel mill test reports including chemical and physical properties.
   b. Bolts, nuts, and washers including mechanical properties and chemical analysis.
   c. Direct-tension indicators.
   d. Tension-control, high-strength bolt-nut-washer assemblies.
   e. Shop primers.
   f. Nonshrink grout.

7. Source quality-control test reports.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Installer Qualifications: Company specializing in performing the work of this section with minimum 5 years documented experience.

B. Fabricator Qualifications: A qualified fabricator who participates in the AISC Quality Certification Program and is designated an AISC-Certified Plant, Category STD at the time of bid.

C. Shop-Painting Applicators: Qualified according to AISC's Sophisticated Paint Endorsement or SSPC-QP 3, "Standard Procedure for Evaluating Qualifications of Shop Application Firms."

D. Welding: Qualify procedures and personnel according to AWS D1.1, "Structural Welding Code--Steel."

E. The latest adopted edition of all standards referenced in this Section shall apply unless noted otherwise. In case of conflict between these Contract Documents and the referenced standard, the Contract Documents shall govern. In case of conflict between these Contract Documents and the Building Code, the more stringent shall govern.

F. The Contractor shall furnish fabrication and erection inspection and testing of all welds in accordance with AWS D1.1, Chapter 6. Submit records of inspections and tests to the Owner's testing laboratory for their review. The fabrication and erection inspectors shall be AWS certified welding inspectors.

G. All materials, fabrication procedures and field erection are subject to verification inspection and testing by the Owner's testing laboratory in both the shop and field. Such inspections and tests will not relieve the Contractor of the responsibility for providing materials and fabrication procedures in compliance with specified requirements.

H. Qualifications for Welding Work: Contractor shall be responsible for qualifying welding operators in accordance with the AWS "Standard Qualification Procedure." Provide certification to Owner's testing laboratory that welders to be employed in the work have satisfactorily passed AWS qualification tests. Recertification of welders shall be Contractor's responsibility.

I. Qualification of Welding Procedures: Contractor shall provide the testing laboratory with welding procedures which are to be used. Welding procedures shall be qualified prior to use in accordance with AWS D1.1, Part B.

J. Comply with applicable provisions of the following specifications and documents:

1. AISC's "Code of Standard Practice for Steel Buildings and Bridges”
2. AISC's "Load and Resistance Factor Design Specification for Structural Steel Buildings."
3. ASTM A6 "Specifications for General Requirements for Delivery of Rolled Steel Plates, Shapes, Sheet Piling, and Bars for Structural Use."
4. AISC's "Specification for the Design of Steel Hollow Structural Sections."
5. AISC's "Specification for Load and Resistance Factor Design of Single-Angle Members."
6. RCSC's "Specification for Structural Joints Using High Strength Bolts."
7. AWS D1.1 "Structural Welding Code"
8. SSPC (Society for Protective Coatings), standards as noted.
9. UL "Fire Resistance Directory."

1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Store materials to permit easy access for inspection and identification. Keep steel members off ground and spaced by using pallets, dunnage, or other supports and spacers. Protect steel members and packaged materials from erosion and deterioration.

1. Store fasteners in a protected place. Clean and relubricate bolts and nuts that become dry or rusty before use.
2. Do not store materials on structure in a manner that might cause distortion, damage, or overload to members or supporting structures. Repair or replace damaged materials or structures as directed.

1.8 COORDINATION

A. Furnish anchorage items to be embedded in or attached to other construction without delaying the Work. Provide setting diagrams, sheet metal templates, instructions, and directions for installation.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 STRUCTURAL-STEEL MATERIALS

A. W-Shapes: ASTM A 992; ASTM A 572, Grade 50.

B. Channels, Angles: ASTM A 36.

C. Plate and Bar: ASTM A 36.

D. For ASTM A6 groups 4 and 5 rolled shapes, spliced or otherwise, connected by full penetration welds, provide material with Charpy V-Notch testing in accordance with ASTM A6, Supplementary Requirement S5. The impact test shall meet the minimum average value of 20 foot pounds absorbed energy at 70 degrees Fahrenheit and shall be conducted in accordance with ASTM A673 and the AISC Specifications for Structural Steel Buildings.

E. For plates exceeding 2" thickness used in built up members which are spliced or connected by full penetration welds, provide material with Charpy V-Notch testing in accordance with ASTM A6, Supplementary Requirement S5. The impact test shall be conducted by the producer in accordance with ASTM A673, Frequency P and shall meet a minimum average value of 20 ft pounds absorbed energy at 70 degrees Fahrenheit.

F. Cold-Formed Hollow Structural Sections: ASTM A 500, Grade B, structural tubing.

G. Steel Pipe: ASTM A 53, Type E, Grade B.
   1. Finish: Black.

H. Welding Electrodes: Comply with AWS requirements.

I. Welding electrodes: AWS D1.1, E70. Welding electrodes used in full penetration welds shall have a minimum Charpy V-Notch toughness of 20 ft.-lbs at -20 degrees Fahrenheit when tested in accordance with ASTM A6.

2.2 BOLTS, CONNECTORS, AND ANCHORS

A. High-Strength Bolts, Nuts, and Washers: ASTM A 325, Type 1, heavy hex steel structural bolts; ASTM A 563 heavy hex carbon-steel nuts; and ASTM F 436 hardened carbon-steel washers.

   1. Finish: Plain.
   2. Direct-Tension Indicators: ASTM F 959, Type 325 compressible-washer type. Direct –Tension indicators shall be "Load Indicator Washers" as manufactured by the Bethlehem Steel Corporation.

      a. Finish: Plain.

B. High-Strength Bolts, Nuts, and Washers: ASTM A 490, Type 1, heavy hex steel structural bolts; ASTM A 563 heavy hex carbon-steel nuts; and ASTM F 436 hardened carbon-steel washers, plain.

   1. Direct-Tension Indicators: ASTM F 959, Type 490, compressible-washer type, plain. Direct tension indicator washers shall be the standard or squirter type.

C. Tension-Control, High-Strength Bolt-Nut-Washer Assemblies: ASTM F 1852, Type 1, heavy hex head steel structural bolts with splined ends; ASTM A 563 heavy hex carbon-steel nuts; and ASTM F 436 hardened carbon-steel washers. Tension control bolts shall be as manufactured by the LeJeune Bolt Company, Lakeville, Minnesota or Lohr Structural Fasteners, Inc., Humble, Texas. Tension control bolts may be used at the contractor's option in lieu of conventional high-strength bolts.

   1. Finish: Plain.

D. Unheaded Anchor Rods: ASTM F 1554, Grade 36.

   1. Configuration: Straight.
   2. Nuts: ASTM A 563 heavy hex carbon steel.
   3. Plate Washers: ASTM A 36 carbon steel.
   4. Washers: ASTM F 436 hardened carbon steel.

E. Threaded Rods: ASTM A 193 [ASTM A 36].

1. Nuts: ASTM A 563 heavy hex carbon steel.
2. Washers: ASTM F 436 hardened ASTM A 36 carbon steel.
3. Finish: Plain.

F. Drilled expansion bolts shall be one of the following:
1. Kwik Bolt TZ, Hilti, Inc., Tulsa, Oklahoma
2. Strong Bolt 2, Simpson Strong-Tie Company, Inc.

G. Adhesive Anchors:
1. In concrete:
   a. HIT RE500-SD epoxy, Hilti Inc.
   b. SET-XP epoxy, Simpson Strong-Tie, Inc.
   c. HIT-HY150MAX-SD acrylic, Hilti, Inc.
2. In grouted masonry:
   a. HIT-HY-150MAX, Hilti, Inc.
   b. SET epoxy, Simpson Strong-Tie Company, Inc.
   c. AT acrylic, Simpson Strong-Tie Company, Inc.
3. Adhesive anchor rods: As noted on the drawings.

2.3 PRIMER

A. Low-Emitting Materials: Paints and coatings shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services “Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small Scale Environmental Chambers.”

B. Primer: SSPC-Paint 25, Type I, zinc oxide, raw linseed oil, and alkyd.

C. Primer: Fabricator's standard lead- and chromate-free, nonasphaltic, rust-inhibiting primer.

D. Primer Color: Grey

E. Cold Galvanizing Compound shall be "ZRC" cold galvanizing compound as manufactured by ZRC Worldwide, Marshfield, Massachusetts.

2.4 GROUT

A. Nonmetallic, Shrinkage-Resistant Grout: ASTM C 1107, Grade B, factory-packaged, nonmetallic aggregate grout, noncorrosive, nonstaining, mixed with water to consistency suitable for application and a 30-minute working time, capable of developing a minimum compressive strength of 5,000 psi at 28 days.

2.5 FABRICATION

A. Structural Steel: Fabricate and assemble in shop to greatest extent possible. Comply with fabrication requirements, including tolerance limits, of AISC's "Code of Standard Practice for Steel Buildings and Bridges", AISC's "Load and Resistance Factor Design Specification for Structural Steel Buildings", and as indicated on accepted shop drawings.

1. Camber structural-steel members where indicated.
2. Mill tolerances shall conform to ASTM A6. Identify high-strength structural steel according to ASTM A 6/ A 6M and maintain markings until structural steel has been erected.
3. Mark and match-mark materials for field assembly.
4. Plates shall be free of gross discontinuities such as ruptures and delaminations. Plates shall comply with ASTM A578, Level 1.
5. Complete structural-steel assemblies, including welding of units, before starting shop-priming operations.

B. Thermal Cutting: Perform thermal cutting by machine to greatest extent possible.

1. Plane thermally cut edges to be welded to comply with requirements in AWS D1.1.

C. Bolt Holes: Cut, drill or punch standard bolt holes perpendicular to metal surfaces.

D. Finishing: Accurately finish ends of columns and other members transmitting bearing loads. Members in compression joints which depend on contact bearing shall have the bearing surfaces milled to a common plane. Members to be milled shall be completely assembled before milling.

E. Base Plates: Oversize anchor bolt holes in base plates to facilitate erection as specified in Table 14-2 in AISC 360-05.

F. Cleaning: Clean and prepare steel surfaces that are to remain unpainted according to SSPC-SP 2, "Hand Tool Cleaning."

G. Welded Door Frames: Build up welded door frames attached to structural steel. Weld exposed joints continuously and grind smooth. Plug-weld fixed steel bar stops to frames. Secure removable stops to frames with countersunk, cross-recessed head machine screws, uniformly spaced not more than 10 inches o.c., unless otherwise indicated.

H. Holes: Provide holes required for securing other work to structural steel and for passage of other work through steel framing members.

1. Cut, drill, or punch holes perpendicular to steel surfaces. Do not thermally cut bolt holes or enlarge holes by burning.
2. Base-Plate Holes: Cut, drill, mechanically thermal cut, or punch holes perpendicular to steel surfaces.

3. Weld threaded nuts to framing and other specialty items indicated to receive other work.

2.6 SHOP CONNECTIONS

A. High-Strength Bolts: Shop install high-strength bolts according to RCSC's "Specification for Structural Joints Using ASTM A 325 or A 490 Bolts" for type of bolt and type of joint specified.

1. Joint Type: Snug tightened.

2. Provide washers over all slotted holes in an outer ply.

B. Weld Connections: Comply with AWS D1.1 for welding procedure specifications, tolerances, appearance, and quality of welds and for methods used in correcting welding work. Welds not specified shall be continuous fillet welds designed to develop the full strength of the member. A combination of welds and bolts shall not be used to transmit stress at the same face of any connections. Clean completed welds prior to inspection. Slag shall be removed from all completed welds.

1. Assemble and weld built-up sections by methods that will maintain true alignment of axes without exceeding tolerances of AISC's "Code of Standard Practice for Steel Buildings and Bridges" for mill material.

2.7 SHOP PRIMING

A. Shop prime steel surfaces except the following:

1. Surfaces embedded in concrete or mortar. Extend priming of partially embedded members to a depth of 2 inches.
2. Surfaces to be field welded.
3. Surfaces to be high-strength bolted with slip-critical connections.
4. Surfaces to receive sprayed fire-resistive materials.
5. Galvanized surfaces.

B. Surface Preparation: Clean surfaces to be painted. Remove loose rust and mill scale and spatter, slag, or flux deposits. Prepare surfaces according to the following specifications and standards:

1. SSPC-SP 2, "Hand Tool Cleaning."
2. SSPC-SP 3, "Power Tool Cleaning."

C. Priming: Immediately after surface preparation, apply primer according to manufacturer's written instructions and at rate recommended by SSPC to provide a dry film thickness of not less than 1.5 mils. Use priming methods that result in full coverage of joints, corners, edges, and exposed surfaces.

1. Stripe paint corners, crevices, bolts, welds, and sharp edges.
2. Apply two coats of shop paint to inaccessible surfaces after assembly or erection. Change color of second coat to distinguish it from first.

2.8 GALVANIZING

A. Hot-Dip Galvanized Finish: Apply zinc coating by the hot-dip process to structural steel according to ASTM A 123/ A 123M.

1. Fill vent holes and grind smooth after galvanizing.

B. Galvanizing: The following steel shall be hot-dip galvanized (including any associated fasteners):

1. Lintels and shelf angles attached to structural-steel frame and located in exterior walls.
2. Permanently exposed steel elements.

2.9 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

A. Owner will engage an independent testing and inspecting agency to perform shop tests and inspections and prepare test reports.

1. Provide testing agency with access to places where structural-steel work is being fabricated or produced to perform tests and inspections.

B. Correct deficiencies in Work that test reports and inspections indicate does not comply with the Contract Documents.

C. Bolted Connections: Shop-bolted connections will be inspected according to RCSC's "Specification for Structural Joints Using ASTM A 325 or A 490 Bolts."

D. Welded Connections: In addition to visual inspection, shop-welded connections will be tested and inspected according to AWS D1.1 and the following inspection procedures, at testing agency's option:

1. Liquid Penetrant Inspection: ASTM E 165.
2. Magnetic Particle Inspection: ASTM E 709; performed on root pass and on finished weld. Cracks or zones of incomplete fusion or penetration will not be accepted.
3. Ultrasonic Inspection: ASTM E 164.
4. Radiographic Inspection: ASTM E 94.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Verify elevations of concrete- and masonry-bearing surfaces and locations of anchor rods, bearing plates, and other embedments, with steel erector present, for compliance with requirements.

B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

A. Provide temporary shores, guys, braces, and other supports during erection to keep structural steel secure, plumb, and in alignment against temporary construction loads and loads equal in intensity to design loads. Design of temporary bracing and supports shall be the responsibility of the Contractor. Remove temporary supports when permanent structural steel, connections, and bracing are in place, unless otherwise indicated.

1. Do not remove temporary shoring supporting composite deck construction until cast-in-place concrete has attained its design compressive strength.

3.3 ERECTION

A. Set structural steel accurately in locations and to elevations indicated and according to AISC's "Code of Standard Practice for Steel Buildings and Bridges" and "Load and Resistance Factor Design Specification for Structural Steel Buildings," unless closer tolerances are required for proper fitting of adjoining or enclosing materials, in which case the more stringent shall apply.

B. Base and Bearing Plates: Clean concrete- and masonry-bearing surfaces of bond-reducing materials, and roughen surfaces prior to setting base and bearing plates. Clean bottom surface of base and bearing plates.

1. Set base and bearing plates for structural members on wedges, shims, or setting nuts as required.
2. Weld plate washers to top of base plate.
3. Snug-tighten anchor rods after supported members have been positioned and plumbed. Do not remove wedges or shims but, if protruding, cut off flush with edge of base or bearing plate before packing with grout.
4. Promptly pack grout solidly between bearing surfaces and base or bearing plates so no voids remain. Neatly finish exposed surfaces; protect grout and allow to cure. Comply with manufacturer's written installation instructions for shrinkage-resistant grouts.

5. Grout under baseplates in accordance with Section 03300.

C. Maintain erection tolerances of structural steel within AISC's "Code of Standard Practice for Steel Buildings and Bridges," Unless adjoining materials dictate a tighter tolerance.

D. Align and adjust various members forming part of complete frame or structure before permanently fastening. Before assembly, clean bearing surfaces and other surfaces that will be in permanent contact with members. Perform necessary adjustments to compensate for discrepancies in elevations and alignment.

1. Level and plumb individual members of structure.
2. Make allowances for difference between temperature at time of erection and mean temperature when structure is completed and in service.

E. Splice members only where indicated. Any member having a splice not shown and detailed on the accepted shop drawings shall be rejected.

F. Do not field cut or alter structural members without approval of Architect/Engineer. Do not use thermal cutting during erection unless approved by Architect/Engineer. Finish thermally cut sections within smoothness limits in AWS D1.1.

G. Gas Cutting: Do not use gas cutting torches in the field to correct fabrication errors in structural framing.

H. Do not enlarge unfair holes in members by burning or using drift pins. Ream holes that must be enlarged to admit bolts.

3.4 FIELD CONNECTIONS

A. High-Strength Bolts: Install high-strength bolts according to RCSC's "Specification for Structural Joints Using ASTM A 325 or A 490 Bolts" for type of bolt and type of joint specified.

1. Joint Type: Snug tightened.

2. A307 bolts and high-strength (A325 and A490) bolts noted to be "snug-tight" shall be tightened using a few impacts of an impact wrench or the full effort of a man using an ordinary spud wrench, bringing the plies into contact.

3. High-strength bolts which are not specifically designated to be "snug-tight" shall be tightened to provide at least the minimum tension shown in Table 4 of the "Specification for Structural Joints using ASTM A325 and A490 Bolts." Tightening shall be done by the turn-of-the-nut method, with direct tension indicators, or by properly calibrated wrenches.

4. Bolts tightened with a calibrated wrench or by torque control shall have a hardened washer under the element (nut or bolt head) turned in tightening.

5. Hardened washers shall be placed over slotted holes in an outer ply. Hardened beveled washers shall be used where the outer face of the bolted parts has a slope greater than 1:20 with respect to the bolt axis.

B. Weld Connections: Comply with AWS D1.1 for welding procedure specifications, tolerances, appearance, and quality of welds and for methods used in correcting welding work. Welds not specified shall be continuous fillet welds designed to develop the full strength of the member. A combination of welds and bolts shall not be used to transmit stress at the same face of any connections. Clean completed welds prior to inspection. Slag shall be removed from all completed welds.

1. Comply with AISC's "Code of Standard Practice for Steel Buildings and Bridges" and " Load and Resistance Factor Design Specification for Structural Steel Buildings" for bearing, adequacy of temporary connections, alignment, and removal of paint on surfaces adjacent to field welds.

3.5 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Testing Agency: Owner will engage a qualified independent testing and inspecting agency to inspect field welds and high-strength bolted connections.

B. Bolted Connections: Shop-bolted connections will be inspected according to RCSC's "Specification for Structural Joints Using ASTM A 325 or A 490 Bolts."

C. Welded Connections: Field welds will be visually inspected according to AWS D1.1.

1. In addition to visual inspection, field welds will be tested according to AWS D1.1 and the following inspection procedures, at testing agency's option:

a. Liquid Penetrant Inspection: ASTM E 165.
b. Magnetic Particle Inspection: ASTM E 709; performed on root pass and on finished weld. Cracks or zones of incomplete fusion or penetration will not be accepted.
c. Ultrasonic Inspection: ASTM E 164.
d. Radiographic Inspection: ASTM E 94.

D. Correct deficiencies in Work that test reports and inspections indicate does not comply with the Contract Documents.

3.6 REPAIRS AND PROTECTION

A. Touch-up Cold Galvanizing: Touch up areas of hot dip galvanized members where galvanizing has been abraded during shipping and erection and areas where galvanizing has been removed or damaged due to welding. Apply cold galvanizing compound in

accordance with the manufacturer's instructions to a minimum dry film thickness of 2.0 mils.

B. Touchup Painting: After installation, promptly clean, prepare, and prime or reprime field connections, rust spots, and abraded surfaces of prime-painted joists and accessories, bearing plates, and abutting structural steel.

1. Clean and prepare surfaces by SSPC-SP 2 hand-tool cleaning or SSPC-SP 3 power-tool cleaning.
2. Apply a compatible primer of same type as shop primer used on adjacent surfaces.

C. Touch-up Painting: Immediately after erection, clean field welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas of shop paint. Apply paint to exposed areas with same materials as used for shop painting. Apply by brush or spray to provide a minimum dry film thickness of 2.5 mils.

D. Touchup Painting: Cleaning and touchup painting are specified in Division 9 painting Sections.

END OF SECTION 05 12 00

ROCIP Project: Withhold insurance cost. Please refer to sections 00425 & 00810 for information.

SECTION 05 31 00 –STEEL DECK

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. This Section includes the following:

1. Roof deck.

B. Work Included

1. Furnish all labor and materials required to fabricate, deliver and install steel roof deck and accessories including formed steel cant strips, eave strips, valley strips, sump pans, edge closures, pour stops, reinforcing plates and related accessories.
2. Furnish all labor and materials required to fabricate, deliver and install steel floor deck and accessories including formed steel end closures, edge forms, flashings, and reinforcing plates, and related accessories.

C. Related Sections include the following:

1. Division 5 Section "Metal Fabrications" for framing deck openings with miscellaneous steel shapes.

1.3 SUBMITTALS

A. Submittals for Review:

1. Shop Drawings: Show layout and types of deck panels, anchorage details, reinforcing channels, pans, cut deck openings, special jointing, accessories, and attachments to other construction.
2. Product Data: For each type of deck, accessory, and product indicated. Provide deck dimensions, sectional properties, uplift resistance and diaphragm capacity for specified fastener layout and support spacing, and finishes.

B. Submittals for Information:

1. Product Certificates: For each type of steel deck, signed by product manufacturer. Certify that products comply with SDI, UL and ICBO standards as specified.
2. Manufacturer's installation instructions.
3. Welding certificates: For each welder employed on the Work.
4. Field quality-control test and inspection reports.
5. ICBO Research/Evaluation Reports: Deck units shall be approved by the International Conference of Building Officials and shall have a corresponding report from ICBO
6. Deck units shall be classified by Underwriter's Laboratory, Inc. and shall be labeled and marked as required by UL, indicating manufacturer testing and inspection.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Installer: Company specializing in performing the work of this Section with minimum 5 years documented experience.

B. Testing Agency Qualifications: An independent agency qualified according to ASTM E 329 for testing indicated.

C. Welding: Qualify procedures and personnel according to AWS D1.3, "Structural Welding Code - Sheet Steel."

D. Fire-Test-Response Characteristics: Where indicated, provide steel deck units identical to those tested for fire resistance per ASTM E 119 by a testing and inspecting agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.

1. Fire-Resistance Ratings: Indicated by design designations of applicable testing and inspecting agency.
2. Steel deck units shall be identified with appropriate markings of applicable testing and inspecting agency.

E. Comply with applicable provisions of the following specifications and documents.

1. AISI Specifications: Comply with calculated structural characteristics of steel deck according to AISI's "North American Specification for the Design of Cold-Formed Steel Structural Members."
2. FMG Listing: Provide steel roof deck evaluated by FMG and listed in its "Approval Guide, Building Materials" for Class 1 fire rating and Class 1-90 windstorm ratings.
3. SDI (Steel Deck Institute) - Design Manual for Composite Decks, Form Decks, Roof Decks, Cellular Metal Floor Deck with Electrical Distribution.
4. SSPC (Steel Structures Painting Council) - Painting Manual.
5. UL - Fire Resistance Directory.

1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Protect steel deck from corrosion, deformation, and other damage during delivery, storage, and handling.

B. Stack steel deck on platforms or pallets and slope to provide drainage. Protect with a waterproof covering and ventilate to avoid condensation.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. Steel Deck:

   a. ASC Profiles, Inc.
   b. Canam Steel Corp.;The Canam Manac Group.
   c. Consolidated Systems, Inc.
   d. DACS, Inc.
   e. D-Mac Industries Inc.
   f. Epic Metals Corporation.
   g. Marlyn Steel Decks, Inc.
   h. New Millennium Building Systems, LLC.
   i. Nucor Corp.; Vulcraft Division.
   j. Roof Deck, Inc.
   k. United Steel Deck, Inc.
   l. Valley Joist; Division of EBSCO Industries, Inc.
   m. Verco Manufacturing Co.
   n. Wheeling Corrugating Company; Div. of Wheeling-Pittsburgh Steel Corporation.

2.2 ROOF DECK

A. Steel Roof Deck: Fabricate panels, without top-flange stiffening grooves, to comply with "SDI Specifications and Commentary for Steel Roof Deck," in SDI Publication No. 30, and with the following:

1. Galvanized Steel Sheet: ASTM A 653, Structural Steel (SS), Grade 33, G60 zinc coating.
2. Deck Profile: As indicated.
3. Profile Depth: As indicated.

4. Design Uncoated-Steel Thickness: As indicated.
5. Span Condition: As indicated.
6. Side Laps: Overlapped or interlocking seam at Contractor's option.

2.3 ACCESSORIES

A. General: Provide manufacturer's standard accessory materials for deck that comply with requirements indicated.

B. Mechanical Fasteners: Corrosion-resistant, low-velocity, power-actuated or pneumatically driven carbon-steel fasteners; or self-drilling, self-threading screws.

1. Mechanical Fasteners: Galvanized hardened steel, self tapping "Teks" screws, manufactured by Illinois Tool Works, Inc., Buildex Division, or equal. Size shall be #10 minimum, unless noted otherwise.
2. Powder Actuated Fasteners: Zinc coated fastener with .145 inch shank diameter and 1 1/4 inch shank length. X-DNI pin as manufacturer by Hilti, or equal.

C. Side-Lap Fasteners: Corrosion-resistant, hexagonal washer head; self-drilling, carbon-steel screws, No. 10 minimum diameter.

D. Flexible Closure Strips: Vulcanized, closed-cell, synthetic rubber.

E. Miscellaneous Sheet Metal Deck Accessories: Steel sheet, minimum yield strength of 33,000 psi, not less than 0.0359-inch design uncoated thickness, of same material and finish as deck; of profile indicated or required for application.

F. Pour Stops and Girder Fillers: Steel sheet, minimum yield strength of 33,000 psi, of same material and finish as deck, and of thickness and profile recommended by SDI Publication No. 30 for overhang and slab depth.

G. Column Closures, End Closures, Z-Closures, and Cover Plates: Steel sheet, of same material, finish, and thickness as deck, unless otherwise indicated.

H. Recessed Sump Pans: Single-piece steel sheet, 0.0747 inch thick, of same material and finish as deck, with 3-inch- wide flanges and sloped recessed pans of 1-1/2-inch minimum depth, sealed watertight. For drains, cut holes in the field.

I. Flat Sump Plate: Single-piece steel sheet, 0.0747 inch thick, of same material and finish as deck, sealed watertight. For drains, cut holes in the field.

J. Galvanizing Repair Paint: SSPC-Paint 20 or DOD-P-21035, with dry film containing a minimum of 94 percent zinc dust by weight.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine supporting frame and field conditions for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance.

3.2 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

A. Install deck panels and accessories according to applicable specifications and commentary in SDI Publication No. 30, manufacturer's written instructions, and requirements in this Section.

B. Install temporary shoring before placing deck panels, if required to meet deflection limitations.

C. Locate deck bundles to prevent overloading of supporting members.

D. Place deck panels on supporting frame and adjust to final position with ends accurately aligned and bearing on supporting frame before being permanently fastened. Do not stretch or contract side-lap interlocks.

E. Place deck panels flat and square and fasten to supporting frame without warp or deflection.

F. Cut and neatly fit deck panels and accessories around openings and other work projecting through or adjacent to deck.

G. Provide additional reinforcement and closure pieces at openings as required for strength, continuity of deck, and support of other work.

H. Comply with AWS requirements and procedures for manual shielded metal arc welding, appearance and quality of welds, and methods used for correcting welding work.

I. Mechanical fasteners may be used in lieu of welding to fasten deck. Locate mechanical fasteners and install according to deck manufacturer's written instructions.

3.3 ROOF-DECK INSTALLATION

A. Fasten roof-deck panels to steel supporting members by arc spot (puddle) welds of the surface diameter indicated or arc seam welds with an equal perimeter that is not less than 1-1/2 inches long, and as indicated on drawings.

B. Side-Lap and Perimeter Edge Fastening: Fasten side laps and perimeter edges of panels between supports, at intervals not exceeding the lesser of 1/2 of the span or 18 inches, or as indicated on drawings.

1. Mechanically fasten with self-drilling, No. 10 diameter or larger, carbon-steel screws.
2. Fasten with a minimum of 1-1/2-inch- long welds.

C. End Bearing: Install deck ends over supporting frame with a minimum end bearing of 1-1/2 inches, with end joints as follows:

1. End Joints: Lapped 2 inches minimum or butted at Contractor's option.

D. Roof Sump Pans and Sump Plates: Install over openings provided in roof deck and mechanically fasten flanges to top of deck. Space mechanical fasteners not more than 12 inches apart with at least one fastener at each corner.

1. Install reinforcing channels or zees in ribs to span between supports and weld or mechanically fasten.

E. Miscellaneous Roof-Deck Accessories: Install ridge and valley plates, finish strips, end closures, and reinforcing channels according to deck manufacturer's written instructions. Weld or mechanically fasten to substrate to provide a complete deck installation.

1. Weld cover plates at changes in direction of roof-deck panels, unless otherwise indicated.

F. Flexible Closure Strips: Install flexible closure strips over partitions, walls, and where indicated. Install with adhesive according to manufacturer's written instructions to ensure complete closure.

G. Architectural finishes and mechanical, electrical, and plumbing equipment shall not be hung directly from the metal deck.

3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Testing Agency: Owner will engage a qualified independent testing and inspecting agency to perform field tests and inspections and prepare test reports.

B. Field welds and mechanical fasteners will be subject to inspection.

C. Testing agency will report inspection results promptly and in writing to Contractor and Architect.

D. Remove and replace work that does not comply with specified requirements.

E. Additional inspecting, at Contractor's expense, will be performed to determine compliance of corrected work with specified requirements.

3.5 REPAIRS AND PROTECTION

A. Galvanizing Repairs: Prepare and repair damaged galvanized coatings on both surfaces of deck with galvanized repair paint according to ASTM A 780 and manufacturer's written instructions.

B. Provide final protection and maintain conditions to ensure that steel deck is without damage or deterioration at time of Substantial Completion.

END OF SECTION 05 31 00

ROCIP Project: Withhold insurance cost. Please refer to sections 00425 & 00810 for information.

SECTION 05 50 00 - METAL FABRICATIONS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.01 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.02 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:
   1. Embedded angles and plates.
   2. Steel gratings.
   3. Miscellaneous metal works and related items.

B. Products furnished, but not installed, under this Section:
   1. Loose steel lintels.
   2. Anchor bolts, steel pipe sleeves, slotted-channel inserts, and wedge-type inserts indicated to be cast into concrete or built into unit masonry.
   3. Steel weld plates and angles for casting into concrete for applications where they are not specified in other Sections.

C. Related Sections:
   1. Division 01 Section "Quality Requirements."
   2. Division 03 Section "Cast-in-Place Concrete" for installing anchor bolts, steel pipe sleeves, slotted-channel inserts, wedge-type inserts, and other items cast into concrete.
   3. Division 04 Section "Concrete Unit Masonry" for installing loose lintels, anchor bolts, and other items built into unit masonry.
   4. Division 09 Section "Painting."

1.03 SUBMITTALS

A. Comply with pertinent provisions of Division 01 Section “Submittal Procedures”, unless otherwise indicated.

B. Shop drawings based on the Contract Documents shall be submitted to the Architect for review prior to ordering of materials.

C. Failure by the contractor to submit shop drawings, test reports, etc. required above shall release the Architect and the Engineer from any liabilities due to the negligence on the part of the contractor to comply with the construction documents.

D. Approval will cover size and arrangement of members and character of construction, but not dimensions.

E. Contractor shall verify actual dimensions at the construction site.
   1. Nonslip aggregates and nonslip-aggregate surface finishes.
   2. Paint products.
   3. Grout.

F. Shop Drawings: Show fabrication and installation details for metal fabrications.
   1. Include plans, elevations, sections, and details of metal fabrications and their connections. Show anchorage and accessory items.

1.04 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code - Steel."

B. Handrails or other protective enclosures shall be designed to withstand stresses to which they would be normally subjected and to withstand a load of 200 lbs. applied in any direction at any point on the top rail. Connections other than those already listed shall be designed to safely support design load (dead load plus live load) of not less than 100 psi without exceeding working stresses permitted for materials.

C. Welding shall conform to American Welding Society's Standard Code for Arc and Gas Welding in Building Construction. Welding shall be continuous along entire area of contact, except where tack welding is specifically shown or specified. Grind all exposed welds.

1.05 PROJECT CONDITIONS

A. Field Measurements: Verify actual locations of walls and other construction contiguous with metal fabrications by field measurements before fabrication.

1.06 COORDINATION

A. Coordinate selection of shop primers with topcoats to be applied over them. Comply with paint and coating manufacturers' written recommendations to ensure that shop primers and topcoats are compatible with one another.

B. Coordinate installation of anchorages. Furnish setting drawings, templates, and directions for installing anchorages, including sleeves, concrete inserts, anchor bolts, and items with integral anchors, that are to be embedded in concrete or masonry. Deliver such items to Project site in time for installation.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.01 METALS, GENERAL

A. Metal Surfaces, General: Provide materials with smooth, flat surfaces unless otherwise indicated. For metal fabrications exposed to view in the completed Work, provide materials without seam marks, roller marks, rolled trade names, or blemishes.

2.02 FERROUS METALS

A. Steel Plates, Shapes, and Bars: ASTM A 36/A 36M.

B. Steel Tubing: ASTM A 500, cold-formed steel tubing.

C. Steel Pipe: ASTM A 53/A 53M, standard weight (Schedule 40) unless otherwise indicated.

D. Cast Iron: Either gray iron, ASTM A 48/A 48M, or malleable iron, ASTM A 47/A 47M, unless otherwise indicated.

2.03 FASTENERS

A. Steel Bolts and Nuts: Regular hexagon-head bolts, ASTM A 307, Grade A (ASTM F 568M, Property Class 4.6); with hex nuts, ASTM A 563 (ASTM A 563M); and, where indicated, flat washers.

B. Steel Bolts and Nuts: Regular hexagon-head bolts, ASTM A 325, Type 3 (ASTM A 325M, Type 3); with hex nuts, ASTM A 563, Grade C3 (ASTM A 563M, Class 8S3); and, where indicated, flat washers.

C. Anchor Bolts: ASTM F 1554, Grade 55, of dimensions indicated; with nuts, ASTM A 563; and, where indicated, flat washers.
   1. Hot-dip galvanize or provide mechanically deposited, zinc coating where item being fastened is indicated to be galvanized.

D. Eyebolts: ASTM A 489.

E. Machine Screws: ASME B18.6.3 (ASME B18.6.7M).

F. Lag Screws: ASME B18.2.1 (ASME B18.2.3.8M).

G. Wood Screws: Flat head, ASME B18.6.1.

H. Plain Washers: Round, ASME B18.22.1 (ASME B18.22M).

I. Lock Washers: Helical, spring type, ASME B18.21.1 (ASME B18.21.2M).

J. Anchors, General: Anchors capable of sustaining, without failure, a load equal to six times the load imposed when installed in unit masonry and four times the load

imposed when installed in concrete, as determined by testing according to ASTM E 488, conducted by a qualified independent testing agency.

K. Cast-in-Place Anchors in Concrete: Either threaded type or wedge type unless otherwise indicated; galvanized ferrous castings, either ASTM A 47/A 47M malleable iron or ASTM A 27/A 27M cast steel. Provide bolts, washers, and shims as needed, all hot-dip galvanized per ASTM F 2329.

L. Post-Installed Anchors: Torque-controlled expansion anchors.
   1. Material for Interior Locations: Carbon-steel components zinc plated to comply with ASTM B 633 or ASTM F 1941 (ASTM F 1941M), Class Fe/Zn 5, unless otherwise indicated.
   2. Material for Exterior Locations and Where Stainless Steel is Indicated: Alloy Group 1 (A1), Group 2 (A4) stainless-steel bolts, ASTM F 593 (ASTM F 738M), and nuts, ASTM F 594 (ASTM F 836M).

2.04 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

A. Welding Rods and Bare Electrodes: Select according to AWS specifications for metal alloy welded.

B. Universal Shop Primer: Fast-curing, lead- and chromate-free, universal modified-alkyd primer complying with MPI#79 and compatible with topcoat.
   1. Use primer containing pigments that make it easily distinguishable from zinc-rich primer.

C. Galvanizing Repair Paint: High-zinc-dust-content paint complying with SSPC-Paint 20 and compatible with paints specified to be used over it.

D. Bituminous Paint: Cold-applied asphalt emulsion complying with ASTM D 1187.

E. Nonshrink, Metallic Grout: Factory-packaged, ferrous-aggregate grout complying with ASTM C 1107, specifically recommended by manufacturer for heavy-duty loading applications.

F. Concrete: Comply with requirements in Division 03 Section "Cast-in-Place Concrete" for normal-weight, air-entrained, concrete with a minimum 28-day compressive strength of 3000 psi (20 MPa).

G. Expansion Joint Covers: Extruded aluminum anchored to wall, floor and ceiling per manufacturer's instructions. Expansion joint covers shall be as follows, or approved equal:
   1. Interior Ceiling to Wall: Balco/Metaline #AC-15.
   2. Interior Wall to Wall: Balco/Metaline #GP-10.
   3. Interior Floor to Floor: Balco/Metaline #HBS-10.
   4. Interior ceiling to ceiling Balco/Metaline # HC-10.

2.05 FABRICATION, GENERAL

A. Shop Assembly: Preassemble items in the shop to greatest extent possible. Disassemble units only as necessary for shipping and handling limitations. Use connections that maintain structural value of joined pieces. Clearly mark units for reassembly and coordinated installation.

B. Cut, drill, and punch metals cleanly and accurately. Remove burrs and ease edges to a radius of approximately 1/32 inch unless otherwise indicated. Remove sharp or rough areas on exposed surfaces.

C. Form bent-metal corners to smallest radius possible without causing grain separation or otherwise impairing work.

D. Form exposed work with accurate angles and surfaces and straight edges.

E. Weld corners and seams continuously to comply with the following:
   1. Use materials and methods that minimize distortion and develop strength and corrosion resistance of base metals.
   2. Obtain fusion without undercut or overlap.
   3. Remove welding flux immediately.
   4. At exposed connections, finish exposed welds and surfaces smooth and blended so no roughness shows after finishing and contour of welded surface matches that of adjacent surface.

F. Form exposed connections with hairline joints, flush and smooth, using concealed fasteners or welds where possible. Where exposed fasteners are required, use Phillips flat-head (countersunk) fasteners unless otherwise indicated. Locate joints where least conspicuous.

G. Fabricate seams and other connections that will be exposed to weather in a manner to exclude water. Provide weep holes where water may accumulate.

H. Cut, reinforce, drill, and tap metal fabrications as indicated to receive finish hardware, screws, and similar items.

I. Provide for anchorage of type indicated; coordinate with supporting structure. Space anchoring devices to secure metal fabrications rigidly in place and to support indicated loads.
   1. Where units are indicated to be cast into concrete or built into masonry, equip with integrally welded steel strap anchors, 1/8 by 1-1/2 inches, with a minimum 6-inch embedment and 2-inch hook, not less than 8 inches from ends and corners of units and 24 inches o.c., unless otherwise indicated.

J. Contractor shall secure and be responsible for all field measurements required for the proper and accurate fabrication and installation of the items included under this section; field alterations will not be permitted except upon specific authorization of the Architect.

K. All work shall be assembled in the most substantial manner and reinforced where necessary with structural shapes, using concealed screws, bolts or similar fasten-

ings. Make welds of adequate strength and durability, jointing tight, clean and smooth, flush and in true plane with base metals.

L. All screws or rivets shall be countersunk, unless otherwise noted. Provide lock washers for all bolts.

M. All steel to which wood blocking is connected shall be properly punched for anchoring blocking.

N. Exposed steel shapes with marred surfaces shall be ground or draw-filled to a fine grain finish, as approved before applying shop coat of paint.

O. Assembled work shall be completely constructed in the shop, accurately finished and the pieces match-marked for erection. Form exterior joints to exclude water, grind connections in exposed pieces smooth and polish.

P. The Contractor shall do all drilling, cutting, tapping and fitting of work to accommodate other work coming in contact with it, and shall furnish all taps, bolts and other fittings in connection therewith.

Q. Except where otherwise noted, fastening to concrete, solid masonry or hollow masonry shall be with expansion bolts or anchors. Fastening to wood plugs will not be permitted. Toggle may be used only when approved by the Architect.

2.06 MISCELLANEOUS FRAMING AND SUPPORTS

A. General: Provide steel framing and supports not specified in other Sections as needed to complete the Work.

B. Fabricate units from steel shapes, plates, and bars of welded construction unless otherwise indicated. Fabricate to sizes, shapes, and profiles indicated and as necessary to receive adjacent construction.
   1. Fabricate units from slotted channel framing where indicated.
   2. Furnish inserts for units installed after concrete is placed.

C. Fabricate steel members for wood frame construction from continuous steel shapes of sizes indicated.
   1. Provide bearing plates welded to beams where indicated.
   2. Drill or punch girders and plates for field-bolted connections where indicated.
   3. Where wood nailers are attached to girders with bolts or lag screws, drill or punch holes at 24 inches o.c.

D. Prime miscellaneous framing and supports with primer specified in Division 09 Section "Painting" where indicated.

E. Pipe Bollard: 6" Diameter steel pipe with concrete fill.

F. Lintel Angles: Galvanized steel in sizes indicated on drawings. Extend loose lintel angles 8" on each side of opening.

G. Miscellaneous Steel Shapes: Channels, angles, plates, tubing, connections and bolts provided where shown and detailed on drawings. Exterior embed plates shall be hot-dip, galvanized.

H. Handrail Bracket on interior stair: 45-3-S by King Architectural Metals or approved equal.

I. Miscellaneous Steel Shapes: Channels, angles, plates, tubing, connections and bolts provided where shown and detailed on drawings. Exterior imbed plates shall be hot-dip, galvanized.

J. Trench Drain: Design for H20 wheel load
   1. Slotted Trench Drains in Apparatus Bay, Type: Zurn Z806-BD 6" (20 feet long) Flo-Thru pre-sloped trench drainage system with Black Acid Resistant Coated ductile Iron Grate. Drain channel shall be glass-filled polyester fiber-glass with 0.75% bottom slope. Channel sections shall be modular 10-foot [3.05 M] lengths with interlocking ends and shall have heavy-duty, Dura-Coated steel frame with anchor studs at surface. Install two (2) No. 1002 channel sections end-to-end, such that the lowest point is at the center of the 20-foot length. Install 3-inch drain at center point so as to drain cross-wise as shown on the drawing sheets.

2.07 SHELF ANGLES

A. Galvanize shelf angles located in exterior walls.

2.08 MISCELLANEOUS STEEL TRIM

A. Unless otherwise indicated, fabricate units from steel shapes, plates, and bars of profiles shown with continuously welded joints and smooth exposed edges. Miter corners and use concealed field splices where possible.

B. Provide cutouts, fittings, and anchorages as needed to coordinate assembly and installation with other work.
   1. Provide with integrally welded steel strap anchors for embedding in concrete or masonry construction.

C. Prime exterior miscellaneous steel trim with primer specified in Division 09 Section "Painting".

2.09 LOOSE BEARING AND LEVELING PLATES

A. Provide loose bearing and leveling plates for steel items bearing on masonry or concrete construction. Drill plates to receive anchor bolts and for grouting.

B. Prime plates with primer specified in Division 09 Section "Painting."

2.10 LOOSE STEEL LINTELS

A. Fabricate loose steel lintels from steel angles and shapes of size indicated for openings and recesses in masonry walls and partitions at locations indicated. Fabricate in single lengths for each opening unless otherwise indicated. Weld adjoining members together to form a single unit where indicated.

B. Size loose lintels to provide bearing length at each side of openings equal to not less than 8 inches unless otherwise indicated.

C. Galvanize loose steel lintels located in exterior walls.

2.11 STEEL WELD PLATES AND ANGLES

A. Provide steel weld plates and angles not specified in other Sections, for items supported from construction as needed to complete the Work.

2.12 FINISHES, GENERAL

A. Comply with NAAMM's "Metal Finishes Manual for Architectural and Metal Products" for recommendations for applying and designating finishes.

B. Finish metal fabrications after assembly.

C. Finish exposed surfaces to remove tool and die marks and stretch lines, and to blend into surrounding surface.

2.13 STEEL AND IRON FINISHES

A. Galvanizing: Hot-dip galvanize items as indicated to comply with ASTM A 153/A 153M for steel and iron hardware and with ASTM A 123/A 123M for other steel and iron products.
   1. Do not quench or apply post galvanizing treatments that might interfere with paint adhesion.

B. Shop prime iron and steel items not indicated to be galvanized unless they are to be embedded in concrete, sprayed-on fireproofing, or masonry, or unless otherwise indicated.
   1. Shop prime with primers specified in Division 09 Painting Sections.

C. Preparation for Shop Priming: Prepare surfaces to comply with SSPC-SP 6/NACE No. 3.

D. Shop Priming: Apply shop primer to comply with SSPC-PA 1, "Paint Application Specification No. 1: Shop, Field, and Maintenance Painting of Steel," for shop painting.
   1. Stripe paint corners, crevices, bolts, welds, and sharp edges.

2.14 SHOP PAINTING

A. All Iron and Steel Work: Unless otherwise specified, power tool clean all surfaces to remove mill scale. Work shall receive a shop coat of paint before leaving the factory or being exposed to the weather. Aluminum work contacting dissimilar metals shall receive a protective coating preventing galvanic action.

B. Shop Paint: Shop paint shall be Fabricator's standard, fast curing, lead free, "universal" primer, compatible with finish paint system indicated and for capability to provide sound foundation for field applied topcoats.

C. Aluminum surfaces to be in direct contact with concrete and masonry shall be shop coated with zinc chromate primer.

2.15 POWDER COATING

A. Surface Preparation: Clean surfaces to comply with SSPC-SP 1, "Solvent Cleaning," to remove dirt, oil, grease, or other contaminants that could impair paint bond. Remove mill scale and rust, if present, from uncoated steel, complying with SSPC-SP 5/NACE No. 1, "White Metal Blast Cleaning," or SSPC-SP 8, "Pickling."

B. Powder-Coated Finish: Immediately after cleaning and pretreating, apply thermosetting polyester or acrylic urethane powder coating with cured-film thickness not less than 1.5 mils. Prepare, treat, and coat metal to comply with resin manufacturer's written instructions.
   1. Color and Gloss: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.
   2. Powder Coating shall be equal to Texas Custom Coaters (979) 778-3127.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.01 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

A. Cutting, Fitting, and Placement: Perform cutting, drilling, and fitting required for installing metal fabrications. Set metal fabrications accurately in location, alignment, and elevation; with edges and surfaces level, plumb, true, and free of rack; and measured from established lines and levels.

B. Fit exposed connections accurately together to form hairline joints. Weld connections that are not to be left as exposed joints but cannot be shop welded because of shipping size limitations. Do not weld, cut, or abrade surfaces of exterior units that have been hot-dip galvanized after fabrication and are for bolted or screwed field connections.

C. Field Welding: Comply with the following requirements:

1. Use materials and methods that minimize distortion and develop strength and corrosion resistance of base metals.
2. Obtain fusion without undercut or overlap.
3. Remove welding flux immediately.
4. At exposed connections, finish exposed welds and surfaces smooth and blended so no roughness shows after finishing and contour of welded surface matches that of adjacent surface.

D. Fastening to In-Place Construction: Provide anchorage devices and fasteners where metal fabrications are required to be fastened to in-place construction. Provide threaded fasteners for use with concrete and masonry inserts, toggle bolts, through bolts, lag screws, wood screws, and other connectors.

E. Provide temporary bracing or anchors in formwork for items that are to be built into concrete, masonry, or similar construction.

F. Corrosion Protection: Coat concealed surfaces of aluminum that will come into contact with grout, concrete, masonry, wood, or dissimilar metals with the following:
   1. Cast Aluminum: Heavy coat of bituminous paint.
   2. Extruded Aluminum: Two coats of clear lacquer.

G. All work included in this Contract shall be installed by the Contractor at the proper time and as rapidly as the progress of the adjacent and connecting work will permit.

H. All work shall be installed plumb, level, square and true to line in all cases.

I. Grind exposed welds smooth and touch-up shop prime coats.

J. Do not cut, weld or abrade surfaces which have been hot-dip galvanized after fabrication and which are intended for bolted or screwed field connections.

K. Loose lintel angles shall bear 8" on each side of opening.

L. Immediately after erection, clean the field welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas of shop priming. Paint the exposed areas with same material used for shop priming.

3.02 INSTALLING MISCELLANEOUS FRAMING AND SUPPORTS

A. General: Install framing and supports to comply with requirements of items being supported, including manufacturers' written instructions and requirements indicated on Shop Drawings.

B. Anchor supports for operable partitions securely to and rigidly brace from building structure.

C. Support steel girders on solid grouted masonry, concrete, or steel pipe columns. Secure girders with anchor bolts embedded in grouted masonry or concrete or with bolts through top plates of pipe columns.

D. Install pipe columns on concrete footings with grouted baseplates. Position and grout column baseplates as specified in "Installing Bearing and Leveling Plates" Article.
   1. Grout baseplates of columns supporting steel girders after girders are installed and leveled.

3.03 INSTALLING BEARING AND LEVELING PLATES

A. Clean concrete and masonry bearing surfaces of bond-reducing materials, and roughen to improve bond to surfaces. Clean bottom surface of plates.

B. Set bearing and leveling plates on wedges, shims, or leveling nuts. After bearing members have been positioned and plumbed, tighten anchor bolts. Do not remove wedges or shims but, if protruding, cut off flush with edge of bearing plate before packing with grout.
   1. Use nonshrink grout, either metallic or nonmetallic, in concealed locations where not exposed to moisture; use nonshrink, nonmetallic grout in exposed locations unless otherwise indicated.
   2. Pack grout solidly between bearing surfaces and plates to ensure that no voids remain.

3.04 ADJUSTING AND CLEANING

A. Touchup Painting: Immediately after erection, clean field welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas. Paint uncoated and abraded areas with the same material as used for shop painting to comply with SSPC-PA 1 for touching up shop-painted surfaces.
   1. Apply by brush or spray to provide a minimum 2.0-mil dry film thickness.

B. Touchup Painting: Cleaning and touchup painting of field welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas of shop paint are specified in Division 09 painting Sections.

C. Galvanized Surfaces: Clean field welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas and repair galvanizing to comply with ASTM A 780.

END OF SECTION 05 50 00

ROCIP Project: Withhold insurance cost. Please refer to sections 00425 & 00810 for information.

SECTION 05 51 33 - ALUMINUM ACCESS LADDER

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.01 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.02 SUMMARY

A. Provide all material, labor, equipment & services, and perform all operations necessary or required for the work of this section, in accordance with the Drawings and Specifications, including fabrication and installation of Aluminum Access Ladder.

B. Related work specified elsewhere:

1. Division 05 Section - Metal Fabrications for mechanical fastening.
2. Division 06 Section - Rough Carpentry for wall blocking.
3. Division 07 Section - Roofing for Warranty restrictions and walk-pads.
4. Division 07 Section - Roof Accessories for attachment curbs.
5. Division 09 Section - Painting.

1.03 REFERENCES

A. ASTM B 209: Standard specification for Aluminum and Aluminum-Alloy Sheet and Plate.

B. ASTM B 221: Standard specification for Aluminum and Aluminum-Alloy Extruded Bars, Rods, Wire, Profiles and Tubes.

C. OSHA 1910.27: Fixed Ladders.

1.04 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Stair Treads: Capable of withstanding a concentrated 1,500 pound load without deformation.

B. Handrail: be capable of withstanding a load of 200 pounds applied in any direction at any point on the rail.

ROCIP Project: Withhold insurance cost. Please refer to sections 00425 & 00810 for information.

1.05 CONSTRUCTION REQUIREMENTS

A. Mounting Base: Install ladder with mounting brackets per manufacturers recommendations into roof equipment support as specified.

B. Wall Attachment: Provide pressure-treated wood blocking within wall framing as required for mounting bracket attachment.

C. Landing Surface: Provide walk pad at roofing surface at the bottom of each ladder.

1.06 PROJECT CONDITIONS

A. Ship's Ladder: 60-degrees from horizontal, or as shown on the drawings.

B. Vertical Drop: Verify change in elevation between the upper finished surface and the lower finished surface.

C. Verify dimensions by field measurements before fabrication.

1.07 SUBMITTALS

A. Shop Drawings: Dimensioned drawings to include plan, elevation, details, and attachments to other construction.

B. Provide templates for anchors and bolts.

C. Provide reaction loads for brackets.

1.08 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Manufacturers Qualifications: A firm experienced in producing aluminum metal ladders similar to those indicated.

1. Record of successful in-service performance.

2. Professional engineering competent in design and structural analysis to fabricate ladders in compliance with industry standards and local codes.

1.09 WARRANTY

A. Manufacturer's standard 5-Year Warranty.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.01 MANUFACTURER

A. Manufacturer: O'Keeffe's, Inc.
San Francisco, CA 94124
(800) 653-3333 www.okeeffes.com

B. Ship's Ladder: Model "520", with platform and return.

1. Incline: 60-degrees maximum from horizontal.

2.02 MATERIALS

A. Aluminum Sheet:

1. Alloy 5005-H34 to comply with ASTM B209.

B. Aluminum Extrusions:

1. Alloy 6063-T5 or T6, to comply with ASTM B221.

C. Rungs:

1. Alloy 6061-T6.

2.03 ACCESSORIES

A. Roof Curb: reference roof accessories for roof curbs as required for roof attachment.

B. Walk Pads: reference roofing for walk pads at base of ladder.

2.04 FINISHES

A. Clear Anodic Finish: AA-M10C22A41 Mechanical finish as fabricated. Architectural Class I, clear coating 0.018 mm or thicker.

2.05 FABRICATION

A. Rungs: Not less than 1-1/4 inches in section and 18-3/8 inches long, formed from tubular aluminum extrusions. Squared and deeply serrated on all sides.

B. Channel Side Rails: Not less than 1/8 inch wall thickness by 3 inches wide.

C. Heavy Duty Tubular Side Rails: Assembled from two interlocking aluminum extrusions no less than 1/8 inch wall thickness by 3 inches wide. Construction shall be self-locking stainless steel fasteners, full penetration TIG welds and clean, smooth and burr-free surfaces.

D. Ship Ladders: Not less than 1-1/4 inches high, 4-1/8 inch deep and 2 feet wide; tread spacing shall be 1 foot on center. Handrails shall be aluminum pipe, not less than 1-1/2 inches in diameter with hemispheric end caps.

E. Walk-Through Rail and Roof Rail Extension: Not less than 3 feet 6 inches above the landing and shall be fitted with deeply serrated, square, tubular grab rails.

F. Landing Platform: 1-1/2 inches or greater diameter, tubular aluminum guardrails and decks of serrated aluminum treads.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.01 EXAMINATION

A. Coordinate anchorages. Furnish setting drawings, templates & anchorage structural loads for fastener resistance.

B. Do not begin installation until supporting structure is complete and ladder installation will not interfere with supporting structure work.

C. If supporting structure is the responsibility of another installer, notify Architect of unsatisfactory supporting work before proceeding.

3.02 INSTALLATION

A. Install in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions, and in proper relationship with adjacent construction.

B. Wall Attachment: Where attached to exterior parapet wall, brackets cannot be secured through base flashing. Coordinate installation with roofing manufacturer to maintain roof system Warranty. Provide blocking as required within wall at bracket locations to comply with reaction loads as determined by manufacturer.

3.03 CLEANING

A. Leave work area clean and free of debris.

END OF SECTION 05 51 33

ROCIP Project: Withhold insurance cost. Please refer to sections 00425 & 00810 for information.

SECTION 055800 - FORMED-METAL FABRICATION FINISHING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.01 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Standard Form of Construction Agreement, including General and Special Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.02 SUMMARY

A. This Section includes the following:
   1. Coating tube columns, angle brackets and connections.

B. Related Sections include the following:
   1. Division 05 Section “Metal Fabrications”

1.03 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Structural Performance: Provide heating-cooling unit enclosures capable of withstanding the following structural loads without exceeding the allowable design working stress of materials involved, including anchors and connections, and without exhibiting permanent deformation in any components making up enclosures:
   1. 100 lbf/sq. ft. or a concentrated load of 300 lbf on an area of 4 sq. in., whichever produces the greater stress.

B. Corrosion Control: Prevent galvanic action and other forms of corrosion by insulating metals and other materials from direct contact with incompatible materials.

1.04 SUBMITTALS

A. Comply with pertinent provisions of Division 01 Section “Submittal Procedures”, unless otherwise indicated.

B. Product Data: For the following:
   1. Steel Angles.
   2. Steel Plates.

1.05 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Fabricator Qualifications: A firm experienced in producing formed-metal fabrications similar to those indicated for this Project and with a record of successful in-service performance, as well as sufficient production capacity to produce required units.

B. Source Limitations: Obtain formed-metal fabrications through one source from a single manufacturer.

1.06 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Store products on elevated platforms in a dry location.

1.07 PROJECT CONDITIONS

A. Field Measurements: Where formed-metal fabrications are indicated to fit to other construction, verify dimensions of other construction by field measurements before fabrication and indicate measurements on Shop Drawings. Coordinate fabrication schedule with construction progress to avoid delaying the Work.

1. Established Dimensions: Where field measurements cannot be made without delaying the Work, establish dimensions and proceed with fabricating formed-metal fabrications without field measurements. Coordinate construction to ensure that actual dimensions correspond to established dimensions.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.01 FINISHES, GENERAL

A. Comply with NAAMM's "Metal Finishes Manual for Architectural and Metal Products" for recommendations for applying and designating finishes.

B. Comply with SSPC-PA 1, "Paint Application Specification No. 1," for steel sheet finishes.

C. Complete mechanical finishes of flat sheet metal surfaces before fabrication where possible. After fabrication, finish all joints, bends, abrasions, and other surface blemishes to match sheet finish.

D. Protect mechanical finishes on exposed surfaces from damage by applying a strippable, temporary protective covering before shipping.

E. Apply organic and anodic finishes to formed metal after fabrication, unless otherwise indicated.

2.02 STEEL SHEET FINISHES

A. Surface Preparation: Clean surfaces to comply with SSPC-SP 1, "Solvent Cleaning," to remove dirt, oil, grease, or other contaminants that could impair paint bond. Remove mill scale and rust, if present, from uncoated steel, complying with SSPC-SP 5/NACE No. 1, "White Metal Blast Cleaning," or SSPC-SP 8, "Pickling."

B. Powder-Coated Finish: Immediately after cleaning and pretreating, apply thermosetting polyester or acrylic urethane powder coating with cured-film thickness not less than 1.5 mils. Prepare, treat, and coat metal to comply with resin manufacturer's written instructions.
   1. Color and Gloss: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.
   2. Powder Coating shall be equal to Texas Custom Coaters (979) 778-3127.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.01 INSTALLATION

A. Locate and place formed-metal fabrications level, plumb, and in alignment with adjacent construction.

B. Use concealed anchorages where possible. Provide brass or lead washers fitted to screws where needed to protect metal surfaces and to make a weathertight connection.

C. Form tight joints with exposed connections accurately fitted together. Provide reveals and openings for sealants and joint fillers as indicated.

3.02 ADJUSTING

A. Restore finishes damaged during installation and construction period so no evidence remains of correction work. Return items that cannot be refinished in the field to the shop; make required alterations and refinish entire unit or provide new units.

3.03 PROTECTION

A. Protect finishes of formed-metal fabrications from damage during construction period. Remove temporary protective coverings at time of Substantial Completion.

END OF SECTION 055800

ROCIP Project: Withhold insurance cost. Please refer to sections 00425 & 00810 for information.

SECTION 06 10 00 - ROUGH CARPENTRY

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.01 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.02 SUMMARY

A. This Section includes the following:
   1. Framing with dimension lumber.
   2. Wood blocking, cants, and nailers.
   3. Wood furring and grounds.
   4. Plywood backing panels.

B. Related Sections include the following:
   1. Division 01 Section “Sustainable Construction Requirements”.
   2. City Standard Section "Termite Control" for site application of borate treatment to wood framing.

1.03 DEFINITIONS

A. Exposed Framing: Framing not concealed by other construction.

B. Dimension Lumber: Lumber of 2 inches nominal or greater but less than 5 inches nominal in least dimension.

C. Lumber grading agencies, and the abbreviations used to reference them, include the following:
   1. NeLMA: Northeastern Lumber Manufacturers' Association.
   2. NLGA: National Lumber Grades Authority.
   3. RIS: Redwood Inspection Service.
   4. SPIB: The Southern Pine Inspection Bureau.
   5. WCLIB: West Coast Lumber Inspection Bureau.
   6. WWPA: Western Wood Products Association.

1.04 SUBMITTALS

A. Comply with pertinent provisions of Division 01 Section “Submittal Procedures”, unless otherwise indicated.

B. Product Data: For each type of process and factory-fabricated product. Indicate component materials and dimensions and include construction and application details.

1. Include data for wood-preservative treatment from chemical treatment manufacturer and certification by treating plant that treated materials comply with requirements. Indicate type of preservative used and net amount of preservative retained.
2. For products receiving a waterborne treatment, include statement that moisture content of treated materials was reduced to levels specified before shipment to Project site.
3. Include copies of warranties from chemical treatment manufacturers for each type of treatment.

C. LEED Submittals:
1. Product Data for Credit IEQ 4.1: Product data for adhesives and sealants used inside the weatherproofing system indicating VOC content of each product used.
    a. Indicate VOC content in g/L calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
2. Product Data for Credit IEQ 4.4: Product data for products containing composite wood or agrifiber products or wood glues indicating that they do not contain urea-formaldehyde resin.
3. Product Data for Credit MR 7: Product data and chain-of-custody certificates for products containing certified wood.
    a. Include statement indicating cost for each certified wood product.

D. Fastener Patterns: Full-size templates for fasteners in exposed framing.

1.05 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. LEED Forest Certification: For the following wood products, provide materials produced from wood obtained from forests certified by an FSC-accredited certification body to comply with FSC STD-01-001, "FSC Principles and Criteria for Forest Stewardship":
1. Dimension lumber framing.
2. Miscellaneous lumber.

1.06 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Stack lumber flat with spacers between each bundle to provide air circulation. Provide for air circulation around stacks and under coverings a minimum of 6 inches above ground on blocking.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.01 WOOD PRODUCTS, GENERAL

A. Lumber: DOC PS 20 and applicable rules of grading agencies indicated. If no grading agency is indicated, provide lumber that complies with the applicable rules of any rules-writing agency certified by the ALSC Board of Review. Provide lumber graded by an

agency certified by the ALSC Board of Review to inspect and grade lumber under the rules indicated.

1. Factory mark each piece of lumber with grade stamp of grading agency.
2. For exposed lumber indicated to receive a stained or natural finish, mark grade stamp on end or back of each piece.
3. Where nominal sizes are indicated, provide actual sizes required by DOC PS 20 for moisture content specified. Where actual sizes are indicated, they are minimum dressed sizes for dry lumber.
4. Provide dressed lumber, S4S, unless otherwise indicated.
5. Grade: No. 2 KD Grade Southern Yellow Pine or an equivalent strength grade. Refer to structural lumber properties schedule on drawings for required strength of substituted lumber.

B. Plywood:
   1. Exposed Plywood: Where plywood will be exposed in finished work, provide A-C/EXT-APA plywood with Grade A face exposed and Grade C concealed for exterior use; and provide A-D/INT-APA plywood with Grade A face exposed and Grade D concealed, for interior use.
   2. Concealed Interior Plywood: Where plywood will be concealed by other work, provide C-D Plugged/INT-APA.

2.02 WOOD-PRESERVATIVE-TREATED LUMBER

A. Preservative Treatment by Pressure Process: AWPA C2.
   1. Preservative Chemicals: Acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.

B. Kiln-dry lumber after treatment to a maximum moisture content of 19 percent. Do not use material that is warped or does not comply with requirements for untreated material.

C. Mark lumber with treatment quality mark of an inspection agency approved by the ALSC Board of Review.

D. Application: Treat items indicated on Drawings, and the following:
   1. Wood cants, nailers, curbs, equipment support bases, blocking, stripping, and similar members in connection with roofing, flashing, vapor barriers, and waterproofing.
   2. Wood sills, sleepers, blocking, furring, stripping, and similar concealed members in contact with masonry or concrete.
   3. Wood framing and furring attached directly to the interior of below-grade exterior masonry or concrete walls.
   4. Wood framing members that are less than 18 inches above the ground in crawlspaces or unexcavated areas.

2.03 DIMENSION LUMBER FRAMING

A. Maximum Moisture Content: 19 percent.

B. Non-Load-Bearing Interior Partitions: Construction or No. 2 grade of any species.

C. Ceiling Joists (Non-Load-Bearing): Construction or No. 2 grade of any species.

2.04 MISCELLANEOUS LUMBER

A. General: Provide miscellaneous lumber indicated and lumber for support or attachment of other construction, including the following:
   1. Blocking.
   2. Nailers.
   3. Grounds.

B. For items of dimension lumber size, provide Construction or No. 2 grade lumber with 19 percent maximum moisture content of any species.

C. For concealed boards, provide lumber with 19 percent maximum moisture content of the following species and grade:
   1. Mixed southern pine, No. 2 grade; SPIB.

D. For blocking not used for attachment of other construction, Utility, Stud, or No. 3 grade lumber of any species may be used provided that it is cut and selected to eliminate defects that will interfere with its attachment and purpose.

2.05 PLYWOOD BACKING PANELS

A. Telephone and Electrical Equipment Backing Panels: C-C Plugged in thickness indicated or, if not indicated, not less than 1/2-inch nominal thickness.

2.06 FASTENERS

A. General: Provide fasteners of size and type indicated that comply with requirements specified in this Article for material and manufacture.
   1. Where rough carpentry is exposed to weather, in ground contact, pressure-preservative treated, or in area of high relative humidity, provide fasteners with hot-dip zinc coating complying with ASTM A 153/A 153M.

B. Nails, Brads, and Staples: ASTM F 1667.

C. Power-Driven Fasteners: NES NER-272.

D. Wood Screws: ASME B18.6.1.

E. Lag Bolts: ASME B18.2.1 (ASME B18.2.3.8M).

F. Bolts: Steel bolts complying with ASTM A 307, Grade A (ASTM F 568M, Property Class 4.6); with ASTM A 563 (ASTM A 563M) hex nuts and, where indicated, flat washers.

G. Expansion Anchors: Anchor bolt and sleeve assembly of material indicated below with capability to sustain, without failure, a load equal to 6 times the load imposed when installed in unit masonry assemblies and equal to 4 times the load imposed when installed in concrete as determined by testing per ASTM E 488 conducted by a qualified independent testing and inspecting agency.
   1. Material: Carbon-steel components, zinc plated to comply with ASTM B 633, Class Fe/Zn 5.

2.07 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

A. Sill-Sealer Gaskets: 5-1/2" x 3/8" closed cell foam and adhesive backed peel and stick membrane, equal to Protecto Wrap (800-759-9727) "Triple Guard Energy Sill Sealer."

2.08 METAL FRAMING ANCHORS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products as indicated in drawings.

B. Basis-of-Design Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products indicated on Drawings.

C. Galvanized Steel Sheet: Hot-dip, zinc-coated steel sheet complying with ASTM A 653/A 653M, G60 (Z180) coating designation.

2.09 WOOD TREATMENT

A. Preservative Treatment: Where lumber or plywood is specified herein or shown on drawings to be treated, comply with applicable requirements of AWPA Standards C2 (Lumber) and C9 (Plywood) and of AWPB Standards listed below. Mark each treated item with the AWPB Quality Mark requirements.
   1. Pressure-treat above-ground items with waterborne preservatives complying with AWPB LP-2. After treatment, kiln-dry to a maximum moisture content of 19 %.
   2. Treat wood nailers, curbs, blocking, stripping, and similar members in connection with roofing, flashing, vapor barriers and waterproofing. Also treat wood sills, sleepers, blocking, furring, stripping and similar concealed members in contact with masonry, concrete or plaster.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.01 PREPARATION

A. Surfaces to receive new wood members shall be free of all dirt, debris and loose materials. Remove any projections as necessary.

B. Surfaces shall have no rain, dew, frost, etc. present.

3.02 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

A. Set rough carpentry to required levels and lines, with members plumb, true to line, cut, and fitted. Fit rough carpentry to other construction; scribe and cope as needed for accurate fit. Locate blocking and similar supports to comply with requirements for attaching other construction.

B. Framing Standard: Comply with AF&PA's "Details for Conventional Wood Frame Construction," unless otherwise indicated.

C. Metal Framing Anchors: Install metal framing to comply with manufacturer's written instructions.

D. Do not splice structural members between supports, unless otherwise indicated.

E. Provide blocking and framing as indicated and as required to support facing materials, fixtures, specialty items, and trim.
   1. Provide metal clips for fastening gypsum board or lath at corners and intersections where framing or blocking does not provide a surface for fastening edges of panels. Space clips not more than 16 inches o.c.

F. Provide fire blocking in furred spaces, stud spaces, and other concealed cavities as indicated and as follows:
   1. Fire block furred spaces of walls, at each floor level, at ceiling, and at not more than 96 inches o.c. with solid wood blocking or noncombustible materials accurately fitted to close furred spaces.
   2. Fire block concealed spaces of wood-framed walls and partitions at each floor level, at ceiling line of top story, and at not more than 96 inches o.c. Where fire blocking is not inherent in framing system used, provide closely fitted solid wood blocks of same width as framing members and 2-inch nominal thickness.
   3. Fire block concealed spaces between floor sleepers with same material as sleepers to limit concealed spaces to not more than 100 sq. ft. and to solidly fill space below partitions.
   4. Fire block concealed spaces behind combustible cornices and exterior trim at not more than 20 feet o.c.

G. Sort and select lumber so that natural characteristics will not interfere with installation or with fastening other materials to lumber. Do not use materials with defects that interfere with function of member or pieces that are too small to use with minimum number of joints or optimum joint arrangement.

H. Comply with AWPA M4 for applying field treatment to cut surfaces of preservative-treated lumber.

I. Securely attach rough carpentry work to substrate by anchoring and fastening as indicated, complying with the following:
   1. NES NER-272 for power-driven fasteners.
   2. Table 2304.9.1, "Fastening Schedule," in ICC's International Building Code.

3. Table R602.3(1), "Fastener Schedule for Structural Members," and Table R602.3(2), "Alternate Attachments," in ICC's International Residential Code for One- and Two-Family Dwellings.

J. Use common wire nails, unless otherwise indicated. Select fasteners of size that will not fully penetrate members where opposite side will be exposed to view or will receive finish materials. Make tight connections between members. Install fasteners without splitting wood; do not countersink nail heads, unless otherwise indicated.

3.03 INSTALLATION

A. Warped wood members shall not be used.

B. Lumber or Plywood to Lumber:
1. Nail spacing shall be maximum of 12" on center and staggered across face of piece. Fastener shall be located within 3" of each end of piece. Maximum spacing of 6" on center, 8' each way from corners for roof edge blocking, unless otherwise noted on drawings.
2. Wood framing and furring materials spaced 16" on center, attached at 8' on center at each support, unless noted otherwise.
3. Nail heads shall be flush with wood surface and nail shall penetrate adjoining piece minimum of 1.25 inches.
4. The installed withdrawal resistance shall be a minimum of 100 pounds per nail.

C. Waste Management: As specified in Section 01 74 19 (01351) – Construction Waste Management and as follows:
1. 1. Select lumber sizes to minimize waste; reuse scrap lumber to the greatest extent possible. Clearly separate scrap lumber for use on site as accessory components, including: shims, bracing, and blocking.
2. 2. Do not leave any wood, shavings, sawdust, etc. on the ground or buried in fill. Prevent saw dust and wood shavings from entering the storm drainage system.
3. 3. Do not burn scrap lumber that has been pressure treated.
4. a. Do not send lumber treated with pentachlorophenol, CCA, or ACA to co-generation facilities or “waste-to-energy” facilities.

3.04 ROUGH CARPENTRY

A. Provide cutting, fitting, fabricating, blocking, nailing, and miscellaneous items of furring, grounds, blocking, screeds and nailers required to accommodate roofing, equipment, lavatory counter tops, accessories and other items, including NIC items requiring wood framing, blocking or furring. Materials erected plumb, level and uniformly true to plan providing all shims as required.

B. Fastenings for Wall Supported Items: Provide and install 2 x 8 (minimum) x 1 stud space wood blocking, unless specified otherwise at all stud wall areas receiving grab bars, toilet partitions, wall bumpers and other wall mounted accessories.

3.05 ROUGH HARDWARE

A. Provide bolts, screws, anchors, inserts and fastenings required for proper attachment of carpentry and millwork items. Fastenings to concrete or masonry with expansion bolts or anchors. Toggle bolts may be used for hollow masonry. Fastening to wood plugs not permitted. Fastenings spaced 16" o.c. unless otherwise noted.

3.06 FINISH CARPENTRY

A. Hollow Metal Frame Installation: Exercise care in setting of frames with head level and jambs plumb and square. Secure anchorages to adjacent construction, labeled frames secured per U.L. requirements. Leave spreader bars in place until frames are finally secured square and plumb.

B. Specialty Items: Receive specialty items such as toilet accessories and miscellaneous specialty items and install in accordance with approved shop and setting drawings, using proper fasteners. Install items plumbs, level and true, securely fastened with proper bolts or screws.

C. Miscellaneous Metal Items Installation: Receive miscellaneous metal items and install plumb, level and secure in strict accordance with approved shop drawings.

D. Wood attached to CMU: Secure wood items to CMU with anchors and bolts. Apply construction adhesive to wood prior to securing bolts.

3.07 WOOD GROUND, SLEEPER, BLOCKING, AND NAILER INSTALLATION

A. Install where indicated and where required for attaching other work. Form to shapes indicated and cut as required for true line and level of attached work. Coordinate locations with other work involved.

B. Attach items to substrates to support applied loading. Recess bolts and nuts flush with surfaces, unless otherwise indicated.

3.08 WOOD FURRING INSTALLATION

A. Install level and plumb with closure strips at edges and openings. Shim with wood as required for tolerance of finish work.

3.09 CLEAN UP

A. Clean up all debris caused by the work in this section, keeping the premises clean and neat at all times. Upon completion of the work of this section, remove all related debris from premises.

END OF SECTION 06 10 00

ROCIP Project: Withhold insurance cost. Please refer to sections 00425 & 00810 for information.

SECTION 06 11 00 - WOOD FRAMING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.01 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Standard Form of Construction Agreement, including General and Special Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.02 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:
1. Provide rough carpentry, wood framing, trusses, sheathing, and other items normally provided by framing trade and install such items listed herein furnished by other trades.

B. Related Sections include the following:
1. Division 01 Section “Sustainable Construction Requirements”
2. Division 03 Section “Concrete Formwork.”
3. Division 05 Section “Miscellaneous Metals.”
4. Division 06 Section “Rough Carpentry.”
5. Division 06 Section “Sheathing.”
6. Division 08 Section “Hollow Metal Door, Frames, and Window Frames.”

1.03 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Lumber Standards: Comply with PS 20 and with applicable rules of the respective grading and inspecting agencies for species and products used.

B. Plywood Product Standards: Comply with PS 1 (ANSI A 199.1) or, for products not manufactured under PS 1 provisions, with applicable APA Performance Standard for type of panel specified.

C. Framing Members: Shall comply with recommendations of "Manual for House Framing" of National Forest Products Association.

D. Anchor and Nail: Shall comply with "Recommended Nailing Schedule of Manual for House Framing" and other recommendations of N.F.P.A.

E. Pre-fabricated Wood Members: Comply with design standards for manufactured products set forth in CABO Report No. NER-200 and NER-126.

ROCIP Project: Withhold insurance cost. Please refer to sections 00425 & 00810 for information.

1.04 SUBMITTALS

A. Comply with pertinent provisions of Division 01 Section "Submittal Procedures", unless otherwise indicated.

B. Wood Treatment Data: Submit treatment manufacturer's instructions for proper use of each type of treated material. Include certification by treating plant stating chemicals and process used, net amount of preservative retained and conformance with applicable standards. Include statement that moisture content of treated materials was reduced to a maximum of 19% prior to shipment.

C. Prefabricated Wood Trusses: Submit calculations and engineering data.

D. Pre-fabricated Wood Joists:
1. Submit shop drawings showing framing system and joist spacing, loads and joists camber, bearing and anchor details, bridging and bracing and framed openings. Include design calculations and engineering data.
2. Submit manufacturer's installation instructions.

E. LEED Submittals: Product Data for Credit IEQ 4.1:
1. Product data for adhesives and sealants used inside the weatherproofing system indicating VOC content of each product used.
2. Product Data for Credit IEQ 4.4: Product data for products containing composite wood or agrifiber products or wood glues indicating that they do not contain urea-formaldehyde resin.
3. Product Data for Credit MR 7: Product data and chain-of-custody certificates for products containing certified wood.
   a. Include statement indicating cost for each certified wood product.

F. Material Certificates: Where dimensional lumber is provided to comply with minimum allowable unit stresses, submit listing of species and grade selected for each use and submit evidence of compliance with specified requirements. Compliance may be in form of a signed copy of applicable portion of lumber producer's grading rules showing design values for selected species and grade. Design values shall be as approved by the Board of Review of American Lumber Standards Committee.

1.05 HANDLING, DELIVERY AND STORAGE

A. Keep materials dry at all times. Protect against exposure to weather and contact with damp or wet surfaces. Stack lumber and plywood, and provide air circulation within stacks.

1.06 COORDINATION

A. Fit carpentry work to other work; scribe and cope as required for accurate fit. Correlate location of furring, nailers, blocking, grounds and similar supports to allow proper attachment of other work.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.01 WOOD MATERIALS

A. Lumber, General:
1. Factory mark each piece of lumber with type, grade, mill and grading agency, except omit marking from surfaces to be exposed with transparent finish or without finish.
2. Nominal sizes are indicated, except as shown by detail dimensions. Provide actual sizes as required by PS 20, for moisture content specified for each use.
3. Provide seasoned lumber with 15% maximum moisture content at time of dressing.

B. Framing Lumber & Miscellaneous Lumber (2" through 4" thick and less than 6" wide):
1. For light framing and miscellaneous lumber (furring, grounds, blocking) provide "Stud" grade lumber for stud framing and "Standard" grade for other light framing, any species. The Contractor may, at his option, use Standard Grade throughout.

C. Pre-fabricated Wood Joists: Lightweight roof and floor joists shall be of flange members, web members and adhesives conforming to CABO Report No. NER-200, equal to I-joists as manufactured by Trus Joist Corporation. Install webs in flanges with grain running in vertical direction of joist and butt joined to form continuous web. Pressure form web and fit into groove in center of wide face of flange members. Each joist shall be identified by a stamp indicating joist type, manufacturer’s name, and conforming report number. Install webs in flanges with grain running in vertical direction of joist and butt joined to form continuous web. Pressure form web and fit into a groove in center of wide face of flange members.

D. Plywood:
1. Roof Sheathing: Exterior, APA Rated Sheathing, with span rating to suit joist or truss spacing; thickness as noted on drawings.

2. Wall Sheathing: Exterior, APA Rated Sheathing with span rating to suit stud spacing; thickness as noted on drawings.
3. Sub-Flooring: APA Rated Sheathing, Exposure 1, with span rating to suit joist spacing; thickness as noted on drawings.
4. Backing Panels at Telephone and Electric Equipment: Provide C-D-INT-APA plywood with exterior glue, 1/2" thick.

E. Structural Framing (2” through 4” thick and 6” or wider):
1. For structural framing, provide a Grade of any species which meets or exceeds an “Fb” (minimum extreme fiber stress in bending) of 1200 psi and an “E” (minimum of elasticity) of 1,200,000.

F. Pressure Treated Wood Sills: Blocking, furring, stripping and similar concealed members in contact with masonry or concrete, wood cants, nailers, curbs, blocking, stripping and similar members in connection with roofing, flashing, vapor barriers, and waterproofing, shall be pressure treated using water-borne preservatives complying with AWPB LP-2. After treatment, kiln dry to a max. moisture content of 15%. Coat cut surfaces with same chemical used for treatment. Creosote or oil borne preservatives are prohibited.

2.02 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

A. Provide metal hangers and framing anchors equal to Simpson Strong Tie as indicated on drawings or approved equal.

B. Fasteners: Provide size, type, material and finish as indicated and as recommended by applicable standards, complying with applicable Federal Specifications for nails, staples, screws, bolts, nuts, washers and anchoring devices.

C. Fasteners in Concrete & Masonry: Shall be approved "Wej-It" expansion shields set in properly drilled holes or "Redhead" self-drilling anchors and machine bolts.

D. Where rough framing work is exposed to weather or in ground contact, provide fasteners and anchorages with a hot-dip zinc coating (ASTM A153).

E. Sill-Sealer Gaskets: 5-1/2” x 3/8” closed cell foam and adhesive backed peel and stick membrane, equal to Proteco Wrap, “Triple Guard Engergy Sill Sealer.”

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.01 INSPECTION

A. Examine the areas and conditions where wood frame construction is to be installed and notify the Architect of conditions detrimental to the proper and timely

completion of the work. Do not proceed with the work until satisfactory conditions have been corrected by the Contractor in a manner acceptable to the Architect.

3.02 INSTALLATION

A. General:
1. Discard units of material with defects which might impair quality of work, and units which are too small to use in fabricating work with minimum joints or optimum joint arrangement.
2. Protect all material from weather and handle with care.
3. Set carpentry work accurately to required levels and lines, with members plumb and true and accurately cut and fitted.
4. Securely attach carpentry work to substrate by anchoring and fastening as shown and as required by recognized standards. Countersink nail heads on exposed carpentry work and fill holes.
   a. Use common wire nails, except as otherwise indicated. Use finishing nails for finish work. Select fasteners of size that will not penetrate members where opposite side will be exposed to view or will receive finish materials. Make tight connections between members. Install fasteners without splitting of wood; pre-drill as required.

B. Waste Management: As specified in Section 01 74 19 (01351) – Construction Waste Management and as follows:
1. 1. Select lumber sizes to minimize waste; reuse scrap lumber to the greatest extent possible. Clearly separate scrap lumber for use on site as accessory components, including: shims, bracing, and blocking.
2. 2. Do not leave any wood, shavings, sawdust, etc. on the ground or buried in fill. Prevent saw dust and wood shavings from entering the storm drainage system.
3. 3. Do not burn scrap lumber that has been pressure treated.
4. a. Do not send lumber treated with pentachlorophenol, CCA, or ACA to co-generation facilities or “waste-to-energy” facilities.

C. Wood Framing, General:
1. Provide framing members of sizes and on spacings shown, and frame openings as shown, or if not shown, comply with recommendations of "Manual for House Framing" of National Forest Products Association.
2. Do not splice structural members between supports.

D. Stud Framing:
1. General: Provide stud framing where shown. Unless otherwise shown, use 2" x 4" wood studs spaced 16" O.C. with 4" face perpendicular to direction of wall or partition. Provide single bottom plate and double top plates 2" thick by width of studs; except single top plate may be used for non-load bearing partitions. Nail or anchor plates to supporting construction.

2. Construct corners and intersections with not less than 3 studs. Provide miscellaneous blocking and framing as shown and as required for support of facing materials, fixtures, specialty items and trim.
3. Frame openings with multiple studs and headers. Provide nailed header members of thickness equal to width of studs. Set headers on edge and support on jamb studs.
   a. For non-bearing partitions, provide double-jamb studs and two 2" x 6" headers with plywood flitch.
   b. For load-bearing partitions, provide double-jamb studs for openings 6' and less in width, and triple-jamb studs for wider openings. Provide headers of depth shown, or if not shown, provide as recommended by N.F.P.A., "Manual for House Framing".

E. Pre-fabricated Wood Joist Framing:
1. Material shall be erected and installed in accordance with the plans, shop drawings and manufacturer's installation instructions. Temporary construction loads which cause stresses beyond design limits are not permitted. Place permanent bridging, bracing and anchors to maintain joists straight and in correct position before installation of decking. Holes, cuts or notches not previously approved by joist engineering shall not be permitted. The final erection shall be under the direction of qualified construction supervisor.
2. Connections: Lateral nail holding and withdrawal are as provided in the code for Douglas Fir sawn lumber. Nails installed parallel to the glue lines on the narrow face shall not be spaced closer than four inches for 10-penny common nails and three inches for 8-penny common nails. Nails installed perpendicular to the glue lines on the wide face shall be installed in accordance with the code. These nailing specifications are based on a member at least ¾" thick and 3-1/2" wide. Holding power of bolts installed perpendicular to the glue lines is as provided in the code for dense Douglas Fir.

F. Joist Framing:
1. General: Provide framing of sizes and spacings shown. Install with crown edge up and support ends of each member with not less than 1-1/2" of bearing on wood. Attach to wood bearing members by toe nailing or metal connectors, or both; frame to wood supporting members with wood ledgers as shown, or if not shown, with metal connectors. Frame openings with headers and trimmers; double headers and trimmers where span of header exceeds 4'. Do not notch in middle third of joists; limit notches to 1/6 depth of joist, 1/3 at ends. Do not bore holes larger than 1/3 depth of joist or locate closer than 2" from top or bottom. Provide solid blocking (2" thick by depth of joist) at ends of joists unless nailed to header or brand member.
2. Lap members framing from opposite sides of beams, girders or partitions not less than 4" or securely tie opposing members together. Provide solid blocking (2" thick by depth of joists) over supports.

3. Anchor members paralleling masonry with 1/4" x 1-1/4" metal strap anchors spaced not more than 8' O.C. Extend anchors at least 4" into masonry, turn up 4" and extend over and fasten to 3 joists.
4. Under jamb studs at openings, provide solid blocking between joist.
5. Under non-load bearing partitions, provide double joists separated by solid blocking equal to depth of studs above. Provide triple-joists separated as above, under partitions receiving ceramic tile and similar heavy finishes or fixtures, unless otherwise shown.
6. Provide bridging between joists where nominal depth-to-thickness ratio exceeds 4, at intervals of 8'. use bevel cut 1" x 4" or 2" x 3" wood bracing, double-crossed and nailed both ends to joists, or use solid wood bridging 2" thick by depth of joist, end nailed to joist.

G. Rafter and Ceiling Joist Framing:
1. Ceiling Joists: Provide member size and spacing shown, and as previously specified for joist framing. Face nail to ends of parallel rafters.
2. Rafters: Provide member size and spacing shown. Notch to fit exterior wall plates and toe nail or use special metal framing anchors. Double rafters to form headers and trimmers at openings in roof framing. Where rafters abut at ridge, place directly opposite each other and nail to ridge member or use metal ridge hangers.
   a. At valleys, provide valley rafter of size shown, or if not shown, provide rafter twice as thick as regular rafters and 2" deeper. Bevel ends of jack rafters for full bearing against valley rafter.
   b. At hips, provide hip rafters of size shown, or if not shown, provide of same thickness as regular rafters and 2" deeper. Bevel ends of jack rafters for full bearing against hip rafters.
3. Provide collar beams (ties) as shown, or if not shown, provide 1" x 6" boards between every third pair of rafters. Locate below ridge member, on-third of distance to ceiling joists. Cut ends to fit slope and nail to rafters.
4. Provide special framing as shown for eaves, overhangs, dormers and similar conditions, if any.

H. Trussed Rafters:
1. General: Provide trussed rafters where shown. Comply with the applicable requirements of the NLMA's, "National Design Specifications for Stress Graded Lumber and Its Fastenings", and the Truss Plate Institute's, "Light Metal Connected Wood Trusses".
2. Provide pre-engineered and shop-assembled trusses designed for the span, loading, truss shape and spacing shown. Fabricate in the plant of the manufacturer or his licensed fabricator.
3. Erect trusses in accordance with manufacturer's printed instructions. Provide temporary supports and bracing as required.

I. Plywood Roof Sheathing:

1. Provide plywood roof sheathing as required. Install with long dimension across supports, using panels continuous over 2 or more spans with end joints between panels staggered and located over center of supports.
   a. Refer structural drawings for nailing, spacing, and patterns.
   b. Provide support at unsupported long edges with "Plyclips" or wood blocking.
2. Allow 1/8" open space between end joints and 1/4" open space between edge joints for expansion and contraction of panels.

J. Plywood Wall Sheathing:
1. Provide plywood wall sheathing. Install horizontally or vertically using panels continuous over 2 or more spans. Nail edges and ends over supports at 6" O.C. and at 12" O.C. over intermediate studs, using 6d nails for panels not more than 1/2" thick and 8d nails for thicker panels or as noted on plans. Allow 1/8" spacing at panel ends and 1/4" at panel edges.
2. All wall sheathing shall be a cohesive glue-nailed system with adhesive the full length of every stud.
3. Over all new sheathing apply one layer of building paper as specified herein.

K. Plywood Flooring:
1. Sub-Floor: Install with the long dimension of the panel across supports and with panel continuous over two or more spans. Panel end joints shall occur over framing. Allow 1/8" spacing at panel ends and 1/4" at panel edges. Nail 4" O.C. along panel edges and 10" O.C. at intermediate supports and blocking with 6d common nails for 1/2" panels, 8d for greater thicknesses, or as noted on plans. Where panels are 1-1/8" or 1-1/4" thick and supports are 48" O.C., nails shall be 8d ring-shank or 10d common and space 6" O.C. at all supports.

L. Nailing: Where driving of nails causes splitting, holes for nails shall be sub-drilled. The following is the minimum schedule for common wire nails:
1. Double Top and Sole Plates: Lower member to studs - 2 - 16d; upper member to lower, staggered - 16d at 12"; at intersection - 3 - 16d.
2. Blocking Between Studs: End nail, each end - 2 - 16d and/or toe nail, each end - 2- 8d.
3. Ribbons to Studs: 1" - 2 - 8d.
4. Multiple Studs: For widths over 4", stagger - 16d at 12".
5. Studs to Bearings: Toe nails, each side - 2 - 8d.
6. No staples will be permitted as a substitute for nails.

3.03 CLEAN UP

A. Upon completion of work of this section, remove related debris from premises.

END OF SECTION 06 11 00

ROCIP Project: Withhold insurance cost. Please refer to sections 00425 & 00810 for information.

SECTION 06 12 00 – STRUCTURAL INSULATED PANELS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.01 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Standard Form of Construction Agreement, including General and Special Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section

1.02 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.03 SUMMARY

A. This Section includes Structural Insulated Panels (SIP).

B. Related Sections include the following:
   1. Section 06100 – Rough Carpentry
   2. Section 06130 – Timber Framing

1.04 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Structural Performance: Provide SIPs capable of withstanding design loads including dead load, live loads, wind loads and seismic loads. Design loads shall be in compliance with the requirements of the local Building Code.

1.05 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: SIP manufacturer's product literature including structural properties and installation instructions.

B. Shop Drawings: Show fully dimensioned fabrication and installation details for SIPs. Shop drawings shall be prepared under the supervision of a Professional Engineer.

C. Evaluation report from ICC-ES or Canadian Construction Materials Centre.

1.06 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. SIP Manufacturer shall be a member of the Structural Insulated Panel Association (SIPA).

B. Structural Design: A Professional Engineer shall perform a structural analysis and design of the SIP assemblies in accordance with the design loads.

C. Installation Contractor must have experience on projects of similar size and scope. Lead installer / supervisor shall have a minimum of 3 years experience installing SIPs or have completed a certifying curriculum at a dedicated SIP training program such as those provided by the United Brotherhood of Carpenters and Joiners of America or equivalent.

1.07 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. SIPs shall be kept dry and protected with waterproof covering during transportation and storage.

B. Exercise care to prevent crushing of SIP edges with cargo hold down straps during transportation.

C. Carefully load and unload SIPs from trucks to prevent damage to the panels.

D. Store SIPs elevated off of the ground on sleepers.

E. Take care in handling SIPs to prevent delamination. Do not lift panels by the top skin.

1.08 COORDINATION

A. Time delivery and installation of SIPs to avoid extended on-site storage and to avoid delaying progress of other trades whose work must follow the installation of SIPs.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.01 STRUCTURAL INSULATED PANELS (SIP)

A. Oriented Strand Board (OSB): 7/16” thick minimum.

B. Core: [Expanded Polystyrene (EPS) shall comply with ASTM C578 and shall have a minimum density of 0.9. pcf.] [polyurethane foam core] [extruded polystyrene (XPS) shall comply with ASTM C578 and shall have a minimum density of 1.3 pcf]

C. Adhesive: ASTM D2559

2.02 LUMBER

A. Grade and Species: Visually graded dimension lumber No. 2 or better of any of the following species:
   1. Spruce-Pine-Fir; NLGA
   2. Hem-Fir (North); WCLIB or WWPA
   3. Douglas Fir – Larch; WCLIB or WWPA
   4. Southern Pine; SPIB

B. Lumber shall be kiln dried to not more than 19% moisture content

C. Lumber shall be clearly marked with grade stamp of grading agency.

D. Engineered wood products shall be used where required for structural adequacy.
   1. Laminated Veneer Lumber (LVL)
   2. Parallel Strand Lumber (LSL)
   3. Laminated Strand Lumber (LSL)

2.03 FASTENERS

A. Common Nails: ASTM F1667.

B. Panel Screws: screws with pancake head, minimal thread diameter 0.255 inches, minimum shank diameter 0.190 inches and a minimum head diameter 0.625 inches.

2.04 FABRICATION

A. Cut SIPs to accurate lengths, angles, and sizes to produce close fitting joints.

B. Remove foam as required to accommodate wood blocking and splines.

C. Provide electrical wiring chases in foam core where required.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.01 PREPARATION

A. Examine foundations, sills, framing and other surfaces to receive SIPs and verify that conditions are suitable for the installation of SIPs. Report any unsatisfactory

conditions to the Contractor. Do not proceed with installation until unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.02 INSTALLATION

A. Hoist SIPs in place by lifting equipment suited to size of panels. Exercise care to prevent damage to SIPs.

B. Install SIPs plumb, square and true to line.

C. Fill all panel joints with expanding urethane foam or seal by other approved method.

D. Repair or replace all damaged SIPs.

E. Remove debris from project site and legally dispose of debris.

END OF SECTION 06 12 00

ROCIP Project: Withhold insurance cost. Please refer to sections 00425 & 00810 for information.

SECTION 061600 – SHEATHING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.01 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.02 SUMMARY

A. This Section includes the following:
   1. Wall sheathing.
   2. Roof sheathing.
   3. Subflooring.
   4. Building wrap.

B. Related Sections include the following:
   1. Division 06 Section "Wood Framing".
   2. Division 06 Section "Rough Carpentry".
   3. Division 07 Section "Plastic Film Air Barrier".
   4. Division 07 Section "Bituminous Dampproofing".

1.03 SUBMITTALS

A. Comply with pertinent provisions of Division 01 Section “Submittal Procedures”, unless otherwise indicated.

B. Product Data: For each type of process and factory-fabricated product. Indicate component materials and dimensions and include construction and application details.
   1. Include data for wood-preservative treatment from chemical treatment manufacturer and certification by treating plant that treated plywood complies with requirements. Indicate type of preservative used and net amount of preservative retained.
   2. Include data for fire-retardant treatment from chemical treatment manufacturer and certification by treating plant that treated plywood complies with requirements. Include physical properties of treated materials.
   3. For fire-retardant treatments specified to be High-Temperature (HT) type, include physical properties of treated plywood both before and after exposure to elevated temperatures, based on testing by a qualified independent testing agency according to ASTM D 5516.
   4. For products receiving a waterborne treatment, include statement that moisture content of treated materials was reduced to levels specified before shipment to Project site.

5. Include copies of warranties from chemical treatment manufacturers for each type of treatment.
6. For building wrap, include data on air-/moisture-infiltration protection based on testing according to referenced standards.

C. Research/Evaluation Reports: For the following, showing compliance with building code in effect for Project:
1. Preservative-treated plywood.
2. Fire-retardant-treated plywood.
3. Building wrap.

1.04 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Fire-Test-Response Characteristics: For assemblies with fire-resistance ratings, provide materials and construction identical to those of assemblies tested for fire resistance per ASTM E 119 by a testing and inspecting agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.

1.05 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Stack plywood and other panels flat with spacers between each bundle to provide air circulation. Provide for air circulation around stacks and under coverings.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.01 WOOD PANEL PRODUCTS, GENERAL

A. Plywood: DOC PS 2, unless otherwise indicated.

B. Thickness: As needed to comply with requirements specified, but not less than thickness indicated.

C. Factory mark panels to indicate compliance with applicable standard.

2.02 PRESERVATIVE-TREATED PLYWOOD

A. Preservative Treatment by Pressure Process: AWPA C9.
1. Preservative Chemicals: Acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction and containing no arsenic or chromium.

B. Mark plywood with appropriate classification marking of an inspection agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.

C. Application: Treat items indicated on Drawings and plywood in contact with masonry or concrete or used with roofing, flashing, vapor barriers, and waterproofing.

2.03 FIRE-RETARDANT-TREATED PLYWOOD

A. General: Comply with performance requirements in AWPA C27.
   1. Use treatment that does not promote corrosion of metal fasteners.
   2. Use Exterior type for exterior locations and where indicated.
   3. Use Interior Type A, High Temperature (HT) for roof sheathing and where indicated.
   4. Use Interior Type A, unless otherwise indicated.

B. Kiln-dry material after treatment to maximum moisture content of 15 percent. Do not use material that is warped or does not comply with requirements for untreated material.

C. Identify fire-retardant-treated plywood with appropriate classification marking of UL, U.S. Testing, Timber Products Inspection, or another testing and inspecting agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.

D. Application: Treat plywood indicated on Drawings, and the following:
   1. Roof and wall sheathing within 48 inches of fire walls.
   2. Roof sheathing.
   3. Subflooring and underlayment for raised platforms.

2.04 WALL SHEATHING

A. Plywood Wall Sheathing: Exterior, Structural Exposure 1 sheathing.
   1. Span Rating: Not less than span as indicated on drawings.
   2. Nominal Thickness: Not less than as indicated on drawings.

2.05 ROOF SHEATHING

A. Plywood Roof Sheathing: Exterior Exposure 1 sheathing.
   1. Span Rating: Not less than span as indicated on drawings.
   2. Nominal Thickness: Not less than as indicated on drawings.

2.06 SUBFLOORING AND UNDERLAYMENT

A. Plywood Subflooring: Exterior Exposure 1 single-floor panels or sheathing.
   1. Span Rating: Not less than to support joist spacing is required.
   2. Nominal Thickness: Not less than as indicated on drawings.

2.07 FASTENERS

A. General: Provide fasteners of size and type indicated that comply with requirements specified in this Article for material and manufacture.
   1. For roof and wall sheathing, provide fasteners with ASTM A 153/A 153M.

B. Nails, Brads, and Staples: ASTM F 1667.

C. Power-Driven Fasteners: NES NER-272.

D. Wood Screws: ASME B18.6.1.

2.08 WEATHER-RESISTANT SHEATHING PAPER

A. Building Paper: ASTM D 226, Type 1 (No. 15 asphalt-saturated organic felt), unperforated.

B. Building-Wrap Tape: Pressure-sensitive plastic tape recommended by building-wrap manufacturer for sealing joints and penetrations in building wrap.

2.09 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

A. Adhesives for Field Gluing Panels to Framing: Formulation complying with ASTM D 3498 that is approved for use with type of construction panel indicated by manufacturers of both adhesives and panels.

B. Flexible Flashing and window surrounds: Composite, self-adhesive, flashing product consisting of a pliable, rubberized-asphalt compound, bonded to a high-density, cross-laminated polyethylene film to produce an overall thickness of not less than 0.030 inch.
   1. Available Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
   2. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
      a. Carlisle Coatings & Waterproofing; CCW-705-TWF Thru-Wall Flashing.
      b. Grace Construction Products, a unit of W. R. Grace & Co. - Conn.; Grace Vycor V40 Self Adhered Flashing.
      c. MFM Building Products Corp.; Window Wrap.
      d. Protecto Wrap Company; PS-45.

C. Primer for Flexible Flashing: Product recommended by manufacturer of flexible flashing for substrate.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.01 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

A. Do not use materials with defects that impair quality of sheathing or pieces that are too small to use with minimum number of joints or optimum joint arrangement.

B. Cut panels at penetrations, edges, and other obstructions of work; fit tightly against abutting construction, unless otherwise indicated.

C. Securely attach to substrate by fastening as indicated, complying with the following:
   1. NES NER-272 for power-driven fasteners.

2. Table 2304.9.1, "Fastening Schedule," in ICC's "International Building Code."

D. Use common wire nails, unless otherwise indicated. Select fasteners of size that will not fully penetrate members where opposite side will be exposed to view or will receive finish materials. Make tight connections. Install fasteners without splitting wood.

E. Coordinate wall and roof sheathing installation with flashing and joint-sealant installation so these materials are installed in sequence and manner that prevent exterior moisture from passing through completed assembly.

F. Do not bridge building expansion joints; cut and space edges of panels to match spacing of structural support elements.

G. Coordinate sheathing installation with installation of materials installed over sheathing so sheathing is not exposed to precipitation or left exposed at end of the workday when rain is forecast.

3.02 WOOD STRUCTURAL PANEL INSTALLATION

A. General: Comply with applicable recommendations in APA Form No. E30S, "Engineered Wood Construction Guide," for types of structural-use panels and applications indicated.

B. Fastening Methods: Fasten panels as indicated below:
   1. Subflooring:
      a. Glue and nail to wood framing.
      b. Space panels 1/8 inch apart at edges and ends.
   2. Wall and Roof Sheathing:
      a. Nail to wood framing. Apply a continuous bead of glue to framing members at edges of wall sheathing panels.
      b. Space panels 1/8 inch apart at edges and ends.

3.03 WEATHER-RESISTANT SHEATHING-PAPER INSTALLATION

A. General: Cover sheathing with weather-resistant sheathing paper as follows:
   1. Cut back barrier 1/2 inch on each side of the break in supporting members at expansion- or control-joint locations.
   2. Apply barrier to cover vertical flashing with a minimum 4-inch overlap, unless otherwise indicated.

B. Building Paper: Apply horizontally with a 2-inch overlap and a 6-inch end lap; fasten to sheathing with galvanized staples or roofing nails.

C. Building Wrap: Comply with manufacturer's written instructions.
   1. Seal seams, edges, fasteners, and penetrations with tape.
   2. Extend into jambs of openings and seal corners with tape.

ROCIP Project: Withhold insurance cost. Please refer to sections 00425 & 00810 for information.

3.04 FLEXIBLE FLASHING INSTALLATION

A. Apply flexible flashing where indicated to comply with manufacturers written instructions.
   1. Prime substrates as recommended by flashing manufacturer.
   2. Lap seams and junctures with other materials at least 4 inches, except that at flashing flanges of other construction, laps need not exceed flange width.
   3. Lap flashing over weather-resistant building paper at bottom and sides of openings.
   4. Extend flashing through sheathing and up a minimum of 4”.
   5. Lap weather-resistant building paper over flashing at heads of openings.
   6. After flashing has been applied, roll surfaces with a hard rubber or metal roller to ensure that flashing is completely adhered to substrates.

3.05 PROTECTION

A. Paper-Surfaced Gypsum Sheathing: Protect sheathing by covering exposed exterior surface of sheathing with weather-resistant sheathing paper securely fastened to framing. Apply covering immediately after sheathing is installed.

END OF SECTION 061600

SECTION 06 17 53 – SHOP FABRICATED WOOD TRUSSES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.01 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Standard Form of Construction Agreement, including General and Special Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section

1.02 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes: Furnish labor, material, services, equipment and appliances required for prefabricated wood truss work indicated on the Drawings and specified herein.
   1. Wood trusses
   2. Bridging
   3. Temporary and permanent bracing
   4. Related hardware (as required) and including:
      a. Metal hangers
      b. Anchors
      c. Special metal shapes

B. Related Sections include the following:
   1. Division 01 Section “Sustainable Construction Requirements”
   2. Division 06 Section “Rough Carpentry”
   3. Division 06 Section “Sheathing”
   4. Division 06 Section “Wood Framing”

1.03 ENGINEERING DESIGN

A. Trusses shall be custom designed to fit dimensions and loads indicated on the Drawings. Design shall be in accord with allowable values assigned by the most restrictive governing code. Complete design calculation showing internal layout member forces and stress control points are to be submitted to the Architect. Design shall be under the supervision of a registered professional engineer.

1.04 QUALITY STANDARDS

A. Trusses shall be manufactured in a plant approved for fabrication by the Owner.

B. The standards of Automated Building Components, Inc. for quality, engineering and fabrication shall govern the work of the section.

C. National Forest Products Association (NFPA): "National Design Specifications for Stress Grade Lumber and Its Fastenings."

D. American Institute of Timber Construction (AITC): "Timber Construction Standards".

E. Truss Plate Institute (TPI): "Design Specifications for Light Metal Plate Connected Wood Trusses".

F. American Society for Testing Materials (ASTM)

1.05 SHOP DRAWINGS

A. Comply with pertinent provisions of Division 01 Section “Submittal Procedures”, unless otherwise indicated.

B. Submit shop drawings bearing the seal of a professional engineer, licensed in the State of Texas, showing:
   1. Pitch, span, camber, dimensions and spacing of truss.
   2. Truss bearing sizes and locations.
   3. Design loading of truss and allowable stress increase.
   4. Axial forces in each truss member.
   5. Nominal sizes and location of connector plates at all joints.
   6. Size, species and stress of grade of lumber for all truss members.
   7. Permanent lateral bracing as required by design to reduce buckling length of individual truss members only.
   8. Handling and erection recommendations.

C. Submit design calculation for each truss sealed by a registerd professional engineer licensed in the State of Texas.

D. LEED Submittals:
   1. Product Data for Credit IEQ4.4: Product data for products containing composite wood or agrifiber products or wood glues indicating that they do not contain urea-formaldehyde resin.
   2. Product Data for Credit MR 7: Product data and chain-of-custody certificates for products containing certified wood.
      a. Include statement indicating cost for each certified wood product.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.01 ITEMS TO BE PROVIDED

A. Prefabricated Wood Truss: Products designed and approved by Automated Building Components or approved equal.

2.02 FABRICATION

A. General: Components shall be fabricated in a properly equipped manufacturing facility of a permanent nature. They shall be manufactured by experienced workmen, using precision cutting and truss fabricating equipment, under the direct supervision of a qualified foreman. All trusses shall be fabricated under strict rules of inspection and quality control required by governing authority.

B. Cutting Members: Accurately cut to length, angle and true to line to assure tight joints for finished truss.

C. Connections: Properly place members and connectors in special jigs and tightly clamp members in place until the connector plates have been pressed into the lumber simultaneously on both sides of the joints.

D. Camber: As noted on accepted shop drawings by properly positioning the members in the fabricating jig.

2.03 MATERIALS

A. Lumber (No. 2 Southern Yellow Pine): Conform to the published stress ratings for the species and grades set out in the official grading rules of the appropriate lumber association or as listed in the reference specifications. Wherever this Specification, or notes on the plans or truss engineering design calls for lumber which exceed the minimum set forth therein, the Specifications, plans and/or truss engineering designs shall be applicable, and information stated or shown in one shall be applicable the same as if in all of them. All lumber shall conform to the species and fully recognized nominal sizes shown on the plans or truss engineering designs. All members shall be cut from lumber which bear the proper grade mark stamps of a recognized grading association or licensed lumber inspection agency. No lumber shall be used which does not appear to conform to the proper dimensions and/or grades. At the time of fabrication, the moisture content of all lumber shall be within limits stated in reference specifications.

B. Connectors:
   1. General: ASTM A446-72 Grade A prime commercial quality galvanized sheet steel of no less than 20 gauge thickness which has a minimum yield of 33,000 psi and a minimum ultimate tensile strength of 45,000 psi. Connectors shall have a series of nail-like projections which are designed to separate the fibers of the wood into which they are pressed, in accordance with accepted nailing practices. All connector plated truss joints shall be designed using the net area plating method as set forth in TIP Standards.
   2. Field Connectors: Where field assembly of truss sub-components is necessary, connections shall be in accord with details shown on accepted shop drawings.

C. Bracing: As required by accepted shop drawings.

D. Hardware: As required by accepted shop drawings.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.01 HANDLING

A. Perform in a manner to prevent bending, warping, twisting or other damage.

3.02 STORAGE

A. Store in a vertical position above ground on suitable supports and braced to prevent bending and/or tipping over.

3.03 PROTECTION OF MATERIALS

A. Protect from damage when stored at the job site. Finished members shall be free of bends, twists or open joints. Replace warped, bowed or damaged trusses at no additional cost to the Owner.

3.04 WORKMANSHIP

A. Use only skilled and experienced personnel.

3.05 ERECTION

A. Erect in complete accord with the plans and accepted shop drawings. Provide erection bracing in addition to specified bridging to keep trusses straight and plumb and to assure adequate lateral support for the individual trusses and entire system until decking material has been applied.

3.06 PROTECTION OF WORK IN PROGRESS

A. Apply no construction loads before trusses and bridging have been anchored. Install and secure permanent decking before applying full design loads.

3.07 CLEAN-UP

A. Upon completion of work of the Section, remove related debris from premises.

END OF SECTION 06 17 53

ROCIP Project: Withhold insurance cost. Please refer to sections 00425 & 00810 for information.

SECTION 06 40 23 - INTERIOR ARCHITECTURAL WOODWORK

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.01 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.02 SUMMARY

A. This Section includes the following:
   1. Plastic-laminate cabinets and countertops.

B. Related Sections include the following:
   1. Division 01 Section “Sustainable Construction Requirements”
   2. Division 06 Section "Rough Carpentry" for furring, blocking, and shims required for installing woodwork and concealed for other construction before woodwork installation
   3. Division 12 Section "Quartz Countertops."

1.03 DEFINITIONS

A. Interior architectural woodwork includes wood furring, blocking, shims, and hanging strips for installing woodwork items unless concealed within other construction before woodwork installation.

B. Rough carriages for stairs are a part of interior architectural woodwork. Platform framing, headers, partition framing, and other rough framing associated with stairwork are specified in Division 06 Section "Rough Carpentry."

1.04 SUBMITTALS

A. Comply with pertinent provisions of Division 01 Section “Submittal Procedures”, unless otherwise indicated.

B. Product Data: For each type of product indicated, including cabinet hardware and accessories handrail brackets and finishing materials and processes.

C. LEED Submittals:
   1. Product Data for Credit IEQ 4.1: Product data for adhesives and sealants used inside the weatherproofing system indicating VOC content of each product used.

a. Indicate VOC content in g/L calculated according to 40CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).

2. Product Data for Credit IEQ 4.4: Product data for products containing composite wood or agrifiber products or wood glues indicating that they do not contain urea-formaldehyde resin.
3. Product Data for Credit MR 7: Product data and chain-of-custody certificates for products containing certified wood.
   a. Include statement indicating cost for each certified wood product.
4. Product Data for Credit MR 4: Product data and certification letter indicating percentages by weight of post-consumer and pre-consumer recycled content for products having recycled content.
   a. Include statement indicating cost for each product having recycled content.

D. Shop Drawings: Show location of each item, dimensioned plans and elevations, large-scale details, attachment devices, and other components.
   1. Show details full size.
   2. Show locations and sizes of furring, blocking, and hanging strips, including concealed blocking and reinforcement specified in other Sections.
   3. Show locations and sizes of cutouts and holes for plumbing fixtures, faucets, soap dispensers, and other items installed in architectural woodwork.
   4. Shop Drawings: Submit shop drawings showing location and size of each type of unit, unit assemblies, accessories, wood species, materials, finishes, hardware types and location fillers, etc. Include fully dimensioned plans and elevations and indicate details of anchorage to countertops and to walls. Details and sections shown at not less than 1-1/2" scale.

E. Samples for Initial Selection:
   1. Hardwood veneer.
   2. Solid-surfacing materials.

F. Samples: Submit fully finished samples of the following items required for casework:
   1. Hardwood Veneer: Three 12” square samples for each type of finish.
   2. Solid-surfacing materials, 6 inches square.
   3. Exposed cabinet hardware and accessories, one unit for each type and finish.

G. Product Certificates: For each type of product, signed by product manufacturer.

H. Woodwork Quality Standard Compliance Certificates: AWI Quality Certification Program certificates.

I. Quality Standard: Unless otherwise indicated, comply with AWI's "Architectural Woodwork Quality Standards" for grades of interior architectural woodwork indicated for construction, finishes, installation, and other requirements.

1.05 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Fabricator shall have had at least 5 years experience in projects of similar scope.

B. All dimensions, substrates, etc. shall be verified in the field by the Contractor.

C. Use maximum length material for all trim, base, etc.

D. Fabricator Qualifications: Shop that employs skilled workers who custom-fabricate products similar to those required for this Project and whose products have a record of successful in-service performance

E. Source Limitations: Engage a qualified woodworking firm to assume undivided responsibility for production of interior architectural woodwork with sequence-matched wood veneers.

F. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site to comply with requirements in Division 01 Section "Project Management and Coordination."

1.06 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Do not deliver woodwork until painting and similar operations that could damage woodwork have been completed in installation areas. If woodwork must be stored in other than installation areas, store only in areas where environmental conditions comply with requirements specified in "Project Conditions" Article.

B. Casework shall be delivered dry and protected at all times from injury or dampness. It shall not be stored or installed in any part of the building until after concrete and finishing work in such parts is complete and that part of the building is thoroughly dry. Relative humidity in storage areas not to exceed 60%.

1.07 PROJECT CONDITIONS

A. Environmental Limitations: Do not deliver or install woodwork until building is enclosed, wet work is complete, and HVAC system is operating and maintaining temperature and relative humidity at occupancy levels during the remainder of the construction period.

B. Field Measurements: Where woodwork is indicated to fit to other construction, verify dimensions of other construction by field measurements before fabrication, and indicate measurements on Shop Drawings. Coordinate fabrication schedule with construction progress to avoid delaying the Work.
   1. Locate concealed framing, blocking, and reinforcements that support woodwork by field measurements before being enclosed, and indicate measurements on Shop Drawings.
   2. Established Dimensions: Where field measurements cannot be made without delaying the Work, establish dimensions and proceed with fabricating woodwork without field measurements. Provide allowance for trimming at site, and coordinate construction to ensure that actual dimensions correspond to established dimensions.

1.08 COORDINATION

A. Coordinate sizes and locations of framing, blocking, furring, reinforcements, and other related units of Work specified in other Sections to ensure that interior architectural woodwork can be supported and installed as indicated.

B. For appliances and equipment attached to or adjacent to millwork, coordinate required clearances and rough openings, prior to fabrication and prior to installation of cabinets.
   1. Prior to fabrication of millwork, Contractor to verify that appliance doors, handles, and controls do not conflict with doors and drawers of adjacent millwork, and adjust millwork dimensions or provide filler strips as required to allow full 90° opening of all doors, and full opening of drawers. Coordinate prior to utility rough in where solution involves changing the location of appliances.

C. Hardware Coordination: Distribute copies of approved hardware schedule specified in Division 08 Section "Door Hardware (Scheduled by Describing Products)" to fabricator of architectural woodwork; coordinate Shop Drawings and fabrication with hardware requirements.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.01 WOODWORK FABRICATORS

A. All lumber shall be kiln dried to a moisture content of 4-1/2 percent. Kiln dried lumber shall be tempered for not less than four weeks before using.

B. Fabricators: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide interior architectural woodwork by a firm with a minimum of five years experience.

2.02 MATERIALS

A. Wood Species for Opaque Finish: Any closed-grain hardwood.

B. Wood Products:
   1. Hardboard: AHA A135.4.
   2. Medium-Density Fiberboard: ANSI A208.2, Grade MD, made with binder containing no urea formaldehyde equal to “Medex” as manufactured by Sierra Pine Composite Solutions.
   3. Veneer-Faced Panel Products (Hardwood Plywood): HPVA HP-1, made with adhesive containing no urea formaldehyde. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following or approved equal:
      a. Bowie-Simms-Prange Group, P.O. Box 819089, Dallas, TX 75381, (972) 245-2563:
      b. M. Bohlke Veneer Corp.; Local Contact: The Wood Gallery, Inc. (972) 869-9161.

c. Columbia Forest Products; Local Contact: Dixie Plywood and Lumber Company of Dallas (972) 445-6543 or (800) 950-8025.

2.03 CABINET HARDWARE AND ACCESSORIES

A. General: Provide cabinet hardware and accessory materials associated with architectural cabinets, except for items specified in Division 08 Section "Door Hardware

B. Bar Pulls; Back Mounted, solid metal, satin aluminum, “DP105” Series by Mockett.
   1. DP105B 6-3/4”@ all drawers
   2. DP105B 9-5/16”@ all cabinets

C. Catches: Magnetic catches, BHMA A156.9, B03141.

D. Drawer Slides: Model 3832CDO as manufactured by Accuride, meeting BHMA A156.9, B05091 requirements. .
   1. Size(s): As indicated on drawings.
   2. Finish: To be selected by Architect from manufacturer’s standard colors.
   3. Load: 100 lbs. per pair..

E. Trash Bin Slides: Soft Closing pull-out trash slide system with white trash bin to equal to:
   1. Knape and Vogt USC 12-1-50-WH for single trash bin unit.

F. Hinges: Self-closing, concealed hinge with opening angle of 115 degrees minimum with appropriate mounting plate as manufactured by Stanley, Blum OR Melpa.

G. Shelf Supports: One surface-mounted and four Flush-mounted 12 gauge steel, zinc finish pilaster standards with 1/2" increments. Provide 5 shelf supports for each 12" of cabinets. Supports not used for shelving shall be stored in manufacturer's original unopened packages.

H. Adjustable Shelf Brackets: Storage shelving shall have satin aluminum surface mounted standards equal to “85 Double Slot Heavy Duty Standard” by Knape and Vogt with 12” shelf brackets equal to “ 5 Heavy Duty Bracket” by Knape and Vogt. Standards shall be one piece, full length.

I. Grommets for Cable Passage through Countertops: 3-inch OD, black, molded-plastic grommets and matching plastic caps with slot for wire passage.
   1. Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide "OG series" by Doug Mockett & Company, Inc.
   2. Owner/Architect to identify location.

J. Exposed Hardware Finishes: For exposed hardware, provide finish that complies with BHMA A156.18 for BHMA finish number indicated.
   1. Metal or Plated Finishes:
      a. Satin Chromium Plated No Coating, 626 US26D
      b. Aluminum, Anodized, 628 US28
      c. Stainless Steel, 630 US32D

d. Satin Chromium Plated (Steel Base), 652 US26D

2. Painted Finishes (Door Closers):

a. Aluminum, 689 AL

K. For concealed hardware, provide manufacturer's standard finish that complies with product class requirements in BHMA A156.9.

L. Locks: Each room of cabinets shall have Rockler Woodworking and Hardware, 304 S/S Hasp-75 #1014179. Telephone (800)279-4441, or approved equal.

M. Coat Rod: 1-1/4" round, chrome finish, metal rod with similar finish and material escutcheons at each end with countersunk holes for attachment to inside of cabinet.

N. Coat Hooks: Aluminum ceiling hook with 2-1/4" projection equal to Ives No. 580 570 installed with 1-1/4" long wood screws.

O. Elbow Catch: Rockler Woodworking and Hardware, Elbow Catch #33175. Telephone (800)279-4441, or approved equal.

P. Provide 50 Stainless steel number plates for cabinets in sleeping rooms and lockers in corridor.

Q. Desktop Bracket: Steel bracket with textured black finish, “SWS4” by Doug Mockett and Company.

2.04 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

A. Furring, Blocking, Shims, and Hanging Strips: Softwood or hardwood lumber, kiln dried to less than 15 percent moisture content.

B. Rough Carriages for Stairs: Select Structural No. 2 grade and any of the following species, kiln dried to 19 percent maximum moisture content:

1. Douglas fir-larch.
2. Douglas fir-south.
3. Douglas fir-larch (north).
4. Hem-fir.
5. Hem-fir (north).
6. Southern pine.
7. Spruce-pine-fir (south).
8. Spruce-pine-fir.

C. Anchors: Select material, type, size, and finish required for each substrate for secure anchorage. Provide nonferrous-metal or hot-dip galvanized anchors and inserts on inside face of exterior walls and elsewhere as required for corrosion resistance. Provide toothed-steel or lead expansion sleeves for drilled-in-place anchors.

D. Handrail Brackets: Extruded or Stamped from malleable iron with wall flange drilled for exposed anchor and with support arm for screwing to underside of rail. Sized to provide 1-1/2-inches clearance between handrail and wall.

E. Adhesives, General: Do not use adhesives that contain urea formaldehyde.

2.05 FABRICATION, GENERAL

A. Interior Woodwork Grade: Unless otherwise indicated, provide Custom-grade interior woodwork complying with referenced quality standard.

B. Wood Moisture Content: Comply with requirements of referenced quality standard for wood moisture content in relation to ambient relative humidity during fabrication and in installation areas.

C. Sand fire-retardant-treated wood lightly to remove raised grain on exposed surfaces before fabrication.

D. Fabricate woodwork to dimensions, profiles, and details indicated. Verify dimensions in the field.

E. Assemble units in shop in as large components as practical to minimize field cutting and jointing.

F. Complete fabrication, including assembly, and hardware application, to maximum extent possible before shipment to Project site. Disassemble components only as necessary for shipment and installation. Where necessary for fitting at site, provide ample allowance for scribing, trimming, and fitting.
   1. Notify Architect seven days in advance of the dates and times woodwork fabrication will be complete.
   2. Trial fit assemblies at fabrication shop that cannot be shipped completely assembled. Install dowels, screws, bolted connectors, and other fastening devices that can be removed after trial fitting. Verify that various parts fit as intended and check measurements of assemblies against field measurements indicated on Shop Drawings before disassembling for shipment.

G. Shop-cut openings to maximum extent possible to receive hardware, appliances, plumbing fixtures, electrical work, and similar items. Locate openings accurately and use templates or roughing-in diagrams to produce accurately sized and shaped openings. Sand edges of cutouts to remove splinters and burrs.
   1. Seal edges of openings in countertops with a coat of varnish.

H. Work shall be scribed and fit to other finished surfaces in a careful manner.

I. All wood surfaces to be set against masonry and/or concealed after erection shall be given a heavy coat of sealer.

J. Plastic laminate applied to all exposed surfaces inside and out using manufacturer's recommended adhesives, applied under bonding pressures and at atmospheric conditions recommended by laminate manufacturer.

2.06 HARDWOOD CABINETS FOR STAINED FINISH

A. Grade: Custom.

B. AWI Type of Cabinet Construction: Flush overlay.

C. Drawer faces: Install hardwood rift cut white oak drawer faces, each made from a single piece of wood.

D. Cabinet doors: Install hardwood rift cut white oak cabinet doors with stiles and rails and floating panels.

E. Semi Exposed Surfaces:
   1. Surfaces Other Than Drawer Bodies: Hardwood veneer to match species and cut indicated for exposed surfaces.
   2. Edges of Shelves: 1 x hardwood trim to match species indicated for exposed surfaces.
   3. For semi-exposed backs of panels provide hardwood veneer to match species and cut indicated for exposed surfaces.
   4. Drawer Bottoms: Hardwood plywood same species indicated for exposed surfaces.

F. Concealed Backs of Panels Hardwood Veneer.

G. Provide dust panels of 1/4-inch plywood or tempered hardboard above compartments and drawers, unless located directly under tops.

H. ng with plastic laminate as shown on drawings.

2.07 SHOP FINISHING

A. Quality Standard: Comply with AWI Section 1500, unless otherwise indicated.
   1. Grade: Provide finishes of same grades as items to be finished.

B. General: Finish architectural woodwork at fabrication shop as specified in this Section. Defer only final touchup, cleaning, and polishing until after installation.

C. Preparations for Finishing: Comply with referenced quality standard for sanding, filling countersunk fasteners, sealing concealed surfaces, and similar preparations for finishing architectural woodwork, as applicable to each unit of work.
   1. Backpriming: Apply one coat of sealer or primer, compatible with finish coats, to concealed surfaces of woodwork. Apply two coats to back of paneling and to end-grain surfaces. Concealed surfaces of plastic-laminate-clad

woodwork do not require backpriming when surfaced with plastic laminate, backing paper, or thermoset decorative overlay.

D. Transparent Finish: Comply with requirements indicated below for grade, finish system, staining, and sheen, with sheen measured on 60-degree gloss meter per ASTM D 523:
   1. Grade: Custom.
   2. Transparent wood finish systems shall utilize only waterborne acrylic sealers and finish coats. 350 g/L VOC content
   3. Staining: None.
   4. Sheen: Satin, 30-45 gloss units.
   5. AWI Finish System: Water acrylic.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.01 PREPARATION

A. Before installing architectural woodwork, examine shop-fabricated work for completion and complete work as required, including removal of packing and backpriming.

3.02 CABINET CONSTRUCTION

A. General: Field verify dimensions prior to fabrication.

B. Drawer Construction
   1. Drawer Body: Not less than 7/16" thick plywood sub-front, back and sides, fully dovetailed and glued at all four corners with fronts fastened to sub-front with mounting screws from interior of body.
   2. Drawer Bottoms: Not less than 1/4" thick 5-ply veneer core fully supported by grooves in all four sides of drawer body.

C. Hardware:
   1. All hardware furnished and installed by casework fabricator.

3.03 INSTALLATION

A. Grade: Install woodwork to comply with requirements for the same grade specified in Part 2 for fabrication of type of woodwork involved.

B. Assemble woodwork and complete fabrication at Project site to comply with requirements for fabrication in Part 2, to extent that it was not completed in the shop.

C. Install woodwork level, plumb, true, and straight. Shim as required with concealed shims. Install level and plumb (including tops) to a tolerance of 1/8 inch in 96 inches.

D. Scribe and cut woodwork to fit adjoining work, refinish cut surfaces, and repair damaged finish at cuts.

E. Anchor woodwork to anchors or blocking built in or directly attached to substrates. Secure with countersunk, concealed fasteners when doors and drawers are closed and blind nailing as required for complete installation. Comply with manufacturers instructions for support of units.

F. Stairs: Securely anchor carriages to supporting substrates. Install stairs with treads and risers no more than 1/8 inch from indicated position.

G. Railings:
   1. General: Install rails with no more than 1/8 inch in 96-inch variation from a straight line.
   2. Wall Rails: Support rails on indicated metal brackets securely fastened to wall framing.
      a. Space rail brackets not more than 4’ – 0” o.c.

H. Cabinets: Install without distortion so doors and drawers fit openings properly and are accurately aligned. Adjust hardware to center doors and drawers in openings and to provide unencumbered operation. Complete installation of hardware and accessory items as indicated.
   1. Install cabinets with no more than 1/8 inch in 96-inch sag, bow, or other variation from a straight line.
   2. Fasten wall cabinets through back, near top and bottom, at ends and not more than 16 inches o.c. with No. 10 wafer-head sheet metal screws through metal backing or metal framing behind wall finish toggle bolts through metal backing or metal framing behind wall finish.

I. Countertops: Anchor securely by screwing through corner blocks of base cabinets or other supports into underside of countertop.
   1. Carefully dress joints smooth, remove surface scratches, and clean entire surface.
   2. Install countertops with no more than 1/8 inch in 96-inch sag, bow, or other variation from a straight line.
   3. Secure backsplashes to walls with adhesive.
   4. Calk space between backsplash and wall with sealant specified in Division 07 Section "Joint Sealants."

J. Attach countertops securely to base units. Spline and glue joints in countertops; provide concealed mechanical clamping of joint. Provide cutouts for fixtures as indicated; smooth cut edges and coat with waterproof coating or adhesive.

K. Countertops and splashes constructed from one continuous sheet of laminated plastic without intermediate joints. Provide cut-outs for sinks and other accessories, cut-out radiuses at least for 1/8 inch with edges filed smooth and free of crazes. Provide splash at edge of countertops abutting vertical surfaces.

L. Touch up finishing work specified in this Section after installation of woodwork. Fill nail holes with matching filler where exposed.

M. Install plumb, level, true and straight with no distortions. Shim as required using concealed shims. Where casework cabinets abut other finished work, scribe and cut for accurate fit. Before making cutouts, drill pilot holes at corners.

N. Anchor cabinet securely in place with concealed (when doors and drawers are closed) fasteners, anchored into structural support members of wall construction. Comply with manufacturer's instructions for support of units.

O. Any existing or new convenience outlet, cable connection, phone jacks, etc. located in a position that will be concealed by installation of a new cabinet shall be extended through cabinet unless indicated to be abandoned.

P. Work shall be scribed and fit to other finished surfaces in a careful manner.

Q. All wood surfaces to be set against masonry and/or concealed after erection shall be given a heavy coat of sealer.

R. Attach countertops securely to base units. Spline and glue joints in countertops; provide concealed mechanical clamping of joint. Provide cutouts for fixtures as indicated; smooth cut edges and coat with waterproof coating or adhesive.

S. Complete hardware installation and adjust doors and drawers for proper operation.

3.04 ADJUSTING AND CLEANING

A. Repair damaged and defective woodwork, where possible, to eliminate functional and visual defects; where not possible to repair, replace woodwork. Adjust joinery for uniform appearance.

B. Clean, lubricate, and adjust hardware.

C. Clean woodwork on exposed and semi exposed surfaces. Touch up shop-applied finishes to restore damaged or soiled areas.

D. Protection: Installer shall advise Contractor of final protection and maintenance conditions necessary to ensure that work will be without damage or deterioration at time of acceptance.

END OF SECTION 06 40 23

ROCIP Project: Withhold insurance cost. Please refer to sections 00425 & 00810 for information.

SECTION 07 11 13 - BITUMINOUS DAMPPROOFING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.01 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.02 SUMMARY

A. This Section includes the following:
   1. Bituminous sheet dampproofing.
   2. Self-adhering sheet dampproofing.

B. Related Sections include the following:
   1. Division 04 Section "Concrete Masonry Units."

1.03 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Include manufacturers' recommendations for method of application, primer, number of coats, coverage or thickness, and protection course.

B. Submit manufacturers' literature and samples of waterproofing and flashing.

C. Shop Drawings: If required, provide supplementary dampproofing details as required for this project with appropriate manufacturer's approval.

1.04 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Manufacturer Qualifications: If required, arrange for manufacturer's technical representative to be on project site to advise installer of proper procedures and precautions for the use of materials.

B. Contractor Qualifications: Work performed under this Section shall be by a single installer with minimum three years successful experience in installation of similar systems.

C. Pre-installation Conference: Prior to beginning construction, meet with Architect and related trades to discuss existing dampproofing conditions and new membrane sequencing and installation procedures.

D. Source Limitations: Obtain primary dampproofing materials and primers through one source from a single manufacturer. Provide secondary materials recommended by manufacturer of primary materials.

1.05 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING:

A. Provide materials from products of one manufacturer.

B. Deliver materials to jobsite with packages intact and with labels identifying manufacturer, product name and lot numbers when appropriate.

C. Store materials in accordance with manufacturer's recommendations.

D. Do not allow waste products (petroleum, grease, oil, solvents, vegetable or mineral oil, animal fat) or direct steam venting to come in contact with primary or secondary damp-proofing materials.

E. Do not double-stack pallets of membrane on jobsite. Provide cover on top and all sides, allowing for adequate ventilation.

F. Store primer, mastic and liquid membrane in a dry area away from high heat, flames or sparks.

G. Store only as much material at point of use as required for each day's work.

1.06 PROJECT CONDITIONS

A. Contractor shall be held responsible for protecting the existing backup wall system from damage as a result of his operations. Existing construction must be maintained in watertight condition until new membranes can be installed in its place.

B. Weather Limitations: Proceed with installation only when existing and forecasted weather conditions permit dampproofing to be performed according to manufacturers' written instructions.

C. Ventilation: Provide adequate ventilation during application of damp-proofing in enclosed spaces. Maintain ventilation until dampproofing has cured.

D. Surface of coating substrate must be fully dry.

E. Temperature shall not be below 40 degrees F.

1.07 SEQUENCING AND SCHEDULING:

A. Contractor shall coordinate each portion of this work with work of other trades to ensure that all construction can be completed once it is begun and to provide appropriate inter-discipline interfacing.

ROCIP Project: Withhold insurance cost. Please refer to sections 00425 & 00810 for information.

1.08 WARRANTY:

A. Provide five-year manufacturer's warranty against defective materials.

B. Provide two-year Contractor's warranty against leakage. Contractor shall remove and replace all materials in order to provide a complete correction of leaks if they occur. Contractor shall bear all costs associated with such work.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.01 BITUMINOUS DAMPPROOFING MASTIC

A. Dampproofing at concrete masonry units inside cavity: Heavy-bonded, non sag coating with short fibers for spray application BASF Sonneborn “Hydrocide 700B Semi-Mastic” and in compliance with ASTM 0-1227-82 Type IV.

B. Trowel Coats: ASTM D 1227, Type II, Class 1.

2.02 SELF-ADHERING SHEET DAMPPROOFING

A. Dampproofing Membrane: At wallabove-roof conditions and where indicated on drawings.
   1. Type: Cold-applied, self-adhering, preformed composite membrane consisting of 26 mils of non-reinforced rubberized asphalt with a 4 mil cross-laminated high density polyethylene film top surface.
   2. Thickness: 30 mils.
   3. Acceptable Product: "Polyguard 300 Air Barrier Membrane” by Polyguard Products, Inc.

B. Primer: As recommended by Manufacturer.

C. Liquid Adhesive:
   1. Type: A rubber based material in solvent solution used to prepare surfaces in all applications.
   2. Acceptable Product: "Polyguard 650 LT Liquid Adhesive” by Polyguard Products, Inc.

D. Mastic:
   1. Type: A high quality rubberized asphalt based material used to seal top terminating edges of preformed membrane damp-proofing.
   2. Acceptable Product: "Polyguard 650 Mastic” by Polyguard Products, Inc.

E. Liquid Membrane:
   1. Type: A two-component material used to detail difficult areas.
   2. Acceptable Product: "Polyguard 95 Liquid Membrane” by Polyguard Products, Inc.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.01 EXAMINATION

A. Examine substrates, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for surface smoothness and other conditions affecting performance of work.
   1. Proceed with dampproofing application only after substrate construction and penetrating work have been completed and unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.
   2. Test for surface moisture according to ASTM D 4263.
   3. Surfaces to receive damp-proofing shall be inspected by Contractor for any conditions that would impair installation.
   4. Remove high ridges on concrete, fill cracked areas and correct other similar defects.

B. Any adverse condition that might affect the performance of this damp-proofing must be reported in writing to the Architect. Absence of such notification shall constitute Contractor's verification that existing conditions will allow the installation of the system in accordance with plans and specifications and the manufacturer's warranty

3.02 PREPARATION

A. Protection of Other Work: Mask or otherwise protect adjoining exposed surfaces from being stained, spotted, or coated with dampproofing. Prevent dampproofing materials from entering and clogging weep holes and drains.

B. Clean substrates of projections and substances detrimental to work; fill voids, seal joints, and apply bond breakers if any, as recommended by prime material manufacturer.

C. Apply patching compound for filling and patching tie holes, honeycombs, reveals, and other imperfections.

D. Remove from premises, all rubbish and accumulated materials of any nature not caused by others and leave area clean, orderly, and in acceptable condition at end of each work period.

E. Prior to application of dampproofing system, inspect and repair substrate as required to provide proper surfaces to receive damp-proofing. All surfaces shall be free of voids, deteriorated areas, loose materials and sharp protrusions. Remove all

contaminants such as grease, oil, previous membrane, etc., from the exposed surfaces. Clean surface (broom, vacuum cleaner or compressed air) to remove dust, dirt, loose materials and debris.

F. Substrate Condition:
   1. Ensure surfaces are reasonably smooth and free from holes or projections that might cause puncture of membrane.
   2. Thoroughly clean surfaces free of mortar splashes, dirt, dust, oil, grease, previous damp-proofing membrane, form release agents, loose particles, or other foreign substances that might interfere with bonding of membrane.
   3. Remove sharp projections, fins and loose material. Fill or finish holes and cracks flush with liquid membrane.
   4. Seal items penetrating dampproofing with liquid membrane. Ensure penetrations are watertight.
   5. Provide fillet at inside junction of vertical and horizontal surfaces using liquid membrane.

3.03 APPLICATION, GENERAL

A. Comply with manufacturer's written recommendations unless more stringent requirements are indicated or required by Project conditions to ensure satisfactory performance of damp-proofing.
   1. Apply additional coats if recommended by manufacturer or if required to achieve coverages indicated.
   2. Allow each coat of dampproofing to cure 12 hours before applying subsequent coats.
   3. Allow 48 hours drying time prior to backfilling.

B. Apply dampproofing to provide continuous plane of protection on exterior face of inner wythe of exterior masonry cavity walls.
   1. Lap dampproofing at least 1/4 inch onto flashing, masonry reinforcement, veneer ties, and other items that penetrate inner wythe.
   2. Extend damp-proofing over outer face of structural members and concrete slabs that interrupt inner wythe, and lap damp-proofing at least 1/4 inch onto shelf angles supporting veneer.

C. Safety:
   1. Secondary dampproofing materials such as primers, mastics and liquid membranes may be flammable. Do not use near open flames.
   2. Contractor shall familiarize himself with available information from manufacturer pertaining to safe handling, storage, personal protection, health and environmental considerations.

D. Adjacent Surfaces: Contractor shall be held responsible for protecting all adjacent construction from damage. Existing structures or installations that are destroyed or damaged by operations connected with this work shall be replaced or repaired by Contractor to the satisfaction of the Owner at no additional expense.

ROCIP Project: Withhold insurance cost. Please refer to sections 00425 & 00810 for information.

3.04 PROTECTION:

A. Completed Work:
   1. Contractor shall be held responsible for leaks that occur below or behind his work. All construction must be left in a watertight condition at end of each working period.

B. Safety:
   1. Secondary dampproofing materials such as primers, mastics and liquid membranes may be flammable. Do not use near open flames.
   2. Contractor shall familiarize himself with available information from manufacturer pertaining to safe handling, storage, personal protection, health and environmental considerations.
   3. Protect air intakes and other possible entry points from fumes.

C. Adjacent Surfaces: Contractor shall be held responsible for protecting all adjacent construction from damage. Existing structures or installations that are destroyed or damaged by operations connected with this work shall be replaced or repaired by Contractor to the satisfaction of the Owner at no additional expense.

3.05 BITUMINOUS DAMPPROOFING

A. On Masonry Backup for Stone Veneer Assemblies: Apply primer and 1 brush or spray coat at not less than 1 gal./100 sq. ft (0.4 L/sq. m).

3.06 CLEANING

A. Remove dampproofing materials from surfaces not intended to receive dampproofing.

B. Remove from premises, all rubbish and accumulated materials of any nature not caused by others and leave area clean, orderly, and in acceptable condition at end of each work period.

END OF SECTION 07 11 13

ROCIP Project: Withhold insurance cost. Please refer to sections 00425 & 00810 for information.

SECTION 07 21 00 - THERMAL INSULATION

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.01 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.02 SUMMARY

A. This Section includes the following:
   1. Concealed building insulation.

B. Related Sections include the following:
   1. Division 01 Section “Sustainable Construction Requirements”.
   2. Division 04 Section "Concrete Unit Masonry".
   3. Division 09 Section "Gypsum Board".
   4. Division 22 Section "Plumbing Insulation."
   5. Division 23 Section "HVAC Insulation."

1.03 DEFINITIONS

A. Mineral-Fiber Insulation: Insulation composed of rock-wool fibers, slag-wool fibers, or glass fibers; produced in boards and blanket with latter formed into batts (flat-cut lengths) or rolls.

1.04 SUBMITTALS

A. Comply with pertinent provisions of Division 01 Section “Submittal Procedures”, unless otherwise indicated.

B. Product Data: For each type of product indicated with documented R-Values.

C. Samples for Verification: Full-size units for each type of exposed insulation indicated.

D. Product Test Reports: Based on evaluation of comprehensive tests performed by a qualified testing agency for insulation products.

E. LEED Submittal:
   1. Product Data for Credit MR 4: Product data and certification letter indicating percentages by weight of post-consumer and pre-consumer recycled content for products having recycled content.

a. Include statement indicating cost for each product having recycled content.

1.05 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Source Limitations: Obtain each type of building insulation through one source from a single manufacturer.

B. Fire-Test-Response Characteristics: Provide insulation and related materials with the fire-test-response characteristics indicated, as determined by testing identical products per test method indicated below by UL or another testing and inspecting agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction. Identify materials with appropriate markings of applicable testing and inspecting agency.
   1. Surface-Burning Characteristics: ASTM E 84.
   2. Fire-Resistance Ratings: ASTM E 119.
   3. Combustion Characteristics: ASTM E 136.
   4. Paper and non-rated foil-faced batt insulation shall not be used.

1.06 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Protect insulation materials from physical damage and from deterioration by moisture, soiling, and other sources. Store inside and in a dry location. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for handling, storing, and protecting during installation.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.01 MANUFACTURERS

A. Subject to compliance with project requirements, Manufacturers offering Products which may be incorporated into the work include the following:
   1. CertainTeed Corporation, Valley Forge, PA. (215) 341-7000 or 800 233-8990.
   2. Guardian Fiberglass, Inc., Greer, South Carolina, (800) 569-4262 .
   3. Johns Manville, Denver, Colorado, (800) 654-3103.
   4. Owens-Corning Fiberglass Corporation, Toledo, OH. (419) 248-8000 or 800 438-7465.
   5. Schuller International, Building Insulation Division, Denver, Co. (800) 654-3103.
   6. U.S. Gypsum

B. Substitutions request shall be submitted in accordance with Division 01 Section “Substitution Procedures.”

2.02 GLASS-FIBER BLANKET INSULATION

A. Available Manufacturers:
   1. Guardian Fiberglass, Inc., Greer, South Carolina, (800) 569-4262.
   2. Johns Manville, Denver, Colorado, (800) 654-3103.
   3. Owens Corning.

B. Faced, Glass-Fiber Blanket Insulation: ASTM C 665, Type III (blankets with reflective membrane facing), Class A (membrane-faced surface with a flame-spread index of 25 or less); Category 1 (membrane is a vapor barrier), faced with foil-scrim vapor-retarder membrane on 1 face.

C. Where glass-fiber blanket insulation is indicated by the following thicknesses, provide blankets in batt or roll form with thermal resistances indicated:
   1. 3-1/2 inches - R 11.
   2. 6-1/4 inches - R 19.
   3. 9-1/2 inches - R 30.

D. Glass Fiber Batt Insulation above Ceiling Noted: Nominal 6-1/4" thick batt insulation with an R-value of 19, unfaced with flame spread of 25 minutes in compliance with ASTM C665, Type I, Class A and ASTM 136.

E. Glass fiber sound attenuation blanket insulation shall maximize recycled material. 20% recycled glass cullet. As per EPA Comprehensive Guideline for Procurement of Products Containing Recovered Materials (60 FR 21370, effective May 1, 1996).

F. Glass Fiber Batt Insulation at Exterior Wall: Nominal 6-1/4" thick batt insulation with an R-value of 19, FRK-faced with a flame spread of 25 minutes, in compliance with ASTM C665, Type III, Class A. Material equivalent to Owens Corning' "Flame Spread 25 Insulation" or approved equal.

G. Insulation Baffle: Soffit insulation baffle (non-porous) of 100% recycled PVC, does not allow air penetration into fibrous or blown insulation, flame retardant and self extinguishing in less than 5 seconds. “AccuVent Attic Ventilation” by Berger. Size: 41” x 22.5”.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.01 EXAMINATION

A. Examine substrates and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements of Sections in which substrates and related work are specified and for other conditions affecting performance.
   1. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

B. Examine areas receiving insulation work to insure work of preceding trades is completed. Check surfaces to see that they are uniform in place, free from mortar drop-

pings, grease, oil or other debris which would affect proper insulation. Application constitutes acceptance of substrate conditions.

3.02 PREPARATION

A. Clean substrates of substances harmful to insulation or vapor retarders, including removing projections capable of puncturing vapor retarders or of interfering with insulation attachment.

3.03 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

A. Comply with insulation manufacturer's written instructions applicable to products and application indicated.

B. Install insulation that is undamaged, dry, and unsoiled and that has not been left exposed at any time to ice, rain, and snow.

C. Extend insulation in thickness indicated to envelop entire area to be insulated. Cut and fit tightly around obstructions and fill voids with insulation. Remove projections that interfere with placement.

D. Water-Piping Coordination: If water piping is located within insulated exterior walls, coordinate location of piping to ensure that it is placed on warm side of insulation and insulation encapsulates piping.

E. For preformed insulating units, provide sizes to fit applications indicated and selected from manufacturer's standard thicknesses, widths, and lengths. Apply single layer of insulation units to produce thickness indicated unless multiple layers are otherwise shown or required to make up total thickness.

3.04 INSTALLATION OF GENERAL BUILDING INSULATION

A. Apply insulation units to substrates by method indicated, complying with manufacturer's written instructions. If no specific method is indicated, bond units to substrate with adhesive or use mechanical anchorage to provide permanent placement and support of units.

B. Set vapor-retarder-faced units with vapor retarder to warm-in-winter side of construction, unless otherwise indicated.
   1. Tape joints and ruptures in vapor retarder, and seal each continuous area of insulation to surrounding construction to ensure airtight installation.
   2. Use insulation widths and lengths that fill the cavities formed by framing members. If more than one length is required to fill cavity, provide lengths that will produce a snug fit between ends.
   3. Place insulation in cavities formed by framing members to produce a friction fit between edges of insulation and adjoining framing members.

4. Maintain 3-inch clearance of insulation around recessed lighting fixtures.
5. Install insulation baffles between roof framing members in insulated attic spaces at vented eaves.
6. For metal-framed wall cavities where cavity heights exceed 96 inches, support unfaced blankets mechanically and support faced blankets by taping flanges of insulation to flanges of metal studs.

C. Place loose-fill insulation into spaces indicated, either by pouring or by machine blowing, to comply with ASTM C 1015. Level horizontal applications to uniform thickness as indicated, lightly settle to uniform density, but do not compact excessively.

D. Stuff glass-fiber loose-fill insulation into miscellaneous voids and cavity spaces where shown. Compact to approximately 40 percent of normal maximum volume equaling a density of approximately 2.5 lb/cu. ft.

E. Insulation installed in accordance with current printed recommendations of insulation manufacturer as specified.

F. Install batt insulation without visible voids, gaps or separations. Staple flanges at 6" o.c. to side face of framing member, except where local code dictates otherwise. Cut and trim insulation neatly to fit spaces without laps, bulges or folds. Use batts free of rips and tears.

G. Fit insulation tight within spaces and tight to and behind mechanical and electrical wiring.

H. Securely attach and support batt insulation installed below the roof structure with woven wire netting to prevent sagging.

I. Rigid insulation at exterior walls shall be adhered to exterior surface of CMU with continuous application of recommended mastic at locations indicated on drawings.

3.05 PROTECTION

A. Protect installed insulation from damage due to harmful weather exposures, physical abuse, and other causes. Provide temporary coverings or enclosures where insulation is subject to abuse and cannot be concealed and protected by permanent construction immediately after installation.

END OF SECTION 07 21 00

ROCIP Project: Withhold insurance cost. Please refer to sections 00425 & 00810 for information.

SECTION 07 26 00 - VAPOR BARRIER MEMBRANE

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.01 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.02 SUMMARY

A. Section includes:
   1. Vapor barrier film beneath slabs on grade.

B. Related Documents: The Contract Documents, as defined in Division 01 Section - Summary of Work, apply to the Work of this Section. Additional requirements and information necessary to complete the Work of this Section may be found in other Documents

C. Related Sections:
   1. Division 03 Section "Cast-in-place Concrete."
   2. Division 31 Section "Earthwork."

1.03 COORDINATION

A. Coordinate installation with scheduled concrete pours to avoid delays. Make provision for installation of work by other trades.

1.04 REFERENCES

A. American Society for Testing and Materials (ASTM):
   1. ASTM E 1745- 11 Standard Specification for Plastic Water Vapor Retarders Used in Contact with Soil or Granular Fill Under Concrete Slabs.
   2. ASTM E 154- 08 Standard Test Methods for Water Vapor Retarders Used in Contact with Earth Under Concrete Slabs, on Walls, or as Ground Cover.
   3. ASTM F 1249-06 (2011) Standard Test Method for Water Vapor Transmission Rate Through Plastic Film and Sheeting Using a Modulated Infrared Sensor.
   4. ASTM D 882-10 Standard Test Method for Tensile Properties of Thin Plastic Sheeting.
   5. ASTM D 1709-09 Standard Test Methods for Impact Resistance of Plastic Film by the Free-Falling Dart Method.

6. ASTM E 1643- 11 Selection, Design, Installation, and Inspection of Water Vapor Retarders Used in Contact with Earth or Granular Fill Under Concrete Slabs.

B. American Concrete Institute (ACI):
   1. ACI 302.2R-06 Guide for Concrete that Receive Moisture-Seneitive Flooring Materials.

1.05 SUBMITTALS

A. Comply with pertinent provisions of Division 01 Section “Submittal Procedures”, unless otherwise indicated.

B. Quality Control / Assurance:
   1. Summary of test results as per paragraph 8.3 of ASTM E 1745.
   2. Manufacturer’s literature.
   3. Manufacturer’s installation instructions for placement, seaming and penetration repair.

C. Provide 12" x 12" samples of vapor barrier material and samples of tape for joints.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.01 MANUFACTURERS

A. Subject to compliance with project requirements, manufacturer's offering Products which may be incorporated in the Work include the following:
   1. Basis of Design: Stego Industries LLC (281) 367-0040 www.stegoindustries.com
   2. Raven Industries (800) 635-3456 www.ravenefd.com
   3. Reef Industries (713) 507-4250 www.reefindustries.com

B. Division 01 Section - Product Requirements: Product options and substitutions. Substitutions: Not Permitted

2.02 MATERIALS

A. Membrane Film:
   1. Qualities:
      a. Maintain a permeance of less than 0.01 Perms [grains/(ft^2 · hr · inHg)], as tested in accordance ASTM E-154, with mandatory conditioning tests, per ASTM E1745 Section 7.1(7.1.1-7.1.5).
      b. Strength: ASTM E 1745 Class A.
      c. Thickness: 15 mils minimum, in accordance with ACI 302.2R-06.

d. Provide third party documentation that all testing was performed on a single production roll per ASTM E 1745 Section 8.1.

2. Available products:
   a. Basis fo Design: Stego Wrap Vapor Barrier (15 mil) by Stego Industries.
   b. Vapor Block (15 mil) by Raven Industries.
   c. VaporGuard (15 mil) by Reef Industries.
   d. No Substitutions

B. Accessories:
1. Seams Tape: Stego Tape by Stego Industries LLC, or membrane manufacturer's standard tape for applications indicated.
2. Penetration Repair: Stego Mastic and Stego Tape by Stego Industries LLC, or membrane manufacturer's standard product for applications indicated.
3. Perimeter / Edge Seal: Crete Claw, Stego Tack Tape and Stego Term Bar by Stego Industries LLC, or membrane manufacturer's standard product for applications indicated.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.01 PREPARATION

A. Do not proceed until fill is level and without voids, and plumbing and electrical rough-ins are complete.

3.02 INSTALLATION

A. Install Vapor Barrier in accordance with ASTM E 1643-11:
1. Unroll vapor barrier with the longest dimension parallel with the direction of the concrete placement and face laps away from the expected direction of the placement whenever possible.
2. Extend vapor barrier over footings and grade beams to a distance acceptable to the structural engineer or stop at impediments such as dowels and waterstops.
3. Seal vapor barrier to slab perimeter/edge using Stego Crete Claw and remove dirt, debris, and mud from Crete Claw prior to concrete placement.
4. Alternate: Seal vapor barrier to footing/grade beam with double sided tape, termination bar, or both.
5. Overlap joints 6 inches and seal with manufacturer’s tape.
6. Apply tape/Crete Claw to a clean and dry vapor barrier.
7. Seal all penetrations (including pipes) per manufacturer’s instructions.
8. No penetration of the vapor barrier is allowed except for reinforcing steel and permanent utilities.
9. Repair damaged areas by cutting patches of vapor barrier, overlapping damaged area 6 inches and taping all sides with tape.

B. Vapor Barrier over void boxes:

1. Cartons for slabs shall have protective cover board with Stego 15 mil and Stego Crete-Claw Tape.
2. Stego Crete-Claw Tape Instructions: Overlap seams a minimum of 6 inches. Seal all seams in Stego Wrap using Crete-Claw Tape.
3. Install Crete-Claw Tape on the entire perimeter of the Stego Wrap Installation.
4. Install additional Crete-Claw Tape if required.

3.03 PROTECTION

A. Protect completed membrane from damage. Prior to pouring concrete, inspect membrane for punctures or damage and repair as required.

END OF SECTION 07 26 00

ROCIP Project: Withhold insurance cost. Please refer to sections 00425 & 00810 for information.

SECTION 07 27 19 - PLASTIC FILM AIR BARRIER

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.01 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.02 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:
   1. Air and moisture barrier building wrap, at masonry veneer cavity wall and where detailed in drawings.

B. Related Sections include the following:
   1. Division 06 Section “Wood Framing”
   2. Division 06 Section “Rough Carpentry”
   3. Division 06 Section “Sheathing”
   4. Division 07 Section “Sheet Metal Flashing and Trim”
   5. Division 07 Section “Bituminous Dampproofing”

1.03 SUBMITTALS

A. Comply with pertinent provisions of Division 01 Section “Submittal Procedures, unless otherwise indicated.”

B. Product Data for each type of product specified.
   1. Submit manufacturer’s standard product literature.

C. Quality Assurance/Control Submittals:
   1. Certificates: Manufacturer's certificate that Products meet or exceed specified requirements.
   2. Qualification Documentation: Submit documentation of experience indicating compliance with specified qualification requirements.
   3. Submit manufacturer’s written installation instructions.

1.04 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Qualifications:
   1. Manufacturer: Company specializing in manufacturing Products specified with minimum 5 years documented experience.

2. Installer: Company specializing in performing the Work of this Section with minimum 5 years documented experience.

B. Source Limitations: Provide commercial grade.

1.05 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Deliver materials to Project site in manufacturer's original, unopened packages and containers bearing manufacturer's name and label.

B. Store materials as recommended by weather barrier manufacturer.

1.06 SCHEDULING

A. Review requirements for sequencing of installation of weather barrier assembly with installation of windows, doors, louvers and flashings to provide a weather-tight barrier assembly.

B. Schedule installation of weather barrier materials and exterior cladding within nine months of weather barrier assembly installation.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.01 MANUFACTURER

A. DuPont; 4417 Lancaster Pike, Chestnut Run Plaza 728, Wilmington, DE 19805; 1-800-44-TYVEK (8-9835); http://www.construction.tyvek.com

2.02 MATERIALS

A. Basis of Design: spunbonded polyolefin, non-woven, non-perforated, weather barrier is based upon DuPont™ Tyvek® CommercialWrap® and related assembly components.

B. Performance Characteristics:
1. Air Penetration: 0.001 cfm/ft^2 at 75 Pa, when tested in accordance with ASTM E2178. Type I per ASTM E1677. $\leq$0.04 cfm/ft^2 at 75 Pa, when tested in accordance with ASTM E2357
2. Water Vapor Transmission: 28 perms, when tested in accordance with ASTM E96, Method B.
3. Water Penetration Resistance: 280 cm when tested in accordance with AATCC Test Method 127.
4. Basis Weight: 2.7 oz/yd^2, when tested in accordance with TAPPI Test Method T-410.

5. Air Resistance: Air infiltration at >1500 seconds, when tested in accordance with TAPPI Test Method T-460.
6. Tensile Strength: 38/35 lbs/in., when tested in accordance with ASTM D882, Method A.
7. Tear Resistance: 12/10 lbs., when tested in accordance with ASTM D1117.

C. Surface Burning Characteristics: Class A, when tested in accordance with ASTM E 84. Flame Spread: 10, Smoke Developed: 10.

2.03 ACCESSORIES

A. Seam Tape: 3 inch wide, tape approved for commercial applications.

B. Fasteners: Of type and spacing as approved by weather barrier manufacturer for application to substrate.

C. Sealants:
1. Provide sealants that comply with ASTM C920, elastomeric polymer sealant, and complying with manufacturers recommendations, to maintain watertight conditions.

D. Adhesives:
1. Use only adhesives recommended by weather barrier manufacturer.

E. Primers:
1. Provide primer to assist in adhesion between substrate and flashing, as recommended by flashing manufacturer.

F. Membrane Flashing
1. Provide self adhering membrane flashings as recommended by weather barrier manufacturer for opening types, penetrations, and masonry ties.
2. Products: DuPont Flex Wrap, unless otherwise noted.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.01 EXAMINATION

A. Verification of Conditions: Verify that field measurements, surfaces, substrates and conditions are as required, and ready to receive Work.

B. By beginning Work, Contractor accepts conditions and assumes responsibility for correcting unsuitable conditions encountered at no additional cost to the owner.

3.02 INSTALLATION – WEATHER BARRIER

A. Install weather barrier over exterior face of exterior wall substrate in accordance with manufacturer recommendations.

B. Install weather barrier prior to installation of windows and doors.

C. Start weather barrier installation at a building corner, leaving 6-12 inches of weather barrier extended beyond corner to overlap.

D. Install weather barrier in a horizontal manner starting at the lower portion of the wall surface with subsequent layers installed in a shingling manner to overlap lower layers. Maintain weather barrier plumb and level.

E. Sill Plate Interface: Extend lower edge of weather barrier over sill plate interface 3-6 inches. Secure to foundation with elastomeric sealant as recommended by weather barrier manufacturer.

F. Window and Door Openings: Extend weather barrier completely over openings.

G. Overlap weather barrier
   1. Exterior corners: minimum 12 inches.
   2. Seams: minimum 6 inches.

H. Weather Barrier Attachment:
   1. Attach weather barrier to studs through exterior sheathing. Secure using weather barrier manufacturer recommended fasteners, space 12 -18 inches vertically on center along stud line, and 24 inch on center, maximum horizontally.

I. Apply membrane flashing to weather barrier membrane as recommended by manufacturer prior to the installation of cladding anchors.

3.03 SEAMING

A. Seal seams of weather barrier with seam tape at all vertical and horizontal overlapping seams.

B. Seal any tears or cuts.

3.04 OPENING PREPARATION

A. Flush cut weather barrier at edge of sheathing around full perimeter of opening.

B. Cut a head flap at 45-degree angle in the weather barrier at window head to expose 8 inches of sheathing. Temporarily secure weather barrier flap away from sheathing with tape.

3.05 FLASHING

A. Cut sill flashing membrane a minimum of 12 inches longer than width of sill rough opening. Apply primer as required by manufacturer.

B. Cover horizontal sill by aligning sill flashing membrane edge with inside edge of sill. Adhere to rough opening across sill and up jambs a minimum of 6 inches. Secure flashing tightly into corners by working in along the sill before adhering up the jambs.

C. Fan sill flashing membrane at bottom corners onto face of wall. Firmly press in place. Mechanically fasten fanned edges.

D. Apply 9-inch wide strips of flashing membrane at jambs. Align flashing membrane with interior edge of jamb framing. Start flashing membrane at head of opening and lap sill flashing membrane down to the sill.

E. Spray-apply primer to top 6 inches of jambs and exposed sheathing.

F. Install sill flashing membrane at opening head using same installation procedures used at sill. Overlap jamb flashing membrane a minimum of 2 inches.

G. Coordinate flashing with window door or louver installation.

H. On exterior, install backer-rod in joint between window door or louver frame and flashed rough framing. Apply sealant at jambs and head, leaving sill unsealed. Apply sealants in accordance with sealant manufacturer’s instructions and ASTM C 1193.

I. Position weather barrier head flap across head flashing. Adhere using flashing membrane or type as recommended by weather barrier manufacturer over the 45-degree seams.

J. Tape top of window in accordance with weather barrier manufacturer’s recommendations.

K. Seal interior side of opening as required.

3.06 PROTECTION

A. Protect installed weather barrier from damage. Inspect for damage prior to installation of exterior finish materials and promptly repair damaged conditions.

END OF SECTION 07 27 19

SECTION 07 41 13 - METAL ROOF AND WALL PANELS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.01 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.02 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:
   1. Work includes all labor, materials, equipment and services necessary for fabrication and installation of standing seam metal roof panels.

B. Related Documents: The Contract Documents, as defined in Division 01 Section Summary of Work, apply to the Work of this Section. Additional requirements and information necessary to complete the Work of this Section may be found in other Documents.

C. Related Sections include the following:
   1. Division 07 Section “Sheet Metal Flashing and Trim.”
   2. Division 07 Section “Bituminous Dampproofing.”
   3. Division 07 Section “Joint Sealants.”

1.03 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Fabricator and erector shall demonstrate experience of a minimum of five years of related industry experience.

B. Design Criteria: Engineering panels for structural properties in accordance with the latest edition of the American Iron and Steel Institute "Cold Formed Steel Design Manual", using "effective width" concepts.

C. Metal Shapes Design Criteria: Conform to latest edition of Sheet Metal and Air Conditioning Contractors National Association (SMACNA).

D. Provide a metal roofing system that meets UL 580, Class 90 standards.

E. Panel system must meet ASTM standards for air and water infiltration (ASTM E 1680/ASTM E 1648).

F. Roofing panel system must meet uplift requirements of 110 psf and be able to withstand sustained winds of 110 mph with 130 mph 3 second gusts as specified by engineer.

1.04 SUBMITTALS

A. Comply with pertinent provisions of Division 01 Section "Submittal Procedures, unless otherwise indicated."

B. Product data and shop drawings based on the Contract Documents and field conditions of each metal panel type, profile and trim configuration to be replaced and/or installed.

C. Certifications:
   1. Letter of certification from manufacturer's engineers stating product compliance with windloads specified.
   2. Letter of certification from the manufacturer that the installer is in compliance and meets specified requirements.
   3. Letter of certification from the manufacturer that strictest applicable standards are being implemented to ensure quality.

D. Samples:
   1. Submit six inch long samples of each metal roof component and trim.
   2. Submit samples of each type of sealant.

E. Shop drawings showing profile and gauge of sheets, location and type of fasteners, location, gauges, shape and method of attachment of all trim, location and type of sealants, and any other details as may be required for a weathertight installation. Indicate field and factory applied sealant.

F. LEED Submittals:
   1. Materials and Resources (MR)
      a. Product Certificates for Credit MR4: For products having recycled content, documentation indicating percentages by weight of postconsumer and preconsumer recycled content.

1.05 STORAGE AND HANDLING

A. Panels should be stored on edge in a clean dry place. One end should be slightly elevated to allow moisture to run off rather than accumulate on the faces.

B. Panels with strippable plastic film must not be stored in the open, exposed to the sun.

C. Stack pre-formed and prefinished material to prevent twisting, bending, or abrasion and to provide ventilation.

D. Prevent contact with materials during storage which may cause discoloration or staining.

E. In handling prefinished panels, lift up panels and do not slide panels when un-stacking.

1.06 WARRANTY

A. Provide manufacturer's standard twenty (20) year warranty stating architectural fluorocarbon finish will be:
   1. Free of fading of color change in excess of 6 NBS units as measured per ASTM D 2244-68;
   2. Will not chalk in excess of numerical rating of 7 when measured in accordance with standard procedures specified in ASTM D 659-74;
   3. Will not peel, crack, chip, or de-laminate.
   4. Galvalume Sheet steel will not be subject to substrate failure or coating, cracking, peeling, or flaking and will not erode though of become perforated within a period of 20 years after shipment from manufacturer’s plant.

B. Furnish written warranty signed by applicator for a two year period from date of substantial completion of building covering repairs required to maintain roof and flashings in watertight conditions.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.01 MANUFACTURES

A. Roof:
   1. Basis-Of-Design: Equal to Architectural Building Components, Inc.; Houston, Texas (800) 423-1105; model number - 200DL, 16” continuous panel standing seam metal roof or approved equal by one of the following manufacturers:
      a. MBCI, Houston, Texas (877) 713-6224.

B. Membrane Underlayment:
   1. Basis of Design: Equal to “Grace Ultra” as manufactured by W.R. Grace and Co.-Conn., 62 Whittermore Avenue, Cambridge, MA 02140; 866-333-3726 or approved product by one of the following manufacturers:
      a. Polyguard Products, Inc., Ennis, Texas, 75120, 972-875-8421: “Polyguard Deck Guard HT.”
   2. Required primers, liquid adhesives, mastic, and liquid membranes are to be supplied by the same manufacturer as membrane underlayment and as per manufacturer’s recommendation.

C. Wall Panels:

1. Basis-Of-Design: Equal to Morin, a Kingspan Group Company; 685 Middle Street, Bristol, Connecticut 06010; (800) 640-9501; www.morincorp.com

2.02 ROOF MATERIALS

A. Panels: 20 Gauge (0.024”), Grade 50 Galvalume (ASTM A792/792M), Panels are to be installed without seams, seamless.

B. Color: Signature 300; Snow White

C. Clip/Fastener Assemblies: One-piece clips should be 3-1/2” wide by height to match appropriate construction guidelines. Clips should be secured using two (2), minimum, fasteners of like metal type at distance specified on drawings or as specified by manufacturer in accordance with uplift requirements.

D. Accessory Materials:
   1. All exposed fasteners, pop rivets and/or screws, should be stainless and of like color/finish to panels and trim.
   2. Gutters and downspouts as indicated on drawings, 24 Gauge. Color to match roof.

E. Sealant: Verify with manufacturer that sealant type is acceptable for use with materials and weatherability requirements.

2.03 CONCEALED FASTENER WALL MATERIALS

A. Steel:
   1. Aluminum-Zinc Alloy-Coated Steel Sheet: ASTM A792, Class AZ50 coating designation, Grade 40.
   2. Gauge: 20

B. Wall Panel Description:
   1. Panel Width: 12 inches
   2. Profile: as indicated on drawings
   3. Panel thickness: 1 ½ thick.
   4. Panel Joint: Tongue and groove interlock joint

C. Wall Panel Accessories: Provide accessories as required for a complete installation. Accessories shall be as indicated on approved shop drawings and per manufacturer’s approved standard details.
   1. Metal Profile Closure Strips: Shall be fabricated from same gauge, material and finish as metal panel.
   2. Swedge ends: Factory crimped ends laps.

D. Trim:

1. Fabricate trim from same material and material thickness as wall panels. Finish to match metal wall panels.
2. Locations include, but are not limited to the following: Drips, sills, jambs, corners, framed openings, parapet caps, reveals and fillers.

E. Panel Sealant:
1. Joint Sealant: ASTM C920 as recommended in writing by metal wall panel manufacturer.
2. Butyl-Rubber-Based, Solvent-Release Sealant: ASTM C1311.

F. Finish: As indicated on drawings

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.01 INSPECTION OF SURFACES

A. Fabricator and erector are responsible for inspecting existing conditions to verify general conditions, panel profiles and panel attachments and examine all parts of existing building affecting the installation of his work.

3.02 PANEL REPLACEMENT & INSTALLATION

A. Install metal panels, fasteners, trim and related sealants in accordance with approved shop drawings and as may be required for a weathertight installation.

B. Install panels to interlock with adjoining panels in order to prevent water penetration and air leakage per industry standards. Install sealant at each standing seam per manufacturer’s recommendation.

C. Fasten panels to substrate with concealed fasteners per manufacturer's recommendations.

D. Panels shall be installed plumb and true in proper perpendicular alignment to eave edge.

E. Follow manufacturer’s recommendation for installation of membrane underlayment.

3.03 DAMAGED MATERIAL

A. Upon determination of responsibility, replace damaged metal panels and trim to the satisfaction of the Architect and/or Owner.

ROCIP Project: Withhold insurance cost. Please refer to sections 00425 & 00810 for information.

3.04 ACCESSORY INSTALLATION

A. Dissimilar Materials: Isolate aluminum surfaces from contrasting steel or other ferrous metals using EC-1202 tape or zinc chromate paint.

B. Closures: Furnish and install closures where missing at all ends of existing horizontal siding abutting window framing, door frames, storefront, adjoining walls, etc. where panel profile is exposed to view. Closure shall be installed using proper adhesive and fit flush with edge of panel. Caulk perimeter of closure. Coordinate installation with paint preparation and painting.

C. Trim: Install aluminum trim using specified fasteners at location shown on drawings.

END OF SECTION 07 41 13

ROCIP Project: Withhold insurance cost. Please refer to sections 00425 & 00810 for information.

SECTION 07 62 00 – SHEET METAL FLASHING AND TRIM

1.01 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.02 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:
   1. Provide all metal flashing and sheet metal work as shown on the drawings and as herein specified.

B. Related Sections include the following:
   1. Division 06 Section "Wood Framing."
   2. Division 06 Section "Sheathing."
   3. Division 07 Section "Metal Roof Panels."
   4. Division 07 Section "Joint Sealants."
   5. Division 09 Section "Painting."

1.03 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Design Criteria: Sheet metal work in conformance with latest edition of Sheet Metal and Air Conditioning Contractor's National Association, Architectural Sheet Metal Manual (SMACNA Manual).

B. Installer: Engage an experienced installer who has completed similar work of comparable scale with a record of successful performance.

1.04 GUARANTEE

A. Sheet metal applicator and General Contractor shall personally guarantee sheet metal work for a period of one year after acceptance of the building by the Owner against any defects or water leaks. Guarantee shall include all labor and materials necessary to correct any defects or water leaks upon notice from the Owner.

1.05 SUBMITTALS

A. Comply with pertinent provisions of Division 01 Section "Submittal Procedures", unless otherwise indicated.

B. Submit shop drawings for review and approval prior to ordering of materials and fabrication of the required shapes and metal flashings.

C. Failure by the contractor to submit shop drawings required above shall release the Architect from any liabilities due to the negligence on the part of the Contractor to comply with the construction documents.

D. Samples: Submit samples of sheet metal flashings, trim, accessory items, and prefinished items of profiles, gauge and finish to be used.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.01 MATERIALS

A. Miscellaneous Sheet Metal and Trim: Sheet metal for, receivers, and counter-flashings: 26 gauge or as noted on drawings galvanized sheet steel bent to required shapes.

B. Lead: Weight 4 lbs. per square foot.

C. Solder: ASTM D32, Alloy gauge 58, 50% tin, 50% lead.

D. Gutters, Downspouts: 24 Gauge galvanized steel with Kynar 500 coating. Provide 1" straps at 30" o.c. and bracket hangers at 30" o.c. Gutters to be galvalume with Kynar Coating. Color to beselected by Architect.

E. Precast Concrete Splashblock: 12" x 24"; provide one per downspout.

F. Nails for Sheet Metal Work: 10 Gauge galvanized ring type steel of sufficient lenght to adequately secure sheet metal work.

G. Trim Fasteners: Exposed fasteners shall be of same material as trim or stainless steel. Unexposed fasteners may be cadmium or zinc plated steel in accordance with ASTM A164-55 and 165-55. Steel anchors shall be properly insulated from aluminum.

H. Roof Penetration Flashing: Leadcoated copper 16 oz./SF.Roof Penetration Flashing: Leadcoated copper 16 oz./SF.

I. Roof Penetration Pipe Boot: Deck-Mate Flashing System as manufactured by Roof Products and System , Inc.

J. Through-Wall, Door/Window Sill and Head Flashings: MultiFlash 500 by York or approved equal.

K. Reglets: Equal to Fry Reglets original metal reglet.

L. Counter Flashing. “Springlock Flashing” by Fry Reglet.

M. Sheet Metal Fasteners: Galvanized steel with washers where required.

N. Water-proofing at Sill Plate above Floor Slab: 5-1/2” x 3/8” closed cell form and adhesive backed peel and stick membrane, equal to Protecto Wrap (800 759-9227) “Triple Guard Energy Sill Sealer.”

2.02 FABRICATION

A. All exposed edges shall be hemmed 1/2" on underside.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.01 INSPECTION OF SURFACES

A. Applicator responsible for inspecting substrates upon which sheet metal materials are to be placed for any defects or conditions that would impair finished installation. Application constitutes acceptance of the substrate.

3.02 APPLICATION

A. Details shown are design details, fabrication techniques, and methods as per SMACNA recommendations.

B. Proper and adequate provisions shall be made in fabrication, installing and fastening sheet metal work for expansion and contraction of metal and other materials entering into the work so that pulling, splitting, opening of joints, warpage or other failure of the work shall be prevented. Expansion joints in sheet metal placed not farther than 40 feet apart. Dissimilar metal surfaces contacting one another, protected by bituminous coating to prevent galvanic or corrosive action from occurring.

C. Counter flashing constructed in lengths not exceeding 10 feet and installed in receiver so that flashing lays tightly against base flashing and overlaps base flashings a minimum of 4 inches. Joints between sections shall be tight and lay flat. Metal at corners continuous. Bent, crimped or warped sections are not permitted.

3.03 INSTALLATION

A. General: unless otherwise indicated, install sheet metal flashing and trim to comply with performance requirements, manufacturer’s installation instructions, and SMACNA’s “Architectural Sheet Metal Manual.” Anchor units of Work securely in place by method indicated, providing for thermal expansion of metal units; conceal fasteners where possible, and set units true to line and level as indicated. Install work with laps, joints, and seams that will be permanently watertight and weatherproof.

1. All complete work shall be water and weathertight. Joints, cuts, miters, splices or other installation means made as neat as possible. Fastenings as inconspicuous as possible.

B. Install exposed sheet metal Work that is without excessive oil canning, buckling, and tool marks and that is true to line and levels indicated, with exposed edges folded back to form hems. Install sheet metal flashing and trim to fit substrates and to result in waterproof and weather-resistant performance. Verify shapes and dimensions of surfaces to be covered before fabricating sheet metal.

C. Expansion Provisions: Provide for thermal expansion of exposed sheet metal work. Space movement joints at maximum of 10 feet with no joints allowed within 24 inches of corner or intersection. Where lapped or bayonet-type expansion provisions in Work cannot be used or would not be sufficiently weatherproof and waterproof, form expansion joints of intermeshing hooked flanges, not less than 1 inch deep, filled with mastic sealant (concealed within joints).

D. Soldered Joints: Clean surfaces to be soldered, removing oils and foreign matter. Pretin edges of sheets to be soldered to a width of 1-1/2 inches, except where pretinned surface would show in finished Work.
   1. Pretinning is not required for the following metals:
      a. Lead-coated copper.
   2. Do not use torches for soldering. Heat surfaces to receive solder and flow solder into joint. Fill joint completely. Completely remove flux and spatter from exposed surfaces.

E. Sealed Joints: Form nonexpansion, but movable, joints in metal to accommodate elastomeric sealant to comply with SMACNA standards. Fill joint with sealant and form metal to completely conceal sealant.
   1. Use joint adhesive for nonmoving joints specified not to be soldered.

F. Seams: Fabricate nonmoving seams in aluminum with flat-lock seams. Form seams and seal with epoxy seam sealer. Rivet joints for additional strength.

G. Separations: Separate metal from noncompatible metal or corrosive substrates by coating concealed surfaces, at locations of contact, with asphalt mastic or other permanent separation as recommended by manufacturer.
   1. Underlayment: Where installing stainless steel or aluminum directly on cementitious or wood substrates, install a slip sheet of red-rosin paper and a course of polyethylene underlayment.
   2. Bed flanges of Work in a thick coat of roofing cement where required for waterproof performance.

H. Roof-Penetration Flashing; Coordinate roof-penetration flashing installation with roofing and installation of items penetrating roof. Install flashing as follows:
   1. Turn lead flashing down inside vent piping, being careful not to block vent piping with flashing.

2. Seal and clamp flashing to pipes penetrating roof, other than lead flashing on vent piping.

I. Precast Concrete Splash Blocks: Install where downspouts discharge on grade unless otherwise shown.

3.04 FLASHING & COUNTERFLASHING REQUIREMENTS

A. Joints in thru-wall flashings and counterflashings shall be lapped 4" minimum with laps bedded in sealant.

B. Head and sill flashings shall not have joints and shall have sides turned up (edge dams) with all corners folded, not cut and shall extend 10" minimum beyond both sides of opening.

C. Head, sill and thru-wall flashings shall be set in a bead of sealant applied under the exterior edge of the flashing and on top of the masonry or lintel angle on which the flashing rests.

D. Penetrations in thru-wall flashing are not permitted. Vents in thru-wall flashing shall be completely flashed and water tight.

E. Metal reglets shall have a bead of sealant installed to complete system with counterflashing.

3.05 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

A. Clean exposed metal surfaces, removing substances that might cause corrosion of metal or deterioration of finishes.

END OF SECTION 07 62 00

ROCIP Project: Withhold insurance cost. Please refer to sections 00425 & 00810 for information.

SECTION 07 84 13 - PENETRATION FIRESTOPPING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.01 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.02 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:
   1. Penetrations in fire-resistance-rated walls.
   2. Penetrations in horizontal assemblies.
   3. Penetrations in smoke barriers.

1.03 STANDARDS

A. All work under this section shall conform to the requirements of the Underwriters' Laboratories, Inc., the National Board of Fire Underwriters and the local building code. Where requirements specified differ from the requirements of any authorities having jurisdiction, the more stringent requirements shall apply.

B. Firestopping system shall be a complete system of materials supplied by one manufacturer.

1.04 SUBMITTALS

A. Test Reports
   1. Submit copies of fire test reports of fireproofing installation to substrate materials required.
   2. Submit certified test reports of acceptable testing agencies which perform testing in accordance with ASTM E-119 and E-84.

B. Manufacturer's Instruction: Furnish manufacturer's printed material specifications and installation instruction for each type of fireproofing.

C. Certificates:
   1. Furnish manufacturer's certification that materials meet or exceed specification requirements.
   2. Furnish applicator’s certification that material has been completed as specified to meet fire resistance ratings and application requirements.

D. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.

E. Product Schedule: For each penetration firestopping system include location and design designation of qualified testing and inspecting agency.
   1. Where Project conditions require modification to a qualified testing and inspecting agency's illustration for a particular penetration firestopping condition, submit illustration, with modifications marked, approved by penetration firestopping manufacturer's fire-protection engineer as an engineering judgment or equivalent fire-resistance-rated assembly.

F. Qualification Data: For qualified Installer.

G. Installer Certificates: From Installer indicating penetration firestopping has been installed in compliance with requirements and manufacturer's written recommendations.

1.05 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Installer Qualifications: A firm experienced in installing penetration firestopping similar in material, design, and extent to that indicated for this Project, whose work has resulted in construction with a record of successful performance. Qualifications include having the necessary experience, staff, and training to install manufacturer's products per specified requirements. Manufacturer's willingness to sell its penetration firestopping products to Contractor or to Installer engaged by Contractor does not in itself confer qualification on buyer.

B. Qualifications of Installer:
   1. Five years experience in performing installation of materials with similar quantities of fireproofing materials.

C. Requirements of regulatory agencies:
   1. Building code requirements of the municipality for fire resistance ratings of areas to receive fireproofing materials.
   2. Underwriters' Laboratories, Inc.: Classification marking.
   3. Acceptance by ICBO, BOCA and SBCCI as described by National Evaluation Service Report, NER-332.

D. Testing:
   1. Fire resistant rating of assemblies - ASTM E-814.
   2. Compound shall meet all requirements of UL 1479.

1.06 PROJECT CONDITIONS

A. Environmental Limitations: Do not install penetration firestopping when ambient or substrate temperatures are outside limits permitted by penetration firestopping manufacturers or when substrates are wet because of rain, frost, condensation, or other causes.

B. Install and cure penetration firestopping per manufacturer's written instructions using natural means of ventilations or, where this is inadequate, forced-air circulation.

ROCIP Project: Withhold insurance cost. Please refer to sections 00425 & 00810 for information.

1.07 PRODUCT DELIVERY, STORAGE AND HANDLING

A. Deliver materials in original, unopened packages bearing name of manufacturer and product identification.

B. Reject damaged packages found unsuitable for use and remove from job site.

C. Store materials off ground, under cover, and away from damp surfaces.

D. Keep materials dry at all times.

1.08 COORDINATION

A. Coordinate construction of openings and penetrating items to ensure that penetration firestopping is installed according to specified requirements.

B. Coordinate sizing of sleeves, openings, core-drilled holes, or cut openings to accommodate penetration firestopping.

C. Notify Owner's testing agency at least seven days in advance of penetration firestopping installations; confirm dates and times on day preceding each series of installations.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.01 MANUFACTURERS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
   1. Grace Construction Products.
   2. Johns Manville.
   3. USG Corporation.

2.02 PENETRATION FIRESTOPPING

A. Provide penetration firestopping that is produced and installed to resist spread of fire according to requirements indicated, resist passage of smoke and other gases, and maintain original fire-resistance rating of construction penetrated. Penetration firestopping systems shall be compatible with one another, with the substrates forming openings, and with any penetrating items.

B. Penetrations in Fire-Resistance-Rated Walls: Provide penetration firestopping with ratings determined per ASTM E 814 or UL 1479, based on testing at a positive pressure differential of 0.01-inch wg (2.49 Pa).
   1. Fire-resistance-rated walls include fire and/or smoke-barrier walls.
   2. F-Rating: Not less than the fire-resistance rating of constructions penetrated.

C. Penetrations in Horizontal Assemblies: Provide penetration firestopping with ratings determined per ASTM E 814 or UL 1479, based on testing at a positive pressure differential of 0.01-inch wg (2.49 Pa).
   1. Horizontal assemblies include floor/ceiling assemblies and ceiling membranes of roof/ceiling assemblies.
   2. F-Rating: At least 2 hours, but not less than the fire-resistance rating of constructions penetrated.

D. Penetrations in Smoke Barriers: Provide penetration firestopping with ratings determined per UL 1479.
   1. L-Rating: Not exceeding 5.0 cfm/sq. ft. of penetration opening at 0.30-inch wg (74.7 Pa) at both ambient and elevated temperatures.

E. Accessories: Provide components for each penetration firestopping system that are needed to install fill materials and to maintain ratings required. Use only those components specified by penetration firestopping manufacturer and approved by qualified testing and inspecting agency for firestopping indicated.
   1. Permanent forming/damming/backing materials, including the following:
      a. Slag-wool-fiber or rock-wool-fiber insulation.
      b. Sealants used in combination with other forming/damming/backing materials to prevent leakage of fill materials in liquid state.
      c. Fire-rated form board.
      d. Fillers for sealants.
   2. Temporary forming materials.
   3. Substrate primers.
   4. Collars.
   5. Steel sleeves.

2.03 FILL MATERIALS

A. Latex Sealants: Single-component latex formulations that do not re-emulsify after cure during exposure to moisture.

B. Mortars: Prepackaged dry mixes consisting of a blend of inorganic binders, hydraulic cement, fillers, and lightweight aggregate formulated for mixing with water at Project site to form a nonshrinking, homogeneous mortar.

C. Silicone Sealants: Single-component, silicone-based, neutral-curing elastomeric sealants of grade indicated below:
   1. Grade: Pourable (self-leveling) formulation for openings in floors and other horizontal surfaces, and nonsag formulation for openings in vertical and sloped surfaces, unless indicated firestopping limits use of nonsag grade for both opening conditions.

D. Safing Insulation: Forming material, minimum 3” unfaced safing insulation with a nominal density of 4 pcf, and bearing the UL Classification Marking shall be “Thermafiber” as manufactured by USG Corp.

E. Compound: Pliable, non-toxic, non-combustible, non-asbestos, low density, light-weight compound shall be “Firecode” as manufactured by USG Corp., “Flame Stop V” as manufactured by Flame Stop Inc. or “Metacaulk” as manufactured by Rector-seal.

F. Wood blocking in stud wall as required by the local building codes.

2.04 MIXING

A. For those products requiring mixing before application, comply with penetration firestopping manufacturer's written instructions for accurate proportioning of materials, water (if required), type of mixing equipment, selection of mixer speeds, mixing containers, mixing time, and other items or procedures needed to produce products of uniform quality with optimum performance characteristics for application indicated.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.01 EXAMINATION

A. Examine substrates and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for opening configurations, penetrating items, substrates, and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.

B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

C. Verify that all substrates to receive firestopping system are constructed according to the Construction Documents and acceptable to receive fire stop materials.

3.02 PREPARATION

A. Surface Cleaning: Clean out openings immediately before installing penetration firestopping to comply with manufacturer's written instructions and with the following requirements:
   1. Remove from surfaces of opening substrates and from penetrating items foreign materials that could interfere with adhesion of penetration firestopping.
   2. Clean opening substrates and penetrating items to produce clean, sound surfaces capable of developing optimum bond with penetration firestopping. Remove loose particles remaining from cleaning operation.
   3. Remove laitance and form-release agents from concrete.

B. Priming: Prime substrates where recommended in writing by manufacturer using that manufacturer's recommended products and methods. Confine primers to areas of bond; do not allow spillage and migration onto exposed surfaces.

C. Masking Tape: Use masking tape to prevent penetration firestopping from contacting adjoining surfaces that will remain exposed on completion of the Work and that would otherwise be permanently stained or damaged by such contact or by cleaning methods used to remove stains. Remove tape as soon as possible without disturbing firestopping's seal with substrates.

3.03 INSTALLATION

A. General: Install penetration firestopping to comply with manufacturer's written installation instructions and published drawings for products and applications indicated.

B. Install forming materials and other accessories of types required to support fill materials during their application and in the position needed to produce cross-sectional shapes and depths required to achieve fire ratings indicated.
   1. After installing fill materials and allowing them to fully cure, remove combustible forming materials and other accessories not indicated as permanent components of firestopping.

C. Install fill materials for firestopping by proven techniques to produce the following results:
   1. Fill voids and cavities formed by openings, forming materials, accessories, and penetrating items as required to achieve fire-resistance ratings indicated.
   2. Apply materials so they contact and adhere to substrates formed by openings and penetrating items.
   3. For fill materials that will remain exposed after completing the Work, finish to produce smooth, uniform surfaces that are flush with adjoining finishes.

3.04 IDENTIFICATION

A. Identify penetration firestopping with preprinted metal or plastic labels. Attach labels permanently to surfaces adjacent to and within 6 inches of firestopping edge so labels will be visible to anyone seeking to remove penetrating items or firestopping. Use mechanical fasteners or self-adhering-type labels with adhesives capable of permanently bonding labels to surfaces on which labels are placed. Include the following information on labels:
   1. The words "Warning - Penetration Firestopping - Do Not Disturb. Notify Building Management of Any Damage."
   2. Contractor's name, address, and phone number.
   3. Designation of applicable testing and inspecting agency.
   4. Date of installation.
   5. Manufacturer's name.
   6. Installer's name.

3.05 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Owner will engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.

B. Where deficiencies are found or penetration firestopping is damaged or removed because of testing, repair or replace penetration firestopping to comply with requirements.

C. Proceed with enclosing penetration firestopping with other construction only after inspection reports are issued and installations comply with requirements.

3.06 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

A. Clean off excess fill materials adjacent to openings as the Work progresses by methods and with cleaning materials that are approved in writing by penetration firestopping manufacturers and that do not damage materials in which openings occur.

B. Provide final protection and maintain conditions during and after installation that ensure that penetration firestopping is without damage or deterioration at time of Substantial Completion. If, despite such protection, damage or deterioration occurs, immediately cut out and remove damaged or deteriorated penetration firestopping and install new materials to produce systems complying with specified requirements.

3.07 APPLICATION

A. Safing Insulation: Cut safing insulation slightly wider than the opening. Compress and tightly fit min. 2 1/2” or 3” thickness of insulation with nominal density of 4 pcf completely around penetrant.

B. Firestopping Compound: Trowel apply the compound from its container and work into the penetration opening. Apply compound to minimum 1/2” to 1” thickness on top of safing insulation. Ensure that compound is in contact with all surfaces and that entire opening is filled with safing and compound. Utilize appropriately rated product for specific rated partition application.

END OF SECTION 07 84 13

ROCIP Project: Withhold insurance cost. Please refer to sections 00425 & 00810 for information.

SECTION 07 92 00 - JOINT SEALANTS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.01 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.02 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes: Provide sealant required to close joints that would allow moisture or air to enter structure between fixed materials as shown on the drawings and as herein specified including but not limited to:
   1. Sealing of interior perimeter joints of window framing, door frames, and other openings in walls.
   2. Setting of thresholds in sealant.
   3. Sealing of joints between countertops and wall surfaces for a sanitary joint.
   4. Sealing of joints of every nature and description that would allow moisture or air penetration.
   5. Sealing of joints indicated to be caulked or sealed whether specifically mentioned herein or not.
   6. Sealing around all pipe, duct and vent penetrations.

B. Section Includes:
   1. Silicone joint sealants.
   2. Urethane joint sealants.
   3. Polysulfide joint sealants.
   4. Latex joint sealants.
   5. Solvent-release-curing joint sealants.
   6. Preformed joint sealants.
   7. Acoustical joint sealants.

C. Related Sections:
   1. Division 01 Section “Sustainable Construction Requirements”
   2. Division 04 Section "Concrete Unit Masonry" for masonry control and expansion joint fillers and gaskets.
   3. Division 07 Section "Penetration Firestopping" for sealing joints in fire-resistance-rated construction.
   4. Division 07 Section “Siding and Soffit."
   5. Division 07 Section "Flashing and Sheet Metal."
   6. Division 08 Section "Hollow Metal Doors and Frames."
   7. Division 08 Section "Aluminum Entrance and Storefront."
   8. Division 08 Section "Aluminum Windows."
   9. Division 08 Section "Glazed Aluminum Curtain Walls."
   10. Division 09 Section "Metal Windows."

11. Division 09 Section "Gypsum Board" for sealing perimeter joints.
12. Division 09 Section "Tiling" for sealing tile joints.
13. Division 09 Section "Painting."
14. Division 23 Section "Heating, Ventilating and Air Conditioning."
15. Division 32 Section "Concrete Paving Joint Sealants" for sealing joints in pavements, walkways, and curbing.

1.03 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each joint-sealant product indicated.

B. LEED Submittals:
1. Product Data for Credit IEQ 4.1: For sealants and sealant primers used inside the weatherproofing system, documentation including printed statement of VOC content.

2. "Laboratory Test Reports for Credit IEQ 4" Subparagraph below applies to LEED for Schools. Laboratory Test Reports for Credit IEQ 4: For sealants and sealant primers used inside the weatherproofing system, documentation indicating that products comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers.

C. Samples for Initial Selection: Manufacturer's color charts consisting of strips of cured sealants showing the full range of colors available for each product exposed to view.

D. Samples for Verification: For each kind and color of joint sealant required, provide Samples with joint sealants in 1/2-inch wide joints formed between two 6-inch long strips of material matching the appearance of exposed surfaces adjacent to joint sealants.

E. Joint-Sealant Schedule: Include the following information:
1. Joint-sealant application, joint location, and designation.
2. Joint-sealant manufacturer and product name.
3. Joint-sealant formulation.
4. Joint-sealant color.

F. Qualification Data: For qualified Installer.

G. Product Certificates: For each kind of joint sealant and accessory, from manufacturer.

H. Sealant, Waterproofing, and Restoration Institute (SWRI) Validation Certificate: For each sealant specified to be validated by SWRI's Sealant Validation Program.

I. Product Test Reports: Based on evaluation of comprehensive tests performed by a qualified testing agency, indicating that sealants comply with requirements.

J. Warranties: Sample of special warranties.

K. Sample of joint backing material.

1.04 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Installer Qualifications: Manufacturer's authorized representative who is trained and approved for installation of units required for this Project.

B. Source Limitations: Obtain each kind of joint sealant from single source from single manufacturer.

C. Mockups: Install sealant in mockups of assemblies specified in other Sections that are indicated to receive joint sealants specified in this Section. Use materials and installation methods specified in this Section.

D. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

1.05 PROJECT CONDITIONS

A. Do not proceed with installation of joint sealants under the following conditions:
   1. When ambient and substrate temperature conditions are outside limits permitted by joint-sealant manufacturer or are below 40 deg F.
   2. When joint substrates are wet.
   3. Where joint widths are less than those allowed by joint-sealant manufacturer for applications indicated.
   4. Where contaminants capable of interfering with adhesion have not yet been removed from joint substrates.

1.06 WARRANTY

A. Special Installer's Warranty: Manufacturer's standard form in which Installer agrees to repair or replace joint sealants that do not comply with performance and other requirements specified in this Section within specified warranty period.

B. The Contractor shall submit, in writing, a warrant that all sealant work executed under this Section shall be free from defects in materials and workmanship for a period of one (1) year from date of acceptance of the Project, and he shall remedy any defects in the sealant work during the warranty period.
   1. Warranty Period: One year from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.01 MATERIALS, GENERAL

A. Primers: Non-staining type as recommended by sealant manufacturer for each working surface. Material shall not leave residue or stain on adjacent surfaces. Each joint must be primed prior to sealing.

B. Sealant for Interior and Exterior Masonry Control Joints: 2 part polyurethane sealant equivalent to "Sonolastic NP-2" by Sonneborn, "Dymeric 240 FC" by Tremco, or "Dynatrol II" by Pecora. Color to match adjacent surfaces, as selected by Architect.

C. Sealant for Re-glazing: Medium modulus silicone sealant shall be Sonneborn's "Omniseal 50", Tremco's "Spectrem 2", or approved equal. Color as selected by Architect from manufacturer’s full range..

D. Sealant for Exterior Joints: Two part polyurethane sealer as manufactured by Pecora, Inc., Sonneborn, or Tremco. Color to be approved by Architect.

E. Sealant for Exterior Concrete Paving and Sidewalk Joints: Two part urethane (self leveling) sealant equal to "Sonolastic NP-2 by Sonneborn. "Urexpan NR-200" by Pecora, or "THC-900" Tremco.

F. Caulking for Interior Joints: One part acrylic latex sealant equivalent to "AC-20" by Pecora, "Tremflex 834" by Tremco, "Acrylic Latex" caulk by DAP, or "Sonolac" by Sonneborn. Color to be selected by Architect.

G. Caulking for Countertop Joints: One-part clear silicone sealant, “864 NST” by Pecora, or equal. Color to be selected by architect.

H. Joint Backing: Non-staining closed cell polyethylene foam rod oversized 30% to 50%, equal to “Closed-cell Backer-rod” by Sonneborn.

I. Solvents and Cleaning Agents: Of a type specifically recommended by sealant manufacturer.

J. Precompressed Expanding Foam Sealant: Shall be Gray "Illmod 600" as manufactured by "Tremco", Beachwood, Ohio or approved equal.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.01 EXAMINATION

A. Examine joints indicated to receive joint sealants, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for joint configuration, installation tolerances, and other conditions affecting joint-sealant performance.

B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.02 PREPARATION

A. Surface Cleaning of Joints: Clean out joints immediately before installing joint sealants to comply with joint-sealant manufacturer's written instructions and the following requirements:
   1. Remove all foreign material from joint substrates that could interfere with adhesion of joint sealant, including dust, paints (except for permanent, protective coatings tested and approved for sealant adhesion and compatibility by sealant manufacturer), old joint sealants, oil, grease, waterproofing, water repellents, water, surface dirt, and frost.
   2. Clean porous joint substrate surfaces by brushing, grinding, mechanical abrading, or a combination of these methods to produce a clean, sound substrate capable of developing optimum bond with joint sealants. Remove loose particles remaining after cleaning operations above by vacuuming or blowing out joints with oil-free compressed air.
   3. Remove laitance and form-release agents from concrete.
   4. Clean nonporous joint substrate surfaces with chemical cleaners or other means that do not stain, harm substrates, or leave residues capable of interfering with adhesion of joint sealants.

B. Joint Priming: Prime joint substrates where recommended by joint-sealant manufacturer or as indicated by preconstruction joint-sealant-substrate tests or prior experience. Apply primer to comply with joint-sealant manufacturer's written instructions. Confine primers to areas of joint-sealant bond; do not allow spillage or migration onto adjoining surfaces.

C. Masking Tape: Use masking tape where required to prevent contact of sealant or primer with adjoining surfaces that otherwise would be permanently stained or damaged by such contact or by cleaning methods required to remove sealant smears. Remove tape immediately after tooling without disturbing joint seal.

D. When primer is dry, compress backup and insert into joint leaving 1/4” to surface open or joint sealing or leaving open 1/2 of joint width, but not less than 1/4”.

E. Completely cut smooth and remove projection of existing gasket and/or sealant material at door and window framing to remain to achieve sound substrate for application.

3.03 INSTALLATION OF JOINT SEALANTS

A. Sealant Installation Standard: Comply with recommendations in ASTM C 1193 for use of joint sealants as applicable to materials, applications, and conditions indicated.

B. Install sealant backings of kind indicated to support sealants during application and at position required to produce cross-sectional shapes and depths of installed sealants relative to joint widths that allow optimum sealant movement capability.
   1. Do not leave gaps between ends of sealant backings.
   2. Do not stretch, twist, puncture, or tear sealant backings.

3. Remove absorbent sealant backings that have become wet before sealant application and replace them with dry materials.

C. Install bond-breaker tape behind sealants where sealant backings are not used between sealants and backs of joints.

D. Install sealants using proven techniques that comply with the following and at the same time backings are installed:
   1. Place sealants so they directly contact and fully wet joint substrates.
   2. Completely fill recesses in each joint configuration.
   3. Produce uniform, cross-sectional shapes and depths relative to joint widths that allow optimum sealant movement capability.

E. Tooling of Nonsag Sealants: Immediately after sealant application and before skinning or curing begins, tool sealants according to requirements specified in subparagraphs below to form smooth, uniform beads of configuration indicated; to eliminate air pockets; and to ensure contact and adhesion of sealant with sides of joint.
   1. Remove excess sealant from surfaces adjacent to joints.
   2. Use tooling agents that are approved in writing by sealant manufacturer and that do not discolor sealants or adjacent surfaces.
   3. Provide concave joint profile per Figure 8A in ASTM C 1193, unless otherwise indicated.
   4. Provide flush joint profile where indicated per Figure 8B in ASTM C 1193.
   5. Provide recessed joint configuration of recess depth and at locations indicated per Figure 8C in ASTM C 1193.
      a. Use masking tape to protect surfaces adjacent to recessed tooled joints.

3.04 APPLICATION

A. It is the intent and purpose and interpretation of this specification that in all areas, joints sealed shall be rendered structurally sound and impervious to the passage of water, moisture and dust.

B. Follow sealant manufacturers' instructions regarding mixing, surface application, priming and application procedure.

C. Sealant shall be applied under pressure with a hand or power activated gun having a nozzle of proper size to entirely fill joint void and shall be forced into joints with sufficient pressure to expel air and fill the joints solidly. All joint surfaces shall be neatly tooled to a smooth surface, free of wrinkles and result in a flush joint when dry.

D. Apply sealants when the ambient temperature is between 40° and 100° F.

E. All junctures between countertops, back splashes and walls shall be caulked with silicone sealant providing a sanitary tight joint.

F. All junctures between piping and substrate of partitions, floors and ceiling shall be caulked.

G. Precompressed expanding foam sealant shall be installed per manufacturer's requirements at all vertical expansion joints as noted on Drawings.

H. Apply sealant bead at least 1/2 inch thick under each edge of threshold. Remove excess and neatly point.

I. Caulk perimeter of window frame, door frame or other items penetrating, intersecting or abutting walls, ceilings, floors, etc.

J. Prime surface as required and apply sealant at all glazing, at metal to metal and glass to metal joints within the system.

K. Apply bead of sealant at base of wall board.

L. Apply sealant along all fiber cement siding, fiber cement trim, and fiber cement soffit. Architect to select color.

3.05 CLEANING

A. Clean off excess sealant or sealant smears adjacent to joints as the Work progresses by methods and with cleaning materials approved in writing by manufacturers of joint sealants and of products in which joints occur. All finished work shall be left in a neat, clean condition.

3.06 PROTECTION

A. Protect joint sealants during and after curing period from contact with contaminating substances and from damage resulting from construction operations or other causes so sealants are without deterioration or damage at time of Substantial Completion. If, despite such protection, damage or deterioration occurs, cut out and remove damaged or deteriorated joint sealants immediately so installations with repaired areas are indistinguishable from original work.

END OF SECTION 07 92 00

SECTION 07 95 00 – EXPANSION CONTROL

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.01 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.02 SUMMARY

A. Furnish Expansion Joint Systems in accordance with the drawings and general provisions of the Contract.

1.03 WORK INCLUDED

A. Furnish complete JointMaster/InPro Corporation Expansion Joint Systems.
   1. Interior floor expansion joint systems.
   2. Interior wall expansion joint systems.
   3. Interior ceiling expansion joint systems.
   4. Fire Rated Assemblies.

1.04 RELATED WORK

A. Related work which is specified elsewhere.
   1. Division 03 Section “Cast-In-Place Concrete”.
   2. Division 04 Section “Concrete Unit Masonry”.
   3. Division 05 Section “Structural Steel Framing”.
   4. Division 06 Section “Wood Framing”.
   5. Division 07 Section “Sheet Metal Flashing and Trim”.
   6. Division 09 Section “Gypsum Board”.

1.05 REFERENCES

A. Publications listed herein are part of this specification to the extent referenced. The criteria established in the specifications shall take precedence over the standards referenced herein. (An example of a reference standard is given below.)
   1. American Society for Testing and Materials (ASTM):
      a. ASTM B 221, Standard Specifications for Aluminum and Aluminum-Alloy Extruded Bars, Rods, Wire, Shapes, and Tubes.

1.06 DEFINITIONS

A. Define industry and product terms as necessary.

1.07 SYSTEM DESCRIPTION

A. Joint systems shall permit limited movement of joint without disengagement.
   1. X-axis joint movement (horizontal).
   2. Y-axis joint movement (vertical).
   3. Z-axis joint movement (lateral).

B. Allowable load on floor joint cover plate shall be 50 psf uniform load and 300 pounds concentrated load with maximum 12,000 psi stress (6063-T5 aluminum extrusions) or 28,000 psi stress (6061-T6 aluminum plate) or 16,000 psi stress (5052-H32 aluminum sheet) or 36,000 psi stress (stainless steel plate) at full open position.
   1. Deflection shall be 1/8 inch at neutral position.
   2. In the absence of load selections the minimum load will apply - [50] psf with [1/8] inch deflection.

C. Fire Rated Assemblies shall have been tested by Underwriters Laboratories, in accordance with ANSI/U.L. No. 263 and ASTM E 119/E 814 UL 2079 including hose stream test at full rated period. Underwriter's Laboratories shall classify assemblies. Fire rating shall be 2 hours or not less than the fire rating of adjacent construction.

1.08 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Manufacturer: Furnish assemblies from one (1) manufacturer with a minimum of five (5) years of experience in the design, engineering and fabrication of expansion joint systems.

B. Installer: Firm with not less than three (3) years of successful experience in the installation of systems similar to those required by this project and acceptable to the manufacturer of the system.

1.09 SUBMITTALS

A. Manufacturer's specifications, technical data, installation instructions, and detail drawings for each system.

B. Certificates or other documentation confirming UL approved compliance with fire resistance rating of fire barrier assemblies.

C. Sample of specified systems.

ROCIP Project: Withhold insurance cost. Please refer to sections 00425 & 00810 for information.

1.10 DELIVERY AND STORAGE

A. Provide temporary protective covers on anodized aluminum finished surfaces.

B. Deliver joint systems to jobsite in new, clean, unopened cartons or crates of sufficient size and strength to protect materials during transit.

C. Store components in original containers in a clean, dry location.

1.11 SEQUENCING

A. Submittals shall be completed and submitted within a reasonable amount of time after award of subcontract.

B. Subcontract for the work of this section shall be planned to allow sufficient time for manufacturer's production and delivery scheduling.

1.12 WARRANTY

A. Standard Manufacturer's limited warranty against material and manufacturing defects for a period of not less than three (3) years when installed in accordance with manufacturer's recommendations.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.01 MANUFACTURER

A. JointMaster/InPro Corporation S80 W18766 Apollo Drive Muskego, WI 53150 USA Phone: (800) 222-5556 Fax: (888) 715-8407 Email: service@inprocorp.com

B. Requests for substitutions will be considered in accordance with provisions of Division 01 Section "Substitution Procedures".

2.02 MATERIALS

A. Aluminum: ASTM B 221, alloy 6063-T6.

B. Fire Barrier: Reactofire 900 Blanket System to UL2079 with hose stream test to walls required for indicated fire resistance rating.

C. Fasteners, accessories and other materials required for complete installation in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.

2.03 INTERIOR JOINT SYSTEMS FOR FLOORS, WALLS AND CEILINGS

A. Standard cover plate systems: JointMaster 800 Series - Continuous aluminum cover plates fastened on one side of joint
   1. Floor Systems
      a. Surface mount cover plate, floor/floor - 801-A01
      b. Surface mount cover plate, floor/wall - 801-A02
      c. Surface mount cover plate with minimal sightline for 1/8]", 1/4" and 3/8" floor finishes - 802-A01
      d. Surface mount cover plate with spring clip, floor/floor-804-A01
      e. Surface mount cover plate with spring clip, floor/wall - 804-A02
      f. Surface mount cover plate for uneven slab conditions, floor/floor – 806-A01
      g. Surface mount cover plate for uneven slab conditions, floor/wall – 806-A02
      h. Surface mount cover plate with beveled edges and serrated surface for pedestrian safety, floor/floor – 808-A01
   2. Wall/Ceiling Systems
      a. Surface mount variable degree cover plate, wall/wall - 811-A07
   3. Ceiling Systems
      a. Dual durometer pleated vinyl seal for acoustical ceiling systems, ceiling/ceiling - 821-V24 Dual durometer pleated vinyl seal for acoustical ceiling systems, ceiling/wall - 821-V23

2.04 FABRICATION

A. Field assemble components provided in standard lengths with pre-packaged fasteners and accessories.

B. Fabricate special transitions and corner fittings as required.

2.05 FINISHES

A. Aluminum:
   1. Floors: Mill finish
   2. Walls and Ceilings: 204-R1 Commercial Clear Anodized

PART 3 - PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.01 EXECUTION

A. Verify that structural gap dimensions are in conformance with manufacturer’s submittal data.

ROCIP Project: Withhold insurance cost. Please refer to sections 00425 & 00810 for information.

3.02 INSTALLATION

A. Joint systems: Install in accordance with manufacturer's instructions. Align work plumb, level and flush with adjacent surfaces. Rigidly anchor to substrate. Allowances should be made where actual structural gap at time of installation varies from nominal design gap.

B. Fire Rated Assemblies: Where required, install to manufacturer's instructions.

3.03 PROTECTION AND CLEANING

A. Protect installation from damage by work of others. At completion of the installation, clean exposed surfaces with non-solvent cleaner.

END OF SECTION 07 95 00

ROCIP Project: Withhold insurance cost. Please refer to sections 00425 & 00810 for information.

SECTION 08 11 13 - HOLLOW METAL DOORS, FRAMES, AND WINDOW FRAMES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.01 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.02 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:
   1. Standard hollow metal doors and frames.
   2. Standard hollow metal window frames.

B. Related Sections:
   1. Division 04 Section "Concrete Unit Masonry."
   2. Division 04 Section "Stone Masonry."
   3. Division 06 Section "Wood Framing."
   4. Division 07 Section "Joint Seatants."
   5. Division 08 Section "Brick Masonry."
   6. Division 08 Section "Glazing."
   7. Division 08 Section "Hardware."
   8. Division 09 Section "Painting."
   9. Division 09 Section "Non-Structural Metal Framing."
   10. Division 09 Section "Gypsum Board."
   11. Division 26 Sections for electrical connections including conduit and wiring for door controls and operators.

1.03 DEFINITIONS

A. Minimum Thickness: Minimum thickness of base metal without coatings.

B. Standard Hollow Metal Work: Hollow metal work fabricated according to ANSI/SDI A250.8.

C. Custom Hollow Metal Work: Hollow metal work fabricated according to ANSI/NAAMM-HMMA 861.

1.04 SUBMITTALS

A. Comply with pertinent provisions of Division 01 Section "Submittal Procedures", unless otherwise indicated.

B. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Include construction details, material descriptions, core descriptions, fire-resistance rating, temperature-rise ratings, and finishes shall be submitted to the Architect for review prior to fabrication of material.

C. Shop Drawings: Include the following:
   1. Elevations of each door design.
   2. Details of doors, including vertical and horizontal edge details and metal thicknesses.
   3. Frame details for each frame type, including dimensioned profiles and metal thicknesses.
   4. Locations of reinforcement and preparations for hardware.
   5. Details of each different wall opening condition.
   6. Details of anchorages, joints, field splices, and connections.
   7. Details of accessories.
   8. Details of moldings, removable stops, and glazing.
   9. Details of conduit and preparations for power, signal, and control systems.

D. Samples for Verification:
   1. For each type of exposed finish required, prepared on Samples of not less than 3 by 5 inches.
   2. For the following items, prepared on Samples about 12 by 12 inches to demonstrate compliance with requirements for quality of materials and construction:
      a. Doors: Show vertical-edge, top, and bottom construction; core construction; and hinge and other applied hardware reinforcement. Include separate section showing glazing if applicable.
      b. Frames: Show profile, corner joint, floor and wall anchors, and silencers. Include separate section showing fixed hollow metal panels and glazing if applicable.

E. Other Action Submittals:
   1. Schedule: Provide a schedule of hollow metal work prepared by or under the supervision of supplier, using same reference numbers for details and openings as those on Drawings. Coordinate with door hardware schedule.

F. Oversize Construction Certification: For assemblies required to be fire rated and exceeding limitations of labeled assemblies.

G. Product Test Reports: Based on evaluation of comprehensive tests performed by a qualified testing agency, for each type of hollow metal door and frame assembly.

H. Shop drawings shall indicate all hardware mounting heights, reinforcement, opening sizes, etc..

1.05 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Source Limitations: Obtain hollow metal work from single source from single manufacturer.

B. Fire-Rated Door Assemblies: Assemblies complying with NFPA 80 that are listed and labeled by a qualified testing agency, for fire-protection ratings indicated, based on testing at according to NFPA 252.

1.06 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Deliver hollow metal work palletized, wrapped, or crated to provide protection during transit and Project-site storage. Do not use nonvented plastic.
   1. Provide additional protection to prevent damage to finish of factory-finished units.

B. Deliver welded frames with two removable spreader bars across bottom of frames, tack welded to jambs and mullions.

C. Store hollow metal work under cover at Project site. Place in stacks of five units maximum in a vertical position with heads up, spaced by blocking, on minimum 4-inch high wood blocking. Do not store in a manner that traps excess humidity.
   1. Provide minimum 1/4-inch space between each stacked door to permit air circulation.

1.07 PROJECT CONDITIONS

A. Field Measurements: Verify actual dimensions of openings by field measurements before fabrication.

1.08 COORDINATION

A. Coordinate installation of anchorages for hollow metal frames. Furnish setting drawings, templates, and directions for installing anchorages, including sleeves, concrete inserts, anchor bolts, and items with integral anchors. Deliver such items to Project site in time for installation.

B. Coordination
   1. The Contractor shall provide door and frame manufacturer with an approved hardware schedule, templates and hand for all doors. Contractor shall advise door and frame manufacturer of any changes after information has been forwarded.
   2. Contractor will be completely responsible for coordination of information between hardware, door and frame manufacturers. Any materials not properly coordinated shall be replaced by the Contractor at his own expense.

ROCIP Project: Withhold insurance cost. Please refer to sections 00425 & 00810 for information.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.01 MANUFACTURERS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
   1. Ceco Door Products; an Assa Abloy Group company.
   2. Firedoor Corporation.
   3. Karpen Steel Custom Doors & Frames.
   4. Mesker Door Inc.
   5. Windsor Republic Doors.

2.02 MATERIALS

A. Cold-Rolled Steel Sheet: ASTM A 1008/A 1008M, Commercial Steel (CS), Type B; suitable for exposed applications.

B. Hot-Rolled Steel Sheet: ASTM A 1011/A 1011M, Commercial Steel (CS), Type B; free of scale, pitting, or surface defects; pickled and oiled.

C. Metallic-Coated Steel Sheet: ASTM A 653/A 653M, Commercial Steel (CS), Type B; with minimum A40 (ZF120), G60 (Z180) or A60 (ZF180) metallic coating.

D. Frame Anchors: ASTM A 591/A 591M, Commercial Steel (CS), 40Z (12G) coating designation; mill phosphatized.
   1. For anchors built into exterior walls, steel sheet complying with ASTM A 1008/A 1008M or ASTM A 1011/A 1011M, hot-dip galvanized according to ASTM A 153/A 153M, Class B.

E. Inserts, Bolts, and Fasteners: Hot-dip galvanized according to ASTM A 153/A 153M.

F. Powder-Actuated Fasteners in Concrete: Fastener system of type suitable for application indicated, fabricated from corrosion-resistant materials, with clips or other accessory devices for attaching hollow metal frames of type indicated.

G. Grout: ASTM C 476, except with a maximum slump of 4 inches, as measured according to ASTM C 143/C 143M.

H. Glazing: Comply with requirements in Division 08 Section "Glazing."

2.03 STANDARD HOLLOW METAL DOORS

A. General: Provide doors of design indicated, not less than thickness indicated; fabricated with smooth surfaces, without visible joints or seams on exposed faces unless otherwise indicated. Comply with ANSI/SDI A250.8.
   1. Design: Flush panel.
   2. Core Construction: Manufacturer's standard polyurethane core.
      1) Fire Door Core: As required to provide fire-protection and temperature-rise ratings indicated.
   3. Vertical Edges for Single-Acting Doors: Square edge.
   4. Top and Bottom Edges: Closed with flush or inverted 0.042-inch thick, end closures or channels of same material as face sheets.
   5. Tolerances: Comply with SDI 117, "Manufacturing Tolerances for Standard Steel Doors and Frames."

B. Exterior Doors: Face sheets fabricated from metallic-coated steel sheet. Provide doors complying with requirements indicated below by referencing ANSI/SDI A250.8 for level and model and ANSI/SDI A250.4 for physical performance level:
   1. Level 2 and Physical Performance Level B Heavy Duty Model 2 (Seamless).

C. Interior Doors: Face sheets fabricated from cold-rolled steel sheet unless metallic-coated sheet is indicated. Provide doors complying with requirements indicated below by referencing ANSI/SDI A250.8 for level and model and ANSI/SDI A250.4 for physical performance level:
   1. Level 2 and Physical Performance Level B Heavy Duty, Model 2 (Seamless).

D. Hardware Reinforcement: Fabricate according to ANSI/SDI A250.6 with reinforcing plates from same material as door face sheets.

E. Fabricate concealed stiffeners and hardware reinforcement from either cold- or hot-rolled steel sheet.

F. Lite Door: 16 Gauge, 1-3/4" x 5" tubular top and side stiles and 10" bottom rail with mitered, face-welded corners. Doors shall be mortised, reinforced, drilled and tapped to receive mortise hardware. Door shall be similar to Amweld 300 series, Ceco "Imperial", or an approved equal. Provide insulated metal panel or 1/4" tempered glass as shown on drawings.

G. Provide Louver and fire rating as required.

2.04 STANDARD HOLLOW METAL FRAMES

A. General: Comply with ANSI/SDI A250.8 and with details indicated for type and profile.

B. Exterior Frames: Fabricated from 16 gauge quality metallic-coated steel sheet.
   1. Fabricate frames with mitered corners.
   2. Fabricate frames as full profile welded.
   3. Frames for Level 1 Steel Doors: 0.042-inch thick steel sheet.
   4. Frames for Level 2 Steel Doors: 0.053-inch thick steel sheet.

5. Frames for Level 3 Steel Doors: 0.053-inch thick steel sheet.
6. Frames for Level 4 Steel Doors: 0.067-inch thick steel sheet.

C. Interior Frames: Fabricated from 16 gauge cold-rolled steel sheet.
1. Fabricate frames with mitered corners.
2. Fabricate frames as full profile welded.
3. Frames for Level 2 Steel Doors: 0.053-inch thick steel sheet.
4. Frames for Wood Doors: 0.053-inch thick steel sheet.
5. Frames for Borrowed Lights: 0.053-inch thick steel sheet.

D. Hardware Reinforcement: Fabricate according to ANSI/SDI A250.6 with reinforcement plates from same material as frames..

E. Provide UL rating as required.

2.05 FRAME ANCHORS

A. Jamb Anchors:
1. Masonry Type: Adjustable strap-and-stirrup or T-shaped anchors to suit frame size, not less than 0.042 inch thick, with corrugated or perforated straps not less than 2 inches wide by 10 inches long; or wire anchors not less than 0.177 inch thick.
2. Stud-Wall Type: Designed to engage stud, welded to back of frames; not less than 0.042 inch thick.

B. Floor Anchors: Formed from same material as frames, not less than 0.042 inch thick, and as follows:
1. Monolithic Concrete Slabs: Clip-type anchors, with two holes to receive fasteners.

C. Provide UL anchors as required.

2.06 STOPS AND MOLDINGS

A. Moldings for Glazed Lites in Doors: Minimum 0.032 inch thick, fabricated from same material as door face sheet in which they are installed.

B. Fixed Frame Moldings: Formed integral with hollow metal frames, a minimum of 5/8 inch high unless otherwise indicated.

C. Loose Stops for Glazed Lites in Frames: Minimum 0.032 inch thick, fabricated from same material as frames in which they are installed.

D. Terminated Stops: Where indicated on interior door frames, terminate stops 6 inches above finish floor with a 90-degree angle cut, and close open end of stop with steel sheet closure. Cover opening in extension of frame with welded-steel filler plate, with welds ground smooth and flush with frame.

1. Provide terminated stops where indicated.

2.07 LOUVERS

A. Provide louvers for interior doors, where indicated, that comply with SDI 111C, with blades or baffles formed of 0.020-inch thick, cold-rolled steel sheet set into 0.032-inch thick steel frame.
   1. Sightproof Louver: Stationary louvers constructed with inverted V-shaped or Y-shaped blades.

2.08 ACCESSORIES

A. Mullions and Transom Bars: Join to adjacent members by welding or rigid mechanical anchors.

B. Ceiling Struts: Minimum 1/4-inch-thick by 1-inch wide steel.

C. Grout Guards: Formed from same material as frames, not less than 0.016 inch thick.

2.09 FABRICATION

A. Fabricate hollow metal work to be rigid and free of defects, warp, or buckle. Accurately form metal to required sizes and profiles, with minimum radius for thickness of metal. Where practical, fit and assemble units in manufacturer's plant. To ensure proper assembly at Project site, clearly identify work that cannot be permanently factory assembled before shipment.

B. Tolerances: Fabricate hollow metal work to tolerances indicated in SDI 117 and ANSI/NAAMM-HMMA 861.

C. Hollow Metal Doors:
   1. Exterior Doors: Provide weep-hole openings in bottom of exterior doors to permit moisture to escape. Seal joints in top edges of doors against water penetration.
   2. Glazed Lites: Factory cut openings in doors.
   3. Astragals: Provide overlapping astragal on one leaf of pairs of doors where required by NFPA 80 for fire-performance rating or where indicated. Extend minimum 3/4 inch beyond edge of door on which astragal is mounted.

D. Hollow Metal Frames: Where frames are fabricated in sections due to shipping or handling limitations, provide alignment plates or angles at each joint, fabricated of same thickness metal as frames.
   1. Welded Frames: Weld flush face joints continuously; grind, fill, dress, and make smooth, flush, and invisible. No putty or filler permitted at joints.
   2. Provide countersunk, flat- or oval-head exposed screws and bolts for exposed fasteners unless otherwise indicated.

3. Grout Guards: Weld guards to frame at back of hardware mortises in frames to be grouted.
4. Floor Anchors: Weld anchors to bottom of jambs and mullions with at least four spot welds per anchor.
5. Jamb Anchors: Provide minimum of six wall anchors and two adjustable base anchors, manufacturers' standard design. Provide all anchors as required.
6. Door Silencers: Except on weather-stripped doors, drill stops to receive door silencers as follows. Keep holes clear during construction.
   a. Single-Door Frames: Drill stop in strike jamb to receive three door silencers.
   b. Double-Door Frames: Drill stop in head jamb to receive two door silencers.

E. Fabricate concealed stiffeners, edge channels, and hardware reinforcement from either cold- or hot-rolled steel sheet.

F. Hardware Preparation: Factory prepare hollow metal work to receive templated mortised hardware; include cutouts, reinforcement, mortising, drilling, and tapping according to the Door Hardware Schedule and templates furnished as specified in Division 08 Section "Hardware."
   1. Locate hardware as indicated, or if not indicated, according to ANSI/SDI A250.8.
   2. Reinforce doors and frames to receive nontemplated, mortised and surface-mounted door hardware.
   3. Comply with applicable requirements in ANSI/SDI A250.6 and ANSI/DHI A115 Series specifications for preparation of hollow metal work for hardware.
   4. Coordinate locations of conduit and wiring boxes for electrical connections with Division 26 Sections.

G. Stops and Moldings: Provide stops and moldings around glazed lites where indicated. Form corners of stops and moldings with butted or mitered hairline joints.
   1. Single Glazed Lites: Provide fixed stops and moldings welded on secure side of hollow metal work.
   2. Multiple Glazed Lites: Provide fixed and removable stops and moldings so that each glazed lite is capable of being removed independently.
   3. Provide fixed frame moldings on outside of exterior and on secure side of interior doors and frames.
   4. Provide loose stops and moldings on inside of hollow metal work.
   5. Coordinate rabbet width between fixed and removable stops with type of glazing and type of installation indicated.

2.10 STEEL FINISHES

A. Prime Finish: Apply manufacturer's standard primer immediately after cleaning and pre-treating.
   1. Shop Primer: Manufacturer's standard, fast-curing, lead- and chromate-free primer complying with ANSI/SDI A250.10 acceptance criteria; recommended by

primer manufacturer for substrate; compatible with substrate and field-applied coatings despite prolonged exposure.

B. Galvanized Finish: Hot-Dipped galvanized at exterior doors and frames.

2.11 COLOR AND GLOSS

A. As selected and approved by Architect from manufacturer's full range.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.01 EXAMINATION

A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.

B. Examine roughing-in for embedded and built-in anchors to verify actual locations before frame installation.

C. For the record, prepare written report, endorsed by Installer, listing conditions detrimental to performance of the Work.

D. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.02 PREPARATION

A. Remove welded-in shipping spreaders installed at factory. Restore exposed finish by grinding, filling, and dressing, as required to make repaired area smooth, flush, and invisible on exposed faces.

B. Prior to installation, adjust and securely brace welded hollow metal frames for squareness, alignment, twist, and plumbness to the following tolerances:
   1. Squareness: Plus or minus 1/16 inch, measured at door rabbet on a line 90 degrees from jamb perpendicular to frame head.
   2. Alignment: Plus or minus 1/16 inch, measured at jambs on a horizontal line parallel to plane of wall.
   3. Twist: Plus or minus 1/16 inch, measured at opposite face corners of jambs on parallel lines, and perpendicular to plane of wall.
   4. Plumbness: Plus or minus 1/16 inch, measured at jambs on a perpendicular line from head to floor.

C. Drill and tap doors and frames to receive nontemplated, mortised, and surface-mounted door hardware.

3.03 INSTALLATION

A. General: Install hollow metal work plumb, rigid, properly aligned, and securely fastened in place; comply with Drawings and manufacturer's written instructions.

B. Hollow Metal Frames: Install hollow metal frames of size and profile indicated. Comply with ANSI/SDI A250.11.

1. Set frames accurately in position, plumbed, aligned, and braced securely until permanent anchors are set. After wall construction is complete, remove temporary braces, leaving surfaces smooth and undamaged.
    1) At fire-protection-rated openings, install frames according to NFPA 80.
    b. Where frames are fabricated in sections because of shipping or handling limitations, field splice at approved locations by welding face joint continuously; grind, fill, dress, and make splice smooth, flush, and invisible on exposed faces.
    c. Install frames with removable glazing stops located on secure side of opening.
    d. Install door silencers in frames before grouting.
    e. Remove temporary braces necessary for installation only after frames have been properly set and secured.
    f. Check plumbness, squareness, and twist of frames as walls are constructed. Shim as necessary to comply with installation tolerances.
    g. Field apply bituminous coating to backs of frames that are filled with grout containing antifreeze agents.
2. Floor Anchors: Provide floor anchors for each jamb and mullion that extends to floor, and secure with post installed expansion anchors.
    1) Floor anchors may be set with powder-actuated fasteners instead of post installed expansion anchors if so indicated and approved on Shop Drawings.
3. Masonry Walls and Exterior Walls: Coordinate installation of frames to allow for solidly filling space between frames and masonry with grout.
4. Ceiling Struts: Extend struts vertically from top of frame at each jamb to overhead structural supports or substrates above frame unless frame is anchored to masonry or to other structural support at each jamb. Bend top of struts to provide flush contact for securing to supporting construction. Provide adjustable wedged or bolted anchorage to frame jamb members.
5. Installation Tolerances: Adjust hollow metal door frames for squareness, alignment, twist, and plumb to the following tolerances:
    1) Squareness: Plus or minus 1/16 inch, measured at door rabbet on a line 90 degrees from jamb perpendicular to frame head.
    b. Alignment: Plus or minus 1/16 inch, measured at jambs on a horizontal line parallel to plane of wall.
    c. Twist: Plus or minus 1/16 inch, measured at opposite face corners of jambs on parallel lines, and perpendicular to plane of wall.
    d. Plumbness: Plus or minus 1/16 inch, measured at jambs at floor.

C. Hollow Metal Doors: Fit hollow metal doors accurately in frames, within clearances specified below. Shim as necessary.
   1. Non-Fire-Rated Standard Steel Doors:
      1) Jambs and Head: 1/8 inch plus or minus 1/16 inch.
      b. Between Edges of Pairs of Doors: 1/8 inch plus or minus 1/16 inch.
      c. Between Bottom of Door and Top of Threshold: Maximum 3/8 inch.
      d. Between Bottom of Door and Top of Finish Floor (No Threshold): Maximum 3/4 inch.
   2. Fire-Rated Doors: Install doors with clearances according to NFPA 80.
   3. Smoke-Control Doors: Install doors according to NFPA 105.

D. Glazing: Comply with installation requirements in Division 08 Section "Glazing" and with hollow metal manufacturer's written instructions.
   1. Secure stops with countersunk flat- or oval-head machine screws spaced uniformly not more than 9 inches o.c. and not more than 2 inches o.c. from each corner.

3.04 ADJUSTING AND CLEANING

A. Final Adjustments: Check and readjust operating hardware items immediately before final inspection. Leave work in complete and proper operating condition. Remove and replace defective work, including hollow metal work that is warped, bowed, or otherwise unacceptable.

B. Remove grout and other bonding material from hollow metal work immediately after installation.

C. Prime-Coat Touchup: Immediately after erection, sand smooth rusted or damaged areas of prime coat and apply touchup of compatible air-drying, rust-inhibitive primer.

D. Metallic-Coated Surfaces: Clean abraded areas and repair with galvanizing repair paint according to manufacturer's written instructions.

END OF SECTION 08 11 13

ROCIP Project: Withhold insurance cost. Please refer to sections 00425 & 00810 for information.

SECTION 08 14 16 - FLUSH WOOD DOORS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.01 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.02 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:
   1. Wood doors as indicated on the drawings and as herein specified.

B. Related Sections:
   1. Division 01 Section "Sustainable Construction Requirements"
   2. Division 06 Section "Interior Architectural Woodwork"
   3. Division 06 Section "Wood Framing."
   4. Division 08 Section "Glazing."
   5. Division 08 Section "Hollow Metal Doors and Frames."
   6. Division 08 Section "Hardware."
   7. Division 09 Section "Painting."

1.03 SUBMITTALS

A. Comply with pertinent provisions of Division 01 Section “Submittal Procedures”, unless otherwise indicated.

B. Product Data: For each type of door indicated. Include details of core and edge construction, louvers, and trim for openings. Include factory-finishing specifications.

C. Shop Drawings: Indicate location, size, and hand of each door; elevation of each kind of door; construction details not covered in Product Data; location and extent of hardware blocking; and other pertinent data.
   1. Indicate dimensions and locations of mortises and holes for hardware.
   2. Indicate dimensions and locations of cutouts.
   3. Indicate requirements for veneer matching.
   4. Indicate doors to be factory finished and finish requirements.
   5. Indicate fire-protection ratings for fire-rated doors.

D. Samples for Verification:
   1. Louver blade and frame sections, 6 inches long, for each material and finish specified.
   2. Frames for light openings, 6 inches long, for each material, type, and finish required.

E. Submit 2 samples 12" x 12" in size of door corner typical of veneer and reinforcement construction.

F. LEED Submittals:
   1. Product Data for Credit MR 7: Product data and chain-of-custody certificates for products containing certified wood.
      a. Include statement indicating cost for each certified wood product.
   2. Product Data for Credit IEQ 4.4: Product data for products containing composite wood or agrifiber products or wood glues indicating that they do not contain urea-formaldehyde resin.

G. Warranty: Sample of special warranty.

1.04 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Manufacturer Qualifications: A qualified manufacturer that is certified for chain of custody by an FSC-accredited certification body, with a minimum of 5 years experience in building and installing custom wood doors.

B. Source Limitations: Obtain flush wood doors from single manufacturer.

C. Fire-Rated Wood Doors: Doors complying with NFPA 80 that are listed and labeled by a qualified testing agency, for fire-protection ratings indicated, based on NFPA 252.

D. Standards: The “Quality Standards” of the Architectural Woodwork Institute shall apply by reference are hereby made a part of this specification.

E. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

1.05 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Comply with requirements of referenced standard and manufacturer's written instructions.

B. Deliver doors to building after wet trades have been completed and building is within normal occupancy humidity conditions.

C. Doors shall be delivered in manufacturer's name and identifying symbol on covering.

D. Package doors individually in plastic bags or cardboard cartons.

E. Doors shall be stored flat with protective coverings provided to protect surfaces.

F. Mark each door on top and bottom rail with opening number used on Shop Drawings.

G. Doors shall not be dragged over one another.

ROCIP Project: Withhold insurance cost. Please refer to sections 00425 & 00810 for information.

1.06 PROJECT CONDITIONS

A. Environmental Limitations: Do not deliver or install doors until spaces are enclosed and weather tight, wet work in spaces is complete and dry, and HVAC system is operating and maintaining ambient temperature and humidity conditions at occupancy levels during the remainder of the construction period.

B. Environmental Limitations: Do not deliver or install doors until spaces are enclosed and weather tight, wet work in spaces is complete and dry, and HVAC system is operating and maintaining temperature between 60 and 90 deg F (16 and 32 deg C) and relative humidity between 25 and 55 percent during the remainder of the construction period.

C. Coordination:
   1. The Contractor shall provide door manufacturer with approved hardware schedules, templates and hand for all doors. Contractor shall advise door manufacturer of any changes after information has been forwarded. Contractor will be completely responsible for coordination between hardware, door and frame manufacturers. Any materials not properly coordinated shall be replaced by the Contractor at his own expense.
   2. Door manufacturer shall be responsible for properly coordinating information received by him so that doors are properly finished, machined and ready to hang.

1.07 WARRANTY

A. Special Warranty: Submit written agreement on manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair or replace doors that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
   1. Failures include, but are not limited to, the following:
      a. Warping (bow, cup, or twist) more than 1/4 inch in a 42-by-84-inch section.
      b. Telegraphing of core construction in face veneers exceeding 0.01 inch in a 3-inch span.
   2. Warranty shall also include reinstallation and refinishing that may be required due to repair or replacement of defective doors.
   3. Warranty Period for Solid-Core Interior Doors: Life of installation.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.01 MANUFACTURERS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
   1. Algoma Hardwoods, Inc.
   2. Haley Brothers, Inc.
   3. Marshfield Door Systems, Inc.
   4. Lambton Doors

2.02 DOOR CONSTRUCTION, GENERAL

A. Low-Emitting Materials: Provide doors made with adhesives and composite wood products that do not contain urea formaldehyde.

B. Provide Solid Wood Block Core, 1-3/4" thick solid core wood doors with hardwood edges conforming to AWI Section 1300-G-3 for Type SLC-5 standards, bonded with exterior water-resistant, Type II resin glue.

C. Particleboard-Core Doors: Not Allowed.

D. Structural-Composite-Lumber-Core Doors:
   1. Structural Composite Lumber: WDMA I.S.10.
      a. Screw Withdrawal, Face: 700 lbf .

E. Fire-Protection-Rated Doors: Provide core specified or mineral core as needed to provide fire-protection rating indicated.
   1. Edge Construction: Provide edge construction with intumescent seals concealed by outer stile. Comply with specified requirements for exposed edges.

2.03 SOLID CORE WOOD DOORS:

1. Provide Solid Wood Block Core, 1-3/4" thick solid core wood doors with hardwood edges conforming to AWI Section 1300-G-3 for Type SLC-5 standards, bonded with exterior water-resistant, Type II resin glue, manufactured by one of the following:
   a. Weyerhaeuser
   b. Graham
   c. Haley
   d. Curtis Corporation
   e. Algoma
   f. Eggers Hardwood Products Corporation
2. Fiberboard used as door cores shall meet the requirements of ANSI A208.1-1993 for particleboard, including the requirement to meet a threshold of less than 0.30 ppm of formaldehyde using test method ASTM 1333.
3. Finishes:
   a. Prime doors with stain as selected by Architect and first coat of finish as specified in Section 099100 of these specifications.
4. Where louvers are indicated, provide door manufacturer's standard flush metal louvers.
5. View Lite: Where indicated provide manufacturer’s standard flush frame. Glazing as indicated on the drawings.
6. lumber.

2.04 LOUVERS AND LIGHT FRAMES

A. Metal Louvers:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following;
   a. Air Louvers Inc.
   b. Anemostat; a Mestek company.
   c. Hiawatha Incorporated.
   d. L & L Louvers, Inc.
   e. Louvers & Dampers, Inc.; a Mestek company.
   f. McGill Architectural Products.
2. Blade Type: Vision-proof, inverted V.
3. Metal and Finish: Hot-dip galvanized steel, 0.040 inch thick, factory primed for paint finish as indicated on drawings.

2.05 FABRICATION

A. Factory fit doors to suit frame-opening sizes indicated. Comply with clearance requirements of referenced quality standard for fitting unless otherwise indicated.
   1. Comply with requirements in NFPA 80 for fire-rated doors.

B. Factory machine doors for hardware that is not surface applied. Locate hardware to comply with DHI-WDHS-3. Comply with final hardware schedules, door frame Shop Drawings, DHI A115-W series standards, and hardware templates.
   1. Coordinate with hardware mortises in metal frames to verify dimensions and alignment before factory machining.
   2. Metal Astragals: Factory machine astragals and formed-steel edges for hardware for pairs of fire-rated doors.

C. Openings: Cut and trim openings through doors in factory.
   1. Light Openings: Trim openings with moldings of material and profile indicated.
   2. Glazing: Factory install glazing in doors indicated to be factory finished. Comply with applicable requirements in Division 08 Section "Glazing."
   3. Louvers: Factory install louvers in prepared openings.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.01 EXAMINATION

A. Examine doors and installed door frames before hanging doors.
   1. Verify that frames comply with indicated requirements for type, size, location, and swing characteristics and have been installed with level heads and plumb jambs.
   2. Reject doors with defects.

B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.02 INSTALLATION

A. Hardware: For installation, see Division 08 Section "Door Hardware."

B. Installation Instructions: Install doors to comply with manufacturer's written instructions and the referenced quality standard, and as indicated.
   1. Install fire-rated doors in corresponding fire-rated frames according to NFPA 80.

C. Job-Fitted Doors: Align and fit doors in frames with uniform clearances and bevels as indicated below; do not trim stiles and rails in excess of limits set by manufacturer or permitted for fire-rated doors. Machine doors for hardware. Seal edges of doors, edges of cutouts, and mortises after fitting and machining.
   1. Clearances: Provide 1/8 inch at heads, jambs, and between pairs of doors. Provide 1/8 inch from bottom of door to top of decorative floor finish or covering unless otherwise indicated. Where threshold is shown or scheduled, provide 1/4 inch from bottom of door to top of threshold unless otherwise indicated.
      a. Comply with NFPA 80 for fire-rated doors.
   2. Bevel non-fire-rated doors 1/8 inch in 2 inches at lock and hinge edges.
   3. Bevel fire-rated doors 1/8 inch in 2 inches at lock edge; trim stiles and rails only to extent permitted by labeling agency.

3.03 ADJUSTING

A. Operation: Rehang or replace doors that do not swing or operate freely.

B. Finished Doors: Replace doors that are damaged or that do not comply with requirements. Doors may be repaired or refinished if work complies with requirements and shows no evidence of repair or refinishing.

END OF SECTION 08 14 16

ROCIP Project: Withhold insurance cost. Please refer to sections 00425 & 00810 for information.

SECTION 08 31 13 - ACCESS DOORS AND FRAMES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.01 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.02 SUMMARY

A. This Section includes the following:
   1. Floor access doors and frames.

B. Related Sections include the following:
   1. Division 03 Section "Cast-in-Place Concrete".
   2. Division 04 Section "Concrete Unit Masonry".
   3. Division 08 Section "Hardware".
   4. Division 09 Section "Acoustical Tile Ceilings".
   5. Division 22 Section "Facility Storm Drainage Piping".
   6. Division 23 Section "Air Duct Accessories".

1.03 SUBMITTALS

A. Comply with pertinent provisions of Division 01 Section “Submittal Procedures, unless otherwise indicated.”

B. Product Data: For each type of access door and frame indicated. Include construction details, materials, individual components and profiles, and finishes.

C. Shop Drawings: Show fabrication and installation details of access doors and frames for each type of substrate. Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.

D. Samples: For each door face material, at least 3 by 5 inches in size, in specified finish.

E. Access Door and Frame Schedule: Provide complete access door and frame schedule, including types, locations, sizes, latching or locking provisions, and other data pertinent to installation.

1.04 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Source Limitations: Obtain each type of access door(s) and frame(s) through one source from a single manufacturer.

B. Size Variations: Obtain Architect's acceptance of manufacturer's standard-size units, which may vary slightly from sizes indicated.

1.05 COORDINATION

A. Verification: Determine specific locations and sizes for access doors needed to gain access to concealed plumbing, mechanical, or other concealed work, and indicate in the schedule specified in "Submittals" Article.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.01 FLOOR ACCESS DOORS AND FRAMES

A. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

B. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
   1. Acudor Products, Inc. FT -8040 (aluminum only).

C. Floor Doors, General: Equip each door with adjustable counterbalancing springs, heavy-duty hold-open arm that automatically locks door open at 90 degrees, release handle with red vinyl grip that allows for one-handed closure, and recessed lift handle.

D. Aluminum Floor Door: Single-leaf opening. Extruded-aluminum angle frame with 1/4-inch- thick, aluminum tread plate door; nonwatertight; loading capacity to support 150-lbf/sq. ft. pedestrian live load.

E. Hardware: Provide the following:
   1. Hinges: Heavy-duty, stainless-steel butt hinges with stainless-steel pins.
   2. Latch: Stainless-steel slam latch.
   3. Hardware Material: Stainless steel, including latch and lifting mechanism assemblies, hold-open arms, and all brackets, hinges, pins, and fasteners.

2.02 FABRICATION

A. General: Provide access door and frame assemblies manufactured as integral units ready for installation.

B. Metal Surfaces: For metal surfaces exposed to view in the completed Work, provide materials with smooth, flat surfaces without blemishes. Do not use materials with exposed pitting, seam marks, roller marks, rolled trade names, or roughness.

C. Doors and Frames: Grind exposed welds smooth and flush with adjacent surfaces. Furnish attachment devices and fasteners of type required to secure access panels to types of supports indicated.

D. Recessed Access Doors: Form face of panel to provide recess for application of applied finish. Reinforce panel as required to prevent buckling.

E. Latching Mechanisms: Furnish number required to hold doors in flush, smooth plane when closed.
   1. For cylinder lock, furnish two keys per lock and key all locks alike.
   2. For recessed panel doors, provide access sleeves for each locking device. Furnish plastic grommets and install in holes cut through finish.

F. Extruded Aluminum: After fabrication, apply manufacturer's standard protective coating on aluminum that will come in contact with concrete.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.01 INSTALLATION

A. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for installing access doors and frames.

B. Set frames accurately in position and attach securely to supports with plane of face panels aligned with adjacent finish surfaces.

C. Install doors flush with adjacent finish surfaces or recessed to receive finish material.

3.02 ADJUSTING AND CLEANING

A. Adjust doors and hardware after installation for proper operation.

B. Remove and replace doors and frames that are warped, bowed, or otherwise damaged.

END OF SECTION 08 31 13

ROCIP Project: Withhold insurance cost. Please refer to sections 00425 & 00810 for information.

SECTION 08 35 13 – ELECTRIC OPERATED FOLDING DOORS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.01 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

B. Related Sections
   1. Division 04 Section "Concrete Masonry Units".
   2. Division 05 Section "Structural Steel".
   3. Division 08 Section "Glazing".
   4. Division 26 Sections for Electrical Coordination.

1.02 SUMMARY

A. This Section includes Four-Fold metal doors with surface mounted tube frames.

B. Operation of Four-Fold metal doors includes overhead mounted electro-mechanical operators with single motor and gear box.

1.03 SUBMITTALS

A. General: Submit each item in this Article according to the Conditions of the Contract and Division 1 Specification Sections.

B. Product Data for each type of product specified consisting of manufacturer's technical Product Data and installation instructions for each type of door required, including data substantiating that products comply with requirements.

C. Submittal Drawings showing fabrication and installation of Four-Fold metal doors including plans, elevations, sections, details of components, hardware, operating mechanism, and attachments to the other units of Work. Include wiring diagrams for coordination with electrical trade.

1.04 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Doors shall be designed to withstand external or internal horizontal wind loads of 65 pounds minimum per square foot. The maximum allowable deflection shall not exceed 1/120 of the span. Fiber stresses in main members shall be limited to 27,000 pounds per square inch. Steel frames shall be designed in accordance with the AISC "Steel Construction Manual".

1.05 DELIVERY, STORAGE AND HANDLING

A. Store delivered materials and equipment in dry locations with adequate ventilation, free from dust and water, and so as to permit access for inspection and handling.

B. Handle materials carefully to prevent damage.

1.06 WARRANTY

A. The door manufacturer shall provide a written standard limited warranty for material and workmanship.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.01 MANUFACTURERS

A. Manufacturers: Four-Fold industrial metal doors manufactured by Door Engineering and Manufacturing, 400 Cherry Street, Kasota, MN 56050, (800)-959-1352. Equal products by other manufacturers approved in advance, including FBC approval.

2.02 MATERIALS

A. Steel Tube: ASTM A513 and ASTM A500/A500M

B. Steel Sheets: Steel sheets of commercial quality, complying with ASTM A1011/A1011M hot-rolled steel sheet.

C. Hardware: Manufacturer's standard components.

D. Fasteners: Zinc-coated steel.

2.03 FOUR-FOLD DOORS

A. Basis-of-Design Product: The drawings and specifications are based on the FF300 Series, Glazed, Four-Fold Doors as manufactured by Door Engineering and Manufacturing, LLC; Kasota, MN.

B. Construction: Door framing shall be 11-gauge structural steel tube with 14-gauge gavlannealed sheet steel on the exterior and interior faces. Sheeting shall be formed on the vertical edges with no visible welds on the interior or exterior panel faces. All frames and framing members shall be true to dimension and square in all directions, and no door shall be bowed, warped, or out of line, in the vertical or horizontal plane of the door opening by more than 1/8 inch in 20 feet. Exposed welds and

welds which interfere with the installation of various parts shall be ground smooth and flush.

C. Surface Mounted Tube Frame: Supply pre-hung tube frame system constructed of TS6x6x0.25, designed to anchor to masonry wall construction or weld to steel structure. All hinges, track supports and operator supports shall be factory attached.

D. Factory finish: All exposed steel shall be finished with manufacturer's standard epoxy primer and polyurethane top coat. Color shall match RAL 3002 Carmine Red.

E. Operating Hardware: Hardware shall include guide tracks and brackets, trolleys, center guides, not less than three pairs of jamb and fold hinges per opening, and all bolts, nuts, fasteners, etc. necessary for complete installation and operation. Jamb hinges shall be dual shear and have two thrust bearings and two needle bearings. Jamb hinges shall be gusseted. Fold hinges shall be dual shear with two thrust bearings. All bearings shall be completely concealed within the hinge barrel and include grease zerks. All hinge pins shall be minimum ¾" diameter hardened steel. All trolleys shall be equipped three (3) 2" diameter cam followers. Track shall be constructed from structural angle L3x3x0.5.

F. Weatherstripping: Material shall be adjustable and readily replaceable and provide a substantially weather-tight installation. Weatherstripping at center shall be 1/16" cloth inserted neoprene and include no exposed fasteners on the exterior face of the panel. Weatherstripping at sill shall include two 1/16" cloth inserted neoprene sweeps with an aluminum retainer. The retainer shall be attached to the door with adhesive.

G. Perimeter Weatherstripping: Provide jamb and head weatherstipping of 1/16" cloth-inserted neoprene bulb (or closed cell neoprene).

H. Vision Panels: Provide 1" insulated vision panels of the size, shape and location as noted on the drawings.

2.04 OPERATOR

A. Each Four-Fold door shall be operated by an overhead mounted electro-mechanical drive unit designed for high cycle operation. Operator consists of an electric motor, gear reducer, and rotating drive arm. The door shall be operated with connecting rods attached to the rotating drive arm on the operator and to control arms attached to the jamb door section and to the door lintel. The connecting rods shall be positive drive, keeping the door under firm control at all times. The connecting rods shall be fitted with spherical bearings and control arms shall be equipped with oil impregnated bronze bearings on polished shafts.

B. Operator shall be instantly reversible, open and close rapidly and start and stop gradually. Operator shall be adjustable to allow door to fully clear the opening.

Operator shall automatically lock the door in the closed position. Operator shall be equipped with disengaging mechanism to convert to free wheeling mode for manual operation.

C. Operator shall include a formed hood enclosing the motor, gearboxes and limit switches.

D. Electric motor shall be of sufficient size to operate doors under normal operating conditions at no more than 75 percent of rated capacity. The motor shall be wound for three phase 208 VAC, 60 Hertz operation.

E. Electric Controls: Controls shall be furnished by the door manufacturer and shall be complete for each door, and built in accordance with the latest NEMA standards. Incoming electrical shall be: 208 VAC 3-phase.
   1. Controls shall include a programmable logic controller with digital message display. Controller shall include programmable close timers and programmable inputs/outputs
   2. Motor starters shall be magnetic reversing, factory wired with overload and under voltage protection, and equipped with mechanical interlocks. All control components shall be enclosed in one enclosure with a wiring diagram placed on the inside of the cover.
   3. Enclosures shall be NEMA 4 with disconnect switch.
   4. Pushbuttons (interior) for each door shall have one momentary pressure three-button push-button station marked “OPEN”, “CLOSE” and “STOP”. Push button enclosure shall be NEMA 4.
   5. Limit switches shall be provided to stop the travel of the door in its fully open or fully closed position. Provide cremone bolt limit switch to be used for HVAC or exhaust removal system.
   6. Safety edges: Provide electric safety edges on leading edge of all doors to reverse door upon contact with obstruction. Provide hard-wired safety edges.
   7. Photo eyes: For each door, provide (1) pair of exterior, jamb mounted, thru-beam type photo eyes, NEMA 4 rated.
   8. Presence Sensor: For each door, provide (1) interior, overhead mounted, presence sensor equal to BEA IS40P.
   9. Radio controls: Provide one (1) radio receiver and (1) single button remote per door. Receiver and remotes equal to Liftmaster 860 LM and Liftmaster 811 LM, respectively. Mount receiver to exterior soffit above door as shown on drawings.
   10. Wiring: Door manufacturer shall supply controls and components only. Electrical contractor shall install controls and furnish and install conduits and wiring for jobsite power and control wiring.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.01 INSTALLATION

A. Install Four-Fold metal doors in strict accordance with the approved drawings by qualified door erection crews. All door openings shall be completely prepared by the general contractor prior to the installation of the doors. Permanent or temporary electric wiring shall be brought to the door opening before installation is started and shall be completed so as not to delay the inspection test.

B. Doors shall be set plumb, level, and square, and with all parts properly fastened and mounted. All moving parts shall be tested and adjusted and left in good operating condition.

3.02 ADJUSTING AND CLEANING

A. Inspection of the doors and a complete operating test will be made by the installer in the presence of the general contractor or architect as soon as the erection is complete. Any defects noted shall be corrected. After door approval in the above test, the general contractor must assume the responsibility for any damage or rough handling of the doors during construction until the building is turned over to the owner and final inspection is made.

B. Clean surfaces and repaint abraded or damaged finished surfaces to match factory-applied finish.

END OF SECTION 08 35 13

ROCIP Project: Withhold insurance cost. Please refer to sections 00425 & 00810 for information.

SECTION 08 36 13 – UPWARD-ACTING SECTIONAL DOORS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.01 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.02 SUMMARY

A. Section includes manually and electrically operated sectional doors.

B. Related Sections:
   1. Division 26 Sections for electrical service and connections for powered operators and accessories.

1.03 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. General Performance: Sectional doors shall meet performance requirements specified without failure due to defective manufacture, fabrication, installation, or other defects in construction and without requiring temporary installation of reinforcing components.

B. Delegated Design: Design sectional doors, including comprehensive engineering analysis by a qualified professional engineer, using performance requirements and design criteria indicated.

C. Structural Performance: Exterior sectional doors shall withstand the effects of gravity loads, and the following loads and stresses within limits and under conditions indicated.
   1. Wind Loads: As indicated on Drawings.
      a. Basic Wind Speed: 100 mph.
      b. ANSI/DASMA 102 standards as required by code.
   2. Deflection Limits: Design sectional doors to withstand design wind loads without evidencing permanent deformation or disengagement of door components. Deflection of door in horizontal position (open) shall not exceed 1/120 of the door width.

D. Air Infiltration: Maximum rate not more than indicated when tested according to ASTM E 283.

E. Operation Cycles: Provide sectional door components and operators capable of operating for not less than number of cycles indicated for each door. One operation cycle is complete when a door is opened from the closed position to the fully open position and returned to the closed position.

1.04 SUBMITTALS

A. Comply with pertinent provisions of Division 01 Section “Submittal Procedures, unless otherwise indicated.”

B. Product Data: For each type and size of sectional door and accessory. Include the following:
   1. Construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components, profile door sections, and finishes.
   2. Rated capacities, operating characteristics, electrical characteristics, and furnished accessories.

C. Shop Drawings: For each installation and for special components not dimensioned or detailed in manufacturer's product data. Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.
   1. Detail equipment assemblies and indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.
   2. Wiring Diagrams: For power, signal, and control wiring.

D. Qualification Data: For qualified Installer.

E. Maintenance Data: For sectional doors to include in maintenance manuals.

1.05 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Installer Qualifications: Manufacturer's authorized representative who is trained and approved for both installation and maintenance of units required for this Project.

B. Source Limitations: Obtain sectional doors from single source from single manufacturer.

C. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

D. Standard for Sectional Doors: Fabricate sectional doors to comply with DASMA 102 unless otherwise indicated.

1.06 WARRANTY

A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of sectional doors that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
   1. Failures include, but are not limited to, the following:

a. Structural failures including, but not limited to, excessive deflection.
b. Faulty operation of hardware.
c. Deterioration of metals, metal finishes, and other materials beyond normal weathering and use; rust through.
d. Delamination of exterior or interior facing materials.

2. Warranty Period: Five years from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.01 ACCEPTABLE MANUFACTURER

A. Overhead Door Corporation; Dallas, Texas, 800-887-3667.

B. Substitution requests shall be submitted in accordance with Division 01 Section "Substitution Procedures".

2.01 ALUMINUM SECTIONAL DOORS

A. Basis of Design: 521 Series Aluminum Doors by Overhead Door Corporation.

B. Sectional Door Assembly: Stile and rail assembly secured with 1/4" diameter through rods. Units shall have the following characteristics:
1. Panel Thickness: 1-3/4".
2. Aluminum Panels: 0.050" thick, alloy 6063-T6. Fabricate of aluminum sheet, complying with ASTM B 209 (ASTM B 209M), alloy and temper standard with manufacturer for type of use and finish indicated, set in continuous vinyl channel retained with rigid, snap-in, extruded-vinyl moldings or with rubber or neoprene glazing gasket with aluminum stop.
3. Counterbalance Mechanism:
   a. Torsion Spring: Counterbalance mechanism consisting of adjustable-tension torsion springs fabricated from steel-spring wire complying with ASTM A 229/A 229M, mounted on torsion shaft made of steel tube or solid steel. Provide springs designed for number of operation cycles indicated. Rated for 50,000 cycles of use.
   b. Weight Counterbalance: Counterbalance mechanism consisting of filled pipe weights that move vertically in a galvanized-steel weight pipe. Connect pipe weights with cable to weight-cable drums mounted on torsion shaft made of steel tube or solid steel.
   c. Cable Drums and Shaft for Doors: Cast-aluminum or gray-iron casting cable drums mounted on torsion shaft and grooved to receive door-lifting cables as door is raised. Mount counterbalance mechanism with manufacturer's standard ball-bearing brackets at each end of torsion shaft. Provide one additional midpoint bracket for shafts up to 16 feet long and two additional brackets at one-third points to support shafts more than 16 feet long unless closer spacing is recommended by door manufacturer.
   d. Cables: Galvanized-steel lifting cables with cable safety factor of at least 5 to 1.

e. Cable Safety Device: Include a spring-loaded steel or spring-loaded bronze cam mounted to bottom door roller assembly on each side and designed to automatically stop door if either lifting cable breaks.

f. Bracket: Provide anchor support bracket as required to connect stationary end of spring to the wall and to level the shaft and prevent sag.

g. Provide a pusher spring at each horizontal track.

4. Glazed Full-Vision Sections: Manufacturer's standard, tubular, aluminum-framed section fully glazed with 1/4” tinted, tempered glass, equal to Glass Type 4 with Low-E coating, set in vinyl, rubber, or neoprene glazing channel and with removable extruded-vinyl or aluminum stops.

C. Finish and Color:

1. Architect to select color from manufacturer’s standard line.

D. Hardware:

1. General: Provide heavy-duty, corrosion-resistant hardware, with hot-dip galvanized, stainless-steel, or other corrosion-resistant fasteners, to suit door type.
2. Hinges: Heavy-duty, galvanized-steel hinges of not less than 0.079-inch nominal coated thickness at each end stile and at each intermediate stile, according to manufacturer's written recommendations for door size. Attach hinges to door sections through stiles and rails with bolts and lock nuts or lock washers and nuts. Use rivets or self-tapping fasteners where access to nuts is not possible. Provide double-end hinges where required, for doors over 16 feet wide unless otherwise recommended by door manufacturer.
3. Rollers: Heavy-duty rollers with steel ball-bearings in case-hardened steel races, mounted with varying projections to suit slope of track. Extend roller shaft through both hinges where double hinges are required. Provide 3-inch diameter roller tires for 3-inch wide track and 2-inch diameter roller tires for 2-inch wide track.
4. Push/Pull Handles: For push-up or emergency-operated doors, provide galvanized-steel lifting handles on each side of door.

E. Weatherstripping

1. Replaceable, adjustable, continuous, compressible weather-stripping gaskets of flexible PVC on bottom section, jamb seals and header seal.

F. Tracks, Supports and Accessories:

1. Tracks: Manufacturer's standard, 3” galvanized-steel track system of configuration indicated, sized for door size and weight, designed for lift type indicated and clearances shown on Drawings and complying with ASTM A 653/A 653M for minimum G60 (Z180) zinc coating. Provide complete track assembly including brackets, bracing, and reinforcement for rigid support of ball-bearing roller guides for required door type and size. Where manufacturer requires slot vertical sections for door-drop arresting safety device, slot vertical sections of track shall be spaced 2 inches apart. Slope tracks at proper angle from vertical or design tracks to ensure tight closure at jambs when door unit is closed.
   a. Provide track as recommended by manufacturer to suit loading required and clearances available.
   b. Attach to opening per manufacturer's standard recommendations

2. Track Reinforcement and Supports: Galvanized-steel track reinforcement and support members, complying with ASTM A 36/A 36M and ASTM A 123/A 123M. Secure, reinforce, and support tracks as required for door size and weight to provide strength and rigidity without sag, sway, and vibration during opening and closing of doors.
   a. Vertical Track Assembly: Track with wall jamb brackets attached to track and attached to wall.
   b. Horizontal Track Assembly: Track with continuous reinforcing angle attached to track and supported at points from curve in track to end of track by laterally braced attachments to overhead structural members. Reinforce adequately to prevent deflection.

G. Manual Operation: Chain-Hoist Operator consisting of endless steel hand chain, chain-pocket wheel and guard, and gear-reduction unit with a maximum 35-lbf force for door operation. Provide alloy-steel hand chain with chain holder secured to operator guide.

H. Electric Motor Operation:
1. General: Provide UL listed electric operator, size and type as recommended by manufacturer to move door in either direction at not less than 2/3 foot nor more than 1 foot per second with electric motor and factory-prewired motor controls, starter, gear-reduction unit, solenoid-operated brake, clutch, remote-control stations, control devices, integral gearing for locking door, and accessories required for proper operation.
   a. Comply with NFPA 70.
   b. Provide control equipment complying with NEMA ICS 1, NEMA ICS 2, and NEMA ICS 6; with NFPA 70, Class 2 control circuit, maximum 24-V ac or dc.
2. Usage Classification: Electric operator and components capable of operating for not less than number of cycles per hour indicated for each door.
3. Door-Operator Type: Unit consisting of electric motor, gears, pulleys, belts, sprockets, chains, and controls needed to operate door and meet required usage classification.
   a. Jackshaft, Side Mounted: Jackshaft operator mounted on the inside front wall on right or left side of door and connected to torsion shaft with an adjustable coupling or drive chain.
4. Electric Motors: Comply with NEMA designation, temperature rating, service factor, enclosure type, and efficiency requirements specified herein unless otherwise indicated.
   a. Electrical Characteristics:
      1) Phase: Single phase.
      2) Volts: 115 V.
      3) Hertz: 60.
   b. Motor Type and Controller: Reversible motor and controller (disconnect switch) for motor exposure indicated.
   c. Motor Size: Minimum size as indicated. If not indicated, large enough to start, accelerate, and operate door in either direction from any position, at a speed not less than 8 in./sec. and not more than 12 in./sec., without exceeding nameplate ratings or service factor.

d. Coordinate wiring requirements and electrical characteristics of motors and other electrical devices with building electrical system and each location where installed.

e. Use adjustable motor-mounting bases for belt-driven operators.

5. Limit Switches: Equip each motorized door with adjustable switches interlocked with motor controls and set to automatically stop door at fully opened and fully closed positions.

6. Entrapment Protection: Equip motorized door with indicated external automatic safety sensor capable of protecting full width of door opening. Activation of device immediately stops and reverses downward door travel.

   a. Electric sensing edge.

   b. Photoelectric sensors. Manufacturer's standard system designed to detect an obstruction in door opening without contact between door and obstruction.

7. Operator Controls: Momentary-contact, three-button control station with push-button controls labeled "Open," "Close," and "Stop."

   a. Interior units, full-guarded, surface-mounted, heavy-duty type, with general-purpose NEMA ICS 6, Type 1 enclosure.

   b. Exterior units, full-guarded, standard-duty, surface-mounted, weatherproof type, NEMA ICS 6, Type 4 enclosure, key operated.

   c. Special Operation: Provide 2 wireless remote controls with control devices per door, each capable of operating a minimum of 2 separate doors. Provide all equipment connections and wiring to fully install wireless remote systems.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.01 EXAMINATION

A. Take field dimensions and examine substrates, supports, areas and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for substrate construction and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.

B. Examine locations of electrical connections.

C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.02 INSTALLATION

A. Strictly comply with manufacturer’s installation instructions and recommendations. Coordinate installation with adjacent work to ensure proper clearances and allow for maintenance.

B. Install sectional doors and operating equipment complete with necessary hardware, anchors, inserts, hangers, and equipment supports; according to manufacturer's written instructions and as specified. Sectional door shall be mounted to inside face of wall with tracks braced to ceiling in accordance with manufacturer's recommendations for a track

installation. Door, when installed, shall fit flush, tight and level to floor construction with side jambs properly plumbed and supported to meet design criteria.

C. Tracks:
   1. Fasten vertical track assembly to opening jambs and framing, spaced not more than 24 inches apart.
   2. Hang horizontal track assembly from structural overhead framing with angles or channel hangers attached to framing by welding or bolting, or both. Provide sway bracing, diagonal bracing, and reinforcement as required for rigid installation of track and door-operating equipment.
   3. Repair galvanized coating on tracks according to ASTM A 780.

D. Accessibility: Install sectional doors, switches, and controls along accessible routes in compliance with regulatory requirements for accessibility.

3.03 STARTUP SERVICES

A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to perform startup service.
   1. Complete installation and startup checks according to manufacturer's written instructions.
   2. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.

3.04 ADJUSTING AND CLEANING

A. Adjust hardware and moving parts to function smoothly so that doors operate easily, free of warp, twist, or distortion.

B. Lubricate bearings and sliding parts as recommended by manufacturer.

C. Adjust doors and seals to provide weathertight fit around entire perimeter.

D. Align and adjust motors, pulleys, belts, sprockets, chains, and controls according to manufacturer's written instructions.

E. Clean exposed surfaces using non-abrasive materials and methods recommended by manufacturer’s materials or products being cleaned.

F. Touch-up damaged coatings and finishes and repair minor damage. Clean exposed surfaces using non-abrasive materials and methods recommended by manufacturer of material or product being cleaned.

3.05 DEMONSTRATION

A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain sectional doors.

ROCIP Project: Withhold insurance cost. Please refer to sections 00425 & 00810 for information.

END OF SECTION 08 36 13

ROCIP Project: Withhold insurance cost. Please refer to sections 00425 & 00810 for information.

SECTION 08 41 13 - ALUMINUM-FRAMED ENTRANCES AND STOREFRONT

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.01 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.02 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:
   1. Exterior and interior storefront framing.
   2. Storefront framing for punched openings.
   3. Exterior and interior manual-swing entrance doors and door-frame units.

B. Related Sections:
   1. Division 01 Section "Sustainable Construction Requirements."
   2. Division 06 Section "Rough Carpentry."
   3. Division 06 Section "Wood Framing."
   4. Division 07 Section "Plastic Film Air Barrier."
   5. Division 07 Section "Sheet Metal Flashing and Trim."
   6. Division 07 Section "Joint Sealants."
   7. Division 08 Section "Glazing."
   8. Division 08 Section "Hardware."

1.03 DEFINITIONS

A. ADA/ABA Accessibility Guidelines: U.S. Architectural & Transportation Barriers Compliance Board's "Americans with Disability Act (ADA) and Architectural Barriers Act (ABA) Accessibility Guidelines for Buildings and Facilities."

1.04 SUBMITTALS

A. Comply with pertinent provisions of Division 01 Section “Submittal Procedures”, unless otherwise indicated.

B. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes for aluminum-framed systems.

C. Shop Drawings: For aluminum-framed systems. Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.
   1. Include details of provisions for system expansion and contraction and for drainage of moisture in the system to the exterior.

2. For entrance doors, include hardware schedule and indicate operating hardware types, functions, quantities, and locations.

D. LEED Submittals:
1. Product Data for Credit IEQ 4.1: For glazing sealants used inside the weather-proofing system, documentation including printed statement of VOC content.
2. Laboratory Test Reports for Credit IEQ 4.1: For glazing sealants used inside the weatherproofing system, documentation indicating that products comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Public Health's "Standard Method for the Testing and Evaluation of Volatile Organic Chemical Emissions from Indoor Sources Using Environmental Chambers."

E. Submit three samples of each required aluminum finish on 12" long extrusions.

1.05 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Installer Qualifications: Manufacturer's authorized representative who is trained and approved for installation of units required for this Project.

B. Product Options: Information on Drawings and in Specifications establishes requirements for systems' aesthetic effects and performance characteristics. Aesthetic effects are indicated by dimensions, arrangements, alignment, and profiles of components and assemblies as they relate to sightlines, to one another, and to adjoining construction. Performance characteristics are indicated by criteria subject to verification by one or more methods including preconstruction testing, field testing, and in-service performance.
1. Do not revise intended aesthetic effects, as judged solely by Architect, except with Architect's approval. If revisions are proposed, submit comprehensive explanatory data to Architect for review.

C. Accessible Entrances: Comply with applicable provisions in the Texas Accessibility Standards.

D. Source Limitations for Aluminum-Framed Systems: Obtain from single source from single manufacturer.

1.06 PROJECT CONDITIONS

A. Field Measurements: Verify actual locations of structural supports for aluminum-framed systems by field measurements before fabrication and indicate measurements on Shop Drawings.

1.07 WARRANTY

A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of aluminum-framed systems that do not comply with requirements or that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.

1. Failures include, but are not limited to, the following:
   a. Structural failures including, but not limited to, excessive deflection.
   b. Noise or vibration caused by thermal movements.
   c. Deterioration of metals, metal finishes, and other materials beyond normal weathering.
   d. Adhesive or cohesive sealant failures.
   e. Water leakage through fixed glazing and framing areas.
2. All Hardware shall be installed at manufacturer and be covered by warranty.
3. Warranty Period: 10 years from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.01 MANUFACTURERS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by:
   1. Kawneer
   2. EFCO Corporation.

2.01 MANUFACTURERS

A. Basis-of-Design Products:
   1. Exterior Storefront
      a. Kawneer Company Inc.
      b. Trifab™ 451T Framing System
      c. 2” x 4-1/2” System Dimensions
      d. Glass: Center Plane
   2. Interior Storefront
      a. Kawneer Company Inc.
      b. Trifab® 400 (non-Thermal)
      c. 1-3/4” x 4” (44.5 mm x 101.6 mm) System Dimensions
      d. Glass: Center Plane
   3. Exterior Entrances
      a. Kawneer Company Inc.
      b. Series: 350 Heavy Wall™
   4. Interior Entrances
      a. Kawneer Company Inc.
      b. Series: 350 Swing Doors

2.02 MATERIALS

A. Aluminum: Alloy and temper recommended by manufacturer for type of use and finish indicated.

1. Sheet and Plate: ASTM B 209 (ASTM B 209M).
2. Extruded Bars, Rods, Profiles, and Tubes: ASTM B 221 (ASTM B 221M).
3. Extruded Structural Pipe and Tubes: ASTM B 429.
4. Structural Profiles: ASTM B 308/B 308M.
5. Welding Rods and Bare Electrodes: AWS A5.10/A5.10M.

2.03 FRAMING SYSTEMS

A. Framing Members: Manufacturer's standard extruded-aluminum framing members of thickness required and reinforced as required to support imposed loads.
   1. Exterior: Kawneer
   2. Interior: Kawneer

B. Versoleil™ SunShade: An aluminum sunshade (consisting of outriggers, louvers, and fascia which may be selected from standard configurations), that is anchored directly to the vertical mullions. Outriggers shall be painted (Select from Kawneer's standard paints and colors. Custom colors are available upon request). Louvers and fascia shall be painted or anodized (Select from Kawneer's standard paints and colors, custom colors are available upon request or Kawneer's anodized finishes).

C. Fasteners and Accessories: Manufacturer's standard corrosion-resistant, non-staining, non-bleeding fasteners and accessories compatible with adjacent materials.
   1. Use self-locking devices where fasteners are subject to loosening or turning out from thermal and structural movements, wind loads, or vibration.
   2. Reinforce members as required to receive fastener threads.
   3. Use exposed fasteners with countersunk Phillips screw heads, fabricated from stainless steel.

D. Concealed Flashing: Manufacturer's standard corrosion-resistant, non-staining, non-bleeding flashing compatible with adjacent materials.

E. Framing System Gaskets and Sealants: Manufacturer's standard, recommended by manufacturer for joint type.

2.04 GLAZING SYSTEMS

A. Glazing: As specified in Division 08 Section "Glazing."

B. Glazing Gaskets: Manufacturer's standard compression types; replaceable, molded or extruded, of profile and hardness required to maintain watertight seal.

C. Spacers and Setting Blocks: Manufacturer's standard elastomeric type.

D. Bond-Breaker Tape: Manufacturer's standard TFE-fluorocarbon or polyethylene material to which sealants will not develop adhesion.

2.05 ENTRANCE DOOR SYSTEMS

A. Entrance Doors: Manufacturer's standard glazed entrance doors for manual-swing operation.
   1. Door Construction: 1-3/4-inch overall thickness, extruded-aluminum tubular rail and stile members. Mechanically fasten corners with reinforcing brackets that are deeply penetrated and fillet welded or that incorporate concealed tie rods.
      a. Manufacturer: Kawneer Company, Single-Acting Door.
   2. Door Design: Medium stile; 3-1/2” nominal width.
      a. Accessible Doors: 10” bottom rail.

B. Entrance Door Hardware: Reference Division 08 Section "Hardware" as coordinated with door manufacturer.

2.06 ACCESSORY MATERIALS

A. Joint Sealants: For installation at perimeter of aluminum-framed systems, as specified in Division 07 Section "Joint Sealants."

B. Bituminous Paint: Cold-applied, asphalt-mastic paint complying with SSPC-Paint 12 requirements except containing no asbestos; formulated for 30-mil thickness per coat.

C. Perimeter Sealant: 2 part polyurethane sealant as made by Pecora, Inc., Sonneborn, or Tremco Mfg. Co. Color to match aluminum framing.

D. Weather-stripping: Manufacturer's standard replacement stripping of molded Neoprene gaskets complying with ASTM D-200.

2.07 FABRICATION

A. Framing members and aluminum custom fabrications shall be completely fabricated at the factory for assembly and installation at the job site with provision for thermal movement for an ambient temperature range of 105°F and in accordance with manufacturer's recommended procedures.

B. Form or extrude aluminum shapes before finishing.

C. Weld in concealed locations to greatest extent possible to minimize distortion or discoloration of finish. Remove weld spatter and welding oxides from exposed surfaces by descaling or grinding.

D. Framing Members, General: Fabricate components that, when assembled, have the following characteristics:
   1. Profiles that are sharp, straight, and free of defects or deformations.
   2. Accurately fitted joints with ends coped or mitered.
   3. Means to drain water passing joints, condensation within framing members, and moisture migrating within the system to exterior.
   4. Physical and thermal isolation of glazing from framing members.
   5. Accommodations for thermal and mechanical movements of glazing and framing to maintain required glazing edge clearances.

6. Provisions for field replacement of glazing from interior.
7. Fasteners, anchors, and connection devices that are concealed from view to greatest extent possible.

E. Entrance Door Frames: Reinforce as required to support loads imposed by door operation and for installing entrance door hardware.
1. At exterior doors, provide compression weather stripping at fixed stops.
2. At interior doors, provide silencers at stops to prevent metal-to-metal contact. Install three silencers on strike jamb of single-door frames and two silencers on head of frames for pairs of doors.

F. Entrance Doors: Reinforce doors as required for installing entrance door hardware.
1. At exterior doors, provide weather sweeps applied to door bottoms.

G. Entrance Door Hardware Installation: Factory install entrance door hardware to the greatest extent possible. Cut, drill, and tap for factory-installed entrance door hardware before applying finishes.

H. Miscellaneous Steel Bracing (Concealed): 1 shop coat of red oxide primer.

I. After fabrication, clearly mark components to identify their locations in Project according to Shop Drawings.

2.08 ACCESSORY MATERIALS

A. Joint Sealants: For installation at perimeter of aluminum-framed systems, as specified in Division 07 Section "Joint Sealants."

B. Bituminous Paint: Cold-applied, asphalt-mastic paint complying with SSPC-Paint 12 requirements except containing no asbestos; formulated for 30-mil thickness per coat.

C. Perimeter Sealant: 2 part polyurethane sealant as made by Pecora, Inc., Sonneborn, or Tremco Mfg. Co. Color to match aluminum framing.

D. Weather-stripping: Manufacturer's standard replacement stripping of molded Neoprene gaskets complying with ASTM D-200.

E. Aluminum Brake Metal: Install with manufacturer’s standard brake metal adaptors for smooth transition between brake metal and storefront frames.

2.09 FABRICATION

A. Framing members and aluminum custom fabrications shall be completely fabricated at the factory for assembly and installation at the job site with provision for thermal movement for an ambient temperature range of 105°F and in accordance with manufacturer's recommended procedures.

B. Form or extrude aluminum shapes before finishing.

C. Weld in concealed locations to greatest extent possible to minimize distortion or discoloration of finish. Remove weld spatter and welding oxides from exposed surfaces by descaling or grinding.

D. Framing Members, General: Fabricate components that, when assembled, have the following characteristics:
   1. Profiles that are sharp, straight, and free of defects or deformations.
   2. Accurately fitted joints with ends coped or mitered.
   3. Means to drain water passing joints, condensation within framing members, and moisture migrating within the system to exterior.
   4. Physical and thermal isolation of glazing from framing members.
   5. Accommodations for thermal and mechanical movements of glazing and framing to maintain required glazing edge clearances.
   6. Provisions for field replacement of glazing from interior.
   7. Fasteners, anchors, and connection devices that are concealed from view to greatest extent possible.

E. Entrance Door Frames: Reinforce as required to support loads imposed by door operation and for installing entrance door hardware.
   1. At exterior doors, provide compression weather stripping at fixed stops.
   2. At interior doors, provide silencers at stops to prevent metal-to-metal contact. Install three silencers on strike jamb of single-door frames and two silencers on head of frames for pairs of doors.

F. Entrance Doors: Reinforce doors as required for installing entrance door hardware.
   1. At exterior doors, provide weather sweeps applied to door bottoms.

G. Entrance Door Hardware Installation: Factory install entrance door hardware to the greatest extent possible. Cut, drill, and tap for factory-installed entrance door hardware before applying finishes.

H. Miscellaneous Steel Bracing (Concealed): 1 shop coat of red oxide primer.

I. After fabrication, clearly mark components to identify their locations in Project according to Shop Drawings.

2.10 ALUMINUM FINISHES

A. Clear Anodized Finish.

B. Clear Protective Coating: Complying with AAMA 602.2 for protecting finish during Construction.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.01 EXAMINATION

A. Examine areas and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.

B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.02 INSTALLATION

A. General:
   1. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions.
   2. Do not install damaged components.
   3. Fit joints to produce hairline joints free of burrs and distortion.
   4. Rigidly secure nonmovement joints.
   5. Install anchors with separators and isolators to prevent metal corrosion and electrolytic deterioration.
   6. Seal joints watertight unless otherwise indicated.

B. Metal Protection:
   1. Where aluminum will contact dissimilar metals, protect against galvanic action by painting contact surfaces with primer or applying sealant or tape, or by installing nonconductive spacers as recommended by manufacturer for this purpose.
   2. Where aluminum will contact concrete or masonry, protect against corrosion by painting contact surfaces with bituminous paint.

C. Anchors and Bracing: Properly locate and fasten anchoring devices and structural framing into structure.

D. Install components to drain water passing joints, condensation occurring within framing members, and moisture migrating within the system to exterior. Connecting joints shall be even, hairline joints. Securely fasten anchoring devices and structural steel bracing. Exposed fasteners are prohibited.

E. Set continuous sill members and flashing in full sealant bed as specified in Division 07 Section "Joint Sealants" to produce weather tight installation.

F. Install components plumb and true in alignment with established lines and grades, and without warp or rack.

G. Install glazing as specified in Division 08 Section "Glazing."

H. Entrance Doors: Install doors to produce smooth operation and tight fit at contact points.
   1. Exterior Doors: Install to produce weather tight enclosure and tight fit at weather stripping.
   2. Field-Installed Entrance Door Hardware: Install surface-mounted entrance door hardware according to entrance door hardware manufacturers' written instructions using concealed fasteners to greatest extent possible.

I. Install perimeter joint sealants as specified in Division 07 Section "Joint Sealants" to produce weather tight installation.

ROCIP Project: Withhold insurance cost. Please refer to sections 00425 & 00810 for information.

3.03 ERECTION TOLERANCES

A. Install aluminum-framed systems to comply with the following maximum erection tolerances:
   1. Location and Plane: Limit variation from true location and plane to 1/8 inch in 12 feet; 1/4 inch over total length.
   2. Alignment:
      a. Where surfaces abut in line, limit offset from true alignment to 1/16 inch
      b. Where surfaces meet at corners, limit offset from true alignment to 1/32 inch.

B. Diagonal Measurements: Limit difference between diagonal measurements to 1/8 inch.

3.04 ADJUSTING

A. Adjust operating entrance door hardware to function smoothly as recommended by manufacturer.
   1. For entrance doors accessible to people with disabilities, adjust closers to provide a 3-second closer sweep period for doors to move from a 70-degree open position to 3 inches from the latch, measured to the leading door edge.

3.05 PROTECTION

A. Protect aluminum framing and/or doors during construction by masking members with approved cardboard and paper as recommended by manufacturer. Take particular care in protecting openings and doors from damage during construction.

3.06 CLEANING

A. Upon completion, remove trimmings and other debris. Replace broken, scratched, chipped or other damaged glazing. Remove excessive sealant, mastic and other marks from adjacent surfaces, and wash with clean water. Cleaning of glazing must be done in strict compliance with manufacturer's recommendations.

END OF SECTION 08 41 13

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.01 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.02 WORK INCLUDED

A. The work in this section shall include the furnishing of all items of finish hardware as hereinafter specified, or obviously necessary to complete the building, except those items which are specifically excluded from this section of the specification. All conduit, wire and junction boxes except where specifically listed shall be supplied by General Contractor.

1.03 DESCRIPTION OF WORK

A. Finish Hardware: Hardware used in building construction but particularly that used on or in connection with doors, frames, cabinets and other movable members. It also has a finished appearance as well as functional purpose and may be considered as a part of the decorative treatment of a room or building.

B. Installer Qualifications: An experienced installer who has completed door hardware similar in material, design, and extent to that indicated for this Project and whose work has resulted in construction with a record of successful in-service performance.

1.04 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Fire Rated Openings: Provide door hardware listed by UL or Intertek Testing Services (Warnock Hersey Listed), or other testing laboratory approved by applicable authorities.
   1. Comply with NFPA 80 for fire ratings indicated, based on testing according to NFPA 252.
   2. Comply with UL10C, Positive Pressure Fire Tests of Door Assemblies.

B. Accessibility Requirements: Comply with requirements of Local building code, and Americans with Disabilities Act (ADA), Accessibility Guidelines for Buildings and Facilities.

1.05 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Hardware has been specified herein by manufacturer's name, brand and catalog numbers for the purpose of establishing a basis for quality, finish, design and operation function.

B. Requests for substitutions shall be submitted in accordance with Division 01 Section "Substitution Procedures."

C. Listed Hardware - Hardware which is to be installed in or on fire labeled doors and frames, class A or lesser, single or pairs, shall be tested and listed by Underwriters Laboratories and/or Warnock Hersey Fire Laboratories Division. Exit devices which are to be used as panic hardware shall be tested and listed in Underwriters Laboratories "Accident Equipment List-Panic Hardware". All listed hardware shall be in compliance with National Fire Protection Association (NFPA) Standard Number 80 and be properly stamped or labeled for easy identification.

1.06 SUBMITTALS

A. The finish hardware supplier shall after award of a formal contract, submit to the Architect, six (6) complete copies of the proposed finish hardware schedule for approval. When electronic hardware has been scheduled elevations and wiring diagrams shall be submitted for approval. The hardware supplier shall not order material until an approved schedule has been received.

B. When submitting schedules for approval, include two manufacturers' cut sheets on each hardware item proposed. Index it with the use of numbers or letters or a combination of both, with the hardware schedule. Schedule:
   1. Submit schedule indicating each type of hardware for each door.
   2. List manufacturer's name with each manufacturer's hardware number together with finishes in US standards.
   3. Show door number/location, handing, door and frame material, manufacture and catalog numbers, all finishes and keying information. Explain fully all abbreviations.

C. Shop Drawings: Details of electrified door hardware, indicating the following:
   1. Indicate locations and mounting heights of each type of hardware.
   2. Supply templates to door and frame manufacturer(s) to enable proper and accurate sizing and locations of cut-outs for hardware.
   3. Detail any conditions requiring custom extended lip strikes, or any other special or custom conditions.
   4. Wiring Diagrams: Detail wiring for power, signal, and control systems and differentiate between manufacturer-installed and field-installed wiring. Include the following:
      a. Point-to-point wiring diagram.
      b. Riser diagram.

D. Include a separate keying schedule, which is the result of a key meeting, attended by the Architect, Owner and hardware supplier.

E. Samples - As part of this contract, provide to the Architect one sample of each type of finish hardware that is to be furnished for this project. These samples will be held by the Architect until completion of the project and will then be turned over to the Owner. They will serve as product samples for the building maintenance department.

F. Closeout Submittals:
   1. Project Record Documents: Schedule showing actual locations of installed cylinders and their master key code.
   2. Parts lists and maintenance instructions including data on operating hardware, lubrication requirements, and inspection procedures related to preventative maintenance.
   3. Keys: Deliver with identifying tags to Owner by security shipment direct from hardware supplier.

1.07 DELIVERY, STORAGE AND HANDLING

A. All items of hardware to be delivered to the job site shall be completely packaged with all necessary screws, bolts, miscellaneous parts, and instructions and where necessary, installation templates for manufacturers suggested installation. They are to be clearly labeled for convenient identification and location in the building.

B. Store products in manufacturer’s unopened packaging until reafy for installation.

C. Protect materials from exposure to moisture. Do not deliver until after wet work is complete and dry.

D. Store materials in a dry, warm, ventilated weathertight location.

1.08 PROJECT CONDITIONS

A. Maintain environmental conditions (temperature, humidity, and ventilation) within limits recommended by manufacturer for optimum results. Do not install products under environmental conditions outside manufacturer's absolute limits.

1.09 WARRANTY

A. The finish hardware shall carry a limited warranty against defects in workmanship and operation for a period of one year from date of acceptance.

B. Provide factory warranty against defects in material and workmanship as follows:
   1. Overhead Surface Closers, Grade 1, 25 Year Warranty.
   2. Mortise locks, Grade 1, 10 Year Warranty.
   3. Standard and Interchangeable Cylinders, 2 Year Warranty.
   4. Patented Key Control SKC Cylinders, Lifetime Warranty.

5. Electrical components 2 Year Warranty
6. 9000 series exit devices 10 year mechanical/2 years electrical

1.10 MAINTENANCE MATERIALS

A. Provide special wrenches and tools applicable to each different or special hardware component.

1.11 COORDINATION

A. Coordinate work with other directly affected components involving manufacture or fabrication of internal reinforcement for door hardware and recessed items.

B. Coordinate work with other directly affected components involving electrical wiring and components.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.01 MANUFACTURERS

A. Acceptable Manufacturer's:
   1. Dorma (DAH), www.droma.com
   2. PBB Hinge, www.phhinc.com
   3. Trimco (TR), www.trimcohardware.com
   4. National Guard Products (NG), www.ngp.com
   5. KN Crowder (KNC), www.kncrowder.com

2.02 HINGES AND PIVOTS

A. Hinges: ANSI A156.1, full mortise template type complying with following general requirements unless otherwise scheduled.
   1. Widths: Sufficient to clear trim projection when door swings 180 degrees.
   2. Number: Furnish minimum three hinges to 90 inches (2 286 mm) high, four hinges to 120 inches (3 048 mm) high for each door leaf.
      a. Fire Rated Doors To 86 inches (2 184 mm) High: Minimum three ball bearing hinges.
   3. Size and Weight: 4-1/2 inch (114 mm) heavy weight typical for 1-3/4 inch (44 mm) doors.
      a. Doors Over 40 inches (1 016 mm) Wide: Extra heavy weight ball or oilite bearing hinges.
      b. Doors 2 inch (50 mm) Thick: 5 inch (125 mm) extra heavy weight ball or oilite bearing.
      c. Doors Over 48 inches (1 220 mm) Wide: 5 inch (125 mm) extra heavy weight ball or oilite bearing.

4. Pins: Furnish nonferrous hinges with non-removable pins (NRP) at exterior and locked out-swinging doors, non-rising pins at interior doors.
5. Tips: Furnish with matching plug.
6. Material: Steel - Polished and plated.
7. Material: Stainless Steel - Polished and satin finished.

2.03 SLIDING DOOR HARDWARE

1. Polished Stainless steel bar track (304)
2. Shock absorbing Stops. (Spring Loaded)
3. Wheel combined with precision ground ball bearings. (150,000 cycle tested)

2.04 KEYING

A. Keying:
   1. Keying: Factory Keyed as directed by Architect.
   2. Interchangeable Core with temporary construction cores.

B. All cylinders shall be Grand Master and Master Keyed as directed by owner.

C. All cylinder key blanks shall be patented and each individual key blank shall be stamped with a unique serial number.

D. Keys:
   1. Nickel silver. Each DORMASKC key and key blank is engraved with a unique serial number at the factory. Serial numbers are never repeated, allowing identification and tracking of each key.

   2. Supply keys in the following minimum quantities:
      a. Master keys 4
      b. Grand Master keys 4
      c. Construction keys 10
      d. Change keys 2
      e. Control keys 2

E. All master keys shall be delivered to the Owner and/or Owners representative via registered mail.

F. Key Cabinet:
   1. Construction: Sheet steel or aluminum construction, piano hinged door with cylinder type lock master keyed to building system.
   2. Size: Size for Project keys plus sufficient space for 10 percent growth.
   3. Key and key hook labeling system
   4. Finish;
      a. Baked enamel

2.05 MORTISE LOCKS

A. Lockset: DORMA M9000 Series.
   1. Standards:
      a. ANSI Conformance - ANSI A156.13, Operational Grade 1, Security Grade 1.
      b. U.L. and C.U.L. listed for use on 3-hour fire-rated doors and for all positive pressure applications.
      c. U.L. and C.U.L. listed for UL 10B/10C.
      d. Lever trim LGA meets A117.1 and ADA requirements.
   2. Function:
      a. As noted on the hardware schedule attached to this section.
   3. Finish:
      a. Finish: As specified in the Door Hardware Schedule.

2.06 CYLINDERS

A. Interchangeable Core Lock Cylinder: ANSI A156.5.
   1. Pin Count: 7 Pin.

B. Patented Key Control Cylinders: DORMA SKC (Serialized Key Control) Cylinders, ANSI A156.5, Grade 1, seven nickel-silver pin cylinders.

2.07 EXIT DEVICES

A. General:
   1. DORMA exit devices are listed by U.L. and C.U.L. under their continuing re-inspection programs and conform to standards U.L. 10C and U.B.C. 7-2 (1997) positive pressure testing. They are BHMA certified to the requirements of ANSI A156.3 for Grade 1 exit devices.
   2. Exit Devices: Exit devices shall be type and function as listed in hardware sets. Use fire exit hardware where exit devices are scheduled for fire door assemblies. Where lever handle trim is specified, match lever trim on locksets Construct device touch bar, rail and cover assemblies of heavy gauge solid wrought materials for true architectural finishes. Provide cylinder dogging on all non-rated devices. Furnish all devices with stainless 3/4 inch (19 mm) throw deadlocking latchbolts.

B. 9000 Series, Heavy Duty Exit Device: ANSI A156.3, Grade 1, heavy duty exit devices. Heavy duty RIM devices shall maintain a minimum latch bolt static load rating of 3,000 lbs.
   1. Function:
      a. MLR Motorized latch retraction
   2. ES105 Power Transfers for all wired electronic functions
   3. Power Supply for MLR
      a. Requirements: PS532RF-Power and control (2) exit devices
         1) Input: 110VAC/60 Hz
         2) Output: 2.0A @24 VDC, Class 2
         3) Enclosure Size: 14 inches H by 16 inches W by 6.5 inches D

b. PS610RF-Power nad control (1) exit device
   1) Input: 110VAC/60 Hz
   2) Output: 1.0A @24 VDC, Class 2
   3) Enclosure Size: 12.5 inches H by 12.5 inches W by 4 inches D
   4) Current: .088A max. inrush, 400mA max. hold
   5) 24VDC +10% Filtered and regulated power supply; DORMA PS610RF pr PS532RF

4. Strikes: Provide types suitable for opening.
5. Finish:
   a. Finish: As specified in the Door Hardware Schedule

2.08 SURFACE DOOR CLOSERS

A. Closers used in conjunction with overhead stops and holders shall be templated and coordinated to function properly. Properly detail closers to meet application requirements by providing drop plates, brackets, etc. to meet application and installation requirements as indicated.

B. TS93 Series: ANSI A156.4, Grade 1, compact design surface door closer with unique cam and roller design.
   1. Standard independent, latch, sweep and back check intensity valves.
   2. Compliant with UL10C for positive pressure.
   3. Non-handed.
   4. Finish: As specified in the Door Hardware Schedule.

C. All closers shall be installed in compliance with Architectural Barriers Act Article 9102, Texas Civil Statutes. A force gage shall be supplied to the hardware installer so he can verify the opening force of the doors and are installed in compliance with Texas Accessibility Standards. At completion of the project the force gage shall be turned over to the owner. Upon completion of the installation of the door closers a representative of the door closer manufacturer shall inspect the installation and provide a report to the owner as to his findings.

2.09 MISCELLANEOUS TRIM

A. Push/Pulls: ANSI A156.6; push plates minimum 0.050 inch (1.27 mm) thick
   1. Size: Push plates shall be ANSI J302, size 4 inches (102 mm) by 16 inches (406 mm), thickness .050 inch.
   2. Size: Pull plates shall be ANSI J405, size 4 inches (102 mm) by 16 inches (406 mm), thickness .050 inch.
   3. Cut plates for cylinder or thumb piece when used with deadlock.
   4. Provide with through bolts to secure from opposite door face.
   5. Finish: As specified in the Door Hardware Schedule.

B. Kick plates, Mop Plate, Armor Plates: ANSI A156.6, metal; height indicated in Schedule by 1 inch (25 mm) less than door width:.

1. Minimum 0.050 inch (1.27 mm) thick stainless steel.

C. Weather stripping and thresholds as specified in hardware schedule.

D. Stops: Provide for all doors to control the desired limit of opening helping to prevent damage to adjacent walls, columns, equipment, the door or its hardware.
   1. Provide floor when overhead stops have not been listed except in areas where their location would impede traffic. Stops of correct height shall be used on exterior and interior doors.
   2. Use roller type stops in areas where the interfering swing of one door may cause damage through contact with another door.
   3. Floor Stops: ANSI A156.1 Grade 1:
      a. Finish: As specified in the Door Hardware Schedule.

E. Heavy Duty Door Stops and Holders: 900 Heavy-Duty door stops and holders. Conforms to ANSI A156.8 Grade.
   1. Type:
      a. 900S: Surface applied stop only.
      b. Built-in cushioned stop
      c. Non-handed
      d. Finish: As specified in the Door Hardware Schedule

F. Silencers for Metal Door Frames: ANSI A156.16, Type L03011; grey rubber, minimum diameter 1/2 inch (13 mm); fabricated for drilled-in application to frame, specifically designed to form an air pocket to absorb shock and reduce noise of door closing. Provide 2 silencers for each pair of doors, 3 silencers for each single door.

PART 3 - INSTALLATION

3.01 EXAMINATION

A. Do not begin installation until substrates have been properly prepared.

B. Verify doors and frames are ready to receive door hardware and dimensions are as indicated on shop drawings.

C. Verify electric power is available to power operated devices and is of correct characteristics.

D. If substrate preparation is the responsibility of another installer, notify Architect of unsatisfactory preparation before proceeding.

3.02 INSTALLATION

A. Install in accordance with manufacturer’s instructions.

B. Coordinate mounting heights with door and frame manufacturers. Use templates provided by hardware item manufacturer

C. Mount hardware units at heights indicated in "Recommended Locations for Builders Hardware" for (Standard Steel Doors and Frames), (Custom Steel Doors and Frames), (Wood Doors and Frames) by the Door and Hardware Institute (DHI), except if otherwise specifically indicated or to comply with requirements of governing regulations, requirements for the handicapped, or if otherwise directed by the Architect.

D. Contractor shall conduct a pre installation meeting with the installers of the finished hardware. At these meeting representatives of the lock, exit device and door closer manufacturers being supplied shall be present. The representatives of the manufacturers shall review the installation instructions for their products and provide information which will aid in the installation of the finished hardware. The hardware representatives shall provide documentation that he has conducted this program along with the names of the participants. This documentation shall be forwarded to the owner or his agent in a timely manner. Upon completion of the hardware installation the same representatives shall certified the hardware has been properly installed and adjusted in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions and recommendations.

E. Install with fasteners provided by hardware item manufacturer.

F. Securely fasten all parts to be attached.

G. Adjust hardware for smooth operation.

H. After installation, representative templates, instruction sheets and installation details shall be placed in a file folder to be turned over to the Owner when the building is accepted. Included shall be at least five each of any special adjusting and/or installation tools furnished with the hardware by the manufacturers.

3.03 PROTECTION

A. Protect installed products until completion of project.

B. Touch-up, repair or replace damaged products before Substantial Completion.

3.04 ADJUSTING AND CLEANING

A. Adjust and check each operating item of hardware to ensure correct operation and function. Units which cannot be adjusted to operate as intended for the application made shall be replaced.

B. Final adjustment; Wherever hardware installation is made more than one month prior to building acceptance or occupancy of a space or area, the installer shall return to the work during the week prior to acceptance or occupancy and make final check and adjustment of all hardware items. Hardware shall be cleaned as necessary to restore

correct operation, function and finish. Door control devices shall be adjusted to compensate for final operation of heating and ventilating equipment.

3.05 SCHEDULES

A. The following is a general listing of hardware requirements and is not intended for use as a final hardware schedule. Any items of hardware required by established standards or practices, or to meet state and local codes shall be furnished whether or not specifically called out in the following listed group.

SET 1

1 Cont. Hinge	SL24AP+CTW-4	628	SL
1 Exit Device	9300MLR MS	630	DAH
1 Cylinder	87	626	DAH
1 Pull	1171-24	630	TR
1 Power Supply	PS615RF x PDM-4		DAH
1 Closer	TS9315SPT	689	DAH
1 Threshold	425	628	NG
1 Sweep	101V	628	NG

Access control by others.

SET 2

1 Cont. Hinge	SL24	628	SL
1 Magnetic Lock	EML310	628	DAH
1 Push Button	PBRE2	628	DAH
1 Sensor	MD31DOW		DAH
2 Push/Pull	1171-24	630	TR
1 Closer	TS9315PT	689	DAH
1 Stop	7280	626	TR

Access control by others.
Use power supply located at door 101A.

SET 3

3 Hinge	PBB81 4.5x4.5	652	PBB
1 Privacy Lock	M9046 LGA	626	DAH
1 Closer	TS9315T	689	DAH
1 Stop	7280	626	TR
1 Kick Plate	K0050 8”x34”	630	TR

SET 4

3 Hinge	PBB81 4.5x4.5	652	PBB
1 Exit Device	F9300 x YG08	630	DAH
1 Closer	TS9315T	689	DAH
1 Kick Plate	K0050 8”x34”	630	TR
1 Stop	1209	626	TR

ROCIP Project: Withhold insurance cost. Please refer to sections 00425 & 00810 for information.

1 Seal	156V	628	NG
1 Door Bottom	520NA	628	NG
1 Threshold	426E	628	NG

SET 5

3 Hinge	PBB81 4.5x4.5	652	PBB
1 Pull	1010-1	630	TR
1 Push	1001-3	630	TR
1 Closer	TS9315T	689	DAH
1 Kick Plate	K0050 8”x34”	630	TR
1 Stop	1209	626	TR
1 Seal	156V	628	NG
1 Door Bottom	520NA	628	NG
1 Threshold	426E	628	NG

SET 6

3 Hinge	PBB81 4.5x4.5	652	PBB
1 Lock	M9070 T LGA	626	DAH
1 Closer	TS9315T	689	DAH
1 Stop	7280	626	TR
1 Kick Plate	K0050 8”x34”	630	TR

SET 7

3 Hinge	PBB81 4.5x4.5	652	PBB
1 Lock	M9050 T LGA	626	DAH
1 Stop	7280	626	TR

SET 8

3 Hinge	PBB81 4.5x4.5	652	PBB
1 Exit Device	F9300 x YG08	630	DAH
1 Closer	TS9315T	689	DAH
1 Kick Plate	K0050 8”x34”	630	TR
1 Stop	1209	626	TR

SET 9

3 Hinge	PBB81 4.5x4.5	652	PBB
1 Latch	M9010 LGA	626	DAH
1 Closer	TS9315T	689	DAH
1 Stop	7280	626	TR
1 Kick Plate	K0050 8”x34”	630	TR

ROCIP Project: Withhold insurance cost. Please refer to sections 00425 & 00810 for information.

SET10

3 Hinge	PBB81 4.5x4.5	652	PBB
1 Privacy Lock	M9046 LGA	626	DAH
1 Closer	TS9315T	689	DAH
1 Stop	7280	626	TR
1 Kick Plate	K0050 8”x34”	630	TR

SET 11

3 Hinge	PBB51 4.5x4.5 NRP	652	PBB	
1 Exit Device	9300MLR MS PTT03		630	DAH
1 Power Supply	PS610RF		DAH	
1 Power Transfer	ES105	626	DAH	
1 Closer	TS9315SPT	689	DAH	
1 Kick Plate	K0050 8”x34”	630	TR	
1 Drip Cap	16A	628	NG	
1 Seal (head)	700N	628	HG	
1 Seal (jambs)	156V	628	NG	
1 Door Bottom	520NA	628	NG	
1 Threshold	426E	628	NG	

Access control by others.

SET 12

3 Hinge	PBB51 4.5x4.5 NRP	630	PBB	
1 Lock	M9080 T LGA		630	DAH
1 Closer	TS9315SPT	689	DAH	
1 Kick Plate	K0050 8”x34”	630	TR	
1 Drip Cap	16A	628	NG	
1 Seal (head)	700N	628	HG	
1 Seal (jambs)	156V	628	NG	
1 Door Bottom	520NA	628	NG	
1 Threshold	426E	628	NG	

SET 13

3 Hinge	PBB51 4.5x4.5 NRP	630	PBB
1 Lock	M9080ELRX LGA	630	DAH
1 Power Transfer	ES105	626	DAH
1 Power Supply	PS610RF		DAH
1 Closer	TS9315SPT	689	DAH
1 Kick Plate	K0050 8”x34”	630	TR
1 Drip Cap	16A	628	NG
1 Seal (head)	700N	628	HG
1 Seal (jambs)	156V	628	NG
1 Door Bottom	520NA	628	NG
1 Threshold	426E	628	NG

ROCIP Project: Withhold insurance cost. Please refer to sections 00425 & 00810 for information.

Access control by others.

SET 14

3 Hinge	PBB81 4.5x4.5	652	PBB
1 Lock	M9080 T LGA	626	DAH
1 Stop	7280	626	TR

SET 15

1 Sliding Door Kit	CRT-52-SS	630	KNC	
1 Pull	TG138L SNG 134 49 T	700	DAH	
1 DP Strike	926.937	700	DAH	

SET 16

1 Sliding Door Kit	CRT-52-SS	630	KNC
1 Pull	1161-18”	630	TR
1 Flush Poll	1115	630	TR

SET 17

2 Cont. Hinge	SL24AP+CTW-4	628	SL
2 Exit Device	9100MLR MS PB	630	DAH
1 Cylinder	87	626	DAH
2 Pull	1171-24	630	TR
1 Power Supply	PS532RF		DAH
2 Closer	TS9315SPT	689	DAH
1 Threshold	425	628	NG
2 Sweep	101V	628	NG

Access control by others.

END OF SECTION 08 71 00

ROCIP Project: Withhold insurance cost. Please refer to sections 00425 & 00810 for information.

SECTION 08 72 00 – WEATHERSTRIPPING AND SEALS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.01 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.02 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:
   1. Section Includes: Brush Weatherstrip.

1.03 REFERENCES

A. ASTM International:
   1. ASTM E90 Standard Test Method for Laboratory Measurement of Airborne Sound Transmission Loss of Building Partitions and Elements.
   2. ASTM E1408 Standard Test Method for Laboratory Measurement of the Sound Transmission Loss of Door Panels and Door Systems.
   3. ASTM E2074 Standard Test Method for Fire Tests of Door Assemblies, Including Positive Pressure Testing of Side-Hinged and Pivoted Swinging Door Assemblies.

B. American National Standards Institute/Builders Hardware Manufacturers Association (ANSI/BHMA):
   1. ANSI/BHMA A156.18: Materials and Finishes.
   2. ANSI/BHMA A156.22: Door Gasketing Systems.

C. American National Standards Institute/Steel Door Institute (ANSI/SDI):
   1. ANSI A250.8/SDI-100 Recommended Specifications for Standard Steel Doors and Frames.

D. American National Standards Institute/Window and Door Manufacturers Association (ANSI/WDMA):
   1. ANSI/WDMA I.S.1-A Architectural Wood Flush Doors.

E. Underwriters Laboratories, Inc. (UL):
   1. UL 10B Fire Tests of Door Assemblies.
   2. UL 10C Fire Tests of Door Assemblies.
   3. UL 1784 Air Leakage Tests of Door Assemblies.

F. International Code Council (ICC):
   1. UBC 7-2 Fire Test of Door Assemblies (Positive Pressure).
   2. International Building Code (IBC) Code 2000 (Positive Pressure).

G. British Standards (BS):
   1. BS 476 Fire Tests on Building Materials and Structures.

H. National Fire Protection Association (NFPA):
   1. NFPA 105 Recommended Practice for the Installation of Smoke-Control Door Assemblies.

1.04 SYSTEM DESCRIPTION

A. Design Requirements: Provide brush weatherstrip which have been manufactured, fabricated and installed to meet the following design criteria:
   1. Acoustical Performance ASTM E90, ASTM E1408.
   2. Provide performance obtained from test procedures UBC 7-2.
   3. Smoke, Air Leakage: Comply with NFPA 105.

1.05 SUBMITTALS

A. Comply with pertinent provisions of Division 01 Section “Submittal Procedures, unless otherwise indicated.”

B. Product Data: Submit manufacturer’s product data and installation instructions.

C. Shop Drawings: Provide drawings indicating required component locations, interface with adjacent materials, installation, anchorage, fastening and similar information.

D. Samples: Submit one each of manufacturer’s standard selection samples.

E. Quality Assurance/Control Submittals: Submit the following:
   1. Test Reports: Upon request, submit Durability test reports from recognized testing laboratory.
   2. Certificates: Submit manufacturer’s certificate that products meet or exceed specified requirements.

F. Closeout Submittals: Submit the following:
   1. Warranty documents specified herein.

1.06 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Installer Qualifications: Utilize an installer having demonstrated experience on projects of similar size and complexity.

B. Mock-Ups:
   1. Subject to acceptance by owner, mock-up may be retained as part of finish work.
   2. If mock-up is not retained, remove and properly dispose of mock-up.

1.07 DELIVERY, STORAGE & HANDLING

A. General: Comply with Division 01 Product Requirement Section.

B. Delivery: Deliver materials in manufacturer's original, unopened, undamaged containers with identification labels intact.

C. Storage and Protection: Store materials protected from exposure to harmful environmental conditions and at temperature and humidity conditions recommended by the manufacturer.

1.08 WARRANTY

A. Project Warranty: Refer to Conditions of the Contract for project warranty provisions.

B. Manufacturer's Warranty: Submit, for Owner's acceptance, manufacturer's standard warranty document executed by authorized company official. Manufacturer's warranty is in addition to, and not a limitation of, other rights Owner may have under contract documents.
   1. Warranty Period: 3 years against defects in materials or workmanship, beginning with Date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.01 PERIMETER GASKETING AND BRUSH WEATHERSTRIP

A. Manufacturer: Pemko Manufacturing Company.
   1. Contact: PO Box 3780, 4226 Transport Street, Ventura, CA 93003; Telephone: (800) 283-9988, (805) 642-2600; Fax: (805) 642-4109; E-mail: pemkosales@pemko.com; website: www.pemko.com.

B. Proprietary Products/Systems: Brush weatherstrip, including the following:
   1. 180 Degree Aluminum Retainer Brush Weatherstrip:
      a. Material: Extruded tempered aluminum 6063-T6.
      b. Finish (ANSI/BHMA A156.18): Clear anodized aluminum.

c. Brush Construction: Densely compressed nylon filaments encased in galvanized retainer.
d. Color: Aluminum color, gray nylon.
e. Manufacturer Model Number: 18400CNB.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.01 MANUFACTURER'S INSTRUCTIONS

A. Comply with the instructions and recommendations of the brush weatherstrip manufacturer.

3.02 EXAMINATION

A. Site Verification of Conditions:
1. Verify that site conditions are acceptable for installation of brush weatherstrip.
a. Examine doors and frames for compliance with requirements for door and frame manufacturer's installation tolerances, labeled fire door assembly construction, wall and floor construction and other conditions affecting performance.
2. Do not proceed with installation of brush weatherstrip until unacceptable conditions are corrected.

3.03 PREPARATION

A. Wood Door Preparation:
1. Comply with ANSI/WDMA I.S.1-A.
2. Comply with door manufacturer's positive pressure installation instructions.

B. Steel Door and Frame Preparation:
1. Drill and tap doors and frames for hardware per manufacturer's positive pressure installation instructions.
2. Ensure doors and frames are properly sized, plumb and square.
3. Comply with ANSI A250.8/SDI-100.

3.04 INSTALLATION

A. Mounting Location: Comply with the following requirements, unless otherwise indicated:
1. Steel Doors and Frames:
a. Comply with manufacturer's positive pressure installation instructions.
b. Comply with ANSI A250.8/SDI-100.
2. Wood Doors:
a. Comply with manufacturer's positive pressure installation instructions.

b. Comply with ANSI/WDMA I.S.1-A.

B. Adjust and reinforce attachment substrates as necessary for proper installation and operation.

C. Drill and countersink units that are not factory prepared for anchorage fasteners. Space fasteners and anchors according to industry standards.

3.05 ADJUSTING

A. Perform adjustments required to ensure that brush weatherstrip function in compliance with manufacturer's performance criteria prior to acceptance by Owner.

3.06 CLEANING

A. Remove any protective films and clean components as necessary following manufacturer's recommended procedures.

3.07 PROTECTION

A. Protect installed work from damage due to subsequent construction activity on the site.

END OF SECTION 08 72 00

SECTION 08 80 00 – GLAZING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.01 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.02 SUMMARY

A. Section includes glazing for the following products and applications, including those specified in other Sections where glazing requirements are specified by reference to this Section:
   1. Windows.
   2. Doors.
   3. Storefront framing.

B. Related Sections:
   1. Division 08 Section "Aluminum Windows."
   2. Division 08 Section "Aluminum Framed Entrances and Storefront."
   3. Division 08 Section "Hollow Metal Doors, Frames and Window Frames."

1.03 DEFINITIONS

A. Glass Manufacturers: Firms that produce primary glass, fabricated glass, or both, as defined in referenced glazing publications.

B. Interspace: Space between lites of an insulating-glass unit.

1.04 SUBMITTALS

A. Comply with pertinent provisions of Division 01 Section “Submittal Procedures, unless otherwise indicated.”

B. Product Data: For each glass product and glazing material indicated.

C. Glass Samples: For each type of glass; 6 inches square.

1.05 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Protect glazing materials according to manufacturer's written instructions. Prevent damage to glass and glazing materials from condensation, temperature changes, direct exposure to sun, or other causes.

B. Comply with insulating-glass manufacturer's written recommendations for venting and sealing units to avoid hermetic seal ruptures due to altitude change.

1.06 PROJECT CONDITIONS

A. Environmental Limitations: Do not proceed with glazing when ambient and substrate temperature conditions are outside limits permitted by glazing material manufacturers and when glazing channel substrates are wet from rain, frost, condensation, or other causes.
   1. Do not install glazing sealants when ambient and substrate temperature conditions are outside limits permitted by sealant manufacturer or below 40 deg F (4.4 deg C).

1.07 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Design Criteria: Glass shall conform to Fed. Spec. DD-G-001403.

B. Installation Criteria: FGJA "Glazing Manual".

C. Security Glazing: Applicable standards
   1. Consumer Product Safety Standard 16 CFR 1201, Category II
   2. ANSI Z97.1, Safety Glazing Materials Used in Buildings
   3. ASTM C1036, Flat Glass
   4. ASTM C1048, Heat-Treated Flat Glass

1.08 WARRANTY

A. Manufacturer's Special Warranty on Insulating Glass: Manufacturer's standard form in which insulating-glass manufacturer agrees to replace insulating-glass units that deteriorate within specified warranty period. Deterioration of insulating glass is defined as failure of hermetic seal under normal use that is not attributed to glass breakage or to maintaining and cleaning insulating glass contrary to manufacturer's written instructions. Evidence of failure is the obstruction of vision by dust, moisture, or film on interior surfaces of glass.
   1. Warranty Period: 10 years from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.01 INSULATING GLASS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following

   1. Viracon, Inc.

B. Glass Types:
   1. 1” Tinted Glass, Insulated, Low- E.
   2. 1” Tinted Glass, Insulated, Low- E, tempered (both lites). .
   3. 1/4 ” Clear Plate Glass.
   4. 1/4 ” Clear Tempered Glass.
   5. 5/16” Fire Rated Glass.

C. Insulating-Glass Units: Factory-assembled units consisting of sealed lites of glass separated by a dehydrated interspace, qualified according to ASTM E 2190, and complying with other requirements specified.

A. Tinting and Low-E Coating: Equal to VE-2M by Viracon, Inc.

2.02 FIRE-PROTECTION-RATED GLAZING

A. Fire-Protection-Rated Glazing, General: Listed and labeled by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, for fire-protection ratings indicated, based on testing according to NFPA 252 for door assemblies and NFPA 257 for window assemblies.

B. Fire-Protection-Rated Tempered Glass: 5/16-inch thick, fire-protection-rated tempered glass, 90 minute rating.
   1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
      a. Firelite Plus.

2.03 GLAZING GASKETS

A. Gaskets: As recommended by the manufacturer of the window system.

2.04 GLAZING SEALANTS

A. General:
   1. Compatibility: Provide glazing sealants that are compatible with one another and with other materials they will contact, including glass products, seals of insulating-glass units, and glazing channel substrates, under conditions of service and application, as demonstrated by sealant manufacturer based on testing and field experience.
   2. Suitability: Comply with sealant and glass manufacturers' written instructions for selecting glazing sealants suitable for applications indicated and for conditions existing at time of installation.
   3. Colors of Exposed Glazing Sealants: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.

2.05 GLAZING TAPES

A. Back-Bedding Mastic Glazing Tapes: Preformed, butyl-based, 100 percent solids elastomeric tape; nonstaining and nonmigrating in contact with nonporous surfaces; with or without spacer rod as recommended in writing by tape and glass manufacturers for application indicated; and complying with ASTM C 1281 and AAMA 800 for products indicated below:
   1. AAMA 804.3 tape, where indicated.
   2. AAMA 806.3 tape, for glazing applications in which tape is subject to continuous pressure.
   3. AAMA 807.3 tape, for glazing applications in which tape is not subject to continuous pressure.

2.06 MISCELLANEOUS GLAZING MATERIALS

A. General: Provide products of material, size, and shape complying with referenced glazing standard, requirements of manufacturers of glass and other glazing materials for application indicated, and with a proven record of compatibility with surfaces contacted in installation.

B. Cleaners, Primers, and Sealers: Types recommended by sealant or gasket manufacturer.

C. Setting Blocks: Elastomeric material with a Shore, Type A durometer hardness of 85, plus or minus 5.

D. Spacers: Elastomeric blocks or continuous extrusions of hardness required by glass manufacturer to maintain glass lites in place for installation indicated.

E. Edge Blocks: Elastomeric material of hardness needed to limit glass lateral movement (side walking).

F. Cylindrical Glazing Sealant Backing: ASTM C 1330, Type O (open-cell material), of size and density to control glazing sealant depth and otherwise produce optimum glazing sealant performance.

G. Perimeter Insulation for Fire-Resistive Glazing: Product that is approved by testing agency that listed and labeled fire-resistant glazing product with which it is used for application and fire-protection rating indicated.

2.07 FABRICATION OF GLAZING UNITS

A. Fabricate glazing units in sizes required to fit openings indicated for Project, with edge and face clearances, edge and surface conditions, and bite complying with written instructions of product manufacturer and referenced glazing publications, to comply with system performance requirements.

B. Clean-cut or flat-grind vertical edges of butt-glazed monolithic lites to produce square edges with slight chamfers at junctions of edges and faces.

C. Grind smooth and polish exposed glass edges and corners.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.01 EXAMINATION

A. Examine framing, glazing channels, and stops, with Installer present, for compliance with the following:
   1. Manufacturing and installation tolerances, including those for size, squareness, and offsets at corners.
   2. Presence and functioning of weep systems.
   3. Minimum required face and edge clearances.
   4. Effective sealing between joints of glass-framing members.

B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.02 PREPARATION

A. Clean glazing channels and other framing members receiving glass immediately before glazing. Remove coatings not firmly bonded to substrates.

B. Examine glazing units to locate exterior and interior surfaces. Label or mark units as needed so that exterior and interior surfaces are readily identifiable. Do not use materials that will leave visible marks in the completed work.

3.03 GLAZING, GENERAL

A. Comply with combined written instructions of manufacturers of glass, sealants, gaskets, and other glazing materials, unless more stringent requirements are indicated, including those in referenced glazing publications.

B. Adjust glazing channel dimensions as required by Project conditions during installation to provide necessary bite on glass, minimum edge and face clearances, and adequate sealant thicknesses, with reasonable tolerances.

C. Protect glass edges from damage during handling and installation. Remove damaged glass from Project site and legally dispose of off Project site. Damaged glass is glass with edge damage or other imperfections that, when installed, could weaken glass and impair performance and appearance.

D. Install setting blocks in sill rabbets, sized and located to comply with referenced glazing publications, unless otherwise required by glass manufacturer. Set blocks in thin course of compatible sealant suitable for heel bead.

E. Do not exceed edge pressures stipulated by glass manufacturers for installing glass lites.

F. Provide edge blocking where indicated or needed to prevent glass lites from moving sideways in glazing channel, as recommended in writing by glass manufacturer and according to requirements in referenced glazing publications.

G. Set glass lites in each series with uniform pattern, draw, bow, and similar characteristics.

H. Set glass lites with proper orientation so that coatings face exterior or interior as specified.

I. Where wedge-shaped gaskets are driven into one side of channel to pressurize sealant or gasket on opposite side, provide adequate anchorage so gasket cannot walk out when installation is subjected to movement.

J. Square cut wedge-shaped gaskets at corners and install gaskets in a manner recommended by gasket manufacturer to prevent corners from pulling away; seal corner joints and butt joints with sealant recommended by gasket manufacturer.

3.04 TAPE GLAZING

A. Position tapes on fixed stops so that, when compressed by glass, their exposed edges are flush with or protrude slightly above sightline of stops.

B. Install tapes continuously, but not necessarily in one continuous length. Do not stretch tapes to make them fit opening.

C. Cover vertical framing joints by applying tapes to heads and sills first and then to jambs. Cover horizontal framing joints by applying tapes to jambs and then to heads and sills.

D. Place joints in tapes at corners of opening with adjoining lengths butted together, not lapped. Seal joints in tapes with compatible sealant approved by tape manufacturer.

E. Do not remove release paper from tape until right before each glazing unit is installed.

F. Apply heel bead of elastomeric sealant.

G. Center glass lites in openings on setting blocks and press firmly against tape by inserting dense compression gaskets formed and installed to lock in place against faces of removable stops. Start gasket applications at corners and work toward centers of openings.

H. Apply cap bead of elastomeric sealant over exposed edge of tape.

3.05 SEALANT GLAZING (WET)

A. Install continuous spacers, or spacers combined with cylindrical sealant backing, between glass lites and glazing stops to maintain glass face clearances and to prevent sealant from extruding into glass channel and blocking weep systems until sealants cure. Secure spacers or spacers and backings in place and in position to control depth of installed sealant relative to edge clearance for optimum sealant performance.

B. Force sealants into glazing channels to eliminate voids and to ensure complete wetting or bond of sealant to glass and channel surfaces.

C. Tool exposed surfaces of sealants to provide a substantial wash away from glass.

3.06 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

A. Protect exterior glass from damage immediately after installation by attaching crossed streamers to framing held away from glass. Do not apply markers to glass surface. Remove nonpermanent labels and clean surfaces.

B. Protect glass from contact with contaminating substances resulting from construction operations. If, despite such protection, contaminating substances do come into contact with glass, remove substances immediately as recommended in writing by glass manufacturer.

C. Examine glass surfaces adjacent to or below exterior concrete and other masonry surfaces at frequent intervals during construction, but not less than once a month, for buildup of dirt, scum, alkaline deposits, or stains; remove as recommended in writing by glass manufacturer.

D. Remove and replace glass that is broken, chipped, cracked, or abraded or that is damaged from natural causes, accidents, and vandalism, during construction period.

E. Wash glass on both exposed surfaces in each area of Project not more than four days before date scheduled for inspections that establish date of Substantial Completion. Wash glass as recommended in writing by glass manufacturer.

END OF SECTION 08 80 00

SECTION 08 83 00 – MIRRORS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.01 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.02 SUMMARY

A. Section includes the following types of silvered flat glass mirrors:
   1. Annealed monolithic glass mirrors.

B. Related Sections:
   1. Division 06 Section "Rough Carpentry."
   2. Division 09 Section "Gypsum Board."
   3. Division 10 Section "Toilet, Bath, and Laundry Accessories."

1.03 SUBMITTALS

A. Comply with pertinent provisions of Division 01 Section “Submittal Procedures, unless otherwise indicated.”

B. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
   1. Mirrors. Include description of materials and process used to produce each type of silvered flat glass mirror specified that indicates sources of glass, glass coating components, edge sealer, and quality-control provisions.

C. Shop Drawings: Include mirror elevations, edge details, mirror hardware, and attachments to other work.

D. Samples: For each type of the following products:
   1. Mirrors: 12 inches square, including edge treatment on two adjoining edges.
   2. Mirror Clips: Full size.
   3. Mirror Trim: 12 inches long.

E. Qualification Data: For qualified Installer.

F. Product Certificates: For each type of mirror, from manufacturer.

G. Maintenance Data: For mirrors to include in maintenance manuals.

H. Warranty: Sample of special warranty.

1.04 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Installer Qualifications: A qualified installer who employs glass installers for this Project who are certified under the National Glass Association's Certified Glass Installer Program.

B. Glazing Publications: Comply with the following published recommendations:
   1. GANA's "Glazing Manual" unless more stringent requirements are indicated. Refer to this publication for definitions of glass and glazing terms not otherwise defined in this Section or in referenced standards.
   2. GANA Mirror Division's "Mirrors, Handle with Extreme Care: Tips for the Professional on the Care and Handling of Mirrors."

C. Safety Glazing Products: For laminated mirrors, provide products complying with testing requirements in 16 CFR 1201 for Category II materials.

1.05 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Protect mirrors according to mirror manufacturer's written instructions and as needed to prevent damage to mirrors from moisture, condensation, temperature changes, direct exposure to sun, or other causes.

B. Comply with mirror manufacturer's written instructions for shipping, storing, and handling mirrors as needed to prevent deterioration of silvering, damage to edges, and abrasion of glass surfaces and applied coatings. Store indoors.

1.06 PROJECT CONDITIONS

A. Environmental Limitations: Do not install mirrors until ambient temperature and humidity conditions are maintained at levels indicated for final occupancy.

1.07 WARRANTY

A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer's standard form in which mirror manufacturer agrees to replace mirrors that deteriorate within specified warranty period. Deterioration of mirrors is defined as defects developed from normal use that are not attributed to mirror breakage or to maintaining and cleaning mirrors contrary to manufacturer's written instructions. Defects include discoloration, black spots, and clouding of the silver film.
   1. Warranty Period: Five years from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.01 SILVERED FLAT GLASS MIRRORS

A. Glass Mirrors, General: ASTM C 1503.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
   a. Avalon Glass and Mirror Company.
   b. Binswanger Mirror; a division of Vitro America, Inc.
   c. Donisi Mirror Company.
   d. Guardian Industries.
   e. Independent Mirror Industries, Inc.
   f. Lenoir Mirror Company.
   g. Virginia Mirror Company, Inc.

B. Clear Glass: Mirror Quality; ultraclear (low-iron) float glass with a minimum 91 percent visible light transmission.
   1. Nominal Thickness: 6.0 mm.

2.02 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

A. Setting Blocks: Elastomeric material with a Shore, Type A durometer hardness of 85, plus or minus 5.

B. Edge Sealer: Coating compatible with glass coating and approved by mirror manufacturer for use in protecting against silver deterioration at mirrored glass edges.

2.03 MIRROR HARDWARE

A. Top and Bottom Aluminum J-Channels: Aluminum extrusions with a return deep enough to produce a glazing channel to accommodate mirrors of thickness indicated and in lengths required to cover bottom and top edges of each mirror in a single piece.
   1. Bottom Trim: J-channels formed with front leg and back leg not less than 3/8 and 7/8 inch in height, respectively, and a thickness of not less than 0.05 inch.
      a. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
         1) C.R Laurence, Co., Inc.; CRL Standard "J" Channel.
   2. Top Trim: J-channels formed with front leg and back leg not less than 5/8 and 1 inch in height, respectively, and a thickness of not less than 0.062 inch.
      a. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
         1) C.R. Laurence, C. R. Co., Inc.; CRL Deep Nose "J" Channel.
   3. Finish: Clear bright anodized.

B. Fasteners: Fabricated of same basic metal and alloy as fastened metal and matching it in finished color and texture where fasteners are exposed.

C. Anchors and Inserts: Provide devices as required for mirror hardware installation. Provide toothed or lead-shield expansion-bolt devices for drilled-in-place anchors.

Provide galvanized anchors and inserts for applications on inside face of exterior walls and where indicated.

2.04 FABRICATION

A. Mirror Sizes: To suit Project conditions, cut mirrors to final sizes and shapes.

B. Cutouts: Fabricate cutouts for notches and holes in mirrors without marring visible surfaces. Locate and size cutouts so they fit closely around penetrations in mirrors.

C. Mirror Edge Treatment: Flat polished.
   1. Seal edges of mirrors with edge sealer after edge treatment to prevent chemical or atmospheric penetration of glass coating.
   2. Require mirror manufacturer to perform edge treatment and sealing in factory immediately after cutting to final sizes.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.01 EXAMINATION

A. Examine substrates, over which mirrors are to be mounted, with Installer present, for compliance with installation tolerances, substrate preparation, and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.

B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected and surfaces are dry.

3.02 INSTALLATION

A. General: Install mirrors to comply with mirror manufacturer's written instructions and with referenced GANA publications. Mount mirrors accurately in place in a manner that avoids distorting reflected images.

B. Provide a minimum air space of 1/8 inch between back of mirrors and mounting surface for air circulation between back of mirrors and face of mounting surface.

C. Wall-Mounted Mirrors: Install mirrors with mirror hardware. Attach mirror hardware securely to mounting surfaces with mechanical fasteners installed with anchors or inserts as applicable. Install fasteners so heads do not impose point loads on backs of mirrors.
   1. Top and Bottom Aluminum J-Channels: Provide setting blocks 1/8 inch thick by 4 inches long at quarter points. To prevent trapping water, provide, between setting blocks, two slotted weeps not less than 1/4 inch wide by 3/8 inch long at bottom channel.

2. Mirror Clips: Place a felt or plastic pad between mirror and each clip to prevent spalling of mirror edges. Locate clips so they are symmetrically placed and evenly spaced.

3.03 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

A. Protect mirrors from breakage and contaminating substances resulting from construction operations.

B. Do not permit edges of mirrors to be exposed to standing water.

C. Maintain environmental conditions that will prevent mirrors from being exposed to moisture from condensation or other sources for continuous periods of time.

D. Wash exposed surface of mirrors not more than four days before date scheduled for inspections that establish date of Substantial Completion. Wash mirrors as recommended in writing by mirror manufacturer.

END OF SECTION 08 83 00

SECTION 08 90 00 - LOUVERS & VENTS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.01 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Standard Form of Construction Agreement, including General and Special Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.02 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:
   1. Extent of louvers is indicated on drawings, including sizes and locations. Coordinate the size and locations with architectural and mechanical drawings and specifications.

B. Related Sections include the following:
   1. Division 07 Section “Joint Sealants.”

1.03 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Performance Requirements: Where louvers are indicated to comply with specific performance requirements, provide units whose performance ratings have been determined in compliance with Air Movement and Control Association (AMCA) Standard 500.

B. Comply with SMACNA "Architectural Sheet Metal Manual" recommendation for fabrication, construction details and installation procedures, except as otherwise indicated.

C. Field Measurements: Verify size, location and placement of louver units prior to fabrication, wherever possible.

D. Shop Assembly: Coordinate field measurements and shop drawings with fabrication and shop assembly to minimize field adjustments, splicing, mechanical joints and field assembly of units. Pre-assemble units in shop to greatest extent possible and disassemble as necessary for shipping and handling limitations. Clearly mark units for re-assembly and coordination.

1.04 SUBMITTALS

A. Comply with pertinent provisions of Division 01 Section "Submittal Procedures, unless otherwise indicated."

B. Product Data: Submit manufacturer's specifications and installation instructions for required products, including finishes.

C. Shop Drawings: Submit shop drawings for fabrication and erection of louver units and accessories. Include plans, elevations and details of sections and connections to adjoining work. Indicate materials, finishes, fasteners, joinery and other information to determine compliance with specified requirements. Submit complete line of premium and standard color samples (12 colors minimum) for selection by Architect.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.01 MATERIALS

A. Horizontal Blade Louvers: Equal to Greenheck # ESJ-401, 45 degree slope. Thickness not less than 0.081" for frames and extruded aluminum blades (ASTM B 221, Alloy 6063-T53). Finish shall be factory applied, high performance, 2-Coat 70% Kynar 550® / Hynar® AAMA 2605. Color as selected by architect from manufacturer's full line of standard and premium colors.

B. Louver Screens: Provide frames consisting of U-shaped metal for permanently securing insect screen mesh and bird screen. Locate screens on inside face of louvers. Secure screens to louver frames with machine screws, spaced at each corner and at 12" o.c. between.

C. Fastenings: Fasteners for exterior applications may be hot-dip galvanized, stainless steel or aluminum.

D. Anchors and Inserts: Use non-ferrous metal or hot-dip galvanized anchors and inserts. Furnish inserts, as required, to be set into concrete or masonry work.

2.02 FABRICATION

A. Provide louvers and accessories of design, materials, sizes, depth, arrangement, and metal thicknesses indicated, or if not indicated, as required for optimum performance with respect to airflow; water penetration; air leakage, where applicable (for adjustable units, if any); strength; durability; and uniform appearance.

B. Fabricate frames including integral sills to suit adjacent construction with tolerances for installation including application of sealants in joints between louvers and adjoining work.

C. Include supports, anchorage, caulk, and accessories required for complete assembly.

D. Provide vertical mullions of type and at spacing recommended by manufacturer or 72" o.c., whichever is less. No intermediate.

E. Join Frame members to one another and to stationary louver blades by spline screws, except where indicated otherwise or where field bolted connections between frame members are made necessary by size of louvers. Maintain equal blade spacing including separation between blades and frames at head and sill to produce uniform appearance.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.01 PREPARATION

A. Coordinate setting drawings, diagrams, templates, instructions and directions for installation of anchorage which are to be embedded in concrete or masonry construction. Coordinate delivery of such items to project site.

3.02 INSTALLATION

A. Locate and place louver units plumb, level and in proper alignment with adjacent work.

B. Use concealed anchorage wherever possible. Provide brass or lead washers fitted to screws where required to protect metal surfaces and to make a weathertight connection.

C. Form tight joints with exposed connections accurately fitted together. Provide reveals and openings for sealants and joint fillers, as indicated.

D. Repair finishes damaged by cutting, welding, soldering and grinding operations require for fitting and jointing. Restore finishes so there is no evidence of corrective work. Return items which cannot be refinished in field to shop, make required alterations, and refinish entire unit, or provide new units, at Contractor's option.

END OF SECTION 08 90 00

ROCIP Project: Withhold insurance cost. Please refer to sections 00425 & 00810 for information.

SECTION 09 22 26 - METAL SUSPENSION SYSTEMS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.01 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.02 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes: Metal suspension support and framing components for interior and exterior gypsum wallboard, plaster and stucco ceilings and soffits.

B. Related Documents: The Contract Documents, as defined in Division 1 Section - Summary of Work, apply to the Work of this Section. Additional requirements and information necessary to complete the Work of this Section may be found in other Documents.

C. Related Sections include the following:
   1. Division 09 Section “Gypsum Wallboard.”
   2. Division 09 Section “Acoustical Ceiling Suspension Members.”

1.03 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Design Criteria:
   1. All suspended ceiling/soffit suspension systems installed so that deflection of finished surface does not exceed 1/360 of span.
   2. Exterior soffit supports and bracing designed and installed to withstand an I-90 uniform wind uplift loading condition.

1.04 PRODUCT DELIVERY, STORAGE AND HANDLING

A. Deliver materials in original containers with brand or manufacturer's label attached. Protect metal materials from dampness or wetting. Store metallic materials and accessories indoors off floor.

PART 2 - PRODUCT

2.01 PRODUCTS

A. Carrying Channels: 1-1/2 inch 16 ga. galvanized steel channels with minimum weight of 475 lbs. per 1,000 lineal feet.

B. Furring Channels: 3/4 inch 16 ga. galvanized steel cold-rolled channels with minimum weight of 300 lbs. per 1,000 lineal feet.

C. Hat Channels at Gypsum Board Ceilings: 7/8 inch 25 ga. galvanized roll formed furring channels.

D. Tie Wire: 16 Ga. galvanized steel wire for tying channel iron to framing members.

E. Hangers: 8 Ga. galvanized annealed steel wire.

F. Furring Channels: 7/8” Roll-formed hat-shaped section of minimum 25 gauge galvanized steel for use at gypsum panel ceiling.

G. Fasteners: 1" Type S screws.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.01 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

A. Wire-tying:
   1. Splicing: Double wrap tie.
   2. Horizontal stiffeners to channel brackets: Figure eight tie.
   3. Framing members perpendicular to each other: Saddle tie.

B. Workmanship: Work erected in perfect condition, level plumb, true and rigid with all requisite bracing and stiffening members provided as required.

3.02 FURRING & SUSPENDED CEILINGS & SOFFITS

A. Attach hangers to structure at maximum 48" o.c. in direction of carrying channels and 36" o.c. in direction of cross furring and in accordance with manufacturer's instructions. Hanger design and spacing as required to meet design criteria. Hangers also installed within 6" of perimeter walls and ends of main runner channels.

B. Maximum allowable spacing of main runners, 48" O.C.; cross furring 12" O.C..

C. Furring securely wire tied and of ample strength to support required load without deflections exceeding design criteria. Do not continue furring continuous across

control or expansion joints. Position and level carrying channel and saddle-tie securely with hanger wire.

D. Position 3/4" cross furring across carrying channels and saddle tie to carrying channels with three strands of 18 ga. tie wire.

E. Install vertical bracing as required for wind uplift loading, per I-90 requirements, or maximum 4’-0” o.c.e.w. Vertical bracing shall be 3-5/8” 18 gauge steel studs.

3.03 METAL ACCESSORIES

A. All openings, edges or where gypsum board edges terminate against dissimilar materials provide metal edges. Cornerites used at all junctions, corners, etc., unless otherwise noted. All exposed vertical and horizontal corners protected with corner beads.

END OF SECTION 09 22 26

ROCIP Project: Withhold insurance cost. Please refer to sections 00425 & 00810 for information.

SECTION 09 29 00 - GYPSUM BOARD

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.01 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.02 SUMMARY

A. This Section includes the following:
   1. Interior gypsum board.
   2. Tile backing panels.

B. Related Sections include the following:
   1. Division 01 Section "Sustainable Construction Requirements."
   2. Division 06 Section "Rough Carpentry."
   3. Division 06 Section "Wood Framing."
   4. Division 07 Section "Thermal Insulation."
   5. Division 09 Section "Tiling."
   6. Division 09 Sections "Painting."

1.03 PRODUCT DELIVERY, STORAGE AND HANDLING

A. Deliver materials with manufacturer's label attached. Protect materials from dampness or wetting. Remove any damaged materials.

1.04 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.

B. Certificate: Furnish certificate evidencing that material meets or exceeds specification and fire rating requirement.

C. Samples: For the following products:
   1. Trim Accessories: Full-size Sample in 12-inch long length for each trim accessory indicated.
   2. Textured Finishes: Provide mockup of texture finish for all walls.

D. LEED Submittals:
   1. Product Data for Credit MR 4: Product data and certification letter indicating percentages by weight of post-consumer and pre-consumer recycled content for products having recycled content.

a. Include statement indicating cost for each product having recycled content.

2. Product Data for Credit IEQ 4.1: Product data for adhesives and sealants used inside the weatherproofing system indicating VOC content of each product used.
   a. Indicate VOC content in g/L calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
3. Product Data for Credit IEQ 4.2: Product data for paints and coatings used inside the weatherproofing system indicating chemical composition and VOC content of each product used.
   a. Indicate VOC content in g/L calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).

1.05 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Gypsum Board Standard: GA 216 by Gypsum Association.

B. Tolerances: 1/8" Offsets between planes of board faces and 1/4" in 8'-0" for plumb, level, warp and bow.

C. Fire-Resistance-Rated Assemblies: For fire-resistance-rated assemblies, provide materials and construction identical to those tested in assembly indicated according to ASTM E 119 by an independent testing agency.

1.06 STORAGE AND HANDLING

A. Store materials inside under cover and keep them dry and protected against damage from weather, condensation, direct sunlight, construction traffic, and other causes. Stack panels flat to prevent sagging.

1.07 PROJECT CONDITIONS

A. Environmental Limitations: Comply with ASTM C 840 requirements or gypsum board manufacturer's written recommendations, whichever are more stringent.

B. Do not install interior products until installation areas are enclosed and conditioned.

C. Do not install panels that are wet, those that are moisture damaged or those that are mold damaged.
   1. Indications that panels are wet or moisture damaged include, but are not limited to, discoloration, sagging, or irregular shape.
   2. Indications that panels are mold damaged include, but are not limited to, fuzzy or splotchy surface contamination and discoloration.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.01 PANELS, GENERAL

A. Size: Provide in maximum lengths and widths available that will minimize joints in each area and that correspond with support system indicated.

B. Materials on project must be supplied by one manufacturer throughout.

2.02 INTERIOR GYPSUM BOARD

A. General: Complying with ASTM C 36/C 36M or ASTM C 1396/C 1396M, as applicable to type of gypsum board indicated and whichever is more stringent.
   1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
      a. National Gypsum Company.
      b. USG Corporation.

B. Moisture Resistant Gypsum Board: Use at restrooms, Janitor closets, and utility rooms with plumbing fixtures.

C. Type X Gypsum Board:
   1. Thickness: 5/8 inch.
   2. Long Edges: Tapered.

2.03 TILE BACKING PANELS

A. Water-Resistant Gypsum Backing Board: ASTM C 630/C 630M or ASTM C 1396/C 1396M.
   1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
      a. National Gypsum Company.
      b. USG Corporation.

B. Cementitious Backer Units: ANSI A118.9.
   1. Available Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
      a. USG Corporation; DUROCK Cement Board.
   2. Thickness: 5/8 inch.

2.04 TRIM ACCESSORIES

A. Interior Trim: ASTM C 1047.
   1. Material: Galvanized steel sheet or rolled zinc.
   2. Shapes:
      a. Cornerbead.
      b. Furring channels 7/8” x 1-1/4” galvanized steel hat shaped sections, depth as indicated on drawings.
      c. LC-Bead: J-shaped; exposed long flange receives joint compound.
      d. L-Bead: L-shaped; exposed long flange receives joint compound.

e. U-Bead: J-shaped; exposed short flange does not receive joint compound.
f. Expansion (control) joint.
g. Z-Furring Channels.
h. Reveal Molding: Fry Reglet “F”.

2.05 JOINT TREATMENT MATERIALS

A. General: Comply with ASTM C 475/C 475M.

B. Joint Tape:
1. Interior Gypsum Wallboard: Paper. USG Perf-A-Tape Finish System.
2. Glass-Mat Gypsum Sheathing Board: 10-by-10 glass mesh.
3. Tile Backing Panels: As recommended by panel manufacturer.

C. Joint Compound for Interior Gypsum Wallboard: For each coat use formulation that is compatible with other compounds applied on previous or for successive coats.
1. Joint Treatment. USG Durabond 90 Joint Compound for pre-filling; USG Durabond Joint Compound Taping; USG Reddy Mix Joint Topping.

D. Joint Compound for Tile Backing Panels:
1. Water-Resistant Gypsum Backing Board: Use setting-type taping compound and setting-type, sandable topping compound.
2. Cementitious Backer Units: As recommended by backer unit manufacturer.

2.06 AUXILIARY MATERIALS

A. General: Provide auxiliary materials that comply with referenced installation standards and manufacturer's written recommendations.

B. Laminating Adhesive: Adhesive or joint compound recommended for directly adhering gypsum panels to continuous substrate.
1. Use adhesives that have a VOC content of 50 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).

C. Steel Drill Screws: ASTM C 1002, unless otherwise indicated.
1. Use screws complying with ASTM C 954 for fastening panels to steel members from 0.033 to 0.112 inch thick.
2. For fastening cementitious backer units, use screws of type and size recommended by panel manufacturer.

D. Sound Attenuation Blankets: As specified in Division 09 Section “Acoustical Insulation.”
1. Fire-Resistance-Rated Assemblies: Comply with mineral-fiber requirements of assembly.

E. Acoustical Sealant: As specified in Division 07 Section "Joint Sealants."

F. Thermal Insulation: As specified in Division 07 Section "Thermal Insulation."

2.07 TEXTURE FINISHES

A. Primer: As recommended by textured finish manufacturer.
   1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
      a. G-P Gypsum; Georgia-Pacific Toughrock Regency Ceiling Textures/Polystyrene.
      b. National Gypsum Company; Perfect Spray.
      c. USG Corporation; SHEETROCK Ceiling Spray Texture, QT.
   2. Texture: Light Orange Peel.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.01 EXAMINATION

A. Examine areas and substrates, with Installer present, and including welded hollow-metal frames and framing, for compliance with requirements and other conditions affecting performance.

B. Examine panels before installation. Reject panels that are wet, moisture damaged, and mold damaged.

C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.02 APPLYING AND FINISHING PANELS, GENERAL

A. Comply with ASTM C 840.

B. Install ceiling panels across framing to minimize the number of abutting end joints and to avoid abutting end joints in central area of each ceiling. Stagger abutting end joints of adjacent panels not less than one framing member.

C. Install panels with face side out. Butt panels together for a light contact at edges and ends with not more than 1/16 inch of open space between panels. Do not force into place.

D. Locate edge and end joints over supports, except in ceiling applications where intermediate supports or gypsum board back-blocking is provided behind end joints. Do not place tapered edges against cut edges or ends. Stagger vertical joints on opposite sides of partitions. Do not make joints other than control joints at corners of framed openings.

E. Form control and expansion joints with space between edges of adjoining gypsum panels.

F. Cover both faces of support framing with gypsum panels in concealed spaces (above ceilings, etc.), except in chases braced internally.
   1. Unless concealed application is indicated or required for sound, fire, air, or smoke ratings, coverage shall be accomplished with scraps of not less than 8 sq. ft. in area.
   2. Fit gypsum panels around ducts, pipes, and conduits.
   3. Where partitions intersect structural members projecting below underside of floor/roof slabs and decks, cut gypsum panels to fit profile formed by structural members; allow 1/4- to 3/8-inch wide joints to install sealant.

G. Isolate perimeter of gypsum board applied to non-load-bearing partitions at structural abutments, except floors. Provide 1/4- to 1/2-inch wide spaces at these locations, and trim edges with edge trim where edges of panels are exposed. Seal joints between edges and abutting structural surfaces with acoustical sealant.

H. Attachment to Steel Framing: Attach panels so leading edge or end of each panel is attached to open (unsupported) edges of stud flanges first.

I. Install sound attenuation blankets before installing gypsum panels, unless blankets are readily installed after panels have been installed on one side.

J. Joint Treatment Application:
   1. Joint treatment compounds and products, as specified under Materials, shall be mixed and applied in accordance with manufacturer's direction to completely conceal all joints and screw depressions and provide a smooth surface to receive finishes as scheduled.

3.03 FINISH

A. Apply gypsum board finish in accordance with manufacturer's published instructions and GA-214 Finish Levels.
   1. Level 4: All joints and interior angles shall have tape embedded in joint compound and two separate coats of joint compound applied over interior angles. Fastener heads and accessories shall be covered with three separate coats of joint compound. All joint compound shall be smooth and free of tool marks and ridges.
   2. Prepared surface shall be coated with a primer/sealer prior to the application of finish paint. Refer to specification Division 09: Section "Painting".
      a. Application: For use where gloss semi-gloss, enamel, or nontextured flat paints are specified or where severe lighting conditions occur. Generally in all areas except where noted otherwise.

3.04 APPLYING INTERIOR GYPSUM BOARD

A. Install interior gypsum board in the following locations:
   1. Type X: As indicated on Drawings.
   2. Moisture- and Mold-Resistant Type: As indicated on Drawings in all wet areas.

B. Single-Layer Application:
   1. On ceilings, apply gypsum panels before wall/partition board application to greatest extent possible and at right angles to framing, unless otherwise indicated.
   2. On partitions/walls, apply gypsum panels horizontally, unless otherwise indicated or required by fire-resistance-rated assembly, and minimize end joints.
      a. Stagger abutting end joints not less than one framing member in alternate courses of panels.
      b. At stairwells and other high walls, install panels horizontally, unless otherwise indicated or required by fire-resistance-rated assembly.

C. Multilayer Application:
   1. On ceilings, apply gypsum board indicated for base layers before applying base layers on walls/partitions; apply face layers in same sequence. Apply base layers at right angles to framing members and offset face-layer joints 1 framing member, 16 inches minimum, from parallel base-layer joints, unless otherwise indicated or required by fire-resistance-rated assembly.
   2. On partitions/walls, apply gypsum board indicated for base layers and face layers vertically (parallel to framing) with joints of base layers located over stud or furring member and face-layer joints offset at least one stud or furring member with base-layer joints, unless otherwise indicated or required by fire-resistance-rated assembly. Stagger joints on opposite sides of partitions.
   3. Fastening Methods: Fasten base layers and face layers separately to supports with screws.
   4. Rated partitions shall have wall board continuous both sides above ceiling to deck and fire taped.

3.05 APPLYING TILE BACKING PANELS

A. Cementitious Backer Units: Install behind tile at restrooms and where indicated on drawings, according to ANSI A108.11.

B. Where tile backing panels abut other types of panels in same plane, shim surfaces to produce a uniform plane across panel surfaces.

C. Seal ends, cut edges and penetrations of each piece with water resistant compound before installation.

D. Tape & mortar over all joints prior to tile installation and as required to receive tile waterproofing system.

3.06 INSTALLING TRIM ACCESSORIES

A. General: For trim with back flanges intended for fasteners, attach to framing with same fasteners used for panels. Otherwise, attach trim according to manufacturer's written instructions.
   1. Control Joints: Install where detailed, at changes in backup material and in partitions 30'-0" O.C. unless otherwise noted.

B. Interior Trim: Install in the following locations:
   1. Cornerbead: Use at outside corners, unless otherwise indicated.
   2. LC-Bead: Use at exposed panel edges; install on external corners with suitable fasteners spaced 9" O.C.
   3. L-Bead: Use where indicated; install on external corners with suitable fasteners spaced 9" O.C.
   4. U-Bead: Use at exposed panel edges where indicated; install on external corners with suitable fasteners spaced 9" O.C.
   5. Metal Trim: Install over face layer with fasteners spaced 9" O.C. where shown and where gypsum surfaces meet dissimilar materials.
   6. Reveal Molding: Use where indicated; install with suitable fasteners spaced 9” on center.

3.07 FINISHING GYPSUM BOARD

A. General: Treat gypsum board joints, interior angles, edge trim, control joints, penetrations, fastener heads, surface defects, and elsewhere as required to prepare gypsum board surfaces for decoration. Promptly remove residual joint compound from adjacent surfaces.

B. Prefill open joints and damaged surface areas.

C. Apply joint tape over gypsum board joints, except those with trim having flanges not intended for tape.

D. Gypsum Board Finish Levels: Finish panels to levels indicated below and according to ASTM C 840:

E. Gypsum Board Finish Levels: Finish panels to levels indicated below, according to ASTM C 840, for locations indicated:
   1. Level 1: Embed tape at joints in ceiling plenum areas, concealed areas, and where indicated, unless a higher level of finish is required for fire-resistance-rated assemblies and sound-rated assemblies.
   2. Level 2: Embed tape and apply separate first coat of joint compound to tape, fasteners, and trim flanges where panels are substrate for tile and where indicated.
   3. Level 4: Embed tape and apply separate first, fill, and finish coats of joint compound to tape, fasteners, and trim flanges, and apply spray applied level 4 finish, typical, where panels are to receive paint, typical.
      a. At panel surfaces that will be exposed to view.
      b. Primer and its application to surfaces are specified in other Division 09 Sections.
   4. Level 5: Embed tape and apply separate first, fill, and finish coats of joint compound to tape, fasteners, and trim flanges, and apply spray applied level 5 finish equal to rapid deco level 5 by lafarge over entire surface, typical, at corridors where panels are to receive paint.

3.08 APPLYING TEXTURE FINISHES

A. Surface Preparation and Primer: Prepare and apply primer to gypsum panels and other surfaces receiving texture finishes. Apply primer to surfaces that are clean, dry, and smooth.

B. Texture Finish Application: Mix and apply finish using powered spray equipment, to produce a uniform texture free of starved spots or other evidence of thin application or of application patterns.

C. Prevent texture finishes from coming into contact with surfaces not indicated to receive texture finish by covering them with masking agents, polyethylene film, or other means. If, despite these precautions, texture finishes contact these surfaces, immediately remove droppings and overspray to prevent damage according to texture-finish manufacturer's written recommendations.

3.09 PROTECTION

A. Protect installed products from damage from weather, condensation, direct sunlight, construction, and other causes during remainder of the construction period.

B. Remove and replace panels that are wet, moisture damaged, and mold damaged.
   1. Indications that panels are wet or moisture damaged include, but are not limited to, discoloration, sagging, or irregular shape.
   2. Indications that panels are mold damaged include, but are not limited to, fuzzy or splotchy surface contamination and discoloration.

3.10 CONSTRUCTION

A. Interface with Other Work:
   1. Coordinate installation of firestopping at penetrations through fire-resistive rated gypsum board partitions.
   2. Coordinate installation of joint sealers specified in Division 7: Section Sealants at penetrations of non fire-restive rated partitions.

3.11 PATCHING

A. Contractor shall repair and patch around penetrations in walls where piping, ductwork, conduit, cables, etc. are required.

3.12 CLEANING

A. Contractor shall completely clean all areas affected by this work and shall leave no excess or scrap materials or bedding compound on the job site.

END OF SECTION 09 29 00

SECTION 09 30 00 - TILING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.01 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.02 SUMMARY

A. This Section includes the following:
   1. Interior gypsum board.
   2. Tile backing panels.

B. Section Includes:
   1. Ceramic tile.
   2. Stone thresholds installed as part of tile installations.
   3. Waterproof membrane for tile installations.
   4. Cementitious backer units installed as part of tile installations.
   5. Metal edge strips installed as part of tile installations.

C. Related Sections include the following:
   1. Division 03 Section "Cast-in-Place Concrete."
   2. Division 07 Section "Joint Sealants."
   3. Division 09 Section "Gypsum Board."

1.03 DEFINITIONS

A. Module Size: Actual tile size (minor facial dimension as measured per ASTM C 499) plus joint width indicated.

B. Facial Dimension: Actual tile size (minor facial dimension as measured per ASTM C 499).

C. Facial Dimension: Nominal tile size as defined in ANSI A137.1.

1.04 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Static Coefficient of Friction: For tile installed on walkway surfaces, provide products with the following values as determined by testing identical products per ASTM C 1028:
   1. Level Surfaces: Minimum 0.6.

ROCIP Project: Withhold insurance cost. Please refer to sections 00425 & 00810 for information.

1.05 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.

B. LEED Submittals:
   1. Product Data for Credit IEQ 4.1: For adhesives and sealants, documentation including printed statement of VOC content.
   2. Product Data for Credit IEQ 4.3: For adhesives and grouts, documentation including printed statement of VOC content.
   3. Product Data for Credit IEQ 4.3: For tile floors, documentation from an independent testing agency indicating compliance with the FloorScore Standard.
   4. Laboratory Test Reports for Credit IEQ 4: For adhesives sealants and tile flooring systems, documentation indicating that products comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."

C. Shop Drawings: Show locations of each type of tile and tile pattern. Show widths, details, and locations of expansion, contraction, control, and isolation joints in tile substrates and finished tile surfaces.

D. Samples for Initial Selection: For each type of tile indicated. Submit complete line of grout color for selection by Architect. Include Samples of accessories involving color selection.

E. Samples for Verification:
   1. Full-size units of each type and composition of tile and for each color and finish required.
   2. Assembled samples with grouted joints for each type and composition of tile and for each color and finish required, at least 12 inches square and mounted on rigid panel. Use grout of type and in color or colors approved for completed work.
   3. Full-size units of each type of trim and accessory for each color and finish required.
   4. Stone thresholds in 6-inch lengths.
   5. Metal edge strips in 6-inch lengths.

F. Master Grade Certificates: For each shipment, type, and composition of tile, signed by tile manufacturer and Installer.

G. Product Certificates: For each type of product, signed by product manufacturer.

H. Qualification Data: For Installer.

I. Material Test Reports: For each tile-setting and grouting product and special-purpose tile.

1.06 MAINTENANCE MATERIALS

A. Furnish extra materials that match and are from same production runs as products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
   1. Tile and Trim Units: Furnish quantity of full-size units equal to 3 percent of amount installed for each type, composition, color, pattern, and size indicated.
   2. Grout: Furnish quantity of grout equal to 3 percent of amount installed for each type, composition, and color indicated.

1.07 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Qualifications of Installers: For cutting, installing and grouting of ceramic tile, use only thoroughly trained and experienced journeyman tile setters who are completely familiar with the requirements of this work, and the recommendations contained in the referenced standards.

B. Codes and Standards: In addition to complying with all pertinent codes and regulations, comply with the following:
   1. Grout and mortar setting shall comply with, ANSI A108.4 and ANSI A 108.5.
   2. Manufacture all ceramic tile in accordance with Standard Grade Requirements of ANSI 137.1.
   3. Install all ceramic tile in accordance with the recommendations contained in Handbook for Ceramic Tile Installation of the Tile Council of America, Inc., latest edition.

C. Source Limitations for Tile: Obtain all tile of same type and color or finish from one source or producer.
   1. Obtain tile from same production run and of consistent quality in appearance and physical properties for each contiguous area.

D. Source Limitations for Setting and Grouting Materials: Obtain ingredients of a uniform quality for each mortar, adhesive, and grout component from a single manufacturer and each aggregate from one source or producer.

E. Source Limitations for Other Products: Obtain each of the following products specified in this Section through one source from a single manufacturer for each product:
   1. Stone thresholds.
   2. Waterproofing.
   3. Joint sealants.
   4. Cementitious backer units.
   5. Metal edge strips.

F. Mockups: Build mockups to demonstrate aesthetic effects.
   1. Build mockup of each type of floor tile installation.

2. Build mockup of each type of wall tile installation.
3. Approved mockups may become part of the completed Work if undisturbed at time of Substantial Completion.

1.08 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Deliver and store packaged materials in original containers with seals unbroken and labels intact until time of use. Comply with requirement in ANSI A137.1 for labeling sealed tile packages.

B. Store tile and cementitious materials on elevated platforms, under cover, and in a dry location.

C. Store aggregates where grading and other required characteristics can be maintained and contamination avoided.

D. Store liquid latexes and emulsion adhesives in unopened containers and protected from freezing.

E. Handle tile that has temporary protective coating on exposed surfaces to prevent coated surfaces from contacting backs or edges of other units. If coating does contact bonding surfaces of tile, remove coating from bonding surfaces before setting tile.

1.09 PROJECT CONDITIONS

A. Environmental Limitations: Do not install tile until construction in spaces is complete and ambient temperature and humidity conditions are maintained at the levels indicated in referenced standards and manufacturer's written instructions.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.01 MANUFACTURERS

A. The following requirements apply for product selection:
1. Basis-of-Design Product: The design for each tile type is based on the product named. Subject to compliance with requirements, provide either the named product or an approved comparable product by another manufacturer.
2. Available Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the products specified.
3. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the products specified.
4. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the manufacturer specified.

5. Basis-of-Design Product: The design for each tile type is based on the product named in the drawings. Subject to compliance with requirements, provide either the named product or an approved comparable product by another manufacturer.

2.02 PRODUCTS, GENERAL

A. ANSI Ceramic Tile Standard: Provide tile that complies with ANSI A137.1, "Specifications for Ceramic Tile," for types, compositions, and other characteristics indicated.
   1. Provide tile complying with Standard grade requirements, unless otherwise indicated.
   2. For facial dimensions of tile, comply with requirements relating to tile sizes specified in Part 1 "Definitions" Article.

B. ANSI Standards for Tile Installation Materials: Provide materials complying with ANSI standards referenced in "Setting and Grouting Materials" Article.

C. Colors, Textures, and Patterns: Where manufacturer's standard products are indicated for tile, grout, and other products requiring selection of colors, surface textures, patterns, and other appearance characteristics, provide specific products or materials complying with the specified product.

D. Factory Blending: For tile exhibiting color variations within ranges selected during Sample submittals, blend tile in factory and package so tile units taken from one package show same range in colors as those taken from other packages and match approved Samples.

2.03 TILE PRODUCTS

A. Wall Porcelain Tile: Glazed porcelain ceramic tile. Size and type as indicated on drawings.

B. Floor Tile: Porcelain tile. Size and type as indicated on drawings.

C. Trim & Special Tile: Provide necessary caps, stops, coves, returns, trimmers, and other shapes as required for a complete installation. Items to be supplied by the same manufacturer supplying the tile.

D. Cove Base: Porcelain tile. Base to match tile color to be selected for the floor. Size and type as indicated on the drawings.

E. Cove Base Corner: Porcelain tile. Base to match tile color to be selected for the floor. Size and type as indicated on the drawings.

F. Wall Bullnose: Porcelain tile. Bullnose to match tile color to be selected for the wall. Size and type as indicated on the drawings.

G. Wall Bullnose Corner: Porcelain tile. Bullnose to match tile color to be selected for the wall. Size and type as indicated on the drawings.

H. Floor Bullnose: Porcelain tile. Bullnose to match tile color to be selected for the floor. Size and type as indicated on the drawings.

I. Outcorner: Porcelain tile. Base to match tile color to be selected for the floor. Size and type as indicated on the drawings. Porcelain tile

2.04 THRESHOLDS (AT ALL RESTROOMS)

A. General: Fabricate to sizes and profiles indicated or required to provide transition between adjacent floor finishes.
   1. Bevel edges at 1:2 slope, aligning lower edge of bevel with adjacent floor finish. Limit height of bevel to 1/2 inch or less, and finish bevel to match face of threshold.

B. Stone Thresholds: ASTM C 503 with a minimum abrasion resistance of 12 per ASTM C 1353 or ASTM C 241 and with honed finish.
   1. 7/8” Marble: Uniform, medium grained stone. Color to be selected by Architect from manufacturer’s standard colors.

2.05 WATERPROOFING FOR THIN-SET TILE INSTALLATIONS

A. General: Manufacturer’s standard product that complies with ANSI A118.10, selected from the following;

B. Waterproofing Membrane (Concrete Slabs).
   1. Flexible load-bearing, self-curing liquid rubber polymer and reinforcing fabric to form a seamless, heavy-duty waterproof membrane below a protective surface. Provide continuously under floor tile and behind wall tile:
      a. Laticrete “9235”, as manufactured by LATICRETE International, Inc.

C. Waterproofing and Uncoupling Membrane (Wood or Plywood Deck).
   1. Flexible polyethylene membrane with grid structure of square dovetail cavities, with anchoring fleece laminated to the underside.
      a. Schluter “Ditra”, as manufactured by Schluter-Systems L.P., Plattsburgh, NY (800) 472-4588.

2.06 SETTING AND GROUTING MATERIALS

A. Available Manufacturers:

1. LATICRETE International Inc.

B. Latex-Portland Cement Mortar (Thin Set): ANSI A118.4, consisting of the following:
   1. Prepackaged dry-mortar mix containing dry, redispersible, ethylene vinyl acetate additive to which only water must be added at Project site.
   a. For wall applications, provide nonsagging mortar that complies with Paragraph F-4.6.1 in addition to the other requirements in ANSI A118.4.
   b. Laticrete 211 Crete Filler powder additives gauged with Laticrete 4237 to achieve high strength adhesive latex mortar. Portland Cement mix and latex additive shall be as manufactured by Laticrete International, Inc.

C. Polymer-Modified Tile Grout: ANSI A118.7, color selected by Architect from manufacturer's standard colors.
   1. Polymer Type: Either ethylene vinyl acetate, in dry, redispersible form, prepackaged with other dry ingredients, or acrylic resin or styrene-butadiene rubber in liquid-latex form for addition to prepackaged dry-grout mix.
   a. Sanded grout mixture for joints 1/8 inch and wider.

D. Setting Beds: Latex Portland Cement Mortar.

E. Grout: Portland Cement grout with latex additive by Latricrete, Custom Products, L&M, or approved equal. Allow for two colors to be selected by Architect.

2.07 ELASTOMERIC SEALANTS

A. General: Provide manufacturer's standard chemically curing, elastomeric sealants of base polymer and characteristics indicated that comply with applicable requirements in Division 07 Section "Joint Sealants."

B. Colors: Provide colors of exposed sealants to match colors of grout in tile adjoining sealed joints, unless otherwise indicated.

C. One-Part, Mildew-Resistant Silicone Sealant: ASTM C 920; Type S; Grade NS; Class 25; Uses NT, G, A, and, as applicable to nonporous joint substrates indicated, O; formulated with fungicide, intended for sealing interior ceramic tile joints and other nonporous substrates that are subject to in-service exposures of high humidity and extreme temperatures.
   1. Available Products:
   a. Dow Corning Corporation; Dow Corning 786 Silicone Sealant.
   b. GE Silicones; SC 1700, Sanitary.
   c. Pecora Corporation; 898 Sanitary Mildew Resistant Silicone Sealant.

D. Multipart, Pourable Urethane Sealant for Use T: ASTM C 920; Type M; Grade P; Class 25; Uses T, M, A, and, as applicable to joint substrates indicated, O.
   1. Available Products:
   a. Bostik; Chem-Calk 550.

b. Pecora Corporation; NR-200 Urexpan
c. Tremco, Inc.; Vulkem 245.
d. Tremco, Inc.; Exterior Product; THC-900.

2.08 CEMENTITIOUS BACKER UNITS

A. Provide 5/8” cementitious backer units at all walls to receive tile and on top of plywood subfoor/deck to receive waterproofing and tile. All walls in wet areas complying with ANSI A118.9 in maximum lengths available to minimize end-to-end butt joints re: Division 09 Section “Gypsum Board.”

2.09 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

A. Trowelable Underlayments and Patching Compounds: Latex-modified, portland cement-based formulation provided or approved by manufacturer of tile-setting materials for installations indicated.

B. Metal Edge Strips: Angle, J-shape or L-shape, height to match tile and setting-bed thickness, clear anodized aluminum or stainless steel by Schluter.
   1. Ceramic Tile to Carpet: "Reno-V" by Schluter.
   2. Ceramic Tile / Concrete: Reno-V by Schluter.
   3. Ceramic Tile (and Rubber Floor) to Concrete: "RENO-Ramp" by Schluter.
   4. Tile Wall Trim at vertical outside corners: "QUADEC" by Schluter.
      a. Provide end insert pieces at top side of wainscots, installed flush with top edges of adjacent tile wainscot.
   5. Inside Corners shall be soft sealant joint.

C. Tile Cleaner: A neutral cleaner capable of removing soil and residue without harming tile and grout surfaces, specifically approved for materials and installations indicated by tile and grout manufacturers.

D. Grout Sealer: Manufacturer's standard silicone product for sealing grout joints that does not change color or appearance of grout.
   1. Available Products:
      a. C-Cure; Penetrating Sealer 978.
      b. Custom Building Products; Grout and Tile Sealer.
      c. Summitville Tiles, Inc.; SL-15, Invisible Seal Penetrating Grout and Tile Sealer.

E. Top Sealer: "Aqua Mix Seal and Finish Low Sheen" by Custom Building Products or approved equal.

2.10 MIXING MORTARS AND GROUT

A. Mix mortars and grouts to comply with referenced standards and mortar and grout manufacturers' written instructions.

B. Add materials, water, and additives in accurate proportions.

C. Obtain and use type of mixing equipment, mixer speeds, mixing containers, mixing time, and other procedures to produce mortars and grouts of uniform quality with optimum performance characteristics for installations indicated.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.01 EXAMINATION

A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions where tile will be installed, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of installed tile.

1. Verify that substrates for setting tile are firm; dry; clean; free of oil, waxy films, and curing compounds; and within flatness tolerances required by referenced ANSI A108 Series of tile installation standards for installations indicated.
2. Verify that installation of grounds, anchors, recessed frames, electrical and mechanical units of work, and similar items located in or behind tile has been completed before installing tile.
3. Verify that joints and cracks in tile substrates are coordinated with tile joint locations; if not coordinated, adjust joint locations in consultation with Architect.

B. Contractor shall apply levelng coat or dry-set mortar over wall and floor surfaces which may vary more than 1-inch in 10 feet. Installation constitutes acceptance of the substrate.

C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.02 PREPARATION

A. Remove coatings, including curing compounds and other substances that contain soap, wax, oil, or silicone, that are incompatible with tile-setting materials.

B. Provide concrete substrates for tile floors installed with adhesives or thin-set mortar that comply with flatness tolerances specified in referenced ANSI A108 Series of tile installation standards.

1. Fill cracks, holes, and depressions with trowelable leveling and patching compound according to tile-setting material manufacturer's written instructions. Use product specifically recommended by tile-setting material manufacturer.

2. Remove protrusions, bumps, and ridges by sanding or grinding.
3. Blending: For tile exhibiting color variations within ranges selected during Sample submittals, verify that tile has been factory blended and packaged so tile units taken from one package show same range of colors as those taken from other packages and match approved Samples. If not factory blended, either return to manufacturer or blend tiles at Project site before installing.

3.03 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

A. ANSI Tile Installation Standards: Comply with parts of ANSI A108 Series "Specifications for Installation of Ceramic Tile" that apply to types of setting and grouting materials and to methods indicated in ceramic tile installation schedules.

B. TCA Installation Guidelines: TCA's "Handbook for Ceramic Tile Installation." Comply with TCA installation methods indicated in ceramic tile installation schedules.

C. Extend tile work into recesses and under or behind equipment and fixtures to form complete covering without interruptions, unless otherwise indicated. Terminate work neatly at obstructions, edges, and corners without disrupting pattern or joint alignments.

D. Accurately form intersections and returns. Perform cutting and drilling of tile without marring visible surfaces. Carefully grind cut edges of tile abutting trim, finish, or built-in items for straight aligned joints. Fit tile closely to electrical outlets, piping, fixtures, and other penetrations so plates, collars, or covers overlap tile.

E. Jointing Pattern: Lay tile in grid pattern, unless otherwise indicated. Align joints when adjoining tiles on floor, base, walls, and trim are same size. Lay out tile work and center tile fields in both directions in each space or on each wall area, unless otherwise indicated, adjust to minimize tile cutting. Provide uniform joint widths.

F. Expansion Joints: Locate expansion joints and other sealant-filled joints during installation of setting materials, mortar beds, and tile. Do not saw-cut joints after installing tiles.
   1. Locate joints in tile surfaces directly above joints in concrete substrates.
   2. Prepare joints and apply sealants to comply with requirements in Division 07 Section "Joint Sealants."

G. Grout tile to comply with requirements of the following tile installation standards:
   1. For ceramic tile grouts (sand-portland cement; dry-set, commercial portland cement; and latex-portland cement grouts), comply with ANSI A108.10.

H. Where indicated, install cementitious backer units and treat joints to comply with ANSI A108.11 and manufacturer's written instructions for type of application indicated.

3.04 WATERPROOFING INSTALLATION

A. Install waterproofing to comply with ANSI A108.13 and waterproofing manufacturer's written instructions to produce waterproof membrane of uniform thickness bonded securely to substrate.

B. Install waterproofing membrane under and behind tile in restrooms, at floor drain, over tile backer board and moisture resilient board at wall base and plywood subfloor, and over concrete floor substrate as shown on drawings.

C. Install waterproofing and uncoupling membrane under and behind tile in restrooms, and at floor drains, at wood or plywood subfloor, as shown on drawings.

D. Do not install tile over waterproofing until waterproofing has cured and been tested to determine that it is watertight.

3.05 FLOOR TILE INSTALLATION

A. General: Install tile to comply with requirements in the Floor Tile Installation Schedule, including those referencing TCA installation methods and ANSI A108 Series of tile installation standards.

B. Joint Widths: Install tile on floors with the following joint widths:
   1. Ceramic Tile: 1/8 inch.

C. Stone Thresholds: Install stone thresholds at locations indicated; set in same type of setting bed as abutting field tile, unless otherwise indicated.
   1. Set thresholds in latex-portland cement mortar for locations where mortar bed would otherwise be exposed above adjacent nontile floor finish.

D. Metal Edge Strips: Install at locations indicated or where exposed edge of tile flooring meets carpet, wood, vinyl composition tile, or other flooring that finishes flush with top of tile.

E. Grout Sealer: Apply grout sealer to cementitious grout joints according to grout-sealer manufacturer's written instructions. As soon as grout sealer has penetrated grout joints, remove excess sealer and sealer on tile faces by wiping with soft cloth.

3.06 WALL TILE INSTALLATION

A. Install types of tile designated for wall installations to comply with requirements in the Wall Tile Installation Schedule, including those referencing TCA installation methods and ANSI setting-bed standards.

B. Joint Widths: Install tile on walls with the following joint widths:
   1. Ceramic Tile: 1/8 inch.

C. Metal Edge Strips: Install at all locations indicated or as required to conceal exposed edge of tile:

1. Use full length pieces to the extent possible in order to minimize the number of joints.
2. Unless otherwise noted, install edge strips flush with faces of tile to within maximum lippage tolerances as specified for tile..
3. Install all strips and transitions set in mortar beneath tile, and per manufacturer's instructions.
4. At top of tile wainscots and other exposed edges of wall tile, install caulk joint between metal trim and wall. Do not grout to wall. Coordinate color with Architect and adjacent finishes.
5. Metal Trim at Showers: Install according to Manufacturer's instructions and as follows:

a. Unless otherwise detailed in Drawings, the open side of handicap accessible showers should be installed with metal trim edge creating a sloped lip 1/4" (minimum) to 1/2" (maximum) in total height, and compliant with ADA and Texas Accessibility Standards (TAS). Install trim at open side of shower flush with floor tile, and the low side of the trim flush with sloping tile inside the shower pan.

b. Install adjustable rake trim at rake sides of shower, with face of trim flush with wall tile above.

c. Install trim at low, slot drain side of shower with the top of trim aligned with the adjacent rake trim pieces.

3.07 CLEANING AND PROTECTING

A. Cleaning: On completion of placement and grouting, clean all ceramic tile surfaces so they are free of foreign matter.

1. Remove epoxy and latex-portland cement grout residue from tile as soon as possible.
2. Clean grout smears and haze from tile according to tile and grout manufacturer's written instructions, but no sooner than 10 days after installation. Use only cleaners recommended by tile and grout manufacturers and only after determining that cleaners are safe to use by testing on samples of tile and other surfaces to be cleaned. Protect metal surfaces and plumbing fixtures from effects of cleaning. Flush surfaces with clean water before and after cleaning.

B. When recommended by tile manufacturer, apply coat of neutral protective cleaner to completed tile walls and floors. Protect installed tile work with kraft paper or other heavy covering during construction period to prevent staining, damage, and wear.

C. Prohibit foot and wheel traffic from tiled floors for at least seven days after grouting is completed.

D. Before final inspection, remove protective coverings and rinse neutral cleaner from tile surfaces.

3.08 FLOOR TILE INSTALLATION SCHEDULE

A. Tile Installation as indicated: Interior floor installation on concrete; thin-set mortar over concrete slab; TCA F125 and ANSI A108.5.
   1. Tile Type: As indicated on drawings.
   2. Thin-Set Mortar: Latex- portland cement mortar.
   3. Grout: Polymer modified sanded cement grout.

END OF SECTION 09 30 00

ROCIP Project: Withhold insurance cost. Please refer to sections 00425 & 00810 for information.

SECTION 09 51 23 - ACOUSTICAL TILE CEILINGS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.01 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.02 SUMMARY

A. This Section includes acoustical tiles for ceilings and the following:
   1. Exposed suspension systems.

B. Related Sections include the following:
   1. Division 01 Section "Sustainable Construction Requirements."
   2. Division 06 Section "Wood Framing."
   3. Division 06 Section "Rough Carpentry."
   4. Division 09 Section "Metal Suspension Systems."

C. Products furnished, but not installed under this Section, include anchors, clips, and other ceiling attachment devices to be cast in concrete at ceilings.

1.03 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.

B. Coordination Drawings: Reflected ceiling plans, drawn to scale, on which the following items are shown and coordinated with each other, based on input from installers of the items involved:
   1. Ceiling suspension system members.
   2. Method of attaching hangers to building structure.
   3. Size and location of initial access modules for acoustical tile.
   4. Ceiling-mounted items including lighting fixtures, diffusers, grilles, speakers, sprinklers, access panels, and special moldings.
   5. Minimum Drawing Scale: 1/8 inch = 1 foot

C. Samples for Verification: For each component indicated and for each exposed finish required, prepared on Samples of size indicated below.
   1. Acoustical Tile: Set of full-size Samples of each type, color, pattern, and texture.
   2. Exposed Suspension System Members: 12-inch long Sample of each type.
   3. Exposed Moldings and Trim: Set of 12-inch long Samples of each type and color.

D. Maintenance Data: For finishes to include in maintenance manuals.

E. LEED Documentation Submittals;
   1. Product Data for Credit MR 4: Product data and certification letter indicating percentages by weight of post-consumer and pre-consumer recycled content for products having recycled content.
      a. Include statement indicating cost for each product having recycled content.

1.04 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Acoustical Testing Agency Qualifications: An independent testing laboratory, or an NVLAP-accredited laboratory, with the experience and capability to conduct the testing indicated. NVLAP-accredited laboratories must document accreditation, based on a "Certificate of Accreditation" and a "Scope of Accreditation" listing the test methods specified.

B. Source Limitations:
   1. Acoustical Ceiling Tile: Obtain each type through one source from a single manufacturer.
   2. Suspension System: Obtain each type through one source from a single manufacturer.

C. Fire Hazard Classification: Maximum flame spread, Class A (less than 25) as tested in accordance with ASTM E-84 and per Fed. Spec. SS-S-118a.

1.05 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Deliver acoustical tiles, suspension system components, and accessories to Project site in original, unopened packages and store them in a fully enclosed, conditioned space where they will be protected against damage from moisture, humidity, temperature extremes, direct sunlight, surface contamination, and other causes.

B. Before installing acoustical tiles, permit them to reach room temperature and a stabilized moisture content.

C. Handle acoustical tiles carefully to avoid chipping edges or damaging units in any way.

1.06 PROJECT CONDITIONS

A. Environmental Limitations: Do not install acoustical tile ceilings until spaces are enclosed and weatherproof, wet work in spaces is complete and dry, work above ceilings is complete, and ambient temperature and humidity conditions are maintained at the levels indicated for Project when occupied for its intended use.

1.07 COORDINATION

A. Coordinate layout and installation of acoustical tiles and suspension system with other construction that penetrates ceilings or is supported by them, including light fixtures, HVAC equipment, fire-suppression system, and partition assemblies.

1.08 EXTRA MATERIALS

A. Furnish extra materials described below that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
   1. Acoustical Ceiling Units: Full-size tiles equal to 2.0 percent of quantity installed.
   2. Suspension System Components: Quantity of each concealed grid and exposed component equal to 2.0 percent of quantity installed.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.01 ACOUSTICAL TILES, GENERAL

A. Acoustical Tile Colors and Patterns: Match appearance characteristics indicated for each product type.

B. Acoustical Tile Standard: Comply with ASTM E 1264.
   1. Recycled Content: Provide acoustical tiles with recycled content such that post-consumer recycled content plus one-half of preconsumer recycled content constitutes a minimum of 75 percent by weight.

C. Metal Suspension System Standard: Comply with ASTM C 635.
   1. Recycled Content: Provide products made from steel sheet with average recycled content such that postconsumer recycled content plus one-half of preconsumer recycled content is not less than 18 percent.

2.02 ACOUSTICAL TILES FOR ACOUSTICAL TILE CEILING

A. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
   1. Armstrong World Industries, Inc.; Dune Beveled Tegular.
   2. Color: White
   3. Thickness: 5/8 inch
   4. Modular Size: 24 by 24 inches

2.03 METAL SUSPENSION SYSTEMS, GENERAL

A. Metal Suspension System Standard: Provide manufacturer's standard metal suspension systems of types, structural classifications, and finishes indicated that comply with applicable requirements in ASTM C 635.

B. Finishes and Colors, General: Comply with NAAMM's "Metal Finishes Manual for Architectural and Metal Products" for recommendations for applying and designating

finishes. Provide manufacturer's standard factory-applied finish for type of system indicated.

C. Attachment Devices: Size for five times the design load indicated in ASTM C 635, Table 1, "Direct Hung," unless otherwise indicated.

D. Wire Hangers, Braces, and Ties: Provide wires complying with the following requirements:
   1. Zinc-Coated, Carbon-Steel Wire: ASTM A 641/A 641M, Class 1 zinc coating, soft temper.
   2. Size: Select wire diameter so its stress at 3 times hanger design load (ASTM C 635, Table 1, "Direct Hung") will be less than yield stress of wire, but provide not less than 0.106-inch diameter wire.

E. Hanger Rods: Mild steel, zinc coated or protected with rust-inhibitive paint.

2.04 METAL SUSPENSION SYSTEM FOR ACOUSTICAL TILE CEILING

A. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
   1. Armstrong World Industries, Inc.; Suprafine 9/16” Suspension System.

2.05 METAL EDGE MOLDINGS AND TRIM

A. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide the following:
   1. Armstrong World Industries, Inc.; Shadow molding, # 7873.
   2. Armstrong World Industries, Inc.; Shadow molding, inside corner, # 7861.
   3. Armstrong World Industries, Inc.; Shadow molding, outside corner, # 7862.

2.06 ACOUSTICAL SEALANT

A. Acoustical Sealant for Exposed and Concealed Joints: Manufacturer's standard nonsag, paintable, nonstaining latex sealant with a VOC content of 250 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24), complying with ASTM C 834 and effective in reducing airborne sound transmission through perimeter joints and openings in building construction as demonstrated by testing representative assemblies according to ASTM E 90.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.01 EXAMINATION

A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, including structural framing and substrates to which acoustical tile ceilings attach or abut, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements specified in this and other Sections that affect ceiling installation and an-

chorage and with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of acoustical tile ceilings.

1. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.02 PREPARATION

A. Testing Substrates: Before installing adhesively applied tiles on wet-placed substrates such as cast-in-place concrete or plaster, test and verify that moisture level is below tile manufacturer's recommended limits.

B. Comply with layout shown on reflected ceiling plans, however, if not specifically shown, ceilings laid out from the center of the room in both directions so that cut tiles are equal at all edges. Measure each ceiling area and establish layout of acoustical tiles to balance border widths at opposite edges of each ceiling. Avoid using less-than-half-width tiles at borders.

3.03 INSTALLATION, SUSPENDED ACOUSTICAL TILE CEILINGS

A. General: Install acoustical tile ceilings to comply with ASTM C 636 and seismic design requirements indicated, per manufacturer's written instructions and CISCA's "Ceiling Systems Handbook."

1. Fire-Rated Assembly: Install fire-rated ceiling systems according to tested fire-rated design. Use fire rated ceiling tile and protected light fixtures in areas as noted on plans.

B. Suspend ceiling hangers from building's structural members and as follows:

1. Install hangers plumb and free from contact with insulation or other objects within ceiling plenum that are not part of supporting structure or of ceiling suspension system.
2. Splay hangers only where required to miss obstructions; offset resulting horizontal forces by bracing, counter splaying, or other equally effective means. Do not splay wires more than five inches in a four foot drop.
3. Where width of ducts and other construction within ceiling plenum produces hanger spacing that interfere with location of hangers at spacing required to support standard suspension system members, install supplemental suspension members and hangers in form of trapezes or equivalent devices.
4. Secure wire hangers to ceiling suspension members and to supports above with a minimum of three tight turns. Connect hangers directly either to structures or to inserts, eye screws, or other devices that are secure and appropriate for substrate and that will not deteriorate or otherwise fail due to age, corrosion, or elevated temperatures.
5. Secure flat, angle, channel, and rod hangers to structure, including intermediate framing members, by attaching to inserts, eye screws, or other devices that are secure and appropriate for both the structure to which hangers are attached and type of hanger involved. Install hangers in a manner that will not cause them to deteriorate or fail due to age, corrosion, or elevated temperatures.

6. Do not support ceilings directly from permanent metal forms or floor deck. Fasten hangers to cast-in-place hanger inserts, post installed mechanical or adhesive anchors, or power-actuated fasteners that extend through forms into concrete.
7. When steel framing does not permit installation of hanger wires at spacing required, install carrying channels or other supplemental support for attachment of hanger wires.
8. Do not attach hangers to steel deck tabs.
9. Do not attach hangers to steel roof deck. Attach hangers to structural members.
10. Space hangers not more than 48 inches o.c. along each member supported directly from hangers, unless otherwise indicated; provide hangers not more than 8 inches from ends of each member.
11. Size supplemental suspension members and hangers to support ceiling loads within performance limits established by referenced standards and publications.

C. Secure bracing wires to ceiling suspension members and to supports with a minimum of four tight turns. Suspend bracing from building's structural members as required for hangers, without attaching to permanent metal forms, steel deck, or steel deck tabs. Fasten bracing wires into concrete with cast-in-place or post installed anchors.

D. Install edge moldings and trim of type indicated at perimeter of acoustical tile ceiling area and where necessary to conceal edges of acoustical tiles.
1. Apply acoustical sealant in a continuous ribbon concealed on back of vertical legs of moldings before they are installed.
2. Screw attach moldings to substrate at intervals not more than 16 inches o.c. and not more than 3 inches from ends, leveling with ceiling suspension system to a tolerance of 1/8 inch in 12 feet. Miter corners accurately and connect securely.
3. Do not use exposed fasteners, including pop rivets, on moldings and trim.

E. Install suspension system runners so they are square and securely interlocked with one another. Remove and replace dented, bent, or kinked members.

F. Arrange directionally patterned acoustical tiles as follows:
1. As indicated on reflected ceiling plans.

G. The plumbing and heating contractors shall not utilize hangers or framing of suspension system. The electrical contractor may utilize suspension system for lay-in fixture installation but shall furnish two supplementary hangers per fixture for maintaining maximum load deflection. Electrical contractor shall not utilize tile as sole support for any ceiling-mounted electrical device. All ceiling-mounted electrical devices shall be supported with brackets attached to tees.

3.04 CLEANING

A. Clean exposed surfaces of acoustical tile ceilings, including trim and edge moldings. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for cleaning and touchup of minor finish damage. Remove and replace tiles and other ceiling components that cannot be successfully cleaned and repaired to permanently eliminate evidence of damage.

ROCIP Project: Withhold insurance cost. Please refer to sections 00425 & 00810 for information.

END OF SECTION 09 51 23

ROCIP Project: Withhold insurance cost. Please refer to sections 00425 & 00810 for information.

SECTION 09 65 13 - RESILIENT BASE AND ACCESSORIES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.01 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.02 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:
   1. Resilient base.
   2. Resilient molding accessories.

B. Related Sections:
   1. Division 01 Section "Sustainable Construction Requirements."
   2. Division 09 Section "Gypsum Board."
   3. Division 09 Section "Tiling."
   4. Division 09 Section "Sheet Carpeting."
   5. Division 09 Section "Resilient Tile Flooring."

1.03 SUBMITTALS

A. Comply with pertinent provisions of Division 01 "Submittal Procedures", unless otherwise indicated.

B. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.

C. Samples for Initial Selection: For each type of product indicated.

D. Samples for Verification: For each type of product indicated, in manufacturer's standard-size Samples, of each resilient product color, texture, and pattern required.

E. Product Schedule: For resilient products.

F. LEED Documentation Submittals:
   1. Product Data for Credit MR 4: Product data and certification letter indicating percentages by weight of post-consumer and pre-consumer recycled content for products having recycled content.
      a. Include statement indicating cost for each product having recycled content.
   2. Product Data for Credit IEQ 4.1: Product data for adhesives and sealants used inside the weatherproofing system indicating VOC content of each product used.

a. Indicate VOC content in g/L calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).

1.04 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Store resilient products and installation materials in dry spaces protected from the weather, with ambient temperatures maintained within range recommended by manufacturer, but not less than 50 deg F or more than 90 deg F.

1.05 PROJECT CONDITIONS

A. Maintain ambient temperatures within range recommended by manufacturer, but not less than 70 deg F or more than 95 deg F in spaces to receive resilient products during the following time periods:
   1. 48 hours before installation.
   2. During installation.
   3. 48 hours after installation.

B. Until Substantial Completion, maintain ambient temperatures within range recommended by manufacturer, but not less than 60 deg F or more than 95 deg F.

C. Install resilient products after other finishing operations, including painting, have been completed.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.01 MATERIALS

A. Rubber Base: Base 4" high x 1/8" thick complying with FS SS-W-40a, Type I with preformed external and internal corners and stops equal to 100 Series manufactured by Roppe. Cove base at all flooring. Color as shown on drawings.

B. Adhesive: Waterproof, stabilized type as recommended by material manufacturer for each specific product and for its area of use. Leveling material as specifically recommended by material manufacturer.

C. All materials best grade, with no second grade, off goods or remnants allowed.

2.02 RESILIENT MOLDING ACCESSORY

A. Resilient Molding Accessory:
   1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide the following:
      a. Roppe Corporation, USA.

B. Description: Transition strips.

C. Material: Rubber.

D. Colors and Patterns: As indicated on drawings.

2.03 INSTALLATION MATERIALS

A. Adhesives: Water-resistant type recommended by manufacturer to suit resilient products and substrate conditions indicated.
   1. Use adhesives that comply with the following limits for VOC content when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24):

B. Cove Base Adhesives: Not more than 50 g/L.
   a. Rubber Floor Adhesives: Not more than 60 g/L.

2.04 RESILIENT RUBBER STAIR TREADS

A. Manufacturer: Roppe Corporation.

B. Test Results:
   1. F2169 Standard Specification for Resilient Stair Tread –Type TS.
   2. F386 Standard Test Method for Thickness of Resilient Flooring Materials having flat surfaces.

C. One-Piece Tread and Riser:
   1. Color and Pattern: As indicated on drawings.
      a. Complies with ASTM F2169, Type TS, Class 2 (Patterned).
      b. Length: As indicated on drawings.
      c. Depth: 20 ½” nominal from inside of nose.
      d. Thickness: ¼” nominal tread portion, riser tapers.
      e. Nose Length: 1 9/16” nominal.
      f. Nose thickness: 3/16” nominal.
      g. Tapered nose: Yes.
      h. Relief cut: Yes.
      i. Limited year warranty: manufacturer’s limited wear warranty of five years for heavy traffic.

D. Rubber Stringers
   a. Height: As indicated on drawings.
   b. Thickness: .100” nominal.
   c. Length: 72” nominal.

E. Vinyl Reducer Strips: Tile reducer strips, 1 inch x 1/8 inch tapering. Strips equivalent to Roppe # 22 Vinyl Floor. Strip shall match color of rubber base.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.01 EXAMINATION

A. Examine substrates, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for maximum moisture content and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.

B. Verify that finishes of substrates comply with tolerances and other requirements specified in other Sections and that substrates are free of cracks, ridges, depressions, scale, and foreign deposits that might interfere with adhesion of resilient products.

C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.02 PREPARATION

A. Prepare substrates according to manufacturer's written instructions to ensure adhesion of resilient products.

B. Fill cracks, holes, and depressions in substrates with trowelable leveling and patching compound and remove bumps and ridges to produce a uniform and smooth substrate.

C. Do not install resilient products until they are same temperature as the space where they are to be installed.
   1. Move resilient products and installation materials into spaces where they will be installed at least 48 hours in advance of installation.

D. Sweep and vacuum clean substrates to be covered by resilient products immediately before installation.

3.03 RESILIENT BASE INSTALLATION

A. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for installing resilient base.

B. Apply resilient base to walls, columns, pilasters, casework and cabinets in toe spaces, and other permanent fixtures in rooms and areas where base is required.

C. Install resilient base in lengths as long as practicable without gaps at seams and with tops of adjacent pieces aligned.

D. Tightly adhere resilient base to substrate throughout length of each piece, with base in continuous contact with horizontal and vertical substrates.

E. Do not stretch resilient base during installation.

F. On masonry surfaces or other similar irregular substrates, fill voids along top edge of resilient base with manufacturer's recommended adhesive filler material.

G. Preformed Corners: Install preformed corners before installing straight pieces.

H. Job-Formed Corners:
   1. Outside Corners: Use straight pieces of maximum lengths possible. Form without producing discoloration (whitening) at bends.
   2. Inside Corners: Use straight pieces of maximum lengths possible.

3.04 RESILIENT ACCESSORY INSTALLATION

A. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for installing resilient accessories.

B. Resilient Molding Accessories: Butt to adjacent materials and tightly adhere to substrates throughout length of each piece. Install reducer strips at edges of carpet that would otherwise be exposed.

3.05 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

A. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for cleaning and protection of resilient products.

B. Perform the following operations immediately after completing resilient product installation:
   1. Remove adhesive and other blemishes from exposed surfaces.
   2. Sweep and vacuum surfaces thoroughly.
   3. Damp-mop surfaces to remove marks and soil.

C. Protect resilient products from mars, marks, indentations, and other damage from construction operations and placement of equipment and fixtures during remainder of construction period.

D. Cover resilient products until Substantial Completion.

END OF SECTION 09 65 13

ROCIP Project: Withhold insurance cost. Please refer to sections 00425 & 00810 for information.

SECTION 09 65 66 – RESILIENT ATHLETIC FLOORING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.01 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.02 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:
   1. Resilient Athletic Surfacing and accessories as required by the manufacturer.

B. Related Specifications
   1. Division 01 Section "Sustainable Construction Requirements."
   2. Division 03 Section "Cast-in-Place Concrete."
      a. The concrete contractor shall furnish and install a slab that is smooth troweled, level to within 1/8" in any 10' radius. High spots shall be ground and low spots filled with an approved leveling compound.
      b. No curing compounds, agents, or sealers shall be used.
   3. Division 06 Section "Rough Carpentry."
   4. Division 09 Section "Resilient Base and Accessories."

1.03 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Acceptable manufacturer.
   1. The manufacturer to be a firm experienced in the manufacturing of indoor resilient multipurpose surfacing.

B. Acceptable Installer
   1. Installer must submit a list of similar projects completed within the past three years.

C. Installer to be recognized and approved by the resilient athletic surfacing manufacturer.

D. Provide mock-up of 6' x 6' to be evaluated by Architect prior to proceeding.

1.04 SUBMITTALS

A. Submit samples of the actual sport surface in the standard colors.

B. Submit three copies of each of the following:

1. Manufacturer's requirements for correct preparation, finishing and testing of substrate base material to receive resilient athletic surfacing.
2. Interior or exterior adhesive product data sheets and manufacturers certificates indicating approval for the proposed application.
3. Interior and exterior line paint data sheets and manufacturers certificates indicating approval for the proposed application.
4. Manufacturer's standard warranty.
5. Manufacturer's installation and maintenance instructions.

C. LEED Documentation Submittals:
   1. Product Data for Credit MR 4: Product data and certification letter indicating percentages by weight of post-consumer and pre-consumer recycled content for products having recycled content.
      a. Include statement indicating cost for each product having recycled content.
   2. Product Data for Credit IEQ 4.1: Product data for adhesives and sealants used inside the weatherproofing system indicating VOC content of each product used.
      a. Indicate VOC content in g/L calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).

1.05 DELIVERY AND STORAGE

A. Deliver and store material in the original containers with seals unbroken and labels intact, in a maintained environment of minimum of 55° to 85° and under 5% relative humidity. Flooring if in squares, not to be stacked more than two pallets high. Protect work until accepted by owner.

1.06 SITE CONDITIONS

A. Maintain a stable room and sub floor temperature for a period of one (1) week prior, during and after installation. Recommended range: 65°F to 80°F.

B. Existing conditions: Where existing concrete sub floor conditions occur, seal existing concrete slab with an approved vapor barrier over existing concrete, per manufacturer's requirements and recommendations. Protrusions should be sealed prevent moisture migration.

C. Installation to be carried-out no sooner than the specified curing time of concrete sub floor.

D. Substrate Flatness must not vary more than 1/8" in 10' radius.

E. Moisture vapor emission content of the concrete slab must not exceed 3lbs/1000ft2 per 24 hrs when using the Calcium Chloride test as per ASTM F 1869 and less than 80% RH when tested using insitu probes per ASTM F2170.

F. Concrete subfloor surface pH level within 7 to 8.5 range.

1.07 WARRANITY

A. Materials:
   1. The resilient athletic surfacing shall be covered against manufacturing defects by a two (2) year written, limited warranty. The manufacturer of the indoor resilient multipurpose surfacing must provide this warranty.

B. Installation:
   1. The installation of the resilient athletic surfacing shall be covered against poor workmanship and faulty installation by a two (2) year written, limited warranty provided by the manufacturer-approved installer.

C. Wear:
   1. The resilient athletic surfacing shall be covered against wear through the wear layer by a fifteen (15) year written, limited warranty. This warranty must be provided by the manufacturer of the indoor resilient athletic surfacing.

1.08 MAINTENANCE AND REPAIR

A. Furnish to the owner additional materials containing a total of at least 5% of each different color or design of the resilient athletic surfacing used on the project.

B. Maintain surface as per manufacturer's instructions.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.01 MANUFACTURER

A. Basis-for-Design: Taraflex Performance Plus as manufactured by Geflor. All other installation accessories and related components must be either made or approved by the architect.

2.02 MATERIALS

A. Resilient Athletic Surfacing: Product shall consist of a 2.1 mm thick over 95% pure polyvinyl chloride (PVC) wear layer combined with pure PVC-CXP™ vertically elongated closed-cell foam cushion backing. D-Max™ multi-layer surface complex shall be reinforced with a non-woven fiberglass mesh placed between the wear layer and the foam backing to improve dimensional stability. Sanosol®, a fungistatic and bacteriostatic treatment shall be incorporated throughout the entire thickness. The wear surface shall be Triple-Action Protecsol®, UV cured, factory applied, and permanently

bonded to the surface of the resilient flooring. Field application of the surface treatment and/or Multi-Durometer products laminated or constructed in the field are unacceptable.

1. Color/Design/Texture: As described in drawings and approved by Architect.

B. Welding Rod: As supplied by the resilient athletic surfacing manufacturer or supplier. Color to blend with the resilient athletic surfacing color or design. All seams shall be welded to create a monolithic and impermeable surface.

C. Adhesive: Provide VOC compliant adhesive certified by the manufacturer or distributor.

D. Patching compound/line marking paint as approved by resilient athletic surfacing manufacturer or distributor.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.01 GENERAL

A. Concrete substrate to be in place a minimum of thirty days prior to the installation of the rubber athletic flooring. Maximum of 3% moisture content in the substrate (CM Test.) Preparation of substrate to provide a smooth, dense finish highly compacted with a tolerance of 1/8″ in a 10′ radius.

B. Verify that there is a stable room temperature of at least 65°F.

C. Alkalinity test: PH level should be in the range of 7 to 8.5.

D. All inserts, penetrations and other construction items which affect the installation of the resilient athletic surfacing to be in place prior to installation.

E. Resilient athletic surfacing installer to approve field conditions.

F. Deficiencies in substrate to be corrected prior to installation per manufacturer’s requirements.

3.02 INSTALLATION

A. Install interior resilient athletic surfacing in accordance with the latest manufacturer's recommendations. Installation by a certified contractor.

B. Mix and apply adhesive in accordance with manufacturer’s instructions.

C. Install the indoor resilient athletic surfacing minimizing cross seams. Provide a seam diagram during the submittal process for approval prior to installation.

D. Remove all excess adhesive and other surface blemishes per manufacturer's instructions.

E. Install appropriate threshold plates or transition strips where necessary.

F. Remove all unused materials, tools, and equipment and dispose of any debris properly. Clean the indoor resilient athletic surfacing in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.

END OF SECTION 09 65 66

ROCIP Project: Withhold insurance cost. Please refer to sections 00425 & 00810 for information.

SECTION 09 81 00 – ACOUSTICAL INSULATION

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.01 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Standard Form of Construction Agreement, including General and Special Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section

1.02 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:
   1. Provide all building insulation as shown on the drawings and as herein specified.

B. Related Sections include the following:
   1. Division 01 Section "Sustainable Construction Requirements."
   2. Division 07 Section "Thermal Insulation."
   3. Division 09 Section "Gypsum Board."
   4. Division 09 Section "Acoustical Tile Ceiling."

1.03 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Design Criteria:
   1. Sound Transmission Class: 5 to 10 decibels.
   2. Fire Resistance: Material shall have a Class B fire rating less than 75 as tested by ASTM E-84.

1.04 PRODUCT DELIVERY, STORAGE AND HANDLING

A. Deliver materials in manufacturer's original packages, clearly marked with brand name, type and R-Value.

B. Store materials in area protected from weather, moisture and damage, remove any damaged materials from the site.

1.05 SUBMITTALS

A. Comply with pertinent provisions of Division 01 Section "Submittal Procedures", unless otherwise indicated.

B. Samples of materials and complete product and technical description submittal for approval to the Architect prior to ordering materials.

C. LEED Documentation Submittals:
   1. Product Data for Credit MR 4: Product data and certification letter indicating percentages by weight of post-consumer and pre-consumer recycled content for products having recycled content.
      a. Include statement indicating cost for each product having recycled content.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.01 MATERIALS

A. Sound Batt Insulation in wood Stud Walls: Nominal 2" thick unfaced batt insulation complying with ASTM C665, Type 1. Material equivalent to Owens-Corning, "Sound Attenuation Batts.

B. Sound Insulation Batts above noted Lay-In Ceiling: 3-1/2", unfaced batt insulation with an R-Value of 11. Sound batts shall be Owens-Corning "Sonobatts", or approved equal.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.01 INSPECTION

A. Examine areas receiving insulation work to ensure work of preceding trades is completed. Check surfaces to see that they are uniform in place, free from mortar droppings, grease, oil or other debris which would affect proper insulation. Application constitutes acceptance of substrate conditions.

3.02 INSTALLATION

A. Insulation shall be installed in accordance with current printed recommendations of insulation manufacturer.

B. Where insulation is installed in wall cavities exceeding 8' in height, the mat shall be overlapped at least one inch.

END OF SECTION 09 81 00

SECTION 09 84 13 - ACOUSTIC WALL PANELS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.01 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.02 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:
   1. Furnish all labor, materials, tools, equipment and services necessary for and incidental to fabricate and install the acoustical wall panel work as shown on the drawings, or as specified.

B. Related Documents: The Contract Documents, as defined in Division 01 Section - Summary of Work, apply to the Work of this Section. Additional requirements and information necessary to complete the Work of this Section may be found in other Documents.

C. Related Sections include the following:
   1. Division 09 Section: Gypsum Board

1.03 SUBMITTALS

A. Submit manufacturer's product specifications and data and representative details.

B. Samples: Minimum 3 inch x 3 inch samples of specified acoustical wall substrate; minimum 4 inch long samples of attachment method including trim and decorative accents.Submit shop drawings indicating location and size of each panel to be installed.

C. Shop Drawings: Submit shop drawings showing how panels are to be laid out on the walls, details of trim members and width of panels. Width of panels and location of vertical seams are critical.

D. Submit test data showing that products and materials meet minimum requirements for acoustical performance and fire rating.

1.04 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Fire Rating:

1. All system materials are to satisfy the standards and methods below:

Fabrics	ASTM E84, Class A or Class 1 for Flamespread and Smoke Generated.
Cores	ASTM E84, Class A or Class 1 for Flamespread and Smoke Generated.
Mounting	ASTM E84, Class A or Class 1 for Flamespread and Smoke Generated.

2. Fire rating shall be for a complete assembly including mounting devices, core, and fabric. Test panels shall duplicate actual job conditions.

B. Install Qualifications: Installation shall be performed by a firm with a minimum of 3 years experience in the installation of the specified wall panels and authorized to install the approved product.

1.05 DELIVERY, STORAGE AND HANDLING

A. Protect system materials from excessive moisture in shipment, storage, and handling. Store in a dry place with adequate ventilation. Do not store panels beneath other materials as creasing may result.

B. Installer's representative shall conduct receipt inspection of goods.
   1. Fabric that is flawed by the inclusion of excessive misweaves, poor color match with goods specified, water damage, inadequate continuous drops without seaming, or other conditions unacceptable to the Architect, shall be rejected.

C. Before installing acoustical wall panels, permit them to reach room temperature and a stabilized moisture content.

D. Handle acoustical wall panels carefully to avoid chipping edges or damaged units in any way.

1.06 PROJECT CONDITIONS

A. All other finishes in the space shall be completed to the extent necessary to prevent later damage to the wall system.

B. Temperature and humidity shall be stable at values near those indicated for final occupancy.

C. Space Enclosure:
   1. Soundsoak Fiberglass Panels: All wet work must be complete and dry prior to installation. Installation shall be carried out where the temperature is between

40 degrees F and 120 degrees F. These temperature conditions must be maintained throughout the life of the warranty.

1.07 WARRANTY

A. Acoustical Wall Panel: Submit a written warranty executed by the manufacturer, agreeing to repair or replace acoustical panels that fail within the warranty period. Failures include, but are not limited to:
   1. Acoustical Wall Panels: Manufacturer's defects

B. Warranty Period:
   1. Acoustical wall panels: One (1) year from date of substantial completion.

C. The Warranty shall not deprive the Owner of other rights the Owner may have under other provisions of the Contract Documents and will be in addition to and run concurrent with other warranties made by the Contractor under the requirements of the Contract Documents.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.01 MANUFACTURERS

A. Acoustical Wall Panels:
   1. Armstrong World Industries, Inc.
   2. Substitution equal or better.

2.02 ACOUSTICAL WALL PANELS

A. Acoustical Wall Panels: Type AWP-1:
   1. Surface Texture: (Fabric) (Vinyl)
   2. Composition: Mineral Fiber
   3. Fabric Finish:
      a. Standard - Guilford Spinel 3582 Opal 011.
   4. Thickness: 3/4" fabric finished
   5. Width: 30" fabric finished
   6. Panel Heights: 2'-6"
   7. Edge Profile:
      a. Square, Fabric wrapped all edges.
   8. Noise Reduction Coefficient (NRC): ASTM C 423; A Mounting: 1 inch (0.80)
   9. Flame Spread: ASTM E84; with FR-701 Fabrics - composite Class A rating.
   10. Dimensional Stability: Standard – space must be enclosed with HVAC systems operating at all times.

11. Acceptable Product: Soundsoak, as manufactured by Armstrong World Industries.

B. Acoustical Wall Panel Accessories:
   1. Impaling clips
   2. Z-clips

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.01 EXAMINATION

A. Examine conditions under which the work is to be performed. Notify the General Contractor of any unsatisfactory conditions. Do not proceed until the conditions are satisfactory.

B. Field measure the substrate to be treated.

3.02 INSTALLATION

A. Install wall panels by attaching the panels to an existing wall per the manufacturer's instructions, LA-297301, and in accordance with the authorities having jurisdiction.

B. Concealed mounting system shall be plumb and straight and in proper alignment. Mounting devices shall not be visible through the panel joint when installed.

C. Fabric surfaces shall be free of wrinkles and the weave shall be plumb, straight and properly aligned horizontally and vertically.

3.03 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

A. Replace damaged and broken panels.

B. Clean exposed panel surfaces as recommended by fabric manufacturer. Remove and replace fabric if cleaning in place or offsite is unsuccessful.

C. Installing subcontractor and General Contractor shall coordinate to ensure that completed installation will not be damaged by later work.

D. Routine maintenance of wall panels should consist of frequent vacuuming to minimize dirt accumulation. A dry or wet shampoo can be used of fabric. Work in with a damp sponge and vacuum to remove residue.

END OF SECTION 09 84 13

ROCIP Project: Withhold insurance cost. Please refer to sections 00425 & 00810 for information.

SECTION 09 91 00 - PAINTING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.01 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

B. LEED referenced standard for VOC and chemical components "Green Seal Standard GS-11".

1.02 SUMMARY

A. This Section includes surface preparation and the application of paint systems on the following
   1. Concrete.
   2. Concrete masonry units (CMU).
   3. Steel.
   4. Galvanized metal.
   5. Wood.
   6. Gypsum board.
   7. Fiber cement board and trim.

B. Related Sections include the following:
   1. Division 01 Sections “Sustainable Construction Requirements”
   2. Division 05 Sections for shop priming of metal substrates with primers specified in this Section.
   3. Division 06 Sections for shop priming carpentry with primers specified in this Section.
   4. Division 08 Sections for factory priming windows and doors with primers specified in this Section.
   5. Division 09 Section "Painting" for surface preparation and the application of paint systems on exterior substrates.

1.03 SUBMITTALS

A. Comply with pertinent provisions of Division 01 Section “Submittal Procedures”, unless otherwise indicated.

B. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.

C. Samples for Verification: For each type of paint system and in each color and gloss of topcoat indicated.
   1. Submit Samples on rigid backing, 8 inches square.

2. Step coats on Samples to show each coat required for system.
3. Label each coat of each Sample.
4. Label each Sample for location and application area.

D. The contractor shall furnish the Owner with a booklet of actual samples used on the project.

E. LEED Documentation Submittals:
1. Product Data for Credit IEQ 4.2: Product data for paints and coatings used inside the weatherproofing system indicating chemical composition and VOC content of each product used.
   a. Indicate VOC content in g/L calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).

1.04 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Mockups: Apply benchmark samples of each paint system indicated and each color and finish selected to verify preliminary selections made under sample submittals and to demonstrate aesthetic effects and set quality standards for materials and execution.
1. Architect will select one surface to represent surfaces and conditions for application of each paint system specified in Part 3.
   a. Wall and Ceiling Surfaces: Provide samples of at least 100 sq. ft.
   b. Other Items: Architect will designate items or areas required.
2. Apply benchmark samples after permanent lighting and other environmental services have been activated.
3. Final approval of color selections will be based on benchmark samples.
   a. If preliminary color selections are not approved, apply additional benchmark samples of additional colors selected by Architect at no added cost to Owner.

B. Materials shall be manufacturer's best grade of respective.

C. Gloss levels for painting required are as per the National Paint Coatings Association.

1.05 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Store materials not in use in tightly covered containers in well-ventilated areas with ambient temperatures continuously maintained at not less than 45 deg F (7 deg C).
1. Maintain containers in clean condition, free of foreign materials and residue.
2. Remove rags and waste from storage areas daily.

B. Deliver materials, including coatings, sealers, paints, enamels and paste fillers in original containers with seals unbroken and labels intact.

C. Store materials and equipment in a single lockable area of building. Job site tinting, mixing, and thinning required shall be done in this area. Provide adequate means to protect floors and adjacent surfaces of this area from damage. Store rags, paint, and

solvents in closed metal containers located in the designated area. Use adequate means and precautions to prevent fire, explosions, and other damage caused by paint materials.

1.06 PROJECT CONDITIONS

A. Apply paints only when temperature of surfaces to be painted and ambient air temperatures are between 50 and 95 deg F (10 and 35 deg C).

B. Do not apply paints when relative humidity exceeds 85 percent; at temperatures less than 5 deg F (3 deg C) above the dew point; or to damp or wet surfaces.

C. Do not apply paint in snow, rain, fog or mist; or when relative humidity exceeds 85% or to damp or wet surfaces; unless otherwise permitted by paint manufacturer's printed instructions.

D. Painting may be continued during inclement weather if areas and surfaces to be painted are enclosed and heated within temperature limits specified by material manufacturer during application and drying periods.

E. Provide adequate ventilation of spaces while applying primer and finish coats.

F. All application of coatings shall be done under adequate illumination.

1.07 SCAFFOLDS AND PROTECTION

A. Protect completed finish and painting work, and protect adjacent finish surfaces from paint splatter, spills and stains. Use adequate drop cloths and masking procedures during progress of work.

1.08 EXTRA MATERIALS

A. Furnish extra materials described below that are from same production run (batch mix) as materials applied and that are packaged for storage and identified with labels describing contents.

1. Quantity: Furnish an additional 5 percent, but not less than 1 gal. of each material and color applied.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.01 MANUFACTURERS

A. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

B. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following:
   1. Sherwin-Williams Company (The).
   2. Benjamin Moore Paints.
   3. Pittsburg Paints.

2.02 PAINT, GENERAL

A. Material Compatibility:
   1. Provide materials for use within each paint system that are compatible with one another and substrates indicated, under conditions of service and application as demonstrated by manufacturer, based on testing and field experience.
   2. For each coat in a paint system, provide products recommended in writing by manufacturers of topcoat for use in paint system and on substrate indicated.

B. Colors: As indicated on drawings.

2.03 BLOCK FILLERS

A. Interior/Exterior Latex PrepRite Block Filler (8 mils) by Sherwin Williams

2.04 PRIMERS/SEALERS

A. Interior Latex Primer/Sealer: Premium Interior Wall and Wood Latex Primer by Sherwin Williams.

2.05 METAL PRIMERS

A. Alkyd Systems Gloss Finish
   1. Pro-Cryl Universal Waterborne Metal Primer by Sherwin Williams.

2.06 LATEX PAINTS

A. Interior Latex (Flat): Promar 200 Zero VOC by Sherwin Williams, for application on ceilings.

B. Interior Latex (Eggshell): Promar 200 Zero VOC by Sherwin Williams, for application on walls.

C. Interior Latex (Semigloss): Promar 200 Zero VOC by Sherwin Williams, for application on trim.

2.07 QUICK-DRYING ENAMELS

A. Quick-Drying Enamel (Semigloss): Promar 200 by Sherwin Williams.

2.08 INTERIOR WOOD STAINS AND VARNISHES

A. Interior Oil Stain: Sherwin-Williams Wood Classics Oil Stain A49-200 Series.

B. Clear Sanding Sealer: Factory-formulated fast-drying alkyd-based clear wood sealer applied at spreading rate recommended by manufacturer.
   1. Coronado; 81-10 Dual Seal.
   2. ICI Dulux Paints; 1902-0000 WoodPride Interior Satin Polyurethane Varnish
   3. Kelly-Moore; 2164 E Z Sand Alkyd Q. D. Sealer.
   4. Pittsburgh Paints; 6-10 SpeedHide Quick-Drying Interior Sanding Wood Sealer and Finish.
   5. Sherwin-Williams; Wood Classics Fast Dry Sanding Sealer B26V43

C. Interior Alkyd- or Polyurethane-Based Clear Satin Varnish: Factory-formulated alkyd- or polyurethane-based clear varnish.
   1. Coronado; 67-100 Polyurethane Liquid Plastic Satin Varnish.
   2. ICI Dulux Paints; 1902-0000 WoodPride Interior Satin Polyurethane Varnish.
   3. Kelly-Moore; 2050 Kel--Aqua Stain Base.
   4. Pittsburgh Paints; 77-7 Rez Varnish, Interior Satin Oil Clear.
   5. Sherwin-Williams; Wood Classics Fast Dry Oil Varnish, Satin A66-300 Series.

2.09 EPOXY PAINT

A. Water based epoxy: Catalyzed epoxy meeting ASTM 03730 requirement, Sherwin Williams Hi-Bild Water-based Catalyzed Epoxy.

2.10 FLOOR COATINGS

A. Interior Concrete Floor Sealer:
   1. BASF Corporation "Lapidolith".

2.11 WOOD PRIMERS

A. Interior Latex-Based Wood Primer: Premium Interior Wall and Wood Primer by Sherwin Williams.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.01 EXAMINATION

A. Examine substrates and conditions, with Applicator present, for compliance with requirements for maximum moisture content and other conditions affecting performance of work.

B. Maximum Moisture Content of Substrates: When measured with an electronic moisture meter as follows:
   1. Concrete: 12 percent.
   2. Masonry (Clay and CMU): 12 percent.
   3. Wood: 15 percent.
   4. Gypsum Board: 12 percent.

C. Verify suitability of substrates, including surface conditions and compatibility with existing finishes and primers.

D. Begin coating application only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected and surfaces are dry.
   1. Beginning coating application constitutes Contractor's acceptance of substrates and conditions.

3.02 PREPARATION

A. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions and recommendations in "MPI Architectural Painting Specification Manual" applicable to substrates indicated.

B. Remove plates, machined surfaces, and similar items already in place that are not to be painted. If removal is impractical or impossible because of size or weight of item, provide surface-applied protection before surface preparation and painting.
   1. After completing painting operations, use workers skilled in the trades involved to reinstall items that were removed. Remove surface-applied protection if any.
   2. Do not paint over labels of independent testing agencies or equipment name, identification, performance rating, or nomenclature plates.

C. Clean substrates of substances that could impair bond of paints, including dirt, oil, grease, and incompatible paints and encapsulants.
   1. Remove incompatible primers and reprime substrate with compatible primers as required to produce paint systems indicated.

D. Concrete Substrates: Remove release agents, curing compounds, efflorescence, and chalk. Do not paint surfaces if moisture content or alkalinity of surfaces to be painted exceeds that permitted in manufacturer's written instructions.

E. Concrete Masonry Substrates: Remove efflorescence and chalk. Do not paint surfaces if moisture content or alkalinity of surfaces to be painted exceeds that permitted in manufacturer's written instructions.

F. Steel Substrates: Remove rust and loose mill scale. Clean using methods recommended in writing by paint manufacturer.

G. Galvanized-Metal Substrates: Remove grease and oil residue from galvanized sheet metal fabricated from coil stock by mechanical methods to produce clean, lightly etched surfaces that promote adhesion of subsequently applied paints.

H. Aluminum Substrates: Remove surface oxidation.

I. Wood Substrates:
   1. Scrape and clean knots, and apply coat of knot sealer before applying primer.
   2. Sand surfaces that will be exposed to view, and dust off.
   3. Prime edges, ends, faces, undersides, and backsides of wood.
   4. After priming, fill holes and imperfections in the finish surfaces with putty or plastic wood filler. Sand smooth when dried.

J. Gypsum Board Substrates: Do not begin paint application until finishing compound is dry and sanded smooth.

3.03 APPLICATION

A. Apply paints according to manufacturer's written instructions.
   1. Use applicators and techniques suited for paint and substrate indicated.
   2. Paint surfaces behind movable equipment and furniture same as similar exposed surfaces. Before final installation, paint surfaces behind permanently fixed equipment or furniture with prime coat only.
   3. Paint front and backsides of access panels, removable or hinged covers, and similar hinged items to match exposed surfaces.

B. Tint each undercoat a lighter shade to facilitate identification of each coat if multiple coats of same material are to be applied. Tint undercoats to match color of topcoat, but provide sufficient difference in shade of undercoats to distinguish each separate coat.

C. If undercoats or other conditions show through topcoat, apply additional coats until cured film has a uniform paint finish, color, and appearance.

D. Apply paints to produce surface films without cloudiness, spotting, holidays, laps, brush marks, roller tracking, runs, sags, ropiness, or other surface imperfections. Cut in sharp lines and color breaks.

E. Primers shall be applied in as many coats as necessary to completely cover the substrate to a uniform appearance.

F. Sand primer over wood and gypsum board with 120 grit sandpaper prior to application of paint or coating.

G. Final coat of paint shall have visual evidence of solid hiding and uniform appearance.

H. Paint shall be evenly spread and smoothly flowed on without runs, sags, curtains, or other evidences of poor application.

I. Previous coats shall be thoroughly dry before applying succeeding coats.

J. Edges of paint adjoining other materials or colors shall be sharp and clean with no overlapping.

K. Each coat of paint shall be applied uniformly to dry film thickness specified in Schedule below.

L. For painting of partial rooms, paint color shall match adjacent surfaces. Patched or repaired areas shall not be visible through paint coating.

M. Painting of repaired, altered or renovated area shall be floor to ceiling and minimally 2' either side of patched area, unless defined break-off is identifiable within 5', and then painting shall be to that vertical line.

3.04 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

A. At end of each workday, remove rubbish, empty cans, rags, and other discarded materials from Project site.

B. After completing paint application, clean spattered surfaces. Remove spattered paints by washing, scraping, or other methods. Do not scratch or damage adjacent finished surfaces.

C. Protect work of other trades against damage from paint application. Correct damage to work of other trades by cleaning, repairing, replacing, and refinishing, as approved by Architect, and leave in an undamaged condition.

D. At completion of construction activities of other trades, touch up and restore damaged or defaced painted surfaces.

3.05 PAINTING SCHEDULE COLORS AS SELECTED BY ARCHITECT

A. Exterior Metals: (First coat not required on shop-primed items)
   1. 1st coat – Sherwin Williams, Kem Kromik Universal Alkyd Metal Primer, B50Z Series
   2. 2nd coat – Sherwin Williams, Industrial Enamel, B54Z.
   3. 3rd coat - Same as above
      a. (4 mils wet, 2 mils dry per coat)

B. Exterior Galvanized Metals Alkyd Systems Gloss Finish:
   1. 1st coat – Sherwin Williams, Galvite HS, Solvent Based Acrylic Coating. Color to be selected by Architect.
   2. 2nd coat – Sherwin Williams, Industrial Enamel, B54Z.
   3. 3rd coat - Same as above
      a. Gutter, Scuppers, Counter flashing:
      b. (4 mils wet, 2 mils dry per coat)

C. Interior Metals: Touch up shop primer.
   1. 1st coat - Alkyd Metal Primer (3.0 mils. DFT)
   2. 2nd coat - Alkyd Semi-Gloss Enamel (3.0 mils. DFT)
   3. 3rd coat - Alkyd Semi-Gloss Enamel (3.0 mils. DFT)
      a. Hollow Metal Door & Frame:

D. Interior Masonry & Concrete:
   1. 1st coat - Latex Block Filler (8.0 mils DFT) by Sherwin Williams.
   2. 2nd coat - Polyamide Epoxy (4.0 mils. DFT) by Sherwin Williams.
   3. 3rd coat - Same as above
      a. CMU Walls:
      b. Interior painted concrete and block: Color as selected by Architect.

E. Interior Sealed Concrete Floors:
   1. 1st coat - Sealer (200-300 S.F./gal.) diluted 4:1 water: Lapidolith
   2. 2nd coat - Sealer (200-300 S.F./gal.) diluted 3:1
      a. Exposed Concrete Finished Floors:
      b. 3rd Coat - Sealer (200-300 S.F./gal.) diluted 2:1

F. Gypsum Board:
   1. 1st coat - Vinyl Latex Wall Primer (1.4 mils DFT)
   2. 2nd coat - Latex Eggshell Enamel (1.5 mils DFT)
   3. 3rd coat - Latex Eggshell Enamel (1.5 mils DFT)
      a. Painted Gypsum Board & Plaster: Colors to be selected by Architect.

G. Mechanical and Electrical Items:
   1. All conduit, wiremold, electrical panels, piping, piping supports, exhaust fans, roof vents, clean-outs, access panels, pipe insulation, grilles, registers, and all other similar mechanical or electrical materials exposed to view in all occupied and/or finished areas shall be painted to match adjacent surfaces.
   2. Surfaces inside mechanical openings to view painted flat black.
   3. Factory finished shall have abrasions touched with matching finish coat.
   4. Nameplates on equipment not painted, suitably protected during painting operations.
   5. Finish in accordance with specification schedule for galvanized iron and metals. Provide high temperature enamel as required for specific equipment instructions.

H. Fiber Cement Board:
   1. Finish primed siding with minimum one coat high quality; alkali-resistant primer and one coat of either 100% acrylic or latex or oil based, exterior grade topcoat or two coats high quality, alkali-resistant, 100% acrylic or latex, exterior grade topcoat within 90 days of installation. Follow paint manufacturer's written product recommendation and written application instructions.
      a. Color as indicated on drawings.

END OF SECTION 09 91 00

ROCIP Project: Withhold insurance cost. Please refer to sections 00425 & 00810 for information.

SECTION 10 14 00 – SIGNAGE

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.01 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.02 SUMMARY

A. This Section includes the following:
   1. Plaques.
   2. Dimensional illuminated characters.
   3. Panel signs.
   4. Photoluminescent signs.

B. Related Sections include the following:
   1. Division 01 Section "Temporary Facilities" for temporary Project identification signs and for temporary information and directional signs.
   2. Division 03 Section "Cast-in-Place Concrete."
   3. Division 09 Section "Gypsum Board."
   4. Division 26 Sections for electrical service and connections for illuminated signs.

1.03 DEFINITIONS

A. ADA-ABA Accessibility Guidelines: U.S. Architectural & Transportation Barriers Compliance Board's "Americans with Disabilities Act (ADA) Accessibility Guidelines for Buildings and Facilities; Architectural Barriers Act (ABA) Accessibility Guidelines."

1.04 SUBMITTALS

A. Comply with pertinent provisions of Division 01 Section "Submittal Procedures", unless otherwise indicated.

B. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.

C. Shop Drawings: Show fabrication and installation details for signs.
   1. Show sign mounting heights, locations of supplementary supports to be provided by others, and accessories.
   2. Provide message list, typestyles, graphic elements including tactile characters and Braille, and layout for each sign.
   3. Wiring Diagrams: Power, signal, and control wiring.

D. Samples for Verification: For each of the following products and for the full range of color, texture, and sign material indicated, of sizes indicated:
   1. Plaque Casting: 6 inches square including border.
   2. Dimensional Characters: Full-size Samples of each type of dimensional character (letter, number, and graphic element).
   3. Aluminum: For each form, finish, and color, on 6-inch long sections of extrusions and squares of sheet at least 4 by 4 inches.
   4. Acrylic Sheet: Full size for each color required.
   5. Photoluminescent Signs: Full-size sign.

E. Sign Schedule: Location Key Plan for all signage. Use same designations indicated on Drawings.

F. Maintenance Data: For signs to include in maintenance manuals.

1.05 PRODUCT DELIVERY, STORAGE AND HANDLING

A. Materials properly protected and packaged so that no damage occurs during transit. Materials when delivered, protected by the Contractor against damage or theft.

1.06 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Fabricator Qualifications: Shop that employs skilled workers who custom-fabricate products similar to those required for this Project and whose products have a record of successful in-service performance.

B. Source Limitations for Signs: Obtain each sign type indicated from one source from a single manufacturer.

C. Regulatory Requirements: Comply with applicable provisions in ADA-ABA Accessibility Guidelines.

D. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, Article 100, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended use.

1.07 PROJECT CONDITIONS

A. Weather Limitations: Proceed with installation only when existing and forecasted weather conditions permit installation of signs in exterior locations to be performed according to manufacturers' written instructions and warranty requirements.

B. Field Measurements: Verify recess openings by field measurements before fabrication and indicate measurements on Shop Drawings.

1.08 COORDINATION

A. Coordinate placement of anchorage devices with templates for installing signs.

1.09 WARRANTY

A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of signs that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
   1. Failures include, but are not limited to, the following:
      a. Deterioration of metal finishes beyond normal weathering.
   2. Warranty Period: Five years from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.01 MATERIALS

A. Aluminum Castings: ASTM B 26/B 26M, of alloy and temper recommended by sign manufacturer for casting process used and for use and finish indicated.

B. Aluminum Sheet and Plate: ASTM B 209 (ASTM B 209M), alloy and temper recommended by aluminum producer and finisher for type of use and finish indicated, and with at least the strength and durability properties of Alloy 5005-H32.

C. Bronze Castings: ASTM B 584, Alloy UNS No. C86500 (No. 1 manganese bronze).

2.02 PLAQUES

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by:
   1. Gemini Incorporated.

B. Cast Plaques: Provide castings free of pits, scale, sand holes, and other defects, as follows:
   1. Plaque Material: Cast metal with Bronze finish.
   2. Background Texture: Manufacturer's standard leatherette texture.
   3. Border Style: Square, polished.
   4. Mounting: Concealed studs for substrates encountered.

C. Plaque Schedule:
   1. Plaque Type as per drawings.
      a. Plaque Size: As indicated in drawings.
      b. Character Size: As indicated in drawings.
      c. Character Finish/Color: Satin Finished Polished Metal.
      d. Text/Message: Wording of plaque to be submitted and approved by architect prior to manufacturing of plaque.
      e. Location: As indicated in drawings.
      f. Quantity: One (1).

2.03 DIMENSIONAL CHARACTERS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by:
   1. Gemini Incorporated.

B. Cast Characters: Produce characters with smooth flat faces, sharp corners, and precisely formed lines and profiles, free of pits, scale, sand holes, and other defects. Cast lugs into back of characters and tap to receive threaded mounting studs. Alloy and temper recommended by sign manufacturer for casting process used and for use and finish indicated. Comply with the following requirements.
   1. Character Material: Aluminum.
   2. Thickness: 1 inch minimum.
   3. Color(s): Duranodic Bronze.
   4. Mounting: Concealed studs, non-corroding for substrates encountered, and projected 1” from wall.
   5. Character Font: Optima.

C. Aluminum Sheet: 3/8 inch thick.
   1. Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.

D. Illuminated Letters and Numbers:
   1. Character Material: Stainless Steel.
   2. Return depth: 3”
   3. Finish:
      a. Exterior Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer’s full range .
      b. Interior Color: White.
   4. Back: Clear Lexan.
   5. Illumination: UL Listed LED Lighting, Color: White.
   6. Mounting: Detachable studs with masonry anchors, 1.5” stand-off.

E. Street address: Flat cut aluminum numbers, Optima type style as indicated on drawings, equal to Gemini architectural letters. Numbers shall be primed and painted with two coats of enamel, color to be selected by Architect from standard colors. Numbers shall be 8 inches. Numbers shall be mounted as per method #P-8 with masonry anchors and project 1-inch from wall.

2.04 PANEL SIGNS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by:
   1. Best Sign Systems Inc.
   2. Gemini Incorporated.
   3. InPro Corporation

B. Interior Room Signage

1. Sign Type: Kroy non-glare "Contemporary ADA Tactile Sign Series", or approved equal by Best. Allow one sign per interior door unless otherwise noted.
2. Sign Size: As per drawings minimum size to accommodate requirements.
3. Letters:
   a. Letter Style: Optima; w/letter width to height ratio between 3:5 and 1:1 and between 1:5 and 1:10.
   b. Size of Letters and Numbers: 3/4" High and raised.
   c. Letter Type: ALL CAPITALS
   d. Letters and Numbers: Accompanied with Grade II Braille.
   e. Braille Dimensions: .059" dot diameter, .09" interdot spacing, horizontal separation between cells of .241" and vertical separation between cells shall be .395".
   f. Pictograms: Integrate verbal and Braille description below each raised pictogram.
   g. Message Placement: Center justified.
   h. Margin Distance: Equal on all sides
   i. Interline Spacing for multiple lines of copy: 1/4" minimum.
   j. Letter Color: Color to be selected by Architect with matte or non-glare finish.
   k. Background Color: Color to be selected by Architect with matte or non-glare finish.
   l. Mounting: Double back adhesive tape.
4. Messages: Listing of signage messages shall be provided by Architect. Allow for room name on each sign.
5. Exit/Egress Signage: Provide interior tactile room signage at all doors along passageways, exit stairways, and exit discharge leading to accessible means of egress. Refer to the Life Safety Plan.

C. Exterior Parking Signage:
   1. Sign Type: 16" Gauge galvanized steel with 1" radius corners, shop painted and screw attached to 2” galvanized pipe post set in concrete footing. Allow for 1 sign including van accessible.

D. Brackets: Fabricate brackets and fittings for bracket-mounted signs from extruded aluminum to suit panel sign construction and mounting conditions indicated. Factory paint brackets in color as selected by Architect from manufacturer’s standard colors.

E. LEED Exhibit Aluminum Numbers: Cast aluminum letters, Avant Garde type style, equal to ASI Modulex LC Series architectural letters. Finish shall be cast aluminum “satin”. 4” high numbers shall be organized as per drawings. Number shall be mounted as appropriate to substrate and finish while projecting 1” from surface.

F. Reserved (LEED) Parking and other Parking Restriction, Authorized Vehicles, and similar message signs: 18”x24”.

1. LEED Reserved Parking signs for Low Emissions and Car Pool vehicles shall comply with all requirements of the version of LEED under which the project is registered.

G. Handicap Parking Signage: Refer to site plan and handicap signage detail on drawings.

H. Electric Charging Station Sign: Provide two sign located at the parking space with the closest travel distance to the charging station. Sign shall consist of 18"x18" "ELECTRICAL VEHICLE CHARGING STATION" sign, mounted above 18"x24" sign containing a no parking pictogram above "EXCEPT FOR ELECTRIC VEHICLE CHARGING". Refer to site plan and handicap signage detail on Drawings for parking signage at handicapped accessible spaces for similar mounting detail.

I. LEED compliant No Smoking Message Signs: 2” tall message: “SMOKING PROHIBITED” above no smoking pictogram on 6”x6” field, above 1” tall message: “ON ENTIRE PROPERTY” Post one sign within 10 feet of all exterior doors in locations as approved by Architect, excluding the Electrical Main, provide exterior grade photopolymer signs where posted at exterior of the building.
   1. Vinyl signs where posted on glass.

J. Vinyl Appliques:
   1. LEED “No Smoking” Signs: Provide vinyl signs applied to glass at full glazed storefront entry doors or adjacent side light glass. 3” tall “SMOKING PROHIBITED” above 8” diameter no smoking pictogram, above 2” tall message: “ON ENTIRE PROPERTY”. See No Smoking signage above for location requirements.

2.05 ACCESSORIES

A. Anchors and Inserts: Provide nonferrous-metal or hot-dip galvanized anchors and inserts for exterior installations and elsewhere as required for corrosion resistance. Use toothed steel or lead expansion-bolt devices for drilled-in-place anchors. Furnish inserts, as required, to be set into concrete or masonry work.

2.06 FABRICATION

A. General: Provide manufacturer's standard signs of configurations indicated.
   1. Welded Connections: Comply with AWS standards for recommended practices in shop welding. Provide welds behind finished surfaces without distortion or discoloration of exposed side. Clean exposed welded surfaces of welding flux and dress exposed and contact surfaces.
   2. Mill joints to tight, hairline fit. Form joints exposed to weather to exclude water penetration.
   3. Preassemble signs in the shop to greatest extent possible. Disassemble signs only as necessary for shipping and handling limitations. Clearly mark units

for reassembly and installation, in location not exposed to view after final assembly.

4. Conceal fasteners if possible; otherwise, locate fasteners where they will be inconspicuous.

2.07 FINISHES, GENERAL

A. Comply with NAAMM's "Metal Finishes Manual for Architectural and Metal Products" for recommendations for applying and designating finishes.

B. Protect mechanical finishes on exposed surfaces from damage by applying a strippable, temporary protective covering before shipping.

C. Appearance of Finished Work: Variations in appearance of abutting or adjacent pieces are acceptable if they are within one-half of the range of approved Samples. Noticeable variations in the same piece are not acceptable. Variations in appearance of other components are acceptable if they are within the range of approved Samples and are assembled or installed to minimize contrast.

2.08 ALUMINUM FINISHES

A. Baked-Enamel Finish: AA-C12C42R1x (Chemical Finish: cleaned with inhibited chemicals; Chemical Finish: acid-chromate-fluoride-phosphate conversion coating; Organic Coating: as specified below). Apply baked enamel complying with paint manufacturer's written instructions for cleaning, conversion coating, and painting.

1. Organic Coating: Thermosetting, modified-acrylic enamel primer/topcoat system complying with AAMA 2603 except with a minimum dry film thickness of 1.5 mils, medium gloss.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.01 EXAMINATION

A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of work.

B. Verify that items including anchor inserts and electrical power are sized and located to accommodate signs.

C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.02 INSTALLATION

A. Locate signs and accessories where indicated, using mounting methods of types described and complying with manufacturer's written instructions.

1. Install signs level, plumb, and at heights indicated, with sign surfaces free of distortion and other defects in appearance.
2. Interior Wall Signs: Install signs on walls adjacent to latch side of door where applicable. Where not indicated or possible, such as double doors, install signs on nearest adjacent walls. Locate to allow approach within 3 inches of sign without encountering protruding objects or standing within swing of door. Coordinate exact location with Architect.

B. Wall-Mounted Signs: Comply with sign manufacturer's written instructions except where more stringent requirements apply.
1. Two-Face Tape: Mount signs to smooth, nonporous surfaces. Do not use this method for vinyl-covered or rough surfaces.
2. Silicone-Adhesive Mounting: Attach signs to irregular, porous, or vinyl-covered surfaces.
3. Shim Plate Mounting: Provide 1/8-inch thick, concealed aluminum shim plates with predrilled and countersunk holes, at locations indicated, and where other mounting methods are not practicable. Attach plate with fasteners and anchors suitable for secure attachment to substrate. Attach panel signs to plate using method specified above.
4. Mechanical Fasteners: Use nonremovable mechanical fasteners placed through predrilled holes. Attach signs with fasteners and anchors suitable for secure attachment to substrate as recommended in writing by sign manufacturer.

C. Bracket-Mounted Signs: Provide manufacturer's standard brackets, fittings, and hardware for mounting signs that project at right angles from walls and ceilings. Attach brackets and fittings securely to walls and ceilings with concealed fasteners and anchoring devices to comply with manufacturer's written instructions.

D. Dimensional Characters: Mount characters using standard fastening methods to comply with manufacturer's written instructions for character form, type of mounting, wall construction, and condition of exposure indicated. Provide heavy paper template to establish character spacing and to locate holes for fasteners.
1. Projected Mounting: Mount characters at projection distance 1-inch from wall surface indicated.

E. Cast-Metal Plaques: Mount plaques using standard fastening methods to comply with manufacturer's written instructions for type of wall surface indicated.
1. Concealed Mounting: Mount plaques by inserting threaded studs into tapped lugs on back of plaque. Set in predrilled holes filled with quick-setting cement.

F. Exterior aluminum letters applied to clean, sound substrate. Letters installed securely, level, plumb, and true in spacing.

G. Interior signage applied to clean, sound substrate. This signage contractor responsible to properly clean substrates so that letters may be properly applied. Materials installed level, plumb, and true in spacing. Coordinate exact location with Architect.

ROCIP Project: Withhold insurance cost. Please refer to sections 00425 & 00810 for information.

H. Install building plaque 5’6” A.F.F.

3.03 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

A. After installation, clean soiled sign surfaces according to manufacturer's written instructions. Protect signs from damage until acceptance by Owner.

END OF SECTION 10 14 00

ROCIP Project: Withhold insurance cost. Please refer to sections 00425 & 00810 for information.

SECTION 10 26 00 - WALL AND CORNER PROTECTION

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.01 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.02 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:
   1. Corner guards.
   2. Wall Protection.

B. Related Sections:
   1. Division 07 Section "Joint Sealants."
   2. Division 08 Section "Hardware."
   3. Division 09 Section "Painting."
   4. Division 09 Section "Gypsum Board."

1.03 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: Include construction details, material descriptions, impact strength, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes for each impact-resistant wall protection unit.

B. Shop Drawings: For each impact-resistant wall protection unit showing locations and extent. Include sections, details, and attachments to other work.

C. Samples for Verification: For each type of exposed finish required, prepared on Samples of size indicated below. Include Samples of accent strips to verify color selected.
   1. Corner Guards: 12 inches long. Include examples of joinery, corners, end caps, top caps, and field splices.

D. Material Certificates: For each impact-resistant plastic material, from manufacturer.

E. Maintenance Data: For each impact-resistant wall protection unit to include in maintenance manuals.
   1. Include recommended methods and frequency of maintenance for maintaining optimum condition of plastic covers under anticipated traffic and use conditions. Include precautions against using cleaning materials and methods that may be detrimental to plastic finishes and performance.

1.04 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Installer Qualifications: An employer of workers trained and approved by manufacturer.

B. Source Limitations: Obtain impact-resistant wall protection units from single source from single manufacturer.

1.05 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Store impact-resistant wall protection units in original undamaged packages and containers inside well-ventilated area protected from weather, moisture, soiling, extreme temperatures, and humidity.
   1. Maintain room temperature within storage area at not less than 70 deg F (21 deg C) during the period plastic materials are stored.
   2. Keep plastic sheet material out of direct sunlight.
   3. Store plastic wall protection components for a minimum of 72 hours, or until plastic material attains a minimum room temperature of 70 deg F (21 deg C).
      a. Store corner-guard covers in a vertical position.

1.06 PROJECT CONDITIONS

A. Environmental Limitations: Do not deliver or install impact-resistant wall protection units until building is enclosed and weatherproof, wet work is complete and dry, and HVAC system is operating and maintaining temperature at 70 deg F (21 deg C) for not less than 72 hours before beginning installation and for the remainder of the construction period.

1.07 WARRANTY

A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of impact-resistant wall protection units that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
   1. Failures include, but are not limited to, the following:
      a. Structural failures.
      b. Deterioration of plastic and other materials beyond normal use.
   2. Warranty Period: Five years from date of Substantial Completion.

1.08 EXTRA MATERIALS

A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.

1. Corner-Guard Covers: Full-size plastic covers of maximum length equal to 2 percent of each type, color, and texture of units installed, but no fewer than two, 8-foot long units.

B. Include mounting and accessory components. Replacement materials shall be from same production run as installed units.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.01 CORNER GUARDS

A. Surface-Mounted Corner Guards: Shall be Type #180 as manufactured by IPC Door & Wall Protection Systems, or approved equal by Pawling Corp.
   1. Stainless Steel shall be 3-1/2” x 3-1/2” x 8’-0”, 90 degrees, 1/8” radius, anchored to wall @ 18” o.c., pre-drilled and counter-sunk screws.
   2. Accessories: Provide screws and all necessary attachment hardware to complete the assembly.
   3. Provide at outside corners where indicated on Drawings.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.01 EXAMINATION

A. Examine substrates and wall areas, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances**,** and other conditions affecting performance of work.

B. Examine walls to which impact-resistant wall protection will be attached for blocking, grounds, and other solid backing that have been installed in the locations required for secure attachment of support fasteners.

C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.02 PREPARATION

A. Complete finishing operations, including painting, before installing impact-resistant wall protection system components.

B. Before installation, clean substrate to remove dust, debris, and loose particles.

3.03 INSTALLATION

A. General: Install impact-resistant wall protection units level, plumb, and true to line without distortions. Do not use materials with chips, cracks, voids, stains, or other defects that might be visible in the finished Work.

ROCIP Project: Withhold insurance cost. Please refer to sections 00425 & 00810 for information.

3.04 CLEANING

A. Immediately after completion of installation, clean plastic covers and accessories using a standard, ammonia-based, household cleaning agent.

B. Remove excess adhesive using methods and materials recommended in writing by manufacturer.

END OF SECTION 10 26 00

ROCIP Project: Withhold insurance cost. Please refer to sections 00425 & 00810 for information.

SECTION 10 28 00 - TOILET, BATH, AND LAUNDRY ACCESSORIES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.01 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.02 SUMMARY

A. This Section includes the following:
   1. Public-use washroom accessories.
   2. Private-use bathroom accessories.
   3. Underlavatory guards.
   4. Custodial accessories.

B. Related Sections include the following:
   1. Division 06 Section "Rough Carpentry."
   2. Division 06 Section "Wood Framing."
   3. Division 09 Section "Tiling."
   4. Division 09 Section "Gypsum Board."

1.03 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Include the following:
   1. Construction details and dimensions.
   2. Anchoring and mounting requirements, including requirements for cutouts in other work and substrate preparation.
   3. Material and finish descriptions.
   4. Features that will be included for Project.
   5. Manufacturer's warranty.

B. Maintenance Data: For toilet and bath accessories to include in maintenance manuals.

1.04 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Source Limitations: For products listed together in the same articles in Part 2, provide products of same manufacturer unless otherwise approved by Architect.

1.05 COORDINATION

A. Coordinate accessory locations with other work to prevent interference with clearances required for access by people with disabilities, and for proper installation, adjustment, operation, cleaning, and servicing of accessories.

B. Deliver inserts and anchoring devices set into concrete or masonry as required to prevent delaying the Work.

1.06 WARRANTY

A. Special Mirror Warranty: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to replace mirrors that develop visible silver spoilage defects and that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
   1. Warranty Period: 15 years from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.01 MATERIALS

A. Stainless Steel: ASTM A 666, Type 304, 0.0312-inch minimum nominal thickness, unless otherwise indicated.

B. Brass: ASTM B 19 flat products; ASTM B 16 (ASTM B 16M), rods, shapes, forgings, and flat products with finished edges; or ASTM B 30, castings.

C. Steel Sheet: ASTM A 1008/A 1008M, Designation CS (cold rolled, commercial steel), 0.0359-inch minimum nominal thickness.

D. Galvanized Steel Sheet: ASTM A 653/A 653M, with G60 (Z180) hot-dip zinc coating.

E. Galvanized Steel Mounting Devices: ASTM A 153/A 153M, hot-dip galvanized after fabrication.

F. Fasteners: Screws, bolts, and other devices of same material as accessory unit and tamper-and-theft resistant where exposed, and of galvanized steel where concealed.

G. Chrome Plating: ASTM B 456, Service Condition Number SC 2 (moderate service).

H. Mirrors: ASTM C 1503, Mirror Glazing Quality, clear-glass mirrors, nominal 6.0 mm thick.

I. ABS Plastic: Acrylonitrile-butadiene-styrene resin formulation.

2.02 PUBLIC-USE WASHROOM ACCESSORIES

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by:
   1. Bobrick Washroom Equipment, Inc.

B. Toilet Tissue (Roll) Dispenser:
   1. Description: No. B-686 Double-roll dispenser
   2. Mounting: Surface mounted.

C. Combination Towel (Folded) Dispenser/Waste Receptacle:
   1. Basis-of-Design Product: Bobrick No. B-369.
   2. Description: Combination unit for dispensing C-fold or multifold towels, with removable waste receptacle.
   3. Mounting: Recessed.
      a. Designed for nominal 4-inch wall depth.
   4. Material and Finish: Stainless steel, with Satin Finish.
   5. Liner: Reusable, vinyl waste-receptacle liner.
   6. Lockset: Tumbler type for towel-dispenser compartment.

D. Liquid-Soap Dispenser:
   1. Basis-of-Design Product: Bobrick No. B-4112 in Public Restrooms.
   2. Description: Designed for dispensing soap in liquid or lotion form.
   3. Capacity: No. B-4112 – 40 oz.
   4. Refill Indicator: Window type.

E. Grab Bar:
   1. Basis-of-Design Product: Bobrick Series B-6806
   2. Material: Stainless steel, 0.05 inch thick.
      a. Finish: Stainless Steel with Satin Finish.
   3. Outside Diameter: 1-1/2 inches.
   4. Configuration and Length: As indicated on Drawings and shall comply with all State and Local handicapped code requirements.

F. Mirror Unit:
   1. Basis-of-Design Product: Bobrick No. B165-2436:

2.03 SHOWER ACCESSORIES

A. Shower Curtain Rod:
   1. Basis-of-Design Product: Bobrick No. B 6047 x 36.
   2. Description: 1 1/4 –inch OD; Type 304, 18-gauge stainless steel.

B. Shower Curtain:
   1. Basis-of-Design Product: Bobrick No. 204-2
   2. Size: Minimum 6 inches wider than opening by 72 inches high.
   3. Material: Vinyl, minimum 0.008-inch thick, opaque, matte.
   4. Color: White.
   5. Grommets: Corrosion resistant at minimum 6 inches o.c. through top hem.
   6. Shower Curtain Hooks: Chrome-plated or stainless-steel, spring wire curtain hooks with snap fasteners, sized to accommodate specified curtain rod. Provide one hook per curtain grommet.

C. Free-Standing Shower Seat:
   1. Basis of Design: Teak Works 4- TBF 360160W

2. Description: Teak ADA Shower Seat.
3. Mounting: Free Standing.

2.04 PRIVATE-USE BATHROOM ACCESSORIES

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by:
   1. Bobrick Washroom Equipment, Inc.

B. Robe Hook:
   1. Basis-of-Design Product: Bobrick No. B-76717.
   2. Description: Single-prong unit.
   3. Material and Finish: Stainless steel, No. 4 finish (satin).

C. Towel Bar:
   1. Basis-of-Design Product: Bobrick No. B-530.
   2. Description: 1-inch diameter.
   3. Mounting: Flanges with concealed fasteners.
   4. Length: 24 inches.
   5. Material and Finish: Stainless steel, No. 4 finish (satin).

2.05 UNDERLAVATORY GUARDS

A. Underlavatory Guard:
   1. Basis-of-Design Product: TRUEBRO “Trap Wrap” 500TW.
   2. Description: Insulating pipe covering for supply and drain piping assemblies that prevents direct contact with and burns from piping, and allows service access without removing coverings.
   3. Material and Finish: Antimicrobial, molded-plastic, white.

2.06 CUSTODIAL ACCESSORIES

A. Basis-of-Design Product: The design for accessories is based on products indicated. Subject to compliance with requirements, provide the named product or a comparable product by one of the following:
   1. A & J Washroom Accessories, Inc.
   2. American Specialties, Inc.
   3. Bobrick Washroom Equipment, Inc.
   4. Bradley Corporation.
   5. GAMCO Commercial Restroom Accessories.

B. Mop and Broom Holder:
   1. Basis-of-Design Product: Bobrick No. B-224
      a. Description: Unit with shelf, hooks, mop/broom holders, and rod suspended beneath shelf.
      b. Length: 36 inches.
      c. Hooks: Three.

d. Mop/Broom Holders: Four spring-loaded rubber hat, cam type.
e. Material and Finish: Stainless steel, No. 4 finish (satin).
   1) Shelf: Not less than nominal 0.05-inch thick stainless steel.
   2) Drying Rod: Approximately 1/4-inch diameter stainless steel.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.01 INSTALLATION

A. All handicapped bathroom fixtures and toilet accessories shall comply with all federal, state and local Handicapped code requirements and comply with TAS (Texas Accessibility Standards) mounting locations and heights.

B. Install accessories according to manufacturers' written instructions, using fasteners appropriate to substrate indicated and recommended by unit manufacturer. Install units level, plumb, and firmly anchored in locations and at heights indicated.

C. Grab Bars: Install to withstand a downward load of at least 250 lbf (1112 N), when tested according to method in ASTM F 446.

3.02 INSPECTION

A. Inspect blocking and plate inserts in framing to determine if material is in proper position for installation of accessories prior to wallboard surfacing being applied. Units securely attached to framing. Grab bars installed to withstand a 900 lb. loading condition; provide necessary concealed anchorage devices to meet load requirements.

3.03 ADJUSTING AND CLEANING

A. Adjust accessories for unencumbered, smooth operation. Replace damaged or defective items.

B. Remove temporary labels and protective coatings.

C. Clean and polish exposed surfaces according to manufacturer's written recommendations.

END OF SECTION 10 28 00

ROCIP Project: Withhold insurance cost. Please refer to sections 00425 & 00810 for information.

SECTION 10 41 00 – KNOX BOX

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.01 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.02 DESCRIPTION

A. Provide and install knox box as shown on the drawings and as herein specified.

1.03 RELATED WORK SPECIFIED ELSEWHERE

A. Division 08 Section "Hardware"

1.04 PRODUCT DELIVERY AND STORAGE

A. Deliver all products to job site in manufacturer's original, standard containers with seals unbroken and labels intact.

1.05 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: Submit manufacturer's product literature and color chips for all products specified.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.01 MANUFACTURERS

A. Knox Company, 1601 West Deer Valley Road, Phoenix, AZ. 85027, www.knoxbox.com.
   1. Knox Box Series 3200 Hinged Door Recessed Model
      a. Recesssed mount with flange.

B. Provide knox box equal to Knox Box Recessed Mount System
   1. Hinged door.
   2. Color to be selected by Architect.

ROCIP Project: Withhold insurance cost. Please refer to sections 00425 & 00810 for information.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.01 INSPECTION

A. Examine all surfaces receiving knox box for any defects that would impair installation and if any are found, make such corrections.

3.02 INSTALLATION

A. Install units using manufacturer's standard recommended methods. Use manufacturer's standard hardware where recommended to secure units into the wall.

3.03 PROTECTION AND CLEANING

A. Clean exposed surfaces.

B. Protection: Installer shall advise contractor of final protection and maintenance conditions necessary to ensure that work will be without damage at time of acceptance.

END OF SECTION 10 41 00

ROCIP Project: Withhold insurance cost. Please refer to sections 00425 & 00810 for information.

SECTION 10 44 12 - FIRE EXTINGUISHERS AND FIRE EXTINGUISHER CABINETS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.01 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.02 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:
1. Portable fire extinguishers.
2. Mounting brackets.
3. Fire extinguisher cabinets.

B. Related Sections:
1. Division 06 Section "Rough Carpentry."
2. Division 06 Section "Wood Framing."
3. Division 09 Section "Gypsum Board."
4. Division 09 Section "Non-Structural Metal Framing."

1.03 SUBMITTALS

A. Comply with pertinent provisions of Division 01 Section "Submittal Procedures", unless otherwise indicated.

B. Product Data:
1. For Fire Extinguishers. For each type of product indicated. Include rating and classification, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes for fire extinguisher and mounting brackets.
2. Fire Extinguisher Cabinets: Include roughing-in dimensions, details showing mounting methods, relationships of box and trim to surrounding construction, door hardware, cabinet type, trim style, and panel style. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes for fire protection cabinets.

C. Shop Drawings: For Fire Extinguisher Cabinets: Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.

D. Product Schedule:
1. For Fire Extinguishers. Coordinate final fire extinguisher schedule with fire protection cabinet schedule to ensure proper fit and function.
2. For Fire Extinguisher Cabinets. Coordinate final fire protection cabinet schedule with fire extinguisher schedule to ensure proper fit and function.

E. Operation and Maintenance Data:
   1. For fire extinguishers to include in maintenance manuals.
   2. For fire extinguisher cabinets to include in maintenance manuals.

F. Warranty: Sample of special warranty.

1.04 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Single Source Responsibility: Obtain products in this section from one manufacturer.

B. For fire extinguishers. NFPA Compliance: Fabricate and label fire extinguishers to comply with NFPA 10, "Portable Fire Extinguishers."
   1. Listed and labeled for type, rating, and classification by an independent testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
   2. Provide fire extinguishers approved, listed, and labeled by FMG.
   3. UL-Listed Products: Provide new portable fire extinguishers which are UL-listed and bear UL "Listing Mark" for type, rating, and classification of extinguisher indicated.

C. Fire-Rated, Fire Extinguisher Cabinets: Listed and labeled to comply with requirements in ASTM E 814 for fire-resistance rating of walls where they are installed.

1.05 COORDINATION

A. Coordinate size of fire protection cabinets to ensure that type and capacity of fire extinguishers indicated are accommodated.

B. Coordinate sizes and locations of fire extinguisher cabinets with wall depths.

1.06 WARRANTY

A. Special Warranty for Fire Extinguishers: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair or replace fire extinguishers that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
   1. Failures include, but are not limited to, the following:
      a. Failure of hydrostatic test according to NFPA 10.
      b. Faulty operation of valves or release levers.
   2. Warranty Period: Six years from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.01 PORTABLE, HAND-CARRIED FIRE EXTINGUISHERS

A. Fire Extinguishers: Type, size, and capacity for each fire protection cabinet and mounting bracket indicated.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by:
   a. J. L. Industries, Inc.; a division of Activar Construction Products Group. "Cosmic" Series Model 5E with nozzle.
2. Valves: Manufacturer's standard.
3. Handles and Levers: Manufacturer's standard.
4. Instruction Labels: Include pictorial marking system complying with NFPA 10, Appendix Band bar coding for documenting fire extinguisher location, inspections, maintenance, and recharging.

B. Multipurpose Dry-Chemical Type: UL-rated 5 lb. nominal capacity, with mono-ammonium phosphate powder in manufacturer's standard heavy duty steel cylinder with powder coat finish. Model: Galaxy 10.

C. Wet Chemical: J.L. Industries, Inc. Saturn Series for class 'K' series. Model: Saturn 15.

2.02 MOUNTING BRACKETS

A. Brackets: Equal to J. L. Industries Mark Brackets, Model No. MB 818 complete with required anchors, of required size for Cosmic 5X fire extinguishers.

B. Mounting Brackets: Manufacturer's Standard galvanized steel, designed to secure fire extinguisher to wall or structure. Brackets are to be used in Apparatus Bay only.

C. Identification: Lettering complying with authorities having jurisdiction for letter style, size, spacing, and location. Locate as indicated by Architect.

2.03 FIRE EXTINGUISHER CABINET

A. Cabinet Type: Suitable for fire extinguisher.
   1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide the following:
      a. JL Industries, Inc.; 8115, 8117

B. Cabinet Construction: Nonrated.

C. Cabinet Material: Steel sheet.

D. Cold-Rolled Steel Sheet: ASTM A 1008/A 1008M, Commercial Steel (CS), Type B.

E. Clear Acrylic: ASTM C 1036, Type I, Class 1, Quality q3.

F. Semi-recessed Cabinet: Cabinet box partially recessed in walls of sufficient depth to suit style of trim indicated; with one-piece combination trim and perimeter door frame overlapping surrounding wall surface with exposed trim face and wall return at outer edge (backbend). Provide where walls are of insufficient depth for recessed

cabinets but are of sufficient depth to accommodate semi-recessed cabinet installation.

1. Rolled-Edge Trim: 2-1/2-inch backbend depth.

G. Cabinet Trim Material: Same material and finish as door.
   1) Door Material: Steel sheet.

H. Door Style: Fully glazed panel with frame.

I. Door Glazing: Acrylic.

J. Door Hardware: Manufacturer's standard door-operating hardware of proper type for cabinet type, trim style, and door material and style indicated.

K. Accessories:
   1. Mounting Bracket: Manufacturer's standard steel, designed to secure fire extinguisher to fire protection cabinet, of sizes required for types and capacities of fire extinguishers indicated, with plated or baked-enamel finish.
   2. Door Lock: None.
   3. Identification: Lettering complying with authorities having jurisdiction for letter style, size, spacing, and location.
      a. Identify fire extinguisher in fire protection cabinet with the words "FIRE EXTINGUISHER".
         1) Location: Applied to cabinet glazing.
         2) Application Process: Silk-screened.
         3) Lettering Color: White.
         4) Orientation: Vertical.

L. Finishes:
   1. Manufacturer's standard baked-enamel paint for the following:
      a. Exterior of cabinet, door, and trim except for those surfaces indicated to receive another finish.
      b. Interior of cabinet and door.
   2. Baked enamel or powder coat.

2.04 FABRICATION OF FIRE PROTECTION CABINETS

A. Fire Extinguisher Cabinets: Provide manufacturer's standard box (tub) with trim, frame, door, and hardware to suit cabinet type, trim style, and door style indicated.
   1. Weld joints and grind smooth.
   2. Provide factory-drilled mounting holes.
   3. Prepare doors and frames to receive locks.
   4. Install door locks at factory.

B. Cabinet Doors: Fabricate doors according to manufacturer's standards, from materials indicated and coordinated with cabinet types and trim styles selected.
   1. Fabricate door frames with tubular stiles and rails and hollow-metal design, minimum 1/2 inch thick.
   2. Fabricate door frames of one-piece construction with edges flanged.

3. Miter and weld perimeter door frames.

C. Cabinet Trim: Fabricate cabinet trim in one piece with corners mitered, welded, and ground smooth.

2.05 GENERAL FINISH REQUIREMENTS OF FIRE PROTECTION CABINETS

A. Comply with NAAMM's "Metal Finishes Manual for Architectural and Metal Products" for recommendations for applying and designating finishes.

B. Protect mechanical finishes on exposed surfaces of fire protection cabinets from damage by applying a strippable, temporary protective covering before shipping.

C. Finish fire protection cabinets after assembly.

D. Appearance of Finished Work: Noticeable variations in same piece are not acceptable. Variations in appearance of adjoining components are acceptable if they are within the range of approved Samples and are assembled or installed to minimize contrast.

2.06 STEEL FINISHES OF FIRE PROTECTION CABINETS

A. Surface Preparation: Remove mill scale and rust, if present, from uncoated steel, complying with SSPC-SP 5/NACE No. 1, "White Metal Blast Cleaning". Retain paragraph below for factory-applied, baked-enamel or powder-coat finish for steel sheet.

B. Powder-Coat Finish: Immediately after cleaning and pretreating, apply manufacturer's standard two-coat, baked-on finish consisting of prime coat and thermosetting topcoat. Comply with coating manufacturer's written instructions for applying and baking to achieve a minimum dry film thickness of 2 mils.
   1. Color and Gloss: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.01 EXAMINATION

A. Fire Extinguishers:
   1. Examine fire extinguishers for proper charging and tagging.
   2. Remove and replace damaged, defective, or undercharged fire extinguishers.
   3. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

B. Fire Extinguisher Cabinets:
   1. Examine walls and partitions for suitable framing depth and blocking where semi-recessed cabinets will be installed.
   2. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3. Prepare recesses for semi-recessed fire protection cabinets as required by type and size of cabinet and trim style.

3.02 INSTALLATION

A. Fire Extinguishers:
   1. General: Install fire extinguishers and mounting brackets in locations indicated and in compliance with requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.
   2. Mounting Brackets: Maximum 54 inches above finished floor to top of fire extinguisher, to comply with applicable regulations of governing authorities as directed by local Fire Marshall.
   3. Mounting Brackets: Fasten mounting brackets to surfaces, square and plumb, at locations indicated.

B. Fire Protection Cabinets:
   1. General: Install fire protection cabinets in locations and at mounting heights indicated, or if not indicated, at heights to comply with applicable regulations of governing authorities as directed by local Fire Marshall.
   2. Fasten cabinets to structure, square and plumb.
   3. Unless otherwise indicated, provide recessed fire protection cabinets. If wall thickness is not adequate for recessed cabinets, provide semi-recessed fire protection cabinets.
   4. Fasten mounting brackets to inside surface of fire protection cabinets, square and plumb.

C. Coordinate all fire extinguisher types and mounting locations with Fire Marshall.

3.03 ADJUSTING AND CLEANING OF FIRE PROTECTION CABINETS

A. Remove temporary protective coverings and strippable films, if any, as fire protection cabinets are installed unless otherwise indicated in manufacturer's written installation instructions.

B. On completion of fire protection cabinet installation, clean interior and exterior surfaces as recommended by manufacturer.

C. Touch up marred finishes, or replace fire protection cabinets that cannot be restored to factory-finished appearance. Use only materials and procedures recommended or furnished by fire protection cabinet and mounting bracket manufacturers.

D. Replace fire protection cabinets that have been damaged or have deteriorated beyond successful repair by finish touchup or similar minor repair procedures.

END OF SECTION 10 44 12

ROCIP Project: Withhold insurance cost. Please refer to sections 00425 & 00810 for information.

SECTION 10 51 43 - TURNOUT GEAR LOCKERS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.01 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.02 SUMMARY

A. Provide and install turnout gear lockers units as shown on the drawings and as herein specified.

B. Related Sections include the following:
   1. Division 3, Section “Concrete”, for concrete pads under floor mounted units.
   2. Division 4, Section “Unit Masonry Assemblies”.

1.03 PRODUCT DELIVERY AND STORAGE

A. Deliver all products to job site in manufacturer’s original, standard containers with seals unbroken and labels intact. Store in clean, dry area. Handle and protect materials and finishes to prevent damage.

1.04 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: Submit manufacturer’s product literature for all products specified.

B. Shop Drawings: Submit shop drawings for each run of lockers. Indicate attachments to substrates and coordination with project dimensions and conditions.

1.05 WARRANTY

A. Manufacturer's standard limited warranty.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.01 MATERIALS

A. Turnout Gear Lockers: Provide storage units equal to "Geargrid Wall Mount Lockers" as manufactured by Gear Grid, (888) 643-6694, www.geargrid.com
   1. Lockers: Wall-mount and Floor mounted.
      a. Width: 20" nominal
      b. Depth 20" nominal
      c. Height 74" nominal (wall mounted), 83" nominal (mobile / floor mounted).
      d. Frame: High strength ASTM A513 1-1/4" diameter x 16 gauge steel tubing
      e. Panel Construction: Sides and backs of high strength ASTM A510 cold drawn 1/4" diameter wire resistance welded in 3" square pattern.
         1) Two full width shelves per unit, located at top and bottom, constructed of high strength 1/4" wire.
         2) Number / Name Plates on top shelf: 20 gauge steel, to accept printed tags.
      f. Accessories:
         1) Apparel Hooks: (3) .25" diameter wire hooks per locker.
         2) Rod and Hangers: Provide each locker unit with one full width hanging rod with the following hangers:
            a) Three heavy duty hangers.
            b) One Heavy Duty Gear Dryer hanger, designed to hold gear jackets open to allow faster dryin].
            c) One Gloves hanger, designed to hold one pair of gloves and to allow faster drying.

         3) Top-side Storage: Provide top shelf over lockers matching panel construction, at all locker units.
      g. Mounting Brackets: 11 gauge steel
      h. Floor mount legs: Adjustable type.

B. Backboard Racks: Provide open face backboard racks matching turnout gear locker construction.
   1. Width: 24” nominal
   2. Racks: top and bottom racks, adjustable in 3” increments, with velcro straps.

C. Finish: All components excluding assembly and mounting hardware and stainless steel components to receive high grade durable powder coat enamel finish.
   1. Gear Lockers Color: Red.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.01 INSPECTION AND ADJUSTMENT

A. Examine units for damage. Do not install damaged units.

B. Examine all surfaces receiving gear storage units for any defects that would impair installation and if any are found, make such corrections as necessary.

3.02 INSTALLATION

A. Assemble and install units using manufacturer's standard recommended methods. Use manufacturer's standard hardware for assembly and mount units securely to substrated indicated using hardware recommended by Manufacturer.

3.03 PROTECTION AND CLEANING

A. Clean exposed surfaces.

B. Protection: Installer shall advise General Contractor of final protection and maintenance conditions necessary to ensure that work will be without damage at time of acceptance.

END OF SECTION 10 51 43

ROCIP Project: Withhold insurance cost. Please refer to sections 00425 & 00810 for information.

SECTION 10 56 13 – METAL STORAGE SHELVING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.01 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.02 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:
   1. Provide and install mechanically-assisted storage shelving, including shelving, carriages, deck and track assembly as shown on drawings.

B. Related Sections include the following:
   1. Division 06 Section "Rough Carpentry."
   2. Division 09 Section "Gypsum Wallboard."

1.03 PRODUCT DELIVERY, STORAGE AND HANDLING

A. Delivery: Deliver storage shelving in factory cartons with labels intact, legibly marked.

B. Storage: Store equipment in such a manner to protect equipment from the weather.

C. Protection: Wrapping and protective covering shall remain on items until components are ready for installation.

1.04 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Entire system shall be manufactured by a single company regularly engaged (at least five years) in the manufacture of steel movable storage systems.

1.05 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: Submit manufacturer's technical data, installation instructions, and color finish range of laminates and paints.

1.06 WARRANTY

A. Provide Owner a written warranty from manufacturer which shall warrant the shelving system to be free of defects in material and workmanship for five years from date of substantial completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.01 MATERIALS

A. Furnish and install in layout shown on drawings:
   1. Adjustable post bracket system manufactured by Tarrison Products, Ltd. System shall include (4) Post Kits, 54” long, chrome finish, model no. P54; (4) Wire Shelves, 18” W x 42” L, stainless steel finish, model no. S1842S; (8) Post Shelf Brackets, 18”, model no. APB18CS.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.01 INSPECTION

A. Inspect flooring, walls, and related adjacent construction that would prevent quality installation of unit.

B. Do not proceed until defects are corrected.

3.02 FABRICATION

3.03 INSTALLATION

A. Install shelving plumb and level in accordance with final, approved layout configurations and in accordance with manufacturer's directions.

3.04 CLEANING

A. Remove crating and packing materials from premises.

B. Clean surfaces free of fingerprints, markings and dust.

END OF SECTION 10 56 13

ROCIP Project: Withhold insurance cost. Please refer to sections 00425 & 00810 for information.

SECTION 10 71 00 – SUN CONTROL DEVICES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.01 RELATED DOCUMENTS`

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.02 SUMMARY

A. Provide aluminum sunscreen devices as shown on the drawings and as herein specified. Coordinate with Storefront manufacturer for reinforcement of metal framing as required to support sunscreens.

B. Related Requirements Specified Elsewhere:
   1. Division 4 Section: Unit Masonry Assemblies, for masonry construction supporting sunscreen devices.
   2. Division 5 Section: Structural Steel
   3. Division 5 Section: Metal Fabrications
   4. Division 7 Section: Joint Sealants
   5. Division 8 Section: Aluminum Storefronts and Entrances
   6. Division 8 Section: Glazing

1.03 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Design Criteria:
   1. Design sunshades to accommodate local requirements for snow and wind loading; all materials designed, fabricated and installed to withstand a 16.6 lb. per sq. ft. uniform wind loading condition or as required by local building codes with maximum deflection not exceeding L/175, 3/4", or as required by local codes, whichever requirements are most stringent.
   2. Provide engineering calculations to support design. Calculations to be by a registered engineer licensed in the state of the project location.

B. Source Limitations: For quality and delivery control, sunshades must be purchased from a single source. Sub contracting of shade assembly is not acceptable. Site Fabricated assemblies are unacceptable. Basis of design requires factory assembled and finished systems.

C. Fabricator and Installer: Shall have a minimum of 5 years experience on projects of similar size and scope.

1.04 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: Submit specifications, data, and installation instructions from the Manufacturer of the sunscreen devices.

B. Shop drawings and details based on the Contract Documents submitted to the Architect for review shall include complete sunscreen and support detailing including but not limited to sunscreen components, method of attachment to storefront system, requirements for structural reinforcement of storefront to be provided by storefront manufacturer.
   1. Drawings shall include elevations, sections and specific details for each unit, condition and all collateral wall conditions that sunshade attaches to.

C. Samples for Initial Selection: Submit Manufacturer's standard size selector sheet or plate samples unless custom color finish is indicated.

D. Samples for Verification: Submit one sample minimum 24" long of each material to be utilized at each Sunshade with appropriate finish.

E. LEED Submittals:
   1. Materials and Resources: Provide product information and certification letter indicating percentages by weight of post consumer and pre consumer recycled content for products having recycled content.
   2. Optimize Energy Performance: Provide information confirming that products contribute to increasing levels of energy performance above the baseline in the prerequisite standard to reduce environmental and economic impacts associated with excessive energy use.
   3. Daylighting 75 Percent of Spaces: Provide information confirming that products provide the building occupants a connection between indoor spaces and the outdoors through the introduction of daylight and views into the regularly occupied areas of the building.

1.05 PROJECT CONDITIONS

A. Field Measurements: Verify actual supporting and adjoining construction by field measurements before fabrication, and indicate recorded measurements on final shop drawings. Coordinate construction to ensure that sun control assemblies fit properly to supporting and adjoining construction and coordinate schedule with construction progress to avoid delaying the work.
   1. Established dimensions: where field measurements can not be made without delaying the work, guarantee dimensions and proceed with fabrication of sun control assemblies corresponding to the established dimensions.

B. Coordinate sunscreen detailing and installation with requirements of storefront systems as specified in Division 8 Section(s) and as shown on Drawings.

1.06 WARRANTY AND GUARANTEE

A. Manufacturer’s warranty: submit, for Owner’s acceptance, manufacturer’s standard warranty documents executed by authorized company official. Manufacturer’s warranty is in addition to, and not a limitation of, other rights owner may have under the Contract Documents.
   1. Include Manufacturer's standard 20 year limited warranty on painted finishes.

B. Installer shall submit a written Guarantee to the Owner, guaranteeing aluminum sunscreen for a period of 2 years from date of substantial completion against faults and defects.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.01 MANUFACTURERS

A. Basis of Design manufacturer is AVAdek located at 12130 Galveston Road, Building 1, Webster, Texas 77598, Tel. 713-944-0988.

B. Basis of Design manufacturer at storefront system is Versoleil™ Sunshade Outrigger System by Kawneer Company Inc.
   1. 30” Outrigger with airfoil style louver.
   2. Finish: match storefront finish.

2.02 MATERIALS

A. Aluminum system fabricated of alloy 6063 and/or 6061. Thickness of framework as determined by Manufacturer to suit loading conditions. Screws, miscellaneous fastening devices and internal components of non-corrosive materials. Provide shapes as shown on drawings and as required to provide complete sunscreen assembly.

B. Aluminum Sheet: ASTM B209, alloy 6061-T6 or as otherwise recommended by metal producer for required finish and fabrication.

C. Anchoring Devices: Provide plates, angles, wind bracing, spacers, clips and other devices necessary to provide complete sunscreen assembly capable of being supported from aluminum storefront framing. Of type, size and material required for loading and installation indicated. Use nonferrous metal or hot-dip galvanized anchors and inserts for exterior installations and elsewhere as needed for corrosion resistance. Use toothed steel or expansion bolt devices for drilled in place anchors. Design of connections shall be fabricator's responsibility. Submit shop drawing for approval. Provide design requirements to storefront fabricator for provision of steel frame bracing within storefront as required by sunscreen loading.
   1. Coordinate design of connections to steel structure with steel erector.
   2. Coordinate design of connections to storefront with storefront manufacturer.

D. Exposed Fasteners: Finished or painted to match sunscreen device framing unless otherwise indicated.

E. Bituminous paint: Cold applied asphalt emulsion complying with ASTM D1187.

F. Perimeter Sealant: 2 part polyurethane sealant as made by Pecora, Inc., Sonneborn, or Tremco Mfg. Co., unless otherwise required for compatibility with adjacent sealants (Refer to Division 09 Section "Joint Sealants"). Color to match aluminum sunscreen framing or adjacent finish material as directed by Architect.

G. Clear Protective Coating: Complying with AAMA 602.2 for protecting finish during construction.

2.03 FABRICATION

A. Provide fixed Sunshades and accessories of design, material, sizes, depth, arrangement, and thickness as indicated or as required for optimal performance with respect to strength; durability; and uniform appearance.

B. Framing members and aluminum custom fabrications shall be completely fabricated at the factory for assembly and installation at the job site with provision for thermal movement for an ambient temperature range of 120°F and in accordance with Manufacturer's recommended procedures.
   1. System shall be welded construction.

C. Miscellaneous Steel Bracing (Concealed): 1 shop coat of red oxide primer.

2.04 HORIZONTAL, FIXED, EXTRUDED ALUMINUM SUNSCREEN DEVICES

A. Horizontal, fixed, extruded-aluminum sun control assemblies complying with the following:
   1. Blade: 8” Extruded, .125 inch aluminum airfoil blade.
   2. Fascia: .125 inch aluminum 8” deep continuous fascia cap. Fascia retainer clip, on both sides of each outrigger.
   3. Outrigger: 6” deep . Outriggers and/or endplates shall be a minimum of 1/4” thick, custom profile flat aluminum plate members sized per manufacturers engineering calculations for design loads.
   4. Hardware to be designed and provided by sunshade manufacturer for attachment of sunshade to tabs and/or steel tube structure. Hardware assembly to consist of mechanical fasteners, washers, collars, dissimilar material isolation separation. Attachment hardware system to allow for minor adjustments to accommodate for field tolerances.

2.05 WALL MOUNTED CANOPY (AT EXTERIOR DOORS)

A. All components shall be 6061, 6063, or 6065 Alloy extruded aluminum. All components shall be sized as required to meet engineering requirements of the project, sizes and depth indicated in Drawings, and as follows, whichever is greatest except that canopy member depths shall not exceed depths shown in Drawings unless specifically approved by Architect:
   1. Fascia / Beams: Minimum .125” wall, extruded aluminum 8" face. Other beams shall not be deeper or control overall canopy depth.
      a. Perimeter Trim Profile: Manufacturer's standard flat profile
   2. Deck: Standard decking, minimum .080" thickness, of required size as determined by manufacturer.

B. Drainage
   1. Drainage trim rings through bottom of canopy: Where indicated in Drawings, water shall drain through equal sized round trim rings extending down through canopy soffit or fascia / beams, located at the corners of canopies as indicated in Drawings.
      a. Water to free-fall to paved surface or rock mulch surface as detailed in Drawings.

C. Fasteners, Connections and Fittings: All components provided by canopy Manufacturer.

1. All bolts, nuts, washers, and screws used in joining the members shall be stainless steel.
2. Where exposed fasteners are not avoidable, visible fasteners or components must be finished to match surrounding surfaces.
3. Component Accessories: Shall be of similar materials as specified for prime components.
4. Flashing: Minimum .040, color to match canopy system fascia.

2.06 ALUMINUM FINISHES

A. General: Comply with NAAMM "Metal Finishes Manual" for architectural metal products for recommendations for applying and designating finishes. Protect finishes on exposed surfaces prior to shipment.
   1. Finish sunscreen devices after assembly if welded.

B. Finish designations prefixed by AA comply with system established by the Aluminum Association for designating aluminum finishes.
   1. Clear Anodized Finish: AAMA 611, AA-M12C22A41, Class I, 0.018 mm or thicker.

C. Painted Finish: Provide Powder Coat coating system. Color: As selected by Architect from Manufacturer's full line of colors

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.01 PREPARATION

A. Coordinate setting drawings, diagrams, templates, instructions, and directions for installation of anchorages that are to be embedded in concrete or masonry construction. Coordinate delivery of such items to project site.

B. Examine openings to receive the work. Do not proceed until any unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.02 APPLICATION

A. Locate and place sun control assemblies' level, plumb, and at indicated alignment with adjacent work. Properly locate and fasten anchoring devices and structural framing into supporting structure.

B. Use concealed anchorages where possible. Provide stainless steel/neoprene washers fitted to screws where required to protect metal surfaces and to make a weather tight connection.

C. Form closely fitted joints with exposed connections accurately located and secured.

D. Repair finishes damaged by cutting, welding, soldering and grinding. Restore finishes so no evidence remains of corrective work. Return items that cannot be refinished in the field to the factory, make required alterations, and refinish entire unit or provide new units.

E. Dissimilar Materials: Isolate aluminum surfaces contacting or other ferrous metals using EC-1202 tape or zinc chromate paint. Apply isolation materials to dissimilar surfaces.

1. Protect galvanized and nonferrous-metal surfaces from corrosion or galvanic action by applying a heavy coating of bituminous paint on surfaces that will be in contact with concrete, masonry, or similar materials. Take care not to paint surfaces that will be exposed in the finished work.

F. Sealant:
   1. Contact surfaces shall be dry, sound and free of dirt. Remove oil or grease with solvents and wipe dry.
   2. Prime surfaces as required in strict accordance with sealant Manufacturer's recommendations.

3.03 INSTALLATION

A. Comply with manufacturer's instructions and recommendations for installation of the work.

B. Erection: Install framing true to line, plumb, level, square and in proper planes, free from sags, waves, buckles or other objectionable defects. Connecting joints shall be uniform, even, hairline joints. Securely fasten anchoring devices and structural steel bracing.

C. Verify dimensions of supporting structure at the site by accurate field measurements so that the work will be accurately designed, fabricated and fitted to the structure.

D. Anchor sunscreen devices to building structure as indicated on architectural and structural drawings, and according to approved shop drawings.

E. Erection Tolerances:
   1. Variation from level: +/- 1/8" maximum in any column to column space or 20'-0" runs, non-cumulative.
   2. Offsets in end-to-end or edge-to-edge alignment of consecutive members 1/32".

F. Cut and trim component parts during erection only with the approval of the manufacturer or fabricator, and in accordance with his recommendations. Restore finish completely. Remove and replace members where cutting and trimming has impaired the strength or appearance of the assembly as directed.

G. Do not erect warped, bowed, deformed or otherwise damaged or defaced members. Remove and replace any members damaged in the erection process as directed.

3.04 PROTECTION AND CLEANING

A. Remove strippable plastic finish protection at time as recommended by Manufacturer. Do not allow plastic to melt onto surfaces.

B. Protect aluminum framing during construction by masking members with approved cardboard and paper as recommended by manufacturer.

C. Upon completion, remove trimmings and other debris. Remove excessive sealant, mastic and other marks from adjacent surfaces, and wash with clean water.

END OF SECTION 10 71 00

ROCIP Project: Withhold insurance cost. Please refer to sections 00425 & 00810 for information.

SECTION 10 75 00 – FLAGPOLES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.01 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.02 SUMMARY

A. Section includes ground-mounted flagpoles made from aluminum.

B. Owner-Furnished Material: Flag.

C. Related Sections:
   1. Division 26 Section "Exterior Lighting" for site lighting fixtures.
   2. City Standard's Concrete.

1.03 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Structural Performance: Flagpole assemblies, including anchorages and supports, shall withstand the effects of gravity loads, and the following loads and stresses within limits and under conditions indicated according to the following design criteria:
   1. Wind Loads: 130 mph according to NAAMM FP 1001, "Guide Specifications for Design of Metal Flagpoles." SEI/ASCE 7.
   2. Base flagpole design on polyester flags of maximum standard size suitable for use with flagpole or flag size indicated, whichever is more stringent.

1.04 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, operating characteristics, fittings, accessories, and finishes for flagpoles.

B. Shop Drawings: For flagpoles. Include plans, elevations, details, and attachments to other work. Show general arrangement, jointing, fittings, accessories, grounding, anchoring, and support.

C. Operation and Maintenance Data: For flagpoles to include in operation and maintenance manuals.

1.05 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Source Limitations: Obtain each flagpole as complete unit, including fittings, accessories, bases, and anchorage devices, from single source from single manufacturer.

1.06 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. General: Spiral wrap flagpoles with heavy paper and enclose in a hard fiber tube or other protective container.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.01 MANUFACTURERS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by:
   1. American Flagpole, Inc.

2.02 FLAGPOLES

A. Equal to the following specifications for American Flagpole, standards:
   1. Commercial ground set, one piece, cone tapered aluminum (C30060156) flagpole with 30'-0" exposed height.
   2. Shaft diameter: Base = 6”, Top = 3.5”.
   3. Maximum wall thickness: 0.188”.
   4. Maximum unflagged windspeed: 222 mph.
   5. Maximum flagged windspeed: 120+ mph.
   6. Base: FC-11 spun aluminum flash collar.
   7. Flagpole finish: deep luster, highly polished.
   8. Cleats: One 9" aluminum. Tamperproof stainless head bolts.
   9. Halyards: Two sets of #10 white water-proof polypropylene, each equipped with 2 chrome swivel snaps.
   10. Foundation sleeve: #16 gauge galvanized steel, with steel base plate and as detailed on the drawings.
   11. Ball: #14 gauge aluminum with a flush seam and gold anodized finish.
   12. Truck: Cast aluminum with stainless steel ball bearings and 2 sheaves.
   13. Flag: American Flag 4'-0" x 6'-0" rip stop nylon with embroidered stars and sewn stripes furnished with two non-corrosive grommets. Texas flag 4'-0 x 6'0".
   14. Finial Ball: Manufacturer's standard flush seam ball in size to match pole butt diameter.
   15. Flash Collars: Spun aluminum American Flagpole #FC-11.

2.03 FITTINGS

A. Finial Ball: Manufacturer's standard flush-seam ball, sized as indicated or, if not indicated, to match flagpole-butt diameter.

B. External Halyard: Ball-bearing, nonfouling, revolving truck assembly of cast metal with continuous 5/16-inch diameter, braided polypropylene halyard and 9-inch cast-metal cleats with fasteners. Finish exposed metal surfaces to match flagpole.
   1. Provide two halyards and two cleats at each flagpole.
   2. Provide cast-metal cleat covers, finished to match flagpole, secured with cylinder locks.
   3. Halyard Flag Snaps: Provide two stainless-steel swivel snap hooks per halyard.

2.04 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

A. Nonshrink, Nonmetallic Grout: Factory-packaged, nonstaining, noncorrosive, nongaseous grout complying with ASTM C 1107.

2.05 GENERAL FINISH REQUIREMENTS

A. Comply with NAAMM's "Metal Finishes Manual for Architectural and Metal Products" for recommendations for applying and designating finishes.

B. Appearance of Finished Work: Noticeable variations in same piece are not acceptable. Variations in appearance of adjoining components are acceptable if they are within the range of approved Samples and are assembled or installed to minimize contrast.

2.06 ALUMINUM FINISHES

A. Natural Satin Finish: AA-M32, fine, directional, medium satin polish; buff complying with AA-M20; seal aluminum surfaces with clear, hard-coat wax.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.01 EXAMINATION

A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances, including foundation; accurate placement, pattern, orientation of anchor bolts, and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.

B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.02 FLAGPOLE INSTALLATION

ROCIP Project: Withhold insurance cost. Please refer to sections 00425 & 00810 for information.

A. General: Install flagpoles where shown and according to Shop Drawings and manufacturer's written instructions.

B. Mounting Brackets: Anchor brackets securely through to structural support with fasteners as indicated on drawings.

END OF SECTION 10 75 00

ROCIP Project: Withhold insurance cost. Please refer to sections 00425 & 00810 for information.

SECTION 11 31 00 - RESIDENTIAL APPLIANCES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.01 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.02 SUMMARY

A. This Section includes the following:
   1. Cooking equipment including:
      a. Gas range.
      b. Range hood.
      c. Microwave.
   2. Refrigerator/freezers.
   3. Icemakers.
   4. Cleaning appliances:
      a. Dishwashers.
      b. Clothes washers.
      c. Clothes dryers.
      d. Extractor.

B. Related Sections include the following:
   1. Division 06 Section "Interior Architectural Woodwork" for custom-made cabinets and plastic-laminate tops that receive residential appliances.
   2. Division 22 Section "Domestic Water Piping" for water distribution piping connections to residential appliances.
   3. Division 22 Section "Sanitary Waste and Vent Piping" for drainage and vent piping connections to residential appliances.
   4. Division 22 Section "Plumbing Fixtures" for kitchen sinks, waste disposers, and instant hot-water dispensers.
   5. Division 23 Sections "Facility Natural-Gas Piping" and "Facility Liquefied-Petroleum Gas Piping" for gas pipe connections to residential appliances.
   6. Division 23 Section "Power Ventilation" Kitchen exhaust fan.
   7. Division 26 Section "Electrical Power Conductors and Cables" for services and connections to residential appliances.

1.03 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Include operating characteristics, dimensions of individual appliances, and finishes for each appliance.

B. Appliance Schedule: For appliances; use same designations indicated on Drawings.

C. Manufacturer Certificates: Signed by manufacturers certifying that products comply with requirements.

D. Maintenance Data: For each product to include in maintenance manuals.

E. Warranties: Special warranties specified in this Section.

1.04 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Installer Qualifications: An employer of workers trained and approved by manufacturer for installation and maintenance of units required for this Project.
   1. Provide products from same manufacturer for each type of appliance required.
   2. To the greatest extent possible, provide appliances by a single manufacturer for entire Project.

B. Product Options: Information on Drawings and in Specifications establishes requirements for product's aesthetic effects and performance characteristics. Aesthetic effects are indicated by dimensions, arrangements, alignment, and profiles of components and assemblies as they relate to sightlines, to one another, and to adjoining construction. Performance characteristics are indicated by criteria subject to verification by one or more methods including preconstruction testing, field testing, and in-service performance.

C. Regulatory Requirements: Comply with provisions of the following product certifications:
   1. NFPA: Provide electrical appliances listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, Article 100, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended use.
   2. UL and NEMA: Provide electrical components required as part of residential appliances that are listed and labeled by UL and that comply with applicable NEMA standards.
   3. ANSI: Provide gas-burning appliances that comply with ANSI Z21 Series standards.
   4. NAECA: Provide residential appliances that comply with NAECA standards.

D. Regulatory Requirements, Accessibility: Where residential appliances are indicated to comply with accessibility requirements, comply with Texas Accessibility Standards.

1.05 WARRANTY

A. Special Warranties: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer of each appliance specified agrees to repair or replace residential appliances or components that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
   1. Refrigerator/Freezer: 5-year limited warranty for in-home service on the sealed refrigeration system.
   2. Dishwasher: 10-year warranty for in-home service against deterioration of tub and door liner.
   3. Clothes Washer: 10-year limited warranty for the inner wash basket and outer tub, and five-year limited warranty for the balance suspension system and drive transmission.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.01 MANUFACTURERS

A. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the products specified.

2.02 COOKING APPLIANCES

A. Range RG:
   1. Products:
      a. Wolf Range Co., Affiliate of Sub-Zero Freezer Co., Inc.
      b. Gas Range Model No. R606CG- 60”, 6-Burner w/ Griddle.
   2. Features:
      a. Ignition System: Electronic
      b. Insulated Side Panels
      c. Finish: Stainless Steel with red knobs.
      d. Oven: Gas.
      e. Range Splash: 22-gauge, stainless steel splash with satin finish at ramp location to completely cover wall area between hood and extend from 2 inches below range top to the underside of hood.

B. Range Hood
   1. Product:
      a. Commercial: Reference Mechanical Drawing and Specification.

C. Microwave:
   1. Products:
      a. GE Profile.
      b. Model JES225155
   2. Features:
      a. 2.2 Cubic Ft. Capacity
      b. 1200 Watts
   3. Trim kit.

ROCIP Project: Withhold insurance cost. Please refer to sections 00425 & 00810 for information.

2.03 REFRIGERATION APPLIANCES

A. Refrigerator/Freezer RF: (4)
   1. Products:
      a. Whirlpool
      b. Model: WRT541SZDM
   2. Features:
      a. Capacity (CU. FT.): 21.3
      b. Glass shelves.
      c. Shelf Area: Adjustable.
      d. Door storage: Adjustable.

B. Ice Cube Machine & Ice Bin (1)
   1. Products:
      a. Hoshizaki
      b. Model: KML-451MAH on B-500 Storage Bin
   2. Features:
      a. Capacity: 401lb.
      b. 500 lb. storage
      c. Hinged front door.

2.04 CLEANING APPLIANCES

A. Dishwasher DW:
   1. Products:
      a. KitchenAid.
      b. Model: 24-inch Built-In Dishwasher, KDTE 304 DDS.
   2. Features:
      a. Stainless Steel Interior and Exterior
      b. Energy Star qualified
      c. Upper and Lower racks

B. Clothes Washer/Dryer:
   1. Product: Washer
      a. Whirlpool
      b. Model: WTW4950XW
   2. Features: Washer
      a. Top Loader
      b. Twelve Cycles
      c. Color: White
      d. Stainless Basket
      e. Spin speeds 800 RPM Max
   3. Product: Dryer
      a. Whirlpool
      b. Model: WED4900XW
   4. Features: Dryer
      a. Thirteen Cycles

b. 7.0 cu. ft.
c. Color: White

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.01 EXAMINATION

A. Examine conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of work.

B. Examine roughing-in for piping systems to verify actual locations of piping connections before equipment installation.

C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.02 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

A. General: Comply with manufacturer's written instructions.

B. Built-in Equipment: Securely anchor units to supporting cabinets or countertops with concealed fasteners. Verify that clearances are adequate for proper functioning and rough openings are completely concealed.

C. Freestanding Equipment: Place units in final locations after finishes have been completed in each area. Verify that clearances are adequate to properly operate equipment.

D. Utilities: Refer to Divisions 22 and 26 for plumbing and electrical requirements.

3.03 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

A. Test each item of residential appliances to verify proper operation. Make necessary adjustments.

B. Verify that accessories required have been furnished and installed.

C. Remove packing material from residential appliances and leave units in clean condition, ready for operation.

3.04 DEMONSTRATION

A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain residential appliances. Refer to Division 01 Section "Demonstration and Training."

ROCIP Project: Withhold insurance cost. Please refer to sections 00425 & 00810 for information.

END OF SECTION 11 31 00

ROCIP Project: Withhold insurance cost. Please refer to sections 00425 & 00810 for information.

SECTION 12 24 00 - MANUAL ROLLER SHADES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.01 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.02 SUMMARY

A. Provide products in this section for the addition at Woodrow Wilson only.

B. This section includes integrated motor control options for the following:
   1. Motorized roller shades
   2. Motorized roller shade accessories
   3. Motorized roller shade control systems
   4. Manual Roller Solar Shades

C. Related Documents: The Contract Documents, as defined in Division 1 Section "Summary of Work", apply to the Work of this Section. Additional requirements and information necessary to complete the Work of this Section may be found in other Documents.

D. Related Sections include the following:
   1. Division 6 Section “Rough Carpentry” for window shade bracket support blocking or pocket assemblies.
   2. Division 26 Section “Electrical” for installation of electrical motor control systems.

1.03 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Fire: Provide shade fabrics tested in accordance with:
   1. 1989 NFPA 701 small scale Vertical Burn Test and rated “PASS”
   2. 1996 NFPA 701 small scale Vertical Burn (telephone booth test) and rated “PASS”

B. Toxicity: Provide shade fabrics tested in accordance with University of Pittsburgh Toxicity Protocol including LC50 analysis and toxicity characteristics.

C. Anti-microbial:
   1. ASTM G-22-80 results for ATCC6538 (Staphylococcus aureus) an ATCC13388 (Pseudomonas aeroginosa) indicating minimum 5mm (0.197 inches) “No Growth Contact Area”.

2. ASTM G-21-85 results for ATCC9642, ATCC9348 and ATCC9645 indicating “No Growth”.

D. Electrical: Integrated motor control systems and components approved AS A SYSTEM by either Underwriter Laboratories (UL) or Electronic Testing Laboratories (ETL).

1.04 SUBMITTALS

A. Specification Conformance Document: Indicate whether the submitted equipment deviates from the specific requirements:
   1. Address or itemize compliance, or detail the alternate means submitted and indicate specific methodology used for Architect review & approval.

B. Product Data: Manufacturer's data sheets with performance specifications demonstrating compliance with specified requirements, including:
   1. Preparation instructions and recommendations.
   2. Storage and handling requirements and recommendations.
   3. Submit manufacturer’s descriptive literature and details for each product type specified. Details indicate materials, finishes, construction, and dimensions of individual components, profiles, and mounting requirements.
   4. Submit wiring diagrams, details on integration to lighting control systems, AV systems, and building management systems, installation instructions, and operating instructions.
   5. Submit current certificates demonstrating all line voltage components of the system are either UL Listed or UL recognized. All low voltage components within the system shall be powered by UL listed transformer or UL recognized class 2 transformers or power supplies and wired as NEC Class 2 circuits.
   6. Submit test reports indicating compliance with fabric properties specified.

C. Shop Drawings; include:
   1. Provide head, jamb and sill details, and relevant dimensions for mounting requirements for each product type and mounting condition.
   2. Provide shade schedule indicating room number, opening size(s), quantities and key to details.
   3. Provide one-line wiring system diagrams including connection details and overall arrangement of shades and control locations supplied by this section for installation and connection under division 26.

D. Selection Samples: For each finish product specified provide:
   1. Portfolio of shade fabric swatches for initial fabric color selection from manufacturer’s full range of available fabrics.
   2. Material samples for color and finish selection of controls.

E. Verification Samples: For each finish product specified:

1. One fully operational window shade sample of each type required complete with selected shade fabric including sample of seam / batten when applicable. Location of sample as directed by Architect.
2. One complete set of all shade components demonstrating compliance with project requirements when applicable.

1.05 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Manufacturer Qualifications:
   1. The responsibility for the design, engineering, installation, and performance of motorized window shade systems specified will be assigned to a single manufacturer and their qualified dealers/installers.
   2. Minimum 5 years experience in manufacture of precision-engineered, low-voltage motorized shading systems.
   3. Furnish shading system and electrical control equipment for a complete installation and single source responsibility of shading and lighting control where applicable.
   4. The manufacturer, subsidiary, or licensed agent will be qualified to supply the products specified and to honor any claims against the product presented in accordance with the warranty.
   5. Provide 24-Hour / 7-Day technical support to troubleshoot system wiring and aid in system programming.

B. Installer Qualifications: Installer shall be qualified to install and commission the specified products by prior factory training, experience, demonstrated performance, and acceptance of any requirement of the manufacturer, subsidiary of the manufacturer, or licensed agent.

C. Do not fabricate shades without obtaining field dimensions for each opening. Coordinate construction of surrounding conditions to allow for timely field dimension verification.

1.06 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Do not deliver items to the project until all plaster, painting and other wet work has been completed and is dry.

B. Deliver shades to project in labeled protective packaging, uniquely labeled to identify each shade for each opening. Schedule delivery to prevent delays to completion of work but to minimize on-site storage time.

C. Store materials in a dry, secure place. Protect from weather, surface contaminants, corrosion, construction traffic and all other potential damage.

ROCIP Project: Withhold insurance cost. Please refer to sections 00425 & 00810 for information.

1.07 PROJECT CONDITIONS

A. Maintain environmental conditions within recommended limits:
   1. Ambient operating temperature: 32–72 °F
   2. Humidity: 0–90%, non-condensing.
   3. Do not install products under environmental conditions outside manufacturer's absolute limits.
   4. Products are intended for Indoor use only.

B. Shade system shall not be installed until the building is operating at ambient temperature and humidity ranges that are consistent with those intended for eventual building occupancy & use.

1.08 COORDINATION

A. Contractor shall coordinate installation of the following items with the window shade contractor:

B. Contractor shall provide the following materials and services to the window shade contractor for electrically powered window treatments:
   1. Power wiring in accordance with requirements provided by the window shade contractor or electrical contractor.
   2. Low-voltage wiring as necessary for operation of shade control system with requirements provided by the window shade or electrical contractor.

C. Scheduling:
   1. Fabricate shades after obtaining field dimensions for each opening.
   2. Coordinate construction of surrounding conditions to allow for timely field dimension verification.
   3. Manufacturer’s standard lead times apply. Reference submittal and schedule accordingly for project timeline.

1.09 WARRANTY

A. Shade motors and motor control system electrical components: Provide manufacturer’s Warranty under provisions of Division 1 Section "General Requirements". Warranty period shall be 8 years (limited, pro-rated) from Date of Substantial Completion, and 2 years (full, 100%) for all components. Warranty period shall include all operating parts.

B. Shadecloth and all other components of shade system are Warranted to be fit for the use intended for a minimum of 5 years.

C. In the event of a warranted product failure, the Shade Contractor will, at no cost to Owner, facilitate acquisition and delivery of all necessary components to the Owner.

ROCIP Project: Withhold insurance cost. Please refer to sections 00425 & 00810 for information.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.01 MANUFACTURERS

A. Basis of design: Quality, design, and desired function are based on Lutron Sivoia "QED" (Quiet Electronic Drive) products by Lutron Shading Systems, Inc., Coopersburg, PA (888) 588-7661.

B. Substitutions: Under provisions of Division 1.
   1. All proposed substitutions must be clearly delineated, and must be submitted in writing for approval by Architect a minimum of 10 working days prior to the bid date, and must be made available to all bidders. Proposed substitutes must be accompanied by a review of the specification noting compliance on a line-by-line basis.

2.02 APPLICATION/SCOPE

A. Roller Shade Schedule
   1. Shade Type-1: Motorized roller shade utilizing quiet, low voltage, precision controlled Electronic Drive Unit.
   2. Shade Type-2: Manual Shade: Utilizing Lutron “RollEase Clutch System”.

2.03 SYSTEM REQUIREMENTS

A. Aesthetics
   1. Symmetrical light gaps of no more than 0.75 inch typical or 0.625 inch minimum.
   2. Shade mounting position can be adjusted while the shade is installed to ensure perfect shade centering.

B. Operation. Shade utilizes Electronic Drive Unit with the following requirements:
   1. Operates without exceeding a 44dBA Sound Pressure Level (SPL) measured three (3) feet or one (1) meter from the motor.
   2. Operates independently, without the use of external group controllers.
   3. Precisely controls roller shade speed for accurate shade tracking within ± 0.0625 inch throughout the entire shade travel.
   4. Systems with multiple Electronic Drive Units are electronically synchronized and start, stop and move smoothly in unison at all times.

C. Grouping:
   1. System groups and subgroups are reconfigured at the point of control without rewiring or access to the Electronic Drive Unit.

D. Protection
   1. System components provide appropriate (spike and brownout) over voltage protection (± 10% of line voltage) for all devices in the system.
   2. The Electronic Drive Unit is powered via a UL Listed or UL Recognized Class 2 Power Supply.
   3. System components provide stall protection so that in case that the motor stalls, there is no damage to fabric or drive motor

E. Integration:
   1. Roller shade system integrates directly with Lutron lighting control system.

2.04 ROLLER SHADES

A. Fabrics:
   1. Fabric #1 (at location as noted):
      a. SheerShade, Basketweave XL, “Linen,” 3%.
   2. Fabric #2 (at all Sleep Rooms):
      a. Blackout, Value Premiere, "Sand”.

B. Shade Tube:
   1. Fabric shall be connected to the tube with double-sided adhesive strip applied for exact and firm mounting of fabric and easy adjustment to prevent telescoping.
   2. To protect fabric and smooth out starting seam, a minimum one turn of fabric shall be placed on the roller before the working section of fabric starts.
   3. Bottom Bar: Standard Sealed bottom Bar shall be a 10 inch wide by 0.1875 inch thick, extruded aluminum bar, enclosed on all sides in thermally sealed pocket across bottom of shading fabric.

2.05 SHADE MOUNTING / ENCLOSURE

A. General:
   1. Roller shade brackets to provide symmetrical light gaps of 0.75inch (20 mm) on each side of shade
   2. Provide 2-piece mounting bracket for leveling, projection, and shade centering adjustments that allows adjustment while roller shades are mounted to the brackets.
   3. A single EDU shall be capable of driving multiple shades with a coupling pin.
   4. Coupling pin shall allow for precision adjustment of bottom bar levels without removing roller from its installed point, or removing fabric from roller tube.

B. Mounting:
   1. Pocket Mount (Recessed): Provide recessed above-ceiling enclosure, 4.75" wide by 5" deep, extruded aluminum U-shaped enclosure, by length of shade.
   2. Fascia Mount: Provide fascia mount with square face cover. Provide optional end caps.
   3. Jamb Mount: Provide window system jamb-mounting, with 2-piece brackets.
   4. Wall Mount: Provide wall mounting with 2-piece brackets. Provide square face cover. Provide optional end caps.
   5. Ceiling Mount: Provide ceiling mounting with 2-piece brackets. **[**Provide square face cover. Provide optional end caps.
   6. Dual-Mount Bracket: Provide Dual-Mount bracket for two types of shade at window, as noted.

C. Options for blackout condition:
   1. Side Channel.
   2. Sill Angle.

2.06 CONTROLS

A. Wall Mounted Controls:
   1. Low voltage wallstations shall electronically set and reconfigure shade open & close limits, shade preset positions, system groups, and system subgroups at the control without rewiring and without access to Electronic Drive Unit.
   2. Wallstation buttons shall be backlit.
   3. Wallstations shall simultaneously control one or more shades, up to the maximum number of shades in the system.
      a. Six-Button Wallstation for Two-Group Applications:
         1) Wallstations shall provide control for two separate groups of shades.
         2) Wallstations shall take one system address and wire as one wallstation.
         3) Wallstations shall provide buttons for selecting the following for each of the shade groups: Full-Open, Full-Close, and one programmable preset position.
      b. Five-Button Wallstation with Raise/Lower:
         1) Wallstations shall provide buttons for selecting the following for one group of shades: Full-Open, Full-Close, three programmable preset positions, and raise/lower.

B. Interfaces:
   1. Interface via Contact Closure Inputs.
   2. Interface with Lutron Grafik Eye System.

2.07 TRANSFORMER

A. Each Electronic Drive Unit requires an individual transformer.

2.08 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

A. Perform full-function testing on all completed assemblies at end of production line prior to shipment.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.01 EXAMINATION

A. Begin installation after substrates have been properly prepared.

B. If substrate preparation is the responsibility of another installer, notify Architect of unsatisfactory preparation before proceeding.

3.02 PREPARATION

A. Clean surfaces thoroughly prior to installation.

B. Prepare surfaces using the methods recommended by manufacturer for achieving the best result for the substrate under the project conditions.

3.03 INSTALLATION

A. Install in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.

B. Install shades in windows level and plumb to provide smooth operation.

C. Install in accordance with manufacturer’s product data and approved shop drawings.

D. A factory-qualified technician shall perform field measurement and installation.

3.04 ADJUSTING

A. Adjust the level, projection, and shade centering directly from mounting bracket.

B. Adjust fabric on tube if visibly telescoping.

3.05 CLEANING

A. Touch up damaged finishes and repair minor damage in order to eliminate evidence of repair. Remove and replace work that cannot be satisfactorily repaired.

B. Clean exposed surfaces, including metal and shade fabric, using non-abrasive materials and methods recommended by the shade fabric manufacturer. Remove and replace work that cannot be satisfactorily cleaned.

3.06 DEMONSTRATION

A. Demonstrate operation method and instruct owner's personnel in the proper operation and maintenance of the window shade systems.

B. Manufacturer’s Instructions:
   1. Installation, Programming, and Maintenance instructions to be included in product packaging.
   2. 24-Hour / 7-Day Factory Technical Support shall be available to aid with unforeseen installation difficulties.

3.07 PROTECTION

A. Protect installed products until completion of project.

B. Touch-up, repair or replace damaged products before Substantial Completion

END OF SECTION 12 24 00

ROCIP Project: Withhold insurance cost. Please refer to sections 00425 & 00810 for information.

SECTION 12 93 00 - SITE FURNISHINGS AND EQUIPMENT

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.01 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.02 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:
   1. Bench
   2. Litter Container

B. Related Sections include the following:
   1. Division 1 Section “Submittals.”
   2. Division 1 Section “Substitutions.”
   3. City Standard “Concrete”.

1.03 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Supply equipment that conforms to all applicable standards, meets Consumer Product Safety Commission Guidelines, and complies with ADA criteria.

1.04 SUBMITTALS

A. Complete shop drawings equipment list, installation instructions and manufacturer's standard brochures based on contract documents submitted to the Architect for review and approval.

1.05 WARRANTY

A. Manufacturer shall warranty any equipment failure due to defects in workmanship or materials within one year from substantial completion of the project and as follows:
   1. Limited 10 year warranty on main structures against structural failure due to corrosion, deterioration, or workmanship. This warranty includes the posts, vinyl clad decks, rails, loops and rungs that comprise the main structure.
   2. Limited 5 year warranty for structural failure of all polyethylene slides, enclosures, and other plastic components.

3. Limited 3 year warranty for structural failure of all spring rides.
4. Limited 1 year warranty for structural failure of any other materials not covered by the above mentioned warranty programs.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.01 BENCH

A. Manufacturer: Fairweather Site Furnishings and Accessories .
   1. Model: PL-1CU Curved Backless Bench.
   2. Bench shall be constructed of mild steel in three sections: 2 support legs and 1 fully welded seat section. All parts are drilled and formed for quick assembly. Seat sections shall be fabricated with 2” sch. 40 pipe and ¼ x 1-1/2” mild steel strap. Steel shall conform to ASTM A36 hot rolled steel. All steel shall be wheelabrated prior to fabrication.
   3. Dimensions: As indicated in drawings and field measurements must be verified.
   4. Finish: To be selected by architect from manufacturers full range.

B. Cast Iron & Wood Bench: 6' Long ductile iron end frames, 1-5/16" steel tube lateral support, 3/8" steel bar center brace with 1-1/2" thick sealed "Ipe" hardwood slats anchored into concrete footing. Unit shall be Victor Stanley Inc. Model No. C-10 or approved equal. Custom lettering cast into end frames.

2.02 LITTER CONTAINER

A. Litter Container: Coated steel, dome top container and matching color coated 32 gallon steel liner and top for secured mounting to concrete pad shall be Timber Form’s “Renaissance”, Model No. 2814-DT-E in standard color “Evergreen” or approved equal.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.01 INSPECTION

A. Contractor to examine equipment prior to installation. Field measurements must be verified.

3.02 INSTALLATION

A. Contractor shall install all equipment according to manufacturer's instructions. Equipment installed level, plumb, straight and true to line. Operable mechanisms properly adjusted.

ROCIP Project: Withhold insurance cost. Please refer to sections 00425 & 00810 for information.

END OF SECTION 12 93 00

ROCIP Project: Withhold insurance cost. Please refer to sections 00425 & 00810 for information.

SECTION 12 36 61 - QUARTZ COUNTERTOPS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.01 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Standard Form of Construction Agreement, including General and Special Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.02 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:
   1. Quartz countertops.
   2. Setting materials and accessories.

B. Related Sections:
   1. Division 06 Section “Rough Carpentry.”
   2. Division 06 Section “Wood Framing.”
   3. Division 06 Section “Interior Architectural Woodwork.”
   4. Division 07 Section “Joint Sealants”

1.03 REFERENCES

A. American National Standards Institute (ANSI):
   1. A108.5 - Installation of Ceramic Tile with Dry-Set Portland Cement Mortar or Latex Portland Cement Mortar.
   2. A118.4 - Latex-Portland Cement Mortar.

B. ASTM International (ASTM:
   1. C97 - Standard Test Methods for Absorption and Bulk Specific Gravity of Dimension Stone.
   2. C99 - Standard Test Method for Modulus of Rupture of Dimension Stone.
   3. C170 - Standard Test Method for Compressive Strength of Dimension Stone.
   4. C241 - Standard Test Method for Abrasion Resistance of Stone Subjected to Foot Traffic.
   5. C482 - Standard Test Method for Bond Strength of Ceramic Tile to Portland Cement.
   6. C484 - Standard Test Method for Thermal Shock Resistance of Glazed Ceramic Tile.
   7. C531 - Standard Test Method for Linear Shrinkage and Coefficient of Thermal Expansion of Chemical-Resistant Mortars, Grouts, Monolithic Surfacings, and Polymer Concretes.

8. C648 - Standard Test Method for Breaking Strength of Ceramic Tile.
9. C650 - Standard Test Method for Resistance of Ceramic Tile to Chemical Substances.
10. C672/C672M - Standard Test Method for Scaling Resistance of Concrete Surfaces Exposed to Deicing Chemicals.
11. C880 - Standard Test Method for Flexural Strength of Dimension Stone.
12. C1026 - Standard Test Method for Measuring the Resistance of Ceramic Tile to Freeze-Thaw Cycling.
13. C1028 - Standard Test Method for Determining the Static Coefficient of Friction of Ceramic Tile and Other Like Surfaces by the Horizontal Dynamometer Pull-Meter Method.
14. E84 - Standard Test Method for Surface Burning Characteristics of Building Materials.

1.04 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Fabricator and Installer Qualifications: Minimum [2] years [documented] experience in work of this Section.

B. Warranty
   1. Provide manufacturer's 10 year warranty against defects in materials and workmanship.

1.05 SUBMITTALS

A. Shop Drawings: Include countertop layout, dimensions, materials, finishes, cutouts, and attachments.

B. Samples:
   1. 6” x 6” quartz samples in specified color.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.01 MANUFACTURERS

A. Contract Documents are based on products by Daltile, One Quartz Surfaces.

B. Substitutions: Not permitted.

2.02 MATERIALS

A. Quartz Sheet:
   1. Product: Daltile One Quartz Surfaces®

2. Composition: Quartz aggregate, resin, and color pigments formed into flat slabs.
3. Anti-microbial protection: Microban® by Microban® International, Inc., integral to sheet.
4. Color: Refer to drawings.
5. Thickness: 1 1/4”
6. Physical characteristics:
   a. Static coefficient of friction: .42 wet, tested to ASTM C1028.
   b. Water absorption: Maximum 0.03 percent, tested to ASTM C97.
   c. Compressive strength: Minimum 22,000 psi, tested to ASTM C170.
   d. Bond strength: Minimum 210 psi, tested to ASTM C482.
   e. Modulus of rupture: Minimum 6300 psi, tested to ASTM C99.
   f. Flexural strength: Minimum 4,744 psi, tested to ASTM C880.
   g. Breaking strength: Minimum 1,207 lbs, tested to ASTM C648.
   h. Stain resistance: Not affected by 10 percent hydrochloric acid or 10 percent KOH, tested to ASTM C650.
   i. Thermal shock resistance: Pass 5 cycles, tested to ASTM C484.
   j. Abrasive Resistance: tested to ASTM C1027.
   k. Thermal expansion: 1.2×10^{-5} in/in/deg F, tested to ASTM C531.
   l. Deicing resistance: Rating of 0, tested to ASTM C672/C672M.
   m. Freeze/thaw resistance: 0 tiles at 15 cycles, tested to ASTM C1026.
   n. Flame spread rating: Class 1, tested to ASTM E84.

2.03 ACCESSORIES

A. Adhesive: Type recommended by quartz manufacturer.

B. Joint Sealer:
   1. Latisil Tile and Stone Sealant by Laticrete® International, Inc.
   2. Color: To be selected by Architect from manufacturer's full color range.

2.04 FABRICATION

A. Cut quartz panels accurately to required shapes and dimensions.

B. Radius exposed edges.

C. Fabricate with hairline joints.

D. Cut holes for sink faucets.

E. Edge Style: Bevel Square.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.01 PREPARATION

A. Clean surfaces to receive countertops; remove loose and foreign matter that could interfere with adhesion.

3.02 INSTALLATION

A. Install countertops in accordance with manufacturer's instructions and approved Shop Drawings.

B. Adhere countertops to supports with continuous beads of adhesive.

C. Set plumb and level. Align adjacent pieces in same plane.

D. Install with hairline joints.

E. Fill joints between countertops and adjacent construction with joint sealer; finish smooth and flush.

3.03 INSTALLATION TOLERANCES

A. Maximum variation from level and plumb: 1/8 inch in 10 feet, non-cumulative.

B. Maximum variation in plane between adjacent pieces at joint: Plus or minus 1/16 inch.

3.04 CLEANING

A. Clean countertops in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.

3.05 PROTECTION

A. Protect installed countertops with non-staining sheet coverings.

END OF SECTION 12 36 61

COM*check* Software Version 3.9.2

Envelope Compliance Certificate

2012 IECC

Section 1: Project Information

Project Type: **New Construction**
Project Title : Austin Onion Creek Fire Station

Construction Site:
11112 Old San Antonio Road
Austin, TX 78748

Owner/Agent:
City of Austin
P.O. Box 1088
Austin, TX 78767

Designer/Contractor:
BRW Architects
2700 Earl Rudder Freeway South, Suite 4000
College Station, TX 77845
979.694.1791

Section 2: General Information

Building Location (for weather data):	**Austin, Texas**
Climate Zone:	**2a**
Building Space Conditioning Type(s):	**Nonresidential**
Vertical Glazing / Wall Area Pct.:	**20%**

Activity Type(s)	Floor Area
Fire Stations:Engine room	3990
Fire Stations:Sleeping quarters	5172

Section 3: Requirements Checklist

Envelope PASSES: Design 1% better than code.

Climate-Specific Requirements:

Component Name/Description	Gross Area or Perimeter	Cavity R-Value	Cont. R-Value	Proposed U-Factor	Budget U-Factor(a)
Roof 1: Metal Building, Standing Seam: High Albedo Roof Required, Liner System without Thermal Blocks, 3-Year-Aged Solar Reflectance = 0.65, Thermal Emittance = 0.85 (b)	12296	0.0	28.0	0.035	0.035
Wood Stud Wall: Wood-Framed, 16" o.c.	7005	21.0	5.0	0.045	0.064
Tower SF side: Metal Frame:Double Pane with Low-E, Tinted, Fixed, SHGC 0.24	141	---	---	0.260	0.500
Tower SF front: Metal Frame:Double Pane with Low-E, Tinted, Fixed, SHGC 0.24	204	---	---	0.260	0.500
Tower SF back: Metal Frame:Double Pane with Low-E, Tinted, Fixed, SHGC 0.24	77	---	---	0.260	0.500
Tower SF side: Metal Frame:Double Pane with Low-E, Tinted, Fixed, SHGC 0.24	52	---	---	0.260	0.500
Window A: Metal Frame:Double Pane with Low-E, Tinted, Fixed, SHGC 0.24, PF 0.68	20	---	---	0.260	0.500
Window A: Metal Frame:Double Pane with Low-E, Tinted, Fixed, SHGC 0.24, PF 0.68	20	---	---	0.260	0.500
Window A: Metal Frame:Double Pane with Low-E, Tinted, Fixed, SHGC 0.24, PF 0.68	20	---	---	0.260	0.500
Window A: Metal Frame:Double Pane with Low-E, Tinted, Fixed, SHGC 0.24, PF 0.68	20	---	---	0.260	0.500
Window A: Metal Frame:Double Pane with Low-E, Tinted, Fixed, SHGC 0.24, PF 0.68	20	---	---	0.260	0.500
Window A: Metal Frame:Double Pane with Low-E, Tinted, Fixed, SHGC 0.24, PF 0.68	20	---	---	0.260	0.500

Window A: Metal Frame:Double Pane with Low-E, Tinted, Fixed, SHGC 0.24, PF 0.68	20	---	---	0.260	0.500
Window A: Metal Frame:Double Pane with Low-E, Tinted, Fixed, SHGC 0.24, PF 0.68	20	---	---	0.260	0.500
Window A: Metal Frame:Double Pane with Low-E, Tinted, Fixed, SHGC 0.24, PF 0.68	20	---	---	0.260	0.500
Window A: Metal Frame:Double Pane with Low-E, Tinted, Fixed, SHGC 0.24, PF 0.68	20	---	---	0.260	0.500
Window A: Metal Frame:Double Pane with Low-E, Tinted, Fixed, SHGC 0.24, PF 0.68	20	---	---	0.260	0.500
Window A: Metal Frame:Double Pane with Low-E, Tinted, Fixed, SHGC 0.24, PF 0.68	20	---	---	0.260	0.500
Front Entry Door: Glass (> 50% glazing):Metal Frame, Entrance Door, SHGC 0.24, PF 0.32	24	---	---	0.260	0.500
HM Door: Insulated Metal, Swinging	21	---	---	0.090	0.610
HM Door: Insulated Metal, Swinging	21	---	---	0.090	0.610
HM Door: Insulated Metal, Swinging	21	---	---	0.090	0.610
8" CMU Wall: Concrete Block:8", Solid Grouted,Light Density , Furring: Metal	262	12.0	10.0	0.057	0.142
HM Door: Insulated Metal, Swinging	21	---	---	0.090	0.610
6" CMU Wall: Concrete Block:6", Solid Grouted,Light Density , Furring: Wood	1523	21.0	10.0	0.036	0.142
Bay Clearstory: Metal Frame:Double Pane with Low-E, Clear, Fixed, SHGC 0.24, PF 0.57	103	---	---	0.260	0.500
Bay Clearstory copy 1: Metal Frame:Double Pane with Low-E, Clear, Fixed, SHGC 0.24, PF 0.57	103	---	---	0.260	0.500
Bay Clearstory copy 2: Metal Frame:Double Pane with Low-E, Clear, Fixed, SHGC 0.24, PF 0.57	103	---	---	0.260	0.500
Four Fold Door: Glass (> 50% glazing):Metal Frame, Non-Entrance Door, SHGC 0.45, PF 0.19	196	---	---	0.870	0.500
Four Fold Door copy 1: Glass (> 50% glazing):Metal Frame, Non-Entrance Door, SHGC 0.45, PF 0.19	196	---	---	0.870	0.500
Four Fold Door copy 2: Glass (> 50% glazing):Metal Frame, Non-Entrance Door, SHGC 0.45, PF 0.19	196	---	---	0.870	0.500
12" CMU Wall: Concrete Block:12", Solid Grouted,Light Density , Furring: None	2196	---	10.0	0.078	0.142
Bay Clearstory: Metal Frame:Double Pane with Low-E, Tinted, Fixed, SHGC 0.24, PF 0.66	225	---	---	0.260	0.500
Bay Clearstory: Metal Frame:Double Pane with Low-E, Tinted, Fixed, SHGC 0.24, PF 0.66	225	---	---	0.260	0.500
Window E: Metal Frame:Double Pane with Low-E, Clear, Fixed, SHGC 0.24	29	---	---	0.260	0.500
HM Door: Insulated Metal, Swinging	21	---	---	0.090	0.610
Double SF Door: Glass (> 50% glazing):Metal Frame, Non-Entrance Door, SHGC 0.24	42	---	---	0.260	0.500
Sectional Door: Insulated Metal, Non-Swinging	196	---	---	0.136	0.136
HM Door: Insulated Metal, Swinging	21	---	---	0.090	0.610
Floor 1: Slab-On-Grade:Unheated	9162	---	---	---	---

(a) Budget U-factors are used for software baseline calculations ONLY, and are not code requirements.

(b) High albedo roof requirement options: 1) 3-year aged solar reflectance >= 0.55 thermal emittance >= 0.75, 2) 3-year aged solar reflectance index >= 64.0, 3) Initial year aged solar reflectance >= 0.70 thermal emittance >= 0.75, 4) Initial year aged solar reflectance index >= 82.0.

Air Leakage, Component Certification, and Vapor Retarder Requirements:

❑ 1. Air leakage of fenestration. Windows/non-glazed sliding and swinging doors/skylights with no weepage openings <= 0.20 cfm/ft2. Skylights with weepage <= 0.30 cfm/ft2. Curtain walls/storefront glazing <= 0.06 cfm/ft2. Doors: glazed swinging entrance/revolving/rolling <= 1.00 cfm/ft2. Doors: garage <= 0.40 cfm/ft2.

Exceptions:

❑ Field-fabricated assemblies.

❑ 2. Doors and access openings from conditioned space to shafts, chutes stairways and elevator lobbies are gasketed, weatherstripped or sealed.

Exceptions:

❑ Door openings required to comply with International Building Code as per Section C402.4.4.

❑ 3. Stairway and shaft vents are provided with Class I motorized dampers with a leakage rate <= 4 cfm/ft2. Dampers are installed with controls so that they are capable of automatically opening upon activation of any fire alarm or the interruption of power to the damper.

❑ 4. Outdoor air supply and exhaust openings are provided with Class IA motorized dampers having a leakage rate <=4 cfm/ft2.

Exceptions:

- ❑ Gravity (nonmotorized) dampers having with a leakage rate <=20 cfm/ft2 for ventilation air intakes protected from direct exposure to wind.
- ❑ Gravity (nonmotorized) dampers having a leakage rate <=20 cfm/ft2 are permitted for exhaust and relief dampers for buildings less than three stories in height above grade, or where the design outdoor air intake or exhaust capacity <=300 cfm.
- ❑ Dampers smaller than 24 inches in either dimension are permitted to have a leakage <=40 cfm/ft2.

❑ 5. Cargo doors and loading dock doors are weather sealed.

❑ 6. Building entrance doors have a vestibule equipped with self-closing devices.
Exceptions:

- ❑ Building entrances with revolving doors.
- ❑ Doors not intended to be used as a building entrance by the public, or intended solely for employee use.
- ❑ Doors that open directly from a space less than 3000 sq. ft. in area.
- ❑ Doors used primarily to facilitate vehicular movement or materials handling and adjacent personnel doors.
- ❑ Doors opening directly from a sleeping/dwelling unit.

❑ 7. Component R-values & U-factors labeled as certified.

❑ 8. No roof insulation is installed on a suspended ceiling with removable ceiling panels.

❑ 9. 'Other' components have supporting documentation for proposed U-Factors.

❑ 10. Insulation installed according to manufacturer's instructions, in substantial contact with the surface being insulated, and in a manner that achieves the rated R-value without compressing the insulation. Except when instructed otherwise, edge joints between overlapping layers of continuous insulation are staggered.

❑ 11. Radiant panels and associated components, designed for heat transfer from the panel surfaces to the occupants or indoor space are insulated with a minimum of R-3.5

Minimum Skylight-Daylighting Requirements:

❑ 12. In enclosed spaces > 10,000 ft2 directly under a roof with ceiling heights >15 ft. and used as an office, lobby, atrium, concourse, corridor, storage, gymnasium/exercise center, convention center, automotive service, manufacturing, non-refrigerated warehouse, retail store, distribution/sorting area, transportation, or workshop, the following requirements apply unless exempted:

- ❑ The daylight zone under skylights is >= half the floor area;
- ❑ The skylight area to daylight zone is >= 3 percent with a skylight VT >= 0.40; or a minimum skylight effective aperture >= 1 percent.

Exceptions:

- ❑ Spaces where the proposed general lighting power densities < 0.5 W/ft2.
- ❑ Areas with obstructions that block direct beam sunlight on >= 1/2 of the roof over the enclosed area for more than 1,500 daytime hours per year between 8 am and 4 pm.
- ❑ Spaces where the daylight zone under rooftop monitors is > 50 percent of the enclosed space floor area.

❑ 13. Skylights in office, storage, automotive service, manufacturing, non-refrigerated warehouse, retail store, and distribution/sorting area have a measured haze value > 90 percent unless designed to exclude direct sunlight.

Additional Efficiency Package Requirements:

❑ 1. The high efficiency HVAC option has been selected as the additional efficiency package required by this energy code. Systems that do not meet the performance requirement will be identified in the mechanical requirements checklist report.

Section 4: Compliance Statement

Compliance Statement: The proposed envelope design represented in this document is consistent with the building plans, specifications and other calculations submitted with this permit application. The proposed envelope system has been designed to meet the 2012 IECC requirements in COM*check* Version 3.9.2 and to comply with the mandatory requirements in the Requirements Checklist.

Amanda Rotter - Assist. Project Manager	Amanda Rotter	9/22/16
Name - Title	Signature	Date

COMcheck Software Version COMcheck-Web

Interior Lighting Compliance Certificate

Project Information

Energy Code: 2012 IECC
Project Title: Onion Creek Fire Station
Project Type: New Construction

Construction Site:
11112 Old San Antonio Road
Austin, Texas 78748

Owner/Agent:
City of Austin
P.O. Box 1088
Austin, Texas 78767

Designer/Contractor:
Jorge Olivares
Jose I. Guerra, Inc.
310 South St. Mary's Street
San Antonio, Texas 78205
210-802-0922
jolivares@guerra.com

Additional Efficiency Package

Reduced interior lighting power. Requirements are implicitly enforced within interior lighting allowance calculations.

Allowed Interior Lighting Power

A Area Category	B Floor Area (ft2)	C Allowed Watts / ft2	D Allowed Watts
1-3990 (Fire station)	3990	0 .71	2833
2-5172 (Fire station)	5172	0 .71	3672
		Total Allowed Watts =	6505

Proposed Interior Lighting Power

A Fixture ID : Description / Lamp / Wattage Per Lamp / Ballast	B Lamps/ Fixture	C # of Fixture	D Fixture Watt.	E (C X D)
1-3990 (Fire station)				
LED: A: LED A Lamp 25W:	1	2	45	90
LED: D: LED A Lamp 25W:	1	9	30	270
LED: T: LED Linear Lamp 33W:	1	6	39	234
LED: C: LED Linear Lamp 33W:	1	18	98	1764
2-5172 (Fire station)				
LED: P: LED MR 4W: Exemption:Sleeping Unit Lighting	1	8	15	Exempt
LED: F2: LED Linear Lamp 8W: Exemption:Sleeping Unit Lighting	2	16	84	Exempt
LED: B: LED A Lamp 25W:	1	15	36	540
LED: D: LED A Lamp 25W:	1	21	30	630
LED: F: LED Linear Lamp 33W:	1	4	39	156
LED: A: LED Linear Lamp 33W:	1	2	45	90
LED: K: LED Linear Lamp 33W:	1	8	52	416
LED: S: LED Linear Lamp 33W:	1	6	48	288
LED: W: LED Linear Lamp 15W:	1	12	61	730
LED: LED Linear Lamp 15W:	1	1	35	35
			Total Proposed Watts =	5243

Interior Lighting PASSES: Design 19% better than code

Interior Lighting Compliance Statement

Compliance Statement: The proposed interior lighting design represented in this document is consistent with the building plans, specifications, and other calculations submitted with this permit application. The proposed interior lighting systems have been designed to meet the 2012 IECC requirements in COM*check* Version COMcheck-Web and to comply with the mandatory requirements listed in the Inspection Checklist.

Jorge Olivares, P.E.		22 SEP 2016
Name - Title	Signature	Date

COMcheck Software Version COMcheck-Web

Exterior Lighting Compliance Certificate

Project Information

Energy Code:	2012 IECC
Project Title:	Onion Creek Fire Station
Project Type:	New Construction
Exterior Lighting Zone	2 (Neighborhood business district)

Construction Site:
11112 Old San Antonio Road
Austin, Texas 78748

Owner/Agent:
City of Austin
P.O. Box 1088
Austin, Texas 78767

Designer/Contractor:
Jorge Olivares
Jose I. Guerra, Inc.
310 South St. Mary's Street
San Antonio, Texas 78205
210-802-0922
jolivares@guerra.com

Allowed Exterior Lighting Power

A Area/Surface Category	B Quantity	C Allowed Watts /	D Tradable Wattage	E Allowed Watts (B X C)
Walkway < 10 feet wide	480 ft of	0.7	Yes	336
Entry canopy	300 ft2	0.25	Yes	75
Main entry	500 ft of	20	Yes	10000
Parking area	4000 ft2	0.06	Yes	240
Driveway	3000 ft2	0.06	Yes	180
Plaza area	800 ft2	0.14	Yes	112
			Total Tradable Watts (a) =	10943
			Total Allowed Watts =	10943
			Total Allowed Supplemental Watts (b) =	600

(a) Wattage tradeoffs are only allowed between tradable areas/surfaces.
(b) A supplemental allowance equal to 600 watts may be applied toward compliance of both non-tradable and tradable areas/surfaces.

Proposed Exterior Lighting Power

A Fixture ID : Description / Lamp / Wattage Per Lamp / Ballast	B Lamps/ Fixture	C # of Fixture	D Fixture Watt.	E (C X D)
Walkway < 10 feet wide (480 ft of walkway length): Tradable Wattage				
LED: S2: LED Roadway/Parking Unit 54W:	1	8	55	440
Entry canopy (300 ft2): Tradable Wattage				
LED: N: LED Panel Unit 54W:	1	6	50	300
LED: N2: LED Panel Unit 70W:	1	1	72	72
Main entry (500 ft of door width): Tradable Wattage				
LED: N2: LED Panel Unit 54W:	1	1	72	72
Parking area (4000 ft2): Tradable Wattage				
LED: LED Roadway/Parking Unit 220W:	1	2	188	376
Driveway (3000 ft2): Tradable Wattage				

A Fixture ID : Description / Lamp / Wattage Per Lamp / Ballast	B Lamps/ Fixture	C # of Fixture	D Fixture Watt.	E (C X D)
LED: LED Roadway/Parking Unit 220W:	1	5	188	940
Plaza area (800 ft2): Tradable Wattage				
LED: N2: LED Panel Unit 54W:	1	4	50	200
	Total Tradable Proposed Watts =			2400

Exterior Lighting PASSES: Design 79% better than code

Exterior Lighting Compliance Statement

Compliance Statement: The proposed exterior lighting design represented in this document is consistent with the building plans, specifications, and other calculations submitted with this permit application. The proposed exterior lighting systems have been designed to meet the 2012 IECC requirements in COM*check* Version COMcheck-Web and to comply with the mandatory requirements listed in the Inspection Checklist.

COM*check* Software Version COMcheck-Web

Inspection Checklist

Energy Code: 2012 IECC

Requirements: 0.0% were addressed directly in the COM*check* software

Text in the "Comments/Assumptions" column is provided by the user in the COMcheck Requirements screen. For each requirement, the user certifies that a code requirement will be met and how that is documented, or that an exception is being claimed. Where compliance is itemized in a separate table, a reference to that table is provided.

Section # & Req.ID	Plan Review	Complies?	Comments/Assumptions
C103.2 [PR4][1]	Plans, specifications, and/or calculations provide all information with which compliance can be determined for the interior lighting and electrical systems and equipment and document where exceptions to the standard are claimed. Information provided should include interior lighting power calculations, wattage of bulbs and ballasts, transformers and control devices.	☑ Complies ☐ Does Not ☐ Not Observable ☐ Not Applicable	
C103.2 [PR8][1]	Plans, specifications, and/or calculations provide all information with which compliance can be determined for the exterior lighting and electrical systems and equipment and document where exceptions to the standard are claimed. Information provided should include exterior lighting power calculations, wattage of bulbs and ballasts, transformers and control devices.	☑ Complies ☐ Does Not ☐ Not Observable ☐ Not Applicable	

Additional Comments/Assumptions:

1	High Impact (Tier 1)	2	Medium Impact (Tier 2)	3	Low Impact (Tier 3)

Section # & Req.ID	Rough-In Electrical Inspection	Complies?	Comments/Assumptions
C405.2.2.1 [EL22][2]	Automatic controls to shut off all building lighting installed in all buildings.	☐Complies ☐Does Not ☐Not Observable ☑Not Applicable	
C405.2.1.1 [EL23][2]	Independent lighting controls installed per approved lighting plans and all manual controls readily accessible and visible to occupants.	☑Complies ☐Does Not ☐Not Observable ☐Not Applicable	
C405.2.1.2 [EL15][1]	Lighting controls installed to uniformly reduce the lighting load by at least 50%.	☑Complies ☐Does Not ☐Not Observable ☐Not Applicable	
C405.2.2.3 [EL16][2]	Daylight zones provided with individual controls that control the lights independent of general area lighting.	☐Complies ☐Does Not ☐Not Observable ☑Not Applicable	
C405.2.3 [EL17][3]	Sleeping units have at least one master switch at the main entry door that controls wired luminaires and switched receptacles.	☑Complies ☐Does Not ☐Not Observable ☐Not Applicable	
C405.2.2.2 [EL18][1]	Occupancy sensors installed in required spaces.	☑Complies ☐Does Not ☐Not Observable ☐Not Applicable	
C405.2.2.3 [EL20][1]	Primary sidelighted areas are equipped with required lighting controls.	☐Complies ☐Does Not ☐Not Observable ☑Not Applicable	
C405.2.2.3 [EL21][1]	Enclosed spaces with daylight area under skylights and rooftop monitors are equipped with required lighting controls.	☐Complies ☐Does Not ☐Not Observable ☑Not Applicable	
C405.2.4 [EL25][2]	Automatic lighting controls for exterior lighting installed.	☑Complies ☐Does Not ☐Not Observable ☐Not Applicable	
C405.2.3 [EL4][1]	Separate lighting control devices for specific uses installed per approved lighting plans.	☑Complies ☐Does Not ☐Not Observable ☐Not Applicable	
C405.3 [EL19][3]	Fluorescent luminaires with odd numbered lamp configurations that are within 10 feet center to center (if recess mounted) or are within 1 foot edge to edge (if pendant or surface mounted) shall be tandem wired.	☐Complies ☐Does Not ☐Not Observable ☑Not Applicable	
C405.4 [EL6][1]	Exit signs do not exceed 5 watts per face.	☑Complies ☐Does Not ☐Not Observable ☐Not Applicable	

1	High Impact (Tier 1)	2	Medium Impact (Tier 2)	3	Low Impact (Tier 3)

Section # & Req.ID	Rough-In Electrical Inspection	Complies?	Comments/Assumptions
C405.6 [EL24][1]	Exterior grounds lighting over 100 W provides >60 lm/W unless on motion sensor or fixture is exempt from scope of code or from external LPD.	☑ Complies ☐ Does Not ☐ Not Observable ☐ Not Applicable	
C405.2.3 [EL8][1]	Additional interior lighting power allowed for special functions per the approved lighting plans and is automatically controlled and separated from general lighting.	☑ Complies ☐ Does Not ☐ Not Observable ☐ Not Applicable	

Additional Comments/Assumptions:

1	High Impact (Tier 1)	2	Medium Impact (Tier 2)	3	Low Impact (Tier 3)

Section # & Req.ID	Final Inspection	Complies?	Comments/Assumptions
C408.2.5.1 [FI16][3]	Furnished as-built drawings for electric power systems within 30 days of system acceptance.	☐Complies ☐Does Not ☐Not Observable ☐Not Applicable	
C303.3, C408.2.5.2 [FI17][3]	Furnished O&M instructions for systems and equipment to the building owner or designated representative.	☐Complies ☐Does Not ☐Not Observable ☐Not Applicable	
C405.5.2 [FI18][1]	Interior installed lamp and fixture lighting power is consistent with what is shown on the approved lighting plans, demonstrating proposed watts are less than or equal to allowed watts.	☐Complies ☐Does Not ☐Not Observable ☐Not Applicable	*See the Interior Lighting fixture schedule for values.*
C405.6.2 [FI19][1]	Exterior lighting power is consistent with what is shown on the approved lighting plans, demonstrating proposed watts are less than or equal to allowed watts.	☐Complies ☐Does Not ☐Not Observable ☐Not Applicable	*See the Interior Lighting fixture schedule for values.*
C408.3 [FI33][1]	Lighting systems have been tested to ensure proper calibration, adjustment, programming, and operation.	☐Complies ☐Does Not ☐Not Observable ☐Not Applicable	
C408.3 [FI48][1]	Lighting systems have been tested to ensure proper calibration, adjustment, programming, and operation.	☐Complies ☐Does Not ☐Not Observable ☐Not Applicable	

Additional Comments/Assumptions:

1	High Impact (Tier 1)	2	Medium Impact (Tier 2)	3	Low Impact (Tier 3)

COMcheck Software Version COMcheck-Web
Mechanical Compliance Certificate

Project Information

Energy Code:	2012 IECC
Project Title:	Onion Creek Fire Station
Location:	Austin, Texas
Climate Zone:	2a
Project Type:	New Construction

Construction Site:
11112 Old San Antonio Road
Austin, Texas 78748

Owner/Agent:
City of Austin
P.O. Box 1088
Austin, Texas 78767

Designer/Contractor:
Jorge Olivares
Jose I. Guerra, Inc.
310 South St. Mary's Street
San Antonio, Texas 78205
210-802-0922
jolivares@guerra.com

Additional Efficiency Package

Reduced interior lighting power. Requirements are implicitly enforced within interior lighting allowance calculations.

Mechanical Systems List

Quantity	System Type & Description
1	HVAC System (Single Zone): Cooling: 1 each - VRF Zone Fan Unit (FCU-1), Capacity = 12 kBtu/h, No Economizer, Economizer exception: VRF Outdoor/Central Unit No minimum efficiency requirement applies Fan System: FAN SYSTEM 1 -- Compliance (Motor nameplate HP method) : Passes Fans: FAN 1 Supply, Constant Volume, 307 CFM, 0.3 motor nameplate hp
1	HVAC System (Single Zone): Cooling: 1 each - VRF Zone Fan Unit (FCU-2), Capacity = 36 kBtu/h, Air Economizer No minimum efficiency requirement applies Fan System: FAN SYSTEM 2 -- Compliance (Motor nameplate HP method) : Passes Fans: FAN 2 Supply, Constant Volume, 883 CFM, 0.3 motor nameplate hp
1	HVAC System (Single Zone): Cooling: 1 each - VRF Zone Fan Unit (FCU-3), Capacity = 9 kBtu/h, No Economizer, Economizer exception: VRF Outdoor/Central Unit No minimum efficiency requirement applies Fan System: FAN SYSTEM 1 -- Compliance (Motor nameplate HP method) : Passes Fans: FAN 1 Supply, Constant Volume, 307 CFM, 0.3 motor nameplate hp
1	HVAC System (Single Zone): Cooling: 1 each - VRF Zone Fan Unit (FCU-4), Capacity = 36 kBtu/h, Air Economizer No minimum efficiency requirement applies Fan System: FAN SYSTEM 2 -- Compliance (Motor nameplate HP method) : Passes Fans: FAN 2 Supply, Constant Volume, 883 CFM, 0.3 motor nameplate hp
1	HVAC System (Single Zone): Cooling: 1 each - VRF Zone Fan Unit (FCU-5), Capacity = 19 kBtu/h, No Economizer, Economizer exception: VRF Outdoor/Central Unit No minimum efficiency requirement applies

Quantity	System Type & Description
	Fan System: FAN SYSTEM 1 -- Compliance (Motor nameplate HP method) : Passes Fans: FAN 1 Supply, Constant Volume, 307 CFM, 0.3 motor nameplate hp
1	HVAC System (Single Zone): Cooling: 1 each - VRF Zone Fan Unit (FCU-6), Capacity = 19 kBtu/h, No Economizer, Economizer exception: VRF Outdoor/Central Unit No minimum efficiency requirement applies Fan System: FAN SYSTEM 1 -- Compliance (Motor nameplate HP method) : Passes Fans: FAN 1 Supply, Constant Volume, 307 CFM, 0.3 motor nameplate hp
1	HVAC System (Single Zone): Cooling: 1 each - VRF Zone Fan Unit (FCU-7), Capacity = 19 kBtu/h, No Economizer, Economizer exception: VRF Outdoor/Central Unit No minimum efficiency requirement applies Fan System: FAN SYSTEM 1 -- Compliance (Motor nameplate HP method) : Passes Fans: FAN 1 Supply, Constant Volume, 307 CFM, 0.3 motor nameplate hp
1	HVAC System (Single Zone): Cooling: 1 each - VRF Zone Fan Unit (FCU-8), Capacity = 36 kBtu/h, Air Economizer No minimum efficiency requirement applies Fan System: FAN SYSTEM 2 -- Compliance (Motor nameplate HP method) : Passes Fans: FAN 2 Supply, Constant Volume, 883 CFM, 0.3 motor nameplate hp
1	HVAC System (Single Zone): Cooling: 1 each - VRF Zone Fan Unit (FCU-9), Capacity = 12 kBtu/h, No Economizer, Economizer exception: VRF Outdoor/Central Unit No minimum efficiency requirement applies Fan System: FAN SYSTEM 1 -- Compliance (Motor nameplate HP method) : Passes Fans: FAN 1 Supply, Constant Volume, 307 CFM, 0.3 motor nameplate hp
1	HVAC System (Single Zone): Cooling: 1 each - VRF Zone Fan Unit (FCU-10), Capacity = 9 kBtu/h, No Economizer, Economizer exception: VRF Outdoor/Central Unit No minimum efficiency requirement applies Fan System: FAN SYSTEM 1 -- Compliance (Motor nameplate HP method) : Passes Fans: FAN 1 Supply, Constant Volume, 307 CFM, 0.3 motor nameplate hp
1	HVAC System (Single Zone): Cooling: 1 each - VRF Zone Fan Unit (FCU-11), Capacity = 9 kBtu/h, No Economizer, Economizer exception: VRF Outdoor/Central Unit No minimum efficiency requirement applies Fan System: FAN SYSTEM 1 -- Compliance (Motor nameplate HP method) : Passes Fans: FAN 1 Supply, Constant Volume, 307 CFM, 0.3 motor nameplate hp
1	HVAC System (Single Zone): Cooling: 1 each - VRF Zone Fan Unit (FCU-12), Capacity = 9 kBtu/h, No Economizer, Economizer exception: VRF Outdoor/Central Unit No minimum efficiency requirement applies Fan System: FAN SYSTEM 1 -- Compliance (Motor nameplate HP method) : Passes Fans: FAN 1 Supply, Constant Volume, 307 CFM, 0.3 motor nameplate hp
1	HVAC System (Single Zone): Cooling: 1 each - VRF Zone Fan Unit (FCU-13), Capacity = 9 kBtu/h, No Economizer, Economizer exception: VRF Outdoor/Central Unit

Quantity	System Type & Description
	No minimum efficiency requirement applies Fan System: FAN SYSTEM 1 -- Compliance (Motor nameplate HP method) : Passes Fans: FAN 1 Supply, Constant Volume, 307 CFM, 0.3 motor nameplate hp
1	HVAC System (Single Zone): Cooling: 1 each - VRF Zone Fan Unit (FCU-14), Capacity = 9 kBtu/h, No Economizer, Economizer exception: VRF Outdoor/Central Unit No minimum efficiency requirement applies Fan System: FAN SYSTEM 1 -- Compliance (Motor nameplate HP method) : Passes Fans: FAN 1 Supply, Constant Volume, 307 CFM, 0.3 motor nameplate hp
1	HVAC System (Single Zone): Cooling: 1 each - VRF Zone Fan Unit (FCU-15), Capacity = 9 kBtu/h, No Economizer, Economizer exception: VRF Outdoor/Central Unit No minimum efficiency requirement applies Fan System: FAN SYSTEM 1 -- Compliance (Motor nameplate HP method) : Passes Fans: FAN 1 Supply, Constant Volume, 307 CFM, 0.3 motor nameplate hp
1	HVAC System (Single Zone): Cooling: 1 each - VRF Zone Fan Unit (FCU-16), Capacity = 9 kBtu/h, No Economizer, Economizer exception: VRF Outdoor/Central Unit No minimum efficiency requirement applies Fan System: FAN SYSTEM 1 -- Compliance (Motor nameplate HP method) : Passes Fans: FAN 1 Supply, Constant Volume, 307 CFM, 0.3 motor nameplate hp
1	HVAC System (Single Zone): Cooling: 1 each - VRF Zone Fan Unit (FCU-17), Capacity = 9 kBtu/h, No Economizer, Economizer exception: VRF Outdoor/Central Unit No minimum efficiency requirement applies Fan System: FAN SYSTEM 1 -- Compliance (Motor nameplate HP method) : Passes Fans: FAN 1 Supply, Constant Volume, 307 CFM, 0.3 motor nameplate hp
1	HVAC System (Single Zone): Cooling: 1 each - VRF Zone Fan Unit (FCU-18), Capacity = 9 kBtu/h, No Economizer, Economizer exception: VRF Outdoor/Central Unit No minimum efficiency requirement applies Fan System: FAN SYSTEM 1 -- Compliance (Motor nameplate HP method) : Passes Fans: FAN 1 Supply, Constant Volume, 307 CFM, 0.3 motor nameplate hp
1	HVAC System (Single Zone): Cooling: 1 each - VRF Zone Fan Unit (FCU-19), Capacity = 9 kBtu/h, No Economizer, Economizer exception: VRF Outdoor/Central Unit No minimum efficiency requirement applies Fan System: FAN SYSTEM 1 -- Compliance (Motor nameplate HP method) : Passes Fans: FAN 1 Supply, Constant Volume, 307 CFM, 0.3 motor nameplate hp
1	AHU-1 (Single Zone): Cooling: 1 each - Split System, Capacity = 116 kBtu/h, Air-Cooled Condenser, Air Economizer Proposed Efficiency = 11.20 EER, Required Efficiency = 11.20 EER Fan System: FAN SYSTEM 1 -- Compliance (Motor nameplate HP method) : Passes Fans: FAN 1 Supply, Constant Volume, 307 CFM, 0.3 motor nameplate hp
1	EUH (Unknown w/ PerimeterSystem): Heating: 1 each - Unit Heater, Electric, Capacity = 10 kBtu/h

Quantity	System Type & Description
	No minimum efficiency requirement applies Fan System: FAN SYSTEM 1 -- Compliance (Motor nameplate HP method) : Passes Fans: FAN 1 Supply, Constant Volume, 307 CFM, 0.3 motor nameplate hp
1	GUH (Single Zone): Heating: 6 each - Central Furnace, Gas, Capacity = 150 kBtu/h Proposed Efficiency = 85.00% Et, Required Efficiency = 80.00% Et Fan System: FAN SYSTEM 4 -- Compliance (Motor nameplate HP method) : Passes Fans: FAN 4 Supply, Constant Volume, 2140 CFM, 0.2 motor nameplate hp

Mechanical Compliance Statement

Compliance Statement: The proposed mechanical design represented in this document is consistent with the building plans, specifications, and other calculations submitted with this permit application. The proposed mechanical systems have been designed to meet the 2012 IECC requirements in COM*check* Version COMcheck-Web and to comply with the mandatory requirements listed in the Inspection Checklist.

ROBERT De LA RUZ, P.E.

COM*check* Software Version COMcheck-Web

Inspection Checklist

Energy Code: 2012 IECC

Requirements: 0.0% were addressed directly in the COM*check* software

Text in the "Comments/Assumptions" column is provided by the user in the COMcheck Requirements screen. For each requirement, the user certifies that a code requirement will be met and how that is documented, or that an exception is being claimed. Where compliance is itemized in a separate table, a reference to that table is provided.

Section # & Req.ID	Plan Review	Complies?	Comments/Assumptions
C103.2 [PR2][1]	Plans, specifications, and/or calculations provide all information with which compliance can be determined for the mechanical systems and equipment and document where exceptions to the standard are claimed. Load calculations per acceptable engineering standards and handbooks.	☑ Complies ☐ Does Not ☐ Not Observable ☐ Not Applicable	

Additional Comments/Assumptions:

1	High Impact (Tier 1)	2	Medium Impact (Tier 2)	3	Low Impact (Tier 3)

Section # & Req.ID	Footing / Foundation Inspection	Complies?	Comments/Assumptions
C403.2.4.5 [FO9][3]	Freeze protection and snow/ice melting system sensors for future connection to controls.	☐Complies ☐Does Not ☐Not Observable ☑Not Applicable	

Additional Comments/Assumptions:

1	High Impact (Tier 1)	2	Medium Impact (Tier 2)	3	Low Impact (Tier 3)

Section # & Req.ID	Mechanical Rough-In Inspection	Complies?	Comments/Assumptions
C403.2.3 [ME55][2]	HVAC equipment efficiency verified.	☑Complies ☐Does Not ☐Not Observable ☐Not Applicable	*See the Mechanical Systems list for values.*
C403.2.5.1 [ME59][1]	Demand control ventilation provided for spaces >500 sq.ft. and >25 people/1000 sq.ft. occupant density and served by systems with air side economizer, auto modulating outside air damper control, or design airflow >3,000 cfm.	☐Complies ☐Does Not ☐Not Observable ☑Not Applicable	
C403.2.7 [ME60][2]	HVAC ducts and plenums insulated. Where ducts or plenums are installed in or under a slab, verification may need to occur during Foundation Inspection.	☑Complies ☐Does Not ☐Not Observable ☐Not Applicable	
C403.2.8 [ME61][2]	HVAC piping insulation thickness. Where piping is installed in or under a slab, verification may need to occur during Foundation Inspection.	☐Complies ☐Does Not ☐Not Observable ☑Not Applicable	
C403.2.8 [ME61][2]	HVAC piping insulation thickness. Where piping is installed in or under a slab, verification may need to occur during Foundation Inspection.	☐Complies ☐Does Not ☐Not Observable ☑Not Applicable	
C403.2.8 [ME61][2]	HVAC piping insulation thickness. Where piping is installed in or under a slab, verification may need to occur during Foundation Inspection.	☐Complies ☐Does Not ☐Not Observable ☑Not Applicable	
C403.2.8 [ME61][2]	HVAC piping insulation thickness. Where piping is installed in or under a slab, verification may need to occur during Foundation Inspection.	☐Complies ☐Does Not ☐Not Observable ☑Not Applicable	
C403.2.8 [ME61][2]	HVAC piping insulation thickness. Where piping is installed in or under a slab, verification may need to occur during Foundation Inspection.	☐Complies ☐Does Not ☐Not Observable ☑Not Applicable	
C403.2.8 [ME61][2]	HVAC piping insulation thickness. Where piping is installed in or under a slab, verification may need to occur during Foundation Inspection.	☐Complies ☐Does Not ☐Not Observable ☑Not Applicable	
C403.2.8 [ME61][2]	HVAC piping insulation thickness. Where piping is installed in or under a slab, verification may need to occur during Foundation Inspection.	☐Complies ☐Does Not ☐Not Observable ☑Not Applicable	
C403.2.8 [ME61][2]	HVAC piping insulation thickness. Where piping is installed in or under a slab, verification may need to occur during Foundation Inspection.	☐Complies ☐Does Not ☐Not Observable ☑Not Applicable	
C403.2.8 [ME61][2]	HVAC piping insulation thickness. Where piping is installed in or under a slab, verification may need to occur during Foundation Inspection.	☐Complies ☐Does Not ☐Not Observable ☑Not Applicable	

1	High Impact (Tier 1)	2	Medium Impact (Tier 2)	3	Low Impact (Tier 3)

Section # & Req.ID	Mechanical Rough-In Inspection	Complies?	Comments/Assumptions
C403.2.8 [ME61][2]	HVAC piping insulation thickness. Where piping is installed in or under a slab, verification may need to occur during Foundation Inspection.	☐Complies ☐Does Not ☐Not Observable ☑Not Applicable	
C403.2.8 [ME61][2]	HVAC piping insulation thickness. Where piping is installed in or under a slab, verification may need to occur during Foundation Inspection.	☐Complies ☐Does Not ☐Not Observable ☑Not Applicable	
C403.2.8 [ME61][2]	HVAC piping insulation thickness. Where piping is installed in or under a slab, verification may need to occur during Foundation Inspection.	☐Complies ☐Does Not ☐Not Observable ☑Not Applicable	
C403.2.8 [ME61][2]	HVAC piping insulation thickness. Where piping is installed in or under a slab, verification may need to occur during Foundation Inspection.	☐Complies ☐Does Not ☐Not Observable ☑Not Applicable	
C403.2.8 [ME61][2]	HVAC piping insulation thickness. Where piping is installed in or under a slab, verification may need to occur during Foundation Inspection.	☐Complies ☐Does Not ☐Not Observable ☑Not Applicable	
C403.2.8 [ME61][2]	HVAC piping insulation thickness. Where piping is installed in or under a slab, verification may need to occur during Foundation Inspection.	☐Complies ☐Does Not ☐Not Observable ☑Not Applicable	
C403.2.8 [ME61][2]	HVAC piping insulation thickness. Where piping is installed in or under a slab, verification may need to occur during Foundation Inspection.	☐Complies ☐Does Not ☐Not Observable ☑Not Applicable	
C403.2.8 [ME61][2]	HVAC piping insulation thickness. Where piping is installed in or under a slab, verification may need to occur during Foundation Inspection.	☐Complies ☐Does Not ☐Not Observable ☑Not Applicable	
C403.2.8 [ME61][2]	HVAC piping insulation thickness. Where piping is installed in or under a slab, verification may need to occur during Foundation Inspection.	☐Complies ☐Does Not ☐Not Observable ☑Not Applicable	
C403.2.8 [ME61][2]	HVAC piping insulation thickness. Where piping is installed in or under a slab, verification may need to occur during Foundation Inspection.	☐Complies ☐Does Not ☐Not Observable ☑Not Applicable	
C403.2.8 [ME61][2]	HVAC piping insulation thickness. Where piping is installed in or under a slab, verification may need to occur during Foundation Inspection.	☐Complies ☐Does Not ☐Not Observable ☑Not Applicable	
C403.2.8 [ME61][2]	HVAC piping insulation thickness. Where piping is installed in or under a slab, verification may need to occur during Foundation Inspection.	☐Complies ☐Does Not ☐Not Observable ☑Not Applicable	
C403.2.8 [ME61][2]	HVAC piping insulation thickness. Where piping is installed in or under a slab, verification may need to occur during Foundation Inspection.	☐Complies ☐Does Not ☐Not Observable ☑Not Applicable	
C403.2.8.1 [ME7][3]	Piping Insulation exposed to weather is protected from damage (due to sun, moisture, wind, etc.).	☐Complies ☐Does Not ☐Not Observable ☑Not Applicable	

1	High Impact (Tier 1)	2	Medium Impact (Tier 2)	3	Low Impact (Tier 3)

Section # & Req.ID	Mechanical Rough-In Inspection	Complies?	Comments/Assumptions
C403.2.8 [ME41][3]	Thermally ineffective panel surfaces of sensible heating panels have insulation >= R-3.5.	☐Complies ☐Does Not ☐Not Observable ☑Not Applicable	
C403.3.1.a [NA][0]	Total cooling capacity without economizers must be less than %varMaxKBtuPerH%.	☑Complies ☐Does Not ☐Not Observable ☐Not Applicable	
C403.2.7 [ME10][2]	Ducts and plenums sealed based on static pressure and location.	☑Complies ☐Does Not ☐Not Observable ☐Not Applicable	
C403.2.7.1.3 [ME11][3]	Ductwork operating >3 in. water column requires air leakage testing.	☐Complies ☐Does Not ☐Not Observable ☑Not Applicable	
C403.2.7.1.3 [ME11][3]	Ductwork operating >3 in. water column requires air leakage testing.	☐Complies ☐Does Not ☐Not Observable ☑Not Applicable	
C403.2.7.1.3 [ME11][3]	Ductwork operating >3 in. water column requires air leakage testing.	☐Complies ☐Does Not ☐Not Observable ☑Not Applicable	
C403.2.7.1.3 [ME11][3]	Ductwork operating >3 in. water column requires air leakage testing.	☐Complies ☐Does Not ☐Not Observable ☑Not Applicable	
C403.2.7.1.3 [ME11][3]	Ductwork operating >3 in. water column requires air leakage testing.	☐Complies ☐Does Not ☐Not Observable ☑Not Applicable	
C403.2.7.1.3 [ME11][3]	Ductwork operating >3 in. water column requires air leakage testing.	☐Complies ☐Does Not ☐Not Observable ☑Not Applicable	
C403.2.7.1.3 [ME11][3]	Ductwork operating >3 in. water column requires air leakage testing.	☐Complies ☐Does Not ☐Not Observable ☑Not Applicable	
C403.2.7.1.3 [ME11][3]	Ductwork operating >3 in. water column requires air leakage testing.	☐Complies ☐Does Not ☐Not Observable ☑Not Applicable	
C403.2.7.1.3 [ME11][3]	Ductwork operating >3 in. water column requires air leakage testing.	☐Complies ☐Does Not ☐Not Observable ☑Not Applicable	
C403.2.7.1.3 [ME11][3]	Ductwork operating >3 in. water column requires air leakage testing.	☐Complies ☐Does Not ☐Not Observable ☑Not Applicable	

1	High Impact (Tier 1)	2	Medium Impact (Tier 2)	3	Low Impact (Tier 3)

Section # & Req.ID	Mechanical Rough-In Inspection	Complies?	Comments/Assumptions
C403.2.7.1.3 [ME11][3]	Ductwork operating >3 in. water column requires air leakage testing.	☐Complies ☐Does Not ☐Not Observable ☑Not Applicable	
C403.2.7.1.3 [ME11][3]	Ductwork operating >3 in. water column requires air leakage testing.	☐Complies ☐Does Not ☐Not Observable ☑Not Applicable	
C403.2.7.1.3 [ME11][3]	Ductwork operating >3 in. water column requires air leakage testing.	☐Complies ☐Does Not ☐Not Observable ☑Not Applicable	
C403.2.7.1.3 [ME11][3]	Ductwork operating >3 in. water column requires air leakage testing.	☐Complies ☐Does Not ☐Not Observable ☑Not Applicable	
C403.2.7.1.3 [ME11][3]	Ductwork operating >3 in. water column requires air leakage testing.	☐Complies ☐Does Not ☐Not Observable ☑Not Applicable	
C403.2.7.1.3 [ME11][3]	Ductwork operating >3 in. water column requires air leakage testing.	☐Complies ☐Does Not ☐Not Observable ☑Not Applicable	
C403.2.7.1.3 [ME11][3]	Ductwork operating >3 in. water column requires air leakage testing.	☐Complies ☐Does Not ☐Not Observable ☑Not Applicable	
C403.2.7.1.3 [ME11][3]	Ductwork operating >3 in. water column requires air leakage testing.	☐Complies ☐Does Not ☐Not Observable ☑Not Applicable	
C403.2.7.1.3 [ME11][3]	Ductwork operating >3 in. water column requires air leakage testing.	☐Complies ☐Does Not ☐Not Observable ☑Not Applicable	
C403.2.7.1.3 [ME11][3]	Ductwork operating >3 in. water column requires air leakage testing.	☐Complies ☐Does Not ☐Not Observable ☑Not Applicable	
C403.2.7.1.3 [ME11][3]	Ductwork operating >3 in. water column requires air leakage testing.	☐Complies ☐Does Not ☐Not Observable ☑Not Applicable	
C403.2.7.1.3 [ME11][3]	Ductwork operating >3 in. water column requires air leakage testing.	☐Complies ☐Does Not ☐Not Observable ☑Not Applicable	

1	High Impact (Tier 1)	2	Medium Impact (Tier 2)	3	Low Impact (Tier 3)

Section # & Req.ID	Mechanical Rough-In Inspection	Complies?	Comments/Assumptions
C403.3.1, C403.3.1.1 [ME62][1]	Air economizers provided where required, meet the requirements for design capacity, control signal, ventilation controls, high-limit shut-off, integrated economizer control, and provide a means to relieve excess outside air during operation.	☑Complies ☐Does Not ☐Not Observable ☐Not Applicable	
C403.3.1, C403.3.1.1 [ME62][1]	Air economizers provided where required, meet the requirements for design capacity, control signal, ventilation controls, high-limit shut-off, integrated economizer control, and provide a means to relieve excess outside air during operation.	☑Complies ☐Does Not ☐Not Observable ☐Not Applicable	
C403.3.1, C403.3.1.1 [ME62][1]	Air economizers provided where required, meet the requirements for design capacity, control signal, ventilation controls, high-limit shut-off, integrated economizer control, and provide a means to relieve excess outside air during operation.	☑Complies ☐Does Not ☐Not Observable ☐Not Applicable	
C403.3.1, C403.3.1.1 [ME62][1]	Air economizers provided where required, meet the requirements for design capacity, control signal, ventilation controls, high-limit shut-off, integrated economizer control, and provide a means to relieve excess outside air during operation.	☑Complies ☐Does Not ☐Not Observable ☐Not Applicable	
C408.2.2.1 [ME53][3]	Air outlets and zone terminal devices have means for air balancing.	☑Complies ☐Does Not ☐Not Observable ☐Not Applicable	
C403.4.2 [ME66][2]	VAV fan motors >=7.5 hp to be driven by variable speed drive, have a vane-axial fan with variable pitch blades, or have controls to limit fan motor demand.	☐Complies ☐Does Not ☐Not Observable ☑Not Applicable	
C403.4.2 [ME66][2]	VAV fan motors >=7.5 hp to be driven by variable speed drive, have a vane-axial fan with variable pitch blades, or have controls to limit fan motor demand.	☐Complies ☐Does Not ☐Not Observable ☑Not Applicable	
C403.4.2 [ME66][2]	VAV fan motors >=7.5 hp to be driven by variable speed drive, have a vane-axial fan with variable pitch blades, or have controls to limit fan motor demand.	☐Complies ☐Does Not ☐Not Observable ☑Not Applicable	
C403.4.2 [ME66][2]	VAV fan motors >=7.5 hp to be driven by variable speed drive, have a vane-axial fan with variable pitch blades, or have controls to limit fan motor demand.	☐Complies ☐Does Not ☐Not Observable ☑Not Applicable	
C403.4.2 [ME66][2]	VAV fan motors >=7.5 hp to be driven by variable speed drive, have a vane-axial fan with variable pitch blades, or have controls to limit fan motor demand.	☐Complies ☐Does Not ☐Not Observable ☑Not Applicable	
C403.4.2 [ME66][2]	VAV fan motors >=7.5 hp to be driven by variable speed drive, have a vane-axial fan with variable pitch blades, or have controls to limit fan motor demand.	☐Complies ☐Does Not ☐Not Observable ☑Not Applicable	

1	High Impact (Tier 1)	2	Medium Impact (Tier 2)	3	Low Impact (Tier 3)

Section # & Req.ID	Mechanical Rough-In Inspection	Complies?	Comments/Assumptions
C403.4.2 [ME66][2]	VAV fan motors >=7.5 hp to be driven by variable speed drive, have a vane-axial fan with variable pitch blades, or have controls to limit fan motor demand.	☐Complies ☐Does Not ☐Not Observable ☑Not Applicable	
C403.4.2 [ME66][2]	VAV fan motors >=7.5 hp to be driven by variable speed drive, have a vane-axial fan with variable pitch blades, or have controls to limit fan motor demand.	☐Complies ☐Does Not ☐Not Observable ☑Not Applicable	
C403.4.2 [ME66][2]	VAV fan motors >=7.5 hp to be driven by variable speed drive, have a vane-axial fan with variable pitch blades, or have controls to limit fan motor demand.	☐Complies ☐Does Not ☐Not Observable ☑Not Applicable	
C403.4.2 [ME66][2]	VAV fan motors >=7.5 hp to be driven by variable speed drive, have a vane-axial fan with variable pitch blades, or have controls to limit fan motor demand.	☐Complies ☐Does Not ☐Not Observable ☑Not Applicable	
C403.4.2 [ME66][2]	VAV fan motors >=7.5 hp to be driven by variable speed drive, have a vane-axial fan with variable pitch blades, or have controls to limit fan motor demand.	☐Complies ☐Does Not ☐Not Observable ☑Not Applicable	
C403.4.2 [ME66][2]	VAV fan motors >=7.5 hp to be driven by variable speed drive, have a vane-axial fan with variable pitch blades, or have controls to limit fan motor demand.	☐Complies ☐Does Not ☐Not Observable ☑Not Applicable	
C403.4.2 [ME66][2]	VAV fan motors >=7.5 hp to be driven by variable speed drive, have a vane-axial fan with variable pitch blades, or have controls to limit fan motor demand.	☐Complies ☐Does Not ☐Not Observable ☑Not Applicable	
C403.4.2 [ME66][2]	VAV fan motors >=7.5 hp to be driven by variable speed drive, have a vane-axial fan with variable pitch blades, or have controls to limit fan motor demand.	☐Complies ☐Does Not ☐Not Observable ☑Not Applicable	
C403.4.2 [ME66][2]	VAV fan motors >=7.5 hp to be driven by variable speed drive, have a vane-axial fan with variable pitch blades, or have controls to limit fan motor demand.	☐Complies ☐Does Not ☐Not Observable ☑Not Applicable	
C403.4.2 [ME66][2]	VAV fan motors >=7.5 hp to be driven by variable speed drive, have a vane-axial fan with variable pitch blades, or have controls to limit fan motor demand.	☐Complies ☐Does Not ☐Not Observable ☑Not Applicable	
C403.4.2 [ME66][2]	VAV fan motors >=7.5 hp to be driven by variable speed drive, have a vane-axial fan with variable pitch blades, or have controls to limit fan motor demand.	☐Complies ☐Does Not ☐Not Observable ☑Not Applicable	
C403.4.2 [ME66][2]	VAV fan motors >=7.5 hp to be driven by variable speed drive, have a vane-axial fan with variable pitch blades, or have controls to limit fan motor demand.	☐Complies ☐Does Not ☐Not Observable ☑Not Applicable	
C403.4.2 [ME66][2]	VAV fan motors >=7.5 hp to be driven by variable speed drive, have a vane-axial fan with variable pitch blades, or have controls to limit fan motor demand.	☐Complies ☐Does Not ☐Not Observable ☑Not Applicable	

1	High Impact (Tier 1)	2	Medium Impact (Tier 2)	3	Low Impact (Tier 3)

Section # & Req.ID	Mechanical Rough-In Inspection	Complies?	Comments/Assumptions
C403.4.2 [ME66][2]	VAV fan motors >=7.5 hp to be driven by variable speed drive, have a vane-axial fan with variable pitch blades, or have controls to limit fan motor demand.	☐Complies ☐Does Not ☐Not Observable ☑Not Applicable	
C403.4.2 [ME66][2]	VAV fan motors >=7.5 hp to be driven by variable speed drive, have a vane-axial fan with variable pitch blades, or have controls to limit fan motor demand.	☐Complies ☐Does Not ☐Not Observable ☑Not Applicable	
C403.4.2 [ME66][2]	VAV fan motors >=7.5 hp to be driven by variable speed drive, have a vane-axial fan with variable pitch blades, or have controls to limit fan motor demand.	☐Complies ☐Does Not ☐Not Observable ☑Not Applicable	
C403.4.2 [ME66][2]	VAV fan motors >=7.5 hp to be driven by variable speed drive, have a vane-axial fan with variable pitch blades, or have controls to limit fan motor demand.	☐Complies ☐Does Not ☐Not Observable ☑Not Applicable	
C403.2.6 [ME57][1]	Exhaust air energy recovery on systems meeting Table C403.2.6	☑Complies ☐Does Not ☐Not Observable ☐Not Applicable	
C403.2.11 [ME71][2]	Unenclosed spaces that are heated use only radiant heat.	☐Complies ☐Does Not ☐Not Observable ☐Not Applicable	

Additional Comments/Assumptions:

1	High Impact (Tier 1)	2	Medium Impact (Tier 2)	3	Low Impact (Tier 3)

Section # & Req.ID	Final Inspection	Complies?	Comments/Assumptions
C403.2.4.1 [FI47][3]	Heating and cooling to each zone is controlled by a thermostat control. Minimum one humidity control device per installed humidification/dehumidification system.	☑Complies ☐Does Not ☐Not Observable ☐Not Applicable	
C403.2.4.1 [FI47][3]	Heating and cooling to each zone is controlled by a thermostat control. Minimum one humidity control device per installed humidification/dehumidification system.	☑Complies ☐Does Not ☐Not Observable ☐Not Applicable	
C403.2.4.1 [FI47][3]	Heating and cooling to each zone is controlled by a thermostat control. Minimum one humidity control device per installed humidification/dehumidification system.	☑Complies ☐Does Not ☐Not Observable ☐Not Applicable	
C403.2.4.1 [FI47][3]	Heating and cooling to each zone is controlled by a thermostat control. Minimum one humidity control device per installed humidification/dehumidification system.	☑Complies ☐Does Not ☐Not Observable ☐Not Applicable	
C403.2.4.1 [FI47][3]	Heating and cooling to each zone is controlled by a thermostat control. Minimum one humidity control device per installed humidification/dehumidification system.	☑Complies ☐Does Not ☐Not Observable ☐Not Applicable	
C403.2.4.1 [FI47][3]	Heating and cooling to each zone is controlled by a thermostat control. Minimum one humidity control device per installed humidification/dehumidification system.	☑Complies ☐Does Not ☐Not Observable ☐Not Applicable	
C403.2.4.1 [FI47][3]	Heating and cooling to each zone is controlled by a thermostat control. Minimum one humidity control device per installed humidification/dehumidification system.	☑Complies ☐Does Not ☐Not Observable ☐Not Applicable	
C403.2.4.1 [FI47][3]	Heating and cooling to each zone is controlled by a thermostat control. Minimum one humidity control device per installed humidification/dehumidification system.	☑Complies ☐Does Not ☐Not Observable ☐Not Applicable	
C403.2.4.1 [FI47][3]	Heating and cooling to each zone is controlled by a thermostat control. Minimum one humidity control device per installed humidification/dehumidification system.	☑Complies ☐Does Not ☐Not Observable ☐Not Applicable	
C403.2.4.1 [FI47][3]	Heating and cooling to each zone is controlled by a thermostat control. Minimum one humidity control device per installed humidification/dehumidification system.	☑Complies ☐Does Not ☐Not Observable ☐Not Applicable	

1	High Impact (Tier 1)	2	Medium Impact (Tier 2)	3	Low Impact (Tier 3)

Section # & Req.ID	Final Inspection	Complies?	Comments/Assumptions
C403.2.4.1 [FI47][3]	Heating and cooling to each zone is controlled by a thermostat control. Minimum one humidity control device per installed humidification/dehumidification system.	☑Complies ☐Does Not ☐Not Observable ☐Not Applicable	
C403.2.4.1 [FI47][3]	Heating and cooling to each zone is controlled by a thermostat control. Minimum one humidity control device per installed humidification/dehumidification system.	☑Complies ☐Does Not ☐Not Observable ☐Not Applicable	
C403.2.4.1 [FI47][3]	Heating and cooling to each zone is controlled by a thermostat control. Minimum one humidity control device per installed humidification/dehumidification system.	☑Complies ☐Does Not ☐Not Observable ☐Not Applicable	
C403.2.4.1 [FI47][3]	Heating and cooling to each zone is controlled by a thermostat control. Minimum one humidity control device per installed humidification/dehumidification system.	☑Complies ☐Does Not ☐Not Observable ☐Not Applicable	
C403.2.4.1 [FI47][3]	Heating and cooling to each zone is controlled by a thermostat control. Minimum one humidity control device per installed humidification/dehumidification system.	☑Complies ☐Does Not ☐Not Observable ☐Not Applicable	
C403.2.4.1 [FI47][3]	Heating and cooling to each zone is controlled by a thermostat control. Minimum one humidity control device per installed humidification/dehumidification system.	☑Complies ☐Does Not ☐Not Observable ☐Not Applicable	
C403.2.4.1 [FI47][3]	Heating and cooling to each zone is controlled by a thermostat control. Minimum one humidity control device per installed humidification/dehumidification system.	☑Complies ☐Does Not ☐Not Observable ☐Not Applicable	
C403.2.4.1 [FI47][3]	Heating and cooling to each zone is controlled by a thermostat control. Minimum one humidity control device per installed humidification/dehumidification system.	☑Complies ☐Does Not ☐Not Observable ☐Not Applicable	
C403.2.4.1 [FI47][3]	Heating and cooling to each zone is controlled by a thermostat control. Minimum one humidity control device per installed humidification/dehumidification system.	☑Complies ☐Does Not ☐Not Observable ☐Not Applicable	
C403.2.4.1 [FI47][3]	Heating and cooling to each zone is controlled by a thermostat control. Minimum one humidity control device per installed humidification/dehumidification system.	☑Complies ☐Does Not ☐Not Observable ☐Not Applicable	

1	High Impact (Tier 1)	2	Medium Impact (Tier 2)	3	Low Impact (Tier 3)

Section # & Req.ID	Final Inspection	Complies?	Comments/Assumptions
C403.2.4.1 [FI47][3]	Heating and cooling to each zone is controlled by a thermostat control. Minimum one humidity control device per installed humidification/dehumidification system.	☑Complies ☐Does Not ☐Not Observable ☐Not Applicable	
C403.2.4.1 [FI47][3]	Heating and cooling to each zone is controlled by a thermostat control. Minimum one humidity control device per installed humidification/dehumidification system.	☑Complies ☐Does Not ☐Not Observable ☐Not Applicable	
C403.2.4.2 [FI38][3]	Thermostatic controls have a 5 °F deadband.	☑Complies ☐Does Not ☐Not Observable ☐Not Applicable	
C403.2.4.2 [FI20][3]	Temperature controls have setpoint overlap restrictions.	☐Complies ☐Does Not ☑Not Observable ☐Not Applicable	
C403.2.4.3 [FI39][3]	Each zone equipped with setback controls using automatic time clock or programmable control system.	☐Complies ☐Does Not ☐Not Observable ☑Not Applicable	
C403.2.4.3 [FI40][3]	Automatic Controls: Setback to 55°F (heat) and 85°F (cool); 7-day clock, 2-hour occupant override, 10-hour backup	☐Complies ☐Does Not ☐Not Observable ☑Not Applicable	
C403.2.4.3.3 [FI41][3]	Systems include optimum start controls.	☐Complies ☐Does Not ☐Not Observable ☑Not Applicable	
C403.2.4.3.3 [FI41][3]	Systems include optimum start controls.	☐Complies ☐Does Not ☐Not Observable ☑Not Applicable	
C403.2.4.3.3 [FI41][3]	Systems include optimum start controls.	☐Complies ☐Does Not ☐Not Observable ☑Not Applicable	
C403.2.4.3.3 [FI41][3]	Systems include optimum start controls.	☐Complies ☐Does Not ☐Not Observable ☑Not Applicable	
C403.2.4.3.3 [FI41][3]	Systems include optimum start controls.	☐Complies ☐Does Not ☐Not Observable ☑Not Applicable	
C403.2.4.3.3 [FI41][3]	Systems include optimum start controls.	☐Complies ☐Does Not ☐Not Observable ☑Not Applicable	

1	High Impact (Tier 1)	2	Medium Impact (Tier 2)	3	Low Impact (Tier 3)

Section # & Req.ID	Final Inspection	Complies?	Comments/Assumptions
C403.2.4.3.3 [FI41][3]	Systems include optimum start controls.	☐Complies ☐Does Not ☐Not Observable ☑Not Applicable	
C403.2.4.3.3 [FI41][3]	Systems include optimum start controls.	☐Complies ☐Does Not ☐Not Observable ☑Not Applicable	
C403.2.4.3.3 [FI41][3]	Systems include optimum start controls.	☐Complies ☐Does Not ☐Not Observable ☑Not Applicable	
C403.2.4.3.3 [FI41][3]	Systems include optimum start controls.	☐Complies ☐Does Not ☐Not Observable ☑Not Applicable	
C403.2.4.3.3 [FI41][3]	Systems include optimum start controls.	☐Complies ☐Does Not ☐Not Observable ☑Not Applicable	
C403.2.4.3.3 [FI41][3]	Systems include optimum start controls.	☐Complies ☐Does Not ☐Not Observable ☑Not Applicable	
C403.2.4.3.3 [FI41][3]	Systems include optimum start controls.	☐Complies ☐Does Not ☐Not Observable ☑Not Applicable	
C403.2.4.3.3 [FI41][3]	Systems include optimum start controls.	☐Complies ☐Does Not ☐Not Observable ☑Not Applicable	
C403.2.4.3.3 [FI41][3]	Systems include optimum start controls.	☐Complies ☐Does Not ☐Not Observable ☑Not Applicable	
C403.2.4.3.3 [FI41][3]	Systems include optimum start controls.	☐Complies ☐Does Not ☐Not Observable ☑Not Applicable	
C403.2.4.3.3 [FI41][3]	Systems include optimum start controls.	☐Complies ☐Does Not ☐Not Observable ☑Not Applicable	
C403.2.4.3.3 [FI41][3]	Systems include optimum start controls.	☐Complies ☐Does Not ☐Not Observable ☑Not Applicable	
C403.2.4.3.3 [FI41][3]	Systems include optimum start controls.	☐Complies ☐Does Not ☐Not Observable ☑Not Applicable	
C403.2.4.3.3 [FI41][3]	Systems include optimum start controls.	☐Complies ☐Does Not ☐Not Observable ☑Not Applicable	

1	High Impact (Tier 1)	2	Medium Impact (Tier 2)	3	Low Impact (Tier 3)

Section # & Req.ID	Final Inspection	Complies?	Comments/Assumptions
C403.2.4.3.3 [FI41][3]	Systems include optimum start controls.	☐Complies ☐Does Not ☐Not Observable ☑Not Applicable	
C403.2.4.3.3 [FI41][3]	Systems include optimum start controls.	☐Complies ☐Does Not ☐Not Observable ☑Not Applicable	
C403.2.4.3.3 [FI41][3]	Systems include optimum start controls.	☐Complies ☐Does Not ☐Not Observable ☑Not Applicable	
C408.2.5.1 [FI7][3]	Furnished HVAC as-built drawings submitted within 90 days of system acceptance.	☐Complies ☐Does Not ☐Not Observable ☐Not Applicable	
C303.3, C408.2.5.3 [FI8][3]	Furnished O&M manuals for HVAC systems within 90 days of system acceptance.	☐Complies ☐Does Not ☐Not Observable ☐Not Applicable	
C408.2.5.3 [FI43][1]	An air and/or hydronic system balancing report is provided for HVAC systems.	☐Complies ☐Does Not ☐Not Observable ☐Not Applicable	
C408.2.3.2 [FI10][1]	HVAC control systems have been tested to ensure proper operation, calibration and adjustment of controls.	☐Complies ☐Does Not ☐Not Observable ☐Not Applicable	
C403.2.2 [FI27][3]	HVAC systems and equipment capacity does not exceed calculated loads.	☐Complies ☐Does Not ☐Not Observable ☐Not Applicable	
C408.2.1 [FI28][1]	Commissioning plan developed by registered design professional or approved agency.	☐Complies ☐Does Not ☐Not Observable ☐Not Applicable	
C408.2.4 [FI29][1]	Preliminary commissioning report completed and certified by registered design professional or approved agency.	☐Complies ☐Does Not ☐Not Observable ☐Not Applicable	
C408.2.5.4 [FI30][1]	Final commissioning report due to building owner within 90 days of receipt of certificate of occupancy.	☐Complies ☐Does Not ☐Not Observable ☐Not Applicable	
C408.2.3.1 [FI31][1]	HVAC equipment has been tested to ensure proper operation.	☐Complies ☐Does Not ☐Not Observable ☐Not Applicable	
C408.2.3.3 [FI32][1]	Economizers have been tested to ensure proper operation.	☐Complies ☐Does Not ☐Not Observable ☐Not Applicable	

1	High Impact (Tier 1)	2	Medium Impact (Tier 2)	3	Low Impact (Tier 3)

Additional Comments/Assumptions:

1	High Impact (Tier 1)	2	Medium Impact (Tier 2)	3	Low Impact (Tier 3)

ROCIP Project: Withhold insurance cost. Please refer to sections 00425 & 00810 for information.

SECTION 21 05 17 - SLEEVES AND SLEEVE SEALS FOR FIRE-SUPPRESSION PIPING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Sleeves.
2. Sleeve-seal systems.
3. Grout.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 SLEEVES

A. Galvanized-Steel-Pipe Sleeves: ASTM A 53/A 53M, Type E, Grade B, Schedule 40, zinc coated, with plain ends.

2.2 SLEEVE-SEAL SYSTEMS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. Advance Products & Systems, Inc.
2. CALPICO, Inc.
3. Metraflex Company (The).
4. Pipeline Seal and Insulator, Inc.
5. Proco Products, Inc.

B. Description: Modular sealing-element unit, designed for field assembly, for filling annular space between piping and sleeve.

1. Sealing Elements: EPDM-rubber interlocking links shaped to fit surface of pipe. Include type and number required for pipe material and size of pipe.
2. Pressure Plates: Composite.
3. Connecting Bolts and Nuts: Stainless steel of length required to secure pressure plates to sealing elements.

2.3 GROUT

A. Standard: ASTM C 1107/C 1107M, Grade B, post-hardening and volume-adjusting, dry, hydraulic-cement grout.

B. Characteristics: Nonshrink; recommended for interior and exterior applications.

C. Design Mix: 5000-psi, 28-day compressive strength.

D. Packaging: Premixed and factory packaged.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 SLEEVE INSTALLATION

A. Install sleeves for piping passing through penetrations in floors, partitions, roofs, and walls.

B. For sleeves that will have sleeve-seal system installed, select sleeves of size large enough to provide 1-inch annular clear space between piping and concrete slabs and walls.

1. Sleeves are not required for core-drilled holes.

C. Install sleeves in concrete floors as new slabs are constructed.

1. Permanent sleeves are not required for holes in slabs formed by molded-PE or -PP sleeves.
2. Cut sleeves to length for mounting flush with both surfaces.

a. Exception: Extend sleeves installed in floors of mechanical equipment areas or other wet areas 2 inches above finished floor level.

3. Using grout, seal the space outside of sleeves in slabs without sleeve-seal system.

D. Install sleeves for pipes passing through interior partitions.

1. Cut sleeves to length for mounting flush with both surfaces.
2. Install sleeves that are large enough to provide 1/4-inch annular clear space between sleeve and pipe or pipe insulation.
3. Seal annular space between sleeve and piping or piping insulation; use joint sealants appropriate for size, depth, and location of joint. Comply with requirements for sealants specified in Division 07 Section "Joint Sealants."

E. Fire-Barrier Penetrations: Maintain indicated fire rating of walls, partitions, ceilings, and floors at pipe penetrations. Seal pipe penetrations with firestop materials. Comply with requirements for firestopping specified in Division 07 Section "Penetration Firestopping."

3.2 SLEEVE-SEAL-SYSTEM INSTALLATION

A. Install sleeve-seal systems in sleeves in exterior concrete walls and slabs-on-grade at service piping entries into building.

B. Select type, size, and number of sealing elements required for piping material and size and for sleeve ID or hole size. Position piping in center of sleeve. Center piping in penetration, assemble sleeve-seal system components, and install in annular space between piping and sleeve. Tighten bolts against pressure plates that cause sealing elements to expand and make a watertight seal.

3.3 SLEEVE AND SLEEVE-SEAL SCHEDULE

A. Use sleeves and sleeve seals for the following piping-penetration applications:

1. Concrete Slabs-on-Grade:

   a. All pipe sizes: Galvanized-steel wall sleeves with sleeve-seal system.

      1) Select sleeve size to allow for 1-inch annular clear space between piping and sleeve for installing sleeve-seal system.

2. Interior Partitions:

   a. All pipe sizes: Galvanized-steel-pipe sleeves.

END OF SECTION 22 05 17

ROCIP Project: Withhold insurance cost. Please refer to sections 00425 & 00810 for information.

SECTION 21 05 18 - ESCUTCHEONS FOR FIRE-SUPPRESSION PIPING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Escutcheons.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 ESCUTCHEONS

A. One-Piece, Cast-Brass Type: With polished, chrome-plated finish and setscrew fastener.

B. One-Piece, Deep-Pattern Type: Deep-drawn, box-shaped brass with chrome-plated finish and spring-clip fasteners.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

A. Install escutcheons for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and finished floors.

B. Install escutcheons with ID to closely fit around pipe, tube, and insulation of piping and with OD that completely covers opening.

1. Escutcheons for New Piping:

a. Piping with Fitting or Sleeve Protruding from Wall: One-piece, deep-pattern type.

b. Bare Piping at Wall and Floor Penetrations in Finished Spaces: One-piece, cast-brass type with polished, chrome-plated finish.
c. Bare Piping at Ceiling Penetrations in Finished Spaces: One-piece, cast-brass type with polished, chrome-plated finish.

END OF SECTION 21 05 18

ROCIP Project: Withhold insurance cost. Please refer to sections 00425 & 00810 for information.

SECTION 21 05 53 - IDENTIFICATION FOR FIRE-SUPPRESSION PIPING AND EQUIPMENT

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Pipe labels.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PIPE LABELS

A. General Requirements for Manufactured Pipe Labels: Preprinted, color-coded, with lettering indicating service and showing flow direction.

B. Pre-tensioned Pipe Labels: Pre-coiled, semi-rigid plastic formed to cover full circumference of pipe and to attach to pipe without fasteners or adhesive.

C. Pipe-Label Contents: Include identification of piping service using same designations or abbreviations as used on Drawings; pipe size; and an arrow indicating flow direction.

1. Flow-Direction Arrows: Integral with piping-system service lettering to accommodate both directions, or as separate unit on each pipe label to indicate flow direction.
2. Lettering Size: At least 1-1/2 inches high.

D. Pipe-Label Colors:

1. Background Color: Red.
2. Letter Color: White.

ROCIP Project: Withhold insurance cost. Please refer to sections 00425 & 00810 for information.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 LABEL INSTALLATION

A. Pipe-Label Locations: Locate pipe labels where piping is exposed or above accessible ceilings in finished spaces; machine rooms; accessible maintenance spaces such as shafts, tunnels, and plenums; and exterior exposed locations as follows:

1. Near each valve and control device.
2. Near each branch connection excluding short takeoffs. Where flow pattern is not obvious, mark each pipe at branch.
3. Near penetrations through walls, floors, ceilings, and inaccessible enclosures.
4. At access doors, manholes, and similar access points that permit view of concealed piping.
5. Near major equipment items and other points of origination and termination.
6. Spaced at maximum intervals of 50 feet along each run. Reduce intervals to 25 feet in areas of congested piping and equipment.
7. On piping above removable acoustical ceilings. Omit intermediately spaced labels.

END OF SECTION 21 05 53

ROCIP Project: Withhold insurance cost. Please refer to sections 00425 & 00810 for information.

SECTION 21 13 13 - WET-PIPE SPRINKLER SYSTEMS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SCOPE

A. The fire sprinkler subcontractor shall lay out a wet-pipe fire sprinkler system for the entire building.

1.2 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.3 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Pipes, fittings, and specialties.
2. Fire-protection valves.
3. Fire-department connections.
4. Sprinklers.
5. Alarm devices.
6. Pressure gages.

1.4 SYSTEM DESCRIPTIONS

A. Wet-Pipe Sprinkler System: Automatic sprinklers are attached to piping containing water and that is connected to water supply through alarm valve. Water discharges immediately from sprinklers when they are opened. Sprinklers open when heat melts fusible link or destroys frangible device. Hose connections are included if indicated.

1.5 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Standard Piping System Component Working Pressure: Listed for at least 175 psig.

B. Fire-suppression sprinkler system design shall be approved by authorities having jurisdiction.

1. System shall be hydraulically calculated.
2. Margin of Safety for Available Water Flow and Pressure: 10 psi or 10 percent (whichever is greater), including losses through water-service piping, valves, and backflow preventers.

3. Sprinkler Occupancy Hazard Classifications:

    a. Electrical Equipment Rooms: Ordinary Hazard, Group 1
    b. General Storage Areas: Ordinary Hazard, Group 1
    c. Mechanical Equipment Rooms and Mezzanines: Ordinary Hazard, Group 1
    d. Cooking Areas: Ordinary Hazard, Group 1
    e. Office, Classroom, Bathroom, and Public Areas: Light Hazard
    f. Residential Living Areas: Light Hazard
    g. Apparatus and Vehicle Bays: Ordinary Hazard, Group 1.
    h. Other Areas: As indicated on Drawings and in accordance with NFPA 13.

4. Minimum Density for Automatic-Sprinkler Piping Design:

    a. Light-Hazard Occupancy: 0.10 gpm/sq.ft. over the most hydraulically remote 1500 sq. ft.
    b. Ordinary-Hazard, Group 1 Occupancy: 0.15 gpm/sq.ft. over the most hydraulically remote 1500 sq. ft.
    c. Additional Hazards and Commodities: See drawings, NFPA 13 requirements, and specific sprinkler listing requirements.

5. Total Combined Hose-Stream Demand Requirement: According to NFPA 13 unless otherwise indicated:

    a. Light-Hazard Occupancies: 100 gpm for 30 minutes.
    b. Ordinary-Hazard Occupancies: 250 gpm for 60 to 90 minutes.

6. Maximum Protection Area per Standard-Coverage Sprinkler: Per UL listing unless otherwise indicated:

    a. Light-Hazard Occupancy Spaces: 225 sq. ft
    b. Ordinary-Hazard Occupancy Spaces: 130 sq. ft.
    c. Other Areas: According to NFPA 13.

1.6 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Pre-construction Submittal: (Product data, shop drawings and hydraulic calculation documents MUST be submitted together, partial submittals will be returned without review.)

1. Product Data:

    a. Pipe and fitting materials and methods of joining for sprinkler piping.
    b. Pipe hangers and supports.
    c. Valves, including specialty valves, accessories, and devices.
    d. Alarm devices. Include electrical data.

e. Fire department connections. Include type; number, size, and arrangement of inlets; caps and chains; size and direction of outlet; escutcheon and marking; and finish.
f. Sprinklers, escutcheons, and guards. Include sprinkler flow characteristics, mounting, finish, and other pertinent data.
g. Sprinklers shall be referred to on drawings, submittals, and other documentation, by the sprinkler identification or model number as specifically published in the appropriate agency listing or approval. Trade names or other abbreviated designations shall not be allowed.

2. Fire-Hydrant Flow Test Report.
3. Sprinkler Piping Shop Drawings: Working plans, prepared according to NFPA 13, including hydraulic calculations.
4. Submissions to Authorities Having Jurisdiction: Submit three copies of shop drawings, hydraulic calculations and product data to the Authority-Having-Jurisdiction for approval. Submit copies in Portable Digital File (PDF) format to Architect/Engineer.
5. Sprinkler subcontractor shall not install sprinkler pipe until the shop drawings have been approved, the Fire Sprinkler Permit has been obtained from the Authority-Having-Jurisdiction, and he has the "Approval to Proceed" in writing from the Architect/Engineer. If pipe is installed prior to receiving this approval, it may be subject to removal at no cost to the Owner.

1.7 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For sprinkler specialties to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

B. As-built record drawings in each of the following formats:

1. Two sets of full-size printed drawings.
2. Electronic DWG or DXF format.
3. Full size drawings in electronic PDF format.

1.8 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Installer Qualifications: An experienced installer with at least five years of successful installation experience on projects with automatic sprinkler system work similar to that required for project. Contractor must have current fire sprinkler certificate of registration issued by the State Fire Marshal's office and a licensed Responsible Managing Employee (RME).

B. Design Responsibility: Preparation of working plans, calculations, and field test reports by a qualified NICET Level 3 Designer or Professional Engineer experienced in fire sprinkler design. Base calculations on results of fire hydrant flow test.

C. Manufacturer Qualifications: Firms regularly engaged in manufacture of automatic sprinkler system products, of types, materials, and sizes required, whose products have been in satisfactory use in similar service for not less than five years.

D. Sprinkler Components: Listing/approval stamp, label, or other marking by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.

E. All grooved joint couplings, fittings, valves, and specialties shall be the products of a single manufacturer. Grooving tools shall be of the same manufacturer as the grooved components.

F. All castings used for coupling housings, fittings, valve bodies, etc., shall be date stamped for quality assurance and traceability.

G. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.

H. NFPA Standards: Equipment, specialties, accessories, installation, and testing shall comply with the standards listed. The edition of each shall be that referenced by the 2012 Edition of NFPA 101:

1. NFPA 13, "Standard for the Installation of Sprinkler Systems."
2. NFPA 70, "National Electrical Code."
3. NFPA 72, "National Fire Alarm Code."
4. NFPA 24, "Private Fire Service Mains."

1.9 COORDINATION

A. Pre-construction Coordination Model: Sprinkler systems inserted into three-dimensional digital model, in which the following items are shown and coordinated with each other, using input from installers of the items involved:

1. Domestic water piping.
2. Sanitary drainage and vent piping.
3. Condensate drainage piping.
4. HVAC ductwork.
5. Electrical conduit.
6. Ceilings, walls, partitions, and structural elements.
7. Items penetrating finished ceiling, including the following:

    a. Lighting fixtures.
    b. Fire alarm detection and notification appliances.
    c. Supply and return air diffusers.

B. Special consideration shall be given to the suspended ceiling systems, open ceiling areas and lighting fixtures, etc. when laying out the sprinklers to provide the optimum sprinkler coverage. Pipe routing and sprinkler locations shall not interfere with any other discipline. Architect/Owner shall be consulted with any question regarding interference, preferred pipe routing and approval of final sprinkler and pipe layout.

C. Sprinkler subcontractor shall not install sprinkler pipe until clashes within the model have been resolved, and the corresponding shop drawings have been approved by the Architect/Owner. If pipe is installed prior to receiving this approval, it may be subject to removal at no cost to the Owner.

1.10 EXTRA MATERIALS

A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.

1. Sprinkler Cabinets: Finished, wall-mounted, steel cabinet with hinged cover, and with space for minimum of six spare sprinklers plus sprinkler wrench. Include number of sprinklers required by NFPA 13 and sprinkler wrench. Include separate cabinet with sprinklers and wrench for each type of sprinkler used on Project.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PIPING MATERIALS

A. Comply with requirements in "Piping Schedule" Article for applications of pipe, tube, and fitting materials, and for joining methods for specific services, service locations, and pipe sizes.

2.2 STEEL PIPE AND FITTINGS

A. All black steel pipe is required to be internally coated and warranted by the manufacturer to resist the effects of microbiologically influenced corrosion (MIC) for 3 years or 25 flushes, whichever comes first: Wheatland Tube Company's MIC SHIELD™, Allied Tube Company's ABF II Coating, or equal.

B. Standard Weight, Black-Steel Pipe: ASTM A 135 or ASTM A 795, Type E, Grade A. Pipe ends may be factory or field formed to match joining method.

C. Schedule 10, Galvanized- and Black-Steel Pipe: ASTM A 135 or ASTM A 795, Type E, Grade A, Schedule 10 in NPS 5 and smaller; and NFPA 13-specified wall thickness in NPS 6 to NPS 10, plain end.

D. Black-Steel Pipe Nipples: ASTM A 733, made of ASTM A 53/A 53M, standard-weight, seamless steel pipe with threaded ends.

E. Uncoated, Steel Couplings: ASTM A 865, threaded.

F. Uncoated, Gray-Iron Threaded Fittings: ASME B16.4, Class 125, standard pattern.

G. Malleable- or Ductile-Iron Unions: UL 860.

H. Cast-Iron Flanges: ASME 16.1, Class 125.

I. Steel Flanges and Flanged Fittings: ASME B16.5, Class 150.

J. Grooved-Joint, Steel-Pipe Appurtenances:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

   a. Victaulic Company.

2. Pressure Rating: 175 psig minimum.
3. Uncoated, Grooved-End Fittings for Steel Piping: ASTM A 536, ductile-iron casting; short-pattern with flow equal to standard pattern fittings, with grooved-end dimensions matching steel pipe.
4. Grooved-End-Pipe Couplings for Steel Piping: AWWA C606 and UL 213, rigid pattern, unless otherwise indicated, for steel-pipe dimensions. Include ferrous housing sections, EPDM-rubber gasket, and bolts and nuts.

   a. Rigid Type: Housings shall be cast with offsetting angle-pattern bolt pads to provide rigidity and system support and hanging in accordance with NFPA-13. Couplings shall be fully installed at visual pad-to-pad offset contact. (Tongue and recess type couplings, or any coupling that requires exact gapping of bolt pads on each side of the coupling at specified torque ratings, are not allowed.)
   b. Flexible Type: For use in locations where vibration attenuation and stress relief are required, and for seismic applications in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.
   c. Flange Adapter: Flat face, ductile iron housings with elastomer pressure responsive gasket, for direct connection to ANSI Class 150 flanged components.

2.3 PIPING JOINING MATERIALS

A. Grooved Joint Lubricants: Lubricate gaskets in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations with lubricant supplied by the coupling manufacturer that is suitable for the gasket elastomer and system media.

B. Pipe-Flange Gasket Materials: AWWA C110, rubber, flat face, 1/8 inch thick or ASME B16.21, nonmetallic and asbestos free.

1. Class 125, Cast-Iron Flanges and Class 150, Bronze Flat-Face Flanges: Full-face gaskets.
2. Class 250, Cast-Iron Flanges and Class 300, Steel Raised-Face Flanges: Ring-type gaskets.

C. Metal, Pipe-Flange Bolts and Nuts: ASME B18.2.1, carbon steel unless otherwise indicated.

2.4 LISTED FIRE-PROTECTION VALVES

A. General Requirements:

1. Valves shall be UL listed or FM approved.
2. Minimum Pressure Rating for Standard-Pressure Piping: 175 psig.

B. Ball Valves:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

   a. Victaulic Company.

2. Standard: UL 1091 except with ball instead of disc.
3. Valves shall include a weatherproof actuator housing, handwheel, with two single-pole, double-throw supervisory switches.
4. Valves NPS 1 to NPS 2-1/2: Bronze body with threaded ends or ductile-iron body with grooved ends, as required for compatibility with joining method.
5. Valves NPS 3: Ductile-iron body with grooved ends.

C. Check Valves:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

   a. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Stockham Division.
   b. Potter Roemer.

c. Reliable Automatic Sprinkler Co., Inc.
d. Tyco Fire & Building Products LP.
e. United Brass Works, Inc.
f. Victaulic Company.
g. Viking Corporation.

2. Standard: UL 312.
3. Pressure Rating: 250 psig minimum.
4. Type: Swing (horizontal) or spring-actuated (vertical or horizontal) check.
5. Body Material: Cast iron.
6. Shaft and Spring: Stainless steel.
7. End Connections: Flanged or grooved.

D. Indicating-Type Butterfly Valves:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

   a. Tyco Fire & Building Products LP.
   b. Victaulic Company.

2. Standard: UL 1091.
3. Pressure Rating: 175 psig minimum.
4. Valves shall include a weatherproof actuator housing, handwheel, with two single-pole, double-throw supervisory switches.
5. Valves NPS 2 and Smaller:

   a. Valve Type: Ball or butterfly.
   b. Body Material: Bronze.
   c. End Connections: Threaded or grooved.

6. Valves NPS 2-1/2 and Larger:

   a. Valve Type: Butterfly.
   b. Body Material: Cast or ductile iron.
   c. Stem: Stainless steel, offset from the disc centerline to provide full 360-degree circumferential seating.
   d. Seat: Pressure responsive elastomer.
   e. End Connections: Flanged, grooved, or wafer.

7. Valve Operation: Integral electrical, 125-V ac, prewired, two-single-pole, double-throw, supervisory switches with visual indicating device.

2.5 TRIM AND DRAIN VALVES

A. General Requirements:

1. Standard: UL's "Fire Protection Equipment Directory" listing or "Approval Guide," published by FM Global, listing.
2. Pressure Rating: 175 psig minimum.

B. Angle Valves:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

   a. United Brass Works, Inc.

C. Ball Valves:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

   a. Tyco Fire & Building Products LP.
   b. Victaulic Company.

2.6 SPECIALTY VALVES

A. General Requirements:

1. Standard: UL's "Fire Protection Equipment Directory" listing or "Approval Guide," published by FM Global, listing.
2. Pressure Rating:

   a. Standard-Pressure Piping Specialty Valves: 175 psig minimum.

3. Body Material: Cast or ductile iron.
4. Size: Same as connected piping.
5. End Connections: Flanged or grooved.
6. Valve internal components shall be replaceable without removing the valve from the installed position.

B. Automatic (Ball Drip) Drain Valves:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

   a. Reliable Automatic Sprinkler Co., Inc.
   b. Tyco Fire & Building Products LP.

2. Standard: UL 1726.
3. Pressure Rating: 175 psig minimum.
4. Type: Automatic draining, ball check.
5. Size: NPS 3/4.
6. End Connections: Threaded.

2.7 FIRE-DEPARTMENT CONNECTIONS

A. Exposed-Type, Fire-Department Connection:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

   a. Elkhart Brass Mfg. Company, Inc.
   b. Fire-End & Croker Corporation.
   c. Guardian Fire Equipment, Inc.
   d. Tyco Fire & Building Products LP.

2. Standard: UL 405.
3. Type: Exposed, projecting, for wall mounting.
4. Pressure Rating: 175 psig minimum.
5. Body Material: Corrosion-resistant metal.
6. Inlets: Brass with threads according to NFPA 1963 and matching local fire-department sizes and threads. Include extension pipe nipples, brass lugged swivel connections, and check devices or clappers.
7. Caps: Brass, lugged type, with gasket and chain.
8. Escutcheon Plate: Round, brass, wall type.
9. Outlet: Back, with pipe threads.
10. Number of Inlets: As required per NPFA 13.
11. Escutcheon Plate Marking: Similar to "AUTO SPKR."
12. Finish: Polished chrome plated.
13. Outlet Size: Sized per NFPA 13.
14. Include Knox FDC plugs over caps.

2.8 SPRINKLER SPECIALTY PIPE FITTINGS

A. Flow Detection and Test Assemblies:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

   a. AGF Manufacturing Inc.
   b. Reliable Automatic Sprinkler Co., Inc.
   c. Tyco Fire & Building Products LP.
   d. Victaulic Company.

2. Standard: UL's "Fire Protection Equipment Directory" listing or "Approval Guide," published by FM Global, listing.
3. Pressure Rating: 175 psig minimum.
4. Body Material: Cast- or ductile-iron housing with orifice, sight glass, and integral test valve.
5. Size: Same as connected piping.
6. Inlet and Outlet: Threaded.

B. Sprinkler Inspector's Test Fittings:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

   a. AGF Manufacturing Inc.
   b. Tyco Fire & Building Products LP.
   c. Victaulic Company.
   d. Viking Corporation.

2. Standard: UL's "Fire Protection Equipment Directory" listing or "Approval Guide," published by FM Global, listing.
3. Pressure Rating: 175 psig minimum.
4. Body Material: Cast-bronze or ductile-iron housing with sight glass.
5. Size: Same as connected piping.
6. Inlet and Outlet: Threaded or grooved.

2.9 SPRINKLERS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. Reliable Automatic Sprinkler Co., Inc.
2. Tyco Fire & Building Products LP.
3. Victaulic Company.
4. Viking Corporation.

B. General Requirements:

1. Standard: UL's "Fire Protection Equipment Directory" listing or "Approval Guide," published by FM Global, listing.
2. Pressure Rating for Automatic Sprinklers: 175 psig minimum.
3. Sprinklers shall be glass bulb type, with hex-shaped wrench boss integrally cast into the sprinkler body to reduce the risk of damage during installation.

    a. Wrenches shall be provided by the sprinkler manufacturer that directly engage the hex-shaped wrench boss integrally cast in the sprinkler body.

4. Sprinklers with rubber O-rings are not permitted.

C. Automatic Sprinklers with Heat-Responsive Element:

1. Nonresidential Applications: UL 199.
2. Characteristics: Nominal 1/2-inch orifice with Discharge Coefficient K of 5.6, quick response, and for "Ordinary" temperature classification rating unless otherwise indicated or required by application.

D. Sprinkler Finishes:

1. Chrome plated.
2. Bronze.
3. Painted.

E. Sprinkler Guards:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following :

    a. Reliable Automatic Sprinkler Co., Inc.
    b. Tyco Fire & Building Products LP.
    c. Victaulic Company.
    d. Viking Corporation.

2. Standard: UL 199.
3. Type: Wire cage with fastening device for attaching to sprinkler.
4. Guards shall be listed, supplied, and approved for use with the sprinkler by the sprinkler manufacturer.

2.10 ALARM DEVICES

A. Alarm-device types shall match piping and equipment connections.

B. Electrically Operated Alarm Bell:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following :

   a. Fire-Lite Alarms, Inc.; a Honeywell company.
   b. Notifier; a Honeywell company.
   c. Potter Electric Signal Company.

2. Standard: UL 464.
3. Type: Vibrating, metal alarm bell; 24V power for interconnection with fire alarm system.
4. Size: 10-inch diameter.
5. Finish: Red-enamel factory finish, suitable for outdoor use.

C. Water-Flow Indicators:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

   a. Potter Electric Signal Company.
   b. System Sensor; a Honeywell company.
   c. Viking Corporation.

2. Standard: UL 346.
3. Water-Flow Detector: Electrically supervised.
4. Components: Two single-pole, double-throw circuit switches for isolated alarm and auxiliary contacts, 7 A, 125-V ac and 0.25 A, 24-V dc; complete with factory-set, field-adjustable retard element to prevent false signals and tamperproof cover that sends signal if removed.
5. Type: Paddle operated.
6. Pressure Rating: 250 psig.
7. Design Installation: Horizontal or vertical.

D. Valve Supervisory Switches:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

   a. Fire-Lite Alarms, Inc.; a Honeywell company.
   b. Potter Electric Signal Company.
   c. System Sensor; a Honeywell company.

2. Standard: UL 346.
3. Type: Electrically supervised.
4. Components: Single-pole, double-throw switch with normally closed contacts.
5. Design: Signals that controlled valve is in other than fully open position.

2.11 PRESSURE GAGES

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. AMETEK; U.S. Gauge Division.
2. Ashcroft, Inc.
3. WIKA Instrument Corporation.

B. Standard: UL 393.

C. Dial Size: 3-1/2- to 4-1/2-inch diameter.

D. Pressure Gage Range: 0 to 250 psig minimum.

E. Water System Piping Gage: Include "WATER" or "AIR/WATER" label on dial face.

F. Air System Piping Gage: Include retard feature and "AIR" or "AIR/WATER" label on dial face.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 PREPARATION

A. Perform fire-hydrant flow test according to NFPA 13 and NFPA 291. Use results for system design calculations required in "Quality Assurance" Article.

B. Report test results promptly and in writing.

3.2 EARTHWORK

A. Refer to "Earthwork" Section for excavating, trenching, and backfilling.

B. Sprinkler Subcontractor’s work to start 5 feet outside of building.

3.3 SERVICE-ENTRANCE PIPING

A. Connect sprinkler piping to water-service piping for service entrance to building.

B. Install shutoff valve, backflow preventer, pressure gage, drain, and other accessories indicated at connection to water-service piping. Comply with requirements for backflow preventers in Division 22 Sections.

3.4 PIPING INSTALLATION

A. Locations and Arrangements: Drawing plans, schematics, and diagrams indicate general location and arrangement of piping. Install piping as indicated, as far as practical.

1. Deviations from approved working plans for piping require written approval from authorities having jurisdiction. File written approval with Architect before deviating from approved working plans.

B. Piping Standard: Comply with requirements for installation of sprinkler piping in NFPA 13.

C. Use listed fittings to make changes in direction, branch takeoffs from mains, and reductions in pipe sizes.

D. Install unions adjacent to each valve in pipes NPS 1-1/2 and smaller.

E. Install couplings for grooved-end piping on valves, apparatus, and equipment having NPS 2 and larger end connections.

F. Install "Inspector's Test Connections" in sprinkler system piping, complete with shutoff valve, and sized and located according to NFPA 13.

G. Install sprinkler piping with drains for complete system drainage.

H. Install automatic (ball drip) drain valve at each check valve for fire-department connection, to drain piping between fire-department connection and check valve. Install drain piping to and spill over floor drain or to outside building.

I. Install alarm devices in piping systems.

J. Install hangers and supports for sprinkler system piping according to NFPA 13. Comply with requirements for hanger materials in NFPA 13. Provide surge restrainers on hangers supporting pendent sprinklers in hung ceilings.

K. Install pressure gages on riser or feed main and at each sprinkler test connection. Include pressure gages with connection not less than NPS 1/4 and with soft metal seated globe valve, arranged for draining pipe between gage and valve. Install gages to permit removal, and install where they will not be subject to freezing.

L. Fill sprinkler system piping with water.

M. Install sleeves for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors. Comply with requirements for sleeves specified in Division 21 Section "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for Fire-Suppression Piping."

N. Install sleeve seals for piping penetrations of concrete walls and slabs. Comply with requirements for sleeve seals specified in Division 21 Section "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for Fire-Suppression Piping."

O. Install escutcheons for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors in spaces exposed to view. Comply with requirements for escutcheons specified in Division 21 Section "Escutcheons for Fire-Suppression Piping."

3.5 JOINT CONSTRUCTION

A. Install couplings, flanges, flanged fittings, unions, nipples, and transition and special fittings that have finish and pressure ratings same as or higher than system's pressure rating for aboveground applications unless otherwise indicated.

B. Install couplings for grooved-end piping on valves, apparatus, and equipment having NPS 2 and larger end connections.

C. Ream ends of pipes and tubes and remove burrs. Bevel plain ends of steel pipe.

D. Remove scale, slag, dirt, and debris from inside and outside of pipes, tubes, and fittings before assembly.

E. Flanged Joints: Select appropriate gasket material in size, type, and thickness suitable for water service. Join flanges with gasket and bolts according to ASME B31.9.

F. Threaded Joints: Thread pipe with tapered pipe threads according to ASME B1.20.1. Cut threads full and clean using sharp dies. Ream threaded pipe ends to remove burrs and restore full ID. Join pipe fittings and valves as follows:

1. Apply appropriate tape or thread compound to external pipe threads.
2. Damaged Threads: Do not use pipe or pipe fittings with threads that are corroded or damaged.

G. Steel-Piping, Roll-Grooved Joints: Roll rounded-edge groove in end of pipe according to AWWA C606. Assemble coupling with housing, gasket, lubricant, and bolts. Join steel pipe and grooved-end fittings according to AWWA C606 for steel-pipe grooved joints. Install in accordance with the manufacturer’s published instructions.

1. The grooved coupling manufacturer’s factory trained representative shall provide on-site training for contractor’s field personnel in the use of grooving tools and installation of grooved joint products. The representative shall periodically visit the jobsite and review contractor is following best recommended practices in grooved product installation. (A distributor’s representative is not considered qualified to conduct the training or jobsite visit(s).)

H. Dissimilar-Material Piping Joints: Make joints using adapters compatible with materials of both piping systems.

3.6 VALVE AND SPECIALTIES INSTALLATION

A. Install listed fire-protection valves, trim and drain valves, specialty valves and trim, controls, and specialties according to NFPA 13 and authorities having jurisdiction.

B. Install listed fire-protection shutoff valves supervised open, located to control sources of water supply except from fire-department connections. Install permanent identification signs indicating portion of system controlled by each valve.

C. Install check valve in each water-supply connection. Install backflow preventers instead of check valves in potable-water-supply sources.

D. Provide splash blocks or other means of erosion protection beneath exterior discharge from sprinkler inspector's test lines.

3.7 SPRINKLER INSTALLATION

A. Install sprinklers in suspended ceilings in center of narrow dimension of acoustical ceiling panels.

B. Install dry-type sprinklers with water supply from heated space. Do not install pendent or sidewall, wet-type sprinklers in areas subject to freezing.

C. Do not install sprinklers that have been dropped, damaged, or show a visible loss of fluid. Never install sprinklers with cracked bulbs.

D. Sprinkler bulb protector shall be removed by hand after installation. Do not use tools or any other device(s) to remove the protector that could damage the bulb in any way.

3.8 FIRE-DEPARTMENT CONNECTION INSTALLATION

A. Install wall-type, fire-department connections.

B. Install automatic (ball drip) drain valve at each check valve for fire-department connection.

3.9 IDENTIFICATION

A. Install labeling and pipe markers on equipment and piping according to requirements in NFPA 13.

B. Identify system components, wiring, cabling, and terminals. Comply with requirements for identification specified in Division 26 Section "Identification for Electrical Systems."

3.10 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Perform tests and inspections.

B. Tests and Inspections:

1. Leak Test: After installation, charge systems and test for leaks. Repair leaks and retest until no leaks exist.
2. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.
3. Flush, test, and inspect sprinkler systems according to NFPA 13, "Systems Acceptance" Chapter.
4. Energize circuits to electrical equipment and devices.
5. Coordinate with fire-alarm tests. Operate as required.
6. Verify that equipment hose threads are same as local fire-department equipment.

C. Sprinkler piping system will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.

D. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.11 CLEANING

A. Clean dirt and debris from sprinklers.

B. Remove and replace sprinklers with paint other than factory finish.

3.12 PIPING SCHEDULE

A. Piping between Fire-Department Connections and Check Valves: Galvanized, Schedule 10 steel pipe with roll-grooved ends; grooved-end fittings; grooved-end-pipe couplings; and grooved joints.

B. Sprinkler specialty fittings may be used, downstream of control valves, instead of specified fittings.

C. Standard-pressure, wet-pipe sprinkler system, NPS 1 and smaller, shall be the following:

1. Standard-weight, black-steel pipe with threaded ends; uncoated, gray-iron threaded fittings; and threaded joints.

D. Standard-pressure, wet-pipe sprinkler system, NPS 1 1/4 to NPS 1 1/2, shall be one of the following:

1. Standard-weight, black-steel pipe with threaded ends; uncoated, gray-iron threaded fittings; and threaded joints.
2. Schedule 10, black-steel pipe with roll-grooved ends; uncoated, grooved-end fittings for steel piping; grooved-end-pipe couplings for steel piping; and grooved joints.

E. Standard-pressure, wet-pipe sprinkler system, NPS 2 and larger, shall be the following:

1. Schedule 10, black-steel pipe with roll-grooved ends; uncoated, grooved-end fittings for steel piping; grooved-end-pipe couplings for steel piping; and grooved joints.

3.13 SPRINKLER SCHEDULE

A. Use sprinkler types in subparagraphs below for the following applications:

1. Rooms without Ceilings: Upright sprinklers.
2. Rooms with Suspended Ceilings: Concealed sprinklers.
3. Wall Mounting: Sidewall sprinklers.
4. Spaces Subject to Freezing: Pendent, dry sprinklers; Sidewall, dry sprinklers.
5. Special Applications: Extended-coverage and quick-response sprinklers where indicated on shop drawings and supported by hydraulic calculations.

B. Provide sprinkler types in subparagraphs below with finishes indicated.

1. Concealed Sprinklers: Rough brass; with flat, factory-painted cover plate. Coordinate color of cover plates with Architectural preferences.
2. Upright, Pendent, and Sidewall Sprinklers: Chrome plated in finished spaces exposed to view; rough bronze in unfinished spaces not exposed to view; wax coated where exposed to acids, chemicals, or other corrosive fumes.

3.14 COMMISSIONING

A. Verify that specialty valves, trim, fittings, controls, and accessories are installed and operate correctly.

B. Verify that specified tests of piping are complete.

C. Verify that damaged sprinklers and sprinklers with paint or coating not specified are replaced with new, correct type.

D. Verify that sprinklers are correct types, have correct finishes and temperature ratings, and have guards as required for each application.

E. Verify that potable-water supplies have correct types of backflow preventers.

F. Verify that fire department connections have threads compatible with local fire department equipment.

G. Fill wet-pipe sprinkler piping with water.

H. Energize circuits to electrical equipment and devices.

I. Coordinate with fire alarm tests. Operate as required.

3.15 DEMONSTRATION

A. Demonstrate equipment, specialties, and accessories. Review operating and maintenance information.

B. Schedule demonstration with Owner with at least seven days' advance notice.

END OF SECTION 21 13 13

ROCIP Project: Withhold insurance cost. Please refer to sections 00425 & 00810 for information.

SECTION 21 05 17 - SLEEVES AND SLEEVE SEALS FOR FIRE-SUPPRESSION PIPING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Sleeves.
2. Sleeve-seal systems.
3. Grout.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 SLEEVES

A. Galvanized-Steel-Pipe Sleeves: ASTM A 53/A 53M, Type E, Grade B, Schedule 40, zinc coated, with plain ends.

2.2 SLEEVE-SEAL SYSTEMS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. Advance Products & Systems, Inc.
2. CALPICO, Inc.
3. Metraflex Company (The).
4. Pipeline Seal and Insulator, Inc.
5. Proco Products, Inc.

B. Description: Modular sealing-element unit, designed for field assembly, for filling annular space between piping and sleeve.

1. Sealing Elements: EPDM-rubber interlocking links shaped to fit surface of pipe. Include type and number required for pipe material and size of pipe.
2. Pressure Plates: Composite.
3. Connecting Bolts and Nuts: Stainless steel of length required to secure pressure plates to sealing elements.

2.3 GROUT

A. Standard: ASTM C 1107/C 1107M, Grade B, post-hardening and volume-adjusting, dry, hydraulic-cement grout.

B. Characteristics: Nonshrink; recommended for interior and exterior applications.

C. Design Mix: 5000-psi, 28-day compressive strength.

D. Packaging: Premixed and factory packaged.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 SLEEVE INSTALLATION

A. Install sleeves for piping passing through penetrations in floors, partitions, roofs, and walls.

B. For sleeves that will have sleeve-seal system installed, select sleeves of size large enough to provide 1-inch annular clear space between piping and concrete slabs and walls.

1. Sleeves are not required for core-drilled holes.

C. Install sleeves in concrete floors as new slabs are constructed.

1. Permanent sleeves are not required for holes in slabs formed by molded-PE or -PP sleeves.
2. Cut sleeves to length for mounting flush with both surfaces.

a. Exception: Extend sleeves installed in floors of mechanical equipment areas or other wet areas 2 inches above finished floor level.

3. Using grout, seal the space outside of sleeves in slabs without sleeve-seal system.

D. Install sleeves for pipes passing through interior partitions.

1. Cut sleeves to length for mounting flush with both surfaces.
2. Install sleeves that are large enough to provide 1/4-inch annular clear space between sleeve and pipe or pipe insulation.
3. Seal annular space between sleeve and piping or piping insulation; use joint sealants appropriate for size, depth, and location of joint. Comply with requirements for sealants specified in Division 07 Section "Joint Sealants."

E. Fire-Barrier Penetrations: Maintain indicated fire rating of walls, partitions, ceilings, and floors at pipe penetrations. Seal pipe penetrations with firestop materials. Comply with requirements for firestopping specified in Division 07 Section "Penetration Firestopping."

3.2 SLEEVE-SEAL-SYSTEM INSTALLATION

A. Install sleeve-seal systems in sleeves in exterior concrete walls and slabs-on-grade at service piping entries into building.

B. Select type, size, and number of sealing elements required for piping material and size and for sleeve ID or hole size. Position piping in center of sleeve. Center piping in penetration, assemble sleeve-seal system components, and install in annular space between piping and sleeve. Tighten bolts against pressure plates that cause sealing elements to expand and make a watertight seal.

3.3 SLEEVE AND SLEEVE-SEAL SCHEDULE

A. Use sleeves and sleeve seals for the following piping-penetration applications:

1. Concrete Slabs-on-Grade:

   a. All pipe sizes: Galvanized-steel wall sleeves with sleeve-seal system.

      1) Select sleeve size to allow for 1-inch annular clear space between piping and sleeve for installing sleeve-seal system.

2. Interior Partitions:

   a. All pipe sizes: Galvanized-steel-pipe sleeves.

END OF SECTION 22 05 17

ROCIP Project: Withhold insurance cost. Please refer to sections 00425 & 00810 for information.

SECTION 21 05 18 - ESCUTCHEONS FOR FIRE-SUPPRESSION PIPING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Escutcheons.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 ESCUTCHEONS

A. One-Piece, Cast-Brass Type: With polished, chrome-plated finish and setscrew fastener.

B. One-Piece, Deep-Pattern Type: Deep-drawn, box-shaped brass with chrome-plated finish and spring-clip fasteners.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

A. Install escutcheons for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and finished floors.

B. Install escutcheons with ID to closely fit around pipe, tube, and insulation of piping and with OD that completely covers opening.

1. Escutcheons for New Piping:

a. Piping with Fitting or Sleeve Protruding from Wall: One-piece, deep-pattern type.

b. Bare Piping at Wall and Floor Penetrations in Finished Spaces: One-piece, cast-brass type with polished, chrome-plated finish.
c. Bare Piping at Ceiling Penetrations in Finished Spaces: One-piece, cast-brass type with polished, chrome-plated finish.

END OF SECTION 21 05 18

ROCIP Project: Withhold insurance cost. Please refer to sections 00425 & 00810 for information.

SECTION 21 05 53 - IDENTIFICATION FOR FIRE-SUPPRESSION PIPING AND EQUIPMENT

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Pipe labels.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PIPE LABELS

A. General Requirements for Manufactured Pipe Labels: Preprinted, color-coded, with lettering indicating service and showing flow direction.

B. Pre-tensioned Pipe Labels: Pre-coiled, semi-rigid plastic formed to cover full circumference of pipe and to attach to pipe without fasteners or adhesive.

C. Pipe-Label Contents: Include identification of piping service using same designations or abbreviations as used on Drawings; pipe size; and an arrow indicating flow direction.

1. Flow-Direction Arrows: Integral with piping-system service lettering to accommodate both directions, or as separate unit on each pipe label to indicate flow direction.
2. Lettering Size: At least 1-1/2 inches high.

D. Pipe-Label Colors:

1. Background Color: Red.
2. Letter Color: White.

ROCIP Project: Withhold insurance cost. Please refer to sections 00425 & 00810 for information.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 LABEL INSTALLATION

A. Pipe-Label Locations: Locate pipe labels where piping is exposed or above accessible ceilings in finished spaces; machine rooms; accessible maintenance spaces such as shafts, tunnels, and plenums; and exterior exposed locations as follows:

1. Near each valve and control device.
2. Near each branch connection excluding short takeoffs. Where flow pattern is not obvious, mark each pipe at branch.
3. Near penetrations through walls, floors, ceilings, and inaccessible enclosures.
4. At access doors, manholes, and similar access points that permit view of concealed piping.
5. Near major equipment items and other points of origination and termination.
6. Spaced at maximum intervals of 50 feet along each run. Reduce intervals to 25 feet in areas of congested piping and equipment.
7. On piping above removable acoustical ceilings. Omit intermediately spaced labels.

END OF SECTION 21 05 53

ROCIP Project: Withhold insurance cost. Please refer to sections 00425 & 00810 for information.

SECTION 21 13 13 - WET-PIPE SPRINKLER SYSTEMS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SCOPE

A. The fire sprinkler subcontractor shall lay out a wet-pipe fire sprinkler system for the entire building.

1.2 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.3 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Pipes, fittings, and specialties.
2. Fire-protection valves.
3. Fire-department connections.
4. Sprinklers.
5. Alarm devices.
6. Pressure gages.

1.4 SYSTEM DESCRIPTIONS

A. Wet-Pipe Sprinkler System: Automatic sprinklers are attached to piping containing water and that is connected to water supply through alarm valve. Water discharges immediately from sprinklers when they are opened. Sprinklers open when heat melts fusible link or destroys frangible device. Hose connections are included if indicated.

1.5 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Standard Piping System Component Working Pressure: Listed for at least 175 psig.

B. Fire-suppression sprinkler system design shall be approved by authorities having jurisdiction.

1. System shall be hydraulically calculated.
2. Margin of Safety for Available Water Flow and Pressure: 10 psi or 10 percent (whichever is greater), including losses through water-service piping, valves, and backflow preventers.

3. Sprinkler Occupancy Hazard Classifications:

    a. Electrical Equipment Rooms: Ordinary Hazard, Group 1
    b. General Storage Areas: Ordinary Hazard, Group 1
    c. Mechanical Equipment Rooms and Mezzanines: Ordinary Hazard, Group 1
    d. Cooking Areas: Ordinary Hazard, Group 1
    e. Office, Classroom, Bathroom, and Public Areas: Light Hazard
    f. Residential Living Areas: Light Hazard
    g. Apparatus and Vehicle Bays: Ordinary Hazard, Group 1.
    h. Other Areas: As indicated on Drawings and in accordance with NFPA 13.

4. Minimum Density for Automatic-Sprinkler Piping Design:

    a. Light-Hazard Occupancy: 0.10 gpm/sq.ft. over the most hydraulically remote 1500 sq. ft.
    b. Ordinary-Hazard, Group 1 Occupancy: 0.15 gpm/sq.ft. over the most hydraulically remote 1500 sq. ft.
    c. Additional Hazards and Commodities: See drawings, NFPA 13 requirements, and specific sprinkler listing requirements.

5. Total Combined Hose-Stream Demand Requirement: According to NFPA 13 unless otherwise indicated:

    a. Light-Hazard Occupancies: 100 gpm for 30 minutes.
    b. Ordinary-Hazard Occupancies: 250 gpm for 60 to 90 minutes.

6. Maximum Protection Area per Standard-Coverage Sprinkler: Per UL listing unless otherwise indicated:

    a. Light-Hazard Occupancy Spaces: 225 sq. ft
    b. Ordinary-Hazard Occupancy Spaces: 130 sq. ft.
    c. Other Areas: According to NFPA 13.

1.6 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Pre-construction Submittal: (Product data, shop drawings and hydraulic calculation documents MUST be submitted together, partial submittals will be returned without review.)

1. Product Data:

    a. Pipe and fitting materials and methods of joining for sprinkler piping.
    b. Pipe hangers and supports.
    c. Valves, including specialty valves, accessories, and devices.
    d. Alarm devices. Include electrical data.

e. Fire department connections. Include type; number, size, and arrangement of inlets; caps and chains; size and direction of outlet; escutcheon and marking; and finish.
f. Sprinklers, escutcheons, and guards. Include sprinkler flow characteristics, mounting, finish, and other pertinent data.
g. Sprinklers shall be referred to on drawings, submittals, and other documentation, by the sprinkler identification or model number as specifically published in the appropriate agency listing or approval. Trade names or other abbreviated designations shall not be allowed.

2. Fire-Hydrant Flow Test Report.
3. Sprinkler Piping Shop Drawings: Working plans, prepared according to NFPA 13, including hydraulic calculations.
4. Submissions to Authorities Having Jurisdiction: Submit three copies of shop drawings, hydraulic calculations and product data to the Authority-Having-Jurisdiction for approval. Submit copies in Portable Digital File (PDF) format to Architect/Engineer.
5. Sprinkler subcontractor shall not install sprinkler pipe until the shop drawings have been approved, the Fire Sprinkler Permit has been obtained from the Authority-Having-Jurisdiction, and he has the "Approval to Proceed" in writing from the Architect/Engineer. If pipe is installed prior to receiving this approval, it may be subject to removal at no cost to the Owner.

1.7 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For sprinkler specialties to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

B. As-built record drawings in each of the following formats:

1. Two sets of full-size printed drawings.
2. Electronic DWG or DXF format.
3. Full size drawings in electronic PDF format.

1.8 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Installer Qualifications: An experienced installer with at least five years of successful installation experience on projects with automatic sprinkler system work similar to that required for project. Contractor must have current fire sprinkler certificate of registration issued by the State Fire Marshal's office and a licensed Responsible Managing Employee (RME).

B. Design Responsibility: Preparation of working plans, calculations, and field test reports by a qualified NICET Level 3 Designer or Professional Engineer experienced in fire sprinkler design. Base calculations on results of fire hydrant flow test.

C. Manufacturer Qualifications: Firms regularly engaged in manufacture of automatic sprinkler system products, of types, materials, and sizes required, whose products have been in satisfactory use in similar service for not less than five years.

D. Sprinkler Components: Listing/approval stamp, label, or other marking by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.

E. All grooved joint couplings, fittings, valves, and specialties shall be the products of a single manufacturer. Grooving tools shall be of the same manufacturer as the grooved components.

F. All castings used for coupling housings, fittings, valve bodies, etc., shall be date stamped for quality assurance and traceability.

G. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.

H. NFPA Standards: Equipment, specialties, accessories, installation, and testing shall comply with the standards listed. The edition of each shall be that referenced by the 2012 Edition of NFPA 101:

1. NFPA 13, "Standard for the Installation of Sprinkler Systems."
2. NFPA 70, "National Electrical Code."
3. NFPA 72, "National Fire Alarm Code."
4. NFPA 24, "Private Fire Service Mains."

1.9 COORDINATION

A. Pre-construction Coordination Model: Sprinkler systems inserted into three-dimensional digital model, in which the following items are shown and coordinated with each other, using input from installers of the items involved:

1. Domestic water piping.
2. Sanitary drainage and vent piping.
3. Condensate drainage piping.
4. HVAC ductwork.
5. Electrical conduit.
6. Ceilings, walls, partitions, and structural elements.
7. Items penetrating finished ceiling, including the following:

    a. Lighting fixtures.
    b. Fire alarm detection and notification appliances.
    c. Supply and return air diffusers.

B. Special consideration shall be given to the suspended ceiling systems, open ceiling areas and lighting fixtures, etc. when laying out the sprinklers to provide the optimum sprinkler coverage. Pipe routing and sprinkler locations shall not interfere with any other discipline. Architect/Owner shall be consulted with any question regarding interference, preferred pipe routing and approval of final sprinkler and pipe layout.

C. Sprinkler subcontractor shall not install sprinkler pipe until clashes within the model have been resolved, and the corresponding shop drawings have been approved by the Architect/Owner. If pipe is installed prior to receiving this approval, it may be subject to removal at no cost to the Owner.

1.10 EXTRA MATERIALS

A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.

1. Sprinkler Cabinets: Finished, wall-mounted, steel cabinet with hinged cover, and with space for minimum of six spare sprinklers plus sprinkler wrench. Include number of sprinklers required by NFPA 13 and sprinkler wrench. Include separate cabinet with sprinklers and wrench for each type of sprinkler used on Project.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PIPING MATERIALS

A. Comply with requirements in "Piping Schedule" Article for applications of pipe, tube, and fitting materials, and for joining methods for specific services, service locations, and pipe sizes.

2.2 STEEL PIPE AND FITTINGS

A. All black steel pipe is required to be internally coated and warranted by the manufacturer to resist the effects of microbiologically influenced corrosion (MIC) for 3 years or 25 flushes, whichever comes first: Wheatland Tube Company's MIC SHIELD™, Allied Tube Company's ABF II Coating, or equal.

B. Standard Weight, Black-Steel Pipe: ASTM A 135 or ASTM A 795, Type E, Grade A. Pipe ends may be factory or field formed to match joining method.

C. Schedule 10, Galvanized- and Black-Steel Pipe: ASTM A 135 or ASTM A 795, Type E, Grade A, Schedule 10 in NPS 5 and smaller; and NFPA 13-specified wall thickness in NPS 6 to NPS 10, plain end.

D. Black-Steel Pipe Nipples: ASTM A 733, made of ASTM A 53/A 53M, standard-weight, seamless steel pipe with threaded ends.

E. Uncoated, Steel Couplings: ASTM A 865, threaded.

F. Uncoated, Gray-Iron Threaded Fittings: ASME B16.4, Class 125, standard pattern.

G. Malleable- or Ductile-Iron Unions: UL 860.

H. Cast-Iron Flanges: ASME 16.1, Class 125.

I. Steel Flanges and Flanged Fittings: ASME B16.5, Class 150.

J. Grooved-Joint, Steel-Pipe Appurtenances:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

   a. Victaulic Company.

2. Pressure Rating: 175 psig minimum.
3. Uncoated, Grooved-End Fittings for Steel Piping: ASTM A 536, ductile-iron casting; short-pattern with flow equal to standard pattern fittings, with grooved-end dimensions matching steel pipe.
4. Grooved-End-Pipe Couplings for Steel Piping: AWWA C606 and UL 213, rigid pattern, unless otherwise indicated, for steel-pipe dimensions. Include ferrous housing sections, EPDM-rubber gasket, and bolts and nuts.

   a. Rigid Type: Housings shall be cast with offsetting angle-pattern bolt pads to provide rigidity and system support and hanging in accordance with NFPA-13. Couplings shall be fully installed at visual pad-to-pad offset contact. (Tongue and recess type couplings, or any coupling that requires exact gapping of bolt pads on each side of the coupling at specified torque ratings, are not allowed.)
   b. Flexible Type: For use in locations where vibration attenuation and stress relief are required, and for seismic applications in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.
   c. Flange Adapter: Flat face, ductile iron housings with elastomer pressure responsive gasket, for direct connection to ANSI Class 150 flanged components.

2.3 PIPING JOINING MATERIALS

A. Grooved Joint Lubricants: Lubricate gaskets in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations with lubricant supplied by the coupling manufacturer that is suitable for the gasket elastomer and system media.

B. Pipe-Flange Gasket Materials: AWWA C110, rubber, flat face, 1/8 inch thick or ASME B16.21, nonmetallic and asbestos free.

1. Class 125, Cast-Iron Flanges and Class 150, Bronze Flat-Face Flanges: Full-face gaskets.
2. Class 250, Cast-Iron Flanges and Class 300, Steel Raised-Face Flanges: Ring-type gaskets.

C. Metal, Pipe-Flange Bolts and Nuts: ASME B18.2.1, carbon steel unless otherwise indicated.

2.4 LISTED FIRE-PROTECTION VALVES

A. General Requirements:

1. Valves shall be UL listed or FM approved.
2. Minimum Pressure Rating for Standard-Pressure Piping: 175 psig.

B. Ball Valves:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

   a. Victaulic Company.

2. Standard: UL 1091 except with ball instead of disc.
3. Valves shall include a weatherproof actuator housing, handwheel, with two single-pole, double-throw supervisory switches.
4. Valves NPS 1 to NPS 2-1/2: Bronze body with threaded ends or ductile-iron body with grooved ends, as required for compatibility with joining method.
5. Valves NPS 3: Ductile-iron body with grooved ends.

C. Check Valves:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

   a. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Stockham Division.
   b. Potter Roemer.

c. Reliable Automatic Sprinkler Co., Inc.
d. Tyco Fire & Building Products LP.
e. United Brass Works, Inc.
f. Victaulic Company.
g. Viking Corporation.

2. Standard: UL 312.
3. Pressure Rating: 250 psig minimum.
4. Type: Swing (horizontal) or spring-actuated (vertical or horizontal) check.
5. Body Material: Cast iron.
6. Shaft and Spring: Stainless steel.
7. End Connections: Flanged or grooved.

D. Indicating-Type Butterfly Valves:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

   a. Tyco Fire & Building Products LP.
   b. Victaulic Company.

2. Standard: UL 1091.
3. Pressure Rating: 175 psig minimum.
4. Valves shall include a weatherproof actuator housing, handwheel, with two single-pole, double-throw supervisory switches.
5. Valves NPS 2 and Smaller:

   a. Valve Type: Ball or butterfly.
   b. Body Material: Bronze.
   c. End Connections: Threaded or grooved.

6. Valves NPS 2-1/2 and Larger:

   a. Valve Type: Butterfly.
   b. Body Material: Cast or ductile iron.
   c. Stem: Stainless steel, offset from the disc centerline to provide full 360-degree circumferential seating.
   d. Seat: Pressure responsive elastomer.
   e. End Connections: Flanged, grooved, or wafer.

7. Valve Operation: Integral electrical, 125-V ac, prewired, two-single-pole, double-throw, supervisory switches with visual indicating device.

2.5 TRIM AND DRAIN VALVES

A. General Requirements:

1. Standard: UL's "Fire Protection Equipment Directory" listing or "Approval Guide," published by FM Global, listing.
2. Pressure Rating: 175 psig minimum.

B. Angle Valves:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

   a. United Brass Works, Inc.

C. Ball Valves:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

   a. Tyco Fire & Building Products LP.
   b. Victaulic Company.

2.6 SPECIALTY VALVES

A. General Requirements:

1. Standard: UL's "Fire Protection Equipment Directory" listing or "Approval Guide," published by FM Global, listing.
2. Pressure Rating:

   a. Standard-Pressure Piping Specialty Valves: 175 psig minimum.

3. Body Material: Cast or ductile iron.
4. Size: Same as connected piping.
5. End Connections: Flanged or grooved.
6. Valve internal components shall be replaceable without removing the valve from the installed position.

B. Automatic (Ball Drip) Drain Valves:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

   a. Reliable Automatic Sprinkler Co., Inc.
   b. Tyco Fire & Building Products LP.

2. Standard: UL 1726.
3. Pressure Rating: 175 psig minimum.
4. Type: Automatic draining, ball check.
5. Size: NPS 3/4.
6. End Connections: Threaded.

2.7 FIRE-DEPARTMENT CONNECTIONS

A. Exposed-Type, Fire-Department Connection:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

   a. Elkhart Brass Mfg. Company, Inc.
   b. Fire-End & Croker Corporation.
   c. Guardian Fire Equipment, Inc.
   d. Tyco Fire & Building Products LP.

2. Standard: UL 405.
3. Type: Exposed, projecting, for wall mounting.
4. Pressure Rating: 175 psig minimum.
5. Body Material: Corrosion-resistant metal.
6. Inlets: Brass with threads according to NFPA 1963 and matching local fire-department sizes and threads. Include extension pipe nipples, brass lugged swivel connections, and check devices or clappers.
7. Caps: Brass, lugged type, with gasket and chain.
8. Escutcheon Plate: Round, brass, wall type.
9. Outlet: Back, with pipe threads.
10. Number of Inlets: As required per NPFA 13.
11. Escutcheon Plate Marking: Similar to "AUTO SPKR."
12. Finish: Polished chrome plated.
13. Outlet Size: Sized per NFPA 13.
14. Include Knox FDC plugs over caps.

2.8 SPRINKLER SPECIALTY PIPE FITTINGS

A. Flow Detection and Test Assemblies:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

   a. AGF Manufacturing Inc.
   b. Reliable Automatic Sprinkler Co., Inc.
   c. Tyco Fire & Building Products LP.
   d. Victaulic Company.

2. Standard: UL's "Fire Protection Equipment Directory" listing or "Approval Guide," published by FM Global, listing.
3. Pressure Rating: 175 psig minimum.
4. Body Material: Cast- or ductile-iron housing with orifice, sight glass, and integral test valve.
5. Size: Same as connected piping.
6. Inlet and Outlet: Threaded.

B. Sprinkler Inspector's Test Fittings:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

   a. AGF Manufacturing Inc.
   b. Tyco Fire & Building Products LP.
   c. Victaulic Company.
   d. Viking Corporation.

2. Standard: UL's "Fire Protection Equipment Directory" listing or "Approval Guide," published by FM Global, listing.
3. Pressure Rating: 175 psig minimum.
4. Body Material: Cast-bronze or ductile-iron housing with sight glass.
5. Size: Same as connected piping.
6. Inlet and Outlet: Threaded or grooved.

2.9 SPRINKLERS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. Reliable Automatic Sprinkler Co., Inc.
2. Tyco Fire & Building Products LP.
3. Victaulic Company.
4. Viking Corporation.

B. General Requirements:

1. Standard: UL's "Fire Protection Equipment Directory" listing or "Approval Guide," published by FM Global, listing.
2. Pressure Rating for Automatic Sprinklers: 175 psig minimum.
3. Sprinklers shall be glass bulb type, with hex-shaped wrench boss integrally cast into the sprinkler body to reduce the risk of damage during installation.

    a. Wrenches shall be provided by the sprinkler manufacturer that directly engage the hex-shaped wrench boss integrally cast in the sprinkler body.

4. Sprinklers with rubber O-rings are not permitted.

C. Automatic Sprinklers with Heat-Responsive Element:

1. Nonresidential Applications: UL 199.
2. Characteristics: Nominal 1/2-inch orifice with Discharge Coefficient K of 5.6, quick response, and for "Ordinary" temperature classification rating unless otherwise indicated or required by application.

D. Sprinkler Finishes:

1. Chrome plated.
2. Bronze.
3. Painted.

E. Sprinkler Guards:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following :

    a. Reliable Automatic Sprinkler Co., Inc.
    b. Tyco Fire & Building Products LP.
    c. Victaulic Company.
    d. Viking Corporation.

2. Standard: UL 199.
3. Type: Wire cage with fastening device for attaching to sprinkler.
4. Guards shall be listed, supplied, and approved for use with the sprinkler by the sprinkler manufacturer.

2.10 ALARM DEVICES

A. Alarm-device types shall match piping and equipment connections.

B. Electrically Operated Alarm Bell:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following :

   a. Fire-Lite Alarms, Inc.; a Honeywell company.
   b. Notifier; a Honeywell company.
   c. Potter Electric Signal Company.

2. Standard: UL 464.
3. Type: Vibrating, metal alarm bell; 24V power for interconnection with fire alarm system.
4. Size: 10-inch diameter.
5. Finish: Red-enamel factory finish, suitable for outdoor use.

C. Water-Flow Indicators:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

   a. Potter Electric Signal Company.
   b. System Sensor; a Honeywell company.
   c. Viking Corporation.

2. Standard: UL 346.
3. Water-Flow Detector: Electrically supervised.
4. Components: Two single-pole, double-throw circuit switches for isolated alarm and auxiliary contacts, 7 A, 125-V ac and 0.25 A, 24-V dc; complete with factory-set, field-adjustable retard element to prevent false signals and tamperproof cover that sends signal if removed.
5. Type: Paddle operated.
6. Pressure Rating: 250 psig.
7. Design Installation: Horizontal or vertical.

D. Valve Supervisory Switches:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

   a. Fire-Lite Alarms, Inc.; a Honeywell company.
   b. Potter Electric Signal Company.
   c. System Sensor; a Honeywell company.

2. Standard: UL 346.
3. Type: Electrically supervised.
4. Components: Single-pole, double-throw switch with normally closed contacts.
5. Design: Signals that controlled valve is in other than fully open position.

2.11 PRESSURE GAGES

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. AMETEK; U.S. Gauge Division.
2. Ashcroft, Inc.
3. WIKA Instrument Corporation.

B. Standard: UL 393.

C. Dial Size: 3-1/2- to 4-1/2-inch diameter.

D. Pressure Gage Range: 0 to 250 psig minimum.

E. Water System Piping Gage: Include "WATER" or "AIR/WATER" label on dial face.

F. Air System Piping Gage: Include retard feature and "AIR" or "AIR/WATER" label on dial face.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 PREPARATION

A. Perform fire-hydrant flow test according to NFPA 13 and NFPA 291. Use results for system design calculations required in "Quality Assurance" Article.

B. Report test results promptly and in writing.

3.2 EARTHWORK

A. Refer to "Earthwork" Section for excavating, trenching, and backfilling.

B. Sprinkler Subcontractor’s work to start 5 feet outside of building.

3.3 SERVICE-ENTRANCE PIPING

A. Connect sprinkler piping to water-service piping for service entrance to building.

B. Install shutoff valve, backflow preventer, pressure gage, drain, and other accessories indicated at connection to water-service piping. Comply with requirements for backflow preventers in Division 22 Sections.

3.4 PIPING INSTALLATION

A. Locations and Arrangements: Drawing plans, schematics, and diagrams indicate general location and arrangement of piping. Install piping as indicated, as far as practical.

1. Deviations from approved working plans for piping require written approval from authorities having jurisdiction. File written approval with Architect before deviating from approved working plans.

B. Piping Standard: Comply with requirements for installation of sprinkler piping in NFPA 13.

C. Use listed fittings to make changes in direction, branch takeoffs from mains, and reductions in pipe sizes.

D. Install unions adjacent to each valve in pipes NPS 1-1/2 and smaller.

E. Install couplings for grooved-end piping on valves, apparatus, and equipment having NPS 2 and larger end connections.

F. Install "Inspector's Test Connections" in sprinkler system piping, complete with shutoff valve, and sized and located according to NFPA 13.

G. Install sprinkler piping with drains for complete system drainage.

H. Install automatic (ball drip) drain valve at each check valve for fire-department connection, to drain piping between fire-department connection and check valve. Install drain piping to and spill over floor drain or to outside building.

I. Install alarm devices in piping systems.

J. Install hangers and supports for sprinkler system piping according to NFPA 13. Comply with requirements for hanger materials in NFPA 13. Provide surge restrainers on hangers supporting pendent sprinklers in hung ceilings.

K. Install pressure gages on riser or feed main and at each sprinkler test connection. Include pressure gages with connection not less than NPS 1/4 and with soft metal seated globe valve, arranged for draining pipe between gage and valve. Install gages to permit removal, and install where they will not be subject to freezing.

L. Fill sprinkler system piping with water.

M. Install sleeves for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors. Comply with requirements for sleeves specified in Division 21 Section "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for Fire-Suppression Piping."

N. Install sleeve seals for piping penetrations of concrete walls and slabs. Comply with requirements for sleeve seals specified in Division 21 Section "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for Fire-Suppression Piping."

O. Install escutcheons for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors in spaces exposed to view. Comply with requirements for escutcheons specified in Division 21 Section "Escutcheons for Fire-Suppression Piping."

3.5 JOINT CONSTRUCTION

A. Install couplings, flanges, flanged fittings, unions, nipples, and transition and special fittings that have finish and pressure ratings same as or higher than system's pressure rating for aboveground applications unless otherwise indicated.

B. Install couplings for grooved-end piping on valves, apparatus, and equipment having NPS 2 and larger end connections.

C. Ream ends of pipes and tubes and remove burrs. Bevel plain ends of steel pipe.

D. Remove scale, slag, dirt, and debris from inside and outside of pipes, tubes, and fittings before assembly.

E. Flanged Joints: Select appropriate gasket material in size, type, and thickness suitable for water service. Join flanges with gasket and bolts according to ASME B31.9.

F. Threaded Joints: Thread pipe with tapered pipe threads according to ASME B1.20.1. Cut threads full and clean using sharp dies. Ream threaded pipe ends to remove burrs and restore full ID. Join pipe fittings and valves as follows:

1. Apply appropriate tape or thread compound to external pipe threads.
2. Damaged Threads: Do not use pipe or pipe fittings with threads that are corroded or damaged.

G. Steel-Piping, Roll-Grooved Joints: Roll rounded-edge groove in end of pipe according to AWWA C606. Assemble coupling with housing, gasket, lubricant, and bolts. Join steel pipe and grooved-end fittings according to AWWA C606 for steel-pipe grooved joints. Install in accordance with the manufacturer’s published instructions.

1. The grooved coupling manufacturer’s factory trained representative shall provide on-site training for contractor’s field personnel in the use of grooving tools and installation of grooved joint products. The representative shall periodically visit the jobsite and review contractor is following best recommended practices in grooved product installation. (A distributor’s representative is not considered qualified to conduct the training or jobsite visit(s).)

H. Dissimilar-Material Piping Joints: Make joints using adapters compatible with materials of both piping systems.

3.6 VALVE AND SPECIALTIES INSTALLATION

A. Install listed fire-protection valves, trim and drain valves, specialty valves and trim, controls, and specialties according to NFPA 13 and authorities having jurisdiction.

B. Install listed fire-protection shutoff valves supervised open, located to control sources of water supply except from fire-department connections. Install permanent identification signs indicating portion of system controlled by each valve.

C. Install check valve in each water-supply connection. Install backflow preventers instead of check valves in potable-water-supply sources.

D. Provide splash blocks or other means of erosion protection beneath exterior discharge from sprinkler inspector's test lines.

3.7 SPRINKLER INSTALLATION

A. Install sprinklers in suspended ceilings in center of narrow dimension of acoustical ceiling panels.

B. Install dry-type sprinklers with water supply from heated space. Do not install pendent or sidewall, wet-type sprinklers in areas subject to freezing.

C. Do not install sprinklers that have been dropped, damaged, or show a visible loss of fluid. Never install sprinklers with cracked bulbs.

D. Sprinkler bulb protector shall be removed by hand after installation. Do not use tools or any other device(s) to remove the protector that could damage the bulb in any way.

3.8 FIRE-DEPARTMENT CONNECTION INSTALLATION

A. Install wall-type, fire-department connections.

B. Install automatic (ball drip) drain valve at each check valve for fire-department connection.

3.9 IDENTIFICATION

A. Install labeling and pipe markers on equipment and piping according to requirements in NFPA 13.

B. Identify system components, wiring, cabling, and terminals. Comply with requirements for identification specified in Division 26 Section "Identification for Electrical Systems."

3.10 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Perform tests and inspections.

B. Tests and Inspections:

1. Leak Test: After installation, charge systems and test for leaks. Repair leaks and retest until no leaks exist.
2. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.
3. Flush, test, and inspect sprinkler systems according to NFPA 13, "Systems Acceptance" Chapter.
4. Energize circuits to electrical equipment and devices.
5. Coordinate with fire-alarm tests. Operate as required.
6. Verify that equipment hose threads are same as local fire-department equipment.

C. Sprinkler piping system will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.

D. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.11 CLEANING

A. Clean dirt and debris from sprinklers.

B. Remove and replace sprinklers with paint other than factory finish.

3.12 PIPING SCHEDULE

A. Piping between Fire-Department Connections and Check Valves: Galvanized, Schedule 10 steel pipe with roll-grooved ends; grooved-end fittings; grooved-end-pipe couplings; and grooved joints.

B. Sprinkler specialty fittings may be used, downstream of control valves, instead of specified fittings.

C. Standard-pressure, wet-pipe sprinkler system, NPS 1 and smaller, shall be the following:

1. Standard-weight, black-steel pipe with threaded ends; uncoated, gray-iron threaded fittings; and threaded joints.

D. Standard-pressure, wet-pipe sprinkler system, NPS 1 1/4 to NPS 1 1/2, shall be one of the following:

1. Standard-weight, black-steel pipe with threaded ends; uncoated, gray-iron threaded fittings; and threaded joints.
2. Schedule 10, black-steel pipe with roll-grooved ends; uncoated, grooved-end fittings for steel piping; grooved-end-pipe couplings for steel piping; and grooved joints.

E. Standard-pressure, wet-pipe sprinkler system, NPS 2 and larger, shall be the following:

1. Schedule 10, black-steel pipe with roll-grooved ends; uncoated, grooved-end fittings for steel piping; grooved-end-pipe couplings for steel piping; and grooved joints.

3.13 SPRINKLER SCHEDULE

A. Use sprinkler types in subparagraphs below for the following applications:

1. Rooms without Ceilings: Upright sprinklers.
2. Rooms with Suspended Ceilings: Concealed sprinklers.
3. Wall Mounting: Sidewall sprinklers.
4. Spaces Subject to Freezing: Pendent, dry sprinklers; Sidewall, dry sprinklers.
5. Special Applications: Extended-coverage and quick-response sprinklers where indicated on shop drawings and supported by hydraulic calculations.

B. Provide sprinkler types in subparagraphs below with finishes indicated.

1. Concealed Sprinklers: Rough brass; with flat, factory-painted cover plate. Coordinate color of cover plates with Architectural preferences.
2. Upright, Pendent, and Sidewall Sprinklers: Chrome plated in finished spaces exposed to view; rough bronze in unfinished spaces not exposed to view; wax coated where exposed to acids, chemicals, or other corrosive fumes.

3.14 COMMISSIONING

A. Verify that specialty valves, trim, fittings, controls, and accessories are installed and operate correctly.

B. Verify that specified tests of piping are complete.

C. Verify that damaged sprinklers and sprinklers with paint or coating not specified are replaced with new, correct type.

D. Verify that sprinklers are correct types, have correct finishes and temperature ratings, and have guards as required for each application.

E. Verify that potable-water supplies have correct types of backflow preventers.

F. Verify that fire department connections have threads compatible with local fire department equipment.

G. Fill wet-pipe sprinkler piping with water.

H. Energize circuits to electrical equipment and devices.

I. Coordinate with fire alarm tests. Operate as required.

3.15 DEMONSTRATION

A. Demonstrate equipment, specialties, and accessories. Review operating and maintenance information.

B. Schedule demonstration with Owner with at least seven days' advance notice.

END OF SECTION 21 13 13

ROCIP Project: Withhold insurance cost. Please refer to sections 00425 & 00810 for information.

SECTION 22 05 13 - COMMON MOTOR REQUIREMENTS FOR PLUMBING EQUIPMENT

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section includes general requirements for single-phase, general-purpose, horizontal, small and medium, squirrel-cage induction motors for use on ac power systems up to 600 V and installed at equipment manufacturer's factory or shipped separately by equipment manufacturer for field installation.

1.3 COORDINATION

A. Coordinate features of motors, installed units, and accessory devices to be compatible with the following:

1. Motor controllers.
2. Torque, speed, and horsepower requirements of the load.
3. Ratings and characteristics of supply circuit and required control sequence.
4. Ambient and environmental conditions of installation location.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 GENERAL MOTOR REQUIREMENTS

A. Comply with requirements in this Section except when stricter requirements are specified in plumbing equipment schedules or Sections.

B. Comply with NEMA MG 1 unless otherwise indicated.

2.2 MOTOR CHARACTERISTICS

A. Duty: Continuous duty at ambient temperature of 40 deg C and at altitude of 3300 feet above sea level.

B. Capacity and Torque Characteristics: Sufficient to start, accelerate, and operate connected loads at designated speeds, at installed altitude and environment, with indicated operating sequence, and without exceeding nameplate ratings or considering service factor.

2.3 SINGLE-PHASE MOTORS

A. Motors larger than 1/20 hp shall be one of the following, to suit starting torque and requirements of specific motor application:

1. Permanent-split capacitor.

B. Multispeed Motors: Variable-torque, permanent-split-capacitor type.

C. Bearings: Pre-lubricated, antifriction ball bearings or sleeve bearings suitable for radial and thrust loading.

D. Motors 1/20 HP and Smaller: Shaded-pole type.

E. Thermal Protection: Internal protection to automatically open power supply circuit to motor when winding temperature exceeds a safe value calibrated to temperature rating of motor insulation. Thermal-protection device shall automatically reset when motor temperature returns to normal range.

PART 3 - EXECUTION (Not Applicable)

END OF SECTION 22 05 13

ROCIP Project: Withhold insurance cost. Please refer to sections 00425 & 00810 for information.

SECTION 22 05 17 - SLEEVES AND SLEEVE SEALS FOR PLUMBING PIPING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Sleeves.
2. Sleeve-seal systems.
3. Grout.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 SLEEVES

A. Galvanized-Steel-Pipe Sleeves: ASTM A 53/A 53M, Type E, Grade B, Schedule 40, zinc coated, with plain ends.

2.2 SLEEVE-SEAL SYSTEMS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. Advance Products & Systems, Inc.
2. CALPICO, Inc.
3. Metraflex Company (The).
4. Pipeline Seal and Insulator, Inc.
5. Proco Products, Inc.

B. Description: Modular sealing-element unit, designed for field assembly, for filling annular space between piping and sleeve.

1. Sealing Elements: EPDM-rubber interlocking links shaped to fit surface of pipe. Include type and number required for pipe material and size of pipe.
2. Pressure Plates: Composite.
3. Connecting Bolts and Nuts: Stainless steel of length required to secure pressure plates to sealing elements.

2.3 GROUT

A. Standard: ASTM C 1107/C 1107M, Grade B, post-hardening and volume-adjusting, dry, hydraulic-cement grout.

B. Characteristics: Nonshrink; recommended for interior and exterior applications.

C. Design Mix: 5000-psi, 28-day compressive strength.

D. Packaging: Premixed and factory packaged.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 SLEEVE INSTALLATION

A. Install sleeves for piping passing through penetrations in floors, partitions, and walls.

B. For sleeves that will have sleeve-seal system installed, select sleeves of size large enough to provide 1-inch annular clear space between piping and concrete slabs and walls.

1. Sleeves are not required for core-drilled holes.

C. Install sleeves in concrete slabs as new slabs are constructed.

1. Permanent sleeves are not required for holes in slabs formed by molded-PE or -PP sleeves.
2. Cut sleeves to length for mounting flush with both surfaces.

a. Exception: Extend sleeves installed in floors of mechanical equipment areas or other wet areas 2 inches above finished floor level.

3. Using grout, seal the space outside of sleeves in slabs and walls without sleeve-seal system.

D. Install sleeves for pipes passing through interior partitions.

1. Cut sleeves to length for mounting flush with both surfaces.
2. Install sleeves that are large enough to provide 1/4-inch annular clear space between sleeve and pipe or pipe insulation.
3. Seal annular space between sleeve and piping or piping insulation; use joint sealants appropriate for size, depth, and location of joint. Comply with requirements for sealants specified in Division 07 Section "Joint Sealants."

E. Fire-Barrier Penetrations: Maintain indicated fire rating of walls, partitions, ceilings, and floors at pipe penetrations. Seal pipe penetrations with firestop materials. Comply with requirements for firestopping specified in Division 07 Section "Penetration Firestopping."

3.2 SLEEVE-SEAL-SYSTEM INSTALLATION

A. Install sleeve-seal systems in sleeves in exterior concrete walls and slabs-on-grade at service piping entries into building.

B. Select type, size, and number of sealing elements required for piping material and size and for sleeve ID or hole size. Position piping in center of sleeve. Center piping in penetration, assemble sleeve-seal system components, and install in annular space between piping and sleeve. Tighten bolts against pressure plates that cause sealing elements to expand and make a watertight seal.

3.3 SLEEVE AND SLEEVE-SEAL SCHEDULE

A. Use sleeves and sleeve seals for the following piping-penetration applications:

1. Concrete Slabs-on-Grade:

   a. All pipe sizes: Galvanized-steel wall sleeves with sleeve-seal system.

      1) Select sleeve size to allow for 1-inch annular clear space between piping and sleeve for installing sleeve-seal system.

2. Interior Partitions:

   a. All pipe sizes: Galvanized-steel-pipe sleeves.

END OF SECTION 22 05 17

ROCIP Project: Withhold insurance cost. Please refer to sections 00425 & 00810 for information.

SECTION 22 05 18 - ESCUTCHEONS FOR PLUMBING PIPING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Escutcheons.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 ESCUTCHEONS

A. One-Piece, Cast-Brass Type: With polished, chrome-plated finish and setscrew fastener.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

A. Install escutcheons for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and finished floors.

B. Install escutcheons with ID to closely fit around pipe, tube, and insulation of insulated piping and with OD that completely covers opening.

1. Escutcheons for New Piping:

a. Bare Piping at Wall and Floor Penetrations in Finished Spaces: One-piece, cast-brass type with polished, chrome-plated finish.
b. Bare Piping at Ceiling Penetrations in Finished Spaces: One-piece, cast-brass type with polished, chrome-plated finish.

END OF SECTION 22 05 18

ROCIP Project: Withhold insurance cost. Please refer to sections 00425 & 00810 for information.

SECTION 22 05 19 - METERS AND GAGES FOR PLUMBING PIPING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Liquid-in-glass thermometers.
2. Dial-type pressure gages.
3. Gage attachments.

B. Related Sections:

1. Division 21 fire-suppression piping Sections for fire-protection pressure gages.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.

1.4 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For meters and gages to include in operation and maintenance manuals.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 LIQUID-IN-GLASS THERMOMETERS

A. Metal-Case, Compact-Style, Liquid-in-Glass Thermometers:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

   a. Trerice, H. O. Co.

2. Standard: ASME B40.200.

3. Case: Cast aluminum; 6-inch nominal size.
4. Tube: Glass with magnifying lens and blue or red organic liquid.
5. Tube Background: Nonreflective aluminum with permanently etched scale markings graduated in deg F and deg C.
6. Window: Glass or plastic.
7. Stem: Aluminum or brass and of length to suit installation.

    a. Design for Thermowell Installation: Bare stem.

8. Connector: 3/4 inch, with ASME B1.1 screw threads.
9. Accuracy: Plus or minus 1 percent of scale range or one scale division, to a maximum of 1.5 percent of scale range.

2.2 PRESSURE GAGES

A. Direct-Mounted, Metal-Case, Dial-Type Pressure Gages:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

    a. AMETEK, Inc.; U.S. Gauge.
    b. Trerice, H. O. Co.
    c. Watts Regulator Co.; a div. of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.

2. Standard: ASME B40.100.
3. Case: Sealed type(s); cast aluminum or drawn steel; 4-1/2-inch nominal diameter.
4. Pressure-Element Assembly: Bourdon tube unless otherwise indicated.
5. Pressure Connection: Brass, with NPS 1/2, ASME B1.20.1 pipe threads and bottom-outlet type unless back-outlet type is indicated.
6. Movement: Mechanical, with link to pressure element and connection to pointer.
7. Dial: Nonreflective aluminum with permanently etched scale markings graduated in psi and kPa.
8. Pointer: Dark-colored metal.
9. Window: Glass or plastic.
10. Accuracy: Grade A, plus or minus 1 percent of middle half of scale range.

2.3 GAGE ATTACHMENTS

A. Snubbers: ASME B40.100, brass; with NPS 1/2, ASME B1.20.1 pipe threads and piston or porous-metal-type surge-dampening device. Include extension for use on insulated piping.

B. Valves: Brass ball, with NPS 1/2 , ASME B1.20.1 pipe threads.

ROCIP Project: Withhold insurance cost. Please refer to sections 00425 & 00810 for information.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

A. Install direct-mounted pressure gages in piping tees with pressure gage located on pipe at the most readable position.

B. Install valve and snubber in piping for each pressure gage for fluids.

C. Install thermometers in the following locations:

1. Outlet of each water heater.
2. Outlet of each master mixing valve.
3. Outlet of each hot water circulation pump.

D. Install pressure gages in the following locations:

1. Building water service entrance into building.
2. Inlet and outlet of each pressure-reducing valve.

3.2 CONNECTIONS

A. Install meters and gages adjacent to machines and equipment to allow service and maintenance of meters, gages, machines, and equipment.

3.3 ADJUSTING

A. Adjust faces of meters and gages to proper angle for best visibility.

3.4 THERMOMETER SCALE-RANGE SCHEDULE

A. Scale Range for Domestic Hot-Water Piping: 30 to 240 deg F and 0 to plus 115 deg C.

3.5 PRESSURE-GAGE SCALE-RANGE SCHEDULE

A. Scale Range for Water Service Piping: 0 to 160 psi and 0 to 1100 kPa.

B. Scale Range for Domestic Water Piping: 0 to 100 psi and 0 to 600 kPa.

END OF SECTION 22 05 19

ROCIP Project: Withhold insurance cost. Please refer to sections 00425 & 00810 for information.

SECTION 22 05 23 - GENERAL-DUTY VALVES FOR PLUMBING PIPING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. This Section includes the following general-duty valves:

1. Copper-alloy ball valves.
2. Bronze check valves.

B. Related Sections include the following:

1. Division 22 Section "Identification for Plumbing Piping and Equipment" for valve tags and charts.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. The following are standard abbreviations for valves:

1. CWP: Cold working pressure.
2. PTFE: Polytetrafluoroethylene plastic.
3. TFE: Tetrafluoroethylene plastic.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of valve indicated. Include body, seating, and trim materials; valve design; pressure and temperature classifications; end connections; arrangement; dimensions; and required clearances. Include list indicating valve and its application. Include rated capacities; shipping, installed, and operating weights; furnished specialties; and accessories.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. ASME Compliance for Ferrous Valves: ASME B16.10 and ASME B16.34 for dimension and design criteria.

B. NSF Compliance: NSF 61 for valve materials for potable-water service.

1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Prepare valves for shipping as follows:

1. Protect internal parts against rust and corrosion.
2. Protect threads, flange faces, grooves, and weld ends.
3. Set angle, gate, and globe valves closed to prevent rattling.
4. Set ball and plug valves open to minimize exposure of functional surfaces.
5. Block check valves in either closed or open position.

B. Use the following precautions during storage:

1. Maintain valve end protection.
2. Store valves indoors and maintain at higher than ambient dew-point temperature. If outdoor storage is necessary, store valves off the ground in watertight enclosures.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

A. In other Part 2 articles where subparagraph titles below introduce lists, the following requirements apply for product selection:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the manufacturers specified.

2.2 VALVES, GENERAL

A. Refer to Part 3 "Valve Applications" Article for applications of valves.

B. Bronze Valves: NPS 2 and smaller with threaded ends, unless otherwise indicated.

C. Valve Pressure and Temperature Ratings: Not less than indicated and as required for system pressures and temperatures.

D. Valve Sizes: Same as upstream pipe, unless otherwise indicated.

E. Valve Actuators:

1. Handwheel: For valves other than quarter-turn types.
2. Lever Handle: For quarter-turn valves NPS 6 and smaller, except plug valves.

F. Extended Valve Stems: On insulated valves.

G. Solder Joint: With sockets according to ASME B16.18.

1. Caution: Use solder with melting point below 840 deg F for angle, check, gate, and globe valves; below 421 deg F for ball valves.

H. Threaded: With threads according to ASME B1.20.1.

I. Valve Bypass and Drain Connections: MSS SP-45.

2.3 COPPER-ALLOY BALL VALVES

A. Manufacturers:

1. Two-Piece, Copper-Alloy Ball Valves:

a. Conbraco Industries, Inc.; Apollo Div.
b. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Crane Valves.
c. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Jenkins Valves.
d. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Stockham Div.
e. Grinnell Corporation.
f. Hammond Valve.
g. Honeywell Braukmann.
h. Jamesbury, Inc.
i. Jomar International, LTD.
j. Kitz Corporation of America.
k. Legend Valve & Fitting, Inc.
l. Milwaukee Valve Company.
m. Nexus Valve Specialties.
n. NIBCO INC.
o. R & M Energy Systems (Borger, TX).
p. Red-White Valve Corp.
q. Richards Industries; Marwin Ball Valves.
r. Watts Industries, Inc.; Water Products Div.

B. Copper-Alloy Ball Valves, General: MSS SP-110.

C. Two-Piece, Copper-Alloy Ball Valves: Brass or bronze body with full -port, chrome-plated bronze ball; PTFE or TFE seats; and 600-psig minimum CWP rating and blowout-proof stem.

2.4 BRONZE CHECK VALVES

A. Manufacturers:

1. Type 4, Bronze, Swing Check Valves with Nonmetallic Disc:

   a. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Crane Valves.
   b. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Jenkins Valves.
   c. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Stockham Div.
   d. Grinnell Corporation.
   e. Hammond Valve.
   f. McWane, Inc.; Kennedy Valve Div.
   g. Milwaukee Valve Company.
   h. NIBCO INC.
   i. Red-White Valve Corp.
   j. Watts Industries, Inc.; Water Products Div.

B. Bronze Check Valves, General: MSS SP-80.

C. Type 4, Class 125, Bronze, Swing Check Valves: Bronze body with nonmetallic disc and bronze seat.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine piping system for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance.

1. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

B. Examine valve interior for cleanliness, freedom from foreign matter, and corrosion. Remove special packing materials, such as blocks, used to prevent disc movement during shipping and handling.

C. Operate valves in positions from fully open to fully closed. Examine guides and seats made accessible by such operations.

D. Examine threads on valve and mating pipe for form and cleanliness.

E. Examine mating flange faces for conditions that might cause leakage. Check bolting for proper size, length, and material. Verify that gasket is of proper size, that its material composition is suitable for service, and that it is free from defects and damage.

F. Do not attempt to repair defective valves; replace with new valves.

3.2 VALVE APPLICATIONS

A. Refer to piping Sections for specific valve applications. If valve applications are not indicated, use the following:

1. Shutoff Service: Ball valves.
2. Throttling Service: Ball valves.
3. Other Check Valves: Swing check valves.

B. If valves with specified CWP ratings are not available, the same types of valves with higher CWP ratings may be substituted.

C. Domestic Water Piping: Use the following types of valves:

1. Ball Valves, NPS 2 and Smaller: Two-piece, 400-psig CWP rating, copper alloy.
2. Swing Check Valves, NPS 2 and Smaller: Type 4, Class 125, bronze.

D. Select valves, except wafer and flangeless types, with the following end connections:

1. For Copper Tubing, NPS 2 and Smaller: Solder-joint or threaded ends.

3.3 VALVE INSTALLATION

A. Piping installation requirements are specified in other Division 22 Sections. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.

B. Install valves with unions at each piece of equipment arranged to allow service, maintenance, and equipment removal without system shutdown.

C. Locate valves for easy access and provide separate support where necessary.

D. Install valves in horizontal piping with stem at or above center of pipe.

E. Install valves in position to allow full stem movement.

F. Install check valves for proper direction of flow and as follows:

1. Swing Check Valves: In horizontal position with hinge pin level.

3.4 JOINT CONSTRUCTION

A. Soldered Joints: Use ASTM B 813, water-flushable, lead-free flux; ASTM B 32, lead-free-alloy solder; and ASTM B 828 procedure, unless otherwise indicated.

3.5 ADJUSTING

A. Adjust or replace valve packing after piping systems have been tested and put into service but before final adjusting and balancing. Replace valves if persistent leaking occurs.

END OF SECTION 22 05 23

ROCIP Project: Withhold insurance cost. Please refer to sections 00425 & 00810 for information.

SECTION 22 05 29 - HANGERS AND SUPPORTS FOR PLUMBING PIPING AND EQUIPMENT

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Metal pipe hangers and supports.
2. Trapeze pipe hangers.
3. Metal framing systems.
4. Thermal-hanger shield inserts.
5. Fastener systems.
6. Pipe positioning systems.
7. Equipment supports.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. MSS: Manufacturers Standardization Society of The Valve and Fittings Industry Inc.

1.4 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Delegated Design: Design trapeze pipe hangers and equipment supports, including comprehensive engineering analysis by a qualified professional engineer, using performance requirements and design criteria indicated.

B. Structural Performance: Hangers and supports for plumbing piping and equipment shall withstand the effects of gravity loads and stresses within limits and under conditions indicated according to ASCE/SEI 7.

1. Design supports for multiple pipes, including pipe stands, capable of supporting combined weight of supported systems, system contents, and test water.
2. Design equipment supports capable of supporting combined operating weight of supported equipment and connected systems and components.

1.5 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Structural Steel Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code - Steel."

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 METAL PIPE HANGERS AND SUPPORTS

A. Carbon-Steel Pipe Hangers and Supports:

1. Description: MSS SP-58, Types 1 through 58, factory-fabricated components.
2. Galvanized Metallic Coatings: Pre-galvanized or hot dipped.
3. Nonmetallic Coatings: Plastic coating, jacket, or liner.
4. Padded Hangers: Hanger with fiberglass or other pipe insulation pad or cushion to support bearing surface of piping.
5. Hanger Rods: Continuous-thread rod, nuts, and washer made of carbon steel.

2.2 TRAPEZE PIPE HANGERS

A. Description: MSS SP-69, Type 59, shop- or field-fabricated pipe-support assembly made from structural carbon-steel shapes with MSS SP-58 carbon-steel hanger rods, nuts, saddles, and U-bolts.

2.3 METAL FRAMING SYSTEMS

A. Metal Framing Systems:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

    a. Allied Tube & Conduit.
    b. Anvil International; a subsidiary of Mueller Water Products Inc.
    c. Cooper B-Line, Inc.
    d. Empire Industries, Inc.
    e. ERICO International Corporation.
    f. Flex-Strut Inc.
    g. GS Metals Corp.
    h. Haydon Corporation; H-Strut Division.
    i. NIBCO INC.

j. PHD Manufacturing, Inc.
k. PHS Industries, Inc.
l. Thomas & Betts Corporation.
m. Unistrut Corporation; Tyco International, Ltd.
n. Wesanco, Inc.

2. Description: Shop- or field-fabricated pipe-support assembly for supporting multiple parallel pipes.
3. Standard: MFMA-4.
4. Channels: Continuous slotted steel channel with inturned lips.
5. Channel Nuts: Formed or stamped steel nuts or other devices designed to fit into channel slot and, when tightened, prevent slipping along channel.
6. Hanger Rods: Continuous-thread rod, nuts, and washer made of carbon steel.
7. Coating: Zinc.

2.4 THERMAL-HANGER SHIELD INSERTS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. Carpenter & Paterson, Inc.
2. Clement Support Services.
3. ERICO International Corporation.
4. National Pipe Hanger Corporation.
5. PHS Industries, Inc.
6. Pipe Shields, Inc.; a subsidiary of Piping Technology & Products, Inc.
7. Piping Technology & Products, Inc.
8. Rilco Manufacturing Co., Inc.

B. Insulation-Insert Material for Cold Piping: ASTM C 552, Type II cellular glass with 100-psig or ASTM C 591, Type VI, Grade 1 polyisocyanurate with 125-psig minimum compressive strength and vapor barrier.

C. Insulation-Insert Material for Hot Piping: Water-repellent treated, ASTM C 533, Type I calcium silicate with 100-psig, ASTM C 552, Type II cellular glass with 100-psig, or ASTM C 591, Type VI, Grade 1 polyisocyanurate with 125-psig minimum compressive strength.

D. For Trapeze or Clamped Systems: Insert and shield shall cover entire circumference of pipe.

E. For Clevis or Band Hangers: Insert and shield shall cover lower 180 degrees of pipe.

F. Insert Length: Extend 2 inches beyond sheet metal shield for piping operating below ambient air temperature.

2.5 FASTENER SYSTEMS

A. Mechanical-Expansion Anchors: Insert-wedge-type, zinc-coated steel anchors, for use in hardened portland cement concrete; with pull-out, tension, and shear capacities appropriate for supported loads and building materials where used.

2.6 PIPE POSITIONING SYSTEMS

A. Description: IAPMO PS 42, positioning system of metal brackets, clips, and straps for positioning piping in pipe spaces; for plumbing fixtures in commercial applications.

2.7 EQUIPMENT SUPPORTS

A. Description: Welded, shop- or field-fabricated equipment support made from structural carbon-steel shapes.

2.8 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

A. Structural Steel: ASTM A 36/A 36M, carbon-steel plates, shapes, and bars; black and galvanized.

B. Grout: ASTM C 1107, factory-mixed and -packaged, dry, hydraulic-cement, nonshrink and nonmetallic grout; suitable for interior and exterior applications.

1. Properties: Nonstaining, noncorrosive, and nongaseous.
2. Design Mix: 5000-psi, 28-day compressive strength.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 HANGER AND SUPPORT INSTALLATION

A. Metal Pipe-Hanger Installation: Comply with MSS SP-69 and MSS SP-89. Install hangers, supports, clamps, and attachments as required to properly support piping from the building structure.

B. Metal Trapeze Pipe-Hanger Installation: Comply with MSS SP-69 and MSS SP-89. Arrange for grouping of parallel runs of horizontal piping, and support together on field-fabricated trapeze pipe hangers.

1. Pipes of Various Sizes: Support together and space trapezes for smallest pipe size or install intermediate supports for smaller diameter pipes as specified for individual pipe hangers.
2. Field fabricate from ASTM A 36/A 36M, carbon-steel shapes selected for loads being supported. Weld steel according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M.

C. Metal Framing System Installation: Arrange for grouping of parallel runs of piping, and support together on field-assembled metal framing systems.

D. Thermal-Hanger Shield Installation: Install in pipe hanger or shield for insulated piping.

E. Fastener System Installation:

1. Install mechanical-expansion anchors in concrete after concrete is placed and completely cured. Install fasteners according to manufacturer's written instructions.

F. Pipe Positioning-System Installation: Install support devices to make rigid supply and waste piping connections to each plumbing fixture.

1. Include dielectric tube-isolator around copper tubing where the tube is supported by galvanized steel or other metal, non-copper pipe supports.
2. See Division 22 plumbing fixture Sections for requirements for pipe positioning systems for plumbing fixtures.

G. Install hangers and supports complete with necessary attachments, inserts, bolts, rods, nuts, washers, and other accessories.

H. Equipment Support Installation: Fabricate from welded-structural-steel shapes.

I. Install hangers and supports to allow controlled thermal and seismic movement of piping systems, to permit freedom of movement between pipe anchors, and to facilitate action of expansion joints, expansion loops, expansion bends, and similar units.

J. Install building attachments within concrete slabs or attach to structural steel. Install additional attachments at concentrated loads, including valves, flanges, and strainers, NPS 2-1/2 and larger and at changes in direction of piping. Install concrete inserts before concrete is placed; fasten inserts to forms and install reinforcing bars through openings at top of inserts.

K. Load Distribution: Install hangers and supports so that piping live and dead loads and stresses from movement will not be transmitted to connected equipment.

L. Pipe Slopes: Install hangers and supports to provide indicated pipe slopes and to not exceed maximum pipe deflections allowed by ASME B31.9 for building services piping.

M. Insulated Piping:

1. Attach clamps and spacers to piping.

a. Piping Operating above Ambient Air Temperature: Clamp may project through insulation.

b. Piping Operating below Ambient Air Temperature: Use thermal-hanger shield insert with clamp sized to match OD of insert.

c. Do not exceed pipe stress limits allowed by ASME B31.9 for building services piping.

2. Install MSS SP-58, Type 39, protection saddles if insulation without vapor barrier is indicated. Fill interior voids with insulation that matches adjoining insulation.

   a. Option: Thermal-hanger shield inserts may be used. Include steel weight-distribution plate for pipe NPS 4 and larger if pipe is installed on rollers.

3. Install MSS SP-58, Type 40, protective shields on cold piping with vapor barrier. Shields shall span an arc of 180 degrees.

   a. Option: Thermal-hanger shield inserts may be used. Include steel weight-distribution plate for pipe NPS 4 and larger if pipe is installed on rollers.

4. Shield Dimensions for Pipe: Not less than the following:

   a. NPS 1/4 to NPS 3-1/2: 12 inches long and 0.048 inch thick.

5. Thermal-Hanger Shields: Install with insulation same thickness as piping insulation.

3.2 EQUIPMENT SUPPORTS

A. Fabricate structural-steel stands to suspend equipment from structure overhead or to support equipment above floor.

B. Grouting: Place grout under supports for equipment and make bearing surface smooth.

C. Provide lateral bracing, to prevent swaying, for equipment supports.

3.3 METAL FABRICATIONS

A. Cut, drill, and fit miscellaneous metal fabrications for trapeze pipe hangers and equipment supports.

B. Fit exposed connections together to form hairline joints. Field weld connections that cannot be shop welded because of shipping size limitations.

C. Field Welding: Comply with AWS D1.1/D1.1M procedures for shielded, metal arc welding; appearance and quality of welds; and methods used in correcting welding work; and with the following:

   1. Use materials and methods that minimize distortion and develop strength and corrosion resistance of base metals.

2. Obtain fusion without undercut or overlap.
3. Remove welding flux immediately.
4. Finish welds at exposed connections so no roughness shows after finishing and so contours of welded surfaces match adjacent contours.

3.4 ADJUSTING

A. Hanger Adjustments: Provide hangers fabricated to allow adequate vertical adjustment of 1.5 inches minimum after installation while still supporting the load. Adjust hangers to distribute loads equally on attachments and to achieve indicated slope of pipe.

B. Trim excess length of continuous-thread hanger and support rods to 1-1/2 inches.

3.5 PAINTING

A. Touchup: Clean field welds and abraded areas of shop paint. Paint exposed areas immediately after erecting hangers and supports. Use same materials as used for shop painting. Comply with SSPC-PA 1 requirements for touching up field-painted surfaces.

1. Apply paint by brush or spray to provide a minimum dry film thickness of 2.0 mils.

B. Touchup: Cleaning and touchup painting of field welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas of shop paint on miscellaneous metal are specified in Division 09 painting Sections.

C. Galvanized Surfaces: Clean welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas and apply galvanizing-repair paint to comply with ASTM A 780.

3.6 HANGER AND SUPPORT SCHEDULE

A. Specific hanger and support requirements are in Sections specifying piping systems and equipment.

B. Comply with MSS SP-69 for pipe-hanger selections and applications that are not specified in piping system Sections.

C. Use hangers and supports with galvanized metallic coatings for piping and equipment that will not have field-applied finish.

D. Use nonmetallic coatings on attachments for electrolytic protection where attachments are in direct contact with copper tubing.

E. Use galvanized carbon-steel pipe hangers and supports, metal trapeze pipe hangers, and metal framing systems and attachments for general service applications.

F. Use padded hangers for piping that is subject to scratching.

G. Use thermal-hanger shield inserts for insulated piping and tubing.

H. Horizontal-Piping Hangers and Supports: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:

1. Adjustable, Steel Clevis Hangers (MSS Type 1): For suspension of non-insulated or insulated, stationary pipes NPS 1/2 to NPS 30.
2. Pipe Stanchion Saddles (MSS Type 37): For support of pipes NPS 4 to NPS 36, with steel-pipe base stanchion support and cast-iron floor flange or carbon-steel plate, and with U-bolt to retain pipe.
3. Adjustable Pipe Saddle Supports (MSS Type 38): For stanchion-type support for pipes NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 36 if vertical adjustment is required, with steel-pipe base stanchion support and cast-iron floor flange.

I. Vertical-Piping Clamps: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:

1. Carbon- or Alloy-Steel Riser Clamps (MSS Type 42): For support of pipe risers NPS 3/4 to NPS 24 if longer ends are required for riser clamps.

J. Building Attachments: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:

1. Steel or Malleable Concrete Inserts (MSS Type 18): For upper attachment to suspend pipe hangers from concrete ceiling.
2. Top-Beam C-Clamps (MSS Type 19): For use under roof installations with bar-joist construction, to attach to top flange of structural shape.
3. Side-Beam or Channel Clamps (MSS Type 20): For attaching to bottom flange of beams, channels, or angles.
4. Center-Beam Clamps (MSS Type 21): For attaching to center of bottom flange of beams.
5. C-Clamps (MSS Type 23): For structural shapes.
6. Top-Beam Clamps (MSS Type 25): For top of beams if hanger rod is required tangent to flange edge.
7. Side-Beam Clamps (MSS Type 27): For bottom of steel I-beams.
8. Steel-Beam Clamps with Eye Nuts (MSS Type 28): For attaching to bottom of steel I-beams for heavy loads.
9. Malleable-Beam Clamps with Extension Pieces (MSS Type 30): For attaching to structural steel.

K. Saddles and Shields: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:

1. Steel-Pipe-Covering Protection Saddles (MSS Type 39): To fill interior voids with insulation that matches adjoining insulation.

2. Protection Shields (MSS Type 40): Of length recommended in writing by manufacturer to prevent crushing insulation.
3. Thermal-Hanger Shield Inserts: For supporting insulated pipe.

L. Comply with MSS SP-69 for trapeze pipe-hanger selections and applications that are not specified in piping system Sections.

M. Comply with MFMA-103 for metal framing system selections and applications that are not specified in piping system Sections.

N. Use mechanical-expansion anchors instead of building attachments where required in concrete construction.

O. Use pipe positioning systems in pipe spaces behind plumbing fixtures to support supply and waste piping for plumbing fixtures.

END OF SECTION 22 05 29

ROCIP Project: Withhold insurance cost. Please refer to sections 00425 & 00810 for information.

SECTION 22 05 53 - IDENTIFICATION FOR PLUMBING PIPING AND EQUIPMENT

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Equipment labels.
2. Pipe labels.
3. Valve tags.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.

B. Valve Schedules: For each piping system to include in maintenance manuals.

1.4 COORDINATION

A. Coordinate installation of identifying devices with completion of covering and painting of surfaces where devices are to be applied.

B. Coordinate installation of identifying devices with locations of access panels and doors.

C. Install identifying devices before installing acoustical ceilings and similar concealment.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 EQUIPMENT LABELS

A. Metal Labels for Equipment:

1. Material and Thickness: Brass, 0.032-inch or anodized aluminum, 0.032-inch minimum thickness, and having predrilled or stamped holes for attachment hardware.

2. Minimum Label Size: Length and width vary for required label content, but not less than 2-1/2 by 3/4 inch.
3. Minimum Letter Size: 1/4 inch for name of units if viewing distance is less than 24 inches, 1/2 inch for viewing distances up to 72 inches, and proportionately larger lettering for greater viewing distances. Include secondary lettering two-thirds to three-fourths the size of principal lettering.
4. Fasteners: Stainless-steel rivets or self-tapping screws.
5. Adhesive: Contact-type permanent adhesive, compatible with label and with substrate.

B. Label Content: Include equipment's Drawing designation or unique equipment number, Drawing numbers where equipment is indicated (plans, details, and schedules), plus the Specification Section number and title where equipment is specified.

C. Equipment Label Schedule: For each item of equipment to be labeled, on 8-1/2-by-11-inch bond paper. Tabulate equipment identification number and identify Drawing numbers where equipment is indicated (plans, details, and schedules), plus the Specification Section number and title where equipment is specified. Equipment schedule shall be included in operation and maintenance data.

2.2 PIPE LABELS

A. General Requirements for Manufactured Pipe Labels: Preprinted, color-coded, with lettering indicating service, and showing flow direction.

B. Pre-tensioned Pipe Labels: Pre-coiled, semi-rigid plastic formed to cover full circumference of pipe and to attach to pipe without fasteners or adhesive.

C. Pipe Label Contents: Include identification of piping service using same designations or abbreviations as used on Drawings, pipe size, and an arrow indicating flow direction.

1. Flow-Direction Arrows: Integral with piping system service lettering to accommodate both directions, or as separate unit on each pipe label to indicate flow direction.
2. Lettering Size: At least 1-1/2 inches.

2.3 VALVE TAGS

A. Valve Tags: Stamped or engraved with 1/4-inch letters for piping system abbreviation and 1/2-inch numbers.

1. Tag Material: Brass, 0.032-inch or anodized aluminum, 0.032-inch minimum thickness, and having predrilled or stamped holes for attachment hardware.
2. Fasteners: Brass wire-link or beaded chain; or S-hook.

B. Valve Schedules: For each piping system, on 8-1/2-by-11-inch bond paper. Tabulate valve number, piping system, system abbreviation (as shown on valve tag), location of valve (room or space), normal-operating position (open, closed, or modulating), and variations for identification. Mark valves for emergency shutoff and similar special uses.

1. Valve-tag schedule shall be included in operation and maintenance data.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 PREPARATION

A. Clean piping and equipment surfaces of substances that could impair bond of identification devices, including dirt, oil, grease, release agents, and incompatible primers, paints, and encapsulants.

3.2 PIPE LABEL INSTALLATION

A. Piping Color-Coding: Painting of piping is specified in Division 09 Section "Interior Painting."

B. Locate pipe labels where piping is exposed or above accessible ceilings in finished spaces; machine rooms; accessible maintenance spaces such as shafts, tunnels, and plenums; and exterior exposed locations as follows:

1. Near each valve and control device.
2. Near each branch connection, excluding short takeoffs for fixtures and terminal units. Where flow pattern is not obvious, mark each pipe at branch.
3. Near penetrations through walls, floors, ceilings, and inaccessible enclosures.
4. At access doors, manholes, and similar access points that permit view of concealed piping.
5. Near major equipment items and other points of origination and termination.
6. Spaced at maximum intervals of 50 feet along each run. Reduce intervals to 25 feet in areas of congested piping and equipment.
7. On piping above removable acoustical ceilings. Omit intermediately spaced labels.

C. Pipe Label Color Schedule:

1. Domestic Water Piping:

a. Background Color: Green.
b. Letter Color: White.

2. Sanitary Waste and Sanitary Vent Piping:

    a. Background Color: Green.
    b. Letter Color: White.

3. Natural Gas Piping:

    a. Background Color: Yellow.
    b. Letter Color: Black.

3.3 VALVE-TAG INSTALLATION

A. Install tags on valves and control devices in piping systems, except check valves; valves within factory-fabricated equipment units; shutoff valves; faucets; convenience and lawn-watering hose connections; and similar roughing-in connections of end-use fixtures and units. List tagged valves in a valve schedule.

B. Valve-Tag Application Schedule: Tag valves according to size, shape, and color scheme and with captions similar to those indicated in the following subparagraphs:

1. Valve-Tag Size and Shape:

    a. Cold Water: 2 inches, round.
    b. Hot Water: 2 inches, round.
    c. Natural Gas: 2 inches, round.

2. Valve-Tag Color:

    a. Cold Water: Green.
    b. Hot Water: Green.
    c. Natural Gas: Yellow.

3. Letter Color:

    a. Cold Water: White.
    b. Hot Water: White.
    c. Natural Gas: Black.

END OF SECTION 22 05 53

ROCIP Project: Withhold insurance cost. Please refer to sections 00425 & 00810 for information.

SECTION 22 07 19 - PLUMBING PIPING INSULATION

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section includes insulating the following plumbing piping services:

1. Domestic cold-water piping.
2. Domestic hot-water piping.
3. Domestic recirculating hot-water piping.
4. Supplies and drains for handicap-accessible lavatories and sinks.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Include thermal conductivity, water-vapor permeance thickness, and jackets (both factory- and field-applied, if any).

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Installer Qualifications: Skilled mechanics who have successfully completed an apprenticeship program or another craft training program certified by the Department of Labor, Bureau of Apprenticeship and Training.

B. Surface-Burning Characteristics: For insulation and related materials, as determined by testing identical products according to ASTM E 84 by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction. Factory label insulation and jacket materials and adhesive, mastic, tapes, and cement material containers, with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.

1. Insulation Installed Indoors: Flame-spread index of 25 or less, and smoke-developed index of 50 or less.
2. Insulation Installed Outdoors: Flame-spread index of 75 or less, and smoke-developed index of 150 or less.

C. Comply with the following applicable standards and other requirements specified for miscellaneous components:

1. Supply and Drain Protective Shielding Guards: ICC A117.1.

1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Packaging: Insulation material containers shall be marked by manufacturer with appropriate ASTM standard designation, type and grade, and maximum use temperature.

1.6 COORDINATION

A. Coordinate sizes and locations of supports, hangers, and insulation shields specified in Division 22 Section "Hangers and Supports for Plumbing Piping and Equipment."

B. Coordinate clearance requirements with piping Installer for piping insulation application. Before preparing piping Shop Drawings, establish and maintain clearance requirements for installation of insulation and field-applied jackets and finishes and for space required for maintenance.

1.7 SCHEDULING

A. Schedule insulation application after pressure testing systems. Insulation application may begin on segments that have satisfactory test results.

B. Complete installation and concealment of plastic materials as rapidly as possible in each area of construction.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 INSULATION MATERIALS

A. Comply with requirements in "Piping Insulation Schedule, General," "Indoor Piping Insulation Schedule," "Outdoor, Aboveground Piping Insulation Schedule," and "Outdoor, Underground Piping Insulation Schedule" articles for where insulating materials shall be applied.

B. Products shall not contain asbestos, lead, mercury, mercury compounds, or urea-formaldehyde.

C. Products that come in contact with stainless steel shall have a leachable chloride content of less than 50 ppm when tested according to ASTM C 871.

D. Insulation materials for use on austenitic stainless steel shall be qualified as acceptable according to ASTM C 795.

E. Mineral-Fiber Blanket Insulation: Mineral or glass fibers bonded with a thermosetting resin. Comply with ASTM C 553, Type II and ASTM C 1290, Type I. Factory-applied jacket requirements are specified in "Factory-Applied Jackets" Article.

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:

a. CertainTeed Corp.; SoftTouch Duct Wrap.
b. Johns Manville; Microlite.
c. Knauf Insulation; Friendly Feel Duct Wrap.
d. Manson Insulation Inc.; Alley Wrap.
e. Owens Corning; SOFTR All-Service Duct Wrap.

F. Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe Insulation:

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:

a. Fibrex Insulations Inc.; Coreplus 1200.
b. Johns Manville; Micro-Lok.
c. Knauf Insulation; 1000-Degree Pipe Insulation.
d. Manson Insulation Inc.; Alley-K.
e. Owens Corning; Fiberglas Pipe Insulation.

2. Type I, 850 Deg F Materials: Mineral or glass fibers bonded with a thermosetting resin. Comply with ASTM C 547, Type I, Grade A, with factory-applied ASJ. Factory-applied jacket requirements are specified in "Factory-Applied Jackets" Article.

2.2 INSULATING CEMENTS

A. Mineral-Fiber Insulating Cement: Comply with ASTM C 195.

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

a. Ramco Insulation, Inc.; Super-Stik.

B. Mineral-Fiber, Hydraulic-Setting Insulating and Finishing Cement: Comply with ASTM C 449.

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

a. Ramco Insulation, Inc.; Ramcote 1200 and Quik-Cote.

2.3 ADHESIVES

A. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates and for bonding insulation to itself and to surfaces to be insulated, unless otherwise indicated.

B. Mineral-Fiber Adhesive: Comply with MIL-A-3316C, Class 2, Grade A.

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:

   a. Childers Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; CP-127.
   b. Eagle Bridges - Marathon Industries; 225.
   c. Foster Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; 85-60/85-70.
   d. Mon-Eco Industries, Inc.; 22-25.

2. For indoor applications, adhesive shall have a VOC content of 80 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
3. Adhesive shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."

C. ASJ Adhesive, and FSK Jacket Adhesive: Comply with MIL-A-3316C, Class 2, Grade A for bonding insulation jacket lap seams and joints.

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:

   a. Childers Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; CP-82.
   b. Eagle Bridges - Marathon Industries; 225.
   c. Foster Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; 85-20.
   d. Mon-Eco Industries, Inc.; 22-25.

2. For indoor applications, adhesive shall have a VOC content of 50 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
3. Adhesive shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."

D. PVC Jacket Adhesive: Compatible with PVC jacket.

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:

   a. Dow Corning Corporation; 739, Dow Silicone.

b. Johns Manville; Zeston Perma-Weld, CEEL-TITE Solvent Welding Adhesive.
c. P.I.C. Plastics, Inc.; Welding Adhesive.
d. Speedline Corporation; Polyco VP Adhesive.

2. For indoor applications, adhesive shall have a VOC content of 50 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
3. Adhesive shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."

2.4 MASTICS

A. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates; comply with MIL-PRF-19565C, Type II.

1. For indoor applications, use mastics that have a VOC content of 50 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).

B. Vapor-Barrier Mastic: Water based; suitable for indoor use on below-ambient services.

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

a. Foster Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; 30-80/30-90.
b. Vimasco Corporation; 749.

2. Water-Vapor Permeance: ASTM E 96/E 96M, Procedure B, 0.013 perm at 43-mil dry film thickness.
3. Service Temperature Range: Minus 20 to plus 180 deg F .
4. Solids Content: ASTM D 1644, 58 percent by volume and 70 percent by weight.
5. Color: White.

C. Vapor-Barrier Mastic: Solvent based; suitable for indoor use on below-ambient services.

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:

a. Childers Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; CP-30.
b. Eagle Bridges - Marathon Industries; 501.
c. Foster Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; 30-35.
d. Mon-Eco Industries, Inc.; 55-10.

2. Water-Vapor Permeance: ASTM F 1249, 0.05 perm at 35-mil dry film thickness.
3. Service Temperature Range: 0 to 180 deg F.
4. Solids Content: ASTM D 1644, 44 percent by volume and 62 percent by weight.
5. Color: White.

D. Breather Mastic: Water based; suitable for indoor and outdoor use on above-ambient services.

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:

   a. Childers Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; CP-10.
   b. Eagle Bridges - Marathon Industries; 550.
   c. Foster Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; 46-50.
   d. Mon-Eco Industries, Inc.; 55-50.
   e. Vimasco Corporation; WC-1/WC-5.

2. Water-Vapor Permeance: ASTM F 1249, 1.8 perms at 0.0625-inch dry film thickness.
3. Service Temperature Range: Minus 20 to plus 180 deg F.
4. Solids Content: 60 percent by volume and 66 percent by weight.
5. Color: White.

2.5 SEALANTS

A. Joint Sealants:

1. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates.
2. Permanently flexible, elastomeric sealant.
3. Service Temperature Range: Minus 100 to plus 300 deg F.
4. Color: White or gray.
5. For indoor applications, sealants shall have a VOC content of 420 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
6. Sealants shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."

B. ASJ Flashing Sealants, and Vinyl, PVDC, and PVC Jacket Flashing Sealants:

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

   a. Childers Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; CP-76.

2. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates.
3. Fire- and water-resistant, flexible, elastomeric sealant.
4. Service Temperature Range: Minus 40 to plus 250 deg F.
5. Color: White.
6. For indoor applications, sealants shall have a VOC content of 420 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
7. Sealants shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."

2.6 FACTORY-APPLIED JACKETS

A. Insulation system schedules indicate factory-applied jackets on various applications. When factory-applied jackets are indicated, comply with the following:

1. ASJ: White, kraft-paper, fiberglass-reinforced scrim with aluminum-foil backing; complying with ASTM C 1136, Type I.

2.7 FIELD-APPLIED FABRIC-REINFORCING MESH

A. Woven Glass-Fiber Fabric: Approximately 2 oz./sq. yd. with a thread count of 10 strands by 10 strands/sq. in. for covering pipe and pipe fittings.

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

a. Childers Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; Chil-Glas Number 10.

B. Woven Polyester Fabric: Approximately 1 oz./sq. yd. with a thread count of 10 strands by 10 strands/sq. in. , in a Leno weave, for pipe.

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

a. Foster Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; Mast-A-Fab.
b. Vimasco Corporation; Elastafab 894.

2.8 FIELD-APPLIED CLOTHS

A. Woven Glass-Fiber Fabric: Comply with MIL-C-20079H, Type I, plain weave, and presized a minimum of 8 oz./sq. yd.

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

   a. Alpha Associates, Inc.; Alpha-Maritex 84215 and 84217/9485RW, Luben 59.

2.9 TAPES

A. ASJ Tape: White vapor-retarder tape matching factory-applied jacket with acrylic adhesive, complying with ASTM C 1136.

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:

   a. ABI, Ideal Tape Division; 428 AWF ASJ.
   b. Avery Dennison Corporation, Specialty Tapes Division; Fasson 0836.
   c. Compac Corporation; 104 and 105.
   d. Venture Tape; 1540 CW Plus, 1542 CW Plus, and 1542 CW Plus/SQ.

2. Width: 3 inches.
3. Thickness: 11.5 mils.
4. Adhesion: 90 ounces force/inch in width.
5. Elongation: 2 percent.
6. Tensile Strength: 40 lbf/inch in width.
7. ASJ Tape Disks and Squares: Precut disks or squares of ASJ tape.

2.10 SECUREMENTS

A. Bands:

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

   a. ITW Insulation Systems; Gerrard Strapping and Seals.
   b. RPR Products, Inc.; Insul-Mate Strapping and Seals.

2. Stainless Steel: ASTM A 167 or ASTM A 240/A 240M, Type 304 or Type 316; 0.015 inch thick, 1/2 inch wide with wing seal or closed seal.
3. Aluminum: ASTM B 209 , Alloy 3003, 3005, 3105, or 5005; Temper H-14, 0.020 inch thick, 1/2 inch wide with wing seal or closed seal.

B. Staples: Outward-clinching insulation staples, nominal 3/4-inch- wide, stainless steel or Monel.

C. Wire: 0.062-inch soft-annealed, stainless steel.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

a. C & F Wire.

2.11 PROTECTIVE SHIELDING GUARDS

A. Protective Shielding Pipe Covers:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

a. Engineered Brass Company.
b. Insul-Tect Products Co.; a subsidiary of MVG Molded Products.
c. McGuire Manufacturing.
d. Plumberex.
e. Truebro; a brand of IPS Corporation.
f. Zurn Industries, LLC; Tubular Brass Plumbing Products Operation.

2. Description: Manufactured plastic wraps for covering plumbing fixture hot- and cold-water supplies and trap and drain piping. Comply with Americans with Disabilities Act (ADA) requirements.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine substrates and conditions for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of insulation application.

1. Verify that systems to be insulated have been tested and are free of defects.
2. Verify that surfaces to be insulated are clean and dry.

B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

A. Surface Preparation: Clean and dry surfaces to receive insulation. Remove materials that will adversely affect insulation application.

B. Surface Preparation: Clean and prepare surfaces to be insulated. Before insulating, apply a corrosion coating to insulated surfaces as follows:

1. Carbon Steel: Coat carbon steel operating at a service temperature between 32 and 300 deg F with an epoxy coating. Consult coating manufacturer for appropriate coating materials and application methods for operating temperature range.

C. Mix insulating cements with clean potable water; if insulating cements are to be in contact with stainless-steel surfaces, use demineralized water.

3.3 GENERAL INSTALLATION REQUIREMENTS

A. Install insulation materials, accessories, and finishes with smooth, straight, and even surfaces; free of voids throughout the length of piping including fittings, valves, and specialties.

B. Install insulation materials, forms, vapor barriers or retarders, jackets, and thicknesses required for each item of pipe system as specified in insulation system schedules.

C. Install accessories compatible with insulation materials and suitable for the service. Install accessories that do not corrode, soften, or otherwise attack insulation or jacket in either wet or dry state.

D. Install insulation with longitudinal seams at top and bottom of horizontal runs.

E. Install multiple layers of insulation with longitudinal and end seams staggered.

F. Do not weld brackets, clips, or other attachment devices to piping, fittings, and specialties.

G. Keep insulation materials dry during application and finishing.

H. Install insulation with tight longitudinal seams and end joints. Bond seams and joints with adhesive recommended by insulation material manufacturer.

I. Install insulation with least number of joints practical.

J. Where vapor barrier is indicated, seal joints, seams, and penetrations in insulation at hangers, supports, anchors, and other projections with vapor-barrier mastic.

1. Install insulation continuously through hangers and around anchor attachments.
2. For insulation application where vapor barriers are indicated, extend insulation on anchor legs from point of attachment to supported item to point of attachment to structure. Taper and seal ends at attachment to structure with vapor-barrier mastic.

3. Install insert materials and install insulation to tightly join the insert. Seal insulation to insulation inserts with adhesive or sealing compound recommended by insulation material manufacturer.
4. Cover inserts with jacket material matching adjacent pipe insulation. Install shields over jacket, arranged to protect jacket from tear or puncture by hanger, support, and shield.

K. Apply adhesives, mastics, and sealants at manufacturer's recommended coverage rate and wet and dry film thicknesses.

L. Cut insulation in a manner to avoid compressing insulation more than 75 percent of its nominal thickness.

M. Finish installation with systems at operating conditions. Repair joint separations and cracking due to thermal movement.

N. Repair damaged insulation facings by applying same facing material over damaged areas. Extend patches at least 4 inches beyond damaged areas. Adhere, staple, and seal patches similar to butt joints.

O. For above-ambient services, do not install insulation to the following:

1. Vibration-control devices.
2. Testing agency labels and stamps.
3. Nameplates and data plates.
4. Cleanouts.

3.4 PENETRATIONS

A. Insulation Installation at Interior Wall and Partition Penetrations (That Are Not Fire Rated): Install insulation continuously through walls and partitions.

3.5 GENERAL PIPE INSULATION INSTALLATION

A. Requirements in this article generally apply to all insulation materials except where more specific requirements are specified in various pipe insulation material installation articles.

B. Insulation Installation on Fittings, Valves, Strainers, Flanges, and Unions:

1. Install insulation over fittings, valves, strainers, flanges, unions, and other specialties with continuous thermal and vapor-retarder integrity unless otherwise indicated.

2. Insulate pipe elbows using preformed fitting insulation or mitered fittings made from same material and density as adjacent pipe insulation. Each piece shall be butted tightly against adjoining piece and bonded with adhesive. Fill joints, seams, voids, and irregular surfaces with insulating cement finished to a smooth, hard, and uniform contour that is uniform with adjoining pipe insulation.
3. Insulate tee fittings with preformed fitting insulation or sectional pipe insulation of same material and thickness as used for adjacent pipe. Cut sectional pipe insulation to fit. Butt each section closely to the next and hold in place with tie wire. Bond pieces with adhesive.
4. Insulate valves using preformed fitting insulation or sectional pipe insulation of same material, density, and thickness as used for adjacent pipe. Overlap adjoining pipe insulation by not less than two times the thickness of pipe insulation, or one pipe diameter, whichever is thicker. For valves, insulate up to and including the bonnets, valve stuffing-box studs, bolts, and nuts. Fill joints, seams, and irregular surfaces with insulating cement.
5. Insulate strainers using preformed fitting insulation or sectional pipe insulation of same material, density, and thickness as used for adjacent pipe. Overlap adjoining pipe insulation by not less than two times the thickness of pipe insulation, or one pipe diameter, whichever is thicker. Fill joints, seams, and irregular surfaces with insulating cement. Insulate strainers so strainer basket flange or plug can be easily removed and replaced without damaging the insulation and jacket. Provide a removable reusable insulation cover. For below-ambient services, provide a design that maintains vapor barrier.
6. Insulate flanges and unions using a section of oversized preformed pipe insulation. Overlap adjoining pipe insulation by not less than two times the thickness of pipe insulation, or one pipe diameter, whichever is thicker.
7. Cover segmented insulated surfaces with a layer of finishing cement and coat with a mastic. Install vapor-barrier mastic for below-ambient services and a breather mastic for above-ambient services. Reinforce the mastic with fabric-reinforcing mesh. Trowel the mastic to a smooth and well-shaped contour.
8. For services not specified to receive a field-applied jacket except for flexible elastomeric and polyolefin, install fitted PVC cover over elbows, tees, strainers, valves, flanges, and unions. Terminate ends with PVC end caps. Tape PVC covers to adjoining insulation facing using PVC tape.
9. Stencil or label the outside insulation jacket of each union with the word "union." Match size and color of pipe labels.

C. Insulate instrument connections for thermometers, pressure gages, pressure temperature taps, test connections, flow meters, sensors, switches, and transmitters on insulated pipes. Shape insulation at these connections by tapering it to and around the connection with insulating cement and finish with finishing cement, mastic, and flashing sealant.

D. Install removable insulation covers at locations indicated. Installation shall conform to the following:

1. Make removable flange and union insulation from sectional pipe insulation of same thickness as that on adjoining pipe. Install same insulation jacket as adjoining pipe insulation.
2. When flange and union covers are made from sectional pipe insulation, extend insulation from flanges or union long at least two times the insulation thickness over adjacent pipe insulation on each side of flange or union. Secure flange cover in place with stainless-steel or aluminum bands. Select band material compatible with insulation and jacket.
3. Construct removable valve insulation covers in same manner as for flanges, except divide the two-part section on the vertical center line of valve body.
4. When covers are made from block insulation, make two halves, each consisting of mitered blocks wired to stainless-steel fabric. Secure this wire frame, with its attached insulation, to flanges with tie wire. Extend insulation at least 2 inches over adjacent pipe insulation on each side of valve. Fill space between flange or union cover and pipe insulation with insulating cement. Finish cover assembly with insulating cement applied in two coats. After first coat is dry, apply and trowel second coat to a smooth finish.
5. Unless a PVC jacket is indicated in field-applied jacket schedules, finish exposed surfaces with a metal jacket.

3.6 INSTALLATION OF MINERAL-FIBER INSULATION

A. Insulation Installation on Straight Pipes and Tubes:

1. Secure each layer of preformed pipe insulation to pipe with wire or bands and tighten bands without deforming insulation materials.
2. Where vapor barriers are indicated, seal longitudinal seams, end joints, and protrusions with vapor-barrier mastic and joint sealant.
3. For insulation with factory-applied jackets on above-ambient surfaces, secure laps with outward clinched staples at 6 inches o.c.
4. For insulation with factory-applied jackets on below-ambient surfaces, do not staple longitudinal tabs. Instead, secure tabs with additional adhesive as recommended by insulation material manufacturer and seal with vapor-barrier mastic and flashing sealant.

B. Insulation Installation on Pipe Flanges:

1. Install preformed pipe insulation to outer diameter of pipe flange.
2. Make width of insulation section same as overall width of flange and bolts, plus twice the thickness of pipe insulation.
3. Fill voids between inner circumference of flange insulation and outer circumference of adjacent straight pipe segments with mineral-fiber blanket insulation.

4. Install jacket material with manufacturer's recommended adhesive, overlap seams at least 1 inch, and seal joints with flashing sealant.

C. Insulation Installation on Pipe Fittings and Elbows:

1. Install preformed sections of same material as straight segments of pipe insulation when available.
2. When preformed insulation elbows and fittings are not available, install mitered sections of pipe insulation, to a thickness equal to adjoining pipe insulation. Secure insulation materials with wire or bands.

D. Insulation Installation on Valves and Pipe Specialties:

1. Install preformed sections of same material as straight segments of pipe insulation when available.
2. When preformed sections are not available, install mitered sections of pipe insulation to valve body.
3. Arrange insulation to permit access to packing and to allow valve operation without disturbing insulation.
4. Install insulation to flanges as specified for flange insulation application.

3.7 FIELD-APPLIED JACKET INSTALLATION

A. Where PVC jackets are indicated, install with 1-inch overlap at longitudinal seams and end joints. Seal with manufacturer's recommended adhesive.

1. Apply two continuous beads of adhesive to seams and joints, one bead under lap and the finish bead along seam and joint edge.

3.8 FINISHES

A. Insulation with ASJ, Glass-Cloth, or Other Paintable Jacket Material: Paint jacket with paint system identified below and as specified in Division 09 painting Sections.

1. Flat Acrylic Finish: Two finish coats over a primer that is compatible with jacket material and finish coat paint. Add fungicidal agent to render fabric mildew proof.

a. Finish Coat Material: Interior, flat, latex-emulsion size.

B. Color: Final color as selected by Architect. Vary first and second coats to allow visual inspection of the completed Work.

3.9 PIPING INSULATION SCHEDULE, GENERAL

A. Acceptable preformed pipe and tubular insulation materials and thicknesses are identified for each piping system and pipe size range. If more than one material is listed for a piping system, selection from materials listed is Contractor's option.

B. Items Not Insulated: Unless otherwise indicated, do not install insulation on the following:

1. Drainage piping located in crawl spaces.
2. Underground piping.
3. Chrome-plated pipes and fittings unless there is a potential for personnel injury.

3.10 INDOOR PIPING INSULATION SCHEDULE

A. Domestic Cold Water:

1. All Pipe Sizes: Insulation shall be the following:

a. Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe Insulation, Type I: 1 inch thick.
b. Vapor barrier required: Yes.

B. Domestic Hot and Recirculated Hot Water:

1. All Pipe Sizes: Insulation shall be the following:

a. Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe Insulation, Type I: 1 inch thick.
b. Vapor barrier required: No.

C. Exposed Sanitary Drains, Domestic Water, Domestic Hot Water, and Stops for Plumbing Fixtures for People with Disabilities:

1. All Pipe Sizes: Insulation shall be the following:

a. Protective Shielding Pipe Covers.

D. Above-Ground Floor Drains, Traps, and Sanitary Drain Piping within 10 Feet of Drain Receiving Condensate and Equipment Drain Water below 60 Deg F :

1. All Pipe Sizes: Insulation shall be the following:

a. Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe Insulation, Type I: 1 inch thick.
b. Vapor barrier required: Yes.

END OF SECTION 22 07 19

ROCIP Project: Withhold insurance cost. Please refer to sections 00425 & 00810 for information.

SECTION 22 11 00 - FACILITY NATURAL-GAS PIPING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Pipes, tubes, and fittings.
2. Piping specialties.
3. Piping and tubing joining materials.
4. Valves.
5. Pressure regulators.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. Finished Spaces: Spaces other than mechanical and electrical equipment rooms, furred spaces, pipe and duct shafts, unheated spaces immediately below roof, spaces above ceilings, unexcavated spaces, crawlspaces, and tunnels.

B. Exposed, Interior Installations: Exposed to view indoors. Examples include finished occupied spaces and mechanical equipment rooms.

C. Exposed, Exterior Installations: Exposed to view outdoors or subject to outdoor ambient temperatures and weather conditions. Examples include rooftop locations.

1.4 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Minimum Operating-Pressure Ratings:

1. Piping and Valves: 100 psig minimum unless otherwise indicated.
2. Service Regulators: 65 psig minimum unless otherwise indicated.

B. Natural-Gas System Pressures within Buildings: Two pressure ranges. Primary pressure is more than 0.5 psig but not more than 2 psig, and is reduced to secondary pressure of 0.5 psig or less.

ROCIP Project: Withhold insurance cost. Please refer to sections 00425 & 00810 for information.

1.5 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of the following:

1. Piping specialties.
2. Valves. Include pressure rating, capacity, settings, and electrical connection data of selected models.
3. Pressure regulators. Indicate pressure ratings and capacities.
4. Dielectric fittings.

1.6 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Coordination Drawings: Plans and details, drawn to scale, on which natural-gas piping is shown and coordinated with other installations, using input from installers of the items involved.

B. Site Survey: Plans, drawn to scale, on which natural-gas piping is shown and coordinated with other services and utilities.

C. Field quality-control reports.

1.7 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For motorized gas valves and pressure regulators to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

1.8 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

1.9 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Handling Flammable Liquids: Remove and dispose of liquids from existing natural-gas piping according to requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.

B. Deliver pipes and tubes with factory-applied end caps. Maintain end caps through shipping, storage, and handling to prevent pipe end damage and to prevent entrance of dirt, debris, and moisture.

C. Store and handle pipes and tubes having factory-applied protective coatings to avoid damaging coating, and protect from direct sunlight.

ROCIP Project: Withhold insurance cost. Please refer to sections 00425 & 00810 for information.

1.10 PROJECT CONDITIONS

A. Perform site survey, research public utility records, and verify existing utility locations. Contact utility-locating service for area where Project is located.

B. Interruption of Existing Natural-Gas Service: Do not interrupt natural-gas service to facilities occupied by Owner or others unless permitted under the following conditions and then only after arranging to provide purging and startup of natural-gas supply according to requirements indicated:

1. Notify Construction Manager no fewer than two days in advance of proposed interruption of natural-gas service.
2. Do not proceed with interruption of natural-gas service without Construction Manager's written permission.

1.11 COORDINATION

A. Coordinate sizes and locations of concrete bases with actual equipment provided.

B. Coordinate requirements for access panels and doors for valves installed concealed behind finished surfaces.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PIPES, TUBES, AND FITTINGS

A. Steel Pipe: ASTM A 53/A 53M, black steel, Schedule 40, Type E or S, Grade B.

1. Malleable-Iron Threaded Fittings: ASME B16.3, Class 150, standard pattern.

2. Unions: ASME B16.39, Class 150, malleable iron with brass-to-iron seat, ground joint, and threaded ends.

2.2 PIPING SPECIALTIES

A. Appliance Flexible Connectors:

1. Indoor, Fixed-Appliance Flexible Connectors: Comply with ANSI Z21.24.
2. Indoor, Movable-Appliance Flexible Connectors: Comply with ANSI Z21.69.
3. Outdoor, Appliance Flexible Connectors: Comply with ANSI Z21.75.
4. Corrugated stainless-steel tubing with polymer coating.
5. Operating-Pressure Rating: 0.5 psig.
6. End Fittings: Zinc-coated steel.
7. Threaded Ends: Comply with ASME B1.20.1.
8. Maximum Length: 72 inches

B. Weatherproof Vent Cap: Cast- or malleable-iron increaser fitting with corrosion-resistant wire screen, with free area at least equal to cross-sectional area of connecting pipe and threaded-end connection.

2.3 JOINING MATERIALS

A. Joint Compound and Tape: Suitable for natural gas.

2.4 MANUAL GAS SHUTOFF VALVES

A. See "Aboveground Manual Gas Shutoff Valve Schedule" Articles for where each valve type is applied in various services.

B. General Requirements for Metallic Valves, NPS 2 and Smaller: Comply with ASME B16.33.

1. CWP Rating: 125 psig.
2. Threaded Ends: Comply with ASME B1.20.1.
3. Dryseal Threads on Flare Ends: Comply with ASME B1.20.3.
4. Tamperproof Feature: Locking feature for valves indicated in "Underground Manual Gas Shutoff Valve Schedule" and "Aboveground Manual Gas Shutoff Valve Schedule" Articles.
5. Listing: Listed and labeled by an NRTL acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction for valves 1 inch and smaller.
6. Service Mark: Valves 1-1/4 inches to NPS 2 shall have initials "WOG" permanently marked on valve body.

C. Two-Piece, Full-Port, Bronze Ball Valves with Bronze Trim: MSS SP-110.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

   a. BrassCraft Manufacturing Company; a Masco company.
   b. Conbraco Industries, Inc.; Apollo Div.
   c. Lyall, R. W. & Company, Inc.
   d. McDonald, A. Y. Mfg. Co.
   e. Perfection Corporation; a subsidiary of American Meter Company.

2. Body: Bronze, complying with ASTM B 584.
3. Ball: Chrome-plated bronze.
4. Stem: Bronze; blowout proof.
5. Seats: Reinforced TFE; blowout proof.
6. Packing: Threaded-body packnut design with adjustable-stem packing.
7. Ends: Threaded, flared, or socket as indicated in "Underground Manual Gas Shutoff Valve Schedule" and "Aboveground Manual Gas Shutoff Valve Schedule" Articles.

8. CWP Rating: 600 psig.
9. Listing: Valves NPS 1 and smaller shall be listed and labeled by an NRTL acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
10. Service: Suitable for natural-gas service with "WOG" indicated on valve body.

D. Bronze Plug Valves: MSS SP-78.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

   a. Lee Brass Company.
   b. McDonald, A. Y. Mfg. Co.

2. Body: Bronze, complying with ASTM B 584.
3. Plug: Bronze.
4. Ends: Threaded, socket, or flanged as indicated in "Underground Manual Gas Shutoff Valve Schedule" and "Aboveground Manual Gas Shutoff Valve Schedule" Articles.
5. Operator: Square head or lug type with tamperproof feature where indicated.
6. Pressure Class: 125 psig.
7. Listing: Valves NPS 1 and smaller shall be listed and labeled by an NRTL acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
8. Service: Suitable for natural-gas service with "WOG" indicated on valve body.

2.5 MOTORIZED GAS VALVES

A. Automatic Gas Valves: Comply with ANSI Z21.21.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

   a. ASCO Power Technologies, LP; Division of Emerson.
   b. Dungs, Karl, Inc.
   c. Eaton Corporation; Controls Div.
   d. Eclipse Combustion, Inc.
   e. Honeywell International Inc.
   f. Johnson Controls.

2. Body: Brass or aluminum.
3. Seats and Disc: Nitrile rubber.
4. Springs and Valve Trim: Stainless steel.
5. Normally closed.
6. Visual position indicator.
7. Mechanical operator for actuation by appliance automatic shutoff device.

ROCIP Project: Withhold insurance cost. Please refer to sections 00425 & 00810 for information.

2.6 PRESSURE REGULATORS

A. General Requirements:

1. Single stage and suitable for natural gas.
2. Steel jacket and corrosion-resistant components.
3. Elevation compensator.
4. End Connections: Threaded for regulators NPS 2 and smaller; flanged for regulators NPS 2-1/2 and larger.

B. Service Pressure Regulators: Comply with ANSI Z21.80.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

   a. Actaris.
   b. American Meter Company.
   c. Fisher Control Valves and Regulators; Division of Emerson Process Management.
   d. Invensys.
   e. Richards Industries; Jordan Valve Div.

2. Body and Diaphragm Case: Cast iron or die-cast aluminum.
3. Springs: Zinc-plated steel; interchangeable.
4. Diaphragm Plate: Zinc-plated steel.
5. Seat Disc: Nitrile rubber resistant to gas impurities, abrasion, and deformation at the valve port.
6. Orifice: Aluminum; interchangeable.
7. Seal Plug: Ultraviolet-stabilized, mineral-filled nylon.
8. Single-port, self-contained regulator with orifice no larger than required at maximum pressure inlet, and no pressure sensing piping external to the regulator.
9. Pressure regulator shall maintain discharge pressure setting downstream, and not exceed 150 percent of design discharge pressure at shutoff.
10. Overpressure Protection Device: Factory mounted on pressure regulator.
11. Atmospheric Vent: Factory- or field-installed, stainless-steel screen in opening if not connected to vent piping.
12. Maximum Inlet Pressure: 100 psig.

C. Appliance Pressure Regulators: Comply with ANSI Z21.18.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

   a. Canadian Meter Company Inc.
   b. Eaton Corporation; Controls Div.
   c. Harper Wyman Co.
   d. Maxitrol Company.

e. SCP, Inc.

2. Body and Diaphragm Case: Die-cast aluminum.
3. Springs: Zinc-plated steel; interchangeable.
4. Diaphragm Plate: Zinc-plated steel.
5. Seat Disc: Nitrile rubber.
6. Seal Plug: Ultraviolet-stabilized, mineral-filled nylon.
7. Factory-Applied Finish: Minimum three-layer polyester and polyurethane paint finish.
8. Regulator may include vent limiting device, instead of vent connection, if approved by authorities having jurisdiction.
9. Maximum Inlet Pressure: 2 psig.

2.7 DIELECTRIC FITTINGS

A. General Requirements: Assembly of copper alloy and ferrous materials with separating nonconductive insulating material. Include end connections compatible with pipes to be joined.

B. Dielectric Unions:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

a. Capitol Manufacturing Company.
b. Central Plastics Company.
c. Hart Industries International, Inc.
d. Jomar International Ltd.
e. Matco-Norca, Inc.
f. McDonald, A. Y. Mfg. Co.
g. Watts Regulator Co.; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
h. Wilkins; a Zurn company.

2. Description:

a. Standard: ASSE 1079.
b. Pressure Rating: 125 psig minimum at 180 deg F.
c. End Connections: Solder-joint copper alloy and threaded ferrous.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine roughing-in for natural-gas piping system to verify actual locations of piping connections before equipment installation.

B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

A. Close equipment shutoff valves before turning off natural gas to premises or piping section.

B. Inspect natural-gas piping according to the International Fuel Gas Code to determine that natural-gas utilization devices are turned off in piping section affected.

C. Comply with NFPA 54 requirements for prevention of accidental ignition.

3.3 OUTDOOR PIPING INSTALLATION

A. Comply with the International Fuel Gas Code for installation and purging of natural-gas piping.

B. Steel Piping with Protective Coating:

1. Apply joint cover kits to pipe after joining to cover, seal, and protect joints.
2. Repair damage to PE coating on pipe as recommended in writing by protective coating manufacturer.
3. Replace pipe having damaged PE coating with new pipe.

C. Install fittings for changes in direction and branch connections.

3.4 INDOOR PIPING INSTALLATION

A. Comply with the International Fuel Gas Code for installation and purging of natural-gas piping.

B. Drawing plans, schematics, and diagrams indicate general location and arrangement of piping systems. Indicated locations and arrangements are used to size pipe and calculate friction loss, expansion, and other design considerations. Install piping as indicated unless deviations to layout are approved on Coordination Drawings.

C. Arrange for pipe spaces, chases, slots, sleeves, and openings in building structure during progress of construction, to allow for mechanical installations.

D. Install piping in concealed locations unless otherwise indicated and except in equipment rooms and service areas.

E. Install piping indicated to be exposed and piping in equipment rooms and service areas at right angles or parallel to building walls. Diagonal runs are prohibited unless specifically indicated otherwise.

F. Install piping above accessible ceilings to allow sufficient space for ceiling panel removal.

G. Locate valves for easy access.

H. Install natural-gas piping at uniform grade of 2 percent down toward drip and sediment traps.

I. Install piping free of sags and bends.

J. Install fittings for changes in direction and branch connections.

K. Verify final equipment locations for roughing-in.

L. Comply with requirements in Sections specifying gas-fired appliances and equipment for roughing-in requirements.

M. Drips and Sediment Traps: Install drips at points where condensate may collect, including service-meter outlets. Locate where accessible to permit cleaning and emptying. Do not install where condensate is subject to freezing.

1. Construct drips and sediment traps using tee fitting with bottom outlet plugged or capped. Use nipple a minimum length of 3 pipe diameters, but not less than 3 inches long and same size as connected pipe. Install with space below bottom of drip to remove plug or cap.

N. Extend relief vent connections for service regulators, line regulators, and overpressure protection devices to outdoors and terminate with weatherproof vent cap.

O. Conceal pipe installations in walls, pipe spaces, utility spaces, above ceilings, below grade or floors, and in floor channels unless indicated to be exposed to view.

P. Concealed Location Installations: Except as specified below, install concealed natural-gas piping and piping installed under the building in containment conduit constructed of steel pipe with welded joints as described in Part 2. Install a vent pipe from containment conduit to outdoors and terminate with weatherproof vent cap.

1. Above Accessible Ceilings: Natural-gas piping, fittings, valves, and regulators may be installed in accessible spaces without containment conduit.
2. In Floors: Install natural-gas piping with welded or brazed joints and protective coating in cast-in-place concrete floors. Cover piping to be cast in concrete slabs with minimum of 1-1/2 inches of concrete. Piping may not be in physical contact with other metallic structures such as reinforcing rods or electrically neutral conductors. Do not embed piping in concrete slabs containing quick-set additives or cinder aggregate.
3. In Floor Channels: Install natural-gas piping in floor channels. Channels must have cover and be open to space above cover for ventilation.

4. In Walls or Partitions: Protect tubing installed inside partitions or hollow walls from physical damage using steel striker barriers at rigid supports.

    a. Exception: Tubing passing through partitions or walls does not require striker barriers.

5. Prohibited Locations:

    a. Do not install natural-gas piping in or through circulating air ducts, clothes or trash chutes, chimneys or gas vents (flues), ventilating ducts, or dumbwaiter or elevator shafts.
    b. Do not install natural-gas piping in solid walls or partitions.

Q. Use eccentric reducer fittings to make reductions in pipe sizes. Install fittings with level side down.

R. Connect branch piping from top or side of horizontal piping.

S. Install unions in pipes NPS 2 and smaller, adjacent to each valve, at final connection to each piece of equipment. Unions are not required at flanged connections.

T. Do not use natural-gas piping as grounding electrode.

U. Install strainer on inlet of each line-pressure regulator and automatic or electrically operated valve.

V. Install pressure gage downstream from each line regulator. Pressure gages are specified in Section 220519 "Meters and Gages for Plumbing Piping."

W. Install sleeves for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors. Comply with requirements for sleeves specified in Section 220517 "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for Plumbing Piping."

X. Install escutcheons for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors. Comply with requirements for escutcheons specified in Section 220518 "Escutcheons for Plumbing Piping."

3.5 VALVE INSTALLATION

A. Install manual gas shutoff valve for each gas appliance ahead of corrugated stainless-steel tubing, aluminum, or copper connector.

B. Install regulators and overpressure protection devices with maintenance access space adequate for servicing and testing.

ROCIP Project: Withhold insurance cost. Please refer to sections 00425 & 00810 for information.

3.6 PIPING JOINT CONSTRUCTION

A. Ream ends of pipes and tubes and remove burrs.

B. Remove scale, slag, dirt, and debris from inside and outside of pipe and fittings before assembly.

C. Threaded Joints:

1. Thread pipe with tapered pipe threads complying with ASME B1.20.1.
2. Cut threads full and clean using sharp dies.
3. Ream threaded pipe ends to remove burrs and restore full inside diameter of pipe.
4. Apply appropriate tape or thread compound to external pipe threads unless dryseal threading is specified.
5. Damaged Threads: Do not use pipe or pipe fittings with threads that are corroded or damaged. Do not use pipe sections that have cracked or open welds.

D. Flanged Joints: Install gasket material, size, type, and thickness appropriate for natural-gas service. Install gasket concentrically positioned.

3.7 HANGER AND SUPPORT INSTALLATION

A. Comply with requirements for pipe hangers and supports specified in Section 220529 "Hangers and Supports for Plumbing Piping and Equipment."

B. Install hangers for horizontal steel piping with the following maximum spacing and minimum rod sizes:

1. NPS 1 and Smaller: Maximum span, 96 inches; minimum rod size, 3/8 inch.
2. NPS 1-1/4: Maximum span, 108 inches; minimum rod size, 3/8 inch.
3. NPS 1-1/2 and NPS 2: Maximum span, 108 inches; minimum rod size, 3/8 inch.
4. NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 3-1/2: Maximum span, 10 feet; minimum rod size, 1/2 inch.
5. NPS 4 and Larger: Maximum span, 10 feet; minimum rod size, 5/8 inch.

3.8 CONNECTIONS

A. Connect to utility's gas main according to utility's procedures and requirements.

B. Install natural-gas piping electrically continuous, and bonded to gas appliance equipment grounding conductor of the circuit powering the appliance according to NFPA 70.

C. Install piping adjacent to appliances to allow service and maintenance of appliances.

D. Connect piping to appliances using manual gas shutoff valves and unions. Install valve within 72 inches of each gas-fired appliance and equipment. Install union between valve and appliances or equipment.

E. Sediment Traps: Install tee fitting with capped nipple in bottom to form drip, as close as practical to inlet of each appliance.

3.9 LABELING AND IDENTIFYING

A. Comply with requirements in Section 220553 "Identification for Plumbing Piping and Equipment" for piping and valve identification.

3.10 PAINTING

A. Comply with requirements in Section 099113 "Exterior Painting" and Section 099123 "Interior Painting" for painting interior and exterior natural-gas piping.

B. Paint exposed, exterior metal piping, valves, service regulators, service meters and meter bars, and piping specialties, except components, with factory-applied paint or protective coating.

1. Alkyd System: MPI EXT 5.1D.

   a. Prime Coat: Alkyd anticorrosive metal primer.
   b. Intermediate Coat: Exterior alkyd enamel matching topcoat.
   c. Topcoat: Exterior alkyd enamel.
   d. Color: Gray.

C. Paint exposed, interior metal piping, valves, service regulators, service meters and meter bars, and piping specialties, except components, with factory-applied paint or protective coating.

1. Latex Over Alkyd Primer System: MPI INT 5.1Q.

   a. Prime Coat: Alkyd anticorrosive metal primer.
   b. Intermediate Coat: Interior latex matching topcoat.
   c. Topcoat: Interior latex.
   d. Color: Per Architect.

2. Alkyd System: MPI INT 5.1E.

   a. Prime Coat: Alkyd anticorrosive metal primer.
   b. Intermediate Coat: Interior alkyd matching topcoat.
   c. Topcoat: Interior alkyd.
   d. Color: Per Architect.

D. Damage and Touchup: Repair marred and damaged factory-applied finishes with materials and by procedures to match original factory finish.

3.11 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Perform tests and inspections.

B. Tests and Inspections:

1. Test, inspect, and purge natural gas according to the International Fuel Gas Code and authorities having jurisdiction.

C. Natural-gas piping will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.

D. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.12 OUTDOOR PIPING SCHEDULE

A. Aboveground natural-gas piping shall be the following:

1. Steel pipe with malleable-iron fittings and threaded joints.

3.13 INDOOR PIPING SCHEDULE FOR SYSTEM PRESSURES LESS THAN 0.5 PSIG

A. Aboveground, branch piping shall be the following:

1. Steel pipe with malleable-iron fittings and threaded joints.

3.14 INDOOR PIPING SCHEDULE FOR SYSTEM PRESSURES MORE THAN 0.5 PSIG AND LESS THAN 5 PSIG

B. Aboveground, branch piping shall be the following:

1. Steel pipe with malleable-iron fittings and threaded joints.

C. Aboveground, distribution piping shall be the following:

1. Steel pipe with malleable-iron fittings and threaded joints.

3.14 ABOVEGROUND MANUAL GAS SHUTOFF VALVE SCHEDULE

A. Valves at service meter shall be the following:

1. Bronze plug valve.

ROCIP Project: Withhold insurance cost. Please refer to sections 00425 & 00810 for information.

B. Distribution piping valves shall be the following:

1. Bronze plug valve.

C. Valves in branch piping for single appliance shall be the following:

1. Two-piece, full-port, bronze ball valves with bronze trim.

END OF SECTION 22 11 00

ROCIP Project: Withhold insurance cost. Please refer to sections 00425 & 00810 for information.

SECTION 22 11 16 - DOMESTIC WATER PIPING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Aboveground domestic water pipes, tubes, and fittings inside buildings.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.

1.4 FIELD CONDITIONS

A. Interruption of Existing Water Service: Do not interrupt water service to facilities occupied by Owner or others unless permitted under the following conditions and then only after arranging to provide temporary water service according to requirements indicated:

1. Notify Construction Manager no fewer than two days in advance of proposed interruption of water service.
2. Do not interrupt water service without Construction Manager's written permission.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PIPING MATERIALS

A. Comply with requirements in "Piping Schedule" Article for applications of pipe, tube, fitting materials, and joining methods for specific services, service locations, and pipe sizes.

B. Potable-water piping and components shall comply with NSF 14 and NSF 61. Plastic piping components shall be marked with "NSF-pw."

2.2 COPPER TUBE AND FITTINGS

A. Hard Copper Tube: ASTM B 88, Type L water tube, drawn temper.

B. Wrought-Copper, Solder-Joint Fittings: ASME B16.22, wrought-copper pressure fittings.

C. Copper Unions:

1. MSS SP-123.
2. Cast-copper-alloy, hexagonal-stock body.
3. Ball-and-socket, metal-to-metal seating surfaces.
4. Solder-joint or threaded ends.

2.3 PIPING JOINING MATERIALS

A. Solder Filler Metals: ASTM B 32, lead-free alloys; Dutch Boy or Silvabrite 100.

B. Flux: ASTM B 813, water flushable.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 PIPING INSTALLATION

A. Drawing plans, schematics, and diagrams indicate general location and arrangement of domestic water piping. Indicated locations and arrangements are used to size pipe and calculate friction loss, expansion, and other design considerations. Install piping as indicated unless deviations to layout are approved on coordination drawings.

B. Install copper tubing under building slab according to CDA's "Copper Tube Handbook."

C. Install domestic water piping level without pitch and plumb.

D. Install piping concealed from view and protected from physical contact by building occupants unless otherwise indicated and except in equipment rooms and service areas.

E. Install piping indicated to be exposed and piping in equipment rooms and service areas at right angles or parallel to building walls. Diagonal runs are prohibited unless specifically indicated otherwise.

F. Install piping above accessible ceilings to allow sufficient space for ceiling panel removal, and coordinate with other services occupying that space.

G. Install piping to permit valve servicing.

H. Install nipples, unions, special fittings, and valves with pressure ratings the same as or higher than the system pressure rating used in applications below unless otherwise indicated.

I. Install piping free of sags and bends.

J. Install fittings for changes in direction and branch connections.

K. Install unions in copper tubing at final connection to each piece of equipment, machine, and specialty.

L. Install sleeves for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors. Comply with requirements for sleeves specified in Division 22 Section "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for Plumbing Piping."

M. Install sleeve seals for piping penetrations of concrete walls and slabs. Comply with requirements for sleeve seals specified in Division 22 Section "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for Plumbing Piping."

N. Install escutcheons for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors. Comply with requirements for escutcheons specified in Division 22 Section "Escutcheons for Plumbing Piping."

3.2 JOINT CONSTRUCTION

A. Ream ends of pipes and tubes and remove burrs. Bevel plain ends of steel pipe.

B. Remove scale, slag, dirt, and debris from inside and outside of pipes, tubes, and fittings before assembly.

C. Threaded Joints: Thread pipe with tapered pipe threads according to ASME B1.20.1. Cut threads full and clean using sharp dies. Ream threaded pipe ends to remove burrs and restore full ID. Join pipe fittings and valves as follows:

1. Apply appropriate tape or thread compound to external pipe threads.
2. Damaged Threads: Do not use pipe or pipe fittings with threads that are corroded or damaged.

D. Soldered Joints for Copper Tubing: Apply ASTM B 813, water-flushable flux to end of tube. Join copper tube and fittings according to ASTM B 828 or CDA's "Copper Tube Handbook."

E. Joints for Dissimilar-Material Piping: Make joints using adapters compatible with materials of both piping systems.

3.3 HANGER AND SUPPORT INSTALLATION

A. Comply with requirements for pipe hanger, support products, and installation in Division 22 Section "Hangers and Supports for Plumbing Piping and Equipment."

1. Vertical Piping: MSS Type 8 or 42, clamps.
2. Individual, Straight, Horizontal Piping Runs:

   a. 100 Feet and Less: MSS Type 1, adjustable, steel clevis hangers.

3. Base of Vertical Piping: MSS Type 52, spring hangers.

B. Support vertical piping and tubing at base and at each floor.

C. Rod diameter may be reduced one size for double-rod hangers, to a minimum of 3/8 inch.

D. Install hangers for copper tubing with the following maximum horizontal spacing and minimum rod diameters:

1. NPS 3/4 and Smaller: 60 inches with 3/8-inch rod.
2. NPS 1 and NPS 1-1/4: 72 inches with 3/8-inch rod.
3. NPS 1-1/2 and NPS 2: 96 inches with 3/8-inch rod.

E. Install supports for vertical copper tubing every 10 feet.

F. Provide pipe hangers within 12 inches of each change in direction and provide hangers on both sides of valves.

G. Support piping and tubing not listed in this article according to MSS SP-69 and manufacturer's written instructions.

3.4 CONNECTIONS

A. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.

B. When installing piping adjacent to equipment and machines, allow space for service and maintenance.

C. Connect domestic water piping to exterior water-service piping. Use transition fitting to join dissimilar piping materials.

D. Connect domestic water piping to water-service piping with shutoff valve; extend and connect to the following:

1. Water Heaters: Cold-water inlet and hot-water outlet piping in sizes indicated, but not smaller than sizes of water heater connections.

2. Plumbing Fixtures: Cold- and hot-water-supply piping in sizes indicated, but not smaller than that required by plumbing code. Comply with requirements for connection sizes in Division 22 plumbing fixture Sections.
3. Equipment: Cold- and hot-water-supply piping as indicated, but not smaller than equipment connections. Provide shutoff valve and union for each connection.

3.5 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Perform the following tests and inspections:

1. Piping Inspections:

   a. Do not enclose, cover, or put piping into operation until it has been inspected and approved by authorities having jurisdiction.
   b. During installation, notify authorities having jurisdiction at least one day before inspection must be made. Perform tests specified below in presence of authorities having jurisdiction:

      1) Roughing-in Inspection: Arrange for inspection of piping before concealing or closing in after roughing in and before setting fixtures.
      2) Final Inspection: Arrange for authorities having jurisdiction to observe tests specified in "Piping Tests" Subparagraph below and to ensure compliance with requirements.

   c. Re-inspection: If authorities having jurisdiction find that piping will not pass tests or inspections, make required corrections and arrange for re-inspection.
   d. Reports: Prepare inspection reports and have them signed by authorities having jurisdiction.

2. Piping Tests:

   a. Fill domestic water piping. Check components to determine that they are not air bound and that piping is full of water.
   b. Test for leaks and defects in new piping and parts of existing piping that have been altered, extended, or repaired. If testing is performed in segments, submit a separate report for each test, complete with diagram of portion of piping tested.
   c. Leave new, altered, extended, or replaced domestic water piping uncovered and unconcealed until it has been tested and approved. Expose work that was covered or concealed before it was tested.
   d. Cap and subject piping to static water pressure of 50 psig above operating pressure, without exceeding pressure rating of piping system materials. Isolate test source and allow it to stand for four hours. Leaks and loss in test pressure constitute defects that must be repaired.
   e. Repair leaks and defects with new materials, and retest piping or portion thereof until satisfactory results are obtained.

f. Prepare reports for tests and for corrective action required.

B. Domestic water piping will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.

C. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.6 ADJUSTING

A. Perform the following adjustments before operation:

1. Close drain valves, hydrants, and hose bibbs.
2. Open shutoff valves to fully open position.
3. Adjust balancing valves in hot-water-circulation return piping to provide adequate flow.

   a. Manually adjust ball-type balancing valves in hot-water-circulation return piping to provide hot-water flow in each branch.
   b. Adjust calibrated balancing valves to flows indicated.

4. Remove plugs used during testing of piping and for temporary sealing of piping during installation.
5. Remove and clean strainer screens. Close drain valves and replace drain plugs.
6. Remove filter cartridges from housings and verify that cartridges are as specified for application where used and are clean and ready for use.
7. Check plumbing specialties and verify proper settings, adjustments, and operation.

3.7 CLEANING

A. Clean and disinfect potable domestic water piping as follows:

1. Purge new piping and parts of existing piping that have been altered, extended, or repaired before using.
2. Use purging and disinfecting procedures prescribed by authorities having jurisdiction; if methods are not prescribed, use procedures described in either AWWA C651 or AWWA C652 or follow procedures described below:

   a. Flush piping system with clean, potable water until dirty water does not appear at outlets.
   b. Fill and isolate system according to either of the following:

      1) Fill system or part thereof with water/chlorine solution with at least 50 ppm of chlorine. Isolate with valves and allow to stand for 24 hours.

2) Fill system or part thereof with water/chlorine solution with at least 200 ppm of chlorine. Isolate and allow to stand for three hours.

c. Flush system with clean, potable water until no chlorine is in water coming from system after the standing time.
d. Repeat procedures if biological examination shows contamination.
e. Submit water samples in sterile bottles to authorities having jurisdiction.

B. Prepare and submit reports of purging and disinfecting activities. Include copies of water-sample approvals from authorities having jurisdiction.

C. Clean interior of domestic water piping system. Remove dirt and debris as work progresses.

3.8 PIPING SCHEDULE

A. Transition and special fittings with pressure ratings at least equal to piping rating may be used in applications below unless otherwise indicated.

B. Flanges and unions may be used for aboveground piping joints unless otherwise indicated.

C. Fitting Option: Brazed joints may be used on aboveground copper tubing.

D. Aboveground domestic water piping, NPS 2 and smaller, shall be the following:

1. Hard copper tube, ASTM B 88, Type L; wrought-copper, solder-joint fittings; and soldered joints.

END OF SECTION 22 11 16

ROCIP Project: Withhold insurance cost. Please refer to sections 00425 & 00810 for information.

SECTION 22 11 19 - DOMESTIC WATER PIPING SPECIALTIES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Vacuum breakers.
2. Backflow preventers.
3. Water pressure-reducing valves.
4. Balancing valves.
5. Temperature-actuated, water mixing valves.
6. Strainers.
7. Outlet boxes.
8. Hose bibbs.
9. Wall hydrants.
10. Drain valves.
11. Water-hammer arresters.
12. Trap-seal primer valves.

B. Related Requirements:

1. Division 22 Section "Meters and Gages for Plumbing Piping" for thermometers and pressure gages in domestic water piping.
2. Division 22 Section "Pressure Water Coolers" for water filters for water coolers.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.

B. Shop Drawings: For domestic water piping specialties.

1.4 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For domestic water piping specialties to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

ROCIP Project: Withhold insurance cost. Please refer to sections 00425 & 00810 for information.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS FOR PIPING SPECIALTIES

A. Potable-water piping and components shall comply with NSF 61 and NSF 14.

2.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Minimum Working Pressure for Domestic Water Piping Specialties: 125 psig unless otherwise indicated.

2.3 VACUUM BREAKERS

A. Pipe-Applied, Atmospheric-Type Vacuum Breakers :

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following :

    a. Ames Fire & Waterworks; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
    b. Conbraco Industries, Inc.
    c. FEBCO; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
    d. Watts; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.; Watts Regulator Company.
    e. Zurn Industries, LLC; Plumbing Products Group; Wilkins Water Control Products.

2. Standard: ASSE 1001.
3. Size: NPS 1/4 to NPS 3, as required to match connected piping.
4. Body: Bronze.
5. Inlet and Outlet Connections: Threaded.
6. Finish: Chrome plated.

2.4 BACKFLOW PREVENTERS

A. Reduced-Pressure-Principle Backflow Preventers:

1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:

    a. Ames Fire & Waterworks; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
    b. Conbraco Industries, Inc.
    c. FEBCO; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
    d. Watts; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.; Watts Regulator Company.

e. Zurn Industries, LLC; Plumbing Products Group; Wilkins Water Control Products.

2. Standard: ASSE 1013.
3. Operation: Continuous-pressure applications.
4. Pressure Loss: 12 psig maximum, through middle third of flow range.
5. Size: To match pipe size.
6. Body: Bronze for NPS 2 and smaller; cast iron with interior lining that complies with AWWA C550 or that is FDA approved or stainless steel for NPS 2-1/2 and larger.
7. End Connections: Threaded for NPS 2 and smaller; flanged or rolled-grooved for NPS 2-1/2 and larger.
8. Configuration: Designed for horizontal, straight-through or vertical-inlet, horizontal-center-section, and vertical-outlet flow.
9. Accessories:

   a. Valves NPS 2 and Smaller: Ball type with threaded ends on inlet and outlet.
   b. Valves NPS 2-1/2 and Larger: Outside-screw and yoke-gate type with flanged ends on inlet and outlet.
   c. Air-Gap Fitting: ASME A112.1.2, matching backflow-preventer connection.

B. Dual-Check-Valve Backflow Preventers:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

   a. Conbraco Industries, Inc.
   b. FEBCO; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
   c. Watts; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.; Watts Regulator Company.
   d. Zurn Industries, LLC; Plumbing Products Group; Wilkins Water Control Products.

2. Standard: ASSE 1024.
3. Operation: Continuous-pressure applications.
4. Size: Same as connecting pipe size shown on Drawings.
5. Body: Bronze with union inlet.

C. Double-Check, Detector-Assembly Backflow Preventers:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

   a. Ames Fire & Waterworks; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
   b. Conbraco Industries, Inc.
   c. FEBCO; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.

d. Watts; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.; Watts Regulator Company.
e. Zurn Industries, LLC; Plumbing Products Group; Wilkins Water Control Products.

2. Standard: ASSE 1048 and is FM Global approved or UL listed.
3. Operation: Continuous-pressure applications.
4. Pressure Loss: 5 psig maximum, through middle third of flow range.
5. Body: Cast iron with interior lining that complies with AWWA C550 or that is FDA approved, or Stainless steel.
6. End Connections: Flanged.
7. Accessories:

a. Valves: Outside-screw and yoke-gate type with flanged ends on inlet and outlet.
b. Bypass: With displacement-type water meter, shutoff valves, and reduced-pressure backflow preventer.

D. Hose-Connection Backflow Preventers :

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

a. Conbraco Industries, Inc.
b. Watts; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.; Watts Regulator Company.
c. Woodford Manufacturing Company; a division of WCM Industries, Inc.

2. Standard: ASSE 1052.
3. Operation: Up to 10-foot head of water back pressure.
4. Inlet Size: NPS 1/2 or NPS 3/4.
5. Outlet Size: Garden-hose thread complying with ASME B1.20.7.
6. Capacity: At least 3-gpm flow.

2.5 WATER PRESSURE-REDUCING VALVES

A. Water Regulators:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

a. Conbraco Industries, Inc.
b. Watts; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.; Watts Regulator Company.
c. Zurn Industries, LLC; Plumbing Products Group; Wilkins Water Control Products.

2. Standard: ASSE 1003.
3. Pressure Rating: Initial working pressure of 150 psig.
4. Design Outlet Pressure Setting: 65 psig for low-flow valve; 55 psig for high-flow valve.
5. Body: Bronze for NPS 2 and smaller; cast iron with interior lining that complies with AWWA C550 or that is FDA approved for NPS 2-1/2 and NPS 3.
6. Integral Strainer: Stainless steel.
7. Valves for Booster Heater Water Supply: Include integral bypass.
8. End Connections: Threaded for NPS 2 and smaller; flanged for NPS 2-1/2 and NPS 3.

2.6 BALANCING VALVES

A. Copper-Alloy Calibrated Balancing Valves:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

   a. Armstrong International, Inc.
   b. ITT Corporation; Bell & Gossett Div.
   c. NIBCO Inc.
   d. TACO Incorporated.
   e. Watts; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.; Watts Regulator Company.

2. Type: Ball or Y-pattern globe valve with two readout ports and memory-setting indicator.
3. Body: Brass or bronze.
4. Size: Same as connected piping, but not larger than NPS 2.
5. Accessories: Meter hoses, fittings, valves, differential pressure meter, and carrying case.

2.7 TEMPERATURE-ACTUATED, WATER MIXING VALVES

A. Primary, Thermostatic, Water Mixing Valves:

1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:

   a. Armstrong International, Inc.
   b. Lawler Manufacturing Company, Inc.
   c. Leonard Valve Company.
   d. Powers; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
   e. Symmons Industries, Inc.

2. Standard: ASSE 1017.

3. Pressure Rating: 125 psig minimum unless otherwise indicated.
4. Type: Exposed-mounted, thermostatically controlled, water mixing valve.
5. Material: Bronze body with corrosion-resistant interior components.
6. Connections: Threaded union inlets and outlet.
7. Accessories: Manual temperature control, check stops on hot- and cold-water supplies, and adjustable, temperature-control handle.
8. Tempered-Water Setting: 120 deg F.
9. Valve Finish: Chrome plated.
10. Piping Finish: Copper.

B. Individual-Fixture, Water Tempering Valves:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

   a. Conbraco Industries, Inc.
   b. Lawler Manufacturing Company, Inc.
   c. Leonard Valve Company.
   d. Powers; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
   e. Watts; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.; Watts Regulator Company.
   f. Zurn Industries, LLC; Plumbing Products Group; Wilkins Water Control Products.

2. Standard: ASSE 1016 and ASSE 1070, thermostatically controlled, water tempering valve.
3. Pressure Rating: 125 psig minimum unless otherwise indicated.
4. Body: Bronze body with corrosion-resistant interior components.
5. Temperature Control: Adjustable.
6. Inlets and Outlet: Threaded.
7. Finish: Rough or chrome-plated bronze.
8. Tempered-Water Setting: 110 deg F.
9. Tempered-Water Minimum Design Flow Rate: 0.3 gpm.

2.8 STRAINERS FOR DOMESTIC WATER PIPING

A. Y-Pattern Strainers:

1. Pressure Rating: 125 psig minimum unless otherwise indicated.
2. Body: Bronze for NPS 2 and smaller; cast iron with interior lining that complies with AWWA C550 or that is FDA approved, epoxy coated and for NPS 2-1/2 and larger.
3. End Connections: Threaded for NPS 2 and smaller; flanged or rolled-grooved for NPS 2-1/2 and larger.
4. Screen: Stainless steel with round perforations unless otherwise indicated.
5. Drain: Factory-installed, hose-end drain valve.

2.9 OUTLET BOXES

A. Clothes Washer Outlet Boxes:

1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:

   a. Guy Gray Manufacturing Co., Inc.
   b. Oatey.
   c. Sioux Chief Manufacturing.

2. Mounting: Recessed.
3. Faucet: Combination valved fitting or separate hot- and cold-water valved fittings complying with ASME A112.18.1. Include garden-hose thread complying with ASME B1.20.7 on outlets.
4. Supply Shutoff Fittings: NPS 1/2 gate, globe, or ball valves and NPS 1/2 copper, water tubing.
5. Drain: NPS 2 standpipe and P-trap for direct waste connection to drainage piping.
6. Inlet Hoses: Two 60-inch- long, rubber household clothes washer inlet hoses with female, garden-hose-thread couplings. Include rubber washers.
7. Drain Hose: One 48-inch- long, rubber household clothes washer drain hose with hooked end.

B. Icemaker Outlet Boxes:

1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:

   a. Guy Gray Manufacturing Co., Inc.
   b. Oatey.
   c. Sioux Chief Manufacturing.

2. Mounting: Recessed.
3. Faucet: Valved fitting complying with ASME A112.18.1. Include NPS 1/2 or smaller copper tube outlet.
4. Supply Shutoff Fitting: NPS 1/2 gate, globe, or ball valve and NPS 1/2 copper, water tubing.

2.10 HOSE BIBBS

A. Hose Bibbs:

1. Standard: ASME A112.18.1 for sediment faucets.
2. Body Material: Bronze.
3. Seat: Bronze, replaceable.
4. Supply Connections: NPS 1/2 or NPS 3/4 threaded or solder-joint inlet.
5. Outlet Connection: Garden-hose thread complying with ASME B1.20.7.

6. Pressure Rating: 125 psig.
7. Vacuum Breaker: Integral or field-installation, nonremovable, drainable, hose-connection vacuum breaker complying with ASSE 1011.
8. Finish for Equipment Rooms: Rough bronze, or chrome or nickel plated.
9. Finish for Service Areas: Chrome or nickel plated.
10. Finish for Finished Rooms: Chrome or nickel plated.
11. Operation for Equipment Rooms: Wheel handle or operating key.
12. Operation for Finished Rooms: Operating key.
13. Include operating key with each operating-key hose bibb.
14. Include integral wall flange with each chrome- or nickel-plated hose bibb.

2.11 WALL HYDRANTS

A. Non-freeze Wall Hydrants:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

   a. Woodford Manufacturing Company; a division of WCM Industries, Inc.

2. Standard: ASME A112.21.3M for concealed -outlet, self-draining wall hydrants.
3. Pressure Rating: 125 psig.
4. Operation: Loose key.
5. Casing and Operating Rod: Of length required to match wall thickness. Include wall clamp.
6. Inlet: NPS 3/4 or NPS 1.
7. Outlet: Concealed, with integral vacuum breaker and garden-hose thread complying with ASME B1.20.7.
8. Box: Deep, flush mounted with cover.
9. Box and Cover Finish: Polished nickel bronze.
10. Operating Keys(s): Two with each wall hydrant.

2.12 WATER-HAMMER ARRESTERS

A. Water-Hammer Arresters:

1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:

   a. AMTROL, Inc.
   b. Josam Company.
   c. MIFAB, Inc.
   d. Precision Plumbing Products, Inc.
   e. Sioux Chief Manufacturing Company, Inc.
   f. Smith, Jay R. Mfg. Co.; Division of Smith Industries, Inc.

g. Tyler Pipe; Wade Div.
h. Watts Drainage Products.
i. Zurn Industries, LLC; Plumbing Products Group; Specification Drainage Products.

2. Standard: ASSE 1010 or PDI-WH 201.
3. Type: Copper tube with piston.
4. Size: ASSE 1010, Sizes AA and A through F, or PDI-WH 201, Sizes A through F.

2.13 TRAP-SEAL PRIMER DEVICE

A. Supply-Type, Trap-Seal Primer Device:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

a. MIFAB, Inc.
b. Precision Plumbing Products, Inc.
c. Sioux Chief Manufacturing Company, Inc.
d. Smith, Jay R. Mfg. Co.; Division of Smith Industries, Inc.
e. Watts; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.; Watts Regulator Company.

2. Standard: ASSE 1018.
3. Pressure Rating: 125 psig minimum.
4. Body: Bronze.
5. Inlet and Outlet Connections: NPS 1/2 threaded, union, or solder joint.
6. Gravity Drain Outlet Connection: NPS 1/2 threaded or solder joint.
7. Finish: Chrome plated, or rough bronze for units used with pipe or tube that is not chrome finished.

B. Drainage-Type, Trap-Seal Primer Device:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

a. Smith, Jay R. Mfg. Co.; Division of Smith Industries, Inc.

2. Standard: ASSE 1044, lavatory P-trap with NPS 3/8 minimum, trap makeup connection.
3. Size: NPS 1-1/4 minimum.
4. Material: Chrome-plated, cast brass.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

A. Install backflow preventers in each water supply to mechanical equipment and systems and to other equipment and water systems that may be sources of contamination. Comply with authorities having jurisdiction.

1. Locate backflow preventers in same room as connected equipment or system.
2. Install drain for backflow preventers with atmospheric-vent drain connection with air-gap fitting, fixed air-gap fitting, or equivalent positive pipe separation of at least two pipe diameters in drain piping and pipe-to-floor drain. Locate air-gap device attached to or under backflow preventer. Simple air breaks are unacceptable for this application.
3. Do not install bypass piping around backflow preventers.

B. Install water regulators with inlet and outlet shutoff valves. Install pressure gages on inlet and outlet.

C. Install balancing valves in locations where they can easily be adjusted.

D. Install temperature-actuated, water mixing valves with check stops or shutoff valves on inlets and with shutoff valve on outlet.

1. Install cabinet-type units recessed in or surface mounted on wall as specified.

E. Install Y-pattern strainers for water on supply side of each control valve, water pressure-reducing valve, solenoid valve, and pump.

F. Install outlet boxes recessed in wall or surface mounted on wall. Install 2-by-4-inch fire-retardant-treated-wood blocking, wall reinforcement between studs. Comply with requirements for fire-retardant-treated-wood blocking in Division 06 Section "Rough Carpentry."

G. Install water-hammer arresters in water piping according to PDI-WH 201.

H. Install supply-type, trap-seal primer valves with outlet piping pitched down toward drain trap a minimum of 1 percent, and connect to floor-drain body, trap, or inlet fitting. Adjust valve for proper flow.

I. Install drainage-type, trap-seal primer valves as lavatory trap with outlet piping pitched down toward drain trap a minimum of 1 percent, and connect to floor-drain body, trap, or inlet fitting.

3.2 CONNECTIONS

A. Comply with requirements for piping specified in other Division 22 Sections. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.

B. Comply with requirements for ground equipment in Division 26 Section "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems."

C. Fire-retardant-treated-wood blocking is specified in Division 26 Section "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables" for electrical connections.

3.3 LABELING AND IDENTIFYING

A. Equipment Nameplates and Signs: Install engraved plastic-laminate equipment nameplate or sign on or near each of the following:

1. Reduced-pressure-principle backflow preventers.
2. Dual-check-valve backflow preventers.
3. Double-check, detector-assembly backflow preventers.
4. Water pressure-reducing valves.
5. Calibrated balancing valves.
6. Primary, thermostatic, water mixing valves.
7. Primary water tempering valves.
8. Outlet boxes.
9. Supply-type, trap-seal primer valves.

B. Distinguish among multiple units, inform operator of operational requirements, indicate safety and emergency precautions, and warn of hazards and improper operations, in addition to identifying unit. Nameplates and signs are specified in Division 22 Section "Identification for Plumbing Piping and Equipment."

3.4 ADJUSTING

A. Set field-adjustable pressure set points of water pressure-reducing valves.

B. Set field-adjustable flow set points of balancing valves.

C. Set field-adjustable temperature set points of temperature-actuated, water mixing valves.

END OF SECTION 22 11 19

ROCIP Project: Withhold insurance cost. Please refer to sections 00425 & 00810 for information.

SECTION 22 11 23 - DOMESTIC WATER PUMPS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. In-line, sealless centrifugal pumps.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. Low Voltage: As defined in NFPA 70 for circuits and equipment operating at less than 50 V or for remote-control, signaling power-limited circuits.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Include materials of construction, rated capacities, certified performance curves with operating points plotted on curves, operating characteristics, electrical characteristics, and furnished specialties and accessories.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

B. UL Compliance: Comply with UL 778 for motor-operated water pumps.

1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Retain shipping flange protective covers and protective coatings during storage.

B. Protect bearings and couplings against damage.

C. Comply with pump manufacturer's written rigging instructions for handling.

ROCIP Project: Withhold insurance cost. Please refer to sections 00425 & 00810 for information.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 IN-LINE, SEALLESS CENTRIFUGAL PUMPS

A. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:

1. Armstrong Pumps Inc.
2. Bell & Gossett Domestic Pump; ITT Corporation.
3. Grundfos Pumps Corp.
4. TACO Incorporated.

B. Description: Factory-assembled and -tested, in-line, close-coupled, canned-motor, sealless, overhung-impeller centrifugal pumps.

C. Pump Construction:

1. Pump and Motor Assembly: Hermetically sealed, replaceable-cartridge type with motor and impeller on common shaft and designed for installation with pump and motor shaft horizontal.
2. Casing: Bronze, stainless steel, or cast iron; with threaded or companion-flange connections.
3. Impeller: Non-metallic.
4. Motor: Single speed, unless otherwise indicated.

D. Capacities and Characteristics: Refer to Plumbing Equipment Schedule.

2.2 MOTORS

A. Comply with NEMA designation, temperature rating, service factor, enclosure type, and efficiency requirements for motors specified in Division 22 Section "Common Motor Requirements for Plumbing Equipment."

1. Motor Sizes: Minimum size as indicated. If not indicated, large enough so driven load will not require motor to operate in service factor range above 1.0.
2. Controllers, Electrical Devices, and Wiring: Comply with requirements for electrical devices and connections specified in Division 26 Sections.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine roughing-in of domestic-water-piping system to verify actual locations of connections before pump installation.

3.2 PUMP INSTALLATION

A. Comply with HI 1.4.

B. Install in-line, sealless centrifugal pumps with shaft horizontal unless otherwise indicated.

C. Install continuous-thread hanger rods and spring hangers of size required to support pump weight.

1. Comply with requirements for hangers and supports specified in Division 22 Section "Hangers and Supports for Plumbing Piping and Equipment."

3.3 CONNECTIONS

A. Comply with requirements for piping specified in Division 22 Section "Domestic Water Piping." Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.

B. Install piping adjacent to pumps to allow service and maintenance.

C. Connect domestic water piping to pumps. Install suction and discharge piping equal to or greater than size of pump nozzles.

1. Install shutoff valve and strainer on suction side of each pump, and check, shutoff, and throttling valves on discharge side of each pump. Install valves same size as connected piping. Comply with requirements for valves specified in Division 22 Section "General-Duty Valves for Plumbing Piping" and comply with requirements for strainers specified in Division 22 Section "Domestic Water Piping Specialties."

D. Comply with Division 26 Sections for electrical connections, and wiring methods.

3.4 IDENTIFICATION

A. Comply with requirements for identification specified in Division 22 Section "Identification for Plumbing Piping and Equipment" for identification of pumps.

END OF SECTION 22 11 23

ROCIP Project: Withhold insurance cost. Please refer to sections 00425 & 00810 for information.

SECTION 22 13 16 - SANITARY WASTE AND VENT PIPING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Pipe, tube, and fittings.
2. Specialty pipe fittings.

1.3 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Components and installation shall be capable of withstanding the following minimum working pressure unless otherwise indicated:

1. Soil, Waste, and Vent Piping: 10-foot head of water.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Piping materials shall bear label, stamp, or other markings of specified testing agency.

1.6 PROJECT CONDITIONS

A. Interruption of Existing Sanitary Waste Service: Do not interrupt service to facilities occupied by Owner or others unless permitted under the following conditions and then only after arranging to provide temporary service according to requirements indicated:

1. Notify Construction Manager no fewer than two days in advance of proposed interruption of sanitary waste service.
2. Do not proceed with interruption of sanitary waste service without Construction Manager's written permission.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PIPING MATERIALS

A. Comply with requirements in "Piping Schedule" Article for applications of pipe, tube, fitting materials, and joining methods for specific services, service locations, and pipe sizes.

2.2 HUB-AND-SPIGOT, CAST-IRON SOIL PIPE AND FITTINGS

A. Pipe and Fittings: ASTM A 74, Service class.

1. Pipe and fittings shall be marked with the collective trademark of the Cast Iron Soil Pipe Institute and be listed by NSF International.

B. Gaskets: ASTM C 564 and ASTM C 1563, rubber.

2.3 HUBLESS, CAST-IRON SOIL PIPE AND FITTINGS

A. Pipe and Fittings: ASTM A 888 or CISPI 301.

1. Pipe and fittings shall be marked with the collective trademark of the Cast Iron Soil Pipe Institute and be listed by NSF International.

B. Heavy-Duty, Hubless-Piping Couplings:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

   a. ANACO-Husky.
   b. Mission Rubber Company; a division of MCP Industries, Inc.
   c. Tyler Pipe.

2. Standards: ASTM C 1277 and ASTM C 1540.
3. Description: Stainless-steel shield with stainless-steel bands and tightening devices; and ASTM C 564, rubber sleeve with integral, center pipe stop.

2.4 SPECIALTY PIPE FITTINGS

A. Transition Couplings:

1. General Requirements: Fitting or device for joining piping with small differences in OD's or of different materials. Include end connections same size as and compatible with pipes to be joined.

2. Fitting-Type Transition Couplings: Manufactured piping coupling or specified piping system fitting.
3. Shielded, Nonpressure Transition Couplings:

    a. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

        1) Cascade Waterworks Mfg. Co.
        2) Mission Rubber Company; a division of MCP Industries, Inc.

    b. Standard: ASTM C 1460.
    c. Description: Elastomeric or rubber sleeve with full-length, corrosion-resistant outer shield and corrosion-resistant-metal tension band and tightening mechanism on each end.

B. Dielectric Fittings:

1. General Requirements: Assembly of copper alloy and ferrous materials with separating nonconductive insulating material. Include end connections compatible with pipes to be joined.
2. Dielectric Unions:

    a. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

        1) Watts Regulator Co.; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
        2) Wilkins; a Zurn company.

    b. Description:

        1) Standard: ASSE 1079.
        2) Pressure Rating: 125 psig minimum at 180 deg F.
        3) End Connections: Solder-joint copper alloy and threaded ferrous.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EARTH MOVING

A. Comply with requirements for excavating, trenching, and backfilling specified in Division 31 Section "Earth Moving."

3.2 PIPING INSTALLATION

A. Drawing plans, schematics, and diagrams indicate general location and arrangement of piping systems. Indicated locations and arrangements were used to size pipe and calculate friction loss, expansion, pump sizing, and other design considerations. Install piping as indicated unless deviations to layout are approved on coordination drawings.

B. Install piping in concealed locations unless otherwise indicated and except in equipment rooms and service areas.

C. Install piping indicated to be exposed and piping in equipment rooms and service areas at right angles or parallel to building walls. Diagonal runs are prohibited unless specifically indicated otherwise.

D. Install piping above accessible ceilings to allow sufficient space for ceiling panel removal.

E. Install piping to permit valve servicing.

F. Install piping at indicated slopes.

G. Install piping free of sags and bends.

H. Install fittings for changes in direction and branch connections.

I. Install piping to allow application of insulation.

J. Make changes in direction for soil and waste drainage and vent piping using appropriate branches, bends, and long-sweep bends. Sanitary tees and short-sweep 1/4 bends may be used on vertical stacks if change in direction of flow is from horizontal to vertical. Use long-turn, double Y-branch and 1/8-bend fittings if two fixtures are installed back to back or side by side with common drain pipe. Straight tees, elbows, and crosses may be used on vent lines. Do not change direction of flow more than 90 degrees. Use proper size of standard increasers and reducers if pipes of different sizes are connected. Reducing size of drainage piping in direction of flow is prohibited.

K. Lay buried building drainage piping beginning at low point of each system. Install true to grades and alignment indicated, with unbroken continuity of invert. Place hub ends of piping upstream. Install required gaskets according to manufacturer's written instructions for use of lubricants, cements, and other installation requirements. Maintain swab in piping and pull past each joint as completed.

L. Install soil and waste drainage and vent piping at the following minimum slopes unless otherwise indicated:

1. Horizontal Sanitary Drainage Piping: 2 percent downward in direction of flow for piping NPS 3 and smaller; 1 percent downward in direction of flow for piping NPS 4 and larger

2. Vent Piping: 1 percent down toward vertical fixture vent or toward vent stack.

M. Install cast-iron soil piping according to CISPI's "Cast Iron Soil Pipe and Fittings Handbook," Chapter IV, "Installation of Cast Iron Soil Pipe and Fittings."

N. Plumbing Specialties:

1. Install cleanouts at grade and extend to where building sanitary drains connect to building sanitary sewers in sanitary drainage gravity-flow piping. Install cleanout fitting with closure plug inside the building in sanitary drainage force-main piping. Comply with requirements for cleanouts specified in Division 22 Section "Sanitary Waste Piping Specialties."
2. Install drains in sanitary drainage gravity-flow piping. Comply with requirements for drains specified in Division 22 Section "Sanitary Waste Piping Specialties."

O. Do not enclose, cover, or put piping into operation until it is inspected and approved by authorities having jurisdiction.

P. Install sleeves for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors. Comply with requirements for sleeves specified in Division 22 Section "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for Plumbing Piping."

Q. Install sleeve seals for piping penetrations of concrete walls and slabs. Comply with requirements for sleeve seals specified in Division 22 Section "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for Plumbing Piping."

R. Install escutcheons for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors. Comply with requirements for escutcheons specified in Division 22 Section "Escutcheons for Plumbing Piping."

3.3 JOINT CONSTRUCTION

A. Join hub-and-spigot, cast-iron soil piping with gasket joints according to CISPI's "Cast Iron Soil Pipe and Fittings Handbook" for compression joints.

B. Join hubless, cast-iron soil piping according to CISPI 310 and CISPI's "Cast Iron Soil Pipe and Fittings Handbook" for hubless-piping coupling joints.

3.4 SPECIALTY PIPE FITTING INSTALLATION

A. Transition Couplings:

1. Install transition couplings at joints of piping with small differences in OD's.
2. In Drainage Piping: Shielded, nonpressure transition couplings.

B. Dielectric Fittings:

1. Install dielectric fittings in piping at connections of dissimilar metal piping and tubing.
2. Dielectric Fittings for NPS 2 and Smaller: Use dielectric unions.

3.5 HANGER AND SUPPORT INSTALLATION

A. Comply with requirements for pipe hanger and support devices and installation specified in Division 22 Section "Hangers and Supports for Plumbing Piping and Equipment."

1. Install carbon-steel pipe hangers for horizontal piping in noncorrosive environments.
2. Install carbon-steel pipe support clamps for vertical piping in noncorrosive environments.
3. Vertical Piping: MSS Type 8 or Type 42, clamps.
4. Install individual, straight, horizontal piping runs:

   a. 100 Feet and Less: MSS Type 1, adjustable, steel clevis hangers.

5. Base of Vertical Piping: MSS Type 52, spring hangers.

B. Support horizontal piping and tubing within 12 inches of each fitting and coupling.

C. Support vertical piping and tubing at base and at each floor.

D. Rod diameter may be reduced one size for double-rod hangers, with 3/8-inch minimum rods.

E. Install hangers for cast-iron soil piping with the following maximum horizontal spacing and minimum rod diameters:

1. NPS 1-1/2 and NPS 2: 60 inches with 3/8-inch rod.
2. NPS 3: 60 inches with 1/2-inch rod.
3. NPS 4 and NPS 5: 60 inches with 5/8-inch rod.
4. Spacing for 10-foot lengths may be increased to 10 feet. Spacing for fittings is limited to 60 inches.

F. Install supports for vertical cast-iron soil piping every 15 feet.

G. Support piping and tubing not listed above according to MSS SP-69 and manufacturer's written instructions.

3.6 CONNECTIONS

A. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.

B. Connect soil and waste piping to exterior sanitary sewerage piping. Use transition fitting to join dissimilar piping materials.

C. Connect drainage and vent piping to the following:

1. Plumbing Fixtures: Connect drainage piping in sizes indicated, but not smaller than required by plumbing code.
2. Plumbing Specialties: Connect drainage and vent piping in sizes indicated, but not smaller than required by plumbing code.
3. Install test tees (wall cleanouts) in conductors near floor and floor cleanouts with cover flush with floor.

D. Where installing piping adjacent to equipment, allow space for service and maintenance of equipment.

E. Make connections according to the following unless otherwise indicated:

1. Install unions, in piping NPS 2 and smaller, adjacent to each valve and at final connection to each piece of equipment.

3.7 IDENTIFICATION

A. Identify exposed sanitary waste and vent piping. Comply with requirements for identification specified in Division 22 Section "Identification for Plumbing Piping and Equipment."

3.8 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. During installation, notify authorities having jurisdiction at least 24 hours before inspection must be made. Perform tests specified below in presence of authorities having jurisdiction.

1. Roughing-in Inspection: Arrange for inspection of piping before concealing or closing-in after roughing-in and before setting fixtures.
2. Final Inspection: Arrange for final inspection by authorities having jurisdiction to observe tests specified below and to ensure compliance with requirements.

B. Re-inspection: If authorities having jurisdiction find that piping will not pass test or inspection, make required corrections and arrange for re-inspection.

C. Reports: Prepare inspection reports and have them signed by authorities having jurisdiction.

D. Test sanitary drainage and vent piping according to procedures of authorities having jurisdiction or, in absence of published procedures, as follows:

1. Test for leaks and defects in new piping and parts of existing piping that have been altered, extended, or repaired. If testing is performed in segments, submit separate report for each test, complete with diagram of portion of piping tested.
2. Leave uncovered and unconcealed new, altered, extended, or replaced drainage and vent piping until it has been tested and approved. Expose work that was covered or concealed before it was tested.
3. Roughing-in Plumbing Test Procedure: Test drainage and vent piping except outside leaders on completion of roughing-in. Close openings in piping system and fill with water to point of overflow, but not less than 10-foot head of water. From 15 minutes before inspection starts to completion of inspection, water level must not drop. Inspect joints for leaks.
4. Finished Plumbing Test Procedure: After plumbing fixtures have been set and traps filled with water, test connections and prove they are gastight and watertight. Plug vent-stack openings on roof and building drains where they leave building. Introduce air into piping system equal to pressure of 1-inch wg . Use U-tube or manometer inserted in trap of water closet to measure this pressure. Air pressure must remain constant without introducing additional air throughout period of inspection. Inspect plumbing fixture connections for gas and water leaks.
5. Repair leaks and defects with new materials and retest piping, or portion thereof, until satisfactory results are obtained.
6. Prepare reports for tests and required corrective action.

3.9 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

A. Clean interior of piping. Remove dirt and debris as work progresses.

B. Protect drains during remainder of construction period to avoid clogging with dirt and debris and to prevent damage from traffic and construction work.

C. Place plugs in ends of uncompleted piping at end of day and when work stops.

3.10 PIPING SCHEDULE

A. Flanges and unions may be used on aboveground pressure piping unless otherwise indicated.

B. Aboveground, soil, waste, and vent piping shall be the following:

1. Hubless, cast-iron soil pipe and fittings; heavy-duty hubless-piping couplings; and coupled joints.

ROCIP Project: Withhold insurance cost. Please refer to sections 00425 & 00810 for information.

C. Underground, soil, waste, and vent piping shall be the following:

1. Service class, cast-iron soil piping; gaskets; and gasketed joints.

END OF SECTION 22 13 16

ROCIP Project: Withhold insurance cost. Please refer to sections 00425 & 00810 for information.

SECTION 22 13 19 - SANITARY WASTE PIPING SPECIALTIES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Cleanouts.
2. Floor drains.
3. Roof flashing assemblies.
4. Miscellaneous sanitary drainage piping specialties.
5. Flashing materials.

B. Related Requirements:

1. Division 22 Section "Storm Drainage Piping Specialties" for storm drainage piping inside the building, drainage piping specialties, and drains.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Drainage piping specialties shall bear label, stamp, or other markings of specified testing agency.

1.5 COORDINATION

A. Coordinate size and location of concrete bases. Cast anchor-bolt inserts into bases. Concrete, reinforcement, and formwork requirements are specified in Division 03.

B. Coordinate size and location of roof penetrations.

ROCIP Project: Withhold insurance cost. Please refer to sections 00425 & 00810 for information.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 CLEANOUTS

A. Metal Floor Cleanouts:

1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide the product indicated on Drawings or a comparable product by one of the following:

   a. Josam Company; Josam Div.
   b. Sioux Chief Manufacturing Company, Inc.
   c. Smith, Jay R. Mfg. Co.; Division of Smith Industries, Inc.
   d. Tyler Pipe; Wade Div.
   e. Watts Drainage Products Inc.
   f. Zurn Plumbing Products Group; Specification Drainage Operation.

2. Standard: ASME A112.36.2M for adjustable housing cleanout.
3. Size: Same as connected branch.
4. Type: Adjustable housing.
5. Body or Ferrule: Cast iron.
6. Clamping Device: Required.
7. Outlet Connection: As required to match connected piping.
8. Closure: Brass plug with straight threads and gasket.
9. Adjustable Housing Material: Cast iron with set-screws or other device.
10. Frame and Cover Material and Finish: Nickel-bronze, copper alloy.
11. Frame and Cover Shape: Round.
12. Top Loading Classification: Heavy Duty.
13. Riser: ASTM A 74, Extra-Heavy class, cast-iron drainage pipe fitting and riser to cleanout.

B. Cast-Iron Wall Cleanouts:

1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide the product indicated on Drawings or a comparable product by one of the following:

   a. Josam Company; Josam Div.
   b. MIFAB, Inc.
   c. Sioux Chief Manufacturing Company, Inc.
   d. Smith, Jay R. Mfg. Co.; Division of Smith Industries, Inc.
   e. Tyler Pipe; Wade Div.
   f. Watts Drainage Products Inc.
   g. Zurn Plumbing Products Group; Specification Drainage Operation.

2. Standard: ASME A112.36.2M. Include wall access.
3. Size: Same as connected drainage piping.

4. Body: Hubless, cast-iron soil pipe test tee as required to match connected piping.
5. Closure: Countersunk or raised-head, brass plug.
6. Closure Plug Size: Same as or not more than one size smaller than cleanout size.
7. Wall Access: Round, flat, chrome-plated brass or stainless-steel cover plate with screw.

2.2 FLOOR DRAINS

A. Cast-Iron Floor Drains:

1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide the product indicated on Drawings or a comparable product by one of the following:

   a. Josam Company; Josam Div.
   b. MIFAB, Inc.
   c. Sioux Chief Manufacturing
   d. Smith, Jay R. Mfg. Co.; Division of Smith Industries, Inc.
   e. Tyler Pipe; Wade Div.
   f. Watts Drainage Products Inc.
   g. Zurn Plumbing Products Group; Specification Drainage Operation.

2. Standard: ASME A112.6.3.
3. Pattern: Floor drain.
4. Body Material: Gray iron.
5. Anchor Flange: Required.
6. Clamping Device: Required.
7. Coating on Interior and Exposed Exterior Surfaces: Acid-resistant enamel.
8. Top or Strainer Material: Nickel bronze.
9. Top of Body and Strainer Finish: Nickel bronze.
10. Inlet Fitting: Gray iron, with threaded inlet and threaded or spigot outlet, and trap-seal primer valve connection.

2.3 ROOF FLASHING ASSEMBLIES

A. Roof Flashing Assemblies:

1. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

   a. Acorn Engineering Company; Elmdor/Stoneman Div.
   b. Thaler Metal Industries Ltd.

B. Description: Manufactured assembly made of 6.0-lb/sq. ft. , 0.0938-inch- thick, lead flashing collar and skirt extending at least 10 inches from pipe, with galvanized-steel boot reinforcement and counterflashing fitting.

1. Open-Top Vent Cap: Without cap.

2.4 MISCELLANEOUS SANITARY DRAINAGE PIPING SPECIALTIES

A. Deep-Seal Traps:

1. Description: Cast-iron or bronze casting, with inlet and outlet matching connected piping and cleanout trap-seal primer valve connection.
2. Size: Same as connected waste piping.

a. NPS 2: 4-inch- minimum water seal.
b. NPS 2-1/2 and Larger: 5-inch- minimum water seal.

B. Floor-Drain, Trap-Seal Primer Fittings:

1. Description: Cast iron, with threaded inlet and threaded or spigot outlet, and trap-seal primer valve connection.
2. Size: Same as floor drain outlet with NPS 1/2 side inlet.

C. Stack Flashing Fittings:

1. Description: Counterflashing-type, cast-iron fitting, with bottom recess for terminating roof membrane, and with threaded or hub top for extending vent pipe.
2. Size: Same as connected stack vent or vent stack.

2.5 FLASHING MATERIALS

A. Lead Sheet: ASTM B 749, Type L51121, copper bearing, with the following minimum weights and thicknesses, unless otherwise indicated:

1. General Use: 4.0-lb/sq. ft., 0.0625-inch thickness.
2. Vent Pipe Flashing: 3.0-lb/sq. ft., 0.0469-inch thickness.

B. Copper Sheet: ASTM B 152/B 152M, of the following minimum weights and thicknesses, unless otherwise indicated:

1. General Applications: 12 oz./sq. ft.
2. Vent Pipe Flashing: 8 oz./sq. ft.

C. Zinc-Coated Steel Sheet: ASTM A 653/A 653M, with 0.20 percent copper content and 0.04-inch minimum thickness, unless otherwise indicated. Include G90 hot-dip galvanized, mill-phosphatized finish for painting if indicated.

D. Fasteners: Metal compatible with material and substrate being fastened.

E. Metal Accessories: Sheet metal strips, clamps, anchoring devices, and similar accessory units required for installation; matching or compatible with material being installed.

F. Solder: ASTM B 32, lead-free alloy.

G. Bituminous Coating: SSPC-Paint 12, solvent-type, bituminous mastic.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

A. Install cleanouts in aboveground piping and building drain piping according to the following, unless otherwise indicated:

1. Size same as drainage piping up to NPS 4. Use NPS 4 for larger drainage piping unless larger cleanout is indicated.
2. Locate at each change in direction of piping greater than 45 degrees.
3. Locate at minimum intervals of 50 feet for piping NPS 4 and smaller and 100 feet for larger piping.
4. Locate at base of each vertical soil and waste stack.

B. For floor cleanouts for piping below floors, install cleanout deck plates with top flush with finished floor.

C. For cleanouts located in concealed piping, install cleanout wall access covers, of types indicated, with frame and cover flush with finished wall.

D. Install floor drains at low points of surface areas to be drained. Set grates of drains flush with finished floor, unless otherwise indicated.

1. Position floor drains for easy access and maintenance.
2. Set floor drains below elevation of surrounding finished floor to allow floor drainage. Set with grates depressed according to the following drainage area radii:

a. Radius, 30 Inches or Less: Equivalent to 1 percent slope, but not less than 1/4-inch total depression.
b. Radius, 30 to 60 Inches: Equivalent to 1 percent slope.
c. Radius, 60 Inches or Larger: Equivalent to 1 percent slope, but not greater than 1-inch total depression.

3. Install floor-drain flashing collar or flange so no leakage occurs between drain and adjoining flooring. Maintain integrity of waterproof membranes where penetrated.
4. Install individual traps for floor drains connected to sanitary building drain, unless otherwise indicated.

E. Install roof flashing assemblies on sanitary stack vents and vent stacks that extend through roof.

F. Install flashing fittings on sanitary stack vents and vent stacks that extend through roof.

G. Install deep-seal traps on floor drains and other waste outlets, if indicated.

H. Install floor-drain, trap-seal primer fittings on inlet to floor drains that require trap-seal primer connection.

1. Exception: Fitting may be omitted if trap has trap-seal primer connection.
2. Size: Same as floor drain inlet.

I. Install wood-blocking reinforcement for wall-mounting-type specialties.

J. Install traps on plumbing specialty drain outlets. Omit traps on indirect wastes unless trap is indicated.

3.2 CONNECTIONS

A. Piping installation requirements are specified in other Division 22 Sections. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.

B. Install piping adjacent to equipment to allow service and maintenance.

C. Ground equipment according to Division 26 Section "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems."

3.3 FLASHING INSTALLATION

A. Fabricate flashing from single piece unless large pans, sumps, or other drainage shapes are required. Join flashing according to the following if required:

1. Lead Sheets: Burn joints of lead sheets 6.0-lb/sq. ft., 0.0938-inch thickness or thicker. Solder joints of lead sheets 4.0-lb/sq. ft., 0.0625-inch thickness or thinner.
2. Copper Sheets: Solder joints of copper sheets.

B. Install sheet flashing on pipes, sleeves, and specialties passing through or embedded in floors and roofs with waterproof membrane.

1. Pipe Flashing: Sleeve type, matching pipe size, with minimum length of 10 inches, and skirt or flange extending at least 8 inches around pipe.
2. Sleeve Flashing: Flat sheet, with skirt or flange extending at least 8 inches around sleeve.
3. Embedded Specialty Flashing: Flat sheet, with skirt or flange extending at least 8 inches around specialty.

C. Set flashing on floors and roofs in solid coating of bituminous cement.

D. Secure flashing into sleeve and specialty clamping ring or device.

E. Install flashing for piping passing through roofs with counterflashing or commercially made flashing fittings, according to Division 07 Section "Sheet Metal Flashing and Trim."

F. Extend flashing up vent pipe passing through roofs and turn down into pipe, or secure flashing into cast-iron sleeve having calking recess.

G. Fabricate and install flashing and pans, sumps, and other drainage shapes.

3.4 LABELING AND IDENTIFYING

A. Distinguish among multiple units, inform operator of operational requirements, indicate safety and emergency precautions, and warn of hazards and improper operations, in addition to identifying unit. Nameplates and signs are specified in Division 22 Section "Identification for Plumbing Piping and Equipment."

3.5 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Tests and Inspections:

1. Leak Test: After installation, charge system and test for leaks. Repair leaks and retest until no leaks exist.

3.6 PROTECTION

A. Protect drains during remainder of construction period to avoid clogging with dirt or debris and to prevent damage from traffic or construction work.

B. Place plugs in ends of uncompleted piping at end of each day or when work stops.

END OF SECTION 22 13 19

ROCIP Project: Withhold insurance cost. Please refer to sections 00425 & 00810 for information.

SECTION 22 13 23 - SANITARY WASTE INTERCEPTORS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Grease interceptors.
2. Oil interceptors.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. FRP: Fiberglass-reinforced plastic.

B. PP: Polypropylene plastic.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of interceptor indicated. Include materials of fabrication, dimensions, rated capacities, retention capacities, operating characteristics, size and location of each pipe connection, furnished specialties, and accessories.

1.5 PROJECT CONDITIONS

A. Interruption of Existing Sewer Services: Do not interrupt services to facilities occupied by Owner or others unless permitted under the following conditions and then only after arranging to provide temporary sewer services according to requirements indicated:

1. Notify Construction Manager no fewer than seven days in advance of proposed interruption of service.
2. Do not proceed with interruption of sewer services without Construction Manager's written permission.

ROCIP Project: Withhold insurance cost. Please refer to sections 00425 & 00810 for information.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 GREASE INTERCEPTORS

A. Grease Interceptors: Precast concrete complying with ASTM C 913 .

1. Include rubber-gasketed joints, vent connections, manholes, compartments or baffles, and piping or openings to retain grease and to permit wastewater flow.
2. Structural Design Loads:

   a. Light-Traffic Load: Comply with ASTM C 890, A-8 (ASSHTO HS10-44).
   b. Medium-Traffic Load: Comply with ASTM C 890, A-12 (ASSHTO HS15-44).
   c. Heavy-Traffic Load: Comply with ASTM C 890, A-16 (ASSHTO HS20-44).
   d. Walkway Load: Comply with ASTM C 890, A-03.

3. Resilient Pipe Connectors: ASTM C 923, cast or fitted into interceptor walls, for each pipe connection.
4. Steps: Individual FRP steps, FRP ladder, or ASTM A 615/A 615M, deformed, 1/2-inch steel reinforcing rods encased in ASTM D 4101, PP , wide enough to allow worker to place both feet on one step and designed to prevent lateral slippage off step. Cast or anchor steps into sidewalls at 12- to 16-inch intervals. Omit steps if total depth from floor of interceptor to finished grade is less than 60 inches.

B. Capacities and Characteristics:

1. Installation Position: Underground with manhole riser to grade.
2. Additional Capacities and Characteristics: See Details and Plumbing Equipment Schedule on Drawings.

2.2 OIL INTERCEPTORS

A. Oil Interceptors: Plastic body; with removable sediment bucket or strainer, baffles, vents, and flow-control fitting on inlet.

1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:

   a. Green Turtle (USA).
   b. Parkson Corporation.
   c. Schier Products Company.
   d. Town & Country Plastics, Inc.

2. Inlet, Outlet, Vent, and Waste-Oil Outlet Piping Connections: Hub, hubless, or threaded, unless otherwise indicated.

3. Extension: Plastic shroud, full size of interceptor, extending from top of interceptor to grade.
4. Cover: Plastic with steel reinforcement to provide ASTM C 890 load.

B. Capacities and Characteristics: See Plumbing Equipment Schedule on Drawings

2.3 PRECAST-CONCRETE MANHOLE RISERS

A. Precast-Concrete Manhole Risers: ASTM C 478 and ASTM C 913, with rubber-gasket joints.

1. Structural Design Loads:

   a. Light-Traffic Load: Comply with ASTM C 890, A-8 (ASSHTO HS10-44).
   b. Medium-Traffic Load: Comply with ASTM C 890, A-12 (ASSHTO HS15-44).
   c. Heavy-Traffic Load: Comply with ASTM C 890, A-16 (ASSHTO HS20-44).
   d. Walkway Load: Comply with ASTM C 890, A-03.

2. Length: From top of underground concrete structure to grade.
3. Riser Sections: 3-inch minimum thickness and 36-inch diameter.
4. Top Section: Eccentric cone, unless otherwise indicated. Include top of cone to match grade ring size.
5. Gaskets: ASTM C 443, rubber.
6. Steps: Individual FRP steps, FRP ladder, or ASTM A 615/A 615M, deformed, 1/2-inch steel reinforcing rods encased in ASTM D 4101, PP , wide enough to allow worker to place both feet on one step and designed to prevent lateral slippage off step. Cast or anchor steps into sidewalls at 12- to 16-inch intervals.

B. Grade Rings: Reinforced-concrete rings, 6- to 9-inch total thickness, diameter matching manhole frame and cover, and height as required to adjust the manhole frame and cover to indicated elevation and slope.

C. Manhole Frames and Covers: Ferrous; 24-inch ID by 7- to 9-inch riser with 4-inch-minimum width flange and 26-inch- diameter cover.

1. Ductile Iron: ASTM A 536, Grade 60-40-18, unless otherwise indicated.
2. Gray Iron: ASTM A 48, Class 35, unless otherwise indicated.
3. Include indented top design with lettering cast into cover, using wording equivalent to the following:

   a. Grease Interceptors in Sanitary Sewerage System: "SANITARY SEWER."

ROCIP Project: Withhold insurance cost. Please refer to sections 00425 & 00810 for information.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EARTHWORK

A. Excavating, trenching, and backfilling are specified in Division 31 Section "Earth Moving."

3.2 INSTALLATION

A. Install precast-concrete interceptors according to ASTM C 891. Set level and plumb.

B. Install manhole risers from top of underground concrete interceptors to manholes and gratings at finished grade.

C. Set tops of manhole frames and covers flush with finished surface in pavements. Set tops 3 inches above finish surface elsewhere, unless otherwise indicated.

D. Set tops of grating frames and grates flush with finished surface.

E. Set plastic interceptors level and plumb.

3.3 CONNECTIONS

A. Piping installation requirements are specified in other Division 22 Sections. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.

B. Make piping connections between interceptors and piping systems.

3.4 IDENTIFICATION

A. Identification materials and installation are specified in Division 31 Section "Earth Moving." Arrange for installation of green warning tapes directly over piping and at outside edges of underground interceptors.

1. Use warning tapes or detectable warning tape over ferrous piping.
2. Use detectable warning tape over nonferrous piping and over edges of underground structures.

END OF SECTION 22 13 23

ROCIP Project: Withhold insurance cost. Please refer to sections 00425 & 00810 for information.

SECTION 22 34 00 - FUEL-FIRED, DOMESTIC-WATER HEATERS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Commercial, atmospheric, gas-fired, storage, domestic-water heaters.
2. Domestic-water heater accessories.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type and size of domestic-water heater indicated. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, electrical characteristics, and furnished specialties and accessories.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

B. ASHRAE/IESNA Compliance: Fabricate and label fuel-fired, domestic-water heaters to comply with ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1.

C. ASME Compliance:

1. Where ASME-code construction is indicated, fabricate and label commercial, domestic-water heater storage tanks to comply with ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section VIII, Division 1.

D. NSF Compliance: Fabricate and label equipment components that will be in contact with potable water to comply with NSF 61, "Drinking Water System Components - Health Effects."

ROCIP Project: Withhold insurance cost. Please refer to sections 00425 & 00810 for information.

1.5 COORDINATION

A. Coordinate sizes and locations of concrete bases with actual equipment provided.

1.6 WARRANTY

A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of fuel-fired, domestic-water heaters that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.

1. Failures include, but are not limited to, the following:

   a. Structural failures including storage tank and supports.
   b. Faulty operation of controls.
   c. Deterioration of metals, metal finishes, and other materials beyond normal use.

2. Warranty Periods: From date of Substantial Completion.

   a. Commercial, Gas-Fired, Storage, Domestic-Water Heaters:

      1) Storage Tank: Three years.
      2) Controls and Other Components: One year.

   b. Compression Tanks: Five years.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 COMMERCIAL, GAS-FIRED, STORAGE, DOMESTIC-WATER HEATERS

A. Commercial, Atmospheric, Gas-Fired, Storage, Domestic-Water Heaters:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

   a. Bock Water Heaters, Inc.
   b. Bradford White Corporation.
   c. Lochinvar Corporation.
   d. PVI Industries, LLC.
   e. Rheem Manufacturing Company.
   f. Smith, A. O. Water Products Co.; a division of A. O. Smith Corporation.
   g. State Industries.

2. Storage-Tank Construction: Non-ASME-code steel with 150-psig working-pressure rating.

    a. Tappings: Factory fabricated of materials compatible with tank. Attach tappings to tank before testing.

        1) NPS 2 and Smaller: Threaded ends according to ASME B1.20.1.

    b. Interior Finish: Comply with NSF 61 barrier materials for potable-water tank linings, including extending finish into and through tank fittings and outlets.

    c. Lining: Complying with NSF 61 barrier materials for potable-water tank linings, including extending lining into and through tank fittings and outlets.

3. Factory-Installed Storage-Tank Appurtenances:

    a. Anode Rod: Replaceable magnesium or aluminum.
    b. Dip Tube: Required unless cold-water inlet is near bottom of tank.
    c. Drain Valve: Corrosion-resistant metal complying with ASSE 1005.
    d. Insulation: Comply with ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1. Surround entire storage tank except connections and controls.
    e. Jacket: Steel with enameled finish.
    f. Burner: For use with atmospheric, gas-fired, domestic-water heaters and natural-gas fuel.
    g. Automatic Ignition: ANSI Z21.20/CSA C22.2 No. 199, electric, automatic, gas-ignition system.
    h. Temperature Control: Adjustable thermostat.
    i. Safety Controls: Automatic, high-temperature-limit and low-water cutoff devices or systems.
    j. Combination Temperature-and-Pressure Relief Valves: ANSI Z21.22/CSA 4.4-M. Include one or more relief valves with total relieving capacity at least as great as heat input, and include pressure setting less than domestic-water heater working-pressure rating. Select one relief valve with sensing element that extends into storage tank.

4. Special Requirements: NSF 5 construction.
5. Draft Hood: Draft diverter, complying with ANSI Z21.12.
6. Automatic Damper: ANSI Z21.66/CSA 6.14-M, automatic-vent-damper device with size matching draft hood.

2.2 DOMESTIC-WATER HEATER ACCESSORIES

A. Domestic-Water Compression Tanks:

1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:

   a. AMTROL Inc.
   b. Smith, A. O. Water Products Co.; a division of A. O. Smith Corporation.
   c. State Industries.
   d. Taco, Inc.

2. Description: Steel, pressure-rated tank constructed with welded joints and factory-installed butyl-rubber diaphragm. Include air pre-charge to minimum system-operating pressure at tank.
3. Construction:

   a. Tappings: Factory-fabricated steel, welded to tank before testing and labeling. Include ASME B1.20.1 pipe thread.
   b. Interior Finish: Comply with NSF 61 barrier materials for potable-water tank linings, including extending finish into and through tank fittings and outlets.
   c. Air-Charging Valve: Factory installed.

4. Capacity and Characteristics:

   a. Working-Pressure Rating: 150 psig.
   b. Capacity Acceptable: See Plumbing Equipment Schedule on Drawings.

B. Heat-Trap Fittings: ASHRAE 90.2.

C. Manifold Kits: Domestic-water heater manufacturer's factory-fabricated inlet and outlet piping for field installation, for multiple domestic-water heater installation. Include ball-, butterfly-, or gate-type shutoff valves to isolate each domestic-water heater and balancing valves to provide balanced flow through each domestic-water heater.

1. Comply with requirements for ball-, butterfly-, or gate-type shutoff valves specified in Division 22 Section "General-Duty Valves for Plumbing Piping."
2. Comply with requirements for balancing valves specified in Division 22 Section "Domestic Water Piping Specialties."

D. Gas Shutoff Valves: ANSI Z21.15/CSA 9.1-M, manually operated. Furnish for installation in piping.

E. Gas Pressure Regulators: ANSI Z21.18/CSA 6.3, appliance type. Include pressure rating as required to match gas supply.

F. Combination Temperature-and-Pressure Relief Valves: Include relieving capacity at least as great as heat input, and include pressure setting less than domestic-water heater working-pressure rating. Select relief valves with sensing element that extends into storage tank.

1. Gas-Fired, Domestic-Water Heaters: ANSI Z21.22/CSA 4.4-M.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 DOMESTIC-WATER HEATER INSTALLATION

A. Commercial, Domestic-Water Heater Mounting: Install commercial domestic-water heaters on minimum 4-inch high stand.

1. Maintain manufacturer's recommended clearances.
2. Arrange units so controls and devices that require servicing are accessible.

B. Install domestic-water heaters level and plumb, according to layout drawings, original design, and referenced standards. Maintain manufacturer's recommended clearances. Arrange units so controls and devices needing service are accessible.

1. Install shutoff valves on domestic-water-supply piping to domestic-water heaters and on domestic-hot-water outlet piping. Comply with requirements for shutoff valves specified in Division 22 Section "General-Duty Valves for Plumbing Piping."

C. Install gas-fired, domestic-water heaters according to NFPA 54.

1. Install gas shutoff valves on gas supply piping to gas-fired, domestic-water heaters without shutoff valves.
2. Install gas pressure regulators on gas supplies to gas-fired, domestic-water heaters without gas pressure regulators if gas pressure regulators are required to reduce gas pressure at burner.
3. Comply with requirements for gas shutoff valves, gas pressure regulators, and automatic gas valves specified in Division 22 Section "Facility Natural-Gas Piping."

D. Install combination temperature-and-pressure relief valves in top portion of storage tanks. Use relief valves with sensing elements that extend into tanks. Extend commercial-water-heater relief-valve outlet, with drain piping same as domestic-water piping in continuous downward pitch, and discharge by positive air gap onto closest floor drain.

E. Install water-heater drain piping as indirect waste to spill by positive air gap into open drains or over floor drains. Install hose-end drain valves at low points in water piping for domestic-water heaters that do not have tank drains. Comply with requirements for hose-end drain valves specified in Division 22 Section "Domestic Water Piping Specialties."

F. Install thermometer on outlet piping of domestic-water heaters. Comply with requirements for thermometers specified in Division 22 Section "Meters and Gages for Plumbing Piping."

G. Fill domestic-water heaters with water.

H. Charge domestic-water compression tanks with air.

3.2 CONNECTIONS

A. Comply with requirements for domestic-water piping specified in Division 22 Section "Domestic Water Piping."

B. Comply with requirements for gas piping specified in Division 22 Section "Facility Natural-Gas Piping."

C. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.

D. Where installing piping adjacent to fuel-fired, domestic-water heaters, allow space for service and maintenance of water heaters. Arrange piping for easy removal of domestic-water heaters.

3.3 IDENTIFICATION

A. Identify system components. Comply with requirements for identification specified in Division 22 Section "Identification for Plumbing Piping and Equipment."

3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Perform tests and inspections.

1. Leak Test: After installation, charge system and test for leaks. Repair leaks and retest until no leaks exist.
2. Operational Test: After electrical circuitry has been energized, start units to confirm proper operation.
3. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.

B. Domestic-water heaters will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections. Comply with requirements in Division 01 Section "Quality Requirements" for retesting and re-inspecting requirements and Division 01 Section "Execution" for requirements for correcting the Work.

C. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.5 DEMONSTRATION

A. Train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain commercial, gas-fired, storage, domestic-water heaters.

END OF SECTION 22 34 00

ROCIP Project: Withhold insurance cost. Please refer to sections 00425 & 00810 for information.

SECTION 22 42 13.13 - COMMERCIAL WATER CLOSETS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Water closets.
2. Flushometer valves.
3. Toilet seats.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.

1. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes for water closets.
2. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, electrical characteristics, and furnished specialties and accessories.

1.4 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For flushometer valves to include in operation and maintenance manuals.

1.5 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

A. Furnish extra materials that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.

1. Flushometer-Valve Repair Kits: Equal to 10 percent of amount of each type installed, but no fewer than one of each type.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 FLOOR-MOUNTED, BOTTOM-OUTLET WATER CLOSETS

A. Water Closets: Floor mounted, bottom outlet, top spud.

1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:

   a. American Standard America.
   b. Kohler Co.
   c. Sloan Valve Company.
   d. Zurn Industries, LLC; Commercial Brass and Fixtures.

2. Bowl:

   a. Standards: ASME A112.19.2/CSA B45.1 and ASME A112.19.5.
   b. Material: Vitreous china.
   c. Type: Siphon jet.
   d. Style: Flushometer valve.
   e. Height: Standard or Handicapped/elderly, complying with ICC/ANSI A117.1. See Fixture Schedule on Drawings.
   f. Rim Contour: Elongated.
   g. Water Consumption: 1.28 gal. per flush.
   h. Spud Size and Location: NPS 1-1/2; top.
   i. Color: White.

3. Bowl-to-Drain Connecting Fitting: ASTM A 1045 or ASME A112.4.3.
4. Flushometer Valve: See Article below.
5. Toilet Seat: See Article below.

2.2 FLUSHOMETER VALVES

A. Lever-Handle, Diaphragm Flushometer Valves:

1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide or comparable product by one of the following:

   a. Sloan Valve Company.
   b. Zurn Industries, LLC; Commercial Brass and Fixtures.
   c. Delta Faucet Company.

2. Standard: ASSE 1037.
3. Minimum Pressure Rating: 125 psig.
4. Features: Include integral check stop and backflow-prevention device.
5. Material: Brass body with corrosion-resistant components.

6. Exposed Flushometer-Valve Finish: Chrome plated.
7. Style: Exposed.
8. Consumption: 1.28 gal. per flush.
9. Minimum Inlet: NPS 1.
10. Minimum Outlet: NPS 1-1/4.

2.3 TOILET SEATS

A. Toilet Seats:

1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:

   a. American Standard America.
   b. Bemis Manufacturing Company.
   c. Church Seats.
   d. Kohler Co.
   e. Olsonite Seat Co.
   f. Zurn Industries, LLC; Commercial Brass and Fixtures.

2. Standard: IAPMO/ANSI Z124.5.
3. Material: Plastic.
4. Type: Commercial (Heavy duty).
5. Shape: Elongated rim, open front.
6. Hinge: Self-sustaining, check.
7. Hinge Material: Stainless steel.
8. Seat Cover: Not required.
9. Color: White.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine roughing-in of water supply and sanitary drainage and vent piping systems to verify actual locations of piping connections before water-closet installation.

B. Examine walls and floors for suitable conditions where water closets will be installed.

C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION

A. Water-Closet Installation:

1. Install level and plumb according to roughing-in drawings.
2. Install floor-mounted water closets on bowl-to-drain connecting fitting attachments to piping or building substrate.
3. Install accessible, wall-mounted water closets at mounting height for handicapped/elderly, according to ICC/ANSI A117.1.

B. Support Installation:

1. Use carrier supports with waste-fitting assembly and seal.

C. Flushometer-Valve Installation:

1. Install flushometer-valve, water-supply fitting on each supply to each water closet.
2. Attach supply piping to supports or substrate within pipe spaces behind fixtures.
3. Install lever-handle flushometer valves for accessible water closets with handle mounted on open side of water closet.

D. Install toilet seats on water closets.

E. Wall Flange and Escutcheon Installation:

1. Install wall flanges or escutcheons at piping wall penetrations in exposed, finished locations and within cabinets and millwork.
2. Install deep-pattern escutcheons if required to conceal protruding fittings.
3. Comply with escutcheon requirements specified in Division 22 Section "Escutcheons for Plumbing Piping."

F. Joint Sealing:

1. Seal joints between water closets and walls and floors using sanitary-type, one-part, mildew-resistant silicone sealant.
2. Match sealant color to water-closet color.
3. Comply with sealant requirements specified in Division 07 Section "Joint Sealants."

3.3 CONNECTIONS

A. Connect water closets with water supplies and soil, waste, and vent piping. Use size fittings required to match water closets.

B. Comply with water piping requirements specified in Division 22 Section "Domestic Water Piping."

C. Comply with soil and waste piping requirements specified in Division 22 Section "Sanitary Waste and Vent Piping."

D. Where installing piping adjacent to water closets, allow space for service and maintenance.

3.4 ADJUSTING

A. Operate and adjust water closets and controls. Replace damaged and malfunctioning water closets, fittings, and controls.

B. Adjust water pressure at flushometer valves to produce proper flow.

3.5 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

A. Clean water closets and fittings with manufacturers' recommended cleaning methods and materials.

B. Install protective covering for installed water closets and fittings.

C. Do not allow use of water closets for temporary facilities unless approved in writing by Owner.

END OF SECTION 22 42 13.13

ROCIP Project: Withhold insurance cost. Please refer to sections 00425 & 00810 for information.

SECTION 22 42 13.16 - COMMERCIAL URINALS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Urinals.
2. Flushometer valves.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.

1. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes for urinals.
2. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, electrical characteristics, and furnished specialties and accessories.

1.4 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For flushometer valves to include in operation and maintenance manuals.

1.5 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

A. Furnish extra materials that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.

1. Flushometer-Valve Repair Kits: Equal to 10 percent of amount of each type installed, but no fewer than one of each type.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 WALL-HUNG URINALS

A. Urinals: Wall hung, back outlet, washout, accessible where indicated on Drawings.

1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:

   a. American Standard America.
   b. Kohler Co.
   c. Sloan Valve Company.
   d. Zurn Industries, LLC; Commercial Brass and Fixtures.

2. Fixture:

   a. Standards: ASME A112.19.2/CSA B45.1 and ASME A112.19.5.
   b. Material: Vitreous china.
   c. Type: Washout with extended shields.
   d. Strainer or Trapway: Manufacturer's standard strainer with integral trap.
   e. Water Consumption: Compatible with flush valve.
   f. Spud Size and Location: NPS 3/4, top.
   g. Outlet Size and Location: NPS 2, back.
   h. Color: White.

3. Flushometer Valve: see Plumbing Fixture Schedule on Drawings.
4. Waste Fitting:

   a. Standard: ASME A112.18.2/CSA B125.2 for coupling.
   b. Size: NPS 2.

5. Support: ASME A112.6.1M, Type I, urinal carrier with fixture support plates and coupling with seal and fixture bolts and hardware matching fixture. Include rectangular, steel uprights.

2.2 URINAL FLUSHOMETER VALVES

A. Lever-Handle, Diaphragm Flushometer Valves:

1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:

   a. Delta Faucet Company.
   b. Sloan Valve Company.
   c. Zurn Industries, LLC; Commercial Brass and Fixtures.

2. Standard: ASSE 1037.
3. Minimum Pressure Rating: 125 psig.
4. Features: Include integral check stop and backflow-prevention device.
5. Material: Brass body with corrosion-resistant components.
6. Exposed Flushometer-Valve Finish: Chrome plated.
7. Style: Exposed.
8. Consumption: See Plumbing Fixture Schedule on Drawings.
9. Minimum Inlet: NPS 3/4.
10. Minimum Outlet: NPS 3/4.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine roughing-in of water supply and sanitary drainage and vent piping systems to verify actual locations of piping connections before urinal installation.

B. Examine walls and floors for suitable conditions where urinals will be installed.

C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION

A. Urinal Installation:

1. Install urinals level and plumb according to roughing-in drawings.
2. Install wall-hung, back-outlet urinals onto waste fitting seals and attached to supports.
3. Install accessible, wall-mounted urinals at mounting height for the handicapped/elderly, according to ICC/ANSI A117.1.

B. Support Installation:

1. Install supports, affixed to building substrate, for wall-hung urinals.
2. Use off-floor carriers with waste fitting and seal for back-outlet urinals.
3. Use carriers without waste fitting for urinals with tubular waste piping.
4. Use chair-type carrier supports with rectangular steel uprights for accessible urinals.

C. Flushometer-Valve Installation:

1. Install flushometer-valve water-supply fitting on each supply to each urinal.
2. Attach supply piping to supports or substrate within pipe spaces behind fixtures.
3. Install lever-handle flushometer valves for accessible urinals with handle mounted on open side of compartment.

D. Wall Flange and Escutcheon Installation:

1. Install wall flanges or escutcheons at piping wall penetrations in exposed, finished locations.
2. Install deep-pattern escutcheons if required to conceal protruding fittings.
3. Comply with escutcheon requirements specified in Division 22 Section "Escutcheons for Plumbing Piping."

E. Joint Sealing:

1. Seal joints between urinals and walls and floors using sanitary-type, one-part, mildew-resistant silicone sealant.
2. Match sealant color to urinal color.
3. Comply with sealant requirements specified in Division 07 Section "Joint Sealants."

3.3 CONNECTIONS

A. Connect urinals with water supplies and soil, waste, and vent piping. Use size fittings required to match urinals.

B. Comply with water piping requirements specified in Division 22 Section "Domestic Water Piping."

C. Comply with soil and waste piping requirements specified in Division 22 Section "Sanitary Waste and Vent Piping."

D. Where installing piping adjacent to urinals, allow space for service and maintenance.

3.4 ADJUSTING

A. Operate and adjust urinals and controls. Replace damaged and malfunctioning urinals, fittings, and controls.

B. Adjust water pressure at flushometer valves to produce proper flow.

3.5 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

A. Clean urinals and fittings with manufacturers' recommended cleaning methods and materials.

ROCIP Project: Withhold insurance cost. Please refer to sections 00425 & 00810 for information.

B. Install protective covering for installed urinals and fittings.

C. Do not allow use of urinals for temporary facilities unless approved in writing by Owner.

END OF SECTION 22 42 13.16

ROCIP Project: Withhold insurance cost. Please refer to sections 00425 & 00810 for information.

SECTION 22 42 16.13 - COMMERCIAL LAVATORIES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Lavatories.
2. Faucets.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.

1. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes for lavatories.
2. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, electrical characteristics, and furnished specialties and accessories.

1.4 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For lavatories and faucets to include in operation and maintenance manuals.

1. In addition to items specified in Division 01 Section "Operation and Maintenance Data," include the following:

a. Servicing and adjustments of automatic faucets.

1.5 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.

1. Faucet Washers and O-Rings: Equal to 10 percent of amount of each type and size installed, but no less than 1 of each.

2. Faucet Cartridges and O-Rings: Equal to 5 percent of amount of each type and size installed, but no less than 1 of each.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 VITREOUS-CHINA LAVATORIES

A. Lavatory: Vitreous china.

1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:

   a. American Standard America.
   b. Kohler Co.
   c. Sloan Valve Company.
   d. Zurn Industries, LLC; Commercial Brass and Fixtures.

2. Fixture:

   a. Standard: ASME A112.19.2/CSA B45.1.

B. Faucet-Hole Punching: Compatible with faucet specified in Plumbing Fixture Schedule on Drawings.

2.2 SOLID-BRASS, MANUALLY OPERATED FAUCETS

A. NSF Standard: Comply with NSF/ANSI 61, "Drinking Water System Components - Health Effects," for faucet materials that will be in contact with potable water.

B. Lavatory Faucets: Manual-type, commercial general-duty, solid-brass valve.

1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:

   a. American Standard America.
   b. Chicago Faucets.
   c. Delta Faucet Company.
   d. Kohler Co.
   e. Moen Incorporated.
   f. Speakman Company.
   g. T & S Brass and Bronze Works, Inc.
   h. Zurn Industries, LLC; Commercial Brass and Fixtures.

2. Standard: ASME A112.18.1/CSA B125.1.

3. General: Include hot- and cold-water indicators; coordinate faucet inlets with supplies and fixture hole punchings; coordinate outlet with spout and fixture receptor.
4. Body Material: Commercial, solid brass.
5. Finish: Polished chrome plate.
6. Maximum Flow Rate: 0.5 gpm.

2.3 SOLID-BRASS, AUTOMATICALLY OPERATED LAVATORY FAUCETS

A. NSF Standard: Comply with NSF/ANSI 61, "Drinking Water System Components - Health Effects," for faucet materials that will be in contact with potable water.

B. Lavatory Faucets: Automatic-type, electronic-sensor-operated, solid-brass valve.

1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:

   a. American Standard America.
   b. Chicago Faucets.
   c. Kohler Co.
   d. Moen Incorporated.
   e. Sloan Valve Company.
   f. Speakman Company.
   g. T & S Brass and Bronze Works, Inc.
   h. Zurn Industries, LLC; Commercial Brass and Fixtures.

2. Standards: ASME A112.18.1/CSA B125.1 and UL 1951.
3. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
4. General: Include hot- and cold-water indicators; coordinate faucet inlets with supplies and fixture hole punchings; coordinate outlet with spout and fixture receptor.
5. Maximum Flow Rate: 0.5 gpm.
6. Spout: Rigid type.

2.4 SUPPLY FITTINGS

A. NSF Standard: Comply with NSF/ANSI 61, "Drinking Water System Components - Health Effects," for supply-fitting materials that will be in contact with potable water.

B. Standard: ASME A112.18.1/CSA B125.1.

C. Supply Piping: Chrome-plated-brass pipe or chrome-plated copper tube matching water-supply piping size. Include chrome-plated-brass or stainless-steel wall flange.

D. Supply Stops: Chrome-plated-brass, one-quarter-turn, ball-type or compression valve with inlet connection matching supply piping.

E. Operation: Loose key.

F. Risers:

1. NPS 3/8.
2. ASME A112.18.6, braided- or corrugated-stainless-steel, flexible hose riser.

2.5 WASTE FITTINGS

A. Standard: ASME A112.18.2/CSA B125.2.

B. Drain: Grid type with NPS 1-1/4 offset and straight tailpiece.

C. Trap:

1. Size: NPS 1-1/2 by NPS 1-1/4.
2. Material: Chrome-plated, two-piece, cast-brass trap and swivel elbow with 0.032-inch- thick brass tube to wall; and chrome-plated, brass or steel wall flange.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine roughing-in of water supply and sanitary drainage and vent piping systems to verify actual locations of piping connections before lavatory installation.

B. Examine counters and walls for suitable conditions where lavatories will be installed.

C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION

A. Install lavatories level and plumb according to roughing-in drawings.

B. Install supports, affixed to building substrate, for wall-mounted lavatories.

C. Install accessible wall-mounted lavatories at handicapped/elderly mounting height for people with disabilities or the elderly, according to ICC/ANSI A117.1.

D. Install wall flanges or escutcheons at piping wall penetrations in exposed, finished locations. Use deep-pattern escutcheons if required to conceal protruding fittings. Comply with escutcheon requirements specified in Division 22 Section "Escutcheons for Plumbing Piping."

E. Seal joints between lavatories, counters, and walls using sanitary-type, one-part, mildew-resistant silicone sealant. Match sealant color to fixture color. Comply with sealant requirements specified in Division 07 Section "Joint Sealants."

F. Install protective shielding pipe covers and enclosures on exposed supplies and waste piping of accessible lavatories. Comply with requirements in Division 22 Section "Plumbing Piping Insulation."

3.3 CONNECTIONS

A. Connect fixtures with water supplies, stops, and risers, and with traps, soil, waste, and vent piping. Use size fittings required to match fixtures.

B. Comply with water piping requirements specified in Division 22 Section "Domestic Water Piping."

C. Comply with soil and waste piping requirements specified in Division 22 Section "Sanitary Waste and Vent Piping."

3.4 ADJUSTING

A. Operate and adjust lavatories and controls. Replace damaged and malfunctioning lavatories, fittings, and controls.

B. Adjust water pressure at faucets to produce proper flow.

C. Install fresh batteries in battery-powered, electronic-sensor mechanisms.

3.5 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

A. After completing installation of lavatories, inspect and repair damaged finishes.

B. Clean lavatories, faucets, and other fittings with manufacturers' recommended cleaning methods and materials.

C. Provide protective covering for installed lavatories and fittings.

D. Do not allow use of lavatories for temporary facilities unless approved in writing by Owner.

END OF SECTION 22 42 16.13

ROCIP Project: Withhold insurance cost. Please refer to sections 00425 & 00810 for information.

SECTION 22 42 16.16 - COMMERCIAL SINKS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Service basins.
2. Utility sinks.
3. Sink faucets.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.

1. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes for sinks.
2. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, electrical characteristics, and furnished specialties and accessories.

1.4 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Maintenance Data: For sinks to include in maintenance manuals.

1.5 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.

1. Faucet Washers and O-Rings: Equal to 10 percent of amount of each type and size installed.
2. Faucet Cartridges and O-Rings: Equal to 5 percent of amount of each type and size installed.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 SERVICE BASINS

A. Service Basins: Terrazzo, floor mounted.

1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:

   a. Acorn Engineering Company.
   b. Crane Plumbing, L.L.C.
   c. Fiat products.
   d. Florestone Products Co., Inc.
   e. Stern-Williams Co., Inc.

2. Fixture:

   a. Standard: IAPMO PS 99.

3. Additional Characteristics: See Plumbing Fixture Schedule on Drawings.

2.2 UTILITY SINKS

A. Utility Sinks: Stainless steel, counter mounted.

1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:

   a. Elkay Manufacturing Co.
   b. Griffin Products, Inc.
   c. Just Manufacturing.

2. Fixture:

   a. Standard: ASME A112.19.3/CSA B45.4.

3. Additional Characteristics: See Plumbing Fixture Schedule on Drawings.

4. Supply Fittings:

   a. Standard: ASME A112.18.1/CSA B125.1.
   b. Supplies: Chrome-plated brass compression stop with inlet connection matching water-supply piping type and size.

      1) Operation: Wheel handle.
      2) Risers: NPS 1/2, ASME A112.18.6, braided or corrugated stainless-steel flexible hose.

5. Waste Fittings:

   a. Standard: ASME A112.18.2/CSA B125.2.
   b. Trap(s):

      1) Size: NPS 1 1/2.
      2) Material: Chrome-plated, two-piece, cast-brass trap and swivel elbow with 0.032-inch- thick brass tube to wall; and chrome-plated brass or steel wall flange.

   c. Continuous Waste:

      1) Size: NPS 2.
      2) Material: Chrome-plated, 0.032-inch- thick brass tube.

2.3 SINK FAUCETS

A. NSF Standard: Comply with NSF/ANSI 61, "Drinking Water System Components - Health Effects," for faucet-spout materials that will be in contact with potable water.

1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:

   a. American Standard America.
   b. Bradley Corporation.
   c. Chicago Faucets.
   d. Delta Faucet Company.
   e. Elkay Manufacturing Co.
   f. Just Manufacturing.
   g. Kohler Co.
   h. Moen Incorporated.
   i. Speakman Company.
   j. T & S Brass and Bronze Works, Inc.
   k. Zurn Industries, LLC; Commercial Brass and Fixtures.

2. Standard: ASME A112.18.1/CSA B125.1.
3. General: Include hot- and cold-water indicators; coordinate faucet inlets with supplies and fixture hole punchings; coordinate outlet with spout and sink receptor.

2.4 GROUT

A. Standard: ASTM C 1107/C 1107M, Grade B, post-hardening and volume-adjusting, dry, hydraulic-cement grout.

B. Characteristics: Non-shrink; recommended for interior and exterior applications.

C. Design Mix: 5000-psi, 28-day compressive strength.

D. Packaging: Premixed and factory packaged.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine roughing-in of water supply and sanitary drainage and vent piping systems to verify actual locations of piping connections before sink installation.

B. Examine walls, floors, and counters for suitable conditions where sinks will be installed.

C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION

A. Install sinks level and plumb according to roughing-in drawings.

B. Install supports, affixed to building substrate, for wall-hung sinks.

C. Install accessible wall-mounted sinks at handicapped/elderly mounting height according to ICC/ANSI A117.1.

D. Set floor-mounted sinks in leveling bed of cement grout.

E. Install water-supply piping with stop on each supply to each sink faucet.

1. Exception: Use ball, gate, or globe valves if supply stops are not specified with sink. Comply with valve requirements specified in Division 22 Section "General-Duty Valves for Plumbing Piping."
2. Install stops in locations where they can be easily reached for operation.

F. Install wall flanges or escutcheons at piping wall penetrations in exposed, finished locations. Use deep-pattern escutcheons if required to conceal protruding fittings. Comply with escutcheon requirements specified in Division 22 Section "Escutcheons for Plumbing Piping."

G. Seal joints between sinks and counters, floors, and walls using sanitary-type, one-part, mildew-resistant silicone sealant. Match sealant color to fixture color. Comply with sealant requirements specified in Division 07 Section "Joint Sealants."

H. Install protective shielding pipe covers and enclosures on exposed supplies and waste piping of accessible sinks. Comply with requirements in Division 22 Section "Plumbing Piping Insulation."

3.3 CONNECTIONS

A. Connect sinks with water supplies, stops, and risers, and with traps, soil, waste, and vent piping. Use size fittings required to match fixtures.

B. Comply with water piping requirements specified in Division 22 Section "Domestic Water Piping."

C. Comply with soil and waste piping requirements specified in Division 22 Section "Sanitary Waste and Vent Piping."

3.4 ADJUSTING

A. Operate and adjust sinks and controls. Replace damaged and malfunctioning sinks, fittings, and controls.

B. Adjust water pressure at faucets to produce proper flow.

3.5 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

A. After completing installation of sinks, inspect and repair damaged finishes.

B. Clean sinks, faucets, and other fittings with manufacturers' recommended cleaning methods and materials.

C. Provide protective covering for installed sinks and fittings.

D. Do not allow use of sinks for temporary facilities unless approved in writing by Owner.

END OF SECTION 22 42 16.16

ROCIP Project: Withhold insurance cost. Please refer to sections 00425 & 00810 for information.

SECTION 22 42 23 - COMMERCIAL SHOWERS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Shower faucets.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.

1. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes for showers.
2. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, and furnished specialties and accessories.

1.4 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Maintenance Data: For shower faucets to include in maintenance manuals.

1.5 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.

1. Faucet Washers and O-Rings: Equal to 10 percent of amount of each type and size installed.
2. Faucet Cartridges and O-Rings: Equal to 5 percent of amount of each type and size installed.

ROCIP Project: Withhold insurance cost. Please refer to sections 00425 & 00810 for information.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 SHOWER FAUCETS

A. NSF Standard: Comply with NSF 61, "Drinking Water System Components - Health Effects," for shower materials that will be in contact with potable water.

B. Shower Heads:

1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:

   a. American Standard America.
   b. Chicago Faucets.
   c. Kohler Co.
   d. Lawler Manufacturing Co., Inc.
   e. Leonard Valve Company.
   f. Moen Incorporated.
   g. Powers; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
   h. Speakman Company.
   i. Zurn Industries, LLC; AquaSpec Commercial Faucet Products.

2. Supply Connections: NPS 1/2.
3. Characteristics:

   a. Standard: ASME A112.18.1/CSA B125.1.
   b. Shower Head Material: Metallic with chrome-plated finish.

C. Shower Faucets:

1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:

   a. Chicago Faucets.
   b. Lawler Manufacturing Co., Inc.
   c. Leonard Valve Company.
   d. Powers; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.

2. Description: Single-handle, thermostatic mixing valve with hot- and cold-water indicators; and check stops.
3. Faucet:

   a. Standards: ASME A112.18.1/CSA B125.1 and ASSE 1016.
   b. Body Material: Solid brass.
   c. Finish: Polished chrome plate.
   d. Maximum Flow Rate: See Plumbing Fixture Schedule on Drawings.
   e. Operation: Single-handle, twist or rotate control.

f. Check Stops: Check-valve type, integral with or attached to body; on hot- and cold-water supply connections.

4. Supply Connections: NPS 1/2.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine roughing-in of water-supply and sanitary drainage and vent piping systems to verify actual locations of piping connections before shower installation.

B. Examine walls and floors for suitable conditions where showers will be installed.

C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION

A. Assemble shower components according to manufacturers' written instructions.

B. Install showers level and plumb according to roughing-in drawings.

C. Install water-supply piping with stop on each supply to each shower faucet.

1. Exception: Use ball, gate, or globe valves if supply stops are not specified with shower.
2. Install stops in locations where they can be easily reached for operation.

D. Install shower flow-control fittings with specified maximum flow rates in shower arms.

E. Seal joints between showers and floors and walls using sanitary-type, one-part, mildew-resistant silicone sealant. Match sealant color to fixture color.

3.3 CONNECTIONS

A. Connect fixtures with water supplies, stops, and risers, and with traps, soil, waste, and vent piping. Use size fittings required to match fixtures.

B. Comply with water piping requirements specified in Section 221116 "Domestic Water Piping."

3.4 ADJUSTING

A. Operate and adjust showers and controls. Replace damaged and malfunctioning showers, fittings, and controls.

B. Adjust water pressure at faucets to produce proper flow.

3.5 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

A. After completing installation of showers, inspect and repair damaged finishes.

B. Clean showers, faucets, and other fittings with manufacturers' recommended cleaning methods and materials.

C. Provide protective covering for installed fixtures and fittings.

END OF SECTION 22 42 23

ROCIP Project: Withhold insurance cost. Please refer to sections 00425 & 00810 for information.

SECTION 22 47 16 - PRESSURE WATER COOLERS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section includes pressure water coolers and related components.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of pressure water cooler.

1. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes.
2. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, electrical characteristics, and furnished specialties and accessories.

1.4 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Maintenance Data: For pressure water coolers to include in maintenance manuals.

1.5 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.

1. Filter Cartridges: Equal to 10 percent of quantity installed for each type and size indicated, but no fewer than 2 of each.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PRESSURE WATER COOLERS

A. Pressure Water Coolers: Wheelchair accessible.

1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:

    a. Elkay Manufacturing Co.
    b. Halsey Taylor.
    c. Haws Corporation.

2. Cabinet: Bi-level with two attached cabinets and with a bi-level skirt kit, all stainless steel.
3. Bubbler: One, with adjustable stream regulator, located on each cabinet deck.
4. Control: Push button or Push bar.
5. Drain: Grid with NPS 1-1/4 tailpiece.
6. Supply: NPS 3/8 with shutoff valve.
7. Waste Fitting: ASME A112.18.2/CSA B125.2, NPS 1-1/4 brass P-trap.
8. Filter: One or more water filters complying with NSF 42 and NSF 53 for cyst and lead reduction to below EPA standards; with capacity sized for unit peak flow rate.
9. Cooling System: Electric, with hermetically sealed compressor, cooling coil, air-cooled condensing unit, corrosion-resistant tubing, refrigerant, corrosion-resistant-metal storage tank, and adjustable thermostat.

    a. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

10. Capacities and Characteristics:

    a. Cooled Water: 8 gph.
    b. Ambient-Air Temperature: 90 deg F.
    c. Inlet-Water Temperature: 80 deg F.
    d. Cooled-Water Temperature: 50 deg F.
    e. Electrical Characteristics:

        1) Motor Horsepower: 1/5.
        2) Volts: 120-V ac.
        3) Phase: Single.
        4) Hertz: 60.
        5) Full-Load Amperes: 4.

11. Support: ASME A112.6.1M, Type I water-cooler carrier.

ROCIP Project: Withhold insurance cost. Please refer to sections 00425 & 00810 for information.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine roughing-in for water-supply and sanitary drainage and vent piping systems to verify actual locations of piping connections before fixture installation.

B. Examine walls and floors for suitable conditions where fixtures will be installed.

C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION

A. Install fixtures level and plumb according to roughing-in drawings. For fixtures indicated for children, install at height required by authorities having jurisdiction.

B. Install off-the-floor carrier supports, affixed to building substrate, for wall-mounted fixtures.

C. Install mounting frames, affixed to building construction, and attach recessed, pressure water coolers to mounting frames.

D. Install water-supply piping with shutoff valve on supply to each fixture to be connected to domestic-water distribution piping. Use ball, gate, or globe valve. Install valves in locations where they can be easily reached for operation. Valves are specified in Division 22 Section "General-Duty Valves for Plumbing Piping."

E. Install trap and waste piping on drain outlet of each fixture to be connected to sanitary drainage system.

F. Install wall flanges or escutcheons at piping wall penetrations in exposed, finished locations. Use deep-pattern escutcheons where required to conceal protruding fittings. Comply with escutcheon requirements specified in Division 22 Section "Escutcheons for Plumbing Piping."

G. Seal joints between fixtures and walls using sanitary-type, one-part, mildew-resistant, silicone sealant. Match sealant color to fixture color. Comply with sealant requirements specified in Division 07 Section "Joint Sealants."

3.3 CONNECTIONS

A. Connect fixtures with water supplies, stops, and risers, and with traps, soil, waste, and vent piping. Use size fittings required to match fixtures.

B. Comply with water piping requirements specified in Division 22 Section "Domestic Water Piping."

C. Install ball, gate, or globe shutoff valve on water supply to each fixture. Install valve upstream from filter for water cooler. Comply with valve requirements specified in Division 22 Section "General-Duty Valves for Plumbing Piping."

D. Comply with soil and waste piping requirements specified in Division 22 Section "Sanitary Waste and Vent Piping."

3.4 ADJUSTING

A. Adjust fixture flow regulators for proper flow and stream height.

B. Adjust pressure water-cooler temperature settings.

3.5 CLEANING

A. After installing fixture, inspect unit. Remove paint splatters and other spots, dirt, and debris. Repair damaged finish to match original finish.

B. Clean fixtures, on completion of installation, according to manufacturer's written instructions.

C. Provide protective covering for installed fixtures.

D. Do not allow use of fixtures for temporary facilities unless approved in writing by Owner.

END OF SECTION 22 47 16

ROCIP Project: Withhold insurance cost. Please refer to sections 00425 & 00810 for information.

SECTION 23 00 00 - BASIC MECHANICAL REQUIREMENTS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SECTION INCLUDES

A. Basic Mechanical Requirements specifically applicable to Division 23 Sections, in addition to Division 01 - General Requirements.

1.2 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. THE UNIFORM GENERAL CONDITIONS, SUPPLEMENTARY GENERAL CONDITIONS, and Division 01 of the Specifications apply to the work specified in this Section.

B. All work covered by this Section of these Specifications shall be accomplished in accordance with all applicable provisions of the Contract Documents and any addenda or directives which may be issued herewith, or otherwise.

1.3 GENERAL

A. The Contractor shall execute all work hereinafter specified or indicated on accompanying Drawings. Contractor shall provide all equipment necessary and usually furnished in connection with such work and systems whether or not mentioned specifically herein or on the Drawings.

B. The Contractor shall be responsible for fitting his material and apparatus into the building and shall carefully lay out his work at the site to conform to the structural conditions, to avoid all obstructions, to conform to the details of the installation and thereby to provide an integrated satisfactory operating installation.

C. The Mechanical, Electrical, and associated Drawings are necessarily diagrammatic by their nature, and are not intended to show every connection in detail or every pipe or conduit in its exact location. These details are subject to the requirements of standards referenced elsewhere in these specifications, and structural and architectural conditions. The Contractor shall carefully investigate structural and finish conditions and shall coordinate the separate trades in order to avoid interference between the various phases of work. Work shall be organized and laid out so that it will be concealed in furred chases and suspended ceilings, etc., in finished portions of the building, unless specifically noted to be exposed. All exposed work shall be installed parallel or perpendicular to the lines of the building unless otherwise noted.

D. When the mechanical and electrical Drawings do not give exact details as to the elevation of pipe, conduit and ducts, the Contractor shall physically arrange the systems to fit in the space available at the elevations intended with proper grades for the functioning of the system involved. Piping, exposed conduit and the duct systems are generally intended to be installed true and square to the building construction, and located as high as possible against the structure in a neat and workmanlike manner. The Drawings do not show all required offsets, control lines, pilot lines and other location details. Work shall be concealed in all finished areas.

1.4 DEFINITIONS: (Note: These definitions are included here to clarify the direction and intention of this specification. The list given here is not by any means complete. For further clarification as required, contractor shall contact the designated Owner's representative.)

A. CONCEALED / EXPOSED: ~ areas are those areas which cannot be seen by the building occupants. Exposed areas are all areas which are exposed to view by the building occupants, including under counters, inside cabinets and closets, plus all mechanical rooms.

B. General Requirements: The provisions of requirements of other Division 01 Sections apply to entire work of contract and, where so indicated, to other elements which are included in project. Basic contract definitions are included in the General Conditions.

C. Indicated: The term "indicated" is a cross reference to graphic representations, notes or schedules on drawings, to other paragraphs or schedules in the Specifications, and to similar means of recording requirements on contract documents. Where terms such as "shown", "noted", "scheduled", and "specified" are used in lieu of "indicated", it is for the purpose of helping reader locate the cross reference, and no limitation of location is intended except as specifically noted.

D. Directed, requested, etc.: Where not otherwise explained, terms such as "directed", "requested", "authorized", "selected", "approved", "required", "accepted", and "permitted" mean directed by Architect/Engineer", "requested by Architect/Engineer" and similar phrases. However, no such implied meaning will be interpreted to extend Architect's/Engineer's responsibility into Contractor's area of construction supervision and job safety.

E. And/Or: Where "and/or" is used in these Specifications or on the Drawings, it shall mean "that situations exist where either one or both conditions occur or are required and shall not be interpreted to permit an option on the part of the Contractor.

F. Approve: Where used in conjunction with Architect's/Engineer's response to submittals, requests, applications, inquiries, reports and claims by Contractor, the meaning of term "approved" will be held to limitations to Architect's/Engineer's responsibilities and duties as specified in General and Supplementary Conditions. In no case will "approval" by Architect/Engineer be interpreted as a release of Contractor from responsibilities to fulfill requirements of contract documents or to extend Architect's/Engineer's responsibility into Contractor's area of construction supervision and job safety.

G. As required: Where "as required" is used in these Specifications or on the drawings, it shall mean "that situations exist that are not necessarily described in detail or indicated that may cause the contractor certain complications in performing the work described or indicated. These complications entail the normal coordination activities expected of the Contractor where multiple trades are involved and new or existing construction causes deviations to otherwise simplistic approaches to the work to be performed. The term shall not be interpreted to permit an option on the part of the Contractor to achieve the end result."

H. Furnish:

1. The term "furnish" is used to mean "supply and deliver to project site, ready for unloading, unpacking, assemble, installation, and similar operations."
2. Where "furnish" applies to work for which the installation is not otherwise specified, "furnish" in such case shall mean "furnish and install."

I. Install: The term "install" is used to describe operations at project site including "unloading, unpacking, assembly, erection, placing, anchoring, applying, working to dimension, finishing, curing, protecting, cleaning and similar operation."

J. Provide: The term "provide" means "to furnish and install, complete and ready for intended use."

1.5 PERMITS, UTILITY CONNECTIONS AND INSPECTIONS

A. General: Refer to Division 01 for construction phasing and time increments.

B. Fees and Costs: If, during the course of the construction, a need arises to buy utilities, the Contractor shall pay all fees attendant thereto. If City or privately owned utility piping or electrical cable needs to be extended, relocated, or terminated, the Contractor will pay all permits and construction/inspection fees associated with that particular work.

C. All work performed on this project is under the authority of the State of Texas, therefore no local construction fees or construction permits will be required except as may be required for new service taps, or new or modified connections to City controlled services. If inspections by City personnel are specifically required by this document, then the Contractor is responsible for any fees or permits in connection to those requirements.

D. Compliance: The Contractor shall comply in every respect with all requirements of National Fire Protection Association, local Fire Department regulations and utility company requirements. In no case does this relieve the Contractor of the responsibility of complying with these Specifications and Drawings where specified conditions are of higher quality than the requirements of the above-specified authorities. Where requirements of the Specifications and Drawings are more lenient than the requirements of the above authorities having jurisdiction, the Contractor shall make installations in compliance with the requirements of the above authorities with no extra compensation.

1.6 CONTRACT DOCUMENTS

A. All dimensional information related to new structures shall be taken from the appropriate Drawings. All dimensional information related to existing facilities shall be taken from actual measurements made by the Contractor on the site.

B. The interrelation of the Specifications, the Drawings, and the schedules are as follows: The Specifications determine the nature and setting of the several materials, the Drawings establish the quantities, dimensions and details, and the schedules give the performance characteristics. If the Contractor requires additional clarification, he shall request it in writing, following the contractually prescribed information flow requirements.

C. Should the Drawings or Specifications conflict within themselves, or with each other, the better quality, or greater size or quantity of work or materials shall be performed or furnished.

1.7 ALLOWANCES

A. Cash Allowance: Refer to Division 01 of the Construction Documents for information and requirements.

1.8 SUBMITTALS

A. Refer to Uniform General Conditions.

B. Proposed Products List: Include Products specified in the following Sections:

1. Section 23 20 00.A - Piping, Valves and Fittings
2. Section 23 05 29 - Sleeves, Flashings, Supports and Anchors
4. Section 23 05 53 - Mechanical Identification
5. Section 21 05 48 - Vibration Isolation
6. Section 23 07 19 - Piping Insulation
8. Section 23 07 13 - Ductwork Insulation
9. Section 23 21 00 - Hydronic Piping
10. Section 23 06 20.13 - Hydronic Specialties
11. Section 23 31 00 - Ductwork
12. Section 23 33 00 - Ductwork Accessories
13. Section 23 36 00 - Air Terminal Units
14. Section 23 37 00 - Air Inlets and Outlets
15. Section 23 09 23 - Direct Digital Control Systems

C. Submit shop drawings and product data grouped to include complete submittals of related systems, products, and accessories in a single submittal.

D. Mark dimensions and values in units to match those specified.

E. Submit Fabrication Drawings whenever (1) equipment proposed varies in physical size and arrangement from that indicated on the Drawings, thus causing rearrangement of equipment space, (2) where tight spaces require extreme coordination between ductwork, piping, conduit, and other equipment, (3) where called for elsewhere in these Specifications; and (4) where specifically requested by the Architect/Engineer. Fabrication Drawings shall be made at no additional charge to the Owner or the Architect/Engineer.

F. All required Fabrication Drawings, except as noted otherwise, shall be prepared at a scale of not less than 1/4" = 1'-0". Fabrication Drawings for ductwork, air handling units, and sections in Mechanical Rooms shall be drawn at a minimum scale of 3/8" = 1'-0". Submit three blueline prints of each Fabrication Drawing to the Architect/Engineer for review. Reproduction and submittal of the Construction Documents is not acceptable. The Architect/Engineer will review the drawing and return one print with comments.

1.9 SUBSTITUTION OF MATERIALS AND EQUIPMENT

A. Refer to General Conditions for substitution of materials and equipment.

B. General: Within thirty days after the date of contract award or work order, whichever is later, and before purchasing or starting installation of materials or equipment, the Contractor shall submit for review, a complete list of suppliers, contractors and manufacturers for all materials and equipment which will be submitted for incorporation into the project. The list shall be arranged in accordance with the organization of the Specifications. This initial list shall include the manufacturer's name and type or catalog number as required to identify the quality of material or equipment proposed. This list will be reviewed by the Engineer and the Owner and will be returned to the Contractor with comments as to which items are acceptable without further submittal data and which items will require detailed submittal data for further review and subsequent approval. The initial list shall be submitted as herein specified. Materials and equipment requiring detailed submittal data shall be submitted with sufficient data to indicate that all requirements of these Specifications have been met and samples shall be furnished when requested. All manufacturers' data used as part of the submittal shall have all inapplicable features crossed out or deleted in a manner that will clearly indicate exactly what is to be furnished.

C. It is not the intent of the Drawings and/or Specifications to limit products to any particular manufacturer nor to discriminate against an "APPROVED EQUAL" product as produced by another manufacturer. Some proprietary products are mentioned to set a definite standard for acceptance and to serve as a reference in comparison with other products. When a manufacturer's name appears in these Specifications, it is not to be construed that the manufacturer is unconditionally acceptable as a provider of equipment for this project. The successful manufacturer or supplier shall meet all of the provisions of the appropriate specification(s).

D. The specified products have been used in preparing the Drawings and Specifications and thus establish minimum qualities with which substitutes must at least equal to be considered acceptable. The burden of proof of equality rests with the Contractor. The decision of the designer is final.

E. When requested by the Architect/Engineer, the Contractor shall provide a sample of the proposed substitute item. In some cases, samples of both the specified item and the proposed item shall be provided for comparison purposes.

F. Timeliness: The burden of timeliness in the complete cycle of submittal data, shop Drawings, and sample processing is on the Contractor. The Contractor shall allow a minimum of six (6) weeks time frame for review of each submission by the office of the design discipline involved after receipt of such submissions by that design discipline. The Contractor is responsible for allowing sufficient time in the construction schedule to cover the aforementioned cycles of data processing, including time for all resubmittal cycles on unacceptable materials, equipment, etc. covered by the data submitted. Construction delays and/or lack of timeliness in the above regard are the responsibility of the Contractor and will not be considered in any request for scheduled construction time extensions and/or additional costs to the Owner.

G. All equipment installed on this project shall have local representation, local factory authorized service, and a local stock of repair parts.

H. Acceptance of materials and equipment will be based on manufacturer's published data and will be tentative subject to the submission of complete shop Drawings indicating compliance with the contract documents and that adequate and acceptable clearances for entry, servicing, and maintenance will exist. Acceptance of materials and equipment under this provision shall not be construed as authorizing any deviations from the Specifications, unless the attention of the Architect/Engineer has been directed in writing to the specific deviations. Data submitted shall not contain unrelated information unless all pertinent information is properly identified.

I. Certification: The Contractor shall carefully examine all data forwarded for approval and shall sign a certificate to the effect that the data has been carefully checked and found to be correct with respect to dimensions and available space and that the equipment complies with all requirements of the Specifications.

J. Physical Size of Equipment: Space is critical; therefore, equipment of larger sizes than shown, even though of specified manufacturer, will not be acceptable unless it can be demonstrated that ample space exists for proper installation, operation, and maintenance.

K. Materials and Equipment Lists: Eight (8) copies of the list of materials and equipment, the name of manufacturer, trade name, type, and catalog number shall be submitted to the Architect/Engineer. The lists shall be accompanied by eight (8) sets of pictorial and descriptive data derived from the manufacturers' catalogs, sales literature, or incorporated in the Shop Drawings. Such lists shall include but will not be limited to the following items:

L. Should a substitution be accepted, and should the substitute material prove defective, or otherwise unsatisfactory for the service intended within the guarantee period, this material or equipment shall be replaced with the material or equipment specified at no additional cost to the Owner.

1.10 MATERIALS AND WORKMANSHIP

A. All materials, unless otherwise specified, shall be new, free from all defects, suitable for the intended use, and of the best quality of their respective kinds. Materials and equipment shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations and the best standard practice for the type of work involved. All work shall be executed by mechanics skilled in their respective trades, and the installations shall provide a neat, precise appearance. Materials and/or equipment damaged in shipment or otherwise damaged prior to installation shall not be repaired at the job site but shall be replaced with new materials and/or equipment.

B. The responsibility for the furnishing of the proper equipment and/or material and seeing that it is installed as intended by the manufacturer, rests entirely upon the Contractor who shall request advice and supervisory assistance from the representative of specific manufacturers during the installation.

1.11 FLAME SPREAD PROPERTIES OF MATERIALS

A. Materials and adhesives incorporated in this project shall conform to NFPA Standard 255, "Method of Test of Surface Burning Characteristics of Building Materials" and NFPA 90. The classification shall not exceed a flame spread rating of 25 for all materials, adhesives, finishes, etc., specified for each system, and shall not exceed a smoke developed rating of 50.

1.12 REGULATORY REQUIREMENTS

A. The "Authority Having Jurisdiction" over the project described by these documents is the Owner, as an Agency of the State of Texas. As such, it is required that the installation shall meet the minimum standards prescribed in the latest editions of the following listed codes and standards, which are made a part of these Specifications. All referenced codes and standards shall be those current at the date of issue of the design documents.

B. National Fire Protection Association Standards (NFPA):

1. NFPA No. 13, Sprinkler System, Installation
2. NFPA No. 20, Centrifugal Fire Pumps
3. NFPA No. 51, Welding & Cutting, Oxygen-Fuel Gas Systems
4. NFPA No. 70, National Electrical Code
5. NFPA No. 78, Lightning Protection Code
6. NFPA No. 90A, Air Conditioning Systems
7. NFPA No. 91, Blower & Exhaust Systems
8. NFPA No. 101, Life Safety Code
9. NFPA No. 200, Series, Building Construction
10. NFPA No. 211, Chimneys, Fireplaces, Vent Systems
11. NFPA No. 255, Method of Test of Surface Burning Characteristics of Building Materials
12. NFPA No. 258, Standard Research Test Method for Determining Smoke Generation of Solid Materials

C. American National Standards Institute (ANSI):

1. A40.8, National Plumbing Code
2. B31.1, Power Piping
3. B9.1, Safety Code for Mechanical Refrigeration

D. American Society of Mechanical Engineers (ASME): Boiler and Pressure Vessel Codes

E. Air Conditioning and Refrigeration Institute Standards (ARI): All standards related to refrigeration and air conditioning equipment and piping furnished under these Specifications.

F. Sheet Metal and Air Conditioning Contractors National Association, Inc. (SMACNA): All current editions of applicable manuals and standards (See Sections 23 31 00 and 23 33 00.UT).

G. Air Moving and Conditioning Association (AMCA): All current editions of applicable manuals and standards.

H. American Society of Testing Materials (ASTM): All current editions of applicable manuals and standards.

I. American Water Works Association (AWWA): All current editions of applicable manuals and standards.

J. National Electrical Manufacturers' Association (NEMA): All current editions of applicable manuals and standards.

L. Uniform Building Code, (Includes the International Mechanical and International Plumbing Codes)

M. Texas Occupational Safety Act: All applicable safety standards

N. Occupational Safety and Health Act (OSHA)

O. ADA and ANSI Standards: All work shall be in accord with all regulations and requirements of the Standards and Specifications for Handicapped and Disabled for the Construction of Public Buildings and Facilities in the State of Texas Usable by Physically Handicapped and Disabled persons, ANSI Standards and the requirements of the American Disabilities Act.

P. Refer to Specification Sections hereinafter bound for additional Codes and Standards.

Q. All materials and workmanship shall comply with all applicable state and national codes, Specifications, and industry standards. In all cases where Underwriters Laboratories, Inc. has established standards for a particular type material, such material shall comply with these standards. Evidence of compliance shall be the UL "label" or "listing" under Re-Examination Service.

R. The Contract Documents are intended to comply with the aforementioned rules and regulations; however, some discrepancies may occur. Where such discrepancies occur, the Contractor shall immediately notify the Architect/Engineer in writing of said discrepancies and apply for an interpretation. Should the discovery and notification occur after the execution of a contract, any additional work required for compliance with said regulations shall be paid for as covered by Division 01 of these Contract Documents, providing no work of fabrication of materials has been accomplished in a manner of noncompliance. Should the Contractor fabricate and/or install materials and/or workmanship in such a manner that does not comply with the applicable codes, rules and regulations, the Contractor who performed such work shall bear all costs arising in correcting these deficiencies to comply with said rules and regulations.

1.13 GENERAL MATERIALS AND EQUIPMENT REQUIREMENTS

A. Storage at Site: The Contractor shall not receive material or equipment at the job site until there is suitable space provided to properly protect equipment from rust, drip, humidity, and dust damage.

B. Capacities shall be not less than those indicated but shall be such that no component or system becomes inoperative or is damaged because of startup or other overload conditions.

C. Conformance with Agency Requirements: Where materials or equipment are specified to be approved, listed, tested, or labeled by the Underwriters Laboratories, Inc., or constructed and/or tested in accordance with the standards of the American Society of Mechanical Engineers or the Air Moving and Conditioning Association, the Contractor shall submit proof that the items furnished under this Section of the Specifications conform to such requirements. The label of the Underwriters Laboratories, Inc., applied to the item will be acceptable as sufficient evidence that the items conform to such requirements. The ASME stamp or the AMCA label will be acceptable as sufficient evidence that the items conform to the respective requirements.

D. Nameplates: Each major component of equipment shall have the manufacturer's name, address, and catalog number on a plate securely attached to the item of equipment. All data on nameplates shall be legible at the time of Final Inspection.

E. Prevention of Rust: Standard factory finish will be acceptable on equipment specified by model number; otherwise, surfaces of ferrous metal shall be given a rust inhibiting coating. The treatment shall withstand 200 hours in salt spray fog test, in accordance with Method 6061 of Federal Standard No. 141. Immediately after completion of the test, the specimen shall show no signs of wrinkling or cracking and no signs of rust creepage beyond 1/8" on either side of the scratch mark. Where rust inhibitor coating is specified hereinafter, any treatment that will pass the above test is acceptable unless a specific coating is specified except that coal tar or asphalt type coating will not be acceptable unless so stated for a specific item. Where steel is specified to be hot-dip galvanized, mill-galvanized sheet steel may be used provided all raw edges are painted with a zinc-pigmented paint conforming to Military Specification MIL-P-26915.

F. Protection from Moving Parts: Belts, pulleys, chains, gears, couplings, projecting set screws, keys, and other rotating parts shall be fully enclosed or properly guarded for personnel protection.

G. Verification of Dimensions: The Contractor shall be responsible for the coordination and proper relation of his work to the building structure and to the work of all trades. The Contractor shall visit the premises and become thoroughly familiar with all details of the work and working conditions, to verify all dimensions in the field, and to advise the Architect/Engineer of any discrepancy before performing any work. Adjustments to the work required in order to facilitate a coordinated installation shall be made at no additional cost to the Owner or the Architect/Engineer.

1.14 WALL, FLOOR AND CEILING PLATES

A. See Section 23 05 29 – Sleeves, Flashings, Supports and Anchors.

1.15 SLEEVES, INSERTS, AND FASTENINGS

A. See Section 23 05 29 – Sleeves, Flashings, Supports and Anchors.

1.16 PROJECT/SITE CONDITIONS

A. Install Work in locations shown on Drawings, unless prevented by Project conditions.

B. Prepare drawings showing proposed rearrangement of Work to meet Project conditions, including changes to Work specified in other Sections. Obtain permission of Owner before proceeding.

1.17 MANUFACTURER'S RECOMMENDATIONS

A. The manufacturer's published directions shall be followed in the delivery, storage, protection, installation, piping, and wiring of all equipment and material. The Contractor shall promptly notify the Architect/Engineer, in writing, of any conflict between the requirements of the Contract Documents and the manufacturer's directions, and shall obtain the Architect/Engineer's instructions before proceeding with the work. Should the Contractor perform any such work that does not comply with the manufacturer's directions or such instructions from the Architect/Engineer, he shall bear all costs arising in connection with the deficiencies.

1.18 SPACE AND EQUIPMENT ARRANGEMENT

A. The size of mechanical and electrical equipment indicated on the Drawings is based on the dimensions of a particular manufacturer. While other manufacturers may be acceptable, it is the responsibility of the Contractor to determine if the equipment he proposes to furnish will fit in the space. Fabrication Drawings shall be prepared when required by the Architect/Engineer or Owner to indicate a suitable arrangement.

B. All equipment shall be installed in a manner to permit access to all surfaces. All valves, motors, drives, filters, and other accessory items shall be installed in a position to allow removal for service without disassembly of another part.

1.19 LARGE APPARATUS

A. Any large piece of apparatus which is to be installed in any space in the building, and which is too large to permit access through stairways, doorways, or shafts shall be brought to the job and placed in the space before the enclosing structure is completed. Following placement in the space, such apparatus shall be thoroughly, completely protected from damage as hereinafter specified.

1.20 PROTECTION

A. The Contractor shall at all times take such precautions as may be necessary to properly protect all materials and equipment from damage from the time of delivery until the completion of the work. This shall include the erection of all required temporary shelters and supports to adequately protect any items stored in the open on the site from the weather, the ground and surrounding work; the cribbing of any items above the floor of the construction; and the covering of items in the incomplete building with tarpaulins or other protective covering; the installation of electric heaters in electrical switchgear and similar equipment to prevent moisture damage. Failure on the part of the Contractor to comply with the above will be sufficient cause for the rejection of the items in question.

B. Take particular care not to damage the building structure in performing work. All finished floors, step treads, and finished surfaces shall be covered to prevent any damage by workmen or their tools and equipment during the construction of the building.

C. Equipment and materials shall be protected from rust both before and after installation. Any equipment or materials found in a rusty condition at the time of final inspection must be cleaned of rust and repainted as specified elsewhere in these Specifications.

1.21 COOPERATION BETWEEN TRADES AND WITH OTHER CONTRACTORS

A. Each trade, subcontractor, and/or Contractor must work in harmony with the various other trades, subcontractors and/or Contractors on the job as may be required to facilitate the progress to the best advantage of the job as a whole. Each trade, subcontractor, and/or Contractor must pursue its work promptly and carefully so as not to delay the general progress of the job. This Contractor shall work in harmony with Contractors working under other contracts on the premises.

1.22 ELECTRICAL WIRING OF MOTORS AND EQUIPMENT

A. The Contractor shall note that the electrical design and Drawings are based on the equipment scheduled and indicated on the Drawings, and should any mechanical equipment be provided requiring changes to the electrical design, the required electrical changes shall be made at no cost to the Owner.

B. The Electrical Trades shall provide all interconnecting wiring for the installation of all power. The Electrical Trades shall provide all disconnect switches as required for proper operation, as indicated on the Drawings or required by applicable code. All combination starters, individual starters, and other motor starting apparatus not specifically scheduled or specified as provided by the equipment manufacturer under the scope of Division 23, shall be provided under the scope of Division 26.

C. The Mechanical Trades shall provide complete wiring diagrams indicating power wiring and interlock wiring. Diagrams shall be submitted to the Architect/Engineer for review within thirty (30) days after the submittals for equipment have been reviewed. Diagrams shall be based on accepted equipment and shall be complete full phase and interlock control Drawings, not a series of manufacturer's individual diagrams. After these diagrams have been reviewed by the Architect/Engineer, copies shall be transmitted to the Electrical Trades by the Contractor. They shall be followed in detail. See Section 15E, TEMPERATURE CONTROLS, for additional clarification.

ROCIP Project: Withhold insurance cost. Please refer to sections 00425 & 00810 for information.

1.23 SUPERVISION

A. Each Contractor and subcontractor shall keep a competent superintendent or foreman on the job at all times. (Refer to the Uniform General Conditions for additional information concerning supervision.)

B. It shall be the responsibility of each superintendent to study all Drawings and familiarize himself with the work to be done by other trades. He shall coordinate his work with other trades and before material is fabricated or installed, make sure that his work will not cause an interference with another trade. Where interferences are encountered, they shall be resolved at the job site by the superintendents involved. Where interferences cannot be resolved without major changes to the Drawings, the matter shall be referred to the A/E for ruling.

1.24 SITE OBSERVATION

A. Site observation by the Architect/Engineer is for the express purpose of verifying compliance by the Contractor with the Contract Documents, and shall not be construed as construction supervision nor indication of approval of the manner or location in which the work is being performed as being a safe practice or place.

1.25 PRECEDENCE OF MATERIALS

A. The specifications determine the nature and setting of materials and equipment. The drawings establish quantities, dimensions and details.

B. The installation precedence of materials shall be as follows. Note that if an interference is encountered, this shall guide the contractor in the determination of which trade shall be given the "Right-of-Way."

Building lines
Structural Members
Soil and Drain Piping
Condensate Drains
Vent Piping
Supply, Return, and Outside Air Ductwork
Exhaust Ductwork
HVAC Water and Steam Piping
Steam Condensate Piping
Fire Protection Piping
Natural Gas Piping
Domestic Water (Cold and Hot)
Refrigerant Piping
Electrical Conduit

1.26 CONNECTIONS FOR OTHERS

A. The Mechanical Contractor shall rough in for and make all water, sewer, etc. connections to all fixtures, equipment, machinery, etc., provided by others in accordance with detailed roughing-in Drawings provided by the equipment suppliers, by actual measurements of the equipment connections, or as detailed.

B. After the equipment is set in place, this Contractor shall make all final connections and shall provide all required pipe, fittings, valves, traps, etc.

C. Provide all air gap fittings required, using materials hereinbefore specified. In each service line connected to an item of equipment or piece of machinery, provide a shutoff valve. On each drain not provided with a trap, provide a suitable trap.

D. All pipe fittings, valves, traps, etc., exposed in finished areas and connected to chrome plated lines provided by others shall be chrome plated to match.

E. Provide all sheet metal ductwork, transition pieces, etc., required for a complete installation of vent hoods, fume hoods, etc., provided by others.

1.27 INSTALLATION METHODS

A. Where to Conceal: All pipes, conduits, etc., shall be concealed in pipe chases, walls, furred spaces, or above the ceilings of the building unless otherwise indicated.

B. Where to Expose: In mechanical rooms, janitor's closets tight against pan soffits in exposed "Tee" structures, or storage spaces, but only where necessary, piping may be run exposed. All exposed piping shall be run in the most aesthetic, inconspicuous manner, and parallel or perpendicular to the building lines.

C. Support: All piping, ducts and conduits shall be adequately and properly supported from the building structure by means of hanger rods or clamps to walls as herein specified.

D. Maintaining Clearance: Where limited space is available above the ceilings below concrete beams or other deep projections, pipe and conduit shall be sleeved through the projection where it crosses, rather than hung below them in a manner to provide maximum above-floor clearance. Sleeves shall be as herein specified. Approval shall be obtained from the Architect/Engineer for each penetration.

E. All pipe, conduits, etc., shall be cut accurately to measurements established at the building and shall be worked into place without springing or forcing. All ducts, pipes and conduits run exposed in machinery and equipment rooms shall be installed parallel to the building lines, except that piping shall be sloped to obtain the proper pitch. Piping, ducts and conduits run in furred ceilings, etc., shall be similarly installed, except as otherwise shown. Conduits in furred ceilings and in other concealed spaces shall be neatly grouped and racked indicating good workmanship. All conduit and pipe openings shall be kept closed until the systems are closed with final connections.

1. All piping not directly buried in the ground shall be considered as "interior piping".
2. Prior to the installation of any ceiling material, gypsum, plaster, or acoustical board, the Contractor shall notify the construction inspector so that arrangement can be made for an inspection of the above-ceiling area about to be "sealed" off. The Contractor shall give as much advance notice as possible no less than 10 working days.
3. All above-ceiling areas will be subject to a formal inspection before ceiling panels are installed, or installation is otherwise concealed from view. All mechanical and electrical work at and above the ceiling, including items supported by the ceiling grid, such as air inlets or outlets and lighting fixtures, shall be complete and installed in accordance with contract requirements, including power to lighting fixtures, fans, and other powered items. Adequate lighting shall be provided to permit thorough inspection of all above-ceiling items. The inspection will include representatives of the following: General Contractor and each Subcontractor having work above the ceiling, Architect/Engineer, Physical Plant, Resident Construction Manager's Construction Inspector(s), the Resident Construction Manager, and Office of Facilities Planning and Construction (OFPC). Areas to be included and time of inspection shall be coordinated with the Construction Inspector.
4. The purpose of this inspection is to verify the completeness and quality of the installation of the air conditioning systems, the electrical systems, the plumbing systems, and any other special above ceiling systems such as pneumatic tube, vacuum systems, fire sprinkler piping and cable tray systems. The ceiling supports (tee bar or lath) shall be in place so that access panel and light fixture locations are identifiable and so that clearances and access provisions may be evaluated.
5. No ceiling materials may be installed until the resulting deficiency list from this inspection is worked off and the Construction Inspector has given approval.

1.28 RECORDS FOR OWNER

A. The Contractor shall maintain a set of prints in the Field Office for the sole purpose of recording "installed" conditions. Daily note all changes made in these Drawings in connection with the final installation including exact dimensioned locations of all new underground utilities, services and systems and all uncovered existing active and inactive piping outside the building.

B. At contract completion, the Contractor shall provide a set of reproducible drawings, plus the photo negatives of the revised drawings. The contractor shall transfer the information from the prints maintained as described above, and turn over this neatly marked set of reproducible Drawings representing the "as installed" work to the Architect/Engineers for verification and subsequent transmittal to the Owner. The Contractor shall refer to Division 01 of these Specifications, and to the Uniform General Conditions, for additional information. These Drawings shall include as a minimum:

1. Addendum written drawing changes.
2. Addendum supplementary drawings.
3. Accurate, dimensioned locations of all underground utilities, services and systems.
4. Identification of equipment work shown on Alternates as to whether alternates were accepted and work actually installed.
5. Change Order written drawing changes.
6. Change Order supplementary drawings.

C. Electronic Media:

1. In lieu of the drawings described above in 1.33B, it is preferred the contractor submit one set of prints, one set of vellum reproducible, and one set of discs containing all the drawings in AUTOCAD 2006 format.

D. "As installed" drawings shall bear a stamp, "stick on decal", or lettered title block generally located in lower right hand corner of Drawing entitled "AS INSTALLED DRAWING" with Company name of the installing trade Subcontractor and with a place for the date and the name of the responsible company representative.

E. In addition to the above, the Contractor shall accumulate during the progress of the job the following data, in duplicate, prepared in a neat brochure or packet folder and turn over to the Architect/Engineer for review, and subsequent delivery to the Owner.

1. All warranties and guarantees and manufacturers' directions on equipment and material covered by the Contract.
2. Two sets of operating instructions for heating and cooling and other mechanical and electrical systems. Operating instructions shall also include recommended preventative maintenance and seasonal changeover procedures.

3. Valve tag charts and diagrams specified herein.
4. Approved wiring diagrams and control diagrams representing "as installed" conditions.
5. Copies of approved Shop Drawings.
6. Any and all other data and/or drawings required as submittals during construction.
7. Repair parts list of all major items and equipment including name, address and telephone number of local supplier or agent.

F. All of the above data shall be submitted to the Architect/Engineer for approval, and shall be corrected as instructed by the Architect/Engineer prior to submission of the final request for payment.

1.29 CUTTING AND PATCHING

A. General: Cut and patch walls, floors, etc., resulting from work in existing construction or by failure to provide proper openings or recesses in new construction.

B. Methods of cutting: Openings cut through concrete and masonry shall be made with masonry saws and/or core drills and at such locations acceptable to the Architect/Engineer. Impact-type equipment shall not be used except where specifically acceptable to the Architect/Engineer. Openings in precast concrete slabs for pipes, conduits, outlet boxes, etc., shall be core drilled to exact size.

C. Restoration: All openings shall be restored to "as-new" condition under the appropriate Specification Section for the materials involved, and shall match remaining surrounding materials and/or finishes.

D. Masonry: Where openings are cut through masonry walls, provide and install lintels or other structural supports to protect the remaining masonry. Adequate supports shall be provided during the cutting operation to prevent any damage to the masonry occasioned by the operation. All structural members, supports, etc., shall be of the proper size and shape, and shall be installed in a manner acceptable to the Architect/Engineer.

E. Plaster: All mechanical work in areas containing plaster shall be completed prior to the application of the finish plaster coat. Cutting of finish plaster coat will not be permitted.

F. Special Note: No cutting, boring, or excavating which will weaken the structure shall be undertaken.

1.30 ROOF PENETRATIONS AND FLASHING

A. Pipe, conduit and duct sleeves, pitch pockets, and flashings compatible with the roofing installation shall be provided and installed by a qualified contractor for all roof penetrations. This shall be the responsibility of the General Contractor.

1.31 EXCAVATION, TRENCHING AND BACKFILL

A. Excavation (See Divisions 00 and 01 for special requirements related to excavation and trenching.):

1. The Mechanical and Electrical subcontractors shall perform all excavations of every description, for their particular installations and of whatever substances encountered, to the depths indicated on the Drawings and/or required for the installation of piping, conduit, utility systems, etc. All exterior lines shall be installed with a minimum cover of 24", unless otherwise indicated. Generally, more cover shall be provided if grade will permit. All excavation materials not required for backfill or fill shall be removed and wasted as acceptable to the Construction Inspector. All excavations shall be made only by open cut. The banks of trenches shall be kept as nearly vertical as possible and where required, shall be properly sheeted and braced. Trenches shall be not less than 12" wider nor more than 16" wider than the outside edges of the pipe to be laid therein, and shall be excavated true to line so that a clear space not less than 6" nor more than 8" in width is provided on each side of the pipe. For sewers, the maximum width of trench specified applies to the width at and below the level may be made as wide as necessary for sheeting and bracing, and the proper installation of the work.
2. The bottom of trenches shall be accurately graded to provide proper fall and uniform bearing and support for each section of the pipe on undisturbed soil or 2" of sand fill at every point along its entire length, except for portions of the pipe sections where it is necessary to excavate for bell holes and for the proper sealing of pipe joints. Bell holes shall be dug after the trench bottom has been graded. Where inverts are not shown, grading shall be determined by the National Plumbing Code for the service intended and the size used. Bell holes for lead pipe joints shall be 12" in depth below the trench bottom and shall extend from a point 6" back of the face of the bell. Such bell holes shall be of sufficient width to provide ample room for caulking. Bell holes for sewer tile and water pipe shall be excavated only to an extent sufficient to permit accurate work in the making of the joints and to insure that the pipe, for a maximum of its length, will rest upon the prepared bottom of the trench. Depressions for joints other than bell-and-spigot shall be made in accordance with the recommendations of the joint manufacturer for the particular type of joint used. In general, grading for electrical ductbanks and conduits shall be from building to manhole, and from a high point between manholes to each manhole. Special pipe beds shall be provided as specified hereinafter.

3. The lower 4" of the pipe trenches measuring from an overhead line set parallel to the grade line of the sewer shall be excavated only a few feet in advance to the pipe laying, by men especially skilled in this type of work. Where damage is likely to result from withdrawing sheeting, the sheeting shall be left in place. Except at locations where excavation of rock from the bottom of trenches is required, care shall be taken not to excavate below the depths required. Where rock excavation is required, the rock shall be excavated to a minimum overdepth of 6" below the trench depths specified. The overdepth rock excavation and all excess trench excavation shall be backfilled with sand. Whenever wet or otherwise unstable soil is incapable of properly supporting the pipe is encountered in the trench bottom, such soil shall be removed to a depth and for the trench lengths required, and then backfilled to trench bottom grade, as hereinafter specified, with sand.
4. All grading in the vicinity of excavation shall be controlled to prevent surface ground water from flowing into the excavations. Any water accumulated in the excavations shall be removed by pumping or other acceptable method. During excavation, material suitable for backfilling shall be stacked in an orderly manner a sufficient distance back from edges of trenches to avoid overloading and prevent slides or cave-ins. Material unsuitable for backfilling shall be wasted and removed from the job site as directed by the Construction Inspector.
5. All shoring and sheeting required to perform and protect the excavations and to safeguard employees and/or adjacent structures shall be provided.
6. Excavate as required under the building in order that all piping, ductwork, etc., shall clear the ground a minimum of 12" for a distance of 24" on either side. Edges of such excavations shall slope at an angle of not over 45 degrees with the horizontal unless otherwise approved by the Construction Inspector. The bottom of such excavation shall be graded to drain in a manner acceptable to the Construction Inspector.
7. Trenches for cast iron drain, storm water and sewer lines inside the building shall be properly excavated, following, in general, the procedures set out for exterior lines. Where floors are to be poured over these lines, they shall be backfilled, tamped and settled with water. Where no flooring is to cover the lines, they shall be backfilled to form a level grade.
8. All surplus materials removed in these trenching operations becomes the property of the contractor, and shall be disposed of at the expense of the contractor, at a legal disposal site, off of the campus.

B. Backfilling:

1. Trenches shall not be backfilled until all required tests are performed and until the piping, utilities systems, etc., as installed are certified by the Owner's inspector to conform to the requirements specified hereinafter. The trenches shall be carefully backfilled with sand to a depth of 12 inches above the top of the pipe. The next layer and subsequent layers of backfill may be excavated materials approved for backfilling, consisting of earth, loam, sandy clay, sand and gravel, soft shale, or other approved materials free from large clods of earth or stones larger than 1 1/2" in diameter, flooded until the pipe has cover of not less than one foot. The remainder of the backfill material shall then be thrown into the trenches, moistened, and tamped or flooded in one foot layers. Blasted rock, broken concrete or pavement, and large boulders shall not be used as backfill material. Any trenches improperly backfilled, or where settlement occurs, shall be reopened to the depth required for proper compaction, then refilled and mounded over, and smoothed off.
2. Backfill under concrete slabs-on-fill shall be as specified above, shall be gravel, or shall be other such materials more suitable for the application. Installation and compaction shall be as required for compatibility with adjacent materials.

C. Opening and Re-closing Pavement and Lawns: Where excavation requires the opening of existing walks, streets, drives, other existing pavement, or lawns, such surfaces shall be cut as required to install new lines and to make new connections to existing lines. The sizes of the cut shall be held to a minimum, consistent with the work to be accomplished. After the installation of the new work is completed and the excavation has been backfilled and flooded, the area shall be patched, using materials to match those cut out. The patches shall thoroughly bond with the original surfaces and shall be level with them, and shall meet all the requirements established by the authorities having jurisdiction over such areas.

D. Excavation in Vicinity of Trees: All trees including low hanging limbs within the immediate area of construction shall be adequately protected to a height of at least 5 ft. to prevent damage from the construction operations and/or equipment. All excavation within the outermost limb radius of all trees shall be accomplished with extreme care. All roots located within this outermost limb radius shall be brought to the attention of the Construction Inspector before they are cut or damaged in any way. The Construction Inspector will give immediate instructions for the disposition of same. All stumps and roots encountered in the excavation, which are not within the outermost limb radius of existing trees, shall be cut back to a distance of not less than 18" from the outside of any concrete structure or pipeline. No chips, parts of stumps, or loose rock shall be left in the excavation. Where stumps and roots have been cut out of the excavation, clean compacted dry bank sand shall be backfilled and tamped.

ROCIP Project: Withhold insurance cost. Please refer to sections 00425 & 00810 for information.

1.32 ACCESS DOORS

A. General: This Contractor shall provide wall or ceiling access doors for unrestricted access to all concealed items of mechanical equipment or devices.

B. Doors: Access doors mounted in painted surfaces shall be of Milcor (Inland-Ryerson Construction Products Company) manufacture, Style K for plastered surfaces and Style M or DW for non-plastered surfaces. The Style K doors shall be set so that the finished surface of the door is even with the finished surface of the adjacent finishes. Access doors mounted on tile surfaces shall be of similar construction as noted above, except they shall be of stainless steel materials. Access doors shall be a minimum of 12" x 12" in size.

1.33 OPERATION PRIOR TO COMPLETION

A. When any piece of mechanical equipment is operable and it is to the advantage of the Contractor to operate the equipment, he may do so, providing that he properly supervises the operation, and has the Construction Inspector's written permission to do so. The warranty period shall, however, not commence until such time as the equipment is operated for the beneficial use of the Owner, or date of substantial completion, whichever occurs first.

B. Regardless of whether or not the equipment has or has not been operated, the Contractor shall properly clean the equipment, install clean filter media, properly adjust, and complete all deficiency list items before final acceptance by the Owner. The date of acceptance and performance certification will be the same date.

1.34 EXISTING FACILITIES

A. The Contractor shall be responsible for loss or damage to the existing facilities caused by him and his workmen, and shall be responsible for repairing or replacing such loss or damage. The Contractor shall send proper notices, make necessary arrangements, and perform other services required for the care, protection and in service maintenance of all plumbing, heating, air conditioning, and ventilating services for the new and existing facilities. The Contractor shall erect temporary barricades, with necessary safety devices, as required to protect personnel from injury, removing all such temporary protection upon completion of the work.

B. Outages of services as required by the new installation will be permitted but only at a time approved by the Owner. The Contractor shall allow the Owner two weeks in order to schedule required outages. The time allowed for outages will not be during normal working hours unless otherwise approved by the Owner. All costs of outages, including overtime charges, shall be included in the contract amount.

1.35 CHECKING AND TESTING MATERIALS AND/OR EQUIPMENT

A. Before the work is accepted, an authorized representative of the manufacturer of the installed materials and/or equipment shall personally inspect the installation and operation of his materials and/or equipment to determine that it is properly installed and in proper operating order. The qualifications of the representative shall be appropriate to the technical requirements of the installation. The qualifications of the representative shall be submitted to the owner for approval. The decision of the owner concerning the appropriateness of the representative shall be final. Testing and checking shall be accomplished during the course of the work where required by work being concealed, and at the completion of the work otherwise. In addition, the Contractor shall submit to the Architect/Engineer a signed statement from each representative certifying as follows: "I certify that the materials and/or equipment listed below have been personally inspected by the undersigned authorized manufacturer's representative and is properly installed and operating in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations".

B. Check inspections shall include plumbing equipment, heating, air conditioning, insulation, ventilating equipment, controls, mechanical equipment and such other items hereinafter specified or specifically designated by the Architect/Engineer.

1.36 TESTS

A. The Contractor shall make, at no additional cost to the Owner, any tests deemed necessary by the inspection departments having jurisdiction, and in the National Fire Protection Association, ASTM, etc. Standards listed. The Contractor shall provide all equipment, materials, and labor for making such tests. Reasonable amounts of fuel and electrical energy costs for system tests will be paid by the Owner. Fuel and electrical energy costs for system adjustment and tests which follow beneficial occupancy by the Owner will be borne by the Owner.

B. Additional tests specified hereinafter under the various Specification Sections shall be made.

C. The Construction Inspector shall be notified in writing at least 10 working days prior to each test and other Specification requirements requiring action on the part of the Construction Inspector. All equipment shall be placed in operation and tested for proper automatic control requirements before the balancing agency starts their work.

D. Maintain Log of Tests as hereinafter specified.

E. See Specifications hereinafter for additional tests and requirements.

1.37 LOG OF TESTS

A. All tests shall have pertinent data logged by the Contractor at the time of testing. Data shall include date, time, personnel, description, and extent of system tested, test conditions, test results, specified results, and other pertinent data. Data shall be delivered to the Architect/Engineer as specified under "Requirements for Final Acceptance". All Test Log entries shall be legibly signed by the Project Contractor or his authorized job superintendent.

1.38 COOPERATION AND CLEANUP

A. It shall be the responsibility of each trade to cooperate fully with the other trades on the job to help keep the job site in a clean and safe condition. At the end of each day's work, each trade shall properly store all of his tools, equipment and materials and shall clean his debris from the job. Upon the completion of the job, each trade shall immediately remove all of his tools, equipment, any surplus materials and all debris caused by that portion of the work.

1.39 CLEANING AND PAINTING

A. All equipment, piping, conduit, ductwork, grilles, insulation, etc., furnished and installed in exposed areas under Divisions 23 and 26 of these Specifications and as hereinafter specified shall be cleaned, prepared, and painted according to the following specification. In the event of a conflict between the specifications referenced, the provisions of this specification shall prevail only for Division 23 and Division 26 work.

B. All purchased equipment furnished by the mechanical and electrical subcontractors shall be delivered to the job with a suitable factory protective finish with the colors hereinafter specified. The following materials shall not be painted: copper, galvanized metal, stainless steel, fiberglass, PVC, and PVDF.

C. Before painting, materials and equipment surfaces shall be thoroughly cleaned of cement, plaster, and other foreign materials, and all oil and grease spots shall be removed. Such surfaces shall be carefully wiped and all cracks and corners scraped out. Exposed metal work shall be carefully brushed down with the steel brushes to remove rust and other spots and left smooth and clean.

D. Color of finish painting in Mechanical Rooms shall be painted in accordance with The University of Texas Standard Color Schedule for machinery spaces using Pratt and Lambert, Inc.'s "Effector" enamel, or approved equal. For painting purposes, the equipment and piping inside of built-up air handling units shall be painted the same as if they were within the walls of a Mechanical Room. Two coats shall be applied with a light tint first coat and deep color for final coat. Colors shall be as follows:

ITEM	COLOR	"P and L" PAINT NUMBER
Equipment Bases	Light Green	YG493M (Winter Pear)
Equipment	Green	YG511Y (Biscay Green)
Piping (Insulated and Uninsulated)	Light Gray	B798M (London Fog)
Hanger Rods	Same as "Piping" above	
Ductwork, AHU, Fans and Insulation	Buff	Y354M (Tawny Gold)
Valve Hand Wheels	Blue	B726M (Siam Blue)
Pump Couplings	Safety Yellow	Y361M (Daisy Yellow)
Fire Protection Equipment and Piping	Safety Red	R131R (Vibrant Red)

E. Jacketing on insulation shall not be painted.

F. No nameplates on equipment shall be painted, and suitable protection shall be afforded to the plates to prevent their being rendered illegible due to the painting operation.

G. Scope of painting for Divisions 23 and 26 work in areas other than those defined as "exposed" is as follows:

1. All uncovered steel pipe, supports, exposed pipe and hanger rod threads, and hangers in underfloor spaces shall be cleaned and painted with two coats of Tropical Paint Co. No. 77-black asphaltic emulsion. Galvanized steel and copper lines in these spaces shall not be painted.
2. All canvas finishes including those underfloor and in concealed spaces shall be painted with one sizing coat if not already sized, containing mildew resistant additive and Arabol adhesive prior to any other specified finish paint.

3. If insulated, the piping shall be primed, only, prior to insulation, and the insulation jacketing shall be painted as specified for piping. The requirements of this paragraph are "primary" and have priority over any conflicting specification or instruction, should a conflict in the Construction Documents exist.

H. In addition to painting in mechanical rooms, materials, piping, ductwork, conduit, gear, supports, foundations, equipment and appurtenances installed by the mechanical and electrical subcontractors in exposed areas shall be finish painted with two coats of Pratt and Lambert, Inc.'s "Effector" enamel of color selected by the Architect/Engineer.

I. Additional areas to be defined as "exposed" for purposes of painting, are defined as follows: (Note that paragraph 1.3.10 of this Section defines exposed areas for the balance of the project. The areas listed below are to be painted in addition to exposed areas as previously defined.)

J. The surfaces to be finish painted shall first be prepared as follows:

1. On canvas finishes pretreat as specified above. Insulated surfaces having vapor barrier jacket exposed to view shall first be painted with one (l) coat of sealer.
2. Galvanized and black steel surfaces shall first be painted with one (1) coat of P&L galvanized metal primer. Primer may be eliminated on concealed fire and gas piping.
3. Aluminum surfaces shall first be painted with one (1) coat of P&L zinc chromate primer. (See Section 1.51.5)
4. Cast iron pipe shall first be primed with a "non-bleed" primer.
5. The underside of all cast iron sinks not recessed in a cabinet are included as items to be painted in exposed areas.

K. Electrical switchgear, disconnect switches, contactors, etc., with suitable factory applied finishes shall not be repainted; except for aesthetic reasons where located in finished areas as directed by the Architect/Engineer and in a color selected by the Architect/Engineer. Where factory applied finishes are damaged in transit, storage or installation, or before final acceptance, they shall be restored to factory fresh condition by competent refinishers using the spray process.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 Not Used.

ROCIP Project: Withhold insurance cost. Please refer to sections 00425 & 00810 for information.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 PIPE PRESSURE TESTS

A. The following lines shall be tested at the stated pressure for the length of time noted:

Testing Service	Testing Medium	Pressure (PSIG)	Time in Hours
Chilled Water	Water	150	24
Domestic Hot & Cold Water	Water	150	24
Sanitary & Storm Piping	Water	Fill to top	24

B. Where leaks occur, the pipe shall be repaired and the tests repeated. No leaks shall be corrected by peening. Defective piping and joints shall be removed and replaced.

END OF SECTION 23 00 00

ROCIP Project: Withhold insurance cost. Please refer to sections 00425 & 00810 for information.

SECTION 23 00 30 - MECHANICAL DEMOLITION

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SECTION INCLUDES

A. Demolition including, but not limited to, the complete removal of the following:

1. VAV terminal unit systems.
2. HVAC piping systems.
3. Air distribution systems.
4. Coils.
5. Grilles and Registers.
6. Plumbing fixtures and associated piping.
7. Fire standpipe systems and associated piping.
8. Valves and fittings.
9. Supports.

1.2 DEFINITIONS

A. Removed: Refers to mechanical services which are to be disconnected and presented to the owner's representative for disposition. Items deemed unsalvageable by owner shall become the property of the contractor and shall be removed from project site.

B. Salvaged: Refers to items which are disconnected, taken out of service and turned over to Owner.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MATERIALS

A. Provide materials necessary for demolition work.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 PROJECT/SITE CONDITIONS

A. Site Visitation: Visit the site of the proposed construction to become thoroughly familiar with details of work and working conditions, verify dimensions in the field, and advise A/E of discrepancies before performing work.

B. Site Obstructions:

1. Drawings indicate certain information pertaining to surface and subsurface obstructions which has been taken from available drawings. Such information is not guaranteed as to accuracy of location or completeness of information.
2. Verify with A/E, Owner's representative, and other interested parties that available information has been provided before cutting or trenching operations are begun. Verify locations given.
3. Assume total responsibility for and repair damage to existing utilities or construction, whether or not such existing facilities are shown.

3.2 EXAMINATION

A. Demolition drawings are based on casual field observation and existing record documents. Report discrepancies to A/E before disturbing existing installation. Drawings are for Contractor's convenience and accuracy or exactness is not guaranteed.

B. Beginning of demolition means installer accepts existing conditions.

3.3 PREPARATION

A. Coordinate utility service outages with Owner' representative.

B. Owner must approve and designate times for any interruptions and/or shutdown of existing services.

C. Provide temporary connections to maintain existing system in service during construction. When Contractor elects to perform work on energized equipment, use personnel experienced in such operations.

3.4 DEMOLITION

A. Connect equipment that is existing and is to remain to the new system as required to maintain its proper operation.

B. Piping to Be Removed: Remove portion of piping indicated to be removed and cap or plug remaining piping with same or compatible piping material.

C. Ducts to Be Removed: Remove portion of ducts indicated to be removed and plug remaining ducts with same or compatible ductwork material.

D. Equipment to Be Removed: Disconnect and cap services and remove equipment.

E. Equipment to Be Removed and Salvaged: Disconnect and cap services and remove equipment and deliver to Owner. Items deemed unsalvageable by owner shall become the property of the contractor and shall be removed from project site.

F. Maintain access to existing mechanical installations that remain active. Modify installation or provide access as appropriate.

3.5 SCHEDULING AND PHASING

A. Prior to the start of any demolition work within the building, provide the A/E and Owner a schedule of phased selective demolition for all mechanical demolition at the site.

B. Provide the following information for the schedule:

1. Number of phases of demolition.
2. Limits of each phase.
3. Dates of start/finish demolition by phase.
4. Critical dates for disruptions in chilled water, steam, domestic water or other mechanical utilities.
5. Dates and duration of temporary measures to maintain occupancy in adjacent areas.

C. Coordinate the mechanical demolition schedule with all aspects of demolition under other Divisions of the specifications.

END OF SECTION 23 00 30

ROCIP Project: Withhold insurance cost. Please refer to sections 00425 & 00810 for information.

SECTION 23 05 29 - SLEEVES, FLASHINGS, SUPPORTS AND ANCHORS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.0 The following sections are to be included as if written herein:

A. Section 23 00 00 – Basic Mechanical Requirements

B. Section 23 05 53 – Mechanical Identification

1.1 SECTION INCLUDES

A. Pipe and equipment hangers and supports

B. Equipment bases and supports

C. Sleeves and seals

D. Flashing and sealing equipment and pipe stacks

1.3 RELATED SECTIONS

A. Section 22 13 16 - Plumbing Piping

B. Section 23 00 00 – Basic Mechanical Requirements

C. Section 23 05 53 - Mechanical Identification

D Section 23 07 19 - Piping Insulation

E. Section 23 20 00.A - Piping, Valves and Fittings

F. Section 23 21 00 - Hydronic Piping

G. Section 23 22 00 – Steam and Steam Condensate Piping

1.4 REFERENCES

A. ASME B31.1 - Power Piping

B. ASME B31.2 - Fuel Gas Piping

C. ASME B31.9 - Building Services Piping

D. ASTM F708 - Design and Installation of Rigid Pipe Hangers

E. MSS SP58 - Pipe Hangers and Supports - Materials, Design and Manufacturer

F. MSS SP69 - Pipe Hangers and Supports - Selection and Application

G. MSS SP89 - Pipe Hangers and Supports - Fabrication and Installation Practices

H. NFPA 13 - Installation of Sprinkler Systems

I. NFPA 14 - Installation of Standpipe and Hose Systems

J. UL 203 - Pipe Hanger Equipment for Fire Protection Service

1.5 SUBMITTALS

A. Submit under provisions of Section 23 00 00.

B. Shop Drawings: Indicate system layout with location and detail of trapeze hangers.

C. Product Data: Provide manufacturers catalog data including load capacity.

D. Design Data: Indicate load carrying capacity of trapeze, multiple pipe, and riser support hangers.

E. Manufacturer's Installation Instructions: Indicate special procedures and assembly of components.

1.6 REGULATORY REQUIREMENTS

A. Conform to applicable code for support of plumbing, hydronic, steam and steam condensate piping.

B. Supports for Sprinkler Piping: Shall be in conformance with NFPA 13.

C. Supports for Standpipes: Shall be in conformance with NFPA 14.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 HANGERS AND SUPPORTS

A. Manufacturers:

1. Grinnell.

2. Kindorf
3. B-Line
4. Power Strut

B. Supports, hangers, anchors and guides shall be provided for all horizontal and vertical piping. Shop Drawings shall be provided, indicating locations and details of anchors, guides, expansion loops and joints, hangers, etc. The hanger design shall conform to the ASME Code for Pressure Piping.

C. All auxiliary steel required for supports, anchors, guides, etc. shall be provided by the Mechanical Trades unless specifically indicated to be provided by others.

D. The supports, hangers, anchors, and guides for the chilled water supply and return piping, steam piping, condensate return piping, etc. of the Campus Loop System routed through utility tunnels and below buildings shall be provided as indicated on the Drawings.

E. Contractor shall review all Drawings, including Structural Drawings, for details regarding pipe supports, anchors, hangers, and guides.

F. All Supports shall be of type and arrangement to prevent excessive deflection, to avoid excessive bending stresses between supports, and to eliminate transmission of vibration.

G. All rod sizes indicated in this Specification are minimum sizes only. This trade shall be responsible for structural integrity of all supports, anchors, guides, etc. All structural hanging materials shall have a minimum safety factor of 5 built in.

H. Anchor points as indicated on Drawings or as required shall be located and constructed to permit the piping system to take up its expansion and contraction freely in opposite directions away from the anchored points.

I. Guide points shall be located and constructed wherever required or indicated on Drawings and at each side of an expansion joint or loop, to permit free axial movement only.

J. Supports, hangers, anchors, and guides shall be fastened to the structure only at such points where the structure is capable of restraining the forces in the piping system.

K. Hangers supporting and contacting brass or copper lines 3" in size and smaller shall be Grinnell Fig. CT-99c, adjustable, copper plated, tubing ring. Hangers supporting and contacting brass or copper lines 4" and larger shall be Grinnell Fig. 260, adjustable clevis, with a nut above and below the hanger, and approved neoprene isolating material between pipe (or tubing) and hanger on the support rod. For insulated copper or brass domestic water lines, hangers for all sizes of pipe shall be Grinnell Fig. 300, adjustable clevis, with a nut above and below the hanger, and approved neoprene isolating material between pipe (or tubing) and hanger on the support rod. Isolate all copper or brass lines from all ferrous materials with approved dielectric materials. Hangers supporting and contacting plastic or glass piping shall be of equal design, but shall be padded with neoprene material or equal. The padding material and the configuration of its installation shall be submitted for approval.

L. Hangers supporting insulated lines where the outside diameter of the insulation is the equivalent of 8" diameter pipe or smaller in size and supporting all ferrous lines 6" and smaller in size shall be Grinnell Fig. 260, adjustable clevis, with a nut above and below the hanger on the support rod.

M. Hangers supporting and contacting ferrous lines larger than 6" in size and outside of insulation on lines with the outside diameter equivalent to 10" diameter pipe shall be Grinnell Fig. 260, adjustable clevis, with a nut above and below the hanger on the support rod.

N. Other special type of hangers may be employed where so specified or indicated on the Drawings, or where required by the particular conditions. In any case, all hangers must be acceptable to the owner.

O. Each hanger shall be properly sized to fit the supported pipe or fit the outside of the insulation on lines where specified. Hangers for dual or low temperature insulation pipes shall bear on the outside of the insulation, which shall be protected by support shields as specified in Section 23 07 19 - PIPING INSULATION. Protect insulation from crushing by means of a section of rigid insulation to be installed at hanger points. Hangers for high temperature insulated pipes and all insulated hot and cold domestic water pipes shall be encased in the insulation unless supported by trapezes in which case shield and rigid insulation shall be provided as specified above for low temperature insulated pipes.

P. Supports for vertical piping shall be double bolt riser clamps, Grinnell Fig. 261, or other approved equal, with each end having equal bearing on the building structure, and located at each floor. Two-hole rigid pipe clamps at 4 ft. o.c. or Kindorf channels and Grinnell Fig. 261 riser clamps may be used to support pipe directly from vertical surfaces or members where lines are not subject to expansion and contraction. When piping is subject to expansion and contraction, provide spring isolators (see Section 23 05 48 - Vibration Isolation). Where brass or copper lines are supported on trapeze hangers or Kindorf channels the pipes shall be isolated from these supports with plastic tape with insulating qualities, or strut clamps as manufactured by Specialty Products Company, Stanton, California.

Q. All electrical conduits shall be run parallel or perpendicular to adjacent building lines. Single conduits running horizontally shall be supported by "Caddy" or "Minerallac" type hangers from adequately sized rods (minimum 1/4") from the building structure. Where multiple conduits are run horizontally, they shall be supported on trapeze of "Unistrut" type channel suspended on rods or bolted to vertical building members. Conduit shall be secured to channel with galvanized "Unistrut" type conduit clamps or stainless steel "Unistrut" type "Uni-Clips." All hangers shall be fastened to the building structure in the same manner as specified above for pipe hangers. Spacing of hangers shall be adequate for the weight and rigidity of the conduits involved; in any case, no greater than 8' centers. Where feasible, conduits may be fastened to the concrete by one-hole straps thoroughly anchored to the concrete in an approved manner. Flexible conduit shall also be supported in an acceptable manner so as not to interfere with the maintenance of above-ceiling equipment, and to support it from touching the ceiling system. Conduit shall be located so as not to inhibit removal of ceiling tiles.

Vertical conduits shall be supported as often as necessary for rigidity by clamps resting on adjacent beams or floor slabs, using a minimum of one support per floor.

R. Perforated strap iron or wire will not, under any circumstances, be acceptable as hanger material.

S. Attachment:

1. The load and spacing on each hanger and/or insert shall not exceed the safe allowable load for any component of the support system, including the concrete which holds the inserts. Reinforcement at inserts shall be provided as required to develop the strength required.
2. Inserts shall be of a type which will not interfere with reinforcing as shown on the structural Drawings and which will not displace excessive amounts of structural concrete.
3. All supports shall be designed and installed to avoid interference with other piping, hangers, ducts, electrical conduit, supports, building structures, equipment, etc. All piping shall be installed with due regard to expansion and contraction and the type of hanger method of support, location of support, etc. shall be governed in part by this Specification.

4. Hangers shall be attached to the structure as follows:

   a) Poured In Place Concrete: Where pipes and equipment are supported under poured in place concrete construction, each hanger rod shall be fitted with a nut at its upper end, which nut shall be set into an Underwriters Laboratories, Inc. listed universal concrete insert placed in the form work before concrete is poured. Where inserts are placed in the bottom faces of concrete joists which are too narrow to provide adequate strength of concrete to hold the insert properly or where a larger insert would require displacement of the bottom joist steel, the hanger rod shall be suspended from the center of a horizontal angle iron, channel iron, I-beam, etc. spanning across two adjacent joists. The horizontal support shall be bolted to nonadjustable concrete inserts of the "spot" type, of physical size small enough to avoid the bottom joist steel.
   b) Steel Bar Joists: Where pipes and loads are supported under bar joists, hanger rods may be run through the space between the bottom angles and secured with a washer and two nuts. Where larger lines are supported beneath bar joists, hanger rods shall be secured to angle irons of adequate size; each angle shall span across two or more joists as required to distribute the weight properly and shall be welded to the joists or otherwise permanently fixed thereto.
   c) Steel Beams: Where pipes and loads are supported under steel beams, approved type beam clamps shall be used.
   d) Wood Framing: Where pipes and loads are supported from wood framing, hanger rods shall be attached to framing with side beam brackets or angle clips.
   f) If it is necessary to install a method of fastening a hanger after the structure has been installed, then only clamps or drilled anchors shall be used.
      <u>Power-actuated fasteners (shooting) will not be acceptable under any circumstances</u>.
      <u>Note: Under no circumstances will the use of plastic anchors or plastic expansion shields be permitted for any purpose whatsoever.</u>

T. Trapezes: Where multiple lines are run horizontally at the same elevation and grade, they may be supported on trapezes of Kindorf, Uni-Strut, Power Strut, or approved equal, channel-suspended on rods or pipes. Trapeze members including suspension rods shall each be properly sized for the number, size, and loaded weight of the lines they are to support.

U. Finishes: All hangers on piping including clevis hangers, rods, inserts, clamps, stanchions, and brackets, shall be dipped in Zinc Chromate Primer before installation. Rods may be galvanized or cadmium plated after threading, in lieu of dipping zinc chromate. Universal concrete inserts shall be cadmium plated.

V. Miscellaneous: Provide any other special foundations, hangers and supports indicated on the Drawings, specified elsewhere herein; or required by conditions at the site. Hangers and supporting structures for suspended equipment shall be provided as required to support the load from the building structure in a manner acceptable to the Architect/Engineer.

2.2 ACCESSORIES

A. Hanger Rods: Galvanized mild steel threaded both ends, galvanized threaded one end, or galvanized continuous threaded.

B. Inserts: Malleable iron case of galvanized steel shell and expander plug for threaded connection with lateral adjustment, top slot for reinforcing rods, lugs for attaching to forms; size inserts to suit threaded hanger rods. Suitable concrete inserts for pipe and equipment hangers shall be set and properly located for all pipe and equipment to be suspended from concrete construction. If the inserts are later found not to be in the proper location for the placement of hangers, then drilled anchors shall be installed. Drilled anchors in concrete or masonry shall be submitted for the approval by the Owner.

2.4 CONCRETE FOUNDATIONS ("Housekeeping Pads")

A. Concrete foundations for the support of equipment such as floor mounted panels, pumps, fans, air handling units, etc., shall extend 4" on all sides beyond the limits of the mounted equipment unless otherwise noted and shall be poured in forms built of new dressed 6" nominal lumber. All corners of the foundations shall be neatly chamfered by means of sheet metal or triangular wood strips nailed to the form. Foundation bolts shall be placed in the forms when the concrete is poured, the bolts being correctly located by means of templates. Each bolt shall be set in a sleeve of size to provide 1/2" clearance around bolt. Allow 1" below the equipment bases for alignment and grouting. After grouting, the forms shall be removed and the surface of the foundations shall be hand rubbed with Carborundum. Foundations for equipment located on the exterior of the building shall be provided as indicated. Foundations shall be constructed in accordance with Shop Drawings submitted by the Contractor for review by the Architect/Engineer.

2.5 WALL, FLOOR AND CEILING PLATES

A. Except as otherwise noted, provide C.P. (Chrome plated) brass floor and ceiling plates around all pipes, conduits, etc., passing exposed through walls, floors, or ceilings, in any spaces except underfloor and attic spaces. Plates shall be sized to fit snugly against the outside of the pipe or against the insulation on lines which are insulated and positively secured to such pipe or insulation. Plates will not be required for piping where pipe sleeves extend 3/4" above finished floor. All equipment rooms are classified as finished areas. Round and rectangular ducts shall have closure plates (NOT chrome plated) made to fit accurately at all floor, wall and ceiling penetrations. Floor penetrations in exposed (except in stair wells) areas shall be finished using 'bell' fitting to fit pipe or insulation and sleeve and shall be painted to match the pipe. Penetrations in stairwells shall have flat floor plate painted to match pipe.

2.6 SLEEVES

A. General: All openings through all floors, walls, and roofs, etc., regardless of material for the passage of piping, ductwork, conduit, cable trays, etc., shall be sleeved. All penetrations must pass through sleeves. Sleeves shall be set in new construction before concrete is poured, as cutting holes through any part of the concrete will not be permitted unless acceptable to the Architect/Engineer. If a penetration is cored into an existing vertical solid concrete, masonry or stone structure, then the installation of a sleeve will not be necessary.

1. Sleeve material for floors and exterior walls shall be Schedule 40 galvanized steel with welded water stop rings.
2. Sleeves through interior walls to be galvanized sheetmetal with gauge as required by wall fire rating, 20 gauge minimum.

B. The minimum clearance between horizontal penetrations including insulation where applicable, and sleeve shall be 1/4", except that the minimum clearance shall accommodate a Thunderline Link-seal closure where piping exits the building, or penetrates a wall below ground level. Contractor shall be responsible for the accurate location of penetrations in the slab for his pipe, duct, etc. All penetrations shall be of ample size to accommodate the pipe, duct, etc., plus any specified insulation. Void between sleeve and pipe in interior penetrations shall be filled with Nelson Flameseal Firestop or approved equal caulk or putty.

C. Floor sleeves shall extend above the finished floor as detailed on the drawings, except that floor sleeves in stairwells shall be flush with the finished floor. Sleeves in walls shall be trimmed flush with wall surface. Refer to the details on the project drawings. Where the details differ from these specifications, the drawings take precedence.

D. Sleeves for penetrations passing through walls or floors on or below grade shall be removed, if practical, and after the pipes have been installed, the void space around the pipe shall be caulked with a suitable material to effect a waterproof penetration. Note that the practicality of the removal of the sleeve shall be the decision of the Construction Inspector. The decision of the Inspector shall be final.

E. Vermin proofing: The open space around all ductwork, piping, etc., passing through the ground floor and/or exterior walls shall be vermin proofed in a manner acceptable to the Architect/Engineer.

F. Waterproofing: The annular space between a pipe and its sleeve in interior floors shall be filled with polyurethane foam rods 50 percent greater in diameter than the space as backing and fill material and made watertight with a permanent elastic polysulfide compound. Seal both surfaces of floor.

G Air Plenums: The space around piping, ductwork, etc., passing through air plenums shall be made airtight in a manner acceptable to the Architect/Engineer.

H. Fireproofing: Seal all cable trays, pipe, conduit, duct, etc., penetrations through roof, fire rated walls and floors with a foam or sealant as described below, that will form a watertight, vermin tight barrier that is capable of containing smoke and fire up to 2000° F for two hours. Sealing of cable trays and conduits that extend through rated walls from ends of cable tray shall be done after conductors have been installed. For wet locations, the foam material shall be a silicone RTV foam or an approved equal. For dry locations, a premixed putty equal to Nelson Flameseal Firestop putty may be used.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

A. Install in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.

3.2 INSERTS

A. Provide inserts for placement in concrete formwork.

B. Provide inserts for suspending hangers from reinforced concrete slabs and sides of reinforced concrete beams.

C. Provide hooked rod to concrete reinforcement section for inserts carrying pipe over 4 inches.

D. Where concrete slabs form finished ceiling, locate inserts flush with slab surface.

E. Where inserts are omitted, drill through concrete slab from below and provide through-bolt with recessed square steel plate and nut recessed into and grouted flush with slab.

3.3 PIPE HANGERS AND SUPPORTS

A. Support horizontal piping as scheduled.

B. Install hangers to provide minimum 1/2 inch space between finished covering and adjacent work.

C. Place hangers within 12 inches of each horizontal elbow.

D. Use hangers with 1-1/2 inch minimum vertical adjustment.

E. Support horizontal cast iron pipe adjacent to each hub, with 5 feet maximum spacing between hangers.

F. Support vertical piping at every floor. Support vertical cast iron pipe at each floor at hub.

G. Where several pipes can be installed in parallel and at same elevation, provide multiple or trapeze hangers.

H. Support riser piping independently of connected horizontal piping.

I. Provide copper plated hangers and supports for copper piping.

J. Design hangers for pipe movement without disengagement of supported pipe.

K. Prime coat exposed steel hangers and supports. Hangers and supports located in crawl spaces, pipe shafts, and suspended ceiling spaces are not considered exposed, but shall be corrosion protected with galvanized plating. Repair any damaged galvanized plating with a coating of 'Galvalum'.

L. Hanger Rods: (NOTE: All hanger rods shall be trimmed neatly so that no more than 1 inch of excess hanger rod protrudes beyond the hanger nut. In the event a rod is intentionally but temporarily left excessively long (for sloped or insulated lines for example), the contractor shall take appropriate measures to protect the pipe or other materials from damage.)

3.4 FLASHING

A. Provide flexible flashing and metal counterflashing where piping and ductwork penetrate weather or waterproofed walls, floors, and roofs.

B. Flash vent and soil pipes projecting 3 inches minimum above finished roof surface with lead worked one inch minimum into hub, 8 inches minimum clear on sides with 24 x 24 inches sheet size. For pipes through outside walls, turn flanges back into wall and caulk, metal counterflash, and seal.

C. Flash floor drains in floors with topping over finished areas with lead, 10 inches clear on sides with minimum 36 x 36 inch sheet size. Fasten flashing to drain clamp device.

D. Seal floor, shower, mop sink, and floor drains watertight to adjacent materials.

E. Provide acoustical lead flashing around ducts and pipes penetrating equipment rooms, installed in accordance with manufacturer's instructions for sound control.

F. Provide curbs for mechanical roof installations 14 inches minimum high above roofing surface. Flash and counterflash with sheet metal; seal watertight. Attach counterflashing mechanical equipment and lap base flashing on roof curbs. Flatten and solder joints.

G. Adjust storm collars tight to pipe with bolts; caulk around top edge. Use storm collars above roof jacks. Screw vertical flange section to face of curb.

3.5 SLEEVES

A. Set sleeves in position in formwork. Provide reinforcing around sleeves.

B. Size sleeves large enough to allow for movement due to expansion and contraction. Provide for continuous insulation wrapping.

C. Extend sleeves through floors (except in stairwells) two inches above finished floor level. Sleeves through floors shall have welded waterstop rings. Sleeves shall be sealed watertight to floors and pipe.

D. Where piping, ductwork or conduit penetrates floor, ceiling, or wall, close space between pipe or duct and adjacent work with fire stopping insulation and caulk airtight. Provide close fitting metal collar or escutcheon covers, as appropriate, at both sides of penetration.

E. Install chrome plated steel or stainless steel escutcheons at finished surfaces.

ROCIP Project: Withhold insurance cost. Please refer to sections 00425 & 00810 for information.

3.6 PIPE SUPPORT SCHEDULES

STEEL PIPE SIZE Inches	MAX. HANGER SPACING Feet	HANGER ROD DIAMETER Inches
1/2 to 1-1/4	6.5	3/8
1-1/2 to 2	10	3/8
2-1/2 to 3	10	1/2
4 to 6	10	5/8
8 to 12	14	7/8
14 and Over	20	1
PP, PVDF, PVC, CPVC (All Sizes)	4	3/8
C.I. Bell and Spigot (or No-Hub), and at all Joints	5	5/8

END OF SECTION 23 05 29

ROCIP Project: Withhold insurance cost. Please refer to sections 00425 & 00810 for information.

SECTION 23 05 48 - VIBRATION ISOLATION

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.0 The following sections are to be included as if written herein:

A. 23 00 00 -- Basic Mechanical Requirements

B. 23 05 29 -- Sleeves, Flashings, Supports and Anchors

C. 23 05 53 -- Mechanical Identification

1.1 WORK INCLUDED

B. Vibration isolation

1.2 SCOPE OF WORK

A. Furnish and install all labor, materials, equipment tools and service and perform all operations required in connection with or properly incidental to the construction of complete system of vibration and noise control, as indicated on the Drawings, reasonably implied therefrom or as specified herein, unless specifically excluded.

1.3 REFERENCES

A. ASHRAE - Guide to Average Noise Criteria Curves

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Maintain ASHRAE criteria for average noise criteria curves for all equipment at full load condition

1.5 SUBMITTALS

A. Submit shop drawings and product data under provisions of Section 23 00 00.

B. Indicate inertia bases on shop drawings.

C. Indicate vibration isolator locations, with static and dynamic load on each, on shop drawings and described on product data.

D. Submit manufacturer's installation instructions under provisions of Section 23 00 00.

1.6 CERTIFICATES

A. Submit a certificate from the manufacturer that isolators are properly installed and properly adjusted to meet or exceed specified requirements.

1.7 INTENT OF RESPONSIBILITY

A. It is the intent of this specification to provide for vibration isolation supports for all equipment, piping, and ductwork as set out below. The transmission of perceptible vibration, structural borne noise, or objectionable air borne noise to occupied areas by equipment installed under this contract will not be permitted. The Contractor shall be held responsible for installing the vibration isolators as specified herein and or shown on the drawings or otherwise required to prevent the transmission of vibration which would create objectionable noise levels in occupied areas. The isolation supplier must be a firm capable of dealing effectively with vibration and noise characteristics effects and criteria, and one which can provide facilities and capabilities for measuring and evaluating the aforementioned disturbances.

B. All vibration isolation devices, including auxiliary steel bases and pouring forms, shall be designed and furnished by a single manufacturer or supplier who will be responsible for adequate coordination of all phases of this work. Concrete housekeeping pads and inertia bases shall be included as part of mechanical work. Pads under electrical gear shall be included as part of electrical work. The concrete work shall meet the requirements specified in the General Contract Specifications.

C. The Contractor shall furnish complete submittal data, including Shop Drawings, which shall indicate the size, type, material, coatings and deflection of each isolator; and the supported weight, disturbing frequency, and efficiency of each isolator proposed; and any other information as may be required for the Architects and Engineers to check the isolator selection for compliance with the specification. All steel bases and concrete inertia bases shall be completely detailed, and shall show completely any reinforcing steel that may be required to provide a rigid base for the isolated equipment. Further, the submittal data shall indicate, clearly, outlined procedures for installing and adjusting the isolators and bases mentioned above.

D. The vibration isolation manufacturer, or his qualified representative, shall be responsible for providing such supervision as may be required to assure correct and complete installation and adjustment of the isolators. Upon completion of the installation and after the system is put into operation and before acceptance by the Owner, the isolation manufacturer or his qualified representative, in company with the Architect or his designated representative, shall make a final inspection and submit his report to the Architects and Engineers, in writing, certifying the correctness of the installation and compliance with approved submittal data. Any discrepancies or maladjustments found shall be so noted in the report. Should any noise or vibration be objectionable to the Owner, Architect or Engineer, a field instrumentation test and measurement must be made to determine the source, cause, and path of any such disturbance. Any variation or noncompliance with these specification requirements is to be corrected by the installing contractor in an approved manner.

E. Vibration isolation devices shall be as manufactured by Amber/Booth Company, Consolidated Kinetics, Korfund Dynamics Corporation, or approved equal.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 GENERAL DESIGN FEATURES

A. All vibration isolators and bases furnished by the Contractor shall be designed for and treated for resistance to corrosion in a pool environment.

B. Steel components shall be PVC coated or phosphated and painted with industrial grade enamel. All nuts, bolts and washers shall be zinc-electroplated or cad-plated. Structural bases shall be thoroughly cleaned of welding slag and primed with a marine grad coating.

C. All isolators shall be aluminum and/or have PVC coated steel parts .

D. Required spring deflections for isolators supporting various items of equipment are shown on the Drawings or tabulated elsewhere in these specifications, but in no case shall be less than one inch. The springs shall be capable of 30% over-travel before becoming solid.

E. Where height-saving brackets for side mounting of isolators are required, the height-saving brackets shall be designed to provide for an operating clearance of 2" under the isolated structure, and designed so that the isolators can be installed and removed when the operating clearance is 2" or less. When used with spring isolators having a deflection of 2-1/2" or more, the height-saving brackets shall be of the pre-compression type to limit exposed bolt length between the top of the isolator and the underneath side of the bracket.

F. All isolators supporting a given piece of equipment shall limit the length of the exposed adjustment bolt between the top and base to a maximum range of 1" to 2".

G. Provide flexible connectors for piping connections to rotating equipment. For pipe systems 2 inches and smaller, provide braided stainless steel flexible connectors. For pipe systems 2 inches and larger, provide Kevlar reinforced rubber, double-sphere flanged flexible connectors.

H. All isolators supporting a given piece of equipment shall be selected for approximately equal spring deflection.

2.2 ISOLATOR TYPES: Isolator types and required deflections are specified under "Schedule of Isolated Equipment," paragraph 3.02. The isolators shall comply with the following descriptions for each type required on the project:

A. Type 1 - An adjustable, free-standing, open-spring mounting with combination leveling bolt and equipment fastening bolt. The spring(s) shall be rigidly attached to the mounting base plate and to the spring compression plate. The isolator shall be designed for a minimum Kx/Ky (horizontal to vertical spring rate) of 1.0. A Neoprene pad having a minimum thickness of 1/4" shall be bonded to the base plate. Base plates shall be sized to limit pad loading to 100 psi.

B. Type 2 - An aluminum-housed, adjustable, spring mounting having telescoping top and bottom sections separated by resilient inserts of Neoprene or other suitable material to limit horizontal motion. The inserts shall be permanently lubricated to minimize vertical friction. Sheet or cast iron housings may be used if they are hot-dip galvanized after fabrication. A Neoprene pad having a minimum thickness of 1/4" shall be bonded to the base plate.

C. Type 3 - An elastomeric mounting having steel base plate with mounting holes and a threaded insert at top of the mounting for attaching equipment. All metal parts shall be completely embedded in the elastomeric materials. The elastomer may be Neoprene or high synthetic rubber with anti-ozone and anti-oxidant additives. Mountings shall be designed for approximately 1/4" deflection and loaded so that deflection does not exceed 15% of the free height of the mounting.

D. Type 4 - A pad-type mounting consisting of two layers of 3/8" thick, ribbed or waffled, Neoprene pads bonded to a 16 gauge galvanized steel separator plate. Bolting not required. Pads shall be sized for approximately 20 to 40 psi load, or a deflection of 0.10" to 0.16".

E. Type 5 - A spring hanger consisting of a rectangular steel box, coil springs, spring cups, Neoprene impregnated fabric washer, steel washer, and Neoprene insert designed to prevent metal to metal contact between the hanger rod and bottom of the hanger box. The hanger box shall be capable of supporting a load of 200% of rated load without noticeable deformation or failure.

F. Type 6 - A spring hanger, as described in Type 5, with the addition of an elastomeric element at the top of the box for acoustic isolation. The design shall be such to prevent metal - to metal contact between the hanger rod and the top of the hanger box. The elastomeric element shall meet the design requirements for Type 3 mountings.

G. Type 7 - An elastomeric hanger, consisting of a rectangular steel box and an elastomeric isolation element, which shall be of Neoprene or high quality synthetic rubber with anti-ozone and anti-oxidant additive. The elements shall be so designed for approximately 1/4" deflection and loaded so that deflection does not exceed 15% of the free height of the element. The design shall be such as to prevent metal-to-metal contact between the hanger rod and the steel box.

H. Type 8 - 1/4" thick closed cell Neoprene ASTM Grade S.E.C. 44 in sheets cut to fit penetrations, as required.

2.3 BASE TYPES: Base types and required deflections are specified under "Schedule of Isolated Equipment," paragraph 7.8, or are indicated on the Drawings. The bases shall comply with the following descriptions for each type required on the project.

A. Type B-1 - A structural steel fan and motor base with motor side rails to receive the fan and motor. The steel members shall be adequately sized to prevent distortion and misalignment, and specifically shall be sized to limit deflection of the beam on the drive side to 0.05" due to starting torque. Snubbers to prevent excessive motion on starting or stopping shall be furnished, if required; however, the snubbers shall not be engaged under steady running conditions. Manufacturers recommended mounting base shall be provided to the owner/engineer for approval before installation.

B. Type B-2 - A concrete inertia base, consisting of a perimeter steel pouring forming, reinforcing bars welded in place, bolting templates, anchor bolts, and height-saving brackets for side mounting of the isolators. The perimeter steel members shall be structural channels having a minimum depth of 1/12 of the longest span, but not less than 6" deep. The inertia base for pumps shall be at least equal in weight to the pump with its driving motor and be sized for a minimum overlap of 4" around the base of the equipment. Concrete inertia bases for pumps shall be sized to support the suction elbow of end suction pumps and both the suction and discharge elbows of horizontal split-case pumps. The bases shall be T-shaped where necessary to conserve space.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 GENERAL INSTALLATION REQUIREMENTS:

A. Install vibration isolators for motor driven equipment.

B. Set steel bases for 1-inch clearance between housekeeping pad and base. Set concrete inertia bases for 2-inch clearance. Adjust equipment level.

C. Provide spring isolators on piping connected to isolated equipment as follows: Up to 4 inch diameter, first three points of support; 5 to 8 inch diameter, first four points of support; 10 inch diameter and over, first six points of support. Static deflection of first point shall be twice deflection of isolated equipment.

D. Pumps:

1. Each centrifugal pump and its driving motor shall be mounted on a common inertia base and the base, in turn, to be mounted on the scheduled vibration isolator type to prevent the transmission of vibration and noise to the building structure.
2. In general, all inertia bases shall be formed and poured in place onto a hard, flat surface from which the base can be separated when cured. The base shall be shimmed, using flat material, to the intended final height prior to equipment mounting and piping connection.
3. After the piping connections are made and the system filled with water and ready to put into service, the isolator adjustment bolts shall be extended until the shim blocks can be removed. The isolators may then be backed down slightly to restore the intended height. The locknuts should then be tightened on the isolators. Jack bolts shall be trimmed to a length which will allow no more than 1 inch of additional height adjustment. After final adjustment, the inertia base shall not support any piping load.

E. Piping:

1. Floor mounted supports shall have the same type of isolator or media as is used for the nearest isolated equipment connected to the piping.
2. The pipe hanger system shall have provisions for all piping to be shimmed or blocked in place until all connections are made and the system filled with water; then, the isolators adjusted to support the weights, and the shim blocks removed.
3. The first three support points from a piece of isolated equipment shall be of the positioning type and provide not less than the static deflection of the equipment isolators.
4. All springs supporting piping shall be capable of an additional 1/2" deflection prior to complete compression and springs supporting vertical risers shall have provisions for limit stops.

F. Resilient Sleeves:

1. Resilient sleeves of same material as the system shall be provided at all points where equipment room walls, floors, or ceilings are penetrated by ducts, piping, or refrigerant line, etc.

G. Fans and Air Handling Units:

1. Such units shall have electrical flexible connections not less than 36" long and the flexible duct connections with a free length of not less than 8". Electrical flex connection shall be coordinated with the motor to ensure that the power connection point is located on the same side of the motor as the power source.

3.2 SCHEDULE OF ISOLATED EQUIPMENT

A. Tabulated below is a schedule of equipment on this project requiring vibration isolation and base isolators of the types listed above. Any equipment, system, construction or condition that may be altered, added, or changed; or that is not specifically considered herein or on the plans shall be treated in a manner that is set out for similar equipment system or construction in order to comply with the above requirements heretofore cited.

EXAMPLE ONLY - Edit for specific project

	EQUIPMENT	ISOLATOR EQUIP. TYPE	ISOLATOR DEFLECTION	BASE TYPE
A. Segment D				
1.	All Supply fans	1	2"	B-1
2.	All VAV Boxes	6	1"	---
3.	All Pumps	2	1"	B-2

END OF SECTION 23 05 48

ROCIP Project: Withhold insurance cost. Please refer to sections 00425 & 00810 for information.

SECTION 23 05 53 - MECHANICAL IDENTIFICATION

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.0 The following sections are to be included as if written herein:

A. Section 23 00 00 – Basic Mechanical Requirements

B. Section 23 05 29 – Sleeves, Flashings, Supports and Anchors

1.1 SECTION INCLUDES

A. Nameplates

B. Tags

C. Stencils

D. Pipe Markers

1.2 RELATED SECTIONS

A. Section 22 13 16 - Plumbing Piping

B. Section 23 00 00 – Basic Mechanical Requirements

C. Section 23 05 29 – Sleeves, Flashings, Supports and Anchors

D Section 23 07 19 - Piping Insulation

E. Section 23 20 00.A - Piping, Valves and Fittings

F. Section 23 21 00 - Hydronic Piping

G. Section 23 22 00 – Steam and Steam Condensate Piping

1.3 REFERENCES

A. ASME A13.1 - Scheme for the Identification of Piping Systems

1.4 SUBMITTALS

A. Submit under provisions of Section 23 00 00.

B. Submit list of wording, symbols, letter size, and color coding for mechanical identification.

C. Submit valve chart and schedule, including valve tag number, location, function, and valve manufacturer's name and model number.

D. Product Data: Provide manufacturers catalog literature for each product required.

E. Samples: Submit two of each type of label, tag, etc., of the approximate size specified or implied in the specification.

F. Manufacturer's Installation Instructions: Indicate special procedures, and installation.

1.5 PROJECT RECORD DOCUMENTS

A. Submit under provisions of Section 23 00 00.

B. Record actual locations of tagged valves.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 NAMEPLATES

A. Manufacturers:

B. Description: Laminated three-layer plastic with engraved blackletters on light contrasting background color.

2.2 TAGS

A. Metal Tags: Brass, Aluminum or Stainless Steel with stamped letters; tag size minimum 1-1/2 inch diameter with smooth edges.

B. Chart: Typewritten letter size list in anodized aluminum frame.

2.3 PIPE MARKERS

A. Color: Conform to ASME A13.1.

B. Plastic Pipe Markers: Factory fabricated, flexible, semi- rigid plastic, preformed to fit around pipe or pipe covering; minimum information indicating flow direction arrow and identification of fluid being conveyed.

C. Plastic Tape Pipe Markers: Flexible, vinyl film tape with pressure sensitive adhesive backing and printed markings.

D. Underground Plastic Pipe Markers: Bright colored continuously printed plastic ribbon tape, minimum 6 inches (150 mm) wide by 4 mil (0.10 mm) thick, manufactured for direct burial service.

2.4 **GENERAL:** The Contractor shall make it possible for the personnel operating and maintaining the equipment and systems in this project to readily identify the various pieces of equipment, valves, piping, etc., by marking them. All items of equipment such as fans, pumps, etc., shall be clearly marked using engraved nameplates as hereinafter specified. The item of equipment shall indicate the same number as shown on the Drawings. For example, pumps will be identified as 3A, 3B, 3C, etc.; exhaust fans will be E-1, E-2, etc.

2.5 **MECHANICAL:** All items of mechanical equipment shall be identified by the attachment of engraved nameplates constructed from laminated phenolic plastic, at least 1/16" thick, 3-ply, with black surfaces and white core. Engraving shall be condensed Gothic, at least 1/2" high, appropriately spaced. Nomenclature on the label shall include the name of the item, its mark number, area, space, or equipment served, and other pertinent information. Equipment to be labeled shall include but not be limited to the following:

Pumps	Exhaust Fans
Fans	Miscellaneous - similar
Panels and Switches	and/or related items

2.6 **PIPING:** Pipe markers and arrow markers also shall be provided on but not limited to the piping of the following systems:

Chilled Water Supply

Chilled Water Return

Plumbing Piping

Low Pressure Steam

High Pressure Steam

Steam Condensate Return

FIN Water

2.7 **ELECTRICAL:** Nameplates shall be 2 or 3 ply laminated plastic, a minimum of 3/32" thick, such that letters will be white on black background. Letters shall be similar to Roman Gothic of a size that is legible and appropriate to the application. Attachment of nameplates shall be by screws. Rivets or adhesives are not acceptable.

A. Electrical equipment to be identified includes: All switchgear, distribution panels, transformers, motor control centers, panel boards, disconnect switches, starters, contactors and time switches.

B. Nameplates on distribution panels, motor control centers and panel boards shall give voltage characteristics.

Example:

PANEL LA
120/208V, 3 PH, 4 W
served from

C. Individual circuit breakers in distribution panels, individual units in motor control centers, disconnecting means, and motor starters, shall have nameplates showing the load served.

D. Branch circuit panel boards shall have neatly typed circuit directories behind clean plastic. Identify circuits by room numbers. Room numbers shall be those finally selected by the Owner, not necessarily those given on contract Drawings. If a circuit serves more than one room, list each room. Spares and spaces shall be indicated with erasable pencil, not typed.

2.8 **The Contractor shall prepare and install, in a suitable glazed frame, typewritten valve charts giving the number, location and function of each line valve installed under this Contract. Each valve shall be numbered on these charts in accordance with the system of which it is a part of its location. For example, valves in different systems would be designated as follows:**

CHS-2-4 Chilled Water Supply 1st Level - Valve No. 4

2.9 VALVE TAGS

A. The Contractor shall provide and install identification tags lettered and numbered to correspond to the information shown on the charts described above. These tags are to be affixed to all valves except simple service and drain valves located within 10' and within sight of the device or equipment served. For example, it would not be expected that valves at a pressure reducing station in a machine room would be tagged. These tags shall be 1/8" thick brass discs, 1 1/2" in diameter. Each tag shall be attached to its valve with copper clad annealed iron wire or other approved material.

B. Valves at water headersand steam PRV stations, valves associated with condensate, gas, water meters, and other valves as specified shall also be tagged with standardized color coded plastic tags. These tags shall be 2 1/2" wide by 1 1/2" high with these color codlings: Red = normally closed; Green = normally open; Blue = open in winter, closed in summer; and Yellow = closed in winter, open in summer. Tags should be engraved on both sides.

2.10 In addition, pipe runs throughout the building including those above lift out ceilings, under floor, and those exposed to view when access doors or access panels are opened shall be identified by means of Seton Setmark or Brady Mechanical Pipe Markers. Concealed areas, for purposes of this identification section, are those areas which cannot be seen except by demolition of the building elements. In addition to the pipe markers, arrow markers shall be used to indicate direction of flow. The following specific instructions shall apply to the application of these markers:

A. Provide a pipe marker at each valve to indicate proper identification of pipe contents. Where several valves exist on one header, it is necessary to mark only the header.

B. Provide an arrow marker with each pipe marker pointing away from the pipe marker to indicate direction of flow.

C. Provide a double ended arrow marker when flow can be in either or both directions.

D. Provide a pipe marker and an arrow marker at every point of pipe entry or exit where line goes through a wall or service column.

E. Provide pipe markers and arrow markers at intervals not exceeding 50 feet.

F. Markers shall be located on the two lower quarters of the pipe where view is unobstructed.

G. Use Seton Setmark Type SNA or Brady snap-on type identification for all piping systems, 3/4" thru 6". For piping systems larger than 6", use Seton or Brady strap on markers.

H. Pipe Markers shall conform to ANSI A 13.1-1981 "Scheme for the Identification of Piping Systems." Arrow markers must have same ANSI background colors as their companion pipe markers, or be incorporated into the pipe identification marker.

I. Locate markers to be visible from floor.

2.11 SPECIALS: Refer to special requirements noted in the various sections hereinafter bound.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 PREPARATION

A. Degrease and clean surfaces to receive adhesive for identification materials.

3.2 INSTALLATION

A. Install plastic nameplates with corrosive-resistant mechanical fasteners, or adhesive. Apply with sufficient adhesive to ensure permanent adhesion and seal with clear lacquer.

B. Install tags with corrosion resistant chain.

C. Install plastic pipe markers in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.

D. Install plastic tape pipe markers complete around pipe in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.

E. Install underground plastic pipe markers 6 to 8 inches (150 to 200 mm) below finished grade, directly above buried pipe.

F. Identify air handling units, pumps, heat transfer equipment, tanks, and water treatment devices with plastic nameplates. Small devices, such as in-line pumps, may be identified with tags.

G. Identify control panels and major control components outside panels with plastic nameplates.

H. Identify thermostats relating to terminal boxes or valves with nameplates.

I. Identify valves in main and branch piping with tags.

J. Identify air terminal units and radiator valves with numbered tags.

K. Tag automatic controls, instruments, and relays. Key to control schematic.

END OF SECTION 23 05 53

ROCIP Project: Withhold insurance cost. Please refer to sections 00425 & 00810 for information.

SECTION 23 05 93 - TESTING, ADJUSTING, AND BALANCING FOR HVAC

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. This Section includes TAB to produce design objectives for the following:

1. Air Systems:

   a. Constant-volume air system.

   b. Exhaust Systems.

   c. Outside Air Unit

   d. Energy Recovery Ventilation

2. HVAC equipment quantitative-performance settings.
3. Kitchen exhaust hood airflow balancing.
4. Verifying that automatic control devices are functioning properly.
5. Reporting results of activities and procedures specified in this Section.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. Adjust: To regulate fluid flow rate and air patterns at the terminal equipment, such as to reduce fan speed or adjust a damper.

B. Balance: To proportion flows within the distribution system, including submains, branches, and terminals, according to indicated quantities.

C. Barrier or Boundary: Construction, either vertical or horizontal, such as walls, floors, and ceilings that are designed and constructed to restrict the movement of airflow, smoke, odors, and other pollutants.

D. Draft: A current of air, when referring to localized effect caused by one or more factors of high air velocity, low ambient temperature, or direction of airflow, whereby more heat is withdrawn from a person's skin than is normally dissipated.

E. NC: Noise criteria.

F. Procedure: An approach to and execution of a sequence of work operations to yield repeatable results.

G. RC: Room criteria.

H. Report Forms: Test data sheets for recording test data in logical order.

I. Static Head: The pressure due to the weight of the fluid above the point of measurement. In a closed system, static head is equal on both sides of the pump.

J. Suction Head: The height of fluid surface above the centerline of the pump on the suction side.

K. System Effect: A phenomenon that can create undesired or unpredicted conditions that cause reduced capacities in all or part of a system.

L. System Effect Factors: Allowances used to calculate a reduction of the performance ratings of a fan when installed under conditions different from those presented when the fan was performance tested.

M. TAB: Testing, adjusting, and balancing.

N. Terminal: A point where the controlled medium, such as fluid or energy, enters or leaves the distribution system.

O. Test: A procedure to determine quantitative performance of systems or equipment.

P. Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing (TAB) Firm: The entity responsible for performing and reporting TAB procedures.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

A. Strategies and Procedures Plan: Within 60 days from Contractor's Notice to Proceed, submit 6 copies of TAB strategies and step-by-step procedures as specified in Part 3 "Preparation" Article. Include a complete set of report forms intended for use on this Project.

B. Certified TAB Reports: Submit two copies of reports prepared, as specified in this Section, on approved forms certified by TAB firm.

C. Warranties specified in this Section.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. TAB contractor to be independent of the mechanical contractor.

B. TAB Firm Qualifications: Engage a TAB firm certified by, NEBB or TABB.

C. Certification of TAB Reports: Certify TAB field data reports. This certification includes the following:

1. Review field data reports to validate accuracy of data and to prepare certified TAB reports.
2. Certify that TAB team complied with approved TAB plan and the procedures specified and referenced in this Specification.

D. TAB Report Forms: Use standard forms from NEBB's "Procedural Standards for Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing of Environmental Systems."

E. ASHRAE Compliance: Applicable requirements in ASHRAE 62.1-2004, Section 7.2.2 - "Air Balancing."

F. ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1-2004 Compliance: Applicable requirements in ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1-2004, Section 6.7.2.3 - "System Balancing."

1.6 PROJECT CONDITIONS

A. Partial Owner Occupancy: Owner may occupy completed areas of building before Substantial Completion. Cooperate with Owner during TAB operations to minimize conflicts with Owner's operations.

1.7 COORDINATION

A. Coordinate the efforts of factory-authorized service representatives for systems and equipment, HVAC controls installers, and other mechanics to operate HVAC systems and equipment to support and assist TAB activities.

B. Notice: Provide seven days' advance notice for each test. Include scheduled test dates and times.

C. Perform TAB after leakage and pressure tests on air distribution systems have been satisfactorily completed.

1.8 WARRANTY

A. Special Guarantee: Provide a guarantee on NEBB forms stating that NEBB will assist in completing requirements of the Contract Documents if TAB firm fails to comply with the Contract Documents. Guarantee shall include the following provisions:

1. The certified TAB firm has tested and balanced systems according to the Contract Documents.
2. Systems are balanced to optimum performance capabilities within design and installation limits.

ROCIP Project: Withhold insurance cost. Please refer to sections 00425 & 00810 for information.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Applicable)

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine the Contract Documents to become familiar with Project requirements and to discover conditions in systems' designs that may preclude proper TAB of systems and equipment.

1. Verify that balancing devices, such as test ports, gage cocks, thermometer wells, flow-control devices, balancing valves and fittings, and manual volume dampers, are required by the Contract Documents. Verify that quantities and locations of these balancing devices are accessible and appropriate for effective balancing and for efficient system and equipment operation.

B. Examine approved submittal data of HVAC systems and equipment.

C. Examine Project Record Documents described in Division 01 Section "Project Record Documents."

D. Examine design data, including HVAC system descriptions, statements of design assumptions for environmental conditions and systems' output, and statements of philosophies and assumptions about HVAC system and equipment controls.

E. Examine equipment performance data including fan and pump curves. Relate performance data to Project conditions and requirements, including system effects that can create undesired or unpredicted conditions that cause reduced capacities in all or part of a system. Calculate system effect factors to reduce performance ratings of HVAC equipment when installed under conditions different from those presented when the equipment was performance tested at the factory. To calculate system effects for air systems, use tables and charts found in AMCA 201, "Fans and Systems," Sections 7 through 10; or in SMACNA's "HVAC Systems--Duct Design," Sections 5 and 6. Compare this data with the design data and installed conditions.

F. Examine system and equipment installations to verify that they are complete and that testing, cleaning, adjusting, and commissioning specified in individual Sections have been performed.

G. Examine system and equipment test reports.

H. Examine HVAC system and equipment installations to verify that indicated balancing devices, such as test ports, gage cocks, thermometer wells, flow-control devices, balancing valves and fittings, and manual volume dampers, are properly installed, and that their locations are accessible and appropriate for effective balancing and for efficient system and equipment operation.

I. Examine systems for functional deficiencies that cannot be corrected by adjusting and balancing.

J. Examine HVAC equipment to ensure that clean filters have been installed, bearings are greased, belts are aligned and tight, and equipment with functioning controls is ready for operation.

K. Examine terminal units, such as variable-air-volume boxes, to verify that they are accessible and their controls are connected and functioning.

L. Examine plenum ceilings used for supply air to verify that they are airtight. Verify that pipe penetrations and other holes are sealed.

M. Examine strainers for clean screens and proper perforations.

N. Examine heat-transfer coils for correct piping connections and for clean and straight fins.

O. Examine system pumps to ensure absence of entrained air in the suction piping.

P. Examine equipment for installation and for properly operating safety interlocks and controls.

Q. Examine automatic temperature system components to verify the following:

1. Dampers, valves, and other controlled devices are operated by the intended controller.
2. Dampers and valves are in the position indicated by the controller.
3. Integrity of valves and dampers for free and full operation and for tightness of fully closed and fully open positions.
4. Thermostats are located to avoid adverse effects of sunlight, drafts, and cold walls.
5. Sensors are located to sense only the intended conditions.
6. Sequence of operation for control modes is according to the Contract Documents.
7. Controller set points are set according to the design documents.
8. Interlocked systems are operating.
9. Changeover from heating to cooling mode occurs according to indicated values.

R. Report deficiencies discovered before and during performance of TAB procedures. Observe and record system reactions to changes in conditions. Record default set points if different from indicated values.

3.2 PREPARATION

A. Prepare a TAB plan that includes strategies and step-by-step procedures.

B. Complete system readiness checks and prepare system readiness reports. Verify the following:

1. Permanent electrical power wiring is complete.
2. Hydronic systems are filled, clean, and free of air.
3. Automatic temperature-control systems are operational.
4. Equipment and duct access doors are securely closed.
5. Balance, smoke, and fire dampers are open.
6. Isolating and balancing valves are open and control valves are operational.
7. Ceilings are installed in critical areas where air-pattern adjustments are required and access to balancing devices is provided.
8. Windows and doors can be closed so indicated conditions for system operations can be met.

3.3 GENERAL PROCEDURES FOR TESTING AND BALANCING

A. Perform testing and balancing procedures on each system according to the procedures contained in NEBB's "Procedural Standards for Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing of Environmental Systems" and this Section.

1. Comply with requirements in ASHRAE 62.1-2004, Section 7.2.2 - "Air Balancing."

B. Cut insulation, ducts, pipes, and equipment cabinets for installation of test probes to the minimum extent necessary to allow adequate performance of procedures. After testing and balancing, close probe holes and patch insulation with new materials identical to those removed. Restore vapor barrier and finish according to insulation Specifications for this Project.

C. Mark equipment and balancing device settings with paint or other suitable, permanent identification material, including damper-control positions, valve position indicators, fan-speed-control levers, and similar controls and devices, to show final settings.

3.4 GENERAL PROCEDURES FOR BALANCING AIR SYSTEMS

A. Prepare test reports for both fans and outlets. Obtain manufacturer's outlet factors and recommended testing procedures. Crosscheck the summation of required outlet volumes with required fan volumes.

B. Prepare schematic diagrams of systems' "as-built" duct layouts.

C. Determine the best locations in main and branch ducts for accurate duct airflow measurements.

D. Check airflow patterns from the outside-air louvers and dampers and the return and exhaust-air dampers, through the supply-fan discharge and mixing dampers.

E. Locate start-stop and disconnect switches, electrical interlocks, and motor starters.

F. Verify that motor starters are equipped with properly sized thermal protection.

G. Check dampers for proper position to achieve desired airflow path.

H. Check for airflow blockages.

I. Check condensate drains for proper connections and functioning.

J. Check for proper sealing of air-handling unit components.

K. Check for proper sealing of air duct system.

3.5 PROCEDURE FOR DUCT SYSTEM LEAKAGE TESTING

A. Leakage of the duct system shall not exceed 10% of total design airflow. The testing procedure shall be based on ASTM E1554, Standard Test Methods for Determining External Air Leakage of Air Distribution Systems by Fan

3.6 PRESSURIZATION

Testing shall be performed by an independent third-party technician approved by the building official. Documentation verifying duct leakage of less than 10% shall be submitted with the Final Testing Report.

3.7 PROCEDURES FOR CONSTANT-VOLUME AIR SYSTEMS

A. Adjust fans to deliver total indicated airflows within the maximum allowable fan speed listed by fan manufacturer.

1. Measure fan static pressures to determine actual static pressure as follows:

   a. Measure outlet static pressure as far downstream from the fan as practicable and upstream from restrictions in ducts such as elbows and transitions.
   b. Measure static pressure directly at the fan outlet or through the flexible connection.
   c. Measure inlet static pressure of single-inlet fans in the inlet duct as near the fan as possible, upstream from flexible connection and downstream from duct restrictions.
   d. Measure inlet static pressure of double-inlet fans through the wall of the plenum that houses the fan.

2. Measure static pressure across each component that makes up an air-handling unit, rooftop unit, and other air-handling and air-treating equipment.

    a. Simulate dirty filter operation and record the point at which maintenance personnel must change filters.

3. Compare design data with installed conditions to determine variations in design static pressures versus actual static pressures. Compare actual system effect factors with calculated system effect factors to identify where variations occur. Recommend corrective action to align design and actual conditions.
4. Obtain approval from Engineer for adjustment of fan speed higher or lower than indicated speed. Make required adjustments to pulley sizes, motor sizes, and electrical connections to accommodate fan-speed changes.
5. Do not make fan-speed adjustments that result in motor overload. Consult equipment manufacturers about fan-speed safety factors. Modulate dampers and measure fan-motor amperage to ensure that no overload will occur. Measure amperage in full cooling, full heating, economizer, and any other operating modes to determine the maximum required brake horsepower.

B. Adjust volume dampers for main duct, submain ducts, and major branch ducts to indicated airflows within specified tolerances.

1. Measure static pressure at a point downstream from the balancing damper and adjust volume dampers until the proper static pressure is achieved.

    a. Where sufficient space in submain and branch ducts is unavailable for Pitot-tube traverse measurements, measure airflow at terminal outlets and inlets and calculate the total airflow for that zone.

2. Remeasure each submain and branch duct after all have been adjusted. Continue to adjust submain and branch ducts to indicated airflows within specified tolerances.

C. Measure terminal outlets and inlets without making adjustments.

1. Measure terminal outlets using a direct-reading hood or outlet manufacturer's written instructions and calculating factors.

D. Adjust terminal outlets and inlets for each space to indicated airflows within specified tolerances of indicated values. Make adjustments using volume dampers rather than extractors and the dampers at air terminals.

1. Adjust each outlet in same room or space to within specified tolerances of indicated quantities without generating noise levels above the limitations prescribed by the Contract Documents.
2. Adjust patterns of adjustable outlets for proper distribution without

3.8 PROCEDURES FOR SOUND-LEVEL MEASUREMENTS

A. Perform sound-pressure-level measurements with an octave-band analyzer complying with ANSI S1.4 for Type 1 sound-level meters and ANSI S1.11 for octave-band filters. Comply with requirements in ANSI S1.13, unless otherwise indicated.

B. Calibrate sound meters before each day of testing. Use a calibrator provided with the sound meter complying with ANSI S1.40 and that has NIST certification.

C. Use a microphone that is suitable for the type of sound levels measured. For areas where air velocities exceed 100 fpm use a windscreen on the microphone.

D. Perform sound-level testing after air and water balancing and equipment testing are complete.

E. Close windows and doors to the space.

F. Perform measurements when the space is not occupied and when the occupant noise level from other spaces in the building and outside are at a minimum.

G. Clear the space of temporary sound sources so unrelated disturbances will not be measured. Position testing personnel during measurements to achieve a direct line-of-sight between the sound source and the sound-level meter.

H. Take sound measurements at a height approximately 48 inches above the floor and at least 36 inches from a wall, column, and other large surface capable of altering the measurements.

I. Take sound measurements in dBA and in each of the 8 unweighted octave bands in the frequency range of 63 to 8000 Hz.

J. Take sound measurements with the HVAC systems off to establish the background sound levels and take sound measurements with the HVAC systems operating.

   1. Calculate the difference between measurements. Apply a correction factor depending on the difference and adjust measurements.

3.9 PROCEDURES FOR TEMPERATURE MEASUREMENTS

A. During TAB, report the need for adjustment in temperature regulation within the automatic temperature-control system.

B. Measure indoor wet- and dry-bulb temperatures every other hour for a period of two successive eight-hour days, in each separately controlled zone, to prove correctness of final temperature settings. Measure when the building or zone is occupied.

C. Measure outside-air, wet- and dry-bulb temperatures.

ROCIP Project: Withhold insurance cost. Please refer to sections 00425 & 00810 for information.

3.10 TEMPERATURE-CONTROL VERIFICATION

A. Verify that controllers are calibrated and commissioned.

B. Check transmitter and controller locations and note conditions that would adversely affect control functions.

C. Record controller settings and note variances between set points and actual measurements.

D. Check the operation of limiting controllers (i.e., high- and low-temperature controllers).

E. Check free travel and proper operation of control devices such as damper and valve operators.

F. Check the sequence of operation of control devices.

G. Check the interaction of electrically operated switch transducers.

H. Check the interaction of interlock and lockout systems.

I. Check main control supply-air pressure and observe compressor and dryer operations.

J. Record voltages of power supply and controller output. Determine whether the system operates on a grounded or nongrounded power supply.

K. Note operation of electric actuators using spring return for proper fail-safe operations.

3.11 TOLERANCES

A. Set HVAC system airflow and water flow rates within the following tolerances:

1. Supply, Return, and Exhaust Fans and Equipment with Fans: Plus 5 to plus 10 percent.
2. Air Outlets and Inlets: 0 to minus 10 percent.
3. Heating-Water Flow Rate: 0 to minus 10 percent.
4. Cooling-Water Flow Rate: 0 to minus 5 percent.

3.12 FINAL REPORT

A. General: Typewritten, or computer printout in letter-quality font, on standard bond paper, in three-ring binder, tabulated and divided into sections by tested and balanced systems.

B. Include a certification sheet in front of binder signed and sealed by the certified testing and balancing engineer.

   1. Include a list of instruments used for procedures, along with proof of calibration.

C. Final Report Contents: In addition to certified field report data, include the following:

   1. Pump curves.
   2. Fan curves.
   3. Manufacturers' test data.
   4. Field test reports prepared by system and equipment installers.
   5. Other information relative to equipment performance, but do not include Shop Drawings and Product Data.

D. General Report Data: In addition to form titles and entries, include the following data in the final report, as applicable:

   1. Title page.
   2. Name and address of TAB firm.
   3. Project name.
   4. Project location.
   5. Architect's name and address.
   6. Engineer's name and address.
   7. Contractor's name and address.
   8. Report date.
   9. Signature of TAB firm who certifies the report.
   10. Table of Contents with the total number of pages defined for each section of the report. Number each page in the report.
   11. Summary of contents including the following:

      a. Indicated versus final performance.
      b. Notable characteristics of systems.
      c. Description of system operation sequence if it varies from the Contract Documents.

   12. Nomenclature sheets for each item of equipment.
   13. Data for terminal units, including manufacturer, type size, and fittings.
   14. Notes to explain why certain final data in the body of reports varies from indicated values.
   15. Test conditions for fans and pump performance forms including the following:

      a. Settings for outside-, return-, and exhaust-air dampers.
      b. Conditions of filters.
      c. Cooling coil, wet- and dry-bulb conditions.
      d. Face and bypass damper settings at coils.
      e. Fan drive settings including settings and percentage of maximum pitch diameter.
      f. Inlet vane settings for variable-air-volume systems.

g. Settings for supply-air, static-pressure controller.
h. Other system operating conditions that affect performance.

E. System Diagrams: Include schematic layouts of air and hydronic distribution systems. Present each system with single-line diagram and include the following:

1. Quantities of outside, supply, return, and exhaust airflows.
2. Water and steam flow rates.
3. Duct, outlet, and inlet sizes.
4. Pipe and valve sizes and locations.
5. Terminal units.
6. Balancing stations.
7. Position of balancing devices.

F. Air-Handling Unit Test Reports: For air-handling units with coils, include the following:

1. Unit Data: Include the following:

a. Unit identification.
b. Location.
c. Make and type.
d. Model number and unit size.
e. Manufacturer's serial number.
f. Unit arrangement and class.
g. Discharge arrangement.
h. Sheave make, size in inches, and bore.
i. Sheave dimensions, center-to-center, and amount of adjustments in inches.
j. Number of belts, make, and size.
k. Number of filters, type, and size.

2. Motor Data:

a. Make and frame type and size.
b. Horsepower and rpm.
c. Volts, phase, and hertz.
d. Full-load amperage and service factor.
e. Sheave make, size in inches, and bore.
f. Sheave dimensions, center-to-center, and amount of adjustments in inches.

3. Test Data (Indicated and Actual Values):

a. Total airflow rate in cfm.
b. Total system static pressure in inches wg.
c. Fan rpm.
d. Discharge static pressure in inches wg.
e. Filter static-pressure differential in inches wg.

f. Preheat coil static-pressure differential in inches wg.
g. Cooling coil static-pressure differential in inches wg.
h. Heating coil static-pressure differential in inches wg.
i. Outside airflow in cfm.
j. Return airflow in cfm.
k. Outside-air damper position.
l. Return-air damper position.
m. Vortex damper position.

G. Apparatus-Coil Test Reports:

1. Coil Data:

a. System identification.
b. Location.
c. Coil type.
d. Number of rows.
e. Fin spacing in fins per inch o.c.
f. Make and model number.
g. Face area in sq. ft.
h. Tube size in NPS.
i. Tube and fin materials.
j. Circuiting arrangement.

2. Test Data (Indicated and Actual Values):

a. Airflow rate in cfm.
b. Average face velocity in fpm.
c. Air pressure drop in inches wg.
d. Outside-air, wet- and dry-bulb temperatures in deg F.
e. Return-air, wet- and dry-bulb temperatures in deg F.
f. Entering-air, wet- and dry-bulb temperatures in deg F.
g. Leaving-air, wet- and dry-bulb temperatures in deg F.
h. Water flow rate in gpm.
i. Water pressure differential in feet of head or psig.
j. Entering-water temperature in deg F.
k. Leaving-water temperature in deg F.
l. Refrigerant expansion valve and refrigerant types.
m. Refrigerant suction pressure in psig.
n. Refrigerant suction temperature in deg F.
o. Inlet steam pressure in psig.

H. Fan Test Reports: For supply, return, and exhaust fans, include the following:

1. Fan Data:

a. System identification.

b. Location.
c. Make and type.
d. Model number and size.
e. Manufacturer's serial number.
f. Arrangement and class.
g. Sheave make, size in inches, and bore.
h. Sheave dimensions, center-to-center, and amount of adjustments in inches.

2. Motor Data:

a. Make and frame type and size.
b. Horsepower and rpm.
c. Volts, phase, and hertz.
d. Full-load amperage and service factor.
e. Sheave make, size in inches, and bore.
f. Sheave dimensions, center-to-center, and amount of adjustments in inches.
g. Number of belts, make, and size.

3. Test Data (Indicated and Actual Values):

a. Total airflow rate in cfm.
b. Total system static pressure in inches wg.
c. Fan rpm.
d. Discharge static pressure in inches wg.
e. Suction static pressure in inches wg.

I. Round, Flat-Oval, and Rectangular Duct Traverse Reports: Include a diagram with a grid representing the duct cross-section and record the following:

1. Report Data:

a. System and air-handling unit number.
b. Location and zone.
c. Traverse air temperature in deg F.
d. Duct static pressure in inches wg.
e. Duct size in inches.
f. Duct area in sq. ft.
g. Indicated airflow rate in cfm.
h. Indicated velocity in fpm.
i. Actual airflow rate in cfm.
j. Actual average velocity in fpm.
k. Barometric pressure in psig.

J. Air-Terminal-Device Reports:

1. Unit Data:

a. System and air-handling unit identification.

b. Location and zone.
c. Test apparatus used.
d. Area served.
e. Air-terminal-device make.
f. Air-terminal-device number from system diagram.
g. Air-terminal-device type and model number.
h. Air-terminal-device size.
i. Air-terminal-device effective area in sq. ft.

2. Test Data (Indicated and Actual Values):

a. Airflow rate in cfm.
b. Air velocity in fpm.
c. Preliminary airflow rate as needed in cfm.
d. Preliminary velocity as needed in fpm.
e. Final airflow rate in cfm.
f. Final velocity in fpm.
g. Space temperature in deg F.

K. Vibration Measurement Reports:

1. Date and time of test.
2. Vibration meter manufacturer, model number, and serial number.
3. Equipment designation, location, equipment, speed, motor speed, and motor horsepower.
4. Diagram of equipment showing the vibration measurement locations.
5. Measurement readings for each measurement location.
6. Calculate isolator efficiency using measurements taken.
7. Description of predominant vibration source.

L. Sound Measurement Reports: Record sound measurements on octave band and dBA test forms and on an NC or RC chart indicating the decibel level measured in each frequency band for both "background" and "HVAC system operating" readings. Record each tested location on a separate NC or RC chart. Record the following on the forms:

1. Date and time of test. Record each tested location on its own NC curve.
2. Sound meter manufacturer, model number, and serial number.
3. Space location within the building including floor level and room number.
4. Diagram or color photograph of the space showing the measurement location.
5. Time weighting of measurements, either fast or slow.
6. Description of the measured sound: steady, transient, or tonal.
7. Description of predominant sound source.

M. Indoor-Air Quality Measurement Reports for Each HVAC System:

1. HVAC system designation.
2. Date and time of test.

3. Outdoor temperature, relative humidity, wind speed, and wind direction at start of test.
4. Room number or similar description for each location.
5. Measurements at each location.
6. Observed deficiencies.

N. Instrument Calibration Reports:

1. Report Data:

a. Instrument type and make.
b. Serial number.
c. Application.
d. Dates of use.
e. Dates of calibration.

3.13 INSPECTIONS

A. Initial Inspection:

1. After testing and balancing are complete, operate each system and randomly check measurements to verify that the system is operating according to the final test and balance readings documented in the Final Report.
2. Randomly check the following for each system:

a. Measure airflow of at least 10 percent of air outlets.
b. Measure water flow of at least 5 percent of terminals.
c. Measure room temperature at each thermostat/temperature sensor. Compare the reading to the set point.
d. Measure sound levels at two locations.
e. Measure space pressure of at least 10 percent of locations.
f. Verify that balancing devices are marked with final balance position.
g. Note deviations to the Contract Documents in the Final Report.

B. Final Inspection:

1. After initial inspection is complete and evidence by random checks verifies that testing and balancing are complete and accurately documented in the final report, request that a final inspection be made by Owner.
2. TAB firm test and balance engineer shall conduct the inspection in the presence of Owner.
3. Owner shall randomly select measurements documented in the final report to be rechecked. The rechecking shall be limited to either 10 percent of the total measurements recorded, or the extent of measurements that can be accomplished in a normal 8-hour business day.

4. If the rechecks yield measurements that differ from the measurements documented in the final report by more than the tolerances allowed, the measurements shall be noted as "FAILED."
5. If the number of "FAILED" measurements is greater than 10 percent of the total measurements checked during the final inspection, the testing and balancing shall be considered incomplete and shall be rejected.
6. TAB firm shall recheck all measurements and make adjustments. Revise the final report and balancing device settings to include all changes and resubmit the final report.
7. Request a second final inspection. If the second final inspection also fails, Owner shall contract the services of another TAB firm to complete the testing and balancing in accordance with the Contract Documents and deduct the cost of the services from the final payment.

3.14 ADDITIONAL TESTS

A. Within 90 days of completing TAB, perform additional testing and balancing to verify that balanced conditions are being maintained throughout and to correct unusual conditions.

B. Seasonal Periods: If initial TAB procedures were not performed during near-peak summer and winter conditions, perform additional testing, inspecting, and adjusting during near-peak summer and winter conditions.

END OF SECTION 23 05 93

ROCIP Project: Withhold insurance cost. Please refer to sections 00425 & 00810 for information.

SECTION 23 07 00 - HVAC INSULATION

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Insulation Materials:

   a. Cellular glass.
   b. Flexible elastomeric.
   c. Mineral fiber.
   d. Fire Rated Duct

2. Insulating cements.
3. Adhesives.
4. Mastics.
5. Sealants.
6. Factory-applied jackets.
7. Field-applied fabric-reinforcing mesh.
8. Field-applied jackets.
9. Tapes.
10. Securements.
11. Corner angles.

1.2 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.

B. Shop Drawings:

1. Detail application of protective shields, saddles, and inserts at hangers for each type of insulation and hanger.
2. Detail insulation application at elbows, fittings, flanges, valves, and specialties for each type of insulation.
3. Detail removable insulation at piping specialties, equipment connections, and access panels.
4. Detail application of field-applied jackets.
5. Detail application at linkages of control devices.
6. Detail field application for each equipment type.

ROCIP Project: Withhold insurance cost. Please refer to sections 00425 & 00810 for information.

1.3 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Fire-Test-Response Characteristics: Insulation and related materials shall have fire-test-response characteristics indicated, as determined by testing identical products per ASTM E 84, by a testing and inspecting agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction. Factory label insulation and jacket materials and adhesive, mastic, tapes, and cement material containers, with appropriate markings of applicable testing and inspecting agency.

1. Insulation Installed Indoors: Flame-spread index of 25 or less, and smoke-developed index of 50 or less.
2. Insulation Installed Outdoors: Flame-spread index of 75 or less, and smoke-developed index of 150 or less.

1.4 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Packaging: Insulation material containers shall be marked by manufacturer with appropriate ASTM standard designation, type and grade, and maximum use temperature.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 INSULATION MATERIALS

A. Comply with requirements in Part 3 schedule articles where insulating materials shall be applied.

B. Products shall not contain asbestos, lead, mercury, or mercury compounds.

C. Products that come in contact with stainless steel shall have a leachable chloride content of less than 50 ppm when tested according to ASTM C 871.

D. Insulation materials for use on austenitic stainless steel shall be qualified as acceptable according to ASTM C 795.

E. Foam insulation materials shall not use CFC or HCFC blowing agents in the manufacturing process.

F. Cellular Glass: Inorganic, incombustible, foamed or cellulated glass with annealed, rigid, hermetically sealed cells. Factory-applied jacket requirements are specified in "Factory-Applied Jackets" Article.

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:

   a. Cell-U-Foam Corporation; Ultra-CUF.
   b. Pittsburgh Corning Corporation; Foamglas Super K.

2. Preformed Pipe Insulation with Factory-Applied ASJ: Comply with ASTM C 552, Type II, Class 2.
3. Factory fabricate shapes according to ASTM C 450 and ASTM C 585.

G. Flexible Elastomeric: Closed-cell, sponge- or expanded-rubber materials. Comply with ASTM C 534, Type I for tubular materials and Type II for sheet materials.

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

a. Aeroflex USA Inc.; Aerocel.
b. Armacell LLC; AP Armaflex.
c. RBX Corporation; Insul-Sheet 1800 and Insul-Tube 180.

H. Mineral-Fiber Blanket Insulation: Mineral or glass fibers bonded with a thermosetting resin. Comply with ASTM C 553, Type II and ASTM C 1290, Type I III with factory-applied FSK jacket. Factory-applied jacket requirements are specified in "Factory-Applied Jackets" Article.

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:

a. CertainTeed Corp.; Duct Wrap.
b. Johns Manville; Microlite.
c. Knauf Insulation; Duct Wrap.
d. Manson Insulation Inc.; Alley Wrap.
e. Owens Corning; All-Service Duct Wrap.

2.2 FIRE-RATED INSULATION SYSTEMS

A. Fire-Rated Blanket: High-temperature, flexible, blanket insulation with FSK jacket that is tested and certified to provide a 2-hour fire rating by an NRTL acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

a. 3M.
b. CertainTeed Corporation.
c. Johns Manville; a Berkshire Hathaway company.

B. Mineral-Fiber Board Insulation: Mineral or glass fibers bonded with a thermosetting resin. Comply with ASTM C 612, Type IA or Type IB. For duct and plenum applications, provide insulation with factory-applied FSK jacket. For equipment applications, provide insulation with factory-applied FSK jacket. Factory-applied jacket requirements are specified in "Factory-Applied Jackets" Article.

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:

a. CertainTeed Corp.; Commercial Board.
b. Fibrex Insulations Inc.; FBX.
c. Johns Manville; 800 Series Spin-Glas.
d. Knauf Insulation; Insulation Board.
e. Manson Insulation Inc.; AK Board.
f. Owens Corning; Fiberglas 700 Series.

C. Sizes shown on the drawings are free area dimensions (after installation of duct liner)

D. Acceptable product for lining rectangular section ducts and plenums: Johns Manville “Permacote Linacoustic R-300” or approved equal.

2.3 INSULATING CEMENTS

A. Mineral-Fiber, Hydraulic-Setting Insulating and Finishing Cement: Comply with ASTM C 449/C 449M.

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:

a. Insulco, Division of MFS, Inc.; SmoothKote.
b. P. K. Insulation Mfg. Co., Inc.; PK No. 127, and Quik-Cote.
c. Rock Wool Manufacturing Company; Delta One Shot.

2.4 ADHESIVES

A. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates and for bonding insulation to itself and to surfaces to be insulated, unless otherwise indicated.

B. Calcium Silicate Adhesive: Fibrous, sodium-silicate-based adhesive with a service temperature range of 50 to 800 deg F

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:

a. Childers Products, Division of ITW; CP-97.
b. Foster Products Corporation, H. B. Fuller Company; 81-27/81-93.
c. Marathon Industries, Inc.; 290.
d. Mon-Eco Industries, Inc.; 22-30.
e. Vimasco Corporation; 760.

2. For indoor applications, use adhesive that has a VOC content of 80 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).

C. Cellular-Glass, Phenolic, Polyisocyanurate, and Polystyrene Adhesive: Solvent-based resin adhesive, with a service temperature range of minus 75 to plus 300 deg F.

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:

a. Childers Products, Division of ITW; CP-96.
b. Foster Products Corporation, H. B. Fuller Company; 81-33.

2. For indoor applications, use adhesive that has a VOC content of 50 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).

D. Flexible Elastomeric and Polyolefin Adhesive: Comply with MIL-A-24179A, Type II, Class I.

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:

a. Aeroflex USA Inc.; Aeroseal.
b. Armacell LCC; 520 Adhesive.
c. Foster Products Corporation, H. B. Fuller Company; 85-75.
d. RBX Corporation; Rubatex Contact Adhesive.

2. For indoor applications, use adhesive that has a VOC content of 50 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).

E. Mineral-Fiber Adhesive: Comply with MIL-A-3316C, Class 2, Grade A.

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:

a. Childers Products, Division of ITW; CP-82.
b. Foster Products Corporation, H. B. Fuller Company; 85-20.
c. ITW TACC, Division of Illinois Tool Works; S-90/80.
d. Marathon Industries, Inc.; 225.
e. Mon-Eco Industries, Inc.; 22-25.

2. For indoor applications, use adhesive that has a VOC content of 80 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).

2.5 MASTICS

A. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates; comply with MIL-C-19565C, Type II.

B. Vapor-Barrier Mastic: Water based; suitable for indoor and outdoor use on below ambient services.

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:

   a. Childers Products, Division of ITW; CP-35.
   b. Foster Products Corporation, H. B. Fuller Company; 30-90.
   c. ITW TACC, Division of Illinois Tool Works; CB-50.
   d. Marathon Industries, Inc.; 590.
   e. Mon-Eco Industries, Inc.; 55-40.
   f. Vimasco Corporation; 749.

2. Water-Vapor Permeance: ASTM E 96, Procedure B, 0.013 perm at 43-mil dry film thickness.
3. Service Temperature Range: Minus 20 to plus 180 deg F.
4. Solids Content: ASTM D 1644, 59 percent by volume and 71 percent by weight.
5. Color: White.

C. Breather Mastic: Water based; suitable for indoor and outdoor use on above ambient services.

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:

   a. Childers Products, Division of ITW; CP-10.
   b. Foster Products Corporation, H. B. Fuller Company; 35-00.
   c. ITW TACC, Division of Illinois Tool Works; CB-05/15.
   d. Marathon Industries, Inc.; 550.
   e. Mon-Eco Industries, Inc.; 55-50.
   f. Vimasco Corporation; WC-1/WC-5.

2. Water-Vapor Permeance: ASTM F 1249, 3 perms at 0.0625-inch dry film thickness.
3. Service Temperature Range: Minus 20 to plus 200 deg F.
4. Solids Content: 63 percent by volume and 73 percent by weight.
5. Color: White.

2.6 SEALANTS

A. Joint Sealants:

1. Joint Sealants for Cellular-Glass Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide the following available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

   a. Childers Products, Division of ITW; CP-76.
   b. Foster Products Corporation, H. B. Fuller Company; 30-45.
   c. Marathon Industries, Inc.; 405.

d. Mon-Eco Industries, Inc.; 44-05.
e. Pittsburgh Corning Corporation; Pittseal 444.
f. Vimasco Corporation; 750.

2. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates.
3. Permanently flexible, elastomeric sealant.
4. Service Temperature Range: Minus 100 to plus 300 deg F.
5. Color: White or gray.

B. FSK and Metal Jacket Flashing Sealants:

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:

a. Childers Products, Division of ITW; CP-76-8.
b. Foster Products Corporation, H. B. Fuller Company; 95-44.
c. Marathon Industries, Inc.; 405.
d. Mon-Eco Industries, Inc.; 44-05.
e. Vimasco Corporation; 750.

2. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates.
3. Fire- and water-resistant, flexible, elastomeric sealant.
4. Service Temperature Range: Minus 40 to plus 250 deg F.
5. Color: Aluminum.

2.7 FACTORY-APPLIED JACKETS

A. Insulation system schedules indicate factory-applied jackets on various applications. When factory-applied jackets are indicated, comply with the following:

1. ASJ: White, kraft-paper, fiberglass-reinforced scrim with aluminum-foil backing; complying with ASTM C 1136, Type I.

2.8 FIELD-APPLIED JACKETS

A. Field-applied jackets shall comply with ASTM C 921, Type I, unless otherwise indicated.

B. FSK Jacket: Aluminum-foil-face, fiberglass-reinforced scrim with kraft-paper backing.

C. Aluminum Jacket: Factory cut and rolled to indicated sizes. Comply with ASTM B 209, 3003 alloy, H-14 temper.

1. Finish and Thickness: Stucco-embossed finish, 0.016 inch thick.
2. Moisture Barrier: 1-mil- thick, heat-bonded polyethylene and kraft paper.
3. Elbows: Preformed, 45- and 90-degree, short- and long-radius elbows; same material, finish, and thickness as jacket.

ROCIP Project: Withhold insurance cost. Please refer to sections 00425 & 00810 for information.

2.9 TAPES

A. FSK Tape: Foil-face, vapor-retarder tape matching factory-applied jacket with acrylic adhesive; complying with ASTM C 1136.

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

   a. Avery Dennison Corporation, Specialty Tapes Division; Fasson 0827.
   b. Compac Corp.; 110 and 111.
   c. Ideal Tape Co., Inc., an American Biltrite Company; 491 AWF FSK.
   d. Venture Tape; 1525 CW, 1528 CW, and 1528 CW/SQ.

2. Width: 3 inches.
3. Thickness: 6.5 mils.
4. Adhesion: 90 ounces force/inch in width.
5. Elongation: 2 percent.
6. Tensile Strength: 40 lbf/inch in width.
7. FSK Tape Disks and Squares: Precut disks or squares of FSK tape.

B. Aluminum-Foil Tape: Vapor-retarder tape with acrylic adhesive.

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide the following provide one of the following:

   a. Avery Dennison Corporation, Specialty Tapes Division; Fasson 0800.
   b. Compac Corp.; 120.
   c. Ideal Tape Co., Inc., an American Biltrite Company; 488 AWF.
   d. Venture Tape; 3520 CW.

2. Width: 2 inches.
3. Thickness: 3.7 mils.
4. Adhesion: 100 ounces force/inch in width.
5. Elongation: 5 percent.
6. Tensile Strength: 34 lbf/inch in width.

2.10 SECUREMENTS

A. Aluminum Bands: ASTM B 209, Alloy 3003, 3005, 3105, or 5005; Temper H-14, 0.020 inch thick, 1/2 inch wide with wing or closed seal.

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

   a. Childers Products; Bands.
   b. PABCO Metals Corporation; Bands.
   c. RPR Products, Inc.; Bands.

B. Staples: Outward-clinching insulation staples, nominal 3/4-inch- wide, stainless steel or Monel.

C. Wire: 0.062-inch soft-annealed, stainless steel.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements,:

a. C & F Wire.
b. Childers Products.
c. PABCO Metals Corporation.
d. RPR Products, Inc.

2.11 CORNER ANGLES

A. Aluminum Corner Angles: 0.040 inch thick, minimum 1 by 1 inch, aluminum according to ASTM B 209, Alloy 3003, 3005, 3105 or 5005; Temper H-14.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 PREPARATION

A. Surface Preparation: Clean and dry surfaces to receive insulation. Remove materials that will adversely affect insulation application.

B. Mix insulating cements with clean potable water; if insulating cements are to be in contact with stainless-steel surfaces, use demineralized water.

3.2 GENERAL INSTALLATION REQUIREMENTS

A. Install insulation materials, accessories, and finishes with smooth, straight, and even surfaces; free of voids throughout the length of equipment, ducts and fittings, and piping including fittings, valves, and specialties.

B. Install insulation materials, forms, vapor barriers or retarders, jackets, and thicknesses required for each item of equipment, duct system, and pipe system as specified in insulation system schedules.

C. Install accessories compatible with insulation materials and suitable for the service. Install accessories that do not corrode, soften, or otherwise attack insulation or jacket in either wet or dry state.

D. Install insulation with longitudinal seams at top and bottom of horizontal runs.

E. Install multiple layers of insulation with longitudinal and end seams staggered.

F. Do not weld brackets, clips, or other attachment devices to piping, fittings, and specialties.

G. Keep insulation materials dry during application and finishing.

H. Install insulation with tight longitudinal seams and end joints. Bond seams and joints with adhesive recommended by insulation material manufacturer.

I. Install insulation with least number of joints practical.

J. Where vapor barrier is indicated, seal joints, seams, and penetrations in insulation at hangers, supports, anchors, and other projections with vapor-barrier mastic.

1. Install insulation continuously through hangers and around anchor attachments.
2. For insulation application where vapor barriers are indicated, extend insulation on anchor legs from point of attachment to supported item to point of attachment to structure. Taper and seal ends at attachment to structure with vapor-barrier mastic.
3. Install insert materials and install insulation to tightly join the insert. Seal insulation to insulation inserts with adhesive or sealing compound recommended by insulation material manufacturer.
4. Cover inserts with jacket material matching adjacent pipe insulation. Install shields over jacket, arranged to protect jacket from tear or puncture by hanger, support, and shield.
5. Provide rigid insulation at all duct and pipe hangers, at all hanger locations.

K. Apply adhesives, mastics, and sealants at manufacturer's recommended coverage rate and wet and dry film thicknesses.

L. Install insulation with factory-applied jackets as follows:

1. Draw jacket tight and smooth.
2. Cover circumferential joints with 3-inch- wide strips, of same material as insulation jacket. Secure strips with adhesive and outward clinching staples along both edges of strip, spaced 4 inches o.c.
3. Overlap jacket longitudinal seams at least 1-1/2 inches. Install insulation with longitudinal seams at bottom of pipe. Clean and dry surface to receive self-sealing lap. Staple laps with outward clinching staples along edge at 2 inches o.c.

   a. For below ambient services, apply vapor-barrier mastic over staples.

4. Cover joints and seams with tape as recommended by insulation material manufacturer to maintain vapor seal.
5. Where vapor barriers are indicated, apply vapor-barrier mastic on seams and joints and at ends adjacent to duct and pipe flanges and fittings.

M. Cut insulation in a manner to avoid compressing insulation more than 75 percent of its nominal thickness.

N. Finish installation with systems at operating conditions. Repair joint separations and cracking due to thermal movement.

O. Repair damaged insulation facings by applying same facing material over damaged areas. Extend patches at least 4 inches beyond damaged areas. Adhere, staple, and seal patches similar to butt joints.

P. For above ambient services, do not install insulation to the following:

1. Vibration-control devices.
2. Testing agency labels and stamps.
3. Nameplates and data plates.
4. Manholes.
5. Handholes.
6. Cleanouts.

3.3 PENETRATIONS

A. Insulation Installation at Roof Penetrations: Install insulation continuously through roof penetrations.

1. Seal penetrations with flashing sealant.
2. For applications requiring only indoor insulation, terminate insulation above roof surface and seal with joint sealant. For applications requiring indoor and outdoor insulation, install insulation for outdoor applications tightly joined to indoor insulation ends. Seal joint with joint sealant.
3. Extend jacket of outdoor insulation outside roof flashing at least 2 inches below top of roof flashing.
4. Seal jacket to roof flashing with flashing sealant.

B. Insulation Installation at Underground Exterior Wall Penetrations: Terminate insulation flush with sleeve seal. Seal terminations with flashing sealant.

C. Insulation Installation at Aboveground Exterior Wall Penetrations: Install insulation continuously through wall penetrations.

1. Seal penetrations with flashing sealant.
2. For applications requiring only indoor insulation, terminate insulation inside wall surface and seal with joint sealant. For applications requiring indoor and outdoor insulation, install insulation for outdoor applications tightly joined to indoor insulation ends. Seal joint with joint sealant.
3. Extend jacket of outdoor insulation outside wall flashing and overlap wall flashing at least 2 inches.
4. Seal jacket to wall flashing with flashing sealant.

D. Insulation Installation at Interior Wall and Partition Penetrations (That Are Not Fire Rated): Install insulation continuously through walls and partitions.

E. Insulation Installation at Floor Penetrations:

1. Duct: Install insulation continuously through floor penetrations that are not fire rated. For penetrations through fire-rated assemblies, terminate insulation at fire damper sleeves and externally insulate damper sleeve beyond floor to match adjacent duct insulation. Overlap damper sleeve and duct insulation at least 2 inches.
2. Pipe: Install insulation continuously through floor penetrations.
3. Seal penetrations through fire-rated assemblies.

3.4 GENERAL PIPE INSULATION INSTALLATION

A. Requirements in this article generally apply to all insulation materials except where more specific requirements are specified in various pipe insulation material installation articles.

B. Insulation Installation on Fittings, Valves, Strainers, Flanges, and Unions:

1. Install insulation over fittings, valves, strainers, flanges, unions, and other specialties with continuous thermal and vapor-retarder integrity, unless otherwise indicated.
2. Insulate pipe elbows using preformed fitting insulation or mitered fittings made from same material and density as adjacent pipe insulation. Each piece shall be butted tightly against adjoining piece and bonded with adhesive. Fill joints, seams, voids, and irregular surfaces with insulating cement finished to a smooth, hard, and uniform contour that is uniform with adjoining pipe insulation.
3. Insulate tee fittings with preformed fitting insulation or sectional pipe insulation of same material and thickness as used for adjacent pipe. Cut sectional pipe insulation to fit. Butt each section closely to the next and hold in place with tie wire. Bond pieces with adhesive.
4. Insulate valves using preformed fitting insulation or sectional pipe insulation of same material, density, and thickness as used for adjacent pipe. Overlap adjoining pipe insulation by not less than two times the thickness of pipe insulation, or one pipe diameter, whichever is thicker. For valves, insulate up to and including the bonnets, valve stuffing-box studs, bolts, and nuts. Fill joints, seams, and irregular surfaces with insulating cement.
5. Insulate strainers using preformed fitting insulation or sectional pipe insulation of same material, density, and thickness as used for adjacent pipe. Overlap adjoining pipe insulation by not less than two times the thickness of pipe insulation, or one pipe diameter, whichever is thicker. Fill joints, seams, and irregular surfaces with insulating cement. Insulate strainers so strainer basket flange or plug can be easily removed and replaced without damaging the insulation and jacket. Provide a removable reusable insulation cover. For below ambient services, provide a design that maintains vapor barrier.

6. Insulate flanges and unions using a section of oversized preformed pipe insulation. Overlap adjoining pipe insulation by not less than two times the thickness of pipe insulation, or one pipe diameter, whichever is thicker.
7. Cover segmented insulated surfaces with a layer of finishing cement and coat with a mastic. Install vapor-barrier mastic for below ambient services and a breather mastic for above ambient services. Reinforce the mastic with fabric-reinforcing mesh. Trowel the mastic to a smooth and well-shaped contour.
8. For services not specified to receive a field-applied jacket except for flexible elastomeric and polyolefin, install fitted PVC cover over elbows, tees, strainers, valves, flanges, and unions. Terminate ends with PVC end caps. Tape PVC covers to adjoining insulation facing using PVC tape.
9. Stencil or label the outside insulation jacket of each union with the word "UNION." Match size and color of pipe labels.

C. Insulate instrument connections for thermometers, pressure gages, pressure temperature taps, test connections, flow meters, sensors, switches, and transmitters on insulated pipes, vessels, and equipment. Shape insulation at these connections by tapering it to and around the connection with insulating cement and finish with finishing cement, mastic, and flashing sealant.

D. Install removable insulation covers at locations indicated. Installation shall conform to the following:

1. Make removable flange and union insulation from sectional pipe insulation of same thickness as that on adjoining pipe. Install same insulation jacket as adjoining pipe insulation.
2. When flange and union covers are made from sectional pipe insulation, extend insulation from flanges or union long at least two times the insulation thickness over adjacent pipe insulation on each side of flange or union. Secure flange cover in place with stainless-steel or aluminum bands. Select band material compatible with insulation and jacket.
3. Construct removable valve insulation covers in same manner as for flanges except divide the two-part section on the vertical center line of valve body.
4. When covers are made from block insulation, make two halves, each consisting of mitered blocks wired to stainless-steel fabric. Secure this wire frame, with its attached insulation, to flanges with tie wire. Extend insulation at least 2 inches over adjacent pipe insulation on each side of valve. Fill space between flange or union cover and pipe insulation with insulating cement. Finish cover assembly with insulating cement applied in two coats. After first coat is dry, apply and trowel second coat to a smooth finish.
5. Unless a PVC jacket is indicated in field-applied jacket schedules, finish exposed surfaces with a metal jacket.

ROCIP Project: Withhold insurance cost. Please refer to sections 00425 & 00810 for information.

3.5 CELLULAR-GLASS INSULATION INSTALLATION

A. Insulation Installation on Straight Pipes and Tubes:

1. Secure each layer of insulation to pipe with wire or bands and tighten bands without deforming insulation materials.
2. Where vapor barriers are indicated, seal longitudinal seams, end joints, and protrusions with vapor-barrier mastic and joint sealant.
3. For insulation with factory-applied jackets on above ambient services, secure laps with outward clinched staples at 6 inches o.c.
4. For insulation with factory-applied jackets on below ambient services, do not staple longitudinal tabs but secure tabs with additional adhesive as recommended by insulation material manufacturer and seal with vapor-barrier mastic and flashing sealant.

B. Insulation Installation on Pipe Flanges:

1. Install preformed pipe insulation to outer diameter of pipe flange.
2. Make width of insulation section same as overall width of flange and bolts, plus twice the thickness of pipe insulation.
3. Fill voids between inner circumference of flange insulation and outer circumference of adjacent straight pipe segments with cut sections of cellular-glass block insulation of same thickness as pipe insulation.
4. Install jacket material with manufacturer's recommended adhesive, overlap seams at least 1 inch, and seal joints with flashing sealant.

C. Insulation Installation on Pipe Fittings and Elbows:

1. Install preformed sections of same material as straight segments of pipe insulation when available. Secure according to manufacturer's written instructions.
2. When preformed sections of insulation are not available, install mitered sections of cellular-glass insulation. Secure insulation materials with wire or bands.

D. Insulation Installation on Valves and Pipe Specialties:

1. Install preformed sections of cellular-glass insulation to valve body.
2. Arrange insulation to permit access to packing and to allow valve operation without disturbing insulation.
3. Install insulation to flanges as specified for flange insulation application.

3.6 FLEXIBLE ELASTOMERIC INSULATION INSTALLATION

A. Seal longitudinal seams and end joints with manufacturer's recommended adhesive to eliminate openings in insulation that allow passage of air to surface being insulated.

B. Insulation Installation on equipment:

1. Install pipe insulation to outer diameter of equipment and pipe flanges.
2. Make width of insulation section same as overall width of equipment and bolts, plus twice the thickness of pipe insulation.
3. Fill voids between inner circumference of equipment insulation and outer circumference of adjacent straight pipe segments, flanges and fittings with cut sections of sheet insulation of same thickness as pipe insulation.
4. Secure insulation to equipment and seal seams with manufacturer's recommended adhesive to eliminate openings in insulation that allow passage of air to surface being insulated.

C. Insulation Installation on Pipe Fittings and Elbows:

1. Install mitered sections of pipe insulation.
2. Secure insulation materials and seal seams with manufacturer's recommended adhesive to eliminate openings in insulation that allow passage of air to surface being insulated.

D. Insulation Installation on Valves and Pipe Specialties:

1. Install preformed valve covers manufactured of same material as pipe insulation when available.
2. When preformed valve covers are not available, install cut sections of pipe and sheet insulation to valve body. Arrange insulation to permit access to packing and to allow valve operation without disturbing insulation.
3. Install insulation to flanges as specified for flange insulation application.
4. Secure insulation to valves and specialties and seal seams with manufacturer's recommended adhesive to eliminate openings in insulation that allow passage of air to surface being insulated.

3.7 MINERAL-FIBER INSULATION INSTALLATION

A. Blanket Insulation Installation on Ducts and Plenums: Secure with adhesive and insulation pins.

1. Apply adhesives according to manufacturer's recommended coverage rates per unit area, for 100 percent coverage of duct and plenum surfaces.
2. Apply adhesive to entire circumference of ducts and to all surfaces of fittings and transitions.
3. Install either capacitor-discharge-weld pins and speed washers or cupped-head, capacitor-discharge-weld pins on sides and bottom of horizontal ducts and sides of vertical ducts as follows:

    a. On duct sides with dimensions 18 inches and smaller, place pins along longitudinal centerline of duct. Space 3 inches maximum from insulation end joints, and 16 inches o.c.

b. On duct sides with dimensions larger than 18 inches, place pins 16 inches o.c. each way, and 3 inches maximum from insulation joints. Install additional pins to hold insulation tightly against surface at cross bracing.
c. Pins may be omitted from top surface of horizontal, rectangular ducts and plenums.
d. Do not overcompress insulation during installation.
e. Impale insulation over pins and attach speed washers.
f. Cut excess portion of pins extending beyond speed washers or bend parallel with insulation surface. Cover exposed pins and washers with tape matching insulation facing.

4. For ducts and plenums with surface temperatures below ambient, install a continuous unbroken vapor barrier. Create a facing lap for longitudinal seams and end joints with insulation by removing 2 inches from 1 edge and 1 end of insulation segment. Secure laps to adjacent insulation section with 1/2-inch outward-clinching staples, 1 inch o.c. Install vapor barrier consisting of factory- or field-applied jacket, adhesive, vapor-barrier mastic, and sealant at joints, seams, and protrusions.

   a. Repair punctures, tears, and penetrations with tape or mastic to maintain vapor-barrier seal.
   b. Install vapor stops for ductwork and plenums operating below 50 deg F at 18-foot intervals. Vapor stops shall consist of vapor-barrier mastic applied in a Z-shaped pattern over insulation face, along butt end of insulation, and over the surface. Cover insulation face and surface to be insulated a width equal to 2 times the insulation thickness but not less than 3 inches.

5. Overlap unfaced blankets a minimum of 2 inches on longitudinal seams and end joints. At end joints, secure with steel bands spaced a maximum of 18 inches o.c.
6. Install insulation on rectangular duct elbows and transitions with a full insulation section for each surface. Install insulation on round and flat-oval duct elbows with individually mitered gores cut to fit the elbow.
7. Insulate duct stiffeners, hangers, and flanges that protrude beyond insulation surface with 6-inch- wide strips of same material used to insulate duct. Secure on alternating sides of stiffener, hanger, and flange with pins spaced 6 inches o.c.

B. Board Insulation Installation on Ducts and Plenums: Secure with adhesive and insulation pins.

1. Apply adhesives according to manufacturer's recommended coverage rates per unit area, for 100 percent coverage of duct and plenum surfaces.
2. Apply adhesive to entire circumference of ducts and to all surfaces of fittings and transitions.

3. Install either capacitor-discharge-weld pins and speed washers or cupped-head, capacitor-discharge-weld pins on sides and bottom of horizontal ducts and sides of vertical ducts as follows:

    a. On duct sides with dimensions 18 inches and smaller, place pins along longitudinal centerline of duct. Space 3 inches maximum from insulation end joints, and 16 inches o.c.
    b. On duct sides with dimensions larger than 18 inches, space pins 16 inches o.c. each way, and 3 inches maximum from insulation joints. Install additional pins to hold insulation tightly against surface at cross bracing.
    c. Pins may be omitted from top surface of horizontal, rectangular ducts and plenums.
    d. Do not overcompress insulation during installation.
    e. Cut excess portion of pins extending beyond speed washers or bend parallel with insulation surface. Cover exposed pins and washers with tape matching insulation facing.

4. For ducts and plenums with surface temperatures below ambient, install a continuous unbroken vapor barrier. Create a facing lap for longitudinal seams and end joints with insulation by removing 2 inches from 1 edge and 1 end of insulation segment. Secure laps to adjacent insulation section with 1/2-inch outward-clinching staples, 1 inch o.c. Install vapor barrier consisting of factory- or field-applied jacket, adhesive, vapor-barrier mastic, and sealant at joints, seams, and protrusions.

    a. Repair punctures, tears, and penetrations with tape or mastic to maintain vapor-barrier seal.
    b. Install vapor stops for ductwork and plenums operating below 50 deg F at 18-foot intervals. Vapor stops shall consist of vapor-barrier mastic applied in a Z-shaped pattern over insulation face, along butt end of insulation, and over the surface. Cover insulation face and surface to be insulated a width equal to 2 times the insulation thickness but not less than 3 inches.

5. Install insulation on rectangular duct elbows, over diffusers, and transitions with a full insulation section for each surface. Groove and score insulation to fit as closely as possible to outside and inside radius of elbows. Install insulation on round and flat-oval duct elbows with individually mitered gores cut to fit the elbow.
6. Insulate duct stiffeners, hangers, and flanges that protrude beyond insulation surface with 6-inch- wide strips of same material used to insulate duct. Secure on alternating sides of stiffener, hanger, and flange with pins spaced 6 inches o.c.

ROCIP Project: Withhold insurance cost. Please refer to sections 00425 & 00810 for information.

3.8 FIELD-APPLIED JACKET INSTALLATION

A. Where FSK jackets are indicated, install as follows:

1. Draw jacket material smooth and tight.
2. Install lap or joint strips with same material as jacket.
3. Secure jacket to insulation with manufacturer's recommended adhesive.
4. Install jacket with 1-1/2-inch laps at longitudinal seams and 3-inch- wide joint strips at end joints.
5. Seal openings, punctures, and breaks in vapor-retarder jackets and exposed insulation with vapor-barrier mastic.

B. Where metal jackets are indicated, install with 2-inch overlap at longitudinal seams and end joints. Overlap longitudinal seams arranged to shed water. Seal end joints with weatherproof sealant recommended by insulation manufacturer. Secure jacket with stainless-steel bands 12 inches o.c. and at end joints.

3.9 FINISHES

A. Duct, Equipment, and Pipe Insulation with ASJ or Other Paintable Jacket Material: Paint jacket with paint system identified below and as specified in Division 09 painting Sections.

1. Flat Acrylic Finish: Two finish coats over a primer that is compatible with jacket material and finish coat paint. Add fungicidal agent to render fabric mildew proof.

   a. Finish Coat Material: Interior, flat, latex-emulsion size.

B. Flexible Elastomeric Thermal Insulation: After adhesive has fully cured, apply two coats of insulation manufacturer's recommended protective coating.

C. Color: Final color as selected by Architect. Vary first and second coats to allow visual inspection of the completed Work.

D. Do not field paint aluminum or stainless-steel jackets.

3.10 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Perform tests and inspections.

ROCIP Project: Withhold insurance cost. Please refer to sections 00425 & 00810 for information.

B. Tests and Inspections:

1. Inspect ductwork, randomly selected by Architect, by removing field-applied jacket and insulation in layers in reverse order of their installation. Extent of inspection shall be limited to one location(s) for each duct system defined in the "Duct Insulation Schedule, General" Article.
2. Inspect field-insulated equipment, randomly selected by Architect, by removing field-applied jacket and insulation in layers in reverse order of their installation. Extent of inspection shall be limited to one location(s) for each type of equipment defined in the "Equipment Insulation Schedule" Article. For large equipment, remove only a portion adequate to determine compliance.

C. All insulation applications will be considered defective Work if sample inspection reveals noncompliance with requirements.

3.11 DUCT INSULATION SCHEDULE, GENERAL

A. Plenums and Ducts Requiring Insulation:

1. Indoor, concealed supply, return and outdoor air.
2. Indoor, exposed supply and outdoor air.
3. Indoor, concealed return located in non-conditioned space.
4. Indoor, concealed return air plenums.
5. Kitchen hood exhaust (Fire Rated)
6. Above diffusers

B. Items Not Insulated:

1. Fibrous-glass ducts.
2. Factory-insulated flexible ducts.
3. Factory-insulated plenums and casings.
4. Flexible connectors.
5. Vibration-control devices.
6. Factory-insulated access panels and doors.

3.12 INDOOR DUCT AND PLENUM APPLICATION SCHEDULE

A. Service: Indoor, concealed rectangular and round, supply, return, and outside-air ducts..

1. Material: Mineral-fiber blanket.
2. Thickness: 2 inches.
3. Density: 1 lb/cu. ft.
4. k value: 0.27 at 75 Degrees F
5. Number of Layers: One.
6. Vapor Barrier: Provide a vapor barrier on all supply and outside air ductwork
7. Jacket: factory-applied FSK jacket

ROCIP Project: Withhold insurance cost. Please refer to sections 00425 & 00810 for information.

B. Service: Exposed double wall round supply-air ducts.

1. Factory-insulated double-wall ducts
2. Material: Mineral-fiber insulation installed integral to double wall duct
3. Thickness: 2”
4. Minimum rated thermal conductance: 0.13 BTU/hr/Ft.^2/°F

3.13 PIPING INSULATION SCHEDULE, GENERAL

A. Acceptable preformed pipe and tubular insulation materials and thicknesses are identified for each piping system and pipe size range.

B. Items Not Insulated: Unless otherwise indicated, do not install insulation on the following:

1. Underground piping.
2. Chrome-plated pipes and fittings unless there is a potential for personnel injury.

3.14 INDOOR PIPING INSULATION SCHEDULE

A. Heating Water Supply and Return:

1. Operating Temperature: 80 to 160 deg F.
2. Insulation Material: Mineral Fiber
3. Thermal conductivity; 0.27
4. Insulation Thickness:

   a. NPS 1-1/2 and smaller: 1-1/2 inch
   b. NPS 2 and larger: 2.0 inch

5. Field-Applied Jacket: Aluminum for piping exposed in mechanical rooms /ASJ in all other locations.
6. Vapor Barrier: No
7. Finish: Painted in exposed areas

3.15 CONDENSATE LINES/ REFRIGERATION LINES

A. Condensate Lines:

1. Operating Temperature: 35 to 80 deg F.
2. Insulation Material: Elastomeric
3. Insulation Thickness: 3/4 inch.
4. Thermal conductivity: 0.27
5. Field-Applied Jacket: None

ROCIP Project: Withhold insurance cost. Please refer to sections 00425 & 00810 for information.

B. Refrigeration Lines: Suction, hot gas, and liquid

1. Operating Temperature: 35 to 150 deg F.
2. Insulation Material: Elastomeric
3. Insulation Thickness: 3/4 inch.
4. Thermal conductivity: 0.27
5. Field-Applied Jacket: None

3.16 OUTDOOR PIPING INSULATION SCHEDULE

3.17 CONDENSATE LINES/ REFRIGERATION LINES

A. Condensate Lines:

1. Operating Temperature: 35 to 80 deg F.
2. Insulation Material: Elastomeric
3. Insulation Thickness: 3/4 inch.
4. Thermal conductivity: 0.27
5. Field-Applied Jacket: Aluminum

B. Refrigeration Lines: Suction, hot gas, and liquid

1. Operating Temperature: 35 to 150 deg F.
2. Insulation Material: Elastomeric
3. Insulation Thickness: 3/4 inch.
4. Thermal conductivity: 0.27
5. Field-Applied Jacket: Aluminum

END OF SECTION 23 07 00

ROCIP Project: Withhold insurance cost. Please refer to sections 00425 & 00810 for information.

SECTION 23 07 19 - PIPING INSULATION

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.0 The following sections are to be included as if written herein:

A. 23 00 00 -- Basic Mechanical Requirements

B. 23 05 29 -- Sleeves, Flashings, Supports and Anchors

C. 23 05 53 -- Mechanical Identification

1.1 SECTION INCLUDES

A. Piping insulation

B. Jackets and accessories

1.2 PRODUCTS FURNISHED BUT NOT INSTALLED UNDER THIS SECTION

A. Section 22 13 16 - Plumbing Piping: Placement of hangers and hanger inserts.

B. Section 23 21 00 - Hydronic Piping: Placement of hangers and hanger inserts.

C. Section 23 22 00 - Steam Piping: Placement of hangers and hanger inserts.

1.3 RELATED SECTIONS

A. Section 22 13 16 - Plumbing Piping

B. Section 23 00 00 – Basic Mechanical Requirements

C. Section 23 21 00 - Hydronic Piping

D. Section 23 22 00 – Steam and Steam Condensate Piping

E. Division 1 Section 018113 “Sustainable Construction” for LEED requirements

1.4 REFERENCES

A. ASTM B209 - Aluminum and Aluminum-Alloy Sheet and Plate.

B. ASTM C177 - Steady-State Heat Flux Measurements and Thermal Transmission Properties by Means of the Guarded- Hot-Plate Apparatus.

C. ASTM C195 - Mineral Fiber Thermal Insulation Cement.

D. ASTM C335 - Steady-State Heat Transfer Properties of Horizontal Pipe Insulation.

E. ASTM C449 - Mineral Fiber Hydraulic-setting Thermal

F. ASTM C518 - Steady-State Heat Flux Measurements and Thermal Transmission Properties by Means of the Heat Flow Meter Apparatus.

G. ASTM C533 - Calcium Silicate Block and Pipe Thermal Insulation.

I. ASTM C547 - Mineral Fiber Preformed Pipe Insulation.

J. ASTM C552 - Cellular Glass Block and Pipe Thermal Insulation.

K. ASTM C578 - Preformed, Block Type Cellular Polystyrene Thermal Insulation.

L. ASTM C585 - Inner and Outer Diameters of Rigid Thermal Insulation for Nominal Sizes of Pipe and Tubing (NPS System).

M. ASTM C591 - Rigid Preformed Cellular Urethane Thermal Insulation.

N. ASTM C610 - Expanded Perlite Block and Pipe Thermal Insulation.

O. ASTM C640 - Corkboard and Cork Pipe Thermal Insulation.

P. ASTM C921 - Properties of Jacketing Materials for Thermal Insulation.

Q. ASTM D1056 - Flexible Cellular Materials - Sponge or Expanded Rubber.

R. ASTM D1667 - Flexible Cellular Materials - Vinyl Chloride Polymers and Copolymers (Closed Cell Foam).

S. ASTM D2842 - Water Absorption of Rigid Cellular Plastics.

T. ASTM E84 - Surface Burning Characteristics of Building Materials.

U. ASTM E96 - Water Vapor Transmission of Materials.

V. NFPA 255 - Surface Burning Characteristics of Building Materials.

W. UL 723 - Surface Burning Characteristics of Building Materials.

1.5 SUBMITTALS

A. Submit under provisions of Section 23 00 00.

B. Product Data: Provide product description, list of materials 'k' value, 'R' value, mean temperature rating, and thickness for each service, and locations.

C. Samples: When requested, submit two samples of any representative size illustrating each insulation type.

D. Manufacturer's Installation Instructions: Indicate procedures which ensure acceptable workmanship and installation standards will be achievedE. Documentation for Credit EQ 4.1 and 4.2: Paints, coatings, adhesives, sealants, stains, caulk, firestopping, etc. inside the weatherproofing systems and applied on site only in this specification must comply with the VOC limits in Section 01352. Include product data sheet or MSDS clearly showing VOC content of product in grams/Liter.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. All insulation, jacket, adhesives, mastics, sealers, etc., utilized in the fabrication of these systems shall meet NFPA for fire resistant ratings (maximum of 25 flame spread and 50 smoke developed ratings) and shall be approved by the insulation manufacturer for guaranteed performances when incorporated into their insulation system, unless a specific product is specified for a specific application, and is stated as an exception to this requirement. Certificates to this effect shall be submitted along with Contractor's submittal data for this section of the Specifications. No material may be used that, when tested by the ASTM E84-89 test method, is found to melt, drip or delaminate to such a degree that the continuity of the flame front is destroyed, thereby resulting in an artificially low flame spread rating.

B. All surfaces to be insulated shall be clean and dry before applying the insulation. All sections of molded pipe covering shall be firmly butted together. Where an insulation covering is applied, it shall lap the adjoining section of insulation by at least three inches (3"). Where insulation terminates, it shall be neatly beveled and finished. No insulation shall be applied until the pipe, duct, etc., have been pressure tested and found tight. Piping, flexible connections, flanges, valves, strainers, and unions shall be covered unless specifically noted otherwise. Flexible connections on duct shall not be covered. All materials used shall be fire retardant or nonflammable. Refer to Section 23 00 00.

C. All piping, equipment and equipment shall be insulated as indicated on the Drawings, as specified herein, and as required for a complete system. In each case, the insulation shall be equal to that specified and materials applied and finished as described in these Specifications.

D. To be considered, alternate materials shall have equivalent thermal and moisture resistance of the specified materials.

1.7 QUALIFICATIONS

A. All insulation shall be applied by mechanics skilled in this particular work and regularly engaged in such occupation.

B. All insulation shall be applied in strict accordance with these Specifications and with factory printed recommendations on items not herein mentioned. Unsightly, inadequate, or sloppy work will not be acceptable, and all such work shall be removed and replaced as many times as necessary to achieve an acceptable installation. The company performing the work of this section shall have a minimum of three years experience specializing in the trade.

1.8 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Deliver, store, protect, and handle products to site under provisions of Section 23 00 00.

B. Deliver materials to site in original factory packaging, labeled with manufacturer's identification, including product thermal ratings and thickness.

C. Store insulation in original wrapping and protect from weather and construction traffic. Protect insulation against dirt, water, chemical, and mechanical damage.

1.9 ENVIRONMENTAL REQUIREMENTS

A. Maintain ambient temperatures and conditions required by manufacturers of adhesives, mastics, and insulation cements.

B. Maintain temperature during and after installation for minimum period of 24 hours.

C. All insulation materials to be asbestos free.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 STEAM AND CONDENSATE PIPING - TUNNELS & BUILDINGS

A. Steam and condensate piping in the main tunnel system and up to and including PRV's in the building shall be insulated with Manville's Thermo-12 or Owens/Corning "Kaylo" calcium silicate insulation with a factory applied aluminum cover .016" thick (Metal-On). Joints shall be sealed with aluminum snap straps provided, fastened in place with ¾" wide x .020" stainless steel bands. Fittings and valves shall be insulated with the same thickness as that applied to the adjacent pipe and shall have an outer removable covering of aluminum as manufactured by Premetco.

B. Consideration will be given to the use of Manville's Thermo-12 or Owens/Corning "Kaylo" with an outer covering of Premetco smooth finish, pre-cut, pre-rolled, Kraft paper lined aluminum Jacketing with zee type closure and 1-3/4" wide snap strap with permanent sealant in lieu of "Metal-On". Thickness of this jacketing shall be .016" on pipe sizes 8" and smaller and .020" on 10" pipe and larger.

C. If Premetco jacketing is used, it shall be aluminum banding (.020N thick) using three section of covering

D. Pipe insulation shall be firmly wired In place by the use of no less than six (6) loops of No. 16 annealed copper clad iron wire per three foot section of insulation. These sections shall be staggered. The ends of these loops shall be twisted together tightly and bent over and hammered into the insulation so as to leave no projection. Bands shall be .020" thick, ¾" wide, 3 bands per section of insulation. Fittings, valves, etc., shall have bands on each side.

E. All fittings on pipe 4" and larger shall be covered with the same material as the pipe, mitered and smoothed, and securely wired to the pipe.

F. Fittings and valves for pipe smaller than 4" shall be insulated with Manville's No. 301 hydraulic setting cement and each application shall be in layers not thicker than ½". Each layer shall be allowed to dry before the next layer is applied.

G. All cracks and voids in this insulation shall be filled carefully with Manville's Cement No. 301 so that the resulting surface is smooth and continuous.

H. At all pipe flanges, the insulation shall be beveled in such a manner that access may be had to the bolt studs and nuts without injuring the insulation where removable covers have been specified.

I. A layer of 40 pound rosin-size paper or ¾ pound deadening felt shall be wrapped around the insulation before an 8 ounce canvas jacket is pasted in place. This canvas jacket shall be pasted onto the covered pipe valves and fittings (where insulated) in a neat and workmanlike fashion, using Arabol adhesive.

J. All flanges, valves, pressure regulating valves, strainers, and any other hot surfaces shall be covered with a built-up removable covering made of Thermo-12 or "Kaylo" Pipe Covering with a finishing coat of Ryder hydraulic setting cement. This removable covering shall be banded on the valve or joint in such a fashion that it can readily be removed and replaced; it shall be of the same thickness as the insulation on the adjoining pipe.

K. Piping insulated with calcium silicate pipe insulation and finished with canvas outer jacket shall be painted in accordance with campus paint scheme.

2.2 CHILLED and HOT WATER (200 deg and above) WATER PIPING - TUNNELS AND BUILDINGS

A. Chilled and Hot Water Piping - "FOAMGLAS" as manufactured by the Pittsburgh Corning Corporation or "KOOLPHEN K" as manufactured by Kooltherm Insulation and shall be installed on chilled water lines in tunnels and in buildings up to the building circulating pump. The "FOAMGLAS" "StrataFab System" may also be installed on larger pipe sizes as appropriate. Prior to application of any insulation, all metal surfaces shall be thoroughly cleaned. The metal shall then be primed with an asphaltic primer consisting of one (1) coat of Foster No. 60-26 Primer or Pittcote 300 Primer. Cleaning and priming specified in this paragraph is not included in requirements for "Cleaning and Painting" specified in other sections of the Specifications. Regular "FOAMGLAS" insulation shall be applied to the piping with butt joints staggered and all joints tightly butted and sealed with a ¼" bead of joint sealer ½" from outside edge. Hold in place with 14 gauge copper clad wire 9" o.c. After insulation has been wired in place, a 1/16" minimum thick, 3" wide band of asphaltic vapor seal mastic shall be brushed or troweled on the outside of the "FOAMGLAS" insulation at the approximate location of the aluminum bands. (Note that the asphaltic material specified in this paragraph is intended to be an exception to the flame spread and smoke generation limitations found elsewhere in this specification.) An aluminum jacketing 0.016" thickness equal to Premetco precast, pre rolled Z-lock Kraft paper lined pipe covering with zee type closure and ¾" wide snap straps with permanent sealant shall then be fitted to O.D. of insulation and applied over the insulated pipe with 3" end and side caps secured with aluminum bands on 12" centers. Longitudinal joint of aluminum jacketing shall be placed with overlap directed to bottom of pipe. Any voids in ""the completed installation of the insulation shall not be filled with vapor seal coating but shall be eliminated by refitting or replacing insulation.

B. "FOAMGLAS" or "KOOLPHEN K" insulation on flanges, valves and other fitting shall consist of prefabricated fitting covers of the same thickness as specified for adjoining pipe insulation.

C. Fitting covers shall be applied in same manner as pipe application except that 16 gauge aluminum wire may be used to secure screwed fitting covers. Protruding metal parts (such as valve stems) shall be completely sealed off. Fitting cover jacketing shall be equal to Gasco, Papco or RPR Metals prefabricated fitting covers of 0.016" paper coated aluminum, secured as recommended by the manufacturer.

D. The insulation thickness shall be as scheduled.

E. "FOAMGLAS" or "KOOLPHEN K" installed inside the building downstream of the blending station shall be insulation with factory applied Class I, Fire Rated, Kraft-Aluminum, vapor barrier jacketing as manufactured by Pittsburgh Corning. It shall be applied in strict accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations after the pipe has been primed with one (1) coat of Foster No. 60-26 Primer or Pittcoat 300 Primer. (Note that the asphaltic material specified in this paragraph is intended to be an exception to the flame spread and smoke generation limitations found elsewhere in this specification.) It will be necessary to include expansion joints at regular intervals on dual temperature service. Thickness shall be as scheduled.

F. Fitting covers shall be built up of shaped segments of "FOAMGLAS" or "KOOLPHEN K". These fitting covers shall be adhered in place using "Foster No. 30-35 80" water based vapor seals, then smoothly covered by a one-quarter inch (1/4") thick application of one coat white insulating cement. All this piping and fittings shall be finished with an eight ounce canvas jacket neatly applied using Arabol adhesive.

G. Valves, fittings, etc., in congested areas around coil and heat exchanger equipment, etc., shall be insulated by building up fitting segments and pre-molded sections, plus white vapor seal mastic, plus Manville No. 301 finishing cement to smooth surfaces, plus canvas applied and sized for painting with fire resistant adhesive. In addition, all manufactured vapor barrier jacketing in mechanical rooms and finished spaces shall be finished with canvas applied and sized for painting with fire resistant adhesive.

H. No chilled water pipe supporting structures shall pierce the insulation except as anchor points as shown on the Drawings. At these points, the anchor member shall occur on the bottom of the piping to allow condensation to drain.

I. The application of the protective shields at rack and guide points in tunnels and in central chilling stations shall be as detailed on the accompanying Drawings.

J. All insulation joints (longitudinal and butt) shall be buttered with vapor sealant mastic then pressed firmly together.

2.4 CONDENSATE DRAIN AND WATER RECOVERY (Fin Water) PIPING

A. Condensate drain piping from fan and coil units, coil banks, drinking fountain refrigeration units, and other items of piping or equipment subject to condensation forming on the surface shall be insulated with a "25-50" rated, closed cell elastomeric thermal insulation. Elastomeric products shall be supplied in a pre-slit tubular form with a pressure sensitive adhesive system for closure and vapor sealing of the longitudinal joint. All elastomeric insulating products shall be guaranteed not to react with copper piping.

B. Drain piping from mechanical rooms, and other areas potentially receiving chilled water or condensate from air handlers, shall be similarly insulated for a minimum of 15 feet from the floor drains receiving the cold fluid.

2.5 PROTECTIVE JACKETING

A. Jacketing and fitting covers shall be .016 aluminum smooth as manufactured by Premetco or Childers for all piping located in the tunnel and trench systems. The jacket shall be pre-cut, pre-rolled, and lapped a minimum of two inches (2") In all directions to shed water. The metal shall be secured at each joint with a minimum of one each (1 ea.) ¾" wide .020 aluminum or stainless steel band and seal. The metal jacketing and fitting covers shall be fabricated of 0.016" aluminum or stainless steel with a smooth finish.

2.6 EXPANSION JOINTS

A. Where expansion bends occur in the lines, a two foot (2') double layer contraction joint shall be provided in the main line starting two feet from the end of the main line ells on both sides of the expansion loop. Contraction joints shall consist of two 1-1/2" thick x 24" long pipe covering cuts into 17-1/4" and 6" lengths to provide a ¾" space by 10-1/4". A slip joint mastic (Pittseal III) shall be placed between layers from the ¾" space provided on the inside layer to the ¾" space on the outside layer.

B. The ¾" space on inside layer shall be filled with mineral wool loose fill and the ¾" space on the outer layer shall also be filled with same loose fill and joint sealer pressed ½" deep into space for sealing (Pittseal III). Around the outside layer at the ¾" space, there shall be wrapped a 4" wide piece of glass fabric and sealed down with vapor seal mastic. On pipe sizes smaller than aforementioned, the same contraction joint shall be provided using one inch (1") thick "FOAMGLAS" or "KOOLPHEN K" pipe covering for the inner layer. On two inch (2") IPS, both inner and outer layer shall be 1" thick "FOAMGLAS" or "KOOLPHEN K".

C. The joint and vapor seal mastic shall be Pittsburgh Corning Corporation Pittcote 300. (Note that the asphaltic material specified in this paragraph is intended to be an exception to the flame spread and smoke generation limitations found elsewhere in this specification.

D. The slip joint sealer shall be Pittsburgh Corning Corporation's Pittseal III.

2.7 All paints, coatings, adhesives, sealants, stains, caulk, firestopping, etc. inside the weatherproofing system and applied on-site in this specification must comply with the VOC limits in Section 018113. In the product submittal, include product data sheet or MSDS clearly showing VOC content of product in grams/Liter.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Verify that piping has been tested before applying insulation materials.

B. Verify that surfaces are clean, foreign material removed, and dry.

3.2 INSTALLATION

A. Install materials in accordance with manufacturer's instructions in the absence of specific instruction herein.

B. On exposed piping, locate insulation and cover seams in least visible locations, but not higher than at the side of the pipe at the "90°" position, with the seam lapped such that the lap is directed down.

C. Insulated dual temperature pipes or cold pipes conveying fluids below ambient temperature: Vapor barriers are required. The vapor barrier shall be on the outside. Extreme care shall be taken that the vapor barrier is unbroken. Joints, etc., shall be sealed. Where insulation with a vapor barrier terminates, it shall be sealed off with the vapor barrier being continuous to the surface being insulated. Ends shall not be left raw.

1. Provide vapor barrier jackets, factory applied or field applied.
2. Insulate fittings, joints, and valves with molded insulation of like material and thickness as adjacent pipe.
3. Finish with glass cloth and vapor barrier adhesive.

D. Continue insulation through walls, sleeves, pipe hangers, and other pipe penetrations.

E. For insulated pipes conveying fluids above ambient temperature:

1. Provide standard jackets, with or without vapor barrier, factory applied or field applied.
2. Insulate fittings, joints, and valves with insulation of like material and thickness as adjoining pipe.

F. If PVC fitting covers are used they shall have 25/50 rating.

G. For hot piping conveying fluids 140°F or less, do not insulate flanges and unions at equipment, but bevel and seal ends of insulation.

H. For hot piping conveying fluids over 140°F, insulate flanges and unions, including those at equipment, but label the insulation to indicate a concealed flange or union. See 2.04K.

3.3 INSERTS, SUPPORTS and SHIELDS

A. Application: All piping systems except direct buried.

B. Shields: Install between pipe hangers or pipe hanger rolls and inserts. Hangers shall be on the outside of the insulation and shall not be in contact with the pipe. Curved metal shields shall be used between the hangers or support points and the bottom of the insulated pipe for Insulated pipes 2” and larger. Curved metal shields shall be designed to limit the bearing stress on the insulation to 35 psi and shall be curved to fit up to mid-perimeter of the insulated pipe. Shields shall be made of galvanized iron, or black iron painted on both sides with two coats of aluminum paint. Required metal shield sizes are as follows:

Nominal IPS	Metal Thickness	Lengths of Shield
up thru 2”	14 gauge	12”
thru 6”	12 gauge	16”
and above	10 gauge	20”

C. Shield Location: Provide insulation protection shields fabricated from galvanized steel at all pipe hangers in accordance with MSS SP-69.

D. Insert Location: Between support shield and piping and under the finish jacket.

E. Insert Configuration: Minimum 2” inches longer than length of shield, of same thickness and contour as adjoining insulation; may be factory fabricated.

F. Insert Material: Heavy density insulating material suitable for the planned temperature range, and the weight of the pipe.

G. The shields at support points shall be secured with ½" x 0.016" stainless steel bands and seals.

H. Finish insulation at supports, protrusions, and interruptions.

I. The application of the protective shields at rack and guide points in tunnels and in central chilling stations shall be as detailed on the accompanying Drawings.

J. In lieu of the above the following system of support may be used:

1. At the pipe support positions, the insulation and vapor barrier shall be continuous and shall not be punctured by the support. The insulation at the support shall be the full circumference of 5lbs/ft^3 Koolphen K Foam material to withstand the bearing loads transmitted from the pipe to the support, it shall extend for at least 1" on either side of the support to allow sealing of the joints with the pipe insulation jacket.
2. The load bearing insulation at the support shall be capable of withstanding the maximum static compressive loads generated by pipe supported at the centers shown in Table 1.

   Variations: Pipe loads greater than those generated at the support centers shown in Table 1 shall be referred to the manufacturer to establish the length and density of the insulated support block. The support centers are based on the weight of Sch 80 pipe filled with water and covered with 1" thickness of 2.2 lbs/ft^3 standard insulation including FSK/ASJ vapor barrier.

Table 1 K Block Support Centers

Nominal Pipe Size	3/4	1	1 1/4	2	2 1/2	3	4	6	8	10	12	14	16	18	20	24
Max support centers (feet) Sch 80 pipe filled with water covered with 1" of Standard Insulation	6.5	6.5	6.5	10	10	10	10	10	14	14	14	20	20	20	20	20
Metal Saddle Gauge (Galvanized Steel)	22	22	22	20	20	20	16	14	14	14	14	14	114	14	14	14
Length of K Block (inches)	6	6	6	6	6	6	6	9	9	9	9	9	9	12	12	12

1. The Insulation at supports shall be a Kooltherm K Block. K Blocks shall be faced with factory applied FSK/ASJ vapor barrier and fitted with a galvanized steel 180^0 saddle bonded to the bottom section of the K Block, for all pipe sizes 1 1/2" and larger.
2. The vapor barrier shall be completed by the use of a FSK/ASJ overlap and factory applied self-seal lap tape and sealed with vapor barrier adhesive.

3. At all support positions, other than those where the insulated pipe support block is surrounded by a clip or saddle in direct contact with the block, a block designed to accept the loads generated by the pipe shall be presented to the engineer for approval. e.g. Of the type Kooltherm Insulation products K Block. Ref:- Kooltherm sketch 106/2c for use with Roller or flat beam support.
4. In all cases where roller supports are used the length of the insulation and the wearing plate where fitted shall extend beyond the limits of the pipe movement.

C. Where canvas finish is specified, use Arabol lagging adhesive to prevent mildew in securing canvas. Do not use wheat paste. In addition, cover all canvas insulation with a fire retardant coating.

D. For purpose of definition in this Specification: "concealed" areas are those areas which cannot be seen by the building occupants, and "exposed" areas are all areas which are exposed to view by the building occupants, including under counter and inside cabinet areas, plus all mechanical rooms.

E. Self Sealing Lap and butt joints will not be acceptable as the only seal on piping insulation joints. Self Sealing Lap and butt joints may be utilized only if the joints are additionally secured with field applied vapor barrier adhesive (on piping Systems requiring vapor barriers) or staples and field applied adhesive (on piping system which do not require a vapor barrier jacket). Mechanical fasteners shall be used whenever possible to assure permanent installation.

F. Insulation minimum thickness shall be as scheduled; however, additional thickness shall be provided to prevent condensation on the cold surfaces and to provide a maximum exterior insulation surface of 140°F on the hot surfaces.

G. Special Protection: All insulated piping in the mechanical rooms within 8'-0" of the floor shall be encased in a protective jacket, and where applicable, finish at top with nickel-plated brass flange plate with set screws or end joint sealing butt strips.

H. All exposed outdoor piping and piping in the tunnel and trench systems shall have metal jacket.

I. Fitting insulation shall be applied in same manner as pipe application. Protruding metal parts (such as valve stems) shall be completely sealed off. Fitting cover jacketing shall be equal to Gasco, Pabco or RPR Metals prefabricated fitting covers of 0.016" paper coated aluminum, secured as recommended by the manufacturer.

J. Valves, fittings, etc., in congested areas around coil and heat exchanger equipment, etc., shall be insulated by building up fitting segments and pre-molded sections as necessary.

K. <u>No pipe supporting device (other than guides or anchors attached directly to the pipe) shall penetrate the insulation.</u>

3.4 PAINTING

A. All exposed insulation shall be prepared to receive painting specified under Section 09 91 00.

B. The pipe primer shall be Pittsburgh Corning Corporation Pittcote 300.

3.5 PIPE INSULATION TABLE

Insulation 'R' Value Schedule (R = thickness / k)

Service	Oper Temp °F	'k' @ Mean Temp °F	Min. R value for each Pipe Size 1" & less	1-1/4" to 2"	2-1/2" to 4"	5" & 6"	8" & over
Hot (1)	350+	.33 @ 250	7.5	7.5	10.0	12.0	13.0
Hot (2)	251-350	.30 @ 200	6.5	8.5	8.5	11.5	12.5
Hot (3)	201-250	.29 @ 150	5.2	5.2	6.9	6.9	12.1
Hot (4)	141-200	.27 @ 125	5.6	5.6	5.6	5.6	5.6
Hot (5)	105-140	.26 @ 100	3.8	3.8	5.8	5.8	5.8
Cold (6)	40-55	.25 @ 75	2.0	3.0	4.0	4.0	4.0
Cold (7)	below 40	.25 @ 75	4.0	6.0	6.0	6.0	6.0

(1) HTHW; Steam @ over 120#
(2) HTHW; Steam @ 16# to120#; med & hp condensate; water and fire line freeze protection
(3) HTHW; Steam @ 0# to 15#; LP Condensate
(4) HW
(5) HW
(6) Ch. Wtr; Dom. cold wtr; Storm; Cold condensate
(7) Ch. Wtr; Brine; Refrig lines

Minimum 'R' does not consider water vapor transmission and condensation. Additional insulation and/or vapor retarders may be required to limit water vapor transmission and condensation under extreme conditions.

A minus 15 percent tolerance, on the insulation performance listed shall be permitted for manufacturers' standard insulation systems.

In non-conditioned mechanical rooms and all crawl spaces, insulation shall prevent formation of surface condensation under conditions of 95°F, 95%RH, and zero wind speed. Provide manufacturer's certification of this performance on submittal data.

END OF SECTION 23 07 19

ROCIP Project: Withhold insurance cost. Please refer to sections 00425 & 00810 for information.

SECTION 23 31 00.01 – DUCTWORK

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.0 The following sections are to be included as if written herein:

A. Section 23 00 00 – Basic Mechanical Requirements

B. Section 23 05 29 – Sleeves, Flashings, Supports and Anchors

C. Section 23 05 53 – Mechanical Identification

1.1 WORK INCLUDED

A. Low Pressure Ducts

B. Medium and High Pressure Ductwork

C. Casings

D. Duct Cleaning

1.2 RELATED SECTIONS

A. Section 09 91 00 - Painting: Weld Priming, Weather Resistant Paint or Coating

B. Section 23 05 48 - Vibration Isolation

C. Section 23 07 13 - Duct Insulation

D. Section 23 33 00 - Ductwork Accessories

E. Section 23 36 00 - Air Terminal Units

F. Section 23 37 00 - Air Inlets and Outlets

G. Section 23 05 93.A - Testing, Adjusting and Balancing

H. Division 1 Section 018113 “Sustainable Construction” for LEED requirements

1.3 REFERENCES

A. ASHRAE - Handbook of Fundamentals; Duct Design

B. ASHRAE - Handbook of Equipment; Duct Construction

C. ASTM A 90 - Weight of Coating on Zinc-Coated (Galvanized) Iron or Steel Articles

D. ASTM A 167 - Stainless and Heat-Resisting Chromium-Nickel Steel Plate, Sheet, and Strip

E. ASTM A 525 - General Requirements for Steel Sheet, Zinc-Coated (Galvanized) by the Hot-Dip Process

F. ASTM A 527 - Steel Sheet, Zinc-Coated (Galvanized) by Hot-Dip Process, Lock Forming Quality

G. ASTM B209 - Aluminum and Aluminum Alloy Sheet and Plate

H. NFPA 90A - Installation of Air Conditioning and Ventilating Systems

I. NFPA 90B - Installation of Warm Air Heating and Air Conditioning Systems

J. SMACNA - Low Pressure Duct Construction Standards

K. UL 181 - Factory-Made Air Ducts and Connectors

1.4 REFERENCES

A. Fundamentals Handbook, American Society of Heating, Refrigerating, and Air Conditioning Engineers (ASHRAE).

B. Equipment Handbook, ASHRAE.

C. HVAC Duct Construction Standards, Sheet Metal and Air Conditioning Contractors National Association (SMACNA).

D. HVAC Duct System Design, SMACNA.

E. Round Industrial Duct Construction Standards, SMACNA.

F. Engineering Design Manual for Air Handling Systems, United McGill Corporation (UMC).

G. Assembly and Installation of Spiral Duct and Fittings, UMC.

H. Engineering Report No. 132 (Spacing of Duct Hangers), UMC.

ROCIP Project: Withhold insurance cost. Please refer to sections 00425 & 00810 for information.

1.5 DEFINITIONS

A. Duct Sizes: Inside clear dimensions. For lined ducts, maintain sizes inside lining.

B. Low Pressure: 2 inch WG positive or negative static pressure and velocities less than 1,500 fpm.

C. Medium Pressure: 6 inch WG positive static pressure and velocities greater than 1,500 fpm.

1.6 REGULATORY REQUIREMENTS

A. Construct ductwork to NFPA 90A, NFPA 90B and NFPA 96 standards.

1.7 SUBMITTALS

A. Shop Drawings shall be submitted on all items of sheet metal work specified herein. Shop Drawings of ductwork at air units shall be submitted at a minimum scale of 3/8" equal to one foot.

B. Shop Drawings shall be submitted on all other ductwork per Section 23 00 00. Shop Drawings shall indicate location of all supply, return, exhaust and light fixtures from the approved reflected ceiling plans.

C. Submit shop drawings and product data under provisions of Section 23 00 00.

D. Submit samples under provisions of Section 23 00 00.

E. Documentation for Credit EQ 4.1 and 4.2: Paints, coatings, adhesives, sealants, stains, caulk, firestopping, etc. inside the weatherproofing systems and applied on site only in this specification must comply with the VOC limits in Section 01352. Include product data sheet or MSDS clearly showing VOC content of product in grams/Liter.

1.8 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Deliver products to site under provisions of Section 23 00 00.

B. Store and protect products under provisions of Section 23 00 00.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 DUCTWORK GENERAL

A. All ductwork indicated on the Drawings, specified or required for the air conditioning and ventilating systems shall be of materials as hereinafter specified unless indicated otherwise. All air distribution ductwork shall be fabricated, erected, supported, etc., in accordance with all applicable standards of SMACNA Duct Manuals where such standards do not conflict with NFPA 90A and where class of construction equals or exceeds that noted herein. All exhaust ductwork including toilet room exhausts shall be constructed and leak tested as specified for medium pressure supply ducts at negative pressure.

B. All ductwork shown on the Drawings, specified or required for the heating, ventilating and air conditioning systems shall be constructed and erected in a first class workmanlike manner. The work shall be guaranteed for a period of one (1) year from and after the date of acceptance of the job against noise, chatter, whistling, vibration, and free from pulsation under all conditions of operation. After the system is in operation, should these defects occur, they shall be corrected as directed by the Architect.

C. All duct sizes shown on the Drawings are air stream sizes. Allowance shall be made for internal lining where required, to provide the required cross sectional area.

D. All holes in ducts for damper rods and other necessary devices shall be either drilled or machine punched (not pin punched), and shall not be any larger than necessary. All duct openings shall be provided with sheet metal caps if the openings are to be left unconnected for any length of time.

E. Except for special ducts specified elsewhere herein, all sheet metal used on the project shall be constructed from prime galvanized steel sheets and/or coils up to 60" in width. Each sheet shall be stenciled with manufacturer's name and gauge. Coils of sheet steel shall be stenciled throughout on ten foot (10') centers with manufacturer's name and must be visible after duct is installed. Sheet metal must conform to SMACNA sheet metal tolerances as outlined in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards."

F. Where ducts, exposed to view (including equipment rooms), pass through walls, floors or ceilings, furnish and install sheet metal collars around the duct.

2.2 DUCTWORK LOW PRESSURE: (Includes all exhaust ductwork downstream of fans.)

A. The scope of low pressure ductwork is defined as all ductwork downstream of terminal units, and all exhaust ductwork downstream of fans. Construction of all low pressure duct shall be in accordance with Low Velocity Duct Construction Standards as published by Sheet Metal and Air Conditioning Contractors National Association (SMACNA) and shall be sealed and tested at 3" static with the same test procedures as medium pressure ductwork.

B. Spiral wound round duct shall be as manufactured by United McGill Sheet Metal Company or approved equal.

C. The metal gauges listed in the 1985 SMACNA HVAC Duct Construction Standards for Metal and Flexible Duct are the minimum which shall be used for this project. It shall be noted that the Contractor is responsible that the metal gauge selected is heavy enough to withstand the physical abuse of the installation.

D. Elbows shall be radius type and have a centerline radius of 1-1/2 times the duct diameter or width. Elbows in round ducts may be smooth radius as described above or 5-piece 90 degree elbows and 3-piece 45 degree elbows. Joints in round ducts shall be slip type with a minimum of three sheet metal screws. Joints in sectional elbows shall be sealed as specified for duct sealing.

E. SEALANT: All ductwork (except welded exhaust duct) shall be sealed with either "MP" (Multi-Purpose), Hardcast "Iron-grip 601", Polymer Adhesive "Airseal #11", or "United Duct Seal" (United McGill Corp.) water base, latex or acrylic type sealant. Note that, except as noted, oil or solvent based sealants are specifically prohibited for use on this project. <u>For exterior applications, "Uni-Weather" (United McGill Corp.) neoprene based sealant shall be used. No other sealants may be used.</u> All seams and joints in shop and field fabricated ductwork shall be sealed by applying one layer of sealant, then immediately spanning the joint with a single layer of 3" wide open weave fiberglass tape. Sufficient additional sealant shall then be applied to completely imbed the cloth. All sealants shall be UL rated at no more than flame spread of 5 and smoke developed of 0. At contractor’s option Hardcast 1602 sealant tape may be used in lap joints and flat seams.

F. FACTORY LINED ACOUSTICAL DUCTS: (NOTE: Must appear on the Drawings.)

1. Where indicated on the Drawings, furnish and install double wall internally insulated duct and fittings.
2. Duct shall consist of outer metal pressure shell, 1" thick glass fiber insulation and internal perforated metal liner.
3. Duct and fittings shall be equal to Acousti-K 27 as manufactured by United McGill Sheet Metal Company.

2.3 DUCTWORK MEDIUM PRESSURE: (Includes all exhaust ductwork upstream of fans)

A. The scope of medium pressure ductwork is defined as all ductwork downstream of all air handlers, up to and including terminal units, plus all return air ductwork. Construction of all ducts shall be in accordance with High Velocity Construction Standards as published by SMACNA. All round and rectangular duct construction, duct fittings, dampers, etc., are covered in this manual and it is to be adhered to.

1. Spiral wound round duct shall be as manufactured by United McGill Sheet Metal Company or approved equal.
2. The metal gauges are listed herein for round duct and for rectangular duct.

B. All ductwork (except welded exhaust duct) shall be sealed with either "MP" (Multi-Purpose), Hardcast "Iron-grip 601", or "United Duct Seal" (United McGill Corp.) water base, latex or acrylic type sealant. Note that, except as noted, oil or solvent based sealants are specifically prohibited for use on this project. For exterior applications, "Uni-Weather" (United McGill Corp.) solvent based sealant shall be used. No other sealants may be used. All seams and joints in shop and field fabricated ductwork shall be sealed by applying one layer of sealant, then immediately spanning the joint with a single layer of 3" wide open weave fiberglass tape. Sufficient additional sealant shall then be applied to completely imbed the cloth. At contractor's option Hardcast 1602 sealant tape may be used in lap joints and flat seams.

C. Oval ducts shall be spiral flat oval or welded flat oval equal to those of United McGill Sheet Metal Company with gauges and reinforcing as recommended by the manufacturer for medium pressure or the ducts may be Shop fabricated of completely welded construction of the following gauge:

Major Axis 12 to 20	No. 24 gauge
Major Axis 20 to 30	No. 22 gauge
Major Axis 30 to 46	No. 20 gauge
Major Axis 46 to 50	No. 18 gauge
Major Axis 50 and Up	No. 16 gauge

D. Oval fittings shall be equal to those of United McGill Sheet Metal Company with requirements, sealing, etc., similar to that specified for round medium pressure work.

E. Oval duct reinforcing methods shall be submitted as Shop Drawings for approval. Reinforcing galvanized angles shall be of sizes specified for same size rectangular ducts. Galvanized angles shall be used where standing seams are specified for rectangular ducts. Attaching methods shall be shown on Shop Drawings and submitted for approval.

F. Testing of Medium Pressure Ductwork: (Includes from fan discharge through to the discharge of terminal units.)

1. All medium pressure ducts shall be pressure tested according to SMACNA Chapter 10 test procedures. Design pressure for testing ductwork shall be six inches (6") of water. Total allowable leakage shall not exceed 1% of the total system design air flow rate. When partial sections of the duct system are tested, the summation of the leakage for all Sections shall not exceed the total allowable leakage.
2. The entire system of medium pressure ductwork shall be tested, including the VAV/Constant Volume Terminal Units (i.e. The ductwork shall be capped immediately prior to the Terminal Units, and tested as described above). After testing has proven that the ductwork is installed and performs as specified, the terminal units shall be connected to the ductwork and the connections sealed with extra care. The contractor shall inform the project inspector when the joints may be visually inspected for voids, splits, or improper sealing of the joints. If any leakage in the terminal unit connections/joints after the systems have been put into service, the leaks shall be repaired by: 1) complete removal of the sealing materials, 2) thorough cleaning of the joint surfaces, and 3) installation of multiple layers of sealing materials.
3. At the option of the Owner, the Contractor may be allowed to eliminate the terminal units from testing by capping the supply ductwork prior to the terminal units, then inspecting the connection to the terminal units when complete. <u>This option may only be exercised by the Resident Construction Manager, and then only if documented in writing prior to testing</u>.

G. All exhaust ductwork, including toilet room exhausts, shall be constructed as for medium pressure ducts and shall be tested for leaks in the same manner as for medium pressure supply ducts.

H. Contractor may at his option use DUCTMATE or Ward coupling system on rectangular ductwork. Contractor may at his option (where space permits) use rectangular ductwork with DUCTMATE or Ward system in lieu of oval ductwork. <u>No other flange-type duct joining systems may be used without written approval from OFPC Engineering.</u>

I. Rectangular 90 degree elbows shall be constructed with single thickness turning vanes. Radius type rectangular elbows shall have a centerline radius of 1-1/2 times the duct diameter or width. Contractor shall have the option to substitute short radius vaned elbows, but shall request the substitution at the time of submittal of Shop Drawings, and shall request the substitution as required in Section 23 00 00. Elbows in round or oval ducts may be smooth long radius as described above or 5-piece 90 degree elbows and 3-piece 45 degree elbows. Joints in round ducts shall be slip type with a minimum of three sheet metal screws. Joints in sectional elbows shall be sealed as specified for duct sealing.

2.4 MIXED AND R. A. (LOW PRESSURE) CASING PLENUMS

A. All low pressure casings and plenums shall be following gauges and construction:

Casing Height	Galv.	Alum.	Angles	Standing Seams
Up to 4'	20 ga.	.051	1 x 1 x 1/8"	1"
4' to 6'	18 ga.	.051	1 x 1 x 1/8"	1"
6' to 8'	18 ga.	.064	1-1/2 x 1-1/2 x 3/16"	1-1/2"
8' to 10'	18 ga.	.064	1-1/2 x 1-1/2 x 3/16"	1-1/2"
Over 10'	16 ga.	.064	2 x 2 x 3/16"	1-1/2"

B. All low pressure casings shall be fabricated by the Mechanical Contractor enclosing the filter and automatic dampers as shown on the Drawings. The casing shall be fabricated of galvanized sheet metal erected with 3 foot center maximum standing seams reinforced with 1/4 inch bars. The casing shall be stiffened on three foot centers maximum with angle irons tack welded in place.

C. All openings to the casing shall be properly sealed to prevent any air leakage. Access doors shall be installed as shown and shall be air tight, double skin insulated construction with frames welded in place. Doors shall be rubber gasketed with #390 Ventlok gasketing and equipped with fasteners equal to Ventlok #310 latches and #370 hinges that can be operated from both the inside and the outside.

D. Casings shall be anchored by the use of angle irons sealed and bolted to the curb and floor of the apparatus casing. Submit Shop Drawings for approval. The casing shall be tested and provided tight at a pressure of three inches water column.

E. The casing shall have 1" thick duct liner applied as specified under paragraph "Duct Liner" in this section.

F. Casing shall have sufficient access openings to allow access for maintenance of all parts of the apparatus. Access door size shall be as large as feasible for the duty required.

2.5 ELBOWS

A. Where rectangular elbows are shown, or are required for good air flow, contractor shall provide and install turning vanes. Job fabricated turning vanes, if used, shall be fabricated of the same gauge and type of material as the duct in which they are installed. Vanes must be fabricated for same angle as duct offset. Radius elbows shall have a centerline radius of not less than one and one-half (1-1/2) times the duct width. Submit Shop Drawings on factory fabricated and job fabricated turning vanes. Provide turning vanes in all rectangular radius elbows and offsets.

B. All turning vanes shall be anchored to the cheeks of the elbow in such a way that the cheeks will not breathe at the surfaces where the vanes touch the cheeks. In most cases, this will necessitate the installation of an angle iron support on the outside of the cheek parallel to the line of the turning vanes.

C. Where turning vanes are to be provided and installed as required above, in ducts of over 12" thickness (vanes are over 12" long), contractor shall provide and install Tuttle and Bailey double thickness vanes or approved equal. The installation of the turning vanes shall be as described for single thickness vanes.

2.6 EMERGENCY GENERATOR EXHAUST SYSTEM

A. Selkirk Metalbestos (Model IPS-C2), Metal Fab. Minimum standard weight black steel pipe with calcium silicate insulation is acceptable in lieu of double wall system specified herein.

B. Factory-built modular exhaust system and published skin temperatures shall be laboratory tested and listed by Underwriters Laboratories, Inc., for use with building heating equipment and appliances with produce exhaust flue gases at temperature not exceeding 1400 degrees F under continuous operating conditions. This exhaust system shall be designed to compensate for all flue gas induced thermal expansions.

C. Exhaust system shall be double wall and have an outer jacket of Type 316 stainless steel, 0.025 inch thick in 6 inch through 24 inch diameter and 0.034 inch thick for larger diameter duct. The inner flue gas carrying conduit shall be Type 316 stainless steel. The inner liner shall be 0.035 inch nominal thickness for all duct diameters.

D. To control the venting pressure should a backfire occur, an explosion relief valve shall be incorporated in the exhaust system per NFPA 37.

E. Fiber insulated exhaust system shall have a fiber insulation between the walls of 2 inches thick. Asbestos materials may not be used.

F. Inner pipe joints shall be sealed by use of overlapping type V-band (P-OVB) with a premixed 200 degrees F sealant (P-200E). The outer channel bands shall be sealed with a 600 degrees F sealant (P-600) where exposed to weather.

G. When the engine exhaust system is installed according to the manufacturer's installation instructions and the limits of its listing, it shall comply with National Safety Standards and Building Codes.

H. Exhaust system shall terminate as shown on the Drawings and per NFPA 37 and NFPA 211 requirements.

I. All exhaust system parts exposed to the atmosphere shall be protected by a minimum of one base coat and one finished coat of paint, such as Series 4200 or 4300 heat resistance paint as manufactured by Rust-Oleum Corp.

J. The exhaust system shall be installed as designed by the manufacturer and in accordance with the terms of the manufacturer's 10-year warranty.

K. Furnish all parts required to completely install the exhaust system including all flashing, storm collar, miter cuts, supports, bracing, ventilated roof thimble, sealants, tensioner, wall guide, rings, tee cap, adapter, bellows, etc. Coordinate installation with roofing Contractor.

2.7 All paints, coatings, adhesives, sealants, stains, caulk, firestopping, etc. inside the weatherproofing system and applied on-site in this specification must comply with the VOC limits in Section 018113. In the product submittal, include product data sheet or MSDS clearly showing VOC content of product in grams/Liter.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

A. Refer also to requirements included in Part 2 of this specification.

B. Obtain manufacturer's inspection and acceptance of fabrication and installation of fiberglass ductwork prior to beginning of installation.

C. Provide openings in ductwork where required to accommodate thermometers and controllers. Provide pilot tube openings where required for testing of systems, complete with metal can with spring device or screw to ensure against air leakage. Where openings are provided in insulated ductwork, install insulation material inside a metal ring.

D. Locate ducts with sufficient space around equipment to allow normal operating and maintenance activities.

E. Slope underground ducts to plenums or low pump out points at 1:500. Provide access doors for inspection.

F. Coat buried, metal ductwork without factory jacket with one coat and seams and joints with additional coat of asphalt base protective coating.

G. Set plenum doors 6 to 12 inches above floor. Arrange door swings so that fan static pressure holds door in closed position.

H. Connect terminal units to medium or high pressure ducts directly or with two feet maximum length of flexible duct. Do not use flexible duct to change direction. Allow for a minimum of 4 diameters of straight duct to the entrance of all terminal units.

I. Connect diffusers or troffer boots to low pressure ducts with 2 feet maximum length of flexible duct. Hold in place with strap or clamp, and seal as specified.

J. Provide residue traps in kitchen hood exhaust ducts at base of vertical risers with provisions for cleanout. Use stainless steel for ductwork exposed to view and stainless steel or galvanized steel for ducts where concealed.

K. During construction provide temporary closures of metal or taped polyethylene on open ductwork to prevent construction dust from entering ductwork system.

3.2 LOW PRESSURE DUCT SUPPORTS

A. See Section 23 05 29.

3.3 MEDIUM PRESSURE DUCT SUPPORTS

A. See Section 23 05 29.

3.4 DUCTWORK APPLICATION SCHEDULE

AIR SYSTEM	MATERIAL
Low Pressure Supply (Heating Systems)	Steel, Aluminum
Low Pressure Supply (Systems with Cooling Coils)	Steel, Aluminum
Medium and High Pressure Supply	Steel
Return and Relief	Steel, Aluminum
General Exhaust	Steel, Aluminum
Outside Air Intake	Steel
Combustion Air	Steel
Evaporative Condenser	Steel Intake and Exhaust
Emergency Generation	Steel Ventilation

ROCIP Project: Withhold insurance cost. Please refer to sections 00425 & 00810 for information.

3.5 CLEANING OF SYSTEMS

A. Before turning the installation over to the Owner, all ducts should be cleaned and blown free of all dust and dirt that has collected in the ducts.

END OF SECTION 23 31 00.01

ROCIP Project: Withhold insurance cost. Please refer to sections 00425 & 00810 for information.

SECTION 23 33 00.01 DUCTWORK ACCESSORIES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.0 The following sections are to be included as if written herein:

A. Section 23 00 00 – Basic Mechanical Requirements

B. Section 23 05 29 – Sleeves, Flashings, Supports and Anchors

C. Section 23 05 53 – Mechanical Identification

1.1 WORK INCLUDED

A. Volume Control Dampers

B. Fire Dampers

C. Combination Fire and Smoke Dampers

D. Backdraft Dampers

E. Air Turning Devices

F. Flexible Duct Connections

G. Duct Access Doors

H. Duct Test Holes

I. Remote Damper Operators

1.2 RELATED SECTIONS

A. Section 23 05 48 - Vibration Isolation

B. Section 23 31 00 - Ductwork

C. Division 1 Section 018113 “Sustainable Construction” for LEED requirements

1.3 REFERENCES

A. NFPA 90A - Installation of Air Conditioning and Ventilating Systems

B. SMACNA - Low Pressure Duct Construction Standards

C. UL 33 - Heat Responsive Links for Fire-Protection Service

D. UL 555 - Fire Dampers and Ceiling Dampers

1.4 SUBMITTALS

A. Submit shop drawings and product data under provisions of Section 23 00 00.

B. Provide shop drawings for shop fabricated assemblies indicated, including volume control dampers duct access doors duct test holes. Provide product data for hardware used.

C. Submit manufacturer's installation instructions under provisions of Section 23 00 00 for fire dampers and combination fire and smoke dampers.

D. Documentation for Credit EQ 4.1 and 4.2: Paints, coatings, adhesives, sealants, stains, caulk, firestopping, etc. inside the weatherproofing systems and applied on site only in this specification must comply with the VOC limits in Section 01352. Include product data sheet or MSDS clearly showing VOC content of product in grams/Liter.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 DAMPERS

A. Furnish and install dampers where shown on the Drawings and wherever necessary for complete control of the air flow, including all supply, return and exhaust branches, "division" in main supply, return and exhaust ducts, each individual air supply outlet and fresh air ducts. Where access to dampers through a fixed suspended ceiling is necessary, the Contractor shall be responsible for the proper location of the access doors.

B. Splitter dampers shall be fabricated of steel not lighter than 16-gauge. The leading edge of the damper shall be hemmed. Each splitter shall be a minimum of 12" long or 1-1/2 times the width of the smaller of the two branches it controls, whichever is greater. Dampers shall be carefully fitted, and shall be controlled by locking quadrants equal to Ventlok No. 555 on exposed uninsulated ductwork, No. 644 on exposed externally insulated ductwork and No. 677 (2-5/8" diameter) chromium plated cover plate for concealed ductwork not above lay-in accessible ceilings. Furnish and install end bearings for the damper rods on the end opposite the quadrant when No. 555 or No. 644 regulators are used, and on both ends when No. 677 regulators are used.

C. On concealed ductwork above lay-in accessible ceilings use Ventlok No. 555 or No. 644 locking quadrant for splitter dampers.

D. Dampers larger than three (3) square feet in area shall be controlled by means of rods hinged near the leading edge of the damper with provisions for firmly anchoring the rod and with end bearings supporting the axle.

E. Volume dampers shall be equal to those of American Foundry. Blades shall not exceed 48 inches (48") in length or twelve inches (12") in width and shall be of the opposed interlocking type. The blades shall be of not less than No. 16-gauge galvanized steel supported on one-half inch (1/2") diameter rust-proofed axles. Axle bearings shall be the self-lubricating ferrule type.

F. Install all dampers furnished by the Temperature Control Manufacturer in strict accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations and requirements of these Specifications.

G. All adjustable dampers installed in externally insulated ductwork shall be installed with Ventlok No. 639, or equal, elevated dial operators. Insulation shall extend under the elevated dial. All adjustable dampers installed in internally insulated ductwork shall be installed with Ventlok No. 635, or equal, dial operators. All damper shaft penetrations in the ductwork shall be installed with Ventlok #609 end bearings.

H. All manual volume dampers in medium pressure ductwork or upstream of terminal units shall be rectangular, opposed blade type. Provide transitions as required where installed in round ducts.

I. All damper shafts to extend a minimum of 4 inches past the outside of the duct insulation.

J. All damper linkages shall be concealed within the hat channel frame.

K. Ends of all damper shafts shall be scored parallel to the damper blades so the actual damper position can be visually observed.

2.2 FIRE AND FIRE/SMOKE DAMPERS

A. Fire Dampers

1. Furnish and install where shown on the drawings or required by the Specifications, fire dampers meeting the following requirements.
2. Each fire damper shall be constructed and tested in accordance with Underwriters Laboratories Safety Standard 555. All dampers shall possess a 1-1/2 hour or 3 hour (as appropriate for the construction shown in the architectural drawings) protection rating, 165 or 212 degree F fusible link, and shall bear a U.L. label in accordance with Underwriters Laboratories labeling procedures. Fire dampers shall be constructed such that the damper frame material and the curtain material shall be galvanized.

3. Fire dampers shall be curtain blade or multi-blade type and the damper shall be so constructed that the blades are either out of the air stream or installed in an oversized sleeve to provide a 100 percent free area of the duct in which the damper is housed.
4. The damper manufacturer's literature submitted for approval prior to the installation shall include performance data developed from testing in accordance with AMCA 500 Standards and shall show the pressure drops for all sizes of dampers required at anticipated air flow rates. Maximum pressure drop through fire damper shall not exceed 0.05 inch water gauge.
5. Fire dampers shall be equipped for vertical or horizontal installation as required by the locations shown in the drawings. Fire dampers shall be installed in wall and floor openings utilizing steel sleeves, angles and other material and practices required to provide an installation equivalent to that utilized by the manufacturer when the respective dampers were tested by Underwriters Laboratories. Mounting angles shall be a minimum of 1 1/2 inch by 1 1/2 inch by 14-gauge and bolted, tack welded or screwed to the sleeve at maximum spacings of 12 inches and with a minimum of two connections at all sides. Mounting angles shall overlap at least equal to the gauge of the duct defined by the appropriate SMACNA Duct Construction Standard, latest edition, and as described in NFPA 90A. The entire assembly, following installation, shall be capable of withstanding 6" water gauge static pressure.
6. The damper installation shall be in accordance with the damper manufacturer's instructions.
7. All fire dampers shall comply with the specification as written above and shall be Ruskin Model IBD2 (Style C, CR or CO), Greenheck Model FD-150 (Type C, CR or CO), or Pottorff.
8. The contractor shall completely seal the assembly to the building components using Hardcast 1602 sealant tape to allow for expansion and contraction of the sleeve and damper assembly.
9. Dampers shall be UL labeled for use in dynamic systems. Closure reading shall be 110% of the maximum design airflow at the point of installation. The minimum closure pressure rating shall be 8” wg for airflow in either direction.

B. Combination Fire/Smoke Dampers

1. Furnish and install where shown on the Drawings, or as required by the Specifications, combination fire/smoke dampers meeting the following requirements.

2. Each combination fire/smoke damper shall be 1 1/2 hour fire rated under UL Standard 555, 4th Edition, and shall be further classified by Underwriters Laboratories as a Leakage Rated Damper for use in smoke control systems under the latest version of UL555S, and bear a UL label attesting to same. The damper manufacturer shall have tested, and qualified with UL, a complete range of damper sizes covering all dampers required by this Specification. Testing and UL qualifying a single damper size is not acceptable. The leakage rating under UL555S shall be no higher than Leakage Class I (4 cfm per square foot at one inch water gauge pressure and 8 cfm per square foot at 4 inches water gauge pressure). The maximum air pressure drop through each combination fire/smoke damper shall not exceed 0.10 inch water gauge at the design air quantity. (Note that this may require a larger damper than the connected duct size.)
3. The damper frame shall be a minimum of 20-gauge galvanized steel formed into a structural hat channel shape with tabbed corners for reinforcement, as approved in testing by Underwriters Laboratories. Bearings shall be integral high surface area non electrolytic materials construction to incorporate a friction free frame blade lap seal, or molybdenum disulfide impregnated stainless steel or bronze oilite sleeve type turning in an extruded hole in the frame or an extruded frame raceway. The dampers may be either parallel or opposed blade type. The blades shall be constructed with a minimum of 14-gauge equivalent thickness. The blade edge seal material shall be able to withstand 450 degrees F. The jamb seals shall be flexible stainless steel compression type or lap seal type.
4. In addition to the leakage ratings specified herein, the combination fire/smoke dampers and their operators shall be qualified under UL555S to an elevated temperature of 250 degrees F. Electric operators shall be installed by the damper manufacturer at the time of damper fabrication. The damper and operator shall be supplied as a single entity which meets all applicable UL555 and UL555S qualifications for both dampers and operators. The manufacturer shall provide a factory assembled sleeve. The sleeve shall be a minimum of either 20-gauge for dampers where neither width nor height exceeds 48 inches or 16-gauge where either dimension equals or exceeds 48 inches.
5. As part of the UL qualification, dampers shall have demonstrated a capacity to operate (open and close) under HVAC system operation conditions, with pressures of at least 4 inches water gauge in the closed position, and 2500 fpm air velocity in the open position.

6. Each combination fire/smoke damper shall be equipped with a UL Classified Firestat/releasing device. The firestat/releasing device shall electrically and mechanically lock the damper in a closed position when the duct temperatures exceed 165 degrees F and still allow the appropriate authority to operate the damper as may be required for smoke control functions. The damper must be operable while the temperature is above 250 degrees F. The actuator/operator package shall include two damper position indicator switches linked directly to damper blade to provide capability of remotely indicating damper position. One switch shall close when the damper is fully open, and the other switch shall close when the damper is fully closed. The Firestat/releasing device and position indicator switches shall be capable of interfacing electrically with the smoke detectors, building fire alarm systems, and remote indicating/control stations.
7. The damper releasing device shall be mounted within the airstream. The device shall be activated and the damper shall close and lock when subjected to duct temperatures in excess of approximately 285 degrees F.
8. Motors for operation of smoke dampers shall be smoke system fail safe, spring return normally open supplies and normally closed returns, or as indicated in the plans, and shall be furnished and installed by the damper manufacturer as required by the U.L. rating mentioned above. Motors shall be electric or pneumatic to match the type of temperature control system specified elsewhere in this specification. All required relays, EP switches, wiring piping and other labor and material necessary to completely interconnect the smoke detector system shall be furnished by the Contractor.
9. Each damper shall be furnished in a square or rectangular configuration. The Contractor shall furnish and install sleeves manufactured by the approved damper manufacturer for each damper. The sleeves shall be constructed with square or rectangular to square, rectangular, round, or oval adapters as required. Dampers shall be installed in the sleeves in accordance with manufacturers U.L. installation instructions. The entire assembly, following installation, shall be capable of withstanding 6" W.G. static pressure.
10. All combination fire/smoke dampers shall comply with the specification as written above and shall be Ruskin Model FSD-60, Greenheck Model FSD-33, or Pottorff.
11. The contractor shall completely seal the assembly to the building components using Hardcast 1602 sealant tape to allow for expansion and contraction of the sleeve and damper assembly.
12. Dampers shall be UL labeled for use in dynamic systems. Closure reading shall be 110% of the maximum design air flow at the point of installation. The minimum closure pressure rating shall be 8” wg for air flow in either direction.
13. All fire/smoke dampers shall be installed to permit removal of the actuator from the shaft.
14. All fire/smoke damper shafts shall extend a minimum of 4 inches past the outside of the duct insulation.

C. Submittal and Installation

1. The air quantity and free area through each fire and combination fire and smoke damper has been noted on the drawing adjacent to the duct size or wall opening size where such damper is required.
2. Submittal(s) for fire and combination fire/smoke dampers shall include the following:

    a. Assign identification numbers for each damper with corresponding number noted on the drawings.
    b. Provide air quantity, size, free area of damper, pressure drop and proposed velocity through each damper.
    c. Provide manufacturer's data of damper and its accessories or options.

3. One sample 18" x 12" damper shall be furnished for the purpose of illustrating damper operation to the Owner's operating and maintenance personnel.
4. Access doors as specified elsewhere shall be provided to make all parts of the damper accessible. Doors shall open not less than 90 degrees following installation and shall be insulated type where installed in insulated ducts.
5. Contractor shall install each damper square and true to the building. The installation shall not place pressure on the damper frame, but shall enclose the damper as required by UL555.
6. After each fire damper and combination fire and smoke damper has been installed and sealed in their prescribed openings and prior to the installation of the ceilings, the Contractor shall, as directed by the Construction Inspector, activate part or all the dampers as required to verify "first-time" closure. Activation of the damper shall be accomplished by manually operating the resettable link, disconnecting the linkage at the fusible link of the fire damper, and manually operating the fire/smoke damper through the pneumatic or electronic controls as appropriate. <u>Failure of the damper to close properly and smoothly on the first attempt will be cause to replace the entire damper assembly</u>.

2.3 FLEXIBLE CONNECTIONS

A. Where ducts connect to fans, including roof exhausters, flexible connections shall be made using "Ventglas" fabric that is fire-resistant, waterproof, mildew resistant and practically air tight, and shall weigh approximately thirty ounces (30 oz.) per square yard. There shall be a minimum of one-half inch (1/2") slack in the connections, and a minimum of two and one-half inches (2-1/2") distance between the edges of the ducts except that there shall also be a minimum of one inch (1") of slack for each inch of static pressure on the fan system. This does not apply to Air Handling Units with internal isolation.

2.4 ACCESS DOORS

A. Furnish and install in the ductwork, hinged rectangular or round "spin-in" access doors to provide access to all fire dampers mixed air plenums, upstream of steam reheat coils, automatic dampers, etc. Where the ducts are insulated, the access doors shall be double skin doors with one inch (1") of insulation in the door. Where the size of the duct permits, the doors shall be eighteen inches (18") by sixteen inches (16"), or eighteen inches in diameter, and shall be provided with Ventlok No. 260 latches (latches are not required in round doors). Latches for rectangular doors smaller than 18" x 16" shall be Ventlok No. 100 or 140. Doors for zone heating coils shall be Ventlok, stamped, insulated access doors, minimum 10" x 12", complete with latch and two (2) hinges, or twelve inches (12") in diameter. Round access doors shall be "Inspector Series" spin-in type door as manufactured by Flexmaster USA, or approved equal. Doors for personnel access to ductwork shall be nominal twenty-four inches (24") in diameter.

B. Where these access doors are above a suspended ceiling, this Contractor shall be responsible for the proper location of the ceiling access doors.

2.5 SCREENS

A. Furnish and install screens on all duct, fan, etc., openings furnished by this Contractor which lead to, or are, outdoors. Screens shall be No. 16-gauge, one-half inch (1/2") mesh in removable galvanized steel frame. Provide safety screens meeting OSHA requirements for protection of maintenance personnel on all fan inlets and fan outlets to which no ductwork is connected.

2.6 TEST OPENINGS

A. Furnish and install in the return air duct and in the discharge duct of each fan unit Ventlok No. 699 instrument test holes. The test holes shall be installed in locations as required to measure pressure drops across each item in the system, e.g., O.A. louvers, filters, fans, coils, intermediate points in duct runs, etc.

2.7 LOW PRESSURE TAPS (Conical Bell Mouth Fittings)

A. Conical fittings may be used for duct taps and shall include quadrant dampers on all lines to air devices (diffusers and grilles), even though a volume damper is specified for the air device. (This does not apply to medium pressure duct.) Spin-in fittings shall be sealed at the duct tap with a gasket, or compression fit, or sealed with sealant specified for medium pressure ductwork. The location of spin-in fittings in the ducts shall be determined after dual or single duct terminal units are hung or the location of the light fixtures is known so as to minimize flexible duct lengths and sharp bends.

B. The conical fitting shall be made of at least 26-gauge galvanized sheet metal. The construction to be a two-piece fitting with a minimum overall length of 6 inches and shall be factory sealed for high pressure requirements. Average loss coefficient for sizes 6, 8, and 10 shall be less than 0.055.

C. Each to be provided with minimum 24-gauge damper plate with locking quadrant operator and sealed end bearings. Damper blade shall be securely attached to shaft by two U-bolts in all sizes to prevent damper from rotating around shaft. Shafts shall be galvanized construction.

D. Provide flange and gasket with adhesive peel-back paper for ease of application. The fitting shall be further secured by sheet metal screws spaced evenly at no more than 4 inches on-center with a minimum of four screws per fitting.

E. The conical bellmouth fitting shall be Series 3000G as manufactured by Flexmaster U.S.A., Inc., or Buckley Air Products, Inc., 'AIR-TITE'.

2.8 REMOTE DAMPER OPERATORS

A. Damper drive to be worm gear type. Drive shall be one-piece construction with universal mounting capabilities to accommodate damper shaft sizes from 1/4”-3/8” square, or 1/4”-1/2” round. The drive unit construction shall consist of a 14 gauge galvannealed mounting bracket, an aluminum worm and worm gear, and a one piece steel drive shaft/cable coupling. The drive shaft/coupling shall provide access and support for a 1/4” plated steel rotary actuation cable. The rotary cable shall be operated with a standard hex nut driver. The worm and worm gear shall have a 20:1 gear ratio and provide a 2:1 mechanical advantage. The rotary actuation cable shall be terminated with a MAT Ceiling Cup (RT-CCM, RT-CCR, or RT-CCS), an angle bracket, or a retaining clip (when used inside a plenum). The damper drive unit shall be Metropolitan Air Technology model RT-WGA Universal Damper Drive, or approved equal.

B. Use of remote damper operators shall be minimized and provided where hard ceiling conditions require. Coordinate cup locations with reflected ceiling plan. Submit locations for review.

2.9 All paints, coatings, adhesives, sealants, stains, caulk, firestopping, etc. inside the weatherproofing system and applied on-site in this specification must comply with the VOC limits in Section 018113. In the product submittal, include product data sheet or MSDS clearly showing VOC content of product in grams/Liter.

ROCIP Project: Withhold insurance cost. Please refer to sections 00425 & 00810 for information.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

A. Install accessories in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.

B. Provide balancing dampers at points on low pressure supply, return, and exhaust systems where branches are taken from larger ducts as required for air balancing. Use splitter dampers only where indicated.

C. Provide balancing dampers on medium and high pressure systems where indicated. Refer to Section 23 36 00 - Air Terminal Units.

D. Provide fire dampers, and combination fire and smoke dampers at locations indicated, where ducts and outlets pass through fire rated components. Install with required perimeter mounting angles, sleeves, breakaway duct connections, corrosion resistant springs, bearings, bushings and hinges.

E. Demonstrate re-setting of fire dampers to Owner's representative.

F. Provide backdraft dampers on exhaust fans or exhaust ducts where indicated.

G. Provide flexible connections immediately adjacent to equipment in ducts associated with fans and motorized equipment. Cover connections to medium and high pressure fans with leaded vinyl sheet, held in place with metal straps.

H. Provide duct access doors for inspection and cleaning before and after duct mounted filters, coils, fans, automatic dampers, at fire dampers, and elsewhere as indicated. Provide minimum 8 x 8 inch (200 x 200 mm) size for hand access, 18 x 18 inch (450 x 450 mm) size for shoulder access, and as indicated.

I. Provide duct test holes where indicated and where required for testing and balancing purposes. Refer also to Section 23 05 93.B.

END OF SECTION 23 33 00.01

ROCIP Project: Withhold insurance cost. Please refer to sections 00425 & 00810 for information.

SECTION 23 36 00.01 - AIR TERMINAL UNITS (VAV)

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.0 The following sections are to be included as if written herein:

A. Section 23 00 00 – Basic Mechanical Requirements

B. Section 23 05 29 – Sleeves, Flashings, Supports and Anchors

C. Section 23 05 53 – Mechanical Identification

1.1 SECTION INCLUDES

A. Dual Duct Terminal Units

B. Single Duct Terminal Units

1.2 PRODUCTS FURNISHED BUT NOT INSTALLED UNDER THIS SECTION

A. Section 23 09 00 - Controls and Instrumentation: Thermostats and Control Components

B. Section 23 05 93.A - Testing, Adjusting and Balancing

C. Section 26 27 26 - Wiring Devices and Floor Boxes

1.3 RELATED SECTIONS

A. Section 23 05 13 - Motors

B. Section 23 31 00 - Ductwork

C. Section 23 33 00 - Ductwork Accessories

D. Section 23 37 00 - Air Outlets and Inlets

E. Section 23 09 00 - Controls and Instrumentation

F. Section 23 05 93.A - Testing, Adjusting and Balancing

G Section 26 05 19 - Cable, Wire and Connectors, 600 Volt

H. Section 26 27 26 - Wiring Devices and Floor Boxes

ROCIP Project: Withhold insurance cost. Please refer to sections 00425 & 00810 for information.

1.4 REFERENCES

A. NFPA 90A - Installation of Air Conditioning and Ventilation Systems

B. UL 181 - Factory-Made Air Ducts and Connectors

C. ADC 1062 - Air Distribution and Control Device Test Code

D. ARI 880 - Standard for Air Terminals

1.5 SUBMITTALS

A. Submit shop drawings under provisions of Section 23 00 00.

B. Submit shop drawings indicating configuration, general assembly, and materials used in fabrication.

C. Submit product data under provisions of Section 23 00 00.

D. Submit product data indicating configuration, general assembly, and materials used in fabrication. Include catalog performance ratings which indicate airflow, static pressure, and NC designation.

E. Include schedules listing discharge and radiated sound power level for each of second through seventh octave bands at inlet static pressures of one inch wg.

F. Submit Manufacturer's installation instructions under provisions of Section 23 00 00.

G. A sample 8-inch size production run unit shall be submitted for examination and approval by the Engineer, RCM office and the Owner's Testing and Balancing (TAB) Consultant. This submittal box shall be submitted, in addition to the required written submittal, well in advance of any requirement for installation of boxes, but absolutely no later than 60 days after the date of the start of construction stipulated in the Work Order letter from the Owner to the General Contractor. A minimum of three weeks shall be allowed by the Contractor for the testing of the box from the time of submittal to the time of determination of project worthiness. This period shall restart if the sample box is rejected and another box is resubmitted. If rejected for any reason, the Contractor shall expedite the corrections documented, and shall resubmit a sample box as soon as possible. Any delay in the submittal of the box for approval shall not be grounds for a claim of delay on the part of the Contractor. If approved, the unit shall remain in the possession of the Owner at the job site for comparison with units as shipped to project. The unit shall be installed in the project, at an accessible, marked location. The unit Manufacturer shall test and certify that each box used on this project has been tested as specified.

1.6 OPERATION AND MAINTENANCE DATA

A. Submit operation and maintenance data under provisions of Section 23 00 00.

B. Include Manufacturer's descriptive literature, operating instructions, maintenance and repair data, and parts lists.

1.7 QUALIFICATIONS

A. Manufacturer: Company specializing in manufacturing the products specified in this section with minimum three years' documented experience.

1.8 WARRANTY

A. Provide one-year Manufacturer's warranty under provisions of Section 23 00 00.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 DUAL DUCT TERMINAL UNITS (MANUFACTURED)

A. Dual duct systems, either existing or justified through LCC, may utilize factory fabricated terminal units for zone temperature and air flow control.

B. Provide factory-assembled, externally powered, variable air volume control terminal. Unit shall be complete with a damper assembly, flow sensors, externally mounted volume controllers, collars for duct connection and all required features. Control box shall be clearly marked with an identification label that lists such information as nominal cfm, maximum and minimum airflow limits.

C. Damper casings shall be constructed of 22 ga. galvanized sheet metal with round inletcollars and rectangular discharge with slip and drive connection.

D. The damper blades shall be heavy gage, galvanized steel and shall be spot welded to shaft. Damper blade shall incorporate a flexible gasket for tight airflow shutoff.

E. Cabinet shall be insulated with closed cell elastomeric insulation, high density fiberglassinsulation with fiber reinforced mat facing, or rigid board insulation with fiber reinforced foil facing. Provide full seam Z-strips to enclose the insulation edges. Insulation shall meet NFPA-90A requirements for flame spread and smoke generation and UL-181 requirements for anti-erosion, corrosion and fungus properties.

F. Units shall have pressure-independent electronic controls, as specified, capable of maintaining required airflow set points +/-5% of the unit's capacity at any inlet pressure up to 6-in. wg., when measured at either inlet duct. The unit shall be equipped with an amplified flow probe located in the cold deck inlet and the cabinet discharge. Air flow rate shall be determined with a factory supplied 12 point total pressure, center averaging cross flow sensor. Electric actuators shall be furnished by the BAS contractor and installed by the manufacturer at the factory. All actuators installed throughout project shall be of the same manufacturer and model. Electric actuators shall be sized appropriately with specified control type and manufactured by Belimo or approved equal.

G. Unit supplied shall be rated in accordance with ARI 880 certification program at the rated flow rates and pressures. The unit manufacturer shall furnish octave band sound power data for both casing radiated and discharge sound levels with the selected lining and above flow

H. Power to and within terminal unit shall be 24 volts.

2.2 SINGLE DUCT VARIABLE AIR VOLUME UNITS

The Contractor shall furnish and install pressure independent dual and/or single duct variable air volume control assemblies with integral attenuator (single duct units) and attenuator-mixers (dual duct units), of the sizes, capacities and configurations shown on the Drawings.

A. CASING CONSTRUCTION:

1. The units shall be constructed of a minimum of 22-gauge galvanized steel and internally lined with a minimum of 1 inch thick, three pound per cubic foot density insulation. The insulation shall be foil faced with the edges and seams sealed or "captured", encapsulating all fibers of the insulation. The insulation shall be neatly installed with no rough edges to interrupt the smooth flow of air through the box. Closed cell polymer insulation may be used instead of the fiberglass described above if UL 25/50 labeled. The casing shall be insulated throughout its interior. The external insulation shall be as specified in other sections of this specification for duct insulation with full vapor barrier, and shall be field installed unless coil and plenum section is furnished as an integral part of the box.
2. All interior features of the boxes (such as mixing baffles, damper housings, etc.) shall be secured within the casing to avoid excessive movement or rattling with air movement or externally generated vibration. All external features of the terminal units shall be designed not to extend beyond the ends of the unit. (For example, the actuator mounting brackets, etc. shall not extend beyond the plane of the inlet "bulkhead.") The only exception shall be flow sensors installed in the inlet duct connections. Note that if a separate flow station is installed within a frame within the casing, then it shall be so installed not to allow airflow to bypass the flow measurement station.

3. The terminal units shall be constructed with inlet and discharge ductwork connections. The inlet ductwork connections shall extend a minimum of 4 inches from the unit casing including an allowance for the installation of airflow station(s) or probe(s). The discharge connection shall include 1" extension with slip and drive connections for use by the Contractor to secure the discharge ductwork or appurtenances to the unit and shall be reinforced to provide a rigid assembly.

B. CASING LEAKAGE: Assembled units shall be so constructed and sealed to limit air leakage to the following listed quantities at 6" static pressure. If sealing is required to obtain the leakage performance, seal as for medium pressure ductwork Hardcast 1602 tape may be used to seal lap joints and flat seams only. Leakage curves or tables will be required as part of the submittal data. The following is the maximum allowable casing leakage including all components:

Diameter	Maximum Allowed CFM (Area x 2000 fpm)	Maximum Allowable CFM Casing Leakage
4"-5"-6"	393	8.0
7"-8"	698	14.0
9"-10"	1091	22.0
11"-12"	1571	30.0
13"-14"	2138	40.0

C. DAMPER CONSTRUCTION: The damper blades shall be an equivalent of 18-gauge galvanized steel or equal aluminum and shall be securely bolted through the damper shafts to assure no slippage of the blades. The damper shafts shall operate in sintered bronze self lubricating bearings. Damper shafts penetrating the unit casings shall be sealed against leakage, and bearings shall be installed for protection against wear in the casing penetration. Damper shafts shall be formed of, or cut from solid stock; no hollow shafts will be allowed. The dampers shall seat against gasketed stops or the dampers shall have gasketed edges. Gaskets shall be mechanically fastened to the blades. If the fastening method is not full contact clamping type, then the addition of adhesive to the gasket shall be required. The dampers shall be so constructed to prevent "oil canning" of the damper blade. The units shall be tested for leakage in both inlets with 6" static pressure imposed on one inlet at a time. The maximum percent leakage from all tests shall be reported. Leakage curves as a function of pressure shall be supplied as part of the submittal data. The damper actuator linkage, if used, shall be constructed of material of sufficient strength to avoid buckling under extreme loads. Also, linkages shall not allow play greater than 5 degrees of damper movement. The controls for the dampers shall cause the dampers to fail in the position of last control (freeze in place), or fail to the open position.

D. DAMPER LEAKAGE: The following is the maximum damper leakage allowable for the various size diameter inlets at 6" wg differential pressure. The damper leakage shall not exceed the values listed in the table below at 6" S.P., following ARI 880 Testing Procedures.

Diameter	Maximum Allowed CFM (Area x 2000 fpm)	Maximum Allowable CFM Damper Leakage
4"-5"-6"	393	6.0
7"-8"	698	10.5
9"-10"	1091	16.5
11"-12"	1571	20.0
13"-14"	2138	30.0

E. UNIT PRESSURE DROP: For dual duct units with an integral attenuator-mixer, but with no other accessories, the static pressure across the assembly with an equivalent 2000 fpm inlet velocity through one inlet shall not exceed 0.50 inches water gauge, with the total flow through either inlet. Single duct unit pressure drop shall be limited to 0.15 inches water gauge under the same conditions above.

F. CERTIFICATION: The Unit Manufacturer shall certify that each unit used on this project will perform as specified. Each unit shall bear a tag or decal listing the following specified information:

1. Test Pressure
2. Leakage CFM (damper)
3. Leakage CFM (casing)
4. Date of Mfg.
5. Room or area served
6. Unit size - 6”, 8”, etc.
7. Calibrated CFM, i.e. 800 CFM

G. MIXING: Terminal units as specified herein shall provide mixing within the units, and not rely upon the discharge ductwork to provide for the completion of the mixing process. The horizontal average temperature of the air as it leaves the terminal unit shall not vary more than 1°F for each 20°F. of temperature difference between the two inlet air supplies. (For example, if the cold supply air is 55°F. and the hot supply air is 95°F., the difference is 40 degrees. The allowable temperature variation of the discharge air is, thus, 2°F.) The temperature of the discharge air shall be measured using a pattern of four vertical, evenly spaced columns, and three horizontal, evenly spaced rows. The rows and columns shall be spaced so that the resulting 12 points shall be at the centers of equal areas. The plane of the points shall be perpendicular to the direction of airflow, within 4 inches of the discharge of the terminal unit, within the discharge ductwork. The three readings in each column shall be averaged to determine compliance with the 1° criteria.

H. FLOW MEASUREMENT: Airflow thru the unit shall be accomplished by the use of a multi-port sensing device with a minimum of four radially distributed pick-up points connected to a center averaging chamber with adequate internal passages to prevent restrictions that can result in control 'hunting'. On all systems, sensors shall be mounted as required by the temperature controls supplier.

I. SOUND: (Note that the maximum sound levels listed in this paragraph refer to raw sound levels, with no credits taken for the construction.)

1. DISCHARGE SOUND

Maximum discharge Sound Power Levels at 2000 fpm primary air inlet velocity with 1.5 inch wg inlet static pressure shall not exceed that listed in the following table. No credit for lined discharge duct, branching, flow division, end reflection, room absorption or any other effects shall be allowed.

Octave Band (Hz)	Center Frequency (dB re 10^{-12} Watts)	Sound Power Level
2	125	76
3	250	66
4	500	63
5	1000	58
6	2000	60
7	4000	55

2. RADIATED SOUND

Maximum discharge Sound Power Levels at 2000 fpm primary air inlet velocity with 1.5 inch wg inlet static pressure shall not exceed that listed in the following table. No credit for ceiling plenum, ceiling tiles, room absorption, or any other effects shall be allowed.

Octave Band (Hz)	Center Frequency (dB re 10^{-12} Watts)	Sound Power Level
2	125	72
3	250	67
4	500	64
5	1000	54
6	2000	47
7	4000	45

All sound power levels shall be obtained from testing in accordance with ARI-ADC Standard 880 and shall be certified at ARI-880 certification points.

J. TESTING PRIOR TO INSTALLATION

1. SHIPMENT TESTING: A minimum of ten percent (10%) of each size of the terminal units (but no less than one unit of each size used) may be tested for conformance to this specification, at the Owner's discretion. The Contractor shall allow sufficient time during construction and space for the Owner's TAB Consultant to perform all testing as may be required.
2. UNIT NON-PERFORMANCE:

   a. If the results of the SHIPMENT TESTING show that any of the units do not perform as specified, then an additional ten percent (10%) of each size (but no less than one unit of a size, unless 100% of the size has been tested) of the units shall be tested. If this testing, in the Owner's opinion, shows that ten percent (10%) or more of the units tested do not perform as specified, then one hundred percent (100%) of all sizes of the units shall be tested for conformance with these specifications. The results of that testing shall be reviewed carefully between the Contractor, Manufacturer, the Owner's construction administrator(s), and the Owner's design engineer(s). A method of repair or replacing the units will be negotiated. The Owner, however, shall maintain the right of final approval of any proposed solution.
   b. Should for any reason the testing described above under "SUBMITTAL" and "SHIPMENT TESTING" prove that any of the units do not perform as specified, the Contractor shall be responsible for all subsequent labor, travel, travel expenses, and incidental expenses, penalties, or other costs attendant to any additional testing as described under "UNIT NON-PERFORMANCE", or as required to prove that the units perform as specified. This shall include, but not be limited to, the labor, travel and reasonable incidental expenses of not only the Contractor and Owner's TAB Consultant, but also those incurred by the Owner as may be specifically required for this purpose. The expenses to be reimbursed to the Owner shall be labor at a rate of $300 per day or any portion of a day, plus travel and travel expenses at actual cost, plus reasonable incidental expenses at actual cost.

K. MANUFACTURER: All Terminal Units shall be as manufactured by Titus (Model MDV-3100-UT or MDC-3100-UT), Metal*Aire (Series DH500 ECO(UT) or Series TH500 ECO(UT) or Nailor Industries (3000-UT or 3200-UT), or Price Industries. *Note that the model and series numbers listed may differ slightly from catalogue information.* No other Manufacturers or models are acceptable. Even though specific Manufacturers may be named herein, the material supplied by any approved Manufacturer shall meet all of the provisions of this specification without exception.

L. GENERAL PERFORMANCE: Devices using mechanical CFM limiters will not be accepted, nor shall it be necessary to change control components to make airflow rate changes. If used, pneumatic actuator motors, pneumatic controllers, and pneumatic or DDC flow stations shall be furnished, mounted and adjusted by the terminal unit assembly Manufacturer to assure their proper placement within the units. It shall be noted that the terminal unit Manufacturer shall be responsible for the workmanship and materials of the entire assembly of unit and controls if pneumatic controls are specified and supplied with the unit. If DDC controls of another Manufacturer (NOT the terminal unit Manufacturer) are provided for this project, the terminal unit Manufacturer shall be responsible only for the construction of the terminal unit and the installation of internal control components installed at the Manufacturer's factory, and shall not be responsible for the installation of controls not installed at the terminal unit Manufacturer's factory, nor shall the Manufacturer be responsible for the performance of the DDC controls. The performance of DDC controls, especially in connection with terminal units, shall be the responsibility of the DDC controls Manufacturer.

M. CONTROL PERFORMANCE: Assemblies shall be able to be reset to any airflow between zero and the maximum cfm shown on Drawings. To allow for maximum flexibility and future changes, it shall be necessary to make only simple screwdriver or keyboard adjustments to arrange each unit for any maximum airflow within the ranges for each inlet size as scheduled on the Drawings. The control devices shall be designed to maintain the desired flow regardless of inlet flow deflection. All terminal units shall be installed with a minimum of four diameters of straight duct directly prior to the entry into each terminal unit connection and of the same size as the box connection.

N. CONTROL SEQUENCES: The control sequence arrangements shall be as described below, whether the controls used on this project are pneumatic or DDC, and the terminal units shall be shipped from the Manufacturer with all necessary control devices to accomplish each sequence, except as may be prohibited by the controls Manufacturer. The desired sequence shall be adjustable according to space usage or a change in space conditions.

Variable Volume – Dual Duct

10" DIA : 1000 - 300 - 700

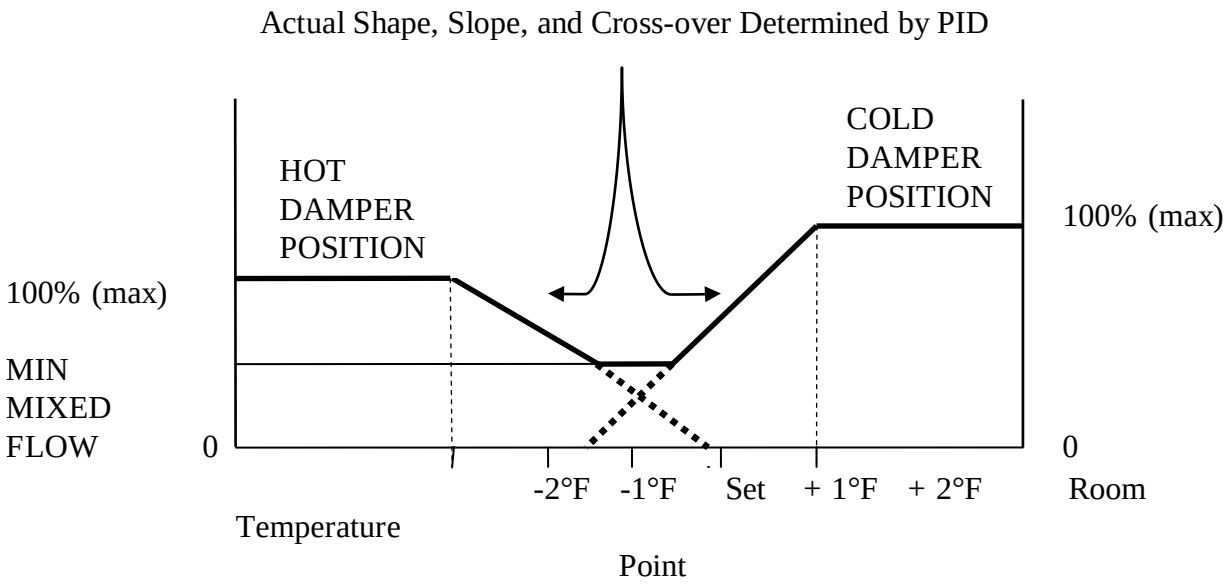
Box Size — 10" DIA

max heating flow — 700

min mixing flow — 300

max cooling flow — 1000

450 fpm min., 2000 fpm max. inlet velocity



Separate maximum CFM values for hot and cold ducts with zero minimum flow for both hot and cold ducts, with adjustable mixing of hot and cold airflow to allow for adjustable minimum total airflow from the terminal unit. Refer to terminal unit schedule for minimum mixed flow.

O. DDC SYSTEMS:

1. Flow pick up devices, electronic actuators, controllers, transformers, terminal strips, miscellaneous items shall be installed by the terminal unit manufacturer at the terminal unit manufacturer factory, at the expense of the terminal nit manufacturer. The controls contractor shall provide controllers, flow pick up devices, transformers, and electronic actuators, including expenses for shipping all items to the terminal unit manufacturer.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

A. Refer also to requirements included in Part 2 of this specification.

B. Install in accordance with Manufacturer's instructions.

C. Provide ceiling access doors or locate units above easily removable ceiling components.

D. Support units individually from structure. Do not support from adjacent ductwork.

E. Connect to ductwork in accordance with Section 23 31 00.

F. Install heating coils in accordance with Section 23 82 16.

3.2 TERMINAL UNIT SCHEDULE

END OF SECTION 23 36 00.01

ROCIP Project: Withhold insurance cost. Please refer to sections 00425 & 00810 for information.

SECTION 23 37 00 - AIR OUTLETS AND INLETS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.0 The following sections are to be included as if written herein:

A. Section 23 00 00 – Basic Mechanical Requirements

B. Section 23 05 29 – Sleeves, Flashings, Supports and Anchors

C. Section 23 05 53 – Mechanical Identification

1.1 WORK INCLUDED

A. Diffusers

B. Diffuser Boots

C. Registers/Grilles

1.2 RELATED SECTIONS

A. Section 09 91 00 - Painting: Painting of Ductwork Visible behind Outlets and Inlets

B. Section 23 31 00 - Ductwork

C. Section 23 33 00 - Ductwork Accessories

1.3 REFERENCES

A. ADC 1062 - Certification, Rating and Test Manual

B. AMCA 500 - Test Method for Louvers, Dampers and Shutters

C. ANSI/NFPA 90A - Installation of Air Conditioning and Ventilating Systems

D. ARI 650 - Air Outlets and Inlets

E. ASHRAE 70 - Method of Testing for Rating the Air Flow Performance of Outlets and Inlets

F. SMACNA - Low Pressure Duct Construction Standard.

ROCIP Project: Withhold insurance cost. Please refer to sections 00425 & 00810 for information.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Test and rate performance of air outlets and inlets in accordance with ADC Equipment Test Code 1062 and ASHRAE 70.

B. Test and rate performance of louvers in accordance with AMCA 500.

1.5 REGULATORY REQUIREMENTS

A. Conform to ANSI/NFPA 90A.

1.6 SUBMITTALS

A. Submit product data under provisions of Section 23 00 00.

B. Provide product data for items required for this project.

C. Submit schedule of outlets and inlets indicating type, size, location, application, and noise level.

D. Review requirements of outlets and inlets as to size, finish, and type of mounting prior to submitting product data and schedules of outlets and inlets.

E. Submit manufacturer's installation instructions under provisions of Section 23 00 00.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 AIR SUPPLIES AND RETURNS

A. Grilles, registers and ceiling outlets shall be as scheduled on the Drawings and shall be provided with sponge rubber or soft felt gaskets. If a manufacturer other than the one scheduled is used, the sizes shown on the Drawings shall be checked for performance, noise level, face velocity, throw, pressure drop, etc., before the submittal is made. Selections shall meet the manufacturer's own published data for the above performance criteria. The throw shall be such that the velocity at the end of the throw in the five foot occupancy zone will be not more than 50 FPM nor less than 25 FPM. Noise levels shall not exceed those published in the ASHRAE Guide for the type of space being served (NC level). Grilles, registers and ceiling outlets shall be Titus, Price, or Metal*Aire.

B. Locations of outlets on Drawings are approximate and shall be coordinated with other trades to make symmetrical patterns and shall be governed by the established pattern of the lighting fixtures or architectural reflected ceiling plan. Where called for on the schedules, the grilles, registers and ceiling outlets shall be provided with deflecting devices and manual damper. These shall be the standard product of the manufacturer, subject to review by the Architect, and equal to brand scheduled.

2.2 ACCEPTABLE MANUFACTURERS FOR AIR DEVICES

A. Krueger Manufacturing Company

B. Price

C. Titus Products

D. Metal * Aire.

2.3 RECTANGULAR CEILING DIFFUSERS

A. Rectangular, louver face, multicore type diffuser to discharge air in 360 degree pattern.

B. Provide surface mount frame or t-bar mount frame as required for ceiling condition. In plaster ceilings, provide plaster frame and ceiling frame.

C. Fabricate of steel with baked enamel off-white finish except where indicated otherwise.

D. Provide radial opposed blade damper and multi-louvered equalizing grid with damper adjustable from diffuser face.

2.4 WALL SUPPLY REGISTERS/GRILLES

A. Streamlined and individually adjustable blades, depth of which exceeds 3/4-inch maximum spacing with spring or other device to set blades, vertical face, double deflection.

B. Fabricate 1-inch margin frame with countersunk screw mounting and gasket.

C. Fabricate of steel with 20 gauge minimum frames and 22 gauge minimum blades, or aluminum extrusions, with factory baked enamel finish.

2.5 CEILING GRID CORE EXHAUST AND RETURN REGISTERS/GRILLES

A. Fixed grilles of 1/2-inch by 1/2-inch by 1/2-inch louvers.

B. Fabricate 1-inch margin frame with countersunk screw mounting for gypsum board ceiling or lay-in frame for suspended grid ceilings.

C. Fabricate of aluminum with factory baked enamel finish.

D. Where not individually connected to exhaust fans, provide integral, gang-operated opposed blade dampers with removable key operator, operable from face.

2.6 ACCEPTABLE MANUFACTURERS - LOUVERS

A. Titus.

B. Krueger.

C. Metal * Aire.

E. Substitutions: Under provisions of Section 01 62 00.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

A. Install items in accordance with manufacturers' instructions.

B. Check location of outlets and inlets and make necessary adjustments in position to conform with architectural features, symmetry, and lighting arrangement. Refer to Section 09 91 00.

C. Install diffusers to ductwork with air tight connection.

D. Provide balancing dampers on duct take-off to diffusers, and grilles and registers, regardless of whether dampers are specified as part of the diffuser, or grille and register assembly.

E. Paint ductwork visible behind air outlets and inlets matte black. Refer to Section 09 91 00.

END OF SECTION 23 37 00

ROCIP Project: Withhold insurance cost. Please refer to sections 00425 & 00810 for information.

SECTION 23 73 13 - VARIABLE REFRIGERANT FLOW EQUIPMENT

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SYSTEM DESCRIPTION

The VRF (Variable Refrigerant Flow) system shall be a simultaneous cooling and heating heat pump. The simultaneous heating and cooling VRF system shall consist of an outdoor unit, high efficiency heat recovery units designed for minimum piping and maximum design flexibility, indoor units, and controls by the equipment manufacturer. Every indoor unit shall be independently capable of operating in either heating or cooling mode regardless of the mode of other indoor units. The system shall be capable of changing mode of individual indoor units (cooling to heating or heating to cooling) within a maximum time of 5 minutes to ensure indoor temperature can be properly maintained.

1.2 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. The units shall be manufactured in a facility registered to ISO 9001 and ISO14001 which is a set of standards applying to environmental protection set by the International Standard Organization (ISO).

B. All wiring shall be in accordance with the National Electrical Code (NEC).

C. The units shall be listed by Electrical Testing Laboratories (ETL) and bear the ETL label.

1.3 STORAGE AND HANDLING

A. All VRF equipment shall be stored protected from weather, extreme temperature, etc. as suggested by the manufacturer. All VRF equipment shall be moved, lifted, etc. as suggested by the manufacturer.

ROCIP Project: Withhold insurance cost. Please refer to sections 00425 & 00810 for information.

PART 2 - WARRANTY

2.1 VRF EQUIPMENT

A. VRF equipment shall be warranted by the manufacturer's limited warranty for a period of one year from date of installation or 18 months from date of delivery whichever is shorter. An extended warranty including 1 additional year parts and 5 additional years compressor shall be granted upon submission to the manufacturer and acceptance by the manufacturer of proper installation with documentation including:

1) Selection output and layout of the VRF system.
2) 60 minutes of operational history upon commissioning from the VRF service tool.
3) Completed commissioning report as per the VRF equipment manufacturer.

During this period, any part failing to function properly due to faulty workmanship or material shall be repaired or replaced at the VRF equipment manufacturer's discretion and shall not include labor.

2.2 The VRF system shall be installed by a licensed mechanical contractor trained by the VRF equipment manufacturer or certified manufacturer's agent. The mechanical contractor shall install all controls and interlock conduit and wiring. Conduit and wiring installation shall comply with the requirements listed in the electrical section of these specifications.

2.3 The VRF system shall be provided with a complete and fully operable control and monitoring system, including wall mounted LCD operator terminal, and all technical services by the VFR system manufacturer representative.

2.4 Commissioning shall be performed by the manufacturer or certified manufacturer's agent.

PART 3 - PRODUCTS

3.1 ACCEPTABLE MANUFACTURERS

A. LG- Basis of Design

B. Daikin

C. Mitsubishi

D. Sanyo

Note: Installing contractor is responsible for any costs incurred as a result of providing manufacturer other than the basis of design including but not limited to engineering design fee changes.

3.2 SIMULTANEOUS HEATING AND COOLING OUTDOOR UNIT

A. General:

1. The outdoor unit shall be used with VRF components of the same manufacturer consisting of the outdoor unit, high efficiency heat recovery units, indoor units, factory designed and supplied Y-branches, and controls.
2. System components shall be of the same manufacturer or as recommended by the manufacturer of the VRF equipment.
3. Unit control boards shall perform all functions required to effectively and efficiently operate the VRF system and communicate in a daisy chain configuration from outdoor unit to heat recovery and indoor units via RS485.
4. The outdoor unit shall be completely factory assembled, piped and wired. Dual and triple frame outdoor units will be field piped with factory designed and supplied Y-branch kits to manifold them together into a single refrigerant circuit.
5. Each outdoor unit shall be run tested at the factory.
6. The sum of connected nominal capacity of all indoor air handlers shall range from 50% to 130% of outdoor unit nominal capacity to ensure the VRF system will have sufficient capacity to handle the building space loads at peak design.
7. Outdoor unit shall have a tested sound rating no higher than 58 dB(A) per outdoor unit frame tested per KSA0701. The outdoor unit frame shall include three quiet/nighttime operation settings of 47, 44, and 41 dBA.
8. All refrigerant lines from the outdoor unit to the heat recovery unit and from the heat recovery unit to the indoor units shall be field insulated.
9. The outdoor unit shall have an accumulator.
10. The outdoor unit shall have a high pressure safety switch
11. The outdoor unit shall have over-current protection.
12. The outdoor unit shall use a brazed plate subcooling heat exchanger.
13. The outdoor unit shall have the ability to operate with an elevation difference of up to 328 feet above or below the indoor units.
14. The outdoor unit shall allow up to a total equivalent refrigerant piping length of 3280 feet.
15. The maximum length from outdoor unit to indoor unit shall be up to 656 feet without traps.
16. The outdoor unit shall be capable of operating in heating only mode down to -4°F and up to 61°F ambient wet bulb without additional low ambient controls.
17. The outdoor unit shall be capable of operating in cooling only mode down to 21°F and up to 110°F ambient dry bulb.
18. The outdoor unit shall be capable of operating in simultaneous heating and cooling mode down to 14°F and up to 86°F ambient dry bulb.
19. The outdoor unit shall have an oil separator for each compressor and controls to ensure sufficient oil supply is maintained for the compressor.
20. Shall use R410A refrigerant.
21. Each outdoor unit frame shall have a removable inspection panel no greater than 6 inches tall or 12 inches wide to allow access to service tool connection, DIP switches, auto addressing and error codes.

B. Frame:

1. Shall be constructed with galvanized steel, bonderized and be finished with powder coat baked enamel paint.

C. Compressor:

1. All 208/230V 3 phase outdoor unit fraFmes shall be equipped with one hermetic digitally controlled inverter driven scroll compressor and one hermetic constant speed scroll compressor.
2. A crankcase heater shall be factory mounted on all compressors.
3. The outdoor unit compressor shall have an inverter to modulate capacity. The frequency of the inverter compressor shall be completely variable from 25 to 105Hz.
4. The compressor shall be equipped with an internal thermal overload.
5. The compressor shall be mounted to avoid the transmission of vibration.

D. Fan:

1. All outdoor unit frames shall be furnished with two direct drive, variable speed propeller type fans.
2. All fan motors shall have inherent protection, have permanently lubricated bearings, and be variable speed with a maximum speed up to 950 rpm.
3. All fans shall be provided with a raised guard to limit contact with moving parts.
4. The outdoor unit shall have vertical discharge airflow.

E. Coil:

1. The outdoor coil shall be of nonferrous construction with louvered fins on copper tubing.
2. The coil fins shall have a factory applied corrosion resistant GoldFin™ material with hydrophilic coating.
3. The coil shall be protected with an integral metal guard.
4. Refrigerant flow from the outdoor unit shall be controlled by means of a digitally controlled inverter driven scroll compressor.

F. Electrical:

1. The outdoor unit shall be capable of operation within voltage limits of +/- 10% rated voltage.
2. The outdoor unit shall be controlled by integral microprocessors.
3. The control circuit between the indoor units, heat recovery box and the outdoor unit shall be 24VDC completed using a 2-conductor, stranded, shielded cable for the RS485 daisy chain communication. The mechanical contractor shall install all wiring, EMT conduit with compression fittings indoors, IMC or GRC outdoors, PVC underground. Liquidtite flexible conduit for final 3 feet, including any underground trenching.

3.3 HEAT RECOVERY UNITS FOR SIMULTANEOUS HEATING AND COOLING SYSTEMS

A. General:

1. Heat recovery units shall be designed for use with VRF equipment of the same manufacturer.
1. Heat recovery units shall have factory installed control boards that interface to the VRF equipment controls system and shall perform all functions to effectively and efficiently control the simultaneous heating and cooling VRF system.
2. Heat recovery units shall be completely factory assembled, internally piped and wired.
3. Heat recovery units shall be run tested at the factory.
4. Heat recovery units shall be designed for indoor installation.
5. Shall use R410A refrigerant.
6. All refrigerant lines from the outdoor unit to the indoor units shall be field insulated.
7. Heat recovery units shall allow up to 2, 3, or 4 indoor units to be connected.
8. Y-branches between heat recovery units and indoor units shall not be allowed to ensure independent heating and cooling control of each indoor unit regardless of the mode of any other indoor unit connected to that heat recovery unit.
9. Heat recovery units shall be permitted to be piped in series or parallel to minimize material cost and labor.
10. The following piping shall be allowed.

    a. Series piping of up to 16 heat recovery units
    b. Indoor units up to 131 equivalent feet of piping length from the respective heat recovery unit
    c. Indoor units up to 295 equivalent feet of piping length from the first branch
    d. Indoor units shall not exceed 16 feet above or below the heat recovery unit
    e. Elevation difference between the highest and lowest elevation indoor unit shall not exceed 16 feet.
    f. Total indoor unit nominal capacity shall not exceed 160MBh in any series string of 1 to 16 heat recovery units.

B. Heat Recovery Unit Construction:

1. The heat recovery unit shall have 2, 3, or 4 ports which can individually accommodate up to one indoor unit not to exceed 48.1 MBh nominal capacity.

    a. Indoor units greater than 48.1 MBh nominal capacity shall utilize 2 neighboring heat recovery unit ports.

2. The heat recovery unit housing shall be galvanized steel.
3. Each heat recovery unit shall contain piping, valves and controls to divert refrigerant for optimum efficiency.

4. The unit shall house one double spiral tube-in-tube heat exchanger per port of the heat recovery unit.
5. Heat recovery units shall be internally insulated and not require installation of any condensate drain.

C. Refrigerant System

1. R410A refrigerant shall be required for all VRF equipment and components including indoor units, outdoor units, refrigerant piping, valves, Y-branches, heat recovery units, etc. as applicable.

D. Refrigerant valves:

1. Each port shall be circuited with two 2-position solenoid valves to control refrigerant flow path.

2. Isolation valves shall be field supplied and installed for ease of service to the heat recovery unit without evacuating the entire system refrigerant charge.

3. System shall be designed for use with R410A.

E. Electrical:

1. All units shall be capable of satisfactory operation within +/-10% of nominal voltage.
2. The heat recovery unit shall be controlled by integral microprocessors from the main control in the outdoor unit.
4. The control circuit between the indoor units, heat recovery box and the outdoor unit shall be 24VDC completed using a 2-conductor, stranded and shielded cable for the RS485 daisy chain communication. The mechanical contractor shall install all wiring, EMT conduit with compression fittings indoors, IMC or GRC outdoors, PVC underground. Liquidtite flexible conduit for final 3 feet, including any underground trenching.

3.4 WALL-MOUNTED INDOOR UNIT

A. General:

1. Wall-mounted indoor units shall protrude from the wall no more than 7 inches.
2. Shall be designed for use with R410a refrigerant.
3. Shall be installed with heat pump or simultaneous heating and cooling heat pump VRF systems of the same manufacturer.
4. The indoor unit shall communicate with the outdoor unit via RS485 daisy chain communication.

B. Indoor Unit

1. The indoor unit shall be factory assembled, wired and run tested.
2. The indoor unit shall be factory wired and piped with its own electronic expansion device, control circuit board, fan and motor.
3. The indoor unit shall have

   a. self-diagnostic function
   b. auto restart function

4. Indoor unit refrigerant circuit shall be filled with a dry nitrogen gas charge from the factory.

C. Unit Cabinet:

1. The unit casing shall have a pearl white finish.
2. Multi directional refrigerant piping up to four (4) directions shall be standard.
3. Multi directional drain piping up to two (2) directions shall be standard.
4. The indoor unit shall attach to a separate back plate that secures the unit to the wall.
5. Indoor unit casing shall have integral sensor to read wireless handheld remote controller as standard from the factory.

D. Filter:

1. Return air shall be filtered with a factory supplied removable, washable filter. Provide Spare Set of Washable Filters.
2. Shall be furnished as standard with a factory installed plasma filter with no additional external power supply required.

E. Fan:

1. The indoor fan shall be an assembly with one cross flow fan direct driven by a single motor.
2. The indoor fan shall be statically and dynamically balanced.
3. Motor shall have permanently lubricated bearings.
4. In cooling mode, the indoor fan shall have the following settings; Low, Med, High, Power Cool, and Auto.
5. In heating mode, the indoor fan shall have the following settings; Low, Med, High, and Auto.
6. The fan shall have a selectable Auto fan setting that will adjust the fan speed based on the difference between controller set-point and space temperature.
7. A manually adjustable guide vane shall be factory installed allowing the ability to control the direction of airflow from side to side for units 15MBh and below.
8. A motorized sweeping guide vane shall be factory installed allowing the ability to control the direction of airflow from side to side for units 18MBh and above.

9. A motorized air sweep louver shall provide an automatic change in airflow by directing the air up and down to provide uniform air distribution.

F. Coil:

1. The indoor unit coil shall be nonferrous with louvered fins on copper tubing for maximum efficiency.
2. The tubing shall have inner grooves for high efficiency heat exchange.
3. The coils shall be pressure tested at the factory.
4. A condensate drain pan shall be factory installed below the coil.
5. All refrigerant lines to the indoor units shall be field insulated.

G. Electrical:

1. The indoor unit shall be capable of operation within voltage limits of +/-10% rated voltage.

H. Controls:

1. Unit shall use direct digital controls provided by the manufacturer to perform all functions to properly operate the system effectively and efficiently. The VRF system manufacturer shall provide all work, other than conduit and wiring, including wall mounted LCD operator terminal complete with BACnet/IP connection, and communications work between the indoor units and outdoor unit.

3.5 HIGH STATIC CEILING-CONCEALED DUCTED INDOOR UNIT

A. General:

1. High static ceiling concealed duct indoor unit shall mount fully concealed within the ceiling.
2. Shall be designed for use with R410a refrigerant.
3. Shall be installed with heat pump or simultaneous heating and cooling heat pump VRF systems of the same manufacturer.
4. The indoor unit shall communicate with the outdoor unit via RS485 daisy chain communication.
5. Field installed ductwork shall not exceed the external static pressure limitation of the high static ducted indoor unit.

B. Indoor Unit:

1. The indoor unit shall be factory assembled, wired and run tested.
2. The indoor unit shall be factory wired and piped with its own electronic expansion device, control circuit board, fan and motor.
3. The indoor unit shall have

    a. self-diagnostic function

b. auto restart function

4. Indoor unit refrigerant circuit shall be filled with a dry nitrogen gas charge from the factory.

C. Unit Cabinet:

1. The cabinet shall be ceiling-concealed and ducted.

D. Filter:

1. Return air shall be filtered with a factory supplied removable, MERV-13 filter. Provide spare set of filters for each unit.

E. Fan:

1. The indoor unit fan shall be no more than one assembly with two Sirocco fans direct driven by a single motor.
2. The indoor fan shall be statically and dynamically balanced.
3. Motor shall have permanently lubricated bearings.
4. In cooling mode, the indoor fan shall have the following settings; Low, Med, and High.
5. In heating mode, the indoor fan shall have the following settings; Low, Med, and High.

F. Coil:

1. The indoor unit coil shall be nonferrous with louvered fins on copper tubing for maximum efficiency.
2. The tubing shall have inner grooves for high efficiency heat exchange.
3. The coils shall be pressure tested at the factory.
4. A condensate drain pan shall be factory installed below the coil.
5. All refrigerant lines to the indoor units shall be field insulated.

G. Condensate Pump:

1. The unit shall include a factory installed condensate pump that will be able to raise drain water 27 inches above the bottom of the indoor unit.

H. Electrical:

1. The indoor unit shall be capable of operation within voltage limits of +/-10% rated voltage.

I. Controls:

1. Unit shall use direct digital controls provided by the manufacturer to perform all functions to properly operate the system effectively and efficiently. The VRF system manufacturer shall provide all work, other than conduit and wiring, including wall mounted LCD operator terminal complete with BACnet/IP connection, and communications work between the indoor units and outdoor unit.

PART 4 -CONTROLS

4.1 CONTROLS

A. General:

1. Provide all work , other than conduit and wiring to cause proper complete operation of the VRF , including the wall mounted LCD operator terminal complete with BACnet/IP connection. Owner shall provide a static IP drop to the operator terminal.

B. Indoor Unit DDC Space Controllers (Thermostats):

1. DDC Controller

a. Provided with 30’ of 22 gauge 3 conductor, stranded, shield control wiring with controller (thermostat)
b. Provide Functions

1. On/Off Control
2. Temperature Setting
3. Fan Speed
4. Air Flow Direction
5. Child Lock
6. Mode Selection
7. 7-day programmable schedule- Two actions per day (On/Off only)
8. 2 Hour Battery Backup
9. 1-7 deg C deadband

c. Ability to allow up to 2 controllers per indoor unit
d. Ability to control a group of 16 indoor units with 1 controller
e. Auto addressable
f. Provide with Display, Fan Speed Selection switch, and Temp Setting Adjust

C. System DDC Controller:

1. Central Controller / Operator Terminal

a. Shall address up to 128 indoor units and 16 outdoor units
b. Provided Functions

1. On/Off Control
2. Mode Selection
3. Lock Mode
4. Setpoint Control
5. Adjustable temperature range control
6. Fan Speed Control
7. Custom Scheduling
8. Indoor Unit Operational Status
9. Device setpoint data display status

c. Provide with system battery backup and USB Port for software updates
d. Ability to turn on/off third party devices through the application of a digital expansion kit (accessory) ie. lighting, ventilation units, exhaust fans
e. Emergency Stop
f. 7 inch touchscreen LCD with stylus pen and storage slot
g. Ability to customize names in a zone/group/unit
h. Provide malfunction notification via email
i. Shall have ability to be web-based and can schedule, change setpoints and turn equipment on/off via the web
j. User and Administrator Levels with password protection

D. System Gateway:

1. BACnet Gateway

a. Provide gateway and technical services to export and inport information over to building BAS
b. Integrated functions required:

1. On/Off Control
2. Setpoint Reset
3. Fault Alarm

END OF SECTION 23 73 13

ROCIP Project: Withhold insurance cost. Please refer to sections 00425 & 00810 for information.

SECTION 26 05 00 - COMMON WORK RESULTS FOR ELECTRICAL

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Electrical equipment coordination and installation.
2. Sleeves for raceways and cables.
3. Sleeve seals.
4. Grout.
5. Common electrical installation requirements.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. EPDM: Ethylene-propylene-diene terpolymer rubber.

B. NBR: Acrylonitrile-butadiene rubber.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For sleeve seals.

B. Sustainable Design Submittals:

1. Product Data: For solvents and adhesives, indicating VOC content.
2. Laboratory Test Reports: For solvents and adhesives, indicating compliance with requirements for low-emitting materials.
3. Product Data: For paints and coatings, indicating VOC content.
4. Laboratory Test Reports: For paints and coatings, indicating compliance with requirements for low-emitting materials.

1.5 COORDINATION

A. Coordinate arrangement, mounting, and support of electrical equipment:

1. To allow maximum possible headroom unless specific mounting heights that reduce headroom are indicated.
2. To provide for ease of disconnecting the equipment with minimum interference to other installations.
3. To allow right of way for piping and conduit installed at required slope.
4. So connecting raceways, cables, wireways, cable trays, and busways will be clear of obstructions and of the working and access space of other equipment.

B. Coordinate installation of required supporting devices and set sleeves in cast-in-place concrete, masonry walls, and other structural components as they are constructed.

C. Coordinate location of access panels and doors for electrical items that are behind finished surfaces or otherwise concealed. Access doors and panels are specified in Division 08 Section "Access Doors and Frames."

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 SLEEVES FOR RACEWAYS AND CABLES

A. Steel Pipe Sleeves: ASTM A 53/A 53M, Type E, Grade B, Schedule 40, galvanized steel, plain ends.

B. Cast-Iron Pipe Sleeves: Cast or fabricated "wall pipe," equivalent to ductile-iron pressure pipe, with plain ends and integral waterstop, unless otherwise indicated.

C. Sleeves for Rectangular Openings: Galvanized sheet steel.

1. Minimum Metal Thickness:

a. For sleeve cross-section rectangle perimeter less than 50 inches and no side more than 16 inches, thickness shall be 0.052 inch.
b. For sleeve cross-section rectangle perimeter equal to, or more than, 50 inches and 1 or more sides equal to, or more than, 16 inches, thickness shall be 0.138 inch.

2.2 SLEEVE SEALS

A. Description: Modular sealing device, designed for field assembly, to fill annular space between sleeve and raceway or cable.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
2. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product by one of the following:

    a. Advance Products & Systems, Inc.
    b. Calpico, Inc.
    c. Metraflex Co.
    d. Pipeline Seal and Insulator, Inc.

3. Sealing Elements: EPDM interlocking links shaped to fit surface of cable or conduit. Include type and number required for material and size of raceway or cable.
4. Pressure Plates: Carbon steel. Include two for each sealing element.
5. Connecting Bolts and Nuts: Carbon steel with corrosion-resistant coating of length required to secure pressure plates to sealing elements. Include one for each sealing element.

2.3 GROUT

A. Nonmetallic, Shrinkage-Resistant Grout: ASTM C 1107, factory-packaged, nonmetallic aggregate grout, noncorrosive, nonstaining, mixed with water to consistency suitable for application and a 30-minute working time.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 COMMON REQUIREMENTS FOR ELECTRICAL INSTALLATION

A. Comply with NECA 1.

B. Measure indicated mounting heights to bottom of unit for suspended items and to center of unit for wall-mounting items.

C. Headroom Maintenance: If mounting heights or other location criteria are not indicated, arrange and install components and equipment to provide maximum possible headroom consistent with these requirements.

D. Equipment: Install to facilitate service, maintenance, and repair or replacement of components of both electrical equipment and other nearby installations. Connect in such a way as to facilitate future disconnecting with minimum interference with other items in the vicinity.

E. Right of Way: Give to piping systems installed at a required slope.

3.2 SLEEVE INSTALLATION FOR ELECTRICAL PENETRATIONS

A. Electrical penetrations occur when raceways, cables, wireways, cable trays, or busways penetrate concrete slabs, concrete or masonry walls, or fire-rated floor and wall assemblies.

B. Concrete Slabs and Walls: Install sleeves for penetrations unless core-drilled holes or formed openings are used. Install sleeves during erection of slabs and walls.

C. Use pipe sleeves unless penetration arrangement requires rectangular sleeved opening.

D. Fire-Rated Assemblies: Install sleeves for penetrations of fire-rated floor and wall assemblies unless openings compatible with firestop system used are fabricated during construction of floor or wall.

E. Cut sleeves to length for mounting flush with both surfaces of walls.

F. Extend sleeves installed in floors 2 inches above finished floor level.

G. Size pipe sleeves to provide 1/4-inch annular clear space between sleeve and raceway or cable, unless indicated otherwise.

H. Seal space outside of sleeves with grout for penetrations of concrete and masonry

1. Promptly pack grout solidly between sleeve and wall so no voids remain. Tool exposed surfaces smooth; protect grout while curing.

I. Interior Penetrations of Non-Fire-Rated Walls and Floors: Seal annular space between sleeve and raceway or cable, using joint sealant appropriate for size, depth, and location of joint. Comply with requirements in Division 07 Section "Joint Sealants."

J. Fire-Rated-Assembly Penetrations: Maintain indicated fire rating of walls, partitions, ceilings, and floors at raceway and cable penetrations. Install sleeves and seal raceway and cable penetration sleeves with firestop materials. Comply with requirements in Division 07 Section "Penetration Firestopping."

K. Roof-Penetration Sleeves: Seal penetration of individual raceways and cables with flexible boot-type flashing units applied in coordination with roofing work.

L. Underground, Exterior-Wall Penetrations: Install cast-iron pipe sleeves. Size sleeves to allow for 1-inch annular clear space between raceway or cable and sleeve for installing mechanical sleeve seals.

3.3 SLEEVE-SEAL INSTALLATION

A. Install to seal exterior wall penetrations.

B. Use type and number of sealing elements recommended by manufacturer for raceway or cable material and size. Position raceway or cable in center of sleeve. Assemble mechanical sleeve seals and install in annular space between raceway or cable and sleeve. Tighten bolts against pressure plates that cause sealing elements to expand and make watertight seal.

END OF SECTION 26 05 00

ROCIP Project: Withhold insurance cost. Please refer to sections 00425 & 00810 for information.

SECTION 26 05 19 - LOW-VOLTAGE ELECTRICAL POWER CONDUCTORS AND CABLES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Building wires and cables rated 600 V and less.
2. Connectors, splices, and terminations rated 600 V and less.

1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.

1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Qualification Data: For testing agency.

B. Field quality-control reports.

C. Sustainable Design Submittals:

1. Product Data: For each conductor and cable indicating lead content.
2. Product Data: For solvents and adhesives, indicating VOC content.
3. Laboratory Test Reports: For solvents and adhesives, indicating compliance with requirements for low-emitting materials.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Testing Agency Qualifications: Member company of NETA or an NRTL.

1. Testing Agency's Field Supervisor: Certified by NETA to supervise on-site testing.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 CONDUCTORS AND CABLES

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. Alpha Wire.
2. Belden Inc.
3. Encore Wire Corporation.
4. General Cable Technologies Corporation.
5. Southwire Incorporated.
6. Republic Wire Inc.

B. Copper Conductors: Comply with NEMA WC 70/ICEA S-95-658.

1. Lead Content: Less than 300 parts per million.

C. Aluminum Conductors: Distribution feeder conductors in sizes #4/0 AWG to 1000 kcMil may be aluminum alloy. Aluminum alloy conductors shall be compact stranded conductors of STABILOY® (AA-8030) as manufactured by Alcan Cable or of a recognized 8000 Series aluminum alloy conductor material by the Aluminum Association.

D. Conductor Insulation: Copper, comply with NEMA WC 70/ICEA S-95-658 for Type THHN-2-THWN-2.

E. Conductor Insulation: Aluminum, For use in raceways: Sizes #4/0 AWG to 1000 kcmil, Type XHHW-2, temperature rating 90º C and marked “SUN RES”. For use in Cable Trays: Sizes # 1/0 AWG and larger Type XHHW-2, temperature rating 90º C and marked: “SUN RES”, “VW-1”, “GASOLINE AND OIL-RESISTANT II”, and “FOR CT USE”.

F. VFC Cable:

1. Comply with UL 1277, UL 1685, and NFPA 70 for Type TC-ER cable.
2. Type TC-ER with oversized crosslinked polyethylene insulation, spiral-wrapped foil plus 85 percent coverage braided shields and insulated full-size ground wire, and sunlight- and oil-resistant outer PVC jacket.

2.2 CONNECTORS AND SPLICES

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. AFC Cable Systems, Inc.
2. Gardner Bender.
3. Hubbell Power Systems, Inc.
4. Ideal Industries, Inc.
5. Ilsco; a branch of Bardes Corporation.
6. NSi Industries LLC.
7. O-Z/Gedney; a brand of the EGS Electrical Group.
8. 3M; Electrical Markets Division.
9. Tyco Electronics.

B. Description: Factory-fabricated connectors and splices of size, ampacity rating, material, type, and class for application and service indicated.

C. Aluminum Requirements:

1. Using Mechanical Screw Type Connectors:

   a. Connectors shall be dual rated (AL7CU or AL9CU) and Listed by UL for use with aluminum and copper conductors and sized to accept aluminum conductors of the ampacity specified.
   b. Using a suitable stripping tool, to avoid damage to the conductor, remove insulation from the required length of the conductor.
   c. Clean the conductor surface using a wire brush and apply a Listed joint compound.
   d. Tighten the connection per the connector manufacturer’s recommendation.
   e. Wipe off any excess joint compound.

2. Using Mechanical Compression Type Connectors:

   a. Connectors shall be dual rated (AL7CU or AL9CU) and Listed by UL for use with aluminum and copper conductors and sized to accept aluminum conductors of the ampacity specified.
   b. The lugs shall be marked with wire size, die index, number and location of crimps and shall be suitably color coded. Lug barrel shall be factory pre-filled with a joint compound Listed by UL.
   c. Using a suitable stripping tool, to avoid damage to the conductor, remove insulation from the required length of the conductor.
   d. Clean conductor surface using a wire brush.
   e. Crimp the connection per the connector manufacturer’s recommendation.
   f. Wipe off any excess joint compound.

3. Termination of Aluminum Conductor to Aluminum Bus:

    a. Prepare a mechanical connection conforming to 1 or 2.
    b. Hardware:

        1. Bolts: Anodized aluminum alloy 2024-T4 and conforming to ANSI B18.2.1 and to ASTM B211 or B221 chemical and mechanical property limits.
        2. Nuts: Aluminum alloys 6061-T6 or 6262-T9 and conforming to ANSI B18.2.2.
        3. Washers: Flat aluminum alloy 2024-T4, Type "A" plain, standard wide series conforming to ANSI B27.2.
        4. Lubricate and tighten the hardware as per the manufacturer's recommendations.

4. Termination of Aluminum Conductor to Copper Bus:

    a. Prepare a mechanical connection conforming to 1 or 2.
    b. Hardware:

        1. Bolts: Plated or galvanized medium carbon steel; heat treated, quenched and tempered equal to ASTM A-325 or SAE grade 5.
        2. Nuts: Heavy semi-finished hexagon, conforming to ANSI B18.2.2, threads to be unified coarse series (UNC), class 2B.
        3. Washers: Should be of steel; Type A plain standard wide series conforming to ANSI B27.2.
        4. Belleville conical spring washers: Shall be of hardened steel, cadmium plated or silicone bronze.
        5. Lubricate and tighten the hardware as per the manufacturer's recommendations.

5. Termination of Aluminum Conductor to Equipment Not Equipped for Termination of Aluminum Conductor.

    a. Prepare compression connection using an adapter Listed by UL for the purpose or by pigtailing a short length of suitable size of copper conductor to the aluminum conductor with a compression connector Listed by UL.
    b. Provide an insulating cover over adapter body or the compression connector.
    c. Terminate the adapter or the pigtail on to the equipment per manufacturer's recommendation.

2.3 SYSTEM DESCRIPTION

A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

B. Comply with NFPA 70.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 CONDUCTOR MATERIAL APPLICATIONS

A. Feeders: Copper. Solid for No. 10 AWG and smaller; stranded for No. 8 AWG and larger.

B. Branch Circuits: Copper. Solid for No. 12 AWG and smaller; stranded for No. 10 AWG and larger, except VFC cable, which shall be extra flexible stranded.

3.2 CONDUCTOR INSULATION AND MULTICONDUCTOR CABLE APPLICATIONS AND WIRING METHODS

A. Service Entrance: Type THHN-2-THWN-2, single conductors in raceway.

B. Exposed Feeders: Type THHN-2-THWN-2, single conductors in raceway.

C. Feeders Concealed in Ceilings, Walls, Partitions, and Crawlspaces: Type THHN-2-THWN-2, single conductors in raceway.

D. Feeders Concealed below Slabs-on-Grade, and Underground: Type THHN-2-THWN-2, single conductors in raceway.

E. Exposed Branch Circuits, Including in Crawlspaces: Type THHN-2-THWN-2, single conductors in raceway.

F. Branch Circuits Concealed in Ceilings: Type THHN-2-THWN-2, single conductors in raceway.

G. Branch Circuits Concealed in steel stud Walls, and Partitions: Type THHN-2-THWN-2, single conductors in raceway.

H. Branch Circuits Concealed below Slabs-on-Grade, and Underground: Type THHN-2-THWN-2, single conductors in raceway.

I. Cord Drops and Portable Appliance Connections: Type SO, hard service cord with stainless-steel, wire-mesh, strain relief device at terminations to suit application.

J. VFC Output Circuits: Type TC-ER cable with braided shield.

3.3 INSTALLATION OF CONDUCTORS AND CABLES

A. Conceal cables in finished walls, ceilings, and floors unless otherwise indicated.

B. Complete raceway installation between conductor and cable termination points according to Section 260533 "Raceways and Boxes for Electrical Systems" prior to pulling conductors and cables.

C. Use manufacturer-approved pulling compound or lubricant where necessary; compound used must not deteriorate conductor or insulation. Do not exceed manufacturer's recommended maximum pulling tensions and sidewall pressure values.

D. Use pulling means, including fish tape, cable, rope, and basket-weave wire/cable grips, that will not damage cables or raceway.

E. Install exposed cables parallel and perpendicular to surfaces of exposed structural members, and follow surface contours where possible.

F. Support cables according to Section 260529 "Hangers and Supports for Electrical Systems."

3.4 CONNECTIONS

A. Tighten electrical connectors and terminals according to manufacturer's published torque-tightening values. If manufacturer's torque values are not indicated, use those specified in UL 486A.

B. Make splices, terminations, and taps that are compatible with conductor material and that possess equivalent or better mechanical strength and insulation ratings than unspliced conductors.

C. Wiring at Outlets: Install conductor at each outlet, with at least 6 inches of slack.

3.5 IDENTIFICATION

A. Identify and color-code conductors and cables according to Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."

B. Identify each spare conductor at each end with identity number and location of other end of conductor, and identify as spare conductor.

3.6 SLEEVE AND SLEEVE-SEAL INSTALLATION FOR ELECTRICAL PENETRATIONS

A. Install sleeves and sleeve seals at penetrations of exterior floor and wall assemblies. Comply with requirements in Section 260544 "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for Electrical Raceways and Cabling."

3.7 FIRESTOPPING

A. Apply firestopping to electrical penetrations of fire-rated floor and wall assemblies to restore original fire-resistance rating of assembly according to Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping."

3.8 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Perform the following tests and inspections:

1. After installing conductors and cables and before electrical circuitry has been energized, test service entrance and feeder conductors and conductors feeding the following critical equipment and services for compliance with requirements.

    a. Feeders to each panelboard.
    b. Feeders to each Air Handling Unit
    c. Feeders to Bus Duct

2. Perform each visual and mechanical inspection and electrical test stated in NETA Acceptance Testing Specification. Certify compliance with test parameters.

B. Cables will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.

END OF SECTION 26 05 19

ROCIP Project: Withhold insurance cost. Please refer to sections 00425 & 00810 for information.

SECTION 26 05 26 - GROUNDING AND BONDING FOR ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes: Grounding systems and equipment.

B. Section includes grounding systems and equipment, plus the following special applications:

1. Underground distribution grounding.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Informational Submittals: Plans showing dimensioned as-built locations of grounding features specified in "Field Quality Control" Article, including the following:

1. Test wells.
2. Ground rods.
3. Grounding arrangements and connections for separately derived systems.

B. Field quality-control reports.

1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For grounding to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals. In addition to items specified in Section 01730 "Operation and Maintenance Data," include the following:

1. Instructions for periodic testing and inspection of grounding features at test wells ground rings grounding connections for separately derived systems based on NETA MTS.

   a. Tests shall determine if ground-resistance or impedance values remain within specified maximums, and instructions shall recommend corrective action if values do not.
   b. Include recommended testing intervals.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

B. Comply with UL 467 for grounding and bonding materials and equipment.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 CONDUCTORS

A. Insulated Conductors: Copper wire or cable insulated for 600 V unless otherwise required by applicable Code or authorities having jurisdiction.

B. Bare Copper Conductors:

1. Solid Conductors: ASTM B 3.
2. Stranded Conductors: ASTM B 8.
3. Bonding Cable: min. 28 kcmil, 14 strands of No. 17 AWG conductor, 1/4 inch in diameter.
4. Bonding Conductor: min. No. 4 stranded conductor.
5. Bonding Jumper: Copper tape, braided conductors terminated with copper ferrules; min. 1-5/8 inches wide and 1/16 inch thick.

C. Grounding Bus: Predrilled rectangular bars of annealed copper, 1/4 by 4 inches in cross section, with 9/32-inch holes spaced 1-1/8 inches apart. Stand-off insulators for mounting shall comply with UL 891 for use in switchboards, 600 V. Lexan or PVC, impulse tested at 5000 V.

2.2 CONNECTORS

A. Listed and labeled by an NRTL acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction for applications in which used and for specific types, sizes, and combinations of conductors and other items connected.

B. Bolted Connectors for Conductors and Pipes: Copper or copper alloy, pressure type with at least two bolts.

1. Pipe Connectors: Clamp type, sized for pipe.

C. Welded Connectors: Exothermic-welding kits of types recommended by kit manufacturer for materials being joined and installation conditions.

D. Bus-bar Connectors: Mechanical type, cast silicon bronze, solderless compression-type wire terminals, and long-barrel, two-bolt connection to ground bus bar.

2.3 GROUNDING ELECTRODES

A. Ground Rods: Copper-clad steel; 3/4 inch in diameter by 10 feet in length.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 APPLICATIONS

A. Conductors: Install solid conductor for No. 12 AWG and smaller, and stranded conductors for No. 10 AWG and larger unless otherwise indicated.

B. Grounding Bus: Install in electrical and telephone equipment rooms, in rooms housing service equipment, and elsewhere as indicated.

1. Install bus on insulated spacers 2 inches minimum from wall, 6 inches above finished floor unless otherwise indicated.

C. Conductor Terminations and Connections:

1. Pipe and Equipment Grounding Conductor Terminations: Bolted connectors.
2. Underground Connections: Welded connectors except at test wells and as otherwise indicated.
3. Connections to Ground Rods at Test Wells: Bolted connectors.
4. Connections to Structural Steel: Welded connectors.

3.2 GROUNDING UNDERGROUND DISTRIBUTION SYSTEM COMPONENTS

A. Comply with IEEE C2 grounding requirements.

B. Grounding Manholes and Handholes: Install a driven ground rod through manhole or handhole floor, close to wall, and set rod depth so 4 inches will extend above finished floor. If necessary, install ground rod before manhole is placed and provide No. 1/0 AWG bare, copper conductor from ground rod into manhole through a waterproof sleeve in manhole wall. Protect ground rods passing through concrete floor with a double wrapping of pressure-sensitive insulating tape or heat-shrunk insulating sleeve from 2 inches above to 6 inches below concrete. Seal floor opening with waterproof, nonshrink grout.

3.3 EQUIPMENT GROUNDING

A. Install insulated equipment grounding conductors with all feeders and branch circuits.

B. Air-Duct Equipment Circuits: Install insulated equipment grounding conductor to duct-mounted electrical devices operating at 120 V and more, including air cleaners, heaters, dampers, humidifiers, and other duct electrical equipment. Bond conductor to each unit and to air duct and connected metallic piping.

C. Water Heater, Heat-Tracing, and Antifrost Heating Cables: Install a separate insulated equipment grounding conductor to each electric water heater and heat-tracing cable. Bond conductor to heater units, piping, connected equipment, and components.

D. Signal and Communication Equipment: In addition to grounding and bonding required by NFPA 70, provide a separate grounding system complying with requirements in TIA/ATIS J-STD-607-A.

1. For telephone, alarm, voice and data, and other communication equipment, provide No. 4 AWG minimum insulated grounding conductor in raceway from grounding electrode system to each service location, terminal cabinet, wiring closet, and central equipment location.
2. Service and Central Equipment Locations and Wiring Closets: Terminate grounding conductor on a 1/4-by-4-by-12-inch grounding bus.
3. Terminal Cabinets: Terminate grounding conductor on cabinet grounding terminal.

E. Metal Poles Supporting Outdoor Lighting Fixtures: Install grounding electrode and a separate insulated equipment grounding conductor in addition to grounding conductor installed with branch-circuit conductors.

3.4 INSTALLATION

A. Grounding Conductors: Route along shortest and straightest paths possible unless otherwise indicated or required by Code. Avoid obstructing access or placing conductors where they may be subjected to strain, impact, or damage.

B. Ground Rods: Drive rods until tops are 2 inches below finished floor or final grade unless otherwise indicated.

1. Interconnect ground rods with grounding electrode conductor below grade and as otherwise indicated. Make connections without exposing steel or damaging coating if any.

C. Test Wells: Ground rod driven through drilled hole in bottom of handhole. Handholes are specified in Section 260543 "Underground Ducts and Raceways for Electrical Systems," and shall be at least 12 inches deep, with cover.

D. Bonding Straps and Jumpers: Install in locations accessible for inspection and maintenance except where routed through short lengths of conduit.

1. Bonding to Structure: Bond straps directly to basic structure, taking care not to penetrate any adjacent parts.
2. Bonding to Equipment Mounted on Vibration Isolation Hangers and Supports: Install bonding so vibration is not transmitted to rigidly mounted equipment.
3. Use exothermic-welded connectors for outdoor locations; if a disconnect-type connection is required, use a bolted clamp.

E. Grounding and Bonding for Piping:

1. Metal Water Service Pipe: Install insulated copper grounding conductors, in conduit, from building's main service equipment, or grounding bus, to main metal water service entrances to building. Connect grounding conductors to main metal water service pipes; use a bolted clamp connector or bolt a lug-type connector to a pipe flange by using one of the lug bolts of the flange. Where a dielectric main water fitting is installed, connect grounding conductor on street side of fitting. Bond metal grounding conductor conduit or sleeve to conductor at each end.
2. Water Meter Piping: Use braided-type bonding jumpers to electrically bypass water meters. Connect to pipe with a bolted connector.
3. Bond each aboveground portion of gas piping system downstream from equipment shutoff valve.

F. Bonding Interior Metal Ducts: Bond metal air ducts to equipment grounding conductors of associated fans, blowers, electric heaters, and air cleaners. Install bonding jumper to bond across flexible duct connections to achieve continuity.

G. Ufer Ground (Concrete-Encased Grounding Electrode): Fabricate according to NFPA 70; use a minimum of 20 feet of bare copper conductor not smaller than No. 4/0 AWG.

1. If concrete foundation is less than 20 feet long, coil excess conductor within base of foundation.
2. Bond grounding conductor to reinforcing steel in at least four locations and to anchor bolts. Extend grounding conductor below grade and connect to building's grounding grid or to grounding electrode external to concrete.

3.5 LABELING

A. Comply with requirements in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems" for instruction signs. The label or its text shall be green.

B. Install labels at the telecommunications bonding conductor and grounding equalizer and at the grounding electrode conductor where exposed.

1. Label Text: "If this connector or cable is loose or if it must be removed for any reason, notify the facility manager."

3.6 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Perform tests and inspections.

B. Tests and Inspections:

1. After installing grounding system but before permanent electrical circuits have been energized, test for compliance with requirements.
2. Inspect physical and mechanical condition. Verify tightness of accessible, bolted, electrical connections with a calibrated torque wrench according to manufacturer's written instructions.
3. Test completed grounding system at each location where a maximum ground-resistance level is specified, at service disconnect enclosure grounding terminal, at ground test wells, and at individual ground rods. Make tests at ground rods before any conductors are connected.

    a. Measure ground resistance no fewer than two full days after last trace of precipitation and without soil being moistened by any means other than natural drainage or seepage and without chemical treatment or other artificial means of reducing natural ground resistance.
    b. Perform tests by fall-of-potential method according to IEEE 81.

C. Grounding system will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.

D. Report measured ground resistances that exceed the following values:

1. Power and Lighting Equipment or System with Capacity of 500 kVA and Less: 10 ohms.
2. Power and Lighting Equipment or System with Capacity of 500 to 1000 kVA: 5 ohms.
3. Power Distribution Units or Panelboards Serving Electronic Equipment: 3 ohm(s).
4. Substations and Pad-Mounted Equipment: 5 ohms.
5. Manhole Grounds: 10 ohms.

ROCIP Project: Withhold insurance cost. Please refer to sections 00425 & 00810 for information.

E. Excessive Ground Resistance: If resistance to ground exceeds specified values, notify Architect promptly and include recommendations to reduce ground resistance.

END OF SECTION 26 05 26

ROCIP Project: Withhold insurance cost. Please refer to sections 00425 & 00810 for information.

SECTION 26 05 29 - HANGERS AND SUPPORTS FOR ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. This Section includes the following:

1. Hangers and supports for electrical equipment and systems.
2. Construction requirements for concrete bases.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. EMT: Electrical metallic tubing.

B. IMC: Intermediate metal conduit.

C. RMC: Rigid metal conduit.

1.4 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Design supports for multiple raceways capable of supporting combined weight of supported systems and its contents.

B. Design equipment supports capable of supporting combined operating weight of supported equipment and connected systems and components.

Rated Strength: Adequate in tension, shear, and pullout force to resist maximum loads calculated or imposed for this Project, with a minimum structural safety factor of five times the applied force.

1.5 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For the following:

1. Steel slotted support systems.

B. Shop Drawings: Show fabrication and installation details and include calculations for the following:

1. Trapeze hangers. Include Product Data for components.
2. Steel slotted channel systems. Include Product Data for components.
3. Equipment supports.

C. Sustainable Design Submittals:

1. Product Data: For paints and coatings, indicating VOC content.
2. Laboratory Test Reports: For paints and coatings, indicating compliance with requirements for low-emitting materials

1.6 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Welding certificates.

1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Welding: Qualify procedures and personnel according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code - Steel."

B. Comply with NFPA 70.

1.8 COORDINATION

A. Coordinate size and location of concrete bases. Cast anchor-bolt inserts into bases. Concrete, reinforcement, and formwork requirements are specified together with concrete Specifications.

B. Coordinate installation of roof curbs, equipment supports, and roof penetrations. These items are specified in Section 077200 "Roof Accessories."

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 SUPPORT, ANCHORAGE, AND ATTACHMENT COMPONENTS

A. Steel Slotted Support Systems: Comply with MFMA-4, factory-fabricated components for field assembly.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

a. Allied Tube & Conduit.

b. Cooper B-Line, Inc.; a division of Cooper Industries.
c. ERICO International Corporation.
d. GS Metals Corp.
e. Thomas & Betts Corporation.
f. Unistrut; Tyco International, Ltd.
g. Wesanco, Inc.

2. Metallic Coatings: Hot-dip galvanized after fabrication and applied according to MFMA-4.
3. Channel Dimensions: Selected for applicable load criteria.

B. Raceway and Cable Supports: As described in NECA 1 and NECA 101.

C. Conduit and Cable Support Devices: Steel and malleable-iron hangers, clamps, and associated fittings, designed for types and sizes of raceway or cable to be supported.

D. Support for Conductors in Vertical Conduit: Factory-fabricated assembly consisting of threaded body and insulating wedging plug or plugs for non-armored electrical conductors or cables in riser conduits. Plugs shall have number, size, and shape of conductor gripping pieces as required to suit individual conductors or cables supported. Body shall be malleable iron.

E. Structural Steel for Fabricated Supports and Restraints: ASTM A 36/A 36M, steel plates, shapes, and bars; black and galvanized.

F. Mounting, Anchoring, and Attachment Components: Items for fastening electrical items or their supports to building surfaces include the following:

1. Powder-Actuated Fasteners: Threaded-steel stud, for use in hardened portland cement concrete, steel, or wood, with tension, shear, and pullout capacities appropriate for supported loads and building materials where used.

a. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1) Hilti Inc.
2) ITW Ramset/Red Head; a division of Illinois Tool Works, Inc.
3) MKT Fastening, LLC.
4) Simpson Strong-Tie Co., Inc.; Masterset Fastening Systems Unit.

2. Mechanical-Expansion Anchors: Insert-wedge-type, zinc-coated steel, for use in hardened portland cement concrete with tension, shear, and pullout capacities appropriate for supported loads and building materials in which used.

a. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1) Cooper B-Line, Inc.; a division of Cooper Industries.

2) Empire Tool and Manufacturing Co., Inc.
3) Hilti Inc.
4) ITW Ramset/Red Head; a division of Illinois Tool Works, Inc.
5) MKT Fastening, LLC.

3. Concrete Inserts: Steel or malleable-iron, slotted support system units similar to MSS Type 18; complying with MFMA-4 or MSS SP-58.
4. Clamps for Attachment to Steel Structural Elements: MSS SP-58, type suitable for attached structural element.
5. Through Bolts: Structural type, hex head, and high strength. Comply with ASTM A 325.
6. Toggle Bolts: All-steel springhead type.
7. Hanger Rods: Threaded steel.

2.2 FABRICATED METAL EQUIPMENT SUPPORT ASSEMBLIES

A. Description: Welded or bolted, structural-steel shapes, shop or field fabricated to fit dimensions of supported equipment.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 APPLICATION

A. Comply with NECA 1 and NECA 101 for application of hangers and supports for electrical equipment and systems except if requirements in this Section are stricter.

B. Maximum Support Spacing and Minimum Hanger Rod Size for Raceway: Space supports for EMT, IMC, and RMC as scheduled in NECA 1, where its Table 1 lists maximum spacings less than stated in NFPA 70. Minimum rod size shall be 1/4 inch in diameter.

C. Multiple Raceways or Cables: Install trapeze-type supports fabricated with steel slotted support system, sized so capacity can be increased by at least 25 percent in future without exceeding specified design load limits.

1. Secure raceways and cables to these supports with two-bolt conduit clamps.

D. Spring-steel clamps designed for supporting single conduits without bolts may be used for 1-1/2-inch and smaller raceways serving branch circuits and communication systems above suspended ceilings and for fastening raceways to trapeze supports.

3.2 SUPPORT INSTALLATION

A. Comply with NECA 1 and NECA 101 for installation requirements except as specified in this Article.

B. Raceway Support Methods: In addition to methods described in NECA 1, EMT, IMC, and RMC may be supported by openings through structure members, as permitted in NFPA 70. as long as the raceway is securely fastened to the support by means of an approved method. Bailing wire is unacceptable.

C. Strength of Support Assemblies: Where not indicated, select sizes of components so strength will be adequate to carry present and future static loads within specified loading limits. Minimum static design load used for strength determination shall be weight of supported components plus 200 lb.

D. Mounting and Anchorage of Surface-Mounted Equipment and Components: Anchor and fasten electrical items and their supports to building structural elements by the following methods unless otherwise indicated by code:

1. To Wood: Fasten with lag screws or through bolts.
2. To New Concrete: Mount equipment on un-strut bolted to concrete inserts.
3. To Masonry: Mount equipment on un-strut. Approved toggle-type bolts on hollow masonry units and expansion anchor fasteners on solid masonry units.
4. To Existing Concrete: Mount equipment on un-strut use expansion anchor fasteners.
5. Instead of expansion anchors, powder-actuated driven threaded studs provided with lock washers and nuts may be used in existing standard-weight concrete 4 inches thick or greater. Do not use for anchorage to lightweight-aggregate concrete or for slabs less than 4 inches thick.
6. To Steel: Welded threaded studs complying with AWS D1.1/D1.1M, with lock washers and nuts or Beam clamps (MSS Type 19, 21, 23, 25, or 27) complying with MSS SP-69.
7. To Light Steel: Sheet metal screws.
8. Items Mounted on Hollow Walls and Nonstructural Building Surfaces: Mount cabinets, panelboards, disconnect switches, control enclosures, pull and junction boxes, transformers, and other devices on slotted-channel racks attached to substrate.

E. Drill holes for expansion anchors in concrete at locations and to depths that avoid reinforcing bars.

3.3 INSTALLATION OF FABRICATED METAL SUPPORTS

A. Comply with installation requirements in Section 055000 "Metal Fabrications" for site-fabricated metal supports.

B. Cut, fit, and place miscellaneous metal supports accurately in location, alignment, and elevation to support and anchor electrical materials and equipment.

C. Field Welding: Comply with AWS D1.1/D1.1M.

3.4 CONCRETE BASES

A. Construct concrete bases of dimensions indicated but not less than 6 inches larger in both directions than supported unit, and so anchors will be a minimum of 10 bolt diameters from edge of the base.

B. Use 3000-psi), 28-day compressive-strength concrete. Concrete materials, reinforcement, and placement requirements are specified in Section 033000 "Cast-in-Place Concrete."

C. Anchor equipment to concrete base.

1. Place and secure anchorage devices. Use supported equipment manufacturer's setting drawings, templates, diagrams, instructions, and directions furnished with items to be embedded.
2. Install anchor bolts to elevations required for proper attachment to supported equipment.
3. Install anchor bolts according to anchor-bolt manufacturer's written instructions.

3.5 PAINTING

A. Touchup: Comply with requirements in Section 099113 "Exterior Painting", and Section 099123 "Interior Painting" for cleaning and touchup painting of field welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas of shop paint on miscellaneous metal.

1. Sealant shall have a VOC content of 250 g/L or less.

B. Galvanized Surfaces: Clean welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas and apply galvanizing-repair paint to comply with ASTM A 780.

END OF SECTION 26 05 29

ROCIP Project: Withhold insurance cost. Please refer to sections 00425 & 00810 for information.

SECTION 26 05 33 - RACEWAYS AND BOXES FOR ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Metal conduits, tubing, and fittings.
2. Nonmetal conduits, tubing, and fittings.
3. Metal wireways and auxiliary gutters.
4. Boxes, enclosures, and cabinets.
5. Handholes and boxes for exterior underground cabling.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. GRC: Galvanized rigid steel conduit.

B. IMC: Intermediate metal conduit.

C. EMT: Electrical Metallic Tubing

D. FMC: Flexible Metal Conduit

E. LFMC: Liquidtight Flexible Metal Conduit

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For surface raceways, wireways and fittings, floor boxes, hinged-cover enclosures, and cabinets.

B. Shop Drawings: For custom enclosures and cabinets. Include plans, elevations, sections, and attachment details.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Source quality-control reports.

B. Sustainable Design Submittals:

1. Product Data: For solvents and adhesives, indicating VOC content.
2. Laboratory Test Reports: For solvents and adhesives, indicating compliance with requirements for low-emitting materials.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 METAL CONDUITS, TUBING, AND FITTINGS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. AFC Cable Systems, Inc.
2. Allied Tube & Conduit; a Tyco International Ltd. Co.
3. Anamet Electrical, Inc.
4. Electri-Flex Company.
5. O-Z/Gedney; a brand of EGS Electrical Group.
6. Picoma Industries, a subsidiary of Mueller Water Products, Inc.
7. Republic Conduit.
8. Robroy Industries.
9. Southwire Company.
10. Thomas & Betts Corporation.
11. Western Tube and Conduit Corporation.
12. Wheatland Tube Company; a division of John Maneely Company.

B. Listing and Labeling: Metal conduits, tubing, and fittings shall be listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

C. GRC: Comply with ANSI C80.1 and UL 6.

D. IMC: Comply with ANSI C80.6 and UL 1242.

E. EMT: Comply with ANSI C80.3 and UL 797.

F. FMC: Comply with UL 1; zinc-coated steel.

G. LFMC: Flexible steel conduit with PVC jacket and complying with UL 360.

H. Fittings for Metal Conduit: Comply with NEMA FB 1 and UL 514B.

1. Fittings for EMT:

   a. Material: Steel.
   b. Type: compression.

2. Expansion Fittings: PVC or steel to match conduit type, complying with UL 651, rated for environmental conditions where installed, and including flexible external bonding jumper.
3. Coating for Fittings for PVC-Coated Conduit: Minimum thickness of 0.040 inch, with overlapping sleeves protecting threaded joints.

I. Joint Compound for IMC or GRC: Approved, as defined in NFPA 70, by authorities having jurisdiction for use in conduit assemblies, and compounded for use to lubricate and protect threaded conduit joints from corrosion and to enhance their conductivity.

2.2 NONMETALLIC CONDUITS, TUBING, AND FITTINGS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. AFC Cable Systems, Inc.
2. Anamet Electrical, Inc.
3. Arnco Corporation.
4. CANTEX Inc.
5. CertainTeed Corp.
6. Condux International, Inc.
7. Electri-Flex Company.
8. Kraloy.
9. Lamson & Sessions; Carlon Electrical Products.
10. Niedax-Kleinhuis USA, Inc.
11. RACO; a Hubbell company.
12. Thomas & Betts Corporation.

B. Listing and Labeling: Nonmetallic conduits, tubing, and fittings shall be listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

C. RNC: Type EPC-40-PVC, complying with NEMA TC 2 and UL 651 unless otherwise indicated.

D. Fittings for RNC: Comply with NEMA TC 3; match to conduit or tubing type and material.

2.3 METAL WIREWAYS AND AUXILIARY GUTTERS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. Cooper B-Line, Inc.
2. Hoffman; a Pentair company.
3. Mono-Systems, Inc.
4. Square D; a brand of Schneider Electric.

B. Description: Sheet metal, complying with UL 870 and NEMA 250, Type 12 unless otherwise indicated, and sized according to NFPA 70.

1. Metal wireways installed outdoors shall be listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

C. Fittings and Accessories: Include covers, couplings, offsets, elbows, expansion joints, adapters, hold-down straps, end caps, and other fittings to match and mate with wireways as required for complete system.

D. Wireway Covers: Screw-cover type unless otherwise indicated.

E. Finish: Manufacturer's standard enamel finish.

2.4 BOXES, ENCLOSURES, AND CABINETS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. Adalet.
2. Cooper Technologies Company; Cooper Crouse-Hinds.
3. EGS/Appleton Electric.
4. Erickson Electrical Equipment Company.
5. FSR Inc.
6. Hoffman; a Pentair company.
7. Hubbell Incorporated; Killark Division.
8. Kraloy.
9. Milbank Manufacturing Co.
10. Mono-Systems, Inc.
11. O-Z/Gedney; a brand of EGS Electrical Group.
12. RACO; a Hubbell Company.
13. Robroy Industries.
14. Spring City Electrical Manufacturing Company.
15. Stahlin Non-Metallic Enclosures; a division of Robroy Industries.
16. Thomas & Betts Corporation.
17. Wiremold / Legrand.

B. General Requirements for Boxes, Enclosures, and Cabinets: Boxes, enclosures, and cabinets installed in wet locations shall be listed for use in wet locations.

C. Sheet Metal Outlet and Device Boxes: Comply with NEMA OS 1 and UL 514A.

D. Cast-Metal Outlet and Device Boxes: Comply with NEMA FB 1, ferrous alloy, Type FD, with gasketed cover.

E. Metal Floor Boxes:

1. Material: Cast metal.
2. Type: Fully adjustable.
3. Shape: Rectangular.
4. Listing and Labeling: Metal floor boxes shall be listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

F. Luminaire Outlet Boxes: Nonadjustable, designed for attachment of luminaire weighing 50 lb. Outlet boxes designed for attachment of luminaires weighing more than 50 lb shall be listed and marked for the maximum allowable weight.

G. Paddle Fan Outlet Boxes: Nonadjustable, designed for attachment of paddle fan weighing 70 lb.

1. Listing and Labeling: Paddle fan outlet boxes shall be listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

H. Small Sheet Metal Pull and Junction Boxes: NEMA OS 1.

I. Cast-Metal Access, Pull, and Junction Boxes: Comply with NEMA FB 1 and UL 1773, galvanized, cast iron with gasketed cover.

J. Box extensions used to accommodate new building finishes shall be of same material as recessed box.

K. Device Box Dimensions: 4 inches by 2-1/8 inches by 2-1/8 inches deepunless noted otherwise.

L. Gangable boxes are allowed.

M. Hinged-Cover Enclosures: Comply with UL 50 and NEMA 250, Type 1 with continuous-hinge cover with flush latch unless otherwise indicated.

1. Metal Enclosures: Steel, finished inside and out with manufacturer's standard enamel.
2. Interior Panels: Steel; all sides finished with manufacturer's standard enamel.

N. Cabinets:

1. NEMA 250, Type 1 galvanized-steel box with removable interior panel and removable front, finished inside and out with manufacturer's standard enamel.
2. Hinged door in front cover with flush latch and concealed hinge.
3. Key latch to match panelboards.
4. Metal barriers to separate wiring of different systems and voltage.
5. Accessory feet where required for freestanding equipment.
6. Nonmetallic cabinets shall be listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

2.5 HANDHOLES AND BOXES FOR EXTERIOR UNDERGROUND WIRING

A. General Requirements for Handholes and Boxes:

1. Boxes and handholes for use in underground systems shall be designed and identified as defined in NFPA 70, for intended location and application.
2. Boxes installed in wet areas shall be listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

B. Polymer-Concrete Handholes and Boxes with Polymer-Concrete Cover: Molded of sand and aggregate, bound together with polymer resin, and reinforced with steel, fiberglass, or a combination of the two.

1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Hubbell Quazite or comparable product by one of the following:

   a. Armorcast Products Company.
   b. Carson Industries LLC.
   c. CDR Systems Corporation; Hubbell Power Systems.
   d. NewBasis.
   e. Oldcastle Precast, Inc.; Christy Concrete Products.
   f. Synertech Moulded Products; a division of Oldcastle Precast, Inc.

2. Standard: Comply with SCTE 77.
3. Configuration: Designed for flush burial with open bottom unless otherwise indicated.
4. Cover: Weatherproof, secured by tamper-resistant locking devices and having structural load rating consistent with enclosure and handhole location.
5. Cover Finish: Nonskid finish shall have a minimum coefficient of friction of 0.50.
6. Cover Legend: Molded lettering, "ELECTRIC".
7. Conduit Entrance Provisions: Conduit-terminating fittings shall mate with entering ducts for secure, fixed installation in enclosure wall.
8. Handholes 12 Inches Wide by 24 Inches Long and Larger: Have inserts for cable racks and pulling-in irons installed before concrete is poured.

ROCIP Project: Withhold insurance cost. Please refer to sections 00425 & 00810 for information.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 RACEWAY APPLICATION

A. Outdoors: Apply raceway products as specified below unless otherwise indicated:

1. Exposed Conduit: GRC.
2. Concealed Conduit, Aboveground: GRC.
3. Underground Conduit: RNC, Type EPC-40-PVC, concrete encased. Unless noted otherwise.
4. Connection to Vibrating Equipment (Including Transformers and Hydraulic, Pneumatic, Electric Solenoid, or Motor-Driven Equipment): LFMC.
5. Boxes and Enclosures, Aboveground: NEMA 250, Type 3R.

B. Indoors: Apply raceway products as specified below unless otherwise indicated:

1. Exposed, Not Subject to Physical Damage: EMT.
2. Exposed, Not Subject to Severe Physical Damage: EMT.
3. Exposed and Subject to Severe Physical Damage: GRC. Raceway locations include the following:

    a. Loading dock.
    b. Corridors used for traffic of mechanized carts, forklifts, and pallet-handling units.
    c. Mechanical rooms.
    d. Parking garage.

4. Concealed in Ceilings and Interior Walls and Partitions: EMT .
5. Connection to Vibrating Equipment (Including Transformers and Hydraulic, Pneumatic, Electric Solenoid, or Motor-Driven Equipment): FMC, except use LFMC in damp or wet locations.
6. Damp or Wet Locations: GRC.
7. Boxes and Enclosures: NEMA 250, Type 1, except use NEMA 250, Type 4 stainless steel in institutional and commercial kitchens and damp or wet locations.

C. Minimum Raceway Size: 3/4-inch trade size.

D. Raceway Fittings: Compatible with raceways and suitable for use and location.

1. Rigid and Intermediate Steel Conduit: Use threaded rigid steel conduit fittings unless otherwise indicated. Comply with NEMA FB 2.10.
2. PVC Externally Coated, Rigid Steel Conduits: Use only fittings listed for use with this type of conduit. Patch and seal all joints, nicks, and scrapes in PVC coating after installing conduits and fittings. Use sealant recommended by fitting manufacturer and apply in thickness and number of coats recommended by manufacturer.

3. EMT: Use compression, steel fittings. Comply with NEMA FB 2.10.
4. Flexible Conduit: Use only fittings listed for use with flexible conduit. Comply with NEMA FB 2.20.

E. Install surface raceways only where indicated on Drawings.

F. Do not install nonmetallic conduit where ambient temperature exceeds 120 deg F.

3.2 INSTALLATION

A. Comply with NECA 1 and NECA 101 for installation requirements except where requirements on Drawings or in this article are stricter. Comply with NECA 102 for aluminum conduits. Comply with NFPA 70 limitations for types of raceways allowed in specific occupancies and number of floors.

B. Keep raceways at least 6 inches away from parallel runs of flues and steam or hot-water pipes. Install horizontal raceway runs above water and steam piping.

C. Complete raceway installation before starting conductor installation.

D. Comply with requirements in Section 26 05 29 "Hangers and Supports for Electrical Systems" for hangers and supports.

E. Arrange stub-ups so curved portions of bends are not visible above finished slab.

F. Install no more than the equivalent of three 90-degree bends in any conduit run except for control wiring conduits, for which fewer bends are allowed. Support within 12 inches of changes in direction.

G. Conceal conduit and EMT within finished walls, ceilings, and floors unless otherwise indicated. Install conduits parallel or perpendicular to building lines.

H. Support conduit within 12 inches of enclosures to which attached.

I. Raceways Embedded in Slabs are not permitted. All raceways shall be below slab a minimum of 4”.

1. Run conduit larger than 1-inch trade size, parallel or at right angles to main reinforcement. Where at right angles to reinforcement, place conduit close to slab support. Secure raceways to reinforcement at maximum 10-footintervals.
2. Arrange raceways to cross building expansion joints at right angles with expansion fittings.
3. Do not embed threadless fittings in concrete unless specifically approved by Architect for each specific location.
4. Change from ENT to GRC before rising above floor.

J. Stub-ups to Above Recessed Ceilings:

1. Use EMT, IMC, or RMC for raceways.
2. Use a conduit bushing or insulated fitting to terminate stub-ups not terminated in hubs or in an enclosure.

K. Threaded Conduit Joints, Exposed to Wet, Damp, Corrosive, or Outdoor Conditions: Apply listed compound to threads of raceway and fittings before making up joints. Follow compound manufacturer's written instructions.

L. Coat field-cut threads on PVC-coated raceway with a corrosion-preventing conductive compound prior to assembly.

M. Terminate threaded conduits into threaded hubs or with locknuts on inside and outside of boxes or cabinets. Install bushings on conduits up to 1-1/4-inch trade size and insulated throat metal bushings on 1-1/2-inch trade size and larger conduits terminated with locknuts. Install insulated throat metal grounding bushings on service conduits.

N. Install raceways square to the enclosure and terminate at enclosures with locknuts. Install locknuts hand tight plus 1/4 turn more.

O. Do not rely on locknuts to penetrate nonconductive coatings on enclosures. Remove coatings in the locknut area prior to assembling conduit to enclosure to assure a continuous ground path.

P. Cut conduit perpendicular to the length. For conduits 2-inch trade size and larger, use roll cutter or a guide to make cut straight and perpendicular to the length.

Q. Install pull wires in empty raceways. Use polypropylene or monofilament plastic line with not less than 200-lb tensile strength. Leave at least 12 inches of slack at each end of pull wire. Cap underground raceways designated as spare above grade alongside raceways in use.

R. Install raceway sealing fittings at accessible locations according to NFPA 70 and fill them with listed sealing compound. For concealed raceways, install each fitting in a flush steel box with a blank cover plate having a finish similar to that of adjacent plates or surfaces. Install raceway sealing fittings according to NFPA 70.

S. Install devices to seal raceway interiors at accessible locations. Locate seals so no fittings or boxes are between the seal and the following changes of environments. Seal the interior of all raceways at the following points:

1. Where conduits pass from warm to cold locations, such as boundaries of refrigerated spaces.
2. Where an underground service raceway enters a building or structure.
3. Where otherwise required by NFPA 70.

T. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for solvent welding RNC and fittings.

U. Expansion-Joint Fittings:

1. Install in each run of aboveground RNC that is located where environmental temperature change may exceed 30 deg F and that has straight-run length that exceeds 25 feet. Install in each run of aboveground RMC and EMT conduit that is located where environmental temperature change may exceed 100 deg F and that has straight-run length that exceeds 100 feet.
2. Install type and quantity of fittings that accommodate temperature change listed for each of the following locations:

    a. Outdoor Locations Not Exposed to Direct Sunlight: 125 deg F temperature change.
    b. Outdoor Locations Exposed to Direct Sunlight: 155 deg F temperature change.
    c. Indoor Spaces Connected with Outdoors without Physical Separation: 125 deg F temperature change.
    d. Attics: 135 deg F temperature change.

3. Install fitting(s) that provide expansion and contraction for at least 0.00041 inch per foot of length of straight run per deg F of temperature change for PVC conduits. Install fitting(s) that provide expansion and contraction for at least 0.000078 inch per foot of length of straight run per deg F of temperature change for metal conduits.
4. Install expansion fittings at all locations where conduits cross building or structure expansion joints.
5. Install each expansion-joint fitting with position, mounting, and piston setting selected according to manufacturer's written instructions for conditions at specific location at time of installation. Install conduit supports to allow for expansion movement.

V. Flexible Conduit Connections: Comply with NEMA RV 3. Use a maximum of 72 inches of flexible conduit for recessed and semi recessed luminaires, equipment subject to vibration, noise transmission, or movement; and for transformers and motors.

1. Use LFMC in damp or wet locations subject to severe physical damage.
2. Use LFMC in damp or wet locations not subject to severe physical damage.

W. Mount boxes at heights indicated on Drawings. If mounting heights of boxes are not individually indicated, give priority to ADA requirements. Install boxes with height measured to center of box unless otherwise indicated.

X. Recessed Boxes in Masonry Walls: Saw-cut opening for box in center of cell of masonry block, and install box flush with surface of wall. Prepare block surfaces to provide a flat surface for a raintight connection between box and cover plate or supported equipment and box.

Y. Horizontally separate boxes mounted on opposite sides of walls so they are not in the same vertical channel.

Z. Locate boxes so that cover or plate will not span different building finishes.

AA. Support boxes of three gangs or more from more than one side by spanning two framing members or mounting on brackets specifically designed for the purpose.

BB. Fasten junction and pull boxes to or support from building structure. Do not support boxes by conduits.

CC. Set metal floor boxes level and flush with finished floor surface.

DD. Set nonmetallic floor boxes level. Trim after installation to fit flush with finished floor surface.

3.3 INSTALLATION OF UNDERGROUND CONDUIT

A. Direct-Buried Conduit:

1. Excavate trench bottom to provide firm and uniform support for conduit. Prepare trench bottom as specified in Section 120s "Channel Excavation" for pipe less than 6 inches in nominal diameter.
   Install backfill as specified in 120s "Channel Excavation" After installing conduit, backfill and compact. Start at tie-in point, and work toward end of conduit run, leaving conduit at end of run free to move with expansion and contraction as temperature changes during this process. Firmly hand tamp backfill around conduit to provide maximum supporting strength. After placing controlled backfill to within 12 inches of finished grade, make final conduit connection at end of run and complete backfilling with normal compaction as specified in Section 120s "Channel Excavation"
2. Install manufactured rigid steel conduit elbows for stub-ups at poles and equipment and at building entrances through floor.

   a. For stub-ups at equipment mounted on outdoor concrete bases and where conduits penetrate building foundations, extend steel conduit horizontally a minimum of 60 inches from edge of foundation or equipment base. Install insulated grounding bushings on terminations at equipment.

3. Underground Warning Tape: Comply with requirements in Section 26 05 53 "Identification for Electrical Systems."

3.4 INSTALLATION OF UNDERGROUND HANDHOLES AND BOXES

A. Install handholes and boxes level and plumb and with orientation and depth coordinated with connecting conduits to minimize bends and deflections required for proper entrances.

B. Unless otherwise indicated, support units on a level bed of crushed stone or gravel, graded from 1/2-inch sieve to No. 4 sieve and compacted to same density as adjacent undisturbed earth.

C. Elevation: In paved areas, set so cover surface will be flush with finished grade. Set covers of other enclosures 1 inch above finished grade.

D. Install handholes with bottom below frost line, below grade.

E. Install removable hardware, including pulling eyes, cable stanchions, cable arms, and insulators, as required for installation and support of cables and conductors and as indicated. Select arm lengths to be long enough to provide spare space for future cables but short enough to preserve adequate working clearances in enclosure.

3.5 FIRESTOPPING

A. Install firestopping at penetrations of fire-rated floor and wall assemblies. Comply with requirements in Section 07 84 13 "Penetration Firestopping."

3.6 PROTECTION

A. Protect coatings, finishes, and cabinets from damage and deterioration.

1. Repair damage to galvanized finishes with zinc-rich paint recommended by manufacturer.
2. Repair damage to PVC coatings or paint finishes with matching touchup coating recommended by manufacturer.

END OF SECTION 26 05 33

ROCIP Project: Withhold insurance cost. Please refer to sections 00425 & 00810 for information.

SECTION 26 05 53 - IDENTIFICATION FOR ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Identification for raceways.
2. Identification of power and control cables.
3. Identification for conductors.
4. Underground-line warning tape.
5. Warning labels and signs.
6. Instruction signs.
7. Equipment identification labels.
8. Miscellaneous identification products.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each electrical identification product indicated.

B. Identification Schedule: An index of nomenclature of electrical equipment and system components used in identification signs and labels.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Comply with ANSI A13.1 and IEEE C2.

B. Comply with NFPA 70.

C. Comply with 29 CFR 1910.144 and 29 CFR 1910.145.

D. Comply with ANSI Z535.4 for safety signs and labels.

E. Adhesive-attached labeling materials, including label stocks, laminating adhesives, and inks used by label printers, shall comply with UL 969.

1.5 COORDINATION

A. Coordinate identification names, abbreviations, colors, and other features with requirements in other Sections requiring identification applications, Drawings, Shop Drawings, manufacturer's wiring diagrams, and the Operation and Maintenance Manual; and with those required by codes, standards, and 29 CFR 1910.145. Use consistent designations throughout Project.

B. Coordinate installation of identifying devices with completion of covering and painting of surfaces where devices are to be applied.

C. Coordinate installation of identifying devices with location of access panels and doors.

D. Install identifying devices before installing acoustical ceilings and similar concealment.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 POWER AND CONTROL RACEWAY IDENTIFICATION MATERIALS

A. Comply with ANSI A13.1 for minimum size of letters for legend and for minimum length of color field for each raceway size.

B. Colors for Raceways Carrying Circuits at 600 V or Less:

1. Black letters on an orange field.
2. Legend: Indicate voltage and system or service type.

C. Colors for Raceways Carrying Circuits at More Than 600 V:

1. Black letters on an orange field.
2. Legend: "DANGER CONCEALED HIGH VOLTAGE WIRING."

D. Vinyl Labels for Raceways Carrying Circuits at 600 V or Less: Preprinted, flexible label laminated with a clear, weather- and chemical-resistant coating and matching wraparound clear adhesive tape for securing ends of legend label.

2.2 ARMORED AND METAL-CLAD CABLE IDENTIFICATION MATERIALS

A. Comply with ANSI A13.1 for minimum size of letters for legend and for minimum length of color field for each cable size.

B. Colors for Cables Carrying Circuits at 600 V and Less:

1. Black letters on an orange field.
2. Legend: Indicate voltage and system or service type.

C. Vinyl Labels: Preprinted, flexible label laminated with a clear, weather- and chemical-resistant coating and matching wraparound clear adhesive tape for securing ends of legend label.

2.3 POWER AND CONTROL CABLE IDENTIFICATION MATERIALS

A. Comply with ANSI A13.1 for minimum size of letters for legend and for minimum length of color field for each cable size.

B. Vinyl Labels: Preprinted, flexible label laminated with a clear, weather- and chemical-resistant coating and matching wraparound clear adhesive tape for securing ends of legend label.

C. Self-Adhesive, Self-Laminating Polyester Labels: Preprinted , 3-mil- thick flexible label with acrylic pressure-sensitive adhesive that provides a clear, weather- and chemical-resistant, self-laminating, protective shield over the legend. Labels sized to fit the cable diameter such that the clear shield overlaps the entire printed legend.

D. Snap-Around Labels: Slit, pretensioned, flexible, preprinted, color-coded acrylic sleeve, with diameter sized to suit diameter of cable it identifies and to stay in place by gripping action.

2.4 CONDUCTOR IDENTIFICATION MATERIALS

A. Color-Coding Conductor Tape: Colored, self-adhesive vinyl tape not less than 3 mils thick by 1 to 2 inches wide.

B. Self-Adhesive, Self-Laminating Polyester Labels: Preprinted , 3-mil- thick flexible label with acrylic pressure-sensitive adhesive that provides a clear, weather- and chemical-resistant, self-laminating, protective shield over the legend. Labels sized to fit the conductor diameter such that the clear shield overlaps the entire printed legend.

C. Snap-Around Labels: Slit, pretensioned, flexible, preprinted, color-coded acrylic sleeve, with diameter sized to suit diameter of conductor it identifies and to stay in place by gripping action.

2.5 FLOOR MARKING TAPE

A. 2-inch- wide, 5-mil pressure-sensitive vinyl tape, with yellow and black stripes and clear vinyl overlay.

2.6 UNDERGROUND-LINE WARNING TAPE

A. Tape:

1. Recommended by manufacturer for the method of installation and suitable to identify and locate underground electrical and communications utility lines.
2. Printing on tape shall be permanent and shall not be damaged by burial operations.
3. Tape material and ink shall be chemically inert, and not subject to degrading when exposed to acids, alkalis, and other destructive substances commonly found in soils.

B. Color and Printing:

1. Comply with ANSI Z535.1 through ANSI Z535.5.
2. Inscriptions for Red-Colored Tapes: ELECTRIC LINE, HIGH VOLTAGE.
3. Inscriptions for Orange-Colored Tapes: TELEPHONE CABLE, CATV CABLE, COMMUNICATIONS CABLE, OPTICAL FIBER CABLE.

C. Typical unless noted otherwise

1. Reinforced, detectable three-layer laminate, consisting of a printed pigmented woven scrim, a solid aluminum-foil core, and a clear protective film that allows inspection of the continuity of the conductive core, bright-colored, continuous-printed on one side with the inscription of the utility, compounded for direct-burial service.
2. Overall Thickness: 8 mils.
3. Foil Core Thickness: 0.35 mil.
4. Weight: 34 lb/1000 sq. ft.
5. 3-InchTensile According to ASTM D 882: 300 lbf, and 12,500 psi.

2.7 WARNING LABELS AND SIGNS

A. Comply with NFPA 70 and 29 CFR 1910.145.

B. Self-Adhesive Warning Labels: Factory-printed, multicolor, pressure-sensitive adhesive labels, configured for display on front cover, door, or other access to equipment unless otherwise indicated.

C. Warning label and sign shall include, but are not limited to, the following legends:

1. Workspace Clearance Warning: "WARNING - OSHA REGULATION - AREA IN FRONT OF ELECTRICAL EQUIPMENT MUST BE KEPT CLEAR FOR 36 INCHES."
2. Arc Flash Hazard.

2.8 INSTRUCTION SIGNS

A. Adhesive Film Label with Clear Protective Overlay: Machine printed, in black, by thermal transfer or equivalent process. Minimum letter height shall be 3/8 inch. Overlay shall provide a weatherproof and UV-resistant seal for label.

2.9 EQUIPMENT IDENTIFICATION LABELS

A. Engraved, Laminated Acrylic or Melamine Label: Punched or drilled for screw mounting. White letters on a dark-gray background. Minimum letter height shall be 3/8 inch.

2.10 CABLE TIES

A. Plenum-Rated Cable Ties: Self extinguishing, UV stabilized, one piece, self locking.

1. Minimum Width: 3/16 inch.
2. Tensile Strength at 73 deg F, According to ASTM D 638: 7000 psi.
3. UL 94 Flame Rating: 94V-0.
4. Temperature Range: Minus 50 to plus 284 deg F.
5. Color: Black.

2.11 MISCELLANEOUS IDENTIFICATION PRODUCTS

A. Paint: Comply with requirements in painting Sections for paint materials and application requirements. Select paint system applicable for surface material and location (exterior or interior).

B. Fasteners for Labels and Signs: Self-tapping, stainless-steel screws or stainless-steel machine screws with nuts and flat and lock washers.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

A. Verify identity of each item before installing identification products.

B. Location: Install identification materials and devices at locations for most convenient viewing without interference with operation and maintenance of equipment.

C. Apply identification devices to surfaces that require finish after completing finish work.

D. Self-Adhesive Identification Products: Clean surfaces before application, using materials and methods recommended by manufacturer of identification device.

E. Attach signs and plastic labels that are not self-adhesive type with mechanical fasteners appropriate to the location and substrate.

F. System Identification Color-Coding Bands for Raceways and Cables: Each color-coding band shall completely encircle cable or conduit. Place adjacent bands of two-color markings in contact, side by side. Locate bands at changes in direction, at penetrations of walls and floors, at 50-foot maximum intervals in straight runs, and at 25-foot maximum intervals in congested areas.

G. Underground-Line Warning Tape: During backfilling of trenches install continuous underground-line warning tape directly above line at 6 to 8 inches below finished grade. Use multiple tapes where width of multiple lines installed in a common trench or concrete envelope exceeds 16 inches overall.

H. Painted Identification: Comply with requirements in painting Sections for surface preparation and paint application.

3.2 IDENTIFICATION SCHEDULE

A. Accessible Raceways and Metal-Clad Cables, 600 V or Less, for Service, Feeder, and Branch Circuits equal to or greater than 30 A, and 120 V to ground: Identify with self-adhesive vinyl label . Install labels at 30-foot maximum intervals.

B. Accessible Raceways and Cables within Buildings: Identify the covers of each junction and pull box of the following systems with self-adhesive vinyl labels with the wiring system legend and system voltage. System legends shall be as follows:

1. Power.

C. Power-Circuit Conductor Identification, 600 V or Less: For conductors in vaults, pull and junction boxes, manholes, and handholes, use color-coding conductor tape to identify the phase.

1. Color-Coding for Phase and Voltage Level Identification, 600 V or Less: Use colors listed below for ungrounded service feeder and branch-circuit conductors.

a. Color shall be factory applied or field applied for sizes larger than No. 8 AWG, if authorities having jurisdiction permit.
b. Colors for 208/120-V Circuits:

1) Phase A: Red.
2) Phase B: Black.
3) Phase C: Blue.
4) Neutral: White

c. Colors for 480/277-V Circuits:

1) Phase A: Brown.
2) Phase B: Yellow.
3) Phase C: Purple.
4) Neutral: Gray

d. Field-Applied, Color-Coding Conductor Tape: Apply in half-lapped turns for a minimum distance of 6 inches from terminal points and in boxes where splices or taps are made. Apply last two turns of tape with no tension to prevent possible unwinding. Locate bands to avoid obscuring factory cable markings.

D. Power-Circuit Conductor Identification, More than 600 V: For conductors in vaults, pull and junction boxes, manholes, and handholes, use nonmetallic plastic tag holder with adhesive-backed phase tags, and a separate tag with the circuit designation.

E. Install instructional sign including the color-code for grounded and ungrounded conductors using adhesive-film-type labels.

F. Control-Circuit Conductor Identification: For conductors and cables in pull and junction boxes, manholes, and handholes, use self-adhesive vinyl labels with the conductor or cable designation, origin, and destination.

G. Control-Circuit Conductor Termination Identification: For identification at terminations provide self-adhesive vinyl labels with the conductor designation.

H. Conductors to Be Extended in the Future: Attach marker tape to conductors and list source.

I. Auxiliary Electrical Systems Conductor Identification: Identify field-installed alarm, control, and signal connections.

1. Identify conductors, cables, and terminals in enclosures and at junctions, terminals, and pull points. Identify by system and circuit designation.
2. Use system of marker tape designations that is uniform and consistent with system used by manufacturer for factory-installed connections.
3. Coordinate identification with Project Drawings, manufacturer's wiring diagrams, and the Operation and Maintenance Manual.

J. Locations of Underground Lines: Identify with underground-line warning tape for power, lighting, communication, and control wiring and optical fiber cable.

1. Limit use of underground-line warning tape to direct-buried cables.
2. Install underground-line warning tape for both direct-buried cables and cables in raceway.

K. Workspace Indication: Install floor marking tape to show working clearances in the direction of access to live parts. Workspace shall be as required by NFPA 70 and 29 CFR 1926.403 unless otherwise indicated. Do not install at flush-mounted panelboards and similar equipment in finished spaces.

L. Warning Labels for Indoor Cabinets, Boxes, and Enclosures for Power and Lighting: Self-adhesive warning labels.

1. Comply with 29 CFR 1910.145.
2. Identify system voltage with black letters on an orange background.
3. Apply to exterior of door, cover, or other access.

M. Operating Instruction Signs: Install instruction signs to facilitate proper operation and maintenance of electrical systems and items to which they connect. Install instruction signs with approved legend where instructions are needed for system or equipment operation.

N. Equipment Identification Labels: On each unit of equipment, install unique designation label that is consistent with wiring diagrams, schedules, and the Operation and Maintenance Manual. Apply labels to disconnect switches and protection equipment, central or master units, control panels, control stations, terminal cabinets, and racks of each system. Systems include power, lighting, control, communication, signal, monitoring, and alarm systems unless equipment is provided with its own identification.

1. Labeling Instructions:

a. Indoor Equipment: Engraved, laminated acrylic or melamine label. Unless otherwise indicated, provide a single line of text with 1/2-inch- high letters on 1-1/2-inch- high label; where two lines of text are required, use labels 2 inches high.
b. Outdoor Equipment: Engraved, laminated acrylic or melamine label
c. Elevated Components: Increase sizes of labels and letters to those appropriate for viewing from the floor.
d. Fasten labels with appropriate mechanical fasteners that do not change the NEMA or NRTL rating of the enclosure.

2. Equipment to Be Labeled:

a. Panelboards: Typewritten directory of circuits in the location provided by panelboard manufacturer. Panelboard identification shall be engraved, laminated acrylic or melamine label.
b. Enclosures and electrical cabinets.
c. Access doors and panels for concealed electrical items.
d. Switchboards.
e. Transformers: Label that includes tag designation shown on Drawings for the transformer, feeder, and panelboards or equipment supplied by the secondary.
f. Enclosed switches.

g. Enclosed controllers.
h. Variable-speed controllers.
i. Push-button stations.
j. Contactors.
k. Monitoring and control equipment.

END OF SECTION 26 05 53

ROCIP Project: Withhold insurance cost. Please refer to sections 00425 & 00810 for information.

SECTION 26 05 73 - OVERCURRENT PROTECTIVE DEVICE COORDINATION STUDY

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. This Section includes computer-based, fault-current and overcurrent protective device coordination studies. Protective devices shall be set based on results of the protective device coordination study.

1. Coordination of series-rated devices is permitted where indicated on Drawings.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Other Action Submittals: The following submittals shall be made after the approval process for system protective devices has been completed. Submittals may be in digital form. Provide proposed methodology for approval prior to conducting actual study. Proceed with study upon approval of methodology by Engineer and City of Austin.

1. Study and Equipment Evaluation Reports.
2. Coordination-Study Report.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Studies shall use computer programs that are distributed nationally and are in wide use. Software algorithms shall comply with requirements of standards and guides specified in this Section. Manual calculations are not acceptable.

B. Coordination-Study Specialist Qualifications: An entity experienced in the application of computer software used for studies, having performed successful studies of similar magnitude on electrical distribution systems using similar devices.

1. Professional engineer, licensed in the state where Project is located, shall be responsible for the study. All elements of the study shall be performed under the direct supervision and control of engineer.

C. Comply with IEEE 242 for short-circuit currents and coordination time intervals.

D. Comply with IEEE 399 for general study procedures.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 COMPUTER SOFTWARE PROGRAM REQUIREMENTS

A. Comply with IEEE 399.

B. Analytical features of fault-current-study computer software program shall include "mandatory," "very desirable," and "desirable" features as listed in IEEE 399.

C. Computer software program shall be capable of plotting and diagramming time-current-characteristic curves as part of its output. Computer software program shall report device settings and ratings of all overcurrent protective devices and shall demonstrate selective coordination by computer-generated, time-current coordination plots.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine Project overcurrent protective device submittals for compliance with electrical distribution system coordination requirements and other conditions affecting performance. Devices to be coordinated are indicated on Drawings.

1. Proceed with coordination study only after relevant equipment submittals have been assembled. Overcurrent protective devices that have not been submitted and approved prior to coordination study may not be used in study.

3.2 POWER SYSTEM DATA

A. Gather and tabulate the following input data to support coordination study:

1. Product Data for overcurrent protective devices specified in other Division 26 Sections and involved in overcurrent protective device coordination studies. Use equipment designation tags that are consistent with electrical distribution system diagrams, overcurrent protective device submittals, input and output data, and recommended device settings.
2. Impedance of utility service entrance.
3. Electrical Distribution System Diagram: In hard-copy and electronic-copy formats, showing the following:

    a. Circuit-breaker and fuse-current ratings and types.
    b. Relays and associated power and current transformer ratings and ratios.

c. Transformer kilovolt amperes, primary and secondary voltages, connection type, impedance, and X/R ratios.
d. Generator kilovolt amperes, size, voltage, and source impedance.
e. Cables: Indicate conduit material, sizes of conductors, conductor material, insulation, and length.
f. Busway ampacity and impedance.
g. Motor horsepower and code letter designation according to NEMA MG 1.

4. Data sheets to supplement electrical distribution system diagram, cross-referenced with tag numbers on diagram, showing the following:

a. Special load considerations, including starting inrush currents and frequent starting and stopping.
b. Transformer characteristics, including primary protective device, magnetic inrush current, and overload capability.
c. Motor full-load current, locked rotor current, service factor, starting time, type of start, and thermal-damage curve.
d. Generator thermal-damage curve.
e. Ratings, types, and settings of utility company's overcurrent protective devices.
f. Special overcurrent protective device settings or types stipulated by utility company.
g. Time-current-characteristic curves of devices indicated to be coordinated.
h. Manufacturer, frame size, interrupting rating in amperes rms symmetrical, ampere or current sensor rating, long-time adjustment range, short-time adjustment range, and instantaneous adjustment range for circuit breakers.
i. Manufacturer and type, ampere-tap adjustment range, time-delay adjustment range, instantaneous attachment adjustment range, and current transformer ratio for overcurrent relays.
j. Panelboards, switchboards, motor-control center ampacity, and interrupting rating in amperes rms symmetrical.

3.3 FAULT-CURRENT STUDY

A. Calculate the maximum available short-circuit current in amperes rms symmetrical at circuit-breaker positions of the electrical power distribution system. The calculation shall be for a current immediately after initiation and for a three-phase bolted short circuit at each of the following:

1. Switchgear and switchboard bus.
2. Medium-voltage controller.
3. Motor-control center.
4. Distribution panelboard.
5. Branch circuit panelboard.

B. Study electrical distribution system from normal and alternate power sources throughout electrical distribution system for Project. Include studies of system-switching configurations and alternate operations that could result in maximum fault conditions.

C. Calculate momentary and interrupting duties on the basis of maximum available fault current.

D. Calculations to verify interrupting ratings of overcurrent protective devices shall comply with IEEE 141 IEEE 241 and IEEE 242.

1. Transformers:

   a. ANSI C57.12.10.
   b. ANSI C57.12.22.
   c. ANSI C57.12.40.
   d. IEEE C57.12.00.
   e. IEEE C57.96.

2. Medium-Voltage Circuit Breakers: IEEE C37.010.
3. Low-Voltage Circuit Breakers: IEEE 1015 and IEEE C37.20.1.
4. Low-Voltage Fuses: IEEE C37.46.

E. Study Report:

1. Show calculated X/R ratios and equipment interrupting rating (1/2-cycle) fault currents on electrical distribution system diagram.
2. Show interrupting (5-cycle) and time-delayed currents (6 cycles and above) on medium-voltage breakers as needed to set relays and assess the sensitivity of overcurrent relays.

F. Equipment Evaluation Report:

1. For 600-V overcurrent protective devices, ensure that interrupting ratings are equal to or higher than calculated 1/2-cycle symmetrical fault current.
2. For devices and equipment rated for asymmetrical fault current, apply multiplication factors listed in the standards to 1/2-cycle symmetrical fault current.
3. Verify adequacy of phase conductors at maximum three-phase bolted fault currents; verify adequacy of equipment grounding conductors and grounding electrode conductors at maximum ground-fault currents. Ensure that short-circuit withstand ratings are equal to or higher than calculated 1/2-cycle symmetrical fault current.

3.4 COORDINATION STUDY

A. Perform coordination study using approved computer software program. Prepare a written report using results of fault-current study. Comply with IEEE 399.

1. Calculate the maximum and minimum 1/2-cycle short-circuit currents.
2. Calculate the maximum and minimum interrupting duty (5 cycles to 2 seconds) short-circuit currents.
3. Calculate the maximum and minimum ground-fault currents.

B. Comply with IEEE 141 IEEE 241 IEEE 242 recommendations for fault currents and time intervals.

C. Transformer Primary Overcurrent Protective Devices:

1. Device shall not operate in response to the following:

a. Inrush current when first energized.
b. Self-cooled, full-load current or forced-air-cooled, full-load current, whichever is specified for that transformer.
c. Permissible transformer overloads according to IEEE C57.96 if required by unusual loading or emergency conditions.

2. Device settings shall protect transformers according to IEEE C57.12.00, for fault currents.

D. Motors served by voltages more than 600 V shall be protected according to IEEE 620.

E. Conductor Protection: Protect cables against damage from fault currents according to ICEA P-32-382, ICEA P-45-482, and conductor melting curves in IEEE 242. Demonstrate that equipment withstands the maximum short-circuit current for a time equivalent to the tripping time of the primary relay protection or total clearing time of the fuse. To determine temperatures that damage insulation, use curves from cable manufacturers or from listed standards indicating conductor size and short-circuit current.

F. Coordination-Study Report: Prepare a written report indicating the following results of coordination study:

1. Tabular Format of Settings Selected for Overcurrent Protective Devices:

a. Device tag.
b. Relay-current transformer ratios; and tap, time-dial, and instantaneous-pickup values.
c. Circuit-breaker sensor rating; and long-time, short-time, and instantaneous settings.
d. Fuse-current rating and type.
e. Ground-fault relay-pickup and time-delay settings.

2. Coordination Curves: Prepared to determine settings of overcurrent protective devices to achieve selective coordination. Graphically illustrate that adequate time separation exists between devices installed in series, including power utility company's upstream devices. Prepare separate sets of curves for the switching schemes and for emergency periods where the power source is local generation. Show the following information:

    a. Device tag.
    b. Voltage and current ratio for curves.
    c. Three-phase and single-phase damage points for each transformer.
    d. No damage, melting, and clearing curves for fuses.
    e. Cable damage curves.
    f. Transformer inrush points.
    g. Maximum fault-current cutoff point.

G. Completed data sheets for setting of overcurrent protective devices.

END OF SECTION 26 05 73

ROCIP Project: Withhold insurance cost. Please refer to sections 00425 & 00810 for information.

SECTION 26 05 75 - ARC FLASH HAZARD ANALYSIS STUDY

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Division 260573 Overcurrent Protective Device Coordination Study.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. This Section includes, once the data has been collected, a short circuit analysis followed by a coordination study should be performed. The resultant data can then be fed into the equations described by either NFPA 70E-2000 or IEEE Standard 1584-2002. These equations will produce the necessary flash protection boundary distances and incident energy to determine the minimum PPE requirement. Protective devices shall be set based on results of the protective device coordination study.

1. Coordination of series-rated devices is permitted where indicated on Drawings.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Other Action Submittals: The following submittals shall be made after the approval process of methodology has been completed. Submittals may be in digital form. Provide proposed methodology for approval prior to conducting actual study. Proceed with study upon approval of methodology by Engineer and City of Austin.

1. Arc Flash Hazard Study.
2. Personal Protective Equipment (PPE) recommendations based on the Study.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Studies shall use computer programs that are distributed nationally and are in wide use. Manual calculations are not acceptable.

B. Comply with NFPA 70E for approved equations and procedures.

C. Comply with IEEE 1584 for approved equations and procedures.

ROCIP Project: Withhold insurance cost. Please refer to sections 00425 & 00810 for information.

1.5 REFERENCES

A. Institute of Electrical and Electronics Engineers, Inc. (IEEE):

1. IEEE 141 – Recommended Practice for Electric Power Distribution and Coordination of Industrial and Commercial Power Systems
2. IEEE 242 – Recommended Practice for Protection and Coordination of Industrial and Commercial Power Systems
3. IEEE 399 – Recommended Practice for Industrial and Commercial Power System Analysis
4. IEEE 241 – Recommended Practice for Electric Power Systems in Commercial Buildings
5. IEEE 1015 – Recommended Practice for Applying Low-Voltage Circuit Breakers Used in ndustrial and Commercial Power Systems.
6. IEEE 1584 - Guide for Performing Arc-Flash Hazard Calculations

B. American National Standards Institute (ANSI):

1. ANSI C57.12.00 – Standard General Requirements for Liquid-Immersed Distribution, Power, and Regulating Transformers
2. ANSI C37.13 – Standard for Low Voltage AC Power Circuit Breakers Used in Enclosures
3. ANSI C37.010 – Standard Application Guide for AC High Voltage Circuit Breakers Rated on a Symmetrical Current Basis SHORT-CIRCUIT/COORDINATION STUDY/ARC FLASH HAZARD ANALYSIS SKM SYSTEMS ANALYSIS, INC. www.skm.com SECTION 12345, Copyright ©2007 SKM Systems Analysis, Inc. 12345-3 DATE
4. ANSI C 37.41 – Standard Design Tests for High Voltage Fuses, Distribution Enclosed Single-Pole Air Switches, Fuse Disconnecting Switches and Accessories.

C. The National Fire Protection Association (NFPA)

1. NFPA 70 - National Electrical Code, latest edition
2. NFPA 70E – Standard for Electrical Safety in the Workplace

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 COMPUTER SOFTWARE PROGRAM REQUIREMENTS

A. Comply with NFPA 70E and IEEE 1584.

ROCIP Project: Withhold insurance cost. Please refer to sections 00425 & 00810 for information.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 ARC FLASH WARNING LABELS

A. The contractor of the Arc Flash Hazard Analysis shall provide a 3.5 in. x 5 in. thermal transfer type label of high adhesion polyester for each work location analyzed.

B. All labels will be based on recommended overcurrent device settings and will be provided after the results of the analysis have been presented to the owner and after any system changes, upgrades or modifications have been incorporated in the system.

C. The label shall include the following information, at a minimum:

1. Location designation
2. Nominal voltage
3. Flash protection boundary
4. Hazard risk category
5. Incident energy
6. Working distance
7. Engineering report number, revision number and issue date.

D. Labels shall be machine printed, with no field markings.

E. Arc flash labels shall be provided in the following manner and all labels shall be based on recommended overcurrent device settings.

1. For each 600, 480 and applicable 208 volt panelboard, one arc flash label shall be provided.
2. For each motor control center, one arc flash label shall be provided.
3. For each low voltage switchboard, one arc flash label shall be provided.
4. For each switchgear, one flash label shall be provided.
5. For medium voltage switches one arc flash label shall be provided

F. Labels shall be field installed.

3.2 TRAINING

A. The contractor of the arc flash study shall train the owner's qualified electrical personnel of the potential arc flash hazards associated with working on energized

B. The contractor of the arc flash study shall train the owner's qualified electrical personnel of the potential arc flash hazards associated with working on energized equipment (minimum of 4 hours).

END OF SECTION 26 05 75

ROCIP Project: Withhold insurance cost. Please refer to sections 00425 & 00810 for information.

SECTION 26 09 23 - LIGHTING CONTROL DEVICES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Time switches.
2. Photoelectric switches.
3. Standalone daylight-harvesting switching controls.
4. Indoor occupancy sensors.
5. Lighting contactors.

B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 262726 "Wiring Devices" for wall-box dimmers, wall-switch occupancy sensors, and manual light switches.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.

B. Shop Drawings: Show installation details for occupancy and light-level sensors.

1. Interconnection diagrams showing field-installed wiring.
2. Include diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Field quality-control reports.

1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For each type of lighting control device to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 TIME SWITCHES

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. Cooper Industries, Inc.
2. Intermatic, Inc.
3. NSi Industries LLC.

B. Electronic Time Switches: Solid state, programmable, with alphanumeric display; complying with UL 917.

1. Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
2. Contact Configuration: SPST.
3. Contact Rating: 30-A inductive or resistive, 240-V ac.
4. Circuitry: Allow connection of a photoelectric relay as substitute for on-off function of a program.
5. Astronomic Time: All channels.
6. Automatic daylight savings time changeover.
7. Battery Backup: Not less than seven days reserve, to maintain schedules and time clock.

2.2 OUTDOOR PHOTOELECTRIC SWITCHES

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:

1. Cooper Industries, Inc.
2. Intermatic, Inc.
3. NSi Industries LLC.

B. Description: Solid state, with SPST dry contacts rated for 1800-VA tungsten or 1000-VA inductive, to operate connected relay, contactor coils, or microprocessor input; complying with UL 773A.

1. Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
2. Light-Level Monitoring Range: 1.5 to 10 fc (16.14 to 108 lux), with an adjustment for turn-on and turn-off levels within that range, and a directional lens in front of the photocell to prevent fixed light sources from causing turn-off.
3. Time Delay: Fifteen second minimum, to prevent false operation.
4. Surge Protection: Metal-oxide varistor.

5. Mounting: Twist lock complies with NEMA C136.10, with base-and-stem mounting or stem-and-swivel mounting accessories as required to direct sensor to the north sky exposure.

2.3 DAYLIGHT-HARVESTING DIMMING CONTROLS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following:

1. Philips Lighting Controls.
2. Hubbell building automation
3. Wattstopper

B. System Description: Sensing daylight and electrical lighting levels, the system adjusts the indoor electrical lighting levels. As daylight increases, the lights are dimmed.

1. Lighting control set point is based on two lighting conditions:

   a. When no daylight is present (target level).
   b. When significant daylight is present.

2. System programming is done with two hand-held, remote-control tools.

   a. Initial setup tool.
   b. Tool for occupants to adjust the target levels by increasing the set point up to 25 percent, or by minimizing the electric lighting level.

C. Ceiling-Mounted Dimming Controls: Solid-state, light-level sensor unit, with separate controller unit, to detect changes in lighting levels that are perceived by the eye.

1. Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
2. Sensor Output: 0- to 10-V dc to operate electronic dimming ballasts. Sensor is powered by controller unit.
3. Power Pack: Sensor has 24-V dc, Class 2 power source, as defined by NFPA 70.
4. Light-Level Sensor Set-Point Adjustment Range: 20 to 60 fc (120 to 640 lux).

2.4 INDOOR OCCUPANCY SENSORS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following:

1. Phillips Lighting Controls.
2. Hubbell building automation
3. Wattstopper

B. General Requirements for Sensors: Wall- or ceiling-mounted, solid-state indoor occupancy sensors with a separate power pack.

1. Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
2. Operation: Unless otherwise indicated, turn lights on when coverage area is occupied, and turn them off when unoccupied; with a time delay for turning lights off, adjustable over a minimum range of 1 to 15 minutes.
3. Sensor Output: Contacts rated to operate the connected relay, complying with UL 773A. Sensor is powered from the power pack.
4. Power Pack: Dry contacts rated for 20-A ballast load at 120- and 277-V ac, for 13-A tungsten at 120-V ac, and for 1 hp at 120-V ac. Sensor has 24-V dc, 150-mA, Class 2 power source, as defined by NFPA 70.
5. Mounting:

    a. Sensor: Suitable for mounting in any position on a standard outlet box.
    b. Relay: Externally mounted through a 1/2-inch (13-mm) knockout in a standard electrical enclosure.
    c. Time-Delay and Sensitivity Adjustments: Recessed and concealed behind hinged door.

6. Indicator: Digital display, to show when motion is detected during testing and normal operation of sensor.
7. Bypass Switch: Override the "on" function in case of sensor failure.
8. Automatic Light-Level Sensor: Adjustable from 2 to 200 fc (21.5 to 2152 lux); turn lights off when selected lighting level is present.

C. Dual-Technology Type: Ceiling mounted; detect occupants in coverage area using PIR and ultrasonic detection methods. The particular technology or combination of technologies that control on-off functions is selectable in the field by operating controls on unit.

1. Sensitivity Adjustment: Separate for each sensing technology.
2. Detector Sensitivity: Detect occurrences of 6-inch- (150-mm-) minimum movement of any portion of a human body that presents a target of not less than 36 sq. in. (232 sq. cm), and detect a person of average size and weight moving not less than 12 inches (305 mm) in either a horizontal or a vertical manner at an approximate speed of 12 inches/s (305 mm/s).
3. Detection Coverage (Standard Room): Detect occupancy anywhere within a circular area of 1000 sq. ft. (93 sq. m) when mounted on a 96-inch- (2440-mm-) high ceiling.

2.5 LIGHTING CONTACTORS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following:

1. Eaton Corporation.
2. General Electric Company.
3. Square D.

B. Description: Electrically operated and electrically held, combination-type lighting contactors with nonfused disconnect, complying with NEMA ICS 2 and UL 508.

1. Current Rating for Switching: Listing or rating consistent with type of load served, including tungsten filament, inductive, and high-inrush ballast (ballast with 15 percent or less total harmonic distortion of normal load current).
2. Fault Current Withstand Rating: Equal to or exceeding the available fault current at the point of installation.
3. Enclosure: Comply with NEMA 250.
4. Provide with control and pilot devices as indicated on Drawings, matching the NEMA type specified for the enclosure.

2.6 CONDUCTORS AND CABLES

A. Power Wiring to Supply Side of Remote-Control Power Sources: Not smaller than No. 12 AWG. Comply with requirements in Section 260519 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."

B. Classes 2 and 3 Control Cable: Multiconductor cable with stranded-copper conductors not smaller than No. 18 AWG. Comply with requirements in Section 260519 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."

C. Class 1 Control Cable: Multiconductor cable with stranded-copper conductors not smaller thanNo. 14 AWG. Comply with requirements in Section 260519 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 SENSOR INSTALLATION

A. Coordinate layout and installation of ceiling-mounted devices with other construction that penetrates ceilings or is supported by them, including light fixtures, HVAC equipment, smoke detectors, fire-suppression systems, and partition assemblies.

B. Install and aim sensors in locations to achieve not less than 90 percent coverage of areas indicated. Do not exceed coverage limits specified in manufacturer's written instructions.

3.2 CONTACTOR INSTALLATION

A. Mount electrically held lighting contactors with elastomeric isolator pads to eliminate structure-borne vibration, unless contactors are installed in an enclosure with factory-installed vibration isolators.

3.3 WIRING INSTALLATION

A. Wiring Method: Comply with Section 260519 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables." Minimum conduit size is 1/2 inch (13 mm).

B. Wiring within Enclosures: Comply with NECA 1. Separate power-limited and nonpower-limited conductors according to conductor manufacturer's written instructions.

C. Size conductors according to lighting control device manufacturer's written instructions unless otherwise indicated.

D. Splices, Taps, and Terminations: Make connections only on numbered terminal strips in junction, pull, and outlet boxes; terminal cabinets; and equipment enclosures.

3.4 IDENTIFICATION

A. Identify components and power and control wiring according to Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."

1. Identify controlled circuits in lighting contactors.
2. Identify circuits or luminaires controlled by photoelectric and occupancy sensors at each sensor.

B. Label time switches and contactors with a unique designation.

3.5 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to test and inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections.

B. Perform the following tests and inspections with the assistance of a factory-authorized service representative:

1. Operational Test: After installing time switches and sensors, and after electrical circuitry has been energized, start units to confirm proper unit operation.
2. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.

C. Lighting control devices will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.

D. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.6 ADJUSTING

A. Occupancy Adjustments: When requested within 12 months from date of Substantial Completion, provide on-site assistance in adjusting sensors to suit actual occupied conditions. Provide up to two visits to Project during other-than-normal occupancy hours for this purpose.

1. For occupancy and motion sensors, verify operation at outer limits of detector range. Set time delay to suit Owner's operations.
2. For daylighting controls, adjust set points and deadband controls to suit Owner's operations.

3.7 DEMONSTRATION

A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain lighting control devices.

END OF SECTION 26 09 23

SECTION 26 24 16 - PANELBOARDS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Distribution panelboards.
2. Lighting and appliance branch-circuit panelboards.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. SVR: Suppressed voltage rating.

B. TVSS: Transient voltage surge suppressor.

1.4 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

1.5 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of panelboard, switching and overcurrent protective device, transient voltage suppression device, accessory, and component indicated. Include dimensions and manufacturers' technical data on features, performance, electrical characteristics, ratings, and finishes.

B. Shop Drawings: For each panelboard and related equipment.

1. Include dimensioned plans, elevations, sections, and details. Show tabulations of installed devices, equipment features, and ratings.
2. Detail enclosure types and details for types other than NEMA 250, Type 1.
3. Detail bus configuration, current, and voltage ratings.
4. Short-circuit current rating of panelboards and overcurrent protective devices.
5. Detail features, characteristics, ratings, and factory settings of individual overcurrent protective devices and auxiliary components.
6. Include wiring diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.
7. Include time-current coordination curves for each type and rating of overcurrent protective device included in panelboards. INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

C. Qualification Data: For qualified testing agency.

D. Field Quality-Control Reports:

1. Test procedures used.
2. Test results that comply with requirements.
3. Results of failed tests and corrective action taken to achieve test results that comply with requirements.

E. Panelboard Schedules: For installation in panelboards. Submit final versions after load balancing.

1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For panelboards and components to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals. In addition to items specified in Section 01730 "Operation and Maintenance Data," include the following:

1. Manufacturer's written instructions for testing and adjusting overcurrent protective devices.
2. Time-current curves, including selectable ranges for each type of overcurrent protective device that allows adjustments.

1.7 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.

1. Keys: Two spares for each type of panelboard cabinet lock.

1.8 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Testing Agency Qualifications: Member company of NETA or an NRTL.

1. Testing Agency's Field Supervisor: Currently certified by NETA to supervise on-site testing.

B. Source Limitations: Obtain panelboards, overcurrent protective devices, components, and accessories from single source from single manufacturer.

C. Product Selection for Restricted Space: Drawings indicate maximum dimensions for panelboards including clearances between panelboards and adjacent surfaces and other items. Comply with indicated maximum dimensions.

D. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

E. Comply with NEMA PB 1.

F. Comply with NFPA 70.

1.9 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Remove loose packing and flammable materials from inside panelboards; install temporary electric heating (250 W per panelboard) to prevent condensation.

B. Handle and prepare panelboards for installation according to NECA 407.

1.10 PROJECT CONDITIONS

A. Environmental Limitations:

1. Do not deliver or install panelboards until spaces are enclosed and weathertight, wet work in spaces is complete and dry, work above panelboards is complete, and temporary HVAC system is operating and maintaining ambient temperature and humidity conditions at occupancy levels during the remainder of the construction period.
2. Rate equipment for continuous operation under the following conditions unless otherwise indicated:

    a. Ambient Temperature: Not exceeding 23 deg F to plus 104 deg F.
    b. Altitude: Not exceeding 6600 feet.

B. Service Conditions: NEMA PB 1, usual service conditions, as follows:

1. Ambient temperatures within limits specified.
2. Altitude not exceeding 6600 feet.

1.11 COORDINATION

A. Coordinate layout and installation of panelboards and components with other construction that penetrates walls or is supported by them, including electrical and other types of equipment, raceways, piping, encumbrances to workspace clearance requirements, and adjacent surfaces. Maintain required workspace clearances and required clearances for equipment access doors and panels.

B. Coordinate sizes and locations of concrete bases with actual equipment provided. Cast anchor-bolt inserts into bases. Concrete, reinforcement, and formwork requirements are specified with concrete.

1.12 WARRANTY

A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair or replace transient voltage suppression devices that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.

1. Warranty Period: 2 years from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS FOR PANELBOARDS

A. Enclosures: Flush- and surface-mounted cabinets, refer to construction drawings

1. Rated for environmental conditions at installed location.

   a. Indoor Dry and Clean Locations: NEMA 250, Type 1.
   b. Outdoor Locations: NEMA 250, Type 3R Insert type.
   c. Kitchen Areas: NEMA 250, Type 4X, stainless steel.
   d. Other Wet or Damp Indoor Locations: NEMA 250, Type 4.

2. Hinged Front Cover: Entire front trim hinged to box and with standard door within hinged trim cover.
3. Finishes:

   a. Panels and Trim: Steel, factory finished immediately after cleaning and pretreating with manufacturer's standard two-coat, baked-on finish consisting of prime coat and thermosetting topcoat.
   b. Back Boxes: Galvanized steel.
   c. Fungus Proofing: Permanent fungicidal treatment for overcurrent protective devices and other components.

4. Directory Card: Inside panelboard door, mounted in transparent card holder.

B. Phase, Neutral, and Ground Buses:

1. Material: Hard-drawn copper, 98 percent conductivity.
2. Equipment Ground Bus: Adequate for feeder and branch-circuit equipment grounding conductors; bonded to box.

C. Conductor Connectors: Suitable for use with conductor material and sizes.

1. Material: Hard-drawn copper, 98 percent conductivity.
2. Main and Neutral Lugs: Mechanical type.
3. Ground Lugs and Bus-Configured Terminators: Mechanical type.

4. Feed-Through Lugs: Mechanical type, suitable for use with conductor material. Locate at opposite end of bus from incoming lugs or main device.

D. Service Equipment Label: NRTL labeled for use as service equipment for panelboards or load centers with one or more main service disconnecting and overcurrent protective devices.

E. Future Devices: Mounting brackets, bus connections, filler plates, and necessary appurtenances required for future installation of devices.

F. Panelboard Short-Circuit Current Rating: Fully rated to interrupt symmetrical short-circuit current available at terminals.

2.2 DISTRIBUTION PANELBOARDS

A. Basis-of-Design Product: Eaton Cutler-Hammer. Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:

1. General Electric Company; Electrical Distribution & Control Division.
2. Siemens Energy & Automation, Inc.
3. Square D.

B. Panelboards: NEMA PB 1, power and feeder distribution type.

C. Doors: Secured with vault-type latch with tumbler lock; keyed alike.

1. For doors more than 36 inches high, provide two latches, keyed alike.

D. Mains: Refer to construction drawings.

E. Branch Overcurrent Protective Devices for Circuit-Breaker Frame Sizes Larger than 125 A: Bolt-on circuit breakers; plug-in circuit breakers where individual positive-locking device requires mechanical release for removal.

2.3 LIGHTING AND APPLIANCE BRANCH-CIRCUIT PANELBOARDS

A. Basis-of-Design Product: Eaton Cutler-Hammer. Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:

1. General Electric Company; Electrical Distribution & Control Division.
2. Siemens Energy & Automation, Inc.
3. Square D.

B. Panelboards: NEMA PB 1, lighting and appliance branch-circuit type.

C. Mains: Refer to construction documents.

D. Branch Overcurrent Protective Devices: Bolt-on circuit breakers, replaceable without disturbing adjacent units.

E. Doors: Concealed hinges; secured with flush latch with tumbler lock; keyed alike.

2.4 DISCONNECTING AND OVERCURRENT PROTECTIVE DEVICES

A. Basis-of-Design Product: Eaton Cutler-Hammer. Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:

1. General Electric Company; Electrical Distribution & Control Division.
2. Siemens Energy & Automation, Inc.
3. Square D.

B. Molded-Case Circuit Breaker (MCCB): Comply with UL 489, with interrupting capacity to meet available fault currents.

1. Thermal-Magnetic Circuit Breakers: Inverse time-current element for low-level overloads, and instantaneous magnetic trip element for short circuits. Adjustable magnetic trip setting for circuit-breaker frame sizes 250 A and larger.
2. Adjustable Instantaneous-Trip Circuit Breakers: Magnetic trip element with front-mounted, field-adjustable trip setting.
3. Electronic trip circuit breakers with rms sensing; field-replaceable rating plug or field-replicable electronic trip; and the following field-adjustable settings:

    a. Instantaneous trip.
    b. Long- and short-time pickup levels.
    c. Long- and short-time time adjustments.
    d. Ground-fault pickup level, time delay, and I^2t response.

4. Current-Limiting Circuit Breakers: Frame sizes 400 A and smaller; let-through ratings less than NEMA FU 1, RK-5.
5. GFCI Circuit Breakers: Single- and two-pole configurations with Class A ground-fault protection (6-mA trip).
6. Molded-Case Circuit-Breaker (MCCB) Features and Accessories:

    a. Standard frame sizes, trip ratings, and number of poles.
    b. Lugs: Mechanical style, suitable for number, size, trip ratings, and conductor materials.
    c. Application Listing: Appropriate for application; Type SWD for switching fluorescent lighting loads; Type HID for feeding fluorescent and high-intensity discharge (HID) lighting circuits.

d. Ground-Fault Protection: Integrally mounted relay and trip unit with adjustable pickup and time-delay settings, push-to-test feature, and ground-fault indicator.
e. Shunt Trip: 120 -V trip coil energized from separate circuit, set to trip at 55 percent of rated voltage.
f. Undervoltage Trip: Set to operate at 35 to 75 percent of rated voltage without intentional time delay.
g. Handle Padlocking Device: Fixed attachment, or locking circuit-breaker handle in on or off position.

2.5 PANELBOARD SUPPRESSORS

A. Basis-of-Design Product: Eaton Cutler-Hammer. Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:

1. General Electric Company; Electrical Distribution & Control Division.
2. Siemens Energy & Automation, Inc.
3. Square D.

B. Surge Protection Device: IEEE C62.41-compliant, integrally mounted, bolt-on, solid-state, parallel-connected, modular (with field-replaceable modules) type, with sine-wave tracking suppression and filtering modules, UL 1449, second edition, short-circuit current rating matching or exceeding the panelboard short-circuit rating, and with the following features and accessories:

1. Accessories:

a. Fuses rated at 200-kA interrupting capacity.
b. Fabrication using bolted compression lugs for internal wiring.
c. Integral disconnect switch.
d. Redundant suppression circuits.
e. Redundant replaceable modules.
f. Arrangement with wire connections to phase buses, neutral bus, and ground bus.
g. LED indicator lights for power and protection status.
h. Audible alarm, with silencing switch, to indicate when protection has failed.
i. Form-C contacts rated at 5 A and 250-V ac, one normally open and one normally closed, for remote monitoring of system operation. Contacts shall reverse position on failure of any surge diversion module or on opening of any current-limiting device. Coordinate with building power monitoring and control system.
j. Six-digit, transient-event counter set to totalize transient surges.

2. Peak Single-Impulse Surge Current Rating: 120 kA per mode/240 kA per phase.

3. Minimum single-impulse current ratings, using 8-by-20-mic.sec. waveform described in IEEE C62.41.2.

    a. Line to Neutral: 70,000 A.
    b. Line to Ground: 70,000 A.
    c. Neutral to Ground: 50,000 A.

4. Withstand Capabilities: 12,000 IEEE C62.41, Category C3 (10 kA), 8-by-20-mic.sec. surges with less than 5 percent change in clamping voltage.
5. Protection modes and UL 1449 SVR for grounded wye circuits with 208Y/120 - V, three-phase, four-wire circuits shall be as follows:

    a. Line to Neutral: 400 V for 208Y/120.
    b. Line to Ground: 400 V for 208Y/120.
    c. Neutral to Ground: 400 V for 208Y/120.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Receive, inspect, handle, and store panelboards according to NECA 407.

B. Examine panelboards before installation. Reject panelboards that are damaged or rusted or have been subjected to water saturation.

C. Examine elements and surfaces to receive panelboards for compliance with installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.

D. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION

A. Install panelboards and accessories according to NECA 407.

B. Equipment Mounting: Install panelboards on concrete bases, 4-inch nominal thickness. Comply with requirements for concrete base specified in Series 400 "Concrete Structures and Miscellaneous Concrete".

C. Install dowel rods to connect concrete base to concrete floor. Unless otherwise indicated, install dowel rods on 18-inch centers around full perimeter of base.

    1. For panelboards, install epoxy-coated anchor bolts that extend through concrete base and anchor into structural concrete floor.
    2. Place and secure anchorage devices. Use setting drawings, templates, diagrams, instructions, and directions furnished with items to be embedded.
    3. Install anchor bolts to elevations required for proper attachment to panelboards.

4. Attach panelboard to the vertical finished or structural surface behind the panelboard.

D. Temporary Lifting Provisions: Remove temporary lifting eyes, channels, and brackets and temporary blocking of moving parts from panelboards.

E. Mount top of trim 90 inches above finished floor unless otherwise indicated.

F. Mount panelboard cabinet plumb and rigid without distortion of box. Mount recessed panelboards with fronts uniformly flush with wall finish and mating with back box.

G. Install overcurrent protective devices and controllers not already factory installed.

1. Set field-adjustable, circuit-breaker trip ranges.

H. Install filler plates in unused spaces.

I. Stub four 1-inch empty conduits from panelboard into accessible ceiling space or space designated to be ceiling space in the future. Stub four 1-inch empty conduits into raised floor space or below slab not on grade.

J. Arrange conductors in gutters into groups and bundle and wrap with wire ties after completing load balancing.

K. Comply with NECA 1.

3.3 IDENTIFICATION

A. Identify field-installed conductors, interconnecting wiring, and components; provide warning signs complying with Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."

B. Create a directory to indicate installed circuit loads after balancing panelboard loads; incorporate Owner's final room designations. Obtain approval before installing. Use a computer or typewriter to create directory; handwritten directories are not acceptable.

C. Panelboard Nameplates: Label each panelboard with a nameplate complying with requirements for identification specified in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."

D. Device Nameplates: Label each branch circuit device in distribution panelboards with a nameplate complying with requirements for identification specified in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."

3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Perform tests and inspections.

B. Acceptance Testing Preparation:

1. Test insulation resistance for each panelboard bus, component, connecting supply, feeder, and control circuit.
2. Test continuity of each circuit.

C. Tests and Inspections:

1. Perform each visual and mechanical inspection and electrical test stated in NETA Acceptance Testing Specification. Certify compliance with test parameters.
2. Correct malfunctioning units on-site, where possible, and retest to demonstrate compliance; otherwise, replace with new units and retest.

D. Panelboards will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.

3.5 ADJUSTING

A. Adjust moving parts and operable component to function smoothly, and lubricate as recommended by manufacturer.

B. Set field-adjustable circuit-breaker trip ranges as specified in Section 260573 "Overcurrent Protective Device Coordination Study."

C. Load Balancing: After Substantial Completion, but not more than 60 days after Final Acceptance, measure load balancing and make circuit changes.

1. Measure as directed during period of normal system loading.
2. Perform load-balancing circuit changes outside normal occupancy/working schedule of the facility and at time directed. Avoid disrupting critical 24-hour services such as fax machines and on-line data processing, computing, transmitting, and receiving equipment.
3. After circuit changes, recheck loads during normal load period. Record all load readings before and after changes and submit test records.
4. Tolerance: Difference exceeding 20 percent between phase loads, within a panelboard, is not acceptable. Rebalance and recheck as necessary to meet this minimum requirement.

3.6 PROTECTION

A. Temporary Heating: Apply temporary heat to maintain temperature according to manufacturer's written instructions.

END OF SECTION 26 24 16

ROCIP Project: Withhold insurance cost. Please refer to sections 00425 & 00810 for information.

SECTION 26 27 26 - WIRING DEVICES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Receptacles, receptacles with integral GFCI, and associated device plates.
2. Twist-locking receptacles.
3. Tamper-resistant receptacles.
4. Weather-resistant receptacles.
5. Snap switches and wall-box dimmers.
6. Communications outlets.
7. Pendant cord-connector devices.
8. Cord and plug sets.
9. Floor service outlets, poke-through assemblies, service poles, and multioutlet assemblies.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. EMI: Electromagnetic interference.

B. GFCI: Ground-fault circuit interrupter.

C. Pigtail: Short lead used to connect a device to a branch-circuit conductor.

1.4 ADMINISTRATIVE REQUIREMENTS

A. Coordination:

1. Receptacles for Owner-Furnished Equipment: Match plug configurations.
2. Cord and Plug Sets: Match equipment requirements.

1.5 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.

1.6 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Field quality-control reports.

1.7 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For wiring devices to include in all manufacturers' packing-label warnings and instruction manuals that include labeling conditions.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

A. Manufacturers' Names: Shortened versions (shown in parentheses) of the following manufacturers' names are used in other Part 2 articles:

1. Cooper Wiring Devices; Division of Cooper Industries, Inc. (Cooper).
2. Hubbell Incorporated; Wiring Device-Kellems (Hubbell).
3. Pass & Seymour/Legrand (Pass & Seymour).

B. Source Limitations: Obtain each type of wiring device and associated wall plate from single source from single manufacturer.

2.2 GENERAL WIRING-DEVICE REQUIREMENTS

A. Wiring Devices, Components, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

B. Comply with NFPA 70.

C. Devices that are manufactured for use with modular plug-in connectors may be substituted under the following conditions:

1. Connectors shall comply with UL 2459 and shall be made with stranding building wire.
2. Devices shall comply with the requirements in this Section.

2.3 STRAIGHT-BLADE RECEPTACLES

A. Convenience Receptacles, 125 V, 20 A: Comply with NEMA WD 1, NEMA WD 6 Configuration 5-20R, UL 498, and FS W-C-596. Once-piece integral brass ground strap.

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:

   a. Hubbell; HBL5361 (simplex), HBL5362 (duplex).
   b. Pass & Seymour.
   c. Cooper wiring devices.

B. Tamper-Resistant Convenience Receptacles, 125 V, 20 A: Comply with NEMA WD 1, NEMA WD 6 Configuration 5-20R, UL 498 Supplement sd, and FS W-C-596.

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:

   a. Hubbell; HBL8300SGA.
   b. Pass & Seymour
   c. Cooper

2.4 GFCI RECEPTACLES

A. General Description:

1. Straight blade, non-feed-through type.
2. Comply with NEMA WD 1, NEMA WD 6, UL 498, UL 943 Class A, and FS W-C-596.
3. Include indicator light that shows when the GFCI has malfunctioned and no longer provides proper GFCI protection.

B. Duplex GFCI Convenience Receptacles, 125 V, 20 A:

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:

   a. Hubbell; GFR5362L.
   b. Pass & Seymour
   c. Cooper

C. Tamper-Resistant GFCI Convenience Receptacles, 125 V, 20 A:

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:

   a. Hubbell; GFR5362L.

b. Pass & Seymour
c. Cooper

2.5 TWIST-LOCKING RECEPTACLES

A. Single Convenience Receptacles, 125 V, 20 A: Comply with NEMA WD 1, NEMA WD 6 Configuration L5-20R, and UL 498.

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:

a. Hubbell; HBL2310.
b. Pass & Seymour
c. Cooper

2.6 PENDANT CORD-CONNECTOR DEVICES

A. Description:

1. Matching, locking-type plug and receptacle body connector.
2. NEMA WD 6 Configurations L5-20P and L5-20R, heavy-duty grade, and FS W-C-596.
3. Body: Nylon, with screw-open, cable-gripping jaws and provision for attaching external cable grip.
4. External Cable Grip: Woven wire-mesh type made of high-strength, galvanized-steel wire strand, matched to cable diameter, and with attachment provision designed for corresponding connector.

2.7 CORD AND PLUG SETS

A. Description:

1. Match voltage and current ratings and number of conductors to requirements of equipment being connected.
2. Cord: Rubber-insulated, stranded-copper conductors, with Type SOW-A jacket; with green-insulated grounding conductor and ampacity of at least 130 percent of the equipment rating.
3. Plug: Nylon body and integral cable-clamping jaws. Match cord and receptacle type for connection.

2.8 TOGGLE SWITCHES

A. Comply with NEMA WD 1, UL 20, and FS W-S-896.

B. Switches, 120/277 V, 20 A:

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:

1) Single Pole:

1) Cooper; AH1221.
2) Hubbell; HBL1221.
3) Pass & Seymour; CSB20AC1.

b. Two Pole:

1) Cooper; AH1222.
2) Hubbell; HBL1222.
3) Pass & Seymour; CSB20AC2.

c. Three Way:

1) Cooper; AH1223.
2) Hubbell; HBL1223.
3) Pass & Seymour; CSB20AC3.

d. Four Way:

1) Cooper; AH1224.
2) Hubbell; HBL1224.
3) Pass & Seymour; CSB20AC4.

C. Pilot-Light Switches, 20 A:

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:

a. Cooper; AH1221PL for 120 and 277 V.
b. Hubbell; HBL1201PL for 120 and 277 V.
c. Pass & Seymour; PS20AC1RPL for 120 V, PS20AC1RPL7 for 277 V.

2. Description: Single pole, with neon-lighted handle, illuminated when switch is "off."

2.9 WALL-BOX DIMMERS

A. Dimmer Switches: Modular, full-wave, solid-state units with integral, quiet on-off switches, with audible frequency and EMI/RFI suppression filters.

B. Control: Continuously adjustable slider; with single-pole or three-way switching. Comply with UL 1472.

C. Incandescent Lamp Dimmers: 120 V; control shall follow square-law dimming curve. On-off switch positions shall bypass dimmer module.

1. 1500 W; dimmers shall require no derating when ganged with other devices. Illuminated when "off."

D. Fluorescent Lamp Dimmer Switches: Modular; compatible with dimmer ballasts; trim potentiometer to adjust low-end dimming; dimmer-ballast combination capable of consistent dimming with low end not greater than 20 percent of full brightness.

2.10 WALL PLATES

A. Single and combination types shall match corresponding wiring devices.

1. Plate-Securing Screws: Metal with head color to match plate finish.
2. Material for Finished Spaces: 0.035-inch- thick, satin-finished, Type 302 stainless steel.
3. Material for Unfinished Spaces: Galvanized steel.
4. Material for Damp Locations: Cast aluminum with spring-loaded lift cover, and listed and labeled for use in wet and damp locations.

B. Wet-Location, Weatherproof Cover Plates: NEMA 250, complying with Type 3R, weather-resistant, die-cast aluminum with lockable cover.

2.11 FINISHES

A. Device Color:

1. Wiring Devices Connected to Normal Power System: Gray or As selected by Architect unless otherwise indicated or required by NFPA 70 or device listing.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

A. Comply with NECA 1, including mounting heights listed in that standard, unless otherwise indicated.

B. Coordination with Other Trades:

1. Protect installed devices and their boxes. Do not place wall finish materials over device boxes and do not cut holes for boxes with routers that are guided by riding against outside of boxes.

2. Keep outlet boxes free of plaster, drywall joint compound, mortar, cement, concrete, dust, paint, and other material that may contaminate the raceway system, conductors, and cables.
3. Install device boxes in brick or block walls so that the cover plate does not cross a joint unless the joint is troweled flush with the face of the wall.
4. Install wiring devices after all wall preparation, including painting, is complete.

C. Conductors:

1. Do not strip insulation from conductors until right before they are spliced or terminated on devices.
2. Strip insulation evenly around the conductor using tools designed for the purpose. Avoid scoring or nicking of solid wire or cutting strands from stranded wire.
3. The length of free conductors at outlets for devices shall meet provisions of NFPA 70, Article 300, without pigtails.
4. Existing Conductors:

    a. Cut back and pigtail, or replace all damaged conductors.
    b. Straighten conductors that remain and remove corrosion and foreign matter.

D. Device Installation:

1. Replace devices that have been in temporary use during construction and that were installed before building finishing operations were complete.
2. Keep each wiring device in its package or otherwise protected until it is time to connect conductors.
3. Do not remove surface protection, such as plastic film and smudge covers, until the last possible moment.
4. Connect devices to branch circuits using pigtails that are not less than 6 inches in length.
5. When there is a choice, use side wiring with binding-head screw terminals. Wrap solid conductor tightly clockwise, two-thirds to three-fourths of the way around terminal screw.
6. Use a torque screwdriver when a torque is recommended or required by manufacturer.
7. When conductors larger than No. 12 AWG are installed on 15- or 20-A circuits, splice No. 12 AWG pigtails for device connections.
8. Tighten unused terminal screws on the device.
9. When mounting into metal boxes, remove the fiber or plastic washers used to hold device-mounting screws in yokes, allowing metal-to-metal contact.

E. Receptacle Orientation:

1. Install ground pin of vertically mounted receptacles up, and on horizontally mounted receptacles to the right.

F. Device Plates: Do not use oversized or extra-deep plates. Repair wall finishes and remount outlet boxes when standard device plates do not fit flush or do not cover rough wall opening.

G. Dimmers:

1. Install dimmers within terms of their listing.
2. Verify that dimmers used for fan speed control are listed for that application.
3. Install unshared neutral conductors on line and load side of dimmers according to manufacturers' device listing conditions in the written instructions.

H. Arrangement of Devices: Unless otherwise indicated, mount flush, with long dimension vertical and with grounding terminal of receptacles on top. Group adjacent switches under single, multigang wall plates.

I. Adjust locations of floor service outlets and service poles to suit arrangement of partitions and furnishings.

3.2 GFCI RECEPTACLES

A. Install non-feed-through-type GFCI receptacles where protection of downstream receptacles is not required.

3.3 IDENTIFICATION

A. Comply with Section 26 05 53 "Identification for Electrical Systems."

B. Identify each receptacle with panelboard identification and circuit number. Use hot, stamped, or engraved machine printing with black -filled lettering on face of plate, and durable wire markers or tags inside outlet boxes.

3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Perform the following tests and inspections:

1. Test Instruments: Use instruments that comply with UL 1436.
2. Test Instrument for Convenience Receptacles: Digital wiring analyzer with digital readout or illuminated digital-display indicators of measurement.

B. Tests for Convenience Receptacles:

1. Line Voltage: Acceptable range is 105 to 132 V.
2. Percent Voltage Drop under 15-A Load: A value of 3 percent or higher is unacceptable.
3. Ground Impedance: Values of up to 2 ohms are acceptable.
4. GFCI Trip: Test for tripping values specified in UL 1436 and UL 943.

5. Using the test plug, verify that the device and its outlet box are securely mounted.
6. Tests shall be diagnostic, indicating damaged conductors, high resistance at the circuit breaker, poor connections, inadequate fault current path, defective devices, or similar problems. Correct circuit conditions, remove malfunctioning units and replace with new ones, and retest as specified above.

C. Wiring device will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.

END OF SECTION 26 27 26

SECTION 26 28 13 - FUSES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Cartridge fuses rated 600-V ac and less for use in enclosed switches enclosed controllers.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Include construction details, material, dimensions, descriptions of individual components, and finishes for spare-fuse cabinets. Include the following for each fuse type indicated:

1. Ambient Temperature Adjustment Information: If ratings of fuses have been adjusted to accommodate ambient temperatures, provide list of fuses with adjusted ratings.

   a. For each fuse having adjusted ratings, include location of fuse, original fuse rating, local ambient temperature, and adjusted fuse rating.

   b. Provide manufacturer's technical data on which ambient temperature adjustment calculations are based.

2. Dimensions and manufacturer's technical data on features, performance, electrical characteristics, and ratings.
3. Current-limitation curves for fuses with current-limiting characteristics.
4. Time-current coordination curves (average melt) and current-limitation curves (instantaneous peak let-through current) for each type and rating of fuse.
5. Coordination charts and tables and related data.
6. Fuse sizes for elevator feeders and elevator disconnect switches.

1.4 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For fuses to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals. In addition to items specified in Section 01730 "Operation and Maintenance Data," include the following:

1. Ambient temperature adjustment information.
2. Current-limitation curves for fuses with current-limiting characteristics.
3. Time-current coordination curves (average melt) and current-limitation curves (instantaneous peak let-through current) for each type and rating of fuse.
4. Coordination charts and tables and related data.

1.5 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.

1. Fuses: Equal to 10 percent of quantity installed for each size and type, but no fewer than two of each size and type.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Source Limitations: Obtain fuses, for use within a specific product or circuit, from single source from single manufacturer.

B. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

C. Comply with NEMA FU 1 for cartridge fuses.

D. Comply with NFPA 70.

E. Comply with UL 248-11 for plug fuses.

1.7 PROJECT CONDITIONS

A. Where ambient temperature to which fuses are directly exposed is less than 40 deg F or more than 100 deg F, apply manufacturer's ambient temperature adjustment factors to fuse ratings.

1.8 COORDINATION

A. Coordinate fuse ratings with utilization equipment nameplate limitations of maximum fuse size and with system short-circuit current levels.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. Cooper Bussmann, Inc.
2. Edison Fuse, Inc.
3. Ferraz Shawmut, Inc.
4. Littelfuse, Inc.

2.2 CARTRIDGE FUSES

A. Characteristics: NEMA FU 1, nonrenewable cartridge fuses with voltage ratings consistent with circuit voltages.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine fuses before installation. Reject fuses that are moisture damaged or physically damaged.

B. Examine holders to receive fuses for compliance with installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance, such as rejection features.

C. Examine utilization equipment nameplates and installation instructions. Install fuses of sizes and with characteristics appropriate for each piece of equipment.

D. Evaluate ambient temperatures to determine if fuse rating adjustment factors must be applied to fuse ratings.

E. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 FUSE APPLICATIONS

A. Cartridge Fuses:

1. Feeders: Class L, fast acting.
2. Motor Branch Circuits: Class RK1, time delay.
3. Other Branch Circuits: Class RK1, time delay.
4. Control Circuits: Class CC, fast acting.

3.3 INSTALLATION

A. Install fuses in fusible devices. Arrange fuses so rating information is readable without removing fuse.

3.4 IDENTIFICATION

A. Install labels complying with requirements for identification specified in Section 26 05 53 "Identification for Electrical Systems" and indicating fuse replacement information on inside door of each fused switch and adjacent to each fuse block, socket, and holder.

END OF SECTION 26 28 13

ROCIP Project: Withhold insurance cost. Please refer to sections 00425 & 00810 for information.

SECTION 26 28 16 - ENCLOSED SWITCHES AND CIRCUIT BREAKERS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Fusible switches.
2. Nonfusible switches.
3. Enclosures.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. NC: Normally closed.

B. NO: Normally open.

C. SPDT: Single pole, double throw.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of enclosed switch, circuit breaker, accessory, and component indicated. Include dimensioned elevations, sections, weights, and manufacturers' technical data on features, performance, electrical characteristics, ratings, accessories, and finishes.

1. Enclosure types and details for types other than NEMA 250, Type 1.
2. Current and voltage ratings.
3. Short-circuit current ratings (interrupting and withstand, as appropriate).
4. Detail features, characteristics, ratings, and factory settings of individual overcurrent protective devices, accessories, and auxiliary components.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Qualification Data: For qualified testing agency.

B. Field quality-control reports.

1. Test procedures used.
2. Test results that comply with requirements.
3. Results of failed tests and corrective action taken to achieve test results that comply with requirements.

1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For enclosed switches and circuit breakers to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals. In addition to items specified in Section 01730 "Operation and Maintenance Data," include the following:

1. Manufacturer's written instructions for testing and adjusting enclosed switches and circuit breakers.

1.7 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.

1. Fuses: Equal to 10 percent of quantity installed for each size and type, but no fewer than three of each size and type.
2. Fuse Pullers: Two for each size and type.

1.8 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Source Limitations: Obtain enclosed switches and circuit breakers, overcurrent protective devices, components, and accessories, within same product category, from single source from single manufacturer.

B. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

C. Comply with NFPA 70.

1.9 PROJECT CONDITIONS

A. Environmental Limitations: Rate equipment for continuous operation under the following conditions unless otherwise indicated:

1. Ambient Temperature: Not less than minus 22 deg F and not exceeding 104 deg F.
2. Altitude: Not exceeding 6600 feet.

1.10 COORDINATION

A. Coordinate layout and installation of switches, circuit breakers, and components with equipment served and adjacent surfaces. Maintain required workspace clearances and required clearances for equipment access doors and panels.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 FUSIBLE SWITCHES

A. Basis-of-Design Product: Eaton Cutler-Hammer. Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:

1. General Electric Company; Electrical Distribution & Control Division.
2. Siemens Energy & Automation, Inc.
3. Square D.

B. Type HD, Heavy Duty, Single Throw, 600-V ac, 1200 A and Smaller: UL 98 and NEMA KS 1, horsepower rated, with clips or bolt pads to accommodate indicated fuses, lockable handle with capability to accept three padlocks, and interlocked with cover in closed position.

C. Accessories:

1. Equipment Ground Kit: Internally mounted and labeled for copper ground conductors.
2. Neutral Kit: Internally mounted; insulated, capable of being grounded and bonded; labeled for copper neutral conductors.
3. Class R Fuse Kit: Provides rejection of other fuse types when Class R fuses are specified.
4. Lugs: Mechanical type, suitable for number, size, and conductor material.
5. Service-Rated Switches: Labeled for use as service equipment.

2.2 NONFUSIBLE SWITCHES

A. Basis-of-Design Product: Eaton Cutler-Hammer. Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:

1. General Electric Company; Electrical Distribution & Control Division.
2. Siemens Energy & Automation, Inc.
3. Square D.

B. Type HD, Heavy Duty, Single Throw, 600-V ac, 1200 A and Smaller: UL 98 and NEMA KS 1, horsepower rated, lockable handle with capability to accept three padlocks, and interlocked with cover in closed position.

C. Accessories:

1. Equipment Ground Kit: Internally mounted and labeled for copper ground conductors.
2. Neutral Kit: Internally mounted; insulated, capable of being grounded and bonded; labeled for copper and aluminum neutral conductors.
3. Lugs: Mechanical type, suitable for number, size, and conductor material.

2.3 ENCLOSURES

A. Enclosed Switches and Circuit Breakers: NEMA AB 1, NEMA KS 1, NEMA 250, and UL 50, to comply with environmental conditions at installed location.

1. Indoor, Dry and Clean Locations: NEMA 250, Type 1.
2. Outdoor Locations: NEMA 250, Type 3R.
3. Kitchen and Wash-Down Areas: NEMA 250, Type 4X, stainless steel.
4. Other Wet or Damp, Indoor Locations: NEMA 250, Type 4.
5. Indoor Locations Subject to Dust, Falling Dirt, and Dripping Noncorrosive Liquids: NEMA 250, Type 12.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine elements and surfaces to receive enclosed switches and circuit breakers for compliance with installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.

B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION

A. Install individual wall-mounted switches and circuit breakers with tops at uniform height unless otherwise indicated.

B. Temporary Lifting Provisions: Remove temporary lifting eyes, channels, and brackets and temporary blocking of moving parts from enclosures and components.

C. Install fuses in fusible devices.

D. Comply with NECA 1.

3.3 IDENTIFICATION

A. Comply with requirements in Section 26 05 53 "Identification for Electrical Systems."

1. Identify field-installed conductors, interconnecting wiring, and components; provide warning signs.
2. Label each enclosure with engraved metal or laminated-plastic nameplate.

3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Perform tests and inspections.

B. Acceptance Testing Preparation:

1. Test insulation resistance for each enclosed switch and circuit breaker, component, connecting supply, feeder, and control circuit.
2. Test continuity of each circuit.

C. Tests and Inspections:

1. Perform each visual and mechanical inspection and electrical test stated in NETA Acceptance Testing Specification. Certify compliance with test parameters.
2. Correct malfunctioning units on-site, where possible, and retest to demonstrate compliance; otherwise, replace with new units and retest.
3. Test and adjust controls, remote monitoring, and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.

D. Enclosed switches and circuit breakers will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.

3.5 ADJUSTING

A. Adjust moving parts and operable components to function smoothly, and lubricate as recommended by manufacturer.

END OF SECTION 26 28 16

ROCIP Project: Withhold insurance cost. Please refer to sections 00425 & 00810 for information.

SECTION 26 32 13 - GASEOUS EMERGENCY ENGINE GENERATORS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section includes packaged engine generators for emergency use with the following features:

1. Natural gas engine.
2. Gaseous fuel system.
3. Control and monitoring.
4. Generator overcurrent and fault protection.
5. Generator, exciter, and voltage regulator.
6. Load banks.
7. Outdoor engine generator enclosure.
8. Vibration isolation devices.
9. Finishes.

B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 263600 "Transfer Switches" for transfer switches including sensors and relays to initiate automatic-starting and -stopping signals for engine generators.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. EPS: Emergency power supply.

B. EPSS: Emergency power supply system.

C. Operational Bandwidth: The total variation from the lowest to highest value of a parameter over the range of conditions indicated, expressed as a percentage of the nominal value of the parameter.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.

1. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, electrical characteristics, and furnished specialties and accessories.
2. Include thermal damage curve for generator.
3. Include time-current characteristic curves for generator protective device.
4. Include fuel consumption in cubic feet per hour at 0.8 power factor at 0.5, 0.75, and 1.0 times generator capacity.
5. Include generator efficiency at 0.8 power factor at 0.5, 0.75, and 1.0 times generator capacity.
6. Include airflow requirements for cooling and combustion air in cubic feet per minute at 0.8 power factor, with air-supply temperature of 95, 80, 70, and 50 deg F. Provide Drawings indicating requirements and limitations for location of air intake and exhausts.
7. Include generator characteristics, including, but not limited to, kilowatt rating, efficiency, reactances, and short-circuit current capability.

B. Shop Drawings:

1. Include plans and elevations for engine generator and other components specified.
2. Include details of equipment assemblies. Indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.
3. Identify fluid drain ports and clearance requirements for proper fluid drain.
4. Design calculations for selecting vibration isolators and seismic restraints and for designing vibration isolation bases.
5. Vibration Isolation Base Details: Detail fabrication, including anchorages and attachments to structure and supported equipment. Include base weights.
6. Include diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring. Complete schematic, wiring, and interconnection diagrams showing terminal markings for EPS equipment and functional relationship between all electrical components.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Qualification Data: For Installer.

B. Source Quality-Control Reports: Including, but not limited to, the following:

1. Certified summary of prototype-unit test report.
2. Certified Test Reports: For components and accessories that are equivalent, but not identical, to those tested on prototype unit.
3. Report of factory test on units to be shipped for this Project, showing evidence of compliance with specified requirements.
4. Report of sound generation.
5. Report of exhaust emissions showing compliance with applicable regulations.

6. Certified Torsional Vibration Compatibility: Comply with NFPA 110.

C. Field quality-control reports.

D. Warranty: For special warranty.

1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For packaged engine generators to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

1. In addition to items specified in Section 017823 "Operation and Maintenance Data," include the following:

   a. List of tools and replacement items recommended to be stored at Project for ready access. Include part and drawing numbers, current unit prices, and source of supply.
   b. Operating instructions laminated and mounted adjacent to generator location.
   c. Training plan.

1.7 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

1. Fuses: One for every 10 of each type and rating, but no fewer than one of each.
2. Indicator Lamps: Two for every six of each type used, but no fewer than two of each.
3. Filters: One set each of lubricating oil, fuel, and combustion-air filters.
4. Tools: Each tool listed by part number in operations and maintenance manual.

1.8 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Installer Qualifications: An authorized representative who is trained and approved by manufacturer.

B. Testing Agency Qualifications: Accredited by NETA.

1. Testing Agency's Field Supervisor: Certified by NETA to supervise on-site testing.

ROCIP Project: Withhold insurance cost. Please refer to sections 00425 & 00810 for information.

1.9 WARRANTY

A. Manufacturer's Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of packaged engine generators and associated auxiliary components that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.

1. Warranty Period: 2 years from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. Cummins Power Generation.
2. Generac Power Systems, Inc.
3. Kohler Power Systems.

B. Source Limitations: Obtain packaged engine generators and auxiliary components from single source from single manufacturer.

2.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. B11 Compliance: Comply with B11.19.

B. NFPA Compliance:

1. Comply with NFPA 37.
2. Comply with NFPA 70.
3. Comply with NFPA 110 requirements for Level 1 EPSS.

C. UL Compliance: Comply with UL 2200.

D. Engine Exhaust Emissions: Comply with EPA Tier 2 requirements and applicable state and local government requirements.

E. Noise Emission: Comply with to applicable state and local government requirements for maximum noise level at adjacent property boundaries due sound emitted by engine generator, including engine, engine exhaust, engine cooling-air intake and discharge, and other components of installation.

F. Environmental Conditions: Engine generator system shall withstand the following environmental conditions without mechanical or electrical damage or degradation of performance capability:

1. Relative Humidity: Zero to 95 percent.
2. Altitude: Sea level to 1000 feet.

2.3 ENGINE GENERATOR ASSEMBLY DESCRIPTION

A. Factory-assembled and -tested, water-cooled engine, with brushless generator and accessories.

B. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and use.

C. EPSS Class: Engine generator shall be classified as Class 96 according to NFPA 110.

D. Service Load: 60 kW.

E. Power Factor: 0.8, lagging.

F. Frequency: 60 Hz.

G. Voltage: 208-V ac.

H. Phase: Three-phase, four-wire wye.

I. Induction Method: Naturally aspirated.

J. Governor: Adjustable isochronous, with speed sensing.

K. Mounting Frame: Structural-steel framework to maintain alignment of mounted components without depending on concrete foundation. Provide lifting attachments sized and spaced to prevent deflection of base during lifting and moving.

L. Capacities and Characteristics:

1. Power Output Ratings: Nominal ratings as indicated at 0.8 power factor excluding power required for the continued and repeated operation of the unit and auxiliaries.
2. Nameplates: For each major system component to identify manufacturer's name and address, and model and serial number of component.

M. Engine Generator Performance:

1. Steady-State Voltage Operational Bandwidth: 3 percent of rated output voltage, from no load to full load.

2. Transient Voltage Performance: Not more than 20 percent variation for 50 percent step-load increase or decrease. Voltage shall recover and remain within the steady-state operating band within three seconds.
3. Steady-State Frequency Operational Bandwidth: 0.5 percent of rated frequency, from no load to full load.
4. Steady-State Frequency Stability: When system is operating at any constant load within the rated load, there shall be no random speed variations outside the steady-state operational band and no hunting or surging of speed.
5. Transient Frequency Performance: Less than 5 percent variation for 50 percent step-load increase or decrease. Frequency shall recover and remain within the steady-state operating band within five seconds.
6. Output Waveform: At no load, harmonic content measured line to line or line to neutral shall not exceed 5 percent total and 3 percent for single harmonics. Telephone influence factor, determined according to NEMA MG 1, shall not exceed 50 percent.
7. Sustained Short-Circuit Current: For a three-phase, bolted short circuit at system output terminals, system shall supply a minimum of 250 percent of rated full-load current for not less than 10 seconds and then clear the fault automatically, without damage to generator system components.
8. Start Time: Comply with NFPA 110, Type 10, system requirements.

2.4 ENGINE

A. Fuel: Natural gas.

B. Rated Engine Speed: 1800 rpm.

C. Lubrication System: Engine or skid mounted.

1. Filter and Strainer: Rated to remove 90 percent of particles 5 micrometers and smaller while passing full flow.
2. Thermostatic Control Valve: Control flow in system to maintain optimum oil temperature. Unit shall be capable of full flow and is designed to be fail-safe.
3. Crankcase Drain: Arranged for complete gravity drainage to an easily removable container with no disassembly and without use of pumps, siphons, special tools, or appliances.

D. Jacket Coolant Heater: Electric-immersion type, factory installed in coolant jacket system. Comply with NFPA 110 requirements for Level 1 equipment for heater capacity and with UL 499.

E. Cooling System: Closed loop, liquid cooled, with radiator factory mounted on engine generator mounting frame and integral engine-driven coolant pump.

1. Coolant: Solution of 50 percent ethylene-glycol-based antifreeze and 50 percent water, with anticorrosion additives as recommended by engine manufacturer.

2. Size of Radiator: Adequate to contain expansion of total system coolant, from cold start to 110 percent load condition.
3. Temperature Control: Self-contained, thermostatic-control valve modulates coolant flow automatically to maintain optimum constant coolant temperature as recommended by engine manufacturer.
4. Coolant Hose: Flexible assembly with inside surface of nonporous rubber and outer covering of aging-, UV-, and abrasion-resistant fabric.

    a. Rating: 50-psig maximum working pressure with coolant at 180 deg F, and noncollapsible under vacuum.
    b. End Fittings: Flanges or steel pipe nipples with clamps to suit piping and equipment connections.

F. Muffler/Silencer: Critical type, sized as recommended by engine manufacturer and selected with exhaust piping system to not exceed engine manufacturer's engine backpressure requirements.

1. Minimum sound attenuation of 25 dB at 500 Hz.
2. Sound level measured at a distance of 25 feet from exhaust discharge after installation is complete shall be 78 dBA or less.

G. Air-Intake Filter: Standard-duty, engine-mounted air cleaner with replaceable dry-filter element and "blocked filter" indicator.

H. Starting System: 12-V electric, with negative ground.

1. Components: Sized so they are not damaged during a full engine-cranking cycle, with ambient temperature at maximum specified in "Performance Requirements" Article.
2. Cranking Cycle: As required by NFPA 110 for system level specified.
3. Battery: Nickel cadmium, with capacity within ambient temperature range specified in "Performance Requirements" Article to provide specified cranking cycle at least twice without recharging.
4. Battery Cable: Size as recommended by engine manufacturer for cable length indicated. Include required interconnecting conductors and connection accessories.
5. Battery Stand: Factory-fabricated, two-tier metal with acid-resistant finish designed to hold the quantity of battery cells required and to maintain the arrangement to minimize lengths of battery interconnections.
6. Battery-Charging Alternator: Factory mounted on engine with solid-state voltage regulation and 35-A minimum continuous rating.

7. Battery Charger: Current-limiting, automatic-equalizing and float-charging type designed for nickel-cadmium batteries. Unit shall comply with UL 1236 and include the following features:

    a. Operation: Equalizing-charging rate of 10 A shall be initiated automatically after battery has lost charge until an adjustable equalizing voltage is achieved at battery terminals. Unit shall then be automatically switched to a lower float-charging mode and shall continue to operate in that mode until battery is discharged again.
    b. Automatic Temperature Compensation: Adjust float and equalize voltages for variations in ambient temperature from minus 40 to 140 deg F to prevent overcharging at high temperatures and undercharging at low temperatures.
    c. Automatic Voltage Regulation: Maintain constant output voltage regardless of input voltage variations up to plus or minus 10 percent.
    d. Ammeter and Voltmeter: Flush mounted in door. Meters shall indicate charging rates.
    e. Safety Functions: Sense abnormally low battery voltage and close contacts providing low battery voltage indication on control and monitoring panel. Sense high battery voltage and loss of ac input or dc output of battery charger. Either condition shall close contacts that provide a battery-charger malfunction indication at system control and monitoring panel.
    f. Enclosure and Mounting: NEMA 250, Type 1, wall-mounted cabinet.

2.5 GASEOUS FUEL SYSTEM

A. Natural Gas Piping: Comply with requirements in Section 231123 "Facility Natural Gas Piping."

B. Gas Train: Comply with NFPA 37.

C. Engine Fuel System:

1. Natural Gas, Vapor-Withdrawal System:

    a. Carburetor.
    b. Fuel-Shutoff Solenoid Valves: NRTL-listed, normally closed, safety shutoff valves; one for each fuel source.

2. Fuel Filters: One for each fuel type.
3. Manual Fuel Shutoff Valves: One for each fuel type.
4. Flexible Fuel Connectors: Minimum one for each fuel connection.

2.6 CONTROL AND MONITORING

A. Automatic Starting System Sequence of Operation: When mode-selector switch on the control and monitoring panel is in the automatic position, remote-control contacts in one or more separate automatic transfer switches initiate starting and stopping of engine generator. When mode-selector switch is switched to the on position, engine generator starts. The off position of same switch initiates engine generator shutdown. When engine generator is running, specified system or equipment failures or derangements automatically shut down engine generator and initiate alarms.

B. Provide minimum run-time control set for 30 minutes, with override only by operation of a remote emergency-stop switch.

C. Comply with UL 508A.

D. Configuration: Operating and safety indications, protective devices, basic system controls, and engine gages shall be grouped in a common control and monitoring panel mounted on the engine generator. Mounting method shall isolate the control panel from engine generator vibration. Panel shall be powered from the engine generator battery.

E. Control and Monitoring Panel:

1. Digital controller with integrated LCD display, controls, and microprocessor, capable of local and remote control, monitoring, and programming, with battery backup.
2. Instruments: Located on the control and monitoring panel and viewable during operation.

    a. Engine lubricating-oil pressure gage.
    b. Engine-coolant temperature gage.
    c. DC voltmeter (alternator battery charging).
    d. Running-time meter.
    e. AC voltmeter, for each phase.
    f. AC ammeter, for each phase.
    g. AC frequency meter.
    h. Generator-voltage adjusting rheostat.

3. Controls and Protective Devices: Controls, shutdown devices, and common visual alarm indication as required by NFPA 110 for Level 1 system, including the following:

    a. Cranking control equipment.
    b. Run-Off-Auto switch.
    c. Control switch not in automatic position alarm.
    d. Overcrank alarm.
    e. Overcrank shutdown device.
    f. Low water temperature alarm.
    g. High engine temperature.

h. High engine temperature shutdown device.
i. Overspeed alarm.
j. Overspeed shutdown device.
k. Coolant low-level alarm.
l. EPS load indicator.
m. Battery high-voltage alarm.
n. Low-cranking voltage alarm.
o. Battery-charger malfunction alarm.
p. Battery low-voltage alarm.
q. Lamp test.
r. Contacts for local and remote common alarm.
s. Low-starting hydraulic pressure alarm.
t. Remote manual-stop shutdown device.
u. Air shutdown damper alarm when used.
v. Air shutdown damper shutdown device when used.
w. Generator overcurrent-protective-device not-closed alarm.

F. Common Remote Panel with Common Audible Alarm: Comply with NFPA 110 requirements for Level 1 systems. Include necessary contacts and terminals in control and monitoring panel. Remote panel shall be powered from the engine generator battery.

G. Supporting Items: Include sensors, transducers, terminals, relays, and other devices and include wiring required to support specified items. Locate sensors and other supporting items on engine or generator unless otherwise indicated.

H. Remote Emergency-Stop Switch: Flush; wall mounted unless otherwise indicated; and labeled. Push button shall be protected from accidental operation.

2.7 GENERATOR OVERCURRENT AND FAULT PROTECTION

A. Overcurrent protective devices for the entire EPSS shall be coordinated to optimize selective tripping when a short circuit occurs. Coordination of protective devices shall consider both utility and EPSS as the voltage source.

1. Overcurrent protective devices for the EPSS shall be accessible only to authorized personnel.

B. Generator Circuit Breaker: Molded-case, thermal-magnetic type; 100 percent rated; complying with UL 489.

1. Tripping Characteristic: Designed specifically for generator protection.
2. Trip Rating: Matched to generator output rating.
3. Shunt Trip: Connected to trip breaker when engine generator is shut down by other protective devices.
4. Mounting: Adjacent to, or integrated with monitoring panel.

2.8 GENERATOR, EXCITER, AND VOLTAGE REGULATOR

A. Comply with NEMA MG 1.

B. Drive: Generator shaft shall be directly connected to engine shaft. Exciter shall be rotated integrally with generator rotor.

C. Electrical Insulation: Class H or Class F.

D. Stator-Winding Leads: Brought out to terminal box to permit future reconnection for other voltages if required. Provide 12-lead alternator.

E. Range: Provide broad range of output voltage by adjusting the excitation level.

F. Construction shall prevent mechanical, electrical, and thermal damage due to vibration, overspeed up to 125 percent of rating, and heat during operation at 110 percent of rated capacity.

G. Enclosure: Dripproof.

H. Instrument Transformers: Mounted within generator enclosure.

I. Voltage Regulator: Solid-state type, separate from exciter, providing performance as specified and as required by NFPA 110.

   1. Adjusting Rheostat on Control and Monitoring Panel: Provide plus or minus 5 percent adjustment of output-voltage operating band.
   2. Maintain voltage within 20 percent on one step, full load.
   3. Provide anti-hunt provision to stabilize voltage.
   4. Maintain frequency within 10 percent and stabilize at rated frequency within five seconds.

J. Windings: Two-thirds pitch stator winding and fully linked amortisseur winding.

K. Subtransient Reactance: **12** percent, maximum.

2.9 LOAD BANK

A. Description: Permanent, radiator-mounted, resistive unit capable of providing a balanced three-phase, delta-connected load to engine generator at 50 percent rated-system capacity. Unit shall be capable of selective control of load in 25 percent steps of load-bank rating and with minimum step changes of approximately 5 and 10 percent available.

B. Resistive Load Elements: Corrosion-resistant chromium alloy with ceramic and stainless-steel supports. Elements shall be double insulated and designed for repetitive on-off cycling. Elements shall be mounted in removable aluminized-steel heater cases. Galvanized steel is prohibited. Element's maximum resistance shall be between 100 and 105 percent of rated resistance.

C. Reactive Load Elements: Epoxy-encapsulated reactor coils.

D. Load-Bank Heat Dissipation: Integral fan with totally enclosed motor shall provide uniform cooling airflow through load elements. Airflow and coil operating current shall be such that, at maximum load, with ambient temperature at the upper end of specified range, load-bank elements operate at not more than 50 percent of maximum continuous temperature rating of resistance elements.

E. Load-Element Switching: Remote-controlled contactors switch groups of load elements. Contactor coils are rated 120 V. Contactors shall be located in a separate NEMA 250, Type 3R enclosure within load-bank enclosure, accessible from exterior through hinged doors with tumbler locks.

F. Contactor Enclosures: Heated by thermostatically controlled strip heaters to prevent condensation.

G. Load-Bank Enclosures: NEMA 250, Type 3R aluminized steel complying with NEMA ICS 6. Louvers at cooling-air intake and discharge openings shall prevent entry of rain and snow. Openings for airflow shall be screened with 1/2-inch-square, galvanized-steel mesh. Reactive load bank shall include automatic shutters at air intake and discharge. Components other than resistive elements shall receive exterior epoxy coating with compatible primer. Comply with requirements in Section 099600 "High-Performance Coatings."

H. Protective Devices: Power input circuits to load banks shall be fused, and fuses shall be selected to coordinate with generator circuit breaker. Fuse blocks shall be located in contactor enclosure. Cooling airflow and overtemperature sensors shall automatically shut down and lock out load bank until manually reset. Safety interlocks on access panels and doors shall disconnect load power, control, and heater circuits. Fan motor shall be separately protected by overload and short-circuit devices. Short-circuit devices shall be noninterchangeable fuses with 200,000-A interrupting capacity.

I. Load-Bank Remote-Control Panel: Separate from load bank in NEMA 250, Type 1 enclosure with a control power switch and pilot light, and switches controlling groups of load elements.

J. Control Sequence: Control panel may be preset for adjustable single-step loading of generator during automatic exercising.

2.10 OUTDOOR ENGINE GENERATOR ENCLOSURE

A. Description: Vandal-resistant, sound-attenuating, weatherproof steel housing, wind resistant up to 100 mph. Multiple panels shall be lockable and provide adequate access to components requiring maintenance. Panels shall be removable by one person without tools. Instruments and control shall be mounted within enclosure.

B. Structural Design and Anchorage: Comply with ASCE/SEI 7 for wind loads up to 100 mph.

C. Hinged Doors: With padlocking provisions.

D. Space Heater: Thermostatically controlled and sized to prevent condensation.

E. Lighting: Provide weather-resistant LED lighting with 30 fc average maintained.

F. Thermal Insulation: Manufacturer's standard materials and thickness selected in coordination with space heater to maintain winter interior temperature within operating limits required by engine generator components.

G. Muffler Location: External to enclosure.

H. Engine-Cooling Airflow through Enclosure: Maintain temperature rise of system components within required limits when unit operates at 110 percent of rated load for two hours with ambient temperature at top of range specified in system service conditions.

   1. Louvers: Fixed-engine, cooling-air inlet and discharge. Stormproof and drainable louvers prevent entry of rain and snow.
   2. Automatic Dampers: At engine cooling-air inlet and discharge. Dampers shall be closed to reduce enclosure heat loss in cold weather when unit is not operating.

I. Interior Lights with Switch: Factory-wired, vaporproof luminaires within housing; arranged to illuminate controls and accessible interior. Arrange for external electrical connection.

   1. AC lighting system and connection point for operation when remote source is available.

J. Convenience Outlets: Factory-wired, GFCI. Arrange for external electrical connection.

2.11 VIBRATION ISOLATION DEVICES

A. Elastomeric Isolator Pads: Oil- and water-resistant elastomer or natural rubber, arranged in single or multiple layers, molded with a nonslip pattern and galvanized-steel baseplates of sufficient stiffness for uniform loading over pad area, and factory cut to sizes that match requirements of supported equipment.

1. Material: Standard neoprene separated by steel shims.
2. Minimum Deflection: 1 inch.

B. Vibration isolation devices shall not be used to accommodate misalignments or to make bends.

2.12 FINISHES

A. Indoor and Outdoor Enclosures and Components: Manufacturer's standard finish over corrosion-resistant pretreatment and compatible primer.

2.13 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

A. Prototype Testing: Factory test engine generator using same engine model, constructed of identical or equivalent components and equipped with identical or equivalent accessories.

1. Tests: Comply with NFPA 110, Level 1 Energy Converters and with IEEE 115.

B. Project-Specific Equipment Tests: Before shipment, factory test engine generator and other system components and accessories manufactured specifically for this Project. Perform tests at rated load and power factor. Include the following tests:

1. Test components and accessories furnished with installed unit that are not identical to those on tested prototype to demonstrate compatibility and reliability.
2. Test generator, exciter, and voltage regulator as a unit.
3. Full-load run.
4. Maximum power.
5. Voltage regulation.
6. Transient and steady-state governing.
7. Single-step load pickup.
8. Safety shutdown.
9. Provide 14 days' advance notice of tests and opportunity for observation of tests by Owner's representative.
10. Report factory test results within 10 days of completion of test.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine areas, equipment bases, and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation and other conditions affecting packaged engine generator performance.

B. Examine roughing-in for piping systems and electrical connections to verify actual locations of connections before packaged engine generator installation.

C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION

A. Comply with NECA 1 and NECA 404.

B. Comply with packaged engine generator manufacturers' written installation and alignment instructions and with NFPA 110.

C. Equipment Mounting:

1. Install packaged engine generators on cast-in-place concrete equipment bases. Comply with requirements for equipment bases and foundations specified in Section 033000 "Cast-in-Place Concrete."
2. Coordinate size and location of concrete bases for packaged engine generators. Cast anchor-bolt inserts into bases. Concrete, reinforcement, and formwork requirements are specified with concrete.
3. Install packaged engine generator with elastomeric isolator pads having a minimum deflection of 1 inch on 4-inch- high concrete base. Secure enclosure to anchor bolts installed in concrete bases.

D. Install packaged engine generator to provide access, without removing connections or accessories, for periodic maintenance.

E. Exhaust System: Install Schedule 40 black steel piping with welded joints and connect to engine muffler. Install thimble at wall. Piping shall be same diameter as muffler outlet.

1. Install isolating thimbles where exhaust piping penetrates combustible surfaces with a minimum of 9 inches of clearance from combustibles.

F. Drain Piping: Install condensate drain piping to muffler drain outlet with a shutoff valve, stainless-steel flexible connector, and Schedule 40 black steel pipe with welded joints.

G. Gaseous Fuel Piping:

1. Natural gas piping, valves, and specialties for gas distribution are specified in Section 231123 "Facility Natural Gas Piping."

H. Electrical Wiring: Install electrical devices furnished by equipment manufacturers but not specified to be factory mounted.

3.3 CONNECTIONS

A. Piping installation requirements are specified in other Sections. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping and specialties.

B. Connect fuel, cooling-system, and exhaust-system piping adjacent to packaged engine generator to allow service and maintenance.

C. Connect engine exhaust pipe to engine with flexible connector.

D. Gaseous Fuel Connections:

1. Connect fuel piping to engines with a gate valve and union and flexible connector.
2. Install manual shutoff valve in a remote location to isolate gaseous fuel supply to the generator.
3. Vent gas pressure regulators outside building a minimum of 60 inches from building openings.

E. Ground equipment according to Section 260526 "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems."

F. Connect wiring according to Section 260519 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables." Provide a minimum of one 90-degree bend in flexible conduit routed to the engine generator from a stationary element.

G. Balance single-phase loads to obtain a maximum of 10 percent unbalance between any two phases.

3.4 IDENTIFICATION

A. Install a sign indicating the generator neutral is bonded to the main service neutral at the main service location.

3.5 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to test and inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections.

B. Tests and Inspections:

1. Perform tests recommended by manufacturer and each visual and mechanical inspection and electrical and mechanical test listed in first two subparagraphs below, as specified in NETA ATS. Certify compliance with test parameters.

   a. Visual and Mechanical Inspection:

      1) Compare equipment nameplate data with Drawings and the Specifications.
      2) Inspect physical and mechanical condition.
      3) Inspect anchorage, alignment, and grounding.
      4) Verify that the unit is clean.

   b. Electrical and Mechanical Tests:

      1) Perform insulation-resistance tests according to IEEE 43.

         a) Machines 150 kW or Less: Test duration shall be one minute. Calculate the dielectric-absorption ratio.

      2) Test protective relay devices.
      3) Verify phase rotation, phasing, and synchronized operation as required by the application.
      4) Functionally test engine shutdown for low oil pressure, overtemperature, overspeed, and other protection features as applicable.
      5) Conduct performance test according to NFPA 110.
      6) Verify correct functioning of the governor and regulator.

2. NFPA 110 Acceptance Tests: Perform tests required by NFPA 110 that are additional to those specified here including, but not limited to, single-step full-load pickup test.
3. Battery Tests: Equalize charging of battery cells according to manufacturer's written instructions. Record individual cell voltages.

   a. Measure charging voltage and voltages between available battery terminals for full-charging and float-charging conditions. Check electrolyte level and specific gravity under both conditions.
   b. Test for contact integrity of all connectors. Perform an integrity load test and a capacity load test for the battery.
   c. Verify acceptance of charge for each element of the battery after discharge.
   d. Verify that measurements are within manufacturer's specifications.

4. Battery-Charger Tests: Verify specified rates of charge for both equalizing and float-charging conditions.

5. System Integrity Tests: Methodically verify proper installation, connection, and integrity of each element of engine generator system before and during system operation. Check for air, exhaust, and fluid leaks.
6. Voltage and Frequency Transient Stability Tests: Use recording oscilloscope to measure voltage and frequency transients for 50 and 100 percent step-load increases and decreases, and verify that performance is as specified.
7. Harmonic-Content Tests: Measure harmonic content of output voltage at 25 and 100 percent of rated linear load. Verify that harmonic content is within specified limits.

C. Coordinate tests with tests for transfer switches and run them concurrently.

D. Test instruments shall have been calibrated within the past 12 months, traceable to NIST Calibration Services, and adequate for making positive observation of test results. Make calibration records available for examination on request.

E. Leak Test: After installation, charge exhaust, coolant, and fuel systems and test for leaks. Repair leaks and retest until no leaks exist.

F. Operational Test: After electrical circuitry has been energized, start units to confirm proper motor rotation and unit operation for generator and associated equipment.

G. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.

H. Remove and replace malfunctioning units and retest as specified above.

I. Retest: Correct deficiencies identified by tests and observations, and retest until specified requirements are met.

J. Report results of tests and inspections in writing. Record adjustable relay settings and measured insulation resistances, time delays, and other values and observations. Attach a label or tag to each tested component indicating satisfactory completion of tests.

K. Infrared Scanning: After Substantial Completion, but not more than 60 days after final acceptance, perform an infrared scan of each power wiring termination and each bus connection while running with maximum load. Remove all access panels, so terminations and connections are accessible to portable scanner.

1. Follow-up Infrared Scanning: Perform an additional follow-up infrared scan 11 months after date of Substantial Completion.
2. Instrument: Use an infrared scanning device designed to measure temperature or to detect significant deviations from normal values. Provide calibration record for device.
3. Record of Infrared Scanning: Prepare a certified report that identifies terminations and connections checked and that describes scanning results. Include notation of deficiencies detected, remedial action taken, and observations after remedial action.

ROCIP Project: Withhold insurance cost. Please refer to sections 00425 & 00810 for information.

3.6 MAINTENANCE SERVICE

A. Initial Maintenance Service: Beginning at Substantial Completion, maintenance service shall include 12 months' full maintenance by skilled employees of manufacturer's authorized service representative. Include quarterly preventive maintenance and exercising to check for proper starting, load transfer, and running under load. Include routine preventive maintenance as recommended by manufacturer and adjusting as required for proper operation. Parts shall be manufacturer's authorized replacement parts and supplies.

3.7 DEMONSTRATION

A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain packaged engine generators.

END OF SECTION 26 32 13

ROCIP Project: Withhold insurance cost. Please refer to sections 00425 & 00810 for information.

SECTION 26 36 00 - TRANSFER SWITCHES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section includes automatic transfer switches rated 600 V and less, including the following:

1. Bypass switches.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.

1. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes for transfer switches.
2. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, electrical characteristics, and accessories.

B. Shop Drawings:

1. Include plans, elevations, sections, details showing minimum clearances, conductor entry provisions, gutter space, and installed features and devices.
2. Include material lists for each switch specified.
3. Single-Line Diagram: Show connections between transfer switch, bypass power sources, and load; and show interlocking provisions for each combined transfer switch and bypass/isolation switch.
4. Riser Diagram: Show interconnection wiring between transfer switches, bypass/isolation switches, annunciators, and control panels.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Qualification Data: For manufacturer-authorized service representative.

B. Seismic Qualification Data: Certificates, for transfer switches, accessories, and components, from manufacturer.

1. Basis for Certification: Indicate whether withstand certification is based on actual test of assembled components or on calculation.
2. Dimensioned Outline Drawings of Equipment Unit: Identify center of gravity and locate and describe mounting and anchorage provisions.
3. Detailed description of equipment anchorage devices on which the certification is based and their installation requirements.

C. Field quality-control reports.

1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For each type of product to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

1. Features and operating sequences, both automatic and manual.
2. List of all factory settings of relays; provide relay-setting and calibration instructions, including software, where applicable.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Testing Agency Qualifications:

1. Member company of NETA.

a. Testing Agency's Field Supervisor: Certified by NETA to supervise on-site testing.

1.7 FIELD CONDITIONS

A. Interruption of Existing Electrical Service: Do not interrupt electrical service to facilities occupied by Owner or others unless permitted under the following conditions and then only after arranging to provide temporary electrical service:

1. Notify Owner no fewer than two days in advance of proposed interruption of electrical service.
2. Do not proceed with interruption of electrical service without Owner's written permission.

1.8 WARRANTY

A. Manufacturer's Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of transfer switch or transfer switch components that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.

1. Warranty Period: Two years from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

B. Comply with NEMA ICS 1.

C. Comply with NFPA 99.

D. Comply with NFPA 110.

E. Comply with UL 1008 unless requirements of these Specifications are stricter.

F. Indicated Current Ratings: Apply as defined in UL 1008 for continuous loading and total system transfer, including tungsten filament lamp loads not exceeding 30 percent of switch ampere rating, unless otherwise indicated.

G. Tested Fault-Current Closing and Short-Circuit Ratings: Adequate for duty imposed by protective devices at installation locations in Project under the fault conditions indicated, based on testing according to UL 1008.

1. Where transfer switch includes internal fault-current protection, rating of switch and trip unit combination shall exceed indicated fault-current value at installation location.
2. Short-time withstand capability for three cycles.

H. Repetitive Accuracy of Solid-State Controls: All settings shall be plus or minus 2 percent or better over an operating temperature range of minus 20 to plus 70 deg C.

I. Resistance to Damage by Voltage Transients: Components shall meet or exceed voltage-surge withstand capability requirements when tested according to IEEE C62.62. Components shall meet or exceed voltage-impulse withstand test of NEMA ICS 1.

J. Electrical Operation: Accomplish by a nonfused, momentarily energized solenoid or electric-motor-operated mechanism. Switches for emergency or standby purposes shall be mechanically and electrically interlocked in both directions to prevent simultaneous connection to both power sources unless closed transition.

K. Neutral Terminal: Solid and fully rated unless otherwise indicated.

L. Oversize Neutral: Ampacity and switch rating of neutral path through units indicated for oversize neutral shall be double the nominal rating of circuit in which switch is installed.

M. Heater: Equip switches exposed to outdoor temperatures and humidity, and other units indicated, with an internal heater. Provide thermostat within enclosure to control heater.

N. Battery Charger: For generator starting batteries.

1. Float type, rated 2 A.
2. Ammeter to display charging current.
3. Fused ac inputs and dc outputs.

O. Annunciation, Control, and Programming Interface Components: Devices at transfer switches for communicating with remote programming devices, annunciators, or annunciator and control panels shall have communication capability matched with remote device.

P. Factory Wiring: Train and bundle factory wiring and label, consistent with Shop Drawings, by color-code or by numbered or lettered wire and cable with printed markers at terminations. Color-coding and wire and cable markers are specified in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."

1. Designated Terminals: Pressure type, suitable for types and sizes of field wiring indicated.
2. Power-Terminal Arrangement and Field-Wiring Space: Suitable for top, side, or bottom entrance of feeder conductors as indicated.
3. Control Wiring: Equipped with lugs suitable for connection to terminal strips.
4. Accessible via front access.

Q. Enclosures: General-purpose NEMA 250, Type 1, complying with NEMA ICS 6 and UL 508, unless otherwise indicated.

2.2 CONTACTOR-TYPE AUTOMATIC TRANSFER SWITCHES

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. Cummins Power Generation.
2. Generac Power Systems, Inc.

3. Kohler Power Systems.
4. Russelectric, Inc.

B. Comply with Level 1 equipment according to NFPA 110.

C. Switch Characteristics: Designed for continuous-duty repetitive transfer of full-rated current between active power sources.

1. Limitation: Switches using molded-case switches or circuit breakers or insulated-case circuit-breaker components are unacceptable.
2. Switch Action: Double throw; mechanically held in both directions.
3. Contacts: Silver composition or silver alloy for load-current switching. Contactor-style automatic transfer-switch units, rated 600 A and higher, shall have separate arcing contacts.
4. Conductor Connectors: Suitable for use with conductor material and sizes.
5. Material: Hard-drawn copper, 98 percent conductivity.
6. Main and Neutral Lugs: Mechanical type.
7. Ground Lugs and Bus-Configured Terminators: Mechanical type.
8. Ground bar.
9. Connectors shall be marked for conductor size and type according to UL 1008.

D. Automatic Open-Transition Transfer Switches: Interlocked to prevent the load from being closed on both sources at the same time.

1. Sources shall be mechanically and electrically interlocked to prevent closing both sources on the load at the same time.

E. Automatic Delayed-Transition Transfer Switches: Pauses or stops in intermediate position to momentarily disconnect both sources, with transition controlled by programming in the automatic transfer-switch controller. Interlocked to prevent the load from being closed on both sources at the same time.

1. Adjustable Time Delay: For override of normal-source voltage sensing to delay transfer and engine start signals for alternative source. Adjustable from zero to six seconds, and factory set for one second.
2. Sources shall be mechanically and electrically interlocked to prevent closing both sources on the load at the same time.
3. Fully automatic break-before-make operation with center off position.
4. Fully automatic break-before-make operation with transfer when two sources have near zero phase difference.

F. Automatic Closed-Transition Transfer Switches: Connect both sources to load momentarily. Transition is controlled by programming in the automatic transfer-switch controller.

1. Fully automatic make-before-break operation when transferring between two available power sources.

2. Load transfer without interruption, through momentary interconnection of both power sources not exceeding 100 ms.
3. Initiation of No-Interruption Transfer: Controlled by in-phase monitor and sensors confirming both sources are present and acceptable.

    a. Initiation occurs without active control of generator.
    b. Automatic transfer-switch controller takes active control of generator to match frequency, phase angle, and voltage.
    c. Controls ensure that closed-transition load transfer closure occurs only when the two sources are within plus or minus 5 electrical degrees maximum, and plus or minus 5 percent maximum voltage difference.

4. Failure of power source serving load initiates automatic break-before-make transfer.

G. Manual Switch Operation: Under load, with door closed and with either or both sources energized. Transfer time is same as for electrical operation. Control circuit automatically disconnects from electrical operator during manual operation.

H. Manual Switch Operation: Unloaded. Control circuit automatically disconnects from electrical operator during manual operation.

I. Electric Nonautomatic Switch Operation: Electrically actuated by push buttons designated "Normal Source" and "Alternative Source." Switch shall be capable of transferring load in either direction with either or both sources energized.

J. Signal-Before-Transfer Contacts: A set of normally open/normally closed dry contacts operates in advance of retransfer to normal source. Interval shall be adjustable from 1 to 30 seconds.

K. Digital Communication Interface: Matched to capability of remote annunciator or annunciator and control panel.

L. Automatic Transfer-Switch Controller Features:

1. Controller operates through a period of loss of control power.
2. Undervoltage Sensing for Each Phase of Normal and Alternate Source: Sense low phase-to-ground voltage on each phase. Pickup voltage shall be adjustable from 85 to 100 percent of nominal, and dropout voltage shall be adjustable from 75 to 98 percent of pickup value. Factory set for pickup at 90 percent and dropout at 85 percent.
3. Voltage/Frequency Lockout Relay: Prevent premature transfer to generator. Pickup voltage shall be adjustable from 85 to 100 percent of nominal. Factory set for pickup at 90 percent. Pickup frequency shall be adjustable from 90 to 100 percent of nominal. Factory set for pickup at 95 percent.

4. Time Delay for Retransfer to Normal Source: Adjustable from zero to 30 minutes, and factory set for 10 minutes. Override shall automatically defeat delay on loss of voltage or sustained undervoltage of emergency source, provided normal supply has been restored.
5. Test Switch: Simulate normal-source failure.
6. Switch-Position Pilot Lights: Indicate source to which load is connected.
7. Source-Available Indicating Lights: Supervise sources via transfer-switch normal- and emergency-source sensing circuits.

    a. Normal Power Supervision: Green light with nameplate engraved "Normal Source Available."
    b. Emergency Power Supervision: Red light with nameplate engraved "Emergency Source Available."

8. Unassigned Auxiliary Contacts: Two normally open, single-pole, double-throw contacts for each switch position, rated 10 A at 240-V ac.
9. Transfer Override Switch: Overrides automatic retransfer control so transfer switch will remain connected to emergency power source regardless of condition of normal source. Pilot light indicates override status.
10. Engine Starting Contacts: One isolated and normally closed, and one isolated and normally open; rated 10 A at 32-V dc minimum.
11. Engine Shutdown Contacts: Instantaneous; shall initiate shutdown sequence at remote engine-generator controls after retransfer of load to normal source.
12. Engine Shutdown Contacts: Time delay adjustable from zero to five minutes, and factory set for five minutes. Contacts shall initiate shutdown at remote engine-generator controls after retransfer of load to normal source.
13. Engine-Generator Exerciser: Solid-state, programmable-time switch starts engine generator and transfers load to it from normal source for a preset time, then retransfers and shuts down engine after a preset cool-down period. Initiates exercise cycle at preset intervals adjustable from 7 to 30 days. Running periods shall be adjustable from 10 to 30 minutes. Factory settings shall be for 7-day exercise cycle, 20-minute running period, and 5-minute cool-down period. Exerciser features include the following:

    a. Exerciser Transfer Selector Switch: Permits selection of exercise with and without load transfer.
    b. Push-button programming control with digital display of settings.
    c. Integral battery operation of time switch when normal control power is unavailable.

M. Large-Motor-Load Power Transfer:

1. In-Phase Monitor: Factory-wired, internal relay controls transfer so contacts close only when the two sources are synchronized in phase and frequency. Relay shall compare phase relationship and frequency difference between normal and emergency sources and initiate transfer when both sources are within 15 electrical degrees, and only if transfer can be completed within 60 electrical degrees. Transfer shall be initiated only if both sources are within 2 Hz of nominal frequency and 70 percent or more of nominal voltage.
2. Motor Disconnect and Timing Relay Controls: Designated starters in loss of power scenario shall disconnect motors before transfer and reconnect them selectively at an adjustable time interval after transfer. Control connection to motor starters shall be through wiring external to automatic transfer switch. Provide adjustable time delay between 1 and 60 seconds for reconnecting individual motor loads. Provide relay contacts rated for motor-control circuit inrush and for actual seal currents to be encountered.
3. Programmed Neutral Switch Position: Switch operator with programmed neutral position arranged to provide a midpoint between the two working switch positions, with an intentional, time-controlled pause at midpoint during transfer. Adjustable pause from 0.5 to 30 seconds minimum, and factory set for 0.5 second unless otherwise indicated. Time delay occurs for both transfer directions. Disable pause unless both sources are live.

2.3 TRANSFER SWITCH ACESSORIES

A. Bypass/Isolation Switches:

1. Source Limitations: Same manufacturer as transfer switch in which installed.
2. Comply with requirements for Level 1 equipment according to NFPA 110.
3. Description: Manual type, arranged to select and connect either source of power directly to load, isolating transfer switch from load and from both power sources. Include the following features for each combined automatic transfer switch and bypass/isolation switch:

    a. Means to lock bypass/isolation switch in the position that isolates transfer switch with an arrangement that permits complete electrical testing of transfer switch while isolated. Interlocks shall prevent transfer-switch operation, except for testing or maintenance, while automatic transfer switch is isolated.
    b. Provide means to make power available to transfer-switch control circuit for testing and maintenance purposes.
    c. Drawout Arrangement for Transfer Switch: Provide physical separation from live parts and accessibility for testing and maintenance operations. Transfer switch and bypass/isolation switch shall be in isolated compartments.

d. Transition: Provide closed-transition operation when transferring from main transfer switch to bypass/isolation switch on the same power source.
e. Transition: Provide open-transition operation when transferring between power sources.
f. Bypass/Isolation Switch Current, Voltage, Closing, and Short-Circuit Withstand Ratings: Equal to or greater than those of associated automatic transfer switch, and with same phase arrangement and number of poles.
g. Contact temperatures of bypass/isolation switches shall not exceed those of automatic transfer-switch contacts when they are carrying rated load.
h. Manual Control: Constructed so load bypass and transfer-switch isolation can be performed by one person in no more than two operations in 15 seconds or less. Operating handles shall be externally operated.
i. Automatic and Nonautomatic Control: Automatic transfer-switch controller shall also control the bypass/isolation switch.
j. Legend: Manufacturer's standard legend for control labels and instruction signs shall describe operating instructions.
k. Maintainability: Fabricate to allow convenient removal of major components from front without removing other parts or main power conductors.

4. Interconnection of Bypass/Isolation Switches with Automatic Transfer Switches: Factory-installed copper bus bars; plated at connection points and braced for the indicated available short-circuit current.

B. Remote Annunciator System:

1. Source Limitations: Same manufacturer as transfer switch in which installed.
2. Functional Description: Remote annunciator panel shall annunciate conditions for indicated transfer switches.
3. Annunciation panel display shall include the following indicators:

a. Sources available, as defined by actual pickup and dropout settings of transfer-switch controls.
b. Switch position.
c. Switch in test mode.
d. Failure of communication link.

4. Annunciator Panel: LED-lamp type with audible signal and silencing switch.

a. Indicating Lights: Grouped for each transfer switch monitored.
b. Label each group, indicating transfer switch it monitors, location of switch, and identity of load it serves.
c. Mounting: Flush, modular, steel cabinet unless otherwise indicated.
d. Lamp Test: Push-to-test or lamp-test switch on front panel.

2.4 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

A. Factory Tests: Test and inspect components, assembled switches, and associated equipment according to UL 1008. Ensure proper operation. Check transfer time and voltage, frequency, and time-delay settings for compliance with specified requirements. Perform dielectric strength test complying with NEMA ICS 1.

B. Prepare test and inspection reports.

1. For each of the tests required by UL 1008, performed on representative devices, for emergency systems. Include results of test for the following conditions:

a. Overvoltage.
b. Undervoltage.
c. Loss of supply voltage.
d. Reduction of supply voltage.
e. Alternative supply voltage or frequency is at minimum acceptable values.
f. Temperature rise.
g. Dielectric voltage-withstand; before and after short-circuit test.
h. Overload.
i. Contact opening.
j. Endurance.
k. Short circuit.
l. Short-time current capability.
m. Receptacle withstand capability.
n. Insulating base and supports damage.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

A. Annunciator and Control Panel Mounting: Flush in wall unless otherwise indicated.

B. Identify components according to Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."

C. Set field-adjustable intervals and delays, relays, and engine exerciser clock.

D. Comply with NECA 1.

3.2 CONNECTIONS

A. Wiring to Remote Components: Match type and number of cables and conductors to generator sets, motor controls, control, and communication requirements of transfer switches as recommended by manufacturer. Increase raceway sizes at no additional cost to Owner if necessary to accommodate required wiring.

B. Wiring Method: Install cables in raceways and cable trays except within electrical enclosures. Conceal raceway and cables except in unfinished spaces.

1. Comply with requirements for raceways and boxes specified in Section 260533 "Raceways and Boxes for Electrical Systems."

C. Wiring within Enclosures: Bundle, lace, and train conductors to terminal points with no excess and without exceeding manufacturer's limitations on bending radii.

D. Ground equipment according to Section 260526 "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems."

E. Connect wiring according to Section 260519 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."

F. Connect twisted pair cable according to Section 260523 "Control-Voltage Electrical Power Cables."

G. Final connections to equipment shall be made with liquidtight, flexible metallic conduit no more than 18 inches in length.

3.3 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.

B. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to test and inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections.

C. Perform the following tests and inspections with the assistance of a factory-authorized service representative:

1. After installing equipment, test for compliance with requirements according to NETA ATS.
2. Visual and Mechanical Inspection:

   a. Compare equipment nameplate data with Drawings and Specifications.
   b. Inspect physical and mechanical condition.
   c. Inspect anchorage, alignment, grounding, and required clearances.
   d. Verify that the unit is clean.

e. Verify appropriate lubrication on moving current-carrying parts and on moving and sliding surfaces.
f. Verify that manual transfer warnings are attached and visible.
g. Verify tightness of all control connections.
h. Inspect bolted electrical connections for high resistance using one of the following methods, or both:

    1) Use of low-resistance ohmmeter.
    2) Verify tightness of accessible bolted electrical connections by calibrated torque-wrench method according to manufacturer's published data.

i. Perform manual transfer operation.
j. Verify positive mechanical interlocking between normal and alternate sources.
k. Perform visual and mechanical inspection of surge arresters.
l. Inspect control power transformers.

    1) Inspect for physical damage, cracked insulation, broken leads, tightness of connections, defective wiring, and overall general condition.
    2) Verify that primary and secondary fuse or circuit-breaker ratings match Drawings.
    3) Verify correct functioning of drawout disconnecting contacts, grounding contacts, and interlocks.

3. Electrical Tests:

    a. Perform insulation-resistance tests on all control wiring with respect to ground.
    b. Perform a contact/pole-resistance test. Compare measured values with manufacturer's acceptable values.
    c. Verify settings and operation of control devices.
    d. Calibrate and set all relays and timers.
    e. Verify phase rotation, phasing, and synchronized operation.
    f. Perform automatic transfer tests.
    g. Verify correct operation and timing of the following functions:

        1) Normal source voltage-sensing and frequency-sensing relays.
        2) Engine start sequence.
        3) Time delay on transfer.
        4) Alternative source voltage-sensing and frequency-sensing relays.
        5) Automatic transfer operation.
        6) Interlocks and limit switch function.
        7) Time delay and retransfer on normal power restoration.
        8) Engine cool-down and shutdown feature.

4. Measure insulation resistance phase-to-phase and phase-to-ground with insulation-resistance tester. Include external annunciation and control circuits. Use test voltages and procedure recommended by manufacturer. Comply with manufacturer's specified minimum resistance.

    a. Check for electrical continuity of circuits and for short circuits.
    b. Inspect for physical damage, proper installation and connection, and integrity of barriers, covers, and safety features.
    c. Verify that manual transfer warnings are properly placed.
    d. Perform manual transfer operation.

5. After energizing circuits, perform each electrical test for transfer switches stated in NETA ATS and demonstrate interlocking sequence and operational function for each switch at least three times.

    a. Simulate power failures of normal source to automatic transfer switches and retransfer from emergency source with normal source available.
    b. Simulate loss of phase-to-ground voltage for each phase of normal source.
    c. Verify time-delay settings.
    d. Verify pickup and dropout voltages by data readout or inspection of control settings.
    e. Test bypass/isolation unit functional modes and related automatic transfer-switch operations.
    f. Perform contact-resistance test across main contacts and correct values exceeding 500 microhms and values for one pole deviating by more than 50 percent from other poles.
    g. Verify proper sequence and correct timing of automatic engine starting, transfer time delay, retransfer time delay on restoration of normal power, and engine cool-down and shutdown.

6. Ground-Fault Tests: Coordinate with testing of ground-fault protective devices for power delivery from both sources.

    a. Verify grounding connections and locations and ratings of sensors.

D. Coordinate tests with tests of generator and run them concurrently.

E. Report results of tests and inspections in writing. Record adjustable relay settings and measured insulation and contact resistances and time delays. Attach a label or tag to each tested component indicating satisfactory completion of tests.

F. Transfer switches will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.

G. Remove and replace malfunctioning units and retest as specified above.

H. Prepare test and inspection reports.

I. Infrared Scanning: After Substantial Completion, but not more than 60 days after Final Acceptance, perform an infrared scan of each switch. Remove all access panels so joints and connections are accessible to portable scanner.

1. Instrument: Use an infrared scanning device designed to measure temperature or to detect significant deviations from normal values. Provide calibration record for device.
2. Record of Infrared Scanning: Prepare a certified report that identifies switches checked and that describes scanning results. Include notation of deficiencies detected, remedial action taken, and observations after remedial action.
3. Follow-up Infrared Scanning: Perform an additional follow-up infrared scan of each switch 11 months after date of Substantial Completion.

3.4 DEMONSTRATION

A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain transfer switches and related equipment.

B. Training shall include testing ground-fault protective devices and instructions to determine when the ground-fault system shall be retested. Include instructions on where ground-fault sensors are located and how to avoid negating the ground-fault protection scheme during testing and circuit modifications.

C. Coordinate this training with that for generator equipment.

END OF SECTION 26 36 00

SECTION 26 51 19 - LED INTERIOR LIGHTING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Interior solid-state luminaires that use LED technology.
2. Lighting fixture supports.

B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 260923 "Lighting Control Devices" for automatic control of lighting, including time switches, photoelectric relays, occupancy sensors, and multipole lighting relays and contactors.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. CCT: Correlated color temperature.

B. CRI: Color Rendering Index.

C. Fixture: See "Luminaire."

D. IP: International Protection or Ingress Protection Rating.

E. LED: Light-emitting diode.

F. Lumen: Measured output of lamp and luminaire, or both.

G. Luminaire: Complete lighting unit, including lamp, reflector, and housing.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.

1. Arrange in order of luminaire designation.
2. Include data on features, accessories, and finishes.

3. Include physical description and dimensions of luminaires.
4. Include emergency lighting units, including batteries and chargers.
5. Include life, output (lumens, CCT, and CRI), and energy efficiency data.
6. Photometric data and adjustment factors based on laboratory tests IES LM-79 and IES LM-80.

    a. Manufacturers' Certified Data: Photometric data certified by manufacturer's laboratory with a current accreditation under the National Voluntary Laboratory Accreditation Program for Energy Efficient Lighting Products.
    b. Testing Agency Certified Data: For indicated luminaires, photometric data certified by a qualified independent testing agency. Photometric data for remaining luminaires shall be certified by manufacturer.

B. Shop Drawings: For nonstandard or custom luminaires.

1. Include plans, elevations, sections, and mounting and attachment details.
2. Include details of luminaire assemblies. Indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.
3. Include diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.

C. Product Schedule: For luminaires and lamps. Use same designations indicated on Drawings.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Qualification Data: For testing laboratory providing photometric data for luminaires.

B. Detailed description of equipment anchorage devices on which the certification is based and their installation requirements.

C. Product Certificates: For each type of luminaire.

D. Product Test Reports: For each luminaire, for tests performed by manufacturer and witnessed by a qualified testing agency .

E. Sample warranty.

1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For luminaires and lighting systems to include in operation and maintenance manuals.

1. Provide a list of all lamp types used on Project; use ANSI and manufacturers' codes.

1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Luminaire Photometric Data Testing Laboratory Qualifications: Provided by an independent agency, with the experience and capability to conduct the testing indicated, that is an NRTL as defined by OSHA in 29 CFR 1910.7, accredited under the NVLAP for Energy Efficient Lighting Products, and complying with the applicable IES testing standards.

B. Provide luminaires from a single manufacturer for each luminaire type.

C. Each luminaire type shall be binned within a three-step MacAdam Ellipse to ensure color consistency among luminaires.

1.8 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Protect finishes of exposed surfaces by applying a strippable, temporary protective covering before shipping.

1.9 WARRANTY

A. Warranty: Manufacturer and Installer agree to repair or replace components of luminaires that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.

B. Warranty Period: Five year(s) from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

A. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the products indicated on Drawings. Deviation other than basis of design shall be submitted as shop drawings per City of Austin 00700 General Conditions.

2.2 LUMINAIRE REQUIREMENTS

A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

B. NRTL Compliance: Luminaires for hazardous locations shall be listed and labeled for indicated class and division of hazard by an NRTL.

C. FM Global Compliance: Luminaires for hazardous locations shall be listed and labeled for indicated class and division of hazard by FM Global.

D. Recessed Fixtures: Comply with NEMA LE 4.

E. Bulb shape complying with ANSI C79.1.

F. Lamp base complying with [**ANSI C81.61**] [**or**] [**IEC 60061-1**].

G. CRI of minimum 80 . CCT of 3500 K.

H. Rated lamp life of 50,000 hours.

I. Lamps dimmable from 100 percent to 0 percent of maximum light output.

J. Internal driver.

2.3 MATERIALS

A. Metal Parts:

1. Free of burrs and sharp corners and edges.
2. Sheet metal components shall be steel unless otherwise indicated.
3. Form and support to prevent warping and sagging.

B. Doors, Frames, and Other Internal Access: Smooth operating, free of light leakage under operating conditions, and designed to permit relamping without use of tools. Designed to prevent doors, frames, lenses, diffusers, and other components from falling accidentally during relamping and when secured in operating position.

C. Diffusers and Globes:

1. Clear, UV-stabilized acrylic
2. Acrylic Diffusers: One hundred percent virgin acrylic plastic, with high resistance to yellowing and other changes due to aging, exposure to heat, and UV radiation.
3. Glass: Annealed crystal glass unless otherwise indicated.
4. Lens Thickness: At least 0.125 inch (3.175 mm) minimum unless otherwise indicated.

D. Factory-Applied Labels: Comply with UL 1598. Include recommended lamps. Locate labels where they will be readily visible to service personnel, but not seen from normal viewing angles when lamps are in place.

1. Label shall include the following lamp characteristics:

a. "USE ONLY" and include specific lamp type.
b. Lamp diameter, shape, size, wattage, and coating.
c. CCT and CRI for all luminaires.

2.4 METAL FINISHES

A. Variations in finishes are unacceptable in the same piece. Variations in finishes of adjoining components are acceptable if they are within the range of approved Samples and if they can be and are assembled or installed to minimize contrast.

2.5 LUMINAIRE FIXTURE SUPPORT COMPONENTS

A. Comply with requirements in Section 260529 "Hangers and Supports for Electrical Systems" for channel and angle iron supports and nonmetallic channel and angle supports.

B. Single-Stem Hangers: 1/2-inch (13-mm) steel tubing with swivel ball fittings and ceiling canopy. Finish same as luminaire.

C. Wires: ASTM A 641/A 641 M, Class 3, soft temper, zinc-coated steel, 12 gage (2.68 mm) .

D. Rod Hangers: 3/16-inch (5-mm) minimum diameter, cadmium-plated, threaded steel rod.

E. Hook Hangers: Integrated assembly matched to luminaire, line voltage, and equipment with threaded attachment, cord, and locking-type plug.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.

B. Examine roughing-in for luminaire to verify actual locations of luminaire and electrical connections before fixture installation. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 TEMPORARY LIGHTING

A. If approved by the Architect, use selected permanent luminaires for temporary lighting. When construction is sufficiently complete, clean luminaires used for temporary lighting and install new lamps.

3.3 INSTALLATION

A. Comply with NECA 1.

B. Install luminaires level, plumb, and square with ceilings and walls unless otherwise indicated.

C. Install lamps in each luminaire.

D. Supports:

1. Sized and rated for luminaire weight.
2. Able to maintain luminaire position after cleaning and relamping.
3. Provide support for luminaire without causing deflection of ceiling or wall.
4. Luminaire mounting devices shall be capable of supporting a horizontal force of 100 percent of luminaire weight and vertical force of 400 percent of luminaire weight.

E. Flush-Mounted Luminaire Support:

1. Secured to outlet box.
2. Attached to ceiling structural members at four points equally spaced around circumference of luminaire.
3. Trim ring flush with finished surface.

F. Wall-Mounted Luminaire Support:

1. Attached to structural members in walls.
2. Do not attach luminaires directly to gypsum board.

G. Ceiling-Mounted Luminaire Support:

1. Ceiling mount with two 5/32-inch-(4-mm-) diameter aircraft cable supports adjustable to 120 inches ((6 m)) in length.

H. Suspended Luminaire Support:

1. Pendants and Rods: Where longer than 48 inches (1200 mm), brace to limit swinging.
2. Stem-Mounted, Single-Unit Luminaires: Suspend with twin-stem hangers. Support with approved outlet box and accessories that hold stem and provide damping of luminaire oscillations. Support outlet box vertically to building structure using approved devices.
3. Continuous Rows of Luminaires: Use tubing or stem for wiring at one point and wire support for suspension for each unit length of luminaire chassis, including one at each end.
4. Do not use ceiling grid as support for pendant luminaires. Connect support wires or rods to building structure.

I. Ceiling-Grid-Mounted Luminaires:

1. Secure to any required outlet box.
2. Secure luminaire to the luminaire opening using approved fasteners in a minimum of four locations, spaced near corners of luminaire.
3. Use approved devices and support components to connect luminaire to ceiling grid and building structure in a minimum of four locations, spaced near corners of luminaire.

J. Comply with requirements in Section 260519 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables" for wiring connections.

3.4 IDENTIFICATION

A. Identify system components, wiring, cabling, and terminals. Comply with requirements for identification specified in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."

3.5 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Perform the following tests and inspections:

1. Operational Test: After installing luminaires, switches, and accessories, and after electrical circuitry has been energized, test units to confirm proper operation.
2. Test for Emergency Lighting: Interrupt power supply to demonstrate proper operation. Verify transfer from normal power to battery power and retransfer to normal.

B. Luminaire will be considered defective if it does not pass operation tests and inspections.

C. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.6 ADJUSTING

A. Occupancy Adjustments: When requested within 12 months of date of Substantial Completion, provide on-site assistance in adjusting the direction of aim of luminaires to suit occupied conditions. Make up to two visits to Project during other-than-normal hours for this purpose. Some of this work may be required during hours of darkness.

1. During adjustment visits, inspect all luminaires. Replace lamps or luminaires that are defective.

2. Parts and supplies shall be manufacturer's authorized replacement parts and supplies.
3. Adjust the aim of luminaires in the presence of the Architect.

END OF SECTION 26 51 19

ROCIP Project: Withhold insurance cost. Please refer to sections 00425 & 00810 for information.

SECTION 26 56 00 - EXTERIOR LIGHTING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Exterior luminaires with lamps and ballasts.
2. Poles and accessories.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. CCT: Correlated color temperature.

B. CRI: Color-rendering index.

C. HID: High-intensity discharge.

D. LER: Luminaire efficacy rating.

E. Luminaire: Complete lighting fixture, including ballast housing if provided.

F. Pole: Luminaire support structure, including tower used for large area illumination.

G. Standard: Same definition as "Pole" above.

1.4 STRUCTURAL ANALYSIS CRITERIA FOR POLE SELECTION

A. Dead Load: Weight of luminaire and its horizontal and vertical supports, lowering devices, and supporting structure, applied as stated in AASHTO LTS-4-M.

B. Live Load: Single load of 500 lbf (2224 N), distributed as stated in AASHTO LTS-4-M.

C. Ice Load: Load of 3 lbf/sq. ft. (145 Pa), applied as stated in AASHTO LTS-4-M Ice Load Map.

D. Wind Load: Pressure of wind on pole and luminaire and banners and banner arms, calculated and applied as stated in AASHTO LTS-4-M.

1. Basic wind speed for calculating wind load for poles 50 feet (15 m) high or less is 90 mph (40 m/s).

   a. Wind Importance Factor: 1.0.
   b. Minimum Design Life: 25 years.
   c. Velocity Conversion Factors: 1.0.

1.5 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each luminaire, pole, and support component, arranged in order of lighting unit designation. Include data on features, accessories, finishes, and the following:

1. Physical description of luminaire, including materials, dimensions, effective projected area, and verification of indicated parameters.
2. Details of attaching luminaires and accessories.
3. Details of installation and construction.
4. Luminaire materials.
5. Photometric data based on laboratory tests of each luminaire type, complete with indicated lamps, ballasts, and accessories.

   a. Manufacturer Certified Data: Photometric data shall be certified by manufacturer's laboratory with a current accreditation under the National Voluntary Laboratory Accreditation Program for Energy Efficient Lighting Products.

6. Photoelectric relays.
7. Ballasts, including energy-efficiency data.
8. Lamps, including life, output, CCT, CRI, lumens, and energy-efficiency data.
9. Materials, dimensions, and finishes of poles.
10. Means of attaching luminaires to supports, and indication that attachment is suitable for components involved.
11. Anchor bolts for poles.
12. Manufactured pole foundations.

B. Shop Drawings: Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.

1. Anchor-bolt templates keyed to specific poles and certified by manufacturer.

1.6 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Pole and Support Component Certificates: Signed by manufacturers of poles, certifying that products are designed for indicated load requirements in AASHTO LTS-4-M and that load imposed by luminaire and attachments has been included in design.

B. Qualification Data: For qualified agencies providing photometric data for lighting fixtures.

C. Field quality-control reports.

D. Warranty: Sample of special warranty.

1.7 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For luminaires and poles to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

1.8 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Luminaire Photometric Data Testing Laboratory Qualifications: Provided by manufacturers' laboratories that are accredited under the National Volunteer Laboratory Accreditation Program for Energy Efficient Lighting Products.

B. Luminaire Photometric Data Testing Laboratory Qualifications: Provided by an independent agency, with the experience and capability to conduct the testing indicated, that is an NRTL as defined by OSHA in 29 CFR 1910.

C. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

D. Comply with IEEE C2, "National Electrical Safety Code."

E. Comply with NFPA 70.

1.9 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Package aluminum poles for shipping according to ASTM B 660.

B. Store poles on decay-resistant-treated skids at least 12 inches (300 mm) above grade and vegetation. Support poles to prevent distortion and arrange to provide free air circulation.

C. Handle wood poles so they will not be damaged. Do not use pointed tools that can indent pole surface more than 1/4 inch (6 mm) deep. Do not apply tools to section of pole to be installed below ground line.

D. Retain factory-applied pole wrappings on fiberglass and laminated wood poles until right before pole installation. Handle poles with web fabric straps.

E. Retain factory-applied pole wrappings on metal poles until right before pole installation. For poles with nonmetallic finishes, handle with web fabric straps.

1.10 WARRANTY

A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair or replace products that fail in materials or workmanship; that corrode; or that fade, stain, perforate, erode, or chalk due to effects of weather or solar radiation within specified warranty period. Manufacturer may exclude lightning damage, hail damage, vandalism, abuse, or unauthorized repairs or alterations from special warranty coverage.

1. Warranty Period for Luminaires: Five years from date of Substantial Completion.
2. Warranty Period for Metal Corrosion: Five years from date of Substantial Completion.
3. Warranty Period for Color Retention: Five years from date of Substantial Completion.
4. Warranty Period for Poles: Repair or replace lighting poles and standards that fail in finish, materials, and workmanship within manufacturer's standard warranty period, but not less than three years from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

A. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the products indicated on Drawings. Deviation other than basis of design shall be submitted as shop drawings per City of Austin 00700 General Conditions.

2.2 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS FOR LUMINAIRES

A. Luminaires shall comply with UL 1598 and be listed and labeled for installation in wet locations by an NRTL acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.

1. LER Tests Incandescent Fixtures: Where LER is specified, test according to NEMA LE 5A.
2. LER Tests Fluorescent Fixtures: Where LER is specified, test according to NEMA LE 5 and NEMA LE 5A as applicable.

3. LER Tests HID Fixtures: Where LER is specified, test according to NEMA LE 5B.

B. Lateral Light Distribution Patterns: Comply with IESNA RP-8 for parameters of lateral light distribution patterns indicated for luminaires.

C. Metal Parts: Free of burrs and sharp corners and edges.

D. Sheet Metal Components: Corrosion-resistant aluminum unless otherwise indicated. Form and support to prevent warping and sagging.

E. Housings: Rigidly formed, weather- and light-tight enclosures that will not warp, sag, or deform in use. Provide filter/breather for enclosed luminaires.

F. Doors, Frames, and Other Internal Access: Smooth operating, free of light leakage under operating conditions, and designed to permit relamping without use of tools. Designed to prevent doors, frames, lenses, diffusers, and other components from falling accidentally during relamping and when secured in operating position. Doors shall be removable for cleaning or replacing lenses. Designed to disconnect ballast when door opens.

G. Exposed Hardware Material: Stainless steel.

H. Plastic Parts: High resistance to yellowing and other changes due to aging, exposure to heat, and UV radiation.

I. Reflecting surfaces shall have minimum reflectance as follows unless otherwise indicated:

1. White Surfaces: 85 percent.
2. Specular Surfaces: 83 percent.
3. Diffusing Specular Surfaces: 75 percent.

J. Lenses and Refractors Gaskets: Use heat- and aging-resistant resilient gaskets to seal and cushion lenses and refractors in luminaire doors.

K. Luminaire Finish: Manufacturer's standard paint applied to factory-assembled and -tested luminaire before shipping. Where indicated, match finish process and color of pole or support materials.

L. Factory-Applied Finish for Aluminum Luminaires: Comply with NAAMM's "Metal Finishes Manual for Architectural and Metal Products" for recommendations for applying and designating finishes.

2.3 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS FOR POLES AND SUPPORT COMPONENTS

A. Structural Characteristics: Comply with AASHTO LTS-4-M.

1. Wind-Load Strength of Poles: Adequate at indicated heights above grade without failure, permanent deflection, or whipping in steady winds of speed indicated in "Structural Analysis Criteria for Pole Selection" Article.
2. Strength Analysis: For each pole, multiply the actual equivalent projected area of luminaires and brackets by a factor of 1.1 to obtain the equivalent projected area to be used in pole selection strength analysis.

B. Luminaire Attachment Provisions: Comply with luminaire manufacturers' mounting requirements. Use stainless-steel fasteners and mounting bolts unless otherwise indicated.

C. Mountings, Fasteners, and Appurtenances: Corrosion-resistant items compatible with support components.

1. Materials: Shall not cause galvanic action at contact points.
2. Anchor Bolts, Leveling Nuts, Bolt Caps, and Washers: Hot-dip galvanized after fabrication unless otherwise indicated.
3. Anchor-Bolt Template: Plywood or steel.

D. Handhole: Oval-shaped, with minimum clear opening of 2-1/2 by 5 inches (65 by 130 mm), with cover secured by stainless-steel captive screws.

E. Concrete Pole Foundations: Cast in place, with anchor bolts to match pole-base flange. Concrete, reinforcement, and formwork are specified in Section 033000 "Cast-in-Place Concrete."

2.4 ALUMINUM POLES

A. Poles: ASTM B 209 (ASTM B 209M), 5052-H34 marine sheet alloy with access handhole in pole wall.

1. Shape: Round, tapered.
2. Mounting Provisions: Butt flange for bolted mounting on foundation or breakaway support.

B. Pole-Top Tenons: Fabricated to support luminaire or luminaires and brackets indicated, and securely fastened to pole top.

C. Grounding and Bonding Lugs: Welded 1/2-inch (13-mm) threaded lug, complying with requirements in Section 260526 "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems," listed for attaching grounding and bonding conductors of type and size listed in that Section, and accessible through handhole.

D. Brackets for Luminaires: Detachable, with pole and adapter fittings of cast aluminum. Adapter fitting welded to pole and bracket, then bolted together with stainless-steel bolts.

1. Tapered oval cross section, with straight tubular end section to accommodate luminaire.
2. Finish: Same as luminaire.

E. Prime-Coat Finish: Manufacturer's standard prime-coat finish ready for field painting.

F. Aluminum Finish: Comply with NAAMM's "Metal Finishes Manual for Architectural and Metal Products" for recommendations for applying and designating finishes.

2.5 POLE ACCESSORIES

A. Base Covers: Manufacturers' standard metal units, arranged to cover pole's mounting bolts and nuts. Finish same as pole.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 LUMINAIRE INSTALLATION

A. Install lamps in each luminaire.

B. Fasten luminaire to indicated structural supports.

1. Use fastening methods and materials selected to resist seismic forces defined for the application and approved by manufacturer.

C. Adjust luminaires that require field adjustment or aiming.

3.2 POLE INSTALLATION

A. Alignment: Align pole foundations and poles for optimum directional alignment of luminaires and their mounting provisions on the pole.

B. Clearances: Maintain the following minimum horizontal distances of poles from surface and underground features unless otherwise indicated on Drawings:

1. Fire Hydrants and Storm Drainage Piping: 60 inches (1520 mm).
2. Water, Gas, Electric, Communication, and Sewer Lines: 10 feet (3 m).

C. Concrete Pole Foundations: Set anchor bolts according to anchor-bolt templates furnished by pole manufacturer. Concrete materials, installation, and finishing requirements are specified in Series 400 "Concrete Structures and Miscellaneous Concrete".

D. Foundation-Mounted Poles: Mount pole with leveling nuts, and tighten top nuts to torque level recommended by pole manufacturer.

1. Use anchor bolts and nuts selected to resist seismic forces defined for the application and approved by manufacturer.
2. Grout void between pole base and foundation. Use nonshrink or expanding concrete grout firmly packed to fill space.
3. Install base covers unless otherwise indicated.
4. Use a short piece of 1/2-inch- (13-mm-) diameter pipe to make a drain hole through grout. Arrange to drain condensation from interior of pole.

E. Embedded Poles with Tamped Earth Backfill: Set poles to depth below finished grade indicated on Drawings, but not less than one-sixth of pole height.

1. Dig holes large enough to permit use of tampers in the full depth of hole.
2. Backfill in 6-inch (150-mm) layers and thoroughly tamp each layer so compaction of backfill is equal to or greater than that of undisturbed earth.

F. Embedded Poles with Concrete Backfill: Set poles in augered holes to depth below finished grade indicated on Drawings, but not less than one-sixth of pole height.

1. Make holes 6 inches (150 mm) in diameter larger than pole diameter.
2. Fill augered hole around pole with air-entrained concrete having a minimum compressive strength of 3000 psi (20 MPa) at 28 days, and finish in a dome above finished grade.
3. Use a short piece of 1/2-inch- (13-mm-) diameter pipe to make a drain hole through concrete dome. Arrange to drain condensation from interior of pole.
4. Cure concrete a minimum of 72 hours before performing work on pole.

G. Raise and set poles using web fabric slings (not chain or cable).

3.3 BOLLARD LUMINAIRE INSTALLATION

A. Align units for optimum directional alignment of light distribution.

B. Install on concrete base with top 4 inches (100 mm) above finished grade or surface at bollard location. Cast conduit into base, and shape base to match shape of bollard base. Finish by troweling and rubbing smooth. Concrete materials, installation, and finishing are specified in Series 400 "Concrete Structures and Miscellaneous Concrete".

3.4 CORROSION PREVENTION

A. Aluminum: Do not use in contact with earth or concrete. When in direct contact with a dissimilar metal, protect aluminum by insulating fittings or treatment.

B. Steel Conduits: Comply with Section 260533 "Raceways and Boxes for Electrical Systems." In concrete foundations, wrap conduit with 0.010-inch- (0.254-mm-) thick, pipe-wrapping plastic tape applied with a 50 percent overlap.

3.5 GROUNDING

C. Ground metal poles and support structures according to Section 260526 "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems."

1. Install grounding electrode for each pole unless otherwise indicated.
2. Install grounding conductor pigtail in the base for connecting luminaire to grounding system.

3.6 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Inspect each installed fixture for damage. Replace damaged fixtures and components.

B. Illumination Observations: Verify normal operation of lighting units after installing luminaires and energizing circuits with normal power source.

1. Verify operation of photoelectric controls.

END OF SECTION 26 56 00

ROCIP Project: Withhold insurance cost. Please refer to sections 00425 & 00810 for information.

SECTION 28 31 11 - ADDRESSABLE FIRE-ALARM SYSTEM

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SCOPE

A. The fire alarm subcontractor shall layout the fire alarm system utilizing an analog/addressable fire alarm control panel (FACP), smoke detectors, manual fire alarm boxes, audio and visual notification appliances and digital transmitter for remote monitoring of the system. The fire alarm system shall be installed in accordance with the specifications, codes and standards, and the approved fire alarm system installation drawings. The fire alarm sub-contractor is responsible for ensuring the system and installation is in compliance with NFPA 72, NFPA 70 Article 760 and 800, NFPA 101, ADA and Texas Accessibility Standards (TAS).

B. The fire alarm subcontractor's bid shall include furnishing and installing all fire alarm system related materials, equipment, components, conduit, and wire.

C. The electrical subcontractor's bid shall include materials and installation of 120 VAC power from dedicated circuits to the FACP. Install surge protection recommended by FACP manufacturer on normal AC power for the FACP and its accessories.

D. The purpose of the bid documents is to convey to the fire alarm subcontractor the scope of work required, all of which the subcontractor is responsible to furnish, install, adjust and make ready for operation. After completion of the work, the fire alarm system shall be complete and fully functional in all respects and shall conform to the requirements of all applicable standards stated herein. The subcontractor is expected, as a requirement of their qualifications, to utilize their knowledge and experience to anticipate and include in the cost of the work any incidentals that may be required, but not specifically expressed herein, in order to provide a complete and fully functional fire alarm system for this structure. Project design drawings and specifications reflect the intent and scope of the project. The subcontractor shall provide a fire alarm system that meets all of the requirements stated herein. The subcontractor may vary from the design drawings provided all of the requirements are satisfied. The subcontractor is expected to make allowances for all necessary adjustments for the actual installation and to examine physical conditions that may affect the performance of their work, and coordinate the installation as necessary to accommodate obstructions and the work of other trades. No extra payment will be allowed for subcontractor's failure to make such allowances. The cost associated with this task shall be included in the subcontractor's base bid. The omission of any necessary system component, as required by the authorities having jurisdiction, in the drawings and specifications shall not relieve the subcontractor of the responsibility for verifying and providing such necessity, without additional cost to the Owner.

1.2 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.3 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Fire-alarm control unit.
2. Manual fire-alarm boxes.
3. System smoke detectors.
4. Heat detectors.
5. Notification appliances.
6. Addressable interface device.
7. Digital alarm communicator transmitter.

1.4 DEFINITIONS

A. EMT: Electrical Metallic Tubing.

B. FACP: Fire Alarm Control Panel.

C. HLI: High Level Interface.

D. NICET: National Institute for Certification in Engineering Technologies.

E. PC: Personal computer.

1.5 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product, including furnished options and accessories.

1. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions, profiles, and finishes.
2. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, and electrical characteristics.

B. Shop Drawings: For fire-alarm system.

1. Comply with recommendations and requirements in the "Documentation" section of the "Fundamentals" chapter in NFPA 72.
2. Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.
3. Include details of equipment assemblies. Indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and locations. Indicate conductor sizes, indicate termination locations and requirements, and distinguish between factory and field wiring.

4. Detail assembly and support requirements.
5. Include voltage drop calculations for notification-appliance circuits.
6. Include battery-size calculations.
7. Include input/output matrix.
8. Include performance parameters and installation details for each detector.
9. Verify that each duct detector is listed for complete range of air velocity, temperature, and humidity possible when air-handling system is operating.
10. Include plans, sections, and elevations of applicable heating, ventilating, and air-conditioning ducts, drawn to scale; coordinate location of duct smoke detectors and access to them.

    a. Show critical dimensions that relate to placement and support of sampling tubes, detector housing, and remote status and alarm indicators.
    b. Show field wiring required for HVAC unit shutdown on alarm.
    c. Locate detectors according to manufacturer's written recommendations.

11. Include floor plans to indicate final outlet locations showing address of each addressable device. Show size and route of cable and conduits and point-to-point wiring diagrams.

C. General Submittal Requirements:

1. Submittals shall be approved by authorities having jurisdiction prior to submitting them to Architect.
2. Shop Drawings, Calculations, and Product Data MUST be submitted together. Partial submittals will be returned without review. Submit copies in Portable Digital File (PDF) format to Architect/Engineer.
3. Shop Drawings shall be prepared by persons with the following qualifications:

    a. Trained and certified by manufacturer in fire-alarm system design.
    b. NICET-certified, fire-alarm technician; Level III minimum.
    c. Licensed by the State of Texas.

1.6 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Qualification Data: For Installer.

Field quality-control reports.

1.7 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For fire-alarm systems and components to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

1. In addition to items specified in Section 017823 "Operation and Maintenance Data," include the following:

   a. Comply with the "Records" section of the "Inspection, Testing and Maintenance" chapter in NFPA 72.
   b. Provide "Fire Alarm and Emergency Communications System Record of Completion Documents" according to the "Completion Documents" Article in the "Documentation" section of the "Fundamentals" chapter in NFPA 72.
   c. Complete wiring diagrams showing connections between all devices and equipment. Each conductor shall be numbered at every junction point with indication of origination and termination points.
   d. Riser diagram.
   e. Device addresses.
   f. Record copy of site-specific software.
   g. Provide "Inspection and Testing Form" according to the "Inspection, Testing and Maintenance" chapter in NFPA 72, and include the following:

      1) Equipment tested.
      2) Frequency of testing of installed components.
      3) Frequency of inspection of installed components.
      4) Requirements and recommendations related to results of maintenance.
      5) Manufacturer's user training manuals.

   h. Manufacturer's required maintenance related to system warranty requirements.
   i. Abbreviated operating instructions for mounting at fire-alarm control unit and each annunciator unit.

B. Software and Firmware Operational Documentation:

1. Software operating and upgrade manuals.
2. Program Software Backup: On magnetic media or compact disk, complete with data files.
3. Device address list.
4. Printout of software application and graphic screens.

C. As-built record drawings in each of the following formats:

1. Two sets of full-size printed drawings.
2. Electronic DWG or DXF format.
3. Full size drawings in electronic PDF format.

1.8 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.

1. Lamps for Strobe Units: Quantity equal to 10 percent of amount installed, but no fewer than one unit.
2. Smoke Detectors, Fire Detectors: Quantity equal to 10 percent of amount of each type installed, but no fewer than one unit of each type.
3. Detector Bases: Quantity equal to two percent of amount of each type installed, but no fewer than one unit of each type.
4. Keys and Tools: One extra set for access to locked or tamper-proofed components.
5. Audible and Visual Notification Appliances: One of each type installed.
6. Fuses: Two of each type installed in the system. Provide in a box or cabinet with compartments marked with fuse types and sizes.

1.9 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Installer Qualifications:

1. Personnel shall be trained and certified by manufacturer for installation of units required for this Project.
2. Installation shall be by personnel licensed to do so by the Texas State Fire Marshal's Office.

B. Source Limitations: Obtain fire alarm system components through one source from a single manufacturer.

C. NFPA Standards: Equipment, specialties, accessories, installation, and testing shall comply with the standards listed. The edition of each shall be that referenced by the 2012 Edition of the International Fire Code with City of Austin, Texas Amendments:

1. NFPA 70, "National Electrical Code."
2. NFPA 72, "National Fire Alarm Code."

1.10 PROJECT CONDITIONS

A. Use of Devices during Construction: Protect devices during construction unless devices are placed in service to protect the facility during construction.

1.11 WARRANTY

A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace fire-alarm system equipment and components that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.

1. Warranty Extent: All equipment and components not covered in the Maintenance Service Agreement.
2. Warranty Period: One year from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 SYSTEM DESCRIPTION

A. Source Limitations for Fire-Alarm System and Components: Where applicable, components shall be listed by the FACP manufacturer as being compatible with the FACP.

B. Non-coded, addressable system, with multiplexed signal transmission and horn/strobe evacuation.

C. Automatic sensitivity control of smoke detectors.

D. All components provided shall be listed for use with the selected system.

E. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

2.2 SYSTEMS OPERATIONAL DESCRIPTION

A. Refer to Fire Alarm Functional Schedule on Drawings

2.3 FIRE-ALARM CONTROL UNIT

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. Fike Corporation.
2. Fire-Lite Alarms.
3. GE UTC Fire & Security; A United Technologies Company.
4. Notifier.
5. Siemens Industry, Inc.; Fire Safety Division.
6. Silent Knight.
7. SimplexGrinnell LP.

B. General Requirements for Fire-Alarm Control Unit:

1. Field-programmable, microprocessor-based, modular, power-limited design with electronic modules, complying with UL 864.

    a. System software and programs shall be held in nonvolatile flash, electrically erasable, programmable, read-only memory, retaining the information through failure of primary and secondary power supplies.
    b. Include a real-time clock for time annotation of events on the event recorder.
    c. Provide communication between the FACP and remote circuit interface panels, annunciators, and displays.
    d. The FACP shall be listed for connection to a central-station signaling system service.
    e. Provide nonvolatile memory for system database, logic, and operating system and event history. The system shall require no manual input to initialize in the event of a complete power down condition. The FACP shall provide a minimum 500-event history log.

2. Addressable Initiation Device Circuits: The FACP shall indicate which communication zones have been silenced and shall provide selective silencing of alarm notification appliance by building communication zone.
3. Addressable Control Circuits for Operation of Notification Appliances and Mechanical Equipment: The FACP shall be listed for releasing service.

C. Alphanumeric Display and System Controls: Arranged for interface between human operator at fire-alarm control unit and addressable system components including annunciation and supervision. Display alarm, supervisory, and component status messages and the programming and control menu.

1. Annunciator and Display: Liquid-crystal type.
2. Keypad: Arranged to permit entry and execution of programming, display, and control commands and to indicate control commands to be entered into the system for control of smoke-detector sensitivity and other parameters.

D. Initiating-Device, Notification-Appliance, and Signaling-Line Circuits:

1. Pathway Class Designations: NFPA 72, Class B.
2. Pathway Survivability: Level 0.
3. Install no more than the manufacturer's maximum recommended number of addressable devices on each signaling-line circuit.
4. Install no more than 80 percent of the manufacturer's maximum recommended number of notification devices on each notification-appliance circuit.
5. Serial Interfaces:

    a. One dedicated RS 485 port for central-station operation using point ID DACT.

b. One RS 485 port for remote annunciators, Ethernet module, or multi-interface module (printer port).
c. One USB port for PC configuration.

E. Smoke-Alarm Verification:

1. Initiate audible and visible indication of an "alarm-verification" signal at fire-alarm control unit.
2. Activate an approved "alarm-verification" sequence at fire-alarm control unit and detector.
3. Sound general alarm if the alarm is verified.
4. Cancel fire-alarm control unit indication and system reset if the alarm is not verified.

F. Notification-Appliance Circuit:

1. Audible appliances shall sound in a three-pulse temporal pattern, as defined in NFPA 72.
2. Where notification appliances provide signals to sleeping areas, the alarm signal shall be a 520-Hz square wave with an intensity 15 dB above the average ambient sound level or 5 dB above the maximum sound level, or at least 75 dBA, whichever is greater, measured at the pillow.
3. Visual alarm appliances shall flash in synchronization where multiple appliances are in the same field of view, as defined in NFPA 72.

G. Remote Smoke-Detector Sensitivity Adjustment: Controls shall select addressable smoke detectors for adjustment, display their current status and sensitivity settings, and change those settings. Allow controls to be used to program repetitive, time-scheduled, and automated changes in sensitivity of specific detector groups. Record sensitivity adjustments and sensitivity-adjustment schedule changes in system memory.

H. Transmission to Remote Alarm Receiving Station: Automatically transmit alarm, supervisory, and trouble signals to a remote alarm station.

I. Primary Power: 24-V dc obtained from 120-V ac service and a power-supply module. Initiating devices, notification appliances, signaling lines, trouble signals, supervisory and digital alarm communicator transmitters shall be powered by 24-V dc source.

1. Alarm current draw of entire fire-alarm system shall not exceed 80 percent of the power-supply module rating.

J. Secondary Power: 24-V dc supply system with batteries, automatic battery charger, and automatic transfer switch.

1. Batteries: Sealed, valve-regulated, recombinant lead acid.

K. Instructions: Computer printout or typewritten instruction card mounted behind a plastic or glass cover in a stainless-steel or aluminum frame. Include interpretation and describe appropriate response for displays and signals. Briefly describe the functional operation of the system under normal, alarm, and trouble conditions.

2.4 MANUAL FIRE-ALARM BOXES

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. Cooper Wheelock.
2. Fike Corporation.
3. Fire-Lite Alarms.
4. GE UTC Fire & Security; A United Technologies Company.
5. Notifier.
6. Siemens Industry, Inc.; Fire Safety Division.
7. Silent Knight.
8. SimplexGrinnell LP.
9. System Sensor.

B. General Requirements for Manual Fire-Alarm Boxes: Comply with UL 38. Boxes shall be finished in red with molded, raised-letter operating instructions in contrasting color; shall show visible indication of operation; and shall be mounted on recessed outlet box. If indicated as surface mounted, provide manufacturer's surface back box.

1. Double-action mechanism requiring two actions to initiate an alarm, pull-lever type; with integral addressable module arranged to communicate manual-station status (normal, alarm, or trouble) to fire-alarm control unit.
2. Station Reset: Key-operated switch.

2.5 SYSTEM SMOKE DETECTORS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. Fire-Lite Alarms.
2. GE UTC Fire & Security; A United Technologies Company.
3. Notifier.
4. Siemens Industry, Inc.; Fire Safety Division.
5. Silent Knight.
6. SimplexGrinnell LP.
7. System Sensor.

B. General Requirements for System Smoke Detectors:

1. Comply with UL 268; operating at 24-V dc, nominal.

2. Detectors shall be two-wire type.
3. Integral Addressable Module: Arranged to communicate detector status (normal, alarm, or trouble) to fire-alarm control unit.
4. Base Mounting: Detector and associated electronic components shall be mounted in a twist-lock module that connects to a fixed base. Provide terminals in the fixed base for connection to building wiring.
5. Restoring: Detectors shall require resetting from the FACP after actuation to restore them to normal operation.
6. Integral Visual-Indicating Light: LED type, indicating detector has operated and power-on status.
7. Remote Control: Unless otherwise indicated, detectors shall be digital-addressable type, individually monitored at fire-alarm control unit for calibration, sensitivity, and alarm condition and individually adjustable for sensitivity by fire-alarm control unit.

    a. Rate-of-rise temperature characteristic of combination smoke- and heat-detection units shall be selectable at fire-alarm control unit for 15 or 20 deg F per minute.
    b. Fixed-temperature sensing characteristic of combination smoke- and heat-detection units shall be independent of rate-of-rise sensing and shall be settable at fire-alarm control unit to operate at 135 or 155 deg F.
    c. Multiple levels of detection sensitivity for each sensor.
    d. Sensitivity levels based on time of day.

C. Photoelectric Smoke Detectors:

1. Detector address shall be accessible from fire-alarm control unit and shall be able to identify the detector's location within the system and its sensitivity setting.
2. An operator at fire-alarm control unit, having the designated access level, shall be able to manually access the following for each detector:

    a. Primary status.
    b. Device type.
    c. Present average value.
    d. Present sensitivity selected.
    e. Sensor range (normal, dirty, etc.).

D. Duct Smoke Detectors: Photoelectric type complying with UL 268A.

1. Detector address shall be accessible from fire-alarm control unit and shall be able to identify the detector's location within the system and its sensitivity setting.
2. An operator at fire-alarm control unit, having the designated access level, shall be able to manually access the following for each detector:

    a. Primary status.
    b. Device type.
    c. Present average value.

d. Present sensitivity selected.
e. Sensor range (normal, dirty, etc.).

3. Weatherproof Duct Housing Enclosure: NEMA 250, Type 4X; NRTL listed for use with the supplied detector for smoke detection in HVAC system ducts.
4. Each sensor shall have multiple levels of detection sensitivity.
5. Sampling Tubes: Design and dimensions as recommended by manufacturer for specific duct size, air velocity, and installation conditions where applied.
6. Relay Fan Shutdown: Fully programmable relay rated to interrupt fan motor-control circuit.

2.6 HEAT DETECTORS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. Fire-Lite Alarms.
2. GE UTC Fire & Security; A United Technologies Company.
3. Notifier.
4. Siemens Industry, Inc.; Fire Safety Division.
5. Silent Knight.
6. SimplexGrinnell LP.
7. System Sensor.

B. General Requirements for Heat Detectors: Comply with UL 521.

1. Temperature sensors shall test for and communicate the sensitivity range of the device.

C. Heat Detector, Fixed-Temperature Type: Actuated by temperature that exceeds a fixed temperature of 135 deg F.

1. Mounting: Twist-lock base interchangeable with smoke-detector bases.
2. Integral Addressable Module: Arranged to communicate detector status (normal, alarm, or trouble) to fire-alarm control unit.

2.7 NOTIFICATION APPLIANCES

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. Cooper Wheelock.
2. GE UTC Fire & Security; A United Technologies Company.
3. Siemens Industry, Inc.; Fire Safety Division.
4. SimplexGrinnell LP.
5. System Sensor.

B. General Requirements for Notification Appliances: Connected to notification-appliance signal circuits, zoned as indicated, equipped for mounting as indicated, and with screw terminals for system connections.

1. Combination Devices: Factory-integrated audible and visible devices in a single-mounting assembly, equipped for mounting as indicated, and with screw terminals for system connections.

C. Horns: Electric-vibrating-polarized type, 24-V dc; with provision for housing the operating mechanism behind a grille. Comply with UL 464. Horns shall produce a sound-pressure level of 90 dBA, measured 10 feet from the horn, using the coded signal prescribed in UL 464 test protocol.

D. Smoke-Detector Sounder Bases: Comply with UL 464 for 520 Hz low-frequency notification within dwelling units in compliance with NFPA 72. Individually addressable. Capable of notifying occupants under a general alarm signal from the FACP or from an alarm originating at the individual attached smoke detector.

E. Visible Notification Appliances: Xenon strobe lights complying with UL 1971, with clear or nominal white polycarbonate lens mounted on an aluminum faceplate. The word "FIRE" is engraved in minimum 1-inch- high letters.

1. Rated Light Output:

a. 15/30/75/95/110 cd, selectable in the field.

2. Mounting: Ceiling mounted unless otherwise indicated.
3. Flashing shall be in a temporal pattern, synchronized with other units.
4. Strobe Leads: Factory connected to screw terminals.
5. Mounting Faceplate: Factory finished, white.

2.8 ADDRESSABLE INTERFACE DEVICE

A. General:

1. Include address-setting means on the module.
2. Store an internal identifying code for control panel use to identify the module type.
3. Listed for controlling HVAC fan motor controllers.

B. Monitor Module: Microelectronic module providing a system address for alarm-initiating devices for wired applications with normally open contacts.

C. Integral Relay: Capable of providing a direct signal to elevator controller to initiate elevator recall, to circuit-breaker shunt trip for power shutdown, and other functions as indicated in the Fire Alarm Functional Schedule on the Drawings.

1. Allow the control panel to switch the relay contacts on command.

D. Control Module:

1. Operate notification devices.

2.9 DIGITAL ALARM COMMUNICATOR TRANSMITTER

A. Functional Performance: Unit shall receive an alarm, supervisory, or trouble signal from fire-alarm control unit and automatically capture two telephone line(s) and dial a preset number for a remote central station. When contact is made with central station(s), signals shall be transmitted. If service on either line is interrupted for longer than 45 seconds, transmitter shall initiate a local trouble signal and transmit the signal indicating loss of telephone line to the remote alarm receiving station over the remaining line. Transmitter shall automatically report telephone service restoration to the central station. If service is lost on both telephone lines, transmitter shall initiate the local trouble signal.

B. Local functions and display at the digital alarm communicator transmitter shall include the following:

1. Verification that both telephone lines are available.
2. Programming device.
3. LED display.
4. Manual test report function and manual transmission clear indication.
5. Communications failure with the central station or fire-alarm control unit.

C. Digital data transmission shall include the following:

1. Address of the alarm-initiating device.
2. Address of the supervisory signal.
3. Address of the trouble-initiating device.
4. Loss of ac supply.
5. Loss of power.
6. Low battery.
7. Abnormal test signal.
8. Communication bus failure.

D. Secondary Power: Integral rechargeable battery and automatic charger.

E. Self-Test: Conducted automatically every 24 hours with report transmitted to central station.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine areas and conditions for compliance with requirements for ventilation, temperature, humidity, and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.

1. Verify that manufacturer's written instructions for environmental conditions have been permanently established in spaces where equipment and wiring are installed, before installation begins.

B. Examine roughing-in for electrical connections to verify actual locations of connections before installation.

C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 EQUIPMENT INSTALLATION

A. Comply with NFPA 72, NFPA 101, and requirements of authorities having jurisdiction for installation and testing of fire-alarm equipment. Install all electrical wiring to comply with requirements in NFPA 70 including, but not limited to, Article 760, "Fire Alarm Systems."

1. Devices placed in service before all other trades have completed cleanup shall be replaced.
2. Devices installed but not yet placed in service shall be protected from construction dust, debris, dirt, moisture, and damage according to manufacturer's written storage instructions.

B. Install wall-mounted equipment, with tops of cabinets not more than 78 inches above the finished floor.

C. Manual Fire-Alarm Boxes:

1. Install manual fire-alarm box in the normal path of egress within 60 inches of the exit doorway.
2. Mount manual fire-alarm box on a background of a contrasting color.
3. The operable part of manual fire-alarm box shall be between 42 inches and 48 inches above floor level. All devices shall be mounted at the same height unless otherwise indicated.

D. Smoke- or Heat-Detector Spacing:

1. Comply with the "Smoke-Sensing Fire Detectors" section in the "Initiating Devices" chapter in NFPA 72, for smoke-detector spacing.

2. Comply with the "Heat-Sensing Fire Detectors" section in the "Initiating Devices" chapter in NFPA 72, for heat-detector spacing.
3. Spacing of detectors for irregular areas, for irregular ceiling construction, and for high ceiling areas shall be determined according to Annex B in NFPA 72.
4. HVAC: Locate detectors not closer than 36 inches from air-supply diffuser or return-air opening.
5. Lighting Fixtures: Locate detectors not closer than 12 inches from any part of a lighting fixture and not directly above pendant mounted or indirect lighting.

E. Install a cover on each smoke detector that is not placed in service during construction. Cover shall remain in place except during system testing. Remove cover prior to system turnover.

F. Duct Smoke Detectors: Comply with NFPA 72 and NFPA 90A. Install sampling tubes so they extend the full width of duct. Tubes more than 36 inches long shall be supported at both ends.

1. Do not install smoke detector in duct smoke-detector housing during construction. Install detector only during system testing and prior to system turnover.

G. Remote Status and Alarm Indicators: Install in a visible location near each smoke detector, sprinkler water-flow switch, and valve-tamper switch that is not readily visible from normal viewing position.

H. Wall-Mounted Audible and Visible Alarm-Indicating Devices: Install not less than 6 inches below the ceiling. Install strobes and combination horn/strobes on flush-mounted back boxes with the device-operating mechanism concealed behind a grille. Install all devices at the same height unless otherwise indicated.

I. Device Location-Indicating Lights: Locate in public space near the device they monitor.

3.3 PATHWAYS

A. Pathways above ceilings with removable tiles may be routed exposed. Otherwise, pathways shall be installed in EMT.

3.4 CONNECTIONS

A. Make addressable connections with a supervised interface device to the devices and systems indicated on the Fire Alarm Functional Schedule on the Drawings. Install the interface device less than 36 inches from the device or circuit being controlled. Make an addressable confirmation connection when such feedback is available at the device or system being controlled.

3.5 IDENTIFICATION

A. Identify system components, wiring, cabling, and terminals. Comply with requirements for identification specified in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."

B. Install framed instructions in a location visible from fire-alarm control unit.

3.6 GROUNDING

A. Ground fire-alarm control unit and associated circuits; comply with IEEE 1100. Install a ground wire from main service ground to fire-alarm control unit.

B. Ground shielded cables at the control panel location only. Insulate shield at device location.

3.7 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Field tests shall be witnessed by Owner’s Third Party Representative.

B. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to test and inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections.

C. Perform the following tests and inspections with the assistance of a factory-authorized service representative:

1. Visual Inspection: Conduct visual inspection prior to testing.

    a. Inspection shall be based on completed record Drawings and system documentation that is required by the "Completion Documents, Preparation" table in the "Documentation" section of the "Fundamentals" chapter in NFPA 72.
    b. Comply with the "Visual Inspection Frequencies" table in the "Inspection" section of the "Inspection, Testing and Maintenance" chapter in NFPA 72; retain the "Initial/Reacceptance" column and list only the installed components.

2. System Testing: Comply with the "Test Methods" table in the "Testing" section of the "Inspection, Testing and Maintenance" chapter in NFPA 72.
3. Test audible appliances for the public operating mode according to manufacturer's written instructions. Perform the test using a portable sound-level meter complying with Type 2 requirements in ANSI S1.4.
4. Test visible appliances for the public operating mode according to manufacturer's written instructions.

5. Factory-authorized service representative shall prepare the "Fire Alarm System Record of Completion" in the "Documentation" section of the "Fundamentals" chapter in NFPA 72 and the "Inspection and Testing Form" in the "Records" section of the "Inspection, Testing and Maintenance" chapter in NFPA 72.

D. Reacceptance Testing: Perform reacceptance testing to verify the proper operation of added or replaced devices and appliances.

E. Fire-alarm system will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.

F. Prepare test and inspection reports.

G. Maintenance Test and Inspection: Perform tests and inspections listed for weekly, monthly, quarterly, and semiannual periods. Use forms developed for initial tests and inspections.

H. Annual Test and Inspection: One year after date of Substantial Completion, test fire-alarm system complying with visual and testing inspection requirements in NFPA 72. Use forms developed for initial tests and inspections.

3.8 SOFTWARE SERVICE AGREEMENT

A. Comply with UL 864.

B. Technical Support: Beginning at Substantial Completion, service agreement shall include software support for two years.

C. Upgrade Service: At Substantial Completion, update software to latest version. Install and program software upgrades that become available within two years from date of Substantial Completion. Upgrading software shall include operating system and new or revised licenses for using software.

1. Upgrade Notice: At least 30 days to allow Owner to schedule access to system and to upgrade computer equipment if necessary.

3.9 DEMONSTRATION

A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain fire-alarm system.

END OF SECTION 28 31 11

ROCIP Project: Withhold insurance cost. Please refer to sections 00425 & 00810 for information.

SECTION 31 20 00 - EARTH MOVING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.01 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.02 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:
   1. Preparing subgrades for walks, pavements, turf, and grasses and plants.
   2. Excavating and backfilling for buildings and structures.
   3. Subbase course for concrete walks and pavements.
   4. Excavating and backfilling trenches for utilities and pits for buried utility structures.

B. Related Sections:
   1. Division 01 Section "Temporary Facilities and Controls" for temporary controls, utilities, and support facilities; also for temporary site fencing if not in another Section.
   2. Division 03 Section "Cast-in-Place Concrete" for granular course if placed over vapor retarder and beneath the slab-on-grade.
   3. Divisions 21, 22, 23, 26, 27, 28, and 33 Sections for installing underground mechanical and electrical utilities and buried mechanical and electrical structures.
   4. Division 32 Section "Plants" for finish grading in planting areas and tree and shrub pit excavation and planting.

1.03 DEFINITIONS

A. Backfill: Soil material or controlled low-strength material used to fill an excavation.
   1. Initial Backfill: Backfill placed beside and over pipe in a trench, including haunches to support sides of pipe.
   2. Final Backfill: Backfill placed over initial backfill to fill a trench.

B. Base Course: Aggregate layer placed between the subbase course and hot-mix asphalt paving.

C. Bedding Course: Aggregate layer placed over the excavated subgrade in a trench before laying pipe.

D. Borrow Soil: Satisfactory soil imported from off-site for use as fill or backfill.

E. Drainage Course: Aggregate layer supporting the slab-on-grade that also minimizes upward capillary flow of pore water.

F. Excavation: Removal of material encountered above subgrade elevations and to lines and dimensions indicated.
   1. Authorized Additional Excavation: Excavation below subgrade elevations or beyond indicated lines and dimensions as directed by Architect. Authorized additional excavation and replacement material will be paid for according to Contract provisions for changes in the Work.
   2. Unauthorized Excavation: Excavation below subgrade elevations or beyond indicated lines and dimensions without direction by Architect. Unauthorized excavation, as well as remedial work directed by Architect, shall be without additional compensation.

G. Fill: Soil materials used to raise existing grades.

H. Structures: Buildings, footings, foundations, retaining walls, slabs, tanks, curbs, mechanical and electrical appurtenances, or other man-made stationary features constructed above or below the ground surface.

I. Subbase Course: Aggregate layer placed between the subgrade and base course for hot-mix asphalt pavement, or aggregate layer placed between the subgrade and a cement concrete pavement or a cement concrete or hot-mix asphalt walk.

J. Subgrade: Uppermost surface of an excavation or the top surface of a fill or back-fill immediately below subbase, drainage fill, drainage course, or topsoil materials.

K. Utilities: On-site underground pipes, conduits, ducts, and cables, as well as underground services within buildings.

1.04 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of the following manufactured products required:
   1. Geotextiles.

B. Samples for Verification: For the following products, in sizes indicated below:
   1. Geotextile: 12 by 12 inches.

C. Preexcavation Photographs or Video: Show existing conditions of adjoining construction and site improvements, including finish surfaces, that might be misconstrued as damage caused by earth moving operations. Submit before earth moving begins.

1.05 PROJECT CONDITIONS

A. Traffic: Minimize interference with adjoining roads, streets, walks, and other adjacent occupied or used facilities during earth moving operations.

1. Do not close or obstruct streets, walks, or other adjacent occupied or used facilities without permission from Owner and authorities having jurisdiction.
2. Provide alternate routes around closed or obstructed traffic ways if required by Owner or authorities having jurisdiction.

B. Do not commence earth moving operations until temporary erosion- and sedimentation-control measures, specified in Division 01 Section "Temporary Facilities and Controls."

C. Do not commence earth moving operations until plant-protection measures specified in Division 01 Section "Temporary Tree and Plant Protection" are in place.

D. The following practices are prohibited within protection zones:
1. Storage of construction materials, debris, or excavated material.
2. Parking vehicles or equipment.
3. Foot traffic.
4. Erection of sheds or structures.
5. Impoundment of water.
6. Excavation or other digging unless otherwise indicated.
7. Attachment of signs to or wrapping materials around trees or plants unless otherwise indicated.

E. Do not direct vehicle or equipment exhaust towards protection zones.

F. Prohibit heat sources, flames, ignition sources, and smoking within or near protection zones.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.01 SOIL MATERIALS

A. General: Provide borrow soil materials when sufficient satisfactory soil materials are not available from excavations.

B. Satisfactory Soils:
1. Liquid Limit: In accordance with ASTM D423.
2. Plasticity Index: In accordance with ASTM D424.

C. Unsatisfactory Soils:
1. Unsatisfactory soils also include satisfactory soils not maintained within 2 percent of optimum moisture content at time of compaction.

D. Subbase Material: Naturally or artificially graded mixture of natural or crushed gravel, crushed stone, and natural or crushed sand; ASTM D 2940; with at least 90 percent passing a 1-1/2-inch sieve and not more than 12 percent passing a No. 200 sieve.

E. Base Course: Naturally or artificially graded mixture of natural or crushed gravel, crushed stone, and natural or crushed sand; ASTM D 2940; with at least 95 percent passing a 1-1/2-inch sieve and not more than 8 percent passing a No. 200 sieve.

F. Engineered Fill: Naturally or artificially graded mixture of natural or crushed gravel, crushed stone, and natural or crushed sand; ASTM D 2940; with at least 90 percent passing a 1-1/2-inch sieve and not more than 12 percent passing a No. 200 sieve.

G. Bedding Course: Naturally or artificially graded mixture of natural or crushed gravel, crushed stone, and natural or crushed sand; ASTM D 2940; except with 100 percent passing a 1-inch sieve and not more than 8 percent passing a No. 200 sieve.

H. Drainage Course: Narrowly graded mixture of [washed]crushed stone, or crushed or uncrushed gravel; ASTM D 448; coarse-aggregate grading Size 57; with 100 percent passing a 1-1/2-inch sieve and 0 to 5 percent passing a No. 8 sieve.

I. Sand: ASTM C 33; fine aggregate.

2.02 GEOTEXTILES

A. Subsurface Drainage Geotextile: Nonwoven needle-punched geotextile, manufactured for subsurface drainage applications, made from polyolefins or polyesters; with elongation greater than 50 percent; complying with AASHTO M 288 and the following, measured per test methods referenced:
   1. Survivability: Class 2; AASHTO M 288.
   2. Grab Tensile Strength: 157 lbf; ASTM D 4632.
   3. Sewn Seam Strength: 142 lbf ;ASTM D 4632.
   4. Tear Strength: 56 lbf; ASTM D 4533.
   5. Puncture Strength: 56 lbf; ASTM D 4833.
   6. Apparent Opening Size: No. 40 sieve, maximum; ASTM D 4751.
   7. UV Stability: 50 percent after 500 hours' exposure; ASTM D 4355.

2.03 ACCESSORIES

A. Warning Tape: Acid- and alkali-resistant, polyethylene film warning tape manufactured for marking and identifying underground utilities, 6 inches wide and 4 mils thick, continuously inscribed with a description of the utility; colored as follows:
   1. Red: Electric.
   2. Yellow: Gas, oil, steam, and dangerous materials.
   3. Orange: Telephone and other communications.
   4. Blue: Water systems.
   5. Green: Sewer systems.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

ROCIP Project: Withhold insurance cost. Please refer to sections 00425 & 00810 for information.

3.01 PREPARATION

A. Protect structures, utilities, sidewalks, pavements, and other facilities from damage caused by settlement, lateral movement, undermining, washout, and other hazards created by earth moving operations.

B. Protect and maintain erosion and sedimentation controls during earth moving operations.

C. Protect subgrades and foundation soils from freezing temperatures and frost. Remove temporary protection before placing subsequent materials.

3.02 EXCAVATION, GENERAL

A. Classified Excavation: Excavate to subgrade elevations. Material to be excavated will be classified as earth and rock. Do not excavate rock until it has been classified and cross sectioned by Architect. The Contract Sum will be adjusted for rock excavation according to unit prices included in the Contract Documents. Changes in the Contract Time may be authorized for rock excavation.
   1. Earth excavation includes excavating pavements and obstructions visible on surface; underground structures, utilities, and other items indicated to be removed; together with soil, boulders, and other materials not classified as rock or unauthorized excavation.
      a. Intermittent drilling; ram hammering; or ripping of material not classified as rock excavation is earth excavation.
   2. Rock excavation includes removal and disposal of rock. Remove rock to lines and subgrade elevations indicated to permit installation of permanent construction without exceeding the following dimensions:
      a. 24 inches outside of concrete forms other than at footings.
      b. 6 inches outside of minimum required dimensions of concrete cast against grade.
      c. Outside dimensions of concrete walls indicated to be cast against rock without forms or exterior waterproofing treatments.
      d. 6 inches beneath bottom of concrete slabs-on-grade.
      e. 6 inches beneath pipe in trenches, and the greater of 24 inches wider than pipe or 42 inches wide.

3.03 EXCAVATION FOR STRUCTURES

A. Excavate to indicated elevations and dimensions within a tolerance of plus or minus 1 inch. If applicable, extend excavations a sufficient distance from structures for placing and removing concrete formwork, for installing services and other construction, and for inspections.
   1. Excavations for Footings and Foundations: Do not disturb bottom of excavation. Excavate by hand to final grade just before placing concrete reinforcement. Trim bottoms to required lines and grades to leave solid base to receive other work.

2. Excavation for Underground Tanks, Basins, and Mechanical or Electrical Utility Structures: Excavate to elevations and dimensions indicated within a tolerance of plus or minus 1 inch. Do not disturb bottom of excavations intended as bearing surfaces.

B. Excavations at Edges of Tree- and Plant-Protection Zones:
1. Excavate by hand to indicated lines, cross sections, elevations, and subgrades. Use narrow-tine spading forks to comb soil and expose roots. Do not break, tear, or chop exposed roots. Do not use mechanical equipment that rips, tears, or pulls roots.
2. Cut and protect roots according to requirements in Division 01 Section "Temporary Tree and Plant Protection."

3.04 EXCAVATION FOR WALKS AND PAVEMENTS

A. Excavate surfaces under walks and pavements to indicated lines, cross sections, elevations, and subgrades.

3.05 EXCAVATION FOR UTILITY TRENCHES

A. Excavate trenches to indicated gradients, lines, depths, and elevations.
1. Beyond building perimeter, excavate trenches to allow installation of top of pipe below frost line.

B. Excavate trenches to uniform widths to provide the following clearance on each side of pipe or conduit. Excavate trench walls vertically from trench bottom to 12 inches higher than top of pipe or conduit unless otherwise indicated.
1. Clearance: 12 inches each side of pipe or conduit.

C. Trench Bottoms: Excavate and shape trench bottoms to provide uniform bearing and support of pipes and conduit. Shape subgrade to provide continuous support for bells, joints, and barrels of pipes and for joints, fittings, and bodies of conduits. Remove projecting stones and sharp objects along trench subgrade.
1. For pipes and conduit less than 6 inches in nominal diameter, hand-excavate trench bottoms and support pipe and conduit on an undisturbed subgrade.
2. For pipes and conduit 6 inches or larger in nominal diameter, shape bottom of trench to support bottom 90 degrees of pipe or conduit circumference. Fill depressions with tamped sand backfill.
3. For flat-bottomed, multiple-duct conduit units, hand-excavate trench bottoms and support conduit on an undisturbed subgrade.
4. Excavate trenches 6 inches deeper than elevation required in rock or other unyielding bearing material to allow for bedding course.

D. Trenches in Tree- and Plant-Protection Zones:
1. Hand-excavate to indicated lines, cross sections, elevations, and subgrades. Use narrow-tine spading forks to comb soil and expose roots. Do not break, tear, or chop exposed roots. Do not use mechanical equipment that rips, tears, or pulls roots.

2. Do not cut main lateral roots or taproots; cut only smaller roots that interfere with installation of utilities.

3.06 EXCAVATION FOR ELEVATOR CYLINDER

A. Drill well hole plumb in elevator pit to accommodate installation of elevator-cylinder assembly. Coordinate with applicable requirements for diameter and tolerances in Division 14.

B. Provide well casing as necessary to retain walls of well hole.

3.07 SUBGRADE INSPECTION

A. Notify Architect when excavations have reached required subgrade.

B. If Architect determines that unsatisfactory soil is present, continue excavation and replace with compacted backfill or fill material as directed.

C. Authorized additional excavation and replacement material will be paid for according to Contract provisions for changes in the Work.

D. Reconstruct subgrades damaged by freezing temperatures, frost, rain, accumulated water, or construction activities, as directed by Architect, without additional compensation.

3.08 UNAUTHORIZED EXCAVATION

A. Fill unauthorized excavation under foundations or wall footings by extending bottom elevation of concrete foundation or footing to excavation bottom, without altering top elevation. Lean concrete fill, with 28-day compressive strength of 2500 psi, may be used when approved by Architect.
   1. Fill unauthorized excavations under other construction, pipe, or conduit as directed by Architect.

3.09 STORAGE OF SOIL MATERIALS

A. Stockpile borrow soil materials and excavated satisfactory soil materials without intermixing. Place, grade, and shape stockpiles to drain surface water. Cover to prevent windblown dust.
   1. Stockpile soil materials away from edge of excavations. Do not store within drip line of remaining trees.

3.10 BACKFILL

A. Place and compact backfill in excavations promptly, but not before completing the following:

1. Construction below finish grade including, where applicable, subdrainage, dampproofing, waterproofing, and perimeter insulation.
2. Testing and inspecting underground utilities.
3. Removing concrete formwork.
4. Removing trash and debris.
5. Removing temporary shoring and bracing, and sheeting.
6. Installing permanent or temporary horizontal bracing on horizontally supported walls.

B. Place backfill on subgrades free of mud, frost, snow, or ice.

3.11 UTILITY TRENCH BACKFILL

A. Place backfill on subgrades free of mud, frost, snow, or ice.

B. Place and compact bedding course on trench bottoms and where indicated. Shape bedding course to provide continuous support for bells, joints, and barrels of pipes and for joints, fittings, and bodies of conduits.

C. Trenches under Roadways: Provide 4-inch thick, concrete-base slab support for piping or conduit less than 30 inches below surface of roadways. After installing and testing, completely encase piping or conduit in a minimum of 4 inches of concrete before backfilling or placing roadway subbase course. Concrete is specified in Division 03 Section "Cast-in-Place Concrete."

D. Backfill voids with satisfactory soil while removing shoring and bracing.

E. Place and compact initial backfill of subbase material, free of particles larger than 1 inch in any dimension, to a height of 12 inches over the pipe or conduit.
   1. Carefully compact initial backfill under pipe haunches and compact evenly up on both sides and along the full length of piping or conduit to avoid damage or displacement of piping or conduit. Coordinate backfilling with utilities testing.

F. Place and compact final backfill of satisfactory soil to final subgrade elevation.

G. Install warning tape directly above utilities, 12 inches below finished grade, except 6 inches below subgrade under pavements and slabs.

3.12 SOIL FILL

A. Plow, scarify, bench, or break up sloped surfaces steeper than 1 vertical to 4 horizontal so fill material will bond with existing material.

B. Place and compact fill material in layers to required elevations as follows:
   1. Under grass and planted areas, use satisfactory soil material.
   2. Under walks and pavements, use satisfactory soil material.
   3. Under steps and ramps, use engineered fill.

4. Under building slabs, use engineered fill.
5. Under footings and foundations, use engineered fill.

C. Place soil fill on subgrades free of mud, frost, snow, or ice.

3.13 SOIL MOISTURE CONTROL

A. Uniformly moisten or aerate subgrade and each subsequent fill or backfill soil layer before compaction to within 2 percent of optimum moisture content.
   1. Do not place backfill or fill soil material on surfaces that are muddy, frozen, or contain frost or ice.
   2. Remove and replace, or scarify and air dry, otherwise satisfactory soil material that exceeds optimum moisture content by 2 percent and is too wet to compact to specified dry unit weight.

3.14 COMPACTION OF SOIL BACKFILLS AND FILLS

A. Place backfill and fill soil materials in layers not more than 8 inches in loose depth for material compacted by heavy compaction equipment, and not more than 4 inches in loose depth for material compacted by hand-operated tampers.

B. Place backfill and fill soil materials evenly on all sides of structures to required elevations, and uniformly along the full length of each structure.

C. Compact soil materials to not less than the following percentages of maximum dry unit weight according to ASTM D 698:
   1. Under structures, building slabs, steps, and pavements, scarify and recompact top 12 inches of existing subgrade and each layer of backfill or fill soil material at 95 percent.
   2. Under walkways, scarify and recompact top 6 inches below subgrade and compact each layer of backfill or fill soil material at 98 percent.
   3. Under turf or unpaved areas, scarify and recompact top 6 inches below subgrade and compact each layer of backfill or fill soil material at 95 percent.
   4. For utility trenches, compact each layer of initial and final backfill soil material at 98 percent.

3.15 GRADING

A. General: Uniformly grade areas to a smooth surface, free of irregular surface changes. Comply with compaction requirements and grade to cross sections, lines, and elevations indicated.
   1. Provide a smooth transition between adjacent existing grades and new grades.
   2. Cut out soft spots, fill low spots, and trim high spots to comply with required surface tolerances.

B. Site Rough Grading: Slope grades to direct water away from buildings and to prevent ponding. Finish subgrades to required elevations within the following tolerances:
   1. Turf or Unpaved Areas: Plus or minus 1 inch.
   2. Walks: Plus or minus 1 inch.
   3. Pavements: Plus or minus 1/2 inch.

C. Grading inside Building Lines: Finish subgrade to a tolerance of 1/2 inch when tested with a 10-foot straightedge.

3.16 SUBBASE AND BASE COURSES UNDER PAVEMENTS AND WALKS

A. Place subbase course on subgrades free of mud, frost, snow, or ice.

B. On prepared subgrade, place subbase course under pavements and walks as follows:
   1. Install separation geotextile on prepared subgrade according to manufacturer's written instructions, overlapping sides and ends.
   2. Shape subbase course to required crown elevations and cross-slope grades.
   3. Place subbase course 6 inches or less in compacted thickness in a single layer.
   4. Place subbase course that exceeds 6 inches in compacted thickness in layers of equal thickness, with no compacted layer more than 6 inches thick or less than 3 inches thick.
   5. Compact subbase course at optimum moisture content to required grades, lines, cross sections, and thickness to not less than 98 percent of maximum dry unit weight according to ASTM D 698.

3.17 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Testing Agency: Owner will engage a qualified geotechnical engineering testing agency to perform tests and inspections.

B. Allow testing agency to inspect and test subgrades and each fill or backfill layer. Proceed with subsequent earth moving only after test results for previously completed work comply with requirements.

C. Testing agency will test compaction of soils in place according to ASTM D 1556, ASTM D 2167, ASTM D 2922, and ASTM D 2937, as applicable. Tests will be performed at the following locations and frequencies:
   1. Paved and Building Slab Areas: At subgrade and at each compacted fill and backfill layer, at least one test for every 2000 sq. ft. or less of paved area or building slab, but in no case fewer than three tests.
   2. Trench Backfill: At each compacted initial and final backfill layer, at least one test for every 150 feet or less of trench length, but no fewer than two tests.

D. When testing agency reports that subgrades, fills, or backfills have not achieved degree of compaction specified, scarify and moisten or aerate, or remove and replace soil materials to depth required; recompact and retest until specified compaction is obtained.

ROCIP Project: Withhold insurance cost. Please refer to sections 00425 & 00810 for information.

3.18 PROTECTION

A. Protecting Graded Areas: Protect newly graded areas from traffic, freezing, and erosion. Keep free of trash and debris.

B. Repair and reestablish grades to specified tolerances where completed or partially completed surfaces become eroded, rutted, settled, or where they lose compaction due to subsequent construction operations or weather conditions.
   1. Scarify or remove and replace soil material to depth as directed by Architect; reshape and recompact.

C. Where settling occurs before Project correction period elapses, remove finished surfacing, backfill with additional soil material, compact, and reconstruct surfacing.
   1. Restore appearance, quality, and condition of finished surfacing to match adjacent work, and eliminate evidence of restoration to greatest extent possible.

3.19 DISPOSAL OF SURPLUS AND WASTE MATERIALS

A. Remove surplus satisfactory soil and waste materials, including unsatisfactory soil, trash, and debris, and legally dispose of them off Owner's property.

B. Transport surplus satisfactory soil to designated storage areas on Owner's property. Stockpile or spread soil as directed by Architect.
   1. Remove waste materials, including unsatisfactory soil, trash, and debris, and legally dispose of them off Owner's property.

END OF SECTION 31 20 00

ROCIP Project: Withhold insurance cost. Please refer to sections 00425 & 00810 for information.

SECTION 31 22 00 – SITE GRADING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.01 SUMMARY

This section covers the requirements for rough and finish grading of sites requiring adjustment of soil elevations.

1.02 MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT

There will be no separate measurement and payment for work performed under this section unless otherwise indicated in the bid form.

1.03 REFERENCES

The applicable provisions of the following standards shall apply as if written here in their entirety:

ASTM	American Society for Testing of Materials
OSHA	Occupational Safety and Health Administration
EPA	Environmental Protection Agency of the United States

1.04 SUBMITTALS

When required, provide one (1) copy of Storm Water Pollution Prevention Plan and copies of notifications required by the EPA to Owner's Representative and to Owner for record purposes only.

1.05 COMPLIANCE WITH REGULATORY AGENCIES

The Contractor shall comply with the requirements of all pertinent regulatory agencies as applicable to the project. The Contractor shall meet the requirements of the EPA Clean Water Act as it applies to pollution from stormwater runoff. When the construction site is five (5) or more acres, the Contractor will be the Operator of the site as defined by the EPA, and Contractor shall prepare and implement a Stormwater Pollution Prevention Plan according to EPA requirements including the notifications required by the EPA.

ROCIP Project: Withhold insurance cost. Please refer to sections 00425 & 00810 for information.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.01 MATERIALS AND/OR EQUIPMENT

Topsoil. Topsoil shall be a material of good quality that will readily support vegetation of the type normally growing in the area. Topsoil shall be obtained from excavation related to the project site to the extent possible.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.01 PREPARATION

A. Location of Existing Utilities. The omission from or the inclusion of utility locations shown on the plans is not to be considered as the nonexistence of or the definite location of existing underground utilities. The exact location of existing underground utilities is not known. Contractor shall verify the existence and location of all existing underground utilities in the area of the work.

B. Protection of Existing Utilities. Contractor shall take the necessary precautions to protect all existing utilities from damage due to his operations. Any damage to the existing utilities will be repaired at the Contractor's expense by qualified personnel.

C. Convenience to Public. All work shall be performed in a manner that will cause as little inconvenience to the public as possible. All excavated material shall be kept trimmed such that minimum inconvenience is caused to the public or adjoining property owners. At locations deemed necessary by the Owner's representative, excavations shall be bridged in a secure manner so as to prevent serious interruption of travel and to provide access to fire hydrants, public property and private property. All bridging shall meet OSHA requirements.

D. Damage to Existing Property. The Contractor will be held responsible for any damage to existing structures, work, materials or equipment because of his operations and shall repair or replace any damage at no additional cost to the Owner.

The Contractor shall protect all existing structures and all other existing property from damage and shall provide all bracing, shoring or other work necessary for such protection.

E. Land for Construction Purposes. The Contractor will be permitted to use available space belonging to the Owner for construction purposes and for the storage of materials and equipment. The location and extent of the areas so used shall be as designated and approved by the Owner.

It shall be clearly understood that the responsibility for the protection and safekeeping of equipment and materials on or near the site will be wholly and entirely that of the Contractor and that no claim whatsoever shall be made against the Owner by reason of acts occurring upon said substances by employees or trespassers. It shall be further understood that should any occasion arise necessitating access to the sites occupied by these stored materials and equipment, as determined by the Owner's representative, the Contractor owning or responsible for the stored materials or equipment shall immediately move same. No materials or equipment may be placed upon the property of the Owner until the Owner has approved the proposed location contemplated by the Contractor to be used for storage.

F. Verification of Grades of Existing Adjacent Facilities. When the elevation of the site grading to be performed is dependent on the elevation of existing structures such as building slabs, sidewalks, culverts, etc., the Contractor, prior to beginning any work in the area of the existing structure which is dependent on the elevation of the existing structure, shall verify that the elevation of the existing structure differs from that shown on the plans. If the elevation of the existing structure is as shown on the plans, the Contractor shall notify the Owner's representative immediately. Proposed sidewalks parallel to and adjacent to a building and at a building entrance must be handicapped accessible and cannot slope more than two percent (2%) from the building. The desired slope on such sidewalks is from one percent (1%) to two percent (2%).

G. Work Within Public and Railroad Right-of-Way. When any part of the project falls within County, State or railroad right-of-way, all work within such right-of-way shall be conducted in accordance with the requirements of each agency or railroad.

H. Maintenance of Traffic. The Contractor shall conduct his work such that traffic whether vehicular or pedestrian will be maintained at all times. If required to maintain traffic, the Contractor shall construct, at his expense, temporary detours or other temporary structures.

I. Bench Marks, Monuments and Stakes. Contractor shall not disturb any bench marks or property line monuments in the performance of the work. In the event it becomes necessary to remove any bench mark or property line monument in the performance of the work, the Contractor shall notify the Owner's representative prior to removal so that such points may be referenced in preparation of replacement. All grade stakes shall be carefully maintained during the progress of the work to insure proper grade lines of the finished work. Bench marks, property line monuments and stakes destroyed by Contractor will be replaced by a registered professional land surveyor at Contractor's expense.

3.02 ERECTION/INSTALLATION/APPLICATION AND/OR CONSTRUCTION

A. General. Perform grading and compaction of site to the lines, grades and densities shown on the plans and as described in the specifications.

B. Clearing. All trees and vegetation, except such trees and vegetation that are to remain in place as shown on plans and as designated by the Owner's representative, shall be removed from the site. Trees and other vegetation to be left standing shall be thoroughly protected from damage by the erection of barriers or by such other means as the circumstances require. Clearing operations shall be conducted so as to prevent damage by falling trees to trees left standing, to existing structures and installations and to those under construction and so as to provide for safety of employees and others.

C. Grubbing. All roots and stumps shall be grubbed and completely removed from the soil in the project area. Where grubbing operations are performed, the soil shall be recompacted to a density equal to that of the surrounding undisturbed soil. All debris resulting from grubbing operations shall be removed from the site by the Contractor and legally disposed of.

D. Excess Excavated Material. Unless otherwise shown on the plans or in other sections of these specifications and unless directed otherwise by the Owner's representative, all materials not suitable for use and excavated material in excess of that needed for embankment shall be removed from the site and disposed by the Contractor.

E. Adjustment of Manhole Top Elevations. Existing manholes, sanitary sewer cleanouts and valve boxes shall be protected from damage during construction operations by the Contractor. In the event that they are damaged, they shall be repaired by the Contractor and the entire cost borne by him. Their tops shall be adjusted by the Contractor in elevation where necessary to match the proposed grading plan.

F. Disposal of Base Material. Base material removed due to project operations shall be transported to an on-site stockpile area designated by the Owner. Unsuitable material will be disposed of by the Contractor at no additional cost to Owner.

G. Embankment. Non-paved areas which require fill material shall be filled with soil free of rock and organic matter. The embankment shall be placed in eight (8) inch maximum lifts and compacted to a minimum of ninety-eight percent (98%) of Standard Proctor as measured by ASTM D698. The final lift shall consist of not less than four (4) inches of topsoil at finished grade.

H. Grading. The entire site shall be graded to the grades shown on the plans, including pavements. Areas not under pavement or structures which have been excavated or which have received fill material shall have a minimum of four (4) inches of topsoil at finished grade. If four (4) inches of topsoil does not remain after excavation in excavated areas, the Contractor shall over excavate as required to place the required thickness of topsoil. Topsoil shall be compacted sufficiently to prevent future settling.

I. Erosion Control. The Contractor shall employ measures and construction practices to control soil erosion at or adjacent to the project site. Adequacy of erosion control is subject to the approval of the Owner's representative and may include, but shall not be limited to, filter fabric fences, rock dams, hay bale dams and berms. See Part 1 of this section of the specifications for additional requirements regarding prevention of stormwater pollution.

J. Final Cleanup. Upon completion of the work and before acceptance and final payment, the Contractor shall remove rubbish, unused materials and temporary structures from the limits of the project and restore that which has been damaged during the prosecution of the work.

3.03 REPAIR/RESTORATION

The Contractor shall repair and correct any areas of erosion during the progress of construction and until final acceptance of the project.

3.04 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

Allow Owner's laboratory access to each lift of fill for density testing. Notify Owner's representative at least twenty-four (24) hours before completion of each lift to allow scheduling of testing.

END OF SECTION 31 22 00

ROCIP Project: Withhold insurance cost. Please refer to sections 00425 & 00810 for information.

SECTION 31 50 00 – EXCAVATION SAFETY

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.01 SUMMARY

A. This section covers the minimum requirements and responsibilities of the Contractor for excavations and shoring/safety of same.

1.02 MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT

A. The cost for performing the safety requirements set forth herein shall be paid for on a linear foot basis according to the depth of cut as set forth in the Bid Form and shall include all labor, materials, services and equipment to perform this item of work.

1.03 REFERENCES

A. The applicable provisions of the following standards shall apply as if written here in their entirety:

1. OSHA Occupational Safety and Health Administration, 29CFR, Part 1926

1.04 SYSTEM DESCRIPTION

A. The Contractor shall shore or otherwise protect all excavations from cave-ins, protect employees from exposure to vehicular traffic, falling loads, hazardous atmospheres, water accumulation and unstable structures in and adjacent to excavations and provide acceptable means of access to and egress from excavations. Notwithstanding these suggestions, the Contractor is solely responsible for the safety of his employees and the general public as they interface with this construction project.

1.05 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Excavation safety system shall meet the current standards established by OSHA, 29CFR, Part 1926, Subpart P-Excavations.

ROCIP Project: Withhold insurance cost. Please refer to sections 00425 & 00810 for information.

B. Any construction not in accordance with OSHA regulations may not be eligible for payment and delays in construction to bring the project into OSHA regulations will not be the responsibility of the Owner or the Owner's representative.

1.06 PROJECT/SITE CONDITIONS

A. Contractor shall develop and implement an excavation safety program based on the actual conditions encountered on the project.

PART 2 - PART 2 EXECUTION

A. Contractor has the sole responsibility for providing an adequate excavation safety system. The Contractor agrees that neither the Owner nor the Owner's representative has such responsibility and Contractor shall not rely on the Owner or the Owner's representative or any of their representatives for inspection, design, supervision, construction or any other aspect of excavation safety.

END OF SECTION 31 50 00

ROCIP Project: Withhold insurance cost. Please refer to sections 00425 & 00810 for information.

SECTION 32 14 16 – BRICK UNIT PAVING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.01 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.02 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:
   1. Supply and install brick pavers.
   2. Supply and place all accessory items as required by the contract.

B. Related Sections include the following:
   1. City Standard "Concrete Paving."

1.03 PRODUCT HANDLING

A. Pavers shall be delivered and unloaded at job site on pallets and bound in such a manner that no damage occurs to the product during handling, hauling and unloading.

1.04 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. The installer/contractor must have related experience in the installation of brick pavers.

1.05 SUBMITTALS

A. Submit sample of paver color and/or type showing full range of color.

PART 2 - MATERIALS

2.01 PAVERS

A. Brick Pavers: Handicap detectable warning pavers (2 ¼" x 7 5/8" x 3 5/8") manufactured by Endicot. Colors as selected by Architect from manufacturer's standard line.

B. Geo-textile: Provide geo-textile as indicated in drawings and as recommended by paver manufacturer.

2.02 VISUAL INSPECTION

A. All units shall be sound and free of defects that would interfere with the proper placing of unit or impair the strength or performance of the construction. Minor cracks incidental to the usual methods of handling in shipment and delivery, shall not be deemed grounds for rejection.

2.03 SAND LAYING COURSE

A. The sand laying course shall be well graded clean washed sharp sand with 100% passing a 3/8" sieve size and a maximum of 3% passing a No. 200 sieve size; this is commonly known as manufactured concrete sand, limestone screening or similar. DO NOT USE MASON SAND.

B. The sand laying course should be the responsibility of the paving stone installer.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.01 CONSTRUCTION OF THE SAND LAYING COURSE

A. The finished concrete base shall be approved before the placement of the sand laying course.

B. The uncompacted sand laying course shall be spread evenly over the area to be paved and then screeded to a level that will produce 1" thickness when the paving stones have been placed and vibrated. Normally, it is a good practice to have final elevation of paving stones slightly higher than adjacent curb, gutters, other paving, to allow for any minor settling that may occur within the base.

C. Once screeded and leveled to the desired elevation, this sand laying course shall not be disturbed in any way.

3.02 LAYING OF PAVERS BRICK

A. The paving bricks shall be laid in a pattern where noted or as shown on Drawings.

B. The paving bricks shall be laid in such a manner that the desired pattern is maintained and the joints between the bricks are as tight as possible.

C. String lines should be used to hold all pattern lines true.

D. The gaps at the edge of the paver surface shall be filled to provide a tight fit. Cutting shall be accomplished to leave a clean edge to the traffic surface using a masonry saw. Whenever possible, no cuts should result with a paver less than 1/3 of original dimension.

E. Paving bricks shall be vibrated into the sand laying course using a vibrator capable of 3,000 to 5,000 pounds compaction force with the surface clean and joints open.

F. After vibration, clean masonry type sand and containing at least 30% of 1/8" (3mm) particles shall be spread over the paving surface, allowed to dry, and vibrated into joints with addition vibrator passes and brushing so as to completely fill joints.

G. Surplus material shall then be swept from the surface or left on surface during construction time to insure complete filling of joints during initial use. This sand may provide surface protection from construction debris.

END OF SECTION 32 14 16

ROCIP Project: Withhold insurance cost. Please refer to sections 00425 & 00810 for information.

SECTION 32 31 20 – ORNAMENTAL STEEL FENCES AND CANTILEVER GATE

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.01 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.02 SUMMARY

A. The contractor shall provide all labor, materials and appurtenances necessary for installation of the electronic steel roll gate system defined herein.

1.03 RELATED WORK

A. Division 03 Section “Concrete”.

B. Division 22 Section “Earthwork”.

1.04 SYSTEM DESCRIPTION

A. The manufacturer shall supply a total roll gate system of Ameristar® PassPort® II Ornamental design series and Majestic style. The system shall include all components pickets, rails, gate uprights, wheels motor, motor housing, and access hardware required.

1.05 SUBMITTAL

A. Shop drawings: Submit shop drawings under the provisions of Section 013300.

B. The manufacturer’s submittal package consisting of gate elevations, hardware details, and installation details, shall be submitted prior to installation.

C. Submit drawings showing connections to adjacent construction, range of travel, and all electrical and mechanical connections to the operator. Drawings shall also show the size and location of the concrete mounting pad. Underground electrical runs shall be shown on shop drawings.

D. Test reports:

1. Submit affidavits from the manufacturer demonstrating that the gate operator has been tested to 200,000 cycles without breakdown.
2. Each operator shall bear a label indicating that the gate operator has been tested to a set of quality control procedures, including full power, function and inherent reversing sensor function

1.06 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. The contractor shall provide laborers and supervisors who are thoroughly familiar with the type of construction involved and materials and techniques specified.

B. Manufacturer: A company specializing in the manufacture of automatic gate operators of the type specified, with a minimum of ten years experience.

C. Installer: A minimum of three years experience installing similar equipment.

1.07 CODES AND REGULATORY REQUIREMENTS

A. Operators shall be built to UL325 standards and be listed by a NRTL testing laboratory. Complete all electrical work according to local codes and National Electrical code. All fieldwork shall be performed in a neat and professional manner, completed to journeyman standards.

B. Current safety standards require the use of multiple external sensors to be capable of reversing the gate in either direction upon sensing an obstruction. See also 2.02D.

C. Automated gates shall be constructed to conform to the ASTM F2200-02 standard for sliding gates.

D. Current safety standards require gate operators to be designed and labeled for specific usage classes. HySecurity Model SlideWinder 38 is compliant in all usage classes, Classes I-IV.

1.08 WARRANTY

A. Provide a five-year limited warranty against all defects in materials or workmanship. Defective materials shall be replaced with comparable materials furnished by the manufacturer, at no cost to the owner. Freight, labor and other incidental costs are not covered under the factory warranty, but may be covered by a separate service agreement between installing company and the owner.
   1. To ensure validation of warranty, return completed warranty registration form (included in Installation and Reference manual) to manufacturer.

1.09 REFERENCES

A. ASTM D523 - Test Method for Specular Glass.

B. ASTM D822 – Practive for Conducting Tests on Paint and Related Coatings and Materials using Filtered Open-Flame Carbon-Arc Light and Water Exposure Apparatus.

C. ASTM D1654 - Test Method for Evaluation of Painted or Coated Specimens Subjected to Corrosive Environments.

D. ASTM D2244 - Test Method for Calculations of Color Differences from Instrumentally Measured Color Coordinates.

E. ASTM D2794 - Test Method for Resistance of Organic Coatings to The Effects of Rapid Deformation (Impact).

F. ASTM D3359 - Test Method for Measuring Adhesion by Tape Test.

1.10 PRODUCT HANDLING AND STORAGE

A. Upon receipt at the job site, all materials shall be checked to ensure that no damages occurred during shipping or handling. Materials shall be stored in such a manner to ensure proper ventilation and drainage and to protect against damage, weather, vandalism and theft.

PART 2 - MATERIALS

2.01 MANUFACTURER

A. The fence system shall conform to Montage Plus™ / Montage Plus ATF™ Welded Ornamental Steel Classic™ design series and Majestic stye, extended picket bottom rail treatment, rigid weld treatment, 3-Rail style manufactured by Ameristar Fence Products, Inc., in Tulsa, Oklahoma

B. The ornamental cantilever gate system shall conform to Ameristar® PassPort® II Ornamental design series and Majestic style and frame configuration as 3-rail frame configuration manufactured by Ameristar Fence Products, Inc. in Tulsa, Oklahoma.

2.02 MATERIAL

A. Steel material for fence panels and posts shall conform to the requirements of ASTM A653/A653M, with a minimum yield strength of 50,000 psi (344 MPa) and a minimum zinc (hot-dip galvanized) coating weight of 0.90 oz/ft2 (276 g/m2), Coating Designation G-6.

B. Material for fence pickets shall be 3/4" square x 16 Ga. tubing. The rails shall be steel channel, rigid-Montage Plus profile, 1.5" x 1.4375" x 14 Ga. Picket holes in the rail shall be spaced 4.334" o.c. Posts shall be a minimum of 2-1/2" square x 16 Ga. 12 Ga. posts may be used for heavy applications.

C. The materials used for cantilever gate framing (i.e., uprights, diagonal braces and pickets or pales) shall be manufactured from ASTM B221 aluminum (designation 6063-T-6) with a yield strength of 25,000 PSI, a tensile strength of 30,000 PSI and a standard mill finish. The TransPort® Fast-Trak™ rails shall be manufactured from ASTM B221 aluminum (designation 6063-T-6) with minimum yield strength of 25,000 PSI, a tensile strength of 30,000 PSI and a standard mill finish.

D. Material for diagonal bracing and uprights shall be 2" sq. x ¼" aluminum. The design of the top and bottom enclosed track shall conform to the manufacturers 5" x 2" Fast-Trak system. Material for pickets shall be 1" x 1/8" wall aluminum.

E. Internal roller truck assembly shall be self-aligning swivel ball-and-socket type running on four bearing wheels. Internal roller truck assembly shall be affixed to the hanger bracket by means of a 5/8" diameter industrial-grade rod end/center bolt, with a minimum static load rating of 10,000 pounds. Attachment of the center bolt to the truck body shall be by means of a swivel joint to ensure equivalent and consistent loading on all bearing wheels and internal track surfaces throughout the travel of the gate.

F. Ornamental picket material shall be 1" square x 14 Ga. tubing for PassPort® II Ornamental gate pickets. Picket spacing shall be 4-3/4" for PassPort® II Ornamental gate pickets. Material for toprails, uprights and diagonals rails shall be 2" square x 11 Ga. Material for the bottom rail shall be 2" x 4" x 11 Ga. Posts shall be 4" square x 11 Ga.

G. Steel material for fence framework (i.e., tubular pickets, rails, and posts), when galvanized prior to forming, shall conform to the requirements of ASTM A924/924M, with a minimum yield strength of 50,000 psi (344 MPa). The steel shall be hot-dip galvanized to meet the requirements of ASTM A653/A653M with a minimum zinc coating weight of 0.90 oz/ft^2 (276 g/m^2), Coating Designation G-90.

2.03 FABRICATION

A. Pickets, rails, uprights and posts shall be precut to specified lengths. Diagonals shall be precut to specified lengths and angles. Frame materials shall be joined by welding. Pickets shall be face welded to roll gate frame, except for Invincible style gates over 18' long. Invincible style gates over 18' long shall have pickets face-welded to 2" x 2" angle iron to form panels equal in length to the gate frame bay width.

B. The manufactured roll gates and bolt-on panels (if applicable) shall be subjected to the PermaCoat® thermal stratification coating process (hightemperature, in-line, multi-stage, multi-layer) including, as a minimum, a six-stage pre-treatment/wash (with zinc phosphate), an electrostatic spray application of an epoxy base, and a separate electrostatic sprayapplication of a polyester finish. The base coat shall be a thermosetting epoxy powder coating (gray in color) with a minimum thickness of of 2 mils (0.0508mm). The topcoat shall be a "no-mar" TGIC polyester powder coat finish with a minimum thickness of 2 mils (0.0508mm). The color shall be (specify Black, Bronze, White, or Desert Sand). The stratification-coated framework shall be capable of meeting the performance requirements for each quality characteristic shown in Table 1.

C. Completed gates shall be capable of supporting a 200 lb. load applied at midspan without permanent deformation.

2.04 GATE OPERATORS

A. HySecurity Gate Operators SlideWinder 38 with Smart Touch Controller, or other comparable operator, as approved by the architect. Substitute operators that are approved will be published in an addendum, not less than ten days prior to bid opening.

2.05 OPERATION

A. Gate operation shall be by means of a cable winch system employing a 5/32" (4 mm) diameter stainless steel cable that is fixedly attached to a 7.6 inch (193 mm) diameter drum. The electric motor shall be a 3 phase inverter duty rated induction motor, mated to a 40 Ampere variable speed controller, which allows smooth acceleration and precise stop and start functionality. The gate operator system shall not employ roller chains or sprockets to transfer power from operator to gate panel. Operator shall contain an integrated UPS power supply that keeps the gate operator fully functional without AC power in case of power failure. The UPS system shall also be capable of keeping the external access control system functional during a power failure. Operator shall detect and automatically adjust to either 115 Volt or 230 Volt 50/60 Hz source power and supply 24 Volt DC control power as well as three-phase to a single universal motor. Operator system shall provide automatic electronic locking to prevent unauthorized entry. Operator shall automatically unlock when the DC power is turned off so that the gate can be manually pushed if necessary.

B. Operator ratings:
   1. Motor rating: 1 Horsepower
   2. Voltage compatibility: 115/208/230 Volts 50/60Hz Single Phase
   3. Current draw: 6 Amps @115V / 3 Amps @208/230V
   4. Control circuit: 24 Volts DC

5. Gate travel capacity: 38 feet (11.58 m)
6. Gate weight capacity: 2,000 pounds (907 kg) maximum
7. Pull force capacity: 200 pounds (90 kg)
8. Speed: selectable to 9 inches (229 mm)/sec or 1 foot (.30 m)/sec
9. Environmental: -20F to 180F
10. UPS capacity during power failure: 2,000 feet (610 m) of gate travel, depending upon accessory loads. 30,000 feet (9.14 km) of UPS gate travel available with optional larger batteries.

C. Security lock / Emergency operation / Manual operation:
1. Operator shall have automatic electronic locking to prevent unauthorized entry which shall function after the loss of AC power.
2. Operator shall unlock with a switch input so that the gate can be manually pushed.
3. Operator shall have inputs for Emergency open and Emergency close.
4. Operator shall have outputs to indicate forced entry, full open and full closed gate position.

D. Operator shall contain these electrical components as standard equipment:
1. Electric motor: Shall be a NEMA 56 size, totally enclosed, inverter rated variable speed 3 phase continuous duty motor.
2. Limit sensors: Programmable electronic sensing system with gate position resolution exceeding 3/16 of an inch (4.76 mm).
3. Transformer: 500VA. Fully enclosed with integral circuit breakers for all primary taps.
4. All components shall have overload protection.
5. Integrated board for 3 phase inverter drive / charger / UPS controller containing:
   a. 40 Amp rated output 3 phase motor drive.
   b. 24 Amp rated output battery charger.
   c. DSP microprocessor with flash memory to control all motor and charger functions.

E. Standard mechanical components shall include as a minimum:
1. Electrical enclosure: Oversized, metal, with Plexiglas cover for protection from intrusion of foreign objects, and providing ample space for the addition of accessories.
2. Chassis: 10 gauge (3.4 mm) Galvanized steel with powder coated finish mounted on an insulating polyethylene base plate.
3. Cover: Molded polyethylene.

F. Controls: Smart Touch Controller Board containing:
1. Built-in power surge/lightening strike protection on all inputs.
2. Double sided control board with all sensitive electronic components on the protected bottom side, conformal coated for environmental protection.

3. 256k flash memory allows updates to program software without removal of parts.
4. Non-volatile memory to support system configuration and event logs without power.
5. Clock chip to support time date recording of event logging system.
6. Liquid crystal display for reporting of functions and setup menu programming.
7. Membrane switch interface allowing full system control with only five buttons.
8. Automatically self adaptive inherent entrapment sensor.
9. Integrated "warn before operate" system.
10. Integrated timer to close and maximum run timer.
11. Two spare RS-485 ports for external communication and support of expansion controls.
12. RS-232 port for external serial communication, reading of event log and programming.
13. Two spare output relays, 40 Amp rated with at least 19 programmable function options.
14. Spare solid state output with, 4 Amp rated with at least 19 programmable function options.
15. Programmable anti-tailgate mode for faster gate closure and to deter following vehicles.

G. Required external sensors: See 1.05B. Specify photo eyes or gate edges or a combination thereof to be installed such that the gate is capable of reversing in either direction upon sensing an obstruction.

H. Optional control devices: Radio control and keypads.

2.06 FACTORY TESTING

A. Fully assemble and test, at the factory, each gate operator to assure smooth operation, sequencing and electrical connection integrity. Tests shall simulate physical and electrical loads equal to the fully rated capacity of the operator components.

B. Assure reliability of control boards by testing 100% of production for 19 hours in an environmental chamber that cycles between 0F – 160F while a computer monitors and records board functions.

C. Check all mechanical connections for tightness and alignment.

D. Check all mechanical parts and electrical wires to assure that chafing cannot occur during shipping or operation.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

ROCIP Project: Withhold insurance cost. Please refer to sections 00425 & 00810 for information.

3.01 PREPARATION

A. All new gate installations shall be laid out by the contractor in accordance with the construction plans.

B. All hardware shall be installed in accordance with the Passport installation instructions. Passport roll gates shall be installed so they comply with current ASTM F2200 & UL325 standards.

C. Gate stops shall be installed on each track in a way that conforms to current ASTM F2200 standards.

3.02 SITE EXAMINATION

A. Locate concrete mounting pad in accordance with approved shop drawings.

B. Make sure that gate is operating smoothly under manual conditions before installation of gate operators. Do not proceed until gate panel is level, aligned and operates without binding.

3.03 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Test gate operator through ten full cycles and adjust for operation without binding, scraping or uneven motion. Test limit settings for proper "at rest" gate position.

B. All anchor bolts shall be fully concealed in the finished installation.

3.04 CONTINUED SERVICE AND DOCUMENTATION

A. Train owner's personnel in the general maintenance of the gate operator and accessories and provide one copy of "Installation and Reference", manual for the owner's use (a second manual is available upon request.) Manuals will identify parts of the equipment for future procurement.

NOTE: HySecurity Gate Operators reserves the right to change these specifications at any time, without notice and without prejudice. Call (800) 321-9947 or check for updated current specifications online at www.hysecurity.com if you are not sure that you have the latest version.

3.05 INSTALLATION

A. Gate posts shall be set in accordance with the spacings shown in the construction plans. The “Earthwork” and “Concrete” sections of this specification shall govern post base material requirements. 6” wheels shall be bolted to the gate between the

wheel plates welded near the ends of the gate bottom rail. The gate shall be set upright with the V-grooved wheels positioned over the pre-installed steel V-track that traverses the gate opening. Roller guides shall be affixed to the gate posts at a height even with the gate toprail to hold the gate in a vertical position. Gate stops shall be welded to the end of the gate or track so gate cannot pass rollers in either direction.

B. Install gate operator in accordance with the manufacturer's printed instructions, current at the time of installation. Coordinate locations of operators with contract drawings, other trades and shop drawings.

C. Installer shall insure that the electric service to the operator is rated for 20 AMPS. Operator draws 700 watts maximum.

3.06 CLEANING

The contractor shall clean the jobsite of excess materials; post hole excavations shall be scattered uniformly away from posts.

Table 1 – Coating Performance Requirements

Quality Characteristics	ASTM Test Method	Performance Requirements
Adhesion	D3359 – Method B	Adhesion (Retention of Coating) over 90% of test area (Tape and knife test).
Corrosion Resistance	B117, D714 & D1654	Corrosion Resistance over 3,500 hours (Scribed per D1654; failure mode is accumulation of 1/8” coating loss from scribe or medium #8 blisters).
Impact Resistance	D2794	Impact Resistance over 60 inch lb. (Forward impact using 0.625” ball).
Weathering Resistance	D822 D2244, D523 (60˚ Method)	Weathering Resistance over 1,000 hours (Failure mode is 60% loss of gloss or color variance of more than 3 delta-E color units).

3.07 PRODUCT HANDLING AND STORAGE

A. Upon receipt at the job site, all materials shall be checked to ensure that no damage occurred during shipping or handling. Materials shall be stored in such a manner to

ensure proper ventilation and drainage, and to protect against damage, weather, vandalism and theft.

END OF SECTION 32 31 20

ROCIP Project: Withhold insurance cost. Please refer to sections 00425 & 00810 for information.

SECTION 32 84 00 – IRRIGATION

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. This Section includes piping, valves, sprinklers, accessories, controls, and wiring for automatic-control irrigation system.

1.2 DEFINITIONS

A. Irrigation Lateral Lines: Downstream from control valves to sprinklers, specialties, and drain valves. Piping is under pressure during flow.

B. Drain Piping: Downstream from circuit-piping drain valves. Piping is not under pressure.

C. Irrigation Main Piping: Downstream from point of connection to water distribution piping to, and including, control valves. Piping is under water-distribution-system pressure.

1.3 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: Include pressure ratings, rated capacities, and settings of selected models for the following:

1. General-duty valves.
2. Specialty valves.
3. Control-valve boxes.
4. Sprinklers.
5. Irrigation accessories.
6. Controllers.

B. Shop Drawings: Show irrigation system piping, including plan layout, and locations, types, sizes, capacities, and flow characteristics of irrigation system piping components. Include water meters, backflow preventers, valves, piping, sprinklers, accessories, controls, and wiring. Show areas of sprinkler spray and overspray. Show wire size and number of conductors for each control cable.

C. Record and As-build Drawings

1. The Contractor shall provide and keep up to date and complete "as-built" record set of prints which shall be corrected daily and show every change from the original drawings and specifications and the exact "as-built" locations, sizes, and kinds of equipment. Prints for this purpose may be obtained from the Architect at cost. This set of drawings shall be kept on the site and shall be used only as a record set.
2. These drawings shall also serve as work progress sheets and shall be the basis for measurement and payment for work completed. These drawings shall be available at all times for inspection and shall be kept in a location designated by the Architect. Should the rec-

ord blue line as-built progress sheets not be available for review or not up-to-date at the time of any inspection (refer to Section 3.10 - Inspection Schedule), it will be assumed no work has been completed and the Contractor will be assessed the cost of that site visit at the current billing rate of the Architect. No other observations shall take place prior to payment of that assessment.

3. The Contractor shall make neat and legible notations on the as-built progress sheets daily as the work proceeds, showing the work as actually installed.
4. Before the date of the final inspection, the Contractor shall transfer all information from the "as-built" prints to a mylar. All work shall be in waterproof ink and applied to the mylar by a technical pen made expressly for use on mylar material. Contractor shall use symbols and notation consistent with original drawings.
5. The Contractor shall dimension from two (2) permanent points of reference, building corners, sidewalk, or road intersections, etc., the location of the following items:

    a. Connection to existing water lines.
    b. Connection to existing electrical power.
    c. Gate valves.
    d. Routing of sprinkler pressure lines (dimensions max. 100' along routing).
    e. Sprinkler control valves.
    f. Routing of control wiring.
    g. Quick coupling valves.
    h. Other related equipment as directed by the Architect.

6. The final as-builts provided by the contractor shall be CAD generated. The landscape architect will provide their CAD base file for the contractor to use as his starting point. The final CAD file provided by the contractor shall be completely bound (xrefs) and purged.

D. Controller Charts:

1. As-built drawings shall be approved by the Architect before controller charts are prepared.

    a. Index sheet stating Contractor's address and telephone number, list of equipment with name and addresses of local manufacturer's representative.
    b. Catalog and parts sheets on every material and equipment installed under this contract.
    c. Guarantee statement.
    d. Complete operating and maintenance instruction on all major equipment

E. Operation and maintenance instructions.

F. Spares and Special Tools – Provide Owner with 2 spare sprinkler heads of each size and type.

G. Water use budget for the system that includes each zone. Water use must comply with jurisdiction requirements.

ROCIP Project: Withhold insurance cost. Please refer to sections 00425 & 00810 for information.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, Article 100, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended use.

B. Installer – Installation of Irrigation System shall be performed under the direction of a State of Texas licensed irrigator with not less than 5 years experience in this type of work.

C. Manufacturer's Directions: Manufacturer's directions and detailed drawings shall be followed in all cases where the manufacturers of articles used in this contract furnish directions covering points not shown in the drawings and specifications.

D. Ordinances, Codes and Regulations: All local, municipal and state laws, and rules and regulations governing or relating to any portion of this work are hereby incorporated into and made a part of these specifications, and their provisions shall be carried out by the Contractor. Anything contained in these specifications shall not be construed to conflict with any of the above rules and regulations and requirements of the same. However, when these specifications and drawings call for or describe materials, workmanship, or construction of a better quality, higher standard, or larger size than is required by the above rules and regulations, these specifications and drawings shall take precedence.

E. Explanation of Drawings:

1. Due to the scale of drawings, it is not possible to indicate all offsets, fittings, sleeves, etc., which may be required. The Contractor shall carefully investigate the structural and finished conditions affecting all of his work and plan his work accordingly, furnishing such fittings, etc., as may be required to meet such conditions. Drawings are generally diagrammatic and indicative of the work to be installed. The work shall be installed in such a manner as to avoid conflicts between irrigation systems, planting, and architectural features.
2. The word Architect as used herein shall refer to the Owner's authorized representative or the Landscape Architect.
3. All work called for on the drawings by notes or details shall be furnished and installed whether or not specifically mentioned in the specifications.
4. The Contractor shall not willfully install the irrigation system as shown on the drawings when it is obvious in the field that obstructions, grade differences or discrepancies in area dimensions exist that might not have been considered in engineering. Such obstructions or differences should be brought to the attention of the Owner's authorized representative. In the event this notification is not performed, the irrigation contractor shall assume full responsibility for any revisions necessary.

1.5 PRODUCT DELIVERY AND HANDLING

A. Materials shall be delivered in manufacturer’s unopened packaging labeled to indicate manufacturer’s name and product identification. Insure that packaging and labeling remain intact until installation. Materials shall be stored protected from the elements, including direct sunlight.

B. Pipes shall be handled so as to prevent being damaged and to maintain their straightness. Pipe ends shall be wrapped. Pipes shall be stored on beds the full length of the pipes. Damaged or dented pipes or fittings shall not be used.

1.6 SUBSTITUTIONS

A. If the Irrigation Contractor wishes to substitute any equipment or materials for those equipment or materials listed on the irrigation drawings and specifications, he may do so by providing the following information to the Owner's authorized representative for approval:

1. Provide a statement indicating the reason for making the substitution. Use a separate sheet of paper for each item to be substituted.
2. Provide descriptive catalog literature, performance charts and flow charts for each item to be substituted.
3. Provide the amount of cost savings if the substituted item is approved.

B. Owner's authorized representative shall have the sole responsibility in accepting or rejecting any substituted item as an approved equal to those equipment and materials listed on the irrigation drawings and specifications.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

A. When a conflict exists between products on the drawings and products on the specifications refer to the drawings.

2.2 PIPES, TUBES, AND FITTINGS

A. Soft Copper Tube: ASTM B 88, Type L , water tube, annealed temper.

1. Copper Pressure Fittings: ASME B16.18, cast-copper-alloy or ASME B16.22, wrought-copper, solder-joint fittings. Furnish wrought-copper fittings if indicated.
2. Copper Unions: MSS SP-123, cast-copper-alloy, hexagonal-stock body, with ball-and-socket, metal-to-metal seating surfaces and solder-joint or threaded ends.

B. Hard Copper Tube: ASTM B 88, Type K, water tube, drawn temper.

1. Copper Pressure Fittings: ASME B16.18, cast-copper-alloy or ASME B16.22, wrought-copper, solder-joint fittings. Furnish wrought-copper fittings if indicated.
2. Copper Unions: MSS SP-123, cast-copper-alloy, hexagonal-stock body, with ball-and-socket, metal-to-metal seating surfaces and solder-joint or threaded ends.

C. Mainline PVC Pipe: ASTM D 1785, PVC 1120 compound, Schedule 40.

1. Pressure Main Line:

a. Pressure main line piping 4” and larger shall be Class 200 rubber gasket pipe and 3” and smaller shall be PVC Schedule 40 with solvent welded joints.
b. Pipe shall be made from an NSF approved Type I, Grade I, PVC compound conforming to ASTM resin specification D1785. All pipe must meet requirements as set forth in Federal Specification PS-22-70, with an appropriate standard dimension (S.D.R.) (Solvent-weld Pipe).

2. PVC Non-Pressure Lateral Line Piping:

a. Non-pressure buried lateral line piping shall be PVC class 200 with solvent-weld joints.
b. Pipe shall be made from NSF approved, Type I, Grade II PVC compound conforming to ASTM resin specification D1784. All pipe must meet requirements set forth in Federal Specification PS-22-70 with an appropriate standard dimension ratio.

3. Fittings 4” and larger shall be push on Ductile Iron designed and manufactured using ASTM A-536 Grade 70-50-05 ductile iron with tensile strength of 70,000 psi such as manufactured by Harco or approved equal.
4. Fittings 3” and smaller shall be Schedule 40, I-2, II-I NSF approved conforming to ASTM test procedure D2466 PVC solvent-weld fittings.
5. Solvent cement and primer for PVC solvent-weld pipe and fittings shall be of type and installation methods prescribed by the manufacturer.
6. All PVC pipe must bear the following markings:

a) Manufacturer's name.
b) Nominal pipe size.
c) Schedule or class.
d) Pressure rating in P.S.I.
e) NSF (National Sanitation Foundation) approval.
f) Date of expiration.
g) Reclaimed Water

7. All fittings shall bear the manufacturer's name or trademark, material designation, applicable I.P.S., schedule number and NSF seal of approval.

D. Irrigation Lateral Line Pipe

1. Pipes ¾ inch diameter and larger: ASTM D 2231, PVC, 1120 or 1220, SDR 21.0, 200 PSI
2. Pipes ½ inch diameter: ASTM D 2241, PVC, 1120 or 1220, SDR 13.5, 315 PSI

E. FITTINGS FOR SOLVENT WELDED JOINTS

1. Schedule 40: ASTM D 2466
2. Schedule 80: ASTM D 2467

F. FITTINGS FOR THREADED JOINTS

1. ASTM D 2466, PVC, Schedule 80

ROCIP Project: Withhold insurance cost. Please refer to sections 00425 & 00810 for information.

2.3 GENERAL-DUTY VALVES

A. Isolation valves shall have bell or spigot ends, flanges or screw joints as required for the piping in which they are installed.

B. Isolation valves shall be manufactured of Class D cast iron or brass conforming to the AWWA Standard C-500 or Federal specification WW-V-58, Class A. All valves must be resilient seat and shall be fitted with a 2" x2" square wrench nut and shall be opened counter–clockwise. Stem extension shall be added to bring operating nut to within 2 (two) feet of finished grade.

2.4 REMOTE CONTROL VALVES

A. Automatic Control Valves: Bronze body, normally closed, diaphragm type with manual flow adjustment, and operated by 24-V ac solenoid.

1. All electric control valves shall be of the same manufacturer.
2. All electric control valves shall have a manual flow adjustment and pressure regulating module.
3. Provide and install one control valve box for each electric control valve.
4. Electric remote control valve shall be Hunter ICV-G.
5. All section valves shall have ball valve install upstream .

B. Automatic Drain Valves: Spring-loaded-ball type of construction and designed to open for drainage if line pressure drops below 2-1/2 to 3 psig.

C. Quick-Couplers: Factory-fabricated, bronze or brass, two-piece assembly. Include coupler water-seal valve; removable upper body with spring-loaded or weighted, purple rubber-covered cap; hose swivel with ASME B1.20.7, 3/4-11.5NH threads for garden hose on outlet; and operating key.

1. All quick couplers shall be installed using "o"-ring style swing joint and located in 10" round valve box.

D. Remote Control-Valve Boxes: Box and cover, with open bottom and openings for piping; designed for installing flush with grade. Include size as required for valves and service.

1. Valve boxes shall be heavy duty plastic17 inch by 11-3/4 inch by 12 inch depth, black with purple cover. Valve box shall be Series 1419, bolt cover, by Carson Industries, Inc., 1925 Street, LaVerne, CA 91750, 213-732-6265, or approved equal.
2. Manufacturers:
   a. Carson Industries LLC.
   b. Christy Concrete Products, Inc.

E. Gate Valve and Control Wire Splice Boxes

1. Quick Coupler and Control wire splice boxes shall be heavy duty plastic 10 inch diameter by 10-1/4 inch deep, black with purple cover, No. 910-12B, by Carson Industries, Inc. or approved equal.

F. Drainage Backfill: Cleaned gravel or crushed stone, graded from 3/8 inch minimum to 1 inch maximum.

ROCIP Project: Withhold insurance cost. Please refer to sections 00425 & 00810 for information.

2.5 SPRINKLERS

A. Description: Brass or plastic housing and corrosion-resistant interior parts designed for uniform coverage over entire spray area indicated, at available water pressure.

1. Manufacturers:
   a. Hunter Industries Incorporated.
   b. RainBird Sprinkler

2. Flush, Surface Sprinklers: Fixed pattern, with screw-type flow adjustment.
3. Bubblers: Fixed pattern, with screw-type flow adjustment.
4. Shrubbery Sprinklers: Fixed pattern, with screw-type flow adjustment.
5. Pop-up, Spray Sprinklers: Fixed pattern, with screw-type flow adjustment and stainless-steel retraction spring.
6. Pop-up, Rotary, Spray Sprinklers: Gear drive, full-circle and adjustable part-circle types.
7. Pop-up, Rotary, Impact Sprinklers: Impact drive, full-circle and part-circle types.
8. Aboveground, Rotary, Impact Sprinklers: Impact drive, full-circle and part-circle types.

2.6 SPRINKLER SPECIALTIES

A. Strainer/Filter Units: Brass or plastic housing, with corrosion-resistant internal parts; of size and capacity required for devices downstream from unit.

B. Emitters: PE or vinyl body.

1. Manufacturers:
   a. Amiad Filtration Systems.
   b. Netafim USA.
   c. Rain Bird Sprinkler Mfg. Corp.

2. Single-Outlet Emitters: To deliver the following flow at approximately 20 psig (138 kPa):

   a. Flow: 1 gph.
   b. Tubing Size: 1/8-inch (3-mm) minimum ID and 10 feet long.

3. Outlet Caps: Plastic, for outlets without tubing.

C. Drip Tubes: NPS 1/2 (DN 15) NPS 3/4 (DN 20), flexible PE or PVC tubing for emitters and other devices, of length indicated and with plugged end.

1. Manufacturers:

   a. Agricultural Products, Inc.
   b. Agrifim.
   c. Netafim USA.
   d. Rain Bird Sprinkler Mfg. Corp.

D. Dripperline
1. Dripperline shall consist of nominal sized one-half inch low density, linear polyethylene tubing, housing internal pressure compensating, continuously self-flushing, integral drip emitters. The tubing shall have an outside diameter (O.D.) of 0.67 inches, and an inside

diameter (I.D.) of 0.57 inches. The emitters shall have the ability to independently regulate discharge rates, with an output pressure of seven (7) to seventy (70) psi, at a constant flow of 0.62 gallons per hour (GPH). The dripperline shall have factory install emitters 12 inches on center.

2. Automatic line flushing valve shall be install at the end of each independent zone. The valve shall be capable of flushing one gallon of water at the beginning of each irrigation cycle.
3. Pressure regulating valve shall be capable of regulating pressure from 15 psi to 50 psi using interchangeable, color coded regulating springs. The regulator shall have a built in indicator that shows when the proper outlet pressure has been reached.
4. Disc filter shall be a multiple disc filter with color coded filter elements indicating the mesh size of the element being used. The disc shall be constructed of chemical resistant thermoplastic for corrosion

2.7 CONTROLLER(S)

A. Controller(s) shall be Hybrid type Controller(s) as specified on drawings.

1. Controller shall be per the drawings.

2. Or approved equal.

3. The final location of the controller will be verified on site with the owner rep and the landscape architect.

B. Wiring: AWG-ULUF 600 volt with solid-copper conductors and insulated cable; suitable for direct burial.

1. Manufacturers:
   a. Paige Cable
   b. Regency Wire and Cable
   c. Approved equal

2. Feeder-Circuit Cables: No. 12 AWG minimum, between building and controllers and runs over 1,000 LF.
3. Low-Voltage, Branch-Circuit Cables: No. 14 AWG minimum, between controllers and automatic control valves; color-coded different from feeder-circuit-cable jacket color; with jackets of different colors for multiple-cable installation in same trench.
4. Where more than one (1) wire is placed in a trench, the wiring shall be taped together at intervals of ten (10) feet.
5. An expansion curl shall be provided within three (3) feet of each wire connection. Expansion curl shall be of sufficient length at each splice connection at each electric control, so that in case of repair, the valve bonnet may be brought to the surface without disconnecting the control wires. Control wires shall be laid loosely in trench without stress or stretching of control wire conductors.
6. All splices shall be made with Wade, DBY (Direct Bury) Splice by 3M or approved equal. Use one splice per connector sealing pack. All splices must us UL approved connector.
7. Field splices between the automatic controller and electrical control valves, less than 500' apart, will not be allowed without prior approval of the Architect.
8. All field splices shall be installed in a 10" round valve box.

ROCIP Project: Withhold insurance cost. Please refer to sections 00425 & 00810 for information.

2.8 BACKFLOW PREVENTERS

A. Double Check Assembly: Febco No. 850 (CMB Industries), P.O. Box 8070, Fresno, CA 92747, 209-252-0791, or approved equal. Size as per drawings.

2.9 REMOTE CONTROL VALVE TIES

A. Remote control valve ties shall be Christy's Valve I.D. tag model ID-STD-Y with wire to attach numbered tag to valve.

2.10 SOLVENT CEMENT FOR SOLVENT WELDED JOINTS

A. CHRISTY'S RED HOT BLUE GLUE T. Christy Enterprises, Inc., 1207 W. Struck Avenue, No. E, Orange, CA 92667, 800-258-4583, or approved equal. Use a compatible primer recommended by the solvent cement manufacturer.

2.11 SEALANT FOR THREADED JOINTS UNDER CONSTANT PRESSURE

A. RECTOR SEAL LIQUID TEFLON by Rector Seal Corp., 2830 Produce Row, Houston, Texas 77023, 713-928-6423, or approved equal.

2.12 SLEEVES UNDER PAVING FOR CONTROL WIRE AND IRRIGATION LINES

A. ASTM D 2455, PVC, Schedule 40 sized as shown on drawings.

2.13 FITTINGS FOR THREADED JOINTS

A. ASTM D 2466, PVC, Schedule 80.

2.14 RAINFALL MONITOR

A. Shall be Hunter Rain-Clik or approved equal.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSPECTION

A. Site Conditions:

1. All scaled dimensions are approximate. The Contractor shall check and verify all size dimensions and receive Architect's approval prior to proceeding with work under this section.

2. Exercise extreme care in excavating and working near existing utilities. Contractor shall be responsible for damages to utilities which are caused by his operations or neglect. Check existing utilities drawings for existing utility locations.
3. Coordinate installation of sprinkler irrigation materials including pipe, so there shall be NO interference with utilities or other construction or difficulty in planting trees, shrubs, and ground covers. Coordinate work other site contractors.
4. The Contractor shall carefully check all grades to satisfy himself that he may safely proceed before starting work on the sprinkler irrigation system.
5. No machine trenching, unless approved by Architect, is to be done within drip line of trees. Trenching is done by hand, tunneling or boring or other methods approved by Architect. It is understood that the piping layout is diagrammatic and piping shall be routed around trees and shrubs in such manner to avoid damage to plants.

3.2 PREPARATION

A. Physical Layout:

1. Piping and head layout is shown on plans in schematic form only. All pipes to be installed directly behind curbs, walks, and walls wherever possible.
2. Prior to installation, the Contractor shall stake out all pressure supply lines, routing and location of sprinkler heads.
3. All layout shall be approved by Architect prior to installation.

B. Water Supply:

1. Sprinkler Irrigation system shall be connected to water supply points-of- connection as indicated on the drawings.
2. Connections shall be made at approximate locations as shown on drawings. Contractor is responsible for minor changes caused by actual site conditions.

3.3 EARTHWORK

A. Refer to Division 31 Section "Earth Moving" for excavating, trenching, and backfilling.

B. Location of Heads – Design location is represented as accurately as possible. Make minor adjustments on site with approval of Landscape Architect as necessary to ensure consistent and even spacing where applicable. Set all heads minimum 6” from back of curb and 4” from edge of concrete walls.

C. Install piping and wiring in sleeves under sidewalks, roadways, parking lots, and railroads.

D. Drain Pockets: Excavate to sizes indicated. Backfill with cleaned gravel or crushed stone, graded from 3/4 to 3 inches, to 12 inches below grade. Cover gravel or crushed stone with sheet of asphalt-saturated felt and backfill remainder with excavated material.

E. Provide minimum cover over top of underground piping according to the following:

1. Irrigation Main Piping: Minimum depth of 18 inches below finished grade.
2. Circuit Piping: 12 inches.
3. Drain Piping: 12 inches.

4. Drip irrigation in turf grass: 4” or per the drawings. See installation below.
5. Drip irrigation in plant beds: 2” or per the drawings. See installation below.
6. Sleeves: 24 inches.

F. BACKFILL –

1. The trenches shall not be backfilled until all required tests are performed. Trenches shall be carefully backfilled with the excavated materials approved for backfilling, consisting of earth, loam, sandy clay, sand, or other approved materials, free from large clods of earth or stones. Backfill shall be mechanically compacted in landscaped areas to a dry density equal to adjacent undisturbed soil in planting area. Backfill will conform to adjacent grades without dips, sunken areas, humps or other surface irregularities.
2. A fine granular material backfill will be initially placed in the bottom of trenches for all irrigation lines 1” and greater and on top of all lines for a minimum depth of 4”. No foreign matter, rock or stone larger than one-half (1/2) inch in size will be permitted in the initial backfill.
3. Where rock is encountered in trenching, encase all irrigation pipe 1” and larger with 4” of fine sand.
4. Flooding of trenches will be permitted only with approval of Architect.
5. If settlement occurs and subsequent adjustments in pipe, valves, sprinkler heads, lawn or planting, or other construction are necessary, the Contractor shall make all required adjustments without cost to the Owner

G. EXISTING LAWNS – Where trenching is required across existing lawns, (or in even of changes or repairs after new lawn has been established), uniformly cut strips of sod 6 inches wider than trench. Remove sod in rolls of suitable size for handling and keep moistened until replanted.

1. Backfill trench to within 6 inches of finished grade and compact. Continue fill with acceptable topsoil and compact to bring sod even with existing lawn.
2. Replant sod within 2 days after removal, roll and water generously.
3. Resod and restore to original condition all sod areas not in healthy condition equal to adjoining lawns 30 days after replanting.

3.4 INSTALLATION

A. General - Unless otherwise indicated, Contractor shall comply with requirements of the governing Uniform Plumbing Code.

B. Pipes

1. Piping Mains and Laterals - Lay out sprinkler mainlines and perform line adjustments and site modifications to laterals prior to excavation. Lay pipe on solid subbase, uniformly sloped without humps or depressions.
2. PVC Pipe Assembly

   a. Cut PVC pipe square and de-burr. Clean pipe and fittings using primer as recommended by the PVC pipe manufacturer. Use purple tinted primer to aid in visual inspection.

b. Apply a thin even flow coat of PVC solvent cement to inside of the fitting and pipe mating surface. Cure joints as recommended by the manufacturer and keep pipe and fitting out of service during curing period. Construct watertight joints equal or greater in strength than the pipe. Do not tap pipe at fittings.

3. Install plastic pipe in dry weather, when temperature is above 40 degrees F. and in accordance with manufacturer's written instructions. Allow joints to cure at least 24 hours at temperature above 40 degrees F. before testing.
4. Plastic pipe shall be snaked in the trenches in a manner to provide for expansion and contraction as recommended by pipe manufacturer.

C. Sleeves Under Paving - The majority of sleeves under paving are existing as shown on drawings. Where boring is required for new sleeves (refer to drawings), it shall be a "wet bore." Install sleeves 12" beyond edge of pavement. Perform trench and backfill in accordance with these specifications.

D. Concrete Thrust Blocks

1. Install where the rubber-gasketed irrigation main changes direction as at ells and tees and where the rubber-gasketed main terminates.
2. Pressure tests shall not be made for a period of 36 to 48 hours following the completion of pouring of the blocks.
3. Blocks for these mains shall be sized and placed in strict accordance with the pipe manufacturer's specifications and shall be of an adequate size and so placed as to take all thrust created by the maximum internal water pressure.

E. Irrigation Heads

1. Flush irrigation lines with full head of water and install heads after hydrostatic test is completed.
2. Install heads at manufacturer's recommended heights.
3. Locate part-circle heads to maintain a minimum distance of 4, 12, 24, 48 inches from walls and 2 inches form other boundaries, unless otherwise indicated.
4. Check for uniformity of coverage and pattern correctness. Adjust for 100% coverage where required.
5. Install nozzles with water running at reduced pressure starting with the head closest to the valve.
6. Adjust arcs and radius at normal operating pressure.

F. Drip irrigation
1. lines shall be installed 2” below the surface of the soil to the top of the pipe when installed in plant beds and 4” below the surface of the sod or soil to the top of the pipe when installed in lawn (sod, hydromulch, sod, plugs, sprigs) or grass areas

G. Electric Remote Control Valves

1. Adjust automatic control valves to provide flow rate at rated operating pressure required for each irrigation section.

2. Install valves in valve boxes, arranged for easy adjustment and removal. Locate valves to ensure ease of access for maintenance such that no physical interference with other elements of the project exist.
3. All valve boxes shall be located to not be easily visible or to be in an area that is the focus of the landscape.

H. Remote Control Valve Tags - One Remote Control Valve Tag shall be attached to stem of each electric remote control valve. Tags shall be numbered sequentially. Numbers shall correspond to station numbers in electric controller. Provide tags and corresponding numbers for wires pulled for future valves.

I. Valve Boxes - Install valve boxes to cover electric remote control valves. Install one valve per valve box. Top of valve box shall be flush with finished grade. Bury minimum 4 bricks under base of each box as support.

J. Control Wire Splice Boxes - Install control wire splice box to cover any splice in control wire. Top of valve box shall be flush with finished grade. Bury minimum 4 bricks under base of each box as support. Install control wire splice box to cover wires pulled for future valves.

K. Gravel Backfill - Backfill valve boxes and control wire splice boxes with gravel, minimum 6 inch depth.

L. Electric Controller

1. Controllers shall be fully grounded.
2. Connect remote control valves to controller in clockwise sequence to correspond with stations 1, 2, 3, successively.
3. Affix a non-fading copy of irrigation diagram to cabinet door below controller's name. Irrigation diagram shall be sealed between two plastic sheets, 20 mils. minimum thickness. Irrigation diagram shall show clearly all valves operated by the controller, showing station number, valve size, and type of planting irrigated.
4. Provide galvanized padlock against vandalism. Provide two keys to Owner. Keys to be matched with existing controller keylocking mechanisms.
5. Power to Controller & Locations: Locations shown on plan for controllers is approximate. Final location shall be determined on site by Owner. Contractor shall supply 120 VAC to controller from adjacent existing power sources. Follow local governing codes in electrical work.
6. Lightning Protection and Grounding: Provide full grounding and lightning protection per system manufacturer's recommendations. Grounding network shall measure 10 OHMS or less when measured with a Vibra-Ground instrument.

M. Irrigation Control Wires

1. Provide 24 volt system for control of automatic circuit-section valves of underground irrigation system. Provide unit capacity to suit number of circuits indicated.
2. Install control wires with irrigation mains and laterals in common trench where possible. Lay control wires neatly together to side of pipe. Provide looped slack at valves, corners, bores and snake wire in trench to allow for contraction. Tie wires in bundles at 10 foot intervals. Line splices will be allowed on runs of 500 Ft. or more. Splices shall be made and placed in control wire splice boxes.
3. Common ground wire shall be white. No other wires shall be white.

4. Supply two extra wires, for each direction of run, to valve which is located the greatest distance from the controller. Extra wire shall be orange. Leave two loops of wire at each valve location.
5. Color of wire from controller to control valve shall be consistent to each valve.
6. Solder splices and protect with splicing material specified. Provide 12 inch long expansion loop within 3 feet of each wire connection and splice on runs of wire 100 feet or longer.

N. Backflow Preventers

1. Make required connection to water supply according to local codes and manufacturer's written instructions.
2. Install pressure type backflow devices at required grade in accordance with the local Plumbing Code. Exposed mainline and mainline risers above PVC pipe main elevation shall be copper. Install one brass union in riser downstream of device.
3. Insulate all above ground piping.
4. Provide Backflow Certification to Landscape Architect within 10 days of backflow installation and operation.

3.5 TESTING

A. General - Notify Landscape Architect 48 hours in advance when testing will be conducted. Conduct tests in presence of Landscape Architect.

B. Hydrostatic Test - Test irrigation main line, before backfilling trenches, to a hydrostatic pressure of not less than operating pressure for 6 hour. Piping may be tested in sections to expedite work. Remove and repair or replace piping and connections which do not pass hydrostatic testing.

C. Pressure shall be maintained for a 24 hour leak test.

D. Shut off mainline at backflow preventer during non working hours until Contractor has demonstrated the mainline is stable.

E. Operational Testing - Perform operational testing after hydrostatic testing is completed, backfill is in place and irrigation heads are adjusted to final position.

1. Demonstrate to Landscape Architect that system meets coverage requirements, is a specified and indicated, and that automatic controls function properly.
2. Coverage requirements are based on operation of one circuit at a time.
3. After completion of grading, sodding and rolling of grass areas, carefully adjust lawn sprinkler heads so they will be flush with or not more than 1/2 inch above finished grade. Set shrub sprinkler heads not more than 1/2 inch above top of mulch.

3.6 MAINTENANCE

A. Contractor shall correctly maintain the irrigation system during the installation process and throughout the landscaping maintenance service period. Specified in Section 329400 - Exterior Landscape Maintenance.

ROCIP Project: Withhold insurance cost. Please refer to sections 00425 & 00810 for information.

B. Contractor shall provide "As Built" Drawings for new work, showing dimensioned location of valves, meters, backflow preventers, controllers, and mainline. Contractor shall request reproducible mylars from the Landscape Architect in preparation of "As Built" Drawings.

END OF SECTION 32 84 00

SECTION 32 92 00 – TURF AND GRASSES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.01 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.02 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Solid Sod.

2. Hydro-mulch.

B. Related Sections:

1. Retain Sections in subparagraphs below that contain requirements Contractor might expect to find in this Section but are specified in other Sections.

2. Division 31 Section "Site Clearing" for topsoil stripping and stockpiling.

3. Division 31 Section "Earth Moving" for excavation, filling and backfilling, and rough grading.

4. Division 32 Section "Planting Irrigation" for turf irrigation.

5. Division 32 Section "Plants" for border edgings.

1.03 DEFINITIONS

A. Finish Grade: Elevation of finished surface of topsoil.

B. Imported Topsoil: Soil produced off-site by homogeneously blending mineral soils or sand with stabilized organic soil amendments to produce topsoil or planting soil. Imported soils must be used if no existing on-site soils or not enough on-site soils are available.

C. Pesticide: A substance or mixture intended for preventing, destroying, repelling, or mitigating a pest. This includes insecticides, miticides, herbicides, fungicides, rodenticides, and molluscicides. It also includes substances or mixtures intended for use as a plant regulator, defoliant, or desiccant.

D. Pests: Living organisms that occur where they are not desired or that cause damage to plants, animals, or people. These include insects, mites, grubs, mollusks (snails and slugs), rodents (gophers, moles, and mice), unwanted plants (weeds), fungi, bacteria, and viruses.

E. Subgrade: Surface or elevation of subsoil remaining after excavation is complete, or top surface of a fill or backfill before planting soil is placed.

F. Subsoil: All soil beneath the topsoil layer of the soil profile, and typified by the lack of organic matter and soil organisms.

G. Existing On-site soils: Salvaged and stockpiled topsoil that is tested and suitable for use in growing proposed grasses or plants. Soil must be tested and pass or be amended per the soil test. In addition to amendments and / or fertilizers the contractor shall process the soil by raking the soil until it is free of rocks larger than 1" in any direction or any other deleterious materials. Contractors shall not count on only using on-site soils. Imported soils shall be used to supplement or completely replace on-site soils. It is the contractor's responsibility to estimate the amount of soil available on site.

1.04 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.

1. Pesticides and Herbicides: Include product label and manufacturer's application instructions specific to this Project.

2. Sod & Hydromulch: Include product label and manufacturer's application instructions specific to this Project.

3. Imported Topsoil: Include product label and manufacturer's application instructions specific to this Project.

B. Product Certificates: For soil amendments and fertilizers from manufacturer.

C. Soil: Laboratory test results clearly stating the existing on-site soils and imported soils are acceptable for turf and grass growth, and the fertilizers / amendments to add to soils to achieve an acceptable condition. Contractor will bid and supply imported topsoil. Existing onsite stockpiled topsoil will only be used if it is determined (by the architect, landscape architect and general contractor) that the existing onsite stockpiled topsoil is acceptable based upon the laboratory test result submittals, quantity of soil, and on-site inspections, by the architect / landscape architect.

1. Laboratory reports from Wallace Laboratories, LLC or approved equal. (310) 615-0116.

2. Provide 1 test sample and report for each 250 cubic yard, or a minimum of two samples total, if total stockpiled soil to be used is less than 500 cubic yards, of on-site stock piled top soil to be used on site. Samples to be taken from various areas in the stock piled material.

D. Schedule of planting that includes delivery of sod and plant material to the site, layout of beds, layout of plant material, bed prep, application of herbicides, pesticides and fertilizers, planting of each bed (or areas of the site), staking, maintenance and all landscape/irrigation/site related items or events. The schedule shall also provide the overall master construction schedule and how the landscaping fits into the master construction schedule and critical path.

1.05 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Installer Qualifications: Landscape Contractor shall have a permanent office located within a 50-mile radius of the project site.

B. Pesticide Applicator: State licensed for commercial application.

1.06 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Seed and Other Packaged Materials: Deliver packaged materials in original, unopened containers showing weight, certified analysis, name and address of manufacturer, and indication of conformance with state and federal laws, as applicable.

B. Bulk Materials:

1. Do not dump or store bulk materials near structures, utilities, walkways and pavements, or on existing turf areas or plants or near or under existing trees.

2. Provide erosion-control measures to prevent erosion or displacement of bulk materials, discharge of soil-bearing water runoff, and airborne dust reaching adjacent properties, water conveyance systems, or walkways.

3. Accompany each delivery of bulk fertilizers and soil amendments with appropriate certificates.

1.07 PROJECT CONDITIONS

A. Weather Limitations: Proceed with planting only when existing and forecasted weather conditions permit planting to be performed when beneficial and optimum results may be obtained. Apply products during favorable weather conditions according to manufacturer's written instructions.

1.08 MAINTENANCE SERVICE

A. Initial Turf Maintenance Service: Provide maintenance by skilled employees of Landscape Installer continuously after sod and/or hydromulch is installed and continue until final completion and acceptance by the Landscape Architect and Owner. Maintain as required in Part 3.

B. After receipt of final completion and acceptance, Landscape Contractor shall maintain the project for an additional 60 days as part of this scope of work. Maintain as required in Part 3.

C. Upon termination of 60-Day Maintenance period, Landscape Contractor shall notify the Landscape Architect of request for final inspection. At this time all defective work shall be corrected by Landscape Contractor and 1 year guaranty period shall begin.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.01 TURFGRASS SEED/SOD

A. Turfgrass Species: State-certified seed of grass species as follows:

1. Bermuda 'Tif 419' – solid sod.

2. Bermuda 'Sahara' – hydro-mulch

3. Wildflower Mix – "Native Trail Mix" as supplied by Native American Seed, 1-800-728-4043, or approved equal

2.02 MULCHES

A. Fiber Mulch: Biodegradable, dyed-wood, cellulose-fiber mulch; nontoxic and free of plant-growth or germination inhibitors; with a maximum moisture content of 15 percent and a pH range of 4.5 to 6.5.

B. Non-asphaltic Tackifier: Colloidal tackifier recommended by fiber-mulch manufacturer for slurry application; nontoxic and free of plant-growth or germination inhibitors.

2.03 IMPORTED TOPSOIL

A. Imported topsoil for sod and hydromulch lawns shall be Coleman Turf Mix as supplied by Organics by Gosh, 512/276-1211, or approved equal, with the following characteristics:

1. General - Topsoil shall be free of roots, clods, stones larger than 1-inch in the greatest dimension, pockets of coarse sand, noxious weeds, sticks, lumber, brush and other litter. It shall not be infested with nematodes or other undesirable disease-causing organisms such as insects and plant pathogens.

2. Topsoil shall be friable and have sufficient structure in order to give good tilth and aeration to the soil.

3. Gradation limits - soil shall be a sandy loam or loam. The definition of soil texture shall be the USDA classification scheme cited below. Gravel over 2 millimeters in diameter shall be less than 20% by weight.

4. Permeability Rate - Hydraulic conductivity rate shall be not less than one inch per hour nor more than 20 inches per hour when tested in accordance with the USDA Handbook Number 60, method 34b or other approved methods.

5. Fertility - The range of the essential elemental concentration in soil shall be as follows for approval of source soil:

Ammonium Bicarbonate/DTPA Extraction
parts per million (mg/kilogram
dry weight basis

phosphorus	10 - 40
potassium	100 - 220
iron	5- 35
manganese	0.6 - 6
zinc	1 - 8
copper	0.3 - 5
boron	0.2 - 1
magnesium	50 - 150
sodium	0 - 100
sulfur	25 - 500
molybdenum	0.1 - 2

6. Acidity - The soil pH range measured in the saturation extract (Method 21a, USDA Handbook Number 60) shall be 6.0 - 7.9.
   a. If the soil pH is between 6 and 7, the maximum permissible elemental concentration shall be reduced 50%. If the soil pH is less than 6.0, the maximum permissible elemental concentration shall be reduced 75%. No more than three metals shall be present at 50% or more of the above values

7. Salinity - The salinity range measured in the saturation extract (Method 3a, USDA Handbook Number 60) shall be 0.5 - 2.5 dS/m.

8. Chloride - The maximum concentration of soluble chloride in the saturation extract (Method 3a, USDA Handbook Number 60) shall be 150 mg/l (parts per million)

9. Boron - The maximum concentration of soluble boron in the saturation extract (Method 3a, USDA Handbook Number 60) shall be 1 mg/l (parts per million)

10. Sodium Adsorption Ratio (SAR) - The maximum SAR shall be 3 measured per Method 20b, USDA Handbook Number 60

11. Aluminum – Available aluminum measured with the Ammonium Bicarbonate/DTPA Extraction shall be less than 3 parts per million

12. Soil Organic Matter Content - Sufficient soil organic matter shall be present to impart good physical soil properties but not be excessive to cause toxicity or cause excessive reduction in the volume of soil due to decomposition of organic matter. The desirable range is 3% to 6%. The carbon:nitrogen ratio should be about 10. A high carbon:nitrogen ratio can indicate the presence of hydrocarbons or non-humified organic matter.

13. Calcium Carbonate Content - Free calcium carbonate (limestone) shall not be present for acid-loving plants

14. Heavy Metals - The maximum permissible elemental concentration in the soil shall not exceed the following concentrations:

Ammonium Bicarbonate/DTPA Extraction
parts per million (mg/kilogram)
dry weight basis

arsenic	1
cadmium	1
chromium	10
cobalt	2
lead	30
mercury	1
nickel	5
selenium	3
silver	0.5
vanadium	3

.

15. Phytotoxic constituent, herbicides, hydrocarbons etc. - Germination and growth of monocots and dicots shall not be restricted more than 10% compared to the reference soil. Growth inhibiting constituents must not be present.

2.04 FERTILIZERS

A. Organic fertilizers containing no artificial ingredients nor fillers nor urea or bio-solids.

1. Lady Bug All Purpose Fertilizer 8-2-4 as supplied by Lady Bug Natural Brand, 512-858-9090, 160 McGregor Land, Dripping Springs, Texas 78620. Or approved equal.

2.05 PESTICIDES / HERBICIDES

A. General: Pesticide, registered and approved by EPA, acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and of type recommended by manufacturer for each specific problem and as required for Project conditions and application. Do not use restricted pesticides unless authorized in writing by authorities having jurisdiction.

B. Pre-Emergent Herbicide (Selective and Non-Selective): Effective for controlling the germination or growth of weeds within planted areas at the soil level directly below the mulch layer.

C. Post-Emergent Herbicide (Selective and Non-Selective): Effective for controlling weed growth that has already germinated.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.01 EXAMINATION

A. Examine areas to be planted for compliance with requirements and other conditions affecting performance.

1. Verify that no foreign or deleterious material or liquid such as paint, paint washout, concrete slurry, concrete layers or chunks, cement, plaster, oils, gasoline, diesel fuel, paint thinner, turpentine, tar, roofing compound, or acid has been deposited in soil within a planting area.

2. Do not mix or place soils and soil amendments in frozen, wet, or muddy conditions.

3. Suspend soil spreading, grading, and tilling operations during periods of excessive soil moisture until the moisture content reaches acceptable levels to attain the required results.

4. Uniformly moisten excessively dry soil that is not workable and which is too dusty.

B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

C. If contamination by foreign or deleterious material or liquid is present in soil within a planting area, remove the soil and contamination as directed by the Landscape Architect and replace with new topsoil.

3.02 PREPARATION

A. Protect structures, utilities, sidewalks, pavements, and other facilities, trees, shrubs, and plantings from damage caused by planting operations.

1. Protect adjacent and adjoining areas from hydromulching overspray.

2. Protect grade stakes set by others until directed to remove them.

3.03 TURF AREA PREPARATION (SOD, HYDRO-MULCH & WILDFLOWER MIX)

A. Limit turf subgrade preparation to areas to be planted.

1. Landscape Contractor shall be responsible for coordinating finished grade with Sitework Contractor and General Contractor. Landscape Contractor shall be responsible for placement of final 6” to topsoil so rough grades should be left 6” below desired finished grade. Should excess existing soil or fill be left by Sitework Contractor or General Contractor, Landscape Contractor shall remove excess as needed to allow for the specified depth of topsoil within the turf grass area. Legally dispose of excess soil off-site.

B. Loosen existing subgrade to a minimum depth of 2 inches. Remove stones larger than 1 inch in any dimension and sticks, roots, rubbish, and other extraneous matter and legally dispose of them off Owner's property.

C. Spread imported / or on-site salvaged topsoil to a minimum depth of 6 inches but not less than required to meet finish grades after light rolling and natural settlement. Do not spread if planting soil or subgrade is frozen, muddy, or excessively wet. Contractor will bid and supply imported topsoil. Existing onsite stockpiled topsoil will only be used if it is determined (by the architect, landscape architect and general contractor) that the existing onsite stockpiled topsoil is acceptable based upon the laboratory test result submittals, quantity of soil, and on-site inspections, by the architect / landscape architect.

D. Finish Grading: Grade turf areas to a smooth, uniform surface plane with loose, uniformly fine texture. Grade to within plus or minus 1/2 inch of finish elevation.

E. Islands in parking lot shall have a minimum 5% slope to provide positive drainage unless grading plan specifically shows a different condition.

F. Roll and rake, remove ridges, and fill depressions to meet finish grades. Contractor shall be responsible for providing positive drainage in all lawn areas. Limit finish grading to areas that can be planted in the immediate future.

G. Apply Fertilizer, thoroughly and evenly incorporating it with the soil to a depth of 6 inches by discing or other approved methods.

H. Before installing sod or hydromulch, obtain Landscape Architect's acceptance of finish grading; restore planting areas if eroded or otherwise disturbed after finish grading.

I. Moisten prepared area before installing sod or hydromulch if soil is dry. Water thoroughly and allow surface to dry before planting. Do not create muddy soil.

3.04 SOLID SOD

A. Do not lay dormant sod or install sod on saturated or frozen soil.

B. Lay sod to form a solid mass with tightly filled joints. Butt ends and sides of sod strips. Do not overlay edges. Stagger strips to offset joints with adjacent courses. Remove excess sod. Sod shall be flush with adjacent curbs and pavement.

C. Install initial row of sod in a straight line, beginning at bottom of slopes, perpendicular to the direction of the sloped area. Place subsequent rows parallel to the previously installed row.

D. For slopes 3:1 or greater, stake sod/soil layers together using metal sod stakes that penetrate at least 6” into the subsoil.

E. Water sod thoroughly with a fine spray immediately after laying.

F. Roll with light lawn roller to ensure contact with subgrade.

G. During first week after planting, water daily or more frequently as necessary to maintain moist soil to a minimum depth of 1-1/2 inches below sod.

3.05 HYDRO-MULCH

A. Hydro-mulch: Mix specified seed, fertilizer, and fiber mulch in water, using equipment specifically designed for hydromulch application. Continue mixing until uniformly blended into homogeneous slurry suitable for hydraulic application.

B. Mix slurry with tackifier.

C. Seed Content in Hydro-mulch slurry shall be as follows:

1. Bermuda 'Sahara' – 4 lbs per 1,000 square feet

2. Wildflower Mix – 1/4 lb per 250 square feet

D. Hydro-mulch all areas as indicated on plans.

E. Hydro-mulch shall be applied in a uniform cover.

F. Immediately remove and clean all hydromulch overspray from trees, shrubs, curbs, pavement, fire hydrants, light poles and other site improvements.

G. Saturate hydro-mulch area with fine water spray immediately after installation. During first week after planting, water daily or more frequently as necessary to maintain moist soil to a minimum depth of 1-1/2 inches below seed.

H. Sod/seed.

3.06 TURF MAINTENANCE

A. Maintain and establish turf as prescribed in Section 1 above. Maintenance shall be done on a weekly basis during the months of April through October and on a bi-weekly basis during the months of November through March.

B. Maintenance shall include watering, fertilizing, weeding, mowing, trimming, replanting, and performing other operations as required to establish healthy, viable turf. Roll, regrade, and replant bare or eroded areas and remulch to produce a uniformly smooth turf. Provide materials and installation the same as those used in the original installation.

1. Fill in as necessary soil subsidence that may occur because of settling or other processes. Replace materials and turf damaged or lost in areas of subsidence.

2. Apply treatments as required to keep turf and soil free of pests and pathogens or disease. Use integrated pest management practices whenever possible to minimize the use of pesticides and reduce hazards.

C. Watering: Schedule watering to prevent wilting, puddling, erosion, and displacement of seed or mulch. Water turf with fine spray at a minimum rate of 1 inch per week unless rainfall precipitation is adequate.

D. Mowing: Mow turf as soon as top growth is tall enough to cut. Repeat mowing to maintain specified height without cutting more than 1/3 of grass height. Remove no more than 1/3 of grass-leaf growth in initial or subsequent mowings. Do not delay mowing until grass blades bend over and become matted. Do not mow when grass is wet.

3.07 SATISFACTORY TURF

A. Turf installations shall meet the following criteria as determined by Architect:

1. Satisfactory Sodded Turf: At end of maintenance period, a healthy, well-rooted, even-colored, viable turf has been established, free of weeds, open joints, bare areas, and surface irregularities.

B. Use specified materials to reestablish turf that does not comply with requirements and continue maintenance until turf is satisfactory.

3.08 PESTICIDE APPLICATION

A. Apply pesticides and other chemical products and biological control agents in accordance with requirements of authorities having jurisdiction and manufacturer's written recommendations. Coordinate applications with Owner's operations and others in proximity to the Work. Notify Owner before each application is performed.

B. Post-Emergent Herbicides (Selective and Non-Selective): Apply only as necessary to treat already-germinated weeds and in accordance with manufacturer's written recommendations.

C. Contractor shall notify Owner 48 hours prior to all pesticide applications. Notification shall include place of application as well as products being applied.

3.09 CLEANUP AND PROTECTION

A. Promptly remove soil and debris created by turf work from paved areas. Clean wheels of vehicles before leaving site to avoid tracking soil onto roads, walks, or other paved areas.

B. Erect temporary fencing or barricades and warning signs as required to protect newly planted areas from traffic. Maintain fencing and barricades throughout initial maintenance period and remove after plantings are established.

C. Remove nondegradable erosion-control measures after grass establishment period.

D. Repair any areas disturbed by or not vegetated under erosion control devices. Repair shall include fine grading the area, installing topsoil, hydromulching and irrigating for establishment.

END OF SECTION 32 92 00

SECTION 32 93 00 – PLANTS

PART 1 GENERAL

1.01 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.02 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Plants.
2. Planting soils.
3. Tree stabilization.
4. Aggregates
5. Landscape edgings.

B. Related Sections:

1. Division 31 Section "Site Clearing" for protection of existing trees and plantings, topsoil stripping and stockpiling, and site clearing.
2. Division 31 Section "Earth Moving" for excavation, filling, and rough grading and for subsurface aggregate drainage and drainage backfill materials.
3. Division 32 Section "Turf and Grasses" for turf (lawn), hydroseeding, sod and erosion-control materials.
4. Division 33 Section "Subdrainage" for below-grade drainage of landscaped areas, paved areas, and wall perimeters.

1.03 DEFINITIONS

A. Backfill: The earth used to replace or the act of replacing earth in an excavation.

B. Balled and Burlapped Stock: Plants dug with firm, natural balls of earth in which they were grown, with ball size not less than sizes indicated; wrapped with burlap, tied, rigidly supported, and drum laced with twine with the root flare visible at the surface of the ball as recommended by ANSI Z60.1.

C. Container-Grown Stock: Healthy, vigorous, well-rooted plants grown in a container, with a well-established root system reaching sides of container and maintaining a firm ball when removed from container. Container shall be rigid enough to hold ball shape and protect root mass during shipping and be sized according to ANSI Z60.1 for type and size of plant required.

D. Finish Grade: Elevation of finished surface of planting soil.

E. Planting Mix: Soil produced off-site by homogeneously blending mineral soils or sand with stabilized organic soil amendments to produce topsoil or planting soil.

F. Pesticide: A substance or mixture intended for preventing, destroying, repelling, or mitigating a pest. This includes insecticides, miticides, herbicides, fungicides, rodenticides, and molluscicides. It also includes substances or mixtures intended for use as a plant regulator, defoliant, or desiccant.

G. Pests: Living organisms that occur where they are not desired, or that cause damage to plants, animals, or people. These include insects, mites, grubs, mollusks (snails and slugs), rodents (gophers, moles, and mice), unwanted plants (weeds), fungi, bacteria, and viruses.

H. Planting Area: Areas to be planted.

I. Plant; Plants; Plant Material: These terms refer to vegetation in general, including trees, shrubs, vines, ground covers, ornamental grasses, bulbs, corms, tubers, or herbaceous vegetation.

J. Root Flare: Also called "trunk flare." The area at the base of the plant's stem or trunk where the stem or trunk broadens to form roots; the area of transition between the root system and the stem or trunk.

K. Stem Girdling Roots: Roots that encircle the stems (trunks) of trees below the soil surface.

L. Subgrade: Surface or elevation of subsoil remaining after excavation is complete, or the top surface of a fill or backfill before planting soil is placed.

M. Subsoil: All soil beneath the topsoil layer of the soil profile, and typified by the lack of organic matter and soil organisms.

N. Surface Soil: Soil that is present at the top layer of the existing soil profile at the Project site. In undisturbed areas, the surface soil is typically topsoil; but in disturbed areas such as urban environments, the surface soil can be subsoil.

1.04 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated, including soils.

1. Plant Materials: Include quantities, sizes, quality, and sources for plant materials.

2. Pesticides and Herbicides: Include product label and manufacturer's application instructions specific to the Project.

3. Plant Photographs: Include color photographs in digital format of each required species and size of plant material as it will be furnished to the Project. The actual plants that will be installed. Take photographs from an angle depicting true size and condition of the typical plant to be furnished. Include a scale rod or other measuring device in each photograph. For species where more than 20 plants are required, include a minimum of three photographs showing the average plant, the best quality plant, and the worst quality plant to be furnished. Identify each photograph with the full scientific name of the plant, plant size, and name of the growing nursery.

4. Contractor shall submit laboratory test reports of imported topsoil and onsite stock piled soils to be used. Report shall clearly state that the imported soils are acceptable for plant growth. The report shall also state that the existing on-site soils are acceptable for plant growth or clearly list the amendment needed to achieve an acceptable condition.

   1) Laboratory reports from Wallace Laboratories, LLC or approved equal. (310) 615-0116
   2) Provide 1 test sample and report for each 250 cubic yard, or a minimum of two samples total, if total stockpiled soil to be used is less than 500 cubic yards, of on-site stock piled top soil to be used on site. Samples to be taken from various areas in the stock piled material.

B. Samples for Verification: For each of the following:

1. Organic Mulch: 1-quart volume of mulch; in sealed plastic bags labeled with composition of materials by percentage of weight and source of mulch. Each Sample shall be typical of the lot of material to be furnished; provide an accurate representation of color, texture, and organic makeup.

2. Planting Mix: 1-quart volume of planting mix; in sealed plastic bags labeled with composition of materials by percentage of weight and source of mulch. Each Sample shall be typical of the lot of material to be furnished; provide an accurate representation of color, texture.

3. Aggregates: 1-quart volume; in sealed plastic bags labeled with source. Each Sample shall be typical of the lot of material to be furnished; provide an accurate representation of color, texture, and organic makeup.

4. Topsoil: 1-quart volume; in sealed plastic bags labeled with composition of materials by percentage of weight and source. Each Sample shall be typical of

the lot of material to be furnished; provide an accurate representation of color, texture, and organic makeup.

C. Qualification Data: Landscape Contractor shall have a permanent office located within a 50-mile radius of the project site.

D. Schedule of planting that includes delivery of plant material to the site, layout of beds, layout of plant material, bed prep, application of herbicides, pesticides and fertilizers, planting of each bed (or areas of the site), staking, maintenance and all landscape/irrigation/site related items or events. The schedule shall also provide the overall master construction schedule and how the landscaping/irrigation fits into the master construction schedule and critical path.

E. The final as-builts shall be provided by the contractor and shall be CAD generated. The landscape architect will provide their CAD base file for the contractor to use as his starting point. The final CAD file provided by the contractor shall be completely bound (xrefs) and purged.

1.05 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Provide quality, size, genus, species, and variety of plants indicated, complying with applicable requirements in ANSI Z60.1.

B. Measurements: Measure according to ANSI Z60.1. Do not prune to obtain required sizes.

1. Trees and Shrubs: Measure with branches and trunks or canes in their normal position. Take height measurements from or near the top of the root flare for field-grown stock and container grown stock. Measure main body of tree or shrub for height and spread; do not measure branches or roots tip to tip. Take caliper measurements 6 inches above the root flare for trees up to 4-inch caliper size, and 12 inches above the root flare for larger sizes.

2. Other Plants: Measure with stems, petioles, and foliage in their normal position.

C. Plant Material Observation: Landscape Architect may observe plant material either at place of growth or at site before planting for compliance with requirements for genus, species, variety, cultivar, size, and quality. Landscape Architect retains right to observe trees and shrubs further for size and condition of root ball and root systems, pests, disease symptoms, injuries, and latent defects and to reject unsatisfactory or defective material at any time during progress of work. Remove rejected trees or shrubs immediately from Project site.

F. Notify Architect of sources of planting materials seven days in advance of delivery to site.

1.06 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Packaged Materials: Deliver packaged materials in original, unopened containers showing weight, certified analysis, name and address of manufacturer, and indication of conformance with state and federal laws if applicable.

B. Bulk Materials:

1. Do not dump or store bulk materials near structures, utilities, walkways and pavements, or on existing turf areas or plants or near or under existing trees.

2. Provide erosion-control measures to prevent erosion or displacement of bulk materials, discharge of soil-bearing water runoff, and airborne dust reaching adjacent properties, water conveyance systems, or walkways.

3. Accompany each delivery of bulk fertilizers and soil amendments with appropriate certificates.

C. Do not prune trees and shrubs before delivery. Protect bark, branches, and root systems from sun scald, drying, wind burn, sweating, whipping, and other handling and tying damage. Do not bend or bind-tie trees or shrubs in such a manner as to destroy their natural shape. Provide protective covering of plants during shipping and delivery. Do not drop plants during delivery and handling.

D. Handle planting stock by root ball or container only.

G. Deliver plants after preparations for planting have been completed, and install immediately. If planting is delayed more than six hours after delivery, set plants and trees in their appropriate aspect (sun, filtered sun, or shade), protect from weather and mechanical damage, and keep roots moist.

1. Set balled stock on ground and cover ball with mulch.

2. Do not remove container-grown stock from containers before time of planting.

3. Water root systems of plants stored on-site deeply and thoroughly with a fine-mist spray. Water as often as necessary to maintain root systems in a moist, but not overly-wet condition.

1.07 PROJECT CONDITIONS

A. Field Measurements: Verify actual grade elevations, service and utility locations, irrigation system components, and dimensions of plantings and construction contiguous with new plantings by field measurements before proceeding with planting work.

B. Interruption of Existing Services or Utilities: Do not interrupt services or utilities to facilities occupied by Owner or others unless permitted under the following conditions

and then only after arranging to provide temporary services or utilities according to requirements indicated:

1. Notify Landscape Architect, Construction Manager, and Owner no fewer than five working days in advance of proposed interruption of each service or utility.

2. Do not proceed with interruption of services or utilities without Landscape Architect, Construction Manager, or Owner's written permission.

C. Weather Limitations: Proceed with planting only when existing and forecasted weather conditions permit planting to be performed when beneficial and optimum results may be obtained. Apply products during favorable weather conditions according to manufacturer's written instructions and warranty requirements.

D. Coordination with Turf Areas (Lawns): Plant trees, shrubs, and other plants after finish grades are established and before planting turf areas unless otherwise indicated.

1. When planting trees, shrubs, and other plants after planting turf areas, protect turf areas, and promptly repair damage caused by planting operations.

1.08 WARRANTY

A. Warranty: Installer agrees to repair or replace plantings and accessories that fail in materials, workmanship, or growth for a warranty period of 12 months from the date of Substantial Completion.

1. Failures include, but are not limited to, the following:

a. Death and unsatisfactory growth, except for defects resulting from abuse, lack of adequate maintenance, or neglect by Owner, or incidents that are beyond Contractor's control.
b. Structural failures including plantings falling or blowing over.
c. Faulty performance of edgings and tree grates.
d. Deterioration of metals, metal finishes, and other materials beyond normal weathering.

2. Include the following remedial actions as a minimum:

a. Immediately remove dead plants and replace unless required to plant in the succeeding planting season.
b. Replace plants that are more than 25 percent dead or in an unhealthy condition at end of warranty period.
c. Provide extended warranty for period equal to original warranty period, for replaced plant material.
d. Opinion of plant status by the Landscape Architect shall be final.

1.09 MAINTENANCE SERVICE

A. Initial Maintenance Service for all plant material: Provide maintenance by skilled employees of landscape Installer continuously after plants are installed and continue until final completion and acceptance by the Landscape Architect and Owner. Maintain as required in Part 3.

B. After receipt of final completion and acceptance, Landscape Contractor shall maintain the project for an additional 12 months as part of this scope of work. Maintain as required in Part 3.

C. Upon termination of the 12 month Maintenance period, Landscape Contractor shall notify the Landscape Architect of request for final inspection. At this time all defective work shall be corrected by Landscape Contractor. At the end of the 12 month maintenance service/warranty period the landscape contractor shall remove all stakes and guy wires.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.01 PLANT MATERIAL

A. General: Furnish nursery-grown plants true to genus, species, variety, cultivar, stem form, shearing, and other features indicated in Plant Schedule or Plant Legend shown on Drawings and complying with ANSI Z60.1; and with healthy root systems developed by transplanting or root pruning. Provide well-shaped, fully branched, healthy, vigorous stock, densely foliated when in leaf and free of disease, pests, eggs, larvae, and defects such as knots, sun scald, injuries, abrasions, and disfigurement.

1. Trees with damaged, crooked, or multiple leaders; tight vertical branches where bark is squeezed between two branches or between branch and trunk ("included bark"); crossing trunks; cut-off limbs more than 3/4 inch in diameter; or with stem girdling roots will be rejected.

2. Collected Stock: Do not use plants harvested from the wild, from native stands, from an established landscape planting, or not grown in a nursery unless otherwise indicated.

B. Provide plants of sizes, grades, and ball or container sizes complying with ANSI Z60.1 for types and form of plants required. Plants of a larger size may be used if acceptable to Architect, with a proportionate increase in size of roots or balls.

C. Root-Ball Depth: Furnish trees and shrubs with root balls measured from top of root ball, which shall begin at root flare according to ANSI Z60.1. Root flare shall be visible before planting.

D. Labeling: Label each plant of each variety, size, and caliper with a securely attached, waterproof tag bearing legible designation of common name and full scientific name, including genus and species. Include nomenclature for hybrid, variety, or cultivar, if applicable for the plant as shown on Drawings.

2.02 FERTILIZERS

A. Organic Fertilizer: Granular organic fertilizer containing no artificial ingredients nor fillers nor urea or bio-solids.

1. Lady Bug All Purpose Fertilizer 8-2-4 as supplied by Lady Bug Natural Brand, 512-858-9090, 160 McGregor Land, Dripping Springs, Texas 78620.

2.03 PLANTING SOILS

A. Planting Soil Bed Mix: Backfill Mix for Trees, Shrubs and ground covers shall be Bed Mix Light as supplied by Organics by Gosh, 512-276-1211, or approved equal.

1. Physical properties as follows:
   a. Granite Sand 10%
   b. Gypsum – 10%
   c. Imported Top Soil (low in clay, high in silt and sand) 50%. See below.
   d. Sustainable Compost – 30%

B. Imported Topsoil:

Supply high quality imported topsoil of loamy character, high in humus and organic content from local agricultural source. Topsoil to be free from clay, lumps, coarse sands, stones, roots, and other foreign matter. There shall be no toxic amounts of acid or alkaline elements. Topsoil to be used for on-site mixing of backfill mix. Supplier by Organics by Gosh or approved equal.

General - Topsoil shall be free of roots, clods, stones larger than 1-inch in the greatest dimension, pockets of coarse sand, noxious weeds, sticks, lumber, brush and other litter. It shall not be infested with nematodes or other undesirable disease-causing organisms such as insects and plant pathogens.

Topsoil shall be friable and have sufficient structure in order to give good tilth and aeration to the soil.

Gradation limits - soil shall be a sandy loam or loam. The definition of soil texture shall be the USDA classification scheme cited below. Gravel over 2 millimeters in diameter shall be less than 20% by weight.

Permeability Rate - Hydraulic conductivity rate shall be not less than one inch per hour nor more than 20 inches per hour when tested in accordance with the USDA Handbook Number 60, method 34b or other approved methods.

Fertility - The range of the essential elemental concentration in soil shall be as follows for approval of source soil:

Ammonium Bicarbonate/DTPA Extraction
parts per million (mg/kilogram
dry weight basis

phosphorus	10 - 40
potassium	100 - 220
iron	5- 35
manganese	0.6 - 6
zinc	1 - 8
copper	0.3 - 5
boron	0.2 - 1
magnesium	50 - 150
sodium	0 - 100
sulfur	25 - 500
molybdenum	0.1 - 2

Acidity - The soil pH range measured in the saturation extract (Method 21a, USDA Handbook Number 60) shall be 6.0 - 7.9.

Salinity - The salinity range measured in the saturation extract (Method 3a, USDA Handbook Number 60) shall be 0.5 - 2.5 dS/m.

Chloride - The maximum concentration of soluble chloride in the saturation extract (Method 3a, USDA Handbook Number 60) shall be 150 mg/l (parts per million).

Boron - The maximum concentration of soluble boron in the saturation extract (Method 3a, USDA Handbook Number 60) shall be 1 mg/l (parts per million).

Sodium Adsorption Ratio (SAR) - The maximum SAR shall be 3 measured per Method 20b, USDA Handbook Number 60.

Aluminum – Available aluminum measured with the Ammonium Bicarbonate/DTPA Extraction shall be less than 3 parts per million.

Soil Organic Matter Content - Sufficient soil organic matter shall be present to impart good physical soil properties but not be excessive to cause toxicity or cause excessive reduction in the volume of soil due to decomposition of organic matter. The desirable range is 3% to 6%. The carbon:nitrogen ratio should be about 10. A high carbon:nitrogen ratio can indicate the presence of hydrocarbons or non-humified organic matter.

Calcium Carbonate Content - Free calcium carbonate (limestone) shall not be present for acid-loving plants.

Heavy Metals - The maximum permissible elemental concentration in the soil shall not exceed the following concentrations:

Ammonium Bicarbonate/DTPA Extraction
parts per million (mg/kilogram)
dry weight basis

arsenic	1
cadmium	1
chromium	10
cobalt	2
lead	30
mercury	1
nickel	5
selenium	3
silver	0.5
vanadium	3

If the soil pH is between 6 and 7, the maximum permissible elemental concentration shall be reduced 50%. If the soil pH is less than 6.0, the maximum permissible elemental concentration shall be reduced 75%. No more than three metals shall be present at 50% or more of the above values.

Phytotoxic constituent, herbicides, hydrocarbons etc. - Germination and growth of monocots and dicots shall not be restricted more than 10% compared to the reference soil. Growth inhibiting constituents must not be present.

2.04 MULCHES

A. Texas Friendly Mulch as supplied by Organics by Gosh, 512-276-1211, or approved equal.

2.05 AGGREGATES

A. Gravel: 1/2”-1” diameter Washed River Gravel, as supplied by Whittlesey Landscape Supplies, 512-989-7625 or approved equal.

B. Gravel: 3/8” diameter Granite Gravel, as supplied by Whittlesey Landscape Supplies or approved equal.

C. Gravel: ¼” minus Decomposed Granite, with stabilizer applied to the top 1”, continuous, as supplied by Whittlesey Landscape Supplies or approved equal.

ROCIP Project: Withhold insurance cost. Please refer to sections 00425 & 00810 for information.

2.06 PESTICIDES & HERBICIDES

A. General: Pesticide registered and approved by EPA, acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and of type recommended by manufacturer for each specific problem and as required for Project conditions and application. Do not use restricted pesticides unless authorized in writing by authorities having jurisdiction.

B. Pre-Emergent Herbicide (Selective and Non-Selective): Effective for controlling the germination or growth of weeds within planted areas at the soil level directly below the mulch layer.

C. Post-Emergent Herbicide (Selective and Non-Selective): Effective for controlling weed growth that has already germinated.

2.07 LANDSCAPE EDGINGS

A. Concrete Edging:

1. 6” wide by 6” depth w/ ½” chamfer on all corners. Provide contraction joints every 5’ o.c. and asphaltic expansion joint every 25’ o.c.

B. Steel Edging:

1. 1/8”x4” steel edging by COL-MET, (800) 829-8225, or approved equal. Color: black

2.08 TREE STABILIZATION

A. Stakes and Guys:

1. Tree Stakes for Shade Tree Planting: 8’ length steel “T” posts – PAINTED BLACK – with plastic stake caps at each post.

2. Tree Stakes for Ornamental Tree Planting: 8’ length steel “T” posts – PAINTED BLACK – with plastic stake caps at each post.

3. Guying: Tree-Tie Webbing by Arborbrace, or approved equal, Arborbrace – 561-628-3591, www.treestaking.com

2.09 FILTER FABRIC

A. TenCate, Mirafi 140N

1. Geo Solutions Inc., 512-445-0796, or approved equal.

ROCIP Project: Withhold insurance cost. Please refer to sections 00425 & 00810 for information.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.01 EXAMINATION

A. Examine areas to receive plants for compliance with requirements and conditions affecting installation and performance.

1. Verify that no foreign or deleterious material or liquid such as paint, paint washout, concrete slurry, concrete layers or chunks, cement, plaster, oils, gasoline, diesel fuel, paint thinner, turpentine, tar, roofing compound, or acid has been deposited in soil within a planting area.

2. Do not mix or place soils and soil amendments in frozen, wet, or muddy conditions.

3. Suspend soil spreading, grading, and tilling operations during periods of excessive soil moisture until the moisture content reaches acceptable levels to attain the required results.

4. Uniformly moisten excessively dry soil that is not workable and which is too dusty.

B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

E. If contamination by foreign or deleterious material or liquid is present in soil within a planting area, remove the soil and contamination as directed by Architect and replace with new planting soil.

3.02 PREPARATION

A. Protect structures, utilities, sidewalks, pavements, and other facilities and turf areas and existing plants from damage caused by planting operations.

B. Lay out individual tree and shrub locations and areas for multiple plantings. Stake locations, outline areas, adjust locations when requested, and obtain Landscape Architect's acceptance of layout before excavating or planting. Make minor adjustments as required.

3.03 PLANTING AREA ESTABLISHMENT

A. Bed Preparation:

1. Excavate existing soils or fill material to the depth indicated for ground cover areas or shrub areas. Dispose of excess soils legally offsite or coordinate with civil drawings and specifications to determine if spoils can be used on site.

2. Remove stones larger than 1 inch in any dimension and sticks, roots, rubbish, and other extraneous matter and legally dispose of them off Owner's property.
   a. Delay mixing fertilizer with planting soil if planting will not proceed within a few days.

3. Install planting soil bed mix in prepared bed. Planting soil bed mix shall be installed in continuous beds –POCKET PLANTING OF SHRUBS AND GROUNDCOVERS SHALL NOT BE PERMITTED.

a. Groundcover Areas: install 12” of planting soil bed mix.
b. Shrub Areas: install 15” of planting soil bed mix.

B. Finish Grading: Grade planting areas to a smooth, uniform surface plane with loose, uniformly fine texture. Roll and rake, remove ridges, and fill depressions to meet finish grades.

C. Before planting, obtain Landscape Architect's acceptance of finish grading; restore planting areas if eroded or otherwise disturbed after finish grading.

3.04 SHRUB AND GROUNDCOVER PLANTING

A. Apply fertilizers per the manufacturer’s recommendations to the prepared planting bed. Allow enough time between the application of fertilizers, for safe planting of all proposed plant material

B. Remove all plant containers.

C. Install plants in straight rows using triangular spacing.

D. Use planting soil bed mix for backfill.

E. Backfill planting bed in layers, tamping to settle soil and eliminate voids and air pockets. When planting pit is approximately one-half filled, water thoroughly before placing remainder of backfill. Repeat watering until no more water is absorbed.

F. Repair settling of plants or finished grade and ensure positive drainage.

3.05 EXCAVATION FOR TREES

A. Planting Pits for Trees: Excavate circular planting pits with sides sloping inward at a 45-degree angle. Excavations with vertical sides are not acceptable. Trim perimeter of bottom leaving center area of bottom raised slightly to support root ball and assist in

drainage away from center. Do not further disturb base. Ensure that root ball will sit on undisturbed base soil to prevent settling. Scarify sides of planting pit.

1. Excavate approximately two times as wide as ball diameter.

2. Excavate perimeter of pit at least 1 ½ times the depth of the root ball

3. Trees shall be placed so that root flare is 2" **(NOTE: THIS AMOUNT CAN/MAY CHANGE DEPENDING ON PROJECT LOCATION)** above adjacent finished grade. Do not excavate deeper than depth of the root ball, measured from the root flare to the bottom of the root ball.

B. Obstructions: Notify Architect if unexpected rock or obstructions detrimental to trees or shrubs are encountered in excavations.

1. All rock in planting beds or pits shall be removed to twice the specified depth (two times the size shown and specified). Where location changes for plant materials are requested, notify Landscape Architect of requested change at least 48 hours prior to need. In the event that locations cannot be adjusted, rock removal will be necessary and shall be the responsibility of the Landscape Contractor.

C. Drainage:

1. Fill excavations with water and allow to percolate away before positioning trees and shrubs

2. Notify Architect if subsoil conditions evidence unexpected water seepage or retention in tree or shrub planting pits.

3.05 TREE, PLANTING

A. Before planting, verify that root flare is visible at top of root ball according to ANSI Z60.1. If root flare is not visible, remove soil in a level manner from the root ball to where the top-most root emerges from the trunk. After soil removal to expose the root flare, verify that root ball still meets size requirements.

B. Apply fertilizers per the manufacturer's recommendations to the tree planting pit. Allow enough time between the application of fertilizers, for safe planting of all proposed plant material.

C. Remove stem girdling roots and kinked roots. Remove injured roots by cutting cleanly; do not break.

D. Set trees plumb and in center of planting pit with root flare 2 above finish grades.

4. Use planting soil bed mix for backfill.

5. After placing some backfill around root ball to stabilize plant, carefully cut and remove burlap, rope, and wire baskets from tops of root balls and from sides, but do not remove from under root balls. Remove pallets, if any, before setting. Do not use planting stock if root ball is cracked or broken before or during planting operation.

6. Backfill around root ball in layers, tamping to settle soil and eliminate voids and air pockets. When planting pit is approximately one-half filled, water thoroughly before placing remainder of backfill. Repeat watering until no more water is absorbed.

7. Place planting tablets in each planting pit when pit is approximately one-half filled; in amounts recommended in soil reports from soil-testing laboratory. Place tablets beside the root ball about 1 inch from root tips; do not place tablets in bottom of the hole.

8. Continue backfilling process. Water again after placing and tamping final layer of soil.

D. When planting on slopes, set the plant so the root flare on the uphill side is flush with the surrounding soil on the slope; the edge of the root ball on the downhill side will be above the surrounding soil. Apply enough soil to cover the downhill side of the root ball.

E. Install Tree Stabilization per manufacturer's recommendations or per details shown on drawings.

3.06 TREE, SHRUB, AND GROUNDCOVER PRUNING

A. Prunethin, and shape trees, shrubs and vines according to standard professional horticultural and arboricultural practices. Unless otherwise indicated by Landscape Architect, do not cut tree leaders; remove only injured, dying, or dead branches from trees and shrubs; and prune to retain natural character.

B. Apply pruning paint to wounds immediately.

3.07 PLANTING AREA MULCHING

A. Mulch backfilled surfaces of planting areas and other areas indicated.

1. Trees in Turf Areas: Apply mulch ring of 3-inch depth. Do not place mulch within 6 inches of trunks or stems.

2. Mulch in Planting Areas: Apply 3-inch average depth of shredded hardwood mulch over whole surface of planting area, and finish level with adjacent finish grades.

3.08 PLANT MAINTENANCE

A. Maintain plantings as prescribed in Section 1 above. Maintenance shall be done on a weekly basis during the months of April through October and on a bi-weekly basis during the months of November through March

B. Maintenance shall include pruning, cultivating, watering, weeding, fertilizing, mulching, restoring planting saucers, adjusting and repairing tree-stabilization devices, resetting to proper grades or vertical position, and performing other operations as required to establish healthy, viable plantings. Spray or treat as required to keep trees and shrubs free of insects and disease.

C. Fill in as necessary soil subsidence that may occur because of settling or other processes. Replace mulch materials damaged or lost in areas of subsidence.

D. Apply treatments as required to keep plant materials, planted areas, and soils free of pests and pathogens or disease. Use integrated past management practices whenever possible to minimize the use of pesticides and reduce hazards. Treatments include physical controls such as hosing off foliage, mechanical controls such as traps, and biological control agents.

3.09 PESTICIDE APPLICATION

A. Apply pesticides and other chemical products and biological control agents in accordance with authorities having jurisdiction and manufacturer's written recommendations. Coordinate applications with Owner's operations and others in proximity to the Work. Notify Owner before each application is performed.

B. Pre-Emergent Herbicides (Selective and Non-Selective): Apply to tree, shrub, and ground-cover areas in accordance with manufacturer's written recommendations. Do not apply to seeded areas.

C. Post-Emergent Herbicides (Selective and Non-Selective): Apply only as necessary to treat already-germinated weeds and in accordance with manufacturer's written recommendations.

D. Contractor shall notify Owner 48 hours prior to all pesticide applications. Notification shall include place of application as well as products being applied.

3.10 CLEANUP AND PROTECTION

A. During planting, keep adjacent paving and construction clean and work area in an orderly condition.

B. Protect plants from damage due to landscape operations and operations of other contractors and trades. Maintain protection during installation and maintenance periods. Treat, repair, or replace damaged plantings.

C. After installation, remove nursery tags, nursery stakes, tie tape, labels, wire, burlap, and other debris from plant material, planting areas, and Project site.

3.11 DISPOSAL

A. Remove surplus soil and waste material including excess subsoil, unsuitable soil, trash, and debris and legally dispose of them off Owner's property.

3.12 EXPIRATION OF GUARANTEE PERIOD

Landscape Contractor shall notify Owner or Landscape Architect in writing, 30 days prior to the expiration of the one-year guarantee period. A site inspection will be made by the Owner or Landscape Architect to verify that all work and materials are in good and healthy condition. All work and materials that are determined by the Landscape Architect to be unacceptable or dead shall be replaced at the Landscape Contractor's expense. Upon completion of replacement of all unacceptable work or dead materials, the Landscape Architect will notify the Owner of the guarantee expiration

END OF SECTION 32 93 00

ROCIP Project: Withhold insurance cost. Please refer to sections 00425 & 00810 for information.

SECTION 33 05 00 - UTILITY SERVICES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.01 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Standard Form of Construction Agreement, including General and Special Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.02 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:
   1. Furnish all labor, materials, services, equipment and appliances required in conjunction with or properly incidental to the furnishing and installation of site drainage system complete as indicated on the Drawings and as specified herein, including:
      a. Layout of drainage and utility lines
      b. Excavation for trenching, de-watering and backfilling
      c. Water distribution system
      d. Sanitary sewer system
      e. Gas distribution system
      f. Removal of excess excavated material off-site
      g. Provide trench safety design as required for fire hydrant work.
   2. Systems shall start at a point approximately 5 feet beyond the exterior walls of the building and extend to termination unless otherwise indicated on the Drawings.

B. Related Sections include the following:
   1. Division 23 Section “Heating, Ventilating, and Air Conditioning.”
   2. Division 31 Section “Earth Moving.”

1.03 QUALITY STANDARDS

A. Meet requirements and recommendations of applicable portions of the Standards listed.
   1. Applicable publications of local governing authority
   2. American Society for Testing and Materials, ASTM.
   3. Texas Highway Department Standard Specifications for Construction of Highways, Streets, and Bridges, 1972, THD.
   4. Texas Trench Excavation Law.
   5. North Control Texas Council of Governments (NCTOG)

1.04 SUBMITTALS

A. Division 01 - "Submittal Procedures": Procedures for submittals.

B. Product Data: Submit copies of manufacturer's literature showing details of fabrication and installation of valves, vaults, clean-out boots, fire hydrants, flush hydrants, concrete pipe, joint materials, covers, grates and frames.

C. Shop Drawings: Submit manufacturer's data showing details of precast concrete structures related with site drainage.

D. Certification: Furnish Owner a certification from pipe manufacturer stating that pipe conforms to Specification requirements.

1.05 TESTING

A. Listed herein a minimum testing requirements. Cost for making these tests will be paid for by the Contractor.

B. Backfill: One laboratory test, TEX 114-E, for soil density shall be made for each type of soil used as backfill material. When a test has been made previously on similar soil, a duplicate test will not be necessary.

C. Reinforcing Steel: Furnish the Architect a certification from the steel fabricator or manufacturer stating that reinforcing steel conforms to Specification requirements.

D. Portland Cement Concrete: Contractor may use mix design currently being used which meets Specification requirements. In lieu of this, provide samples of materials proposed for use in Portland Cement concrete. Testing laboratory will determine that cement and aggregates meet requirements of these Specifications. Laboratory shall then prepare mix design which conforms to Specifications. New mix design will be required if materials are changed or if concrete does not meet strength or workability requirements.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.01 CONCRETE STRUCTURES

A. Portland Cement: Shall be of a standard brand and shall conform to the latest ASTM designation C150, Type 1.

B. Aggregates for concrete: Fine or coarse aggregate and shall meet the requirements of THD, Item 421.

C. Concrete: Composed of Portland Cement, coarse aggregate, fine aggregate, water, mineral filler and/or admixtures, if permitted by the Architect. Concrete shall have

a minimum compressive strength at 28 days of not less than 3000 psi and shall have a maximum water-cement ratio of 7.0 gallons per sack, minimum cement content of 5.0 sacks per cubic yard, and a slump from two (2) to three (3) inches. Measuring materials, batching, and mixing shall conform to ASTM Designation C94.

D. Reinforcing Steel: Conforming to ASTM Designation A615 of grade 40 or 60.

E. Cast Iron Rings, Covers, and Grates: Shall be true to pattern in form and dimensions, free from pouring faults, sponginess, cracks, blow holes, and other defects in positions affecting their strength and value for the service intended. Angles shall be filleted and arises shall be sharp and true. Surfaces shall be machined where indicated or where otherwise necessary to secure true, flat surfaces. Covers and grates shall fit properly into frames, and seat uniformly and solidly.

1. Castings: Conforming to the following ASTM Designation:

Gray-Iron Castings	A48 Class 50
Malleable Castings	A47 35018
Ductile Iron Castings	A395 60-45-15

2. Trench Drain: Neenah Foundry Co. Type R-4990-C (Type A, B, or C Grate openings) with Type L Frame, or approved equal.

F. Inlets: Precast concrete inlets as indicated on the Drawings or approved equal.

2.02 STEEL PIPE

A. Standard line pipe with plain ends, beveled for welding in random lengths, with welded fittings such as tube turns of same thickness as the pipe, unless otherwise required.

1. Flanges for connecting to valves - Forges steel welding neck designed for 150 PSI pressure, unless indicated otherwise.
2. Gaskets - 1/16" thick
   a. American Standard
   b. Rainbow
   c. or approved equal.
3. Tees for connecting service lines to main:
   a. For new empty mains: Mueller Brass Co., H-17701 and 17500 or approved equal butt-welded type.
   b. For existing mains in use: Mueller Brass Co., H-17570 or approved equal.

2.03 FIRE HYDRANTS

A. Conforming to AWWA Standard C 502-54 dry barrel type traffic mode with 5" minimum diameter valve opening. Mueller Brass Co. - A -24123, or approved equal, meeting requirements of the authority having jurisdiction.

2.04 TAPPING SLEEVE AND VALVE

A. Suitable for tapping cast iron water main under pressure and having a mechanical end joint. Kennedy Valve Company - 950X, or approved equal, meeting requirements of the authority having jurisdiction.

2.05 GATE VALVES

A. Water distribution - Designed for 150 pounds per square inch minimum working pressure. End design to conform to piping design. Clear waterway through valve shall equal nominal diameter of the valve. Valve shall have a 2" square operating nut turning counter clockwise to open with direction indicated by an arrow cast in the metal.
   1. Sizes less than 2" - Of brass conforming to Dereal Specifications WW-V-54, Type 1, Class B.
   2. Sizes 2" to 4” - Having cast iron body, brass-mounted, conforming to Fed Spec WW-X-58, Class A or AWWA standard C500, double disk type, non-rising stem.
   3. Sizes 4” and larger for fire protection - Nonrising Stem, UL 262, FM approved, iron body and bonnet with flange for indicator post, bronze seating material, inside screw, 175-psig (1200 kPa) working pressure, mechanical joint ends. Provide with flanged ends for pit installation.

B. Gas system - Cast iron wading type with cover marked "G" or "GAS"

C. Gas Distribution - Double disc type with parallel seat, non-rising stem, bronze mounted, with flanged end, designed for 176 pounds per square inch minimum working pressure. Mueller Brass Co. - A-2483-6, or approved equal.

2.06 STOP COCKS

A. Cast iron body, designed for 125 pounds per square inch working pressure. Mueller Lub O SEAL H-11170 and H-11175, or approved equal.

2.07 VALVE BOXES

A. Water system - Of cast iron complete with lock-type cover operated by a special wrench and having the word "WATER" cast in the cover. Boxes shall be of the extension type with screw or slide-type adjustment and with flared base. Metal shall be 3/16" minimum thickness.

2.08 CLEAN OUT BOOTS

A. Cast -iron ferrule and countersunk brass cleanout plug, with round cast iron access frome and heavy duty, secured, scoriated cast iron cover shall be Trinity Valley 1684, or approved equal.

2.09 BACKFILL MATERIAL:

A. Borrow: Reused excavated or equal borrow material; low expansiveness, uniform in grade, free from organic materials, capable of being compacted to 95 percent maximum density at optimum moisture content; ASTM D-698.
   1. Sand: Natural river or bank sand; free of silt, clay, loam, friable or soluble materials, and organic matter; graded in accord with ASTM C136.

B. Bedding:
   1. Washed gravel, 1/4" to 1-1/2" in size.
   2. Screened pit run gravel passing 1-1/2" sieve and retained on 1/4" sieve.
   3. Pea gravel passing 5/8" sieve and retained.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.01 GENERAL

A. The Contractor shall furnish all labor, tools, materials and incidentals required to complete the work.

B. The Contractor shall lay out all work included herein and shall determine the elevations of existing piping at all tap locations and furnish that data to the Owner for review of flow capacity.

3.02 EXCAVATION:

A. The Contractor shall excavate all materials encountered regardless of the difficulties encountered. The ditch shall be no greater in width or depth than is necessary to permit construction in accordance with the plans and specifications. The maximum width of trench at top of pipe without sheeting, shoring and bracing shall be the external diameter of the pipe plus eight inches.

B. The Contractor shall determine the need for sheeting and bracing to safeguard the workmen. When sheeting and bracing are necessary the trench or excavation shall be dug to such width that proper allowance is made for the space occupied by the sheeting. All sheeting, shoring and bracing shall have sufficient strength and rigidity to withstand the pressure exerted and protect all persons or property from injury or damage. Sheeting, shoring and bracing shall not be left in place, but shall be removed in such a manner as not to endanger or damage new or existing structures. All holes or voids left by the removal of sheeting shall be backfilled.

C. Soft, Spongy or otherwise unstable material which will not provide a firm foundation for the pipe shall be removed and replaced with suitable material from the excavation or other sources approved by the Architect and shall be compacted as provided for in the Specifications. When unstable conditions are not corrected by the above means, the Contractor will be required to use rock, gravel, concrete or timber foundations. The type of foundation shall be determined by the Architect. There will be no extra compensation for this work.

3.03 BEDDING:

A. Trenches for pipe shall be excavated to a minimum depth of three inches below the grade of the outside of the pipe. Trenches shall then be filled up to and around the pipe exterior for at least 15 percent of its overall height with one of the following materials:

B. Other type of bedding shall be provided when designated on the Drawings.

3.04 BACKFILL:

A. After the pipe has been installed, selected material from the excavation at a moisture content with which the required density can be obtained shall be placed equally along both sides of the pipe in layers not exceeding six inches loose depth. Care shall be taken to insure thorough compaction of the fill under the haunches of the pipe. Each layer shall be thoroughly compacted by hand or pneumatic tampers until the fill has reached an elevation 12" above the top of the pipe. The remainder of the backfill shall be placed in layers not exceeding 10" loose depth and shall be compacted by an approved method which will obtain the density of the adjacent undisturbed soil. Backfill for utilities under pavements and curbs and gutters shall be compacted in 6" layers to a density not less than 95 percent of maximum density at optimum moisture content of Standard Proctor Density. Water jetting will not be permitted.

1. Structures: Place backfill, as far as possible, as the work progresses, evenly on all sides of the structure. Remove forms, shoring, sheeting, bracing, etc., before starting to backfill and do not backfill against concrete until directed, which in general shall be at least 7 days after placement. Take care to prevent any wedging action of backfill against structure.

3.05 SANITARY SEWER SYSTEM

A. Pipe: As required per City specification.

B. Location: Where specific dimension is not shown, sewer shall be located at least 10' horizontally from any water supply or service line. Crossing above water lines: Construct gravity sewers which pass over water lines of Cast Iron Pipe for a distance of 9' each side of the crossing. No joint shall occur within 3' each side of the crossing.

C. Laying Pipe: Shape the bottom of the trench to give substantial uniform circumferential support to the lower fourth of the pipe. Lay pipe proceeding upgrade with the spigot ends of the bell and spigot pipe and the tongue ends of tongue and groove pipe pointing in the direction of flow. Lay each section true to line and grade in such a manner as to form a close concentric joint with the adjoining pipe and to prevent sudden offsets of the flow lines. As the work progresses, clear the interior of the pipe of all dirt and superfluous material. Where cleaning after laying is difficult due to small pipe size, keep a suitable swab or drag in the pipe and pull it forward past each joint immediately after the jointing is complete. When work is not in progress, plug the ends closing them by another approved method. If maximum width of the trench at the top of the pipe exceeds the specified dimension for any reason other than by direction, provide at no additional cost such concrete cradling, pipe encasement or other bedding as may be required to satisfactorily support the added load of backfill.

D. Infiltration: Leakage into the sewer shall not exceed 500 gallons per inch of nominal diameter per day per mile of pipe for any section between successive manholes. If the infiltration rate does not appear to be acceptable, measure the amount of leakage with a suitable weir or other device as directed. If the measured rate of infiltration exceeds the acceptable maximum, make correction in the system until it becomes acceptable.

E. Manholes: Construct manholes of precast concrete sections or of brick. Covers and frames shall be of cast iron. Invert channels shall be smooth and semi-circular in shape, conforming to the inside of the adjacent sewer section. Make changes in direction of flow with a smooth curve of as large a radius as the manhole size will permit. Changes in size and grade of the channels shall be made gradually and evenly. Form the invert channels directly in the concrete of the manhole base or by use of a half tile laid in concrete, or by laying full-section sewer pipe through the manhole and breaking out the top half after surrounding concrete has hardened. The floor of the manhole outside the channels shall be smooth and shall slope toward the channels not less than 1" per foot nor more than 2" per foot. Free drop inside the manhole shall not exceed 2'-6" measured from the invert of the inlet pipe to the top of the floor of the manhole outside the channels. Construct drop manholes whenever the free drop would otherwise be greater than 2'-6". In all manholes, provide steps of cast iron. Width of steps shall not be less than 10", set them approximately 15" apart and with alternate steps off-set 6". Rungs of 7/8" diameter wrought iron, galvanized after fabrication, may be substituted for steps and may be installed without offset if the crossbar is not less than 14" long. Rungs shall be formed so that crossbar is sufficiently below plane of side bar to prevent foot from slipping off. Provide not less than 6-1/2" of toe room at each rung, measured from inside face of the crossbar.

F. Clean-outs and Stacks: Use pipe of the same material as the mainline and of 6" diameter unless shown otherwise. Provide removable standard pipe plugs.

G. Testing: Sewer mains will be checked to determine any displacement of the pipe after trench has been backfilled 2' above the pipe and compacted. Testing shall be with a light flashed between manholes or manhole location. If poor alignment or displacement or other defects are discovered, they shall be corrected as directed.

3.06 WATER DISTRIBUTION SYSTEM

A. Pipe Material and Preparation: Before lowering pipe into trench, clean the interior of all foreign matter, inspect the pipe for defects. Defective, damaged or unsound pipe must be removed from the site.

B. Laying Pipe: The full length of each pipe section shall rest solidly upon the pipe bed with recesses excavated to accommodate bells and joints. Keep pipe interior clean and dry during laying operations. When work is not in progress, plug the ends or close them by another approved method. Do not lay pipe with bells facing in direction of laying. Do not lay pipe closer than 10' to a sewer. At cross-overs with sewers, no joint in the water line shall be closer than 9' from the cross-over point. Where possible, lay water lines 6' above sewers at cross-overs. Provide valves, plugs or caps, as required, where pipe ends are left for future connections. Deflections from a straight line or grade as required by vertical or horizontal curves of off-sets shall not exceed 6/D inches per lineal foot of pipe, between the center lines, extended, of any 2 connecting pipes. D represents the nominal pipe diameter in inches. If alignment requires deflection in excess of this limitation, use special bends or a sufficient number of shorter lengths of pipe to provide angular deflections within the limits.

C. Cutting Pipe: Use an approved type of mechanical cutter.

D. Pipe Joints: Install Joints according to joint manufacturer's recommendations. Center the spigot in the bell, push the pipe in position and bring it into required alignment.

E. Valves: Where feasible, locate valves outside the area of roads and streets. Set valves plumb. Unless shown otherwise, provide a valve box over each outside gate valve. Box shall be of such length as will be adapted, without full extension, to the depth of cover required over the pipe at its location. Center the box on the valve. Carefully tamp earth fill around the box to a distance of 4' on all sides or to the undisturbed trench face if less than 4'.

F. Fire Hydrants: Set the hydrant plumb and at such elevation that the connecting pipe will not have less cover than the distributing mains. Provide a concrete slab for the hydrant as required. Secure the hydrant to prevent it from blowing off the line with a concrete thrust block set between the back of the hydrant, opposite the pipe connections, and the vertical face of the trench. If the character of the soil is such that the hydrant cannot be wedged in this manner, provide bridle rods and rod

collars of not less than 3/4" stock and protect them with a coating of acid resisting paint. Place at least 5 cubic feet of broken stone around the hydrant base to insure drainage. Thoroughly compact the backfill around hydrants to grade.

G. Flush Hydrants: Install where required so as to be flush with finished edge.

H. Meter and Meter Vault: Valves and fittings in meter vault shall be bolted flange type with ring gaskets.

I. Meter Vault: Per City Specifications.

J. Anchorage of Fittings: Anchor tees, bends and plugs in mains with thrust blocks formed of 2,500 p.s.i. 28 day strength concrete.

K. Sterilization: Sterilize each unit of completed distribution system, using chlorine, before it is accepted for domestic operation. If possible, flush the lines thoroughly before introduction of chlorinating material. The amount of chlorine shall be such as to provide a dosage of at least 50 parts per million. The chlorinating material shall be introduced into the system by an approved method. It shall remain in the system for a contact period of at least 24 hours and until the pressure test required below is complete. During this time valves in the system shall be opened and closed several times. After the contact period, flush the system with clean water until the residual chlorine content is depleted or not greater than 0.5 part million. Then take Bacteria samples as directed and submit them to the State Health Department Laboratory for analysis. Final results of the test shall indicate no chlorine bacteria present in the samples. Water mains shall meet State Health Department requirements before acceptance.

L. Testing: During sterilization contact period, test the system. Piping shall have been laid, joints completed and trench partially backfilled but leaving the joints exposed for examination. Unless otherwise required, expel air in the line and subject it to a hydrostatic pressure test of 50 pounds per square inch in excess of the anticipated static pressure at the points of reading when the system is pit in operation. Maintain the pressure for one hour. Exposed pipe, joints, fittings, valves and accessories shall be inspected. Tighten or remake defective joints. Replace defective material and repeat the test until results are satisfactory. Conduct open trench tests for 2 hours and covered trench tests for 24 hours. Provide all plugs, valves, pumps, equipment and labor necessary for conducting the tests. Assume responsibility for damage and/or contamination to existing connecting supply mains.

M. Special Requirements: Where conditions prevent the actual visible inspection of each joint or when the joints are made of a material other than lead such that leakage diminishes as the material in the joints ages, provide a calibrated gauge and meter to determine the quantity of water lost by leakage under normal operating pressure. To be accepted, any leakage (evaluated on a pressure basis of 150 pounds per square inch) must be less than 100 U.S. gallons per 24 hours per mile of pipe, per inch nominal diameter or pipe for pipe in 12 foot lengths, 75 gallons for pipe in

16 foot lengths, and varies proportionately for other pipe lengths. In calculating leakage, make allowance for added joints in the pipeline above the normal for unit lengths of pipe. Should any test of combined sections of pipeline disclose leakage greater than the acceptable limit, make repairs until the leakage is reduced to, at most, the acceptable limits.

3.07 CLEAN UP

A. Upon completion of the work covered by this Section, the Contractor shall clean up all work areas by removing all debris, surplus materials, and equipment from the site. The ground surface shall be restored to its original condition as nearly as possible.

3.08 PROTECTION

A. Properly protect existing utility lines shown on the Drawings from damage due to these operations. If damage occurs, satisfactorily repair it at no additional cost. If damage occurs to an unknown line, give immediate notification.

END OF SECTION 33 05 00

SECTION 33 13 00 - STERILIZATION OF WATER LINES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.01 SUMMARY

A. This section covers the procedures for sterilization of water lines and appurtenances.

B. Related Sections:
   1. Refer to Division 33 Section "Water Supply Lines and Piping."

1.02 MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT

A. There will be no separate payment for sterilization of water lines.

1.03 REFERENCES

A. The applicable provisions of the following standards shall apply as if written here in their entirety:
   1. AWWA American Water Works Association

1.04 SYSTEM DESCRIPTION

A. Furnish pump, pipe connections, gauges, meters, appurtenances and chlorinating agent to sterilize water lines and make bacteriological analyses to check effectiveness.

1.05 STORAGE AND HANDLING

A. Store chlorinating agent in a safe place according to manufacturer's recommendation.

1.06 SCHEDULING

A. Perform final flushing and bacteriological test after successful hydrostatic test of line segment(s).

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.01 MATERIALS AND/OR EQUIPMENT

A. Chlorinating agent to be liquid chlorine, sodium hypochlorite solution or calcium hypochlorite granules or tablets.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.01 PREPARATION

A. Remove, by flushing or other means, contaminating materials that may have entered the water line during construction. Where necessary, install temporary flush valves at the end of new lines for flushing and sampling prior to tying into existing system.

3.02 ERECTION/INSTALLATION/APPLICATION AND/OR CONSTRUCTION

A. Application Procedure. Apply chlorinating agent by one (1) of the following procedures:
   1. Tablet Method. Place calcium hypochlorite granules or tablets in the water line at the upstream end of the first section of pipe, at the upstream end of each branch and at 500 foot intervals such that when the pipe is filled with potable water the dose will be a minimum of twenty-five (25) mg/l for twenty-four (24) hours. Fill pipe such that water velocity does not exceed one (1) foot per second.
   2. Continuous Feed Method. Fill line with water, eliminate air pockets and flush water line at a minimum of 2.5 feet per second velocity to remove particulates. Feed chlorine water solution having a free chlorine concentration of twenty-five (25) mg/l into line until entire line is filled with heavily chlorinated water. Retain chlorinated water in line for twenty-four (24) hours after which time the free chlorine residual shall not be less than ten (10) mg/l.
   3. Slug Method. Place calcium hypochlorite granules in the line during construction, completely fill the line to eliminate all air pockets, flush the line to remove particulates and slowly flow a slug of water dosed with chlorine to a concentration of 100 mg/l through the line such that all parts of the line and appurtenances will be exposed to no less than fifty (50) mg/l of free chlorine for not less than three (3) hours.

B. Chlorination of Appurtenances. Operate valves and hydrants several times while exposed to the required chlorine concentration to assure disinfection of appurtenances and pipe branches.

C. Final Flushing. In order to prevent damage to pipe and linings, flush heavily chlorinated water from system until chlorine measurements show that the

concentration in the water leaving the main is no higher than that generally prevailing in the distribution system.

D. Bacteriological Test. After final flushing, collect samples and test for presence of coliform organisms. A minimum of one (1) sample shall be collected from each 1,000 feet of water line or at the next available sampling point beyond 1,000 feet as designated by the Owner's representative. Samples shall be collected in the presence of a representative of the Owner.

3.03 ADJUSTING/CLEANING

A. If initial disinfection fails to produce tests showing absence of coliform organisms, the new line may be reflushed and shall be resampled. If check samples also fail to produce acceptable results, the main shall be rechlorinated until satisfactory results are obtained.

3.04 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Testing for bacteriological quality shall be in accordance with Standard Methods for the Examination of Water and Wastewater.

END OF SECTION 33 13 00

ROCIP Project: Withhold insurance cost. Please refer to sections 00425 & 00810 for information.

SECTION 33 16 60 – WATER STORAGE TANK

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.01 SECTION INCLUDES
Water storage tanks

1.02 RELATED SECTIONS
Water supply piping, water use piping, electrical, irrigation, foundations, site plans.

1.03 REFERENCES
AWWA D-130, IBC, FDA, NSF-61

1.04 SUBMITTALS
Tank dimension drawings shall be submitted for approval prior to tank materials fabrication.

1.05 QUALIFICATION AND EXPERIENCE
Tank fabricator shall be experienced in manufacturing corrugated galvanized steel bolted tanks.

1.06 DELIVERY, STORAGE AND HANDLING
Tank materials shall be shipped from factory on wood pallets designed to protect materials from normal shipping damage. Tank materials shall be stored to prevent the development of white rust onto galvanized steel.

1.07 WARRANTY
The manufacturer shall warrant the tank structure against defects in workmanship and materials for a period of thirty (30) years from the date of shipment of the materials from the factory. The manufacturer shall warrant the main liner against defects in workmanship and materials for ten (10) years from the date of shipment of the materials from the factory on a pro-rata basis.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.01 WATER STORAGE TANK

A. General
The water storage tanks shall be standard factory engineered galvanized steel tanks with liquid tight liners. The water storage tanks shall be assembled and erected on site. The tank structure shall consist of corrugated, galvanized steel wall sheets, roof panels, one roof panel with access hatch, anchor clips and necessary hardware for tank assembly.

B. Acceptable manufacturers
CorGal 1803-WT-FR Nominal Capacity 20,000 by
Water Storage Tanks, Inc. (www.waterstoragetanksinc.com;800-463-1898)
Specified Water Systems (www.specwater.com;512-301-5632)

C. Bolted Tank Structure
Galvanized steel tank wall and roof panels shall be pre-punched at the factory for field assembly.

D. Preliner
An 8 oz. black geotextile preliner shall be installed inside of the tank structure. The preliner shall cover the tank floor and the walls on all surfaces at which the main liner could contact the tank structure.

E. Main Liner

Water containment system shall be a factory welded seam, flexible membrane main liner. The liners shall be installed inside of the water tank by the CorGal method utilizing liner hanger bolts, seal washers and grommets for suspension.

2.02 TANK DESIGN CRITERIA

Water tank shall be designed for seismic zone 2B conditions and115 mph wind speed. The tank structure shall be designed to contain potable or non-potable water having a density of 62.4 pounds per cubic foot.

2.03 STRUCTURAL MATERIALS

Wall sheets shall be continuous 2-2/3" depth x 1/2" pitch (67.7 MM x 12.7 MM) annularly corrugated galvanized steel with minimum yield strengths of 57,000 psi (3990 Kg/CM^2) (Tensile strength 65,000+ psi [4550 Kg/CM^2+]). All zinc coating shall conform to G-115 (275 grams/square meter) specifications. Bottom wall sheets have an inward return flange for additional bearing on foundation. Wall sheets shall have a coverage length of 9’ 4-1/2” (2,858 M) long, except for some 6’ 3” (1,905 MM) long sheets used adjacent to the access door.

Holes in vertical seams shall be punched for single row or double row connections at 1-1/3” o.c (34 MM). Use of single row or double row of bolts at vertical seam is dependent upon diameter and depth of tank.

Horizontal seams shall have a single lap connection with a maximum bolt spacing to be 9-3/8” (238 MM).

One-piece, 12 gauge (2.67 MM) galvanized steel die-formed anchor clips shall be supplied for a minimum of one anchor clip per base wall panel. Anchor clips shall be bolted to the tank wall with four bolts to contact a concrete base.

Water tank roof shall have a 0° slope, and use 6” 16 gauge roof rafters for support. Roofs shall be designed for a 2 psf dead load, 16 psf live load, 10 psf snow load, and a peak equipment load rating of 2000 pounds (907 Kg).

Roof sheets shall be 12- 8 gauge (per SDCP) and have rectangular sections of flat seamed galvanized steel. Roof panels shall be manufactured from G-115 galvanized steel conforming to ASTM A 446, Grade C, or greater.

2.04 TANK ACCESS

A 24” round access hole with hinged cover shall be located on the roof sheet. A 20” X 40” bolted side access panel shall be located 22” above the floor on a side panel. The side access shall be bolted closed before final installation of the main liner.

2.05 TANK PENETRATIONS

Tank penetrations through the floor of the tank or the tank wall within the water storage level shall be completed utilizing modified schedule 80 PVC flange sets. Flanges shall be bolted together with stainless steel or brass hex head cap screws with bonded sealing washers at all liquid side holes.

2.06 TANK FOUNDATION

The tank foundation shall be a concrete pad that will extend at least 6” outside of the tank wall in all directions. The foundation design and construction is not covered by this section of the specifications.

2.07 WATER LEVEL INDICATOR -- none specified

2.08 HARDWARE

ROCIP Project: Withhold insurance cost. Please refer to sections 00425 & 00810 for information.

All bolts and nuts shall be electro-galvanized with JS-1000 clear coat protective coating. Roof bolts shall have factory-installed steel-backed vinyl washers. Wall sheet bolts shall have slotted button heads for insertion from inside toward outside. All bolts shall be heat treated and meet SAE Grade 8.2 or stronger specifications.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.01 INSTALLATION

Tanks shall be and assembled by personnel who are factory-trained and have a minimum of 5 years experience in the erection of bolted steel tanks and the installation of flexible membrane liners.

3.02 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A representative of the tank materials supplier shall inspect the tank structure before installation of the preliner and main liner. Tank assembly contractor shall comply with tank supplier recommendations for the proper assembly techniques.

3.03 CLEANING and MAINTENANCE

Water tanks are classified as confined spaces and qualified personnel should be employed for any tank entry. The preferred method for cleaning the tanks is to open the bottom drain valve and drain the tank. Then open the roof side cover and use a hand-held water hose to wash down the tank walls and floor toward the tank drain. After cleaning is complete, close and secure the roof access cover and close the bottom drain valve.

END OF SECTION 33 16 60

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.01 SUMMARY

A. This section applies to the construction of sanitary sewers, including installation of pipe, valves, fittings, manholes, cleanouts and other incidentals and testing of the installations. The work performed under this section applies to both gravity sewers and force mains.

B. Related Sections:
   1. Refer to Division 31 Section "Excavation, Trenching and Backfilling for Utilities."
   2. Refer to Division 31 Section "Excavation Safety."

1.02 MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT

A. Sanitary Sewer Pipe. Measurement and payment will be by the linear foot for each size sanitary sewer pipe required including service line, without deductions for space occupied by manholes. Sewer line classification will be established according to the depth of cut that is required in bid form. The unit price per linear foot for various sizes, types and depths of sanitary sewer shall include compensation for furnishing all equipment, tools, materials and labor necessary to construct the sewer and place in the backfill, including the disposal of surplus excavated material, in compliance with the plans and specifications. The unit price shall also include connections with existing sewers and between noncompatible new pipe and costs for the appropriate tests to be conducted. Unless it is specified as a bid item, no compensation shall be given for rock excavation, bedding, backfill or clearing and grubbing.

B. Manholes. Measurement of standard manholes will be taken at the center of the manhole, from the invert to the rim of the frame. Payment for standard manholes shall be at the contract unit price per each including manholes six (6) feet or less in depth, complete in place, according to the diameter. Payment for extra depth of standard manholes more than six (6) feet in depth will be paid for according to the diameter, on the basis of the unit contract price per foot of depth in excess of six (6) feet, as actually constructed. The unit price shall include compensation for furnishing all labor, materials, tools, equipment and incidentals and performing all work necessary for the completion of the manholes in accordance with the provisions of the plans and these specifications.

C. Cleanouts. Cleanouts for both the main lines and service lines shall be measured for payment per each, complete in place, regardless of depth. Payment will be made at the unit contract price for the furnishing of all labor, materials, tools,

equipment and incidentals necessary to complete the work including earth excavation and disposal of surplus materials and backfill as specified and shown on the plans.

D. Drop Connections. Drop connections will be measured per each and shall be paid for at the unit price per each installed for drop connections five (5) feet high or less measured from the flowline of the sewer main to the flowline of the drop pipe at the manhole wall. Payment for extra depth of drop connections over five (5) feet will be per vertical foot of height as constructed.

E. Service Connections. Service connections shall consist of installing a wye fitting or saddle on the main line and shall be measured per each and paid for at the unit price bid per each.

F. Testing. There shall be no separate payment made for testing sanitary sewers, but the testing will be included in the unit cost bid for sanitary sewer pipe.

1.03 REFERENCES

A. The applicable provisions of the following standards shall apply as if written here in their entirety:
   1. ANSI American National Standards Institute
   2. ASTM American Society of Testing and Materials
   3. AWWA American Water Works Association

1.04 SUBMITTALS

A. The pipe manufacturer shall furnish three (3) copies of a certification that the pipe is in full compliance with the commercial standards applicable to the pipe specified. The manufacturer shall furnish the Owner's representative three (3) copies of data showing the physical properties of the pipe. Properties should include normal bursting pressure, manufacturer's maximum working pressure, physical dimensions and tolerances.

1.05 DELIVERY, STORAGE AND HANDLING

A. The Contractor shall notify the Owner's representative of pipe delivery to the job site in advance in order to allow inspection of the pipe by the Owner's representative prior to unloading of the pipe. Store pipe on a flat surface away from sunlight and heat. Do not stack bundles of pipe. Use a tarp to cover all pipe left for prolonged periods of time.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.01 MATERIALS AND/OR EQUIPMENT

A. Pressure Rated PVC Pipe. Pressure rated PVC pipe, used for force mains or gravity lines, shall be polyvinyl chloride Type 1, Grade 1. The pipe shall meet AWWA specifications and bear the seal of the National Sanitation Foundation on each joint. The diameter and applicable commercial standard shall be shown on each length of pipe. The type of PVC pressure rated pipe required for the project shall be as shown on the plans.

1. Schedule 40 PVC Pipe. Schedule 40 PVC pipe shall conform to the requirements of ASTM D-1785. Joints for schedule 40 PVC shall be solvent weld with recessed bells. Pipe and fittings shall be made of PVC plastic having cell classification of 12454-B as specified in ASTM D-1784.
2. ASTM D-2241 PVC Pipe. Pipe other than schedule 40 PVC shall comply with the requirements of ASTM D-2241. The pressure rating of the pipe shall be Class 160 unless otherwise shown on the plans or in the bid form. Joint seals for ASTM D-2241 PVC pipe shall conform to ASTM F-477. Pipe and fittings shall be made of PVC plastic having cell classification of 12454-B as specified in ASTM D-1784.

B. Nonpressure Rated PVC Pipe. Pipe for gravity sewers shall conform to ASTM D-3034 or ASTM F-675, SDR 26 unless otherwise shown on the plans. Pipe shall have fluid tight gasket type joints with joint bells formed integrally with the pipe. Pipe and fittings shall be made of PVC plastic having cell classification of 12454-B as specified in ASTM D-1784. The diameter and applicable commercial standard shall be shown on each length of pipe.

C. PVC Fittings. PVC fittings for the pipe shall be constructed of the same material as the pipe. Fittings shall be of the molded type or machined from extruded stock. PVC fittings for pressure rated PVC pipe conforming to ASTM D-2241 used for gravity lines shall have a minimum pressure rating of 150 psi. PVC fittings for pressure rated PVC pipe conforming to ASTM D-2241 used for force mains shall be rubber gasket and shall have a minimum pressure rating of 200 psi. PVC fittings for Schedule 40 PVC pipe shall normally be Schedule 40 solvent weld, but rubber gasket fittings may be used in some applications. Fittings for ASTM D-3034 and ASTM D-2241 PVC pipe shall be push on type and have elastomeric seals and shall be compatible with the pipe. The seals shall meet ASTM F-477 for elastomeric seals. Fittings shall have smooth interior free of ridges or obstructions to sewer flow.

D. Ductile Iron Pipe. Ductile iron pipe shall be thickness Class 50 per ANSI/AWWA C151/A21.51, unless shown otherwise on the plans. Pipe joints shall be push on joint per ANSI/AWWA C111 unless shown otherwise. Interior flange pipe shall conform to ANSI/AWWA C115.

1. Coating, Lining and Encasement. Underground pipe and fittings shall be asphaltic coated outside per ANSI/AWWA C151/A21.51 unless shown otherwise. Inside lining shall consist of a thirty (30) mil dry film thickness of polyurethane high solids, high build two (2) component coating (Corropipe II TX Five Minute Number 17115) as manufactured by Madison Chemical Industries, Inc. or twenty-four (24) mil dry film thickness epoxy coating. Applicators of polyurethane and epoxy lining shall be approved by the pipe manufacturer. Encase pipe with eight (8) mil low density or four (4) mil high density polyethylene in accordance with ANSI/AWWA C105/21.5.
2. Ductile Iron Fittings - Full Body. Fittings shall be cast iron or ductile iron push-on type conforming to ANSI/AWWA C110/A21.10 and ANSI/AWWA C111/A21.11, unless shown otherwise on the plans. Mechanical joint fittings shall conform to ANSI/AWWA C110/A21.10 and ANSI/AWWA C111/A21.11, Class 250 for four (4) inch through twelve (12) inch and Class 150 for fourteen (14) inch and larger unless shown otherwise on the plans. Flanged fittings to be in accordance with ANSI/AWWA C110/A21.10 and ANSI/AWWA C111/A21.11, Class 250 for four (4) inch through twelve (12) inch and Class 150 for fourteen (14) inch and larger unless shown otherwise on plans, both with one hundred twenty-five (125) pound template flanges.
3. Ductile Iron Fittings - Short Body. "Short body" fittings shall be ductile iron push-on type conforming to ANSI/AWWA C153/A21.53 and ANSI/AWWA C111/21.11, Class 350 for all sizes, unless shown otherwise on the plans. Mechanical joint ductile iron short body fittings shall conform to ANSI/AWWA C153/A21.53 and ANSI/AWWA C111/21.11, Class 350 for all sizes. Flanged fittings shall have full body dimensions.
4. Gaskets. Flanged joint gaskets shall be of SBR or Neoprene rubber. Gaskets shall extend to the full flange with holes to match ANSI A21.10 or B16.1 Class 125 flange drilling. Gaskets shall be rated for 250 psi water working pressure as a minimum.

E. Concrete. All concrete shall meet the requirements specified in Section 03300, Cast-In-Place Concrete.

F. Mortar. Mortar shall conform to the current specification for Mortar for Unit Masonry, ASTM Designation C270, Type S. Mortar shall be composed of two (2) parts of fine aggregate thoroughly mixed with one (1) part Portland cement and the amount of water required to produce a homogeneous mixture of such consistency that it can be easily handled and spread by trowel. Aggregate for the mortar shall meet ASTM C-144.

G. Manhole Covers. Manhole covers and rings shall be made of the best quality of gray iron, ASTM A-48, Class No. 20. The covers shall possess a tensile strength of not less than 18,000 psi. All casting shall conform to the shape and dimensions shown on the plans and shall be clean and perfect without defects of any kind. All sanitary sewer manhole covers must include the words "Sanitary Sewer". Use Vulcan twenty-four (24) inch Model V 1342 with 2-Type 6 Pick Bars or approved equal.

H. Inflow Protection Covers. Manhole inflow protector, valve and strap shall be manufactured from corrosion proof material suitable for use in areas containing hydrogen sulfide and dilute sulfuric acid as well as other gases associated with wastewater collection systems. The relief valve shall be designed to relieve at a pressure of one (1) psi and have a water leak of five (5) gallons per twenty-four (24) hours. The body shall be made from ABS high impact, high grade LS material. Gaskets shall be made of closed cell neoprene and have a pressure sensitive adhesive on one side. The adhesive shall form a long lasting bond in either wet or dry conditions.

I. Cleanout Covers. Cleanout covers shall be made of the best quality of gray cast iron. The cover shall be free from perforations and shall conform to the detail specified in the plans.

J. Fiberglass Manholes. Use manufactured reinforced fiberglass plastic as manufactured by Owens/Corning or preapproved equal. A traffic model designed for H20 wheel loading is required when installed in a travelled way.

K. Precast Concrete Manholes. Precast concrete manholes shall meet the requirements of ASTM C-478. Ring sections shall be of the diameter specified. Precast concrete manholes joint gasket connections shall be made with an O-Ring type rubber gasket meeting ASTM C361-89 and C443-85 as manufactured by Press-Seal Gasket, Inc. or approved equal. Precast manhole sections shall be specifically manufactured for O-Ring application. Installation shall be in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations.

L. Grade Rings. Precast concrete grade rings shall be used to adjust all types of manholes to final grade.

M. Manhole Coating. The interiors of precast or cast-in-place concrete manholes shall be coated with a ten (10) mil thickness of coal tar epoxy, Pittsburgh two (2) part coal cat coating component A is 97-640 and component B is 97-641.

N. Gate Valves. Gate valves three (3) inches and larger shall be iron-body, resilient rubber seat, nonrising stem and shall conform to AWWA C-509. Gate valves smaller than three (3) inches shall be brass ball valves with two (2) inch square adapter nut. Valves shall have the required ends for the piping in which they shall be installed. Gate valves shall have a clear waterway equal to the full nominal diameter of the valve and shall be opened by turning counterclockwise. An arrow shall be cast in the metal of the operating nut or wheel to indicate the direction to open. Underground valves shall be nut operated and valves located in structures shall be wheel operated. Each valve shall have the maker's initials, pressure rating and year of manufacture cast on the body. Valves two (2) inches through twelve (12) inches shall have a 200 psig working pressure and valves sixteen (16) inches and larger shall have a 150 psig working pressure. Prior to shipment from the factory each valve shall be tested by hydraulic pressure equal to twice the specified water working pressure. Gate valve coating shall be the same as for the pipe.

O. Check Valves. Check valves two and one-half (2-1/2) inches in diameter and larger shall be iron body, bronze mounted, horizontal swing check valves with balanced weight and lever arm designated for one hundred fifty (150) pounds working pressure, unless otherwise designated on the plans. Check valves shall have the same coating as the pipe.

P. Plug Valves. Plug valves shall be manufactured by Dezurik or preapproved equal. Coatings for plug valves shall be same as for the pipe.

Q. Valve Boxes. All valves buried in the ground shall be provided with cast iron boxes of proper dimensions to fit over the valve. The tops shall be complete with covers and adjustable.

R. Shear Gates. Shear gates shall be all iron, Clow No. F-3000; Neenah Foundry Company, R-5005 Series; Olympic shear gate or approved equal. Shear gates shall have lifting handle extension where required.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.01 PREPARATION

A. Expose all underground utilities which may be in conflict with proposed sanitary sewer lines prior to installing new lines.

3.02 ERECTION/INSTALLATION/APPLICATION AND/OR CONSTRUCTION

A. Pipe Laying and Jointing. Once the foundation has been prepared, pipe shall be laid with the spigot ends in the direction of the outlet or low end of the pipeline. The interior of the pipe shall be free from all dirt, joint material and foreign material as the work progresses and shall be clean upon its completion. Inside surfaces of adjacent sections of pipe shall be constructed in such a manner to provide the best possible flow conditions. Tight fitting stoppers or bulkheads shall be placed in the ends of all pipelines when the work has stopped, to prevent dirt or trash from entering the pipe.

B. PVC Pipe. Bedding of the pipe shall be as detailed on the plans for the laying conditions.

1. Solvent Weld Joints. When joints are made, the pipe fittings and couplings shall be at the same temperature. All joints shall be tested for a snug dry fit before solvent is applied. If the dry fit is such that the couplings are loose or if force is required to test dry fit, the pipe shall be rejected. A nonsynthetic brush shall be used to apply solvent cement in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations. Lightly apply cement to the inside of the fitting and more generously to the outside of the pipe. The joint shall then be

stabbed into the fitting and given a quarter turn. If sufficient cement has been used, a small bead will form between the pipe and the shoulder of the fitting. Remove this excess solvent. The joint shall not be moved until the cement weld has set. Fittings for service lines or laterals shall be assembled so that no strain is placed on the pipe during or after the backfill operation.

2. Push-On Joints. Before jointing, both bell and spigot ends shall be thoroughly cleaned and a lubricant supplied by the pipe manufacturer shall be applied according to the manufacturer's recommendations. Spigot end shall be beveled so it will not dislodge or damage gasket. To insure proper sealing of the joint, sufficient pressure shall be applied until reference mark on spigot is flush with end of bell.
3. Cutting Pipe. If it is necessary to cut the pipe, a fine tooth hacksaw shall be used and the burrs removed with a file. The outer surface of the pipe and the inner surface of the fittings shall be wiped with a clean cloth to remove all foreign matter and moisture before application of the solvent cement, for solvent weld joints. Bevel end of pipe per manufacturer's recommendations for push-on joints.
4. Conductive Trace Wire. Install electrically continuous trace wire to be used for locating nonmetallic pipe with an electronic pipe locator after installation. See Section 02605.

C. Ductile Iron Pipe. Bedding of the pipe shall be as detailed on the plans for the laying conditions.

1. Before jointing, both bell and spigot ends shall be thoroughly cleaned and a lubricant supplied by the pipe manufacturer shall be applied according to the manufacturer's recommendations. Spigot end shall be beveled so it will not dislodge or damage gasket. To insure proper sealing of the joint, sufficient pressure shall be applied until reference mark on spigot is flush with end of bell.
2. Mechanical Joints. Joints shall be made in a workmanlike manner, using rubber gasket seals, follower glands and standard bolts. Over stressing of bolts to stop leaks resulting from poor installation practice will not be permitted.
3. Wall Sleeves. At all points where the pipe must pass through a wall of a structure, the Contractor shall furnish and install suitable sleeves and wall castings, unless otherwise shown on the plans. The wall sleeve or wall casting shall be a mechanical joint and/or flange fitting flush with the wall, with flanges tapped for studs.

D. Curved Alignment. For curved sewer lines, the Contractor shall not exceed the pipe manufacturer's recommended maximum deflection at each joint. Each joint shall be pushed "home" prior to deflecting the pipe and pipe shall not be stressed or bent to achieve curvature. The Contractor shall reduce the pipe lengths according to the manufacturer's recommendations, if the radius of curvature cannot be achieved without exceeding the maximum deflection using standard length joints of pipe.

E. Valve Boxes. Valves buried in the ground shall be provided with cast iron valve boxes of proper dimensions to fit over the valve and to extend to such elevation, at

slightly above the finished ground line. Valve boxes shall be set vertical and centered with the valve stem. If a valve box moves from its original position as to prevent the application of the valve key, then the valve box must be reset by the Contractor at his own expense.

F. Thrust Blocking. Thrust blocking for pressure sewers (force mains) shall be in accordance with the pipe manufacturer's recommendation.

G. Embedment and Encasement. Embedment and encasement shall be placed at the locations shown on the plans and in conformance with Division 31 Section "Excavation, Trenching and Backfilling for Utilities". If the maximum width is exceeded at any point, the Contractor shall use the next number of embedment higher than that designated on the plans. The additional cost for using the higher type of embedment required because of over cutting will be at the expense of the Contractor.

1. Typical DIP Embedment. Unless otherwise shown on plans use Type 2 embedment in accordance with ASTM A746.
2. Typical PVC Embedment. Pipe shall be imbedded in sand or gravel with fines meeting the designation of Class I or II Soil per ASTM 2321 compacted to a minimum of eighty-five (85) percent Standard Proctor. The embedment shall extend from four (4) inches below the pipe to a point twelve (12) inches above the top of the pipe.

H. Fiberglass Manhole Construction.

1. The manhole shall be constructed on a concrete foundation of the size and shape shown on the plans. The foundation shall be placed against undisturbed earth and the thickness shall be a minimum of eight (8) inches below the bottom of the outside diameter of the sewer pipe or bottom edge of manhole section. If the manhole is over twelve (12) feet deep, then the foundation thickness shall be a minimum of twelve (12) inches below the bottom of the sewer pipe's outside diameter or bottom edge of manhole section.
2. The base of the reinforced fiberglass manhole shall be cut to accommodate the size of the sewer pipe indicated on the plans. The maximum tolerance for the cutout is one-half (1/2) inch greater than the required opening. The base shall be embedded in a concrete foundation to a minimum depth of six (6) inches. The base and foundation shall be placed as soon as practicable after the sewer line is completed through the manhole location. To get the proper seal where the manhole cutout fits over the pipe, fresh concrete which is monolithic with slab concrete must be used as shown on the outside of the manhole and waterstop gaskets shall be installed on all pipes penetrating the manhole. Manholes will be rejected if this seal is not made when the slab is poured and the manhole is placed. Grout with a cold joint between grout and the concrete slab is not acceptable.
3. Where sewer pipe for a drop connection enters a manhole other than at bottom cut out, a saddle type connection to the manhole for the pipe size will be provided as shown. Connections depending upon grout for sealing will not be allowed.

4. Manholes shall be installed as one (1) basic unit. The Contractor is responsible for verifying the correct manhole depth before construction. Top of fiberglass portion of manhole shall not be less than twelve (12) inches nor greater than eighteen (18) inches from final grade. The Contractor is responsible for the correct depth of manholes relocated in the field because of unforeseen conflicts. Manhole tops shall be adjusted with precast concrete rings and be set as follows:
   a. Developed Areas. Manhole tops shall be set one (1) inch higher than final grade or flush with paved surfaces, unless shown otherwise on the plans.
   b. Undeveloped Areas. Manhole tops shall be set six (6) inches above existing grade. Where manholes are located in a ditch bottom, set manhole top minimum of twelve (12) inches above the ditch bottom and reshape the ditch around the manhole.

5. Backfill around manholes and drop connections immediately after mortar and concrete have set. Backfill around manholes in paved street, driveway or alley shall be bank sand. Place backfill around the manhole evenly in twelve (12) inch layers and in such a manner that no torque is applied to the manhole. Where a proposed sewer line connects to an existing manhole at or near a manhole invert, reshape the invert of the existing manhole so that no turbulence is created in the manhole as a result of the connection.
6. Precast concrete rings shall be used to adjust the top of the manhole to the proposed grade if necessary.

I. Precast Manholes. Construction of precast concrete manholes shall follow the general procedures for fiberglass manholes except that precast manhole bottoms may be used if cast as an integral part of the bottom ring.

J. Cast-in-Place Manholes. Manholes shall be constructed of concrete conforming to Division 03 Section “Cast-in-Place Concrete”. Manholes shall be poured in place as shown on the plan sanitary sewer detail sheet. The foundation shall be placed against undisturbed earth and shall be a minimum of eight (8) inches thick below the bottom of the sewer outside diameter, except if the manhole is over twelve (12) feet deep make the foundation twelve (12) inches thick below the bottom of the sewer pipe outside diameter. The manhole foundation, walls and cone section shall be constructed in a single continuous monolithic concrete pour.

K. Construction Methods For All Manholes
   1. Manhole Connections. Watertight, size-on-size resilient connectors allowing for differential settlement shall be used to connect pipe to manholes. Pipe to manhole connectors shall conform to ASTM C-923. Water stop gaskets shall be installed on the pipe for connection to existing manholes and shall be grouted in place with nonshrink grout having a minimum thickness of one (1) inch around the gasket.
   2. Manhole Inverts. The bottom of the manhole shall be provided with a "U" shaped channel that is as much as possible a smooth continuation of the inlet

and outlet pipes. For manholes connected to pipes less than fifteen (15) inches in diameter the channel depth shall be at least half the largest pipe diameter. For manholes connected to pipes greater than twenty-four (24) inches in diameter, the channel depth shall be at least equal to the largest pipe diameter. Invert flow channels shall be on an even slope from pipe to pipe. The bench provided above the channel shall be sloped at a minimum of 0.5 inch per foot. Where sewer lines enter the manhole higher than twenty-four (24) inches above the manhole invert, the invert shall be filleted to prevent solids deposition. Where the main sewer (lowest line) passes straight through the manhole and the degree of deflection of the main sewer is less than five (5) degrees and no other line or stub out is shown entering the manhole below the center line of the main sewer, lay the sewer continuously through the manhole. After the manhole walls have been completed, cut out and remove the top half of the barrel of the sewer pipe that was previously laid through the manhole. Use concrete with one (1) inch mortar topping and construct the remainder of invert as shown on plans. Where the main sewer (lowest line) alignment deflects greater than five (5) degrees at the manhole or where another sewer or stub out enters at or below the center line of the main sewer, terminate the main sewer pipe laying in such a manner that the ends of pipe protrude inside of the manhole. The invert shall be constructed with concrete and topped with one (1) inch of mortar. The invert shall be shaped to allow for a smooth flow across the floor of the manhole and slope the side as required to prevent deposition of solids.

3. Stubs Outs. Stub outs shall be installed to line and grade where shown. One (1) full joint of pipe, of the size indicated, will be used for the stub out. Seal the stub out with a plug. The plug shall be installed in such a manner as to prevent seepage or leakage through stub outs. The plug shall be installed such that it may easily be removed in the future without damaging the bell or groove end of the stub out.
4. Contractor shall meet all OSHA requirements relating to entry into confined spaces prior to personnel entering manholes for any reason.

L. Cleanout Structures. Cleanout structures shall be constructed where shown on the plans and as specified. Cleanouts shall consist of six (6) inch riser pipe laid on an angle on undisturbed natural ground. Machine tamp all backfill around and above the pipe in layers six (6) inches or less in depth so that no settlement shall occur after the cleanout is constructed. Other construction details shall conform to the cleanout detail shown on the plans.

M. Connections
1. Drop Connections. Drop connections on manholes shall be constructed according to the plans and these specifications. The connection shall include the indicated fittings and necessary backfill material.
2. Service Connections. Standard service connections shall consist of a wye and forty-five (45) degree bend and the necessary four (4) inch diameter PVC sewer pipe to reach the property line or be plugged and sealed at the end. If required, the Contractor shall raise the lateral by means of a steeper grade from the main. Locations of the service outlets and the depth to the top of the

lateral pipe, if depth is not shown on the plans, will be designated at the time of construction. Minimum depth of cover over the end of the lateral pipe shall be five (5) feet.

N. Separation Distances. The following are separation distances that shall apply between potable water facilities and sanitary sewer facilities.

1. Potable Water Treatment Plant Separation. Sanitary sewers located within fifty (50) feet of any underground treatment plant units shall be constructed of ductile iron or PVC with a minimum pressure rating of 150 psi and watertight joints.
2. Water Line/New Sewer Line Separation. Sanitary sewers shall not be installed within nine (9) feet, in all directions, to existing water lines. Sewer lines parallel to water lines must be installed in separate trenches. If the nine (9) feet separation distance cannot be achieved, the following guidelines apply.
   a. Where a sanitary sewer parallels a water line, the sewer shall be constructed of cast iron, ductile iron or PVC meeting ASTM specifications with a pressure rating of 150 psi for both the pipe and joints. A minimum vertical distance of two (2) feet and a minimum horizontal distance of four (4) feet between the outside diameters of the pipes is required. The sewer shall be located below the water line.
   b. Where a sanitary sewer crosses a water line, and the sewer is constructed of cast iron, ductile iron or PVC with a minimum pressure rating of 150 psi, an absolute minimum distance of six (6) inches between the outside diameters shall be maintained. The sewer line shall be placed below the water line if possible, and one (1) length of the sewer pipe must be centered on the water line.
   c. Where a sewer line crosses under a water line and the sewer line is constructed of ABS truss pipe, similar semi-rigid plastic composite pipe or concrete pipe with gasketed joints, a minimum separation distance of two (2) feet must be maintained. The initial backfill shall be cement stabilized sand [two and one-half (2-1/2) bags of cement per cubic yard of mixture] for all sections of sewer within nine (9) feet of the water line. This initial backfill shall be a minimum of six (6) inches above and four (4) inches below the sewer pipe.
   d. Where a sewer crosses over a water line all portions of the sewer within nine (9) feet of the water line shall be constructed of cast iron, ductile iron or PVC pipe with a pressure rating of at least 150 psi using appropriate adapters. In lieu of this procedure the new conveyance may be encased in a joint of 150 psi pressure, class pipe at least eighteen (18) feet long and two (2) nominal sizes larger than the new conveyance. The space around the carrier pipe shall be supported at five (5) foot intervals with spacers or be filled to the springline with washed sand. The encasement pipe should be centered on the crossing and both ends sealed with cement grout or manufactured seal.
3. Water Line/Manhole Separation. If the sanitary sewer manholes and the connecting sewer cannot be made watertight and tested for no leakage, then a minimum horizontal separation distance of nine (9) feet must be provided

between the manhole and the water line. If the minimum distance of nine (9) feet cannot be achieved, then a carrier pipe as specified in the preceding subsection shall be used.

3.03 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Test For Deflection of PVC Pipe. All PVC pipe installed for gravity sewers will be tested for deflection according to this specification after the pipe segment has been in place for a minimum of thirty (30) days. Maximum allowable deflection shall not exceed five percent (5%) of the inside diameter of the pipe. The inside diameter shall be the average outside diameter minus two (2) minimum wall thicknesses for outside diameter controlled pipe or the average inside diameter for inside diameter controlled pipe. A "go, no-go" mandrel will be used to check the deflection of an installed section of PVC pipe. The mandrel will be sized so that it will not "go" when encountering a deflection that is greater than permissible. The mandrel must be of such design as to minimize the possibility of it being hung up in the pipe by silt or other residues. A design sized to permit up to five percent (5%) deflection in pipe is shown in Figures 3.04A and 3.04B. Schedule 3.04A showing the required dimensions of mandrels for various pipes is attached. Suggested instructions for its use are as follows:

1. Completely flush the line making sure the pipe is clean of any mud or debris that would hinder the passage of the mandrel.
2. During the final flushing of the line, attach a floating block or ball to the end of the mandrel pull rope and float the rope through the line.
3. Once the rope is threaded through the line, connect the pull rope to the mandrel and place the mandrel in the entrance of the pipe.
4. Connect a retrieval rope to the back of the mandrel to pull it back, if necessary.
5. Remove all slack in the pull rope and place a tape marker on the rope at the ends of the pipe where the mandrel will exit, determining the location of the mandrel in the line.
6. Draw the mandrel through the sewer line by hand pulling only. If any irregularities or obstructions are encountered in the line, the Owner's representative should establish the corrective action, if required.
7. If a section with excessive deflection is found, locate it; dig down and uncover the pipe; inspect the pipe, if any damaged pipe is found, replace it; if pipe is not damaged, replace and thoroughly tamp the haunching and initial backfill; replace remainder of backfill.
8. Retest this section for deflection a minimum of thirty (30) days after completing the repair.

B. Testing Pressure Sewers For Leakage. All pressure sewers shall be tested for leakage with a hydrostatic test to be completed in the presence of the Owner's representative. Leaks demonstrated by the tests are to be repaired at the expense of the Contractor.

1. Performance. Newly laid pipe or any valved section of piping shall be subjected for one (1) hour to a hydrostatic pressure test of twenty-five (25) psi

gauge or 1.5 times the maximum force main design pressure, whichever is larger. The following formula shall be used to determine the permissible leakage that shall not be exceeded:

$$L = (S)(D)(P^{0.5})/133{,}200$$

Where, L = leakage in gallons per hour
S = length of pipe in feet
D = inside diameter of pipe in inches
P = pressure in psi

2. Execution. Fill test section of pipe with water and expel the air from the pipe. Apply the specified test pressure by means of a pump connected to the pipe. The Contractor shall furnish the necessary pump, pipe connections, gauge and meter and shall conduct the test. If force main is tapped to perform test, plug taps with brass fittings upon completion of test.
   a. Inspect the route of the pipe during the test period to locate any leaks or breaks. The Contractor shall replace any cracked or defective pipe, fittings or valves disclosed in the pressure test.
   b. When the one (1) hour test period is completed, bring the pressure in the pipe up to the specified test pressure and determine the amount of water lost during the test. No piping installation shall be accepted until the leakage amount is less than that specified. Should any test of combined sections or individual sections of pipe show leakage greater than the specified limit, the Contractor shall locate and repair the defective joints or defective pipe until the test proves that the leakage is within the specified allowance.

C. Testing Gravity Sanitary Sewers For Leakage. The Contractor shall test all gravity sewer lines using either the infiltration method, exfiltration method or the low pressure air test, in the presence of the Owner's representative. Additionally, all new manholes shall be tested. The Owner's representative shall be notified no later than the preceding day, of the date and approximate time the tests will be made. Sewers shall not show leakage of more than fifty (50) gallons per inch diameter per mile of pipe per twenty-four (24) hours at a minimum test head of two (2) feet above the crown of pipes at the upstream manhole using the infiltration or exfiltration test except for pipes installed in the twenty-five (25) year flood plain, which shall show leakage less than ten (10) gallons per inch diameter per mile of pipe per twenty-four (24) hours. For the air test, leakage shall not exceed the amount specified herein for the length and diameter of the pipe tested. The Owner's representative may vary the procedures for "Infiltration Test," "Exfiltration Test" and "Air Test" provided the methods used give an accurate measurement of the leakage.
   1. Preparation for Testing. The Contractor shall supply all water for the tests, all equipment and labor necessary to convey the water into the sewer and all labor and equipment to install test plugs and other incidental work in conducting the tests and the cost thereof shall be included in the price for

constructing the sewer. The Contractor shall supply the test plugs and the risers for the tests and will conduct the tests.

a. Before testing is observed by the Owner's representative, sewers shall be completely backfilled, except for the stacks, but not necessarily water tamped. The Contractor may make preliminary tests with a minimum of eighteen (18) inches of backfill over the pipe to determine if any repairs are necessary. These tests are for the Contractor's information and shall not be performed in lieu of the tests to be observed by the Owner's representative. These line tests will be made between the inlet side of the downstream manhole and the outlet side of the next upstream manhole.

b. Unless the Contractor has been notified that the tests will be made by the infiltration method, he shall leave the tops of stacks exposed and unplugged until after the leak test has been made. If a stack terminates below the test level, they shall be temporarily extended upward by installing an additional length of pipe in the top.

c. The Contractor shall provide suitable means to determine the groundwater level at any time until the testing is completed. As an example, a pipe not less than three (3) inches in diameter, such as a downspout pipe, closed at the bottom and perforated for at least the lower three (3) feet, with the perforations wrapped with at least two (2) thicknesses of filter fabric, set in the trench prior to backfilling. These pipes shall than be removed or cut off at least two (2) feet below the ground after testing has been completed. Prior to removal, the pipes shall be protected against damage and earth or other material excluded therefrom. Generally one (1) pipe shall be installed in each run of pipeline between manholes.

d. Stubs or house connections connected to the section being tested for leakage which are below the test water level, will be considered in computing the allowable leakage but the Contractor will not be held responsible for excess leakage in sewers not laid by him which have been connected to the lines being tested. The Owner's representative may request individual stubs or house connections in the system that were constructed under this contract to be tested. Prior arrangements for access to the ends of the pipe will be made for these tests.

2. Infiltration Test. For the Infiltration Test, all pumps must be stopped and the groundwater allowed to return to its normal level and to remain so for at least twenty-four (24) hours. Before the test is started, the pipe will be filled with water to a depth that will cause leakage to flow at a uniform rate through an opening in the plug in the downstream end of the section of sewer being tested. Leakage will be determined by measuring the flow through the opening in the downstream plug during a given time. Five (5) measurements will be taken. The average of the measurements will be used. If one (1) of the five (5) measurements varies by more than fifty percent (50%) of the other four (4), then that measurement will be discarded, except for the last measurement taken. If the results of the tests are satisfactory, but the last of

the five (5) measurements shows leakage in excess of that permitted, tests shall be continued to determine if additional leaks may have developed during testing.

Size of Pipe	Allowable Leakage*, Gal. Per Minute Per 100 Ft.
6"	0.0039
8"	0.0053
10"	0.0066
12"	0.0079
15"	0.0099
18"	0.0118
21"	0.0138
24"	0.0158
27"	0.0178
30"	0.0197
36"	0.0237

*Equivalent to fifty (50) gallons per inch diameter per mile per twenty-four (24) hours.

For other diameters, multiply square of diameter by value for one (1) inch diameter.

3. Exfiltration Test. In order to permit absorption by the pipe, the Contractor may keep the pipe full of water for twenty-four (24) hours prior to the test. The Owner's representative shall be notified by the Contractor before backfilling is completed that the pipe will be filled and will be given forty-eight (48) hours before the test to allow time for filling and soaking the pipe. At least two (2) hours before the tests start, the water will be bled off below the level of the top of the pipe at its lower end and allowed to remain so until the water level remains static at this level or continues to fall. The test shall be made in the following manner.
   a. A watertight plug, equipped with a pipe riser will be inserted and braced in the inlet opening in the downstream manhole and a similar plug equipped with a suitable vent pipe that will permit the escape of air in the pipe at its upper end, will be inserted and braced in the outlet in the upstream manhole. Fill the sewer and riser with water up to a level either four (4) feet above the crown of the sewer pipe at its lower end or two (2) feet above the crown of the sewer pipe at its upper end, whichever is higher, plus the vertical distance from the invert of the sewer at its lower end up to the level of the groundwater where such groundwater exists above the invert of the sewer.
   b. The sewer will be filled with water as a continuous operation, as rapidly as the supply will permit, and the test measurement will be started as soon as the water is at the required level. This will be completed in not

less than two (2) hours for sewers twelve (12) inches or smaller, not less than three (3) hours for sewers fifteen (15) inches through twenty-four (24) inches and not less than four (4) hours for larger sewers. A measurement of the water level will be recorded at each minute for five (5) minutes or until the level has dropped twelve (12) inches, whichever occurs first. The water will then be brought back to the required level and the test shall be repeated until five (5) such tests have been performed. Use the average of these results, discarding any of the five (5) observations that varies by more than fifty percent (50%) form the average of the other four (4) except for the last one (1). If the results of the tests are otherwise satisfactory, but the last of the five (5) measurements shows leakage in excess of that permitted, the tests will be continued to determine if additional leaks may have developed during testing.

c. The total leakage in cubic inches shall be the total cross-sectional area in square inches of the inside of the two (2) risers and of any stacks in the sewer multiplied by the drop in water level in inches.

d. Table for Measuring Leakage in Sewers

Diameter of Riser or Stack	Volume Per Inch of Depth	
	Cu. Inch	Gallons
1"	0.7854	0.0034
2"	3.1416	0.0136
2-1/2"	4.9087	0.0212
3"	7.0686	0.0306
4"	12.5664	0.0544
5"	19.6350	0.0850
6"	28.2743	0.1224
8"	50.2655	0.2176

4. Air Test. The air test shall be performed as follows.

a. To perform the air test, all the water should be flushed and drained from the line being tested prior to beginning the test. All pipe outlets, especially laterals and services, shall be plugged. Air shall be added until the internal air pressure of the sewer line is 4.0 psi greater than the pressure exerted on the pipe by the groundwater above the pipe. Allow the air pressure to stabilize after it has reached 4 psig. As the air temperature stabilizes, the air pressure will normally drop. When the pressure has stabilized at 3.5 psig, allow the pressure to drop to 2.5 psig. The time it takes the pressure to drop from 3.5 psig to 2.5 psig shall be recorded. If the time it takes the pressure to drop exceeds the time permitted, the line has passed. If the time is less then allowable, the line has failed.

b. The air pressure test should not be used when the pipe is submerged in groundwater, because the static water pressure will greatly affect the results. The water infiltration test will be used in this case.

c. For sections of pipe less than 36-inch average inside diameter, the minimum time allowable for the pressure to drop from 3.5 psi gauge to 2.5 psi gauge shall be computed from the following equation:

$$T = 0.085(D)(K)/(Q)$$

where,

T = time for pressure to drop 1.0 pound per square inch gauge in seconds
K = 0.000419(D)(L), but not less than 1.0
D = average inside diameter in inches
L = length of line in feet of same pipe size being
Q = rate of loss, 0.0015 cubic feet per minute per square foot internal surface shall be used

d. Since a K value of less than 1.0 shall not be used, there are minimum testing times for each pipe diameter as follows:

Air Test Table for PVC Pipe

Pipe Diameter (inches)	Minimum Time (seconds)	Length for Minimum Time (feet)	Time for Longer Length (seconds)
6	340	398	0.855(L)
8	453	298	1.520(L)
10	567	239	2.374(L)
12	680	199	3.419(L)
15	850	159	5.342(L)
18	1020	133	7.693(L)
21	1190	114	10.471(L)
24	1360	99	13.676(L)
27	1530	88	17.309(L)
30	1700	80	21.369(L)
33	1870	72	25.856(L)

e. For sections of pipe with an average inside diameter less than thirty-six (36) inches, the test may be stopped if no pressure loss has occurred during the first twenty-five percent (25%) of the calculated testing time. If any pressure loss has occurred during the first twenty-five percent (25%) of the testing period, then the test shall be continued for the entire required time.

f. Lines with an average inside diameter of twenty-seven (27) inches or larger may be air tested at each joint. Pipe with an inside diameter greater than thirty-six (36) inches shall be tested for leakage at each joint. A visual inspection of the line between the joints shall be

performed immediately after an air test. Regardless of pipe size there shall be a minimum of ten (10) seconds allowable for the pressure to drop from 3.5 psig to 2.5 psig during a joint test.

5. Retests. Sewers which fail to meet the requirements of the leak test will be tested again for leakage, after repairs have been completed by the Contractor. If a sewer fails to pass the requirements of the leak test a second time and additional repairs and retests are performed, then the sum of fifty dollars ($50.00) will be deducted from the amounts due the Contractor to compensate the Owner for the costs of making additional retests.
6. Manhole Test. All manholes shall be tested for leakage by plugging the lines entering the manhole and completely filling the manhole with water. If leakage exceeds 0.025 gallons per foot of diameter per foot of head per hour, repairs shall be made to make the manhole water tight and a retest shall be performed. Concrete manholes may be filled for twenty-four (24) hours before the test.

3.04 SCHEDULES

SCHEDULE 3.04A

GO/NO GO MANDREL SIZING GUIDE FOR DEFLECTION TESTING OF INSTALLED SEWER PIPE

All dimensions are in inches.

Stamped Identification	Average Pipe O.D.	Minimum Wall Thickness of Pipe	I.D. of Pipe for Mandrel Sizing	O.D. of Mandrel C	Length of Mandrel L
6" ASTM D-3034, SDR 35	6.275	0.180	5.915	5.619	4.436
8" ASTM D-3034, SDR 35	8.400	0.240	7.920	7.524	5.940
10" ASTM D-3034, SDR 35	10.500	0.300	9.900	9.405	7.425
12" ASTM D-3034, SDR 35	12.500	0.360	11.780	11.191	8.835
15" ASTM D-3034, SDR 35	15.300	0.437	14.426	13.705	10.820
18" ASTM F-679, SDR 26	18.701	0.719	17.263	16.400	12.947
21" ASTM F-679, SDR 26	22.047	0.848	20.351	19.333	15.263
24" ASTM F-679, SDR 26	24.803	0.954	22.895	21.750	17.171
27" ASTM F-679, SDR 26	27.953	1.075	25.803	24.513	19.352
6" ASTM D-3034, SDR 26	6.275	0.241	5.793	5.503	4.345
8" ASTM D-3034, SDR 26	8.400	0.323	7.754	7.366	5.816

ROCIP Project: Withhold insurance cost. Please refer to sections 00425 & 00810 for information.

Stamped Identification	Average Pipe O.D.	Minimum Wall Thickness of Pipe	I.D. of Pipe for Mandrel Sizing	O.D. of Mandrel C	Length of Mandrel L
10" ASTM D-3034, SDR 26	10.500	0.404	9.692	9.207	7.269
12" ASTM D-3034, SDR 26	12.500	0.481	11.538	10.961	8.654
15" ASTM D-3034, SDR 26	15.300	0.588	14.124	13.418	10.593
12" ASTM D-2241, SDR 26	12.750	0.490	11.770	11.182	8.828
10" ASTM D-2241, SDR 26	10.750	0.413	9.924	9.428	7.443
8" ASTM D-2241, SDR 26	8.625	0.332	7.961	7.563	5.971
6" ASTM D-2241, SDR 26	6.625	0.255	6.115	5.809	4.586
12" ASTM D-2241, SDR 21	12.750	0.606	11.538	10.961	8.654
10" ASTM D-2241, SDR 21	10.750	0.511	9.728	9.242	7.296
8" ASTM D-2241, SDR 21	8.625	0.410	7.805	7.415	5.854
6" ASTM D-2241, SDR 21	6.625	0.316	5.993	5.693	4.495
12" ASTM D-1785, Sch. 40	12.750	0.406	11.938	11.341	8.954
10" ASTM D-1785, Sch. 40	10.750	0.365	10.020	9.519	7.515
8" ASTM D-1785, Sch. 40	8.625	0.322	7.981	7.582	5.986
6" ASTM D-1785, Sch. 40	6.625	0.280	6.065	5.762	4.459

END OF SECTION 33 30 00

ROCIP Project: Withhold insurance cost. Please refer to sections 00425 & 00810 for information.

SECTION 33 40 00 -- STORM SEWERS AND APPURTENANCES

PART 1 - GENERAL

A. Summary
   1. This specification covers storm sewers, headwalls, inlets, culvert extensions, alterations of existing structures and miscellaneous items that are related to the drainage system.

B. Related Sections:
   1. Refer to Division 31 Section "Excavation, Trenching and Backfilling for Utilities."
   2. Refer to Division 31 Section " Excavation Safety."

1.02 MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT

A. Storm Sewers and Culverts. Storm sewer length will be measured by the linear foot from the inner face of the inlets to the outer face of existing conduits and/or headwalls. No length deductions will be made for fittings such as wyes or tees. Storm sewers and culverts shall be measured and paid for according to diameter and type of pipe regardless of the trench depth. The unit price for each individual pipe size shall include all work required for trenching operations, furnishing and installing pipe and all operations not designated to be paid for separately. Trench sheeting and shoring of depths less than five (5) feet and dewatering will be included in the unit prices for storm sewers. Fittings shall not be paid for separately.

B. Connection to Existing Culvert. Unless a separate unit price is established in the proposal, then connections to existing culverts will be included in the unit price for pipe. The unit price shall include removing the existing culvert wall, grouting the new lead pipe in place and all other related work as shown on the plans. Separate payment will be made for the lead pipe.

C. Culvert Extension. Culvert extensions will be paid for at the unit price stated in the bid form. The unit price shall include the furnishing of all necessary materials, tools, labor and equipment, removing the existing headwall and a portion of the existing culvert barrel, disposal of the removed materials, constructing an extension to the existing culvert, grading the road ditch and all other necessary work needed to complete the operation as directed on the plans.

D. Headwalls. Headwalls will be paid for per each at the unit price bid. The price shall include all excavation, materials, labor and equipment to construct the headwalls and regrade the adjacent ditch.

E. Curb Inlets. Curb inlets will be paid for per each at the unit price bid. The unit price shall include cutting and removing pavement, disposal of the materials removed, excavation, backfill, construction of the curb inlet structure as shown on the plans and all appurtenant work. The height variance from the curb at the inlet to the standard curb and gutter shall be included in the unit price. Payment for the lead pipe from the inlet to the storm sewer main shall be paid for separately.

1.03 REFERENCES

A. The applicable provisions of the following standards shall apply as if written here in there entirety:
   1. AASHTO American Association of State Highway and Transportation Officials
   2. ASTM American Society of Testing and Materials
   3. TxDOT Texas Department of Transportation Standard Specifications for Construction of Highways, Streets and Bridges

1.04 SUBMITTALS

A. Submit manufacturer's certification that pipe meets the specified standards.

1.05 DELIVERY, STORAGE AND HANDLING

A. Handle pipe according to manufacturer's recommendations. Protect rubber gaskets from excessive heat and sunlight.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.01 MATERIALS AND/OR EQUIPMENT

A. Reinforced Concrete Pipe. Unless otherwise shown on plans, use reinforced concrete pipe (RCP), ASTM C76, Class III, with rubber gasket joints.

B. Precast Concrete Box Culverts. Precast concrete boxes shall conform to ASTM C789 or C850. Unless otherwise shown on plans, design for earth dead load plus HS20 live load.

C. Rubber Joint Gaskets. Gaskets for joints in bell and spigot concrete pipe shall meet ASTM C-443.

D. Materials for Drainage Structures
   1. Mortar. The mortar used for other drainage structure connections shall consist of one (1) part by volume of Portland cement and two (2) parts of sand. The Portland cement shall conform to the requirements of ASTM C150, Type I. The sand shall conform to the requirements of AASHTO Specification M-45.

Hydrated lime may be added to the sand and cement mixture in an amount of ten percent (10%) of the volume of cement used. The hydrated lime shall comply with ASTM Specification C207, Type S requirements. The water quantity mixture shall be adequate to produce a stiff workable mortar, but shall not be greater than six (6) gallons of water per sack of cement. Water shall be clean and free of acids, alkalies and organic impurities. The mortar shall be used within thirty (30) minutes from the time the ingredients are mixed with water. The mortar shall be protected on the outside in order to obtain a sufficient curing time.

2.02 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

A. Control cylinders of the reinforced concrete pipe (RCP) shall obtain a compressive strength of at least eighty percent (80%) of the specified minimum strength before any concrete pipe can be delivered to the work site.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.01 ERECTION/INSTALLATION/APPLICATION AND/OR CONSTRUCTION

A. Laying Pipe. The ends of the pipe shall be cleaned before the pipe is placed. The pipe shall be laid on a prepared foundation starting at the outlet end with the spigot ends pointed in the direction of the flow and shall continue toward the inlet end with the adjoining sections matched properly. The pipe shall be laid true to the lines and grades indicated on the plans. The mouth of the pipe shall be protected to prevent earth and bedding material from entering the pipe as each section is laid. The pipe shall be matched and fitted to form a smooth, uniform conduit when placed in the bed. The trench bottom shall be shaped and the excavation shall be performed as specified under Section 312333 "Excavation, Trenching and Backfilling for Utilities." No pipe shall be laid on unsuitable soft material, under any circumstances. Proper facilities are to be provided for hoisting and lowering the pipe sections into the trench without disturbing the prepared trench bottom or sides. The Contractor shall be responsible for dewatering of the trenches and the diversion of drainage during construction. Any pipe section that is laid and found to be defective or damaged shall be taken up and replaced or relaid at the cost of the Contractor.

B. Jointing. Assemble rubber gasket joints in accordance with recommendations of gasket manufacturers.

C. Inlets, headwalls and other miscellaneous alterations and connections to existing drainage structures shall conform to the dimensions, locations and elevations and be constructed of the materials specified herein and shown on the plans.

D. Stub ends. Stubs for connection of future storm sewer pipe shall have watertight plugs installed in the end of the pipe such as a double course of brick or precast concrete plug.

3.02 REPAIR/RESTORATION

A. Any line in which opening or faulting of the joints occurs during backfilling or before the final inspection and acceptance, such that infiltration of materials or a change in flow characteristics may result, shall be repaired or replaced by the Contractor to the satisfaction of the Owner's representative.

END OF SECTION 33 40 00

SECTION 33 50 00 – FUEL STORAGE AND DISPENSING SYSTEMS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.01 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

B. This Section of Specifications covers the Standards for Mechanical and Electrical Work to be performed under the contract. Refer to the Plans for amplification on the clarification of the various materials and systems described and specified hereinafter.

1.02 SUMMARY

A. Except where otherwise specified, the City of Austin usage of brand names of this solicitation is merely used as the recognizable trade name. Vendors may submit products that are manufacturer's equivalent or equal, as a submittal, after contract award. Vendors must provide manufacturers' composition of the product as part of their submittals, interchangeable with the trade name product. Products submitted as interchangeable must conform to size, weight, physical or chemical characteristics and performance with trade name product.

B. All work associated with this project must meet or exceed all City, State and Federal rules and regulations. All installations of equipment must meet manufacturer 's recommended installation procedures. No variation or modifications will be permitted. All work shall be performed by T.C.E.Q. licensed contractors.

C. All work shall be completed in a manner to avoid the possibility of any threat to human health and safety and the environment. The contractor will provide a list of all proposed subcontractors for approval prior to beginning work and as required by the M/WBE ordinance for bidding.

D. Failure to submit any required documentation may be cause for rejection of the bid.

E. Provide a complete Petroleum Storage and Transfer system as indicated in this specification and as shown on the Drawings. System shall include all new equipment and accessories and includes but is not limited to: FCT (Fuel Control Terminal), tank pumps, dispensers, electrical conduit both above and underground, wiring/power/control/telephone, canopy, lighting, concrete paving, leak detection equipment, inventory and warning system, overfill prevention , and accessories, emergency power shutdown, etc. as indicated on the Drawings, specified herein and/or required by the below listed codes and standards:

1. NFPA 30 Flammable and Combustible Liquids Code, 1993.

2. NFPA 30A Automobile and Marine Service Station Code, 1993
3. UFC 79 Flammable and Combustible Liquids Code.
4. NFPA 70 National Electrical Code.
5. Underwriters Laboratories, UL-58; UL Standard 142; UL Subject 2085, Protected Type.
6. National Occupational Health & Safety.
7. ASTM requirements for steel fabrication.
8. State of Texas Safety Codes.
9. State of Texas Flammable & Combustible Liquids Codes.
10. NFPA Code 30 as related to emergency venting.
11. County and Municipal Codes and Ordinances applicable to installation site, including the City of Austin Uniform Fire, Building, Mechanical, Plumbing, and Electrical Codes.

1.03 FOUNDATIONS, HANGERS, AND SUPPORTS

A. All special foundations and supports, hangers, anchors, and guides required for the proper installation of equipment and conduit shall be provided as needed for required installation or as specifically hereinafter specified on the documents.

1.04 CORROSION PROTECTION

A. Vent piping: corrosion (aboveground) protection shall be pipes painted with one coat of industrial primer and finished with one coat of Alkyd enamel. Color to be earth tone brown to generally match exposed aggregate finish of tank concrete encasement.

1.05 EQUIPMENT, SPECIALTIESM AND ACCESSORIES

A. General: All equipment shall be new. This includes all listed equipment and hardware and all equipment and hardware not listed, but necessary to complete this project operationally and successfully.

B. For all equipment listed, approved equals will be considered, however, the final acceptance of approved equals will reside with the project manager for this project prior to construction.

C. All equipment shall be handled, installed and tested strictly according to the particular manufacturer's recommended procedures. All equipment must be compatible with its intended use. All monitoring equipment must be compatible with the "ASSETWORKS" card reader automated fueling system and interfaces and software must be furnished by and be readily available from "ASSETWORKS" for this purpose. Monitoring equipment must be complete with all necessary components to make it operational. The control room for all electrical equipment will be in the buildings as designated in the drawings. All necessary electrical equipment and correct placement of same shall be the responsibility of the contractor. All fuel piping and associated accessories shall be

recognized by the T.C.E.Q. for its intended use and warranted by the manufacturer for a minimum of one year. Contractor must be certified by the manufacturer to perform the installation.

D. Signs and Labeling: All fuel system components including fuel tanks, fill, stage 1 vent, tank vent piping, tank leak detection and instrumentation and emergency vent shall be identified with all-weather labels attached. All safety warning signs required by the various codes shall be installed in a highly visible location including direction arrow signs pointing to the fuel systems emergency shutoff switch which shall also be prominently signed to read: "Emergency Fuel Shutoff Switch-Push". A sign shall be placed at each tank fill connection indicating tank volume of 2,700 gallons (Note: This is 2,700 diesel and 2,700 E85.)

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.01 PRODUCT PIPING

A. Pump suction piping including suction tube, 3" from bottom of the tank, and riser to dispensers shall be installed in such a way as to be readily accessible and allow simple disconnection from the dispenser without damage to the fuel tank, nipple, concrete encasement, dispenser, piping or other components. Flexible connector must be used between suction tube and pump.

B. Piping system must be recognized by T.C.E.Q. and the manufacturer for intended use and warranted by the manufacturer for a minimum of one year.

C. Means shall be provided to prevent the release of fuel from the tank by siphon flow.

D. Tank Vent Piping: shall be 2" Schedule 40 ASTM A53-B, seamless black pipe riser a minimum of 12' above grade, 5' from any building opening, and through the tank covering canopy or equal.

E. Each vent riser pipe shall have a secured vent cap installed on top of the riser: OPW 23.

F. Each vent riser pipe shall be clearly labeled as to diesel or E85 fuel with a weatherproof adhesive metallic type wrap around label, after painting of the risers.

G. Flex Connectors: Shall be U.L. listed stainless steel flex connectors at dispenser/pump. The flex connectors must be rated for use in open areas/sumps. Teflon jacketed stainless steel flex connectors are not approved unless U.L. listed for open area use. Sizing and length of flex connectors shall be as appropriate for the installation connection to equipment, etc.

ROCIP Project: Withhold insurance cost. Please refer to sections 00425 & 00810 for information.

2.02 STORAGE TANK

A. Above Ground Fuel Storage Tanks (AST): Provide and install one (1) dual compartment, 3000 gallons each compartment, aboveground concrete encased fuel storage tank for E85 and diesel fuel service. Tank shall be factory fabricated, factory cast, and factory tested for intended service. The above ground concrete encased fuel storage tanks shall be steel tanks contained in a 6" concrete encasement that rests a minimum of 4 inches above the supporting concrete foundation slab and shall comply with UL 2085 integral protection. Completed product shall be fabricated in such a way as to provide monitoring access for leak detection, overfill prevention, magnetostrictive probe, etc., along with access nipples to the tank as shown on the plans. The tank product shall be of a design which has been in production and use similar to those manufactured by ConVault/Dalworth, Houston, or approved equal. No prototypes will be considered.

B. The Tank manufacturer shall furnish in writing a 30 year tank warranty and mounted tank name plate information that includes compliance with UL 2085 integral crash protection. Tanks will not be accepted on site without UL 2085 information in place.

C. The steel tanks shall:
   1. Be manufactured and listed in accordance with UL Standard 142 and appropriate ASTM requirements for steel fabrication and be rated at 3000 gallon std. capacity each.
   2. Have a 5" diameter emergency vent as required by NFPA code 30.
   3. Include staircase and catwalk with safety rails to allow for access to fill ports and tank maintenance.
   4. Have powdered coated threaded tank openings and steel nipples per plans.
   5. Be rectangular in shape and have continuous welds on all sides and bottom plate.
   6. Pressure tested at 5 psi for 24 hour per appropriate standards.
   7. Be coated with effective rust resistant primer.
   8. Be covered with appropriate spacer panels between steel tank and a secondary containment.
   9. Fill ports shall use Clay & Bailey overfill valve, with 2” male fill connection, ensure valve installed at 90% shut-off.
   10. Be fabricated with 2" overfill drain nipple with assembly and removal tool, 7 gallon or 10 gallon (as needed for fill nozzle clearance) lockable internal overfill containment and such other access into/through the tank as shown on the plans.
   11. The secondary containment may consist of a 30 mil poly-geothermal membrane enclosing the space panels in a continuous manner to above the liquid level, including the tip of the steel tank.
   12. Arrangement of the tank nipples shall be a shown on the plans to facilitate tank site arrangement and subsequent tank fill and vehicle refueling needs.

D. The Concrete Vault/Encasement shall:

1. Be an encasement for the tank and secondary containment consisting of 6 inches (minimum) of 3000 psi minimum reinforced concrete.
2. Be structurally designed and shown to properly support the tank filled and a 100 lb/sqft top slab live load.
3. Be of a monolithic pour and contain no cold joints , heat sinks or metallic penetrations on bottom and sides.
4. Listed in accordance with UL Subject 2085, Protected Type and shown to have a two hour fire rating.
5. Have capability of physical monitoring between primary and secondary containment.
6. Be constructed in compliance with applicable ACI and AASHTO standards including reinforcement placement, bar bending, concrete placement, vibration, and quality assurance procedures.
7. Utilize reinforcing steel which complies with ASTM kA 615 Grade 60 or ASTM A706 Grade 60 requirements as appropriate for anticipated service and geometry.
8. Be precast and prefinished with exposed aggregate finish including exterior fuel resistant clear coat sealer protective coatings.
9. Be provided with an eight foot minimum length gauge sticks and calibrated charts specific for each tank installed

NOTE: Steel tanks must be concrete encased. All others are not acceptable.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.01 INSTALLATION

A. Tank Installation: The aboveground tanks/vaults shall be installed as recommended by the manufacturer subject to owner approval. The tanks shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's published installation procedure in effect at the time of installation. The pumps, tanks, dispensers and appurtenance systems shall result in a complete working automated system.

B. Electrical service and fuel piping to the pump shall be installed in accordance with the plans and specifications as well as all applicable N.E.C., N.F.P.A., and local code requirements.

C. Each tank shall include fill system as follows and per the plans.

D. Each tank shall include monitoring equipment as specified herein and on the plans.

1. Submersible Pumps and Dispensers: Contractor shall provide and install a commercial quality, high capacity, petroleum products dispenser for each tank as shown on the drawings. Two submersible turbine pumps will be provided and installed, one for E85 and one for diesel. Each pump shall be the Red Jacket ¾ horsepower AG Pump, and dispensers shall be Wayne Reliance G6200 series mechanical remote dispensers for E85 and diesel with single

dispensing hose and shall include the following and as shown on the drawings:

a. Fuel filters, to be the Cim-tek 70120 for the E85 and to be the Petroclear 40510P-AD for the diesel.
b. Diesel dispenser shall have stainless steel doors and trim, E85 dispenser shall have yellow doors.
c. Dispensers shall be mounted on top of Bravo B8600 stainless steel containment box to cover shear valve and product piping.
d. 3/4" x 14' hoses, gasoline/diesel, Dayco USA 7280 FlexEver 150.
e. Dispensing nozzles w/latch, automatic: OPW **7H-5100-B20** with green handwarmer for diesel, OPW 11BP-0992-E85 with yellow handwarmer for E85.
f. Nozzle swivel joints; Tokheim No. 746
g. Emergency 3/4" breakaway coupling; Richard 's Safety Guard, 300# max pullaway force.
h. Overhead high hose retractors secured to dispensers.
i. Veeder Root 10:1 gallon pulser compatible with ASSETWORKS card system.
j. Electric reset
k. Lighted front panel
l. 999,999.9 gallon totalizer
m. 999.9 gallon dispenser readout
n. Meter capable of calibration
o. All necessary fittings, hardware, etc., including anchor bolts, etc., for installation
p. The E85 pump shall have the capability of being converted to future Stage II Vapor recovery.

3.02 SPECIALTIES

A. Tank and Piping Monitoring Systems: Shall be the Veeder-Root TLS-300i w/printer with Ethernet card and Fiber/CAT-5 connection. This monitoring shall include all hardware/modules necessary to make all probes and sensors operate as designed. Contractor shall provide and install a monitoring system for this fuel facility that will provide the following:

1. Veeder-Root console to be mounted inside stainless steel NEMA-4 enclosure on side of fuel tank or within close proximity to fuel tank and under canopy.
2. Install conduit for CAT-5 cable between Veeder-Root enclosure and Asset-Works pedestal.
3. Interface with the ASSETWORKS automated fuel system. (All interface and software must be currently available from ASSETWORKS.)
4. Furnish continuous 24-hour leak detection without shutdown.
5. Third party certification for leak detection of 99% - 1%
6. In tank probes must be third party tested and accurate to 0.2 gph. Probes must be magnetostrictive. All wiring must be covered by protective jacket designed to protect wire from all elements. This is available as an above ground tank kit from Veeder Root.
7. Monitoring equipment: The contractor shall provide and install the following:

a. Each tank shall be equipped with a Magnetostrictive Probe, Mag 2, 0.2/hr. w/installation kit suitable for tank geometry, and overfill audio/visual alarm with acknowledgment switch. Equipment shall be Veeder-Root TLS-300i with printer console compatible. Riser/tank nipple height to be compatible with probe.

b. Each tank shall be equipped with a Interstitial Sensor, VR 794390-420, for interstitial sensing leak detection of any liquid in the tank double wall sensing location, with audible alarm, a displayed message on the TLS-300i console and recorded as part of the TSL-300i Alarm History Report.

c. These components shall interface to create a state of the art leak detection system that exceeds T.C.E.Q. and U.S.E.P.A. release detection requirements.

3.03 FUEL CONTROL SYSTEM: (ASSETWORKS SYSTEM)

A. Contractor shall provide and install a new ASSETWORKS RFC-2500 card reader head w/new terminal stand designed and manufactured by ASSETWORKS, Inc. of Wayne, PA. The head/stand must be complete with pump control boards and such other equipment/programs, etc., as needed and specifically designed for this project and installed as specified by ASSETWORKS, Inc. ASSETWORKS must complete this work due to the unique nature of this equipment. Note: Contractor must have electrician install all wiring as instructed by ASSETWORKS, however, all final wiring connections for the automated card system must be made by a representative/technician of ASSETWORKS. In addition, all specialty wiring (pulsers, telephone, RS-232, etc.) must be approved by ASSETWORKS to assure specification compliance and warrantee validation.

B. All conduit and wiring shall be as required by ASSETWORKS, Inc., and related regulations. An 8' copper grounding rod must be installed directly under Fuel Control Terminal to provide direct grounding source for the ASSETWORKS equipment. This is in addition to any grounding provided by electrician to satisfy code requirements. An additional grounding rod must be used to ground the aboveground storage tank. This grounding rod should be directly behind the tank.

C. 2 conduits for 2 separate fiber-optic cables will run from Assetworks pedestal to network room.

D. Card Reader head unit shall include 2-hose configuration, Windows 7 CPU and following options: magnetic card reader, HID reader, WAF antenna.

E. Contractor shall contact ASSETWORKS and make arrangements to install the fuel control terminal (Card reader), and complete all necessary wiring and testing to provide a fully functioning automated fueling system consistent with Veeder-Root specified equipment and components. Contact Joe Basile at 610-228-0120

3.04 SPECIALITIES

A. Contractor shall provide and install all hardware necessary to make all equipment listed in this specification operational to the satisfaction of the City of Austin. This includes, but is not limited to, tank pipe nipple sizes, lengths, placement and spill containment for fills on each tank, all electrical equipment including grounding of each tank, all mechanical equipment, all instrumentation, and all miscellaneous equipment not specified but required for a complete operational fuel storage and dispensing system.

B. All adhesives, glues, epoxy compounds, cements, solders, o-rings, packing, thread sealing compounds, sump seals, etc., used in assembly and installation of the fuel tank or fuel dispenser systems, shall be compatible with the hazardous material being stored and suitable for the refueling installation without swelling, disintegrating, or otherwise unsuitable to this installation.

C. Canopy: Contractor shall provide and install a commercial grade canopy over the fuel island including related lighting system, as required by the plans. See drawings for details. Canopy by others.

D. Electrical Misc.: Electrical for the site shall be installed in accordance with the most current issue of the City of Austin Electrical Code and the National Electrical Code Current Edition in force.

E. All wire used in the project shall be stranded, and of a proper gauge to support the load required. Any "special" monitoring system wire shall be obtained from the system manufacturer.

F. All individual wire coatings used in the installation of the dispensers, monitoring system and card system shall be of different colors. The use of wire with the same color code will not be allowed.

G. Electrician is to make sure that the panel load is balanced and the dispensers, pumps and card system are not cross phased . The contractor shall provide and install a fuel system with necessary breakers, wiring, conduits, seal offs, fittings, wireways and all other material to provide a tested an operational system.

H. A ground wire shall be pulled into all conduits for all circuits used in the installation.

I. Power supply wiring shall not be installed in the same conduit as control system or instrument sensing system wiring.

J. The contractor will provide an install an emergency stop shutdown switch, mounted within 75 feet from the dispensers/as shown on the plans. The switch shall disconnect all electrical power to the fuel tanks, dispensers, control system, and such other equipment required to be disconnected by regulations.

K. The emergency disconnect system shall include the following panel with switch:

Square D, class 8910, Type DPA 123, Series A, 600 VAC, 1/AWG Max. Res. Rating, 120A, 115/230 VAC, Single Phase, 10/25HP Coil 120V-60Hz

L. Electrical Service: Electrical service to the fuel system equipment, instrumentation , control systems and lighting shall be as shown on the plans.

M. Emergency Electrical Service: Emergency electrical service shall be provided to the entire fueling system via Fire Station emergency backup generator.

N. Testing: Tanks shall be tested by the tank manufacturer who shall provide a leak test report with delivery of the tanks. Tanks will be visually inspected before installation for cracks and separations in the concrete encasement and for damage to access nipples. Further tank testing shall be performed by filling the tanks with product and observation for leaks, after 24 hours, via the tank leak detection opening and probe indications. A functional test shall be performed for the acceptable operation and accuracy of all components of the fuel system, including electrical and emergency shutdown. All tests shall be per manufacturer's recommendations and as required herein prior to substantial completion and acceptance and use by the City.

O. The Austin Fire Department shall be notified for an inspection of the installation before the tanks are filled. Call 512-974-0183, Ron Buys.

P. Bollards: Protective bollards must be installed as shown in the drawings.

Q. Submittals: Submittals are required for all components of the fueling system and lighting for approval by the City prior to construction.

END OF SECTION 00 00 00